

#### TO THE RIGHT VALE-ROVS AND WORTHY KNIGHT

SIR HORACIO VERE, COLLONEL
OF AN ENGLISH REGIMENT
vnderthe States in the Low
Countries.



jale College Siku.

Eing through lingring sicknes constrained to leave the warres, I thought
it not sit to melt my time in idlenes,
but to undergoe some exercise of the
minde, sith strength failed in my body: and for me I thought nothing
more sit then to write of warres (un-

more fit then to write of warres (vnable to follow them) that it might appeare to the world my thoughts had not for saken Armes, though Armes had caffered me. Debating with my felfe, I at last resolued, that to translate the lives of Emperors was the truest subject and most honorable full of vertue and valour, the changes of times, the chaunces of wars, the instabilitie of fortune, the force of magnanimitie, and reward of honor. Having with no little paines finished what I aimed at the same more paines into my head, studying to whom I should dedicate my labours; for I assured my selfe that treating of valous and vertue, it must be to one that had both. Ineeded not to have past the Seas into Flaunders for a \* Patrone of my paines, knowing that in England there are so nany of such worthy memory such exquisit knowledge both for consell and execution, for experience and successe, for discipline and deferts, as in no age our Iland heretofore hath offered, (thugh in all ages famous:) but it suted with my conceite ra-

#### THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

ther to finde out some that were in present action; to the end that Captaines and Gentlemen after their worthy services done by day, might with reading of honorable deedes recreate themselves at night; and seeing the reward of others courage, redouble their owne in hope (although not to come to be Emperors) yet to clime to honors in their life, and leave to posteritie that which cannot die (though they shall) fame, memorable, and immortall. Nailed (if I may so say) to this opinion, it was easie for me in the Low-countries (without doubt or dispute with my (elfe) to finde your felfe as the fittest there both in regard of your honorable services, and vertuous disposition: (what I speake is so farre from flattery, that enuie can alleage nothing to the contrarie) besides when I call to minde the honorable services of your auncestors, many yeeres famous for the warres: then the living patterne of a perfect Chieftaine, your renowned brother (whom for honors sake f name) Sir FRAN-CIS VERE Knight, Lord Gouernour of the Briell, whom the Low-countries have found both wife and valorous, and the Spaniards no leffe: (though they wished it had not been so much: ) then againe was fenforced to continew in my proposed purpose. To single out your seuerall services, the manner, the valour, and the successe, were to tell that to the world which it knoweth alreadie. If this in me seeme presumption, excesse it, because it proceedeth from the honor I bear cyou. If your vertues entertaine my labours: my labout then will eafily cleere my errors. So praying to the Almightic to fecond all your honorable attempts with happies successed, I rest wholy in what I shall be able.

> Euerneady to doe you feruice, humbly at commaund

> > W.TRAHERON.



# THE PREFACE TO



Auing determined, yea and sometime promised, following my course alreadie begun, to write something for the common good of my countrey, as in satisfaction and account for the time which I haue spent in reading: after many considerations had to that purpose, no kind of writing seemed more site for me, neither did so much please and satisfie me, as to take in hand some great and notable historie. Truly I had reason and sufficient ground to do so

for that indeede no kinde of litterature can be written, which may be beneficiall to so many, and be generally acceptable and pleasing to all; neither that hath bin fo much extolled and commended by wife and great men, as Historie. Axistoria affirmeth it to be profitable for Councels, Senates, and Affemblies, of whose opinion was the good Emperour Savanvs, who so often as he had occasion to treate and confult of any important matter concerning the wars, called to counfell and was chiefly aduifed by wife men, and fuch as were well read in ancient Histories. ZENO the Prince of the Stoick Philosophers being demaunded by what meanes a man might be made both happie and wife, answered, that he should connerse with the dead: which is as much as if he should have said, let himby reading histories understand and know the acts of the ancient. As for Ct. CERO, (before whose judgement I know not whose to preferre)he discoursing of historie, calleth it the record of times, the light of the truth, the Mistris of mans life, the life of memorie, the messenger of antiquitie. Others call it the ground and foundation of the truth : others, the image of humane life : including in few words great praises and mysteries, and yet true and certaine, if we attenticely note and confider them. Forto the first, it is cleere and manifest that historie is the light of the trueth, and a record of ages and generations, fith that the things Which in time are confumed and brought to nothing, are thereby kept and preferued, yea and it makethehem (whether they will or no) to line and remaine in mans memorie: and it dottim fuch manner represent things past, that it maketh it feeme vnto vs that we fee and attaine to those times, as though that fuch things had happened in the time wherein we liue. If glorie and renowne be so great a good as S ALO MON and all the Sages doe extell the same to be; and if naturally all men desire to perpenuate their name and memorie, tell me what would be becomethereof if Hiltories were not? Truly it had been but as the winde, which passing by is felt, but cannot be kept nor detained. What speech or remembrance had we now had of the great acts of the Greeke, and the Romanes, and of other people and nations, if Histories had not been? How had I knowne the clemencie

A 4

- // --- 1110 /01/

Of CESAB, the magnanimitie and largeffe of ALEXANDER, the bountie and inflice of TRAIANE, or the vertues and excellencies of these and such other great and noble personages to imitate and excellencies of these and such other great and noble personages to imitate and extoll them, if not by these meanes? Truly all that is past had bin but as a dreame, which waking, a man hath forgotten, and cannot recite. And our forepassed stathers had not onely bin deprined of their same andrenowne, but innumerable great acts had bin left vidone, but that the emulation of glorie and renowne made them to be vidertaken: for it is certaine, that the Trophees of MILCIADES stirred vp THEMISTOCLES, and the historie that Homer wrote of Aclilles, Alexander the Great; and of him, Ivlivs CESARS, and so of others other men to persourne great and noble exploites. The matter resteth not here, that Historie is onely a record and preserver of humane vertues: but hath also bin very necessarie for the conservation of divine matters; for it hath preserved in memorie the lives, marty domes, and godly examples of the Prophets, Apostles, and Martyrs, and the greatest part of our holy law and sacred Scripture is historie, being the ground and soundation where

upon standeth all the rest of the building. If not, I pray tell me (passing ouer the

rest in silence) what else is the holie Gospell, but an historie and a true relation ? To returne to policie and humane conversation, what were it, if the Chronicles and memorie of matters past were wanting: For without them the nobleffe and antiquitie of houses and linages could not be knowne and continued, and as little the right and title to estates; neither should we have knowne the beginning and originall of people, Kingdomes and Nations, neither the lawes to gouerne them could have bin preferued: and in all things would have bin diforder and confusion, as we see to be amongst those Nations which want the same. So that truly and with much reason it is said, that Historie is the schoolemistresse and director of mans life fith that befides what is alreadie fet downe it is very neceffarie and expedient for all estates, qualities, and ages: for to simple young men it giueth the wifedome of ancient old men, and maketh them expert without having had experience: for as faith CICERO, for a man not to know what passed before his time is to be ever a child. So that justly it may be said, that historie maketh men expert, wife, and circumfpect: for by examples and demonstrations of matters past, it giveth a rule and direction to determine of matters prefent(yea and what is more and feeming impossible) that a man may before hand diuine and vnderstand the issue and successe of his actions and attempts for knowing the beginning and the middle, he may coniecture them to have the like iffue and event as fuch other like actions have had: for as SALOMON faith, fith there is no new thing under heaven, and that all that is frath bin, and that which is to come shall be as what is past, it appeareth plainly vnto vs, that he that hath vnderstood, seene, and well considered it, may well perceine what will follow. And as I say, this fruite and profit is common to all forts of men: for Kings and Princes in Histories may finde others whom they way imitate, and with whom they may emulate and contend in vertues and excellencies and other wicked ones, whose fashions and conditions they may shely and abhorre, and by whose ends and fame they may take example: Captaines aduice policies, acts of form tute and magnanimitie, which they may vie and make profit of and feeing the errors and daungers, may know how to avoide them. Governours and Magistrates, lawes, customes, and manner of gouernment, which they may hold for a rule. Finally, there is not any kind of people, but out of Historie may draw a rule and example vnder which they may line wifely and vertuously, and warning to

#### TO THE READER.

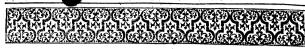
beware of the contrarie. For the true historie leaueth no vertue without commendation, neither vice without reprehension, and to al indifferently giving their dueplace and worth; is a testimonie against the wicked, a reward to the just, and a treasurie and depositorie of heroicall vertues and noble acts. Of all other Artes and Sciences, each of them hath a marke and white whereat to aime: historie comprehendeth the whole, and is the practife and example of the rest. Great and excellent are other Arts and Sciences, but men are most commonly drawne therto through the couetous defire they have thereby to attaine to riches and honours: onely historie is read for the loue of it selfe, no other thing is therein expected, but to know which is the true guerdon. Historie of it selfe may live without the Sciences, and so can none of them without it, for it hath been the preseruation and storehouse of them all, and so consequently by this account ought to be preferred before them all. Principally for the vse of historic letters were found out to the end to leave to those that were to come, a memoriall of what was past: and as other Arts and Sciences were written, it was but to leave an historie of them. So as the matter being well weighed, we may fay that all that is written, feeing it is written for a memoriall and to be kept in remembrance, is but hiftorie. Another excellencie (besides what is alreadie said) hath historic about all other Artes; for all the Sciences are not generally pleafing to all men; fundrie pleale fundrie humours: but historie to all wits is indifferently acceptable. The Philosophers sometime haue been driven out of Rome, and in like manner the Masters in Rhetorike and Art Oratoric, for the dislike the people have had of them: and in a long time Phisicke was not admitted. The Mathematicians and Astrologians have sometimes been banished from thence also, and some nations haue not allowed of certaine Arts, neither do they yet at this day embrace them: but the Histories and Annales of times past, neuer hath there been any man but hathloued and defired them, and respected those which have been the authors thereof. Yea the reading of histories is so delightfull, that we willingly give eare to fables and tales for the sympathic they hold with true histories. Of all the excellent Kings and Captaines that have been in the world, I have not read of any but were delighted with reading the Chronicles, out of which they drew no leffe rule and discipline for what they were to vndertake, then from the exercise and vse of what they did: yea of LvcIvs LvcvLLvs we reade, that reading made him wife and excellent Captaine. And great men in time past made so great account of histories, that they not onely spent much time in reading them, but did euen glorie, and made no lesse account to write histories, then to atchieue matters worthie to be written: fome of which, the histories they wrote made them little lesse excellent and renowned, then the battailes they fought: as amongst the Greekes were Hand DOTES, THE CIDIDES and TIMOTHERS: and amongst the Latines, MAREY SPORCIVS CATO, QVINTYS FABLYS, ASINIVS POLLIO, and the grant Cassars Caivs Ivilvs, and his nephew Octavivs Avgvsrvs, and some others of the one and other nation. Finally, the benefits and excellencies of hiftorie are fuch and fo many that as an endleffe piece of work I will leave to wade any further there slet this little that I have recounted serve for an Index of the much that is to be said, which hath induced me in our villgar tongue to bring to light his historic which is no common matter, but of all the Romane Emperours, wherein all their lines and acts in a meane. betweene fastidious tediousnes and sterill breuitie are into one volume briefly digested. And although the a bold attempt, yet I hold the will and defire there-

•

#### TO THE READER.

to commendable; which is, that through my endeuour, what in the Latine tongue lieth secret and hidden from those which understand not the same, may in our vulgar language be found out; and that therein wee may attaine to those benefits which before I have recited. This is one of the chiefest reasons whereby I was encouraged to take it in hand, together with what PIIN I the Orator faith, that Hiltorie howfocuer it be written, yet is pleafing, for that naturally men are inclined to defire to know new things, as are those which are past to them that haue not knowne them. And although I cannot polifh this Hiftorie with other beautifying ornaments, yet will I endeuour to write truly; contenting my felfe with what CATVLLV's faith concerning CICERO; that he of necessitie needeth not to be an Oratour that writeth an Historie; it shall suffice if he be not a lier. And the same C 10 BR o in the person of A N THONY faith, that the Greekes in the beginning wrote onely bare naked Annales, and fo MARCYS CATO, Prs 0, and other Romane Historiographers. The other lawes and conditions of Hiftorie in the computation of times, in the description and names of countries together with the perspicultie sentences counsels and the rest concerning the imbellishing and perfection thereof, is according to the haste and breuitie it behoned me to vie, and as was requisite for the abridgement of so great a matter: and as the weakenes of my wit, and the plainnesse of my stile could attain vnto. The faults escaped in the whole worke, which cannot be but many, in requitall

Its escaped in the whole worke, which cannot be but many, in requit of my paines taken to please his humour in reading what before he knew not I in charitie entreate the reader with patience to beare withall, promising to be thankfull to him that shall doe me that fauour.



# A TABLE OF THE NAMES OF ALL THE ROMANE EMPERORS.

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•			
A		Conrade the second		€0 i
O Drian	Fol.155	Conrade the third		644
Albert the first	745	Conrade the fourth.		723.
Albert the second	810	D		, ,,
Adulph	741	Ecius		245
Alexander Seuerus	217	Didius Iulianus		285
Antonius Pius	164	Domicianus		133
Anaslatius the first	413	Dioclesian.		295
Anastatius the second	498	E		
Arcadius and Honorius	357	Milianus.		250
Arnolphus	.555	<b>⊥</b> F		•
Aurelianus	· 271	Erdinand		855
Augustus Octavianus Casar	27	▲ Florianus		281
B		Focas		460
RASianus Caracalla	199	Frederick Barbarossa		653
C		Frederick the second		701
C Aligula	62	Frederick the third.		814
Carus, Carinus, and Numerian	us 291	$\mathbf{G}$		-
Charles the great	524	CAlba		101
Charles the second	547	Gallus		248
Charles the third	552	Galienus		255
Charles the fourth	732	Gordianus		238
Charles the fifth	847	Gratianus	•	344
Claudius the first	71	Н		
Claudius the second	266	Eliogabalus		211
Clodius Balbinus, and	252	Henry the first		5 <i>69</i>
Maximus Pupienus	- 73	Henry the second		59 <b>7</b>
Commodus Antonius	175	Henry the third		605
Constancius Clorus	, 3°3	Henry the fourth		612
Constantine the great	307	Henry the fifth		<i>6</i> 30
Constantinus, Constantius, 7	sin to sin	Henry the fixth		<i>6</i> 81
and Constance, the sonnes	<del>~</del> 320	Henry the seventh		750
of Constantine the great		Heraclitus.		464
Constantine the third	474	<u></u>		
Constant the second	476	TV lius Cafar		I
Constantine the fourth	481	Iulian's Apostara		32 <i>9</i>
Constantine the fifth	5,06	louianus		333
Constantine the fixth	518	Iustinus the first		318
Conrade the first	563	Iustinus the second		441
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	2	\$ · ·		Iustinian

#### THE TABLE.

Iustinian the first	421 Philip the first	242
Iustinian the second.	486 Philip the second	688
L	Philippicus	496
T Eo the firft	399 Phocas	460
Leo the second	406 Probus.	282
Leo the third	502 Q	22
Tanhe fourth	516 OVintilius.	270
Lewes the first called Ludonicus Pius	531 <b>L</b>	
Lewes the second	544	
Lewes the third	550 D Obers	788
Lewes the fourth	SSO Rodulph the first	732
Lewes the fifth	757 Rodulph the second.	889
Lotharius the first	539 S	
Losharius the second.	622 CEuerus	190
M	Sigismund.	795
A Acrinus	207 T	
Marcus Aurelius	168 Acitus	279
Martianus	397 I Theodosius the first	349
Mauritius	Theodolius the lecond	374
Maximinus	225 Theodosius the third	500
Maximus Pupienus. Z	Tiberius the first	5
and Clodius Balbinus	235 Tiberius the second	444
Maximilian the first	831 Titus	12
Maximilian the second.	875 Traianus.	14
N	V	
▼ TEro	83 \ Alentinianus the first	330
Nerua	141 V Valentinianus the second	38
Z 1710/115	Valerianus	25
tho the first	107 Vespasianus	12
Otho the second	575 Vitellius.	11
otho the third	έβ <del>ν</del> W	
Otho the fourth	590 X TEnceslaus.	77
Otho the fifth.	696 VV	
P	<b>Z</b> /	
<b>D</b> Ertinax	179 Eno.	40
	" <b>L</b>	13.3



## CÆSAR, FOVNDER OF THE EMPIRE AND MONARCHIE

OF ROME.



THE ARGUMENT.



THE

Vlive Casar was of a most noble family, and returning to Rome from the Pretorship in Spaine with great renowne, making friendship with Marcus Crassus and Gneius Pompey, which were the mightiest Citizens in Rome, and pacifying the controversie betweene them, he obtained the Confulship : which he executed with such granitie and regulation, that his fellow-Conful would not endure to be with him, Dangedretired. Afterwards giving his daughter Iulia in mariage to Poregey, he went into France, which he fubdued, and ouercame the Germaines. He went afterwards also into Britannie, and by force of armed subdued it to the Romane Empire. Iulia afterwards dying ad Marcus Crassus being Staine with Rarthians, mortall discord arose betweene Casar and

ompey: the occasion whereof was fortuat the second fine yeares of Casars gonernment of France being expired, it was propounded by Pempeyes partakers that a site of pould be sent him: and Cefar desiring that his commonand in the Erench Warres wight be prolonged, and that in his whence he might densund the Confuling which being dedied him, he made another demand, which was that he would size out his arm. In France upon condition that Pempey fould doe the like by his in Spaine Which being alfo denied, and being intoyned to leave his armie, he paffed the rmer Rubicon (limits offigued him which he was not to paffe ) and taking the Citie of Ariminum, he

IVLIVS CESAR.

went with such furie directly towards Rome that Pompey abandoned Italy and befollowing him in the endouerthrew him in Pharfalia : whereupon Pompey for refuse repayring to Ptolomy Kins of Egypt, was in a small barke by that Kings direction, flaine by the hands of Septimius and Achila, whose head being cansed to be presented by Ptolomy, Casar wept. Afterwards bending his force against Prolomy; and onercomming him, he passed into Egypt, and tamed the pride of the Egyptians. Thence he went into Africa, pursuing the remainder of Pompeies faction, all which he ouercame: and Cato being in Vica for not to fall into Cafars bands, fine himfelfe. Gafar returning to Rome triumphed, and afterwards going into Spaine (after a most fierce battaile, wherein he was likely to hane been lost ) he overthrew Sextus Pompeius, eldest sonne of the great Pompey : and returning to Rome he tooke upon him the Distatorship: where finally, Decius, Marcus Brutus, Gains Cassius, Gaius Calca . Attilius Cimber Ouintus Livarius, Marcus Spurius, Cornelius Cinna with many other principall Romanes conspiring against him be was slaine in the Senat, being of the age of 56. reares, upon the fifteenth day of March, with three and twentie wounds. Many prodigious signes of his death appearing both before and afterwards, which letted his passage against the Parthians, and many other high attempts, which he purposed to have undertaken.



reginning to write the Histories, and Liues of the Romane Emperours, Monarches of the earth and worldly dominion; or to fay better, to bring them to a compendiousnes and breuitie, a worke in truth very great and troublesome, and which requireth a farre riper wit, and greater eloquence then mine: I hold it not for the least of the difficulties thereof, but rather for one of the greatest, to proue Ivilivs C # SAR to be the first. of whom it behooveth me to treate: For although that

he were Dictator, and was not called Emperour in the fignification of Soueraigne Lord, as his fuccessors have been everfince; yet he was the beginning All Cafars fue- and original of this Monarchie, and from whom all the succeeding Emperours have gloried to take the name of C # s A R s, and to be called his fuceeffors. ken from him The acts and deedes of this man were fuch, so many, and so great, and bookes and Histories are so full thereof, that it seemeth as hard a matter for me to reduce them to any breuitie, as to write and recite the same: And therefore out of aboundance and matter fo copious, I will chuse that which (in my judgement) maketh most to my purpose, and to the subject and end of this worke, handling it with fome expedition and breuitie; although that it being the beginning and foundation of this edifice, it shall be very requisit to dilate and treate more at large thereof, then of those things which follow. In all other matters concerning this incomparable man. I referre the reader to the infinit number of Bookes, wherein C # s A R is remembred and extolled, and to the notice and knowledge (which is commonly held) of his excellencies and acts.

the name of

Cafars.

Among the great attempts which may be recount of TLIVS CESAR (in my opinion) the greatest of all, and which make in me most to wonder is how he durst, and had the heart, first to thinke and imagine, and afterwards to attempt, and in the end to goe through with making himselfe Lord of the people and Common-wealth of Rome (which was Ladie and Ruler of the most and best parts of the whole world) and of fo much, as it in feuen hundred veeres before. had been able to tubd and conquer: for follong was the time and fomewhat more, from the foundation of Rome vntill that I vitvs Casan possessed that Common-wealth : whereof two hund affortic yeeres were vnder Kings, and the rest vnder Consuls chosen by the people, which governed it; saving some few yeeres in which the Tribunes and Decemuir ruled. Indeede a very

short space to conquer and subdue so great an Empire, as that which the Romanes enjoyed when C & s A R reduced it from free and common, to the do- Dion B. Haliminion of one: which, without all doubt, was the greatest of all that euer haue carnasseus been in the world or man hath obtained, aswell for continuance of time as for cap.6. greatnes and power, which is approoued and affirmed by all authors and true Hi- Appian in the Hories. For leaving apart the other Kingdomes and Common-wealths now at umphes. this present, which are not to be named in this discourse, and examining the greatest and most famous which before it were called the Monarchies of the world. which were the Affyrians, the Perfians, and Macedonians; it will appeare that the Romane Empire farre excelled them all. For that of the Affyrians and Babylonians (which was the most auncient of all the Monarchies) in a thousand two hundred and fortie yeares, which it lasted (as Saint A v G V S T IN E reciteth) neuer spint Augus extended it selfe out of Asia, neither attained to hold any part in Africa, or Europe, sine in his neither did the Medes, whose raigne ARBATVs established by the death and tare dei, destruction of SARDANAPALVS King of the Assyrians, defeating that first Justinin bis Monarchie: then the Persians, which subuerted the Medes by the hand of the 43. books, mightie Cynvs, which is reckoned for the fecond Monarchie, not with standing Plinie, that they made some incursions and entries into Europe, as vnder XERXES and o. Solinus, in their thers, and in Asia obtained greater power then any of their predecessors: yet in the other minariend it lasted but two hundred and odde yeares, and were ouercome and subdued this with the (DARIVS being their King) by ALEXANDER the great King of Macedonia, whose Romane. kingdome we cannot deny to be greater then any of the forenamed: for he held a great part of Europe, and Subdued (in a manner) all Asia, and is accounted for the third Monarchie. But this was but like a flash of lightening, burning whatfoeuerstoode before it, whose fire was soone extinguished: for ALEXANDER dving, his power ended, and there was a diuision, and divers kingdomes were erected thereof. But the dominion and Empire of the Romanes, which is the of thegreatnes fourth Monarchie, notably excelled them all, both in time, in greatnes, and in of the Empire power: In time, for there are few lesse then two thousand and three hundred of Rome. veares fince Rome was builded, and the Empire lafteth vntill this day, under the name of Romane: whereof in a thousand and three hundred yeares, it alwayes encreased; and afterwards it neuer left to bee the most high and preeminent dominion of all others. Then in greatnes and power; for it is certaine, that putting togethers all that euer all the restenioyed, it will hardly amount vnto the one halfe of that which the Romanes possessed. For besides that which their Emperours enlarged, as hereafter shall appeare, before that I v L I v s C & s AR enjoyed it, they had conquered the greatest and best parts of all the world: for in Europe they held all the prouinces of Italie, and Gallia Cifalphina which wee call Lum- Galla bardie, Istria and Illyrican ow called Slauonia, and vowards to the river Da- Lumbardie nubius; and subduedall Gravia either by force or friendship, as the Common- 11/1/1/10/10/10. wealths and cominions of Ashens, Lacedemonia, Thebes, Corinth, Peloponesus Esclauonia, which is now called Morea, and at the other provinces thereof. The kingdomes of Morea. Macedonia and Epire now calle Albania, together with Thracia: they had also the Mes of Sicilia, Sardinia, and Creen now called Candia, Copres, Rhodes, and Eubera Creta Condia which is now Negropont, with an infinit number of Ilan in the Mediterranean Negropont. Sea. They possessed also the kingdomes of Spaine, a Though with greater difficultie Spaine. and refistance then any of the rest and the Callias which are the kingdomes of Gallia, Fraunce and all the provinces thereof, with that part of Almaine on this fide of the France. Bhine, called the Love, of Gallia Belgica, although this by the hand of C & s A x himselfe.

Britamie, England and Scotland.

Caria.

himselfe, as hereaster shall be declared; and in like manner Britannie which containeth England and Scotland. They likewise held in Africa (being a third part of the world) all that which was or is fruitefull and habitable thereof, after the fubversion of the proud Carthage: then in Asia, they subdued the greatest and best provinces, and made them their vaffals and tributaries, among which was Syria now called Soria, Phanicia, Palestina, Iudaa, and the holy citie of Ierusalem: in Asia the leffe, they held the provinces of Pamphilia, Phrygia, Caria, Cilicia, Mesopotamia, and Bithynia by the will and testament of NICOMEDEs their King. The Kings of Egypt and Cappadocia were their friends and allies: in Armenia, in Colchos. and in other provinces they fet and established Kings at their pleasure and from Albania and Iberia they received hostages and tributs, wherein they had subdued, taken and flaine a great number of Kings and excellent great captaines: Finally they were Lords of fo many provinces and countries, that it were an endlesselabour to recite them all; they were then so mightie that no force or power whatfocuer (but their owne) was able to offend them. And it afterward hapned that discord and ambition, entring into this Common-wealth which was so free and puissant, seeing that forraine forces were not sufficient, with their owne forces and armes they subdued and captinated themselves, which grew through the discord and controuer sie betweene the great Pompey and Ivilvs CESAR, two the most famous and most mightie men in Rome, although that at that season there were many principall and great men: But the ground of this controuerfie

of the civill vuerres be-

tooke roote before, to wit, from the two factions, and civill warres betweene SYLLA and MARIVS; wherein MARIVS being ouercome and flaine. The beginning SPLLA made himselfe Dictatorand seased upon Rome; neuerthelesse before his death, he deposed himselfe from his Dictatorship and left it at libertie: Pomp & Y reveene Cefar was of Sylla his faction and had done great exploites in his behalfe; and C & s AR followed MAR I v s, although then he were very young to whom he was of kinne and affinitie. This was the roote from whence grew betweene them the civill warres, before which paffed some matters very necessarie to be remembred: first, to the end that the causes and occasions which happened may be the better understood, and afterwards the processe and successe thereof, which briefly recounted, passed in this manner.

These matters concerning SYLLA being passed, and GNEIVS POM-

PRIVS, and MARCUS CRASSUS remaining, by meanes thereof in great reputation: for they both followed that faction, and afterwards either of them defirous to have the preheminence in commaund and government, there was a continuall emulation and competitorship betweene them, which at the death of Sylla tooke beginning. MARCYSIGRASSYS made himselfe very mightie, besides his great wisedome, linage, eloquence, and victories which he had obtained, principally by meanes of his aboundant riches, which he had gathered, being of greater value then any other mans of his time. POMPEY likewife obtained great honour, reputation and power, besides that which he inherited from Sylla, by real on of his great victor s and aduentures in Armes, in the time of Sylla and afterwards both by feathed landin Africa in Spaine and in Afia, which were fur and so many, that Ldare not report them. The acts of thefe two great men being forhighly extolled, and the controverties betweene them encreasing (as betweene the heads of actions) although that at that same time, CATO, CICERO, and LENT VLVS, and others were very principall men: It happened that IVLIV'S CESAR at this time came to Rome from Spaine where

he had been Pretor, whose credit and estimation was now very great; but his thoughts were much higher and greater, for many causes, aswell for his great linage, being by his fathers fide a Patritian and very ancient, and by his mother The linage, he came of the Romane Kings which descended from ENEAS of Troy; as also gifts and excellenties of for his great frindes and kindred, together with his fingular wit and eloquence, Julius Cofar, and by meanes of the authoritie wherewith he had obtained and administred the magistracies and dignities which he had held, to wit, the Questorship of Spaine, the Tribunate of the Souldiers, the office of AEdil, the high prichhood, the office of Pretor, and by meanes of his victories obtained in Spaine against the Gallegoes and Lustranians, adding hereto his other merits and graces of his perfon. Befides this, he was very liberall, very wife, and learned in arts and sciences. very expert and active in Armes, both on foote and horsebacke, very strong and valiant, and before that he was a Captaine, he had made maruellous proofe of his person in the warres of Asia, under MARCUS TERMO Pretor, and SERVILIUS the Proconful and had obtained the Ciuicall crowne. He was also of a very good constitution of body, tall, faire, comely, and strongly limmed, and could well endure trauell, for which and many other causes, he was much esteemed; but not fo, as that in place or authoritie he could in Rome compare with MARCY'S CRAS-

svs or with Pompey: for they were deepely rooted and of long continuance.

CESAR with these qualities being come to Rome, with a presumption and

conceite (although in fecret) to commaund more then all the rest, either of these two, CRASSVS and POMPEY, defired his friendship, the one against the other. But C & s AR very wife and valorous would follow neither faction, because he would not make himselfe subject or an abbettor to either partie, but rather shewing himselfe neutrall, sought meanes to make them friends, imagining that rather then he should encline to either partie they both would willingly yeeld to what should he require: which policie as PLYTARCH affirmeth, was comprehended by MARCY'S CATO onely. The peace between them was made, and concluded by his meanes, both of them remaining bound vnto him for the fame, and as the one held the other in suspition, so for feare to lose him, they both sought to pleasure him; and by this meane he made himselfe equall with either of them both, and the power which two held before, was now deuided betweene three, and in the end he alone commaunded all. This league being concluded, C = SAR de-The league bemaunded the Confulship which was the highest ordinarie dignitie, and was the ment fuling celar, crassing made Confull: which office he executed with fuch authoritie, that his fellow in and Pompey. officebare no fway with him, but rather (all the time that it lasted) lined retired. and kept his house. And CESAR the better to confirme himselfe in the power which he had obtained; and to clime to the height of his defires, procured Pomper to marrie the daughter Iviia, and himselfe married the daughter of Lveivs Property was to the ceede him in the Consulfhip, which being accomplished, he chose the Gallias for his province, which is now the kingdome of France, whither he went with in Armie, where what he performed, what Battailes and victories he there with what Countries and Nationes he subdued. what hold attempts, what couldels, what greatnes of minde and fortitude he vied in little leffe then tenne years that this warre laftely, are not possibly by me life. (which am to vie brenitie, and to touch matters but superficially) to be expressed Suctionius in and declared. He himselfe left mest excellent and true commentaries thereof, dies in his approoued afterwards by his very enemies themselves PLVTARCH also and third booke.

SVETONIVS TRANG VELLYS, APIANVS ALEXANDRINVS, LYCAN, PAVLVS Lucanin bis OROSIVS, first.

Pompey and Marcus Craf.

betuveene

in his fixtb. Eutropius in bis fixtb. Lucius Florus in his third. Himfelfe in bis 103.0f his Epitomes.

Paulis Orofius Orosivs, Lucius Florus, Eutropius, and many other authors write thereof, to which I referre the reader. In this warre he wanne such estimation and name of a Captaine, that he was held for the best of his time, or before him: for he conquered and subdued all France from the Pyrenean mountaines, vnto the Aipes, and all the rest vnto the Rhine; before which, he subdued and ouercame the valiant Heluctians, and Tigurins, now called Swiffers, which as Piv-T ARCH affirmeth, were 300000. men, whereof 190000. were trained and exercifed to the warres. He subdued the Germaines and Arrovistvs their Captaine, which came downe into France, and draue them out from thence: he tamed and ouercame the Belgians, the Ambians, the Neruians, and other most warlike Nations of the Galles: he fled more bloud then euer was fled in any warre in the world; and paffing the riuer Rhine with a Bridge made of timber, he ouercame the Germanes, and brought certaine other countries under the yoke of the Romanes; and finding no more relistance in that Province, he passed with his people into the Isle of Britannie, now called England and Scotland, which was enhabited with a most warlike Nation, and till then vnknowne by any trafficke or other commerce, and by force of Armes compelled them to become subjects to the Citie of Rome.

All the time that these warres endured, wherein Ivilvs Casar gat great spoyle and riches, he neuer left to procure friendship in Rome, and in all other partes, by letters and gifts, and of Kings and Cities in Asia, in Grecia, and other countries, with aide of people which he fent them: and this fometime without the leaue or authoritie of the Senate, which he might fafely doe, fo long as he continued in league and friendship with Pompey and MARCVS CRASSVS. He also made himselse much esteemed and beloued of men of warre, giuing them penfions, and double payes, bestowing vpon them other honours and fauours: by which meanes, before that Pomper was aware thereof, CESARS power and authoritiegrew to be so great, that he began to be afraide thereof, when he was not able to refift the same. And the loue and friendship betweene these two, began to waxe colde, and to become suspect: for the pledges and bands which fultained the fame, began to faile; the first was the death of C E sars daughter, who was P o MPEYE's wife, which was a great linke and chaine of this friendship. The second was the death of MARCVS CRASSVS, the third man of this companie, whom the Parthians flew in Alia, whither he went to make warres (as some write) more for the desire of private gaine, then of glorie or fame, whose authoritie also continued the concord. These principall causes wherein their amitie consisted ceasing, and being remooued; there enfued discord, and civill warre betweene them, which was the greatest and most generall that euer was in the world for therein were employed and had a hand, all the Senators and martial men of the with all their friends and subjects, Kings and cities of the one art or the other. There were cleuen legions of the one fide, and eighteene of the other, all Romane and Italian Souldiers being the wholepower of Rome, frides the aydes and companies of other provinces. It was waged in Italie, in Frie., in Spaine, in Epire, in The falla. in Egypt, in Alia, and in Arica, by themselves and their captaines and lastly after fine yeares continuance, it ented in Spaine. Some authors fer downe the occafion of this civill warrs, who although they anewhat varie, yet the truth is, that the causes thereof were enuie, ambition, deliroto commaund, and vaine glorie, wherewith they both were infected. Powers began to true Casars power in

fulpition;

warres betweene Cafar and Pompey.

fuspition; it grieued C. ESAR to see Pompeyes authoritie and dignitic. POMPEY would endure no equall, nor CESAR superiour, as though that in the Romane Empire there had not been sufficient and enough for two men, and so either of them sought the others ruine, seeking to have it wholy to himfelfe. Whether Pompey intended to make himselse atyrant, and absolute, it is incertaine: but it plainely appeareth that he would not that C & s AR should mount to that degree wherein he was. Some fay that CESAR was constrained (through feare) to take Armes, to anoyde suppression, and not to be condemned; for CATO had threatned to accuse him for leaving his Province: others charge him that he had euer procured and practized to viurpe the dominion of Rome; and that his, and Pompeyes powers confidered, it seemed a fitte match. CICERO faith of him, that hee cuer had a verse of EVRIPIDES in his mouth, wherein he faid: That if lawes and equitie were to be infringed, it was to be done to the end to rule and commaund onely; and that C # s AR being accustomed to commaund, could not live without an armie : for my part,

I suppose that the causes were those alreadic alleadged. In the last yeare of the second fine yeares of the captainship of the provinces

which CESAR held, LENT VLV s and MARCELLV's being Confuls, it was concluded in the Senate, that there should be a successor sent to C & s AR, and that he should give over his Armie and government: and that if he desired the Consulship, as he had written, he should (to that end) come to Rome in person. Casar defired continuance of the Captainship and charge which he held, or that he might demaund the Confulship being absent, and before that he left his Armie: whereto POMPEY would not agree, because it was against the lawes, which determined that the Confulship could not be demaunded by any man being absent, Men commonly little remembring that he was made Conful before he was of lawfull age, and indeethat lawother dignities which by fauour (with dispensation of the lawes) he had ob- selves which tained. But this is commonly the condition of most men, that to themselves, they condemne that feemeth lawfull and tolerable, which they reproue in others. This being then denyed to Ivilvs Casar, he yeelded to leaue his Armie, and to come private to Rome, fo as Pompey should likewise give over his Armic which he heldin Spaine. There passed many treaties and consultations about this matter, MARCY'S TYLLIVS CICERO fought meanes to conclude a peace, and to bring them to agreement: which Pompey had not refused, but those of his faction were so hautie and proud (as they were the greatest and best men of Rome) fo that not with standing that CESAR dealt mildly and instified himselfe, yet they gaue no place thereto. And the Senates resolution was, that C & SAR should The determigiue ouer his Armie within a certaine time prefixed, and that he should not therewith paffe the river Rebicon which was the bound of his province, declaring him for an enemit to Remark the did the contrarie. And Lycivs Antonivs, and OVINTERS CVRIO, fribunes of the people contradicting this determination in the behalfe of Cara, were ill handled, and thrust out of the Senate, who sled from Rome, and took their way rowards Orsak, which holpe him much more throughly to gain the goodwill of men of warre, for a much as the office of the Tribunes, was held for facred and not to be touched. C # SAR knowing what paffed, and feeing himfelfe voyde o'hlope of peace, departed from Rauenna, whither he can but with fine thousand foote, and three hun to horse onely which he had with him, sending commandement to his Loons to march with all speed and to come to ioyne with him. Comming with a people



rous deterni-

to the River Rubicon, which was the furthest of his limits; which passing he was to lose all hope of agreement. Some affirme, that he stayed there agreat while, thinking and confidering with himselfe how great a matter it was to passe that River, and the euils which would enfue thereof. PLVTARCH writeth, that he discoursed thereof with Asinivs Pollio, and with other his friends which came thither with him: and SVETONIVS faith, that turning his face towards the River, he faid to them: Yet is it in our power to returne, but if we passe this River, we must make way with our weapons. And as APIANVS ALEXAN-DRINGS reporteth, he also faid. The truth is that if I forbeare to passe the River, it will be the beginning of euill, and my disgrace; and if I passe, it will be to all mortall men in generall. These words being spoken, standing alittle while in a doubt, with a furious determination and a loud voyce, he faid, The lot is cast, and with that word he gaue his horse the rayne, and began to march, and to passe the River, all his people following him: and fo was the civill warre determined, and begun with the seruitude of Rome, and the beginning of the Empire and Monarchie, which is as much as, the raigneand dominion of one, which briefly I will declare.

Who fo defireth to fee it handled more at large, let him reade APIANVS ALEXANDRNIVS in his fecond booke of the civill warres, SVETONIVS in the life of CESAR, and PLVTARCH in the famelife, and in the lives of POMHEY, and of CATO and CICERO; and Saint AVGVSTINE in his third booke decinitate dei, and the same IVLIVS CESAR in three bookes which hee wrote thereofin his commentaries, and in therest of Hyrcivs, Lycivs Flores in the fourth booke of his Histories, and in the Abreulats of TITVS LIVIVS, PAV-LVS OROSIVS, EVTROPIVS in the fixth of his Histories, and LVCAN in his tenne bookes, and PLINIE in his last de viris Illustribus, and the same PLINIE and VALERIUS MAXIMUS and other Authors which treate thereof, and of CESARS

other actions.

The beginning of the civill

IVLIVS CESAR having passed the River Rubicon, as is afore declared, as faith SVET ONIVS, drew his Armie together, and hauing brought thither the Tribunes in fuch vile and base attire as they came from Rome, he made a speech to his people, iustifying his cause and requiring their ayde and fauour, and being by them al anfwered to his liking, he departed presently from thence, & was the next morning by break of day, before Arimine, and feafed upon that Citie; and holding his way. did the like by all townes and castles as he passed. Casars terrible determination being knowne in Rome; Pompey, the whole Senate and people of Rome, were therewith much troubled; so as it should be a long matter to recite and set downe what they did, and what prouision they made: The truth is, that Pompey found himselfe much deceiued, for he neuer beleeue hat Casas would haue ad-uentured so farre, or that he should haue wanted to the same would have wanted to the same want But it happened otherwise vnto him, for although that to him was committed by the Confuls, and Senate the charge of leuving of Souldiers, and the calling thither of his legions, and that there were Carbaines fent to divers Cities of Italie (whereby C & s AR was to passe) for the fence thereof, all sufficed not against the surie and force wherewith he came and the news daily encreasing, Pompey and all the Scrate all adoned Rome, for Pompey was to Capua, and m thence to Brundusium now called Britis Pplace by the Sea fide in the com es of Italie towards Grecia, in the mouth of the Venetian Sea, whither he fent for Confuls to paffe thence to Dyrrachini nowallo Duraffe, a place also

the SL and bandonêd-Rome. Brandulium. Brindes. Dyrracbium.

by the Sea fide in the prouince of Macedonia, a great part whereof is now called Macedonia Albania, there to raise the greatest power that they should be able; being out Albania. of hope as then to be able to refift C & s AR in Italie, who had alreadie feafed on the Citie of Corfinio, which Domitivs held with thirtie of Pompetes Cohorts: which being taken by CESAR, he pardoned all those which he found therein, and entreated the gouernour very friendly, and gaue him leave to depart whither he would, who went prefently to Pompey: which truely was an act of great magnanimitie and elemencie, which C & s AR maruelloully vsed in all elemencie and his actions, and chiefly in the victories which he obtained in these civill warres. magnanimities wherewith (in my opinion) he wan no leffe honour, then by his victories.

CESAR having brought Domitivs his people to his denotion, he passed forwards, and understanding that Pompey and the Consuls gathered head in Brundusium, with the greatest iourneyes that he was able to make, he marched towards them with his legions: But Pompey had sufficiently fortified himselfe for his defence, having made the Confuls and the most part of the people to embarke themselves and passe to the Citic of Dyrrachium aforesaid, where the Confuls attended his comming. And C & s AR fo remaining in Italie, without refishance, being very carefull what counsell he should take; for although that he would have followed Pompey, yet he had no provision of shipping thereto, and by reason that it was winter, shipping could not come so soone as was requisit, which he well considered, and how much it imported him not to leave any enemie behinde him, which might cause any alteration in France or Italie, in his absence; he determined therefore to deferre the pursute of POMPEY, and to take his way towards Spaine, which held for Pompey, who had therein his excellent legions, and two Captaines, which were PETREIVS and AFRANIVS. SVETONIVS TRANQ VILLYS faith, that when he had refolued thereupon, he faid to his friends. Let vs first goe against the Armie which is without a Captaine; and afterwards let vs returne against the Captaine that hath neuer an Armie: for these Captaines, PETREIVS and AFRANIVS, were not held for very politike, or expert in the warres. And to the contrarie, Pompey was most wife and a very valiant Captaine: but the people which he had with him, were newly leuied and of small experience.

Returning from Brundusium, in fixtie dayes without bloudshed or battaile, cesar scaled on C E S AR became Lord of all Italie, and comming to Rome, they were in incredible Rome and all feare, remembring the cruelfies committed in the time of SYLLA: But C. BS AR Habe. vfing his naturall elemencie, did hurt no man of any degree high or low, but rather called to the Senate those Senators which remained, and which came with him, whom with very good words he comforted and encouraged: and laying the whole fault vpon Pompey, accusing him of all things present, he fought by all meanes to infinite his owne cause, and declared how much he did then, and eyer had defired peace, and therewith requested that messengers might befent to Pompey to procure the same and making himselfe to be presently chosen Conful, he opened the Romane treasurie, notwithstanding that ME-Casar conful TELLV's one of the Tribunes of the people was defirous and went about to have by force. hindred and letted the same, and that he should got aue done it. The treasure which he tooke from thence the ayed and deut and among his people, which as PLINIE in his three and thirtith Lockereporteth, was very great, which LVCAN alfoaffirmeth. These things being ended, and C ESAR desirous to goe from Rome into Spaine (like a wife and excellent Captaine) first tooke order aswell for the

civill government, as for the warres; and making choise of the legions which were to goe with him, he left part of his people in Brundusium and Otranto, and in other strong places vpon the Sea side, to keepe Pompay from landing if he fought to returne into Italie. Healfo nominated HORTENSIVS and DOLA-BELLA, for his Captaines, to make prouision of shipping to be brought to the port of Brundusium, there to be in a readines against his returne from his journey. Q VINT VS VALERIVS he sent with a legion to Sardinia, against MARC VS Cotta which held the same for Pompet: To Sicilia he sent CvRIVs 2gainst MARCVS CATO, with direction that having taken the same, he should passe ouer into Africa: LEPIDVS he left in the Citic of Rome as Presect thereof. and MARCVS ANTONIVS for gouernour and Captaine of all Italie: and determining to leave LICINIVS CRASSVS in France, with his accustomed celeritie, he went on his journey, and found no refistance, neither in Italie, nor in France, but onely in the Citie of Marfelles, which held for Pompey: which rather (in my opinion) more like bold and aduenturous friends, then wife men, would not receiue nor lodge him in their Citie, but put themselues in Armes against him for their defence. C & s AR comming thither besieged the Citie, and to auoyde losse of time, left there DECIVS BRVTVS and CAIVS TRE-BONIVS with fufficient forces, which continued the fiege and performed great matters; and himselfe followed his way into Spaine, where his comming was alreadicknowne, and AFRANIVS and PETREIVS attended him, with the into Spaine a-gainst Petreins ayde of their friends, and foure Romane legions; betweene which and C & s A R and Afranius. the warres continued many dayes, and that chiefly neere the Citie of Lerida. In the beginning CESAR was in great danger and much diffressed, aswell through want of victualles, as by reason of the winter being come, which annoyed him with rivers and waters; before and after the which, there passed many great skirmishes and conflicts betweene the two armies, and other chaunces and aduentures, too long to be recounted. Finally, CESAR knew how to warre in such fort, that without giving oportunitie to come to a battaile, he brought his aductfaries to fuch extremitie and diffresse, that perishing with hunger they came to a composition: which was that to the legions (who now were able neither to offend nor defend) should be graunted libertie to depart and to goe whither they would; which was performed accordingly, and PETREIVS and AFRANIVS went to Pompey, and part of the legions which would not abide with CESAR, had leave to doe as they lifted : CESER still persevering in his cle-

> This being ended, and sommer being come (to the end not to leaue any thing in Spaine to be subdued) he passed forwards, and came into the prouince of Betica, now called Andaluzia, with part of his forces, leaving commaundement with the Armie, to march whither he had appointed, and there to flay for him, because that MARCUS VARRO being POMETES Lieutenant in that prouince held it for him, with one legion of good Souldiers; but daring not to oppose himselse against C & S A R, he peaceably deliuered vp voto him both the countrie and the legion, and so all was plaint before him and at his commaund. Thence he went to Confina, where he called a parliament, and an affemblie of all estares of that prouince wherein among other things which there were treated of highly commending the Cordoueles and Seuillians which had taken his part (as himselfe writeth) he marched forwards and visiting the province, he came to the Isle and citie of Cales, and prouiding there certaine things, he tooke

celar subduced all Spaine.

mencie and gentlenes.

10

IVLIVS CESAR.

the ships and galleys which MARCUS VARROthere had left, and such other more as hee could get, and embarked himselfe therein. And leaving QVINTVS Cass with four elegions in that province, he tooke his passage by sea to Tarragena, sending commaundement by land to his legions to march thither: where being arrived, and in few daies, providing and taking order for that province, he departed with his armie towards Narbona, and from thence to Marfelles, which veelded vnto him, after that in the fiege and affaults, it had endured many calamities. And C As AR nothing respecting the small regard and ingratitude of that citie, but the antiquitie and fame thereof, would not permit any hurt to be done to The taking of the citizens and inhabitants; but leaving a sufficient garrison to guard the same, Markilles and commaunding his legions by appointed iourneys, to march towards Italie, him-Calarsrefelfe with a necessarie guard for his person and others in his companie, tooke pas-turne to Kome: fage for Rome; all things succeeding prosperously with him, although that some of his Captaines had ill fuccesse. For Carvs Antonivs, whom (we said) he left with DOLABELLA for Captaine of his Nauie, was ouerthrowne and taken prisoner in the gulfe of Venice, by OCTAVINS POMPEIES Lieutenant; and Do-LABELLA was likewise ouercomencere to the lle of Corcyra, now called Corfu: Corcyra, and CVRIVs, which (according to C As AR s commaundement) went into Africa with two legions, haning in the beginning good successe, was afterward ouerthrowne, and the most part of his people slaine by Pomperes friend, IVBA

King of Mauritania, which is now the kingdome of Fez.

CESAR being come to Rome and made Dictator (as PLVTARCH & APPLAn vs testifie) new Consuls were chosen, and he being one of them deposed himfelfe from his Dictatorship, and so chaunging and prouiding Pretors for the Prouinces at his pleasure, sending MARCVS LEPIDVS into Spaine, and Avivs AL-BINVE into Sicilia, SEXTYS PEDVCEIVS into Sardinia, and DECIVE BRYTYS into France: and taking such further order as he thought good, he departed from Rome in the moneth of December towards Brundusium, whither he commanded all his forces to march, there to take passage for the province of Macedonia, the greatest part whereof(as I said) is now called Albania, where he knew that Po M-PEY stated with his armies. Who all one whole yeere, which C As AR spent in his iourney into Spaine, busied himselfe in prouiding a Nauie to returne into Italie, and to gather treasure and to leuie souldiers for that purpose, and had prepared and made a wonderfull great prouision of all things: For there came to him, thips, money, and men, from many kingdomes, provinces and cities of Alia, and Gracia; from Syria; Pontus, Bithynia, Cilicia, Phanicia, Cappadocia, Pamphilia, Armenia Pompeies peethe leffe, Egypt, Gracia, Theffalia, Boëtia, Achaia, Epire, Athens, Lacedemonia, and the flore, Iles of Creta, Rhodes, and many other parts and countries: there came alfo to his aide in person, the Kings DEVSTLARYS, and ARIOBARZANES. Of which people and of those which he brought with him from Italie, Pompey had a great armie by land, and an exceeding great number of thips and galleys by Sea, which I doe not let downer by reason of the diversitie of opinions, betweene authors in the number of his people, and of As ARs: for certaine, they were very mightie armies, but the greatest number re of Pompere fide. Who in agining (because that it was in the hart of winter that CESAR (b) ald ot be able and have time commodioufly to paffe the Sees and having (a indeed he had) advertisement that CE SAR was in Rome, he divided and lodged his people in Macedonia and Thessalia, retiring himselfe from the Sea, commaunding and charging his Captaines by Sea (of which MARCUS BIBVLVS was chiefe) that they should guard

is feldome re concred.

eafars paffage

gainft Pompey.

fifted the principall point of his victorie, and that occasion which is let slippe is Opertunitie lost feldome recourred: being departed from Rome and arrived at Brundusium (as we haue before faid) notwithstanding that all his legions were not yet come, yet he embarked aboorde those shippes which he had there in readinesse, so many men as they could containe, which were feuen legions of chosen men (as he himselfe recordeth) and fent commaundement to those which were comming, to make hast, to the end that they should iowne with the rest which there remained, which he would speedily send for. And so he departed from Brundusium now called Brindez, in the beginning of the moneth of Ianuarie, and croffing the Seas with prosperous weather, the third day after he arrived in the coast of Macedonia, before that Pompey had any intelligence of his embarking: and fetting his people on shore in the despite of Pompeies Captaines, he commaunded the shippes and gallies prefently to returne to Brundusium to fetch the rest of his armie, which he had there left, and commaunded to come. And the warres beginning, he presently seased vpon the cities of Apollonia, which is now called Bellona, and Erico: driving from thence Lucius Torquatus and Lucius Strabe. RIVS which held the fame for POMPEY: who fo foone as he was aduertifed of CESARS comming, with the greatest speede possible, sending for his troupes (fuch as were neerest hand) he marched towards Dyrrachium where lav all his victuall, munition, and provision for the warres, doubting that C & s AR would come to fur prife the fame, as in truth he did.

POMPEY being come, their Campes were lodged within few forlongs the one of the other, and a river running betweene them; there passed many adventures, skirmilhes, and also some treaties of peace, which C & s AR offered, which were not accepted by Pompey, so much heasfured himselfe of his power: and C # S AR daily expecting the comming of his other legions, which stayed longer then he thought they ought to have done; without the which, he thought it no wisedome to come to a battaile; and being much grieued and very carefull forthe same, he determined in person with three servants only secretly to embarke himfelfe in a Brigandine, and to paffe that streight of the sea, to fetch them, thinking to be able to performe the same without being mist; and putting it in execution accordingly, he passed downe the river to the Sea, which he found so troubled and tempeltuous, that the Maister of the Brigandine (not knowing whom he carried) nor daring to passe any further, would have returned. Then C & S AR discovering his face, as it is reported, faid, be not afraid friend; for thou carrieft with thee C # S AR and all his fortune: the Maister herewith encouraged, strived to hold on his voyage, but at length, the force of the tempest was so great and the season fo contrarie, that (not with standing C # s AR s coungions words) they were constrained to returne, vnable to passe any further forwards : which being vnderflood in his Armie, they much wondred, grieued, and murmured thereat, praifing him more for a valiant Knight, then a wife Captaine; and fo VALERIVS MAXI-MVs recounteth it for arally aduenture, which many opinion was the occasion why IVLIVS CESAR recordeth it not in his Commentaries.

This being past, within feet dayes after, A rowive arrived with foure of those legions which were left schinde in Italy presently returning the shippes backe againe for the rest, and (after some adustrures which happed) joyning with CE SARS Armie, and all things fet in good order, and the like being done on Pompeles fide; there paffed fomethings betweene them, which for bre-

uitie I omit, vntill that neere to the citie of Dyrrachium, whither C & SAR went with a determination to have furprifed the same, and Pompey to relieve it. The two Armies lodged themselues in the fields, the one so neere to the other, that there were daily skirmishes and slaughters of men of either partie, vntill that one day a skirmish waxing hot, and rescue comming from either Armie, it came Abattaile beto a battaile: wherein the matter was handled in fuch fort, that C & s AR s troupes and Pompey began to flie, and could not be made to stand, untill they came to their campe neareto Dyrrawhich they had fortified, and yet some abandoned the same and durst not de-chium. fendit. But Pomper, either forthat (as some thinke) heimagined their flight to befained, or that there was some deceit or ambush, or that he supposed that there was no more to be done, and that C & s AR might easily have been overthrowne, did not prosecute the victorie, neither followed the charge, but rather caused a retreit to be sounded, without affailing his enemies camp: Whither when C # s AR came, he tooke such order as was most convenient, as he, who was no leffe couragious and politike in time of aduerlitic, then of prosperitie; and it is reported that he faid to his friends, Truely this day had ended our warres, if our enemies had had a Captaine, which had knowne how to have overcome. This day Ivlivs Casar losta great part of his people, among which, were foure hundred Romane Knights, and tenne Tribunes, and two and thirtie Centurions, and his enemies tooke from him two and thirtie enfignes. This battaile ended, Pompey fent the newes thereof to diucrs parts of the world, holding himselfe for victorious. And I vivs C # sar having punished some of his Captaines, and enfigne bearers, notwithstanding that all his whole Armie displeased and ashamed of their late losse, againe desired the battaile: yet he would not then fight with his Armie being timorous, against those which were in heart and victorious; but rather tooke a new courfe, and fending his ficke and hurt men to the citic of Apollonia, departed by night with the greatest filence that could be, from the place where he was, and tooke his way towards Thessalia, with intent to refresh and encourage his Armie, and to draw his enemie further from the

Pompey seeing Casars departure, after that he had followed him some few dayes, tooke counsell, and as Applanys testifieth, was determined (leaving fo sufficient a nauie at Sea, as C # s AR should not be able to make any benefit thereof) to passe into Italie, and to recouer the same, with France and Spaine, and then afterwards to returne against C & SAR, but being oppressed and ouerruled by the Romane Lords which came with him, he altred his determination, and presently departed to pursue Cassan, who made a stay in the fieldes of Pharsalia which are in Theffalia, and made his retreit with such discretion and in so good order, that in all occasions that were offred, he had cuer the better, vntill that at length he faw his people to furious and of such force and courage, that it feemed to him very requifit to fight and therefore cared not any more to refuse the battaile but rather daily presented the same to Po MY 27. Who knowing (as indeede it was true) the and begin to want many occessaries, and that his armie began to weaker and diminish the deferred the same and would not fight, and as a wife and an experimented Captaine, as he was, would have prolonged the watre, defeating his exame without putting his owne state in hazard: and although that Pompey were of this opinion, yet fomuch did the voices, opinions

Sea coast, where his chiefe force lay, and where his campe was fortified and victu-

alled: or at the least, to goe to meete and ouerthrowe Scipio, whom he well

knew came to joyne with Pompey.

The ralb ad-Cafar.



owne opinion.

and murmurings of those which were with him pregaile, (as Lycan, Ply-TARCH, and the same C & san himselfe report) that they made him veeld to giue the battaile, euen contrarie to his owne opinion and will as he did: wherein met and iovned of the one fide and of the other all the flower and force of Romes and although that CESARS forces were fewer in number (for all writers affirme, that Pomperes armies were twife as great) yet Casars were more active and better trained. How many there were of the one fide and of the other, I cannot certifie; the authors doe so much differ among themselves therein: Applands fetteth downe the divers opinions which are thereof, fome raife the number to three hundred thousand men, whereof Lycivs Florys is one: others to threescore and tenne thousand: and some set downe somewhat lesse, among which is PLVTARCH, who faith that Pompey brought to this battaile asooo.men, whereof 7000.were on horsebacke, and I viivs C # san two and twentie thousand a foote, and of horse men few more then one thousand. But Applanes understandeth, that this lesser number of these armies, was to be vnderstoode of Romanes, which were the force and hope of both these captaines: for it is not likely, that of all nations, there should be so small a number in a warre so long prepensed and preparing, and in my opinion, this is most likely to be true. But how socuer it was, this battaile was betweene the best captaines and best souldiers, as well for experience, as for force and valour, that cuer were in the world; and yet being fo, it was not much fought, neither did it long continue: So strange and variable are the aduentures which happen in warres and battailes: for where there feemeth to be the greatest force and assurance, oftentimes is found the greatest weaknes; and that which is least feared, doth sometimes annoy most.

Either of these two captaines, having resolued to give battaile, ordred his battalions and squadrons, as to him seemed most expedient, making their speeches and orations to their people; and the accustomed signe being given, the battaile presently began on either side: in the beginning whereof Pompeies horsemen, (wherein he reposed his greatest hope) which were all of the Romane Nobilitie, and of the order of Knighthoode, and alwayes enery where had the better; began to come where C As ARS Cauallery was, and forced them to forfake the field. Which C E SAR perceiuing, losing nothing by ohersight, made The battaile of a signe to a battalion, which for that purpose he had left apart from the other fouadrons, to charge Pompeies Cauallerie; which charged them with fuch force and furie, striking them according to C &s ARS direction, no where but in the face, which Pompetes horsemen either vnable or vnwilling to endure, began to retire, in fuch fort that from that part whence POMPEY thought to haue obtained the victorie, from thence sprang the beginning of his perdition. For notwithstanding that they had alreadie charged, and the other battalions continued still fighting, and that they maintained the same with great resolution; yet feeing that Pompetes Cauallerie fled, and that Casans came to charge them afresh, they all did the like in such manner, that in short space the victorie plainely appeared for CESARY and POMPEY Javing Loft all hope to prevaile. fled to his campe, leaving the fled and victories his encaries Was letting flippe no occasion, seeing that he found no resistance in the field, affembled his forces together to affaile Pompetes campe, which with small difficultie he entred: which Pompey perceiuing, leaving his enfignes and school of generall, and putting on other apparrell vpon the first horse that he could get, with source on horse-

backe only, which accompanied him, which (as Velleivs Patercylys faith) were his sonne Sextys Pomperys, and the two Lentyliand Favonivs of the Pretorian order: he fled so fast as he could, and neuer staied untill he came to the citie of Larifa; where ioyning with fome thirtie other horse, which fled, with- Tompeies out any stay he continued his slight, vntill he came vnto the shore side of the  $E_-$  fight. gean fea; where finding a certaine Merchants ship of Rome, he embarked himselfe therein, and failed to the Ile of Lesbos, which is in that fea, which now is called Archipelago, to the citie of Mitylene. For in that citie were his wife and familie, which he tooke with him, and gathering together fuch ships and men as he was able, he departed from thence, very doubtful, and without any determination whither to goe. Some counsailed him to saile into Africa, for that King I v B A was his friend and very mightie. Others were of opinion that he should retire himselfe to the Parthians: finally, he resolued to goe into Egypt, for the friendship which he held with King Prolomy, father of that Prolomy then raigning; and did fo. Hauing first touched in the province of Cilicia in Asia, and in the Ile of Cyprus, and fayling to Egypt, and arriving at the citie of Alexandria, he had such artend as we

will presently declare.

IVLIVS CE SAR hauing obtained fo great a victorie, as is aforefaid, vied therein his accustomed elemencie, not fuffering any Romane to be either flaine or The elemencie hurtafter the battaile was ended, and pardoning al those which were taken there- of casar.

in, or found in the Campe; among which was MARCVS TVLLIVS CICERO. And although that in the battaile were flaine of Pomperes fide fifteene thoufandemen, and of the conquerors leffe then two thouland, as the fame C # \$ AR writeth: yet understanding which way Pompay fled, to the end to give him no place or meanes to returne and repaire himselfe, without losing any time, he purfued him with the lightest and swiftest of his armie. And comming to the sea side, bringing to his obedience in his way all the cities whereby he paffed, and gathering together such shippes and galleys as he then could, and with those which cefar pursued CASSIV shad deliuered vnto hits, who was received to his grace and service, he Pompey. therein shipped such troupes as he was able, and passed into Asia the lesse, where pompy, being aduertised that Pompey had been in Cyprus, he presumed that he tooke his way towards Egypt. For which cause hee tooke the same course, taking with him two whole legions of old fouldiers onely; and arriving in fafetie at Alexandria in Egypt (where wee faid that Pomps y had lately taken port) he vuderstood that POMPEY was arrived there: who prefuming of the benefits and good entertainment which this King Prolomiss father had received in his house, he sente request Prolomy to harbour and affist him. But as with men which are fallen and decayed, few men hold faith and friendship, and in their adversities the benefits and good turnes received from them are commonly forgotten: fo the King fent him his promife to performe what he required: and comming upon fafeconduct in a small boate towards the shore, he was murdered before that he came to the land, by the Kings commandement, by the hands of one called SEPTIMIVS, Septimius, and another called Achte thinking by meanes hereof to winne C # sars friendship, which was done by the persuasion and counsell of Ferines an Eunuch, who was or great authorize in the Court, and by whom the King was much ruled. He vinderstood also that Cornella Pompeles wife, and his

fonne SEXTVS Pour presented from that port in the fame thip, wherein they came. Cas and landed and received into the citie, they presently brought him, for a present, the great Pomperes head, which he would not see:

Cafar uvept

and his ring and feale of Armes being prefented vnto him, he wept a great while for pitie, confidering the end and successe of the great aduentures and prosperities of Pompey, who with fuch honour and fame had three times triumphed, and been so many more times Consul in Rome, and had commanded the same, and had been the most principall man therein for so many yeeres, and had obtai-

ned fo many victories and dignities.

When I y LIV'S CES AR landed in Egypt, he found the countrey infested with civill warres, and great discord between the yong King P T O L O M Y and his fifter the faire CLEOPATRA, about the division and inheritance of that kingdome: wherein IVLIVS CASAR (as a Romane Conful) tooke vpon him to entermeddle. For which cause (as C # s AR himselfe writeth) or because that their guiltie conscience, for the treacherous murder of Pompey made them to seare (as PLVTARCH affirmeth) the before named Fotinvs, which had been the practifer of this murder, and ACHILA which had been the actor thereof, both which were in great authoritie in the Court and with the King imagining that C E s A R enclined to fauour CLEOPATRAS faction, amassed and sent for the armie which the King had neere the citie, confifting of 20000. good men, purpofing to doe by IVLIVS CESAR as they had done by Pompey; and so within few daies there

Cefars vvarre

began betweene C & s AR and the small forces which he brought with him, both within the citie, and in the harbour, betweene the ships and galleys, the most cruel warreand fight that he euer had, which I cannot distinctly set downe, for the many aduentures that passed therin. But let this suffice that I vivs C & sar fought therein many times in his owne person, both within the citie, whereof his enemies held the greatest part, and also in the harbour with his ships, and was sometime in fuch peril and danger, that he was driven to leape out of the boate wherein he was, into the water, and by fwimming to escape into one of his galleys. But at length his forces and aide being come from Asia and other parts, heat the end

The death of P tolomy king of Egypt.

in Egypt.

of nine moneths (for so long lasted these warres) remained victorious, as in all others he had been, and the young King Prolomy was flaine in a fight. In this warre C & s AR did fuch exploits, and shewed such valour and wisedome, that for the same onely he did well deserve the same and renowne of a most excellent Captaine.

Cleopatra Queene of Egypt.

C E S AR having tamed the pride of the Egyptians, and put to death the murderers of POMPEY, and established CLEOPATRA for Queene and governour of that kingdome, whom the while that he remained there, he held for his friend, and she by him conceived and had a sonne called C # sario; all things being established: he departed from Egypt towards Asia, travelling through Syria now Soria, by reason that he was given to understand that while he was busied in the warres of Egypt, the King PHARNACES, Conne of the might sking MITHRIDA-TR s, thinking it now a fit time (feeing the civil differd betweene the Romanes) to recouer that which his father had loft: And having overthrowne Domicivs. whom C & s AR had fent to gouerne those parts, and also had taken by force of armes, the provinces of Bithynia and Cappadoria, a pelling thence the King A-RIOBARZANES, a friend and subject to Rome, and had began to doe the like in Armenia the leffe, which King DEIOTARVS had made hibier to the Romanes: IVLIVS CESAR comming with his armie footer then King PHARNACES imagined, although that with his he had expected him thaning intelligence of his approch, within few daies they came to a battaile, in water for without great refiltance) the King was ouerthrowne and put to flight, with great flaughter of his

people, from which he escaped by flight. Great was the joy that C As AR concei. Casars victorie ned of this victorie, for the great defire that he had to returne to Rome, where hee against Pharknew that many scandales and insolencies were committed, by reason of his abfence: he knew also that Pomperes eldest sonne had seised on a great part of Spaine, and had raifed great power of those which MARCYS VARRO had there left and of his fathers troupes : he also vnderstood that in Africa many principall Romanes, which had escaped from the battaile at Pharsalia, were gathered together whereof MARCUS CATO was the chiefe, who is called VTICENSIS. (because that in Vtica he slew himselse) and Scipio Pompeies father in lawand that these went thither with a great part of the galleys & ships of Pomphies Nauic, and with the greatest power they were able to leuie; ioyning with IVBA King of Mauritania, they had subdued all that countrey, and had a great armie in readines against C As AR, having chosen S cirio for their Captaine, because that Caro would not take that charge vpon him, and for that, the name of Sci-PIO was very fortunate in Africa. C & s AR having intelligence of all these things. within few daies with great celeritie and diligence, he recoursed all that which PHARNACES had viurped, and chaing him out of Pontus, he recovered all those countries forwards, and leaving CBLIVS MINVEIVS for Captaine with two legions to guard that prouince, pacifying the contentions and controucrfies in the rest, rewarding the Kings and Tetrarches which had continued firme in league and amitie with Rome; without any longer aboad he departed from Alia. and in short space passing into Italie came to Rome, within little more then a yeere after that he departed from thence; a short time in truth, for the perfourmance of to great matters and fo long a journey.

Within few daies after his comming to Rome, he made himselfe to bee chosen the third time Conful, and reforming (the best that he could in so short a time) al disorders in Rome, being grieued and not able to endure that his enemies should possessed all things necessarie, and from Rome tooke his way thitherward, commaunding his forces to follow him. First he went into Sicilia, and there shipped himselfe, and thence passed into Africa: and notwithstanding that, neither his Nauie nor Armie arrived with him, trufling in the valour and goodnes of his people, and his owne good fortune, he tookeland with those small forces which he brought with him, neere vnto the citie of Adrumentum in the province of Africa; and from thence marched to ano-

ther citie called Leptis, where hee was received : and after some conflicts which passed his legions being come, and certaine troupes both on soote and horse-Casaravarre backe, he began the warre, which afted foure moneths, viz. from the beginning in Africasof Ianuarie till the end of Aprill, beginning first agains? PETREIVS and LABIE-NVS: afterwards it was continued against Science and King Iv BA, which affisted the contrary faction with oppo.men, the one halfe whereof were horsemen. whereof the prouince of Africadid then, and to this day doth abound; among all which were levied against C as AR eight legions of footmen and 20000.horse.

In this warre were many encounters, skirmishes and battailes, which Hyrcins in Hyrcins lib, c. his Commentaries, PLYTARCE, LYCAN, LYCI'S FLORYS & others write of Applicable. at large, in which C & s A R was in great daunger: but at the last with his force and Lucanlib. 3. good fortune, he ouercame them all in a great battaile; wherein, of the enemies, fib. were flaine tenne thouland men, and C & s AR remained mafter of the field, and Thus Linux in few daies after of all the land and Scipio and all the principal Captaines Platage is his

which were his adverfaries, died fundrie deaths within few daies; and king I va A lines.

The ftrange death of King

Cato Vicensis uitate dei. L. Scipio flewe and drowned bimfelfe. Lactantius Fi mianus, Aulus Gellins in his swelfin booke Cicero in the 2. of his offices. Valerius Maximus. cap.3. Cafars tri-

Veni,vidi,

umphes.

by flight escaping from the battaile, and finding no place of refuge, in despaire, he and AFRANIV's determined to die fighting, the one against the other, vntill they were both flaine, in which combate King I v B A being of greater strength then AFRANIVS, flew him; and afterwards commaunded a flaue of his owne. to kill himfelfe, and fo he died desperately.

The good MARCUS CATO which was in the citie of Vtica, knowing that CESAR marched thitherwards, and notwithstanding that he knew that he would not put him to death, but had rather a defire to pardon him, and to doe him honor, yet to the end that he would receive neither life nor honor from his enemie, he killed himfelfe: in whose death passed many notable things, recorded filmenimjetje.

S. Augustinein by many authors both christian and heathen. Scipio who had been generall his booke de ci- in this warre cscaped from the battaile by flight, and shipping himselfe in certaine galleyes wherein he fled, was met withall, by C # s AR s name; and he to the end that he would not be taken, giving himfelfe certaine woundes, cast himfelfe into the Sea, and so was drowned. C A san having obtained so great and so entirea victoric, spending some few dayes in ordering the provinces of Africa, confisking and reducing the kingdome and countrie of King IvBA into a province, came to the citie of Vtica, where he embarked himselfe the third day of June, and came to the Isle of Sardinia, wherein he staved some few dayes, and arrived at Rome the flue and twentith day of Iulie. At his comming (as SVETONIVS, APPI-A'NY s, and PLYTARCH record) there were graunted vnto him foure triumphes, the first triumph was for his conquest and victories in France, where were set the portraitures of the rivers of Rodanus and the Rhine, wrought in golde: and in the second triumph of Egypt, and of King Prolomer, were set the river of Nilus and the Pharus of Alexandria burning. The third triumpth was of the province of Pontus and of King PHARNACES, wherein for the speede wherewith he profecuted the victorie, was placed a briefe writing which fignified as much; which was, veni, vidi, vici, which is to fay, I came, I faw, I ouercame. The fourth triumph was of the prouince of Africa, wherein was placed King Iv BA his fonne, as a captine, and in this triumpth (as Svetonivs writeth) were given iewels and armes to Octavivs Casars Nephew, which afterwards was Emperor, as we will declare hereafter, notwithstanding that he was not present in those warres by reason of his small age: for he was not then fully sixteene yeares olde. As for the battaile which CESAR wanne against Pomper, he would not gainst Pompey, triumph thereof, because it was against Citizens of Rome.

These triumphes being ended, giving great rewards to his souldiers, and entertaining the Romane people, with fealts, gifts and other very great alarges, he caused himselfe to be chosen the fourth time Consul: and to the end that there should be no place in the world wherein he would not be obeyed, he resolued to goe into Spaine, where he vnderstoode that GNEVS POMMEIVS (Po M-PEIVS fonne) with the remainder of the armie which had escaped out of Africa, was gone to ioyne with his brother Sextvs. To upervs, who alreadie was there, as I have said, and was in possession of a gorat part of Spaine, with the cities of Seuill and Cordena, and many other in that doals, and many Spaniards were come to their ayde. C & s AR departing, carried with him his most experienced and chosen souldiers, and made so good speede that within few dayes he arrived in Spaine, and in this journey (as SVETONIVS and VALLELYS PATERCYLYS recorde) his Nephew Oct Avivs followedhim.

CESAR being entred Spaine, came into the province of Betica, which is An-

dala lia, where SEXTVS POMPEIVS and his brother GNEVS POMPEIVS Were Cefars going with fuch legions and people as they had gathered together; and to there began gainst Pempeies betweene them a cruell and bloudie warre. The ende whereof was, that neere jonnes, to the citie of Munda, C. ESAR and GNEVS POMPRIVS, (for SEXTVS POMPRIVS Betica, Andawas in Cordona) ioyned battaile; which was one of the most obstinate and cruell. "". that euer was in the world. For Casar being the most excellent captaine, and the people which he brought with him, the most valiant fouldiers and accustomed to ouercome, the resolution and courage of Pompey and his people was such and they fought in fuch manner, that CESARS efquadrons began to give ground and were readie to forfake the field, and at the very poynt to haue been wholy ouerthrowne. And the matter came to this iffue, that (as Sveronivs and Evro-PIVS doewrite) C & s AR was about to haue killed himselfe, because he would not see himselse ouercome: and that he tooke a target from one of his souldiers and rushed in among his enemies, saying with a loud voyce (as PLVTARCH Cosars onell reporteth) If you be not ashamed, leave me and deliver me into the hands of ballake and the ball house for this shall have the last day of my life and of warm has any Will willow against theleboyes: for this shall bee the last day of my life and of your honour. With Pampeirs on. which words, and his example, his people tooke heart in fuch manner, that recouering the ground which they had loft, the battaile became equall, which as APPIANVS affirmeth, lasted the most part of one whole day, without shewing any figne of victoric, fometime feeming to encline to one partie, and fometime to the other, vntill that at length CESAR and his people did fo great matters, that the euening being come his enemies became faint, and began to flie, and the victorie was apparantly C # s ARS: and there dyed of his enemies about 30000. menin this fight, and of CESARS part, were flaine a thousand principall men and of account, befides many other of leffer estimation. CESAR esteemed this victorie so much, and so gloried in the daunger wherein he had been, that after the victorie he yied to fay, that onely that day he fought for his life, and in all other battailes euerfor honour and victoric. He then remaining maister of the field his aduerfarie Pompey, who in nothing had failed of the office of a valiant and good captaine (after that he faw no other hope) escaped by flight, and wandring through many places was afterwards taken and flaine by CESARS friends, whose head was brought vnto him the like hapned vnto TABIENVS, His second brother SEXTVS POMPEIVS fied from Cordona, and in the end forfooke Spaine: hereafter more mention shall be made of him. I v L I v s C & S AR cefars triumph recoursed the cities of Seuill and Cordona, and all the rest, and disposing of all for his withouter things in Spaine at his pleasure, returned to Rome, and entred therein, in triumph in Spaine. for the warres in Spaine, which was his fifth and last triumph: in this place Lv-CIVS FLORVS and PATERCVLV's make mention of all his triumphes.

C # s AR came to be the most mightie, the most redoubted, and most highly effeemed man that ever had been in the world, having subdued and conquered the greatest part thereof, with armie and by force of armes, in as little time, as it might feeme, that another min might be able to trauaile those countries by resonable iourneyes; all which being in obedience and subjection vnto him, he made himselfe perpetual Dictator of Rome; and so without contradiction he The beginning finished the making of himselfe Tourraigne Lord and Monarch of the Romane of the Romane Empire, within little leffe theff five yeares after that he began the same. And this Empire. was the original and beginning of the Romane Emperous: for Ivivs Cas AR would not be called King for the name of King was abhorred, and odious to the The original Romanes about all things in the world, after that the Kings were chaled from of the name of

Rome. Emperour.

Reme, but contenting himselfe to be called perpetual Dictator and also Emperor: although not with a name of fuch dignitie, as his fuccessors have done since, but as by a name which fignified that hee had been a conquerour in battailes in the warres, which in this fense was given to the Romane Captaines, when they had obtained any notable victorie: but after Iv Livs C # s A R. al his successors tooke that name, and gloried to be called Emperours, which was facred for the most high title and dignitic in the world.

IVLIVS CESAR having obtained the dominion which he fo much defired, shewed in all things great clemencie and magnanimitic, honouring and rewarding his friends, and eafily forgiuing and very cheerefully pardoning all those which had bin his adversaries and so he not onely pardoned BRVTVs and CAS-SIVS. CICERO, MARCELLY s. and many others: but also some of them headmitted to his companie and primate familiaritie, and to offices and dignities. It is The clamentie certaine that among all the many vertues and fingularities wherewith C z sax and bountie of was endued, his clemencie and liberalitie were most glorious. But this sufficed not to extinguish the defire to recouer the losse of libertie neither to asswage the hatred and malice conceived against him by his adversaries, as in time did ap-

peare.

And notwithstanding that many were grieued, yet some for the loue which they bare him; others for feare or diffimulation; the Senate and people of Rome. and finally all, gaue him names, preheminencies and titles of honour, fuch as neuer had been given to any other; neither ought he to have accepted the fame, as PLYTARCH, APPIAN and others doe report. But C & s AR s minde and ambition was so great, and his thoughts so elevate and so high, that he held nothing for fo great, but that he was worthie thereof and had deferued the fame : and fo he not only accepted that which they offered him, but many more were offered. because they knew that he defired the same. Whereupon they gaue him the name The names and of Emperour, Father, restorer and conserver of his countrey: he was created perpetuall Dictator, and Conful for tenne yeeres, and perpetuall Cenfor of their cuftomes. His statue and image was erected among the Kings of Rome, and a chaire and throne of Iuorie in the Temples and Senate, and a high pulpit and throne in the Theatre, and in the place where the Senatours did vie to fit his pictures and statues were set up in all the Temples and publike places. But here the matter ccased not, which they gauehim, and he accepted of some things which only to those whom they held for Gods, ought to have been attributed, the moneth which they called Quintil, they called I v L I v s after his name, as March of their god MARS, and Iune after the goddesse IVNO: they did also consecrate and build Temples vnto him, as vnto I vp 1 T & R, and their other gods : and gaue him, certaine honours which they held particularly for their sods, which they call Thenfas; and fo they did many other things to his harrour, which exceeded all meafure.

IVLIVE CESAR enioying fuch honour and power, so as he had no equall or fecond in the world with whom he might content at feemeth that he would contend with himselfe, and imagine and attempt something wherein he might excell himselfe: for he was not contented with all the victories which he had obtained, neither (as Plinix and Solinvs and other report) to have fought for them in fiftie feuerall battailes (in all which he ouercame) faming in that one at Dyrrachium against Pompay; where, as we have alread the was not wholy ouerthrowne, neither (according to the same authors) to have slaine in the warres

and battailes which he fought a million, ninetie and odde thousand men; and vet they fay that they reckon not those which died in the civill warres; but that as he was a man of a most high minde, he fought to doe greater matters, if greater might be. For first he determined to passe into the East, there to conquer and sub- The high due the fierce nation of the Parthians, and to reuenge the death of MARCYS proposed for CRASSVS, and to passe thorough Hircania and other countries, vntill he should far. come to the Caspian Sea, and so thorough all the provinces of Scythia Asiatica: and passing the river Tanais, to returne thorough Scythia in Europe, and in this retreit to come into Germany, and other provinces bordering thereupon, conquering and fubduing them all to the Romane Empire: for the which conquest he presently caused to be leuied in sundrie places, tenne thousand horsemen, and fixteene legions of chosen footmen, and appointing the time wherin he thought to depart he commaunded them to march towards their Rendeuous, And befides all this, he fought not onely to subdue and ouercome all the nations of the world, but to correct and reforme nature it selfe : for he purposed to have made an Iland of Peloponesus, which now is called Morea, by cutting the necke of the land which is betweene the Egean and the Ionian Seas.

Of the River Tiber and the River Anien (as PLYTAR chfaith) he purposed to haue altered the courses, and to haue opened new channels, through which they should run into the Sea, making them to leave their naturall course, and capeable to beare great ships. He commaunded and alreadie began to digge downe, and make plaine many hils and high mountaines in Italie, and to drie vp and to dreine fome of the great lakes and marishes which are therein: and in this manner, hee thought to have done other things more then a man, which feemed to be poffible to none but to God alone. He amended and corrected (as many authors af- cafar correcfirme) the account and computation of the yeere, conforming it with the course ted the compuof the Sunne, and brought it to that rule which is yet held: for before that time it vere. was much out of order. He did the like in the account and course of the Moone, Suctorius, and the conjunctions and approximately the support and the conjunctions and approximately the support and the conjunctions and approximately the support and the support and approximately the support and the support and the support and approximately the support and the coniunctions and oppositions of her and of the Sunne: and this was at-Cenfering. tributed to him for tyrannie, by those which did emulate and hatchim : For one day in a discourse in the presence of CICERO, it was faid, that the next day there should be an Eclipse of the Sunne; yea (quoth he) it is so, for C # s AR hath so commaunded: Many other things C & s AR began, which were very great, in reforming the lawes, cultomes and offices, which for breuitie I omit: among which the reedifying of the destroyed citie of Carthage by Scipio (as all the world carthagereknoweth) was one ; and he fent thither Colonies and Romane citizens to inha- peopled by Ca. bite the like he did by Corinth. But all these deeds & these so high thoughts and far. determinations were abridged by death, which within few daies enfued: & this man which no force could refift, a few men, yea & those disarmed, were of power to bereaue of life, as hereafter we will declare. Fine moneths only he lined a loueraigne Lord in peace(as VILLEIVS PATERCYLYS hath noted) when those in whom he reposed greatest trust, conspired his death.

Some write that C & sales as counfelled to have had a guard alwaies about him: whereto he answered, that he would have none, for hee would rather die once, then live continually in care and feare. Many fet downe the causes where- The causes of fore they defired to kill him : Some fay that it was of hatred which they had long the confeiraborne him: fome others ay that it was for the defire of libertie, holding him for Cefar. a tyrant: But the more part are of opinion, that it was of suspition that hee would haue caused himselfe to be called and made king of Rome, athing in the highest

degree

wohich wwere given to Cafar.

degree hatefull to the Romanes: whereof hee gaue many fignes and causes to fuspect, which P Ly T ARCH and others write at large. Hereunto was added, that he began to have men in contempt, and all other things, whereby he became hatefull to many. For he yied to fay, that the Common-wealth was but a voyce and a name without a bodie, or substance; and that it well appeared that Con-NELIVS SYLLA had no learning seeing that he refigned the perpetuall Dictatorthip. All the whole Senate, comming one day into the Temple of Venus, wherein he was he attended their comming, fitting still, and rose not, as hee was wont to doe:notwithstanding(assome say) that Cornelivs Balby scounselled him to rife; which was a thing much noted and odious to the Common-wealth. His friends and fauourites began also to fay and to publish, that in the bookes of the Sibyls (which in Rome were held in great veneration and for a true prophecie) it was written, that the Parthians could never bee overcome but by a man which should have the title of king, and they practifed that C As An should take this name, for that conquelt, whither he had determined to goe : and although that he made shew to be grieued and much moued thereat, yet they suspected the contrarie, which fuspition encreased (besides that which is alreadic said) for that, that the Tribunes of the people commaunded a man to be apprehended, which had fet a Diademe (which is the enfigne of a king) vpon the head of one of C #-SARS statues. Whereat C Es AR was so highly offended with the Tribunes, that he deposed them from their offices, making shew that he did it, because they gave him cause of offence, in this, that they would make the world beleeve that there was cause of suspition, that he would make himselfe a tyrant King. The like in a manner passed, when MARCUS ANTONIUS, which was a great fauourite of his. (and that yeere) his fellow and companion in the Confulthip, being at certaine publike games, came to C Es AR and put a Diademe youn his head; and although that he cast it downe, yet they all imagined that MARCYS ANTONIVE would not have been so bold and so hardie to have done it, without his consent and goodwill; and that he did this to proue, what liking the people had thereto. and how they would take it : fo as the fe and fuch other like things as paffed, gaine them occasion to desire and to procure his death, as some of them did. This did also encourage them, and made them attempt to doe it: for that in fundric publike places certaine writings were fet vp, which did incite and animate them to conspire against him: as vpon the statue of Brutus, which in ancient time had thafed the Kings out of Rome, wherein were written these words ; Would to God thou wert now living Brutus. And upon the image of MARCUS BRUTUS, which then was Pretor, and descended from the other BRVTVs, these words: Thou seepest long Brutus, truly thou art not Brutus. And as Appian recounteth, at either times, they fet vp others which imported : Thou art dead Bruses, would to God thou wast living, thou art unworthic of the succession from the mais: surely thou art not descendeal from that good Brutus. And other fuch like things were feet you these status and in other places. So as for all these reasons and the there added hereunto, there were seven the most principal men in Rome to the conspired to put bing to death; one alluring another, which they among teed to that numbers of which the most principall heads were DECIVS, MARCUS BRUTTE, CAIVS CAS-SIVS; yet MARCUS BRUTUS was held for Casans fonne, for his mother was fuspected with him, and had received from him great honours and good entertainments : with these were GAIVS CASCA, ATTILIVS CIMBER, SER-VIVS GALBA, QVINTUS LIGARIUS, MARCUS SPURIUS, and many other

men of account, which after some consultations, concluded to kill him your the Ides of March, which is the fifteenth day of that month, in the temple where the Senators were to fit that day: which was agreed upon and kept fo close and secret, that (notwithstanding their great number) there was not any one found that did discouer the same. But there happened so many signes and prodigies, and to himselfe there happened so many auguries and forewarnings, that without knowing any cause, all men were of opinion that CESARS death was neere at hand: the which among many others which recite the fame. Ovid doth most excellently set downe in his Metamorphoses, which for breuitie I omit but chiefly Spyrina which was his diuiner or foothfaier, diuined and for- Lib. 14 warned him, that he should looke to himselfe, vntill that the Ides of March were past for his life was in great danger : and C & SARS owne wife entreated him vpon her knees, that he would not that day goe foorth to the Senate; for she had dreamed that he lay dead in her lappe. Finally, C. E S AR was so many waies forewarned and put in such feare of some great danger, that he was about to send to MARCYS ANTONIVS to make his excuse, and to deferre the Senate vntill ano. ther day: But as it was Gods will that he should die so, MARCY'S BRYTYS being in place when this matter was in question (who, as we have alreadic said. was one of the conspirators) counselled C & s AR that in no case he should show any fuch feare; whereupon he determined to goe thither.

Some (as SVETONIVS, and PLVTARCH) write that CESAR made small account of death, and that he suspected that hee should die in this manner : for he faid that he did not fo much effeeme his owne life, as the daunger whereinto the common-wealth would fall by losing him: For as for him, he had wonne and obtained power, fame and glorie enough for himselfe; and that he in no time coulddy with greater honour. It gaue also can se of this suspition in this, that some discoursing in his presence the night before his death, what kinde of death was best : euen, quoth he, the sodaine, and that which is not prepensed. Whether this be true or no. I know not, but the fifteenth of March he went from his house in a litter towards the Senate, and passing along the streete, there was a petition deliuered vnto him, which some say, ARTEMIDORVS his Maister in the Greeke tongue gaue him: others fay, that it was given to him by another, and that ARTE- A petition gi-MID ORV'S could not come fo neere to him as to aduife him: but who focuer he wen to Cafar were that gaue it, therein was given him in writing, all that which was concluded in this conspiracie, and he which gaue it defired him to reade it presently. which he began to doe; but there came so many to speake to him, that he could but begin to reade it, for it was found in his hand when he was dead. And paffing fo along the streete, he also mette with SPVRINA, who had given him warning to looke to himelie vntill the Ides of March were past, and as C & S AR faw him very pleasant and lefting he said, doest thou not know Spyring that the Ides of Marchare come : year inswered Spyrina, and I know that they are not yet past also. Being come to the temple where the Senate was to fit that day, he came downe from his Litter and entred thereinto, and having first done facrifice. (as then was the custome) which all according to their superstitious ceremonies of that time, prefaged to be fatalland infortunate, he fate downe in the Senate in his chaire, and BRYTYS ALEIN'S entertaining MARCES ANTONIVS at the doore of the temple rafter some others) TREBONIVS (as it was decreed) one of the conspiratours (whose name was Celer) came to CESAR under colour to entreate him to be pleafed to releafe a brother of his from benishment,

The confbiracie against Tulius Cefar.



Casta.

Brutus.

Cefar vvas

Qaine in the

Senate, and

peies feet.

and presently all the rest of the conspirators drew neere to his chaire: which when C # SAR perceived, thinking that they had al come for the same purpose, it is written that he faid to them, what perforce is this? and at that inflant one of them whose name was Casca, beginning, they all drew their poiniards and fwords, which they had brought in fecret for that purpose vnder their gownes, and began to wound him. The first blow that he received, they say, that CASCA gaughim in the throate, at which hurt CESAR spakes lowde faving, what doest thou traitour Casca: and wresting the pointard out of his hands he arose and stabbed C As c A through the arme, and being about to strike him the second time, he was letted by the other woundes which they gaue him, with great force and courage leaping from one fide to the other, to defend himselfe. But when he faw MARCY'S BRYTY'S, (who fe authoritie and reputation was great) with his fworde drawne in his hand, wherewith he had alreadie wounded him in the thigh, they write that he was much amazed thereat, and faid in the Greeke tongue (which the Romanes did then understand and vsually speake) Why, how now fonne BRVTV s, and thou also : And having said so, and seeing so many weapons bent against him, and that no bodie came to his rescue; for there was so great a hurlie burlie in the Senate, that they all thought to have dyed, and being in despaire none durst attempt to defend him: he remembred to keepe the honour of his person, and with his right hand courred his head with part of his robe, and with his left hand, he girt himselfe and settled his clothes about him, and being fo couered, he fell dead to the ground, wounded with three and twentie wounds; and his fortune was to fall at the foote of the feate or base whereupon, Pom-PEIEs statue stoode, which was noted for the judgement and permission of died at Pom-God. And so in this manner died the most mightie, the most worthie, valiant, The excellenwise and fortunate Prince and captaine, that without all doubt before him hath ries of Iulius been in the world, and I know not if after him in valour and humane power there hath been the like. For his excellencies, graces and abilities; his inuincible minde, his incomparable force and courage; the battailes and victories which he obtained, the provinces, Kings and nations, which he our reame and subdued: his counsels, stratagems, pollicies, and bold attempts which he vsed therein; his magnanimitie, clemencie and bountie with the conquered and conquerors; his high thoughts and purposes, being well weighed and considered: it will plainely appeare, that in none of these thinges aforesaid, neither in many other more which may be faid of him, there hath not been any King or captaine that hath excelled him, but that he in the most hath excelled all others, and had fewer imperfections and vices then any other: for fetting apart his ambition and desire to raigne, (which he held for no vice, and might alleadge that he was compelled thereto) he was onely noted and blamed, as 100 much given to women;

woherein C.efar died.

muring and flandering of his adversaries, then any truth. C # s AR then was flaine in the fixe and fiftit a rare of his age, four eyeares and a little more (according to Pivy Arches quatter) after the death of Pompey, in the feuen hundred and tenth year (according to Orosivs) after the foundation of Rome; and according to the Hebrew truth in the three thousand and tenth yeare from the creation of the world; and according to the greater account of the seuentie Interpretors, fine the field one hundred, fiftie and seauen yeares; in the hundred, eightie and fourth Olympiad; and fortic and two yeares before the birth of Christ our redeemer. But I would the reader to vnderstand,

as for the rest wherewith he was charged, it doth prefer appeare to be the mur-

vnderstand, that in this account of yeeres, there sometimes happeneth difference betweene the authors.

CESAR had neither sonne nor daughter legitimate, at the time of his death : for notwithstanding that he was married foure severall times, yet he had but one onely daughter, named IVLIA, which (as I haue faid) was married to Pompey. and died. Wherefore he adopted and chose for his sonne by his last will, and made him his heire in the Dodrant, which are nine partes of the twelue of his goods, his Nephew Octavivs C. Esan, which afterwards was called Octa- Intimocelar vianvs Avgvstvs, who wasnephew of his lifter Iviia and of Acivs minimulii Ne-BALBYS, and sonne of Acia his neece, and of Octavivs Pretorin Macedo- phew for his nia, who died fodainly. Octaly one was at this time by the commaundement Office in the land of the commaundement of the interior in the commaundement of the interior in the commandement of the interior in the commandement of the interior in the commandement of the c of his vncle, in the citie of Apollonia in the province of Epire, where he gave him-parentage, felfe to studie, staying for him there; thence to goe with him to the warres of the Panthians, being then of the age of seuenteene yeeres.

CESAR being dead in the manner as I have faid (as it happeneth in great accidents) fo the newes presently ranne ouer all the citie, and the tumult and alteration therein was so great, that no man knew what to doe, or say : all offices ceafed, the temples were shut vp, there was no man but was afraid; C & s AR s friends were afraid of those which slew him, and they of his friends. It would be a long discourse to recite what passed and succeeded, but I will briefly set downe that which shall be most to my purpose. BRYTY's and CASSIV's and all the conspirators, and others which were willing to joyne with them, having put him to death, seeing the great hurlie burlie and tumult among the people (and after PLYTARCH) for feare of MARCYS ANTONIVS, and LEPIDVS, whereof the onewas Conful, and the other Maister of the horsemen, durst not goe to their houses, neither to doe such other things as they had pretended, but presently from thence went to feafe vpon the Capitoll, and crying by the way as they went, libertie, libertie, desiring and imploring the affistance and fauour of the people. The rest of that day and all the next night, MARCUS ANTONIVS and LEPIDVS which tooke C & SARS part, were in armes, and there passed treaties and messages from the one to the other; wherein it was agreed that the Senate The determishould sit, whither BRVTVS and CASSIVS came, MARCVS ANTONIVS his nation of the sonnes (by the perswasion of Cicko agreat louer of the libertie) remaining hostages for them; where they treated of peace and concord, and that all that which was past should be buried in perpetuall silence and oblinion. Whereunto MARCUS ANTONIUS (who was Conful) and all the whole Senate agreed, and all the provinces being divided, there was a great likelyhoode of peace, for the Senate approoued and commended the fact, and the people diffembled it: for in one part the authoritie of BRVTVs and CASSIVS, and the name of libertie, seemed to give them some contentment; and of the otherside, the greatnes of the fact and the loue which they bare vnto C & S AR, did moue and incite them to hate the murtherers and so it rested indeterminate. But MARCY & AN-TONIVS, as one who also thought to become a tyrant, ever fought meanes to incensethe people against them: and it passed so, that among other things which weredone, it followed that C & s AR's testament was opened; wherein besides the adopting of his Nephew OCTAVIVE for his sonne, and appointing him colors will and for his chiefe heire; among other bequests which he made, he bequeathed to restaurant. the people of Rome contains gardens and heritages neere the river of Tiber, and to euery citizen of Rome a certaine fum of money, to be deuided among them:

which

which being knowne, did much renew their olde love, and insde his death farre more pittifull. And having agreed vpon his funerall, which was with great folemnitie to burne his body in the field of Mars, putting it in effect; MARCYE AN-TONIVS, who that day made his funerall oration in his praise and with the intent aforefaid, tooke the robe wherein C &'s AR was flaine, which being fo all bloudie. he shewed it to the people, vsing some speeches which prouoked them both to wrath and pittie: So as before the folemnitie of the funerall was throughly ended. they all departed in a great furie, with the brands of the fame fire which was made for CESAR'S bodie in their hands, and went to burne the houses of Bavrvs and Cassavs, running up and downe the firetes of Rome feeking themselves and the rest of the conspirators, to have staine them; and in that furie they vnaduifedly flewe ELIV'S CINNA by mistaking him to haue been Cornelive CINNA, which was one of the same conspirators. This tumult put Bayrvs and The murderers CASSIVS and their confederates, in fuch feare, that they all fled from Remeto fundrie other partes and MARCY'S ANTONIVS not obseruing what was decreed, thinking to inherit Casaks power and authoritic fought their destruction in all that he might. And not with the daing that the Senate (having appeafed the tuntult of the people) would have inflicted punishment vpon some of the seditious, and some were alreadie emprisoned, yet BRYTVs and CASSIVS durst not returne to Rome, but after a while went into Gracia to gouerne those provinces, which C'&s AR (whom they had flaine) had configured vnto them. which were Macedonia, to BRVTV s; and Syria to Cassivs, and fo all the reft. of the conspirators absented themselues. Surely it was a wonderfull thing to see. that within the space of three yeares, they all died, and not one of them of his na-

The death of thofe which conspired a-

gainft Cafar.

mightics man

in Rome.

from Rome.

cus Antonius became the

Atthis time C AIVS OCTAVIVS, who (as is aforefaid) was afterwards called OCTAVIANVS AVGVSTVS, came to Rome from Apollonia, being aduertised of C # SARS death and fent for by his mother and other his kindred, all continuing After the death in the confusion aforesaid: for MARCVS ANTONIVS Was now very mightie, for his brother Lucius Antonius was Tribune of the people, and other his friends and kinfmen were in offices and dignities, many of which he procured for them, faying that I VLIVE CESAR had foor

dained it in his commentaries; and in this feafon came O CTAVIVS to Rome.

whole storie wee will now begin.





### EMPEROR AVGVSTVS CÆSAR.



ARGVMENT.



Ctanianus: he adopted sonne of Caius Julius C. sfar, after the death of Cafar, applyed himselfe together with Marcus Antonius, to pursue Brutus and Cassius with their complices, and ouercomming them hereturned to Rome, where plotting the Triumuirat, he feed fo much blond. and did such execution, that there was not any streete in Rome, but was stained with civil bloud. He fought with Lucius Antenius brother of Marcus Antonius, for that it should seeme that Octavian made small account of his brother, and be sieging him in Terugia, he constrai-

nedhim (through famine) to come in person to sue for peace, and his life: whom he gently partiased, together with all those which were his partakers in that warre. He also ouercame, Sextus was after they had warred together many yeares. And falling at variance with Marcus and in the manes of his wife Ottania, sister to Ottanian, for that Anonius was besteed with the time of Cleopatra Queene of Egypt: Finally after many changes of fortune, he concrease him, the without constrained Marcus Antonius (in a manner) in despaire to kill him offerand Cleopatra base on serious and the marcus antonius slawe himselfe more for that he satisfied that Cleopatra had alreadic killed herselfe, then that he accounted himselfe overcome by Octanian. After this victorie, Mareus Antonius being dead, and Lepidus reduced to a most base estate, Ottanian obtained the Monarchie and sole gouernment of the Empire; in which time, fubdising many barbarous Nations, he severall times made sanue temple to be shut, and was called Monarch; in which Monarchie he lived in such manner, that with his greatnes, be no way digressed from vertue by reason of his high estate; and was no lesse verOctanias.

tuous then a fanourer of learned and vertuous men. He was inforsunate in bonest wines, and chast and continent daughters; and most unhappie in somes, basing none given him by nature worthis of the Empire. He ruled the world fixe and fiftie yeares, foure and fortie alone, and twelve in companie with Marcus Antonius. In his time our Sautour Jesus Christ was borne. And being little more then three score and fixe yeares old he died, to the great griefe and sorrow of the whole world which through his goodnes had been fo long time confermed in peace.

Fin the Historie and life of Ivilvs Casar, it behooued me to be briefe in the stile and relation thereof. I have now no lesse neede to doe the like in the Historie of his Nephew OCTAVIVS CESAR, which afterwards was called OCTAVIANVS AVGVETVS, his fonne by adoption, as by that which is before written may appeare: aswell for the great matters which passed in his time, as for the great number thereof, which cannot be repeated but by a long discourse. But we will

doe herein what we shall be able, notwithstanding that his raigne was solong, (for it was fiftie and odde yeares) so that in reason we may spend somewhat more time, then in the doings of those which were of lesse continuance. The father and grandfather of O cravivs, I have alreadie said, who they were. His linage and familie of his fathers fide, was of the O c TA V II, and was of great antiquitie in Rome, from the time of TARQVIN their king, and in the beginning they were patricii (as S v ET ON I v s recordeth in his life) although that afterwards the order altered, reducing it to the people by adoption, or some other cause: and in processe of time many of the Octavii obtaining offices and Magistracies, continued in the order of Knighthoode, which was the middle degree betweene the Patricij and the Plebeians, vntill the time of Octavivs the father of OCTAVIANVS, which was a Senator, and a Pretor in Macedonia. Of his mothers fide (as it was faid of I v LI v s C E SAR) he descended from the Kings of Rome. And yet notwithstanding all this, as OCTAVIANVS had many enemies and Emulators, it was faid to his reproch, that his grandfather, father of his father, had been a money changer, and that his great grandfather was a Libertine, which is as much to fay, as a man which had been a flaue. Butte feemeth to me vnlikely, that the sonne of such parents should have been admitted into the Senate and made Pretor, and that I v L I v s C & s A R whose place and thoughts were so high, would have married him to his Necce. And so SVETONIVS treateth thereof, as a matter which he holdeth for vntruth. OCTAVIVS then understanding of the death of his Vncle I v LIVS CESAR.

being aduertised and sent for by his mother (as I haue said) departed from Apollonia, and with the best speede that he could make came to Rome, accompanied Octavianus his with some of C.E. s. A.R.s. friends and some men of which in Epire and Macedonia attended the enterprise and warres of the fig., as it was decreed: and arriving at Erundussium, he found these certains from swhich by C.E. s. A.R.s. commaundement were come thither to have been abasked for the warre aforesial; by which he was received with the great of the cardial affection that could be: And (after APPIANVS) he was there called, and tooke vpon him the name of C # s A R, by the adoption of his Vncle and leaving to be called OCTAVIVS the sonne of OCTAVIVS, was called Carvs CESAR, sonne rooke upon him of CAIVS CESAR: vulgar, and commonly hee was called OCTAVIANYS Cas a n, wherein he preserved the memorie of his naturall father, with the name

Offanianus

of his adoptive father: like as PAVLVS EMILIVS fonne of PAVLVS EMILIVS being adopted sonne by Scipio, the sonne of Scipio the great, was called SCIPIO EMILIANVS, SCIPIO by his adoptive father, and EMILIANVS by his naturall father a matter viuall among the Romanes: So was Ocravivs called CASAR OCTAVIANVS, and fo from hencefoorth we will call him.

OCTAVIANVS C AS AR departed from Brundusium towards Rome, accompanied with the old fouldiers, and by the way many more joyned with him, with many of his vncle and father C # SARS friends and of his taction, and entred into the citie with great shew and pompe. But as MARCYS ANTONIVS was of great power, and therewith very proude, and tooke in ill part that OCTAVIANV S Was preserved before him, as PLYTARCH recordeth, hee went not to receive him: which was much noted and was the first signe of the discord which afterwards enfued betweene them. OCTAVIANVs had a determination and a great defire to reuenge the death of PVLIVS CESAR: but by his mother and PHILIP his father in law, with whom she was maried, he was counselled to diffemble his purpose for a season: for on the one side, they saw that the Senate had approved the death of Ivlivs C &san; and on the other, Marcus Antonivs, who was to be their principall fauourer herein, did not shew himselfe a friend to Octa-VIANVS: wherefore he following their wife counfell, aduitedly concealed his thoughts for a time, and to iustifie himselfe and to hold correspondence, and to temporize with ANTONIVs, he went presently to his house to visite him. And as he knew that ANTONIV s had caried away and had in his custodie all the money and treasure which Iv LIV's C & SAR had left, after discourse of some other matters, he defired him to commaund it to be delivered vnto him, therewith to defray his charges, and to make that doale which his vncle had ordained by his will. To this and al the rest which Octavianvs required, he was answered by Marevs Antonivs with greater haughtines and gravitie, then the minde and thoughts of OCTAVIANV s were able to beare, denying to him what he required; yea, and reproouing him for his demaunds: whereupon prefently contentions and discord arose betweene them; OCTAVIANVS aiding himselfe with at variance. the counsell of Marcus Tullius Cicero, a great enemie to Antonius, whole authoritie at that time, by reason of his wisedome and eloquence, was very great. The enmittie thus encreasing, although that friends of either side passed between them to bring them to some conformitie, and to have reconciled them; yet in the end it brake out. And OCTAVIANVS his power encreasing, principallie (as I faid) through the fauour and affiltance of CICERO, MARCYS ANTO-MIVs was driven to leave Rome, and began to raise forces in Italie, and so levied four legions of old fouldiers against him. And because that DECIVS BRVTVS which commaunded Gallia Cifalpina, which is now called Lombardie, was against him, procured thereto LE ICERo his counfell and letters, MARCYS ANTOniv swent to befiege him to the citie Mutimanow called Modena. This being knowne in Rose, Creen of Screedit and authoritie in the Senate was such, that after many replies and the continuous which passed, Makeys Antonivs was declared for a common chamber and the new Confuls called Hinery and Pansawere fent against him, and with them OCTAVIANVS, with entignes of Conful and title of Propretor, with part of the armie, having been fifft received into the Senare (notwithstanding that hee was not yet eighteene yeeres old) by the meane and procurement of CICERO, although that afterwards he did ill requite it.

The battaile against Marcus Antonius,

There were also assigned vnto Marcus Brutys the prouinces of Illyricum and Macedonia, and the armies therein; and to Cassivs were affigned the prouince of Syria in Alia, and the armies also therein. This and other things being graunted by the Senate, OCTAVIANVS and the Confuls with their armies, drew neere to MARCUS ANTONIUS, MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO remaining for chiefe in all matters in Rome. And after some skirmishes and conflicts which passed betweene the two armies, they came to battaile, or (as some record) battailes, which are declared in fundrie manners: but in effect they agree, and the truth is, that the wherein Octa- Confuls and C & s AR had the victorie, and one of the Confuls (which was H 14wianus and the cIV s) was flaine in the battaile, and PANSA the other Conful came wounded from it, and died shortly after: and so Octavianvs remaining with the whole armie, DECIVS BRVIVS was vnfet & freed from the fiege, and MARCYS AN-TONIVS with part of his people escaped by flight. In this service O CTAVIANVS made marueilous proofe of himselfe (as S V ET O NIV & reporteth) not onely as a Captaine, but also as a private fouldier: and among other things which he did. one was, that feeing him which bare the standard to be fore wounded and readie to fall, with the Eagle the enfigne of his legion, which were the armes of Rome: OCTAVIANVS tooke the same and bare it a great while, vntill that he put it in safetie: yet for all this, some of his enemies forbare not to defamed im, laying, that being in the battaile, he himselfe slew the Consul HIRCIV s; and that afterwards he caused poyson to be put into the medicines applied to the Consul PANS 45 and that thereof he died.

MARCYS ANTONIVS being escaped from the battaile, gathering together the remainder of his armie, passed the Alpes and went into France, soliciting the friendship of LEPIDVS, which there remained with an armie from the time of the death of IVLIVS CESAR, with whom after some treaties and matters which fucceeded, he concluded to be his friend : And O et avianvs after the battaile and victorie obtained, seeing himselfe at libertie from the authoritie of the Confuls began to put in effect the high conceits which with the goods and name of C # s AR he did inherite, and presently sent to the Senate to require triumph for the victorie, and also the Consulship for the rest of the time, which remained to the dead Confuls, with succession in their charge and Captainship. But his demaunds were not fo admitted by the Senate as he defired: for the limmen and friends of the conspirators which slew C & s AR, began to stand in searce of him; and it grieued them to fee him now of fo great power. Wherefore (as A PPIA-NYS ALEXANDRINVS and VELLETVS PATERCYLVS distinctly set downe) they ysed a meane to deferre and delay that which he required, and in the end they refolued to affigne the armie vnto DECIVE BRYTVE, and temporizing with OCTAVIAN they graunted him the triumph without admitting him to the Confulfip, Whereat he shewed himselfe much grieged ad took occasion therby to attempt that, which peraduenture hee had be to projected: which was this, he had secret treaties and practices of friends with Marc vs Antonivs, and having procured and drawne vnto him the armie, imitating Ivilvs Casar; accompanies the rooke his way to Rome, and approching neere vnto the circuit and depute of the Sessae, he made himselfe to bee chosen Consul, being then not fully twentie yeeres old. Wherein he presently entred and discouering his define and determination, he made acculations to be exhibited against BRYTY; and Gassiv s and the rest of the conspirators, which was declared against themall; and as there were none

Octavianus made himselfe to be chafen Conful. Thofe which murdered Cafar accufed and condem-

to defend their cause, and they absent, not daring to appeare, they were condemned. This being done, he againe departed from the citie, and with the armie which he brought, returned, to draw neere to LEPIDVs and MARCVS, ANTO-NIV s their campe, which were alreadie entred Italie.

DECIVS BRYTYS knowing, and being advertised of the treaties and league betweene Octavianvs, Lepidvs and Marcus Antonivs, not daring to flav in that countrey, departed with his people; by which feeing himfelf abandoned, part whereof going to C & SAR, and part to MARCYS ANTONIVS. he fled into fundrie parts, and in the end was taken and brought to MARCYS AN-TONIV s, and put to death by his commaundement, and his head being brought vnto him he caused him presently to be buried. The armies of these Captaines approching neere together, with which Asinivs Pollio and Plancys, with the legions which they commaunded, were joyned the league was made and friendship concluded betweene these three, to wit, OCTAVIANVS CE-SAR, MARCUS ANTONIUS, and LEPIDUS, all three meeting to that effect three daies together, at an appointed place in the fields betweene Bologna and Pe- The triumusrueia, as Appiany's recordeth, which was an Iland, which the River Lauinum betweene Ocwhich paffeth thereby, maketh; where they ordained and concluded their accurfed peace. And OCTAVIANVS putting away SERVILIVS his daughter, to and Levidus, whom hee was maried, contracted himselfe to CLAVDIA ANTONIVS his daughter in law, daughter to his wife Fyly 1 A, which was then a childe from whom he was also divorced afterwards, without touching her, by reason of the discord which arose, as shall be declared at time convenient. In this proscription and league which they made, befides the dividing of the Empire and provinces thereof, as hereafter shall be declared, they concluded also each of them to kill his enemics, and the one delivering them into the others hands, having more respect. The cruell proand care to be reuenged of an enemie, then to the fauing of a friend: and so was by ottamanus, made the most cruell and most inhumane proscription and butcherie that ever and Marcus was seene or heard of giving and exchaunging friends and kinsmen, for enemies cicco delineand aduerfaries. For MARCY'S ANTONIVS gaue his fathers brother; and LEPI- red to bisene-DVS, Lycivs Pavlyshis owne brother; and Octavianvs, Marcys TvL. mie. LIVS Crease, whom he called father, and by whom he had been entreated and honoured a sonne. Besides these, they proscribed and condemned to die, three hundred other principall men of Rome, as PLYTARCH fetteth downe in their liues although Lycivs Fronts and Tites Livies do but briefly fet down the number of the Senatours : of which one faith, there were put to death 130. and the other 146. But if we shall beleeue Appianvs a most diligent and grave author, there died of the Senatours in a manner 300, according to PLVTARCH, and neere 2000. Romanes of the order of Knighthood : fo great power had ambition and hatred in hearts of these three men.

Hauing made their coment, & refolued what they would do, they all three (new friends) wentro & where they tooke vpon them the gouernment of the Common wealth, by the reformance of Triumuirat, for that they were three, the time being appointed to the former of five yeares, although they never meant to leave the farne. And preferrly these which by them were condemned and proferipts were by their commandsment put to death, being fought out in al parts & places. ranfacking their houles, and confisking their goods: In the execution whereof there was so great confusion, forrow and heavines in the citie of Rome, and almost in al Italie, as the like was neuer seene nor heard of therein by man. And although

APPIANUS ALEXANDRINUS very eloquently recounteth the cruell death of many, it shall be sufficient for vs to describe the murdering of CICERO onely, who vnderstanding that his name was in the catalogue of those which were profeript, onely for that he had ever been a lover of the Romane libertie, fled towards the Sea, where imbarking himselfe he had so cruell fortune, that he was forced to returne to the shore; and comming to certaine his possessions neere to Capua, not farre from the Sea, fleeping, he was awakened by crowes, which with their bils pluckt the cloathes from his backe: His feruants moued with this euill presage, tooke him and put him in his Litter, and againe caried him towards the Sea; but he was ouertaken by the executioners, which smote off his head and right hand, wherwith he had written the orations against MARCUS ANTONI-VS called PHILIPPICES, imitating those which DEMOSTHENES made against PHILIP father of ALEXANDER the great: and fo CICERO was flaine by one whom he had defended and deliuered from death, and his hand being joyfully beheld by MARCUS ANTONIVS, was by his order nailed up in the place where he was wont to plead, whither repaired all the Romane people to behold fo miferable and forrowfull a spectacle: whereof there was not any one but was heartily forie for the death of fo great a man, and fo feruent a louer of the Common-

These Princes having done their wils in Rome, and knowing that Bav rvs and C As says had a great and mightie Armie in Gracia, able both to defend, and offend, calling themselves deliverers of their countrey, and gave it out publikely that they would goe to fet Rome at libertie from oppression; Cassivs having before ouerthrowne and flaine DOLABELLAin Syria, who was made Conful in the place of Ivilvs C EsAR, when he was flaine; and in the time that Cici-Robare fway, was adjudged for an enemie to his countrey: and being certified that they had (with the affiftance of the Kings and provinces of Asia, and such people as they could leuie) ordinarie and trained eighteene legions: This (Ifay) being knowne, MARCYS ANTONIVS and OCTAVIANVS agreed to go against them with the greatest Armie that they were able to leuie, which they had of expert and old fouldiers, and that LEPIDV's should remaine behind to guard Rome. Being departed from thence, and arrived in Gracia, dividing their Armie for the more commodious marching thereof, they drew neere to the place where B av-TVs and CASSIVS were encamped, which was in Macedonia in the fields called Philippieks, for that they were neere the citie Philippes. And these contrarie Armies being to neere together, after fome fights and skirmishes, came to a battaile, wherein the victorie was divided in a strange manner: for either partie hauing ranged their Armie into two fquadrons or battailes, the right wing of BRV-TV s his Armie ioyned with the left wing of that which O CTAVIANV s commanded; and the right of that whereof MARCUS ANTONIA was leader, with the left of that which Cassivs governed; where worning and cruelly flaying one another, BRVTVs his Battailion was of fuch power as that it brake and put to route OCTAVIVS CASARS Battailion, who, as ANYS ALEXANDRI-NVs, PLYTARCH and LUCIUS FLORUS report, was not in the battaile, for that he was then very ficke; neither durft he abide in his Tent in the Campe, for a certaine augurie or dreame of one who was his Philition, who (they fay) aduited him, that he should not abide in his Tent in the Campe: for if he did, he would be flaine by his enemies. Yet Svetonivs, Velleivs Patercylvs and Pav-LVS OROSIVS meane that he was therein, and that being ouercome he retired

to Antonivs his battaile. And although that this be diverfly reported (as it viually happeneth in great exploits and aduentures) the truth wherein all agree, is, that his people being ouerthrowne, and his campe entred by his enemies, imagining that he had been in his bed, there were many thrusts and stabs given thorough the curtaines and into the bed, and it was published abroad that hee was dead. And while as BRVTVs followed this victoric, his companion CASSIVS was ouerthrowne by MARCUS ANTONIVS, notwithstanding that hee performedall that was possible for him to defend his people; so as there was victorie on either fide, whereof the clowdes and dust of that day, were a great occasion : for the one could not see nor understand the other; and CASSIVS seeing his people ouerthrowne and scattered, retired himselfe to a high ground, where hee had pitched his Tent, whereinto he could not come, for that the enemie had alreadie possession and so flanding and looking about, he saw his companion BRVTVs his troupes come to his aide, which came victorious to relieue him: but he imagining that they came flying, or that they were his enemies, as he had before refolued and determined (fo great was his griefe and forrow) fo commaunded hee a slaue of his, whom he had made free (named PINDARVS) to kill him, who per- Cassius. formed it, and so he died foolishly, although valorously.

OCTAVIANVS his people escaped by flight, and retired to MARCUS ANTO-NIV s his campe, whose forces returned to him with victorie : although their captaine MARCY'S ANTONIV'S (as some write) did not that day discharge the part of a good captaine, but rather affirme that the battaile being begun, he left it, and went into a lake which was thereby, where he remained vntill that he certainly understood that the victorie remained on his side: which truly is hardly to be beleeued in so valiant a man, and of such experience as he was; so as there was a greatbroile and a confusion. But PLVTARCH affirmeth, that if BRVTVs his people had not that day bufied themselves in ransacking and pillaging of Octavianvs his Campé and Tents, his partie had obtained an entire victorie: for they might in sufficient time have rescued C As s I v s, and both being joyned together, might easily have broken MARCUS ANTONIUS his battaile. But the victorie being divided in fuch manner as I have told you, the Captaines of either partie withdrew their people, whereof of BRVTVs his part were flaine 8000. men; and of his aduersaries a farre greater number; and BRVTVs, the best that he could comforted the fouldiers and gentlemen which followed CASSIVS. And although that the next day there were a shew betweene the two armies of a defire to fight, and that they were neere the one to the other, yet they came to no battaile: but within few daies after, wherein happened matters of smaller importance it was tried betweene them, whereto BRVTVs was forced by his people. For he would have delaied and prolonged the warre: for he was advertised that his enemies wanted via and many necessaries, and also for that he reposed no great trust in Cas says his forces; for he perceived that they were fearefull. by meanes of that which was past, and were ill to commaund: but being come to The battaile the encounter, he did throughly discharge all the offices which to a good Cap-against Brutus. taineand a valiant Knight and belong. But in the end his people vnable to endure the force of Octavianva and Marcus Antonius, were by them broken and ouercome: And Bay ras after that he had done al that which was possible to gather his people together, out of hope to be able to make any refistance, the night being come, counselled by some which joyned themselves with him to flie, he faid, that he had refolued to doe fo, not with his feete, but with his hands:

nius fell in

Laue with Cleo-

patra Qucene

of Egypt.

Brutus flew himfilfe.

and having spoken these words, he tooke a sword from a servant of his, named STRATYS, and flew himselfe therewith. Some affirme that this STRATYS killed him by his commaundement. And so DRVSVS LIVIVS and QVINTILIVS VARRO, and some others of the conspiracie, slew themselues, besides many others which died fighting in the battaile. And in this manner were O CTAVIA-NVS C # S AR and MARCYS ANTONIVS Lords and masters of the battaile, and of the field, and all things happened vnto C & sar according to his defire : for whom alone, God in his fecret judgement, had referued the fole Monarchie, which then was divided and shared betweene three.

This exploit being atchieued, and BRVTVs and CASSIVs legions being reduced to their obedience (fauing those which flying fundrie waies went to SEXTVS POMPE IV s, sonne of the great Pompey, who in these troubles and confusions feised on the Ile of Sicilia, and was very mightie by Sea) OCTAVIANVS and MARCYS ANTONIVS agreed together, that ANTONIVS should remaine in the provinces of Gracia and Asia, LEPIDVs should goe into Africa: and that OCTA-VIANVS should goe to Rome, whither with much adoe he came, through want of health; and MARCUS ANTONIVS went into Alia, and afterwards gaue himself to sensualitie, delights and pleasures in Egypt, with Queene CLEOPATRA, of

whom we have spoken in the life of C # s AR.

Within few daies after that OCTAVIANUS came to Rome, there arose new warres and troubles : for although that he were in peace with LEPIDVS, to whom was given the province of Africa, OCTAVIANVS remaining with the rest of Spaine, France, and part of Germany, Italie, and Illyricum : Lvcivs ANTONIVS, which at that time was Conful, incited thereto by his fifter in law FVLVIA wife of the faid MARCYS ANTONIVS, began to contradict and contend with LEPIDVS and OCTAVIANVS, murmuring and attempting to defeate the Triumuirat, and the league and gouernment of three; which began about the division of the fields, which OCTAVIANVS CESAR had made to the men of warre which had served him. Applanus writeth, that FVLVIAdid this with intent to disturbe Italie, and so to moue and procure her husband MARCUS ANTONIUS to come unto her, for that she was icalous, hearing of his conversation and companie keeping with CLEOPATRA the Queene of Egypt. The discord in Rome grew to so high a degree, that it came to blowes: and Lycivs Anyonivs departed from thence, and leuied an armie and forces against Octavianvs, who marched towards him with his power: but Lvc Ivs durst not joyne battaile with him, but rather suffered himselfe to be that up in the citie of Perugia, where C & s AR befieged him, and at that time diuorced himselfe from CLAVDIA the daughter of FVLVIA, to whom he was contracted (as is aforefaid) without ever touching her, and was maried the third time with SCRIBONIA, by whom he had one daughter. Personal was fo strictly besieged(OCTAVIAN being then 23, yeeres old) that Lweigh Antonivs, and the reft which were befreged with him, endured for grant him er, that it grew to a prouer to fay (the Perugian hunger) wherewith L ANTONIVS opprefed and forced, yeelded himself to OCTAVIANVS, which the him, and yied him well, and those which were with him: and forms wantewas ended without shedding of bloud, and hee came victorious to Rame, and was euer after Lord thereof. Wherefore many account the beginning of his Empire from this time, which might be about some source yeeres after the death of his vncle C ASAR: and the account which is commonly called C & s AR s computation, agreeth with

The beginning

neths in widowhood. This being concluded, Octavianus and Marcus Antonius wentto Rome, where the wedding was folemnized, & they returned again good friends. But this peace was greatly disquieted, by meanes of the ill neighbourhood of

this time: foure vecres (as I faid) after the death of C & s AR, and thirtie and eight vecres before the birth of Christ.

... C = s A being in this quietnes (as it cannot long continue in the course of this life) prefently without any delay, FVLVIA with letters and falle perswalions. fought by all meanes to fet Maneys Antonivs and Octavian at variance. feeing that Lvervs Antonivs his attempts tooke no better effect : and with this determination she went out of Italie, by OCTAVIAN his permission, and tooke her way towards her husband, in hope to perfivade him to come into Italie against Octavianas he did. When she parted from Italie, Mancus Anto. mines Darted from Alexandria in Egypt, and comming to the Ile of Rhodes, he was enformed of all that happened to his brother; and arriving in Gracia at the citie of Athens, he found his wife Forva atheresicke, but found and constant in her determination against Octavian; whom he there leaving by her owne goodwill and confent, he came with two hundred galleys into Italie, and landing neere vnto Brundusium, now Brindez, the wartes began betweene him and Oct AVIA. nvs his forces, who then was in Rome. SEXTVS POMPELVS (as I faid) held Sici-peius in Silia, and was in such fort Lord of the Sea, that he made great scarcitie and want of cilia. corne in Italie. But as this warre was not through OCTAVIANVS his fault or by his will. MARCUS ANTONIVS by the advertisement of fundrie persons, perceined and understood it to be so; and therefore there was meanes found for some friends to paffe betweene them to reconcile and make them friends: and it was agreed that there should be empiers and arbitrators, which should take up the matter betweene them: whereto were nominated of Oct AVIANVs his fide, his great and private friend MECENAS, chanted by Virgil, Horace, and other Poets; Fuluia wife of and for MARCUS ANTONIVS, Was ASINIVS POLLIO. And in this time newes Marcus Ancame that I V L V I A the wife of MARCYS ANTONIVS was dead, wherein was tonius. taken away a great let to the peace. MECENAS then and ASINIVS POLLIO. fet downe the agreement betweene them; the effect and principall points wherof were, to renew the league and Triumuirat for other five vecres, and to share the Romane Empire betweene them, as they before had done. To MARCYS ANTONIVS was affigned al the East from Italy, from the beginning of the Ionian Sea, which is the entrie into the gulfe of Venice, vnto the River Euphrates in Alia. wherein were included all the provinces of Gracia and of Afia, and the Ilands contained betweene these two limits: To OCTAVIAN was allotted from the faid Ionian Sea to the West Sea, which wee call the Spanish Sea, Italie, France, the provinces of Spaine, Germanie, Britannie, with their Iles and bounds. And to Lepi-Dvs was confirmed Africa, wherein hee then was, and all the provinces therein contained, subject to the Empire. And for the better corroborating of this friendship, it was agreed, that MARCUS ANTONIUS, which was a widower. should marrie with Geravia, who was sister to Octavianvs by his fathers charens dutefide, and lately widow of Marces Marce LLVs, with whom the had bin ma- will married ried, and had by him one some called MARCELLVS, whom he much loued, and to Offanianut. OCTAVIAN adopted him for his fonne, of whom VIRGIL maketh much mention. This mariage as made by difpensation of the Senate, because that in Rome it was not permitted to widowes to marric, untill that they had lived tenne mo-

SEXTUR

SEXTUS POMPELUS: for he commaunded the Sea from Sicilia where he lined. and with his ships and Pirats (for he had many in his service) he disquirted Cz-SARS part (relying on the friendship of MARCYS ANTONIVS) and OCTAVIA-NV s had determined to make warre and to ruinate him: but at the entreatie of the Senate and Marcus Antonius, he gaue eare to a peace, and by the mediation of some which were friends to them both, it tooke effect in this manner: That all matters past being forgotten, they should become good neighbours and friends, and that SEXIVS POMPEIVS should enjoy Sicilia, Sardinia and Corsica, which he had in possession; and that hee should cleere the Seas from daunger. for Merchants and passengers; and that hee should furnish zome yearchy with a certaine quantitie of corne. This being concluded, they agreed upon a meeting betweene them three, Antonivs, Octavianvs and Pompey, vponthe Sea fide, in the ftreight of Mecina, in a fortresse built for that purpose, which reached into the water, whither SEXTVS POMPEIVS might come with his galleys, and might be in fafetie on all parts: which was performed with great ioy and folemnitie, and afterwards Pompey featled them in his galleys, and they him likewise by land: and from thence he returned to Sicilia, and OCTAVIAN and ANTONY to Reme, where they remained certaine daies in very friendly manner. And MARCUS ANTONIVE making preparation for his journey into the East lent VENTIDIVE away before with a great armie against the Parthians, against which he had determined to make warre, as he did. And VENTIDIV's had so good successe in his iourney, that he ouercame and defeated PACORV s the kings fonne of the Parthians, and flew of them twentie thousand men: so as he sufficiently revenged Ventidiustri- the death of MARCUS CRASSUS, for which hee afterwards triumphed in

umphed of the Rome.

MARCYS ANTONIVS departed Rome towards the East with his new wife, with whom he wintered in Gracia in the citie of Athens, and from thence he continued his journey. In a while after, as OCTAVIAN remaining in Rome, grew mightie, and in great estimation; so likewise he became couctous; and as the combetween Octahim; at whose entreatic, MARCVS ANTONIVS returned againe into Italie with

panic and neighbourhood of SEXTVS POMPETVS in Sicilia was displeasing vnto him, so would he have been glad to have had any occasion to warre against him : and so hee determined, and prepared a great fleete for that purpose, vnderpretext that POMPEY with his galleys and ships hindred the comming of prouision of corne into Italie. These warres of Sicilia were long (pauling and resting fometimes) and continued certaine yeeres, in the beginning whereof O cra-VIAN had ill fuccesse, more through tempests and foule weather at Sea, then the The first wars force of his enemies, although there were some fights betweene the ships of cither partie; but by tempest and shipwracke, Octavian lost sundrie flectes. And if SEXTVS POMPETVS had been as able to offend and conquer, as he was to defend himselfe, and ouerthrow his enemie; and as hee was valiant, if he had been wife and politicke, most authors affirme, that he might have greatly distressed Oc-TAVIAN in all matters concerning Italie. But the maner was to handled that in this warreMarcys Antonivs came twice out of Company Italy, whither he came from the Eaft at Oct AVIANVs request; in one of then he came to Brandufium, and not finding him there according to his appearance, and as hee had fent him word, he returned without feeing him, wood forme suspinious and lealoufies which grew betweene them. Wherfore O.c. TAVIANVS having loft the most and best part of his Nauie in astorme, he sent MECENAS his private friend vnto

three hundred faile of shippes and gallies, giving out that he came to CESARS aide: And notwithstanding that there were some differences and suspitions betweene them, yet in the end Octavia which came thither (being wife to the one, and fifter to the other) prevailed fomuch, that she brought them to agreement, so as they met together in the mouth of a River neere to Tarentum, where MARCYS ANTONIVS gaueto OCTAVIAN one hundred and twentie gallies for the warres: and OCTAVIAN gaue to him certaine troupes of Italian trained fouldiers; and renued their companie and Triumuirate for other five yeares then begun: And MARCYS ANTONIVS againe returned towards the East to the warre which he had began against the Parthians, (which concerne not me to write) his wife Octavian and her children remaining in Rome. ANTONIE being gone; OCTAVIANV s, who was resolued to prosecute the

warres with all his whole power against SEXTVS POMPEIVS (whom it see-

med that fortune and the windes did fauour) was not contented with the ar-

ming of two nauies and armies (A GRIPPA being captaine of the one, and himfelfeof the other) but hee very instantly intreated LEFIDVS a Triumuir and his companion, to come from Africa to his aide: who came with fuch power, that APPIANVS affirmeth, that he brought with him a thousand shippes little and great, and fourescore gallies, wherein he brought fine thousand horse and twelue legions of foote. SEXTVS POMPEIVS, whose power by sea wasvery great, seeing so great preparation made against him, did maruellously fortifie all places upon the sea side in Sicilia, and in the frontiers towards Africa; and neere vnto Lilybaum, he placed a very good captaine named PLINIVS, with very good companies of fouldiers; and his whole fleete by fea (whereof he was aboundantly prouided) he ioynedtogether in the port at Messina, where he purposed Ottavianus bis to follow the warres with his shippes and gallies, for by land he had not of such fecond warre experience nor power, and in this order he stoode readie to prosecute it, which Tompeun. APPIANVS, TITVS LIVIVS, and LUCIUS FLORVS Writeatlarge. The fum thereof is that LEPIDVS parting with his whole fleete from Africa, was ouertaken with a tempest, wherein with great losse of his shippes, he landed at Lilybaum, and having taken certaine places in that quarter, might have done much hurt, but as one of small judgement and little experience in the warres, he warred with greater cost & outward shew, then to any effect or profit. And the very same day that he was in that tempelt, Octavivs also passed the same, and lost thirtie gallies, befides foilts and Brigandines, and with much adoe returned into Italie: and Tavrvs which had the comment of the gallies which Marcus Anto-NIVs left with him, the fame day took land at Tarentum, with great loffe and daunger, so as it seemed that the winds & weather tooke part with Pompey. Wherewith O CTAVIANVS Was fo much grieved, that he was about to have given over the warfor that yeere hut altering his determination he repaired his nauies and ar-

mies, and commanded to a ipp a with a great fiect to paffe into Sicilia, and there to make warre by a bland, and he with all the rest, afterwards did the like. In this time of the before (as it feemeth by SVETONIVS)O STAVIANVS di-Offanianus par norced himself from Sandina, notwithstanding that he had by her one daughter and bis wife called LIVIA, and married LIVIA DRV SILLA: Wherefore TIBERIVS NERO to Scribonia and whom she was married, and by him had a sonne called TIBERIVS, as his father, married Linia. was driven to leave her, which he vnwillingly did, to please Octavianvs, she being with child of a sonne. This LIVIA he much loued, and continued with her till his death. But returning to our storie of the warre, I say that AGRIFP A assaul-

Octavianus

Pompeius.

ted and tooke certaine places in the coast of Sicilia: which when Pompsy vnderstoode he departed from Messina, to relieue them; at which time he had of his

owne and of pirats which ferued him, one hundred, feuentie and fine gallies. It is a wonderfull thing to confider the great fleets which were put to the feas in those dayes. A GRIPPA being advertised of his comming, put his gallies in a readines, which were but few leffe, and so they ioyned battaile: wherein although at the first the victorie was doubtfull, yet in a short space it plainely appeared that AGRIPPA had the better: which POMPRY perceiuing, fled, before he would be wholy ouerthrowne; and his gallies and foilts withdrew themselnes to some places and Rivers neere at hand: and AGRIPPA, for that his gallies were greater, could not follow the chase, nor come so necre the shore as he would; but yet this notwithstanding, Pompey lost thirtie of his gallies: And AGRIPP Athenext day went to a citie called Tindaria, which he thought to get by reason of certaine secret practifes which he had with those therein: and Pompey in the dark of the night, giuing secret aduise to his whole seet, tooke his course towards Mesima. And Octa-VIAN to lose no occasion, embarked aboord his shippes and gallies a great part of his armie, and passing ouer into Sicilia, set them on shore placing Cornificive for their captaine, where he thinking that Pompay hadnot been so neere, of whom and of his people he was in great danger if he had then been charged by him at vnawares, loas if Pompey had then given him Battaile he had defeated him: but the matter comming to no fuch iffue, OCTAVIAN embarked himfelfe againe, with intent to determine the matter by a Battaile at Sea, leauing CORNIFICIVS with his land souldiers fortified on land: and Pompay with in a battaile at the same desire, after some dayes and matters which passed, sallied out of Messina with al his whole fleete, and neither partie refusing it, they came to fight; in which conflict (although the histories recite it with some difference) OCTAVIANTS C # S A R Was ouercome, and all his great fleete feattered and loft, and he driven to flic into Italie in a Brigandine, where he escaped many dangers and hazards, and in the end arrived where his armie was, whereof MESALLA was captaine, and being nothing discouraged with this adversitie, he presently tooke order for a remedie thereof. To Rome in hast he sent his familiar friend MECENAS, to see

> repaire to the Isle of Lipari, which is betweene Sicilia and Calabria, whither he should come so some as he might possibly. With these prouisions, diligence and good order which he tooke, he somuch prevailed that within a small time being holpen with the war which Lapidys and A o RIPPA made, (in despite of PomPBY) here to real his forces into Sicilia, and ioyning himselfe with Lapribys, here to the citie of Mesima, and the warre began to be most cruell both truely was admirable, to consider the power and to the control of PomPBY, to

know how to defend himselfe against so great en and Who seeing himselfe oppressed, (notwithstanding that he had well fortified the land, and wanted no forces for his defence by fea) he fent a challenge to OCTAVIANVS CESAR

that these newes should cause no alteration therein: and by a Brigandine he

presently sent direction to A GRIPPA, who (as is faid) was Admirall of his other

fleete, that with the greatest speede that might be, he should goe to succour Con-

NIFICIVS, who remained in Sicilia with his armieby land : and to LEPIDVS

he sent word that (all matters set aside where he was) he should make his present

with a message, that to anoyde so many flaughters and the essusion of blood, and to make an end of this warre; that although he were well provided and fur-

nished with fingular good Galleys, and well trained fouldiers; yet that he would come to a battaile by fea, fo many against fo many Ships and Galleys; whereunto were made many answers and delayes, but in the end they agreed to do so. And appointing the number, which were 300. Ships and Galleys of either fide, and the time and place thereto, either of these parties prepared himselfe the best that he could for the battaile; and OCTAVIANV s leaving LEPIDV s with his army by land, embarked himselfe in his Flect; and Pompey doing the like, they joined Abattell by battaile; which without doubt was one of the most cruell in the world, considering the Captaines and power of either partie; wherein after that Pompey had done all that which to a good and valiant Captaine did appertaine, and after the Octavianus death of much people of either fide, he was ouercome by OCTAVIANV s, and three Sexus all his Fleet was taken, burnt, or funke, fauing xvij. failes which escaped by flight, Pompeius, and he in one of them, and so he entred into the hauen at Mesina: Wherein, although it were fufficiently fortified, and knowing that PLINIVS his Captaine aforenamed came to his rescue, yet acknowledging that all sufficed not to defend himfro fo great enemies (as it was true) in a darke night, he embarked himfelfe in a Galley, & with the other xvi. which escaped, abandoning Sicilia, he fled towards the East, and sayled to Marcus Antonius, in hope to have found some reliefein him; but it happened contrarie to his expectation: for being arrived, after some great chaunces and matters which succeeded, which for breuitie I omit,

he was there put to death by the commaundement of MARC V & ANTONIVS, The death of by the hands of one named Ticivs. And so ended the power of Sexty's Sextys Power Power to Sexty's sextys Power Power of Sexty's Sextys Power Power Power and in him the linage and memoric of

It is a great example and a most faire document of the inconstancie of all things in this life, to fee and reade the changes in the historie which we are now about to declare: for when it seemeth that matters go forwards in such fort that quietnes and peace may thereof enfue, there begin new motions and greater troubles, as we have feene heretofore, and shall fee hereafter in the processe of this discourse.

his father the Great POMPEY.

OCTAVIANVS having obteined fo great a victoric (although not without great loffe) taking land with his Ships, and the Armie which was therein, commaunded AGRIPPA presently to loyne with LEPIDVS and go to Messina, whither PLINIUS POMPEIES Captaine had retired himselfe (so soone as Pomper fled) with all his troupes; who for that he would not stand upon his defence, yeelded himselfe to LEPIDVS with all his Legions: whereof LEPIDVS grew fo prowd, that coueting to have all Sicilia for himselfe, he presumed to contend with OCTAVIAN: And entring into the citie of Mesina (notwithstanding that AGRIPPA requested him to stay for OCTAVIANVS) he placed a garrison therein to his owne viewed did she like in many other places in that Iland. And Octavian being to the citatthe next day to speake with him, greatly complaining of his doing the sin rule and commaundement companie and equalities is intolerable. The state of them coucting the Ile of siella particularly for himfelfe, they fell at value, and C & s AR made his Nauy to draw neere the shore, and both Armies began to land upon their guard the one against the other, and many meffages and complaints paffed betweene them, and in the end although biford bethey met and pake together, yet they could not agree. But as Oc TAVIAN was dus and offemuch more beloned and better effected by men of warre for his many vertues nianus. and nobilitie, and for the names lake and remembrance of Ivilvs C # s A R, this

diffension did much grieue them all, and both the one part and the other laydall the fault on LEPIDVS. Which when OCTAVIAN understood, before that they would fall so farre out as to take armes, he practised secret treaties with fundry in LEPIDVS his army, and with gifts and promifes drew them to his will: and hauing well effected this deuise, he one day with a great troupe of horsemen roade neere to LEPIDVS his Camp, and fingling himselfe from his companie, he began to parley with his fouldiers, complaining of him, & laying the fault of all that was like to ensue vpon LEPIDVS: which being heard by them, many of them began to come ouer to his side. And LEPIDVS advertised hereof, commanded the alarme to be given, and to fally out against him, so as they skirmished, wherein in the beginning OCTAVIAN was in some danger, but it lasted not long: for the most part of Lepidys his troupes passed ouer to Octavian, which Lepidys could not refift; who feeing himfelfe in danger to be abandoned by the whole, for his last refuge rendred himselfe into C & s ARS power, and putting off his roabe of Generall, went out of his Tent, and yeelded himselfe vnto O CT AVIA-NVs, humbly crauing him to pardon him: whom OCTAVIAN received, as though he had neuer offended him, very court coufly and honorably, but he reflored him neither to his estate nor power, but sent him to Rome well accompanied and enterteined, but without Magistracie or office, with the dignitie of highest Priest only, which he had euer held from the death of Ivilvs Casar whose it was : and so this quarrell was ended without battaile or bloudshed, which fome feared would have brought both danger and calamitie.

Lepidus depriuince of A-

OCTAVIANVS CESAR remained Lord of Sicilia, depriuing LEPIDVS of the league and Triumuirat, appropriating to himselfe the province of Africa, and remained generall of the three armies, viz. that which was LEPIDVs his army, POMPEIES army, & his owne, wherein APPIANV saffirmeth, were 45. Legions of footemen, and 25000. horsemen well armed; besides many other light horsemen and Numidians, which seemeth not incredible to him that considereth how of men of war. great a part of the world they commaunded which leuyed the fame. He affirmeth alfo, that there were then at fea and vpon the coast 600. Galleys, and a greater number of Ships, Foifts, and Brigandines: And although that OCTAVIA-N v s had so great forces, yet would he not pursue or send after Pompey, who (as we have fayd) fled, which he did (as some did suspect) beleuing that MAR-CVS ANTONIVS would have harboured and succoured him, being glad that occasion might have bin offred to quarrell with him, as now there was no other man in the world that was any eye-fore vnto him, but he : or else he did it, as he himselfe sayd afterwards, for that Pompey was none of those which consoired CESARS death. And purposing now to disperse his armies and to returne to Rome, he payd his fouldiers, giving crownes and other enfigues and armes to those which had performed any notable exploits in the warres, and having given many gifts and made many faire promifes to his legal to ming the Captaines and fouldiers which had followed Ponper, and the stand manner that he could, paying and contenting Lepid vs his company to their houses; notwithstanding that there were some faires and mutinies, but he pacified and brought all in good order, and leaving in Sicily; and fending into Africa Pretors and Gouernors, he tooke his way towards Rome, where he was received with ouacion entertainement, which was little leffe then a triumph, with incredible joy and honor, and began to be so beloued and esteemed, that in many places they erected Temples and Altars vnto him, as to their gods; and he ordered

ordered and reformed al things, which by reason of the warres and troubles were corrupted and out of order. It would be a large discourse to declare the particulars of all things which he did in Rome and in the provinces, as well concerning the government and iustice, as the decencie and beautifying thereof.

At this time MARCUS ANTONIVS who was in the East, notwithstanding that in the warres of the Parthians he had no prosperous successes vet neuertheleffe was still of very great power, very rich, and much serued and obeyed in all the provinces of Gracia, Asia, Egypt, and all the rest in his dition. But he was so much blinded and beforted with the loue and companie of CLEOPATRA Anteny caption of Egypt, that hethought of nothing but how to fatisfie her humour, be nated by the ing vnable to depart from her, or to have any regard or remembrance of his wife patra. OCTAVIA and fifter to OCTAVIANVS, who in beautie and wifedome was nothing inferiour to her, and in vertue and goodnes did farre excell her.

And so the Monarchie of the world was divided betweene these two men. theone in the East, and the other in the West: and as the desire and hunger to raiene is endlesse, and the thirst with continuance encreaseth, as though that each of them had not had enough to his share, both of the bethought themselves how they might be able to obtaine the whole, principally OCTAVIAN, feeing that ANT ONY cared not for his fifter, neither sent for her after that he had left her in Rome, he therefore continually counselled and vrged her to goe to her husband, to haue (as I beleeue) occasion to fall out with him (as PLVTARCH recounteth in thelife of ANTONY) if the were not well entertained. And the not vnderstanding this deuice, with intent to stop and let any controuersie that might arise betweene her husband and her brother, departed from Rome, bearing with her manviewels and prefents, which she had gathered together, to carrie them to MAR-CVS ANTONIVS, as VELLEIVS PATERCVIVS recordeth. But he who had fixed his heart vpon CLEOPATRA, wrote to her vpon the way, that she should flavin Gracia in the citic of Athens, vntill hee should returne from the journey which hee purposed to make against the Parthians; which hee neuer performed, CLEOPATRA hindring the same. Finally, to bee briefe (for otherwaies there were much to fay) O CT AVIA fent all those things which she brought with her, to her husband; and this nothing auailing, the returned to Rome for rowfull, and by him for faken. Whereupon OCTAVIAN began openly to complaine of MAR-CVS ANTONIVS, and to shew himselfe his enemie: and MARCVS ANTONIVS which had the same defire, entred into league and amitie with the King of the Medes in Asia; and CLEOPATRA, besides the title of Egypt, he made to be called Oucene of Syria, Libya, and Cyprus, and iountly with her to a fonne of hers named CESARION, of whom (as we have alreadic faid) IVLIVS CESAR left her with formeof lutus child when he was in Egypt, and to two fonnes which he had by her, the one na- exfar. med PTOLOMY, and the other ALEX ANDER, he gaue titles of Kings, to ALEXANDER of Armetic Polisis, which he meant to conquer; and to PTOLOMY of Cilicia and Plant of the condition warre was yet de gred, for that OCTAVIAN was hindred by the warres in Illyricum and Dalmatia, now called Stauonia. The people of which countries, feeing the civill warres of the Romanes, rose and rebelled, with other nations which conspired with them, and did affift them, although not subjects as they were, to wit, the two Pannonia, the vpper which is now Auffria, and the lower, which is Hungarie, and Noricum, which is now part of Bauaria, with other their borderers and neigh-

The warres which Octavia-Illyricum.

thereof.

bours. Which warre OCTAVIAN vndertooke of set purpose, and followed it in his owne person, which was very cruell and dangerous: wherein he was twice wounded, and made marueilous proofe of his person, both for valour and wisedome: wherein there passed more and greater matters then I have time to recite. APPIANVs in his fixt booke which he calleth Illyricque, writeth thereof at large: and also Velleivs PATERCVLVs, although more briefly, Lvcivs FLORVS, and TITVS LIVIVS abreuiated by him and some others. The end thereof was, that OCTAVIAN not onely reduced and tamed Illyricum, and fundrie Nations, contained under that name, but also the Pannonias, and the rest which had conspired with those of Illyricum, partly by himself in person. Separtly by his Captaines.

These victories being obtained, OCTAVIANVS CESAR came victorious to Rome: and notwithstanding that the triumph was granted vnto him, yet he would not triumph as then; fo great was the defire hee had to warre against MARCVS ANTONIVS, who was no better affected vnto him, but rather levied fouldiers, procured friends and armes against him, and promised his friend C L RALLE ATRA, to bring her triumphing into Rome. Lycivs Florvs with, that the requefled of him the rule and Empire of Rome, and he promised is her: as though the Romanes had been more easie to subdue then the Parchians. And the matter standing in these termes, MARCUS ANTONIUS sent to his wife OCTAVIASister to OCTAVIANVS, a divorcement and renunciation of his mariage, in such manner as then was accustomed; commaunding her to goe out of his house, wherein fhe dwelled in Rome: All which with many other matters Octavian fignified in the Senate, complaining thereof against him, and in his orations and speeches to the people, accusing him also, that the second five yeeres of his Triumuirat and league being expired, without comming to Rome, or respecting the authoritie of the Senate, he exercised the same, and held the possession of Gracia and the prouinces of the East, and so vsed many speeches against MARCYS ANTONIVS to perswade and incense the people against him.

MARC VS ANTONIVS on the other fide, complained by messengers and letters, alleaging that OCTAVIAN had often broken the peace, and had cast SEX-TVS POMPRIVS out of Sicilia, remaining with those provinces and others which he held; and that therein he had no minde of him, neither had given him any part thereof; and that hee detained the galleys which he lent him for that warre: and befides this, that he had vsed meanes and devices to deprive L = PI-DV s, and so held all the provinces of Africa, and all the legions which were his. without imparting any thing thereof vnto him of all thefe things: and that hee had given the fields and lands of al Italie to his people and fouldiers, without contributing any part thereof vnto his. And in this manner the one accused the other and either of them made shew, and fained that he was vrged and enforced to yndertake this warre. But the truth is, they both defired to bee Lords of the The causes of the ware between Offationan and
Marcus Antonius, and the
beginning
of them, was mouted and troubled therewith: thosh of the war in the behalfe of
other, was mouted and troubled therewith: thosh of the war in the behalfe of OCTAVIAN, and those of the East in fauour or Marevs ANTONIVS; at the least, the best and most choise people of all, although not so many as they might haue leuied: for the Romanes neuer vsed to make warres with such huge multitudes and excessive armies, which they should not be well able to maintaine and rule, as the Persians and other barbarous nations did.

ANTONY

victuals.

Anyony was first on foote, and came with great troupes to the famous citie of Ephelus, which was in Ionia a province in Alia the leffe, whither he had fent for his ships and Nauie to come to passe into Europe, and had there in readines 800. betweene galleys and ships of burthen, 200, whereof CLEOFATRA gaue to him with all the munition and victuals necessarie for the fleete; and her selfe he caried with him, contrarie to the opinion of all those which were of his counsell: And herewith came to the Ile of Samos, whither he had appointed to come by a certaine day, all the Kings, Tetrarches and people of cities, which came to ferue him oner against E. in this warre, and from thence he parted and came to Athens. PLVTARCH describeth the Kings which cause with him, and those which sent some forces to his preparation of aide part whereof were friends and allies to the Empire, and others vaffals and Marcus Antofubiects: to which was given the title and government of provinces: of which wins. he named TARCONDEMY'S of the upper Cilicia, and ARCHELAV'S of Cappadocia, PHILADELPHYS Of Paphlagonia, and MITHRIDATES Of Comagena, & others alfor besides those which tent their forces, as were HERODE sking of Indea, AMYN-TAS of Ly aonia, and the king of Arabia, the king of the Medes, and PALEMON king of Pontus, and some others : wherein (it was faid) he brought 100000 fingular good and well trained footmen, and 22000 horsemen: and according to the fame PLVTARCH, besides this armie by land, his Nauie by Sea consisted of fine hundred galleys, befides the ships of burthen which brought the munition and

Although that in the number of ships and galleys the authors doe varie, which ought not diminish the credit of the historie, sithence that in matters which passe now adaies which we see with our eyes, wee can hardly know the certaine number of the ships and of the armies. MARCVS ANTONIVS came with such powerthat the Historiographers affirme, that if he had presently taken his passage for Italie, he had put Octavian to his shifts, and in great hazard: for he had not sufficient forces leuied to have fought with him, neither had hee necessarie provision for the warres. And fo MARCY'S ANTONIV'S his long delaying of time, was imputed vnto him for want of discretion, knowledge and forelight of the good fortune which was offred him: For he spent so much time in Athens, that O c-TAVIAN had leifure to prouide all things wanting, from Italie, France, Spaine, and other prouinces in his subjection: and leuying 80000.chosen and trained souldiers, and aboue 20000, horse, seeing that hee taried so long, he sent him word, that for as much as he had ships and prouision fit thereto, he should draw neere to Italie, where he staied in the field to give him battaile, promising to give him free Ports and Hauens, where he might fafely take landing without any interruption, to the end that he might the more commodiously order and prouide all things thereto necessarie. Whereto Antony answered, that it would be better if hee would determine this quarrell in person against him bodie to bodie, which hee would willingly act and withstanding that he was now old and crazed, and the other young a which will he liked not hereof, he would stay for him with his people in the worlding, in the same place where his father I v L I v s CESAR fought with CHEVS 2' P'MPEIV'S.

These Ambassades and messages passing betweene them, without effect; An-TONY drew his Armie by land, and his Nauie by fea, towards the coast of Italy: and OCTAVIAN amassing his ships in Brundusium, embarked his legions, and crossing the Sea came to a place called Torma, in the province of Epire, which is Epire, now called Romania. And after certaine notable matters which passed, the two Romania.

AVGVSTVS CESAR. armies drew neere the one to the other, and the like did the Nauies by fea. Oct A-VIANVS Nauie (as PLVTARC Haffirmeth) confifted of 250 galleys, but better appointed and swifter, then MARCVS ANTONIVS his galleys were, which were more in number, although (as I haue faid) the authors agree not: but the most common opinion is, as I haue faid. But howfocuer it were, MARCUS ANTO-NIV s perswaded by C LEOPATRA (who even in this also was the cause of his perdition) would needes trie his fortune in a battaile at Sea, notwithstanding that in his armieby land hee had the aduantage. CLEOPATRA did this (as some write, and as it after appeared) thereby to have the better meanes to flie if the battaile should be lost. Any ony chusing 22000 men out of his armic, put them abourd his fleete, which was neere at hand: and O c TAVIAN, who refused not the combat vpon the water, made his prouision also for the battaile, and shipping himselfe aboord the galleys, committed the charge of his armie by land to TAVRVS: and ANTONY doing the like, left his with CANIDIVS; in fight of both which, the The battaile at two most mightie men, with the best troupes and Nauies of the world, tooke the Seas, which fought for no leffe matter then the Empire and Monarchie thereof: Which was deferred for three daies space in despite of both parties, the Seas swelling to high that they could not gouerne their vessels. The fourth day they came to encounter at a Cape called Acius, which is in Epire, not farre from whence were their armies by land. The battaile was one of the most fierce and cruell that hath

cus Antonius.

Bea betweene Octanianus

and Marcus

Antonius.

been written of: for it lasted tenne houres before that OCTAVIAN, who was the victor, did wholy obtaine the victorie, although that ANTONY staied not so long therein: for as CLEOPATRAknew better how to mollifie and foften mens harts, then to encourage them; in the hottest and greatest furie of the battaile, with a feminine minde vnable to endure the fight of fo fierce a spectacle, she fled away in her galley, whom feuentie of her other galleys followed, which is not to be wondred at, but how the durft flay folong. But the valuckie MARCYS ANTONIVS, who all his life time had been a most valiant and excellent Captaine, that day meflight of Martamorphosed into CLEOPATRA, seeing her galley flie, wherein he had fixed his heart and eyes, went out of his, for that it feemed too heavy, and embatking himfelfe in another more swift (desiring rather to flie with CLEOPATRA, then to preuaile without her ) followed her, without respect of his armies by land or sea. which remained: and ouertaking her, he went aboord the same galley wherein fhe was, wherein hee failed three daies without feeing or fpeaking to her, for shame (as it is most likely) for the great weakenes which he had shewed. And after some wandring, he arrived in the harbour at Alexandria in Egypt, where he afterwards ended his life, as we will declare.

His Nauie which he left fighting, although without a captaine, made refistance Octavionus his folong as I haue faid, and there were flaine thereof aboue fine thousand men: but in the end it was wholy ouerthrowne, more through want of a captaine, then through any force of the enemie although force of the lightnes and (wittnes of O CTAVIANS gallies was a great helpeyon did to he remained conqueror, and graunted life and pardon to the conqueror, and graunted life and pardon to the conqueror. three hundred of their gallies. And in the armiels and are wanted neither constancie, nor faith to their captaine ANT ONIE although abandoned by him, which remained seuen dayes in their campe readie to give battaile, without accepting any composition of offer, sent or made wnto them by O CTAVIAN, with a shew that they would yet haue stayed longer time, if CANIDIVS, whom AN-TO NIE left in his steede, had not abused his charge, as he which placed him therein had done. For it was fo, that after feauen dayes were past, in the night fecretly he fled from the campe to feeke ANTONIE, and abandoned the armie, which being for faken, yeelded to the enemie; and OCTAVIAN vsed his victorie with great clemencie: which being obtained, he either thought it not good, or could not at that time purfue ANTONIE, but tooke his way towards the citie of Athens, where taking order for all matters in Gracia, by reason of some commotions in Italie (as SVETONIVS recordeth) he returned thither, where he staved somewhat longer then he would have done, as well for that which is a forefaid as euill weather to faile in the which followed.

After all this, OCTAVIANVS having fet all things necessarie in a readines, he failed with great power into Egypt, with a determination to make an end with MARCYS ANTONIVS (as indeede he did) and arrived at the citie of Alexandria: wherein Antonie recouring courage, and Queene CLEOPADRA making great preparation for the warres, in the time of OCTAVIANVS his stav. had leuied great forces, both of foote and horse for their defence. They had also a great nauce by sea, as well of CLEOPATRA, as of those which came from other places: and MARCVS ANTONIVS with his old courage, which now too lateand to no purpose he recoursed, tooke the field and entertaining a skirmish with CESARS horfmen, which were then landed and strongly entrenched, he vled fuch skill, and charged them with fuch dexteritie, that he made them flie to their strength: and being returned to the citie, he againe sent to challeng Oc-TAVIANVS to fight with him body against body. Whereto C E S AR answered. that MARCUS ANTONIUS hadother waies and meanes enough in a readines to die, without dying by his hands.

ANTONIE receiving this answere, determined to die fighting, although it happened not fo. The next day in the morning he againe fallied forth into the fields, with an intent to fight; and standing upon a high ground; and looking towards the feathe faw that his nauie and gallies moued, and made towards Oct A-VIAN his fleete, which he thought they had done, with determination to fight; and staying a little to see the sequell, within a while, he saw them joyne together in good friendship and companie, by meanes of a secret practice past betweene them. Which when he faw, and fearing the like in those which he brought with him to the field, he returned to the citie, mistrusting and affirming that CLE o-PATRA had betraied him, although that in truth the was blameles therein, and The being advertised of what ANTONIE had said, stoode in feare of him; and withdrew hir felfe into a strong temple or sepulcher: and commaunding the doores thereof to be thut and fortified, the fent fome fainedly to tell him that the had flaine hir felfe with her owns hands. Which MARCUS ANTONIVS beleeued as ftedfaftly, as though he had feene it, and refusing to line any longer withouthir or to flay to die fighting, after he had vttered certaine speeches, he flabbed his poiniard into his time breft, and so (deadly wounded) he fell downe vpon abed in a swounder within a while comming againeto himselfe, being aduertised that Cleon, by creasing, he made himselfe to be carried thither where she was: who received himself homany teares and such pitiful complaints, that he being so neere to death, began to recomfort her, saying, that she ought not lament for him, neither to hold him for infortunate, fith hee accounted not himfelfe for fuch, for he had been a great captaine and very mightie, and in the end died ouercome by the Romanes. Her he counselled to yeeld to the mercie of OCTAVIANVS CESAR, and speaking these words, his strength failing within

The death of

Cleopatra.

alittle while after he dyed: and so ended the power and life of MARCVS ANTO-NIV s. I have peraduenture more largely discoursed hereof, then to the breuitie of my historic did appertaine, because it was a case so notable and singular.

OCTAVIANVS having intelligence of this aforefaid, and of the small order and guard of the citie, marched thither with his forces and entred the same, and fent to comfort CLEOPATRA, and to make great offers vnto her, to the end that fhe should not kill her felfe, and going to see her in person, he did the like : but all his care little availed. For she being advertised, that he would send her to Rome, and would place her and her sonnes in his triumph, chose rather to dye, then that he should triumph ouer her: and some say, that she tooke poison which she had prouided for that purpose, wherewith she killed her selfe. Others (and this is the most common) that she put to her arme an Aspicque (which is a certaine kind of Serpent or venemous Adder) to the end that it should sting her, which was brought to her in a basket of flowers; fo as she was found dead without any signe of any blow or wound, but as though fhe had bin afleepe. Whereat OCTAVIAN was much grieued, not without great admiration at the valour and great mind of that woman, and commaunded her to be buried in the same Sepulchre wherein the had entombed her selfe, together with MARCUS ANTONIUS, with whom the had lived and raigned 14. yeares, the being 39. yeares old when the dyed, and MARCUS ANTONIVS 56. Or (after some) 53.

OCTAVIANVS cassly pardoned all those which had served or sent succour to MARCYS ANTONIVS, and also his children, which were seauen, by three women, FVLVIA, OCTAVIA fifter to OCTAVIANVS, and CLEOPATRA, fauing the eldest, which he commanded to be slaine, and the like he did by C E S ARION CLEOPATRAS sonne by Ivers CESAR, of whom we have alreadic made mention, the eldest (they say) he slue vpon particular displeasure which he conceiued against him, and C # s ARION, by the counsell of ARRIVs a Philosopher,

who told him that it would not do well to have many C & s AR s.

This matter touching Marcus Antonius being ended, and the kingdome of Egypt being made a tributarie prouince, he departed from thence, and afterwards passing through Syria and Asia the lesse, leaving all quiet and in peace; he passed into Gracia, and there doing the like, he came into Italy, where having ended all civill warres, and having the whole Empire subject to himselfe alone, he entred into Rome in triumph, with the greatest feasts and solemnities of the Senat and the people of all Italy, that could be deuised or imagined. It was granted vnto him to triumph three times to wit for the victorie in Illyricum, and for the victorie in his battaile by Sea, and the ouerthrow of Marcus Antonius, the conquest of the kingdome of Egypt and Queene CLEOPATRA, whose statue was placed in his triumph, with the Aspicques set to the veines of her armes.

And fo OCTAVIANVS throughlie finished the building and creeting of the Monarchie, which his Vncle Ivlivs Casak had began in diffounded, which (as it feemeth by Pavlvs Orosivs his computation). Econe yeares after the death of Ivlivs CESAR: And although that he observed it by meanes hardly instifiable, yet truly he afterwards governed a more instity and wifely, and was one of the best Princes that ever was in the world, gentle, mercifull, liberall, iuft, valorous, endued with many vertues and excellencies, most happie and fortunate in all his affaires, and beloued about mosfure of all the world.

As there was now no man to contend with OCTAVIANVS CESAR, and he so beloued of all men (as is aforefaid) the people and Senat of Rome gave him a

new name which before then was neuer heard of, Av G v s T v s; and so he was afterwards called C & SAR AV G V STVS: a name which they held for holie, venerable, of high maiestic, and which appertained to the gods and their temples. as we find it vsed by Cicero, Virgill, Ovid, and other authors; although that some deriue it from the verbe auges, in Latin, to increase, because that O c T A-VIAN enlarged and increased the Empire; and some others give it other derivations, but whether foeuer be the most certaine, it was given him for the most honorable name of all others: they also intituled him father of his countrey, and gaue him all other titles and names which they could deuise.

CESAR AVGVSTVS (for this name henceforth we will fometimes give him) feeing himfelfe now in fuch rest and without warre with any body in the world.

commaunded the temple of IANVs to be shut, which they religiously observed,

that during the warres it should stand open, and neuer had bin shut but twife

from the foundation of Rome, according to Titus Livius, Lucius Florus, How many PLVTARCH, and other Authors: one, in the time of NVMA POMPILIVS fe- times the cond King thereof; and the other after the end of the second Punick warres temple of lawhich they waged with Carthage, at what time as TITVS MANLIVS Was Conful. I know that some Authors set this shutting up of I AN us his temple by O c-TAVIAN to be a great while after, at the time of the birth of Christ our Saujour. But I in this place follow the authority of PAVLVS OROSIVS a christian Author, who yied great diligence and truth, and is of 1200, yeares antiquitie, who reckoneth that C As AR Av G v s T v s thut this temple three times, and that this was the first and I hold his opinion for certaine: for he is assisted by the authoritie of Tirvs Livivs, who in his first bookeaffirmeth, that Av gvs rvs did shut this temple after the warres with Antony: and Lycivs Florys and other Authors fet downe that this temple was shut after that. And hereby it appeareth that OCTAVIANVS CESAR did thut the temple of I ANVS more then once. and energy one sheweth his time when, and Pavlvs Orosivs all, which was thrife, fetting downe the time to euery one of them as he noteth, which is also drawne out of Svetonivs Tranqvillys, following the letter as Philip-PV & BEROALDV & followeth. I hauea defire to fet this downe here (although it Note the faylittle importeth) to the end that the varietie and difference which the reader shall ther. finde among the authors shall not offend him, and that he may know that I have an approved author whom I follow, although I name him not, if he shall finde ought written by me contrary to that which he hath read. O CTAVIANVS C #-

VELLEIVS PATERCYLYS speaking like a Gentile, doth so extoll his raigne, that he faith, that men could not defire or aske any thing of the gods, neither thinke nor imagine ought; neither could the gods give that to men, which O c-TAVIANYS CESAR Av GASTVS, after his victories and returne to Rome, did bring and give to the Romane people, and the whole Empire. Notwithstanding that this was then so esteemed (assignaturally defire libertie) yet in that so prosperous a time, some people and nations were so bold as to shake off the Romane

s AR living in this peace and tranquillitie, omitted no part of his care for the go-

uernment of the Romane Common-wealth and provinces thereof: creating

and fending thither Pretors, Proconfuls, and other gouernours, which were ex-

cellent men to rule and gouerne, and himselse gaue direction and was very dili-

gent in all things touching inflice, customes, religion and publike buildings : so

as in all things, his rate was most happie, peaceable and quiet, and so did it con-

tinue fo long as h

Romane voke, and to moleft and disquiet the Empire, as the Spaniards, the nations of Illyricum and the Pannonians. In Spaine the Cantabrians, which are the Alaucses and Biskains, the Asturians, and part of Gallicia, which were not onely discontented to obey, but passing their limits, began to make warre against the fubiccis to the Empire. OCTAVIANVS CESAR knowing this holding it to bea doubtful warre and of importance comanded (as faith PAVLVS OROSIVS) the Temple of Ianus to be opened, & determined to go thither himself in person, and to fend other captaines to follow the other wars. In the time of these wars, which were first, or last, the authors doe handle very confusedly, so as I cannot bring it to light: whereof it might be that seuerall of these things did concurre at one time. But O CTAVIANVS AVGVSTVS tooke his journey into Spaine, and began the warre with three armies against the people before named, which rebelled; which warre was very doubtfull and desperate, and lasted fine yeeres. In this time passed many conflicts; and although that C & s AR did oppresse the Cantabrians and Asturians, and draue them to the rockes and mountaines, yet they did so well defend themselues in them, that it behooved him before he could subdue them to raise a great Nauie in the coast of France, to inuade the Sea coast of Cantabria, Aflurias and Gallicia, at which time he draue the people of those countries to such extremities by land, that he compelled them to yeeld and fubmit themselues to his obedience: His great fauourite A GRIPPA, feruing him well and faithfully in all this warre (as in all the rest) whom he maried to his daughter Iv LIA, which at that time was the widow of his nephew MARCBLLVS, sonne to his fister O c-TAVIA, with whom she had been maried. And so C # s AR accomplished the full subjection of all Spaine, aboue two hundred yeeres after that the Romanes began to make their first warre therein: so as no province cost the Romanes more bloud, more toyle, and more time then Spaine. And this long and doubtfull conquest being finished (Paulus Orosius faith) that OCTAVIAN Esteemed the same so much that having established peace in Spaine, in signe thereof he againe commaunded the doores of Ianus his Temple to be shut, and himselfe came to Rome in great triumph. But this Temple continued not long that : for some Nations of the Germanes arofe & kepta stir (although at divers times) fo as the Temple was againe opened to make warre against them, which were the inhabitants of Noricum, which is now Banaria, and the Pannonies, which are Austrich and Hungary, as is aforefaid, and the two Missias which are Bulgaria and Seruia, and also Illyria cum which is Slauonia, although at another time tamed by him; and the province of Dacia, which now is Transiluania and Walachia, and some others also. Against all these Nations, the most happy Emperour C Es AR Avgvs Tvs sent his Captaines and armies, among which were his fonnes in law, fonnes of his wife L1-VIA, TIBERIVS NERO, who succeeded him in the Empire, and his brother DRVSIVS NERO, of whom LIVIA was with childe when Octavian maried her: and these two brothers (although the warre lasted what long) tamed those Nations, & obtained great victories in Germanic at confines thereof, especially Tirerivs (as Svetonivs writeth in his life and Pavlys Orosivs in his histories) who in three yeeres space subdued the Pannonies, Illyricum, and Dalmatia: for which victories, he afterward, entred into Rome in Quacian triumph, with great honour and folemnitie. An another Captaine whose name was Marcus Crassus (as Lucius Figures and Titus Livius report) ouercame and put the Missians to flight in there can e countrie, a nation which had neuer feene the Romanes; which (as LvcIvs FLORVs recordeth) being

readie to giue battaile, in manner of iustification, said to the Romane armie: Tell vs, who you are that feeke to grieue vs? Whereto they were answered: We be Romanes the Lords of Nations. Whereto they answered: It shall be so, if we be ouercome. And so they were afterwards, both they and those also which consoired with them. But O c TAVIAN had not these victories without some crosses: for in this warre died his fonne in law DR vs vs, who was highly extolled and effecmed for his great acts and victories, for whom he and the Empereffe Liviahis mother were very forie. But that was farre greater without comparison, which he conceined for the mishap which befell to QVINTILIVS VARRO, who being Captaine of three legions in Germany, and being retchlesse, was surprised by the Almaines, and himselfe and all the rest slaine, and two standards with the Imperiall Eagles taken: wherewith he was so excessively grieued, that they write, that he cried out very vnaduifedly, and knocked his head against the walles, saying, QVINTILIVS VARRO, giue me my legions againe. Of his fonne in law DRVsysthere remained two sonnes, called GERMANICUS and CLAUDIUS, which he had by Antonia, Octavian his necce & daughter of his fifter Octavia and of MARCUS ANTONIUS: of which, CLAUDIUS was Emperour: and this GERMANICUS Which maried with AGRIPPINA, daughter of Ivlia which was Octavians daughter, was father of Caivs Caligvia, who afterwards was also Emperour. But these losses confirmed the victories which his sonne in law TIBERIVS obtained: Wherefore OCTAVIAN maried him to his daughter Iv LIA, who was a widow by the death of A GRIPPA, causing him to put away A GRIPPINA the daughter of the same A GRIPPA, by his first mariage, to whom he was maried, and had by her one some named DRV svs: so as after many notable victories, and taming of sometime one nation, and somtime another, which were compelled to fue for peace, OCTAVIAN againe commaunded the Temple of Innui to be shut, and from thencefoorthall things succeeded vnto him most prosperously.

The subjects of the Empire were very obedient vnto him, and all others sent him ambaffades feeking his fauour and friendship, offering him their service: the Indians a people of the farthest part of the East, and also the Scythians which inhabite in the North, and the Parthians a people most fierce and vntamed, sent their Ambassadours to him, giving securitie to keepe the peace, and delivered the The greatnes of Standards and Eagles taken in the battaile, wherein MARCVS CRASSVS was Engineers. flaine. There came also Kings, friends and subjects to the Empire, to Rome, to doc him honour, as his familiar friends, laying afide their Enfignes and royall Robes; and many of them built cities to his name, for his honour, calling the Casarcas in

remébrance of him: fo did HER OD E in Palestina, & I VBA in Mauritania, & others. The world being in this quietnes and generall peace, fortie and two yeeres being fullie expired fince that OCTAVIAN, after the death of IVLIVS CEsan, came to Rome from which time is commonly accounted his Empire. In this peace and the of times was borne I ESVS CHRIST our Lord and Sauiour in Bethlem, of the holie wombe of our bleffed Ladie the Virgin Ma-RY; HERODE being King of Ierusalem, placed there by the Romanes (hee who flew the innocer hildren) comming to the world in humane forme and nature, to fauewas reduce mankinde with his bleffed death and paffion, whose most holie life. be offer and infinite miracles ought not to be mixed with prophane matters, and affectore I will not intermeddle to treate thereof. But returning to my purpole, I say, that OCTAVIAN enioying so great prosperitie





and qualities

and good fortune, was not altered in his naturall condition, as in other Princes it hath happened, but rather made more gentle, milde, iust, and affable, more curteous, more liberall and more temperate. He established wonderfull good orders and lawes, for the amending and reformation of abuses and cuill customes; he erected in Rome and without it, great and fumptuous edifices, and bestowed great liberalitie and fauours vpon all forts of people : he reioyced the people with fealts and playes in fundrie manners, going himfelfe in person thereto, and sent Colonies and inhabitants to fundrie parts and prouinces: he made an excellent and fingular good order for the gouernment and gouernours of the whole Empire. The like hee did for the warre and martiall discipline; he shewed himselfe plaine and sociable to his familiars and friends, and honoured and loued them much Some conspiracies which were discovered against him, he punished without rigour, giving more pardon then punishment and correction. Of murmurings and defamatorie libels he neuer fought nor defired to know the authors, but with great grauitie answered, giving satisfaction, and purging himselfe of those things which were imputed vnto him. He was much given and affected to letters and learning, and was very learned and eloquent, and compiled bookes and notables workes: He did much honour and reward the wife and learned men of his time, wherein were many very notable in all Artes. But for all these vertues and perfections, and other which for breuitie I write not, yet he escaped not to be noted of some vices, caused through humane weakenes and great libertie, principally to be much given to women, although that in eating, drinking, in his apparell and ornaments, he was very decent and temperate: he gaue himfelfe alfo excessively to play at dice, and other games then accustomed. But Sveronivs faith, that the most part thereof was vpon ceremonious and festivall daies, which ought well to be noted for a shame and example to our time, wherein Christianitic is professed. For that is accounted by many for brauerie and valour, which to O CTAVIAN being an Heathen and vnbeleeuing Prince, was noted and imputed for vice. Wherewith to conclude and make an end of his historie, as is reason, I fay, that although that in many things hee was happie and fortunate, yet befides all his troubles and daungers, he was vnhappie and infortunate in his children and fuccession: for by foure wines, with which he was maried, onely by Scalbo-NIA, which was histhird wife, he had one daughter named Ivila; and yet this one scarcely proued honest of her bodie: so as for want of sons to succeed him he first adopted for his sonne, his nephew MARCHLLVS, his fister OCTAVIAS son aforenamed, with whom he first maried this his daughter Iv LIA: and MARCEL-LV s dying without iffue, he maried her to his fauourite A GRIPP A, who also left her a widow, as is aboue faid: but he left by her three sonnes, and two daughters, the daughters prouing no honester then their mother, and two of his sonnes died in Octavians time, having bin first by him adopted. Wherefore desiring to ouercome the ill lucke which he had herein, headopted the third, who was called A GRIPPA as his father was, the which adoption thereward renoked for some displeasure conceived against him, and taking this case for his succession, headopted and made his sonne in law Tiberivs Nero, his sonne, whom, as is aforesaid, he married to his daughter Ivia, who is sone in the widow. But hee commaunded Tiberivs Nero, and the control him, that he (notwithstanding that he had a son called the ways and the last of adopthis Nephew Germanic vs sonne of his brother ways, who, as is aforesaid, died

in Germanie, because he had married his neece AGRIPPINA the daughter of

IV LIA: and by this meanes came TIBERIVS to be OCTAVIANVS his successor, more through the diligence of his mother then any good liking that his father in law had to him; who rather was, and feemed to be very forrie, that he should succeede him.

And things standing in this state, OCTAVIAN being now seventie and fixe veeres old and odde dayes, and having raigned aboue fiftic and fixe yeeres, and being the best beloued and most obeyed prince, that euer was in the world, death ouertooke him: the cause thereof was a flux which held him for certaine dayes, The death of whereof in the end he died in the citie of Nola (whither he came ficke from Not Cefar Augustus) ples) a quiet and peacefull death in the fifteenth yeere after the birth of Christ our redeemer. His death was generally lamented, and there was an universall forrow and heauines ouer all the whole Empire for him: for he happened wifely and verightly to gouerne that, which by force and cunning he had gotten. Oc- ottawian his TAVIAN was of a meane stature, and of avery good shape and proportion of his proportion of body, exceedingly faire of gesture mixed with honestic and grauitie, his eyes were exceeding cleere and bright, he was very aduited, and loued to speake quicke and briefly.

### THE LIFE OF EMPEROR TIBERIVS



HE ARGVMENT.

Fter the no oper sultrus, succeeded his some in law the wicked Tiberius Nero, who was the knew low to dissemble and faine to love those well which he bated but the first the loned. He fained himselfe unwilling to accept of the Empire, Out the miles accept of the Empire, Out the miles and whereas before this the Empire, We. Mr. NYCS arena and woo ou comme afterward so disorderly and dignitie, he was vil 9 orderly and prudent, he became afterward so disorderly and dignitie, he was vil 9 orderly and prudent he was the same died belia Christ and Iohin Bapfuch a drunkard, that he was called in scorne Biberjiu. In his time died lesie Christ and Tohn Baptist in legusalem, he caused Germanicue a great Captaine to be slame, although be made shew to Agrippa to be very forie for it. He subdued many presinces which rebelled against the Romane Empire, and was no telle cruell then libidinous, and of thefe three vices (to wit) cruelsie, incomtinencie, and elustonic, it is hard to far, which was least He ruled the Empire foure and twentie recres, and was no great enemie to Christians : and proponed in the Senate whether Christ should be accepted for a God or no, whereto the Senate confented not . Finally he died through the treafon of Caligula, whom he had nominated his successor, being sewentie and eight yeeres eld : which be did, as it was thought, to the end that Caligula his vices Bouldmake his to seems lesser, who was so wicked and cruell, that he wished that the world might end at his death.



Fter the excellent and good Emperor Octavian fucceeded his sonne in law, and adopted son the wicked and peruerse TIBERIVS NERO, unworthy truly of his fuccession and of the Empire: for he was one of the most cruelland wicked men that euer was in the world: notwithstanding that in OCTAVIAN his time, in Germanie and in other parts he did many great and notable feats in armes. In the beginning of his Empire he made shew of a good prince, and did many good deedes, but afterwards (as this was but fained) he discouered his malice,

and gouerned cruelly, couetoufly, and dishonestly. This TIBERIVE (as I have aboue faid) was the sonne of Tiberivs Nero and Livia his wife, which OCTAVIAN afterwards tooke to wife, of both fides descended of the auncient family of the CLAYDII, whose grandfather by his fathers side was TIBERIYS The linege and CLAVDIVS NERO; and by his mothers fide hee descended from Applys CLAVDIVS PVICHER, and by adoption helikewise descended from the LIVIL an excellent family, although but Plebeian, for Confulthips, centures, and triumphs. He was of a tall and strong body, and had a large brest and broade shoulders, whereto all parts of his body were answerable: he had a faire face and great eyes, and so cleere, that they affirme a strange thing of him, which is, that awaking by darke in the night, for a good space he cleerely saw the place wherein he lay, and althat therein was, aswel as though he had had a light. He was a man of great strength, and had the vie of both his hands alike; whereas commonly every man vieth the right hand with greater dexteritie then the left, and had fo great ftrengthin his fingers, that with a fillip he would (as often as he lifted) breake a pages, or a yong mans head, as Svetonivs reporteth. He was very learned both in Greeke and Latin, and principally delighted in poefic, and made many verses in both tongues, which truely was ill employed in him, seeing he so little profited thereby. When OCTAVIVE AVGVSTVS fellficke, TIBERIVE WAS gone towards the prouince of Illyricum or Slauonia, and his mother LIVIA feeing that his ficknes encreased, sent in great haste for him, and he happily arrived at the citie of Nola, CESAR AVGVSTVS beingeuen neere his end, but yet in such time as he could speake, and (as Svetonivs reporteth) conferred with him a great while in secret: Although Cornelivs Tacite faith, that it is not certainely knowne whether he found him aliue at his comming or no; for his mother the Emperesse had set somany gards that the death of Octavian was not knowne, untill that all had agreed and confented that it signatures should rule, and succeedehim. And at that time was AGRIM her optice OCTAVIAN, and some of his daughter Ivlia, by Acar profit and substand slaine by the hand of a Tribune, who had him in keep as it was thought) by the commaundement of his father in law TIBERIVE, and by the counfell of his



mother LIVIA to the end that hee should bee assured of the succession. In Rome libertie now was fo forgotten, and the Monarchie was fo established by custome of so many yeeres continuance, under the raigne of O & TAVIANVS, that notwithstanding that there were Consuls, Pretors, Tribunes, and other names of dignitie and magistracie; yet there was in a manner no man in Rome that did remember and vnderstand the manner of the old gouernment, which was before that IVLIVS CESAR suppressed the Common-wealth; and the death of OCTAVIAN being knowne, there was no man that durst to name or to speake of libertie, but so soone as TIBERIVS came to Rome, to him was prefently given the government and administration of the Commonwealth. And he was the first Emperor that did quietly and peaceably inherit the Empire, so as he needed not to make a conquest thereof, as IVLIVS CESAR and OCTAVIAN had done. And although that before that he would accept thereof. he caused himselfe to be much entreated, and made great shew to have no defire to the Empire, yet afterwards it was plainely perceived, that he did but faine it. to the end to know every mans good will towards him: For to all those which yeelded to accept of his excuses, and did not importune him, he bare a perpetuall hatred, for although that one way he excused himselfe, yet in many other things he began to vse the authoritie of an Emperor, taking a guarde, and mustering the armies, as Emperor.

Hauing accepted and received the Empire, there were some occasions offered him, which put him in great feare and heauines: the first was, that the armies in Pannonia or Hungarie, mutined, and revolted from Ivilvs Biesvs their captaine, a captaine called Percentus being principall of this revolt, and they fent to require many excessive things: against which TIBERIVS sent his son Davsvs whom he had by A GRIPPINA, with whom he was married before he married IVLIA. It happened also that the legions which were by the rivers side of the Rhine, as the custome was, did the like, through the absence of GERMANICUS their captaine before named, TIBERIVS his adopted sonne and Nephew: And those of Pannonia were not onely not contented with the paies and exemptions which they required, but they prefumed to chuse a new Emperor against TIBERIVE nominating their captaine GERMANICVS, who (as is before faid) was TIBE-RIVS his Nephew and adopted sonne, and preferred before his naturall sonne, by the commaundement of OCTAVIAN. But GERMANICVS was fo loyall, that when these newes were brought vnto him, he not onely refused their offer, but with great danger and hazard of his life, and with much trouble pacified those

alterations.

TIBERIVS was another way affaulted: for he was advertised that one Lyciys Scribo NIVs a principall man, and one which bare great fway in the commonwealth, had some secret practises against him: but he freed himselfe from all these matters, and they were redressed, although not without great difficultie. For his fon Davs v s on one fide (after some treaties) brought the legions of Pannonia to his obedience and didiustice on Percentys. And Germanicys (as Isaid) after some great matters (which CORNELINS TACITYS reciteth at large) made those of German obey: and not therewith content, he passed the river of Rhine (which commend by was the bounds of the Romane Empire on that part) and made war will adverse court are of Germanie, in good order and with good successe. While these matters were a doing, & for some space after, Tiberry's did cloake and what go at conceale his accurfed inclination and vices; and (as I faide in the beginning) per- the beginning.

formed many partes of a good, discreete and gentle prince, wherewith he deceiued the people, especially those which did not particularly know him; whereof (although they be recited before their time) it shall not be amisse to set downer fome, to the end that (as of a venemous beaft) that which is profitable and medicinall, may be taken. First, many of the names and titles of honor which were offeredhim by the Senate, and other honors and ceremonies, he refused, and would not confent that they flould erect or builde vnto him any temples; and forbad them to fet up his statues and images without his expresse commaundement; and if at sometime he did permit it, it was upon condition that they should not place it among the images of the Gods.

He seemed also to gricue to heare himselfe praised, crossing and interrupting them in speeches which did it. One, in a discourse called him Lord, whom he commaunded to vie that word no more: but infolencie and prefumption fince that time hath so encreased, that that which at that time seemed pride in an Emperor, there is now none, be he neuer so base, but presumeth that he deserueth the same. The like discretion did TINERIVS siew in other words, which were also proper to the gods, and the things to them appertaining. He fained also patience and meekenes: for although that in the Senate there passed some matters contrarie to his will and opinion, and that in other affaires they gainefaid him, yet he seemed not any way to be displeased or offended therewith. And vnderstanding that some spake ill of him, and murmuring, vsed injurious speeches against him, he shewed no discontentment or alteration thereat: but said, that in a free citie, mens tongues ought to be free, and men might lawfully speake freely. And whereas the Senate would have exhibited an information, and have proceeded against those which had written defamatorie libelles against him, he would not consent thereto, saying, that he had not so little to doe, as to lose somuch time about such matters: affirming that he would doe nothing against them which spake ill of him, but trouble them with keeping account of what he said and dide and if that were not sufficient, it should satisfie him, to love them as little as they loued him.

In the beginning Tiberivs bare great reuerence vnto the Senate, and gaue them so great power and authoritie in all things that hee did nothing without their counsell, willing that all should be done by their aduise and consent. In execution of inflice and gouernment he made many good beginnings, taking care, and order that there should be no theeues nor robbers by the high wayes fide in all Italie, but that men might trauel in safetie: and that iustice should be executed in townes and villages. The enfignes and pretorian cohorts which in Rome were the Emperors guarde (to ease the citizens of their guestes and other troubles) he made to encampe and lodge themselves without the citie in the fields, where they should continue and abide: which although that then it seemed profitable, yet afterwards it bred great inconvenience and domage. By these aforesaid meanes, he not onely cloked and couered his crueltie, pride and ambition, but he was so double and false, that but even his avarice and coverousnes, (which of all other seemeth to be the most apparant passion) and his incontinencie and dishonestie, he knew so well for a time to maske and dissemble, shew-Thespeeches of ing himselfe to be no way couctous: So as when some governors of provinces gaue him to vnderstand of meanes how to encrease his rents & reuenues, he anfwered, that a good shepheard ought to sheare his flock, but not pill them: and so he diminished certaine tributes, and shewed fauours to certaine particular per-

The pretorian Coliorts were the Emperors euarde. The fained vertues of Tiberius.

a good pastor, and the minde of aV Valle.

TIBERIVS.

fons. His dishonestie he fought to couer, by ordaining a publike informer against dishonest and adulterous Matrones of Rome, which he did (as it afterwards appeared) to the end that there should be no other adulterer but himselfe. He did other fuch like things (which for breuitie I omit) which seemed to grow from a good roote and meaning: but it failed in the end for he fauned to bite, and drew back, to come againe with the greater force: As we will hereafter declare in part, for the whole cannot be related, as it was neither spoken for the filthines thereof, which is the occasion that that order and stile cannot be observed as behooveth: for certainly the disorderly and obscure liues cannot be cleerely and orderly written. And befides this, the difference and crueltie which heeveed to his wife Ivlia, forgetting that by her, as for her downe, he enjoyed the Romane Empire : for hee neuer lived nor kept companie with her after the death of OCTAVIAN.

One of the first fignes that he shewed of an euill Prince and gouernour, was, that notwithstanding that there came great complaints against the Proconsuls, Pretors, and Prefects, placed in Provinces, yet hee would not remove them, nor alter them: which was against the order and custome of Rome and his predecesfor Octavian; which some attributed to his negligence and carelesnes; others judged it to be of malice, and ill disposition, to the end that many men should not enioy the honour and profit which grew in such charges. He began after this to enuie and to beare hatred against GERMANICVs, because hee was preferred before his sonne DRVSVS, and it grieued him to see his good successe in the warres of Germanie. Wherefore to finde occasion to remooue him from that charge he diffemblingly caused the triumph to be granted vnto him, for the victories which he had obtained, and wrote to him many times to come to triumph : but GER-MANIE vs vnderstanding his euill intent deferred his comming. It happened in a while after that the King of the Parthians arofe, and made warre against the Romane Empire, breaking the peace established in the time of Octavian, entring into the pronince of Armenia, the King whereof was fet there by the Romanes: wherewith TIBERIVS was nothing displcased, thereby to haue the better occafion to draw Germanic vs from his captainship and gouernment of Germanie, vnder colour to fend him to the warres of the Parthians, as he did. And fo GER-MANICUS being fent for, came for this purpose, having within few daies before wonnea great battaile, and flaine tenne thousand of his enemies, and entred into Rome in a folemne triumph, and (as CORNELIVS TACITYS reporteth) hee brought thither with him the enfignes which QVINTILIVS VARRO had loft, and presently began to prepare for the warre against the Parthians.

A little before Germanic vs his triumph, there arose a man in Italie, who named himselfe to be A GRIPPA, nephew to OCT AVIAN (Whom we have said to be flaine by TIBERIVS his order) to whom it seemed of some importance, and much loofe and seditious people joyned with him, which caused a great tumult in Italie, this man alleaging that he ought to be Emperour, and not TIBERIVS: But as he had a weake foundation, so was he soone ouerthrowne, taken prisoner, and brought to Tiberivs, and finally was executed, although fecretly. And euen about the same time TIBERIV's committed a notable great wrong and crueltie: for hauing with gracious and amorous words allured ARCHELAVS King of Cappadocia to come to Rome (who was a friend and vassall to the Romane Empire) for fained and vniust causes he made him to be accused and apprehended, Cappadoria and afterwards to die in prison, and his countrie was made a tributarie prouince. mide appa-In the like manner he dealt with many Princes and great men of Spaine, France,

Gracia, and other parts. Also the iourney which TIBERIVS commaunded to be made against the Parthians, was much hastened by reason of the death of ANTIOCHYS King of Comagena, and PHILOPATER King of Cilicia in Asia, vassato the Empire: by meanes of whose death some alterations arose in those prounces; for some would have a King, and others would be governed by the Empire.

pire. GERMANICY s being in a readines for his iourney into the East (as hee was commaunded) departed from Rome, carying his wife AGRIPPINA and his children with him : betweene whom and LIVIA the mother of TIBERIVS was great enuie and emulation. There was also at this time great controuersie and parts-taking, both in words and liking, in TIBERIVS his Court; fome taking part with GERMANICV s, who (as before is faid) was his adopted sonne and nephew: others held of DRVSVS his sonne legitimate. TIBERIVS and his mother LIVIA euer fought to aduaunce the reputation of DRVSVS, and in secret to disgrace GERMANICVS: for which occasion he gaue the charge of all the legions of Illyricum to his sonne DRVSVS. And to the end, that GERMANICVS should not be too mightie in the East whither he went he made GNEVs PISO captaine of the prouince and legions of Syria (who was a mighty man, and in Rome greatly allied, and of a great house) because he held with DRVSVS, and disposses CRETICVS SYLLANVS of that charge, for that he was a frend to GERMANICVS. This PISO was married to a Romane Matrone called PLACINA, of the same condition, but of an hautier heart then her husband; to the which husband and wife the Emperour TIBBRIVS and his mother LIVIA gaue in charge, to stirre vp and procure hatred and enmitie against GERMANICVS; yea and his death also: as it after appeared. And with this determination they departed from Rome towards the East, where P 150 prefently, with gifts and flatterie, began to draw to himselfe the lone and good will of the armie against GERMANICVS, and to murmure and speake ill of him: who, while as P15 o practifed these things, tooke so good order in the warreand gouernment, that hee placed a King in the prouince of Armenia, who was a friend and fubicat to the Romanes; and the kingdomes of Comagena and Cilicia being voide by the death of their Kings, he reduced into provinces, and placed in them Pretors and gouernors. In Comagena QVINCIVS SERVIVS, and in Cilicia QVINTVS VERANIVS; moderating in them both the royall subsidies and tributes. And after this he tooke so good order, that hee compelled the King of the Parthians to fue for peace and friendship: which hee graunted and concluded, to the honour of the Empire. And while as he was busied about these things, P 1 5 0 and his wife neuer left to murmure against him, and to blaspheme him openly: which he diffembled knowing from whence it did proceed. And having made an end with the Parthians, hee departed from thence to visit the province of Egypt: and in his absence (although it were not long) his competitor Preso plotted fuch matters against him, that when he vnderstood of his returne. he departed out of that province. But as he had plotted and practifed his death, he went not farre off, but remained some daies in an Iland: in which time, GER-MANICUS comming on his way, was poyloned by the practife of Piso, but by the direction and counsell of Tiberivs (as it was thought) wherewith he dyed fuddenly, leaving behind him fonnes and daughters; among which was one named CAIVS CALIGVLA, who was afterwards Emperour. For which cause it hath been very expedient to 24ce fo much mention of his father GERMANIcvs, who if he had lived had big Emparour and successor to TIBERIVS.

The excellent Captaine GERMANICUS being dead in such manner, as is aboue faid, his wife A GRIPPINA came to Rome with her children, and brought with her the ashes of her deceased husband. The Emperour TIBERIVS made shew of great forrow (although fained) for the death of GERMANIC VS: the like did Livia and her some DRvsvs, who then was come to Rome, who in truth was very glad thereof: for by the death of GERMANICVS he did affuredly hope to succeede in the Empire. But true and vnfained was the forrow which all the people of Rome conceived for the death of GERMANICYS, and great were the fauours and loue which they shewed to A GRIPPINA and her children: and great was the enmittie and hatred they bare against P1 s o, whom they openly charged to haue murdered him; who prefuming on TIBERIVs his fauour (being altogether shamelesse) came to Rome, where, in the behalfe of A GRIPPINA and her friends, he was accused for the aforesaid murder. Which TIBERIVS dissembling, (as one who was not to loue him any better then the rest) he was driven to such a plunge in the acculation, that before that the matter was determined, hee was found dead in his bed (as it was thought) by his owne hands : although (as CORNELIVS TACITY'S faith ) it was never certainly knowner but there were many opinions cocerning the same. Who also writeth that a mighty man named TAFARINAS rose in Africa in the province of Numidia; and levying great forces, ouerthrew certaine Komane cohorts, thinking to have been able to possesse the countrie : against whom went the Proconsul Lycivs Astronic's with an armie: and comming to a battaile he ouercame and put them to flight, to their great domage and losse. Which (as it seemeth) happened in the seuenth yeere of the raigne of TIBERIV scalthough afterwards the same TAFARINAS was againe ouerthrowne, by the Proconful BLESVS, in a second rebellion. The next yeere following, the Emperour TIBERIVS made himselfe to be cho-

fen Conful, and his sonne DR vs vs for his companion, as at other times hee had done: and faining that it behooved him for his health, he went foorth of Rome, to the end to ground and establish DRVSVS in the government of the Empires for of his brother CLAVDIVS vntill then he made small account: but God disposed of all in another manner. In the same yeere many cities in France rebelled, being vnable to endure the intolerable tributes and extortions which TIBERIVS anew imposed vpon the. The captaines & mouers of this rebellion, were two hardy men, the one called FLORVS, and the other SACROBIS, which did so much trouble the countrey, that they put Rome it selfe in great seare, a great deale being there reported more then was true. But this did nothing trouble TIBERIVS: 10 much had hee forgotten all vertue and goodnes, giving himselfe wholy over to vice and sensualitie in his old age. But CAIVS SILIVS, who was Captaine of those parts, did soone represse the troubles of France, who with his legions came against those which rebelled, and ouerthrew and put them to flight in a battaile, and flew a great number of them: and so he pacified that countrey, and his sonne DR vsvs did principally employ himselse in the gouernment. TIBERIVS pasfing the most part of the time in Campania, betweene whom and his mother L1vi abegan some secrét (which grew to publike) quarrels and enmities, he being very vnreuerent and vndutifull; and the much discontented with his manner of government, and chiefly for the private familiaritie betweene him and ELIVS SEIANYS, whom he favoured so much that he made him captaine of the Pretorian cohorts, and gaue him many other dignitice wind finally made him fo great, that he prefumed to contend with his forme D of svs, and his prefumption was

ne

fuch, that by wicked practifes and deuices, he allured to his dishonest lust the wife of the faid DRVSVS, daughter in law to TIBERINS, whose name was LIVIA daughter of GERMANICUS. And committing this adulterie (with a conceir to succeed in the steed of DRVSVS) he practised his death, and found meanes for an Eunuch his servant, to poyson him: which tooke effect, and D R v s v s died thereof and left one fonne named TIBERIVS, as his grandfather, and it was not then knowne who was the cause of his death. Whereof arose great murmuring in Rome, although it little grieued the greatest part: for they deemed that G = R-MANICVS his three fonnes should have succeeded in his place, which they much loued for their fathers fake, whose names were CLAVDIVS NERO, CAIVS CA-LIGVLA, and DRVSVS. This happened in the ninth yeere of the raigne of Ti-BERIVS, which was the manifest beginning of his misfortunes: we may fay the like of the Common-wealth; for from that time forwards, all his actions and purposes had ill successe, and his detestable vices discouered themselves, and the subiects endured infinit cruelties, robberies, outrages and oppressions: as also in this same yeere, TAFARINAS againe rebelled in Africa, who in his last rebellion escaped by flight: and having levied much people, in the end was the third time ouerthrowne in battaile, and wholy defeated by PVBLIVS DOLABELLA the

In Rome the wicked SEIANVS (TIBERIVS his favorite) although that at the beginning he made shew publikely to favour Germanicvs his sonnes, which (as it hathbeen faid, and it was thought) should have been TIBERIVS his fuccessors: But afterwards all his studie and practise was to abase and ruinate them, and to that end, procured falle acculations and suspitions to be fowne against all such as tooke their, or AGRIPPINA their mothers part. And to bring this and other his wicked deuises to effect, he procured Tiberive to returne from Rome whither he was come: who following the others counfell, as well for this, as the more freely to give himselfe to his detestable vices, went into the Ile of Capra, which lieth vpon the coast of Naples, where he remained for a time, and being returned into Italie, making his progresse into divers places, never came any more to Rome, neither in the rest of his life is there any more to be spoken, but of his vices and cruelties, whereof in some we will make some briefe relation. Before which it is requifit that all men know, that during this peregrination of

the Emperor TIBERIVS in the eighteenth yeere of his raigne, our Lord and The paffion of Sauiour Icfus Christtrue God and man suffered his death and passion, Pontivs Christ our redeemer. Lesephus in bis antiquities in bis 15.16.17. and 18.bookes and in his first and second of the warres of the Lewes. Saint Icrom vp on the fecond chapter of S. Matthew.

Proconful.

The Herodes bow many they Herodes Alcalonita. Saint Mathew the fecond chapter, z.

PILATE being president or governor of Ierusalem in the province of Indea. And to the end that it may be the better knowne and vnderstoode how PILATE came to concur with one of the HERODES, and how many there were of the HERODES, of whom mention is made in the holy Scriptures, which is a matter whereof some haue made a doubt, in few words I will here set downe: which was in this manner, as the euangelist testifieth, and as out of Saint I aro m and IOSEPHVS it is gathered. HERODE the great sonne of ANTIPATER, who was called HERODE ASCALONITA, was placed there by the Romanes, and having raigned many yeeres, was the same to whom the three Kings came from the East guided by a Starre, and he who murthered so many innocent children, and some of his owne children also, when Christ was borne; who within short space after died, and by his death his fonne, whose name was ARCHELAVS, had the kingdomes of Iudea, and of Idumeas, and to his saher two fons (for the other three died before their father) were giving straine strarchies, whereof to this HERODE ANTIPAS

ANTIPAS (which was one of them) was allotted the Tetrarchie of Galile, and by this meanes he is called Tetrarch; and this was he which put Saint IOHN BAP-TIST to death, and he, to whom PILATE fent Christ, who disdained him. And to PHILLIP his other sonne was given the Tetrarchie of Trachonitis, and the other brother, who (as I faid) had the title of a King, was accused to OCTAVIAN, and by him depriued and banished into France, to the citie of Vienna, by meanes whereof PILATE was fent to gouerne that prouince; and by this meanes it happenedthat Chirst died in the time of PILATE and of HERODE ANTIPAS Herodes An the Tetrarch, from whom the Tetrarchie afterwards was also taken by CAIVS Saint Linke CALIGULA, and he died banished in Lions in France, and his Nephew the sonne chapter 2. of his brother ARISTORVLVS, which was one of the three which their father

flew in his life time. And HERODE AGRIPPA was hee, to whom CAIVS Herodes Agri CALIGVIA restored the kingdome of Iudea. And afterwards the Emperor pa. CLAVDIV'S gaue the Tetrarchie of Galile to his Vncle: and this was he who put Saint IAMES to death, who beginning to perfecute the Apostles, died striken by The atls of the an Angell, as Saint LVEB beareth record. Christ being put to death by the sentence of PILATE, and he knowing afterchap. 12. wards that Christ was risen againe, by the report of those which he himselfe had fet to watch his bodie, and being also informed of the many miracles which he

did in his lifetime (notwithstanding that he was an idolator and a wicked judge, and had adjudged him to die) yet Tertyllian and Evseelvs in his ecclefiasticall historie, and PAVLY'S OROSIVS in his seuenth booke, most ancient Pilate made and true authors, doe record, that by his letters, he aduertifed the Emperor TIBE. relation of the R IVS thereof, to the end that he should consider and determine, whether Christ Evrist wrought should be held for a God or no; and TIBERIVS sent to the Senate to consult to the Emperor thereof, he giving his opinion that he ought to be so: but the Senators, as the diuels schollers, counselled TIBERIVS that he should not doe it. Which (as these authors affirme) was because that he had not first made the Senate acquainted therewith, which pretended by an auncient law which they had, to have the superintendence in all matters of religion: yet TIBERIVS notwithstanding that

the Senate consented not to his opinion, commaunded that the christians should

be free from persecution; but he neither embraced the faith of Christ as he

ought, neither left his sinne and vices.

First he gaue himselfe to his old vice of excessive gluttonie and drunkennes. for which cause from his youth (in steede of TIBERIVS NERO) they called him BIBERIVS MERO, which fignifieth a drinker of the best: and even in this his old age, he hath been often knowne to fit all a whole night, and part of the day, at a banket, giuing gifts and rewards to fuch as dranke moft, and in fauour thereof he instituted a new office and magistracie, as maister of delights and sports. After this, his chiefest busines was in abominable luxury and incontinencie, which was fuch and so abominable that christian eares can hardly endure the hearing thereof, nor christian hand write the same, wherefore I will passe

it ouer in filence. Let this fuffice, that it was horrible and detestable, and not contented to commit it himselfe, he induced and drew others thereto, and gaue iewels and rewards to those which invented and committed most filthines. And this wicked old Emperor, perseuering in his libidinous sinne, forgot not his crueltie and couetouines, whereto he was no lesse addicted: for hee encreased his fubfidies and tributes in fuch manecie) that the provinces became ruinate and defolate; and committed many o BERIVSTIC of the like qualitie.

As for his crueltie, all the examples cannot be repeated, they did so exceede: for he condemned the most principall and best men in Rome to death, and confiscated their goods, for very light causes, and most of them forged. One he put iustly to death, and with much reason caused him to be slaine, which was his great fauorite SEIANVS, for many finnes which he had learned of him (as DION COCEIVS recordeth:) but for the rest, it is a matter ridiculous, and otherwise lamentable, for what causes they were accused and condemned. One he caused to be flaine, because that commending BRVTVs and CASSIVS, he said, that they were the last Romanes: another he caused to be slaine, because that in a tragedie which he had compiled, he spake ill of AGAMEMNON: another Romane Knight he commaunded to be flaine, because that in a garden he had taken yp a Capon: and for other fuch like matters as these, he made to beslaine fixteenc, of twentie noble old men; which he had chosen for his counsellors. And he forbare not to execute these cruelties vpon his allies and kinsfolkes: for besides that which is alreadie said, he commaunded his Nephew GERMANICVS to be flaine, and afterwards the three fonnes which he left, feeing them to growe in estimation; the two elder of them he caused to be accused by false witnesses, and he himselse wrote such things to Rome against them, that in the end they were condemned to death, the one of them desperatly killed himselfe, and he caused the other to pine to death with hunger, as SVETONIVS reportteh. It was a maruell that he had not done the like by the third, whose name was CAIVS CALI-GVLA, and by their Vncle CLAVDIVS: but it is to be beleeved that he would have done it, if he had lived a while longer. These executions hee thus commaunded to be done, to the end that his crueltie might attaine to the highest degree, which were not ordinarie: for before their death, they paffed hunger, torments, and differees, to qualifie them. Finally, to conclude, they were fo many and so fearefull, that many which were condemned, flew themselues, some with poylon, and some with yron, for feare; for TIBERIVS did execute his furie with fuch crueltie, that he accounted it a deede of charitie, to put them to an ordinarie kinde of death: fo as for that one killed himfelfe before that he could execute his rage you him, he cryed out aloud, oh how hath CORNELIV'S escaped me: for fo was that mans name: and to another, which entreated him that he would not deferre his death, TIBERIVS answered, I am not so much thy friend, as to doe fo. And employing himselfe in these deuilish exercises, wherein he perseuered euen vntill his death; ARTABANV & King of the Parthians, breaking the peace and league which he had contracted with GERMANICVS, was so bold as to enter into the province of Armenia, and the limits of the Empire, and also the Sarmates inuaded the provinces for which TIBERIVS tooke no care neither levied any new armie; but they defended themselves with their ordinarie legions and armies the best that they could.

Now, for a finuch as in many places of this historie, mention is made of legions and armies, which the Romanes ordinarily held in their prouinces, in time both of peace and warre. I hold it fit to declare what they were, for the better vnderstanding of what is alreadie, and shall be said hereafter. Which is a great argument, to confider how great the wealth and power of the Romanes was : and although that some authors doe treate thereof. I will onely set downe what CORNELIUS TACITUS writeth in the fourth booke of his histories, an historiographer of great authoritie. He first said that in the two seas, of the one, and other fide of Italie, to wit, in the Adriasida trana, now the gulfe of Venice; and

in the Sicilian fea called Mediterranean, they maintained two great nauies of Nauies and gallies and shippes for their guarde and securitie, and for the safe passage of Mer-siette maintain chants, and such other necessarie occasions as were offered. Another great natic manes in such they maintained upon the coast of France, betweene Spaine and Italie; besides drie places and thosewhich they had in a readines and caused to be builded, when any occasion promners. of warre was offered. Their armies by land were divided in manner following: vpon the Rhines side in the coast of France, they held eight legions, to keepe those countries which they possessed in Germanie, and to resist the Germanes and other northerly nations, and these ordinarily were the most experienced and best souldiers: And although that the number of a legion did chaunce to encrease and diminish vpon diuers occasions, yet the ordinarie in the time of the Emperors was (after VEGETIVS and MODESTVS) that every legion should containe Alegion of fixe thousand and one hundred footemen, and seuen hundred twentie and sixe box many horsemen. Of these share hald in Origins these and invited in the state of the share and invited in the state of the state of the share and invited in the state of the share and invited in the state of the state horsemen. Of these they held in Spaine, three ordinarie legions; and in Africa, in it consisted the prouince of Carthage, two; and in Mauritania one; and two for the guarde of the kingdome of Egypt, and in the provinces of Mesopotamia and Syria (to wit) in the lands contained betweene the Syrian fea, the furthest end of the Leuant fea and the river Euphrases, which was (for along time) the bound of the Romane Empire, they held foure legions. And heere in Europe (besides those which I haue alreadie named) they had other fixe legions, in this manner: in Austrich and Hungarie they had two ; and in Seruia and Bulgaria, as many ; and other two in Slauonia, and neere vnto the citie of Rome, were alwayes lodged twelue Cohorts, nine of which were called Pretorian, and the other three Vrbanes, which by Pretorian and the other three Vrbanes, which by Vrbanesborts. turnedid guarde the Emperors palace. Of all these Cohorts (according to the same authors) the first and most principall of them contained one thousand, one hundred and fine footemen, and one hundred and thirtie two horsemen; and the others equally each of them fine hundred and fiftie footemen, and threescore and fixe horfemen. Befides all which, they also had in divers cities and provinces, companies of horsemen, which were friends and subjects to the Empire; and also other companies of footemen, which were called Auxiliaries, which were not Auxiliarie fortrained after the Romane order and discipline: so as they continually held and 60% paied fine and twentie legions, besides those which were payed by their friends. And this was in time of peace, for the authoritie and guarde of the Empire; for

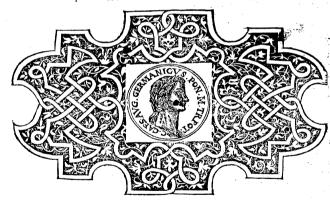
armies, and encreased the number of their legions. With the force of these great garrisons the Romane Empire maintained and defended it selfe, notwithstanding the want of care and diligence in the Emperors, as in Tireriv s, of whom we now discourse, who (as is faid) spent the rest of his life vntill his death in diuellish exercises, which being much wished for by all the world, ouertooke him in a house of pleasure neere to Naples, having raigned twentie and three yeeres Emperor, in the seucntie and eight yeere of his age, and thirtie and nine yeeres after the brith of Christ. In what manner he died, the authors agree not, for fome fay that hee was poyfoned, by his Nephew and successor CAIVS CALIGVIA: others say that being sicke as it was thought mortally, and seeing that hee made some shew of recoucrie, for searc that hee would mend, the same Caligvia smothered him with a pillow, or with the covering of the bed, he having ordained him for his successor. Notwithstanding that by reason of a certaine prophecie which hee held, he had determined to haue ordained his Nephew TIBERIVS the sonne of DRVSVS for his heire,

when there were any warres (according as neede required) they reinforced their

whom Dion Coccivs in his histories saith, he would not name, because he was not affured that he was his fonnes fonne, for the suspition which he held of his mother, and also because that the Mathematicians and Astrologians, to whom he was much affected, and gaue credit, had told him, that he should line but a little while, and that Caligvia should kill him: and so vpon a time being very much offended, he said to Callgvia, thou wilt kill me, and another shall kill thee. It is also imagined, that TIBERIVS chose CALIGVLA for his successor, for that heknewhis cuill and wicked inclination, hoping that with his vices, he would detaceand blothis finne and wickednes out of remembrance; and also for that he beleeved, that he would extinguish the Romane nobilitie; and was so wicked and cruell that he defired that all the world might end with his life, and so he was fometime wont to fay, that he wished, that when he should die, that then the heauens and earth might be diffolued : but he deserued not to see the heauens; and all the earth reioyced and was glad when he died, as all authors write, and this was the end of TIBERIVS.

# THE LIFE OF CAIVS CALIGVLA, ONELY OF THAT NAME, AND FOURTH

ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

Aligula before that he was made Emperour, was so acceptable and in so good grace with We the people and Senate of Rome, that when be was made Lord, it is onknowne whether was the greater, either the forrow which was in Rome for the death of Octavian, or the ioy which it conceined for the succession of Caligula. But after that he was made Emperour, in a manner, as though that with his dignitie he had chaunged his naturall inclination, he became fo micked and infamous, that I cannot fet downe his dishonesties, without offending the honestie of bim that shal reade the same, nor without a burthen to his modestie that shall write it. He made the bridge at Baias, a worke of no leffe fooliftings, then great expence. He deflowered three of his owne

fisters, and of his Palace (with reservence be it foken) he made a brothel of Romane Matrones. He was so conetons that he raised a taxe upon the whores, and a share of their gettings. He vsed to walke up and downe upon Crownes, and was so prodigall, that sometimes he caused most precious iewels to be dissolved with vinegar and put into his meate; and was finally in all his actions so contrarie to himselfe that no manknew how to behave himselfe towards him. He would be called and reputed for a God, which name be stained with such abominable crueltie, that he was worse then the divell and fred fo much bloud, and made the wilde beasts which he kept, to the end to denoure men. to drinke and fucke so much that those which were condemned to be flaine by them, rather chose to kill themselves, then to endure the torments which he denised in his most cruell minde for them. He died of thirtie wounds given himby certaine which conspired against him, having raisned almost foure recres, whose death was so acceptable to the people, that it is hard to say whether was the greater 107, that which was concessed when he was made Emperour, or that when he left the Empire together with his most vituperable life.



ALIGULA the sonne of GERMANICUS succeeded TIBERIUS in the Empire, who during the time of his raigne, was in the highest degree of all kinde of wickednes abominable : and his words and deedes were fo pernicious and detestable, that in truth it is a shamefull and vnworthic matter, having written the Caligula in the liues of fo worthic men, as were Ivilvs, and Octavianvs highly degree

C Æ s AR s, and their so heroicall acts: now to descend to the finke and bottome of the finnes, crueltie, and ribauldrie of CALIGVLA. For although there wanted not in TIBERIVS to be abhorred and to be forrie for, yet fome part of his raigne was good, and before that he had been an excellent Captaine, and had enlarged the dominion of the Empire, for which cause his cuill conditions might be somewhat the better tolerated: but this being wanting in CAIVS CALIGVIA, who was a man of no fuch valour (although in the beginning he deceived the world with an apparance of some good deedes) yet it maketh the remembrance of him Incaligula the more detestable, and his hand that shall write the same, the more heavie. But was nothing because I am not to make choise of Emperours, of whom I am to treate at my pleasure, but to continue the processe and course of my historic, wherein my principall foundation is, to observe the truth, and cleaving thereto, to continue my troublesome iourney: Let him which shall reade it consider how detestable and abominable his doings were, and how small time his Empire indured, which attained not to foure yeers complete; and the end which he made, to the end that he may flie and abhorre them, and may do the like by some others which followed, like to him, or worfe.

After the death of TIBERIUS CESAR (as I said) the ioy which the Senate and people of Rome conceived was incredible, and therewith they accepted and approoued the Empire of CAIVS CALIGVIA, whom before his death TIBE-RIVshad adopted and nominated for his fucceffour, for the loue and goodwill which they bare to his father GERMANICVS, and for the pitie and commiseration which they conceived for his death, affliction and wrong done to his house. For these causes was he accepted and ratified by all the Provinces, and prouinciall armies: for his father being Captaine generall in Germanie, and in the East, he was bred vp among them, and this name of CALIGVLA was given him for a VV herefore he certaine kinde of hofe, called Caliga, vsed among men of warre, which hee did vvas called vie to weare. Comming from the place where TIBERIVS died, to Rome, a great number of the most principall people of all estates went foorth to entertaine him vponthe way, with exceeding joy, notwithstanding that hee came mourning with the dead bodie of TIBERIVS, which the fouldiers brought to be burnt at

Rome, according to the custome in that time. And comming with great solemnity to Rome, hee was obeyed with vnfpeakeable gladnes and goodwill, they gining him new names and Epithetes, fignifying great reuerence and loue.

gestime and discontinuous recke and his legges were very small and slender, deformed and vasueable to position of the rest of his bodie. his counterpasses were heard was Emperor, he took pleasure to seare and amaze people with his lookes: and to this effect it is written, that beholding himselse in a glasse, he would studie what countenance to fet, to feeme more fierce and terrible. His eyes and temples were very hollow, his forehead broad, his complexion yellow, his head very bald, and in those parts of his head where he had any haire it was very thinne, all the rest of his bodie being marueilously hairie. He was a man very vnfound and vnhealthy, and in his youth was troubled with the foule euill, and other difeases, and afterwards (as we will prefently flew you) he was so sick and suill of bodie and mind, chaunging his conditions with the Empire: for before that time, he was ever held for good. Wherefore it is faid of him, that he had been the best servant, and was the worst and most wicked Lord in the world. The first thing he did after he was Lord, was to disanull and make voide the tellament of TIBERIVS, which he had made two yeeres before, wherein he made him & his nephew TIBERTY s his coheires: whereto the Senate did willingly agree, & euery man deuised & imagined how to gratifie him and doe him feruice, with fuch love, that within few daies after he was confirmed in the Empire. Going foorth of Rome to recreate himselfe vpon the Sea at the Ile of Capra, and in other Ilands vpon that coast, they made vowes and facrifices for his health and returne; and the writers affirme, that there were flaine 170000. beafts, according to the rites and ceremonies then yied: And he then making shew of a man, and not of a beast (as his deedes did afterwards make manifest) presently commaunded the ashes of his mother and brethren to be brought to Rome, and there to be sumptuously buried. He then tooke for his companion in the Confulfhip, which hee then would execute, his vncle C LAV-DIVS brother to GERMANICUS, who in the time of TIBERIUS lived private and in diffrace; and young TIBERIVS, which was nephew to TIBERIVS the Emperour, faining to loue him, and to beare him goodwill, and to doe him honour he made captaine and prince of all the Romane youth. Seeking by counterfeit goodnes and bountie, to draw to himselfe the goodwill of the people; he did twice giue vnto euery bodie (excepting none) a certaine quantitie of money, which they called Congiarius; and to all the Senate, and to all those of the order of Knighthood (which were a degree betweene the communaltie and the Nobilitie) he made a most solemne banquet. And faining also that he meant to gouerne with iustice, he commaunded OCTAVIANVS CESAR his Institutions to befought out, which TIBERIV sinterrupted and brought out of vie. He commaunded also great playes and feasts to be made in Rome of Sword plaiers, which were men which to shew pleasure to the beholders, fought and killed one another; and certaine men on horseback which they called Troians. He also appointed certaine huntings, wherein were flaine a great number of Lions, Panthers, Boares, Beares, and other wilde beafts: and befides this, Comedies and other she wes which were made in the Theater, and other kinds of sports and pleasures to delight the people, whose loue and grace he then procured. And besides that which is alreadic faid (as Sv x T ON IV s reciteth) principally in the beginning of his Empire, ARTABANYS King of the Parthians, who rebelled and was an ene-

mie, came to some speech with the Captaine of the Romanes, which commannded the legions in Syria, and fearing the new Emperour whom he yet knew not. made peace with him; and passing the river Euphrates, which was the bound of the King of the the Romane Empire, came in person to adore and to doe reverence to the Em- Parthians, perours picture, and to the Imperiall standard and Eagle: so as the little, vntill this time, may be reported of CALIGVIA, as of a wise and discreete prince; and the remainder seemeth to be of a senselesse man and abrute and sauage beast. The beginning wherof was one of the greatest fooleries or vanities that euer was feene in the world, which was to make such a feast as was neuer heard of, and to shew greatnes and vanitie, and to be able to walke and tread on the Sea as well as youn the land: Or (as others fay) because he would imitate King X ER X Es, who passed his armie out of Asia into Europe over the streight of Hellespont vpon a wooden bridge: he commaunded to be brought together, and to be new built all the ships Avvondersul which he could get, which were infinite; and in a bay or a creeke which the Sea bridge made by maketh neere to the hauen of Baias in Campania, from one point of the land to the other fide of the Bay, which are about three miles distant, hee commanneed a bridge to be made upon the faid ships fet in two rankes, fastned and moared together with anchors, chaines and cables, which made them to stand fixe and firme: he commanded this bridge to be made of boords, so strong and ecuen, and to lay fo much earth vpon the same, that it seemed to be firme ground, and one of the freetes of Rome. And bringing for this worke a great number of Artificers and labourers, with an vnmeasurable charge; he also caused houses and lodgings to be

builded vpon the same bridge, as writeth DION, who declareth this matter more

at large then all the rest.

This worke being finished, and hee with all the Court of Rome going thither, with an infinite number of people which from all parts came to fee this spectacle, hee most proudly attired in robes of gold and pearle, with a crowne of Oaken boughes vpon his head (which was called Ciuica) on horsebacke, accompanied with men of warre, and all the Noble and gentlemen of Rome, entred at one end of the bridge and road to the other; and lying one night vpon it, the next day hee returned, riding in a Chariot drawne by most excellent faire horses, in manner of a triumph. Dion writeth, that the night when he lay vpon the bridge, he caused fuch an infinite number of Torches, Lant-hornes, and other lights to be lighted and fet vp, that the cleerenes thereof did wholy ouercome the darknes of the night, in all that fide of the mountaines neere adioyning; and that CALIGVLA vaunted and boafted that he had made of the night, day; and of the Sea, land. And fpending herein two whole daies, in all which time the Sea happened to be still and calme, he faid, that Neptune (whom they held for the god of the Seas) did it for feare, and to doe him reuerence. The fruite which enfued of this strange follie, was great famine and scarcitie of corne, and other necessaries, for that the ships were staied about this bridge, to make the which there needed an incredible number of them. Such like benefits as this, did ever follow the actions of CALIGV-LA. Wherefore before that I speake of the rest, to say the plaine truth, it is to be vnderstood, that many were of opinion, that to this man was given a certaine drinke and medicine by his wife, whose name was CESONIA, wherewith she made him mad and out of his naturall wits; the giving it him, to the end that he should loue her: for he having been at other times maried, had put away his wives: fo as his crueltie and riots were by some attributed to his foolishnes and want of wit. Of this opinion is I o sephys in the 18 booke of his Antiquities, and the Poet

IVVENAL

IVVENAL meaneth fo, and also SVET ONIVS, and say that after he had taken this drinke, CALIGVL Aflept not both by day and night not about three houres: and in them rifing amazed, it feemed to him that he faw Images and vifions : adding this to his peruerse condition and nature, hee suffered himselfe to be led by her; and committed outrages without number or measure, which I know not how to fer downe in any order: among which hee shewed himselfe so hautie and vainglorious, that he despised all the men in the world.

In the end (besides this that hee was the first of the Emperours which caused himselse to be called Lord)he purposed to be honoured as a God, or to say better, a Diuell, and made himselse to be adored, taking first vpon him names neuer thought nor heard of, calling himselfe father of Armies, Optimus & maximus, with other epithetes, which they gaue to their god I v PITER only. And certaine Kings in his presence which came to visit him, and to doe him honour, being at contention among themselves about the antiquitie and nobilitie of their houses and linages, he interrupted, repeating a verse out of Homen in the person of VLYssas which faith. That there neither is nor ought to be, but one King and Lord: and had then taken a Crowne and Diademe of a King, but that he was given to vnderstand, that his owne was a more high estate and dignitie. Neuerthelesse, he determined with his pride and elation to vsurpe the dignitie which he held for dinine, and caused to be caried before him the statue of Ivpiter, and some othe Gods, with thers, which (as P LINIE recounteth) the Romanes vsed to have with heads to be heads to be ta- taken off and on, to the end they might ferue for divers gods; and taking away those heads which they had he caused other heads to be set on, to his owne likenes: which in my opinion had been better if they had cut off his head and fet it thereupon. Besides this, he caused a Temple to be builded, and to be dedicated to his name and honour, and made his statue and image made at Life to be setyp therein, which they called Iconium; and hee appointed and inflituted priefts to serue him : and this his image to be every day clothed in such attire, as himselfe did weare. Also he caused Peacocks, Feasants, and an infinite number of other princely birds to be facrificed in this Temple, as in other Temples of the gods of the Gentiles was done, with which hee fought to make himfelfe equall: which truly was no great matter: for they all were divels, Impostures and deceits.

Aridiculous the like was nener beard of.

But confidering the opinion and conceit which they then held, it was a prefumption neuer heard nor thought of, which came to be held for a ridiculous foolishnes: for presuming much vpon his deitie, he came foorth one night by Moone light (she being then at the full) and wooed and made loue to her, as if she had been a faire Ladie. Sometimeshe would also goe to the temple of IVPITER, and iowning himselfe close to the image, he fained and made shew as though he had spoken in his care : and sometimes he laid his eare to it, as though it should speake to him: and sometimes he made as though he were very angrie, chiding, and threatening to fend it into Gracia: and afterwards he would faine himfelfe to be pacified, and that he was contented that they two should dwell together: and so in this manner he proceeded to a thousand good pleasant fooleries, although they were diuellish. And on the other side, this man which presumed to displace the gods and to make himselfe one of them, ended in enuieto men; grieuing to see their statues and memorials honored, commaunding many of them to be ouerthrowne, and defaced. He practifed and was defirous to deftroy and diffrace the poesse of Homer and of Virgill also and in like manner the histories of the excellent historiographer Tirvs Livivs, and commaunded

his image to be taken out of the Libraries in Rome, where they yied to keepe the images and pictures of great and excellent learned men. Of VIRGIL he faid, that he was a man without any witte, and lesse learning; and Tirvs Livivs he reproued for a man of many words, and negligent; of SENECA (who in that time was much esteemed and with great reason) he said that he was sand without lime. and a worke made without mixture: and fo did he murmur of the most high and excellent wittes. Befides which, he tooke from many Patricij and noble men of Rome, the armes and ornaments which they bare of their linages and families: and his enuieyet descended to lighter and meaner matters then these; so as there was no man (were he neuer so base) whom he enuied not for any prosperitie or good fuccesse that might happen vnto him; as to make men to be shauen, if he saw they had yellow or faire coloured haires.

Now for points and matters of dishonestie, truly there is somuch to be said, that a man may not, neither ought to make the whole relation thereof, to the end that his filthines doe not foyle and corrupt our historie: for it is certaine that he was so filthie and abominable, as his predecessor Tiberivs, and if not more.

deuised which he put not in effect, euen amongst common and dishonest wo-

men; and of all futes in law, hee had the fortith part of any fum that was recoue-

red, and if the parties agreed before sentence given, he had another certaine por-

tion: and so in all things wherein any thing was to be gotten, he required and

tooke a share, euen of those which were porters and got money by carrying of

burthens vpon their shoulders. And having amassed together an infinit sum by

direct and indirect meanes, he would lie downcand tumble vpon it, recreating

himselfe in his conetousnes: wherein he truely shewed great simplicitie, seeing

how little he did otherwaies esteeme it, and his lauish expences, as the most pro-

digall man that cuer was feene in the world, which a man may eafily judge by

these few examples following. In the bathes wherein they did vie to bathe in the

water, he made to be cast most precious and sweete smelling oyntments, which

into their meate, because the cost should be inestimable: and he commaunded

also services to be made, that in steede of meate, the bread, slesh, fish, and fruites,

and shewed himselfe to be much delighted with their companie and conver-

fation: at other times he eschued them, and retired himselfe to his workes. He

he was no lesse.

Inother vices he was beyond all measure passionate, being extreme in extremi- The abominaties, the one against the other: for he was greedie and couctous in extreme man-liquid. ner; and of the other fide, prodigall and a spender aboue all measure. To glut his greedy couetousnes, he invented meanes to gather wealth together, and torob

the land and the people: so as there was no kinde of tribute or imposition to be His extreme

were of exceeding great price, that they might bathe in them, hot and cold, as in other water. In the feasts and bankets which he made, he commaunded most called labis pretious pearles, and iewels to be diffolued in most strong vinegar, and to be put produgalities.

should be of fine golde for his guests. Besides this, he sometimes cast among the people a great sum of money: whereby it seemeth that they had reason, which The inconstant attribute the doings of this man to foolishnes, aswell as to his enill disposition, sie and variety there was so great varietie in his actions, affections and desires, as may be gathered in his doings

by that which is alreadie faid, and the rest which we will declare: as on the one fide he contemned the gods, and prefumed himselfe to be one of them, and yet he was so afeard of a thunderclape, that he ranne and hid himselfe vnder a bed. Sometimes he was very converfable, and fought and called men to be with him,

fomctimes:

praise one thing, and the next day, he would peraduenture cause him to be slaine which spake well thereof. Finally, he was so variable that (as D 10 N reporteth). men knew not what to doe, nor fay, his conditions were so doubtfull. The like he did in his apparell, in his exercises, and in all his other actions: for procuring one thing, he would doe cleane contrarie; as we faid in robbing and heaping treasure together, he would frend fo that those treasures should not suffice for his expences. Besides what is alreadie said, the authors affirme that he commaunded certaine shippes to be built, which were the greatest and most costly that ever were scene of which all the timber was of Cedar, and the poupes and sternes of Iuorie Ships of incredible coft and fet with gold and precious stones, and all the sailes and tackling were of silke of divers colours: they were fo great, that they had in them halles and gardens, wherein were many trees and flowers: in one of these shippes, he sailed along

Proud buil-

greatnes.

dings.

The crueltie of Caligula.

leuell with the meadowes, prefuming to mend the workes of nature. As CAIVS CALIGULA was so variable and inconstant as we have said; so in crueltie onely he was conftant, vfing it indifferently to all without respect of parentage or friendship: in the like manner he ysed his grandmother ANTONIA daughter to GERMANICVS, so that she being in despaire, tooke poison whereof she died. And the yong TIBERIV'S Nephew to the Emperor TIBERIV'S, and fonne to DRVsVs (as I have faid) he making shew to love him, living secure and without feare, he fent to kill him by the hands of a Tribune, for no other cause, but for that he yied a certaine kinde of confection of sweete sauors for his delight: CALIGVIA faying, that he did it, for feare to be poisoned. And SIL-LANYS, which had been his father in law, he forced him to kill himselfe, for no other cause, but for that he went not one day to the sea, with him, when he went. Which SILLANYs did not, but because that the sea made him sicke. And Pro-LOMIE the sonne of IVBA King of Mauritania, to whom he was neere of kinne. and MACRO which had holpen him to get the Empire, and others, with whom he was in great league and friendship, in requitall of their defens he caused them to be cruelly put to death. To all men in the world, both in word and deede he vsed such crueltie, that it would seeme incredible, had not so many and such authors written the same: for he commaunded wild beafts which hee kept for feafts and triumphes, to be fattened with the bodies of line men, condemned to death. And fometimes caufing fome to be executed, he commaunded their parents and kinred to be present at their execution, and then inuited them to eate with him, and compelled them to discourse of pleasant matters. He also qualified his cruelties, with the fundrie manners and kindes of deaths which he inflicted. prolonging it to the end, that the torment should be the greater: So as they stoode in so great feare of this man, that many (if they had oportunitie) slew themselues

fomtimes dispatched matters with such expedition and diligence, that he seemed

to be the most quicke and cholerike man in the world; and at other times with

fuch flacknes and leafure, that he feemed not to be the man which he was before.

And many which committed hainous crimes, he punished not: and many others

he commaunded to be flaine, which had done no offence. He would this day

the coast of Naples all one whole day, to disport himselfe. He also began certaine

buildings and workes against all reason and humane discretion, and such as see-

med impossible. For in the sea he commaunded huge pillers and towers to be

builded and by land he raifed certaine valleyes, and made them equal with the mountaines, heaping vp rockes and earth in them, vntill they were ceuen there-

with. And in other places, he began to digge downe mountaines to make them

themselves rather then they would stay for his sentence: among which the accurfed PONTING PITATE, who condemned to death the gluer of life IESVS CHAIST our redeemer, was one; who being accused and barushed, slew himfelfe with his owne hands. This wretched CALIGVIA was fo blinded and fo nufled in bloud, that he much defired and wished that all the Romane people had had but one head, to the end that he might be able to cut off that head at one blowe. He accounted also and held the time of his raigne for infortunate, and complained of the infelicitie thereof, because that in his daies there was no pestilence, famine, earthquakes, deluges, spoiles by fire or other misfortunes.

There came by chance one day into his presence, a man who had been banished by the Emperor TIBERIVS, of whom hee asked what life hee led in his exile the other to flatter him, answered, that he spent his time in praying for the death of TIBERIVS, to the end that he should be Emperor: which when CALIg v. La heard (as he had banished a great number of men) he beleeued that they all made the like prayer for him, and therefore commanned so many of them as could be found, to be fought out and flaine. Vfing these cruelties and such like. or greater, he made himselfe within few dayes so hatefull, that his death was generally defired by all men, and practifed by some: but the conspiracies against him being discouered, it deferred his death, although but for a little while, which was as he deserved as we will presently declare. But first we will speake of the wars and conquests which he made, wherein he shewed no lesse vanitie then in all the rest. For yoon a sodaine at the end of the third yeere of his raigne, he caused a great number of men of warre to be leuied, wherewith he departed from Rome, giving out in speech that he went to make warre in Germanie whither he tooke his journey: whereto he added the ordinarie legions, which were held in those parts, and with a shew and apparance to doe some great matter with his armie, he passed the river of Rhine, and beginning to make warre at such time as it seemed The conquests to all men (confidering his great number of men, and the determination where- of Caligula, with he came) that he would have ouerrunne the world, and have made some great conquest; but he contented himselse with this, that the Kings sonne of Batania (which is now called Holland) being in difgrace with his father, came to his Batania, feruice, and herewith having done some small harme in that countrie, he returned, and passed the river: And after that he had given some alarmes, he tooke his way with his armie towards the sea, and in memorie of his victorie, he there commaunded a tower to be builded, and all his fouldiers to gather an aboundance of fishshelles, as the spoyle of his enemies : and then calling his armie together, in fuch manner, as captaines vie to doe after some notable victorie, he made a long oration vnto them, and commended them all; and afterwards he commaunded a great some of money to be distributed amongst them ouer and about their pay. And returning to Rome, he fent before to commaund that there should be in a readines a most solemne triumph; carrying with him to that effect, certaine Barbarians his enemies, such as he could get, but after wards he altered his determination, deferring the triumph vntill another time, and entred into Rome in ouacian triumph, and therein began to execute some of his accustomed cruelties, purposing to have done other greater. Which the world and men vnable to endure: many conspired against him: he which did most therein, and the first that began to practife, was a Tribune of the Pretorian Cohorts, whose name was CHEREA, and he died of thirtie wounds which they gaue him, in a vault or fecret gallerie. wherein he vsed to passe vnseene, from his pallace to certaine bathes, having most vnworthily

vnworthily raigned three yeeres and tenne moneths, in the nine and twentith yeere of his age, which as it passed, the true historiographer Sveto NIVs writeth more at large, then any other: to whom I referre the curious reader to make an end of so bad a matter, as was CALIGVIA.

This happened in the three and fortith yeere of Christ our Lord, and after that he was dead, there died the fame day Chronia his wife and one only daughter which he had: and not withflanding that the Almaines which were of his guarde, made a great firre, and would have flaine the confpirators, and did kill fome of them, and that there was a great hardy burly, yet in the end all was pacified, and his death was generally approoued, as of a Tyrant and most cruell prince; in like manner, as the death of such Kingsand princes is vsually approued and agreeable, whole lives have been detestable and odious. It is certainly knowne, that when Caligvia was flaine, heep urposed to have pur many to death, for in his close to recret chamber, were found two sheetes of paper: whereof the one was sealed with a poiniard, and the other with a sword, wherein were written the names of a great number of Senators and Knights of Rome, which he had condemned to death. There was also found a great chest full of divers kindes of poysons, such were the relickes and iewels of this peruerse man. In this short time wherein Calvs Callovia raigned, the name and faith of

hort time wherein Caivs Caligvia raigned, the name and faith of Christ was published and preached in a great part of the world, the holy Apostles Saint Pater and Saint Pavi preaching the same, and particularly in Tudea Saint Marthuvy, who first of all wrote the Gospell.

THE



### THE LIFE OF CLAV-DIVS THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND FIFT ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.



Laudius the some of Drusus, and Vncle to Caligula, obtained the Empire more through the temeritie of the souldiers, then for any worthic acts done for his countrie: for Caligula being dead the Seaste resoluted to extripate the race of the Casars, and to reflore Rome to her auncient libertie, and with many armed men had sassed on the Capitoll. Where upon be standing in great sears, seeing so great a tumult (as commonly it happeneth upon innovation in estates) and being by miture searcfull, and a covard, be bitch hmselfe in a secret place of the publice, where being sound by a souldier which by chance came to see es or pillage, was

by him renerenced, and hailed Emperor. This fouldier being seconded by others which together with the people desired a prince, in the end manger the Sensi they made him Emperor; in which dignitie he carried himselfe in the beginning with such modestie and humanitie, that all men began to persuade themselfines of an excellent goneroment: but he continued not long in that good disposition, for through his little care, the naturall vices of his minde encreasing, he defrauded the world of the bope conceived of him and in short space became both survious, cruell, a drumland, and gustion. He had many wines, has about a slice rest. Messaliance sull speeches. This Emperor was so for getfull, and of so little memorie, that it remembred not in the eneming what he had done

in the morning; by reason whercof, he did oftentimes cause those to be called to eate, or play with him, which he had commaunded to be put to death; and among ft other matters, he asked wherefore his wife Messalina came not also to dinner having but a little before caused ber to be slaine. He made with excelline charge the lake Fucinus to be dried up, wherein before that it was dreined, he made an infinit number of men condemned to die to fight a nauale battaile. He subdued Mauritania which rebelled against him: and in his old age tooke to wife Agrippina the mother of Nero. who perceiving that he was not greatly affected to her some, as a woman desirous to make him to succeede in the Empire, poysoned him in certaine Mushrumps which be vsually loued to eate, alleaging that they were meate for the gods , for that they grew of their owne accord, whose death was concealed by Agrippina, until she had confirmed her some for bis successor in the Empire. He lined fixtie and foure yeeres, and raigned fourteene; his death was not greatly lamented, for that his life was not much beloued.



Y the death of CAIVS CALIGVEA, his Vncle CLAV-DIVS and brother to his father the good GERMANIcvs sonne of Drvsvs and sonne in law to Octavi-ANVs, had the Empire. But the manner how hee attained thereto was very strange, and therefore worthie to be declared. The fodaine death of CALIGVIA caused great stirre and confusion in the citie of Rome, fo soone as it was published, and some would not belecue it, seeing it was done in a secret place, imagining that it was a matter fained by him, thereby to vnderstand every mans affection

any of them should aspire to the Empire, neither for any other man, but onely to free the common-wealth from fo cruella Tyrant, had more care for their owne fafetie then to make choice of a new Emperor. The Confuls prefently so soone as they were certified of his death, called and affembled the Senate, and being skared with the euils past, practised and agreed to reduce the citie of Rometo her auncient libertie, and to deface the name of CESARS and their Monarchie; and perseuering in this determination, they seised on the Capitoll, with some of the Cohorts of the citie, which had the guarde of the pallace, and were also of their opinion. But herein were divers opinions in the citie: for the common people would have a head and an Emperor, for the hatred which they ever bare to the Senate, and for that the least part of the euilles and cruelties committed by people and men the Emperors, alighted vpon them; and also for that they enjoyed and talked of the feafts and alarges which the Emperors ysed to make. The men of war of the pretorian Cohorts which were lodged hard by Rome, would that there should be an Emperor, because they were in hope to make choyse of him at their pleafure; and in regarde of the rewards and privileges which they inioyed from the Emperors. But the matter remaining in this confusion, neither the one nor the other knew whom to nominate.

towards him. The conspirators, as they did not execute his death to the end that

It happened that CALIGVIA being dead, CLAVDIVS was in fo great feare of his life, that he dared not to goe foorth of the Imperiall palace, neither there openly to shew himselfe. But being amazed and in this feare, he went to hide himfelfe in the most secret place that he could finde; and certaine fouldiers running vp and downe to take what they could get, it chaunced that one of them found him, seeing his feete: who to the end hee might know a he was, vncoucted him, and knew him. And C LAVDIVS imagining lards letter to be sought for to be flaine, cast himselfe at the souldiers feet; desiring him to saue his life: whereof

the fouldier affured him, and prefently refolued to name him Emperour : and he affembling together those which came in with him, they all did the like; and taking him vpon their shoulders, in a litter they caried him to their lodging; where trembling in great feare, he knew not to what iffue this would come. Buthe was well received in the Campe, and the fouldiers agreed to make him Emperour. The Confuls and Senate knowing that he was caried to the Camp, in fuch manner as aforesaid, sent to him, requiring him by a tribune of the people, to come to the Senate, and there to treate of fuch matters as should bee for the common good. Whereto heanswered, that hee was there detained by force and could not come. It chaunced that at this time, HERODE AGRIPPAKing of Indea, was in Claudius of Rome: whom (as is aboue faid) CAIVS CALIGVIA had reflored to the king- fifted by Hedome, which had belonged to his vncle Archelavs, and to his grandfather rode Agrippas HERODE, he which flew the Innocents.

This HERODE shewing himselfe newter, began to practise meanes betweene CLAVDIVS and the Senate (although that secretly he fauoured CLAVDIVS) counselling him to take hart, and not to submit himselfe to the Senate. And one whole day and a night passing without any resolution, or determining of any thing, which time CLAYDIVS passed betweene hope and scare: the next day the people began openly to require an Emperour, and many abandoned the Senate and the Confuls: 10 as there followed much trouble (which I ose Physno-Lib.19.6,30) teth.) But at length, seeing that the succession in the Empire more fitly appertained to CLAVDIV s, then to any other, they all agreed to make him Emperour: and the Senate went vnto him, and the cohorts fware and did their accustomed homage, hee making to them many large promifes; and so the Senate accepted and approoued him. And by these meanes he obtained the Empire of the world, who within a day before knew not where therein to find a place to hide himselfe, to faue his life.

Atwhat time as CLAVDIV's attained to the Empire he was fiftie yeeres old. which hee had euer lived poorely and little efteemed, notwithstanding that hee was neere of kinne to the Emperours, and had passed great daungers and perils, without having any office or dignitie; fauing some few moneths the Consulfhip, wherein by CAIVS CALIGVIA he was admitted for his companion. He was a man of a tall stature, and neither fat nor leane, of a faire and pleasing counte- claudius his nance; and whether he fate or flood, he euer shewed a greatnes, representing a gessure and bomaiestie: whereto his faire gray haires were a great furtherance. He had so small dily disposistrength in his knees that he went weakly, and as though he were carelesse. And when he was angrie, he was fo much altred therewith, that the teares would fall from his eyes, and hee stammered in his speech; besides all which, his head did euer shake. He was a sickly man, but after that he was Emperour, he was cured of his infirmities, fauing the paine of the stomacke, which sometimes grieued him very much. He was very learned both in the Greek and Latin tongues, and wrote claudius vvas bookes and histories. He also tooke vpon him to adde three letters to the Latin Greeke and Alphabet: but as a matter superfluous they continued not.

CLAVDIVS is numbred among the bad Emperours, for the great vices and cruelties which he committed, fuffering himselfe to be governed by certaine enfranchifed men which were his fauourites: yet he did many things as a worthie Prince, which were profitable; and fo PAVLVS OROSIVS in some fort seemeth to defend his doings: legions)

Beginning to take the government woon him, notwithstanding that there were

The Senate fought to re-

duce the citie

to her auncient

libertie.

he did, was to give a generall pardon, and to commaund all that was past to be bu-

ried in perpetual filence and obligion: yet for example and to feare others to at-

tempt fo great matters, he commaunded inflice to be done on CHEREA the cap-

taine of the conspirators, and vpon some of the restalso, which suffered death

with great courage, making mention of BRVTVs and CASSIVS, which flew Iv-

LIVS CESAR; CHEREA desiring that he might be flaine with the same sword

wherewith he had flaine CALIGVLA. CLAVDIV's shewed himselfe mercifull

and gentle to all others which had offended him, and were against him in his ele-

ction: and presently disanulled all the edicts and cruell commaundements made

by Caligvia. He also commaunded to be deliuered out of prison, and to be

released from banishment all those which vniustly, or for small causes did endure

the fame: among which he released from banishment C ALIG V LA his fisters and

neeces. And to HERODE AGRIPPA King of Iudea (in requitall of the meanes

he yied to aduance him to the Empire) he gaue the Tetrarchie of Galile, which

CAIVS CALIGVIA had taken from his vncle HERODE ANTIPAS, he which

DUI S.IOHN BAPTIST to death, and was an actor in the death of our Sauiour.

And so this HERODE AGRIPPA was rich and much honoured in Ierusalem:

where putting S.I AMES to death, and perfecuting the Apostles and Primitive

Church, he was striken by the Angell of God, and died, as S. L v & Breciteth in the

Acts of the Apostles. And so these three HERODES died an enill death. Of this

I OHN to death, and in whose time our Saujour died, and the other HERODE the

great, who flew the Innocents, in whose time CHRIST was borne) I have twice

made mention, because these HERODES commonly breede a confusion in rea-

remonies, names and titles, which for honour the Romanes were wont to give to

their Emperours, he shewed himselfe very discreete and temperate, and refused

and would not accept of many of them: and forbad and commaunded vpon

Returning to the Emperour CLAV DIV's (I fay) that touching the honour ce-

ding of the Scriptures, not diffinguishing the one from the other.

Cherea died couragiously.

Herode Antipas wwhich put S. Iohn Baptist to death died miserably in exile at Lions in France. Herode Agrippa a great perfecutor of the Gospell, was ftriken by the Angell of God. A GRIPPA, and his vncle HERODE Tetrarcha, called ANTIPAS (who put Saint Three Herodes Herode Ascatonita vvas he

wobich murde-

red the Inno-

cents, died of

death naturall.

The woonderfull buildings of Claudius.

Plin.lib.36. cap. 15.

great penalties, that none should do sacrifice to him, as they had done to CAIV's CALIGVIA: and so in the beginning of his Empire, he did these and such like things as a good Prince and gouernour. Among which, one was that he had effeciall care that Rome should be continually well provided of wheate and graine. warranting the Merchants against all daungers and aduentures by Sea: and herein (although afterwards he committed many great errours) he was ever diligent and carefull folong as he lived. CLAVDIVS was also a great lover of great and fumptuous buildings: among which there were three fo proud and stately, that it seemeth they excelled the most part of all that ever were in the world; and for fuch, Plinie, Svetonivs, and most authors doe account them. The one was a marueilous Conduit of water, which after his name was called Claudia, with which none of the Conduits in Rome could compare, either for abundance of water, or for cost and excellencie of the workmanship; for it was brought fortie miles from Rome, by mines and passages thorough mountaines; and in low valleys by crecting most high Arches of a wonderfull labour; and so was it brought. and mounted to the top of the highest hils in Rome. The other workewas a Hauen of the Sea made by hand, in the citie of Oflia, which was capable of a great number of ships, made in the firme land; and afterwards letting the Sea into it(as Dionreporteth) having first fortified and made plaine the borrome thereof: in

truth a marueilous matter, and such as his posteritie and those which succeeded him were not able to maintaine. His third worke was, although least profitable, vet most costly of al the rest; which was to dreine & draw drie a most huge great Lake called Facinus, in the countrey of the Marsi, a people neere to Rome, which was the greatest Lake in all Itais: ewhich he did (as some say) to bring that water into the River of Tiber, to make it greater with the currant thereof, and to drie vp and lay open the fields, which that water couered, to the end they might be tilled. Which to effect, among other difficulties and infinite labours, he mined thorough a very high mountaine of flint-stone, with a mine of three miles in length, a worke which feemed impossible, being (as I said) a mine thorough a rocke. Finally, how great and admirable this worke was, may appeare by the time which it continued and the Artificers and labourers which wrought therein, which (as A vyonderfull the authorsaffirme) were 30000.men, which continually laboured eleuen yeeres vvorke. without ceafing, a matter which feemeth incredible: fo as befides the reft, if Ev-SEBIVS(a most Christian and true author) had not written it, I durst not report nor beleeue it. What end this worke and labour had, shall be faid in his place; for (as I faid) although it began in the beginning of his raigne, it was ended eleuen veeres after. I also forbeare to speake of other his buildings, which although they were excellent, yet not comparable to the aforesaid.

Hauing begun and continued these workes, he was not carelesse for the reformation and redreffing of euill customes and abuses in Rome, and out of it; and in fome other matters, wherein if he had perfeuered, without question he had been accounted and held for an excellent Prince. But afterwards, his great libertie, and the wickednes of his fauourites, and fuch as were private with him, by whom he was so ouerruled, he became so dissolute, that it defaced and stained all his former good deedes, as hereafter shall be declared. Befides, what is already faid, this made the beginning of his raigne notable, that in the first, second or third yeere thereof (as Evsebivs, Pavlys Orosivs, Beda, and S. Isidorereport) S.Pe-TER the Apostle came to Rome, and there seated himselfe, after he had preached in divers parts, but principally had remained in Antioch eleven yeeres : and being come thither, remained there twentie fine yeeres, untill the end of the Emperour Nero, as then shall be specified: they also affirme that with S. Peter came the Euangelist S.M ARKE, and being by him enformed, and inspired with the holie Ghost, he wrote the holie Gospell, by whose direction he returned to preach CHRIST in Alexandria; of whom, & of the other holie Apostles and Disciples of CHRIST, of their miracles, martyrdomes, & what successe they had, I make small report; because (as I haue said) in a prophane historie, as is this, I hold it not fit to insert divine and holy matters, although that in briefe there shall be mention made of that which shall be most convenient for the light of this historic and common profit.

To returne to our discourse of CLAVDIVs, it passed in this manner, that in the fourth yeere of his raigne, notwithstanding that the power of the Emperors was then so great and so much redoubted, that no Nation of the world durst beare armes against them: yet the inhabitants of the Ile of Britannie, which Ivilvs C # s AR had subdued, were so bold as to rise in armes, and denie their obedience and vaffalage: which the Emperour CLAVDIV's tooke foill, that he refolued in The Emperour person to vndertake the enterprise to subdue and pacific them. For which service, Claudius his (besides the ordinarie legions) he assembled a great Nauie by Sea, and a great England;

armie by land; and purpofing to goe by Sea, he embarked the same in the Port of

The Britaines rebelled agains Claudius.

Oftia, notwithstanding that it was a great way about: and beginning his voyage he was so overtaken with a tempest, that he was in daunger to have been cast away. Wherefore he disembarked his forces in the citie of Marselles in France, and altring his determination, croffed through France, and shipping himselfe againg right ouer against England, he passed into the Iland with so great power & force. that he eafily pacified all : vet (as DION teftifieth) he came to a battaile with the Britaines, wherein he ouercame them. But as I fav, the common opinion is, and fo doth GILDAS, an ancient true English Historiographer of 960 vecres continuance, record. The iourney into Britannie being ended at his pleasure, he sent his Nauy into certaine Ilands called Orcades, which lie to the North of Scotland, & are now subject to the King of great Britanny, which within few daies he subdued and made subject to the Empire: which vntill that time were vnknowne to the Romanes, as Evsenivs and Orosivs record. Having performed all these things in the space of fixe moneths, he returned towards Rome, whereinto he entred triumphing with the greatest solemnitie that could be, and to him was given the name of BRITANNICVS, for subduing the Ile of Britannie. To the feast of this triumph (SVETONIVS TRANQVILLVS reporteth) that he not only suffered to come to Rome the Gouernours and Prefects of prouinces, but also he released ma-

ny others which lived in exile from their banishment.

For this victorie, he caused a crowne nauall to be made, which was yield to be

A Crouwse

giuen for victories by sea, which crowne was of gold wrought with the prowes of gallies and shippes, and placed ouer the gate of the imperial pallace, hard by that which ordinarily did stand there of oken boughes, called Cinica; and for the same reason he commaunded that a sonne of his, which hee had by his wife M Essa-LINA, whose name was GERMANICY s, should be called BRITANNICYS: And in this triumph he began to honor with armes and other fauours some of his libertines, which had been flaues and were enfranchifed and fet at libertie, and did them fo great honor and fuch fauour, that men began to murmur against him for the same, and thereby he made himselfe ill beloued. For they committed many a-

buses and wrongs, by meanes of their great riches and authoritie: of which the most notable and most spoken of, were sixe or seven, one named DIODONES. to whom he gaue for his armes, the triumph aforefaid; another whose name was FELIX, he made gouernor and prefect of Iudea, Samaria, and Galile, by meanes of the death of HERODE AGRIPPA, before which FELIX we reade in the

acts of the Apostles that Saint PAVL was brought prisoner. Another called CALIXTYS, of whom PLINY, SENECA, and CORNELIUS TACITUS make mention. Another was Polybivs, who was a learned man, whom Clay-DIVS himselfe held for his companion, and as it were maister of his studies, to

whom Senec a wrote a confolatoric epiftle for the death of his brother. Another named NARCISSUS, whom hee made his secretarie, whom SVETONIUS fetteth before all the rest. Another was PALANTE, a man also very famous: to all

which he did fuch fauours and gaue so excessive gifts, that they attained to such riches, that CLAVDIVS vpon a time complaining that his treasurie and exche-

quer was poore, he was answered, That it would be rich mough, if his freed men NARCISSVS and PALANTE would accompanie him, and share with him in their trade and stocke. He within short space made himselfe so subject, and was so

much ouerruled by these Libertines, and his adulterous and dishonest wife M Es-SALINA, with whom he was now maried (after other wives which he had had)

that by their directions and counfels he committed many diforders, follies and

wrongs, more like their flaue and fubiect, then their Prince and Soueraigne, and fuffered others to commit the like: pardoning fuch most grieuous offences and cruelties, that it would be long and displeasing to write them all. But by that which he committed against his owne kindred, which I will declare, that may be coniectured which I passe in silence. One of the first and most notable, was the death of Appivs SILANVS an excellent noble Romane, who fometimes had been gouernour of Spaine, and maried with his owne mother in law, whose death was plotted by his wife Messaltn a and his enfranchised Narcissys. Dion writeth, that having no cause whereof to accuse him, it sufficed to command him to be flaine, for that NARCISSVS in a morning came into CLAYDIVS his chamber before he was vp, faining great hafte and feare, perswading him to stand vpon his guard, and to take heede of Appivs Silanvs: for he dreamed all that night that he was flaine, and that SILANVS onely had killed him. The Emperour well pleafed with the matter, went to the Senate, acquainting the Senators therewith; much commending and extolling the loyaltie of NARCISSV s, that he even flee- crue tie of ping had care of his life and health. After SILANV s, he also put to death his two claudins; fonnes in law, Lvc Ivs SILANVS and POMPEY, and his two neeces called LI-VIE, one of which was the daughter of DRVSVS, and the other of GERMANIcvs: no man knowing any cause wherefore he did it. And so were a great num-

ber of others put to death, all by the counsell and practise of MESSALINA and his

freed men, who bare such sway in the gouernment and counsel of estate, that they

fold offices, Captainships and dignities; and, that which was worse, tooke money

for offences, penalties, punishments and banishments: and finally, all was to be

fold for money. And the most part hereof (as some authors affirme) without that

CLAVDIVS did know, or was acquainted therewith: fo great was their power

and authoritie. And in the like manner did hee put some to death, being decei-

ued, and to please and content these his fauourites; so subject was he, and gouer-

ned by them.

By meanes of the great diforders, murders and grievances, which CLAYDIV : by the counsell and practife of his Libertines and his wife MESSALINA committed, he made himselfe to be abhorred of many, and principally of the better fort. so that some practised his death and conspired against him: although that for his other good deeds, before repeated, he was beloued and much effectived of others. But as that part which hated him was greater, and of bolder and higher conceits and courage: fo they feared not to practife that death which they wished him, chiefly two Romane Knights concluded to kill him, and STACIVS CORVINGS and GALLYS ASINIVS two principall Romanes conspired against him. But the one and the other being discouered, it was brought to light, and he redressed the matter by executing new cruelties vpon the faid parties, and vpon fuch as had conferred and participated with them: and feeing himfelfe escaped out of this daunger, he went forwards in his euill purposes and worse doings. In like manner the hatred encreasing against him, it happened that FURIUS CAMILLUS SCRIBONIANVS, who was Lieutenant and Gouernour of Dalmatia (incited by many principall men of Rome) openly rose and rebelled against him, and the legions of that prouince confenting with him, he called himselfe Emperour. This put CLAYDIVS into fuch a feare and amazement, as he was very fearefull and base minded; and as sinne and an euill conscience is one of the chiefest causes in the world that maketh men cowardly and fearefull, he was fo much discouraged, that CAMILLY s(who rebelled) writing ynto him, and perswading him to leave furies camillastebelled a-

the Empire and to live private, he remained doubtfull what to do : and caused certaine principall men to consult thereof: So as if the matter had gone forwards. it feemeth that he would have had fmall courage to have defended the Empire. But as CAMILLY's had no more right nor reason thereto then he, and as his purpose were not to redresse the Empire and reforme the euils committed by CLAV-DIVS, but to make himselfe lord & a tyrant, and peraduenture do as ill or worse. God would not fuffer it to take effect according to his defire: for it happed that the fame legios which had raifed & chosen him, repeting of what they had done, the fift day after flue him. Some Authors (among which are Sveronivs, and PAVLVS OROSIVS) report, that herein hapned a strange accident: for the Enfigne-bearers comming to give their oath and obedience to the new Emperour by his commaundement, were not able to remove the Enfignes with the Eagles from the place where they were fet: fo as moved by this prodigious spectacle, they all concluded to reduce themselves to CLAVDIV's his denotion, and to flay CAMILLY'S. And fo was CLAYDIV'S delivered from this danger, but not from the feare and suspicion, but lived ever after in continual passion and feare, infomuch that being one day in the temple making his facrifices (as then was the cultome) and by chance finding there a fword, which some man peraduenture without any ill intent or purpose had brought thither, and there forgotten it, he as a man which knew that he had deferued death, fearing all men, thinking that it was brought thither to effect some treason against him, was in fuch a perplexitie and feare, that prefently in great hafte he commaunded the Senate to be affembled, and with teares crying out, he complained therein, publithing himselfe to be a man of most miserable condition and vnhappie, and that he was in no time nor place affured, but in danger, and so held himselfe many daves retyred, and came not abroade. By meanes of thefethings which were attempted against CLAVDIVS, MESSALINA his wife and her fauourites and confederates, tooke occasion to put many men to death, and to confiscate their goodes, vling other cruelties to all manner of people, alleaging that they were guiltie of the conspiracies aforesaid, or in some of them, and this in a mischieuous and wicked maner: for many vpon suspition without any tryall or proofe. were condemned and put to death: and to the contrary, others which were guiltie, by bribes and gifts were deliuered; wherein although that for the most part CLAVDIVS was deceived by those which he most trusted, yet the blame was layd vpo him, and the world hated him for it. For befides the remiffe forgetfulnes which he had of all things, and the trust which he reposed in such wicked men, he shewed himselfe cruell and bloudie: for oftentimes he would be prefent when torments were inflicted, and at the execution of these cruelties: a thing truely vnworthie of the state and dignitie which he held. He would fometimes also sodainely be in such a rage, that he seemed to be out of his wits, and so Sveto Nivs accounteth his furie for follie and madnes, notwithstanding that CORNELIVS TACITYS writeth of him, that he was naturallie inclined to pitie and clemencie, so as in truth it is a strange matter to consider of the contrarietie of this mans minde. After all this (as To sephus, Eusebius, and SVETONIVS affirme) in the ninth yeare of his raigne, he commaunded all the Iewes to be cast out of Rome which dwelt therein, whereof Saint Luke maketh mention in the Acts of the Apostles: and PAVLYS OROSIVS writing, the same, maketh a doubt whether they were cast out for their discord with the Christians, or whether the Christians were expelled in the like manner: for Sv z-

TONIVS fayth, that they were cast out for that there was some stirre about the Christian religion. The next yeare following there was a most grieuous famine An universal in Rome, and almost generally in all the world; whereof besides other Authors, famine. Saint Luke maketh mention in the Acts of the Apostles.

CLAVDIVS having now raigned fome nine or tenne yeares, and matters paffing therein in such manner, as I have fayd; yet for all this the estate and greatnes of the Romane Empire was not empaired in his dayes (for hereof it seemeth that he and those which gouerned were carefull) but it defended, and in part enlarged it selfe: For besides the pacifying of the Ile of Britanny, Mauritania also in his time rebelling, which is a Prouince in Africa, wherein raigned Kings, The rovo Manfriends and confederates with the people of Rome, wherein he made warres by tributarie his Captaines Svetonivs Pavlinvs, & Gnevs Sidivs Geta, as Dion Provinces. witnesseth. Those countries were subdued and deuided into two tributarie Prouinces, the one was called Mauritania Cafartesis, which for the most part is this day Mauritania. the kingdome of Fez, but it extended it felfe fo farre as Argel, Tunes, and Oran; Cofarients, and the other Mauritania Tingitana, which is much of that which we call Marocco, of Fez. and Barberia, and the coast of Zale and Azamer, even vnto Arzil and Taniar. At Mauriania that time the Prouince of Numidia was infested by certaine barbarous Africans, the land dome which were ouercome by the ordinarie legions. In the like manner the Impo of Marveco. riall authoritie was conserued in the Prouinces of the East, CLAVDIVS placing therein Kings and Tetrarches at his pleasure, as the same DION recordeth. But besides all this, in all these parts (as well as in Rome) they indured great vexations and oppressions, and the disorders which his fauorites and libertines committed, and commanded to be committed, were very great, of the greatest part whereof his wife was the chiefe cause, who was so incontinent and dishonest, that she was not only a common adultreffe, but she procured and brought many others to be fo also and the her selfe would pray, and even enforce men, and was of such credit with her husband the Emperour, and had fuch power ouer him, that no man durst to make it knowne, or to give him intelligence thereof.

The dishonestie of this woman mounted to so high a degree, that judging (as itseemed) open adulterie to be but a light sinne and presumption, she deuised a wickednes neuer heard nor thought of before in such manner as she did it, which was to be married with another, as she was with the Emperor; and putting it in effect, CLAVDIVS being gone forth of Rome to Offia to doc certaine facrifices. she married in the forme and with the solemnitie accustomed, with a Romane, whosename was CAIVS SILIVS, whom they affirme to have been the fairest

and properest man of his time.

The love which CLAVDIVS bare to MESSALINA was so great and the power which she had ouer him was such, that she thought that this might also passe in filence, or that he should dissemble it as he had done many other great abuses. But it now pleased God that she should receive punishment for al her misdeedes, as he oftentimes permitteth wicked men after some great sinnes, to commit other greater, to the end at once to be punished for all. And it was so, that his great friend and fauorite NARCISSVS, a libertine before named, discouered this deede to CLAVDIVS, with a multitude of other villanies committed by her: who awaking in some fort out of his heavie flumber and forgetfulnes, notwithstanding that this matter had put him in great feare; yet after that he was well enformed of the truth, he came to Rome, fending first before him Lucius Gera, who was captaine of the pretorian Cohorts to confirme them in his service, and when he

The death of Mestalina.

Claudius his monft cous for getfulnes.

was come, he caused his wife MESSALINA to be apprehended, and many others which were culpable in this matter: and by the diligent industrie of NARCISsys justice was done upon both her and them. And so they were put to death by his direction before that CLAYDIVS commaunded the same, notwithstanding that he had so decreed; for it was feared that C LAVDIV's alreadie began to yeeld and to be pacified, and to he shewed himselfe, as CORNELIUS TACI-TV's reporteth. It is a maruellous thing to confider of the carelefnes and forgetfulnes of this CLAVDIVS: for although they came and told him that MESSALI-NA was dead, he neuer spake word, neither asked by whom, nor how she died, neither then nor after that time feemed to rejoyce or to be for rowfull for it ; neither fpake word good norbad. Svetonivs TRANQ VILLY saddeth another thing to this forgetfulnes, which feemeth incredible, but he and others of great authoritie affirme the same, which is this; that the next day after that MESSALINA was put to death, fitting downe at the table to eate, he asked how it chaunced that MESSALINA came not to dinner. The like happened at other times concerning those which he had condemned and commaunded to be slaine, that having put them to death one day, the next day he was fo forgetfull and carried from it, that he hath chaunced to fend for them and call them to his counfell, and others to

come to play with him, as they had vsed to doe.

The Emperor CLAVDIVS remaining thus a widower, after the death of his wife MESSALINA, by whom he had one fonne called first GERMANICVS, and afterwards Britannicus, and one daughter whose name was Octavia, he determined and gaueit out in words that he would marrie no more: for he faid that he had been very infortunate in his wives, and therefore now in his oldage he would not try any more hazards, wherein he faid the very truth. For in his youth he had been twife married, first with EMILIA LEPIDA; which was great grandchild to the Emperor OCTAVIANVS AVGVSTVS, and the second time, with LIVIA MEDVILINA CAMILLA, of the auncient linage of the CAMILLE the first wife before his marriage tooke effect, he put away and the second died of an infirmitie the same day which was appointed for their wedding : and afterwards he married with PLAVTINA HERCYLANA, whomafter that he had by her one sonne named Davsvs (who died a child) he for sooke, for dishonest and an adulteresse : and married the fourth time with ELIA PETINA, of the linage of the TVBERONES, from whom for some causes and discontenuments, he was also divorced, notwithstanding that he had by her one daughter called Anto-NIA. All these mariages he had before that he was Emperor, and when he tooke vpon him the Empire, he was married with MESSALINA, whose death we now made an end to declare : and although (as I faid) that he remained a widower, he protested that he would marrie no more, adding thereto that if he did he gaue them leave to kill him: yet afterwards forgetting himselfe (as in former time, of other matters) by the counsell of his libertine and fauorite PALANTE, he lastly married with IVLIA AGRIPPINA, who was exceeding beautifull, being his neece and daughter to his brother GERMANICVS, which was the widow of Domicivs Nero Enobarbus, by whom she had a sonne named Domi-CIVS NERO as his father. And because that the marriage with his neece within this degree of confanguinitie was prohibited and detestable among the Romanes, he procured that a law should be made whereby it should be lawfull, and his new wife tooke fuch order, with her old husband and Vncle, that within few daies after that she was married, she obtained of him that he should marrie his daughter

daughter OCTAVIA, with her fonne DoMICIVS NERO; and that heshould adopt him and make him his fon, preferring him before his owne fon BRITANmevs; and that in fleed of Domicivs NERo he should be called Claydivs NERO, which was performed accordingly. And not content herewith, that certaine principall Matrones which had been riuals with her, defiring to marrie with CLAVDIV'S, one being fauoured by NARCISSVS, and another by CALINTYS, his libertines, the better to affure her selfe in her estate, she procured their death; and lo for some certaine daies she lived in great power and favour.

In this time the great work being ended, to wit, the vndermining of the mountaines, and making the great caues and mines to let the water to passe out of the lake Fucinus, wherein (as I faid) thirtie thousand men had wrought eleuen yeeres, the Emperour CLAYDIVS ordained, that for ioy, and to make an end of this worke, there should be in the same Lake a Nauall battaile, before that the water should be let out, which did so much resemble a battaile in earnest, that therein were 24. Galleys, which were builded there hard by for that purpose. DION saith that there were fiftie, which is not very valikely, confidering the number which were therein; which, as Cornelly's Tacity's reporteth, were 19000.men; many of which were flaues, or men condemned to death or banishment, the Emperour promifing those which should preuaile and oucrome, life and libertie, and so they were commaunded to fight to the vetermost: and to that purpose the Galleys and men were divided into two equal battailions, and their apparell, enfignes; banners, flagges and streamers were of diuers colours: the one part of them were called Sicilians, and the other R hodians; as though the warres had bin between Sieilia and Rhodes. To fee this spectacle thither came an infinite number of people from all parts of Italie, and out of Italie, which couered all the hils and mountaines neere to the faid Lake, and the shore side thereof. And CLAVDIVS with his wife A GRIPPINA, & NERO CLAVDIVS his new adopted sonne, were most wonderfully and most richly attired in gold, stone and pearle : and so the battaile began, and was maintained betweene them most cruell and bloudie, the poore men desiring and endeuouring of either part to haue the victorie, thereby to winne life, libertie and honour: and so it was obstinately fought and continueda great part of the day, the one killing and wounding the other most mise- A vionderfull rably, vntill at last the one part ouercame the other; and so was ended that most passing, but cruelland horrible sport. Which being ended, presently the next day CLAYD WS commaunded the paffage of the Lake to be opened: and the water beginning to iffue out, it brake foorth with fo great force and vehemencie, that it feemed that the world would haue funk; and it was fuch and in fuch manner, that it did much harme in all the borders thereabout; and fo likewise great was the seare and amazement which CLAVDIV's and his wife AGRIPPINA, which were there by, endured notwithstanding that they were vpon sure ground and in safetie. This was the end of this costly vanitie.

These things being past in such manner as we have written, A GRIPPINA seeing her selse much made of, and beloued by the Emperour CLAVDIVS, being growne proud of the power and fauour wherein the faw her felfe (which are two things which few men can eniov and vse moderatly) became so proud, hauty and ambitious (following the footsteps of MESSALINA) that she would commaund and alone beare all the sway in every thing: whereupon she presently became to be hated and enuied by some of CLAYDIVS his fauourites, yea and by himselfe allos to that he began to be forrie that euer he married her, and that euer he adop-

ted his sonne in law Nero for his sonne. Which Agreein a soull in that he began anew to make much of his yong son Britannicys, as for words which he spake which signified as much: for yon a day he said, which it was true that he had euer been infortunate in his wines, but none of them had escaped vnpunished: with other speeches to the same effect. Whereat Agreein his source in the sum of the s

It was the just indegement of God that Claydis should die by eating: for he was so gluttinous and infatiable in eating and drinking (amongst his other vices) that hee thought no time nor place sufficient thereto, and euer did eate so much, that most commonly surfetting, he vsed vomits to discharge his stomacke, putting a feather into his throte, a remedie which some gluttonous men doe vse, eating vpon assurance thereof, and carrying themselues more filthily, then they sell sicke. In which feather some authors affirme that the poyson was giuen him. And he died in the fixt and sistify yer after the birth of Christon Sauiour, in the 14, yeere of his range, and the 74-of his age, the 13-day of October about the breake of the same day, and his wife Agriphia concealed his death the most part of that day: and faining that he mended, she caused certaine vowes to be made for his health, vntill that she had confirmed the Empire to her some Nero, according to his adoption, which seeing they then thought Claydis

In the time of this Emperour CLAVDIVS the Christian faith was preached, and did much preuaile ouer the world; the Apostle S.P.B.T.E. then preaching in Rome from the beginning of his raigne, although with great contradiction and difficultie. There happened also in his time, which all authors affirme, and chiefly

Evs relives, to be very fraunge and marueilous, which was, that betweene the He Thera and Therafia in the Egean Sea, there was difcouered a new Hand of three hundred furlongs in length, where before wasnothing but water of an ordinarie depth, and no figne of any Hand.

A new Iland in the Sca.

The Emperous Claudius poy-

foned by his

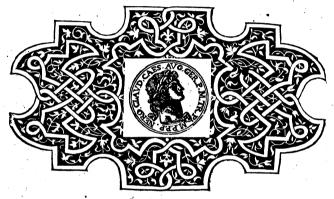
wife Agrippi-

THE



## THE LIFE AND ACTS OF THE EMPEROVR NERO,

ONELY OF THAT NAME, AND SIXT ROMANE EMPEROVE.



THE ARGUMENT.



Landius being dead and his death publified, the Senate and people of Rome sware sidelistic to Nero: who by the endenour and cunning of his mother Agrippina, was made Emperour. This man sor the sirst size peeres gonerned so excellently well, that all men said that a Godwas sent fron heaven to gonerne Rome, nowith sanding that his mother vied much crueltie, who ruled the Empire a long time. Nero afterwards groving in secres, and speciming to be disobedient to his mother, eners see also in vices, and began to walke abroad by night alone, and to hut such as he met, whereby he was in some danger, and escaped not virtual.

wounded. In his youth be dearely lowed an enfranchifed woman called Acta, and loued Popen Sabina wife of his great friend Otho, whom in the end be obtained and enioved. And for that his mother hewed her felfe very contrarie to his defires, the became odous to her fonne, to the end to vecomer his faucur againe, the made them to be in lone with him; so that it was thought that he had the vse of her bodie: but the growing enery day more odous, in the end (faining certaine apparant figures of treason) he made her to be flaine. After her death, he wholy gave the reine to all shame and licentions spee, which was the occasion that the people of Rome was also corrupted, and openly vafed the the althometrie. He overcame the Parthians, a. Unbdued the Britaines: after which willries, giving his minde to crueicie, among some was also be the Britaines: after which willries, giving his minde to crueicie, among some was the proper of the same of the state, having

Will.

with his wife Octavia, married Poppea Sabina also, which he before held for his wife : in the end he made the one to be flaine, and the other he killed himselfe. He made a young youth named Sporus to be velded, and publikely married him: And among ft bis other mischismous practises in the end be let Rome on fire, and flood with great pleafare to behold it barne. He built fo great a Palace shat it contained a very great part of the citie of Rome, and took upon him to alter the name of the citie. and called it Neroniana. He fo cruelly perfecuted the Christians that besides S. Peter and S. Paul. he put an infinite number of others to death. Under this Emperour, began the warre against the Iemes. Finally, growing intelerable, and edious to God and man, first, be understood of the rebellion of many nations, and perceiving the enemie to draw neere, and the fentence of the Senate pronounced against him to be apprehended, he was in such feare that stying secretly from Rome, he was constrained miserably to kill himselfe. He lined 32 yeeres, and was Emperour 14. whose death was so gratefull to his countrey, to Rome, and to the whole world, that they clad themselves in toyfull garments in fleed of mourning: and in him ended the line of the Cafars.



Vch a fuccessor had the Emperour CLAVDIV s. as hee descrued and knew how to chuse, and this was NERO, the most famous man for crueltie that euer was in the world: for although that otherwise he was very wicked, yet in crueltie he so exceeded all measure, that you shall never heare any man say, N ERO, but you shall also heare the addition thereto. Cruell, notwithstan-

ding that he had the most wife and vertuous Schoolmaster of his time, which was SENECA, of whom in his youth he learned the liberall Sciences, wanting no capacitie thereto; whose counsell and precepts were of force, for a time, to suppresse his euill inclination, and were the occasion that in the beginning of his raigne, he perfourmed many parts of a good Prince, in such fort that TRAIANE (as many write of him) afterwards faid, that for the first fine veeres, N ERO was peerelesse. But after that time, fetting all shame aside, occasions with his power and libertie was agood Em- encreasing, he did things which did so much staine and deface his good deedes pall that there remained no figne or foark of any goodnes in him. Yet there wanted not some authors, which in part to excuse his doings affirme, that of enuie and malice writers made his vices and faults feeme fo odious, among which was I O SEPHYS in his booke of Antiquities, after that he himselfe had laid open many of his cruelties and parricides. I will write what I shall finde written by most famous authors, as I vie to doe, and in order and processe of things and in time will follow Cornelly's Tacity's, who in my opinion excelleth the rest. CLAVBIVS being dead, through the treason of his wife AGRIPPINA, as wee have specified, after that she had by her authoritie and cunning gotten the peoples good will, and taken away all occasions that might hinder her sonne in attaining to the Empire, the published his death, which vntill then the had commaunded to be concealed. At which time N BR o came foorth of the Imperiall Palace, accompanied with Byrry sthe Prefect of the Pretorian Cohorts, who fett of the Pre- was a man very private with A GRIPPINA, and also had the commaund of that torian Coborts. Cohort which had the ordinarie guard of the Palace, and proclaiming him Emperour, they carried him to the Campe, where by all the Cohorts he was well receiued : and he having made a speech, and promising great paies and gifts to the fouldiers, was by them prefently carried backe againe to the Senate, wherein all the Senators, conforming themselves to the will of themen of warre, obeied and received him for Emperour, with the ordinarie and accustomed solemnities, giuing him names and titles of great maiestie: among which, he refused the name of Pater patria, for that he was of quinion that that title agreed not with his fewe. yeeres, being then but seventeen veres old. And so N ER o obtained the Em-

Nevo in his firft fine yeeres perour.

Lib.20.

perour at fe-

pire, which he ought not to have had, and there wanted not some which murmured, that an adopted fon should be preferred before a legitimate and naturall son. and would have had GERMANICVS and nothim: But these men were not of power to withftand him, for as he was obcied in Rome; fo was he in like manner in all the provinces of the Empire. He then prefently commanded the obsequies of CLAYDIVS to be folemnized, as the custome then was, most folemnly; and according to the superstitions of that time, they canonized him among the gods. Great was the low wherewith NERO his raigne began, aswell for the discon-

tentment at the gouernment past, as for that change and innovations are ever pleafing, and the defire commonly bringeth good hopes, which were confirmed by his good outward shew and apparances in the beginning. First he promised to governe according to the rules and institutions of Av g v s T v s C & s A R. and began both in word and deede to shew himselfe, or (to say better) to faine himfelfe, to be liberall, pitifull, just, gentle, and tractable; doing fauours and mode- The counterrating the impolitions and tributes of the provinces, dividing amongst the peo-feit vertues of ple of Rome, and the pretorian fouldiers, a huge fum of money and corne, bestowing other gifts youn them: and to the Senators which were poore, he affigued pensions out of his eschequer; vsing all men with such humanitie and courtesie. that it seemed there was no reason to seare any part of that which afterwards enfued. He likewise shewed great elemencie & pitie, in the execution of instice and punishments; so as one day, a warrant being brought to him to signe, for the putting of one to death, he making shew to be very forrie for it, said, I would to God that I could not write: which words as though they had proceeded from a pitifull heart, his maister Seneca doth highly praise and extol. He entertained in like mannerall men louingly and friendly, and in his disports and exercises, he permitted in his second any to be present, so as it seemed that God had sent them such a prince as they de-booke of clefired. And about all in the beginning of his raigne, he honored & bare great reuerence to his mother, & gaue her greater power and command in the government. then in deede he ought or was fit: for the truth is, she was a cruell woman, proude and hautie: and as such, through the counsell of PALANTE one of CLAVDIVS his Agrippina caumightie enfranchifed men before named, without the confent of N ER o. the cau- fed silanus fed IVNIVS SILANVS Proconful in Asia, to be flaine, for the hatred which she bare to be staine against him : the like she did by Narcissvs another famous Libertine, whom she through the also greatly hated. And her crueltie had extended further, but that SENECA and counfell of Pathe Prefect Byrrys, and another principall man whose name was A FRANIVS time. (by whom N BR o in the beginning of his raigne was much ruled) did let & croffe AGRIPPINA in her wicked practifes, so farre forth as in them lay but she had such authoritie in all matters, and ouer them which had the managing thereof, as it could hardly be done: fo long as fhe was in good grace with her fonne.

The matter standing in these termes, newes came to Rome, that Vologesus King of the Parthians leuied forces to make war against the Empire, practifing to make Wing of the his brother King of Armenia, in which prouince from the time of Av G v s T v s Parthians. CESAR, the Romanes had authoritie to place Kings at their pleasure: so as vpon this occasion the warres began in the second veere of the raigne of the Emperor NERO: who fent thither VINIDIVS with new legions, besides those ordinarie legions which were in Alia, under the commaund of Domicivs Corbuis. But the war as then lasted but a while; for peace was concluded, Volog Esvs defitting Peace with the from his attempts, and giving certaine principall men in pawne for the keeping thereof, such as we commonly cal hostages. About this time began Nero to shew

Britannicus.

himselfe somwhat alienated from his mother, & to abate her great power and authoritie, beginning to shew her lesse obedience then theretofore: for he then fell in loue with a base enfranchised woman (but she was very faire) whose name was Arra notwithstanding that his wife Avgvsta was very faire & a vertuous woma. And herein to have his will against the will & liking of his mother (which fought to hinder him in this his loue, to the end that he should not be free fro her power) he began to take into his fauour Othoa noble man, of whole family there had bin Otho and Clau- Confuls; and CLAVDIVS PHENICIVS, the some of one of the most mightie enaus roenicus Nero bis fauon. franchised men in Rome; & these wrought meanes for him to obtaine his beloued A E TA, which opened a passage to many other things which followed, whereby he began to be disobedient to his mother, who had had so great power ouer him and all others. And he commaunded the enfranchifed Palante, who was a great favorite of hers to be deposed from all government in the Emperiall estate.

A GRIPPINA feeing this, procured and attempted by al waies and meanes poffible, to recover the grace and the degree which she had lost with her son: sometimes by giving him counsell; at other times by entreaties and flatteries, accompanied with threatnings and feares: among which one was to do great honor, and to bestow many fauours upon Britannicus, who was the Emperor Claudius his son, and then was about 14. yeeres old: imagining that through feare and suspition of this man, NERO would returne to her obedience, but his wicked minde freed him not from that danger, by those meanes which she imagined, for he deliuered himfelfe thereof, by giving him poison; wherof the poore Britannicus died. Whereat AGRIPPINA was much amazed: but being either vnable or vnwilling to moderate her pride, the perfeuered in the controuerfie with her fon, & prefumed to contend with him (although vpon vnequall termes.) Whereupon N ER o fetting all shame and respect apart, commanded her guard of high Almaines to be taken from her, and her to be lodged out of the pallace, and did her other open difgraces, forbid-The death of ding certaine persons to have recourse vnto her, or to visit her: and he himselfe went very seldome to see her, and that very coldly, and with little loue. And being thus out of fauour (as few keepe true friendship with such, as are decaied and abased) the most of her friends forsooke her, and one, a very mightie Matrone whole name was IVLIA SILLANA, vpon a private grudge (producing false witnes) Open contention betweene wrongfully accused her to have conspired against her son the Emperor. & that she Mero and his practifed to have made R VBELIVS PLAVIVS Emperor; who by his mother demother Agripscended from the Emperor Av G v s T v s C E SAR. And the matter was so handled, that A G RIPPINA was in some danger, untill that the accusation was found to be forged & the witnesses suborned, and this Iv LIA the twister of this web, escaped with light punishment, which was but banishment. This gaueencouragement to a wicked fellow named Petvs, fallely to accuse PALANTE also (a libertine many times before named) and B v R R v s the prefect, which were feruants and fauorites to Agrippina, alleadging that they practized to depose Nero, and to make Con-NELIVS SILLA Emperor: but this also was discourred to be forged and false, and for this offence Pervs & his falle witnesses were but only banished. All which passed in the third yeere of NER o his raigne, Saint Pave the Apostle being then prisoner in Rome, who alittle before was fent thither by the commaundement of Festvs, gouernor of Indea, which succeeded Felix aforenamed: In which imprisonment (although he went abroade at libertie) he was detained two yeeres.

Inthose daies as the Emperor NERO grew in yeeres, so began he to waxe more light and vicious, and to discouer his enill inclination: for he would by night goe disguised vp and downe the streetes in Rome, and would hurt and abuse fuch as he met, comming out of their houses; wherein he committed many notable infolencies, and offended many: and he himfelfe being youn a time vnknowne, was in danger to have been flaine, and was fore wounded. And as the vices and defects of princes, although that in their absence they be condemned and men murmur at them evet in their presence they are most commonly excufed, and sometimes commended. So NERO his fauourites did not seeke to withdraw him from this daungerous vice and ill behauiour: but they counfelled him to goe no more abroade without a guarde, and companie, and doing fo, they were the occasion of farre greater riots and disorders, then before: And some dissolute yong men (faining themselues to be the Emperor) tooke occasion to doe the like, fo as there were infinite violences committed by him and them, by meanes whereof there was no small scandall and disquietnes in the citie, although that in the rest, vitill then, there was indifferent good order in all things, and justice was administred ordinarily in Rome and in the provinces; and the people did diffemble or had patience with the lightnes and infolencies of NERO, by reason of the distribution of money and other things, which he made generally to all, and for certaine rights and impositions which he commaunded to be abolished.

The fift yeere of his raigne being come, which as it feemed would have prooued prosperous and peaceable both in particular and generall; Vologesvs King of the Parthians began anew to stirre against the Empire, for the same reafon and cause concerning the kingdome of Armenia before spoken of. And Correttes, who was Proconful in Asia, sent to entreate the Emperor that the ordinarie armie which he had, might be reinforced and encreased, for that by reafon of the long peace, his legions were growne more flothfull and leffe profitable then was needfull for fo dangerous a warre; and were also diministied, some by death, and many fouldiers were waxen old: for which NERO tooke order, that new companies should be leuied, and fent vnto him, and with them one of the legions of Germanie, which were euer held for the best and most experienced, as those which lay in the frontiers against the most sierce and valiant enemies. And so began the warres with the Parthians, wherein after some great encounters, and skirmishes which passed, fortune and victorie being variable, and winter being come, Corbulus sent a captaine whose name was PACTIUS ORPHI-TVs, who with a good part of the armie, had the guarde of certaine countries and passages, whereby the enemie might enter the countrie, whom he commaunded that in any case he should not give them battaile: and he lodged himselfe in the plaines with the rest of the armie. But ORPHITY's quite contrarie to that VVanes with which was commaunded him, by the enemies prouocation, joyned battaile with the Parthians. them, & was therein ouercome with great loffe to the Romanes: for which CoR-EVIVS was exceedingly forrowfull, and it was no leffe grieued at in Rome. Whereupon Corbyers reinforcing his legions, tooke the field before the ordinarie time, and very fiercely followed that warre, wherein passed many things which Cornelly's Tacity's reciteth, and I for breuitic omit, to returne to NERO, of whom from henceforth there is no good thing to be spoken. I say then that while as his captaines made warre against the Parthians, and he gaue himselfe ouer to sensualitie without contradiction in Rome, he fell in love with the wife of his great fauorite OTHO, who in time came to be Emperor, called POPPEA SARINA, and by some Poppera, a most faire woman and of high linage, and endued with many graces and good qualities, but dishonest and incontinent:

Poppea Labina

incontinent; and to the end that NERO without any let might have her wholy to himselfe, giving to her husband O THO this, in requitall of all his good seruices, he fent him into Spaine to be gouernor of Lustiania now called Portugall, and he freely loued and gaue himselfe ouer vnto this Poppe A, forgetting and abhorring his owne wife Octavia, and his other aboue named friend, called AETA a Libertine whom hee had much loued. Wherewith this POPPEA became so proude, that she taking scorne to be his friend, very instantly entreated and defired the Emperor, that divorcing himselfe from Octavia, he should marrie her: and feeing that A GRIPPINA NEROS mother, who supported and defended OCTAVIA, was a great let hereto, she endeuoured all that she might, to kindle and encrease the discord begun betweene the mother and the sonne. Against which AGRIPPINA vsedall the meanes that she possibly could deuise to recouer the good will of her fonne, as to procure him to commit most detestable copulation with her owne felfe, from which he was deliuered and withdrawne by meanes of Seneca, as Cornelius Tacitus reporteth: yet Syetonivs faith, that the onely feare of his mothers power and prefumptious boldnes withheld him from it, although other authors doe not wholy cleere him from this finne. How focuer it was, by POPPEIAs great diligence and his owne wickednes, he so much abhorred his mother, that he determined to kill her: but as it was a matter so horrible, he would have it done covertly: and so he first proued and practifed it with poilon, which taking no effect, by direction and counsell of one of his sea captaines whose name was Nicervs, the plot was laide that shee should bee drowned in the sea in the coast of Calabria: whither N ERO (faining a reconciliation with her) caused her to goe, and under color to Nicetus tooke vpon him the doe certaine facrifices, he himfelfe went thither also. But this plot taking no effect. charge to kill wherein certaine of her companie were drowned, & she with great daunger escaping, he feeing that fecret practifes availed not, refolved to put her to death openly: and tothat effect (through the counsell of the faid Nicervs)he caused it to be bruted abroade that one by whom she had sent him word of the shipwracke and daunger wherein she had been at sea, would have killed him; and for this purpose there was a pointard let fall at his feete, he which brought it faining, that by his mothers commaundement he came to have flaine him. Vnder this false pretext onely, he commaunded certaine Tribunes, of which this NICETVS was chiefe, to kill her: who being come where A GRIPPINA was, she presently vnderstoode the cause of their comming, and seeing them vnsheath their swords. authors write, that shewing them her belly, she said, strike me here first; for this part hath deserved it, seeing it conceived and brought forth such a monster as NERO: and so she soone died of the many wounds which were given her. And NERO who was there by, came to fee his dead mother, and stoode beholding her body as if it had been the body of a beaft; praifing and dispraising her parts jonne, sua ai-uellish ambirio and members. And thus did the wicked sonne murther his wicked mother, who cannot be excused, but that she for her wickednes deserved the death which she died: And it cannot bee denied, but that herein NERO shewed most abomi-

mother to death by the hand of

Agrippina.

The horrible erue!tie of the fonne, and di-

fition.

Truely it is a maruellous thing to confider of the love which this woman bare to her sonne: for it is written of her, that before that he was Emperor, it was told her by an Astrologer, that he should be Emperor, and that he should kill his owne mother:

nable crueltie; for nature doth abhor that a fonne should punish and be execu-

tioner to his owne mother, moued thereto by his owne wicked and euill dispo-

mother: whereto she answered; Let him haue the Empire, and then kill her and foare not. So great was her pride and ambition, that to the end that the might bee mother to the Emperour, the would put it in hazard to bee flaine by her owne fonne: and so both the one and the other were accomplished.

The Emperour NERO having performed fo good an exploit, as the murdering of his mother (fo much are Princes deceived and blinded with flatterie and curr abufed by adulation, that notwithstanding that all the world did see and understand the statement. matter, and how all had passed; yet most men in his presence approoued and applauded the same : and there were many vowes and sacrifices made to their gods for that he had escaped such a treason, and for the discouerie thereof; making him beleeue that they held it for truth) cloaking his wickednes under this colour, hee came to Rome, where feeing himselfe at libertie, and free from the controllement of his mother (whose authoritie was euer great about him) he began to lose all shame of the world giving the reine to his beastly appetites, and to all kind of filthines and most abominable luxurie, which was such and so horrible, that to keep fuch honest decorum in our historie as is requisite, and not to offend the cares of the honest readers. I purpose to passe it ouer in silence. Wherin he spending great part of the time, all the rest he emploied in lasciuious Comedies and other libidinous exercises, and oftentimes in bankets and feasing which lasted all the whole day, and the night alfo, and was prodigall in all, and in attiring and apparelling himselte in most incredible rich and sumptuous attire. The ornaments of his Palace and his expences and prodigalities were fuch, as the like thereof had neuer been seene. In Comedies and publike shewes, most of which were most vile and dishonest: he acted a part in person, and would that the noble youg men of Rome, and some of the most principall young Ladies should be present to heare and see the same. And aboue all he was so inclined to Musicke, and so much affected it. that befides that he was very skilfull in that arte, he gloried so much in finging, that many times hee refused to eate for hurting his voice; and to cleere it and make it better, he purged himselfe and vsed other remedies and medicines. Some write of him, that to that effect he wore a plaister or sheete of lead upon his breast. Finally, NERO forgetting the dignitic and maiestie of his estate, gaue himselfe oner to base and vice exercises and vices, which for that they were such, are not all described, and which afterwards brought him to the bottome and finke of all finne and crueltie, as we will declare. And as the subjects for the most part doe imitate the fashions and behauiour of their Princes and Lords; so presently in Rome and out of it, they began to practife and follow those vices and exercises wherein the Emperour spent his time: and the lawes, good customes, Artes and Sciences began to be corrupted and forgotten. Wherefore he accomplished the making of himselfe an enemie, and odious to all good men, although then there were but few, as it often happeneth.

While as he busied himselfe about these matters, the warres which his Cap-VV arres with taine Corby Lys began with the Parthians, about the title of the kingdome of Armenia, neuer ceased, as is aforesaid. In which after there had passed many feates of armes, the Romanes prenailing, the Parthians were wholy cast out of the prouince of Armenia: and NERO nominated and fent thither for King thereof (as a fubicato the Empire) TIG RANES, who was nephew to ARCHELAVS sometime King of Cappadocia, having of a long time remained in Rome in base and poore estate. This man was by some of the countrey received and entertained with goodwil, and others which held with the king of the Parthians murmured there-

NERO. at as commonly it vieth to happen: Wherefore there was given vnto him an ordinarie guard of foote and horsemen, and some of the Romane Cohorts to aide and affift him to defend that kingdome: and CORBVLVs being victorious came with his legions into Syria, which happened in the 7. yeere of the raigne of N ER o. About this time there was so great an Earthquake in many parts of the world, that many great buildings fell downe; and therewith was the citie of Landices wholy destroyed and laid waste. Within few daies after this, the Ile of England and Scotland, then called Britannie, rebelled against the Romane Empire, being vnable to endure the infolencies and oppressions which therein by the men of warre of the Romane legions, lying there in garrison, were committed, PAVLINVS SVETO, NIV s being their Captaine: for from the diseases and vices of the head, Rome, did flow disorder and corruption through all the provinces which were members thereof. The cause of the insurrection in this Iland proceeded from hence; PAVLINVS being desirous to winne honor, and enuying the fame which Cor-BVLVs had gotten in the East, who was daily victorious in the warre against the Parthians, and he wanting neither courage nor discretion to doethe like, but matter and occasion; and seeing that in the Ile of Britannie there was neither time nor hope for his purpole, leaving such troupes and garrison therein, as hee thought fufficient, he went from thence with a great fleete to make warre in an Iland neere The He of Man. to England, then called Mona, and now Man, which was inhabited by a fierce na-

The Romanes cut in pieces by the Bri-

taines.

Agreat bat-

befieged him, and fo were mafters of the field: CALPVS, who for the Emperour was gouernour of the Iland, feeing himfelfe vnable to defend the fame, with the greatest speede that possibly he could fled into France, and abandoned the Iland. And the Britaines took fuch order, and vsed such expedition in this warre against the Romanes and their adherents, that within few daies in fundrie places were flaine 70000 men. PAVLINVs being aduertised of this so great calamitie having effected the determination which he attempted of his owne authoritie, with the greatest speede possible returned into the Iland with his troupes, where he assembled together those which had remained constant in the Emperours seruice, and the remainder of the Romane fouldiers which were left; and reprehending fome, and encouraging others, without any longer delay, hee went to feeke his enemies and their captain PRASVTAGVS: who were now growne so hardie that they came to feeke him, and did for affure themselves of the victorie; that they brought their wines in wagons and carres to fee the battaile which they meant to fight. Which PAVLINVS SVETONIVS refused not; but like an experi captaine tooke fuch advantage of the ground, and marshalled his men in such fort, and in the battaile fought fo valiantly, that he obtained the victorie: yet was it one of the most fierce battailes, and fought with the greatest obstinacie that ever was feene: for of the conquerors there died a great number, but of the conquered (as Con-NELIVS TACITUS reporteth) there were flaine few leffe then fourescore thou-

tion. And notwithstanding that all succeeded well vnto him in that iourney, yet

while he was bufied thereabouts, the Britaines chufing among themselues a cap-

taine, which was a man of great account and reputation, called PHRASVRATVS

or PRASVTAGVS, with the title of a King, as they ordinarily had in that Iland, al-

though it were subject; they rose and rebelled for their libertie, killing so many

Romane fouldiers as they could find, which had flut themselues vp in a temple;

and afterwards onerthrowing a legion which came to their aide, they flew the

greatest part thereof, and compelled PETVs, who had the commaund in the ab-

fence of PAVLINY'S SVETONIVS, to flie to their Campe, where they prefently

fand men. But GILDAS an auncient Historian borne in the same Iland, setteth downea much lesse number, who saith, that there were slaine thirtie thousand. With this great victorie, and with the new supplie which NERO sent, the Romanes prevailed in that Ile, to that from thencefoorth it remained in peace.

· While these things were a doing, N = R o daily encreased in his vice and wickednes, and principally befides (what is aforefaid) began to execute many new cruelties, commaunding many men to be flaine vpon light occasions, and some withoutanv: notwithstanding that his Schoole-master SENECA, and BVRRVS the Prefect of the Pretorian Cohorts, did stay and mitigate the same all that they might. But in the ninth yeere of his raigne BVRRVS died, and SENECA being by some brought into suspition with NERO (besides that vertue is ever hatefull to the wicked) began to withdraw himselfe from entermedling with the affaires of the gouernment: and as a Phisition leaueth to applie medicines to the patient, of whose recouerie there is no hope; so did he forbeare to converse with N BR O. Or giue him any counsell, faining his old age and want of health to be the cause therof. And in like manner (as faith CORNELIVS TACITUS) others which had any sparke of ancient Romanes in them, withdrew themselves; being ynable to endure the fight of what passed and N BR o committed. At this time N BR o commaunded Publivs Sylla to be flaine in France, who was one of the most famous men of his time; and another whose name was RABELLIVS PLAVIVS, a worthie and principall man, in whom was found no other fault, or cause wherefore heshould be slaine, but that he was vertuous, and therefore beloued of all men: and being fuch vpon a time when NERO was so sicke that it was thought he would have died, the people of Rome fixed their cies vpon this man, naming and chusing him for N EROEs successor: vpon which occasion N ERO banished him from Rome, and now determined to release him from banishment by causing him to be flaine. And after this manner he flew in those daies a great number of other Romanes, which these authors doe name, and I leave out, as a matter abominable; which hee put to death of crueltie and enuie, without any other

A little after this, growing impudent through his customarie finning, hee diuorced himselfe from his wife Octavia; and not contented to put her away. he tooke another mans wife, and prefently married POPPEA, whom (as we faid) he held for his friend, having first taken her from OTHO which was her huf Neroput away band and not contented to put away his good and vertuous wife, he caused her his wife, and married and to be falsely accused of adulterie, having compounded with NICETVS his Sea-ther mans, captaine (who murdered his mother A GRIPPINA, who as it should seeme a man fit for fuch feruices) that hee should confesse himselfe to be the man which had committed adulterie with her. And notwithstanding that this was plainly perceiued to be a fiction, he diffemblingly banished NICETVS, and OCTAVIA was also banished, and afterwards slaine by his commaundement: so as to the innocent was given a true punishment, and to the traitor a fained correction. At that time he also commaunded the famous Libertine PALANTE to be flaine, for the defire which he had to his riches: for in the time of N ERO it was more daungerous to be rich, then to commit offences; and many were flaine because they were rich, and few were punished for their euill deedes.

NERO committing these and many other such like enormities, VOLOGEs vs king of the Parthians, taking it in scorne that his brother Tyridates should be dispossest of the kingdome of Armenia, and that it should by the Romanes,



be given to Tigrans; began to leuie his forces, and determining to renew the warre, fent his faid brother to recouer that kingdome, as he foone did; and feafed upon many countries and parts thereof. Against whom CORBULVS, who was captaine in the East, and had made the last warre, with all expedition sent two legions for a supply to King TIGRANES: and the warre beginning very hotly of either fide, the Emperor at the earnest fute of Corby Lys, sent new troupes war with to reinforce the armie against the Parthians, and CESONIVS PETVS for their captaine. Who, with the greatest speede that he could, with many companies and great preparation for the warres, departed Italie, and following his journey came where CORBULUS attended his comming; and dividing his troupes with CORBULUS, each of them by himselfe followed the warre apart: in processe whereof CORBULUS gouerned fo valiantly and with fuch discretion, that he not onely defended the limits of the Empire in that part which fell to his lot, but passed the River Euphrates, and gat and surprised some holds in his enemies countrie. And CBSONIVS PETVS with leffe wit or experience, but more vaine glorie promifing great matters of himselfe, bagan the warre: In the beginning whereof with apparance of good fuccesse, hee entred Armenia, and extending his power farther then he ought to have done, passed the Mountaine Taurus, taking some townes without considering whether he were able to hold the same or no, and sent of his troupes into divers places with a defire to get and to do more then he was able to accomplish, or was fit to be done: So that (as Cor-NELIVS TACITY'S Writeth) he gouerned himselfe soill, that when as Volo-GESV'S came against him, there happened so many diffraces vnto him, and he vnaduifedly encamped hunfelfe in fuch a place, that he was befieged by Vo-LOG BS V S in his camp; in such fort that being vnable to stay for the succour which was to come from CORBVEVS vnto him, wanting both courage and discretion to defend himselfe, hee came to a shamefull and dishonorable composition for the Romane reputation, with the King of the Parthians; which was, That the King giving him leave freely to depart out of the countrie with his armie, he should abandon the province of Armenia, and deliver vp all such holds as he had taken: all which was performed accordingly, and he very shamefully went out of Armenia, in great diffrace, and with no small losse of his armie. The Emperor being aduertised thereof, sent for him to come to Rome, and to leave his legions with CORBULUS; and when hee was come, he gaue him no other punishment, but in a word or two calling him dastard and coward; for comming to his prefence, he faid, that hee would speedily pardon him, to the end that the feare of punishment should not kill him.

CORBULUS remaining captaine alone (notwithstanding that the Parthians were growne proud by reason of their late victorie) prosecuted the warre in such manner, that they motioned treaties of peace, and fent Ambassadors to Rome, which after fundrie Ambassades & some trucetaken, in the end a peace was concluded, profitable to the Parthians, although in flew and ceremonies honorable to the Romanes: which was, That TYRIDATES should remaine in possession of Armenia, but should give over the title and royall ensignes, vntill he had been at Rome, there personally to receive the same at the hands of the Emperor N ERO. To confirme this agreement, he came into the Romanes campe, and in presence of all the armie, humbled, and proftrated himselfe vpon the earth before N E R O his image, and taking the crowne from his head, he fet it at N ER O Es feete: and afterwards being folemnly entertained and feafted, appointing a time for his

comming to Rome, he left a daughter which he had, for affurance thereof, and fo departed to visit his brothers, Vologesvs King of the Parthians, and Paco. RVS King of the Medes, and to prepare all things necessarie for his journey. Which although it were not so soone as it was appointed, and that there passed some things in the meane season, as we will presently specifie, yet to the end that we leauenot this matter vnperfect, it shall be fit (although somewhat afore the time) to speake of Tirid ATEs his comming to Rome, for it was a solemne matter and worthie to be remembred, which was thus.

As NERO was a man desirous of fame and vaine glorie, so by letters and great promises, he inuited and procured TIRIDATES to come to Rome, which he performed, greatly accompanied, and was most solemnly received: and NERO attended his comming with sumptuous prouision made by the Senate and people, set vpon a high throne, with all the shew of maiestie and greatnes that could be deuised: at one end whereof, were all the pretorian cohortes and men of warre, armed with most faire and bright armor. TIRIDATES comming to the place where the Emperour NERO was, being alighted from his horse, mounted up the staires to the scaffold where he sate, and comming neere him, fell at his feeteand NERO taking him by the right hand, raised him, and tooke from his head Tiridates crosan ornament which he ware, and did put thereon a diadem and crowne of a King, ned in Rome by vsing herein other pompous ceremonies. TIRIDATES being crowned with new with this folemnitie, after certaine feasilings which were made him in Rome, having great solemniremained there certaine daies, departed towards his countrie, carrying with him "10. an incredible maffe of money, which the Emperour gaue him for his comming, The peace with the Parthians being confirmed in this manner, NERO gaue himselse more to his old vices then hee did before; and to doe the same more freely, and to be at more libertie and farther off from the authoritie of the Senate. he departed from Rome, with the most solemne and magnificent court and companie that euer was seene; although the greatest part thereof were conformable to his conditions. The report of this journey was, that he went into Gracia, to Nerobisioncutthe necke of a land in Achaia, which is a narrow land betweene the Egean its. and Ionian seas, which make Peloponesus now called Morea, to be as it were an Iland. And in his journey, in Naples and in other parts, he shamelessly came upon the theaters and stages of the cities, and acted part of the Comedies, as one of the actors or plaiers, and fung tragedies and fables, and wanne many prifes and crownes, which were rewards given in those controversies. And being come into Gracia, in the greatest busines for which he came, he did no more but appoint a day to begin his worke, and having made a speech to his people, he tooke a toole in his hand wherewith he began to digge the earth, and making this beginning, he fodainly (no man knowing any cause wherefore) left of what he had begun, without order for doing any more, and presently returned to Rome. Wherein he entred in triumph, as if he had wonne a great battaile, demaunding it for the victorie aboue written; wherein he came mounted vpon the same chariot, wherein Octavivs Avovstvs had triumphed, enclosed and compassed about with musitions and plaiers, such as represented fables and tragedies vpon stages, being brought from all parts of the world for that purpose. And within few daies after that this was palt, he pretended another journey into the kingdome of Egypt, and all things being in a readines for that purpose, through a certaine divination he gave over his journey. NERO being come to the beginning of the eleventh yeere of his raigne, became so impudent, giving himselfe wholy

ouer to sensualitie, that he did any thing without blushing or changing colour, and licenced an infinit number of others to do the like: and his wickednes mounted to so high a degree, that Sveronivs testifieth of him thus.

NERO.

Super ingeniorum proagogia & nuptarum concubinatus, vestali virgini Rubria vim intulit. Acten libertam paulum abfuit, quin iusto matrimonio sibi coniungeret, summissis consularibus viris, qui regio genere ortam peierarent. Pueram Sporum exectis testibus, etiam in muliebrem naturam transfigurare conatus est, cum dote & flammes persolenni nuptiarum celeberaimo officio deductum ad fe, pro vxore habuit. Extatque cuiusdam non inscitus iocus, bene azi potuisse cum rebus humanis, si Domitius Neronis pater talem habuisset vxorem. Hunc Sporum Augustarum ornementis excultum lecticaque vectum er circa connentus mercatulque Gracia, ac mox Roma circa Sigillaria comitatus el identidem exosculans. Nam matris concubitum appetisse, & ab obtrectatoribus eius, ne ferox atque impotens mulier, & hoc gratia genere praualeret, deterritum nemo dubitauit, viique postquam meretricem, quam fama erat Agrippina simillimam inter concubinas recepit. Olim etiam quoties lectica cum matre veheretur, libidinatum inceste ac maculis vestis proditum affirmant.

Amongst all his dishonest and filthic prankes, he neuer forgat the fiercenes and crueltie of his heart, shedding bloud, and killing an infinit number of men, and made boast and vaunted thereof; faying, that none of his predecessors in the Romefee on fier this man to all mankinde, which did fully appeare by that which he did within

Empire, did euer know their owne power but he. And one in his presence vsing this faying, vied for a by-word, when I am dead let the world bee burned, quoth he, let it be before that I die, I pray God. Of so cuil an inclination and enuious was a little while after this, which was, to fet the citie of Rome on fire, as SVETONIVS, Evsenivs, Evtropivs, Pavivs Orosivs, and Isidore affirme: yet Cornelivs Tacitys maketh some doubt thereof, whether that it were done by chaunce, or by his commaundement, and yet he himselfe affirmeth that no man durst to quench the fire for feare of him: and all affirme, that it lasted fixe daies and seauen nights, and that NERO went up to the top of a high tower, to behold this spectacle, which was very pleasing to his fight, where he stoode singing certaine verses of Homen, which contained the burning of the citie of Troy. And the fire did confume fomuch in the citie of Rome, that TACITYS writeth, that of fourteene great quarters which were in the citie, onely fower escaped free from it; and of the tenne, three were wholy confumed and burnt to the ground; and in the feuen there was neuer a house, whereof the greatest part was not burned, and many wholy. Finally, it was innumerable, and not to be imagined the houses, temples, riches, the spoiles of victories, the clothes and merchandises, and other things which this fire confumed: which to the end that the reader may the better vinderstand, he ought to consider, that Rome was then the greatest and most populous citie in the world, full of, and most frequented by strange Nations, and the most rich and beautifull that euer was, as that which in that time did draw to it and swallow vp all the money and riches of all the provinces subject vnto it, by taxings, tributes, impositions, briberie, and tyrannies. This lamentable desolation being ended, there remained in him no pittie at all, but all men held him to be the author thereof; although they durst not say so, and that he defired to have of the ruines; for the stones, pillars, and other things which escaped the fire, he would not suffer to be carried a way by the owners, but tooke them for the building of his owne pallace and houses, which some daies before he had builded, and part thereof being burned with this fire, heafterwards reedified and

made without comparison fairer and greater then before; so as it seemeth an incredible matter, what PLINY, SVETONIVS, and CORNELIVS TACITUS Write of the greatnes thereof, to whom I referre the reader for the particular description Additional of that Palace, be cause it is a matter wonderfull, and which onely was sufficient to of New bis Pashew the riches of Rome. For it stretched from the Mount Palatine to the Mount lace. Esquiline, which, as it seemeth, were distat a good deale more the a mile in bredth. it contained in it ponds of water fo great, that they feemed to bee gulfes of the Sea, copassed round about with buildings and lodgings. It had in it also, besides gardens and orchards, excellent hils and woods, wherein were all manner of wild beafts. Moreouer the halles and dining chambers, befides that they were built of Marble, Alablaster, Iaspars, Topaces, and other excellent stones; the timberworkes thereof and the feelings were inlaid with gold and Iuorie, and mother of Pearle, and some stones of price. And some of these high places and chambers were round, and made with fuch art and skill, that, the floore remaining firme and fixt, the roofe and vaults thereof went continually round like the skie, in such manner as sometime bird-cages are made , and some of these roomes were wrought with such art, that there were in the certaine ventals and alimbiques of gold and Iuorie, which at certaine times did cast out sweete flowers, waters, and precious this this le like wife had bathes of fundrie waters hot and cold, and other mainents and excellencies, such and so many as would be tedious to recite derein and in other buildings which he made, he spent an inestimable quantitie of treasure, and in other which he began, which were strange and marueilous, which for breuitie I omit. And although (as is faid) he had commaunded the citie of Rome to be set on fire, yet after that it was burnt, he vsed all diligence to reedifie it againe, in better forme then it was before, and had determined to alter the name thereof, and to call it Neroniana, after his owne name. But

mong the people, for commaunding it to be fet on fire. After all this, the Emperour N ER o by the instigation of the diuell, in whose power remained his finnes (the number of Christians in Rome then encreasing, through the preaching of the Apostles S.Peter and S.Pav L, which then were therein) he and fuch like being grieued with the holines and vertues of the Primittue Church, determined to perfecute the same : and putting it in execution, a great number of Christians, both within and without it, were put to death by his The find person commaundement. And this was the first generall persecution which the Church emission of the fuffered. And although that after the death of CHRIST there wanted no perfecutors; yet was it neuer persecuted by the Emperours publike edict untill this

kinds of martyrdome they endured, CORNELLY'S TACITYS an infidell Hifto-

riographer, and an enemie to Christians, yet true in his historic, besides other

Christian authors, shall beare witnes: who (like a Gentile murmuring at them)

reciteth the perfecution which the Emperour Nero made: whereof Sveto-

wive also making mention, saith, that a most great number of Christian men and

women were put to death: And among other cruelties, burnings, croffes, and

other kinds of death, he reporteth that they were throwne to the dogges, by them

to be torne in pieces: and to the end that the dogges should be the more eager

against them, they clad and concred them with the skinnes of Beares and other

this his care fufficed not to cleere him of the infamie, which he had purchased a-

wild beafts. This perfecution of the church SVETONIVS and CORNELIVS TA-CITY's fet downe in this place after the burning of Rome, in the eleventh yeare of

time. Wherein, how great the constancie of the Martyrs was, and what fundrie

the Emperour NEROE staigne; yet EvsEBIVs and other authors note it to bee in the last veere of his Empire, wherein died the blessed Apostles S.P. ETER and S.PAVL by his commaundement. But it may be, and fo I beleeue, that this perfecution lasted till then, which was little more then three yeers; or whether it were onely in this time, it pleased God to preserve his holie Apostles yntill the time aboue said.

After that the Emperour N ERO had executed the faid crueltie against the Christians, which was the greatest that he euer vsed, there followed in Rome and the marches thereof, one of the greatest plagues of pestilence that ever was in the world; by the permission of God, as it is to be believed, for the crueltie vsed against the Christians. But there was no amendment in him, neither any repentance in that nor in his other mischiefes: but rather waxing worse, he againe began his robberies and intolerable extortions in all his prouinces, which were fuch and so many, that they became vnpeopled, and many places were wholy ruinated and defolate: for the ordinarie rents (although the fumme thereof were incredible) being insufficient to maintaine the prodigalities and vnmeasurable expences, which because they are not be expressed at large, it shall suffice to make some briefe mention thereof, the better to consecute of the rest. Besides, what he The excessive without measure consumed in his building and vaine workes and in the curious workmanship of that his famous house, which was a matter in estimable: in al the rest his disorder and excesse was incredible. First he apparelled himselfe with most precious and rich attire, and ordinarily plaid at dice and at other games great fummes of money. When he went a fishing (whereunto he was extremely affected) and for his pleasure went to the sea and rivers, he commaunded the nets to be made of gold threed, and the ropes of most excellent fine filke. In his progreffes which he made out of Rome, which were many, besides the other infinit numbers of people of his Court and baggage which he carried, and which followed him; he neuer had leffe then a thousand waggons drawne with Mules for his wardrope, excellently wrought and garnished; and those which led and ruled them, were apparelled in most rich attire, of gold, silver, cloath of gold and silke, euen vnto the very Mules shooes, which were of pure filuer. Then the games and plaies which he made, were fuch & so many, that it cannot be counted what they might cost: for besides those which in Rome were ordinarie, as the Swordplayers, combats, huntings of wild beafts, Lions, Elephants, Beares, Panthers, Tigers, and other beafts; the Comedies and Tragedies which in the Theaters and Amphitheaters were made and represented, and the sports on horseback, & with chariots of divers formes, in the circuits and places of Rome, which were many, which hee made more often and with greater magnificence then euer theretofore; he inuented new sports with chariots drawne with Camels, and Elephants with Castles youn their backes, with other nouelties and strange things, which

to bring to passe it behooued a man to compasse the world. As were his Nauma-

chie, a fight with galleys vpon the water, making a Lake for that purpose by hand,

which they also called Naumachia, making water to be brought from the Sea to

fill the same, and therewith fishes to swimme therein, because it should be more

Naumachia.

Gifts ginen by

the 13. yeere of his raigne, the provinces being no longer able to endure his tyrannaturall and at life. Then in the gifts which hee threw to the people, for him nie, and much lesse the armies which were in them, began to murmure and to which could first take them, which they called Missilia, he would not give such thinke vpon meanes how they might rife and rebell against him, as within short as were ordinarie, as other Emperours did, of money, birds, and other things of fmall value, but ioyntly therewith he commaunded precious apparell, gold, filner, rich stones and pearles to be given; and to encrease this in all extremitie, of things

things which could not bee cast in their kinde, hee caused certaine tables to bee throwne, wherein was fet downe what he should have into whose hands they came, in wheate, heards, or flaues; which extended so farre as to give heritages, fields, houses, Ilands, and other matters of great price. In all which that hath been faid he that will shall see what he might spend, and may imagine what his expences might amount vnto in other matters. So as this accurred man had no vice wherein he would not be extreame, and so would be in spending and dispersing, as he was in robbing and despiting the people: which his prodigalitie (as it was gratefull and pleafing to the vulgar fort) fo I prefume it was the cause why they so long time endured his tyrannic and wicked conditions.

But as these things were intolerable, after the 11. yeer of his raigne, many principall noble men of Rome conspired against him, the head and chiefe whereof was Carvs Prs o, the most noble man by birth, parentage and vertue, that at against Nero. that time was in Rome, and according to his name, this conspiracie was called Pisoniana. But it was discouered before it tooke effect, and in steede of the remedie which was hoped for it opened the way to the Emperours crueltie: for you this occasion he put to death so many principall men and of all forts, as well those which were guiltie, as of those which hee would hold for suspected, that they were without number; among which died the wittie and excellent Poet L v-CAN, and his master SENECA. And fearcand statterie were of such power (which are things which commonly concurre) that the Senate determined to doe facti. The Senate did fices, and to give solemne thankes vnto the gods for the health and safetie of N E- stee health of a o, and his deliuerie from this conspiracie; and they ordained feasts to be made 2000. therefore, and that the moneth of Aprill should lose his name and be called N E-

of was a Romane Knight, whose name was VINDEX: but as the diuell would

helpeand support his servant N ER 0; so it was also discouered, and the confede-

rates therein were by him brought to their death; and many others upon that

occasion. After which hee grew so fearefull, and therewith so cruell that from

thencefoorth his greatest studie and exercise was to put mento death, vpon any

occasion whether forged or true, according to his fantasie. And so he slew a great

number of principall men (as Sveronivs and more at large Corneivs TA-

CITY'S doe describe.) Being nussed in these cruelties, he forgat not his other vices

and exercises; among which one was to come personally into the Theater, and

there to contend & striue for the prizes which were given to him that best could

recite or fing verses and tragedies, and for other rewards of Musicke which were

giuen in that time, as if he had been the poorest Musition or singing man in Rome.

And comming one day very merrie for a victorie which he had obtained in these

Theatrall Iusts and contentions, he tooke some displeasure against his beloued

wife POPPEA; and as hee was very proude and ill conditioned, he gaue her a

fournein the bellie, whereof being with child the fell to ficke that the died; and Nero killed his

he, who was the cause of her death, was exceeding sorrie for it. After all this, in mise Poppea.

Ro and that there should be a new temple erected to the god of health, and other fuch like things. After this there was another conspiracie, the captain where-

space some of them did, which was in the 13. yeere of his raigne. Moued vpon Thelemerethe like occasion, the Iewes role against the Empire, God permitting that they belled against

should be the first, and should perseuere in their rebellion, for a publike and eui-

dent punishment which should be inslicted upon them, for the putting of our Saujour Christ to death. For this warre which was begun against the lewes. VESPASIAN was appointed captaine generall, a man very famous both in peace and warre, and who afterwards was Emperour, who had for his lieutenant (which is the second place after the generall) his sonne Tirvs, who in processe of time was also Emperour. VESPASIAN began this warre very valorously, and it was afterwards one of tho most famous warres that ever was in the world; wherein as shall be declared, the citie of Ierusalem was wholy destroyed. This historie is excellently well written by I o serhy s a Iewish historiographer, who serued in that warre, and was taken prisoner by VESPASIAN: and by EGESIPPYS a lew by birth, but a christian by profession; besides many other authors which treate and write thereof.

VESPASIAN having by force of armestaken some cities in Indea; the envie and hatred daily encreasing against NERO, with the causes which he gaue of the fame, all Nations conspiring to rebell and rife against him; the provinces of France, and the legions which were therein, first began, chusing Iv Livs VINDEX for their captaine who then was there. The newes hereof came to NERO being then in the citie of Naples, whither he went for his vertuous recreations, fuch as he was accustomed to vie: whereat he seemed not to be much moued, and (as it was furmifed) it offended him not, because that thereby he might have occasion to robbe and facke all the prouinces of France. But the newes still encreasing, he began to stand in some doubt, and came to Rome, where he was certified that a part of Spaine called Tarragona, was also rifen against him, with SERGIVS GAL-BA proclaming himselfe Emperor; who was a man very famous for his noble linage, charges and dignities which he had valoroufly executed. Which he did, as some write, being perswaded thereto by letters from IVIIVS VINDEX, who (as I now faid) was rifen in armes in France.

With this newes of Spaine, the Emperour Nero was formuch troubled that after that he had lien a good while (as though he had been dead) vpon his bed without speaking any one word; he rose vp as a man desperate, and tearing his clothes knocked his head against the walles, without hearing or receiving counfell or comfort from those which would have given it him. And this fury being past, he began to take order for the leuving of forces, and to require impress and aides thereto: but he was so much hated of all the world, that no man came very willingly to his feruice; rather perswading one another to the contrarie, and not to come. And things standing in this state, as NERO busied himselfe about leuying an armie, and thought in himselfe what cruelties and punishments he might inflict, there came certaine newes vnto him, that the legions which lay vpon the frontiers of high Dutchland, whose captaine was RVFV s VIRGINIV S. Were also risen against him, aswell as those of France and Spaines. With this newes N B R O lost all courage and hope to defend himselfe; and the Senate and people of Rome were therewith fo much troubled, that without any foliciting, but onely of their owne meere motion by common consent, they determined to abandon NERO, and refuse to yeeld him any obedience, whereof ensued his death so shamefull and vile, as he deserved; which was in this manner.

SVET ONLY'S writeth, that when the newes came of the infurrection of the legions, Nexo was at dinner; and that presently so soone as hee heard it, hee threw the table to the ground, and in despaire to bee able to defend himselfe, taking certaine poison in a boxe of gold, he withdrew himselfe to certaine gardens

which he had, where he deuised fundrie waies and meanes to escape this present calamitie; fomtime thinking to flie out of Italie to the King of the Parthians, with whom he was in great league of friendship euer since the coronation of his brother TIRIDATES King of Armenia; other whiles he thought to yeeld himselfe to SERGIVS GALBA, and to craue mercie at his hands: but finding no meanes nor remedie for the one nor other (for few were they which repaired vnto him. or came at his calling) he was of opinion to goe forth into the publike places of Nero brought affembly in Rome, clad in mourning attire, & there to craue pardon for his ill fore- into extreme passed life; and if they should not graunt him to continue in the Empire, yet at the least that they would bestow upon him the gouernment of the kingdome of Egypt; and to this effect, were found certaine orations alreadie drawne in his clofet; but he durst not put this deuise in execution, fearing to be slaine by the people; so great alreadie was the tumult in the citie. Passing that day and part of the night in these doubts and searcs, he laid himselse vpon his bed, although he tooke little rest, determining with himselfe the next day to put in execution that counfell which should seeme most profitable. And having slept alittle, he awoke about midnight, and was given to vinderstand that the Cohorts which had the guarde

of the pallace were gone, and had for faken him. He amazed at so great a noueltie,

sent for certaine his greatest and most private friends to their houses: but as be-

tweene wicked men there is no certaine true friendship, neither was there any

due to him, neither had he deserued any, so from none of them he received any

good answere: wherefore with some of his servants and those very few (pro-

tected by the darknes of the night) he went forth of his pallace, and in person

went to many of their houses, at none of which they would open the doores,

neither give him any answere: fo as he who within few daies before was feared

and adored of all the world; returned forrowfull, despised, and in feare of all men.

And returning to the lodging from whence he came, he found it ransackt and

robbed, euen to the very boxe of poison which he had reserved for his last refuge.

Which when he saw, in despaire of his life and desiring to die, he began in great

hast to call for a certaine sworde player which serued him, whose name was

Spicilly's Mirmilon, and commaunded him to kill him. And as neither

this man, neither any other would doe it, he cried out with a loud voice, faying,

Now I perceiue that I haue neither friend nor enemie. And in this furie he went

with a determination to drowne himselfe in the River Tiber, and making a stand,

he asked of those which were with him, where he might hide himselfe, vntill that

he had bethought him what to doe: prefently an enfranchifed man of his,

offred to keepe him fecretly hidden in a farme which he had foure miles from

Rome. And so NERO taking this for his last refuge, mounting to horsebacke, in

the darke of the night went out of Rome with foure men onely, which accom-

pained him, in the most couert and disguised manner that he could: and with

great feare and trouble came to the village whither they carried him; and lea-

uing his horse hidden among certaine trees, he went couertly through certaine

Canes and Reedes, and before that he came to the house whither he was to goe,

the same FAONTES which brought him, counselled him to goe into a cauc

which was there, wherethey vsed to digge fand: whereto he answered, that he

would not bury himselfealiue. And in the end he went into the house, creeping

on all fower at a hole which they made through the wall; and comming into a

chamber, he cast himselfe vpon a poore bed which was there, and being both

hungtie and thirstie, he desired to have some thing to eate: but there was nothing

Nero flew him

to be had but a piece of browne breade and a little water; the bread he would not eate, but dranke of the water with incomparable feare and forrow to fee himselfe there.

As these things passed with N ERO (as I have said) so soone as it was day, his flight was presently discourred, and the Senate assembled, and by their common confent he was adjudged an enemie to his countrie, and being condemned to die, was commaunded to be fought for every where : for the execution thereof, the men of warre of the Pretorian and Vrban Cohorts, consented thereunto, by perswasions and promises which were made vnto them. With which newes, so foone as the determination of the Senate was published, a feruant to the faid FA-ONTES which brought NERO to his farme, went out of Rome, to give him to vnderstand thereof: for hee knew the secret way. And being come where the Emperour was, he found him making preparation to kill himselfe, through the perswasion of those which came with him, seeing that there was no other meanes for him to escape. He hearing the forrowfull newes which was brought him. amazed and even out of his wittes, tooke the poiniards which he had brought thither, and feeling their points and edges, with shew to doe that which they had counselled him, growing fearefull and a coward, againe put them into their sheathes, faining that yet his fatall hower was not come. And somtimes he prayed and entreated, that some one of those which were with him, would kill himselfe, to the end that he might follow his example: at other times he would reproue himselfe for his base minde and want of courage, vntill at last hearing the noise of certaine horsemen, which by the commaundement of the Senate came to feeke him, he fet a poiniard to his throate, wherewith, with the helpe of one of his feruants he wounded himselfe, of which wound within a little while after, he died making fuch geftures and countenances, as made all those which were prefent amazed thereat. And so ended the enemie of mankind, the venom and poison of the earth (for so PLINY calleth him) after that he had raigned fourteene yeeres, being two and thirtie yeeres old, in the feuentith yeere after the birth of Christ. This Nero was a man of a goodly constitution, neither high nor low, of a faire countenance though somewhat wanton his eies greenish. a round visage, reddish haire, with a thicke and full necke, and had a great belly and little legges, and was a man of a found complexion: for notwithstanding that he was given to all vice and excesse, yet in fourteene yeeres that he raigned he was neuer but thrife ficke.

His death being knowne in Rome, the joy which the Senate and people conceiued thereof, was incomparable; and all came foorth into the streetes to congratulate one with another, with bonnets vpon their heads, which was a figure of libertie; for fo did the flaues vie to weare when their mailters made them free. But with all this (as N ERO had been a great feafter, a spender, a giver, and was fubiect to other vices, which many men loued more then many other mensyertues) yet there were some which for a long time honored his sepulcher and did ordinarily fet flowers vpon it. And the King of the Parthians fent his Ambassadors afterwards to Rome to confirme the peace and amitie: who with great instance, carnestly defired that the remembrance of NERO might be held in honorand reuerence. And as the vaine and idle people vie to fowe false reports; fo many beleeued that NERO was not dead, but that he lay hidden and should returne agains to the Empire, as though that he had been enchaunted. Saint AVGVSTINE also in his booke de ciuitate Dei saith, that some were of opinion that NERO was antichrift, which vanitie gaue occasion that twentie yeeres after that, there rose a man in Asia, naming himselfe N ER o, which caused great trouble and alteration, being affifted by the Parthians: although that in truth there remained no house of Nero, neither some nor daughter, adopted or naturall, In Nero wer and he was the last Emperor of the house and familie of the Casas, founders inguished the of the Empire; so in him ended his linage, not with standing that the name conti- linage of the nueth vntill this day.



# THE LIFE OF SERGIVS GALBA ONELY OF THAT

NAME, AND SEVENTH EMPEROR OF ROME.



THE ARGUMENT.



Ergius Galba succeeded Nero, and in his old age was advanced to the Empire. This man was of the noble family of the Sulpity, and was very intemperate in his diet, and of no great good fame, concerning Sodomie, and gonerned the Empire by the counsell of three of his familiars. This man before his comming to the Empire subdued many proninces, and was very seuere in the execution of the martiall discipline. He was learned in the liberall sciences, but chiefly very expert in the lawes. He was infortunate in his children, for those which he had died before him: and he whom he adopted whose name was Piso Licinianus was slaine

alittle after him. This old man died through the sedition of Otho, who sent certaine souldiers to cut off his bead in the publike market place: whither he came armed to represse the tumules. His

body was left at the mercie of the people 3 yet in the end it was buried by one of his bondmen. He lined senentic and three yeeres, and ruled the Empire seanen moneths and seanen daies. His death seemed to be very acceptable to the people, as to those which are ener desirous to see nonelties.



Enobeing dead in fuch manner as we have declared, with great gladnes and generall confent of all men, Seroivs Galbawas created Emperour; who in the time of Nenowas no man and proclaimed by the Armie which was in Spaine; and he was the first that received the Empire from the hand of the Armie, the Senate consenting thereto and approposing the same; having no affinitio or alliance with the house and linage of the Cesars, networking the supposition.

ther by nature nor adoption: For vntill this time the Empire succeeded by inheritance and fuccession from one to another, being kinsmen by nature or adoption. To declare the life and fortune of SERGIV'S GALBAbefore that he was Emperour, would require a large discourse; for he came to it at the age of 72. yeers, and enjoyed it not one whole yeere: foas feeing that I write an Imperiall hiftorie.I will not for fo short a discourse (as was his raigne) make so long a preamble. Let it suffice for him, and so much as shall appertaine to our historie, to know, that SERGIVS GALBAWAS of a most noble linage in Rome, descended from the familie of the Svipitii, by furname GALBE, and from other noble and ancient families (as these blazoners recount them every one according to his will and fashion) whereof he was wont much to boast, that by his father he was descended from IVPITER, and by his mother from PASIPHAE, wife to MINOS king of Cretagof whom is reported that notable fable of a Bull. And you shall also know that in his life time hee had administred and obtained many Magistracies and dignities in Rome and abroad, whereby he wonne great estimation to his person both in peace and warre: for being borne about the 40. yeere of the raigne of Octa-VIANVE AVGVETVE, or within little more or leffe, he lived after in the times of TIBERIUS, CALIGULA, CLAUDIUS, and NERO, and was wellknowne and honoured by them all; which could not be, without great wifedome and valour. to be able to support and encrease his honour in times of such confusion, and vader so tyrannous Princes; although imitating them, hee eschued not some of their vices, for which he was noted and defamed. So as speaking indifferently of this Emperour, we may fay, that he was betweene good and bad, and fo it feemeth that Cornelivs Tacitys noteth him: yet Plytarch, who writeth his life grauely and at large, amongst other defects in his raigne, laieth the fault vpon the time, and the euill conditions of men in that age, and of GALBA hee treateth as of a good Emperour. And he and others write, that he was learned in the liberall Sciences, and much inclined and given to learning and knowledge, particularly in the lawes and customes. He was but once married, and then with a principall woman, whose name was LEPIDA, and she being dead, and two sons which he had by her, he would neuer marrie any more. And this shall suffice for the notice of the person and qualities of GALBA. Now let vs speake of his raigne, which although that it was briefe and short in time, yet it was not so in aduen-

After that GALBA had rebelled in Spaine, in such manner as is said, and that the name of Emperour was given him, and by him accepted; in the meane space wntill N BRO died, and afterwards in the short time before he knew of his death,

he was in great trouble and extremitie: for although that presently in the beginning all went well with him, and he tooke a house and held the state of an Emperour, taking a guard, and chusing for his counsell, with whom he might conferre and confult of matters of importance, certaine of the most principall and wife men of the legion whereof hee had the charge, and had made and given offices and dignities; and the inhabitants of the province made their repaire to him to do him seruice: yetvpon a sudden al was in a hurly burly; for part of the Cohorts began to repent them of what they had done, and were at the point to have abandoned him. And it also happened that a certaine servant to one of N ER o his enfranchised men having been procured thereto, resolued, and mist but a little to haue killed him, in a passage as he was going to certaine bathes. And aboue all, the death of IVLIVS VINDEX, which then enfued, troubled him most; who, as wee faid, rebelled in France, and had induced him to make himfelfe Emperour, which VINDEx slew himselfe, for that his troupes had fought with R v F v s VIRG I-NIVS his forces, who was captaine of the legions in Germanie, which also rebelled. which battaile was against the will of both the captaines; and Ivlivs VINDEX his forces being ouercome, and of them 22000. flaine, he therefore killed himfelf. These newes being added to that which is alreadie faid, did trouble GALBASO much, that he was in despaire of the Empire, and of his life also. But in this time (for it was in a manner all at one instant) newes came from Rome of the death of Nex o, with certaine notice, that the Senate and Pretorian Cohorts had chosen and accepted of GALBA for Emperour. Which newes one ICELLVS a Libertine brought him, for which hee afterwards did him many fauours: and messengers encreasing much people with these tidings repairing to his seruice, hee tooke his way towards Rome, accompanied with men of warre. And vpon the way VIR-GINIVS RVEVS captaine of the legions in Germanie, sent to yeeld him his obedience; who vntill then had shewed himselfe newtrall, attending to know the will of the Senate, notwith standing that he had declared himselfe against N = R 0. This old (although new) Emperour trauailing towards Rome (as it commonly happeneth in such things as are done with little consideration) his comming to Rome was nothing like to agreeable and pleafing as was his election : for before him there came certaine newes, which gaue occasion of discontenument, which were that he was not onely cruell, but also couetous; as Princes are much noted both in their doings and favings. And it was also reported, that such cities of Spaine and France, as had not in time repaired vnto him to offer their feruice and obedience, hee had condemned in great fummes of money, and had charged them with great tributes, and that of some of them he had commaunded the wals to be throwne down, and the gouernours to be put to death. Being in Rome, with this fecret discontenument received, although with publike ioy and solemnitie, he began to take vpon him the administration and government of the Empire, and ordained and did some things as a wife and valorous Prince, and tooke good order to affure himselse against those which had rebelled : for in Africa he caused CLODIVS MACER to be flaine, because hee practised to make a tumult in that countrie, by the meanes of TRERONIVS GRATIANVS; and for the same cause he made to be flaine in the frontiers of Germanie FONTEIVS a captaine, whom VALENS FABIUS and CORNELIUS AQVINUS, Lieutenants to the legions in Germanie, flew. And in Rome was also put to death NEVFIDY'S SABINYS, who was a Prefect, because that after N BR o was dead, hee practifed to make himselfe Emperour. Which executions although they were not to be reprooued, yet they

The linage of Sergius Galba did discontent and gricue many. Also the common people being affected to the fealts and dissolute sports of N BR o, and being accustomed thereto, loued better those his vices then the ancient vertues of GALBA. The Pretorian and Vrbane Cohorts, feeing that the Emperor GALBAdid not performe the promifes which were made vnto them, began likewise to murmure; yea and also to repent them to have given him their obedience. They were also much discontented, for that he had brought with him a legion of Spaniards, and lodged them certaine daies in the citie, wherewith they held themselues wronged and grieued. But that which made him hated and abhorred of all men, were his fauourits, which principally were three; vnequall in conditions and behauiour, but equall in power and fauour with him: the one of them was called Tirvs Ivniv sand had bin his Lieutenant in Spaine, and then was Conful; the other was Cornelivs Lac v s. an infamous man and ill beloued whom he made Pretorian Prefect, which was the greatest dignitie and authoritie next to the Emperours; the third was ICELLYS MARCIANY s, which was he which brought the newes into Spaine of the death of NERO. By the counsell of these men he was governed, all the short space that his raigne endured. And this was such, that without any constancie or resolute stedsastnes (as became a Prince) he did things many times one contrarie to the other, according to the will of some of them: so as sometimes he shewed himselfe sharpe and rigorous; and at other times slow, remisse and negligent, condemning some vnheard, and pardoning others without any reason, at the instance of those men. And as they for their deserts were ill beloued; so commonly with the Prince which is gouerned, all those which have not the like authoritie with him, are discontented; by this reason he made himselfe ill beloued. Whereto this was a helpe, that hee fought to moderate and diminish the excessive gifts and rewards which NERO was wont to give without measure or reason. And besides what is alreadie said, his vnweildie old age began to be had in contempt, fo as every man durst presume to murmure at him, and to doe any thing against his authoritie. And matters standing in this state in Rome, those abroad were in as little quietnes: for seeing that the Armie and prouince of Spaine had made an Infurrection and chosen an Emperour, either of enuie or discontentment, there were in most parts Commotions, partialities and defire of alteration, and principally in the Romane armie which was in high Dutchland, the captaine whereof was RVEVS VIRGINIVS before named: for these legions waxing proud, by reason of the victorie which they had obtained against the armie of Ivirvs VINDEX, and making no account of ORDEONIVS FLACEVS, who was their Commaunder and Lieutenant to VIRGINIVS; and holding themselves for sufpected, and in diffrace with the Emperour GALBA, because they were the last that came to his seruice, they determined to bee the first that should refuse the same. And the first day of Ianuarie being come, wherein they did vie to sweare, and to doe homage of fidelitie to the Emperour, they refused to doe it to him, but to the Senate; and sent to the Pretorian Cohorts at Rome, to give them to vnderstand, that they would not obey that Emperour which was created in Spaine; and that the Senate should chuse such a one as to them should seeme fit, whereto they remitted themselues: Yet Svetoniv s saith, that they referred this choise to the fame Cohorts. The legions in high Dutchland standing vpon these points, those in the low Dutchland were as little obedient, whose captaine was VITELLIVS, who having founded the goodwill of the fouldiers (notwithstanding that hee was sent thither by GALBA, and had received that charge from him) through the

defire to raigne, violating his faith, as IVLIVS CESAR was wont to fay, that vpon that occasion it was lawfull to breake any contract, hee practifed to get the Empire to himselfe. And for as much that he afterwards came to be Emperour, it shall not be amisse to give the reader to vnderstand what hee was, which is thus, This VITELLIVS was a man of great reputation and authoritie; which hee had gotten in the offices and Magistracies which he had held in Rome, and out of it, in the time of the Emperours Caivs Caligvia, Clavdivs and Nero, with all which he had been very private, more for his vices, and some abilities of his person, then for any vertues. With CALIGVLA he was in grace, for that he was a great Auriga; for fo, were they called which had the charge and rule of chariots and waggons: with CLAVDIVS, for that he was a great gameller: with NERO. for the same, and such like qualities. And besides this, as hee was very subtill and cunning, hee obtained in those times great dignities and offices, of Prefect, a Priesthood, and also to be Viceconsul in Africa, which hee wisely executed: and in the end GALBA gaue him this Captainship in Duchland; where succeeded that which we will declare. His principall linage and descent was of the familie of the VITELLII, whereof because there are fundric opinions, some making it very ancient, and others to be of later time, I will make no question thereof: the same happened to his fathers and ancestors; for some said that he was of meane degree. Sveronivs in his life treateth thereof more at large, to whom I referre the curious reader: for what is faid, fufficeth for my purpose, thereby to understand what shall be faid hereafter.

The Emperour GALBA being given to vnderstand what passed in the armies of Germanie, and knowing that befides that he was old, he was not regarded because he had neuer a sonne that might succeed him, he resolued to put in execution what he sometime before had proiected, which was to adopt and chuse for his sonne, some personage of such age and authoritie, as might be sufficient and capable of the Empire, and who in his life time might protect him, and after his decease succeede him. His fauourits, and such as were private with him, vnderstanding this his determination, each of them apart pretended to give him a fonne of his chusing, so as there arose contention among them vpon this occafion. Principally OTHO gaped thereafter, and thought to have obtained this adoption (he, from whom we faid, that N ER o tooke his wife P o PPE A and fent him into Spaine) alleaging for his desert, that presently after GALBAS rebellion against N = R o, he was the first that came to his service. Great part also of the Pretorian and Vrban Cohorts fauoured him (which the Historiographers indifferently call the Armic which lay necre to Rome) and most of all Tirvs Ivnivs affilted him, who was one of GALBAhis fauourits, and was Conful with him that yeere: fo as O THO did affure himfelfe that no other should be adopted but hee. But GALBAhaving setled his minde, as was most expedient for the good of the common-wealth, without any other respect; and likewise disliking the disposition of OTHO (which sented of NEROEs conditions) tooke no regard of what wasfaid vnto him; but vpon a day when no man thought of any fuch matter, being in the Senate, hee tooke Piso Lycinianys by the hand, who was a man both very wife and vertuous, and in whom did concurre all the qualities and good conditions that might feeme fit and requifite for an Emperour; and calling him sonne he adopted him, after the manner then accustomed; and with a great piso adopted by traine, in great pompe, he went with him to the Campe, and made the Armie to Galba for his fweare obedience vnto him, and to receive him for fuch: which hee did without fonne and fue.

The legions in Germany refused to doc bomage to

giuing

Отно.

107

giuing any rewards to the fouldiers, or promifing them ought, whereto they were accustomed; but onely made a grave oration with great maiestic after the ancient manner and so he was coldly accepted and received among them, they perfourming more with filence, then with any figne of gladnes either in countenance or in speeches: and with the like coldnes hee was accepted by the Senate, for now Rome was not capable of equitie or ancient severitie. GALBA having made this adoption, conceived that it would have been the meane to have preserved and protected his life: but it prooued in effect to bee the occasion and remainder of his confusion and vtter perdition. For OTHO seeing himselfe deceived in his hope of adoption, and finding the people well affected towards him, for the hatred they had conceived against GALBA resolved to effect his purposes by force and treason: which hee presently practised by all the meanes possible with the Pretorian fouldiers, by great gifts, and greater promifes which hee made vnto them. And he so cunningly handled the matter (for so little faith and loialtie was vsed in those daies ) that in lesse then eight daies he had plotted his treason; and it was concluded that they should rebell and create him Emperour, as they did, with the death of the poore old GALBA.

It was for that GALBAbeing with certaine his private friends in his palace doing facrifice; this O THO being there with him, ftole fecretly away from him to a place appointed, where a number of fouldiers of the Pretorian Cohorts attended his comming, which tooke him vpon their shoulders, calling him Emperour, and drawing their fwords (to give the greater terror to the people) went with him towards their campe. This being related vnto GALBA, who doubted not any fuch matter extremely perplexed him; and as his counsels were fudden, so were they inconstant and variable. For some were of opinion that his best course was to put himselse in armes, and to goe publikely abroad; for with his presence hee might have flaied the matter from proceeding any further: others, that it were bell for him to fortifie himselse in the Capitoll, and there to stay vntill he should fee to what iffue the matter would grow. The poore old man wavered and was doubtfull what resolution to take, the messages which were brought him were so divers: for some made the matter nothing, and others very daungerous. In the end deceived by a falle report which they brought him (alleaging that the Armie had not onely refused to receive O THO for Emperour, but had flaine him) hee road armed with his guard, and some others which repaired vnto him, euen vnto the principall place in Rome; where all the people were affembled to fee what would be the end of so great an accident. At that instant there entred at the other fide a great troupe of horsemen, which OTHO had sent from the Campe, where he was chosen Emperour, against GALBA, and to kill him: which although they came with a refolution and a commaundement to kill him; yet comming within his fight and knowing him, they flood amazed a pretie while, doubting what they should doe. At this time was GALBA most perplexed, not knowing whereon to refolue, and the multitude and prease of people was so great about him, that they swaied him sometime to one side, and sometime to the other: and as it commonly happeneth in fuch misaduentures and tumults, that then the counsell is praised and approoued, when the time is pass wherein it might have been put in execution, and standing in doubt whether hee should returne to the palace, or enclose himselfe in the Capitoll, having had sufficient time for either, when he would have done the one or the other, he could not: For being abandoned by the greatest part of those which did accompanie him, those which were sent by

OTHO, set vpon him, after they had stood a good space doubtfull, as I said, and there was he by them flaine. PLVTARCH faith (although some others report it Galba was after another manner) that when those which came to kill him drew neere vn. flaint by the discharge him besharift any his peakers the and the sharift and him besharift any his peakers the and the sharift and him besharift any his peakers the and the sharift and him besharift any his peakers the angle and the sharift to him, he thrust out his necke, to the end that they should cut it off, willing them and his head to doe it, if so it were expedient for the good of the Common-wealth, and of the was prefented Romane people. And so indeed it was striken off, and his head was set vpon the the point of a point of a Launce and presented to OTHO, and from him was carried vp and Launce. downe the Campe; and his bodie remained in the place without a head, for any man to tread vpon, vntill at last it was buried by a bondman of his. And the same day by Otho his commaundement, was Piso Lucinianus put to death, whom GALBA (as I faid) had adopted for his sonne and successor: and so was TITVS IVNIVS also, who was Conful, and others of his fauourits, whose heads were all caried to the Campe to O THO, whom all men now obcied for Emperor: and being laid together with GALBAhis head, euery one gloried to have embrued his hands in their bloud. And so ended the life of the Emperour GALBA. having held the Empire but onely feuen moneths. His death was in the yeere of our Sauiour I Esvs CHRIST 71, and 73. of his age. He was a man of a good constitution of bodie, greenish eied, hauke nosed, very balde by reason of the great paine of the gowt wherewith hee was afflicted; his fingers and toes were weake and crooked, he was a great reeder, very incontinent, and much given to women.

## THE LIFE OF MARCVS SILVIVS OTHO, FIRST OF

THAT NAME, AND EIGHT ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

Tho borne of a most noble familie, tooke the Empire after Galba, although his enill fortune would not suffer him to enior the same any long time : for at the same time that Otho was made Emperour in Rome, Vitellius was proclaimed Emperour in Germanie, And sor as



much as the one would not give place to the other, in the end they came to blower and after fundrie battailes, Otho being the lofer, not knowing what other courfe to take in his admersitie, sue bing. Celfe: which all feemed not answereable to the life which he had led, which was more like to the effect menacie of a woman, then the courage of aman. This man ruled the Empire foure moneths, and died in the xxx. yeare of his age. He was so deere to his owne souldiers, that whilf his badie was burning after the maner then of the Romanes, many of them flue themfelnes with their owne hands.



HE Raignes of GALBA of whom we have now ended our discourse, and of O THO, and VITELLIVE his successors, of which we are to treate, were fo short, so vinquiet, so confused, and gotten by such wicked and vnlawfull meanes. that more properly they might be called Tyrants, then Emperours, and so some writers do tearme them : neither do they put them in the roll and catalogue of the Emperours, of which are Saint Isidons and Bada. And the great

Magicien Apollonivs Thianevs, who lived in that time yied to fay, that GALBA, OTHO and VITELLIVS were Thebane Emperous: and this he faid, for that the Thebanes held the Empire a verie small time, and so did these as little the Empire of Rome. PLVTARCH in the life of GALBA, compareth them to the Kings in a Tragedie, which last no longer then the time that they are represented vpon the Stage. But howfoeuer it was, they obteined the names of Emperours, whether the Senate gaue it them for feare or flatterie, I wil not decide: but paffing on with PLYTARCH, CORNELIUS TACITUS, and the rest which write of them, I say that the same day wherein GALBA was slaine, there was no man of any account which went not to the Camp where O THO was, to yeeld him obedience and to flatter him, as their fourraigne Lord and Emperour, commending the Cohorts and Armie for that which they had done, in putting GALBA to death, and for the election of O THO.

Отно was a man very valiant and wittie, and was the some of Lvcivs Отно who had bin Conful, of an auncient and honorable linage, and was so like vnto TIBERIVS in his gesture and countenance, that some held him for his sonne. His mother also was of a noble family, and so were her progenitors and aunceftors. Hereof writeth Systonivs, and Plytarch in the life of him, by which and by Cornelly's Tacity's may be understood what was the course of his life before that he came to the Empire, or had the name of Emperour, which in briefe I have before declared, and therefore hold it needleffe to make repetition thereof. OTHO belides the occasions which (we faid) he had to rife against GALBA, they write that he had this for one, which was, that an Aftrologer which he caried with him when he was fent by N = no into Spaine, did foretell him and affure him that he should be Emperour of Rome. Being in the Camp in such maner as before is recited, compaffed about with Senators and the principall men of Rome, he came to the Senat: having first commaunded the Pretorian Presect of the citie to affemble the same, where besides the ordinarie bleffings and applaufings, they gave him the name of Avovs rvs, and all the other names and preheminences which the other Emperours defired to have. And having therein made a briefe Oration, wherein he fignified that he was compelled and forced to take vpon him the charge of the Empire, promifing to gouerne the same by the counfell and aduise of the Senate, he went from thence through the middest of the place (which was all bloudie and full of dead bodies) to I VPITER's Capitoll, and thence to the Imperiall Palaces; and so was O THO advanced to the Empire, who

was the first that by the cohorts (which were the Army lodged too neere the citie of Rome) was chosen and made Emperour, and from whom came the custome Othoras the to create Emperours, after that they had for faken GALBA, before which time they first that was were euer the Emperours ordinarie guard. This was an accurfed and most perni-rour by the cious introduction for the Romane Empire, and for the Emperours themselues also, as experience did afterwards make manifest.

In performance of OTHO his promifes, and to make a good beginning and shew of a good Prince, he commanded much confiscated goods to be restored to their owners, and to such men as N ER o had banished, and did other things in the like maner, which were exceeding pleafing to all the people, in such fort that they tooke fuch loue and liking vnto him, that they continued euermore faithfull vnto him vntill his dying day, although in truth his life lasted but a little while after. While as these matters passed in Rome, the legions and army which in both high and low Dutchland (as I have faid) were disobedient to GALBA, their Captaine VITELLIVS having by gifts & promises purchased their favour and good will. after some treaties, which TACITYS and PLYTARCH describe at large, concluded to create him Emperour, and without attending the will and pleasure of the Vitellius made Senate, they made him fo: fo as in a maner, at one instant O THO was aduertised Emperour by thereof, and VITELLIV's knew what passed in Rome.

The Germane legions prefuming that VITELLIVS whom they had chosen should continue Emperour, for their reason alleaged that they had as great authoritie to create an Emperour, as the legions in Spaine, and the Senat, the cohorts, and army at Rome pretended to have the supreme power, and that in them rested the absolute authoritie to choose and create the Emperour, which was O THO only. And although that O THO by this meanes feemed to have the greatest interest and best title, yet whether his guiltie conscience did put him in seare, or that it grieued him to thinke of the cuils which were likely to enfue (as he afterwards (hewed) he fought meanes by letters and messengers to come to a compofition and agreement with VITELLIVS: but nothing was concluded, and the diffension daily increasing betweene them, either partie made preparation for the warres. And certaine tidings being brought that VITELLIVS his forces came marching towards Italy, vnder the conduct of two Captaines, whose names were VALENS and CECINNA (VITELLIVS remaining somewhat behind them attending more aid) O THO departed fro Rome with a faire & well ordered army of all the Romane Nobilitie, the Pretorian cohorts, & the legions which were in the Nauies by sea vpo the coast of Italy, which he sent for to that effect, & such others as he then could leuie: and in this maner he marched from Rome verie mightie in number of men, though not much accustomed to the warres, leaving FLAVIVS SABINVS brother to VESPASIAN for gouernor thereof, who (as is faid) followedthe warres against the Iewes, and so he continued his journey against V 1-TELLIVS, whose forces were alreadie come to the Alpes, to the number of 70000 men, whereof fortie thousand were commaunded by VALENS, and the rest by CECINIA, VITELLIVS remaining in France expecting the remainder of those in Germany, and the legions of Britanny which also came to do him service. These two Armies drawing neere the one to the other, the civill warre began betweene them, and was very cruell in many parts, or to fay better, that warre was profecu- vvare beted which was begun betweene GALBA and NERO. Rome in a good space had tweene Otho not bin infested with any civill diffensions, although it escaped not free from sun- and Vitellius, drie misfortunes, by reason of the euill Princes which raigned therein; by which

Otho his descent.

Galba, Otho,

and Vitellius.

called Thebane

and compared

to Kings upon a Stage in a

Tragedie.

Emperours,

Four Emberors ciuill warres.

Battailes be-

tweene Otho

meanes the present euils which were very great, brought the battailes fought betweene Marivs and Silla, Ivlivs Casar and Pompey, Avgvstvs and MARCUS ANTONIUS, and others which depended thereof, into remembrance; with which these whereof we now treate may well make comparison, both for alteration in estates, for number of men, and effusion of bloud; I cannot fay whether, for continuance of time, in countries and prouinces or no: for after these warres began, there died by the sword foure Emperours (as it hath bin, and shall be declared) which were NERO, GALBA, OTHO, and VITELLIVS, befides VINDEX and other Noblemen which were flaine: and befides VINDEX his legions, which (as we faid) were ouerthrowne in France, there were great encounters and battailes fought, and extreame cruelties committed: and these wars lasted vntill that V ESPASIAN came to be Emperour, no part of the Empire remaining free from this furie, whereof I can fet downe but the summe and most notable accidents which hapned therein. OTHO comming to the citievpon the fide of the river Po, remained there, fen-

ding his forces before him under the conduct of good Captaines, which were ill obeyed by their fouldiers, being growne prowd for that they had made an Emperour, imagining that no man ought to have the commaund of them: the like want of obedience was in VITELLIV's his army, and for the same reason, and the warres waxing cruell betweene these two Captaines and their armies, they made fuch hafte, that leaving apart the great skirmishes & other encounters, there were within few daies space two or three notable battailes fought betweene and Vitellius. them, one of which was neere to the citie of Placentia, the other neere to Cremona, and the third neere to a place called Castor, in which were flaine avery great number of men, and in all these three battailes O THO his Captaines and the Romanes had the better, although that of either fide the word was, Rome, and the

Empire.

After which VALENS and CECINNA which were VITELLIVS his Captaines, and which vntill then had made warres apart, ioined their forces together, reinforcing their armies with new fouldiers and fupplies, determining to fet vp their whole rest in one battaile, if the enemie would give it them. At that time (as Plutarch reporteth) Otho very joyfull for the victories obtained by his Captaines, came to his army in Bebriacum, where it then lay, neere vnto Cremona; and seeing that his enemies (notwithstanding that they had bin put to the worle and were broken) made shew to defire to fight againe, tooke counsell whether that of his part he should do the like or no: the greatest part and wisest men were of opinion that he should prosecute the warres, without hazarding any battaile; for that his enemie endured want of many things, and with their loffes paft, had likewise lost much reputation; and many countries were revolted from VITEL-LIVS and held for OTHO: besides that, VITBLLIVS could fend them little reliefe; and to the contrary his armie was well prouided of all things necessarie, and Rome and all Italy were wholie at his deuotion. And befides all this, the provinces of the East stood firme for him, and the legions in Seruia, Bulgaria, Hungary, and Austrich were vpon the way comming to his aid; so as he had no reason so often to tempt his fortune, & therefore he ought to defeat his enemie by delaies, or else to flay for greater power, wherein there was no doubt of victorie. But those which were hautie and desirous to fight, alleadged many reasons contrarie hereto, that he ought not to lose the occasion, and the good successe of fortune, neither to suffer VITELLIVS to come to his armie, and to put it out of the feare wherein

it was; with many other reasons, to the end that the battaile might be given, and Отно being inclined thereto, approved and commaunded the same to be put in execution: for in truth he did so much abhor the warre, that he held it for a leffe cuill to lose the victorie, then long to continue therein; and being resoluted your this counsell, he returned to Brixelle; for it was agreed that he should not personallie be in the battaile, and his armie went to feeke VITELLIVS his forces, which were not farre off. And as of either partie they were desirous to fight, so they came to a battaile, wherein in the beginning, O THO his armie was deceived by meanes of a shew of peace which his enemies made: whereupon they gaue the charge very flowlie, and authors report the maner thereof very diverflie, as it yfeth to happen in the like chances; but all affirme that both the one and the other fought valiantly, fauing the pretorian cohorts, which were those in whom OTHO reposed his chiefest trust, through whose default and cowardise, O THO lost the battaile, and VITELLIVS was victor, and with great flaughter of his adversaries became maifter of the field.

OTHO his Captaines with fuch others as by flight escaped from the battaile. retired themselues to their camp, and fortified the same, in hope to have been relieued by their Emperour; notwithstanding that many fled to fundrie parts; but he hearing the newes of the ouerthrow of his people, brought by those which fled vnto him, notwithstanding that he knew that in the camp there were reasonable good forces, and that he had oportunitie to temporize, and to stay for the legions which out of Missia, Hungary, Austrich, and Dalmatia, came to his aid, and were neere at hand, yet he regarded not any of those remedies, but with his owne handrefolued to end the civill warres, which as it passed (for that it is a notable matter, although I shall be somewhat tedious) I will declate, as PLVTARCH and TACITYS do report it, and SVETONIVS TRANQVILLYS also after the report of his owne father who was then there present, which was thus. The heavie tidings of this ouerthrow being published, all those which were in the citie (which were many and they very good men, and the greatefupart of the Senate of Rome) came to OTH o his lodging, fearing and suspecting that which afterwards ensued. by reason of that which they had heard and understood by him before: all which with shew of great courage offred to dye for his service, and endeuoured to animate and recomfort him, but all this (notwithstanding that he knew that great part of his armie remained, and that more forces were comming vnto him, and that there wanted neither courage in his people, nor meanes to continue the warres) sufficed not to alter his determination; so much did he abhorre civill difcord and contention. And giving answere to all the reasons & persivasions which they vsed ynto him, he made vnto them a verie notable Oration, fignifying, that Otho him he would never have begun the warres against VITELLING, but in hope of Oration. peace, which he had practifed and procured before he tooke armes; and that he had no vie for those legions and forces which they faid came to his aid, seeing that his enemie was neither HANNIBALL nor PYRRHVS, or any other common enemie to the people of Rome, but the Romanes themselues, and the Lords thereof: fo as the conquerours and conquered did wrong their countrey if they contended any longer, feeing that the joy and gladnes of the victorious was to the forrow and detriment thereof: And that he no way could bring fuch profit to the Romane Empire, by winning battailes in warre and controuerfie, as by making a facrifice of himselfe for the peace, seeing that by his death only concord would enfue and be established, therefore he was content that VITELLIVS should be Em-

perour,

Otho divided his money and lewels amongs bis fernants and friends.

perour, without doing any further harme, and that he defired no reuenge nor rule to the cost of his citizens, neither to diminish his Common-wealth by the losse of fuch armies: and that as others had purchased honor & fame by well gouerning & supporting the Empire so he would likewise procure himselfe a good name by leaving it valoroufly, to the end that he would not damnifie it. And finally ipeaking these words, & giuing other very good reasons, permitting & perswading all those which were with him to go and serue VITELLIVS: and night being come, hee retired himselfe to his chamber, where hee commaunded all his money and lewels to be taken out, which he divided among his feruants and friends. Which although that they would not, yet he commaunded them to goe to their rest: and he did the like, laying first the sharpest of two pointards which he had under his beds head; and being laid in his bed he flept part of the night, in prefence of those which were in his chamber, the doore standing open : and awaking about the breake of the day, and feeing one of his feruants remaining, he commaunded him to goe forth, and then presently taking the poiniard in his hand, as I faid, he smore himselfe therewith under the left side, with such force that the wound was mor-Othoflew him- tall, and giving one onely groane, was heard by his fervants, which haftily ranne vnto him, and found him striuing with death, and died presently vnder their hands. By those which were present, and those which presently repaired thither from all parts of that citie to him, there was so great lamentation made for him, that it seemed that the heavens had rent asunder: so much was this man beloved in fo few daies. And his bodie being prefently burned, according as the custome then was, hard by the fires fide, some of his people flew themselues. And so ended the Emperour O THO manfully and valoroufly, according to the opinion and law of the Romanes: scarcely foure moneths after that he had vsurped the Empire, in the 38. yeere of his age, and the 71. after the birth of Christ, without leaving after him any sonne or daughter. He was a man but of a small stature, and had crooked feete; but he was so neate and so curious in attiring himselfe, that the care which he tooke therein, was more befeeming a woman then a man. He euer ware a periwig, and suffered no iot of his beard to grow, shauing it every day with a rasour, and so vsed such other efforminate toyes, much dissonant from the manly minde which he shewed at his death.

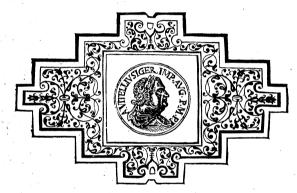
The newes of his death and of the victorie forepassed was brought to his enemie VITELLIVS in France, who having intelligence of the losses which his cantaines had received, was comming with all the forces that he was able to make to ioyne with them, and to reinforce the armie. In those daies S.Linvs who Was S.PETER s fuccessor held the chiefe seate in the Church of Rome, wherein was a Church and congregation of Christians, which made their prayers to God for those which persecuted them.

THE



#### THE LIFE OF VITELLIVS, ONLY OF

THAT NAME, AND NINTH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGVMENT.



Fter Otho, Aulus Vitellius borne of a most noble familie succeeded in the Empire wherein he was infortunate: for he ruled the same but eight moneths. This man was of a cruell heart, and of a bountifull minde. In his time Veshasian being in the East, was made Emperor by his fouldiers; who comming to a battaile in Italy against Vitellius, tooke him prisoner, and binding his hands behind him, leading him publikely

abroad halfe naked, and his face all durty, they flew him with many wounds, in the same place where be had put Sabinus Vespasians brother to death. He lived 57 recres, and raioned (as is abonesaid) little more then halfe eyeere: By whose miserie it plainly appeareth how variable the motions of fortune are, and that oftentimes a kingdome is lost through the same meanes whereby it was uninstly gotten, as appeareth in this Emperour : for Vespasian did by him as he had done by his predeces. for Otho.



S the contention for the name of Emperour continued betweene O-THO and VITELLIVS, as by that which is alreadic faid may be vnderstood; O THO being dead all turned ouer to VITELLIVS, which happened in this manner. The furious lamentation made for the death of O THO being ended, all the men of warre both Legionaric and Pretorian with all the rest made repaire to the lodging of VIR GINIVS, who had been

Captaine

Captaine of the Germane Legions, which fought against VINDEX his armie. when they both made Insurrection against NERO. And being all assembled together, they entreated and defired him to take vpon him the name of Emperour. offering him their service, and to die in the action : and if that hee pleased not to accept thereof yet at the least that hee would be their Ambassadour to VALENS and CECINNA, and obtaine their pardon of them. VIRGINIVS RVEVS, who was a wife and valorous man, answered hereto with the best words that he could deuise, alleaging that to him it seemed follie to accept of the Empire from the hands of those which were ouercome, having refused the same of the Germane Legions, which now were victors, when in the life of N ER o they had offered it him. And as concerning the ambaffade which they requested him to perfourme for them, he gaue them a doubtfull and vncertaine answere, still putting them in hope thereof, vntill that he was gotten into his lodging, and out againe at a backe doore, and gat him to a fecret place where hee hid himselfe vntill that furie was past. But a certaine principall man whose name was R v BRIVS GALLV s, afterwards accepting of that iourney, went to VITELLIVS his Captaines to treate thereof, and peace and pardon was graunted and concluded, as well with these men as with the armie ouercome neere Bebriaco, and all came to the obedience of VITELLIVS in his absence. The like was done by part of the Senate which came with OTHO, and was then in Modena. And in Rome fo foone as the death of O-THO Was knowne, FLAVIVS SABINV s being Prefect of the citie, affembled the Senate, who conforming themselves to the time (which was now to profer feruice and to flatter) with the accustomed solemnitie proclaimed and accepted of

Vitellius confirmed Empenate.

VITELLIVS for Emperour, giving him the name of AvgvsTvs, and Pater patria, with other honourable titles and Epithetes, and determined to give great thankes and praises to the armie for that which was done. The newes of all this came to the new Emperour VITELLIVS in France vpon the coast of Italy, which how pleasing it was vnto him, may be imagined; wherewith he hastened his way with admirable pompe and pride; his people through all the cities as they paffed, committing many disorders and infolencies. The Germane Legions which were in Italy, growne proud through the victo-

rie which they had obtained, and for that they were the authors of VITELLIVS his Empire, committed outrages neuer feene nor heard of in that countrie before, whereof the harme and loffe which the people fultained was vnmeasurable, as TACITYS and SVETONIVS report: And VITELLIVS comming proud and victorious into Isaly, either could not, or would not remedie these disorders. And to the end that in some fort he would seeme to doe instice and shew himselfe a Iuflicer, he caused all the Pretorian Cohorts, which had had any thing to doe about the death of GALBA, and making of OTHO Emperour, to be difarmed, and deprived of the name and honor of Souldiers, and commaunded their armes to bee taken from them, and one hundred and twentie of the most guiltie he condemned to death; and being fought and found, a just fentence and example was executed vpon them, if it had proceeded from a just ludge. VITELLIVS thus trauailing towards Rome, defired to fee the place where his Captaines obtained the victorie against O THO his armie, and being but fortie daies after the same, the fields lay full of dead bodies which yet were unburied; and as many of those which were with him could not endure the euill smell thereof, the cruell tyrant reprooued them faying, That there was no fweeter fmell in the world, then the fmell of an enemie when he is dead, and most of all of a citizen: A speech for cer-

The cruell

taine very inhumane and cruell, which is written to the end to be abhorred, and ought to be read with the like affection.

 $\sqrt[8]{V_{\text{ITELLIVS}}}$  being come to *Rome*, as vpon the way many fcandales and outrages were committed by the fundrie nations which came with him, with infinite robberies and harmes done in the countrey; so was his entry into the citie fearefull and horrible: for he entred into it as into an enemies countrey that was conquered, mounted vpon a faire great horse, clad in militarie and warlike roabes and entrie into attire, the Senate and people of Rome going before him as though that he had tri- Rome. umphed ouer them; he riding compaffed about with standards, with the Eagles, and fundrie other enlignes, and his whole army both of foote and horse, armed in the best armour and furniture that could be gotten. In this manner he went to the Capitoll to make his prayers to I v PITER, and afterwards he went in the same manner to his Palaces : and the next day commaunding the Senate to be affembled, he came thither, where he made vnto them a most fit speech, magnifying with little wit or discretion his acts and aduentures, and promising great goodnes of himselfe; and by them was humblic answered, obeyed and honoured as Em-

perour, and their foueraigne Lord.

Departing from the Senate and taking his way towards his palace, all the people of Rome (being accustomed to flatter and to make offers of their service) met him, making shew of great ioy, applauding and bleffing him: and as new accidents euer bring good hopes, so all were of opinion that VITELLIV'S Would proue a good Emperour. These first solemnities being ended, he made himselse presentise to be chosen high Priest, and perpetual Consul; and tooke vnto himfelfe certain dignities such as he thought good, and commanded that Magistrates should be chosen for ten yeares before hand: so absolutely and tyrannouslie purposed he to have vsurped in all things if he had had time thereto. And thinking by his industrie to haue prolonged his life, he banished from Rome and all Italy all Vitellius benithe Indiciall Astrologers called Mathematicians, because they had said that his shed the Maraigne should not endure one yeare to an end. After this falling to his old humors the maticians and licentious inclination, he began to give himselfe to the exercises and vices of from Rome. N ERO, and fuch like, which were playes, and dishonest sports vpon the Theaters, with publike feafts, wherein he confumed an infinite deale of treasure, desiring to make the beginning of his Empire acceptable and pleafing. In which time he made fo great bankets, as neuer any Emperour had made the like before him, wherein was given to his guests (which were a great number of people) such things as neuer were thought or heard of, wherein he spent incstimable summes. During these pleasures and afterwards, he executed great cruelties, in such fort, as if his raigne had lasted long, he would have made himselfe equal with NER o. whom he did imitate: for he did put many to death contrarie to all law and equitie, feeking forgeries, and falle accusations against them, with some of which he had held streight friendship and familiaritie, one of which came to visit him beinglicke, who calling for a little water to drinke, he with his owne hand cast poison into the cold water and poisoned him. At another time he commaunded two yong men being brothers to be flaine, for no other cause, but for that they came to intreate him to pardon their father, whom he had condemned to dye. And vpon a time a Romane Knight being caried by his commaundement to-cruelties same wards the place of execution, he commaunded him to be staid, because he said mined by V: that he had nominated him for his heire by his will and testament; and seeing his tellus. will, and finding that jointly with him he had made a bondman of his, whom he

had enfranchifed his heire with him, he commaunded him to be flaine, and the poore libertine also, without any other occasion. He also vsed the like cruelties with fome poore and meane people, of which youn a time he commanded a great number to be flaine, for no other occasion, but for that in certaine sports which were vied on horsebacke, and in chariots, wherein were fundrie men apparelled in fundrie colours, they tooke part with those which were clad in greene, which was called the Prasian faction, he being affected to the contrarie colour which they called Venetian, which was grey: which two colours and factions (although there were white and red also) yet these were the chiefe among all the rest. And among these colours the good will and fauour of the Romane people was so divided, that this affection extended it selfe even to the Emperours themfelues, as now to VITELLIVS who favoured the grey colour, as NERO and CA-LIGVLA before him had affected the greene: and sometime (as it shall be hereafter declared) about these vanities there followed great riots, and murthers. These and other such like inturies and tyrannies committed VITELLIV's in Rome, and some of his Captaines and fauourites did no leffe: for having obtained the victorie, euery one reuenged himselfe on him whom he hated; and sometime they fained displeasures, thereby to haue a colour and cloake under which they might robbe and oppresse the innocent: such are the fruites of civill warre and victorie. Besides this, the violences and oppressions which were committed in Rome were very great, and in the marches thereof, perpetrated by the men of war which he brought with him, and were lodged in the countrie staying to fee him fetled in the Empire.

While as VITELLIVS made so ill a beginning in the citie of Rome, fuffering himselfe to be led and ruled by Libertines, and them which were odious to all men ; after that Italie, Spaine, France, and Africa were come to his obedience, in the East the legions which were there for the defence thereof, although that in the beginning they refused not his commaund and raigne overthem, yet they presently began to mutine, and shortly after resolued to make VESPADIAN their Emperour, who in this time (as is aforesaid) made warre against the Iewes, which began about the end of the raigne of NERO; the iffue thereof passed in such manner as followeth. VESPASIAN, who for his worthie acts in his life past, was much esteemed in this warre, gained greater estimation: for he obtained many victories, and besieged and tooke many cities in Iudea, and PALESTINA; vntill that at last being readie to besiege the citie of Ierusalem, the Emperour NERO died: and vnderstanding of his death, and being doubtfull of what would ensue, he continued the warre for a space, vntill he might see, who should succeede in the Empire, and knowing that GALBA preuailed, he tooke no care to proceede any further or to oppresse the citie, but preserved what he had gotten, and kept the enemie in awe, awaiting what course the new Emperour would hold, and so he sent his some Tirvs to Rome, to treate of this matter, and to offer him his obedience. Who being hindred by contrarie weather, when he came to the coast of Achaia in Gracia, was advertised that GALBA was flaine by the direction of OTHO: wherefore he held it for the best course to returne to his father, and so he did: and as OTHO his raigne continued but foure monethes as is aboue faid; and in the same followed the civill warres betweene him and VITELLIVS, VESPASIAN continued as newtrall, although that he acknowledged Otho for Emperour, untill that VITELLIVS obtained the victorie, and OTHO Was flaine, which was nothing pleafing to him, neither to the captaines in the East,

neither to their armies, for the disliking they had that so dishonest a man as VITBI-Livs should be Emperour: and so that day wherein they sware fealtie to their new Emperor, with the accustomed solemnitie, in presence of the same VESPASIAN (CORNELIUS TACITUS writeth) that the legions performed it with great filence and heavines. And VESPASIAN profecuting the warre with great honor and fame, and having now resolved to besiege the citie of Ierusalem the murmuring and discontentment somuch increased against the new Emperour VITELLIVS, aswell in the armie which VESPASIAN commaunded, as in those in Syria, in Egypt, and other ordinaric legions in the East; that they all fixed their eies youn VESPASIAN, resoluing to create him Emperouragainst VITELLIVS: whereto was a great helpe, the certaine newes which came that the legions in Mysia and Pannonia, had the same determination: for (as is before reported) they came to the aide of OTHO when his armie was defeated, and he flew himselfe; and continuing in the same resolution, they disobeied VITELLIVS, desiring and nominating VESPASIAN for Emperour. In such fort that vpon these motions, there passed some messages and letters betweene TIBERIVS ALEXANDER, which was gouernour of Egypt, and Liciniv's Mycianv's gouernour of Syrie; which concluded that VESPASIAN should be Emperour, although that he refused it. And this matter being begun by TIBERIVS ALEXANDER governour of Egypt. in the citie of Alexandria: VESPASIAN Was in his absence proclaimed Emperour, and all the armie confirmed the same with great applause, doing their accufromed homage: which hapned the first day of July in the seauentie and two yeereafter the birth of CHRIST. And this was accounted for the beginning of the raigne of VESPASIAN, and within eight daies or little more or leffe his armie did the like, entreating him first to accept thereof in good part, and he refusing Vespasian made and gainefaying it (as Egesippes and Iosephys doc testifie) they forced Emperor, which and compelled him with their drawne swords in their hands threatning to kill pelicate account him if he refused the same. And having accepted thereof and performed all the therof by whom folemnities requisit in so great an accident, VESPASIAN as a valorous and exmanner. cellent prince, with the like wisedome and valour as he had lived being a subject. began to shew himselfe a Lord; and to prouide for all things with great authoritie and discretion, sending Ambassadours and writing letters to ai parts of the world. And within few daies after this, all the armies and prouinces of the East came to his obedience & seruice ; and the like in Europe did those of Mysia, Bulgaria, Seruia and those of Hungarie and Austriche then called Pannonia; and also those in Slauonia, then called Dalmatia and Illyricum, whose auncient names I will sometime vse vntill such time and place as they shall lose the same. The like I have done and will doe in the most of the provinces of the Empire. All things happening fo prosperous and luckily to VESPASIANVS, having determined with MVCI-ANYS gouernour of Syria, TIBERIUS ALEXANDER gouernour of Egypt, and with his owne sonne Tirvs what was best to bee done, it was decreed that Tirvs should remaine and continue the warres against the Iewes; that MycI-ANY s with the greatest part of the legions, should with all speede take his iourneyfor Italie; and that VESPASIAN should goe to Alexandria in Egypt to make prouision from all parts, and with greater power passe over into Italie, there to make an end of the warre, if it were not before hand done by MvcIANVs. This Antonie capbeing concluded, it was commaunded to bee presently put in execution. But taine of the lewhile as LICINIVS MVCIANVS was travelling towards Italie, ANTONIE, who nia came into Was captaine of the legions in Illyricum and Dalmatia, having intelligence of what Italia against

was passed, desiring to doe V ESPASTAN some notable service, and to execute the hatred which he bare against VITELLIVS, and in great haste marched with his legions, and fuch as he could get from Mylia and Pannonia, and came to make warre in Italy against the Emperour VITELLIV s, who alreadie was in armes.

Of the election of VESPASIAN and of other things (as we have faid) and of eucry particular which passed thereof, within few daies VITELLIVS had aduertifement, who in Rome exercised himselfe in banketting and vices, although that many daies he could not enjoy the fame. And defirous to make refiftance against fo great force and danger, he began to leuie the greatest power that he was able, besides those which he had alreadie, which he yet had not discharged: and knowing with what hafte and determination ANTONY Captaine of Illyricum came forwards, without staying for LICINIVS MVCIANVS, who came with as great haste, he sent V ALENS and CECINNAhis Captaines before named, which had ferued him in the warre against OTHO with so great an armie and power, as seemed fufficient to make head against him & LICINIVS MVCIANVS also. He also prouided fleets and Captaines for the Seas extraordinarie. And on every fide the warre began, so as it would be too long to repeate al the particular accidents that happened therein: the fum and effect therof was, that the two armies approching the one neere to the other, there grew a realousie that CECINNA one of VITEL-LIVS his Captaines, practifed fome agreement with VESPASIAN his Commaunders, and this being knowne in the armie he was flaine by the old fouldiers. And ANTONY knowing this, as hee had a great defire to fight before that Mv-CIANV s should come (after fundrie great encounters and skirmishes, which happened betweene them) came to a maine battaile with the Vitellians, neere to the citie of Cremona, which was fought in fuch manner and was fo bloudie and cruel, that of ANTONY his fide who was conquerour, there were flaine 4500.men, and of the Vitellians which were ouercome aboue 30000. So notable a victorie being obtained in the behalfe of VESPASIAN, Italy which vntill then had remained wholy for VITELLIVI and tooke his part, was fuddenly divided, and many cities took part with VESPASIAN. It is a marueilous matter & worthie of an excellent historie to recite the accidents which happened within few daies therein, and the cruell war which they waged; which CORNELIVS TACITYS Writeth more at large then any other writer, which I cannot expresse for the breuities fake which I follow. But the iffue therof was, that the Emperor VITELLIVS his Captaines, which were our come & escaped from the battaile, reinforcing their armie and gathering together their people, made fuch refiftance against V Es-PASIAN his Captaines as they were able, although they were not of force to ftop their passage to Rome, as hereaster shall be declared. For ANTONY being victor, with the same greatnes of minde and expedition wherewith he began the warre, endenoured to obtaine the victorie, feeking meanes to put it in execution. So foone as VITELLIVS in Rome was given to understand of the overthrow of his armie, affrighted with fuch newes (although that for all that, hee neuer gaue ouer his vices and Beastly exercises) made election of new Captaines, which were Iv-LIVS PRISCYS and ALPHENYS VARRO, and that they with thirteene Cohorts should guard the passage in the Apennine mountaines; and should also seeke to stop ANTONY his passage for Rome, and MVCIANVs also, who as it was faid, was alreadic arrived in Italy. And of the rest of his forces which he held for the guard of the citie, he made his brother Lycivs VITELLIV's Captaine thereof and vied all possible meanes to leuie men of all forts. But the matter went so

that feare made VITELLIVS to defire to come to some composition and agreement howfoeuer it were: And being offered by letters from the Captaine A No THONY, who was victorious, and allo from MVCIANVS, that if peaceably hee would refigne the Empire, his life should be graunted him, and place and meanes Acomposition fufficient allowed him for his maintenance. Whereto hee gaue care and tooke of thins, condicounfell thereupon, with FLAVIVS SABINVS VESPASIAN his brother, who trought that he in all these troubles remained in Rome, and neuer withdrew himselfe from V 1- Standard square TELLIVS, and he had also with him DoMITIANVS VESPASIANS Youngest the Empire. tonne, who afterwards was Emperour: and it was decreed and concluded in the temple of Ivno, where hee sware and promised to renounce the Empire, and would presently haue putit in effect, which he twice spake openly: so great was the feare wherein he was. But those which were of greater authoritie about him did so much gainsay it, and chiesly the Pretorian Cohorts, that he again took hart and altred his determination. Which when FLAVIVS SABINVS knew (to whose house were drawne together a great number of the most principall and noble men of Rome, as to his brother, whom they made account should be Emperour) he was much moued therewith. And knowing that in the behalfe of  $\dot{V}_{\rm 1\,T\,E\,L^-}$ LIVs there came some to apprehend or kill him in his house, being induced therto by those which were with him, went foorth of his house with strong hand, although with leffe power then was requifite for fo great an action, and went to the Capitoll (which was the chiefest strength of Rome) and seised on the same, where he was presently besieged by VITELLIVS his friends. And as it commonly happeneth, you shall finde many which will give honourable and magnificent counsell, but few are those which will put themselues in the daunger, neither will lend their hand to put it in execution : fo, few of those which had perfwaded him to enter into this action, did come to his aide, or made any repaire vnto him. And the next morning he was affaulted with great furie, in the defence whereof was no good order, but rather with little agreement : and as in fuch misfortunes and difasters it happeneth, all will direct and commaund, but few will execute; fo as by meanes of ill fighting and worse direction, the Capitoll was by force entred and burned, and al those which were therein slaine, and F LA-VIVS SABINVS taken prisoner, who within a little while after was put to death by the commaundement of VITELLIVS; and young DOMITIANVS his nephew and sonne to VESPASIAN, escaped by flight, and so might SARINYS have done that night (as CORNELIVS TACITYS reporteth) if hee would have come foorth of the Capitoll: for there was no sufficient guard to haue letted him: but he with too little wit and too much prefumption was loft, as is faid.

After that SABINVS was dead, as VITELLIVS knew that ANTONY drew neere to Rome with his forces, he againe began to procure fome agreement, and to that end sent letters and messengers vnto him, & his seare and basenes came to folow degree, as that he fent the veftall virgins, which were virgins enclosed like Nunnes in a Cloifter, which was a thing the most religious and most ceremoniouslie garded of any thing in Rome: But ANTONY being wroth for the death of S ABINV s, would give no care to their words, neither come to any composition, but kept on his way untill he came neere Rome, where VITELLIVS his forces attended his comming, resolutely determining to defend themselues, and there being both without and within a most huge number of the best men in the world, Antony affailed it in three parts, and VITELLIVS his people fallied out against him in as many, and there began at each of them one of the most

Rome entred. taken, and Sacked, and by vubome.

cruell battailes in the world, which CORNELIVS TACITY'S excellently well recounteth, affirming that it lasted the greatest part of the day; and in the end that citie (which was head and ladie of the world) was woon and taken by those which were her owne naturall people; and those which were subdued endured that which in like cases happeneth, and much more, as slaughters, robbings, violences, and extreame difgraces, as against enemies which they deadlie hated for the death of SABINVS, for that he was their Lords brother, and for the obstinacie and furie wherewith they had fought.

When VITELLIVS faw that the citie was entred, thinking to escape by flight, he went forth of his palace, and finding no fafe way. I know not with what hope. he returned thither againe, and finding it abandoned without guard or defence. in the best manner that he could he hid himselfe in a secret place, where he stayed not long before he was found by a Tribune, and being taken by him, without attending any further determination or counsell, they bound his hands behind him, and cast a roape about his neck, and cutting and tearing his cloathes from his back, halfe naked they led him through the freetes of Rome, vntill they brought him to the principall place therein, and by the way they did him an infinite number of iniuries and diffgraces, and there he was flaine by the multitude of fouldiers, no man being able to auerre for certaine who either began or ended. And this was the end of this tyrannous Emperour, and with him died his brother Ly-CIVS VITELLIVS, and one onely some which he had at his death. He had not bin Emperour much aboue eight moneths, as most authors affirme, although that SVETONIVS setteth downe alonger time, for he maketh his account that V B-SPASIAN was chosen Emperour in the East in the eight moneth of VITELLIVE Anno Domini his raigne, which was some moneths before his death, which was in the 57, yeare of his age, and the 72. yeare after the birth of our SAVIOVR. What hapned after his death shall be referred to the historie of VESPASIAN, seeing that it was in

Vitellius.

histime. VITELLIVS was so tall, and of so corpulent a bodie, that he was therewith deformed. His face was verie red, by reason of the much wine which he dranke, and was very gorebellied, and went alittle lame of one leg, through a brufe which he had received by a Cart.

THE



### THE LIFE OF FLAVIVS VESPASIANVS, ONLY OF

THAT NAME, AND TENTH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

MATA Itellius being ignominiouslie slaine, the good Veshasian attained to the Imperial dignitie. who restored tyred Rome to such rest, that it seemed to be returned to the auncient dienitie and greatnes, from whence the vices and wickednes of many former Emperours had made it to fall. This man before that he tooke the Empire, was no lesse wise then valorous in the Art Militarie: so as he grew to be so excellent, that notwithst anding that he was not borne of any very noble house, yet for his vertues he descrued to be made Emperour. In his time were ended the warres of Ierusalem, under the government of his sonne Titus. He made many Provinces tribu-Barie to the Romane Empire, which wntill then neuer paid tribute. He beautified Rome, not onely by repairing the ruines through the fire made by Nero, but he also builded a new Amphitheater and Temples, which he adorned with most faire marble, and most beautifull Statues: for in his time painting and carning flourished. He was very courteous & gentle, and amongst his other good qualities, this was one : to forget iniuries, and not to regard what malicious toongs said of him. He was very cleanely, and neat of his bodie. In his diet he was very temperate, and fasted one whole day in enery moneth. He was noted for no other vice but anarice, whereof he excused himselfe, alleaging, that he found the Imperiall Treasurie emptie, through the pilling of the former tyrants. He lined 69. yeares, and raigned 10. and dyed of the flux. Truly it seemeth that this Emperour was borne

for the good of the Romane common-wealth, to the end that after the crueltie of formany Tyrants it should not be wholie ruinated.



S faire weather commeth after tempells and flormes: fo was the raigne of VESPASIAN after the troublesome and stormic times of the detestable Emperours TIBERIVS. CALIGVIA, NERO, and the tyrannies and civill warres of GALBA, OTHO, and VITELLIVS, wherewith the Romane Empire was so divided and shaken, that it was readie to come to ruine, if VESPASIAN had not remedied and supported the same by his great goodnes, valour and wife-

linage.

Velbasians

Vespasians offices and dignities.

dome. VESPASIAN was of the linage and familie of the FLAVII, meane and lowe, and not inobled with any titles and dignities. He was 59. yeares old when he was chosen Emperour, and came to be knowne and wan reputation and credit in the times of CLAVDIVS, CALIGVLA and NERO, and obteined offices and dignities in the warres, and in the gouernment of cities. In Thracia he was Tribune of the fouldiers : and being Questor or Treasurer, the Ile of Creta now called Candia, fell to his lot. He was Edil and Pretor in Rome, and afterwards was Lieutenant to the legions in Germany, and from thence he was fent to be Gouernour and Captaine of Britanny when it rebelled, where, as EvTROPIV s and SVE-TONIVS report he fought aboue 30. times in battailes and skirmishes in his owne person: so as for his desert there were armes and triumphant ornaments given him, such as they did vie to give to such as did triumph. After all which he was Conful in Rome two moneths in the end of a yeare, and was afterward Proconful in Africa in the time of N ERO, and in the end was fent thither by him to that warre against them, which he followed when he was chosen Emperour against VITELLIVS, his armie compelling him thereto, as it is alreadie faid. He had at that time two fonnes, the one called Tirvs which was with him, the other Do-MITIAN VS Which was in Rome, both which he had by FLAVIA DOMICILIA his lawfull wife, daughter to FLAVIV & LIBERAL, by whom he had had a daughter which was dead, whose name was Domicilla also. And this is the summe of his life, before he came to the Empire: but returning to our historie, it passed in this manner. VITELLIVS being so reprochfull and ignominiouslie dead in Rome (as is aforefaid) although that with his death the warre ceased, yet the fruites and effects thereof were not ended: for the conquerours committed fo many flaughters and robberies vpon those which had taken VITELLIVS his part, that there was no part of Rome wherein was not effusion of bloud, so as that citie endured (by meanes of this battaile) the like or greater miferie, then in the warres and profcriptions of MARIVS and SILLA, or any other whatfocuer in time past. But so soone as Mvc IANVs came to Rome, who was principall Captaine, fent by VESPASIAN, and that DOMITIANY'S was returned, who ever fince the death of his vncle SABINVs, and the burning of the Capitoll lay hidde, these murthers and reuenges ceased, and there began some order to be taken in the Common-wealth. The Senate was affembled, and the gouernment of V B-SPASIAN was accepted and approved, and there were granted and given vnto him the names and titles which were viuallie given to other Emperours; and messengers with all diligence were sent vnto him, to aduertise him of the victorie, and to yeeld obedience in the behalfe of the Senate. And for that that he being absent could not take order and prouide for the estate of Rome, his sonne Do-MITIANVS.

MITIANVS, MUCIANVS and ANTONIE, which then were of greatest power. began to take order for the gouernment, not without confusion and emulation betweene them, untill the comming of VESPASIANVS, which by reason of the daungerous failing in the winter time was deferred. Do MITIANV s was called C # SAR, and made Pretor of Rome with Consularie authoritie, and because he was the Emperours fonne had the preheminence and chiefe place in all matters. although he proued not afterwards to be such as he ought to have been: for befides that hee was vicious, hee was disloyall and disobedient to his father. The Senates Ambaffadours and others which were fent from Rome, found VESPA-SIAN in the citie of Alexandria in Egypt, with his legions and men of warre readic to paffe into Italy against VITELLIVS, knowing nothing that he was dead, and flaied there with the King of Parthians Ambaffadors, which offered him 40000. horsemen. In the like manner there were Ambassadours from other Kingsand Tetrarches of the East, some subiect to the Empire, and some free, which came to the like intent: but knowing that there was no fuch neede in Rome to cause him to carrie thither fo great forces, he gaue thankes to the King of Parthians Legates. and the rest of the Kings for their offers, and determined to take his passage so foone as conveniently he might: And fo as a wife Emperour forgat not to take order for the defence and augmentation of the Empire, resoluting to send his fonne Tirvs to make an end of the warres by him begun against the lewes and the holy citie of Ierusalem, to whom besides the ordinarie legions, he gaue three other legions, wherewith TITV's continued the warres with great resolution. and by gods permission, the Iewes were in his time by the hands of the Romanes, and through their owne civill diffension, plagued and oppressed even to their totall confusion, as hereafter in briefe shall bee declared. VESPASIAN could not Io soone depart from Alexandria as he desired, by reason of the contrarie weather by fea vnfit for Nauigation; in which time there arose in Rome great troubles. emulations, enuie, and contentions betweene the Captaines MVCIANVS and Tumults in ANTONIE, each feeking to be preferred before other: MVCIANVS, for that he Rome. was the principall Captaine fent by VESPASIAN, and had borne great fway in his election; and the other, for the great victories which he had gotten in his feruice against VITELLIVS and his Captaines. The euill practices of Do MITI-ANYS were also partly cause of these tumults, who conveniently could not be restrained, considering who hee was. But the commotions and insurrections which then were in Germanie and part of France, did much more trouble them that swaied the gouernment: for all was in an vprore and in armes against the Empire, which had a former originall in the time of VITELLIVS, although that then wee could not recite it: the originall and occasion thereof was in this

In the province of Battauia, now called Holland (a province in low Germanie, An infurrettiwhich the Rhine dividing it felfe maketh an Iland) was a principal audacious man, on in Holland whose name was CLAVDIVS CIVILIS, who under colour of taking part with VESPASIAN against VITELLIVS, when the war began betweene them, leuied fome forces of that country, & induced the Frifelanders and their captaine, whole name was Brino to doe the like: and being thus in armes, they affailed those of the Romanes lodgings which held of VITELLIV s, and taking them at vnawarcs, flew many of them, being left weake by reason that VITELLIVS withdrew the greatest part of the forces fro thence when he went against O THO as before hath bin declared. So as they draue all the Romane garrisons out of that province, and

thereafter enfued many encounters and skirmishes of either side, vntill that V Es-PASIAN prevailing in Italie, FLACCYS HORDEONIV s, being for VITELLIVS CADtaine of those legions in Germanie, was slaine by his owne souldiers, proclaiming VESPASIAN, and the legions remained without order or captaine. And CLAV-DIVS CIVILIS with the forces of Holland and Freefeland, iowning with another captaine called CLASSICVS, imagined that in the confusion of those troublefome times, they might free their countries; or to fay better, make themselves Lords thereof, as many haue done: and drawing to their faction certaine of the legions which remained firme for VITELLIVS, they made an infurrection against VESPASIAN publishing abroade that he was dead, in such sorte that within few daies, some cities in France revolted, so as it was feared that som great alteration would have ensued in the Empire. Which, as I said, put MVCIANVs and ANTONIE in great doubt, for DOMITIANVS who should have had the greatest care, spent his time in his vices and pastimes. After many councels and consultations held about this matter, QVINTILIVS CERIALIS was sent for captaine into those parts, who both valiantly and wisely followed the warres, and reduced those legions to the service of the Empire. Which being deceived, had joyned with CLAVDIVS CIVILIS, and obtained notable victories therein, although hardly gotten and very bloudie, which CORNELIVS TACITYS recountethat large. And being in the heate of this warre, holding it to be of great importance, Mycianus and Domitianus departed from Rome, with the greatest power they could raife, to the end to give reliefe where neede should require: who being come to the Alpes had intelligence that CERIALIS had obtained another notable victorie in a great battaile: by meanes whereof, and of the fame of their comming, all those countries yeelded their obedience, and the Germaines laying downe their armes, defired peace. Notwithstanding this, Domitian, although there were no neede, had a defire to march forwards, and to take the gouernment and forces which CERIALIS held and commanded, and wrote fundrie letters to him requesting the same: whereupon he was suspected, that he did it with intent to rebell against his father, and so writeth Cornelivs Tacitys. Others suspected that he did it of enuie against his brother TITVs, and to make himselfe equall with him. But his deuises whatsoeuer they were, tooke no effect. For C'BRIALIS diffembled & would not yeeld his captainefhip and gouernment vnto him, and MVCIANVS stopped his passage from going any further: for CERI-ALIS within few daies had pacified the countrie, and DOMITIANVS returned to Rome to receive and entertaine his father, who (he knew) was comming, and within few daies came, having failed from Alexandria to Rhodes in shippes, and from thence in galleies, and paffing all along the coast of Gracia, visited and saw all the cities thereof which were in his way, till his arrivall in Italie, and so came to Rome, where he was most folemnly received (which I os EPHVs most elegantly relateth) For as his comming had been long time defired and wished for : fo was it very gratfull and pleafing to all men, and he presently began to doe things conformable to the defire and hope which they had conceived of him, in ministring iustice, in reforming the lawes and customes of Rome, rewarding those which had ferued him, and pardoning and punishing with fingular clemencie those which were his adversaries: in conclusion, he made a godly and laudable

beginning of his Empire, and perseuered and ended therein, as shall appeare. In the meane time while as the Emperour VESPASIAN parting from Alexandria came to Rome, his sonne TITV's prosecuting the warres against the Iewes,

and having subdued the marches round about, came and befreged the citie of lerufalem, at such time as from all parts of the world an incredible number of Jewes were come into the citie, to celebrate the feast of the Paschall Lamb. Of the siege and destruction thereof, because it was a notable matter, and prophecied before. and was famous afterwards, it shall not be amisse in few words to declare the end thereof: and for as much as in truth, it was the most strictly and obstinately besieged, and best defended citie that euer was in the world, the Iewes persisting in lerufalem betheir obstinacie and rebellion by Gods permission, in reuenge of the death and passion of his onely sonne I ESV'S CHRIST our Saujour God and man; all which To sephys, Eges ippys and Cornellys Tacitys write at large, to which I remit the curious reader, befides many others which are more briefe: and being by TITV's befreged in fuch manner, that no man could fallie out of it, or enter into it. For the which, not contenting himselfe with the multitude of his men of warre and prouision, but within few daies compassed it round about with trenches and ramparts, fuch as were fufficient thereto, making the fouldiers of his armie set their hands to the worke : so as he besieged it in this manner the space of fine moneths, in which time there were fo many affaults, skirmishes and flaughters, as by the numbers of the dead, which we wil tell you, may appeare : and fuch as I neuer read or heard that the like had paffed before any citie, with such obstinacie and resolute force the besiegers assailed it, and the besieged defended themfelies. In all which TITVs performed the dutie of a most excellent Captaine and a valiant Knight, fometime giuing direction and commaunding, and also when neede required fighting, that, as Iosephvs testifieth, in this conquest he slew twelue Iewes with his owne hands. The hunger which afflicted this citie of lerufalem in this fiege, is wonderfull to reade, and to be confidered: for all ordinarie fullenance being spent, although they made the greatest spare thereof that was possible, they gaue the felues to eate all things that might yeeld any taffe, without any difference, good or bad, eating the flesh of horses, asses, cats, rats, snakes, The extreame adders, and other fo vicleane and strange things, that it seemeth incredible to all cities funders humane creatures. But this maketh it to be beleeued, for that all the writers both lem when it Christian and Heathen affirme, that there was a mother which killed and ate her Amothe killed owne sonne, whom she had at her breast. Finally, after the death of an infinite led and at her number by the fword and famine, vpon the eight day of September (hauing been owne forme. belieged round about, about fine moneths, and aboue foure yeers after the warre was begun by V ESPASIAN in the raigne of NERO) the citie of lerufalem was ferufalem taentred by force of armes, and a most huge number of those which were therein ten by Titus, flaine : and so had they all been, but that TITV s moved with compassion, commaunded the execution vpon women, and fuch as bare no armes, to ceafe. But although that this flaughter was staied, yet in the prouince and the citie there died of hunger and the fword(as Evserivs, PAVLVS OROSIVS and other authors affirme) fixe hundred thousand men able to beare armes. And if wee shall gine credit to I os EPHVs, who was an eie-witnesse to most part thereof, there died eleuen hundred thousand; and there were captines and were sold, ninetie seuen thousand. E G E STPP v s, who is of no lesse credit and authoritie, agreeth with him in the number of the captives; but in the number of the dead he setteth downe 100000. leffe, which feemeth to be an error but in the letter: both which doe yeeld the reason of so great mortalitie to be, as is said; which was, that so great a number was gathered together in Ierujalem to the feast at Easter, and had retired thither as to the head of all that province, there to die or defend the same.

Vespasianus comming to Rome.

Domitianus

suspetted.

Silomons temple de-Stroyed.

Ferufalem de. Hroved and laid vualte forthat not one flone vpon another.

The levves talem, fold and difperfed ouer the vuorld.

Vespasian and Titus came inumph for the vi arres of the levves.

of Armenia querthrowne and put to Right by the Alanes.

And also that famous temple was burnt, and those most strong and high walles of the most famous temple of SALOMON were throwne downe, and all the citie laid wafte, defolate and wholy destroied, as fundrie Prophets had before prophecied. And this just and descrued destruction of Ierusalem happened in the second veere of the Emperour VESPASIAN, and the fortith veere after the death of CHRIST our Lord, and the seventie three after his birth, being (according to E y s E BI y s and P A y L y s O R o s t y s) one thousand one hundred and two yeers after that the temple was first built by SALOMON, and five hundred ninetie and one yeere, after that it was reedified in the time of King DARIVS, having been destroied by the Babylonians. In this account I follow Evsesive his computation, to avoide disputation about the difference which is among the authors: All Writers affirme, and it doth cleerly appeare by PLINY and CORNELIVS TACE TV s, that lerufalem had never been fo rich, nor fo populous, nor fo fumptuous in wals temples and buildings, as when C HRIST fuffred his passion, & when it was there consided destroied. And so that citie and the holy temple were overthrowne and laid even with the floore, without one stone remaining vpon another, according as our Anno Dom. 40. Sautour CHRIST had told his Disciples, they shewing it to him and extolling the greatnes and building of that temple, as the holy Euangelist reciteth more at large: and so it lay vntil that the Emperor ADRIAN began to reedifie it, although not in the fame place, neither fuch as it was before, as hereafter shall be declared. And so that province which had been gouerned by the Romanes as their friends. and in a manner free, was made captine and tributarie; and the lewes being captiues were fold and dispersed through all parts of the world. This warre being ended by TITVs in fuch manner, as is before specified, his father and al Rome greatly rejoyced thereat, and to them both the triumph was graunted by the Senate, because that they both had followed that warre. And TITVs leaving all things in good order in the East, came victorious to Rome. And within few daies after. both the father and the fonne came thereinto triumphing, with one of the most folemne and flately triumphs that ever was feene in Rome. The which who that will fee more at large, shall finde it written by I o's EPHVs in his feuenth booke of the warres of the lewes. While as Tirvs was busied about the matters about said in the citie of Ie-

rulatem, the Alanesa people of Scythia, of which hereafter we shall speake much, had their abode aboue the lake Meoris, neere the River of Tanais, which in a most huge number abandoned their countrie, for that it was barraine and vnfrutefull, or for that it was not sufficient to sustaine them, and came into the countrie of the Medes, robbing and facking that countrie, and marching forwards came into Armenia, where they did the like. And TIRIDATES Kingthereof. fought a battaile with them, wherein he was ouercome, and by great good for-Tiridates King tune escaped from being taken: which when Tirvs vnderstood, having then fully executed his enterprise against Ierusalem, marched with his forces to the reliefe of TIRIDATES, (although that then wee had not time to expresse the fame) as to affift a King which was vaffall and friend to the Empire, and came to the citicof Antioch, as EGESIPPV's writeth: but the Alanes vpon the onely report of his comming, returned to their countrie, contented with what they had gotten by theft. VESPASIAN being in Rome, enjoying the Empire in peace had his sonne Tirvs continually with him, and knowing and having good experience of his wifedome and good conditions, did most matters by his counsell and after his opinion, and in all matters held him for his companion in the Empire;

and made him his fellow in office in the Censurie, and in the Tribunate, and afterwards in seuen Consulshipsarow. VESPASIAN following his good beginning, neuer in all the whole course of his life omitted any thing that was fit for agood and excellent Emperour, aswell in preserving and enlarging the Empire, as in beautifying and reforming the same; in correcting the abuses and euill cuflomes, as in execution of Iustice and other vertues; and chiefly he tooke great care for the publike edifices and buildings, wherein he fpent much treasure, and made the Capitoll which VITELLIVS had burned (when his brother SABINVS was flaine) to be reedified and new builded, farre more faire and excellent then euer it was before. He also repaired the whole citie of Rome, of those ruines which remained by the fire which burnt it in the time of Nero, as in his life we have declared. Besides this, he built a most maruellous temple to the goddes pallas, the workmanship whereof was so rich, so perfect, and so excellent, that the like thereof had neuer been seene in Rome. For touching the painting, carning, and inlaying, all the most excellent workmen of the world (these arts being then at the highest) shewed their skill therein, and left memorialles of their handworking as PLINIVS, and I OSEPHYS reporteth who was an eie witnesse, who affirmeth that men came from all parts of the world to fee the richnes and excellencie of this temple. VESPASIAN also built an Amphitheater, of fingular and most perfect workmanship, which is yet to this day to be seene in Rome, although ruined and defaced, which is a building of maruellous and sumptuous greatnes. round in forme, as if two Theatres were joyned together like to halfe circles: in the middest of which were represented the plaies, shewes, wrestlings, combats with wilde beafts, and also combates of sword plaiers: And euery thing was wrought and framed in such manner, that by meanes of their rowes and feates, it was capable of an infinit number of people, without letting the one theother, which wee may conprehend by the Theater which OCTAVIANVS CESAR builded, in remembrance of his Nephew MARCELLVS, of which wee reade that there were in order feates for fourrescore thousand persons. And VESPA-SIAN did not onely confume great treasure in building (whereto he was much affected) but he also bestowed great gifts and pensions upon such as were maifters and excellent workmen; and no leffe but rather greater, vpon learned men, and fuch as were expert in arts, and to the Rhetoricians and maisters in eloquence, both in Greeke and Latin hee gaue great fees and penfions out of his Exchequer; and also to Poets and other excellent learned men, he bestowed notable fauours and rewards: fo that it is certaine that he not onely shewed himselfe liberall in these things aforesaid, but to all persons and in all places. And in the prouinces where he knew that any publike buildings were deftroyed or decaied, by reason of the ill gouernment in time past, he commanded them to be reedified and repaired at his owne charges out of the subsidies and tributes. The like care he tooke for some cities, which in his time were destroyed by earth-quakes. And because that he would not forget to repaire and amend the living bodies aswell as the dead, he endeuoured to reforme and fet in good order, the great number and tediousnes of sutes and pleas in the lawe, chuling new Judges and Arbitrators, which should take order with, and set agreement betweene the contrarie parties, and within few daies should decide and determine controversies and pleas in fute, and ordained and established most excellent lawes and statutes.

After that the good Emperour VESPASIAN had taken fuch good order in all his actions, wherewith he made the time of his raigne most happie, he tooke

especiall care to increase and augment the same. And we also reade that he made

many Provinces subjects and tributaries, which vntill then were in a manner as

Provinces brought into Subjection by Vespasian.

Comagena made a tributarie prouince by Vespasian.

The life and

Emperour.

friends and obedient, but yeelded no tributes, or did other feruices: among which in Alia the leffe were the Prouinces of Lycia, Pamphilia, and Cilicia; and in Alia the great, Comagena, which lieth Eastwards from Cilicia; and heere in Europe, the Province of Thracia, and the citie of Byzantium which is now called Constantinople, with the Iles of Rhodes and Samos, and other Countries & Provinces which healfo made tributaries. For what cause or reason he did so. I finde it not written: but duly weighing and confidering the acts and doings of this Emperour, I prefume that he did it not without just occasion in them all. I o serhvs setteth downe the cause thereof in the Prouince of Comagena only, and in what sort it was made tributarie, and how that ANTIOCHUS the King thereof being ouercome and taken in battaile by CESSONIVS PETO Governour of Syria for the Empire, fent the fame ANTIOCHV sprisoner to Rome. But VESPASIAN remembring himselse that he held friendship with this King when he lived in the East, and although that he held it fit and requifit to dispossesse him of his countrey, yet he would not deale hardlie with his person: for being comming youn the way, he fent commaundement that he should not be brought to Rome, but commaunded him to be caried to the citie of Lacedamonia in Gracia, and that he should line there, and that fufficient prouision should be made to maintaine him and his children in royall estate, and so that King led his life afterwards in that citie, and the Province of Comagena remained tributarie to the Empire. What else happened in the time of VESPASIAN, the Authors which I follow, haue not written, peradnenture because they were of small importance. But as concerning his vertue, bountie, and good government, they have written more at large then I have done fuch and so many were they and because I will not be too scarce and briefe in this matter. I will fay fomewhat for a remembrance and an example to good Emperours. First, the manner and rule of his life after that he came to the Empire was this: he awoke euery morning before day, and in his bed did reade and heare letters and memorials of divers matters and affaires; and then he commaunded Vespasian afthe dore to be fet open for his friends and fuch others as would come into his ter that be was chamber, in whose presence he arose and made himselfe readie, without that anv Page or feruant did help him therein, but to bring his cloathes to his hands; and then he flood a good space giving audience to such as he had to deale withall, prouiding for all things, and making therein fuch dispatch as was convenient; then he went into his litter or chariot as the manner then was, and for his exercise went into the fields of MARS or some other part, and sometimes he went on foote. After all this, he retired himselfe to his lodging, to his secret exercises and pastimes: after which he ysed the bathes, whereto men in those dayes were much affected, which being ended, he returned to his busines, and to prouide for all things necessarie, wherein he spent the greatest part of the day. He was very moderate and temperate in his diet, and after supper was very pleasant and merrily disposed, delighting much to vie sharp and briefe speeches, whereof Sveto-NIV 8 reciteth some. He was a Prince of great modestie, patience, and singular clemencie, enduring and diffembling with those which did murmure and speake ill of him, pardoning and forgetting injuries and offences, the examples whereof (which were many) I omit because of breuitie. VESPASIAN was noted and murmured at for being ouercouetous: for it is certaine that he made his rents to

be collected rigorouslie, imposing new taxes and services, seeking extraordinarie

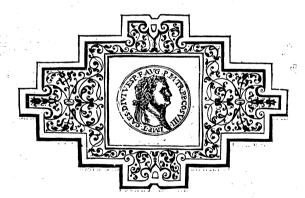
and new meanes to gather money. Whereof AVRELIVS VICTOR and other authors excuse him, alleaging that hee was forced and compelled thereto; for that he found his Exchequer poore, and the Imperiall treasure wasted and ipent; to as for his maintenance it was very requifite to raife it to some certaine summe and quantitie. Which maketh it feeme to bee true, feeing that he was extremely, franke and liberall to all men, and spent and liberally parted with that which hee fo gathered. Finally, howfoeuer it was he is reckoned in the number, and for one of the good Emperours: and with fingular wisedome and valour he gouerned the Empire nine yeeres; at the end whereof (being feuentie and nine yeeres old) the flux tooke him, and he died in peace and quiet, in the yeere of our Lord fourescore and one. He was a man of a middle sife, well compact in his limmes, and of a good complexion, and lived ever found and in good health: for the preservation whereof he ordinarily vsed frictions on his armes and his legges, and enery

TITVS.

### THE LIFE OF TITUS, ONELY OF THAT

moneth fasted one whole day, without eating any thing.

NAME, AND ELEVENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

Espasian being dead, his sonne Titus succeeded him, who reserved the name of his father. This man in his youth applied himselfe much to the studie of good letters and Sciences, and delighted so greatly in writing, that he with great facilitie counterfeited all manner of letters : and he being generall, the long warres of Ierusalem were ended. Comming afterwards to the Imperiall dignitie, he wholy altred his former conditions, and became most mercifull and most bountifull. His liberalitie was such that he faid that he had lost a day wherein he had not done some deed of courtesie. He was also of so gentle nature, that he said to his brother Domitian,

who (it seemed) conspired against him, that he should not seeke to get that by fratricide, which hee might obtaine by his goodwill. He lived 41, seemes, and ruled the Empire little more then two. His death was so grienous to the itse of Rome, and to all the provinces subject to the Romane Empire, that all assistment with one voice, that the father of the Empire, and delicacie of mankinde was departed out of the world.



O foone as the Emperour V E S T A S I A N Was dead, his eldeft fonne T I T Y S (called by his furname V E S P A S I A N Y S) without any contradiction was received and obeied for Emperour, as well for that his father in his life time had made him his companion in the Empire (as fome authors fay that hee did participate with him, and gaue him the name of Emperour) as also for that in his testament and last will, he appointed him for his successor; yet his brother

Titus was endued with noble vertues.

DOMITIANVS did proudly affirme, that his father had nominated him and not his brother TITVs, and that his fathers wil was fallified. TITV was was a good and an excellent Emperour, although that his raigne was but short: for it lasted but little more then two yeeres: so, that for his naturall goodnes and noble condition, he was called the loue and delight of mankinde, although that before hee was Emperour he was flaundered for some occasions: some imagining that hee would have prooued wicked and peruerle. But truth and vertue, although for a time they may be suppressed, yet at length they will prevaile and ouercome enuy and infamie: and as the cleere Sunne difperfeth the darke clowdes, so did T 1 T v s cleere himselfe of the suspitions conceived against him, with the brightnes of his vertues and good deedes. He came to the Empire at the age of 39 yeeres, and somewhat lesse, in which he followed the warres and gat great experience both in peace and warre. First in his infancie he was brought vp in learning and other vertuous exercises, and thereby grew to be very learned both in Greeke and Latin, and expert in many Arts. He was a very good horseman, and most skilfull in Musicke, a very good singer, an eloquent Orator, and could make verses with wonderfull eafe and readines: he had a fingular memorie, and was endued with an excellent wit, and was so speedie in writing in ciphers and abbreuiations, that he excelled all his Secretaries and Notaries; and would fo lively counterfeit any mans hand and writing, that it was faid of him, that he might haue bin a notable counterfeiter or forger. Being endued with these graces & sufficiencies in his adolescencie, before that his father came to the Empire, he bore armes in the wars, and was Tribune both in Germanie and Britanny, and purchased the reputation of wife and valorous. After which, being come to Rome, he yied to plead and defend causes and actions (which was then the exercise of the most principall men) and afterwards in time hee was made Questor or Treasurer. In processe of which time he married twice: the first with ARRICIDIA the daughter of a Romane Knight, whose name was TERTVLLV s, who had been Prefect of the Pretorian Legions; and after her death being a widower, having neuer a child, he married the second time with a woman of great bloud, whose name was MARTIA FVLv 14, whom he afterwards put away, after that he had a daughter by her. And the warres beginning against the Iewes, he went thither with his father, having the Captainship and charge of a Legion: and matters succeeding in such manner, as is alreadie faid, he made the finall end thereof. And although that some practifed to bring him in suspition with his father, fallely alleaging that he would have rebelled against him; yet after those victories he came into Italy, and sufficiently cleered himselse, and triumphed of the Iewes; and (as wee haue said) obtained so much grace with his father, that hee made him his companion, and in a manner equall with him in the Empire. And it happened that in his fathers life time hee made himselse ill beloued, and murmured at for some occasions; whereof one was, that they charged him with the couetousnes and auarice of his father, for the new impositions which he laid vpon the subjects of the Empire: whereof although that he might well haue done it; yet he manifested not his innocencie, because the fault should not be imputed to his sather. The other was, for that he caused Aylvs CINNA and certaine other principall men to be put to death, although that hee had instruction to doe it, as Syleton in Aylvs CINNA; and other authors in others.

TITVS also discredited himselfe for bringing of Queene VERONICE from Iudea with him for his friend or concubine, whom hee so deerely loued, that hee entertained her in a manner as his wife: and there is an author which affirmeth that he flew Av As CINNA, through icalouse of her. All which being laid together, when by the death of his father hee came to the Empire, they doubted that hee would have prooued a wicked Emperour: but his goodnes and vertue presently made him so cleere, that those clowdes of suspition vanished. The first, and peraduenture the greatest was, the forcing of his will and bridling his desires and affections by withdrawing himselfe from the company of VERONICE, for the euill example and infamie which thereof followed him, although that he loued her exceedingly much, and was by her beloued in the fame degree. Hee also gave over his other pastimes, which he held vnfit and vnbeseeming an Emperor. and began to live and behave himselfe very honestly and honorably, and to shew his liberalitie, clemencie, and fingular curtefie. Whereof I hold it requifite (although I keepe not order, feeing his time was fo fhort) to make fome mention; that feeing that his bountie, clemencie and wifedome made his Empire voide of accidents, warres and motions, which viually pleafe the reader, they may foeake of the vertues and greatnes of this Emperour. First for a shew and oftentation to theworld (which great Princes sometimes should make, because that thereby they make themselves in some fort beloved of the common people) he repaired. and made fome new great buildings, and he also made games and sports, wherein (according to EVSEBIVS, EVTROPIVS and SVET ONIVS) were flaine 5000. wild beafts, and therein also fought a great number of Sword-players. He caused also to be represented a Naual battaile in one of the auncient Naumachias, wherof mention hath been made heretofore. And as he was by nature most noble and liberall all the fauours graces and rewards which his predeceffors had made and graunted, which mone of them would confirme, but graunted some new, he granted, and by a decree confirmed. And besides this, to any supplication made vnto him he neuer gaue euill answere, neither suffered any man to depart from him discontented or without hope to obtaine his demaund. And being reprodued by fome of his Councell, for promifing more then it feemed he was able to performe: he answered them, that it was not fit nor decent, that any man should depart from him forrowfull and discontent with his entertainment. He was naturally so desirous to doe good and to helpe others, that one night after supper remembring himfelfe, that that day he had given nothing, with a fad and heavie countenance he turned towards those which were in his companie, and faid: My friends. I have loft this day: which were speeches truly worthy to be noted and to be engrauen in the minds of all great Princes. He was also so desirous to pleafure and give contentment to all men (holding alwaies his gravitie and authoritie) that in all his speeches and discourses with any kinde of people what some he alwaies shewed himselfe affable, pleasant, courteous, and conversable.

In some ill fortunes which in his time happened in Rome, as one was (as faith PAVLVS OROSIVS) a great fire, wherewith were burned a great number of houses, and also a great plague, he not only vsed the diligence of a carefull prince, but also shewed the loue and affection of a pittifull father, helping with his owne rents to repaire and new-build that which the fire had confumed, and causing those which were wounded to be cured with great diligence; and those which died of the pestilence, to be buried. The elemencie and gentlenes of this prince extended to fo high degree, that he not onely pardoned many, and moderated the rigor of the lawes in cases of ordinarie crimes: but two great men of Rome having conspired against him, and being thereof convict, so as they could not deny the fact, he would make no other inquisition, put them to any torments, or otherwise punish them, but onely warned and aduised them in secret that they should alter their cuill purposes, willing them to vnderstand and consider that the Empire was given by Gods providence and ordenance, and by the fates, and not by any humaine industrie: and if they would or defired any other thing, it should be better to sue to him, and he would not deny it, and saying this, he pardoned and vied them louingly, and afterwards entertained them with other compliments, which Svetonivs writeth, foas he tooke fuch order that they did repentand amend them; and he did better affure his life then if he had put them to death: For therein he should have had greater cause of feare, and more Snaves laid by would have hated him. The like temperance he held with his brother Dome TIANVS, who neuer left to lay fnares to entrap him and to lie in waite for his life, entraphis broand to practife his death, and to incenfe the armies and Cohorts against him: yet for all this he would not put him to death, as he might justly have done; neither feclude him from him; neither diminish his reputation and authoritie wherein heliued, but made him his companion in the Empire, and proclaimed him for his fuccessor. And the better to conuince and mollisse him, sometimes retiring him into a fecret chamber alone, with teares in his eies, he would admonish and require him, that he should not attempt to obtaine that by treason and fratricide, which he shortly should have voluntarily, & that which he alreadie enjoyed with him by his goodwill. And for conclusion, this excellent prince Tirvs in the short time that he raigned gouerned with fuch wisedome, and in such manner, that he was through all the whole Empire extremely beloued, and generally obeied and ferued by all men: So as during all his whole raigne there were no contempts, infurrections, warres, rebellions, nor contentions. But as men for their finnes were not worthie of fo good a prince, fo by Gods fecret judgement he was taken away from amongst them: for being taken with astrong burning feuer, within fewe daies hee died thereof, in the fame village wherein his father died, neere Rome, being of the age of one and fortic yeeres, two monethes and twentie daies, although that Ev TROPIVS fetteth downe some monethes lesse, which may be through error in a letter.

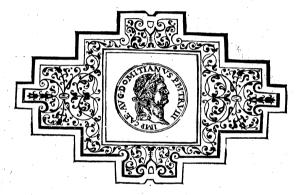
The death of

ther Titus.

So foone as his death was knowne, there was the greatest lamentation and forrow that euer was seene in Rome, and the Senat being assembled, there was more spoken to his honour and commendation, being dead, then was of any man that cuer lived before him, or was ever spoken in his presence in his lifetime, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 83.

#### LIFE OF TIANVS, ONELY OF THIS

NAME, AND TWELFT RO-MANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMEST.



THE

Omitianus brother to Titus, after his death was made Emperor, who in the beginning of his gouernment, faining much gaodnes, was mercifull, pittifull, and aboue all, most inst. He prevailed in all the warres that he began, and in Rosse finished many edifices alreadie begun, and built many more from the ground: so as in the beginning of his raigne he purchased a very good name, and the credit of a very vertuous and good man. But afterwards altering his conditions, he became so cruell, so iniurous and so couetous, that putting men to death for very small and ridiculous causes. he vsurped the goods of the dead, alledging that he was their heire. He

persecuted the sewes, and particularly those which were of the line of David, having understood that from him should descend a man which should be Lord of thewhole world. He was also a great persecutor of the christian religion, so that in his time many holy men were martyred. He made such warre with the flies, that a courteour being demanded, who was aboue with the Emperour; an (wered, that there was not one flie with him. He made great shew of Astrologie, and was a great friend to those which made profession of that facultie, yet he dealt hardly with an Astronomer which told bim that he should die shortly. He lived five and fortie yeeres, ruled the Empire sifteene; and by the conspiracie of one Stephen who was steward of his house, and certaine others, amongst which his wife was one; he was flaine in his pallace. The common people was neither fad nor glad of his death. but the gentlemen and Senators were so well pleased with his death, that even the very same day they made all his statues to be throwne to the ground, which he would have made of no other thing

Domitianus | mas wicked, and farre unlike to bis brother Titus.



O the good Emperour Trrvs, his brother and fucceffor DOMITIANVS was farre vnlike; for he was wicked and peruerse, although that in the beginning hee did some things which were agreeable, and gouerned the Common wealth reasonable vprightly; vsing deeds of clemencie, humilitie, and liberalitie, deceiving the world with fained bountie, cleane contrarie to all that hee didafterwards. When he came to the Empire, he was of the age of

thirtie yeeres (little more or lesse) in his younger yeeres, he liued in meane estate, and in euill fame, for the dishonestie of his person. After that his father was Emperour, in his absence, he was called C & s A R, and to him was given the greatest dignitie and authoritie in Rome, which hee vsed licentiously and dishonestly, committing adulteries, other vices and infolencies: and vpon a day, hee deposed twentie seuerall persons from their charges and government, and gaue them to others: fo as his father (when he understood thereof) faid, that he marueilled, that his sonne Domitianvs had not sent one, to have succeeded him also: and warres then growing in Battania, he attempted that which we then declared. But when his father was come to Rome, to dessemble and cloake his wicked conceites, he gaue himselfe to studie, and to the exercise of poesie, although with little affection: for before that time hee neuer regarded it, or any other learning, and so afterwards left and abhorred it, although that during that time hee vsed it onely to flatter. For the small time which hee spent in poefic. SILIVE ITALICUS, OVINTILIAN, and PLINIE in the process of his naturall historie, doe commend him: and MARTIAL forgetteth him not in his Epigrammes. And much leffe did Domitianvs give himselfe to the practife and exercise of armes, but was much affected to shooting with bowe and arrowes: wherein hee was fo skilfull, that he would oftentimes for his glorie cause a Page to spread his hand open for a marke against a butte, and he standing a good distance off, would sticke his arrowes betweene the boies fingers without hurting him; and in like manner would doe many other strange things therewith, which Sveronivs reporteth as an eje-witnes, wherein and in dicing was his most principall exercise and pastime. After the death of his father and brother, for whose goodnes sake he came to be Emperour, without any contradiction, he gouerned the same contrarie to his natural linclination, as may appeare by that which he did afterwards. But because we will not depriue him of the commendation, which his good deedes deferued, before that we will speake of his accurfed cruelties, wee will first speake of that which was good and commendable, feeing hee lived in fuch manner, that his actions were intermixt with fome spottes of cuill: wherein I cannot observe any order or time, as I alwaies desire to doe, because that the authors which I follow write it so confusedly and out of order.

Domitianus his

First, he made great shew of liberalitie, and iointlie therewith of clemencie, iuffice, and equitie, of either of which we will produce fome examples. He shewed himselfe so cleere and free from couctousnes, and so willing to give, that

he refused certaine heritages which certaine free personages would have given him; and gaue ordinarilie gifts and rewards, and forgaue penalties and tributes. and erected certaine pillers and publike buildings, which were very excellent. and of wonderfull great cost, among which this was one : He repaired and new builded the Capitoll, which againe had bin burned, wherein he made to be builded a sumptuous Temple to his god Iv PITER, and other Temples and wonderfull buildings. And to obteine the love and applause of the people, he orderned fo many shewes and games which were so rare and costly, that it is wonderfull to reade, and redious to write them. First he made a lake, for a Naumachia or battaile by fea, wrought all by mans hand, which was fo great as it was fufficient therein to conteine many galleyes, wherein were fuch battailes, that they wanted nothing to proue them to be in good earnest and not counterfeit. He had also a mole great number of Sword-players and Goales, and great rewards for those which did runne with chariots. He had turneyes and battailes of horsemen and footemen, and huntings of an infinite number of wild beafts, in such fort as other Emperours had done, and more then any other: for he had also women which like men fought with wild beafts, whereof Svetonivs, Ivvenal, and Mar-TIAL, make mention. He also made games and feasts which they called secular, secular games which were made but every hundred yeares, which were the most solemne of all made but once others: for then were accomplished a hundred yeeres fince the time that OctA- yeeres, VIVS AVGVSTVS had celebrated them, although that the Emperour CLAV-D 1 v s at another time commaunded them to be made, without observing any order or time, wherein he made the addition of the two new colours, which the horsemen did before vse to weare, whereof before hath been made mention. which were purple, and gold colour. And besides all this about said, he cansed di putations and arguments to be held, wherein great rewards were divided be- Gifts ginen by tweene Poets and Orators both Greeke and Latin, and all kind of Musick. There Domitianus. were also Comedies, dumb shewes, tragedies, and wrestling games. In conclufion, there were made by his commaundement all those feasts, games and reuels that euer had been feene or knowne in Rome untill that time, belides many which were newly inucted. Among all which he made a distribution among all the Romane people, which they called Congiarij, of 300. dencers to every person; and during the time of these reuels (which was not short) he made many banquets and publike feafts, and there were throwne to the common people all kinds of coines, and clothes, with other things which were cast from aloft out at the windowes, this was called Missia. I will not herewith forget one pleasant thing. whereof S VETONIV'S writeth, which was, that in the beginning of his Empire he was wont every day one houre to be in some chamber or secret place alone, Domitionus wherein he did nothing all that while but catch flyes, which he afterwards filed delighted much in catvp vpon a stiletto or long sharp needle: So as vpon a day one asking whether any ching of syes. bodie were within with DOMICIANVS, answere was made, that there was not fomuch as a flye within with him, meaning, that he had killed and throwne them all away.

DOMITIANVS did not only those things which were pleasing to the people, as making of feasts and sports, but he in all other things tooke so good order, shewing himselfe diligent in hearing complaints, and doing instice, and particularly in punishing such Judges as received bribes and rewards, as well the Romane Magistrates, as the Presidents and Gouernors of Provinces. And herein concerning Judges he perseuered, not only before that he discouered his crueltie and



wickednes, but even afterwards: and although that he were evill of himfelfe, vet he forbare not to punish euill Gouernors, and to Sveronivs affirmeth, that Governors were never to temperate, just and varight at any time as in his. He also made himselfe to be chosen Censor, wherein he greatly endeuoured to reforme and amend the abuses and euill maners of the Romanes, as though that his owne conditions had been good, and so he made many other good orders. and did iuffice in all things: and of the other fide shewing himselfe mercifull and pitifull, in such fort that if he had perseuered in that maner of government which he began, he had this day been held for a very good Emperour. But neuer any man fell from good to euill so notablie, and making so strange an alteration as he did, whereof in that which we have before faid, he gave fome indice and forewarning. For in those good things which he did, he vied such pride and elation, and shewed himselfe so vaine-glorious, that a man of any judgement might well perceine that what he did, proceeded not from any good mind, or from his naturall inclination, which he manifested in some his words and speeches: chiefely when he was made Emperour (without shame or blushing) he vaunted and said in the Senate, that he had given the Empire to his father and to his brother, which they had now reflored vnto him, this being as false, as by the historic before doth appeare. And those his statues which they commaunded to be set vp in the Capitoll, he would not confent that they should be made of any other thing, then of cleane gold, and fo in other things he shewed extreme pride. But he did one thing which was so accursed and abominable, that to make mention thereof onely, is a fufficient proofe of the incomparable pride of this man: for he commaunded and ordeined by a publike Edict, that in all Letters and Edicts they should call him God and Lord, which both the christian and heathen authors do affirme: For which sinne and wickednes it pleased God to suffer him to fall into those abominations which he afterwards incurred, as couctousnes, crueltie, and other abominations, whereof before that we will speake, it shall not be amisse in

bad bu statues of pure gold.

> countries it contained.

Dacia how it

The first warres abroade were against the Sarmates in Europe, which inuaded the Empire, with which and also with those of Alia, there ioined many of the auncient Scythians. That Province is scituate in the north of Germany, and stretcheth to the sea called Mare Sarmaticum. On the East it is bounded with the river of Tanais, and the lake Meotis: and on the Well with the river Mistula. Vnder this Prouince are now conteined Muscouia, Russia, Polonia, Lituania, and some other Provinces. This warre was cruell and dangerous, and in the beginning it went ill with the Romanes therein: for in a battaile were flaine the Generall of the Romanes, and one whole legion, but DoMITIANVS afterwards reenforcing his armies, the Sarmates were compelled and constrained with losse of many of their people to retire themselves. He had twife other warres with the inhabitants of the great prouince of Dacia, the inhabitants whereof (as Plinie affirmeth) were called by the Greekes Geta. That province contained all that which is now called Walachia, and Transfyluania, and other countries. Of this warre Svetonivs, Ev-TROPIVS, and PAVLVS OROSIVS make mention, but none of them reporteth how it passed, neither for what cause it was undertaken, although they affirme that it was very costlie to the Romanes: for in the first warre wherein Oppivs SABINV s being Generall, who had been Conful, whom EVTROPIVS calleth Appivs.

fumme, to treate of the warres which happened in the time of his wickednes, al-

though he profecuted them not in his owne person, which were three or source

with strange nations, and one civill warre.

Approximate was our come, and the greatest part of his people slaine. And in the second, CORNELIUS FUSCUS Commaunder of the Pretorian Cohorts, had the like fortune, whom DO MITIANVS made Generall of that warre. In both the one and the other were great encounters and battailes, wherein was spilt much of the Romanes bloud, as PAVLVS OROSIVS relateth, and he faith that Cor-NELIVS TACITYS treateth thereof very largely and copiously in his histories. but that perished with the rest of that authors workes, whereby we know not the defcourse of those warres: but they all write that Domitianvs triumphed of that prouince. And he also triumphed of a people in Germanie, which they called Catti, with which he also waged a doubtfull warre. And during the time of these warres, wholy discouering his wicked inclination, Do MITIANVS neuer ceased to commit murthers, robberies, violences, and other vices, as hereafter you shall heare. Wherefore having freed himselfe from the warres aforesaid there arose a civill warre and more daingerous, which was, that L v c I v s A N T O N I v s, called 2160 SATURNINUS, being Generall in Germanie, role against Domitianus, Murping the name of Emperour, making profit of this occasion, that Domitia-NVs for his endl life was ill beloued: against which SATVENINVS, DOMITIA-NV s fent Appivs Normand v s for his Generall. This warre was very doubtfull and much feared: but comming afterwards to a battaile, LvcIvs Anro-NIVS was flaine, and Appivs remained victor. And herein happened a most straunge and wonderfull accident, which was; that the same day wherein this battaile was fought in Germanie, it was knowne in Rome how every thing particularly did passe: and Domitianvs that same day, seeking to know the author of those newes, could not finde him, and therefore beleeved that it was falle; so as preparing himselfe to goe to those warres in person, messengers came which brought certaine newes of the victorie, and they auouched that it was at the same instant, according to the newes then in Rome.

After the warres were ended, which we have recited, and during the time therof,Domiting with a new sput to death many principall men, Senatours, and fuch as had been Confuls, for fo light and fained causes, that thereby hee cleerely manifested the fierce crueltie of his minde. ELIVS LAMIA he commaunded to be flaine, for Domitionus that hee vied to vitter pleasant speeches and iests: which although he suspected, did put many Noblemento vet were they offenfine to none. He commaunded SALVIVS COCCEIANVS destrubble also to be slaine, because that he celebrated the birth day of his vncle the Empe- causes. TOUR OTHO: And METIVS POMPOSIANVS, because that hee heard that his constellation did prognosticate vnto him Imperiall dignitie, and for that hee had ginen to some of his flaues, the names of HANNIBAL, and MAGO. And in like manner, SALVSTIVS LVCVLLVS, for that hee caused certaine launces to be made of a new fashion, which according to his owne name hee called Luculleian. He put I v N I v s R v s T I c v s to death, because he published a treatise in praise of PETVS TRASEA, and of VIBIVS PRISCUS which were very wife men, which

had bin of a faction contrarie to his father.

How little loue this tyrannous Emperor bare vnto learning, may well appeare by that which S V E T O N IV s and other authors write of him: for he commanded to be banished out of all Italy, the Philosophers, and with them (as Evsesivs Domitien her writeth) the Astrologers, of which banishment Avivs Gelivs and Philospherand. STRATUS make mention, and PHILOSTRATUS faith, that forme fled into Spaine, from merseul and others into the deferts of Libya and Scythia: and having expelled the Philoso- of Jiahy. phers and wifemen, proceeding in his crueltie, he flew an infinite number of peo-

The erucliie and incontinencieo/ Do-

The feare of

ple(as S v E T O N I v s reporteth) for very ridiculous causes: And his furie was such that some of those which he purposed to put to death voon the next day, he entertained ouer night in his chamber, and shewed them many fauours with a cheerefull countenance. And among these his cruelties, he gaue himselse to luxurie and incontinencie, and other dishonest exercises, conversing and keeping ordinarie companie with dishonest women; and herewith committed many robberies and straunge extortions, seising upon mens wares and goods for fained crimes, and those so light, that they deserved not to be accounted of. He would faine himselfe to be heire to those which were dead seising upon their goods and produced some to depose that they had heard the deceased in their life time say, that they meant to leave him for their heire. With which deuises, and so many more as he could imagine or deuile, hee neuer left robbing and dispatching men out of the way, as well in Rome and Italy, as in other provinces subject to the Empire. But amongst all other nations, those which endured the greatest oppression and tyrannie were the Iewes, by Gods permission for their sinnes: for all those which were of that religion, or lived after their fashion and custome, although they were not so, he made them pay a certaine new and rigorous imposition and tribute by the head, ouer and aboue all that any other nation paid. And Svero-NIV s and also E v s E BIV s Write, that as HERODE when CHRIST was borne; fo was hee in feare that out of the stocke of David one should come, which would be reaue him of the Empire: for he was informed that it was written, that from DAVID should descend a man which should rule and command the whole world: Wherefore hee commaunded with all diligence all those amongst the Iewes, which were of the linage of D'AVID, to be fought out and flaine : yet Ev-SEBIVS Writeth that he pardoned two, which were of that linage. And to fet his scale to all his wicked deedes, being induced by the divell, or some of his angels, he gaue himselse to the persecuting of the Catholike Church, and by his letters and edicts both in Rome, and out of it, an infinite number of Christians were banished and put to death; upon which hee executed horrible kindes of cruelties. Written by Evsebivs, Pavivs Orosivs, and other Catholike authors: And this was the fecond generall perfecution of the Primitive Church, wherein S.I OHN the Euangelist was banished into the Ile of Pathmos, where he faw the vifion of the Apocalypse. How long this persecution endured, I cannot say; but by Evs BBI vs it seemeth that it lasted little more then two yeeres: for he afterwards in the thirteenth chapter of his third booke, faith, that DoMITIANV s did moderate this perfecution, and commaunded it to cease. So as by that which is written, and hath been feene, Do MITIAN Was one of the worst Princes that ever was in the world, and so bad, that hee vied to say, that the vice of the flesh was but a kinde of honest exercise, and such were those wherein hee vsed to passe his time. For these causes and many other which I omit, wherein Domiti-ANYs ipent foureteene yeeres of his raigne, hee came to bee extremely hated and abhorred of all men. And as now it was growne to a custome in Rome, not to endure wicked Emperours long, and as God also permitteth that some-

time wicked Princes come to euill ends; fo those which were most prinate

and neerest about him conspired against him; the chiefe and captaine of which,

Was one STEPHANVS, who was steward to his wife and Emperesse Doms-

CILLA, whom they affirme to have been partaker in the conspiracie and pra-

Etile to put him to death, and they afterwards flew him in fuch manner, as I will

The fecond perlecution of the

tell you.

In that feafon, while this conspiracie was a plotting, there appeared certaine Signer proguefignes in the skies, whereof all men conceited and prognosticated, that the death death of Domiof DOMITIANV s Was at hand, and hee also stood in extreme seare thereof, as he tian. which tooke great heede to auguries and fignes, and prefumed much to be an Astrologer and Dininer. And amongst other signes which then were seene, there appeared for many daies together round about the Sunne a great bright shining Crowne that did compasse it about, which resembled the Raine-bow against foule weather; but that it was a whole Crowne and did compaffe the Sunne in fuch manner, that it bereaued and eclipfed the fame of his brightnes: Which figne all men did interprete to fignifie a chaunge and alteration in the Empire, with the death of DoMITIANVS. And for as much as STEPHANVS in Greeke fignifieth a Crowne, there were some which divined that the faid STEPHANYS was hee which should kill him, notwithstanding that they knew nothing of the practile. By meanes whereof, and of other things which then were seene, Do MI-TIANVS was in such feare and despaire, that as vpon a day there was a great tempest, and there happened certaine stashes of lightning, which hee and all others did presage to be against him : and he being very angrie, they write that he said. Let I VPITER then smite whom hee will. Whereof the feare which I tolde you of was the principall cause: for even then was the time accomplished which the Astrologers, casting his constellation, had told him that he should die. But one thing about all the rest made him most amazed, which in truth was very strange, An Assolute and for such (although it be of small importance) I will declare, which was this: foretold Domithat hee living in this feare, sent for an Astrologer, who in that time was very fa-tian of bis mous, and asked him many questions thereupon: who answered him, that by his bisome also art he found that his death was neere at hand. Wherewith Domitian was for wroth that having determined to commaund this Astrologer to bee slaine, hee asked him, if hee knew what end hee himselfe should haue. The Astrologer anfwered him, that by his constellation hee knew, that hee should shortly be torne in pieces by dogges. And Do MITIAN thinking to make him a lier in that which hee had faid, and that, that which hee had prophecied of his owne death, should not come to passe, commaunded him presently to bee flaine, and his bodie to be burnt, and his after to be buried, to the end that dogges should not teare him. And having begunne to burne his bodie, there fell fuch a tempest and raine as quenched and dispersed the fire; and the bodie of the poore Astrologer remaining halfe vnburnt, there came certaine dogges which tare it in pieces, as he had prognosticated. Which(as I thinke) was, by Gods permission, a practise of the diuell, as he which knew the secrecie of the conspiracie, which then was in hand to kill him. Now STEPHANVS and his conforts having agreed upon the day, wherein they determined to give DOMITIANVS his deferved death, one morning this STEPHEN came into his chamber, bringing a poiniard hidden under his arme, which for that purpose he had some daies before fained to be fore, and carried it bound; and comming to the Emperour (who was suspitious enough and very fearefull) having oportunitie to come to his presence, by reason of his office with much dissimulation he told him that he had brought him certaine intelligence of a conspiracie against him. Which when Domitians sheard, as he was very lealous thereof, and beleeuing his words to be true, without any further confideration, he withdrew himselfe apart to talke with him about this matter: and standing in that manner, the rest which were of the same confederacie, being all his ordinarie feruants, and at hand, this STEPHEN gaue him a memo-

The death of

Domitianus.

#### DOMITIANVS.

riall, such as he had fained and deuised; wherein he discouered a conspiracie, naming therein such as hee thought good. And Douttlanvs beginning to reade therein with great attention, STEPHEN at his pleasure stabbed him into the groyne; and the Emperour feeling himselfe wounded, began to call and to cry out aloud: and as hee was very strong and valiant, before that STEPHEN could give him another wound, hee closed with him and threwe him to the ground, and striuing to take the poiniard from him, he cutand mangled his owne fingers therewith: And by this time before that any fuccour could come to him. there ranne vpon him SATVENINVS, CLORIVS, PARTHENIVS, MAXIMVS, and others which were of that conspiracie, being all his owneseruants, and there giuing him many wounds, they killed him. And so had Do MITIANVs such an end as his deedes deserved, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 98. in the five and fortith of his age, and the fifteenth of his raigne, and left no sonne to fucceede him: for although that in his fathers time, hee had had a fonne by his lawfull wife, named Domicilla, that fonne diedbeing a childe. Domi-TIANVS was a man tall of stature, and in his youth of a fine and proper constitution, a good countenance, great eies, and somewhat redde: but comming to age, he loft his proportion and good grace, by reason of a long ficknes which he had, whereof his legges became little and flender, and afterwards hee had a great gorebelly, and a very bald head. His death was taken in Rome in diners manners, for it grieued the pretorian fouldiers very much : fo as if that daie they had had any Captaine that would have but made the motion, they would have flaine all the conspirators. The common people tooke it indifferently, shewing

neither ioy nor forrow. The Senate was not onely well content therewith, but conceived exceeding iov thereat, and affembling themselues that same day, they caused all his statues to be throwne downe, and all the infcriptions and memorials of him to be cancelled and defaced.

THE



### THE LIFE OF COCCEI-VS NERVA, ONLY OF THAT

NAME, AND THIRTEENTH RO-MAME EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT

His wife Emperour was borne in the citie of Narnie : it is not certainely knowne whether he were an Italian or of what other Nation, yet all agree that he was of a most noble house : he was aduanced to the imperiall dignitie being alreadie old, and in the beginning of his raigne be had newes (though false) that Domitian was not dead, which much troubled him. He recalled the Christians from banishment, eased the oppressions of the citie, and made the children of poore parents to be bred up at the publike charge: and to be briefe, did many good and vertuous deedes. There was never but one conspiracie against him, which had ill successe for the conspirators in his time were contumelsoully flaine, those which slew Domitian, though against his will: He adopted Traiane for his sonne, having no sonne of his owne, to whom he might commit the charge of the Empire. He held the Empire thirteene moneths onely, and died of choler, taken against a Senator whose name was Requius, which choler cast him into such a sweate that he died thereof; and the Same day that he departed out of this life, there was a great eclipse of the Sunne,



He death of the Emperour Do MITIAN was not onely profi- Nerua chofen table for the Empire, by that meanes to be freed and delivered Emperour b from his crueltie and tyrannie, but for that it gaue occasion to the senate of NERVA to succeede him: and that afterwards TRAIANE and ADRIAN should raigne, which were most excellent Emperors.

and honored and enlarged the Empire. And although that NERVA raigned but a while, yet he did many good things, but the best that he did was, in that he made TRAIANE his successor, as when time seructh, shall be

declared. The death of Domitian, as I haue faid, did not grieue the Romane people, but pleafed the Senate exceedingly, who having commaunded the remembrance of him to be cancelled and blotted out, they presently tooke order to give him a successor, before that any one should be chosen by the armie. And COCCETY'S NERVA, being at that time for his many vertues, prudence, experience, and age, a man of the greatest reputation and authoritie in Rome, was by the Senate chosen Emperour, having been favored and affisted therein by Pa-TRONIVS SECUNDUS Captaine of the Pretorian Cohorts, and PARTHENIUS. who was one of those which killed DoMITIAN. This NERVA was of noble linage, borne in the citie of Narnia in the prouince of Vmbria in Italie, his fathers name was Nerva as was his. Saint Is ID ORE onely faith, that he was borne in Spaine, I know no ground for it; neither have I read it in any other auncient author. Being received in the Senate and accepted to the Empire, vpon a fodaine without knowing who was the author, it was told him that Domitian was liuing, and that the report of his death was vntrue. This newes did fomuch trouble Nerva, that all the colour went out of his face, and being vnable to speake, he had much to doe to stand upon his feete, untill that PARTHENIUS did encourage him, affuring him of the truth. Whereupon he came againe to himfelfe, and fet a good countenance vpon the matter. And presently they all came to him to doe him reuerence, and to receive him for their Lord and Emperour, shewing greatioy, in hope of good successe. Onely Arrivs Antonivs, who was a very wife and iust man & had bin his great friend, spake vnto him in a more strange manner then any of the rest, and therefore I will recite it. Truely NERVA. in that thou art advanced to this high degree, I will attribute the benefit and happines thereof vnto the Senate and people of Rome, and generally to the whole Empire (for such hath been their good fortune) but not vnto thee. For thou by Antonius to having escaped with such honor and estimation by meanes of thy vertue, and wisedome, from the injurie of those wicked princes past, art now made subject to infinit troubles and daungers, and aboue all to the infamie and hatred of thy enemies, and asmuch or more of thy friends: for they will presume that they have deserved all favour, in respect of the auncient friendship which they have held with thee; and if thou shalt deny them any thing that they shall aske, although it be never fo vniust, they will become greater and more cruell enemies vnto thee. then those which openly shew themselves to be such. Now as the solemnities and accustomed ceremonies for the new Emperor were ended: In the beginning of his Empire hee began to doe most noble and excellent workes, whereof in fumme wee will make a briefe relation, without distinction of time, seeing his Empire was so short as in a manner not to be deuided. And one of the best and first was, in releasing from banishment all the Christians which from Rome and other cities were banished in the time of the Emperour Domitian, and to permit and give libertie to every man to hold what faith and religion he would and in this time (according to Ev. s BBIV s and other catholike historiographers) Saint I OHN the Euangelist came from the Ile of Pathmos (whither he was banished) to the citie of Ephelus in Asia. The like humanitie did N z s v A vse in all other matters: First he released and discharged all the cities of the Empire from the new impositions, which VESPASIAN and DOMITIAN had laid vpon them. And to many which by Domitianus were unjustly dispossessed of their goods, he commaunded their possessors to be restored with all their moueables.

which could be found in the imperiall palaces. And he not onely shewed him-

felfe

selfe liberall to those which were oppressed, but to all poore men which had fonnes, he made them to be bred up at his charges. He made also a distribution among all the people of Rome in greater value and quantitie, then was vsuallie done by any others. And some poore citizens of Rome which he knew had no wealth, he made certaine possessions, which he bought for that purpose, to be diuided among them. And aboue all he did great fauours, and bestowed great gifts upon those which had bin his friends and allied unto him : and his liberalitie was so great, as D 10 N writeth, that in the beginning and first comming to the Empire, he was constrained by necessitie to sell his gold and silver plate, and other moueables of his house, to performe and accomplish those his fauours and good deedes. And in this manner he did many deedes of charitie and clemencies for it is written for very certaine, that he sware that no Senator of Rome should by his commaundement be put to death, which he afterwards performed, although there failed not of those which deserved the contrarie. He also forbad many slanders and accusations vsed in those times, desiring that all men should live contented and at libertie.

Although that NERVA was so good a man (as we have faid) and yied so good a kind of gouernment, so as there was nothing in him to be reproued; yet there wanted not some which murmured against him, as wicked men vse to do against the good, alleaging that so much humilitie and gentlenes in a Prince was not piofitable: fo as FRONTON a principall man in Rome prefumed to fay openly. that it was an euill thing to have such an one for Emperour, which would suffer no man to do any thing that he defired; but it was a worse matter to have such an one under whom every man might do what he lifted. When NERVA was aduertifed thereof, he was not angrie, but prohibited and forbad some things, which had given cause to say so : and he desired so much to governe vprightlie, that he did nothing of his owne head alone, but had alwayes about him, and fent for wife and good men, fuch as were of the greatest experience in Rome, by whose counsell he prouided, ordeined, and dispatched all matters. He also made in the finall time of his Empire some very good lawes and ordinances, among which, he sharply forbad an abuse of those times, which was, to geld men and to make them Eunuches. He also forbad that any man should marry his neece or brothers daughter, and many other things which wanted reformation. And to conclude, this Emperour had in his short time all those parts which a good Prince ought to haue, and so sound and cleere a conscience, that he oftentimes said, that he remembred not to have done anything (although that he left and gave over the Empire) why he should not live secure, and without scare of any bodie. And although that all this was fo (as to the wicked the yoke and scepter of the just is a heavie burthen, and Rome had then taken such a custome, that it could neither indure an euill Emperour, nor obey him that was good) So there wanted not fome therein which practifed his death and conspired against him, the mouer and head thereof was CRASSVS CALPHVENIVS, but it pleased God that it tooke no effect, but was reuealed to the good Emperour, who without any rigour or bloudshed was freed thereof, contenting himselfe only (as SEXTVS AVRE-LIVS writeth) with the banishment of those which were culpable, although the Senate would have inflicted a more rigorous punishment.

All these things being passed (as I have said) and all things succeeding well and prosperously, as well in Rome as in all the Provinces subject thereto, it hapned that ELIANY'S CASPERIVS, who at that time was Prefect and Captaine of the

Pretorian

Pretorian Cohorts, moued and incited all the fouldiers thereof, to revenge the death of the Emperour Do MITIAN, and to put all those to death which had bin confederates therein, which they determined to put in execution, although that NERVA gaue them no leaue thereto. This motion was fodaine, and NERVA was much troubled, and would have letted it, and would have defended those from whose hands he had received the Empire, or have dyed in the quarrell, and so he faid and published openly: but the matter came to such iffue, that the old Emperour was neither able to refift or hinder it, and fo PARTHENIVS and PETRO-NIVS were flaine, and all those which CASPERIVS would require or nominate of those which were culpable. With this contempt NERVA was so much grieued and offended, that he was very forrowfull to fee that he could not punish it as the case required for by reason of his old age & infirmities he was not regarded by the fouldiers. Wherefore to redreffe the prefent and to provide for that to come. he determined to adopt & make TRAIANE his fuccessor, who was then Captain and Gouernour in the neather Germany, and was at that time in the citie of Colen, which charge he had executed with great honor and fame, and was the most excellent man liuing in that time as well in peace as in warre, to whom he was no way allied, for he was a Spaniard and a stranger to Rome and Italy. And although that NERVA wanted not parents and kinfemen, yet he chofe TRATANE, having more respect to the publike good, then to his owne house and posteritie: wherein how infly he made his choife, this historic will hereafter manifest. And having put this his determination in execution, and the accustomed solemnities perfor-Traiane adopmed, and having adopted him in the Capitoll, and made him C & s AR in the Seted and inuefted in the Emnate, he presently sent him Ambassadors, with the ensignes and armes of the Empire by Nerua. pire, and they inuefted him in the Empire, and herewith he fent him a verse in Latine, wherein in few words he incited and exhorted him to come and fuccour Telis Phebe tuis lacher mas him. The adoption of TRAIANE was a great bridle to the commotions, which were feared would have enfued, and all remained still and obedient. But it pleafed not God that NERVA should long enjoy his good counsell: for as SEXTVS AVRELIVS writeth, he lived but only three moneths afterwards, in which time they write not that there passed any notable matter, neither is it vnderstoode by the histories that TRAIANE came to Rome before his death, which hapned (in a maner) fodainely, through anger and displeasure which he conceived against a Senator, whole name was REGVLVs: for as he was old and feeble, he gaue a great shout, and was taken with so great a sweat, that being vnable to endure it, he cocceius Nerua dyed thereof. The fame day there was a great Eclipse of the Sunne, which might

vlcifcere no-

The death of at the eclipfe Ann. Dom. 1000. Christ. He raigned one yeare, soure moneths and odde dayes, according to SEX-

TVS AVRELIVS, EVTROPIVS, and BEDA. About the time of his age there is some difference among the Authors: for some fay, that he was 71. yeares old, and others 76. but as it importeth little, so do I not meane to fpend much time about contrarieties of fo fmall moment, and herein I hold decorum with my curious reader, to the end that he condemne me not of negligence, if he find me to differ from that which he shall reade elsewhere.

be (in part) cause of his death; which was in the hundreth yeare of our Saujour

THE



### THE LIFE OF TRAIANE, ONLY OF THIS NAME.

AND FOURTEENTH ROMAN EMPEROVR.



ARGVMENT.



Fter the good Nerua succeeded a better Traiane, borne (as is heere said) in the citie of Italica, scituate neere to Senil: yet some say that he was borne elsewhere, whose fathers name was Traiane, and his mothers Plotina. He was advanced to the Empire with the good liking of all men, for that his goodnes, clemencie, liberalitie, and equitie towards all men was publickly knowne; which vertues he loft not when he was Em-

perour, but rather seemed to have increased the same : neither did he omit them, although he were neuer somuch bussed in matters of importance concerning the warres, or standing for the recreation of his mind, to behold feasts and disports. The first enterprise that he undertooke, after that be was Emperour, was against the King of Dacia rebelling the second time, and he likewise sharply persecuted the Christians, but he afterwards mitigated the persecution, which was the third that the Church indured, then daily greatly increasing. He also subdued Armenia. In his time there was a very great earthquake which was almost generall, but it did most harme in Antioch, where he then was. After this, he made very great voyages. In his time the Iewes againe rebelled, which when he had tamed, he returned triumphant to Rome, where was a wonderfulltriumph prepared for him: but being ouerburthened with age, and infirmities, be dyed in the citie of Seleucia, to the great univer fall forrow and griefe of the whole world. He lined 64. yeares; and being dead and burnt, his ashes were borne to Rome, and set upon the top of a pillar, which is yet

to this day to be seene in Rome, which was a wonderfull piece of worke, and trulie worthie of so great an Emperour, who was a no leffe father to the countrey, then to all vertues and vertuous



Fter the wife and good Emperour NERVA, succeeded TRA-IANE, as he had ordeined in his life time, who was the flower of all the heathen Emperours, and in his time was the Romane Empire at the greatest height, for neuer: either before or after, was it fo great, fo much feared or efteemed. His fufficiencies, excellencies and vertues were formany and forgreat, that as SEx-

TVS AVRELIVS affirmeth, the deepe wits of the writers of those times were hardlie able to expresse and declare the same. For although that I would exceede in the historie of this excellent Prince, for the loue of my countrey, of whence I might fay that TRAIANE was (as presentlie shall appeare) yet I could not do it according to my defire and his deferts, for the breuitie of those authors which we haue at this day which wrote of him: wherefore I hold it for a better course to obferue the stile and forme alreadie begun, then by breaking it, to be euer too briefe and deficient. I fay then that TRATANE was by nature and birth a Spaniard. whereof there is no doubt: for fo do all auncient true authors affirme. Ev r R o-PIVS in the life of him, and EVSEBIVS in his Chronicle, fav, that he was borne in the citie of Italiea, which is subject and neere to Seuil: which is also affirmed by SEXTUS AVRELIUS, although he name it not; and Antony LEBRISHA, whom we may alleadge among the auncient authors, calleth Italica TRATANES countrey; wherefore I cannot coniecture by what authoritie he did it, which Wrote that TRAIAN was borne in Cales. This citie of Italica (according to PLINIE in his third booke) was in that time in subjection, and within the jurisdiction of Seuil, and ANTONY in his perambulation faith, that it was fixteene miles from thence : the same in a manner is gathered by Prolomin his geographic, and that it lay Northwest from Seuil: but in what time it was ruinated or where about itlay, I could neuer certainely understand, so as Seuil may glorie and vaunt it selfe to be TRAIAN his countrey: for although that he were not borne in it, yet he was borne in a place subject and neere vnto it. TRAIANE was also of noble bloud and linage, although (not very famous for any great dignities.) His fathers name was also TRAIANE, as was his. When he came to the Empire, he was 42. yeares old, but not fullie complete, and married to a woman of great account, whose name was PLOTINA. For the certaine knowledge they had in Rome of his goodnes and valour, he was by generall confent toy fullie received and obeyed therein and he presently began to put his great vertues in execution, shewing himselfe both in word and deed, good, affable, gentle, mercifull, verie wife, and a louer of truth and equitie, and of all other vertues, wherein he perseuered untill the end: it shall not be amisse if I recite part thereof in the beginning, secing that all the historiographers which write of him do the like.

TRAIANE taking upon him the gouernment of the Empire, first endequoured to reforme the lawes, and to make them to be observed, and that there should be equitie and inflice in all things. In publike charges and offices he tooke care to establish noble and vertuous men; and such as were not so, he reformed and amended with gentlenes and clemencie, and not with rigour and extremitie. He did fo moderate and represse his wrath and choler, that he was never knowne to be ouercome therewith; and was most abstinent from other mens goods, and free His liberalities from couetousnes. His liberalitie and bountie did exceede, bestowing benefits

Traiane his good deedes.

and good turnes vpon all men, greatly fuccouring and relieuing the poore and needie, imitating and excelling his adopted father N BRV A. Hee bestowed much cost and tooke great care for the bringing vp, and instructing of poore mens children in Rome and in all Italy. He was a great builder of publike and necessarie Edifices; and also made an infinite number of bridges, gates and temples, and repaired high waies & causeies, as yet is to be seene in many places in Spaines whereof one (as faith S. I SIDORE) is the bridge at Alcantara. In all his buildings hee neuer made benefit of any mans goods or labour, as some of his predecessors had done. He was with the multitude and common people gentle and courteous, and the principal personages he honoured and entertained with loue and familiarities and chiefly those which descrued it, he admitted to private coversation; wherof being vpon a time reprooued, he answered, that he defired to be such an Emperour towards his subjects, as he would wish they should be to him, if hee were not fo. In Arts and Sciences he was not very learned, by reason of his great busines, but neuer left to practife when hee had time thereto; having for his mafter the excellent Philosopher and Historiographer PLVTARCH, whom, and others Trainity mafor their high and excellent wits, he loued and honoured much, as I v v E NA L to- fer. stifieth, besides other writers.

To conclude, this Prince had all the good parts and conditions which an excellent King ought to haue: in peace he was vpright and iuft, and in warre(wherto he was so affected, as hereafter shall be declared) he was valiant; and in both the one and the other very wife and prudent. And because wee will not conceale the truth, of two vices and passions he was noted, and accused to be spotted withall: the one was, that he did eate and drinke much, and that very sumptuously; and the other was that he was much given to the vice of the fleth: the cause whereof was the want of faith, together with his great power and libertie; but it was neuer knowne that the wine ouercame his wits, or that by meanes thereof he committed ought, that might feeme vnfit; neither through the other passion, that he

euer vied violence, or forced any woman, or offended any.

With these conditions he began his raigne and Empire, and gouerning it most happily for some space, as he was a most excellent and valiant Captaine, and addicted to the wars, defirous of honour and fame aboue all his predeceffors, he determined to extend and enlarge the Empire by warre and force of armes. His first enterprise was against the King and inhabitants of the prouince of Dacia, a very great and spacious countrey; wherein are now included, Walachia, and Transiluamia, and other lands, taking the occasion hereof to be for the warres and harmes which that people had done to the Romane Empire, in the time of the Emperour DOMITIAN. TRAIANE went to this warre with an exceeding great armie, and VVarres made the King of Dacia, whose name was DECEVALVS, had leuied for his defence all by Traianeahis whole force and might, which was very great: fo as this warre was very cruel. gainft the King. But the King of Dacia being no other way able to defend himselfe, determined to come to a battaile(as he did)wherin T R A I AN E had the victoric, with exceeding great losse to his enemies, and not a little to the Romanes, for the battaile was very cruell and bloudie. This victorie being obtained, and TRAIANE following the chase of his enemies, pursued them so hard, that DECEVALVS being in despaire, sent to him, humbly desiring peace, offering to accept any conditions that he should prescribe. And TRAIANE, who took as great glorie in pardoning the humble and meeke, as in taming and fubduing the proud and hautie, notwithstanding that he had taken almost all his countrey; was contented to admit him to

Traiane came

into Rome in

triumph.

his grace and fauour, writing and fending certaine conditions by him to be performed: which were, that he should presently deliuer vp all his instruments and engines of warre, and the enginers and mafters thereof, together with all fugitiues that were within his dominion, which were Romanes, or their confederates. and ranne to the enemie. And that out of all the Castles and fortresses within his dominions, hee should withdraw the garrisons, and should throw downe such as should be appointed: and before all these things, that hee should surrender certaine lands which he held within the bounds of the Empire; and that hee should euer hold for friends and enemies, those which the Senate of Rome held for fuch.

These articles and conditions the King of Dacia accepted and promised to accomplish, more through necessitie then for any goodwill; and having sworne to obserue them, he came to the Campe to the Emperour, where prostrating himfelfe vpon the earth before him, he confessed himselfe to be ouercome, and to be his vaffall. This folemnitie being ended, and other things done which were expedient, TRAIANE returned victorious to Rome, wherein he entred in triumph, as faith Evsestvs, having raigned two yeeres, and brought with him the Ambaffadours of the King of Dacia, to whom was given audience in the Senate; and the peace, which TRAJANE had graunted, was therein confirmed. And hee for his victorie was called Dacicus, for that hee had subdued the prouince of Dacia, as the Romanes in former time had viually done by fome other excellent Cap-

When TRAIANE had ordred all things in the province of Dacia in this manner, for ioy and honor of this victorie, and to please the Romane people, he made in Rome al manner of iports and games, which of custome were wont to be made by the Emperors (as is aboue faid) adding thereto fuch other things as he thought good. But these games and sports did not withdraw him from doing instice, neither from care of the gouernment: but rather fo long as they lasted, he spent the greatest part of his time in dispatching of busines, and ministring instice, going himselse in person to the Tribunal and publike audience, to judge and determine many causes, which he did most instly and wisely. Passing sometime in so good quiet, rest, and generall peace, the King of Dacia being as vnable to endure subiection and feruitude, as his predeceffors, againe beganne fome commotions and alterations, first secretly; and afterwards publikely: repairing and fortifying his Castles, prouiding armes and engines, and leuving his neighbour forces against the Empire: whereof so soone as TRAIANE and the Senate had intelligence, hee was adjudged, the fecond time, enemie to the Empire. And with an equall armie and greater wrath and displeasure then the former, TRAIANE went this second time to the warres in person: in which the King of Daeia taking warning by that which was past, refused to come to battaile, and vsed policies, stratagems and trecheries against TRATANE; which were such and so many that the Emperour was in daunger to have been either flaine or taken; and by treacherie (vpon a fafe conduct) they tooke a fingular good Captaine and a great fauourite of the Emperours called Longinvs. The King of Dacia having so good a pawne, sent to TRATANE to entreate a pardon, and to treate of peace, threatning that except he might obtaine the fame, hee would put the faid Longinys to death. Whereto TRAIANE gaue fuch an answere, that the King well understood thereby, that he preferred his honour and the publike good before any particular perill, and profecuted the warres by all waies and meanes possible: During

the which, within a very short space he builded a bridge ouer the river Danubius, Abridge ouer beyond which (parting from Italy) lieth the countrie of Dacia, which was one of the river Dachamolt Occasion being separated and the separated by the most of the separated by t the most stately bridges that euer was made in the world, all of squared stone of marueilous beautie. This bridge contained twentie Arches, each of which was one hundred and fiftie foote high befides the foundation and fixtie foote broad; the one Arch was distant from the other one hundred and sixtic foote, which was the compasse of the Arches of the bridge, which truly was a wonderfull peece of worke, and for fuch is recorded, as well for the greames thereof, as for the many difficulties, and the short space wherein it was made: which among other things is an argument of the wealth and greatnes of the Romane Emperours. VVhich bridge this Emperour made, to the end to hold a free passage for his armies to passe ouer the river Danubius, against those barbarous nations: and ADRIAN his fuccessor being of a contrarie opinion, to bereauc the barbarous of the like passage (as some say) commaunded it to be broken. This bridge being finished, TRAIANE continuing the warre, did many things; wherein he shewed himselfe to be a valiant and excellent Captaine : and so much oppressed the enemie(notwithstanding that the countrie was great, and the people very fierce and hardie) that he conquered and fubdued it all, and put their King DECEVALVS to the King of fuch a streight, that to escape taking, being in great daunger thereof, he slew himfelfe; and his head was carried to Rome, and the countrie of Dacia was made subiect and tributarie to the Romane Empire: the greatest part whereof at this time (for our finnes) is subject to the Turke. After this, taking such order for all things in those parts as was requisite, TRAIANE came to Rome with great honour, bringing with him an exceeding great summe of money and riches, taken from that King and countrie, being now (as E v s E B I v s testifieth) the fift yeere of his raigne. And his name and bountie was fo famous through the world, that vpon the way Ambassadours met him from the East Indies, and divers other parts to fue for peace, and to acknowledge him for their Lord. And being come to the citie of Rome, hee entred thereinto in great triumph; and afterwards there were made shewes and feasts for ioy of his victorie and returne; which lasted one hundred and twentie daies, which were foure whole moneths: which being ended, hundred and he applied himselfe to the administration of instice, and the tranquillitie of the treenie dates Empire. And remaining in Rome bufied in these exercises, hee made many bridges, causeies, and other publike edifices both within Italy and out of it. About this time there died a great friend and fanourite of his, whose name was SVRA LI-CINIVS, whose death he tooke heavily, and honoured his memoriall with publike statues, which he commaunded to be erected to him, and other honors then vsed. This SvRAWas so good a man, and TRAIANE reposed such trust in him, that being told one day for certaine, that S v R A meant to kill him, hee went that night to fup at his house; and commanding his guard to returne, remained there alone amongst SvR Ahis friends and companions, and commaunded his Barber to shaue his beard with a rasour, which the Emperours then held for a custome, untill the time of his fucceffor ADRIAN, who wore his beard somewhat long: and having fo much trusted and tried this SVRA LICINIVS, hee returned to his Palace; and calling those vnto him which had told him thereof, hee faid to them, that he had made triall of Licinivs his loyaltie, and that they should no more hold him in suspition : and so hee ener after loued him both aliue and dead, as I

TRAIANE liuing in this proforitie without error, or disorder in any thing

that might deserve reproofe, being deluded by the divell, or some of his miniflers, resolved to persecute the Christians, and made edicts and decrees against them, commaunding them to adore his Idols; fo as an infinit number of them The third gene- were put to death vpon that occasion. This was the third generall perfecution nati persecution of the Christians, whereof Evsesivs treating saith, that it was in the tenth veere of his raigne, and so doth On os Ivs and other Christian authors. Which perfecution the fame TRATANE commaunded afterwards to bee mittigated, as it appeareth by some histories, and by the letters written by PLINIE to TRAIANE. and from TRAIANE to PLINIE, which are extant to this day: Wherein he commaunded, that if the Christians were not accused of any other crimes, they should be suffered to line at libertie, and according to their lawes. In these and other things, in peace, and doing iuftice, TRAIANE busied himselfe in Rome, vntill that moved with defire of fame and glorie, he determined to make warreagainst the King of the Parthians, and against the King of Armenia, making this his occasion; that the King of Armenia had received the crowne and ensignes of a King, from the hands of the King of the Parthians, acknowledging him for his superior and soueraigne, and not from the Emperour of Rome, as he was bound to have done, as appeareth by that which is alreadic faid. And having ordered his people and made such prouision, as for so great an enterprise was requisit: he departed from Rome, wonderfully accompanied with armies both by fea and land; and arriving in Asia, he invaded Armenia, wherein the fame of his comming was so great, and there was so terrible a feare ouer all the land, that but in very few places he found any refistance, aswell in Armenia as in countries adioyning. And the greatest part of the Kings, Nobles and Gouernors of the provinces bordering thereupon, came peaceably to him, humbly confessing themselues to be his subjects, and him to be their soueraigne Lord, and bringing him many prefents they made great shew of subjection. Among many other things of great price which they presented vnto him, there was brought him a horse in greatnes, colour and shape, one of the most faire in the world, which being taught before hand, so soone as he came in the Emperours presence, kneeled downe voon the ground vpon both his knees, and bowed downe his head to the earth which although it was knowne to be artificiall, yet it made a very good shew, and greatly

delighted the beholders being a thing rare and vnthought of. TRAIANE having in short time subdued the countrie of Armenia, and gotten the King thereof into his power, whose name was PARTAMIASITES, he visited and feifed all the land into his hand. And fo (as Everopivs and Sexrys RVFVS testifie) the countrie of Armenia was made a tributarie prouince, and at that time hee gratified and gaue gifts and rewards to those Kings and Tetrarches, which had ferued him in those warres, and to many others. And others he condemned in great fummes of money, according as each one had deferued. And fetting all things in good order, leaving fufficient garrifons to defend the fame, he marched forwards with his armie, conquering the dominions of the King of the Parthians, and particularly entred into the fertill countrie of Melopotamia, and tooke the citie of Nilibe, and other places therein, and made that prouince, like Armenia, tributarie and subject to the Empire; the King of the Parthians being no way able to hinder the same. Passing herein, and in that which is alreadic faid, many skirmifhes, encounters, affaultes of cities, and feates of armes, TRAIANE shewed himselfe in all things an excellent Captaine, in travailes and daungers, in directing his armies, in lodging it, in marshalling his men, and

marching with them according to the militarie gouernment and discipline. For whom, the Senate (being aduertised of his great victories and good aduentures) commaunded great facrifices to be made, after the manner of the Gentiles; and fent him new titles and names, fignifying his bounties and victories, calling him Optimus, Armenicus, Parthicus, and other names of like qualitie, for the conquest of Armenia, and other countries of the Parthians. And having had in all things good fuccesse, encreasing and enlarging the Romane Empire, desiring for some respects to repose himselfe for some few daies, he came to passe the winter in the prouince of Soria, where dispersing his armie in the marches, he lodged himselfe in the citie of Antioche, whither came Ambaffadours from many parts of the East: And being there in great prosperitie and at rest with a full determination to returne to the warres as afterwards hee did, the whole citic being full of his court, and of Ambassadours and princes which came to scehim, and to follow their futes vnto him, there happened an earth-quake which was in a manner generall, which in that citie and in a great part of Alia (but chiefly in those quarters) An horrible was the greatest that cuer was seene or heard of. He that will know the wonders and search which passed therein les him reads. Draw and all a cartle quale in which passed therein, let him reade Dion, and also Cocceivs in the life of the cite of the TRAIANE; for many cities were ruinated, much people perished; many moun-tooth. taines and hilles funke and became plaine; many rivers were dried vp; and many fountaines and waters fprang where neuer had been any before. And in the same citie of Antioche, almost all the houses and buildings thereof fell to the ground, and the Emperour TRAIANE escaped by flight, and was driven to leape out at a windowe into the fields, feeing that all his palaces fell downe: in which fieldes he remained many daies in tents, notwithstanding the earth-quake was passed; so great feare possessed him for that which was alreadie happened. This misfortune being past, and this citie and others, which endured the like calamitie, being repaired by TRAIANE, and sommer being come, gathering togetherall his forces, hee departed from Antioch to proceede in the warre which he had begun, directing his journey towards the East, to make a conquest of Asyria and Chaldea, with the great citie of Babylon, head of the auncient monarchie of the Af- A bridge sur fyrians. And being to paffe the river Euphrates, at a great turning which it maketh, theriver Euhe passed therein many difficulties and daungers; for the Parthians with all their whole power endeuoured to stoppe his passage : But TRAIANE knew so well how to vie fuch industrie, and to proceede so warily, that making boates and bringing them in cartes from the mountaines neerest at hand, by force of armes he made a bridge and passed his armic ouer it in despite of his enemies, although not without great flaughter and daunger to both partes: And having paffed the riuer, he marched forwards conquering cities and castles on enery side, and among other the great citie of Arbela in Afgria, which MARCELLINVS calleth Arbela. Gandabela, in whose fields ALEXANDER the great ouerthrew the King DA-RIVS. And from thence he went and tooke other countries, wherein neuer had any Romane enfignes been displaied : and from thence without finding any that durst to give him battaile in his march, he came to the famous citie of Babylon, of Babylon and whose greatnes and power we reade marueils, and taking it by force of armes, the figure the did shall be had be added to the like build be added to the like he did the like by all the borders: And from thence he marched by land to the river Tigris, and affaulted and tooke by force the great citie of Theliphonte, which is in Persia, and other townes in those parts. But in what manner TRAIANE tooke this citie, and what happened in the many affaults and battailes given, and how long this warre continued, we finde it not written: for those authors which

warre against the Parthians.

are come to our hands treate thereof in briefe; and the bookes of his great acts which FLAVIVS MARCELLYS and AVRELIVS VERVS Wrote therof at large and copiously, are perished, with other notable workes, which time hath consumed and wasted; by which meanes the acts of this Emperor are vnknowne. Neither is hee compared with ALEXANDER the Great, or the greatest Captaines of the world, notwithstanding that he was no lesse, considering the lands, the Seas, and the Nations, which he trauelled, tamed and fubdued, with his armie; his mind, his wisedome and bountie.

TRAIANE having made himselfe Lord of all those quarters, both on this side, and beyond the rivers Tigris and Euphrates, to wit, Syria, Babylon, Chaldea, and other countries and prouinces thereto adioyning; DION writeth that hee went downe the river Tigris, to the Persian Sea, to subdue a mightie King, whose name was ATHABILV s, who lived in an Hand(which that river maketh, dividing it felf into two armes)& comming to that countrie, the King and inhabitants of those countries not daring to make any refistance, yeelded all those places into his hands. But here hee was in greatest trouble and daunger of all others: for winter comming on, there fell fo much raine, and there were fuch tempests, and the river Tigris made fuch inundations, that he was likely to have lost the greatest part of his armic. After which, these authors affirme, that he rigged vp a great flecte, wherewith failing all along the Perfian sea, he came into the maine Ocean, conquering even to the Indies, all the lands and coasts thereof, subduing them to the Romane Empire: and finding by chaunce certaine Merchants ships which failed into the Indies, on this fide the river Ganges (they write) that he informed himselfe thereof, and discoursed with those which were in those ships of all matters in those parts. And he somtimes said, that had it pleased God that he had bin a little younger, and had more strength and health, he would not have staied untill that he had attained to the yttermost and most remote ends of the world: and that he accounted A-LEXANDER the Great for very happie, in that he began to raigne when he was but young, and yet purposed to passe further then he had done. And so hee wrote from those Seas to the Senate of Rome, and sent them the relation and names of all the Nations which he had conquered and fubdued; the number wherof was fo great, that they could hardly be reckoned and knowne. Vpon which newes, there were made in Rome great loyes, new facrifices, and many other things to his honour and praife; among which was a most sumptuous Arch. But this attempt and enterprise of the Indies prospered not with TRAIANE according to his expectation: for as those countries, which hee left behind him in the East were newly conquered while as he continued his Nauigation and conquest by Sea, many of those countries revolted, and thrust out the Romane garrisons which were left in them. Besides this, whereof hee was aduertised, he found not in those coasts and countries where he came, fuch fertilitie and abundance of victuals as he expected;neither were they answerable to the reports of writers, which fabled thereof: for he found there great scarcitie and want of many necessaries, and the enterprise feemed vnworthie of fo great a Prince as he: for which causes, and for that that hee was now old and vnweildie, hee determined to returne with his fleete to the place from whence he came.

TRAIANE having in this manner returned through the Persian sea, and taking land neere to the river Tigris, hee speedily tooke order for the punishing of those which revolted, and the recoverie of those countries which had rebelled, whereto he fent two Captaines called L v c I v s and M a x I M v s with two good armies

which in the beginning prospered ill; for MAXIMVS in a battaile against the Parthians was ouerthrowne and flaine: but L v c I v s afterwards reinforcing and relieuing his armie, obtained fome victories against the enemies, wherein hee well repaired the harmes received, and recovered agains by force of armes the citie of Nisibe in Mesopotamia, and others which had rebelled; and did the like by the citie of Edesta in the same prouince, which hee set on fire and wholy destroyed. While as L v CIV s was busie about these things, T R A I A N E his other Captaines and Lieutenants, named Evricivs and Clarivs, made warre in other parts against such as had revolted, and took by force of armes the citie of Selencia, which standeth upon the same river Tigris, and other cities which the Parthians had recouered in those quarters : so as in fnort space TRAIANE not onely recouered all those lands which had rebelled, but also conquered many other cities and provinces more: fo as hee was possessed, and was Lord of the greatest and best parts of Asia. His wisedome and valour was so great, that during all the time that hee followed these warres and conquests, so remote and farre from Rome, it was perceined that therein was not any tumult or disobedience.

fible(as indeed it was true) well to gouerne a frate so diffuse and great, chiefly those prouinces which hee had conquered from the Parthians, which were so hard to be tamed and kept under; he determined to establish a King in Parthia and Persia of his choosing, and in some other countries which hee had taken from the Parthians, which King should rule and gouerne the same, as before they were ruled; but as a King which was subject and a vassall to the Romane Empire, reserving to

But this fage and wife Emperour feeing himselfe now old and tired, and know-

ing how vnmeasurably great the Romane Empire was, and that it seemed impos-

himselfe the supreame jurisdiction and sourcaigntie. And with this determination Traine in he came to the great citie of Thesiphonte, which is in Persia; and calling thither the Persia. principall men of the Parthians, hee conferring with them concerning the making them a King of their owne stocke and nation; they giving him great securitie to serue and obey the Romane Empire. This being concluded, he placed and established in the royall throne with great solemnitie, a great man of the royall

house of the Parthians, whose name was PARTHENASPATES. And afterwards (as SEXTVS AVRELIVS and EVTROPIVS record) he did the like in the province of Albania in Asia, neere to the Caspian Sea, seating there also a King to governe the same: and placing gouernours and Presidents in the other provinces, he enlarged and extended the bounds and limits of the Romane Empire beyond the riuer Tigris, where before his time the name of Romane had scarcely been heard of. And having ended all things in good fort in the East, with great glorie and ho-

nour(for no place could defend it felfe against him, saving one little citie in Arabia deserta, which the Agarenes had taken, which could not long be besieged for the great sterilitie and want of water in all the fields and marches thereabout) hee refolued to addresse his journey towards Italy, and so to Rome, with greater honour

and triumph, then any of his predeceffors had euer obtained. While as TRAIANE made prouision for his journey towards Italy, it happened that the Iewes which inhabited the pronince of Cyrene, which is in Africa, to The Leweste. the East of Syrtis Magna, which were a great number, conspired and rebelled belled against against the Romanes and Greekes which lived in that province, and slew them the Romanes, almost all. The like did those Iewes which dwelled in Egypt, and both the one and the other committed fuch cruelties, as were neuer seene or heard of: So as P Av-LVS OR OS IV s writeth, that they left the land in a manner dispeopled; and that

and the Indies.

152

The crueltie o

The death of

Traiane.

Nation was euer so readic and apt to rebell and disobey, that those Iewes which dwelled in the Ile of Cyprus, knowing what had passed in the promince of Cyprus, and in Egypt, rebelled also, and committed greater crueltie and excesse, then the others had done: so that Dions saith (although it seemeth incredible) that there were slaine by them 200000. persons of those which inhabited that Hand. Which is confirmed and made credible by that which Evsesivs and Pavivs Orosivs report thereof, who affirme, that they slew all those which dwelled in the cite of Salamina, which is in that Hand: vpon which occasion there was afterwards an imperial lawe made, that no Iew vpon paine of death should come within the Ile of Cyprus, ypon what occasson seems there. This law was afterwards so sewerely executed, that if any of them came thither, although through misch annee or sowle-weather at sea, they were presently put to death.

When the Emperour TRAIANE vnderstood of this great rebellion and cru-

eltie (as we have declared, being vpon his way toward Italie) as a just prince wil-

ling and defiring to giue condigne punishment, according to the qualitie of the crime, he sent Captaines with sufficient companies of souldiers into diuers parts, to put to death all the Iewes which they should finde in those countries before named, or in any other wheresoeuer: which they affirme, was the greatest execution and punishment that euer was done in the world, God permitting the same for their stubburnes, and obstinacie. This great slaughter and punishment being the same thing the same thing the same the same things the same the same the same things the same the same than the same than

ment inflitted
for their stubburnes, and obstinacie. This great staughter and punishment being
by Traiant
coportion leves. executed, taking the best order that might be for matters in Asia, the good Emperour began his iourney towards Italia, leaving his Nephew Aelivs Adria
Anvs, who was afterwards Emperour, for generall of the armies in the East, and
so continued his Iourney with infinit honour and gladnes: there being in Rome
for solome triumphand entertainement prepared for him, as the like had neuer

fo solemne triumph and entertainement prepared for him, as the like had neuer been made therein. And comming into the prouince of Cilicia which is in Asia the lesse, as he was old and somewhat sickely, his discase encreased upon him such fort, that staying in the citie of Seleucia, within sew daies after, he died therein, of a naturall sicknes, although that some suspected that he was possioned. And

fo ended this excellent Emperour, having raigned nineteene yeeres and a halfe, and lived fixtic and three, in the yeere of our Lord 119. leaving neither fonne nor daughter by his wife PLOTINA, with whom he was married; neither would he adopt or name any one that flould fucceede him, which he did in fome mens

opinion (as Sparciany's writeth) to imitate Alexander the Great, whom he euer fought to excell in honor and renowne. Trainne his afhes were afterwards brought to Rome, and fet upon the crowne of a pillar, which he had commanded to be erected in the market place thereof, which pillar was of one

whole peece, containing one hundred & fortie foote in height. This prince held more countries and prouinces, and the greater part of the world in subicction; or to say better, was the greatest and mightiest man, of all that euer were in the world, either before or after him, as he which is curious may well know and perceiue by this our historie. He gouerned the Empire with such authoritie and

fo much inflice, and his vertues were fo many, that he therein excelled all those which had not the light of our faith, for therein is no comparison. And this was held for a custome in Rome after him, that when they powred out their bleffings vpon their new chosen Emperours, they would pray that he might be as fortu-

nateas Avgvstvs Casar, and as good as Traians, accounting him to have attained to the height of all goodnes. It is truely great pittie to thinke that so excllent a man should be lost and damned, as doubtlesse he was; for he not

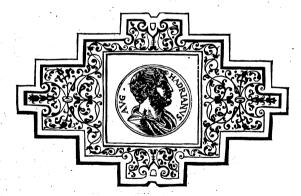
onely was an idolater, and held not our christian faith, without the which there is no faluation, neither did he confesse or professe it, but persecuted and oppressed the Christians. And some men being moued with more pittie and compassion, then with any witte or vnderstanding, fained a fable and iest, saying, that through the prayers of Saint Gregories, Trailars his soule was released out of hell (from whence is no redemption) and carried to paradice: whereof, besides that our faith doth controuse it, there is no historiographer either auncient or moderne, of any authoritie that I euer sawe, that maketh any mention or remembrance thereof in their treatises of Trailars, and of Saint Gregories both against heaven and hell. Trailars was of a bigge stature, of a swarth complexion, and had thin haire on his head and beard: and likewise had a hooke nose; great broade

## THE LIFE OF PVBLIVS AELIVS ADRIANVS, ONELY

shoulders, and long hands; and aboue all had a very louing regarde with his eies.

He was borne the twentith and one day of May in the second yeere of the raigne

OF THAT NAME, AND FIFTEENTH ROMAME EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.



of the Emperour NERO.

Fter Traiane, Adrian was advanced to the Empire, more through the policie of Traianes wife, then by the election of the people, or the Senate, or for that Traiane had adopted him. Neuerthelesse after that he was preferred to the imperiall dignitie, he gave so good an account of himselfesthat Rome had no cause to repent, for having made him her Lord. He made very great voinges, and in his person visited in a

made him her Lord. He made very great voiages, and in his person visited in a manner all the Romane Empire. He was very studious in all arts and sciences, and caused all such

Adrian being.

chofen Empe-

as were famous and excellent in any art to come to Rome. He happily ended all such warres as be began, and was very senere to the Christians. His many vertues were accompanied with many vices, nevertheleffe he knew fowell bow to diffemble the paffion of his minde, that he feemed to contemme those things which he fernently loued. He lined fixtie and two yeeres, and ruled the Empire \*twelve. In his olde agehe had so grienous an infirmitie, that he defired to die, and entreated his familiars to kill him; which for pettie having not the hart to commit so brute an alt, he was simally counselled by his phisitions to abstaine from meate and drinke, and he following their counsell hastened his death by hunger.

He death of the good Emperour TRAIANE was extremely lamented, and most grieuously taken through all the Empire for he tor his bountie and goodnes was much beloued of all people, and nations subject to the same Empire. And as he neuer had any fonne either naturall or adopted, that might succeede hem; and his Nephew Adrian for his vertues, great wisedome, and the affinitie betweene them, was much beloued and esteemed: PLOTINA the Em-

pereffe wife to TRAIANE, who was with him at his decease, for the great love that she bare vnto ADRIAN, sought meanes to advance him to the Empire. To bring which her deuise to passe, she agreed with ADRIAN, who alreadie was a man of great power and had been very private with TRAIANE, and was his countrieman; and tooke such order, that his death was concealed, vntill that he had founded the good will of the armie which he led, and of fuch other great personages as were in the Emperours court, faining (after some writers) that TRAI'ANE had adopted him for his sonne, shewing a counterfeit instrument or writing to that effect. Finally, the matter was so cunningly handled, that it tooke fuch effect as they defired, and the armie presently sware obedience and did homage to ADRIAN: notwithstanding that he was absent in the citie of Antioche in Syria, where he was left (as is faid) generall. Who being aduertifed hereof, and the legions whereof he was Generall confenting thereto; he presently wrote to the Senate, entreating to be confirmed in the Empire. When the Senate had received his letters, and understoode what passed, his request was easily graunted. and so was he of all men obeied and held for Emperour. ADRIAN was TRA-IANES Nephew, as some say, by his mother; and some say, by his father: it may be that he was his kinfman of both fides, and so both the one and other may fav the truth. He was also a Spaniard both by linage and birth, and according to EV TROPIVS and EVSEBIVS, was borne in the same citie of Italica: vet Spar-TIANV s inferreth that his father in Rome was called ADRIAN as he was, but was borne in Italica, and his mother Domitia Pavilina, was also native of Spaine. and borne in the citie of Cales. He was married to SABINA TRAIANES fifters daughter, (as Dion writeth.) And was a tall man of stature, of a good constitution and countenance; and of a very good cleane strength, which he much exercised. He is reckoned among the good and excellent Emperours; and with great reason, confidering his many vertues and excellencies, his knowledge and wifedome wherewith he gouerned, and the peace and iustice wherein he maintained the Empire two and twentie yeeres, that he lived therein; whereof befides that the authors write briefly, I also purpose to treate thereof in summe, seeing I spent so much time in the last, so as except I vse more breuitie then hitherto I haue done, the volume of this my booke will growe to a greater proportion then I purposed, or is convenient. Wherefore I will doe, as he which within certaine daies space

hath determined to trauell a long journey, and having taken leifure in the beginning, deeming that trauelling in this maner, he shall not be able to attaine to that place at the time appointed, hastneth his way with greater speede, vntill that he know that he may come to his journeis end before the time be expired: So will I do from henceforth, at the least after I am past ADRIAN, for some space I purpose to proceede with greater expedition then heretofore, vntill I come so farre on my way, that I may fafely divide the processe of this historic, and hold the proportion which I have determined, prefuming rather to make this inequalitie in the stile, then to make a worke so tedious and wearisome.

I say then, that so soone as the barbarous nations vnderstood that TRAIANE The Parthians was dead, notwithstanding that they also knew of the election of his nephew A- and other na-DRIAN, the Parthians chiefely and other Nations which were lately fubdued, tions lately began commotions, and to rebell: and there were also some alterations in Bri-ring of Tratannie and in some other parts: all which Adrian might easily have pacified and intersection. fubdued by force of armes, and wanted neither courage nor meanes thereto; but rebolled. he would not beare it by the extremitie of warre and rigor. For truly as these two Princes were both very valiant and excellent Captaines and Gouernors, yet herein they did much differ: for TRAIANE being greedie of honor and renowne, defired by conquests and warres to increase and inlarge the Empire: and A DRIANS care was to hold and preserve the auncient limits, not regarding any more, but rather diminished great part thereof, and so presentlie in the beginning of his raigne, to the end to live in peace and concord, he left to the Parthians and to other Princes of the East, all those Provinces beyond the river Euphrates vnto the Indies, which TRAIANE had conquered, nothing regarding Armenia, Media, Afyria, Persia, Mesopotamia, nor all the rest, and he set his limits and placed his legions at the river Euphrates. Some thought, and also wrote, that he did it of purpose, enuying TRAIAN s honor, but I truly attribute it to that he held it for the better and most affured course. And having taken such order in the East (as is faid) and left CATILIVS SEVERVS for gouernour of Syria, and pacified the troubles lately raifed by the Iewes: he tooke his way by land towards Italy, and fent the affres Adrian fent of Traines by fea, and comming neere to Rome, he was advertised that they had to Rome. prepared a triumph for him in the same manner as it was prouided for his vncle TRAIANE; for that he was in the same warres and conquests with him: But he would not accept thereof, commaunding that the same triumph and enterteinement should be made and given to Trains image, and so it was done, and he Atriumph (fo farre as I haue read) was the only man that euer triumphed after that he was given to Tradeed And Annual Was received and a haut of the was flatter for the state of the s dead. And Adrian was received and obeyed with the greatest love and good ter his death. will that could be, and presently performed many parts of an excellent Prince, conformable to his prefent goodnes, to the course of his life past, and the hope conceined of him for the time to come, fo as all were glad and well content with his gouernment, with his fashions and conditions : and truly with great reason, for he deserved no lesse. And because that the graces and excellencies of this Emperour were in the highest degree, besides the vertues and wisedome wherewith he was adorned, I hold it fit in this place to speake thereof, to the end that they may serue for example to other Princes, whereby they may make themfelues the more honorable by imitating him.

First, he was naturally enclined to learne all such sciences as apperteined to wit, and to the exercise both of the mind and of the bodicalso; as well in learning, as in the exercise of armes and other vertues, wherein he fought to excell all men. It is

Adrian was expert in all faculties.

a wonderfull matter to confider how God endued this Prince with wit and vnderstanding, apt and capable to comprehend whatsoeuer he defired, with skill. ftrength and abilitie in all exercifes: whereby (concerning letters) he became very learned in both the toongs, Greeke and Latine, and wrote and compiled excellentlie well, both in verse and prose. He pleaded causes and exercised himselse in the arte oratorie, and so much affected the stile and phrase of auncient time, that he preferred CATO before CICERO, ENNIVS before VIRGIL, and CELIVS before Salver. He was as skilfull in other arts as he was herein: for he was a fingular Mathematician, Arithmetician, Geometrician, and a great Astronomer, and tooke great delight in iudiciall Astrologie, and would give his opinion: so as SPARCIANVS writeth, that the first day of the yeere he would cast the reuolution of the whole, and foretold what would enfue, and did so by the same yeare wherein he died. He was very skilfull in Phisick, and knew the vertues and properties of hearbs and stones. He was expert and very politick in the warres and militarie discipline, and was very strong, able and skilfull in armes both on foot and horseback: And besides all this, he could play on instruments, and sing maruellouslie well. He could draw and paint aswell, as the skilfullest maister workeman in that art that could be found. Finally, in all things he had so readie and so good a wit and skill, as any one man could haue in any one thing particularly: wherein, befides his deepe understanding, his exceeding memorie did much help him: for they affirme, that he forgat not any thing that he had either read or heard. He was of such capacitie (as Sparcianvs writeth) that he would both endite, write, and conferre of busines all at one instant, and had a singular grace and promptnes in vfing quick speeches and quips, either in earnest or in lest; and the like in answering vpon the sodeine, if he were touched or quipped by any other. Of his quick and sharp speeches which they write of him, I will recite one only, as fitting this time, although it be none of the sharpest and subtillest of them, which was thus: A certaine Romane Knight came to intreate a fauour at his hands, who (according to his age) had a gray beard, and full of white haires, and failing of that which he defired, within few dayes after he came againe with a new petition to the same effect. But in the meane season (it seemed that men were then as skilfull in dying as now they are) he had dyed his beard, and looked yong againe: which being noted by the Emperour, who to guird him therewith answered him to his request, I would be very glad to do you the pleasure which you require, but there are but few dayes past fince that I denied it to your father who defired the same; wherefore it seemeth to me a matter vniust to graunt that to the sonne which I would not yeeld to the father: and so the old man departed with shame, and in this manner he yied many fuch like od iests. Besides all that is alreadie faid of him, he was very ftrong, and able to endure any labour, and was so luftie, and able of his bodie, that he ordinarily went the greatest part of his way on foote, and bare headed, in the funne, in the raine, and the mists. He was much addicted to the chace, and was a great hunter, and excellent therein: fo as with his owne hands he killed Lions, Beares, wild Boares, and other most fierce beafts; although that he were oftentimes in great dangers and fell once vnawares from a rock, and put one of his shoulders out of ioint, and brake one of his legs, and fome of his ribs. Finallie, there was nothing wherein the Emperour ADRIAN was not excellent and very able, and in all things prefumed to excell the wifeft, as truly he did in the most. And although that he were a great reprouer of maisters in arts, and did often put them to their shifts with his questions and argu-

ments, yet he did much honor them, and bestowed many gifts and rewards your them; and had also neere about him Philosophers, Astronomers, Poets, Rhetoricians, Grammarians, Musitians, Arithmeticians, Geometricians, and excellent Painters and Caruers, with all which he might compare, and the most of them he did far excell : and did vie to fay, that He had not forborne to learne any thing more then other men did, that might be needefull in peace or warre either for an Emperour, or a man of any other condition what soeuer. Being endued with these qualities before said, he was not void of other vertues and gifts of the mind. which he shewed and out in execution in the time of his raigne, more, and better then before: although that in the beginning he was noted of crueltie, for that fome especiall men, by his commaundement and permission, were put to death. There were also some vices and enill dispositions noted to be in him, but they all affirme that he did represse and dissemble them, and was so much maister of himfelfe, that he did eafily maifter and suppresse his naturall enill inclination; which did well appeare in his maner of gouerning the Empire; the good viage of his fubiects; bestowing fauours and good turnes upon all men; mitigating the tributes and subsidies through all the Empire; ministring justice with equitie and indifferencie; doing all things by the adulfe and counfell of the Senate, and of wife and prudent men which he kept about him, and caryed with him whither foeuer he went: for he did not only loue to be counfelled, but also to be reprodued and aduised. He enterteined all men gentlie and courteouslie: and although that to the common fort he shewed greatnes and maiestic, yet principall men he honored much, and visited them in their ficknes, and invited them, and went to them when they inuited him. And although that he euer loued and procured peace, yet all his life time he had exceeding great care of martiali discipline, punishing the libertie and vices of men of warre, reforming errors past, and prescribing rules for time to come. In this manner (as I have faid) he had lived when he was priuate, and followed the same course after that he was Emperour.

ADRIAN.

ADRIAN having remained some space in Rome, governing the Empire in good forme and order, many northerne nations role against the Empire, to wit, the Alanes and Scythians of Europe: and the Sarmates, which are now the people of Northerne Russia, Muscouia, and Poland, and other countries thereto adioyning, which with nations rose intent to make warre in the Empire, came downe into the provinces of the ypper against the Missia now called Seruia, and the lower Bulgaria, both which at this day are in subiection to the great Turke. Against which nations the Emperour Adrian departed from Rome with a mightie armie: but comming neere to those provinces where the enemies were, there were certaine treaties of peace moued, and A-DRIAN who was addicted thereto graunted the same: and making his aboade for fome dayes in those quarters, he returned to Rome, leaving MARCIVS TVRBO for Captaine and Gouernour of Pannonia and Dacia. And in this iourney there was a certaine conspiracie against him, which being discouered, foure principall men which had been Confuls (being guiltie thereof) were put to death: which execution the Emperour Adrian afterwards denied to have been done by his will or confent. And being come to Rome to purge himselfe of the infamie and enuie thereof, he made a great congiarie or distribution of money among the people, bestowing many graces and fauours vpon all states and kinds of men; and commaunded also infinit games and sports to be made, such as were accustomed in Rome, not forgetting (neuerthelesse) the execution of iustice in his gouernment. And staying at this time a lesser space in Rome then at the first, he de-

Adrian visited

parted from thence with a great court and companie to visit France and the Prouinces neere adioining, vpon the cities whereof he bestowed many graces and fauours. And from thence he passed to visit the legions and armies in Germanie. wherein he fet order in many things concerning militarie discipline : and after that he had remained awhile in those parts, having determined to visit all the whole Empire (as afterwards he did) he directed his journey into Flanders; and from thence into Britanny, where he fet order and agreement betweene the inhabitants thereof, and the Romanes which lived therein, aswell the garrisons, as the inhabitants and colonies. And for their better quietnes and securitie, Sparci-ANV s faith, that he caused a strong wall of fourescore miles long to be builded, to make a division of the lands of the one from the other, which was a marueillous great piece of worke; and having made fuch provision for all things in that Iland as he thought needefull, he returned into France, where he erected fome fingular

buildings, and bestowed other graces and fauours in that countrey.

After that the Emperour ADRIAN had visited France and the borders thereof. and the Ile of Britannie, he directed his journey for Spaine, where hee was joyfully received, as a man native and borne in that countrie: and after that he had visited some places he went to winter in the citie of Tarragona, where he called a parliament of all the provinces, and provided and ordained many things for the publike good thereof. After that the furie of winter was past, he trauelling through all Spaine, visiting the cities, and bestowing benefits you them: principally vnto his own countrie Italica and Seuil, he graunted many priviledges and exemptions. and did many great fauours, as DION writeth: but would not come thither, notwithstanding that he was in the marches thereof. And having visited all Spaine, he returned towards Rome, and in this time hee fet downe and affigned the limits and confines of the Empire, from the barbarous Nations, where there were no rivers, to divide them with notable markes of stone, pillars, trees, and other things; and his authoritie and reputation at that time was fo great, that to the high Almaines which were free, hee appointed and fet a King: and at that time some commotions were punished in Africa.

The Emperour ADRIAN living in this peace and quietnes, being in the feauenth yeere of his raigne, the Parthians being a fierce and viquiet nation, began to stirre and to make warres in the Empire; and ADRIAN making provision for all things accordingly, with great power paffed into the East, with a sufficient armie to follow that warre in person: but seeing that he managed it himselfe, they moued certaine treaties of peace; which being concluded, he trauelled peaceably through all the East provinces, and came into Asia the lesse, and from thence into Gracia, and bestowed many fauours vpon the Athenians, and other cities, where he remained fometime. From thence in gallies he tooke his passage into the Ile of Sicilia, and faw the principall places of that Iland, and defired to fee the mount Eina, which is so famous for the fires which it continually casteth out of the earth-And setting all things in Sicilia in such order as he thought good, very joyfull and victorious he returned to Rome, now the fourth time after that he was Emperour. After which his last comming, he staied not long therein: for he had vndertaken (for the better gouernment thereof) to visit the whole Empire in person; and to that purpose preparing shippes and gallies he passed into Africa, wherein the ioy is incredible that was conceived for his comming. For befides that ADRIAN was very much beloued, it happened (as SPARCIANV's and others doe write) that Africa for fine yeeres space had endured great want of raine, and therefore hunger

and famine; and so soone as he was arrived in that land, sufficient raine fell, which made his comming most joyfull. And the time that hee was in that countrie, hee spent in reforming of the government, in ending controversies, and commaunding certaine publike buildings to be erected: among which was the reedifying of a great part of the citie of Carthage, which (according to my author) hee commaunded should be called Adrianopolis, after his owne name. And all matters being ended in Africa at his pleafure, and having staied there so long as to him seemed good, hee returned prosperously to Rome, where hee ordained and prouided for all common matters of the Empire: yet the time was not long that he staied therein; and when every man thought least of any journey, hee againe provided for his passage into the East. And within short space passed into Gracia, and trauailing through it, he staied in some cities, and made those buildings and temples to be finished, which before he had commaunded to be begun, and commaunded others to be builded new: & fo continuing his journey he went into Asia the leffe, and did the like therein as in other provinces he had done where he had travailed. And being come into Syria, by letters and messengers hee moued the Kings and Tetrarches, as well those which were friends and subjects, as those which were neighbours and straungers, to come to see and speake with him. Among which one was the King of the Parthians, to whom hee freely fent his daughter, whom the Emperor TRAIANE in the wars past had taken prisoner; wherewith many of them being moued, came to his Court to vifite him and to doe him honour: all which he so friendly and courteously entertained, that those which came not did exceedingly enuie those which came, grieuing very much that they had not done the like. These meetings and feasts being ended (which in truth were very great and notable) A BRIAN tooke his way towards Syria, and came into Palestina and Indea, visiting and seeing the principall cities thereof: and from thence passed forwards and did the like in Arabia, after which he prefently went into Egypt, wherein hee remained longer then in any other part, and there commaunded a most fumptuous Sepulcher to bee builded ouer the great Pompey, because that, that A sepulcher which was there before was ruined and decaied. He also caused a citie to be founded to the name, and in memoriall of a most faire young youth which died there, great Pompey. whom he deerely loued. And at the fame time hee permitted, and also commaunded that the holie citie Ierusalem, which (as is before faid) was destroyed and lay defolate, to bee reedified and new builded; which was prefently done, with admirable expedition, principally by the Iewes, and commaunded that it (leauing the first name) should be called, AElia Adria Capitolina : so great was then the power The power of and wealth of the Romane Emperors, that it was as easie a matter for them then Emperours. to build Cities, as now houses, or things of leffer moment. And although that the Iewes did greatly rejoyce for the new building and restoring of Ierulalem : yet afterwards they tooke it very grieuously that the Gentiles should in ontly dwell therein with them, which builded temples to their gods and Idols: and the Christians, they would not suffer freely to vse their rites and ceremonies. And this is the cause of the rebellion which afterwards ensued. Truly it is a thing much to be noted in this people, which became fo ftifnecked, that when they were bound to keepe and observe their law, being then good and holy; for very light occasions they would for fake it, and take strange religions and become Idolaters: but after that it was abolished, and ought no longer to bee observed, they would never The peruate

that generation in fundrie parts of the world, obstinately perseuere therein,

leaue it, neither receive the holie Catholike faith: and yet vntill this day, some of oblinate love.

The Ferves

ouesthroz vne

and destroyed

by Tulius Se-

uerus and ba-

thenew Linus

nished from

Salem by A-

drian.

These and many other things being ended by ADRIAN, in the time of his aboad in Afia and in Egypt, hee returned into Europe; and arriving in Gracia, Staied with his whole Court in the citie of Athens: and being there (which was in the eighteenth yeere of his raigne)al the Iewes openly rebelled, and cast the Romane garrisons out of their provinces of Iudes, Galile, and the reft, killing as many of them as they could, with a very great number of Christians. This was a very dangerous warre, for therein did confpire al the Iewes which dwelt in any other prouinces, which were very many. ADRIAN confidering the greatnes and importance of this accident, prouiding for remedie thereof a new armie, whereof hee made IVLIVS SEVERVS Generall against the lewes, causing him to come so farre as from Britannie for that purpole; who came with great power, and passed into Syria, and made most criell warre: wherein after the shedding of much bloud of both fides, the Iewes were ouercome and deftroyed, and all the whole land left in a manner desolate : So (as writeth D 1 0 N) there were fiftie excellent strong Castles and fortresses laid euen with the ground; and nine hundred fourescore and fine townes, and populous villages burnt; and there were slaine in skirmishes and battailes fiftie thousand fighting men, besides those which without number died of hunger, sicknes and miserie of the warre: and so was performed the subduing, and (in a manner) the totall destruction of the lewish nation. And ADRIAN gaue commaundement and made an edict, that the Iewes should bee perpetually banished from the new Ierusalem, and prohibited to inhabite therein. Within few daies after that the warres with the lewes were ended, the Alanes and Mefagetes, which are barbarous fierce Nations of Scribia Afiatica, came with great furie, and entred into Media making warre, and afterwards into Armenia, and came so farre as Cappadocia, where FLAVIVS ARRIANVS Was Captaine for the Empire, and did put all the countries thereabouts in great feare. But ADRIAN (who euer loued peace) vied fuch meanes, that through the gifts which he fent to their King Vologes vs by his Ambassadours, they returned peaceably to their houses, loden with spoyles and riches which they gate in other barbarous coun-

A DRIAN having ended al matters to his best liking, after that he had bestowed many gifts and good turnes vpon the cities in Gracia, came lastly towards Rome, hauing(as I haue faid) trauailed a long time through the world, where his comming was very gratefull to al estates in that citie: and although that he were now old and vnweildie, yet he failed not to prouide and take as good order for al things then, as when he was of greatest strength. But hee considering his age, which was now about threescore yeeres, and that hee had not any sonne, and that a disease which hee ordinarily had, which was much bleeding at the nofe, did now more oppresse him then euer theretofores hee tooke great care who should be his succeffor, and therefore determined to adopt some excellent Nobleman to succeede him in the Empire : and hereupon tooke much counsell and made many doubts before he would resolue. In the end, contrary to the liking of most of his Counfell, hee adopted one LvcIVs CEIONIVS COMMODVS, entitling him C #san, and nominated him for his fucceffor, which (as Spancianvs reporteth) had not been yied to be done in that manner untill then. And changing his name, after his new father, he was called A LIVS V ERVS. The fame day that he did this, he commaunded S E V E R I A N V s to be flaine, who was a great man in Rome, and Fvscvs which was his nephew for certaine euident fignes and fuspitions which he perceived that they practifed to tyrannize and viurpe the Empire: and fo like-

wife he commanded some others to be flaine and made away. After this election and adoption, and great feaftings for the fame, this new adopted C & S AR Was ouertaken with an infirmitie, so grieuous, and of so long continuance, that A-DRIAN found himselfe deceived: and seeing that now he could not live long, he repented that he should leave so weake and reeble a successor. It is written, that he oftentimes faid, That he leaned to a rotten wal. But it so happened that within sew daies he was eafed of that griefe: for this LvcIvs CEIONIVS whom hee had adopted and called ÆLIVS VERVS died. And notwithstanding that this man left sonnes behinde him, yet Adrian presently adopted Antoninvs of An-TONIVS (for I finde him written after both names) who was afterwards furnamedPivs; vpon condition that he should also adopt a sonne of the said Æ Livs Vervs, who was called Lucius Verus Antoninus, and Marcus Av-RELIVS also, in the first place ANTONINVS, of whose linage hereafter mention shall be made, which were noble and very excellent and vertuous men. This being done to the good liking, and with the confent of the Senate, and of al the principall men in Rome, ADRIANS disease encreasing vpon him, he made himselse to be carried to the citie of Baias, where his griefe to extremely tormented him, and therewithall came so many passions and consultions, that hee oftentimes desired to die, and procured his owne death; and with gifts and flatteries, and sometime with threatnings hee prouoked some to kill him: and seeing that no man would doe it, and that he wanted strength to doe it himselse, for the last remedie of his infirmitie, by the counsell of some of his Phistions (for he had many about him) he refolued to forbeare either to eate nor drinke, and so he died in the yeere of the Empress our Lord 140. vsing that common saying : Turba Medicorum interfecis Regem : which is, A multitude of Phisitions killed the King.

ADRIAN at the time of his death was fixtie two yeeres old and fine moneths, and had raigned twentie one yeeres and eleuen moneths, and neither left behind him, or euer had had any fonne; he was but once married, and then with a woman whose name was SABINA, and after that she was dead, he married no more. He was a man tall of stature and of a good presence, and did weare his beard and haire long, and tooke delight therein. Hee was as excellent a Prince as euer was any, although that he had some vices and enill inclinations, which with his wisedome he couered and kept secret. As concerning the Christian faith, although in the beginning (as an Infidell) he did hate it, and was an enemie to it, yet afterwards he shewed himselfe more temperate towards the Christians: for as E v s B-BIVS and others doe Write, QVADRATVS a disciple of the Apostles, and ARISTI-BES 2 Philosopher of Athens and a Christian, did compile certaine notable bookes in defence of our faith: wherewith ADRIAN being moued, wrote to

MINYCIVS FUNDANUS who was Proconful in Afa, and to other parts, that no Christian should be compelled to renounce his faith, neither be punished, except he were accused for some other offence. So as the Christian faith was taught and preached freely, a great part of the raigne of the Emperour A DRIAN,



## ANTONINVS PIVS, FIRST OF

THAT NAME AND SIXTEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.



#### THE ARGVMENT.

& Nsoninuswas adopted by Adrian, and by reason of his adoption succeeded him in the Empire; in which dientie hee lined fo vertuonfly, that it may be faid, that he lined without example, and was likened to the good Numa Pompilius. There were not many warres in the time of this good Emperour: for he with his onely authoritie bridled all

Nations, and to him came Ambassadours in a manner from all the furthermost parts of the world. He would never be very farre from Rome, in such manner as his predecessor had done, being of opinion that it was most fit for the Emperour to remaine in that citie, which was head of the Empire. He was liberall, courteous, suft and pitifull, and a great lower of vertuous personages, so as it might be faid that he was father of the vertuous. His life was not stained with any vice as his predecessors were. And being of the age of 72 yeeres old, he died in his towne of a fewer, when he had ruled the Empire 2 3 yeeres, whose death was much bewailed by the world, for that they had lost an Emperour and a father, who, they might instly say, was Pins.

DRIAN Was not onely wife and fortunate in gotterning and ruling the Empire, the time that he held it; but he was also, so in the succeffor whom he chose and left therein: for he prooued to be such, and so good, that after hee had ended his daies, ADRIAN was no more praifed and remembred for his wifedome and good gouern-

ment, then for the fuccession which hee left, by adopting ANTONINVS: Who what he was we will presently tell you. I say then that the death of ADRIAN be-

ing knowne (which was greatly lamented and bewailed) Antoninvs Pivshis adopted sonne was presently without any contradiction received and obeied for Emperour, accordingly as he had appointed him by the consent and good will of all the Senate, as in his life we have written. This ANTONINVS was the sonne adminishing of Avenue Brown and Northern of Trans An of Avrelivs Frivirs, and Nephewof Titus Avrelivs Frivirs, which had been Confuls and had held other offices and dignities, and were very noble men and of auncient blood, whose originall was in Gallia Cisalpina, now called Lombardie. His mothers name was ARRIA FATIDILLA, the daughter of Arrivs Antoninvs a most noble gentleman and twile Consul. This Emperour ANTONINVS was one of the most excellent princes in vertue and bountie, that euer hath been in the world: and who that with greatest authoritie, instice, liberalitie, and elemencie gouerned the Empire. He had a good aspect and was tall, and of a good constitution of body, of an excellent witte, gentle of condition, moderate in eating and drinking, well learned, and fingularly eloquent, very bountifull, and willing to giue of his owne, and very abltinent from taking from others. He was a great louer of husbandrie, and delighted much in hunting; and was so free from all manner of vices, that therein neither TRAIANE, ADRIAN, nor any of his predeceffors could compare with him: Wherefore the compared him with N. ... wisemen of his time compared him with NVMA POMPILIVS, which was Numa Pempilifecond King of Rome, and descrued to bee called Pivs, for which they shew we many reasons. Before that he was Emperour he had been Questor, Pretor, and Conful, and had held some other charges and magistracies. In his time were few warres or battailes, or at least little spoken of, and those troubles which were, he eafily pacified by his Captaines: and therefore the most that historiographers write of him, is of his good conditions and his bountie: and so will I; although it will not be so pleasing to the reader as to discourse of warres; yet to follow the truth, and principally to shew the fruite which is to be gathered out of this historie, which are examples to line well: as for the rest there will bee sufficiently enough found in the processe of this booke, and that is not a little, which is alreadie written.

Antoning s then so soone as he began to rule, presently shewed his natural goodnes: for he remooued not any of those from their office and charges, which he found placed and established there by Adrian; but rather confirmed them therein: and euer held it best, to suffer those which prooued good gouernours to continue long in their charges and gouernments. He commaunded also his rents and services (besides that they should be moderated) to be gently and temperatly collected. He presently did so many fauours, and gaue so many gifts of his owne goods which he had before, that his wife ANIA FAVSTINA daughter to Anivs VERVs reprodued him for it: to whom he made answere to this effect. that she knew not what she said, and therefore he did let her know, that at what time he attained to the Empire, they had lost all that which before they possessed liuing private. In matters of equitie & government, he was as vigilant, and tooke as good order as A DAIAN did. He determined also, neuer to depart from Rome all the time of his raigne, except it were to recreate himselfe, and sometimes to hunt, being herein contrarie in opinion to his predecessor ADRIAN: for he said that the court and people which trauelled with the Emperour, were troublesome and prejudiciall to the countries and cities by which they passed: and that in visiting fome parts, he was farre from others; and therefore the most fit and convenient place for the Emperour to stay and make his abode in, was in Rome, which was

the Ladie and head of the Empire and the middest thereof, and most fit to receive Ambaffadours and meffages from all parts. So as following this counfell (which indeede prooued not ill) the warres and infurrections which happened, hee fuppressed and pacified by his Captaines; as the Britaines, which rebelling in part of that Iland, the rebels were defeated by his captaines, and the lland brought to subjection. And within a little while afterwards the like happened in the countrie of Dacia, and also in Germanie, which tooke armes, but through the victorie of his legions, peace was established: whereby he wanne so great reputation, that all the rest of his raigne, there happened no daungerous warre, and all men feared and honored him for his goodnes, and therewith he was so much beloued, that he was held and esteemed, for father, Lord, and Emperour. And the barbarous nations which were vnknowne to the Romanes, did fo much love and esteeme him, that in contentions and matters in controversie which happened betweene them, they chose him for their Judge and arbitrator, fubmitting themselves to his censure. And so those of the countrie of Hircania, which is a prouince of Asia, neere to the Caspian sea, and the Bactrians which are more to the Eastwards, and both verie farre and remote, and also the East Indi-Ambassadours ans, sent to him their Ambassadours, offering amitie and obedience. And from other countries which were exceeding farre, there came some Kings to doe him honor; among which they make mention of STANG ORVS from India, and of the King PHARASMANES and others. And in other parts and countries, he established Kings at his appointment, whereto the inhabitants did consent, notwithstanding that they were not subject to the Empire. And the King of the Parthians determining to make warres, being with a great power entred into Armenia, one letter from the Emperour sufficed to make him retire and to discharge his armic. Any oninvs being in this manner beloued and feared by straungers, was no leffe efteemed and beloued by his fubiects and vaffals, but rather without comparison farre more: as by those which knew and enjoyed his goodnes and equitie: and seeing that he was such, he was by the whole Senate intituled father of his countrie, which he much refused, but yet in the end he accepted thereof, with great courtesie and humilitie: for hee was naturally gentle and noble of condition, and therewith very courteous, and as such hee entertained the Senatours and principall men gently and louingly, with great honour and courtefie; and neuer did any thing of importance, without their counsell and consent, and towards all men generally he fought to moderate the state and maiestic of an Emperour, shewing himselfe affable and pleasant. And aboue all, he tooke order that no man should make benefit of his fauour to another: neither take bribes by amazing fuch as were futors vnto him: for he gaucaudience and answere to all men himselse in person, and in this he knew the qualitie and difference betweene men, vling herein fometime the opinion of others when neede required. Whereto befides the ordinarie counfell of the Senate, and his owne skill and knowledge in the lawes, hee had alwaies fome excellent lawyers neere vnto him, as VLPIvs, MARCELLUS, IABOLENUS and fuch others: By which meanes and fuch others as shall be declared, the provinces and cities in his time florished and grew rich, which hee relieued with his owne rents towards the buildings thereof, afwell fuch as were necessarie as others to beautific and adorne the same. And when any misfortune or calamitie happened, he repaired and reedified it with

money out of his eschequer, as was a great fire which happened in Rome, where-

with were burned three hundred and fortie Iles, principall houses; a great part

and princes from far coun tries came to fee Antoninus.

feuerall places.

ANTONINUS PIUS.

of the citie of Narbone in France, and the citie of Antioche in Alia, and the market place in the citie of Carthage. And in time of great hunger which in his time was in Rome, he prouided and mainteined the people with bread and wine the most of the time that the famine lasted, making victuals to be brought from all parts, he paying for the same at his proper cost: so as generally through the whole Empire all men were well content with him; for he mainteined them in peace, quietnes, and equitie. And truly in this place is to be noted and confidered the power and gouernment of the Romane Empire, and how contentedly, and at what libertie Awonderfull the people liued in the time of ANTONINYS, TRAIANE, ADRIAN, and other obtainer, and good Emperours; and to fee the greatnes and riches of that court frequented by the greatest and best men in the world; and to see the greatnes and buildings of that most populous citie of Rome: and to consider of the libertie and securitie wherein men might trauaile through the world, obeying and feruing one Lord. and he good and full, without feare of warres, robbers by fea or land, without finding euery where new lawes, new coynes, new Lords, Kings, and tyrants, as there are now adayes, needing no fecuritie or fafeconducts, without being taken prifoners, and made captines, or ill vled by enemies, strangers, and vnknowne persons, but vling all men as friends and neighbours in the greatest and best parts of the world, which as a little Kingdome was quietly and juftly gouerned. One countrey was furnished from another, with such things as in the one did abound, and the other wanted. Merchandize and traffick passing through the world without fo many prohibitions, molestations and troubles, as we see now adayes, all living then under one lawe every where, in the best and greatest parts of the earth in vnion and peace, which they more perfectlie enjoyed, after that the Emperours were Christians, as hereafter shalbe declared. But as this was but humane power. fo could it not continue long without fall, alteration or change: for it is the condition of the world, that nothing can continue long in one effate.

And returning to our ANTONINVS, among his other vertues wherewith he made the time of his raigne happie and joyfull, one was his elemencie; wherewith he exceedingly mitigated the rigor of the lawes, punishing offences with pitie, or pardoning them, euer defiring and procuring peace: Wherein he commonly vsed that saying of Scipio, which was, that he more defired the preservation of one friend or fubiects life, then the death of an hundred enemies. This Emperour was also a great friend to learning, and much honored learned men. giuing them great rewards and penfions, drawing them vnto him from all the parts of the world; among which he caused to come from the citie of Chalcide a great Philosopher which was a Stoick, whose name was Apollonivs, whom he sent for to be maister to his adopted some MARCYS ANTONINYS, who afterwards was Emperour. This Philosopher being come to Rome, ANTONINYS fent for him to come to fee him, feeing that he flayed long ere he did it of himfelfe: whereto the Philosopher made answere, that with greater reason the scholler of Apollonius ought to come to the maister, then the maister to the schooler. This arrogancie a Philosophic. did nothing offend ANTONINVS, but laughing thereat, he said to those which with Antoniwere with him, that he maruelled that Apollonivs should deeme it a shorter way from Chalcide to Rome, then from his lodging in Rome to his Pallace. This Emperour, among the waightie affaires and matters of importance, forgot not to please and recreate the people, but as the custome then was in Rome at certaine times he caused feasts and solemne sports to be made. In conclusion, he was an excellent Prince, and left nothing vindone, that was behougfull for the good go-

uernment

The death of Antoninus Pius.

uernment of the Empire: and having ruled the fame 23. yeeres, being aboue threescore and ten yeeres old, he was taken with a burning feuer, whereof within three dayes he dyed in peace and reft, first recommending the Empire to MAR-CVS ANTONINVS, who was his fonne in law, and married to his daughter FAV-STINA, and is commonly called MARCYS AVRELIUS, commaunding that the image of FORTVNE which the Emperours did vie to haue in their chambers. should be caried to Antoninvs his chamber, which hapned in the yeare of our Ann. Dom. 163. Lord 163. Some space before that he died, being a man of a great stature, and by reason of his age vnable to go vpright, but stooping, he ware vpon his breast certaine thin boords, whereupon he made fast his clothes with such art, that it couered the defect of nature. His death was generally lamented, and the Romanes did him great honour, and made facrifices vnto him, canonizing him for a God, and builded a Temple vnto him, as they did to the vanitie of their other gods.

### THE LIFE OF MARCVS AVRELIVS, ONELY OF THAT

NAME, ALTHOVGH SECOND OF THE · ANTONINES, CALLED THE PHILO-

SOPHER, AND OF LVCIVS COMMODYS VERYS ANTONINVS his companion, and seventeenth

Emperour of Rome.



THE ARGUMENT.

Arcus Aurelius being adopted by Antoninus Pius, succeeded in the Empire, and was endued with so much bountie and vertue, that he was worthily called the Philosopher: and considering the many culamities which in his time oppressed the Romane commonwealth, there needed a man no leffe good and vertuous. In his time were most dangerous warres, very great sarthquakes, inundations of rivers, plagues of peftilence, and most extreame famine: all which he through his singular wisedome excellentlie remedied. He made the Christians to be persecuted, whereby the Church indured much burt. He was unhappie in the honestie of his wife, and in wife children, and notwithst anding that she was dishonest, yet he would not put her away, accounting to have had the Empire for her dowry. This good Emperour died in the wars against the Germanes. taken with a most orienous insirmitie, when he had raigned 18. reeres. His death was deplored through the whole Romane Empire, whereto he had ever shewed himselfe a good Prince and lowing



O foone as the Emperour Antoninus Pius was dead, Mardiction fucceeded him, who was called the Philosopher, whom Marcus Aure-(as we have faid) ANTONINVS PIVS had named & adopted for Philosopher. his sonne in the time of the Emperour ADRIAN, and afterwards married him to his daughter FAVSTINA. This man fo soone as

hewas confirmed in the Empire, and began to gouerne the same, chose and tooke for his companion and equall therein, Lycivs V ERVS COMMODYS ANTONI-NV s: who together with him, was adopted by ANTONINV s, by the commaunndement of the Emperour Adrian, being the sonne of Lycivs C BIONIVS Licius Com-COMMODY S, whom ADRIAN had first adopted, & who died before him. These by Marcus Autwo were the first that ever ruled in Rome togethers with equal power. This ex-relius for his cellent Emperour Marcys Antoninys was also called Avrelivs Anto-NINVS. I would that the reader should vnderstand, that this confusion and varietie of names is caused by reason of the adoptions which then were made: for Adoption in the Romanes did vie to haue three names, a forename, a name, and a furname. what manner. And to declare it more plainely, when any one was adopted for a fonne, he receiued the name and furname, and fometime changed all the three names. Sometime they held one, and changed the rest, to continue the memorie of both sathers: and from hence grew fo many names, which obscure the historie, and oftentimes deceiue the reader. To be eased of this trouble, I will call this principall Emperour MARCUS AURELIUS, and his brother and companion, Lucius VERVS. giuing to them both sometime the surname ANTONINVS.

MARCY'S AVRELIV'S then was the naturall and true fonne of ELIV'S VERV'S, Theorigine of who died Pretor. And his Grandfathers name was ELIVS VERVS also, and Marcus Aures had bin twife Conful and Prefect in Rome, and was enobled and made Patrician by the Emperour VESPASIAN, as IVLIVS CAPITOLINVS recordeth. His mothers name was Domicia Camilla, and was the daughter of Calvisivs TVLLVs, who had bin twife Conful. By his fathers fide he was of fo auncient a linage, that it was reported of him that he was descended from N V MA P O MPI-LIVS the fecond King of the Romanes. This Emperour was endued with fo many vertues, good qualities, and conditions, that there will not any be found that hath excelled him, and hardlie any to be compared vnto him. In his time there were so dangerous warres and so many calamities, that therein was great neede of his vertue, wisedome and valour, to resist so many perils, and to redresse fo many ill fortunes. He was so addicted to the studie of Philosophic, and all arts and sciences, that he was therefore called the Philosopher, and did honor and greatly enrich wife and learned men. His principall maifters in Philosophie amongst others, were Apollonivs Chalcidonensis, in the Greeke toong, and Sextys Cheronensis nephew to Plytarch; and in Rhetoricke FRONT o an excellent Orator in that time by whose instructions he greatly profited. And beginning to gouerne in companie of his adopted brother Lvc 1 vs

The ouerflowing of Tiber

VERVS ANTONINVS (as is faid) as he did in all things fo notablic excell the other, fo (in a manner) had he the administration of all matters: for which cause of him chiefest mention is made; as also for that he lived longer, and remained alone in the Empire, ruling with the good liking and contentment of the whole Senate and people of Rome, for the great experience which they had of his vertue and goodnes. In the beginning of his raigne, there happened to great an inundation and overflowing of the river Tiber, that it destroied many buildings in Rome, and drowned tome people, with a great number of cattell; and fpoiling the fields caused extreame dearth and famine. Which MARCUS AVERLIVE through his great liberalitie in companie of his brother Lyczys VERVS, sufficientlie redressed and provided for relieuing and victualling the citie at their owne proper cost and charges, making provision of corne from all parts. After this, in the third yeare of his raigne, followed the dangerous warre against the Parthians. the Parthians. a nation which the Romanes euer feared: which warre was moued by their king Volog Esvs, who leaving an exceeding huge army came against the ordinarie legions in Syria, where ATIODIVS CORNELIANYS Was Captaine, and gouerned that countrey for the Empire: who having no sufficient armie to make head against the Parthians was driven to retire, and Vologes vs tooke some countries. At that time also rebelled certaine people in the Ile of Britanny, and in Germany also, and much northern people called Catti inuaded the borders of th'Empire, against all which MARCVS AVRELIVS made speedie prouision. Into Britanny was fent CALPHVRNIVS AGRICOLA with new supplies, who iowning with the ordinarie legions of that Iland, pacified those troubles. Against the Catti, was fent Av FIDIVS VICTORINVS for General. To the warres against the Parthians, because it was important and more dangerous, it seemed requisit to the Emperours and to the Senat, that one of them two should go, and it was concluded that Lucius Verus Antoninus should undertake the charge, because that MARCY'S AVRELIV'S could not be spared: for his presence was very needefull in Rome for the generall government, and to provide for all parts. And fo Lv-CIVS VERVS with great provision and a great court departed, whom MARCYS AVRELIVS accompanied to the citie of Capua, but Lvcivs fell fick by the way (as some write) through his disorders, riot, and surfetting, by reason whereof and his long lingering, the Romane legions were put to the worfe, and were ouerthrowne by the Parthians, and their Generall was flaine in a battaile which was fought betweene them. But ANTONINVS being arrived with his great armie. the warre was managed with apparant aduantage to the Romanes fide, not by the endeuour of Lycivs Vervs, but of his Captaines Estacivs Priscys, A-VIDIVS CASSIVS, and MARCIVS VERVS, valiant and wife gentlemen; he giuing himselfe to his pleasures and pastimes; in Summer, in the citie of Antioch; and in winter, in Landicea, for 4. yeeres space that these warres continued: wherein passed many great conflicts, skirmishes & battailes betweene the said Captaines and the King and nation of the Parthians. But succeeding prosperously with the Romanes, they obtained many victories in divers parts: so as recovering what was lost in Syria, they did the like in Armenia, and entred the province of Media: and finally, being mafters of the field, came with their Enfignes displaied even to the citic of Babylon. While as these things were a doing the Emperour MARCVS AVRELIVS remained in Rome, applying himselfe with great care to the good gouernment, prouiding all things necessarie for the warres, with great wiledome and forefight; diffembling and with patience enduring the vices and rechlefnes

Lucius Verus ageinft the

of his companion L v c I v s V E R v s, to whom at that time he fent his daughter Lycillato be married vnto him in Syria, where he then was; which he did the better to confirme the friendship and brotherhood betweene them. And during the time of these warres with the Parthians, Evs BBIVs and PAVLVS OR o- The fourth per-\$18 swrite, that the Christians were perfecuted by the commaundement of the Primitive Emperour, chiefly in Alia where LvcIvs VERVs Was; which was the fourth church. perfecution that the Church endured: wherefore (as it is to bee beleeved) God fent the generall pestilence, and other calamities which afterwards ensued.

Hauing obtained fo many victories against the Parthians, Lyclys Verys ANTONINVS resolued to come to Rome, leaving that countrey quiet and in Subiection: and letting the affaires of Asia in good order, he divided the kingdomes among those which to him seemed to have most right vnto them, leaving them as subjects and vassals to the Empire: and in other provinces and countries hee made the officers of his house and Court gouernours, which were called Comites or Earles: from whence the title and dignitie of Earles now adaies might have the originall. And being come into Italy, with the new furname of PAR-THICV s, for the victoric attained against the Parthians, which was also given to MARCY'S AWRELIVS, with the triumph, they both together triumphed with great folemnitie: and fo this enterprife was happily atchieued and ended. And notwithstanding that this comming of L v c I v s V E R v s from the East was verie iovfull by reason of the many victories obtained by his armies; yet was it otherwife the cause of much forrow and heavines: for when he came out of Spria, the plague was very fore therein, and hee dispersed the same in fundrie places by the Agreet plague way as he came; so as many of his fouldiers, and of his Court and companie died in Rome and thereof: and doing the like in Italy and in Rome, he infected the whole land, in fuch all Italy. fort, that it was the greatest and most furious pestilence that ever was seene untill then. For remedie whereof, MARCUS AVRELIVS vsed all care and diligence possible, as well in preserving those which were infected, and avoiding further infection, as in curing the living, and burying the dead; to his great cost and hazard of his life. This aduerfitie being past, before it, and whilest it continued, hee omittedno time nor care that was necessarie for the government, and good of the common-wealth; hearing and dispatching all causes in generall; seeing in person what was done in the Senate, without whose opinion, and of the most principall and wifest men he did nothing: for he vsed to say, That there was greater rea-Southat hee should follow the counsell of so many and so good friends, then that fo many and fo wifemen should doe after his will alone. And at the meetings wherein Magistrates were chosen, hee was euer present; and in all things caused the ancient order and libertie to be observed. In Courts and judgements he increafed the number of the Judges and the Judiciall daies. Hee also encreafed the almes and rewards of his Palace; and in a time of famine and want of corne in his Marcus Auretime, he spent an infinite summe of treasure, prouiding for many cities sufficient many cities quantitie of graine. And in Spaine being more fruitfull then the rest, where his pre- with corne in decessors had too much gleaned, he mittigated great part of the tributes, releasing fine of fearmany taxes and feruices.

And herein he was so temperate and pitifull towards his subjects, that whatsoeuer briberies and extortions were committed by his collectors and receivers, he most severely punished; yet in all other crimes and offences he cuer yied great clemencie, and ener inflicted leffe punishment then the lawes commaunded. This Emperor not onely faw aduersities (as we have said) as famine, and the pestilence,

Faultina Marcus Aurelius bis wife difhoneft and diffe-

with inundations and earthquakes; but within his house hee endured a greater plague with his wife FAVSTINA, who was (as all writers affirme) dishonest and vnmeasurably diffolute; which hee fought by all meanes possible to redresse; although not by fuch rigorous punishment as the deferued. And being by some perswaded to put her away, and to disorce himselfe from her, seeing that hee would not put her to death; he remembring that the was ANTONINES PIVS his daughter, who had left him the Empire, they write that he answered them in this manner: If we put away FAVSTINA, we are bound to leave the Empire also. which was the dowrie we had with her at our mariage. There enfued fo many calamities after that LVCIVS VERVS ANTONINVS came from the East, as well by meanes of the generall and most cruell pestilence, as by earthquakes, famine. inundations, and catterpillers, not onely in Italy, but in other provinces of the Empire also : To that all writers affirme, that if it had not happened that MARCYS AVRELIVS had been so diligent so wise, and so worthie an Emperour as he was. the Romane Empire had been destroied and rent in sunder, and the barbarous Nations had fubdued the greatest part thereof. For taking occasion of that which is aforefaid, feeing the countries wasted and destroied, many northerly Nations against the Em. conspired against it, as the Sarmates, the Vandales, the Marcomans, the Sueuians. and in a manner all Germanie: and they seised upon the prouinces of Pannonia, which were Austrich and Hungary and other countries, threatning Italy and France. Whereto the Emperor MARCVS AVRELIVS desirous to yeeld redresse. thought it not sufficient to fend thither his companion, and much leffe durft hee leaue him in Rome, hee was so rechlesse and vicious, and therefore resolued that they would both goe together: and putting it in execution, with all prouision neceffarie thereto, it happened that vpon the way, L vc IVS VERVS ANTONI-NV s was taken with an Apoplexie, whereof hee died fuddenly having raigned about nine or tenne yeeres in companie with his brother. And fo MARCY AV-RELIVS remained alone in the Empire, who onely was worthic thereof, and followed his journey with his armie, and began the warre with great courage and discretion, wherein the infection did greater harme to his armie, then the force of his enemies; although it passed not without many battailes and encounters. And so with great difficultie, by reason of the pestilence, he maintained this warre three yeeres : and wanting money to pay his fouldiers (for the prouinces, by reafon of the miseries past, could not bee taxed) hee was constrained to fell all his iewels, vessels of gold and siluer, the furniture of his chamber, and his owne proper possessions, therewith to pay his armie, which was greatly diminished of his most principall men which died of the plague, whereby it received much more

harme then by the enemie: wherefore he was often counfelled to leaue the wars

and to returne. But he willing rather to die then to lose any iot of his honour, con-

tinued it with a very great resolution, vntill that (after many great perils and ex-

tremities, which were such that the Historiographers describe this warre to be as

daungerous, as the wars of Hannibal) he obtained the victorie, which he through-

ly accomplished in a great battaile. Wherein (as it was thought) through the

prayers of the Christians which were in his armie, vnto which he recommended

himselfe, God graunted in his behalfe a most euident miracle; which was, That he

and his people being readie to perish through want of water (the passages being

on euery fide stopt by his enemies) there fell fuch abundance of raine from hea-

uen, that his armie was fufficiently relieued with drinke: and therewith there fell

fuch lightning and fo cruell a tempest amongst his enemies, that hee then setting

Lucius Veras.

clemencie and gentlenes. This rebellion being pacified, MARCUS AVRELIVS withdrew himselfe to the citie of Antioch in Syria, now called Soria; whither came vnto him many Kings and Ambaffadours from the East; where treating of peace and amitic, and concluding the same with them, he was greatly esteemed and beloued of all men. And fetting all matters of the East in good order, being now old and wearied, hee made his returne into Italy; and by the way his wife the Emperesse FAVSTINA died, whom hee most sumptuously, and with great honour buried. And being

vpon them ouerthrew and flew a great number of them; as Evservs and Iv-LIVS CAPITOLINVS recount. And this being past, hee recoursed the Pannopies, and the rest which they had vsurped; and had done much more, but that at that instant Avidivs Cassivs, before named, who was Captaine and Gouernour in the East, rose against MARCVS AVRELIVS, proclaiming himselfe Emperour, taking occasion thereof to see him so much troubled in so doubtfull a warre: wherfore of necessitie the Emperor was constrained to leaue the best order that he could in matters concerning Germanie, and thence to returne into Ita-Infrom thence to take his way towards AVIDIVS CASSIVS; and doing so hee came to Rome, whereint The entred in triumph ouer the Germanes, and joyntly with him went his fonne C o M M O D V s, whom he had made C E s A R, and nomi-

nated for his fucceffor.

The triumph being ended, and leaving in Rome fuch order for the government as was most expedient, with part of his victorious armie which he brought with him out of Germanie, and with other forces which he had newly leuied, hee departed towards the East, against Avidivs Cassivs; where being arrived, the matter went so well of his side, that before that hee came to any conflict or battaile, the fame Legions which AVIDIVS CASSIVS commaunded, rebelled against him, and slew him, without the commaundement or knowledge of MARcvs Avrelivs: for hee was rather displeased therewith then otherwise; so gentle and noble was he. And his head being brought vnto him, he commanded it to be honourably buried, and therewith feemed to be very forrowfull faying, That they had bereaued him of a meane and occasion to shew him any mercie; and that he much defired to have had him in his power alive, to the end to have given him his life, and to have reprooued him of his ingratitude. And those Cities which with him had conspired, hee easily pardoned, and commaunded that they should not be rigorously dealt withall. And of their goods, which the Senate had commanded to be confiscated, and put into his Exchequer, he would not receive any part; but commaunded that they should bee put into the publike treasurie of Reme. And being by one of his Counfell reprodued, for shewing such elemencie in a crime fo notorious, telling him that hee ought not to have done fo, and that Avidivs Cassivs would not have done so by him if hee had bin overcome: Whereto hee answered, with great constancie and assurance, saying, That A v I-DIV s had not fo well ferued the gods, nor lived in fuch fort, as to be able to have ouerthrowne him. Bulgacius Gallicanus reporteth, who is an author very ancient, and lived in the time of the Emperour Dioclesian, in the life which hee wrote of this Avidivs Caresivs, recounteth that the Emperour commaunded to bee given to his formes and daughters the one halfe of their fathers goods; and that there should not any injurie or displeasure be done vnto them; and that they should bee admitted to Magistracies and dignities, if they were thereto chosen: and so towards others which were guiltie, he ysed the like

come

#### MARCUS AVRELIVS.

come to Rome, hee entred thereinto in triumph, for the victorie obtained against AVIDIVS; and returned to his accustomed goodnes and vpright gouernment of the Empire, as he was wont to doe. And when it feemed that he should now have rested from his former troubles, there began new alterations and insutrections in Germanie; which hee fearing (as was reason, as that Nation had alwaies been feared and doubted) he determined in person to goe to that warre, and did so with very great power; and prosecuted the same the space of three veeres together, wherein were done many feates of armes on either fide, and hee obtained fome notable victories. And being readie to have fully concluded his conquefts. (they being as it were in his hand) hee was taken with grieuous pestilent infirmitie; which he perceiuing to be mortall, commaunded all the most principall men which were there with him to come before him: to whom hee made a notable freech, which HERODIANVS reciteth; wherein hee recommended vnto them the Romane Common-wealth, and his onely fonne Common vs. whom he left for his fucceffor; and him hee charged very effectually to end that warre which hee left in so good termes; concluding, that hee should not suffer the enemie which was brought low and well nigh to confusion, to recouer force and courage. And then being no longer able to refift his ficknes, he died, having raigned eighteene yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord (as Ev see Iv s reckoneth) one hundred, fourescore and two, being threescore and one yeere old. Yet Sax-TVS AVRELIVS faith, two yeeres leffe. His death was extreamely lamented and

The death of Marcus Aurelius, Anne Dom. 182.

bewailed through the whole armie, and afterwards in Rome, and generally through all the provinces of the Empire: for in them all he was infinitely well beloued. MARCYS AVRELIV shadhad one o. ther fon, whose name was A NTONINV s, which died young, and one daughter named Lvc ILLA which maried with a great and migh-

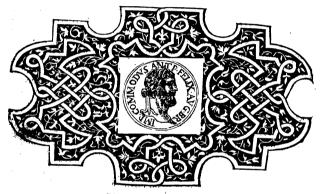
tie man called Pomps IANVS.

THF



### THE LIFE OF COMMO ANTONINVS, ONLY OF THAT

NAME, AND EIGHTEENTH RO-MANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.

Fier the good Marcus Aurelius, succeeded his wicked sonne Commodus. Who for that he was held to be the sonne of so good a father, was without any difficultie hailed Emperour; and for a much as when his father died he was in Germanie, when he returned to Rome all the citie made great toy; but being come to the citie, gining himselse ouer to all wickedues that aman could imagine, he behaued himselse so,

that some conspired against him; which he escaping had occasion to shew his crueltie. He was very alline of his bodie, and so wonderfull in casting of darts, that he would openly kill wild beasts in the Amphitheater. Finally, his wife Martia finding a booke, wherein were written the names of such as he had determined to put to death, and she finding her owne name among st the rest, tooke order for his dispatch out of the way, and eining him porson, whilf he was vomiting it up againe, she made bim to be stabled; and so died that monster to the great contentment of the whole Empire which be badwickedly coverned thirteene veeros.

he good Marcus Avrellus being dead, his fon Commonus was by the whole armie obeied and acknowledged for their Lord and Emperors and Champage and Cha peror: and so he was afterwards by the Senate and people of Rome, and likewise by all the prouinces: for no man would deny obedience to the sonne

Commodus fubastard.

of Gamanie,

of so good a father. But he prooued so ill, and so wicked, that in nothing he seemed to bee his fonne, and so soone suspected that hee was not, considering the adulterie of his mother FAVSTINA. The auncient authors which write of him. which are many, in a manner treate of nothing elfe but of his abominable vices and cruelties; which were so many, that it seemeth that he exercised himselfein no other thing; neither left any other thing behinde him, whereby he might be remembred. He came to the Empirebeing of the age of nineteene yeeres, and was of a fine constitution of body and of a very faire complexion, cleere eied, and had the most gallant yellowish haire in the world. All (in truth) ill bestowed vpon him, feeing that thefe gifts and fuch exquisit corporall beautie, he emploied fo filthilie and dishonestly; being a gamster, incontinent, a leacher, negligent, slothfull, a glutton, a drunkerd, and about all, cruell. Within some few daies after that his father was dead, he came to the campe where the armie lay, accompanied with all the Romane Nobilitie; and made a good speech to the people, promifing a good hope of him, and matters cleane contrarie to those which he vsed: and gaue such gifts to the souldiers as the new Emperours were accustomed to giuc. In these good beginnings he perseuered some few daies, which being expired, through the counsell of some lewd persons, he determined to leave the warres and to returne to Rome. And the opinion and counfell of POMPEIANVS being his brother in law, and a man of so great authoritie, could no way perswade him to flay, neither other wifemen and his loyal! feruants: who were of opinion that he ought to staie, and to see the end of the warre. With this resolution he presently wrote his letters to Rome, aduertising them of his comming, and made fuch truce and peace with the enemies, as was rather to their aduantage then his. HERODIANVS Writeth, that he bought it with money, yet onely EVTROPIVS writeth, that he first wanne a great battaile. He then leaving the ordinarie Capcommodustea- taines in the frontiers of Germanie, held on his way towards Rome; and institute cities through which he passed, was received with incredible ioy and solemnitie, for the great loue which they bare to his father, and for the hope which they conceiued of him; as yet not knowing his conditions. In Rome he was received with exceeding great ioy, triumph and bleffings generally of all men, they ftrawing the waies with flowers where he went, making all the fignes of ioy that were possible; hoping and affuring themselues that they should have a good prince of him; being the sonne of MARCYS AVRELIVS ANTONINYS, and Nephew of Antoninus Pivs, which were fingular, good, and excellent Emperours. But it was not long before that he put them out of doubt, making frustrate their good hope of him: For he openly gaue himselfe to vice and incontinencie, going by night with others of his condition (as there neuer want those which will imitate the prince, although in doing euill) to brothell houses, and publike tauernes; spending also whole daies and nights in banketting, feasting, bathings and most abominable luxurie. And as wicked men neuer loue any, but such as are like themselues; so he sent for gouernours into the provinces, such as were his companions in his abominations: whereto he was so much addicted, and spent fo much time in them, that he tooke no care for the gouernment; leaving all to the disposition of a fauourite of his, whose name was PERENIVS, whom heafterwards made Pretorian Prefect, which is Captaine of the Pretorian Cohorts, who was a most couetous, vicious and cruell man, yet very expert in the warres. And this man gouerning all things, the accurfed Emperour Commonvs encreased so much in his vices and abominations, that they write that he kept three

hundred Concubines, and as many boyes for detellable vies: for which cause Commodus his hegrew to be so odious and so abhorred, that certaine principall men conspired Concubiner. against him, determining secretly to have slaine him, his fifter LVCILLA which was wife to Pompetanys being a partaker in the action: Whereby it may well Lucilla Combe imagined what he was; feeing that his owne fifter judged him worthic of modulation was death. All being concluded how it should be, and the charge of the execution against lim. being given to one, whose name was QVINCIANVS (as HERODIANVS reporteth) yet LAMPRIDIVS faith, that the charge was given to Pompeianvs, that he should first strike him, and should have been seconded by the rest of the conspirators. But it happened that this man, as hee was very bold and hardie, erred in the action: for having had sufficient oportunitie to have slaine him, and being come neere, would not so dispatch him, but in a brauing manner, being somewhat farre from him, he set his hand vpon his poiniard, and going towards him, faid, heere Commodys, the Senate hath fent thee this pointard; and for any haste that he could make to stabbe him, with greater haste he was letted by fome of the Emperours guarde, and by them was taken; so as the conspiracie was presently discouered, and a great way was laid open to Common vs his cruelties. For afterwards that all those which were guiltie were executed, together with his owne fifter Lycilla, with her husband Pompelanys, by the hand and direction of Perenivs; many Senatours and a great number of other noble and principall men were also put to death, and their goods seased vpon, by producing falle witnesses, which fallely accused them: Wherewith Perenivs became so rich, that he practized, and was in hope, to have made himselfe Emperour. But Commonvs being advertised of these and other his treacheries. made him and a sonne of his to be slaine. And he presently suffered himselfe to commodus sleen beruled by another fauorite, named CLEANDER, who was so wicked and ex- bis fauorite treame in crueltie, rapine, and briberie, that he surpassed Perents. And this bis some. fellow was so extreme, that the people of Rome vnable to endure him, vpon a day tooke armes, and in a tumult, went to a house of pleasure in Rome, wherein the Emperour was, and required to haue CLEANDERS head; and notwithstanding that the Emperours guarde began to make refistance, yet the matter came to fuch iffue, that COMMODY'S was constrained in despite of himselfe to deliuer him : Cleander stains and fo were both he and his two fonnes slaine. This tumult being pacified, which COMMODYS durst not punish, he was so angric and therewith so searefull, that from thencefoorth he trufted no man in the world: but as a Swine drawne out of the mire, so returned hee to his abominable vices, taking care for no other thing. Within a while after, according to his accustomed manner, he suffered himselfe to be ruled by another fauorite, whose name was Iv LIANVS, and another called REGILIVS, both which he afterwards caused to be put to death, with other his fauorites which succeeded them; together with a multitude of great men, which LAMPRIDIVS reciteth: and all things were fo farre out of order, that magistracies and the gouernments of prouinces were fold for money; and they which bought them were oftentimes flaine also. And matters being thus handled by the Emperour, and by those which ruled him, he spent his time onely in vices, and most dishonest, and effeminate pleasures: colouring his haire, and often bathing himselfe in companie of others of his condition: which he called by most dishonest names, to the end that they should be conformable to their doings: And was not ashamed (not with standing these his so abominable actions) to take the name and habit of a man, who was a very great enemie to

Commodus changed his name.

mazon.

those vices, which was HERCVLES: For it was so, that in lieu of Commodvs Antoninus fonne of Marcus Aurelius Antoninus; he commaunded himselfe to bee called HERCVLE's the sonne of IVPITER; and cladding himtelfe ouer other rich attire in most ridiculous manner with the skin of a Lion, and with a clubbe or mace in his hand, as HERCVLES with his clubbe, and he fo vsed to goe abroade; whereat some laughed, and others murmured. And fometimes he went clothed like an Amazon woman, which was more naturally correspondent to his condition: which hee did for the loue of one of his Con-Commodus arti- hee ware drawne at life ypon that habit. And after this, as though hee had aswell deserved it, as Avgvstvs Casar had done; he commaunded that redlike an Ahurle a dart or a launce, better then any man of his time: and was a most certaine

Commodus poifoned by bis friend Marcia.

cubines whom hee much loued, whose name was MARTIA, whose picture the moneth of August should bee called Commodus; and September Hercules; for hee had taken that name: and December Amazonius, after the name of an Amazon: But this was observed no longer then he lived. This accursed man among his mischieses, had a strange abilitie of body, which was, to cast or shooter in either crosse-bow, or long-bow,; and was so skilfull therein (that in certaine feaffs and huntings, which according to the custome were then made in Rome, whither came an infinit number of people to behold the same) he commaunded a gallerie to be made round about the Amphitheater; within which he might runne free and in fafetie; and from thence running round about with exceeding swiftnes, hurling his darts or iauclines, he killed almost all the Stagges and Harts that were let loofe, without missing one throw, or needing any more then one shotte: he was so sure in hitting either in the heart, in the forehead, or any other part wherefoeuer he would: and he did the like by the Lions, Panthers, and Ounces, which to that end, were brought thither that day. With his bowe and arrowes he would kill birds flying in the aire, and did fuch other active exercises, as in truth were very straunge: whereby it appeareth that this man wanted not witte and abilitie to have applied himselfe to goodnes, aswell as to sinne and wickednes. And as crucltie was the thing wherein he did principally delight, so it pleased the most mercifull King of heaven, that the same was the cause of his death. For it happened thus, that having determined to put a great number of principall people to death, and wrote a memoriall of those which he purposed should die, amongst which was his louing friend MARCIA, and ALLIVS LETVS Captaine of the Pretorian Cohorts: it happened that this his beloued MARCIA vpon some occasion came to the fight of this memoriall; who seeing herselse condemned to death, determined with herselse to assure her life by the death of Commonvs. And taking counsell with A ELIVS LETVS, and with another whose name was ALECTVS, who was also condemned, concerning the contents in the memoriall; they agreed among themselves to poison him, which so speedily as might be was given him by the same MARCIA in a cuppe of mingled wine which he did vie to drinke: and being presently taken with a heavie flumber, MARCIA commaunded all the companie to goe forth of the chamber, vnder colour to suffer him to take his rest. This being done, within a little while after he awoke extremely vomiting; and MARCIA and the rest searing that he would againe have cast up the poison, in all haste called in a valiant young man named NARCISSVS, shewing him the memoriall, and how the Emperour would have put him to death also; and making him large promises, they concluded that he should goe in and kill him, and so he did: And so this vn-

happie Commonvs vomiting and strangely tormented with the poison, was by this NARCISSVS stabd and staine, to the good liking of the Romane peo. Commocaus ple, and generallie of all the world. When his death was knowne, there was no affect man but did commend and approve the fact. He died, being of the age of 32. veeres, and in the veere of our Lord 194. having raigned twelve yeeres and eight Ann. Dom. 194. moneths. The iov which afterwards was conceived in Rome when his death was published, was incredible: and although that at the present it was not certainely known cout that he died fodainly of an Apoplexie, which EvTROPIVs affirmeth in his life: They ran vp and downe the streetes that night, crying and calling one lor conceined to another for ioy, and went to the Temples to render thanks to the gods for fo by the Romanes great a benefit : and others went to the Palace with their eies to behold his dead for the death carcaffe. The Senate and Romane Nobilitie conceiued no leffe joy then did the people, which may sufficiently appeare by the number of cursings which the Senate gaue him, when PERTINAX was chosen Emperour and his successor, which M. MAXIMVS writeth, and AELIVS LAMPRIDIVS maketh relation thereof.

#### THE LIFE OF PVBLIVS AELIVS PERTINAX, ONLY

OF THIS NAME, AND NINETEENTH EMPEROVR OF ROME.

which is a pleasing thing to reade.





Fier Commodus Pertinax was Emperour who being borne of bale condition attained to the Imperial dignitie, more by meanes of his vertues, then the Nobilitie of his bloud, or the glory of his anneestors; being the sonne but of a Libertine. He was first a Doctor of the Lawe; and afterwards leaning that profession, he gave himselfe to the exercise of armes; wherein he behaned himselfe so excellentlie, that he deserved

to be made Emperour, to which dignitie those which conspired against Commodus advanced him: which went to him, he lying in his bed, expecting death rather then the Empire. And notwithstanding that he carried himselfe excellentlie well in the government of the Empire, and never sought to be renenged on those which had offended him, yet there failed not some which ennied his goodnes.

and defired his death, which was given him with many wounds, when he had raigned the space of three moneths, being of the age of 67 yeares, for whose goodnes sake the Squate resolued to place him in the number of their gods.



He good and valorous Publivs Afrivs Pertinax fucceeded the wicked and tyrannous Emperour Commo-Dvs in the Empire, being almost threescore and ten yeeres old; and held the fame but three moneths. The manner how he attained thereto. I will prefently thew you, when we shall briefely have declared the warres, the offices and troubles which he first passed; for they were such and so

Pertinax called the wheele of Fortune.

divers, that he was therefore called the wheele of For-T V NE. Truly this Emperour was a notable example of mundane mutabilitie. To the first, he was the sonne of a libertine which had been a slaue and made free. called An Livs; and being a child was taught to write, and reade, and cast account, which his father did, to the end that he should help him in his poore Mercery shop. Afterwards he came to learne the Greeke and Latine Grammar, fo as he came to be a Maister, and to keepe a Schoole in Rome. After this he gaue himselfe to the studie of the Lawes, and by the intercession of LOLIANYS AVI-TV s, who had bin Conful, and his fathers maister, he obteined libertie to pleade, and to defend mens causes, which he did for some space. But being naturally a man of strength and courage, and more enclined to armes then letters, he gaue ouer that exercise and went to the warres, wherein he proued so well, that within few dayes he was made Captaine of a cohort in Syria against the Parthians, and increasing in credit and estimation, he was sent to the warres in Britanny, and afterwards to the warres of Missia, and was made a Captaine of horsemen in the warres which MARCUS AVRELIUS waged against the Germanes; and afterwards was Captaine of a Fleete in the Flemish Seas: and that charge being ended, he continued in the warres of Dacia, where through cuill informations he was depriued of the charge which he held, by MARC VS AVRELIVS: although that afterwards he returned into grace by the intercession of Pomphianus the Emperours sonne in lawe, and was made a Senatour, although that then he ysed it not: and in recompense of the disgrace past, the Emperour made him Captaine of a legion, wherein in the warres which were in the time of MARCVS Av-RELIVS he performed many notable feates of armes, as well against strange and barbarous nations, as against Avidivs Cassivs, who (as we faid) then rebelled against MARCY'S AVRELIVS. His valiant acts were so many and such, that he Pertinax made was by him many times publikely praised, and made Consul of Rome. He had also conful by Mar- after that the government of both the Missias, and of Dacia, in all which charges he caried him to valorouslie, and with such equitie, that the same Emperous gaue him the gouernment of all Syria in Asia, which was the greatest charge that the Emperours gaue. And MARCYS AVRELIVS being dead, and the time of his office expired, he came to Rome, after that he had gouerned foure confularie prouinces, and had himselfe bin Consul, besides other Captaineships, gouernments, and charges of greater qualitie, with great renowme and fame of bountie and valour. But comming to Rome in the time of the raigne of the wicked Emperour COMMODYS, by the instigation of a certaine servant of his, he was banished from Rome: but he being dead which was the causer of his banishment, the same COMMODVS fent him into the Ile of Britanny, to redreffe the abuses of an army and certaine legions which were therein; whither he went, and putall in good

posed from his charge by Marcus Aurelius.

cus Aurelius.

perour.

order, but he was first in great danger, and hardly escaped with his life: for a legion being in a mutinie, killed some of his people and vsed him in such manner, that he was left for dead in the field amongst the dead and having escaped this danger, he valorouslie punished the offenders, and pacified the legions. And vpo his especiall request there was one sent to succeede him, and he was sent Proconful Pettimax into the prouince of Africa: wherein he likewife paffed many dangers in muti-Proconful in nies, in seditions of the people, and of the ordinarie legions; for solong as CoM-Mo Dvs was Emperour, there was no fuch order in any place as was convenient. And writers affirme, that had it not bin for PERTINAX and fuch other Captains. asremained fince the time of his father MARCUS AVRELIVS, the Romane Empire had bin exposed to great danger. But having perfourmed his charge in Africa with honor, although not without much trouble and difficultie, being now old and spent, he came to Rome, and COMMODVs made him Presect thereof, Testinax and he being in this estate, death seised vpon Commonve by reason of his cru-made present elties, Pertinax dayly expecting when Common vs would have bereaved of Kon., by him of life. And this valiant man lying one night carelessie sleeping in his bed when Commodus was dead, MARTIA his friend which had plotted his death, and AELIVS LETVS Captaine of the pretorian cohorts, and those which confpired with them, agreed together to procure & cause PERTINAX to be chosen Emperour. And to this effect about midnight, before that the death of Commo-Dvs was published, the said Captaine A ELIVS LETVS, with some of his souldiers of the cohorts, came to the house of Pertinax, who (as I said) lay secure in his bed, and in great haste causing the dore to be opened, went vp into his chamber: whom so soone as he saw, yea and before, when he but understood that he was comming up, he affured himselfe that by Commonus his commaundement he came to kill him, not knowing him to be dead, and determining to fuffer his death with courage and patience, he lay still in his bed, without any shew to be moued thereat, & faid vnto A ELIVS LETVS: I have for some space expected The speeches to end my life in this manner, and I marueile that COMMODVS hath deferred it and great coufolong: and feeing it is fo, why fland you flill? Make an end with me, and do rage of Paristhat which you are commanded. Whereto A ELIVS LET vs answered, perswading him to put away all fuch feare, and not to thinke that he came to kill him, but to defire fafetie of his owne life, for that the tyrannous Emperour Commo-DVs was dead, and that they came to offer the Empire vnto him, who was onely worthie thereof. PERTINAX could hardlie belieue what he heard with his eares. but in the end the matter being declared vnto him more at large, and the occasion which induced them to kill the Emperour, he accepted of their offer; and was caried by them to the cohorts camp: where the fouldiers being affembled, their Captaine made a speech vnto them, conteining the wickednes and vices of the Emperour Commonvs, and how that he by meanes of his excesse was dead of an Apoplexy; and reciting the vertues and excellencies of PERTINAX, counfelled them to make him Emperour. Which they presently persourmed toyfullie, and calling him Av G vs T vs, fware to him as the custome was; yet PERTINAX remained still doubtfull, and accepted thereof with feare, and against his will. This being ended, and the day comming on, they came with him into the citie, and affembling the Senate, this old new Emperour came thither, not confenting that they should be are before him the Imperiall Ensignes, neither the fire, as the custome was; vntill such time as the Senate had agreed and given their consent. But so soone as he came into the Senate house, all the Senators called him Em-

Pertinax after perout CESAR AVGVSTVS, and with great acclamations and bleffings fware and yeelded to him obedience, which hee still withstood faying that he described made Emperor, it not, alleaging his old age, and nominating and appointing others, which hee faid were more worthie that dignitie. But in the end being ouercome and forced by them, hee fate downe in the Imperiall chaire, and made vnto them a folemne oration (which HERODIANV & Writeth). His oration being ended he went forth of the Senate house, accompanied with all the Senatour's and Romane Nobilitie, with an infinite number of others, to the exceeding joy of all; and went to the Temples, as the custome was, and from thence to the Imperiall palace. And so he began his raigne and obtained the Empire, to the generall good liking and contentment of all men, and was obeyed in like manner in all the provinces of the Empire. In all which he was well knowne: and truly they had not been deceived in their opinion, and great hope which they had of him, if the wickednes of the Pretorian fouldiers had not hindred his good determinations.

The first thing that he began in the gouernment of the Empire, was to bridle the licentiousnes of the Pretorian cohorts, and the infolencies and wrongs which they yied towards the citizens and people of Rome; by meanes of the fauour and loofe life of C o M M o D v s. The like he also performed in all other disorders and abuses which in his time were allowed; seeking to reduce all things to that forme and manner of government, which was vied in the time of his father MARCVS AVRELIVE ANTONINVS. He vsed and entertained al men honourably and louingly, which had occasion to speake and negotiate with him, and gaue and divided the fields of Rome, and of the prouinces which lay vntilled and waste, granting that for tenne yeeres space no rent or tribute should be paid for the same. With these and such other things, this excellent and gracious Emperour so wanne the hearts and loue of the common people, that all men held themselues happie in having fuch an Emperour: for which occasion, besides the honourable titles which were given him by the confent of the Senate, the fame Senate appointed and intituled his fon, C E SAR; and to his wife LICIN IAWAS added the name of Av G V S T A: the good Emperor faid, That his wives name he did accept because Cefar, and his her vertue was worthie thereof: but for his sonnes name, he would that it should wife Augusta. rest vntill that he had better deserved it. Perseuering in his good workes, all the goods and moueables, which Commodovs had escheated and taken, he made to be restored to their owners, for which they should pay some small matter in ex-

> Euery day when the Senate did ordinarily fit, he went thither; and in his house he neuer refused to give audience to any person at what time soeier. So soone as the barbarous Nations and enemies to the Romane Empire had intelligence, and did certainly know that hee was Emperour, they laid downe their weapons and ceased to make warre against the Empire; and many sent Ambassadours vnto him(if they had found him liuing) to treate of peace and friendship: so as the small time which he raigned was to the generall good liking and contentment of all the world, excepting the men of warre, principally of the Pretorian Cohorts which lay about Rome, which presently began to abhorre him, because that he kept them in quiet, bridling them with inflice, not fuffring them to commit fuch riots, abufes and outrages as they did in the time of Commonvs: and in like manner he was not beloued by the officers and ministers of the Imperiall palace, for the like reasons. The shamelesse audaciousnes of the souldiers grew to this height, that one day they would have taken a Senatour of a very noble and ancient house, na-

by the Prete-

rian Cohorts.

The Senate

made Perti-

nax bis fonne

chaunge.

him Emperour, to the end that he should have risen against PERTINAX: but this to relate the MATERNYS (as a good and loyall fernant) escaping out of their hands, came to will of the PERTINAX, and thence fled from Rome: which put the Emperour in great feare fouldiers which and anguish. And to content and pacific them, hee made payes and distributions wade him Emamongst them. But that little availed, for they esteemed it not, but sought meanes procur, steate to live diffolutely at their libertie. PERTINAX raigned about three moneths, in form Konn which small time he had set matters in so good order, that the state of the Empire feemed to be chaunged, and not the fame as before. And not withflanding that he was fo good, yet was there one whose name was FALCO, which practifed his death, with a conceit to haue been Emperour: which being discouered to him, he came to the Senate, and would not permit that they should proceed against him as against a tyran. And notwithstanding that the euidences and proofes were so plaine and manifest, that the offence was apparant; yet he pardoned him: but inflice was done upon certaine fouldiers which had procured and practifed this treason; which the souldiers tooke so ill (their hatred and presumption daily encreasing) that they determined to kill him; and being so resolued, they cared not to conspire, or to vie any cunning or deceit: But openly a great troupe of them went from their lodgings in a turnult with their fwords drawne, and with halberds and other weapons, and came into Rome, and without refutance (as the matter was fudden)they entred the palace. The Emperour being aduertifed hereof, fent ÆLIVS LETVS to stay and pacific them; who forgetting that he had made PERTINAX Emperour, cared not to performe his commaundement, but rather The wickednes approouing the fact, being (as some say) a partaker in the action, went foorth by of Elius Letus. another way to his owne lodging, at fuch time as the fouldiers came into the palace, where there was no meanes to make any relistance, being taken at vnawares and difarmed. Wherefore the greatest part abandoned the Emperour and fled, and those which remained countelled him to flie also: which he might easily haue done, & the people would have defended him. But notwithstanding that he knew The high minde their counfell to be good and profitable, and that they faid the truth; yet would being affailed he not follow the same, alleaging it to be a matter vnworthie the maiestie of an by the loudiers Emperour, and his acts and life past, to faue his life by flight, or by hiding himself: and so resolued to goe foorth vnto them; imagining that with his presence they would be afhamed, and so returne. And truly this conceit was at the point to have taken effect: for comming foorth of his chamber, and meeting with a multitude of them in the Court, they made a stand, and gaue him place to speake vnto them; which he did with great courage, without any thew of alteration. First asking them what might be the occasion of their comming in such a tumult, and without any refoect? and afterward (without thew of any humilitie or fearefulnes, but

with as great granitie and authoritie, as best fitted the dignitie of his person) hee

great, nor commendable; neither very grieuous vnto me, which am now fo old,

and have gotten to much honour and fame, that I regard not my life : for every

mans life hath his end and limits. But you to whom appertaineth the guard and

defence of my person seeing your office and charge is to free and deliver the Em-

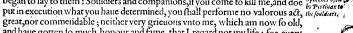
perour from perils and treason, and shall be the first to lay your hands upon him;

consider that for the present it will be shamefull and odious, and hereafter in time

to come daungerous and hurtfull: For I have done you neither displeasure nor a-

medTRIARIV'S MATERNYS, and have carried him to the Camp to have made Triarius Ma-

began to fay to them: Souldiers and companions, if you come to kill me, and doe speeches vied;



The miferable

death of Per

tinax.

feeing that hee was a man : if you suspect that hee was murthered, I am guiltlesse thereof: and you know that I am free from all suspition in this case: what then passed you knew before me; if there be any suspition of his death, it concerned others and not me. But I fay this, and affure you, that by reason of his death there shall nothing be taken from you that you shall require, or that shall seeme necesfarie for you; requiring fuch things as are honest and possible, and not by force and violence. PERTINAX herewith ending his speech, some of them began to alter their mindes and to depart, moued thereto by his words and granitie; but the furie of those which came behinde them was fo great, that they could not doe it so as one of them called TRVSIVS set vpon him, and smote him in the breast with a launce: And hee feeing their determination, couered his head with his robe. fuffering himselfe to be wounded by them all; and so they slew in that place the poore and innocent Emperour. And ELIV's LETV's, who had been one of the chiefest in making him Emperour, going about to helpe to defend him, was alfo flaine; having first with great courage and hardines flaine two fouldiers : and fo they also slew some others which were his chamberlaines and other officers. A fonne and a daughter of his escaped, for that they were not lodged in the palace. This Prince had a good gesture, and an honourable and maiesticall personage: his stature and constitution did well represent his state and dignitic. Hee ware his beard long, and his haire curled, his breaft was large and full of fleth, and he was indifferently cloquent, vsing smooth and louing speeches. This accident was fo fudden, that hee was flaine before that the people knew of any mutinie or the comming of the fouldiers: and the fouldiers fearing the people, which they knew would take it grieuoufly returned with as much or greater hafte, then they

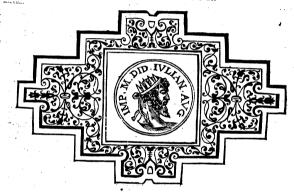
pened, they faw that they neither could or durft proceede any further. This Emperour died in the yeere of our Lord 195, fome fay leffe. He gouerned the Empire (according to Evsenivs) fixe moneths: Ivlivs Capitolin vs in his life faith, 85, daies and no more; with whom agreeth Sexivs Averlivs Victor : all which write, that his fucceffor Ivlianvs was of counfell and acceptance to his death.

came: and fortifying their Campe, they fet out sentinels, and held guards in the bulwarkes and towers, searing to be assaulted. So soone as the death of the Emperour was knowne in the cities the forrow and lamentation which was made for him was extreme, the people running vp and downe the streetes with incredible wrath and surie, seeking the murtherers to be reuenged of his death. Thus they went vnaduisedly without any certaine knowledge of what passed, doing nothing but weepe and complaine one to another. But when they understood what hap-

THE LIFE OF DIDIV

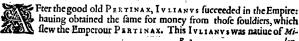
# THE LIFE OF DIDIVS IVLIANVS, ONLY OF THIS

NAME, AND TWENTITH ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGVMENT.

Idius I ulianus tooke the Empire, being a man proud, irich, and ambitions: and seeing that the Empire was set to sale by the souldiers which murthered Pertinax, was so presamptions as the source to buy it, with one other which would have had the same for money, who was the source to the other dead Emperour. But the soulders doubting that making Pertinax, who so me in law, Emperour, he would reuenge his death: wherefore they agreed to sell it to suitanus, who was construed construit to the will of the Senate; and in worse manner accepted by the people. Neuerithelesse, as though he had obtained that dignitie by his vertue, or that it came to him by individually the sell of the sell o



THE

Treline of Di- lan by his fathers linage, who was called PETRONIVS DIDIV'S SEVERVS: his mothers name was CLARA EMILIA: his grandfathers name was SALVIV'S IV-LIANVS, who had bin Prefect of Rome and twife Conful, which enobled his linage. This IVLIANVS was brought up in the house and service of De MICIA LVCILLA mother of MARCY'S AVRELIVS ANTONINVS the Philosopher, by whose favour he attained to offices, and was made Questor, Edil and Pretor, in Rome: Afterwards he followed the warres, and proued a good Captaine, performing many notable exploits in those, which in the time of MARCUS AVER-Livs were waged in Germanie and in other parts. He was in the beginning Captaine of a legion, and afterwards with an armie he had the charge and gouernment of Dalmatia, and then of lowe Germanie; and after that, he was made gouernor of Bithynia in Afia, although that in this gouernment he did not beare himfelie with fo good fame as in the reft. He was loyntly Conful together with PER-TINAX. and afterwards Proconful in Africa: and having executed these charges and offices was now growne old, and very rich, by meanes of his possessions and money which he had in Rome. When PERTINAX was dead, he obtained the Empire in such manner, as truely was shamefull and strange. For after that the fouldiers had murthered the Emperour PERTINAX (as is faid) they fortified their campe and lodgings for feare of the people; and the people durit not affaile them, for that they were too strongly defended with great bulwarkes and turrets. And the Senators and nobilitie knew not what to doe in this fo trouble some a time, but retired themselues to their houses wherein they fortified themselues. and many of them went to their Castles and possessions in the countrie, holding themselves not for safe in Rome, and so they passed that day, and the next wherein PERTINAX died. The Pretorian fouldiers (as writeth HERODIANYS) feeing that no man attempted to offend them, became yet more audacious: for some of them standing youn the ramparts of their Campe, cried out with lowd exclamations, that they would give the Empire to who foeuer would buy the fame, and pay best for it. This sale was presently published in the citie, and this proclamation was fo loathfome, and the cafe fo doubtfull, and also there were so few rich men left in Rome, by reason of Common vs his cruelticand tyrannie, that there were but two merchants to bee found to buythe Empire that was to be fold. The one was Sylpitiany's at that time Prefect of Rome, a man who had been Conful, and was sonne in law to the late Emperour PERTINAX; the other was DIDIVS IVLIANVS, of whom we now speake. Truely it is a matter worthie of great confideration, and a notable example for princes: whereby it plainely appeareth, how little stabilitie there is in their greatnes, and generally, in all things in this life: and how little they ought to effect the power, the kingdomes and dominions of this world, and all those other things called goods which are gotten in this world. For confidering that a Romane Emperour, being a wife old man, redoubted, beloued, and knowen to be good and valorous by long experience, and (as we may fay) was Lord of all the world; for he peaceably ruled (in a manner) all that which all the Kings in Christiandome hold in Europe, and the Infidels in Africa, and asmuch as the great Turke possession of fia, Gracia, and Egypt, and many other Princes and Lords befides; onely three hundred, or few more fouldiers fufficed to bereaue him of his life and dominion, being in Rome it selfe; which was the head and strength of all the Empire : and that they should escape away free and cleere withall, without any punishment; no man then feeking any reuenge of his death. Who

Who would regard or greatly efteeme the riches and dominions of this world; or account the dignities, estates, and riches thereof to be great, and confound and empawne his fouleto get them; Iceing that a throne, and fo great a power and maiestie as was the Romane Empire, was set to sale at an ourcry; and there were but onely two that came to buy it, and it was fold for a little money! Truely in my judgement, it was handled as it deferued. And this may suffice for a warning and example vnto vs, that there is nothing in this world that is ought worth, and to be held of price; nor ought to be gotten and held with the daunger of the foule: and therefore men ought lightly to regard the lofing or winning of the goods of this world, fo as they may encrease the riches of the soule. and line vertuously as christians ought to doe: he that can attaine hereto, is rich, and mightie: and all the rest without this are miserable, beggarly and ynhappic.

although they commaund, and raigne outer the whole world.

To returne to our Historie, (HERODIANVS Writeth) that the fame of the fouldiers proclamation came to the house of DIDIVS IVLIANVS, being accounted the richest man in Rome, who with his wife and daughter sitting at dinner, very merrie and pleasant in the middest of his fauorites and pleasant companie, was by them all counfelled, that feeing that he had more money then any other man in Rome, he should not let slippe so good a bargaine, and so precious a Iewell as was the Romane Empire: but that he should goe to the Campe to conferre with the fouldiers, and to procure himselfe to be chosen and sworne Emperour: and he presently arising from the table, went thither accompanied with his friends and feruants. ELIVS SPARCIANVS (who wrote his life) faith, that the first which perswaded him hereto, were Publivs Florianvs, and VECTIVS APIR Tribunes. But who focuer were his counsellers, they all agree, that when Didnes Inlients he came thither he found SVLPICIANVS the Prefect of Rome there before him, went to buy the folliciting the fouldiers to make him Emperour; promifing them a great fumme ofmoney with other fauours and rewards: And the reason why his offers were not accepted, was, for that he was father in lawe to PERTINAX, whom they had flaine, and therefore they suspected him. Whereof DIDIVS IVLIANVS put them also in minde, willing them to take heede that they made not choise of one, who another day would reuenge the death of PERTINAX. He promiting to giue them an infinit summe of money which he had in a readines; and that he would restore all things to that order and forme wherein Commonvs had left the same, and would presently bring them a great summe of money to be deuided among them: His offer at last was accepted by the souldiers, and hee with ladders was received into the fort, where they sware obedience vnto him, and there having done certaine ordinarie ceremonies and facrifices, he went into the citie accompanied with the Pretorian Cohorts in armes, ranged in fo good order, as if they had been going to a battaile: for they were in great feare of the Inlianus being people. And fo IVLIANVS entred the citie, all the fouldiours proclaming his made Emperor name, calling him Emperour: and the citizens durst not make any relistance, Rome, neither did they approuchis election, as they yied to do by other Emperours, but curfed him and threw stones at him.

IVLIANV s then went to the Senate, where affembling fuch Senators as were present, by their decree he was proclaimed Emperour, and they presently made his fonne in law CORNELIUS REPENTINUS Prefect of Rome, putting SVI-PITIANVS out of that office: and from thence was he caried to the Imperiall Pallace, and was held for Emperour, more through force, then the good will of

any honest men. And he as though that the Empire had descended to him by inheritance from his father, and that he had peaceably obteined the same with the good will of all men, gaue himfelfe to disports and pleasures, shewing himselfe neeligent and retchlessein matters of government: And notwithstanding that he was mild and gentle, and did no harme to any man in all the time of his raigne, vet he presently began to be hated of the souldiers, for that he did not accomplish that which he had promifed them. And the people of Rome hated him, because he was chosen and made Emperour by those which murthered Pertinax whom all the world loued; and they were of opinion that he was guiltic and accefforie to his death. So that every time that he went abroad out of his Palace. the people openly powred out their curses against him, which he patiently endured, sometimes with laughter, beckening with his hand that they should come to him, making shew of loue and good will vnto them: but it little auailed him, and rather increased their hatred in such manner, that standing one day to behold certaine games and sports, the people of Rome proclaimed PESCENIVS NI-GER who was Proconful, and Governor of Syria, which was the greatest charge and gouernment of the Empire, calling to him that he should come to their rescue and to procure their libertie; of all which infolencies, IVLIANVS made little reckoning. And it hapned that so soone as the armies which were in the frontiers of Germany and in Syria, knew how ill IVLIANVS was beloued in Rome, and how carelessie he gouerned; each of these armies presumed to make their Captaine Emperour. In Syria PESCENIVS NIGER was Gouernor, who was a man of good yeeres, and which had had great commaunds and gouernments, and had done very many notable feates of armes: and it was reported of him that he was mild and wife, and feemed to imitate the life and gouernment of the Emperour PERTINAX. This man knowing the good will which was borne him in Rome. and that his army and fouldiers loued him, determined to proclaime himselfe Emperour, and presently tooke the ensignes thereof: and all those nations, Kings, and potentates of Asia, yeelding obedience, came or sent Ambassadors vnto him. The army in Germany held for their Captaine SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, borne in Africa, a man of great courage and counfell, and about all, very double and fubrile, and of great experience, and had had many gouernments, magisfracies, and captaineships, and had been Consul in Rome, and Proconsul in the governments of Sicilia, Africa, and the Pannonies, and was also very well beloved of his souldiers. by which he was importuned, and feeing the occasion and oportunitie, he resolued also to proclaime himselfe Emperour, taking upon him the state and ensignes thereof: and publishing that he would revenge the death of the Emperour PER-TINAX, he made himselfe beloued by the men of warre in Germany, and of the Romane people also: so as there were at one time three Emperours, or to say more properly, three tyrants. IVLIANVS, who was Emperour in Rome, notwithstanding that he knew what passed in Syria, when it began made no great account thereof, holding it sufficient to send to kill him: but knowing what SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS did in Germany, it moved and troubled him very much; and he dealt with the Senate to proclaime him rebell, and that they should send certaine principall men Ambassadors to procure the army to abandon Severvs, and to hold werms a valiant him for Emperour whom the Senat had approved, which was himselfe: and he fent VALBRIVS CATVLINVS to further the busines, and to succeede SEVERVS ence, pretended in his gouernment. But Savaavs had taken so good order, that this did little profit him: for he had alreadic obteined their obedience, and had affured vnto himfelfe

himselfe the good will of all that countrey and the marches thereof; and resoluted with his army to march towards Rome, where he knew that IVLIANVS was not beloued. Now PESCENIVS NIGER who in Afia was called Emperouralfo. was not so circumspect herein as he might have been : for he seeing himselfe serued by Kings, rich in gold and filuer, mightie in armies and men of warre, confidentlie trufting in the loue of the people of Rome; gaue himselfe to featling and banquetting in Antioch. When it was knowne in Rome that SEPTIMIVS SEVE-RVS came thitherwards, IVLIANVS awakened, and began to put himselfe in armes, and applied himselfe wholie to make provision for the warres; and muftring his troupes tooke the fields with the Pretorian army which had made him Emperour, which he found very feeble, as well for want of experience and exercife in armes, as for that they were ill paid by him: and the people of Rome repaired also vnto him with a very ill will, for that he was made Emperour against their will: and the cities of Italy had a long time lived in quiet and in peace, and were not yied to the warres and to fight. In this manner all went ill with I y LI A-NVS, and well with his enemie: and IVLIANVS was generally ill ferued and obeyed, whom his friends counselled, that with the best forces he should be able to leuie, he should meete Savarvs vpon the way, and stop his passage ouer the alpes: but either he would not, or durst not do so, but made the best prouision in Rome that he could, and before he was aware thereof, he vnderstoode that S BV Bnvs was alreadie entred Italy, and that the most part of the cities had received him, and yeelded him their obedience. The people of Rome seeing this, and that PESCENIVS NIGER whom they defired remained in Alia, began to like of Sa-VERVs his comming.

IVLIANVS feeing himselfe driven to this streight, obteined of the Senat to write, and to fend Ambassadours to SEVERVS, wherein they made him equall and companion with IVLIANVS. But SEVERVS not contented with part, but with the whole, would not accept thereof, holding himselfe to be of greater power then I VLIANVS was; notwithstanding that vntill then, the Senat held with him; but they feeing the little counsell, and leffe abilitie of IVLIANVS, began to abandon him. And although that he defired that the Vestall virgins (which was the most precious and highly esteemed thing in their vaine religion) should be fent to pacifie SEVERVS, and to worke some meanes of peace : yet the Senate would not yeeld thereto; alleaging, that he was vnworthic to rule, that durst not defend the Empire by force of armes. And the matter came to this paffe, that disguised persons daily came into Rome from SEVERVS, and others went from thence to him; and IVLIANVS void of all reliefe and fuccours, remained in his

Palace generally abandoned, fauing of a very few fouldiers.

The Senate was affembled, and by the common confent of all the Senators it was decreed, that IVLIANVS should be deprived of the Empire, and SEVERVS proclaimed Emperour; and there were of the most principall of the Senators fent to SEVERVS in ambassade, to yeeld to him their obedience, with the enfignes of Emperour, CESAR, AVGVSTVS, and spreading a rumor abroad that IVLIANVS had poisoned himselfe, they commaunded him to be slaine in his Palace, where the infortunate Emperour was found disarmed, and with some few of his friends weeping like a child. And so was IVLIANVS slaine at the age of 57-yeeres, having raigned only seaven moneths, in the yeere of our Lord 195.

### THE LIFE OF SEPT

VS SEVERVS ONLY OF THIS NAME, AND THE ONE AND TWENTETH ROMANE

EMPEROVR:



THE ARGUMENT.



Eptimius Senerus having taken the Empire more by force, and by feare, wherein he did put the Senators and people of Rome, then for any right he had thereto : The first thing that bee did was to revenge the death of Pertinax, by deprining all those which had slaine him and sold the Empire, of all militarie diquitie. Afterwards entring Rome with reat pompe, hee perswaded the Senators and people to hope well of him: and to bend their weapons against Pescenius Niger, who was called Emperour: Whom finally after many changes of fortune, bee ouercame. He likewife ouerthrew Artabanus King of Persia, and

tooke the citie of Tisiphonte, wherein was all that Kings treasure, and cuercame Albinus, who was made Cafar. This Senerus was a man addicted to the warres, ambiguous, ambitions, constant in his resolution to bring any thing to passe that he had once undertaken, and therewith very wife and circumspect in all matters appertainning to the preservation of his estate, and the gougrament of the Empire. Finally, oppressed with a long insirmitie, and particularly with an intolerable intolerable paine in his feete, he died, hauing ruled the Empire eighteene yeeres; ving no leffe wisedome in preserving is, then he had shewed boldnes and audacitie in getting it.



Fter Ivlianus, Septimius Severus succeeded in the Empire, who onely among all the Emperours was borne in A-Thelinage of frica, in a citie called Leptis. His fathers name was GETA, and his mothers FVLVIA PIA. He had two Vicles by his mothers fide, which were Confuls in Rome; his grandfathers name by his mother was MACER, and by his fathers side, FVLVLVS

Apivs. Ivlianvs being dead in such manner as we have declared, and Seveavs marching with his armie towards Rome, as against his enemies; vpon the way certaine Ambassadours methim, which in the name of the Senate and people of Rome yeelded to him their obedience, and gaue him the title and enfignes of Emperour, certifying him of the death of IVLIANVS. He received this Ambassade in presence of the armie, being marshalled and in armes; and gaue gifts to the Ambaffadours, and entertaining them with great honour, continued his journev towards Rome, where aswell the Pretorian souldiers stoode in seare of him, for that they had flaine the Emperour Pertinax whom they knew he loued, as also all the Romane people, for the desire they had that PESCENIVS NIGER should haue been Emperour; who in the East (as is said) was called so. SEVEavs when he came neere to Rome, fent commaundement that all the Pretorian fouldiers should come forth to receive him, clad in shew of peace, leaving their armes in their campe; and they did fo, hoping thereby to have pleafed and pacified him by joyfully obeying his commaundement. And he concealing what he purposed to doe, having onely acquainted some of his favorites and captaines therewith, attended their comming in the field, in a place which he had chosen for that purpose; and they comming to doe him reuerence, were compassed The purishabout by his armie: and making a short speech vnto them, he reproched them ment of the with the crueltie and treason which they had vsed in killing the Emperour PER dier which TINAX: Which being ended, he made them to put off the clothes and apparell flow Pertinax. which they ware, and to put away their daggers and poiniards from them (for other weapons they had none) and then he pronounced fentence against them; wherein he deprined them of the honour of fouldiers, and banished them from Rome and a hundred miles about. And he presently sent to their campe to take their armes from them, and the imperial lenfignes; and fo they were punished and difgraced, although not fo much as they deferued, for the cruell murther which they had committed, and the felling of the Empire.

This being done, SEVERVS entred into Rome, with his whole armic, with their severus entred Enfignes displaied, and his fouldiers in arm. apparelled in the best and most fo- Rome with enlemne manner that they could. The number of people was so great and such that signes difficient it was a most faire and stately spectacle to behold. The Senate went to the gates of the citie to receive him, and there faluted him after the accustomed manner; and the people received him with bleffings and applauses: notwithstanding that it was odious vnto them to fee him come armed, and in warlike manner. And hauing performed the folemnities, and visited the Temples, as the manner then was, he went to his lodging in the Imperiall palace: and the next day he commanded the Senate to be affembled, whither he also went accompanied with armed men, wherein(as he was a wife man and well aduifed) hee made a very smooth speech, giuing them great hope of good government, and excusing himselfe for taking

The valour and learning of Severus.

vpon him the name and authoritie of Emperor, without their confent and goodwill first obtained; alleaging that hee did it, to the end to come to reuenge the death of PERTINAX, and to free them from the tyrannic of IV LIANVS: for that it was a thing vnworthie the Romane Empire, that he should live therein which had bought it with money. In conclusion, he spake so faire, and vsed them in such manner, that they went thence fatisfied and well content : yet fome of the old Senators which better knew his condition, gaue little credit to his words; for they held him for a man that was very double, subtill, and a great diffembler: and notwithstanding that he was fo, yet in truth he was a most sufficient man in any thing, very valiant in armes, and before that he was Emperour had gouerned great prouinces and attained to be Questor, Tribune, Pretor, Proconsul, and Consul; and had held Captain hips and charges, wherein he purchased the name and renowne of a valiant, wife, and excellent Captaine. And if a man well confider how the Empire was then divided betweene three Lords, and with what valour he subdued the whole, with the other warres and dangers which happened in his time; he may very wel be esteemed for a very valorous Emperor & excellent Captain, and may be compared with any of those in ancient time. Besides all which, hee was very learned, and a great Mathematician, a good Orator and Philospher. But his prowesse in armes was so great, that it may not be written by me(considering the breuitie which I vie) fauing running, and so to expresse such things as are most cleere and resplendent, and although in haste, yet will they glister in their sight which shall behold the same.

After that hee hadtaken vpon him the gouernment of the Empire, hee tooke fpeedie order for the reformation of abuses in the citie, by reason of the diffenfions and tumults passed. He also presently honoured and buried the Emperour. PERTINAX, and in remembrance of that good old man, he tooke to himfelfe his: furname, calling himselse Septimivs Severvs Pertinax. He paid and gaue gifts and rewards to his men of warre, and also to the people of Rome; and as the custome of the new Emperours was, he made distributions and gaue large gifts. He also married two daughters which he had, with two principall men, one called PROBV s, and the other Ectvs; and after that he had given great dowries with them, he vsed such meanes that they were chosen both Confuls. And whereas at that time there was great scarsitie of corne in Rome, he tooke such order, and that with such expedition, that the citie was sufficiently prouided for and furnished: which course he held euer during all the time of his raigne, in such fort that therein was neuer any want. All these things and other, concerning the gouernment of the Empire, he performed with fuch expedition, that hee remained there but thirtie daies: for from the first day that he was Emperour, he determined to addresse his iourney towards the East with his armie against Pesceines NI-GER, who (as is faid) was called Emperour, and was very mightie and an excellent Captaine. And having made preparation for his journey, he fent a Captaine and new legions into the prouince of Africa, to guard the fame; to the end that by the way of Egypt and Libya, Pescenius Niger should not make any profit of that prouince. And the better to leave all things in fafetie behinde him in the West (for hee was in searce of CLODIVS ALBINVS a Nobleman and a Senator of Rome, who was Captaine of the Legions in Britannie, and was a man of a great parentage, rich, and well beloued) he bethought himselfe how he might compasse him and make him his friend, by giving him the name and title of C & s AR and his fucceffor, whereof he aduertifed him with very louing and gracious spee-

ches: by which meanes for that time he remained in quiet and in peace. This be-Sentrus against ing done, leaving the best order in Rome that he could, and such as was most expe- Viger. dient (nominating and choosing companies and Pretorian Cohorts to remaine in the citie, in place of those which hee had cassiered and degraded from the honour of the militarie Art and profession) he departed thence, continuing his journev with the best and greatest force that he was able to leuie on enery side. And PESCENIVS NIGER being aductifed of the comming of his enemic, as vntill then he had lived idle and carelesse; so now with great diligence and expedition heleuied fouldiers: and befides the ordinarie armie which he had, with all speede he sent some Captaines to stop the passages out of Europe into Asia the lesse; and also sent to craue aide of the Kings of the Parthians, and of Armenia, and other Kings and Tetrarches of the East; from which, and from the prouinces which were vnder his obedience, there came great power and reliefe vnto him: And fo the world was divided into two factions and heads; and there began one of the most cruell warres that euer had been therein, as well for the force and valour of the Captaines, as for the power and multitude of fouldiers; which warre was Waged in many parts, both by fea and by land. SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS paffed out of Europe into Asia the leffe, although with great trouble and difficultie, hauing many skirmishes, and being often affailed by PESCENIVS his troupes, who fent against him an excellent Romane Captaine called EMILIANVS, who was Generall of all his forces: and this E MILIANV s having drawne together all the Dower which PESCENIVS fent him, and all the rest that he was able to leuie out of Cappadocia, Galatia, Bithynia, and other provinces of Asia the leffe, tooke the field in the way whereby SEVERVS Was to passe: wherein followed many great skirmishes and encounters, and in the end a most cruell and terrible battaile. \*Wherein E MILIANVS Was ouerthrowne. After this battaile, the conquered Emilianus omethywne by troupes which escaped, went to PESCENIVS NIGER, who with all his power senerus, was in the citie of Antioch in Syria; from whence he departed to meete with SEP-TIMIVS SEVERVS vpon the way as he was comming: and marching towards him(after some matters of lesser importance which passed) the two Armies drew neere the one to the other in a great plaine by the Sea fide in the countrey of Citweete Spilicia (as Herodianvs reporteth, yet Sparcianvs and Evtropivs differ must Secure therein) in the same place where DARIVS was the first time ouerthrowne by A. and Possenius LEXANDER the Great; where (by the confent of both the Generals) they came Miger. to a battaile with the most and best souldiers that then were in the world; which by reason of the experience, valour, and wisedome of the Captaines, was most cruell: For fighting the greatest part of the day without any apparant aduantage, the number of the flaine and wounded was fo great, that the streames of water which ranne through the fields, were fo full, and died with the bloud of men and horses, that there seemed to bee no water therein: A great number of disarmed people of the inhabitants thereabouts, standing vpon the tops of the hils to behold the battaile, and to see whether partie should have the victorie. Which when either partie by all meanes possible had endenoured to obtaine, in the latter end of the day Pescenius Niger was overthrowne, without failing in any point in what hee ought, and was most expedient for a good Captaine to haue done: for in truth SEVERVS his fouldiers were more expert and better naue done: for in truth SEVERVS his foliations were infore expert and occur trained in the warres then his were; and feeing there was no other remedic hee Remerchana fled, but was followed and afterwards found by Severvs his fouldiers, which and flame. fmote off his head, and carried it through the Campe vpon the point of a launce.

The linage of Pefcenius NiThis PESCENIVS NIGER Was a man of meane parentage; yet some say that he was noble and ancient: his fathers name was Anivs Fvscvs, and his mother was called LAMPRIDIA. He was a man indifferently well learned, and obtained oreat riches. He was sharpe and quicke of condition, and ever followed the wars. and was an excellent fouldier; and afterwards performed the charge committed to him, with great discretion and courage: for they write of him, that hee was a valiant and much commended Tribune; a very fingular and excellent Captaine; a most seuere and vpright Lieutenant Generall; a most wise and prudent Consul; and in all things happie and fortunate, fauing that he was onely infortunate in being Emperour, not knowing how to gouerne himselfe therein. So as it plainly appeareth, that men doe oftentimes defire and purchase to themselves shame and

perdition, by prefuming to attaine to honour and reft.

SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS having obtained so notable a victorie, with all speed aduertised the Romane Senate thereof, and as a conqueror did his will youn the conquered, cruelly killing many of those which had taken part with NIGER: and principally he destroied the citie of Antioch, by reason that it (more then any other) had aided and affifted his adverfarie, whose wife and children he commanded to be banished from Rome. And to the contrary hereof, hee gaue gifts and rewards to those which had done him service and assisted him; and repaired the harmes and dammages which fome cities, which held with him, had received by NIGERS fouldiers. For in truth this man was very cruell in panishing offences, and in perfecuting his enemies; and very liberall and gratefull to his friends, and most bountifull in rewarding those which had done him any service. In all the prouinces of the East, after this victorie, he found no resistance, sauing among the Parthians, the Persians, and the Adiabenians, very mightie Nations, which for the loue which they bore vnto NIGER, and the ancient hatred to the name, Romane presently tooke armes against SEVERVS; and hee in person went against them, and had many battailes and incounters, and obtained great victories, which I have no time to relate: so as hee inlarged the Empire and the Romane name, and pacified the prouinces.

SEFTIMIVS SEVERVS having brought all his purposes to so good and prosperous estate, being seduced by the diuell, so persecuted the Catholike Christian Church, that an infinite number of the faithfull were put to death; and this was the fift perfecution of the Church. For which occasion (as PAVLVS OROSIVS noteth) God would not permit that he should long enjoy the Empire in peace: for he was aduertised from Rome how that ALBINV s, who (as we faid) was Captaine in great Britannie, and whom he made C & s A R when he went for the East, was rifen in armes, and proclaimed himfelfe Emperour; and that hee was of very great power, and much beloued of the Romane Nobilitie: for hee was natine of Rome, and of a great and noble familie. But he being of a hautie minde little regarded those difficulties: and setting all things in order in the East, with his armie tooke his way towards Rome, to the end from thence to goe against ALBINV s, as against a tyrant and a rebell. And passing from Asia into Europe over the streight at Byzantium, which is now called Constantinople, hee wholy destroied that citie; because that when he passed by it towards Asia, that citie would not receive him; and so he left it leuell with the ground (which was one of the most famous cities in the whole world) and remained so desolate vntill the time of Constanting the Great; as in his time we will declare.

SEVERVS trauailing thus towards Rome, his adversarie ALBINVs being ad-

nertifed thereof, came out of Britannie into France, where hee raifed a mightie armie; part whereof he fent to keepe the paffages in the Alpes, thereby to hinder him in his way, who was alreadie arrived at Rome, and was voon his way comming to meete him : before which time he put PESCENIVS NIGERS children Severus put to to death to the end thereby wholy to extinguish all remembrance of him. And desilders. he going to the warres appointed his some BASSIANVS ANTONINVS for his fucceffor, and intituled him C # \$ A R; and chaunging his name, he commaunded him to bee called AVRELIVS ANTONINVS. And drawing neere to his enemies, the warres began in a most cruell manner betweene them; wherein in the beginning in some encounters, SEVERVS his captaines were ouerthrowne by those of A LEINV s his partie. But after that hee had passed the Alpes, and was entredinto France, the warre was kindled in many parts; and in many conflicts and skirmishes fortune shewed her selfe variable, the victorie inclining sometimes to one fide, and sometime to the other; vntill at last necre vnto the citie of Lions, Agreat bat-(wherein ALBINVS was)either partie drawing together his whole power, they severus and fought one of the most bloudie battailes that euer was written of : which conti-Albinus, nued the greatest part of the day without any apparance of aduantage. First the victorie seemed to bee of ALBINV s his side: for his battalion was of such force. that it made Severvs to retire, in such fort that his fouldiers began to flie; and it so happened that SEVERVS his horse fell with him, and every man held him for dead: and ALBIN v s his fouldiers began to crie victoric, victorie; taking no care but to follow the execution. Then LET'V's one of SEVERV's his Captains, which vntill then had neuer charged; with a very great troupe of armed men which he brought with him, renued the fight, in fuch fort, that SEVERVS was refcued: and being remounted vpon another horse, charged with so great force and rigor, that he tooke the victoric out of ALETN v s his fouldiers hands, which accounting themselves victorious, observed no order: and the matter was so handled, that A LETN vs his troupes were driven to turne their backes; and SEVERVS followed the execution, killing them even to the gates of the citie of Lions. The number of those which were flaine and wounded, was infinite; and the citie was prefendly entred, and ALBINVS taken; and his head being striken off, was brought to SEVERVS. A man may well beleeve that hee was not a little joyfull when hee faw it considering that a little before hee was wounded and cast to the ground, and by all men accounted for dead, and his enemies victorious; and escaping all this, he now faw himselfe an absolute Lord, victorious, and his enemies confounded. Wherefore let euery Christian reader consider how inconstant all things are in this life; and that a man neither can, or ought to repose his affured confidence in any thing in this world. Great were the cruelties which SEVERVS committed after that he had obtained this victorie: for truly if this Prince had not been The crueltie of fo cruell and greedie of shedding of bloud, and in matters of gouernment as hee was, I am of opinion that no man either before or after him, had excelled him; confidering the actions and enterprises which hee brought to an end, whereof I write but the fumme. These things being past, SEVERV s presently wrote to the Senate and people

of Rome, aduertifing them of his victorie, and fending them ALBINVS his head, commaunded that it should be set upon the end of a pole in the publick place,

and all those Senators which of ALBINVS his partie were slaine in this battaile,

he commaunded to be quartered; and those which were taken aliue, he com-

maunded to be flaine. He was so cruell and vindicatine (that some write) that he

cution of the Primitiue Church.

Albinus in armes again(t dead bodie of ALBINVS: which is not much to be maruelled at, confidering

from how cruell and barbarous a nation he was descended. Some write, that he

first caused his bodie to be torne in many pieces, and to be throwne into the river Rhodanus. And Sparcian vs faith, that he commanded his wife and children to be flaine, and did by them as he had done by A LBINVS, and so he made a number of his kinfemen and friends which with him were found in Lions to be flaine. and with them other principall noble men of France and Spaine. He concluded the victoric which he gat neere Lions only in Rome, there to make an end of the warre, and after this victorie he presentlie affaulted certaine cities and holds which continued friends to ALBINVS, which he subdued, not without great trouble and danger. And as he was busie in these matters, newes was brought him that one of those legions which he had left in Arabia, did mutine, and tooke part with ALBINVS before this battaile: and so he leaving France and Germany in peace and quiet, and fending into Britanny the ordinarie captaines, to keepe the inhabitants in subjection and in peace, he came victorious and triumphing to Rome, bringing his armie with him, where he was most solemnely received, with great shew of ioy and contentment, although that in truth they stood in great feare of him: whither when he came, he paid his fouldiers with larger allowance. then euer theretofore had been feene; and the first day that he went to the Senate, in difference and despite thereof, he renewed the titles and memorie of the wicked Emperour Commodys, and made him to be canonized, and adored as a God. He also condemned to death, & confiscated the goods of a great number of noble personages of Rome which had been Pretors, Consuls, and Senators. for that he found that they had been friends to ALBINUS, and of his faction. shewing letters which he said were written by them, wherein they had offered their persons and goods to ALBINVS service; alleaging other reasons & proofes, which peraduenture were forged. Finally, he yied great crueltie, and put many to death, whereby he extremely enriched himselfe both in goods and treasure, whereof some he distributed and gaue to others : but principallie, he enriched and advanced to honor in the highest degree, one whose name was PLANCIVS. a great fauourite of his, who also was an Africane, and his countrieman, whom he great favourite made Prefect of the Pretorian cohorts, and afterwards he married his some Bas-STANUS ANTONINUS, whom he had made C & SAR, with his daughter, whose name was Playtina; and then he made him his companion and equall, and made the Senat to give him the enfignes and prerogative of the Empire; by reamade the Senar to give him the enjights and prerogative of the Empire; by reafon whereof Plancivsgrew yet at made C dand infolent. Matters flanding in
the flate as I have faid, the salamed him felfe Engaven vs flayed but a small time in
Rome, in which space the salamed him felfe Engaven vs flayed but a small time in
friends to Nioen and Albinvishe But less death a great number of noble perfonages most cruellie and horrible all things in felfe very liberall and bountiful, and
bestowed many fauours very the salament of the salament of

to be pleasing and acceptable to all men, and to that end made the greatest and

most costlie feasts and games that euer were made in Rome, and deuided money

amongst the people. But he stayed but a little while there (as I said) for knowing

that matters were in no securitic in Asia, principallie that the Parthians infested

the bounds and frontiers of the Empire, and defirous to be revenged of certains

Kings, which had affifted his enemie NIGER, as he was most valorous and defi-

Plancius A

of Seucrus.

triumphing

into Rome.

rous of honor and warres, although old and gowtie: yet with his accustomed celeritie he departed towards the East, and being come into Asia sooner then any man would have beleeved, he prefently began the warre in Armenia, marching against BARZEMIVS King of the Atrenores, who had been PESCENIVS NI-GERS friend: The King of Armenia durft not make any refistance, but sent him presents, suing for peace, and gaue him such hostages as he required. Whereupon finding no relistance, this valiant Emperour returned against Arabia felix, where-source his in there was a mutinie, and there tooke and facked some cities: and from thence enterpiles. returned to the frontiers of the Atrenores, and befieged the citie of Atras, or Atramas. But being vnable to take it, for that it was very strong and well furnished, in great furie he went against the Parthians, and the Persians, and belieged the famous citie of Tesiphonte, wherein King ARTABANV slay with all his power and houshold: and after many affaults, encounters, and flaughters of men of either fide, he entred the citie by force of armes, and the King escaping by flight, his children and treasure fell into the hands of SEVERVS, which was held for a very great victorie: for the Romanes stood in greater scare of the Parthians, then of

SEVERVS presentlie wrote to Rome, aduertising them of his victories and good successe, and sent them the description of the countries, cities, rivers, bat-

tailes, and affaults which he past, drawne and painted in tables.

any other nation of the world.

When he had here ended all things at his pleasure, he bountifully and liberally paid his Souldiers : and comming into Palestina, and from thence into Egypt : he was desirous to see the Pyramides, and other great and auncient monuments in that Countrey: And from thence he returned to Rome in great triumph, loden with the spoyles and riches gotten by his victories in the East. And at this his comming hee married his eldest sonne to PLAVIINA, daughter of his great fanourite Plancius, which marriage Bassianus Antoninus folemnized much against his will; and so would not converse or keepe companie with her. Whereupon there began great dishking and dissension betweene RLANCIVS and BASSIANVS. And PLANCIVS knowing himselfe to be the richest and mightiest man in all the Empire, and seeing that SEVERVS was now old, with whom he was in great fauour; and fearing that if BASSIANVS should succeede him and inherite the Empire, he should be ill intreated at his hands : he resolued to kil both the father and the sonne, and to make himselfe Emperour, making choice (to doe this exploite) of a Tribune of the Pretorian Cohorts, whereof hee himfelfe was Pretor. But it pleased God that this his treason was discouered by the same Tribune: and the inne day that he thought to have out the Emperours to death, hee by them was commainded to Ball were the cruelt a excellent historie, as hee may well perceive which will reas victor beraid and so according to his deferts with his life, he ended his pric bloud, ar that S EVER's had escaped this danger, he spent his time in visiting for ther before vely, in hearing complaints and doing inflice, and in most sumptuous , which hee Haildings in Rome, and other cities: and feeking to bring vp his fonnes vertuous, and by abating their pride, to reconcile them and make vnitie betweene them; for they did ill agree, and were very vinquiet and ill affected the one to the other: He defired to establish peace and amitie betweene them, for that hee had determined that after his death the Empire should be divided betweene them, and to that end invested them both therein: And fo this poore old Emperour laboured in vaine to reforme the cuill inclination of his fonnes. And lining in rest from warre, although not without

S 3

domesticall care, he received letters importing, that the inhabitants of great Britannie were in armes, and rebelled in such fort, that his Legions there were in fuch daunger, that they were at the point either to bee ouercome and loft or ar least to flie and abandon the countrie; which he tooke very displeasantly. And to the end that the Empire in his daies should not be diminished by the losse of that Iland(it being of fuch importance) hee determined to goe thither himselfe in perfon to pacifie the same. And without any delaying of time, went thitherwards with all his forces: and being arrived in Britannie, the inhabitants conceived fuch feare, by reason of his sudden comming upon them, that as hee was a warriour, if he had been inclined to peace, they would have come to any reasonable compofition: but hee rather defiring to punish them, made cruell warre against them, which was both very tedious and daungerous, by reason of the lakes and many euill paffages for his men in seuerall places in that countrie; so as he was constrained to make many bridges and other deuices, with wood and timber, for his fouldiers to passe: And so hee obtained many victories, and pacified and subdued the inhabitants. And to the end that his Legions from thencefoorth might live in greater fafety, and that the Picts and Scots should not so freely passe their bounds, (as Saxtvs Avrelivs Victor and Evtropivs report) he commanded a most strong wall to be made, which did crosse the Ile from sea to sea, which wall fubdued by Sewas two and thirtie miles in length, wherein (as I conceive) hee did but either finish, or repaire that wall which the Emperour ADRIAN had made before: which truly was a worke worthie the greatnes of S E V E R V s his minde, and the mightie wealth of Rome. Which when he at his pleasure had ended, in like manner as hee had done all his other enterprises his old griefe did so much torment him that he defired and fought meanes to end his owne life : and having raigned eighteene vecres and tenne moneths, he died in the fame Ile of Britannie.

The death of Severus.

The Britaines

uerus.

198

more victories, then any other that ever ruled the Romane Empire before him. For he ouerthrew and brought to confusion three mightie Romane Emperours, and many other Kings, and fubdued an infinite number of provinces and cities. He tooke so good order for the preservation of his treasure, and was so couetous and greedie in gathering the same together, that notwithstanding his great expences, and the infinite great gifts and rewards which he bestowed: yet hee left more readie money and treasure in his treasurie and Exchequer, then any other Emperour of his predecessors. He paid and maintained and left in the Empire so many legions of fouldiers, that there was no cause to feare any King or Nation in the world. Hee left in Rome fo great abundance of wheate, wine and oile, as was fufficient (as SPARCIANV s writeth) to maintaine and victual the fame for five veeres. He erected wonderfull workes and buildings in Rome, and in other parts. and in many things perfourmed the part of a good governour, and of a wife and prudent Prince: So as the Romanes yfed to fay of him (noting his cruelties and conetonines; and afterwards his prouisions and victories) That it had been good that this Emperour had neuer bin borne, or that he should neuer haue died : and fo after his death he was highly extolled and commended. He left for his equall fucceffors in the Empire his two fonnes, the one called Bass IANVs, and the other GETA: and when he lay a dying, the last words that he spake to those which were with him were these: When I tooke vpon me the gouernment of the Empire and of the Romane Common-wealth I found it tyrannized and out of orders

and now being old and gowtie, leave it in peace and subjection to my sonnes (if

This Emperour was one of those which fought more battailes, and obtained

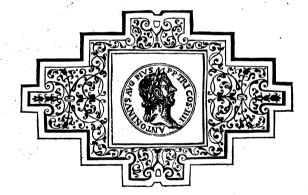
The words of Scherus at his

they prooue good) a firme and fetled Empire; but if they prooue euill, feeble, and without force, and readie to fall. This good Prince was fo temperate and spare in his diet, that hee did feldome eate any flesh; for his common foode was falades. pulse, and fruites of his countrie; but he yied to drinke somewhat deeper; yet neher fo that he was at any time diffempered therewith. He was of a very comely personage, representing authoritie and maiestie, and was tall of stature, and yield to weare a long white beard; his haire was curled and gray, and he spake with a deepe founding voice. Finally, his personage and minde were fitting for an Emperour of Rome. He lived (as SEXTVS AVRELIVS VICTOR and others do testifie) Anno Dom. fenentie veeres, and died in the veere of our Lord two hundred and three.

SEPTIMINS SEVERVS.

## THE LIFE OF BASSIA-NVS ANTONINVS CARACAL-

LA, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, AND fourth of those which were called ANTONINI, and of his brother GETA, being the two and twentith Emperour of Rome.



#### THE ARGUMENT.



Fter the decease of Senerus, his two sonnes, Bassianus Antoninus Caracalla, and Geta, tooke the Empire; which two being borne of severall mothers (as brothers oftentimes vie to doe ) the one deadly hating the other, fought one anothers death and destruction, But Caracalla which was a warlike man and bloudie, unable to endure the companie of his brother, which led the life of a Philosopher rather then of an

Emperour: and unable to endure that his brother for his good parts should be so much belowed by the Romane people as he was failing to kill him fecretly with poison, in the end slew him openly in the lap of his mother in law, which was Geta his mother; remaining fole in the Empire. And knowing bimselfe to be generally hated, be disposed of himselfe to visit the Empire: and where some

he sought to imitate the fashions of the countrie wherein he was; sometimes attiring himselfe after the Germane fashion; then after the Greeke : besides that he would be called Alexander, and be reputed another Achilles, for that he had transiled the countries of those Princes. He was very inhumane and cruell, and so dishonest in his life that hee shamed not to marrie his stepmether Iulia, which was mother to his brother Geta, who also was so shamelesse as to consent to so wicked a maringe. But they both ended accordingly as they descrued: for the Emperour was staine by the practife of Macrinus, at such time as he went to ease his bodie; and she hearing the newes, falling into despaire kelled her selfe, he having held the Empire sixe yeeres.



E E V E R V s being dead, his two fonnes, which he had by feuerall women, accordingly as he had ordained remained Emperours. One of them he had by MARTIA which was his first wife; and the other by I v L 1 A, as is alreadie faid. The eldeft had to name BASSIANVS ANTONINVS, and the other GETA; both very young men, and in vertue farre valike to their father, chiefly

BASSIANVS CARACALLA which was the eldeft: Although that in his youth being but a childe, hee feemed to make better shew of himselfe, to be of a gentle condition, and of a good wit; and profited very much in learning (as Sparcia-NV s writeth) and therefore was much beloued and greatly accounted of : but afterwards, with his yeeres, and the Empire, he altred his condition, and in crueltie not onely surpassed his father, but any other cruell Prince of all that euer were;

as though he had been borne at one birth together with NERO.

So soone as he was sworne Emperour in England, where hee then was sfor his father carried both his sonnes with him, and his wife I v 11 A also, which was mother to the second sonne) ANTONINVS CARACALLA practifed with the armie to chuse him onely for Emperour, and to disinherite his brother GETA. But the men of warre would not consent thereto, because that GETA was chosen C #-SAR and fuccessor to his father by them; and BASSIANVS ANTONINVS Was nominated by his father Severvs. Whereupon being out of hope to bring his purpose to effect, accompanied with his brother and mother in law, they agreed to come to Rome, and brought with them the bodie or affect of their father Sa-VERVS. But there presently began so many relousies and suspitions betweene the two brothers, that it was daily feared that the one would kill the other; notwithftanding that Iv LIA (as though she had been mother to them both) vsed all posfible meanes to have pacified them, and to have brought them to live louingly and like brothers together: which she could never bring to passe, and so vpon the way either of them did lodge and eate apart; and either of them stood vpon his guard, for feare of the other. And being come to Rome, were received with great folemnitie, triumph and joy; but in their palaces they tooke their lodgings apart, and each of them had his guard and particular officers from the other: and they neuer visited, saw, or spake the one to the other, except when they went to the Senate: fo great was the hatred and enuie which the one bare to the other.

The first thing they did after their comming to Rome, was to burie their father, whom they canonized for a Saint, placing him among the Gods, as the custome was to doe, by those which were good Emperours. And seeing that occasion will often be given to reade of some Emperours which have been deified; in my opinion it shall not be amisse, in this place to recite the ceremonies which were then yield therein. The order which they held (the Emperour being dead) was to affemble the Senate, to confider whether fuch an Emperour had deserved or their Emperors were worthie to be placed among the Gods or no: and finding him to have been

\* amitie be-

tweene Baffia-

mus and bis

brother Geta.

held, he deutsed with himself how he might secretly kil him with poison, or other- Bassianus wife howfoeuer: he alfo fought to get the goodwill of the Pretorian fouldiers, gi- fought memors uing them many gifts, doing them many fauours, & gining them leave to do what ther Guate

they lifted. So as it was eafily to be perceived, what manner of government there death.

great Eagle, which being fet on that fide where the image of the dead Emperour

was, while as this image did burne, the Eagle was very finely let loose; which, ac-

cording to her nature, mounting aloft into the aire, the people faid that it was the

Emperors soule which flew to heaven there to inhabite amongst the gods: which

HERODIANVS dothwrite at large in the historic of these two Emperours. GE-

Tathe younger brother was of a more gentle nature: for shewing himselfe milde

and courteous, he began to be generally well beloued of all men. ANTONINY &

CARACALLA Was sharpe, and would be obeied for feare; and enuying the loue

would be in the Empire, wherein were two Emperours with equall power and authoritie, and so contrarie in condition each to other, that being brothers they practifed and defired each others death; and in matters of inflice and gouernment were euer contrarie in opinion, and for Captaines and gouernours which

wicked, the Senate would not be present at the ceremonies vsed at his funerall : but if he had been a good Prince, they all went in mourning attire to doe him honourat his confectation. The manner to confectate him, was first to burie him without any ceremonies; then they made his image of wood, which refembled a pale fickly weake man, which they placed vpon a high scaffold ouer the entring into the Pallace, which image was clothed in faire rich attire, and on the one fide thereof fate the Senate, and on the other fide the Romane Matrons, where they fate from the Sunne rifing vntill the comming in of the euening, doing nothing but groane and figh. This order they observed the space of seven dayes, in which the Phisitions came and felt the pulses of this Statue, saying, that the Emperour would furely die: at which words, they lamented and scriched out. The fixt day the Philitions said that he was dead, then the most auncient men carried the image on horsebacke in a beere to a place, which was called the old place; passing thorough that way which was called Via Sacra. In this place was erected an edifice after the fashion of a throne, with staires round about it, and apon this throne they placed this Image; on the one fide of the staires were many children, which were gentlemens sonnes of Rome; and on the other side, a number of young Romane damsels which sung some heavie and sorrowfull songs and ditties; and the boyes sung hymnes in praise of the dead Emperour. From thence they carried the Image with the beere to the field of Mars, where was another scaffold made of most drie wood, vpon which they placed this Image. Vpon that day people came from all parts of Italy to Rome to see the solemnitie: and every one there present was bound to cast vpon the staires, certaine precious odours of sindrie forts. After this the Senators made thew of a skirmith on horsebacke; and after them the two Confuls gaue a turne vpon their chariots richly adorned, being followed by all the most ancient old men in Rome, and those which had bin Captaines in the warres on foote: all which after that they had gone round about this feaffold, making fundrie shoutes and exclamations, fell to the ground. Then came he which did inherite and succeed in the Empire, and with a burning torch gaue fire to this throne or scaffold; which, for that it was made of most dric wood, in short space was set all on fire. But before any of these ceremonies were performed, the Senate prouided a

which he faw al men beare to his brother GETA, & the reputation wherin he was

tain his mo-

thers armes.

were to be made, each fought to preferre his friends and fauourites, and did the like in chusing of Consuls and other Magistrates: And so all things went by fanours and in contention. And there were committed intolerable diforders, and injuries, either of them perfecuting the contrarie faction, without daring to punish those which were of their own partie for feare to make them their enemies: whereof grew an vniuerfall prejudiciall detriment to all the prouinces, and generally to the whole Empire. Wherefore to avoide these troubles and inconveniences some practifed to make a division of the Empire; and that ANT ONINVS BASSIANVS should remaine in Rome and gouerne the West; and that GETA should gouerne Asia and all the East. But this tooke as little effect: for I v L 1A. mother to GET Ashindred it, thinking to bring them to some composition, and to make them friends: and when the thought that the was in the right way to haue brought them to concord and agreement, BASSIANVS CARACALLA, which was more proud and prefumptuous, and who in truth did fcome his brother, as well for that he was his younger, as for that he gaue himselfe more to his booke and to civill discipline, then to armes and chiualrie; having alwaies about him honest and learned men: hee determined to kill him in what manner soeuer; which hee had till then affaied to doe by fecret and coloured meanes, thinking with himselfe that he was and ought to be sole and onely Emperour, and could not endure any riuall or companion in commaund. And with this cruell determination, as they were lodged both in one palace, G E T A being one day with his mother, nothing suspecting any open violence, although hee mistrusted secret practifes: BASSIANVS iust at the time wherein every bodie was at dinner, sinddenly entred his brothers lodging, and with the aide of those which came with Baffianus flew him flew his brother in his mothers armes before he was able to put himfelfe in his brother Gedefence, or could be refcued: and having committed this detellable murder, with the like furie and haft, as he had done this fact, he fallied forth at his pallace gates, compassed about with his friends and servants, and shewing great amazement, cried out, that his brother would have killed him, and faid to those which saw him, that he had escaped an extreame danger of death, but his innocencie had preserved him. And calling to his guard, commaunded them to convay him to his Pretorian Cohorts, where he might remaine in fafetie, for folong as he continued within the citie he flood in feare of his life.

Those which heard him, not knowing what had passed, beleeved what he said. and both those which heard him, and heard him not, followed him; and the people began to be much troubled to feetheir Emperour fo out of feafon, and in fuch haste in such maner to go to the camp. When he came to his camp, where in truth by reason of his former practises, he was better beloued then his brother, the first thing that he did was to go to a place apart, where their ensignes and banners were, which they held for religious and facred; and then he began with great exclamation to fay. That he gave infinite thanks to the gods for delivering him from such, and so imminent a danger. And the souldiers slocking about him, maruelling at his fo vnfeafonable comming, he put himfelfe in the middeft of them, and with a huge voice began to implore their aid and fuccour, telling them that his brother would have flaine him, and being affailed by him, was rescued, and had fought, and God had given him the victorie although with great difficultie; and that he now fled vnto them from the furie of those which would have slaine him. He spake and fained the matter with such efficacie, that the souldiers beleeued him, and notwithstanding that he expressed not so much, yet they plainely

perceiued that he had flaine his brother, as he gaue them to vnderstand: and incontinentlie he promised them, seeing that he remained sole Emperour, that he would bestow upon them the accustomed fauours, gifts and rewards; and prefentlie sending for a great summe of money which remained of his fathers treafure, he divided it amongst them : wherewith having gotten their good wils, although that some were hard to be perswaded thereto, and did contradict it, yet in the end they proclaimed him fole Emperour, and approved the death of his brother GETA, pronouncing him a rebell, and an enemie to the Romane commonwealth. BASSIAN vs remaining all that night in the camp amongst the fouldiers. the next day compaffed with men of warre, returned into Rome; and affembling the Senate, he went thither, and brought in his guard with him, wherein he made a fet Oration (which Herodianvs writeth at large) excusing himselfe, and grieuouslie accusing his brother, affirming that he was openlie assailed by him, but being rescued, in defending himselfe, he had slaine his brother. The Senators, some for that they were his fauourits, and others for feare, approoued his death: and he to instiffe his wickednes with greater crueltie, began to proceede against men of all estates, as though that they all had been guiltie, and had practi-cynellie sfed fed his death, committing infinite murthers and cruelties. First, he commaunded in pating all his brothers feruants to be flaine, together with many Senators and Romane many great Knights, which had taken his brothers part. He also made PLAVIINA, the daugh. men to death. ter of Plancivs which had been his wife, to be put to death. He flew Pompe-IANVS nephew to the Emperour MARCVS AVRELIVS the Philosopher, and sonne of Lvcilla and of Pompeianvs. He caused also all the Gouernours and Captaines to be flaine, which his brother had placed in the Prouinces. To conclude, he murthered an infinite number of principall men, and men of estate: fo as in all parts of Rome most horrible murthers and cruelties were committed. for which he is accounted one of the worst and most cruell Emperours that ever ruled the Romane Empire, and was generallie hated and abhorred of all men, sauing of the Pretorian fouldiers only, whose love and good will he bought with his money, and therewith did continue them for his friends (by fuffring and induring them, and giving them libertie in all things) permitting them to commit whatfoeuer outrage or infolencie they would. Hauing exercifed himfelfe in these abhominable cruelties, his owne conscience accusing him, and knowing how much he was abhorred in Rome, he determined to depart from thence, and to go to visit all the provinces of the Empire, which he did, and in his journey plaid many mad pranks, some of which in truth were very ridiculous. And purpofing to go into Germany, where Rome euer held great armies in garrison against the northerly nations, which could neuer be brought to any perfect subjection: he gaue it out in speeches that he went to reforme the legions, and to visit the saffanus his provinces: and taking his way towards the river Danubius, where (to win the transites and harts of that countrey people) he followed the fashions vsed in that countrey, fashions. hunting and killing fierce wild beafts, and apparelled himselse as a Germane, praising and esteeming their fashions better, then the fashions of the Romanes, and chose such of the Germane souldiers as seemed to be most strong and active for his guard. He fought also to win the good will of other men of watre, shewing himselfe very affable and sociable, helping them in person in their bodily exercifes, eating and drinking with them fuch things as they did, and doing many other things like a fouldier, and a man of warre: whereby he made himfelfe belouedboth of the one and the other, although that he forbare not to commit fun-

drie cruelties, killing certaine principall men amongst them.

And having fet all matters in fuch order as he thought good in Germany, taking his way towards Thracia, he passed through Macedonia, where a notable folly possessed him: for heere he made shew to be much affected to ALEXAN-DER the Great, and to publish his noble acts; and sent commaundement to erect his statue in many parts of Rome; among which he set up one with two faces, the one resembling A LEXANDER, and the other himselfe, desiring to make others to beleeue (himselfe being so perswaded) that he did very much resemble him: and for that he had read that ALEXANDERS neck flood alittle awry towards one shoulder, he counterfeited the like and so within few dayes, of an Almaine, he was become a Macedonian in apparell, behauiour and fashion; and one squadron of his army he commaunded to be called a Phalanx, for fo were they called in that kingdome; and fome of his Captaines he caused to be called by the names of some of ALEXANDER'S Captaines. Having made this shew in Gracia, he tooke his way towards Alia, where he defired to fee the ruines and relicks of Trong and seeing the Sepulchre of A CHILLES, another humour tooke him, which was to refemble ACHILLES; so as he seemed to trauell the countries like a Player, with Comedies and making shewes; at which his lightnes and mutabilitie, the Romanes which were with him were much discontented and ashamed.

Trauelling through Asia the lesse, and thence into Soria, he went into Egypt (as he faid) to fee the citie of Alexandria, because that ALEXANDER the great was founder thereof, where he was most folemnely received, and with great joy, for which he ill requited them: for although that he shewed them a pleasant countenance, yet fecretly he was very angry with them: for he vnderstood that they had yfed quips and iefts of him behind his back, and gaue him nicknames the citizens of conformable to his vices, and the cruelties which he committed. Matters, in truth, not so hainous as could deserve so cruell punishment, as that which he inflicted, which was: that the people being upon a day affembled together to fee certaine publike pastimes, he made them to be compassed about by his souldiers, and an infinite number of them of all ages, conditions, and degrees to be flaine,

to the great feare, griefe, and terror of the whole citie.

After this his fo great inhumanitie done in Egypt, he returned towards Paleflima, and trauelling towards the East with a very mightie armie, of his fathers excellent old fouldiers: he inuaded the land of the Parthians, which suspected no such matters, and did great spoile in their conuntries (as SPARCIANYS, SEXTYS AVRELIVS VICTOR, and HERODIANVS doewrite) for vpon fafe conduit and affurance of peace which he made to the Parthians, he obtained some victories, deceiving their King ARTABANY s, giving him to vnderstand that he came of purpose to marrie with his daughter, and the other comming to receive him in peaceable manner, was fodainly fet vpon. But the King (by great hap) escaped by flight. And although that this his victorie were of small importance, yet he made great boast, writing to Rome long and proud letters thereof; and in all these actions he forbare not to be cruell: but to gouerne vprightly and to doe iustice, as he ought to have done, he tooke no care. He was very gluttonous, and vnmeasurably given to wine, luxurie and dishonestie of life, so as he married with his own mother in law, Iv LIA: yet HERODIANVs maketh no mention thereof, but seemeth to be of a contrarie opinion; for he euer speaketh of Iv LIA, as though she had been mother both to BASSIANVS and GETA: But SEXTVS AVRE-LIVS Writeth it, and also EVSEBIVS, EVTROPIVS and SPARCIANVS fay, that

incontinencie of Bassianus.

Extreame

crueltie exeeuted by Baf-

sanus upon

Alexandria.

204

it passed in this manner. IVLIA was a most faire woman, and vpon a day, the mother and the sonne in law standing talking together, she carelessy or dishonestly, as it afterwards appeared, letting fall a vaile which she ware, discouered part of herbrest: which when Bassianvs saw, he said, if it were lawfull, I would have that which I fee: she forgetting all honestic, and that she was mother to GETA whom Amonstrous BESSIANVS had flaine, answered, to thee any thing that thou desirest is lawfull; fact, dost thou not know, that the Emperour maketh lawes and is subject to none. When he heard her say so, setting aside all dutie and loyaltie which he ought to his dead father, and his living mother in law, he resolved to marrie her, and ce-Icbrated his nuptials with the mother of his brother whomhe had bereaued of life. But to returne to the Historicof his life, it passed in this manner, that comming from his invalion against the Parthians, he staied some daies in the countrieof Mesopotamia: for that countrie was excellent good and commodious for hunting & other sports, wherein within few daies, having raigned full fixe yeeres, he was flaine by treason. The manner whereof HERODIANVS writeth, and saith, that he was much addicted to Mathematicians and Astrologians, and gaue great credit vnto them; and in all matters vsed their opinions and judgements, and hadin Rome and with him all the Astrologers that he could get; wherein he refembled his father Sevenus, who did the like. And being fearefull of confpiracies, knowing what he had deserved; he sent to MATERNVS who was the greatest and most private friend that he had, whom he left governour of Rome. commaunding him fecretly to affemble all the best Astrologers that he could get. and demaund of them what death he should die; and procure them to give their opinions, whether that any conspired or practized his death or no. MATERNYS did that which the Emperour commaunded in the foote of his letter, and with great hafte answered him (either faining it, or being so aduertised by the Astrologers) that MACRINVS which was his Prefect, and with him in Mejopotamia, went about to kill him, and that therefore he should in any case presently dispatch him out of the way; for so did the Astrologers aduise him. Which letter he sent fealed, and made it vp amongst other letters, to be the more secretly conveyed. The whole packet was giving to the Emperour as he was going into his chariot, to runne for a wager with other chariots; which was a kinde of sport, wherein he tooke much pleasure, and was greatly vsed in those daies. And he for that he would not give over that which hee had pretended, gaue his letters to the faid MACRINUS to reade, and afterwards to make relation to him of the contents thereof. MACRINUS reading all these letters, met with that wherein BASSIANUS was counselled to put him to death, whereat he was much astonished, and concealing that letter, made relation to the Emperour of the contents of all the rest. And confidering with himselfe that he which wrote that letter would doubtlesse writeanother, and that at length he should surely die; he resolved first to dispatch the Emperour out of the way: and ruminating vpon the matter, he bethought himselfe of a lustic strong fellow, a Centurion of the Emperours guard, called MARTIALL, who being discontented, murmured against the Emperour and fecretly hated him, for that he had caused a brother of his to be flaine, and he himfelfe was ill entreated and difgraced. MACRINUS conceining this man to be fit for his purpose, after some other discourse told him, that seeing that he had oportunitie to kill the Emperour being euer neere vnto him, having charge of his perfon, hee ought to revenge the death of his brother, and then flie to him : which with others of his faction would protect and defend him against al such as should

The death of Bassianus Care

feeke to offend him. Some daies after that MACRINUS had laid this plot, it happened that the Emperour comming from a temple wherein hee had been necre to a citic called Carras; and riding smally accompanied towards the citie. he withdrew himselfe out of the way behinde a bush, to doe such things as nature required; with one Page with him to hold his horse, the rest for manners fake being withdrawne: which when MARTIALL perceived, being one of them, faining that the Emperour had called him vpon some necessarie occasion. he ranne hastily vnto him; and before that he was perceived, stabbed him in behinde; whereof he presently fell downe dead. Sparcianvs faith, that comming to helpe the Emperour to horse, he stabd him in with his poiniard, and that MARTIALL returning to take horse, from which he was alighted, he by little and little withdrew himselfe from the company : but the Page bringing newes of the Emperours death, he began to flie fo fast as his horse could runne; but could not make fuch speede, but that he was ouertaken by the Germaine horsemen of the Emperours guarde: which presently killed him. The death of BASSIANVS being ynderstoode by those which accompanied him, there grew a great tumult among them, without knowing with whom to be angrie; for as then it was vnknowne by whose order hee was slaine, and comming to the dead body of the Emperour the first that came to his aide was MACRINVS, who weeping and lamenting, feemed to be very forrowfull, and no man suspecting him or any other, all men imagining that MARTIALL had murthered BASSIANVS VPON paffion and for some private revenge. And taking the Emperours dead body they burnt it, according to the cultome then: and putting his affies into a potte, they fent them to his wife, and mother in law Ivila, which was in Antioche, who being in despaire poisoned her selfe: and so they both had such ends as they deserued. BASSIANVS at the time of his death was fully three and fortie veeres old. having raigned fixe veeres Emperour. He left one sonne which was very vong. whose name was Antoninus Heliogabalus, which he had by his wife

lethher Semea, avery diffionest woman and his cosen Germane; which liued like a strumpet. Antoninvs Bassianvs was by his surname called Caracallagoracertaine kind of apparrell which he gaue to the people of Rome: he died in the yeere of our Lord 219.

whosename was Semira, as Sparcianvs writeth, Avrelivs Victor cal-

THE



## THE LIFE OF OPILIVS MACRINVS, ONELY OF THIS

NAME, AND THE THREE AND TWENTITH ROMANE EMPEROVE.



THE ARGUMENT.



Ne Andentius having refused the Empire; for his excuse, alleadged his olde age to bee vnsit for the troubles of so important a government: but Macrimus without any such consideration accepted thereof, is being offered him by the souldiers, notwithstanding that hee was the author of the death of Caracalla. He tooke the Empire, made head against Artabanus King of Persia, who rose in armes against the Romanes in revenue of the numies done by Caracalla, and being come to a sight which continued two daies, in the end they came to an agreement: Artabanus waderstanding of the opprobrious death of his

enemie. But that fortune which had prepared a troublesome raigne for Macrinus, saw him no some out of one daunger, but it cash him into another sarre greater, which was this 3 that Heliogabalus a youth of sifteene yeeres old, being by the meanes of an old woman made Emperour, it behooved him to sight with him; and being overthroune, sted onknowne through Asarbe lesses, with intent to come to Rome; but being overtaken by the souldiers which pur such him, in a citie wherein he fell sicke, he was slaine, together with his sonne Diadumenus; whom he had made his companion in the Empire: Hawing raigned enely source monethes.

Assianvs being dead, a councell was held in the armie concerning the election of a new Emperour: for there was little account made of his forme Antoninvs Hellogabalvs; aswell for that he was but a child, as also for that his mother led such a life, that it was doubted whether

1 2

h

Audentius refifed the Empire.

Opilius Macrinus chafen Emperour.

he were the sonne of BASSIANVS or no. In the army besides MACRINVS which was Pretorian Prefect, was ANDENTIVE, a man of good fort and of veeres, very expert in the warres, and an excellent Captaine : of these two they were in great doubt, whether they should choose, and in this doubt they remained two daies. and in the end they determined to choose A VDENTIVE, who was a discreet old man, little regarded the Empire, and confidering the perils and diforders, would not accept thereof, exputing himfelfe by reason of his great age, alleaging, that he was not able to gouerne the Empire as it ought to be, a thing feldome feene that any man would refuse the Empire of the world. The men of warre perceiuing that AVDENTIVE would not accept of the Empire, presentlie made choise of MACRINUS, who was the author of the murther and death of Bassianus, and fo was he chosen, and gladly accepted of their election. This MACRINUS was of a very base stock & parentage, and which with small deferts, and by way of fauour attained to the office of Pretorian Prefect. So soone as he was chosen Emperour. he made a notable flattering Oration to the army, and payed the fouldiers, and distributed much money among them, thereby throughly to win their love and good will, and addressed himselfe with all haste against ARTABANVS King of the Parthians, who came with great power against the Romanes, to be reuenged of the injurie which BASSIANUS had done them, knowing nothing of his death. He also present lie nominated and chose a sonne of his for his companion in the Empire, whose name was DIADVMENVS, whom he made to be called ANTO-NINVs, aswell to take away the suspicion of the death of ANTONINVS BASSI-ANY s, as for that the name of ANTONINY s was very acceptable to the Romanes. in remembrance of the good Emperours ANTONINVS PIVS, and MARCUS AVRELIVS ANTONINVS: for all these Emperours did leave their owne names, or together with them did take the name of Antonini, vntill that for the abominable and execrable life of Antoninus Helio GABALUs, they left it, as we will present lie declare. He also wrote long letters to the Senate and people of Rome, reciting the manner of his election, and defiring them to approve the same, with many folemne oathes that he was not guiltie of the death of Bassianys. The Senate being certified of the death of Bassianvs, approved the election of

This new Emperour MACRINUS, and his sonne DIADUMENUS going against ARTABANVS and the Parthians, which came very strong both in footemen, in horsemen, and also brought many camels with them, and the two armies came to a most cruell battaile which lasted two daies together, wherein both the Romanes and the Parthians fought fo valiantlie, that in both daies the darke crimis and Ar- night parted the fray, and either partie cried victorie, victorie, although that in truth there was none: for the laughter and number of the dead and wounded was equall.

MACRINVS, and the election and companie of his sonne in the Empire.

MACRINUS knowing what ARTABANUS came greatly enraged by reason of the iniurie done him by BASSIANVS, sent him Heraulds and Ambassadors, certifying him of the death of BASSIANVS: and moreouer that if he defired the friendship of the Romanes, that he would graunt it. ARTABANV s being advertifed of the death of his enemie BASSIANVS, was very joyfull of the newes: for vntill then he had no intelligence thereof, and was also glad of the peace offred him, which he accepted vpon condition that all fuch prisoners as were taken by Bass I AN v s through treacherie in time of truce, should be restored; which was accordinglie performed, and they concluded a peace; and the King of the Parthians

Peace between Macrinus and Artabanus

returned home to his countrey; and MACRINV s to Antioch in Soria. Where he gaue himselfe ouer to lust and sensualitie, forgetting the government of the Empire, delaying his going to Rome, whither by letters from thence he was dayly follicited to come, wherein he committed a very great errour: for if he had left his army, and had gone to Rome, and there fetled himfelfe in the gouernment of the Empire, without all doubt both his raigne and life had lasted longer; but he taking no care of that which he ought to have done, and which most concerned him, gaue himselfe in Antioch to pastimes, pleasures, and banketting: whereat the the death of Romane souldiers began much to murmure, and to make little account of him, Carrinus. moued thereto through their defire to returne into their countrey. They also much abhorred him for that he did most cruellie punish them: for in those times loyaltie was so out of vse, and men of warre had such libertie, were so audacious, and had taken such a custome to make Emperours, that they presentlie began to repine and murmure, yea and boldlie to speake ill of MACRINVs, and to wish his death, within alittle more then one yeare after that they had given him the Empire, and within few dayes after plotted the same in this manner. In a citie of Phanicia called Emela, was yong Antoninus Heliog Aealus, who had there a Grandmother, fifter to IVLIA wife of SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, which afterwards married with her sonne in law BASSIANVS, sonne of the same SEVE-R v s. This his Grandmother whose name was M a s A, had there another nephew called ALEXIANVS, of whom more shall be said hereafter, and she also had in her companie SIMIAMIRA, mother of the faid ANTONINYS, and another which was fifter to ALEXIANVS.

This MESA was a very rich woman both in iewels and money: for the had been mother in lawe to two Emperours, the father and the sonne, and it is to be beleeued that in their life time there were infinit bribes and gifts bestowed vpon her, and so she remained thereafter the death of BASSIANVS with her daughters and nephewes. These two cosins her nephewes, MESA made Priests in a most fumptuous Temple which she builded and consecrated to the Sunne, from whence it grew that this Antoninus was called Heliogabalus, which is as much to fay, as a Priest of the Sunne: for the Phoenicians did call the Sun H E-LIOGABALVS, to which Temple for their vaine deuotions sake came many Romane fouldiers of the legions which lay there in garrison, and many from Ma-CRINVs his camp also, which this MESA Grandmother to these youths enterteined very courteouflie, bestowing many gifts upon them; and she shewing them her nephew HELIOGABALVS, vied totell them that this her nephew was sonne The policie of to their Emperour Bassianvs, whom Macrinvs had flaine by treafon. With Heliagabala these and such like effectuall speeches, she brought the matter so to such passe, Emperour. that what with the courtesie which she vsed towards them, and also for that the boy was a most fine child, they generallie began & Schim, some by seeing him, and others by report of him; so as the whole armie lound him, and defired that he might be their Lord and Emperour. And to the contrarie, MACRINVS being generallie hated of all men, fome Coronels and Captaines moued by the gifts and large promises made by this M B s A vnto them, the greatest part agreed that she should send ANTONINV s to their Camp, and then they would proclaime him Emperour. The good old woman which had bin vsed to Emperours courts, fetting all other matters apart, tooke her nephew by the hand and went with him to the Camp, and he presentlie was received for Emperour, and they sware obe-

dience unto him (as writeth HERODIANY S.) But IVLIVS CAPITOLINY S TONT.

faith, that certaine of MACRINVS his legions being in a mutinie came to seeke HELIOGABALVS. But how focuer, as both the one and the other might be, H E-LIOGABALVS accepted of the Empire, being but fifteene yeeres old: and the matter being published abroad, the newes thereof caused great alteration in mens minds, and all men began to affect him, for that he was both fonne and nephew to Emperours, and for the names fake of ANTONINV s, which they held for bleffed and facred. MACRINVS presently understood these newes in Antioch, where hee then was, and made leffe account therofthen he ought to have done, iesting PATHELIOGABALV S, for that he was but a childe, and at his mother and grandmother, deeming it sufficient to fend a Captaine of his whose name was Iv LIA-NVs, with certaine legions to befiege, and fo to ruinate him: which (as it was thought) hee might easily have accomplished, if hee had himselfe gone presently thither in person. When IVLIANVS with his troupes came, HELIOGABALYS forces were not of fufficient power to give him battaile; but being in their camp. which was well fortified and victualled, they fuffered themselves to bee besieged: but fouldiers of the one fide conferring with those of the other; and those of the Campe shewing young HELIOGABALVS to IVLIANVS his fouldiers, putting them in minde of his father, perswaded them to follow him. Whereof it insued. Lulianus a capthat they not onely did so, but apprehending their Captaine IVLIANVS, smote off his head, and went ouer to HELIOGABALVS; and the one and the other made fuch an armie, that MACRINVS determined, with his whole power to owne fouldiers. come and make head against HELIOGABALVS: and doing so, they joyned battell in the confines of Syria and Phanicia; wherein conscience and feare made HELIOGABALYS fouldiers to fight valiantly; and of MACRINYS fide only the Pretorian fouldiers fought well, but all the rest of his armie fought retchlesly, and great part thereof abandoning him went ouer to HELIOGABALV s: wherevvkere Heliogabalus had forc he accounting himselfe loft and forlome, fled from the battaile; and fo H Ethe victorie, LIOGABALVS had the victorie, MACRINVS and his sonne, with certaine of and Macrinus their friends which would not forfake him, trauailed with the greatest speed that they could make, secretly, through the cities of Asia the leffe, and came into Bithymia, with determination to get to Rome; where MACRINV sknew that his comming was much defired. But falling grieuously fick in the city of Chalcedonia, those Which HELIOGABALVS fent to purfue him, found him there; and bringing letters and commaundement to the citie, through the fame of HELIOGABALYS his victorie they were obeyed; and MACRINV slying ficke, voide of all fauour and friendship, together with his sonne, was there put to death, within one yeere

Macrinus falling ficke in Calcadonia, being ouertaken by fuch as He tiogabalus sent after him.was by them flaine. and two moneths after that hee was chosen Emperour. And being dead, all men

taine feat by

flaine by his

A battaile

fled.

Macrinus

fixed their eyes and thought vpon HELIOGARALVS. Surely it is a wonderfull and pitifull matter to confider of the infelicitie and miserie of those times, to see how many Emperours were murthered, and how wicked and vitious the most part of them were, and how small time they raigned; and that which maketh me most to wonder, is to thinke how lightly they were flaine, notwith standing that they were Lords of the whole world. And how easie a matter it was for a Captaine, having the favour and friendship of five or fixe Legions, to make himselfe to be obeyed. So as it seemeth that he which first had intelligence of the Emperors death, and was any thing friended, and therewith durst to aduenture, was commonly chosen for his fuccessor, as wee said of Iv LIANVS: And that which is worfe, that he which murdered the laft Emperour commonly became his heire; as wee fee in MacRINV and others. And touching him, of

whom wee now discourse, one feeble old woman, and a childe of fourteene or fifteene yeeres old were sufficient to ouerthrow and ruinate him, being an ancient, wife and mightie Emperour, and to bereaue him both of his life and Empire, and quietly and in peace to enjoy the fame (if the contentment and rule of the wicked may be called peace and quietnes:) whereby it appeareth more cleere then the light, how variable and inconstant all things are in this world; and that there is no other firme and stable dominion or kingdome, but in the service of God: whereof the faithfull Christians in those daies had especial care, and sought no worldly dominion Magistracies, nor Empire, but to line holie and vprightly: and so contemning the world, attained the euerlasting kingdome of heauen. And these vnhappie Infidels forbare not to commit and execute any crueltie or treafon whatfocuer, fo as they might thereby get the supreme gouernment and commaund, although it were but for three daies. And God for their finnes permitted (for the example of others) that by the same meanes whereby they obtained it, by the felfe fame they commonly loft it; being either put to death by the fword, orelse by treason, as they had done by others. And that which is worst of all together with their bodies, they loft their miserable soules; in such fort, as is said, it happened to the Emperour MACRINVS, who died in the yeere of our Lord two hundred and twentie.

#### THE LIFE OF HELIO-GABALVS, ONLY OF THAT

NAME, FIFT OF THOSE WHICH were called ANTONINI, and foure and twentith Emperor of Rome.



THE ARGVMENT.

Eliogabalus being a Priest of the Sunne, attaining to the Empire of Rome, so some as be had Taken the Imperial dignitic became so wicked, that in filthines he farre surpassed all his pre

decessors. He was most dishonest in his life, more then besitted a lasciuions and intemperate man and was so addicted to women, that be graunted them to bold a Senate by themselves When he was neere to the sea, he would eate no meates but such as were bred farre within the land: and when he was farre from it he would eate nothing but fea-fish; neither would be eate of any thing that was not of an excessive price. He was inclined to no kind of vertue neither regarded any but parasites, russians. bands, and fuch like persons, and all his actions were so abominable, and his riotousnes so great, that to write the same, were to amasse an heape of villanie. He made one which was his cosin germane. Cafar, a very honest and vertuous young man, whose name was Alexianus. He was staine by his Couldiers, who for that they could not cast him into a most filshee ditch, trailed him through the citie, and threw him into the river Tiber, he having held the Empire for a certaine time, the truth whereof is incertaine; writers doe so much differ therein. And had such a death as his most filthie life bad deferned.

ACRINV solving as he deserved. ANTONINVS HELLO-GABALVS, without any contradiction, was made Emperour: who in truth proued to be fuch, that in histories there ought no memoriall to be held of him, nor mention to be made of his life; to the end that if it were possible, no man should know that such a monster as he was, had euer attained to the maiestie of the Romane Empire, if wee had not alreadie written the liues of CALIGVLA, NERO, VI-

TELLIVS, COMMODYS, and fuch others. But as one ground commonly produceth vnholesome hearbes full of poison, and which kill; and likewise good and holesome, which heale, and also feedeth both sheepe and serpents : so in our hiftorie in recompence of these wicked Princes, we will oppose Oct AVIAN, VES-PASIAN, TITVS, TRAIANE, ADRIAN, ANTONINVS PIVS, MARCUS AVRE-LIVS, and in part SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, which were fingular Emperours, and gouerned the Empire with fuch wisedome and equitie as was requisite. And so the vices of the one are to be manifested, as well as the vertues of the other, to the end, that if any Princes of our time shall reade their lives, hee may see how abominable and detestable their doings were: and so eschewing the euill, and making choise of the good, may follow the same: and may consider how little a while those cruell vicious Emperours raigned, and what shamefull and valuckie ends they made: and how that the good lived and governed longer time, and ended their daies in peace and quiet, dying of their naturall death, except some, which were murthered by traitors, to vsurpe the Empire.

that MACRIN's was flaine, & he chosen for Emperor, he wrote the most louing and kind letters to Rome that could be imagined: but the Senate and people of Rome did hardly digest the newes, for they would rather have had MACRINVS: but daring to doe nothing to the contrarie, they yeelded obedience to HELIO-G ARALVS J of whom they presently conceived a good hope, for that which they heard of his gallant feature, and of the good constitution of his bodie, and for the names fake of Antonives, which in Rome was exceedingly much beloued and mather and go- respected. In the beginning of his raigne (by reason of his small age) all things were ordered by the counfell and direction of his grandmother MESA, and her fauourits; who taking order for all matters in the East, determined to come speedily to Rome with the young Emperour, which the put in execution: but was driuen to stay longer then she purposed, by reason of the winter which was very tempestuous: wherefore she wintred in Bithmia, where hee began to discouer his wicked inclination, giving himselfe to most odible luxurie, and apparelling him-

But comming to HELIOGAEALV s, after that he had obtained the victory, and

felfe in fuch attire as was farre vnfit for an Emperour, and feeding on most delicious fare, gaue himselfe ouer to al tensualitie: which faults his prudent old grandmother endeuoured by speech and good admonishment to reforme and amend: but the nothing profited therein. Being come to Rome, he was most folemnely receined, where he spent the whole time of his raigne in such manner, that we have nothing else to write of this Emperour, but of his abominable vices; which were fuch that I neither can nor will describe them for the filthines thereof. The first thing that he tooke in hand after his comming to Rome, was to build a Temple to Heliogabalus his god the Sunne, or Hello GABALVS, whose Priest he had bin in Phanicia; he in Reme, and would and procured that the Christians (whose number at that time was infinite) dedicated the their prayers and doe their denotion. But it pleased not God to permit that the Sunne being a creature, should, in Temples and worship, be made equal to the Creator. He shewed himselfe so effeminate and so addicted to the feminine fex. that the first time that he went to the Senate, he carried his mother Symiamira with him, and tooke order that her opinion should be demaunded in all causes: and that from thencefoorth she should be present when any matters of importance were determined: a thing neuer feetie that any woman vntill then, had any A squate of voice in the Senate of Rome. After this he made a Chapter-house or Senate apart, work in Rome by where women should meete and consult of what apparell and attire the Romane in Rome by Heliogabalus, Matrones should weare: And proceeding to a farre more shamefull practife, hee commaunded certaine Stewes to be made in his Palaces of common women, for his friends and his fauourits. And delighting himselfe so much in the companie of fuch, he commaunded upon a day all the women that could bee found of that name and life, to be affembled together; and he clad in womans attire came into the place where they were, and made a very fet and studied oration vnto them. calling them Commilitones, a word vied by Captains to their fouldiers when they would doe them honour; by calling them their fellowes and companions in armes. And the matters which therein were treated of, were inuentions and meanes how to vie their filthines and abomination: and thither he brought with him ruffians and bawdes, which were his brokers in those detestable actions and meetings. In truth this HELIOGABALVS Was fo detestable in all manner of vices, that it cannot be sufficiently expressed. He was so great a spender and so prodigall in his attire, and in the furniture of his house, in his fare and diet, and his other follies, that that which is written of him feemeth incredible. HERODIANVS and ÆLIVS LAMPRIDIVS Write his life, wherein they recount most strainge matters, befides what other authors report of him. All his studie and care was to The prodigalideuise how hee might spend excessively, and to finde out such dainties and delicates, as neuer had been thought of. Hee neuer fate but among it fweete finelling flowers, mixed with Amber, Muske, and other most exquisite sweete odours; neither would be eate any thing that should not be of an excessive price, and sought meanes to make all those things which he did cate to be most costly; and vied to fay, that that meate had no tafte, which was not deare bought. He attired himself in cloath of gold and purple, fet with pearles and most precious stones : and even in his shooes he wore stones of inestimable value. The chamber wherein he lay and all his palace, was furnished with cloath of gold, of filuer, and of filke; and his beds were of cloath of gold, of filuer, and of filke, couered with Rofes and fweete flowers; among which were strawed many iewels and pearles: And all the way whereupon hee should fet his feete, betweene his chamber and the place where



fenled a wicked and dishonest life; he spent his time in learning conversing with

learned men, and fuch as were good and honeft, and exercifing himfelfe in armes

and in fuch other practifes, as were fit for a Knight and a vertuous gentleman,

and fought excellent maisters to instruct him in all those faculties. Wherefore

allmen conceiuing good hope of him, began to loue and affect him; and the

hatred which they bare against HELIOG ABALVS daily encreased. Which he

perceiuing fought meanes to kill ALEXIANVS, or at the least to bereaue him of the name of CESAR, and his successor: But he could not bring it to passeby

reason of the diligence vsed by his grandmother in protecting him: and also for

that the men of warre decrely loued him; but vpon a time they would have flaine

HELIOGABALVS for that cause, as he was walking in a garden, where he escaped.

by hiding himselfe in a corner, so as he was not seene; and through the entreatie

of Antiochianvs who was his Pretorian Prefect, the fouldiers returned to

their campe, where remaining in a tumult and mutining, they highly threatned him: and vpon composition, they required that HELIOGABALV's should put

from about him, certaine vicious and wicked persons which were very private

with him, and which foldand gaue offices for bribes; and in fuch manner dif-

patched the busines which men had with the Emperour. They also required that

certaine of their companies might have the particular guard of ALEXANDER SEVERYS, to the end that HELIOGABALVS should not kill him; and that his

fauorites and familiars should not converse with him, for corrupting him with their euill conditions: all which demaunds were presently put in execution.

But after that the furie of the Cohorts was pacified, HELIOGABALVS returned

to his former abominable vices, gluttonies, and incredible expenses. First when

he went forth of Rome (as fometimes hee did) he had with him fixe hundred

nough, confidering his infatiable beafflines: for as he was most luxurious, so did he account it for a greatnes, to have the companie of one woman but once; ex-

cept her to whom he was maried, and that one he neither loued nor regarded.

Foras HERODIANVS reporteth, he first married a Romane ladie of a noble house to whom he gaue the name of Av G v S T A, and other titles; and within a Heliogabalia

for a matter fo religious, that she which had carnall knowledge of a man, was

buried aliue. And so he also left her and tooke another; behaving himselfe as a

most beastly barbarous man. And amongst other matters, he did one thing which

the diuell himselfe would neuer haue imagined, which was, that he commaun-

were in the morning: and he laid him to fleepe about day breaking, fo as it fee. day.

med that the world went backwards. All his studie was to finde meanes to spend

exceffinely, in his dict, and in all other things. That supper which was of least price did commonly cost thirtie pound waight of gold, which after our com-

chariots and horselitters, the principall lading whereof was most dishonest young Heliogophalus

boies and wenches, with bawdes and their interpretors, and all was little e- his progress.

while after he forfooke her and deprined her both of her name and honour : and his wines. married himselfe to a Vestall virgin; which in the vanitie of the Gentiles was held

ded that all businesses to be done by day, should be dispatched by night; and that Heliogabalus

all fuch things as were to be done by night, should be done by day; and so he turned the day

arose from his bed at the sunne setting, and was then saluted as other Emperours t'enish into

putation, might amount to the value of aboue a thouland pounds starling, and neliozabalus

there were some which did cost threescore thousand crownes. And sometimes his diet.

he tooke horse or coach, when he would ride abroad, he made to be covered with the powder of gold and filuer: for hee disdained to tread vpon the earth as other mendid. All his tables, chefts, chaires, and veffels of service for his chamber, even to the baiest offices, as close stooles, chamber-pots, and such like, were all of fine gold. He made no account of wax light, but had in his hall and chambers great lampes, which in freed of oile burned most excellent Balsame, brought from Indea and Arabia: and even his very vrinals were made of Onyx and other most precious fromes. His expences were fo infinite and fo excessive, that no kings reuenewes in the world were sufficient to defray the charge thereof, but his onely: for he did eate and deuoure all the revenewes and rents of Spaine, France, Africa, part of Germanie, Italie, England, Sicilia, Gracia, Asia, Syria, Egypt, Arabia, and of all the Ilands and provinces of the world; and vetall this was not fufficient but that he endured want, by reason of his prodigious expences: for hee neuer ware any one fute of apparell twice, being fuch as wee haue faid. His fingers were euer full of rings, and those which he had once put off, he neuer ware any more : and so in plate of gold or filuer, he would never drinke twice of one cup, which hee gave to him that served and attended on him that day. And the very Bathes wherein hee did yfe to bathe himfelfe, must be new builded and furnished with perfumes, and most precious odours; and after once bathing they were to be throwne downe: fo as they builded new Bathes continually. His mattreffes and beds were neither of wooll, flox, nor feathers; but of the fine flaxe of Hares, and of the downe growing ynder the wings of Partridges. He made certaine feafts in Rome, which were the greatest and most costly that ever were made: and hee made to the citizens and to the fouldiers a doale and distribution of money and corne, to an indicible value. After the feasts and facrifices were ended he gaue to the people (as H E R o-DIANY s reporteth) a great abundance of plate, of gold, filuer, and other iewels; which truly was the cause why they endured this detestable man the small time that he lived in the Empire: for the defire of those gifts and benefits which they enjoyed by him, as also for that his grandmother, being a most wife and discreete woman, fought by all meanes to reforme his voluptuous fenfualitie and rioting, and to procure a good order in the gouernment. But there were great opprefsions in the prouinces; and the barbarous nations inuaded the frontiers of the Empire. For he gaue all offices and places of charge vnto wicked men, which did accompanie him in his abominations, and by their counfell hee was gouerned: for depriving all good and vertuous men from all charge, he fent them into exile. Among which his fauourites one whose name was Z o TIC v s was so private and in fuch fauour with him, that hee was held as a Lord ouer all the rest. This mans counfell was as a law ynto him, and by his direction all offices and Magistracies were fold; and he made Confuls fuch as were the fonnes of flaues and men of most base condition. The like order he observed in the chusing of Captaines and Lieutenants, giuing those charges vnto base and simple men: for which and his other vices, notwithstanding that they made benefit of his prodigalitie, yet both the people and fouldiers began to wish his death, so as he was oftentimes in great daunger thereof. Which when his mother and grandmother perceived, they perfwaded him to adopt his cofin germane ALEXIANVS, and to make him his companion in the Empire, who was the fon of M A M E Ahis mothers fifter, which he performed accordingly, and ALEXIANVS Was called ALEXANDER SEVE-RVS; ALEXANDER after the name of the great ALEXANDER K. of Macedonia; and Severvs after Septimivs Severvs, grandfather to Helio GABALVS.

wourite of Heliogabalus.

uerus chofen by Heliogabalus

he promifed to giue his guests a Phenix to eate, whereof (they fay) there is but

one in the world, or else he would give them a great quantitie of gold for it: which he afterwards performed. When he was necreto the fea, he would neuer eate any fish, but land fowle, and other flesh which should be brought from farre. And when he was farre from the fea, he would eate nothing but fish, which by Posts was brought fresh and aliue, to the end that it should be deere and costly. And for the same reason he would eate such things as were never thought of and had a great quantitie of eucry thing: as of the combes of Cockes, the tongues of Pecockes and of Nightingales. To all his whole court (which was without number) he made ordinarily to be giuen to eate, certaine great beafts, stuffed or farced with puddings, made of the liuers and lights of Peacockes, of small birds braines, Partridges egges, Parrots, and Phesants heads. He also kept certaine dogs and hounds, which did eate nothing but the foules of Geefe: and his Lions '(which were many) were fed with Phesants and other costly birds, for this was all his studie. Truly who so shall well consider of this mans expences, may coniecture what these things aforesaid might cost; and how hard they were to be gotten. He also spent infinit summes of money in keeping in Rome, some of all kinds of the most fierce wild beasts in the world, which were brought from straunge farre countries, as Lions, Panthers, Ounces, Tigres, Hippotames, Crocodiles and many other such like. And if hee were by the sea side, hee accounted it a speciall greatnes of minde to finke such shipping, as he should finde there loden with merchandise, paying afterwards the worth of both shippe and goods. And being vpon a time reproued thereof by a friend, who asked him what he ment to wast and consume so much; warning him to take heede that he flood not in neede thereof hereafter, whereto he answered saying, what better thing can there be, then, for a man to be heire to himselfe ? And said moreouer, that he defired not to have any childre, for that they peraduenture through desire to rule would conspire against him. Finally, the vices and filthie conditions of this wicked Emperour were such; that in that kinde, none either before or after him was to be compared with him : wherefore I will not fpend any longer time in so bad a subject; for the rest of his doings were so filthic and abominable, that they neither may well be written, neither ought to be published; and so could not long be endured: neither were the meanes vsed by his grandmother Mas a sufficient to protect him; nor to asswage the wrath and rage of the people, conceived against him. Having (according to HERODIANVS) raigned fixe yeeres: yet AVRBLIVS VICTOR, and EVTROPIVS faith, that he raigned but two yeeres and eight monthes, the Pretorian fouldiers conspired against him. And as AELIV's LAMPRIDIV's reporteth, they came one day armed from their lodging and campe, and after that they had flaine the most part of his feruants, and fuch as were his companions in his beaffly actions, they killed him in this manner. First they haled him out of a privie, wherein he (flying from them) had hidden himselfe; and then drawing him from thence, they threw him into a most filthic sincke: from whence (for that therein was not roome enough for him) they trailed him like a dogge through the principall places of Rome, and threw him into the river Tiber, and tied great stones and waights about him, to the end that his body should neuer be found againe, and fo want buriall. All this was done to the good liking and concentment of the people; and the Senate also approoued the same, and commaunded that hee should no more be called ANTONINVS; and that in detestation of him, no other Emperour should euer afterwards be called by that name; and that he should

The vituperable death of Heliogabalus.

be called TIBERINV s, according to the manner of his death. HERODIANVS WIIteth, that he was put to death in the Campe out of Rome, whither hee went with his cosen ALEXANDER SEVERVS: and that they killed his mother also, which went thither with them. Wherefoeuer it was, it was in this manner, and he died according to his deferts, and conformable to the life which he had led: for it is the will of God, that wicked princes make cuill ends. For being by his divine prouidence made lords to gouerne and giue good example to their people, to minister justice and equitie, and to correct and punish the wicked and malefactors, these by their owne euillexample hurtand corrupt others; and protect and support the wicked. Let Kings and great Lords and Princes know, that as they have greater power then others, so have they leffer libertie to finne and commit wickednes; and fo God inflicteth greater shame and punishment vpon them, then vpon other men. HELIOGABALVS after the opinion of HE-RODIANVS, died at the age of twentie yeeres : for he faith that he raigned fixe yeeres; and all agree that at the age of fourteene veeres, he came to the Empire. AVRELIVS VICTOR faith, that he died in the feuenteenth veere of his age, and is of opinion that he raigned not fully three yeeres, which (according to Evs E BIVs) was in the yeere of our Lord 224. whereby it appeareth that this Emperour raigned not aboue foure yeeres, and fo the fame Evs affirmeth in his ec- Ann, dom. 224, clesiasticall Historie.

### THE LIFE OF ALEXANDER SEVERVS, ONLY OF THIS

NAME, SECOND OF THE SEVERI, AND FIVE AND TWENTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME



THE ARGUMENT.

A Fier the death of Heliogabalus, his cosen Alexander Senerus tooke the Empire, under whom it seemed that the Romane common-wealth had a breathing: for he retaining in the imperiall V

bestowed

dignitic, those good conditions which before be seemed to have, would that all causes should be ordered and goucrned by wise and learned men. He was very seurce to sudges, should be those which for bribes or other meanes had swarmed from the right line of reason and equitie. It was warres be was most fortunate, as a man which gouerned with wisedome, and returned to Rome tremmphing from the East, to the great contentment of the Romane people. He was wo enough to the Christians, but game libertie to such as would, to become Christians, setting up the image of Christians in the Templet of the main to have erected a particular Templet is but name, but was diverted by his Priests. Finally, the Germane souldiers unable to indure the sewrite of his militarie discipline, she him, together with his mother Mammea, instigated thereto by one Maximinus. His death was much deplored in Rome; for it was hoped, that seeing that in his youth be governed sould be would do much better when he should come to riper yeeres.



First the darke clowdes of the forepassed miseries and forrowes which miserable Rome had indured, it pleased God to graunt light, joy, and contentment: for when this accursed H ELIO G ABALVS was dead, by the common consent of the Senate, and of the Romane people, and of all the men of warre, his cosen german.

man ALEXANDER SEVERY'S aforenamed, was fworne and obeyed for Emperour, who was the sonne of HELIOGABALV s mothers fifter called MAMMEA; and his fathers name was VARIVS, borne in Syria, in a citie called Auerfa. He came to the Empire being of the age of 16. yeeres, and gouerned the same little more then 13. yeeres, with such wisedome and goodnes, that he is accounted for one of the best Emperours that ever hath bin in the world: whereto was a great help the discretion and wise counsell of his mother, who was a fingular good and wife woman, vnto whom her sonne was most obedient. A # LIV \$ LAMPRIDIVS, and HERODIANVS report so many excellencies of this Emperour, that of necessitie I must needes make some little stay, as in a pleasing place. First, he was much affected to literature, and having excellent and singular men for his maifters and tutors, he was very skilfull in all the liberall sciences, and was excellent in euery thing: for he was agood Mathematician, and did perfectlie understand the rules of Geometric. He was much delighted with Musick, and could paint and carue very well; and also had good skill in Song, but he neuer fung except in secret, in the hearing of some of his chamber. He was a very good Poet, and wrote some works in verse, and could play on the viols, the organes, and the flute, more then indifferentlie well, but after that he was Emperourno man euer faw him do it. Vnspeakeable was the ioy which was made in Rome vpon the day of his election, and comming to the Empire; and infinite were the bleffings which by the Senat & people of Rome were powred vpo him that day. Beginning his raigne with the love and good will of all men, he governed the same with fuch discretion, as made him to seeme rather a wise old man then a youth, and by the aduite and counfell of his wife mother, he chofe the wifeft, beft, and most experienced men that could be found for his counsellers : and he neither did, nor decreed any thing without their opinion and aduife; notwithstanding that of himselse he was of singular judgement, and so wise, that no man could deceiue him. Principallie he had euer neere vnto him Domicivs Vipianvs a most wise and excellent Lawyer, a man of a good and holie life, by whose counsell he did chiefely dispose of all matters in his gouernment : although that at that time there met to be of his counsell FABIVS SABINVS a just and veright man, who was called the Caro of his time; and with these Pomponivs and Alephe-NYS, AFRICANYS, VENYLEIVS, MODESTINYS, IVLIVS PAVLYS, MECIA-

mother.

Senerus his

VV ise and learned men Alexander Seuerus bis Counsellers.

NVS, CELSUS, PROCULUS, MARTIANUS, CALISTRATUS FLORENTINUS, all noble, vertuous and most learned men in the lawes, and which had bin schollers of the great PAPINIAN VS. vnto which he conjoined other most noble men both in bloud and life, as was his kinfeman CATILIVS SEVERVS, CAIVS MAR-CELLYS, AELIVS SERENIANVS, which were good and vpright men, and others, which he found out to the end, that he might in all things follow their directions and aduife as he euer did, by reason whereof his government was prefentlie highlie extolled and praifed, and there was a fodgine alteration and amendment in all things: for in the time of HELIOGABALY s, and of his father BASSIANVS many abuses & disorders were committed and permitted. Whereforethe first thing that ALEXANDER SEVERVS did, was to reforme all the estates, first reformed offices, and magistracies in his owne house, and imperiall pallace, displacing and his owne house, and imperiall pallace, displacing and discharging all those vicious and dishonest persons which HELIOGABALVS had established therein; and would not admit any man to his service, or to any office in his house, that was not an honest man, and of good same and behausour. The like he did by all the Judges which HELIOGABALVS had made; and also in the Senate and in the order of Knighthood, he restored to their offices and dignities those which vniustlie had been deprived thereof. He observed so good a rule and order in his government, that all matters of inflice were to be determined by men learned in the lawes: and matters concerning the warres were handled by wife men, and fuch as had experience therein; and by fuch wife old men as were well read in antiquities, and in auncient histories. Finally, he neuer gaue any charge to any man either for fauour or reward, but for defert and sufficiencie only, being thereto chosen by him and the Senate. He held another custome which in my opinion was very profitable; that when he purposed to send to any citie or prouince any new gouernour, he gaue them to vnderstand thereof, making his name knowne to them before hand, to the end that if any man could alleadge any cause against him, why he ought not to be preferred, another might be prouided: but the allegation must be just and true, otherwise they were grienouslie punished which did falsely slander or defame him. This custome he said. he learned of the Christians of that time, which chose their Priests and Bishops by voices, for their vertues and excellencies fake, and in no case he would permit nor diffemble that any office of iustice of what kind socuer it were, should be bought or fold; and made diligent enquirie thereof, and did rigorouslie punish the offenders: for faid he, who buieth his office, must fell instice: and I cannot The savines endure Merchants of charges and offices: for if I tolerate them, I cannot after- of Alexander, ward condemne their doings; for I shall be ashamed to punish him that bought, feeing that I permitted him to buy. Besides all this, he was a most seucre punisher of fuch Judges as tooke bribes, and vied to fay, that he alwayes had his finger in a readines to pull out that Iudges eyes which was partiall, or a receiver of bribes and rewards. And he was herein to extreme, that amongst other Senators one comming to him to do him reuerence which had been accused thereof, he cryed out alowd, and faid, that ARABINYS (for so was his name) did not only liue, but did also hold him for sencelesse, and of no worth, seeing that he did dare to prefume to appeare in his presence: and so they write of him, that he seeing an vniust corrupt Judge, was so troubled therewith, and choler did so much abound and ouercome him, hat it made him to vomit. To the contrarie, he did greatlie honor those Goue nours and Judges which were good, and when he passed through their prouinces, he tooke them into his litter or chariot with him, and

Alexander liberall, but bestowed many fauours and rewards your them, and throughlie to vinderstand the truth concerning these men, he vied singular diligence and care, the manner whereof was this: He had certaine secret and vnknowne chosen honest men. which diligentlie looked into the dealings of Magistrates, and fought to know the truth of all that passed in all places and provinces in the Empire. Which care. I would to God that the Princes of our time had: for besides that iustice should then be duly executed, they should know the good from the bad; and then they should also know of many injuries done in secret, which for feare are concealed by those which endure them: so as the truth neuer commeth to light, and the errors and abuses are seldome punished. SEVERVS would also that good Judges. Gouernors and Magistrates should remaine long in their offices and charges, and did vse to say, that it was not a sufficient punishment to deprive an euill Gouernor of his charge, but to give him most severe punishment, year even so far forth as to bereaue him of life. When he fent any one to succeede in the place where had bin a good Judge, he fent to him to give him thanks in the name and behalfe of the whole commonwealth, and bestowed rewards vpon him, as possessions, heards of cattell, and corne, with many other things. As for money he gaue but little, for this Prince although he was very liberall, yet was he nothing prodigall; and the gifts which he gaue were for the most part such goods as fell to him by confiscation, and by order of law and inflice, and such things as became void by fome mens death, which died without iffue and heires, and so fell to him. Burof his money he was ever very sparing: for he ysed to say, that the publike rents and reuenues ought not to be spent, but in publike buildings, in the warres, and in publike matters, and not vpo the Princes fauorits & familiars: and so both within & without Rome he builded most sumptuous & proud edifices of Palaces, Bathes, Theatres, courts of Audience, and many other. He also diminished the ordinarie charges of his house, and reduced it to a convenient order, abolishing the superfluous expences of his predecessors. He apparelled himselfe decentile, but not costlie, and neuer ware any precious stones or iewels, neither would he have any in his chamber, holding it for a vanitie, that a thing of so small a quantitie should be of so great a price. His diet was ordinarie, neither delicious nor costlie. He was a great feeder, for he had a good and a strong stomach, not that he tooke any delight therein. In drinking he was very temperate, and neuer exceeded mediocritic. And although he were very carefull in his publick rents, and the incommings of his Exchequer, yet he neuer increased the same, neither invented any new impositions, but rather mitigated and limited those which HELIOGABA-LVs had imposed: so as in his time the third part of the tribute was not paid, as was in the time of his predeceffors. He also reformed the coines of gold and filuer, and the course thereof; so as although it cannot be denied, but that he was most carefull in augmenting his treasure, and in preserving the same, yet he cannot be charged to haue wronged or endomaged any man. He punished all offences ordinarily, but without crueltie: and aboue all he was most seuere against theeues, vpon whom he had no mercie, but was very liberall to fuch as he knew to be poore, to the end, they should have no occasion to steale, or to couet other mens goods. In all other actions he was very mercifull, and shewed great clemencie, in such sort that in his time there was not any Senator put to death, neither any other man, but that his acculation was throughlie heard, and his offence sufficientlie proued. He neuer gaue any office or charge of gouernment for fauour, or in reward of service done him, but for defert, and vsed to say, that offices

and places of charge, were not to be given to those which sought or procured to have them, but to those which refused them. He never chose any Senatour, but by the voice and confent of all the whole Senate: much leffe he made any man a Knight that was the sonne of a bondman, or of base condition; as other Emperours had done. Besides all this, he was so affable and so gentle in condition, that he admitted any man into his presence, and heard him gladly. He louinglie visited the principall men in time of their ficknes, and permitted any man to informe him in person of his affaires; and having heard and vnderstood the demaunds to be reasonable, he perfourmed their requests: if otherwise, he debated the matter with them, and made them to see their errour. Being sometimes reproued by his mother and his wife, which was the daughter of Svipirivs (a man worthic to haue bin, or else had bin Consul) alleaging that he being so private and familiar, made his raigne of leffe authoritie and reputation: whereto he answered, that it was true, but yet, that it was thereby the more firme and durable. Among all his vertues, he had one which did excell, whereby it is to be beleeved, that although that he were an infidel, yet God gaue him the grace to gouerne well, which was, that he permitted all those which would be Christians to be so : so that in all his time there was no perfecution, neither were the Christians grieued, and in his temples he had the image and picture of CHRIST, and of ABRAHAM: beld the image but as a blind man without knowledge, he accounted him amongst his other of christ and gods, and would have adored and acknowledged Christ for a God, and have in his temples. builded him a temple apart, if he had not bin diffwaded by his Priefts. Notwithstanding all these good conditions wherewith this Prince was adorned, the people did not forbeare to murmur against him, complaining that he was too much ruled by his mother, who was reported to be a most couctous woman, although that in all other matters she was held for excellentlie wise, and very honest and vertuous. A LEXANDER holding fo good a forme and rule of government in time of peace, failed not to do the like in time of warre, and in the exercise of militarie discipline, so as in the warres which arose, he throughlie performed the office and dutie of a good and most valiant Captaine, especiallie in those which were most dangerous, as in briefe I will declare, particularlie in those which he had against the Persians, wherein he obteined most noble victories; and although that HERODIANV s writeth otherwise, yet in this place he is not to be beleeued, for all other writers affirme the contrarie. And this his notable victorie against ARTAXERXES the mightie King of the Persians is recited by ARLIVS LAMPRIDIUS, EVIROPIUS, SEXTUS AVRELIUS VICTOR, EVSEBIUS, PAVLVS OROSIVS, and other auncient authors: fo as HERODIANVS only writeth this warre after another manner to the dishonor of A LEXANDER, being deceiued by false information or report, or otherwise of malice, or vpon some particular occasion.

To the end that the reader may the better understand this warre which A LEX-AND ER had with the Persians, it shall be requisite that he call to memorie, that in the old time wherein the most mightie King Cyrus passed the Monarchie from the Medes to the Persians, ouercomming King AsTYAGES; this their Monar- fuccession and chie and dominion lasted two hundred and odde yeeres, and they grew extreme-continuence of lyrich and mightie, more then I am able to expresse; vntill that in the time of the kingdome DARIVS, who gouerned infinite Nations and provinces, ALEXANDER the of the Perfant. Great gross against him and entred Asia, and comming to a battaile with him, DARIVS Was ouerthrowne and died, and ALEXANDER made himselfe Lord of

Afia, and so the Monarchie of the Persians ended, passing to the Greekes: and the kingdomes of Asia remained for some space under the successors of ALEX-ANDER the Great; vntill that a most valiant man whose name was ARSACES, borne in the countrie of the Parthians, arose and made himselfe King; whereby the dominion of the descendents and linage of the Greekes, was transported to the Parthians, and became a most famous kingdome, and greatly feared during the time of his successors, which lasted aboue foure hundred yeeres; and the most of them (after his name) were called ARSACES. With this Nation of the Parthians the Romanes had often very daungerous warres, and cuer stood in feare of them.

ARTABANVS being King of the Parthians (of whom in the life of BASSIA-NVs and MACRINVS we made mention) a Persian borne, being a man of base li-tooke armes and rebelled, and by little and little grew to bee very mightie; and comming to a battaile with the faid ARTABANVS, hee ouerthrew and flew him. and made himselfe a mightie King. And so hee againe restored the kingdome of the Persians, and defeated the kingdome of the Parthians; which the Romanes were neuer able to doe. And he published a fame and report that hee would reftore the kingdome of the Persians to their ancient power and greatnes: and not content herewith, he began to inuade the borders of the Romane Empire, infesting the countries of Syria and Mesoperamia. These newes being brought to A-LEXANDER, Who was then in Rome, and had therein raigned three yeeres in peace, exceedingly beloued of all men; and having intelligence of the power and forces of this King, duly confidering thereof, and holding the action to be very honourable: hee presently with all expedition made preparation for this warre. and went himselfe in person into Asia with an infinite number of men of warre. HERODIANVS Writeth that he first fent his Ambaffadors vinto ARTAKER XES. requiring him to containe himselfe without the bounds of the Empire, and to line in peace with him. Which request ARTAXERXES (seeing himselfe rich in treasure and very mightie) would not performe; perswading himselfe that it was an easie matter for him to become Lord of all Asia. SEVERVS being come into Syria, the warres began in either fide to be very cruel and bloudie. In which warre he observed so good order and discipline, that it hath not been read or heard, that any other excellent Captaine hath shewed greater judgement, or vsed greater diligence. First he maintained such instice and equitie in his armie, and so seuerely punished theft, robberies, violences, iniuries, and misdemeanours committed, by his fouldiers, that his Campe feemed to be a very well gouerned citie. He was extremely carefull concerning munition and victuals, as well to prouide them, as to preserve them; and that no man should robbe, or defraud any man: so as if any Captaine or Corronel detained neuer fo fmall a quantitie of his fouldiers allowance in any thing, he was condemned to die. And in all other things hee was very diligent and carefull, principally in curing those which were ficke or wounded in the armie. He endenoured that all his fouldiers should alwaies be in very good order, well apparelled, and well armed, and their horfes very readie and well furnished, their Ensignes and Tents very neare, and very good. He behaued himselse very familiarly with his fouldiers, and while as hee was at dinner and supper, his Waterbeman- Paulion stood euer open, and hee fare in the view and fight of all men, having no other meate, but fuch as all the rest did eate. Besides all this, he paid his souldiers with advantage, and bestowed many rewards upon them: and otherwise hee was

VV arres with the Persians.

The fingular good orders at the armies.

of Alexander

most cruell and seuere in punishing offences; so as if his armie marched among gardens and orchards, they committed not any thing that might descrue to be reprehended; and he that did otherwise, was whipped with rods of iron. But if hee were a man of worth and of dignitie, he reprodued him with fliarpe and reprochfall speeches; having these words ever in his mouth; Doe not that to another, which thou wouldest not that another should doe vnto thee: which he learned(as he faid) of the Christians. Other more hainous offences or mutinies, he punished with fuch rigour, that fometimes hee tithed whole legions, which was to put to death the tenth man of all the legion. He did as little endure that any Captaine or Corronel should wrong any fouldier, or that he should diminish the least part of What it is to a fouldiers pay, or allowance. And if he faw that a fouldier was poore and out of apparell, he relieued him with what he thought necessarie for him:for(quoth he) how can that fouldier liue vnder due commaund, which hath not clothes on his backe, and money in his purse? for hunger and penurie will put him in despaire, and make him aduenture to doe that which he ought not. For these and such like

Returning to the warres of the Persians, I say, that during the time that it lasted,

matters, which would be long to relate, this Emperor was infinitely beloued, and feared by all his men of warre, and in his time fouldiers were better ordred, gouerned and trained, then in the time of any other Emperour.

there passed betweene the armies of the one and other partie, many great battailes and encounters; wherein were done many very notable feates of armes, vitill that at the last they came to a battaile wherein they joyned with all their whole forces; ARTAXERXES bringing in his armie an innumerable companie of footmen, and 130000. horsemen; all very hautie proude men, for the victories one hundred which they had lately obtained against the Parthians; and had moreouer in his and thirtie armie seuen hundred Elephants, and one thousand and eight hundred chariots armed with sieths, which the Persians then ysed in the warres. And the Emperour mie. of the other fide brought so many and such men, both of soote and horse, as hee who was Lord and commaunder of the Romane Empire might be able to leuie. SEVER vs in this battaile performing the office of an excellent Captaine, visiting enery squadron, incouraging the souldiers with most kind speeches, calling them A most great by their proper names, promifing them great rewards, and fighting in person a battaile fought by their proper names, promining them great revailes, and fighting in period a baweenethe great part of the day like a valiant Knight; in the eneming (for fo long did the baweenethe Romanic and fight continue) he wanne one of the most fierce and cruell battailes that ener was the Perfunt. fought in the world. The King  $\mathbf{A}$  R T A X E R X E s escaped by flight, and there were

flaine in that battaile tenne thousand horsemen, and so many footmen, that they could not be numbred: as it appeareth by the oration and speech which S E y E-R v s deliuered in the Senate after his returne to Rome, which is recited by L A M-PRIDIVS. And by the same it appeareth that there were slaine by the Romanes two hundred Elephants, and that three hundred were taken, with one thousand armed chariots, and a great number of Persians; which afterwards were ransomed for a great summe of money. So as after this victorie the Emperour, without any refistance, recouered those lands and countries which the mightie ARTAX ERXES had taken : and passing through Mesopetamia he enlarged the bounds of the Empire; and leaving therein such a guard as he thought fit, he returned to the

citie of Antioch. And being in that citie (according to the cultome of the Romane Generals)he paid his fouldiers, and gaue them great rewards, dividing the spoiles of the victorie among them; so as they remained infinitely toyfull and well contented. And so leaving all parts of the East in peace and quiet, hee returned to

Alexander came into Rome in triumph.

The victorie of Furius Colfus in Africa.

> WVarres betuveene Senerus and the Germanes.

> > Alexander by his Germane ther with his mother Mam-

Rome, where he entred in triumph with greater folemnitie and preparation, then euer any had triumphed before him; his chariot being drawne (to the wonder of the beholders) by Elephants, which hee had taken : and all the people and Senate of Rome bleffed him, and received him with inspeakeable gladnes. And at that instant FURIUS CELSUS obtained a great victorie against the Mauritanians and Tingitanians in Africa, which rebelled. And in Germanie, VARIVS MACRINVS hadvery good successe: and from Armenia, IVNIVS PALMATUS returned with victorie. After that this triumph was ended, SEVERV s made the accustomed doale and distribution among the souldiers and people of Rome, with the feafts and ordinarie huntings: remaining in Rome certaine yeares in hearing causes and doing iustice. And in such fort hee divided the houres, that there was no iot of time loft; and the time of leafure he spent in reading of excellent books; principally the bookes of PLATOES Common-wealth, and TVLLIES Offices; and he didalfo often vie to reade the Poets, HORAC E, and VIRGIL. And he liuing thus in peace and tranquillitie, deerely beloued by the Romanes, and by all the provinces subject to the Empire; it being about the thirteenth yeere of his raigne, the Germanes and other northerly nations, with fuch furie, and fuch infinite numbers of men(as in former time they had vied to doe)tooke armes against the Empire; so as having past the rivers Danuby and the Rhine, they put all Italy in greatfeare. By reason whereof the good Emperour ALEXANDER SEVERVS with all haste departed from Rome, with the best and greatest forces that hee then could leuie: Which was not done without great griefe and heauines of the Romane people, so deerely was hee generally beloued. And then the warres began betweene his forces and the Germanes, wherein notwithstanding that his enemies were very mightie; yet through his great diligence and valour hee repressed their furie, in fuch fort, that they were daily put to the worst in all skirmishes and encounters, which passed betweene them. But the ordinarie legions which lay there in garrison, accustomed to rapine and other disorders, permitted in the time of HELIOGABALVS; so as the Emperour was neither able to endure their insolencie, neither they his equitie: for vertue, and vice cannot dwell togethers. Whereupon they conspired amongst themselves to kill him, and to chuse one MAXIMINVS a most valiant old souldier for Emperour, whom SEVERVS had made a Captaine of Tyrones (for so did they call new souldiers) which their deuice they afterwards put in execution. Others write that the cause of his death was for that following his mothers counsell in amassing of treasure, he was not so liberall to his men of warre and others, as he ought to have been; and also for that he had determined in his counsell, to leave the warres of Germanie, and to goe into the East: for which cause the souldiers conceived great hatred against him. But I hold the first for the most certaine cause; of which opinion were LAMPRIDIVS. and IVLIVS CAPITOLINVS, writing his life, and the life of MAXIMINVS. Finally, what foeuer the occasion was, the legions of Germanie killed him, the good Emperour being in his Tent, voide of all mustrust and suspition, neere vnto the citie of Magunia, or Mentz. And together with him, they flew his mother M A M-Guidiers, toge- MEA, Which they did by the counfell and aduice of the accurfed MAXIMINVS, who was afterwards his fuccessor. HER ODIANVS and AVRELIVS VICTOR write, that before that they murthered him, they made the o her Emperour. S E-VERY S was twentie nine yeeres, three moneths and seuen daies old when he was murthered, and had raigned thirteene yeeres and nine daies. His death was more lainented in Rome, and with greater forrow then euer was any Emperours before

him 3 and all the cities and prouinces of the Empire were extremely grieved therat. In this manner was this most excellent and most vertuous Prince slaine by treason, who neuer had commaunded any man to bee flaine, in the yeere of our Lord 227. And although that we reade that he was married, yet wee reade not of any children that he left behind him.

### THE LIFE OF MAXI-MINVS, ONLY OF THAT

NAME, AND SIXE AND TWENtith Emperour of Rome.



#### THE ARGVMENT.



Aximinus was a Thracian borne, of a base and ignoble house, but he attained to credit through the actiuity of his body, which brought him into fauour with many Emperours; yet Heliogabalus did not greatly please him, being riotous and lascinious. But fortune, as it is blind, so doth it blindly bestow her benefits and fanours, and advanced him in the end to the Imperiall dignitie : wherein he behaued himfelfe fo cruell and tyrannously, that poore Rome could never have had a worse, or more wicked Prince. He first upon sundrie occasions put to death all Alexanders friends: and being ashamed of his owne linage, he also put

to death all such as had knowne his father. And shewing himselfe very courteous in his doings, he turned against the Christians, and vied against them new and unaccustomed torments. He disconered a conspiracie, which he punished senerely; and sought to continue the lone of his souldiers, being of opinion that it lay in them as well to support him in the Empire, as it did to vine it him. He warred against the Germanes and was of so hatefull a nature, and so cruell, that in a manner all the whole Empire rebelled against him. And in his life time the old Gordianus was made Emperour in Africa. But abone all the other rebellions, that of Rome did most displease him; against which, comming in a great rage of having in a manner believed it, he was flain by some Romane souldiers, considering the miseries which their countrie was likely to have endured, if Maximinus obtained the evictorie. And to the end that no memoriall should remaine of so wicked and so cruell a man, they New his some also; whose heads being carred to Rome, brought great contentment to the citie.

Ow great good a good Prince bringeth into the world, and how dammageable and harmefull it is to lose him; the death of A-LEXANDER SEVERYS did fufficiently manifest to the Romane Empire; which during his life time enjoyed all the contentation that could be defired, of equitie, clemencie, and tranquillitie. And he dying, and that cruell monster MAXIMINVS suc-

ceeding him, who raigned but three yeeres; in exchaunge of these and other bles fings, there enfued discord, civill warres, wrongs, robberies, cruelties, feditions and other calamities. Wherefore, in my opinion, men ought more earnestly and with greater instancie to pray to God to send them a good King and gouernour, then for health, wealth, or long life: for in the raigne of a wicked and vniust Prince, vices abound, which corrupt good customes and manners, and vertue is Suppressed and men live in dayinger both of life and goods. And in the time of a good Lord and gouernour, all these defects are repaired and amended: for the rust raigning, the wicked amend and become vertuous. For (as the Philosophers fav) Such as is the Prince, fuch will be the fubiects: fo as hee which prayeth for a good King, may justly be faid to pray for the benefit of the whole kingdome: For it doth oftentimes plainly appeare, that more and greater benefits are reaped through the diligence and industrie of a good husbandman, then of the fertilitie of the earth. And so we see that some places which are barren, doe abound with necessaries to the vse of mans life; and to the contrarie, other places which are most fertill, through cuill gouernment, become wilde and ouergrowne with weedes, yeeld little profit. And so the histories, and experience doe shew vs, that in time of good and peaceable Kings, men grow rich and mount to estates and dignities: and in time of troubles and calamities which happen when the gouernment is in the hand of tyrants, many lose their estates and lines, and sometimes their foules, by their meanes, and all things goe to confusion and out of or-

But comming to our historie, the good Emperour SEVERVS being dead, as he had neither some nor brother that might challenge the Empire; and MAXI-MINV s being the chiefe man in the armie, and of greater might and strength then any other they all agreed to chuse and sweare him for Emperour, willingly yeelding obedience vnto him, which they ought not to have done: for hee prooued to be wicked, cruell, and couetous; notwithstanding that hee was old and loden with yeeres. And because that this man was of a notable stature of bodie, and came to the Empire by great aduenture. I will briefly declare the fuccesse of his life, which I prefume will be a pleafing hiftorie.

Maximinus bis linage.

Maximinus chofen Empe-

The flature

This MAXIMINUS was the fonne of a man whosename was NICEA, borne in Gotland, and his mothers name was ABABA, of the nation of the Alanes, which lived in a village in Thracia; fo as of either fide he descended of most fierce nations; and he afterwards grew to be so tall of stature, that he seemed to be a Giant: for (as IVLIVS CAPITOLINVS reporteth) he was eight and a halfe geometricall feete high, which is two foote and a halfe more then we fee any man ordinarilie to be in these daies. And as he had a great bodie, so had he all parts thereof proportionable to his greatnes: for he had a good face and was very faire, with

greatfull eies, and was so extremely strong, that a cart heaville loden, and which two oxen could hardlie moue, he would eafily draw and turne at his pleasure; The force and and with his fift he brake a horses leg: and (as IVLIVS CAPITOLINVS saith) bodily strength of Maximians. striking a horse in the chap with his fist, he brake out all his teeth, and with a fourne with his foote, he split him in pieces: and also with his fift he brake a stone. and with his hands cleft a tree, and did many other things, which were they not recorded by very true authors, would be accounted for fables. And befides all this he was of fo great courage, that he was neuer knowne to stand in feare of any thing, and was naturallie fierce, prowd, and prefumptuous, and made no account of any man. His bringing vp when he was a boy, was in keeping of beafts (for his parents were poore, and lived in the countrey) and afterwards his mind increafing with the strength of his bodie, he came to the Romane armie to seeke enterteinement to be a fouldier, and to follow the warres: where by reason of his greatnes of bodie and his extreme strength, he was soone knowne, and admired of all men, which was in the raigne of SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, who was father to BAS-SIANY S and GETA. CAPITOLINY S Writeth, that SEPTIMIVS SEVERYS be- Maximinus ing in Soria with his armie, celebrating the birth day of his sonne G ETA, with began first to many sports and reuels (which was a thing much vsed in auncient time) and in the time of giuing the winners for reward iewels, collars, bracelets, fouldiers girdles, and Septimius Sefuch like things: MAXIMINV s, who was but newly come to the army, and could were. scarcely speake the Latine toong (which was then the vulgar Romane speech) came before the Emperour, and intreated him to give him leave to try himselfe in those exercises. The Emperour marueiling at the vnmeasureable greatnes of his person, and seeing him so faire and well proportioned, granted his request, but vp6 condition, that he should not encounter & contend with any Romane souldier, but with fuch as were water-bearers, and feruitors of the camp, among which were many very valiant strong men. MAXIMINVS comming to handie gripes with them, ouercame fixteene of them which were of greatest strength. and fought out for that purpose, without resting betweene while, or once taking any breath, and without being moued by any of them: for which victorie, the Emperour caused some iewels of small price to be given to him, but not any such as were vsuallie given to the souldiers; and commaunded also that he should receiue pay, and be entered in the muster roll to serue as a souldier. Vpon a day the Emperour riding to view his camp, faw this MAXIMINVS (who was vet but a raw fouldier) out of order, wherefore he willed a Corronell to call him into his ranke, and to instruct him in the dutie which he ought to observe in the warres. and MAXIMINV s imagining that the Emperour spake of him, came before him, and kneeled downe at his feete. The Emperour defiring for his pastime to fee whether he could runne well or no, spurred his horse, and gaue sundrie turnes in the field, and feeing that MAXIMINVS euer kept euen with him, and that his horse was tired; and he running asoote, shewed no signe of wearines, he rained so of Maxihis horse and asked of MAXIMINVs whether he could wrestle: whereto he an- minus. fwered, that he would wreftle so much and so long as it should please his maiestie. The Emperour marueiling at his strength, made choise of certaine of the strongest men in all his army to wrestle with him, and MAXIMINVS without breathing or any resting ouercame seuen of them. Whereupon SEPTIMIVS SE-VERVS commaunded a collar of gold to be given vnto him, and certaine pieces of filuer, and made him one of his guard, and commaunded that he should attend in the Pallace: and by this meane he came to be much esteemed among the Corronels,

Maximinus bis diet .

The dishonest

Speeches vfed

Corronels, and men of war: And he daily increased both in stature and strength: for when he came to the camp he was but a boy; and sometime in wrestling he would ouerthrow twentie or thirtie of the strongest men in the armie: And in battailes and encounters he euer bare away the price, and chiefest honor, perfourming strange things: wherefore SEVERV's fauoured him very much, and gave him notable places and charges in the warres. He did eate and drinke according to the proportion of body, or rather more : for CAPITOLINVS writeth, that he did daily vie to eate fortie pound waight of flesh, and to drinke a measure of wine. which conteineth about fixe gallons of our English measure.

SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS dying in England, as we have faid, he ferued his some ANTONINUS BASSIANUS, and was a Corronell, and had other offices and dignities in the warres. And after the death of BASSIANVS in Spria, he would not ferue MACRINUS, for that he held him for guiltie of the death of his Lord but returning to the village wherein he was borne, he there purchased certaine posfessions and lived there for aspace in rest, vntill that MACRINVS was dead and that the young most vitious HELLOGARALY's came to the Empire : at which time he came to Rome to him, as to the sonne of Bassianvs, and Nephew to SEVERVS, both which had been his Lords; imagining that hee should have been as much respected by him, as he had been by them. But HELIOGABALYS more regarding lascinious and dishonest men, then such as were of worth and valorous, he found with him no fuch entertainement as he expected: For when he came to kiffe his hand, HELIO GABALVS faid vnto him; MAXIMINVS, it is told me that in wreftling thou art too hard for twentie or thirtie men. I would by Heliogabagladly know whether thou dareft to aduenture in amorous affaults to encounter lus to Maximias many women. Which speeches did so much displease MAXIMINVS, that he would prefently have abandoned the court: but that certains of HELIOGABA-Lvs his friends (for his honours fake) staiedhim. For they held it for a shame to him, that one which was held to be the most valiant and strongest man of his time (and who for that cause was by some called ACHILLES, and by others A IAX) should not be entertained in his pay to serve in his armie: and so there was given him by HELIOGABALVS the leading of certaine footemen. But MAXIMINVS abhorring and vnable to endure the behaviour of this effeminate Emperour, in all the time of his raigneafter that time, neuer came into his presence: sometimes faining himselfe to be sicke: and other times seeking occasion and meanes to absent himselfe, vntill that the good ALEXANDER SEVE-RVS was made Emperour, after the death of HELIOGABALVS; and then he returned to Rome, where SEVERVS received him very gladly, commending him highly in the Senate, and made him a Corronelland commaunder of the fourth

legion, which he had raifed of new fouldiers. MAXIMINVS accepted the charge, Offices ginen by Scuerusto and performed his dutie fingularly well therein in the warres of Germany, where Maximinus.

he shewed great prowesse: by meanes whereof, and of the gifts which he vsed to beltow upon his fouldiers, and of the Emperours favour; he wanne fuch honor and reputation with all men, that ALEXANDER (as we have faid) being flaine by his fouldiers, he was by them created Emperour: and some write that he was one of those which conspired his death. Of such force is the desire to rule, that men forgetting the dutie and loyaltie which they owe, and the benefits which they have received; practife notable villances and commit horrible treafons, to the end that they may raigne and committend: nothing remembring that by the same meanes, that they obtaine rule and dominion, by the selfe same they

commonly

commonly lose their governments, and are throwne downe by the same meanes that they mounted.

After that MAXIMINVS faw himselfe an Emperor, as he was naturally proud and fierce, and as base of condition as he was high of stature; so was he of opinion that his best course was to make himselfe obeied rather for seare, then for love s and presently began to shew himselfe most cruell. His election being knowne in Rome. (after they had lamented the death of A LEXANDER SEVERVS) was Maximing the generally displeasing to all men. And upon report of his crueltie, they stoode in election greatly great feare of him: in fo much that both men and women made vowes and difficed as prayers to their gods, to the end that hee might neuer come to Rome. The first crueltie that this most fierce darbarian committed, was to put to death all those which had served, and been familiar with ALEXANDER SEVERYS: and then hebanished an infinit number of others, and would not suffer that either in the armie there should be any Captaine, or in the Senate any Senatour, that had been placed therein by him. And for as much as he was ashamed of the basenesse of hisowne linage and parentage, he commaunded all those which were necreabout him and had knowne his parents, to be flaine: among which were many. which in time of their pouertie had relieued them, of compassion and in charitie. And to all these his cruelties he added a greater: for he persecuted the Christians, which were fauoured by ALEXANDER: and by his commaundement was the fixt perfecution of the Church of God, principally those were perfecuted which had the charge and gouernment of others; wherein he vied strange kinds of cruelties, and new deniles in putting people to death, repoling such confidence in his ownestrength and courage, that he held no man sufficiently able to killhim. Wherefore, as CAPITOLINYS reporteth, he held himselfe for immortall, yet one day in his presence upon the Theater these verses were recited in the Greeke tongue.

Whom one man cannot bereaue of life. many his bloud may easily shill. Th Elephant is great yet done to death, ftrong is the Lion and men him kill. If through the valour thou feare not any one. beware what a number may doe to thee alone.

The crueltie of MAXIMINUS did principally extend it selfeagainst such as were rich, and in high degree and authoritie, which he treated very ill: and for very flight occasions did put to death, and confiscated their goods: which the common people little regarded; for the rich are commonly odious and hatefull to the baser fort, and to such as are poore. On the other side, he cunningly held himselfe in the loue and good liking of men of warre: for besides their ordinarie paies, he gaue them many penfions and rewards, and prouided all things neceffarie for them, and tooke as great paines as any ordinarie fouldier, with incredible courage and diligence: and as he was a strong man, and had a very able bodie; so he euer went armed, and upon all occasions was as readic as any souldier in the armie, and had alwaies valiant men about him, although of base degree and condition. Finally, the effect of all his actions was to be feared, and to commaund like a tyrant; which was the occasion that a noble Romane gentleman called MAXIMY'S, who had been a Conful, confpired against him, and practized with the old fouldiers which had ferued SEVERVS, and with some others; to whom MAXIMINVS his behaviour and conditions were nothing

Executions

pleasing: that whereas hee with his armie was to passe a river upon a wooden bridge, so soone as he should be come to the farther end thereof, the bridge behind him should be broken or drawneaway, and so he abandoned to his enemies. But this was reuealed vnto him, or else (as some surmised) it was a matter fained by him, thereby to have the better colour and cloake to fliadow his cruelties, which he executed in fo high degree, that hee made 3000, persons to be flaine, which he faid, were guiltie of that treafon.

After this a great multitude of Severys his old fouldiers mutined, and withdrawing themselves from the Campe, proclaimed one QVARCIANVS for Emperour (as Herodianus writeth) but Capitolinus faith, that his name was Trevs, and it may be that he was called by both the one and the other; who for that he was a man of great account, was by MAXIMINV'S deposed from the charge which he held. And the souldiors (against his will) perforce made him to accept the Empire, which he not without great reason refused: for one MACEDONIVS, who seemed to be his great friend, and was one of those which had advanced him to that high dignitie, within few daies after murtheredhim, as he lay fleeping youn his bed. And having firiken off his head, carried the fame to MAXIMINVS: who greatly rejoyced to fee himselfe freed from so great a daunger. And although that he then gaue him good countenaunce which brought it, yet he afterwards put him to a cruell death, accordingly as for his treacherie he had deserved. First, for murthering his soueraigne: secondly, for being a traitor to his friend.

With these two good happes, the tyrannic and crueltie of MAXIMINVS encreafed. But following the warres he went out of Hungarie into Germanie, and making most cruell warre against the Germanes, having in his armie those souldiers which ALEXANDER SEVERVS had left, which were many and very well trained and of great experience, whose number he encreased, so as with them he wanne many battailes, putting all to fire and fword where he came, fpoyling all that was in that countrie: and in all the encounters that ever happened, he ever fought with his owne hands in person, and performed more in fight then any man in the whole armie. Having pacified all matters in Germanie, to as he found no more refistance, by reason of winter which then came on, he returned into Hungarie, from whence he wrote to the Senate, extolling his victories; and fent vnto them all his battailes and skirmishes depainted in tables. I cannot particularly fet downe the murthers and cruell flaughters of men, which he commaundone in Rome by Maximinus ded to be executed in Rome at this time, for the multitude of them; for he did put to death many men which had been Confuls, and confiscated their goods. vfing infinit other tyrannies against the nobleand most principall men, presuming onely upon his owne personall great strength, and the power of his armie; to which he gaue many great gifts. And yet among his men of warre he forbare not to execute notable cruelties; for he more defired to be feared then any thing else, wherefore both in Rome and abroadethey studied how they might be ridde of him, and to finde out some other man fit to be Emperour; which began in Africa and paffed after this manner.

In the Prouince of Africa, MAXIMINVS had a Proctor, who with great rigour and authoritie gathered his rents and reuenues, and being of his maisters conditions committed incredible extortions and outrages, robbing and pilling the countrey, doing wrong to all men, and not content therewith, but as he despoiled many of their goods, so he likewise bereaued them of their lines. And he perseuered

perseuered so in his rapine and crueltie, that the people could not any longer endure his oppression: wherefore the most principall amongst them concluded to Maximinus kill him, and did so; and afterwards considering with themselues how great and Instrumental Professional Instrumental Constitution of the Instrumental Constitution o how dangerous a crime they had committed, they refolued to commit yet a Africa. greater, which was to create an Emperour. Wherefore conferring with the fouldiers of those legions which lay in Africa, and detelled MAXIMINV's for his crueltie, they all agreed to choose GORDIANV sa noble man who was Proconful of Africa, and to make him Emperour, being a man welnie fourescore yeeres old. GORDIANVS as I faid, was of a most noble linage, and by his fathers side descended from the GRACCHI, and by his mother, from the most excellent Emperour TRAIANE, and hadbin Aedil, Questor, Pretor, and Consul in Rome; and had held many other offices and dignities; and had been Captaine and governor of many countries and provinces, which he had governed with great wisedome and authoritie: and at that time was Viceconsul in Africa, by the appointment of ALEXANDER SEVER VS. who was MAXIMINVS his predecessor, by whom for his deferts and vertues, he was greatly honored and effeemed : for GORDIANYS was a noble and most temperate man in all his actions. He was a man of a tall stature, rather enclining to be fat then leane, and of a goodly prefence. His face was high-coloured, representing great authoritie. He was in his fare and diet (as in all other matters) very temperate, and was learned, and much given to the fludie of Philosophie. He was maried to the daughter of SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, and by her had fonnes and daughters, and by chance had with him when he was chosen Emperour a sonne, whose name was Gordianus (as was his) who Gordianus had been Consul, and was held in great honor and reputation, whom they also perour. chose Emperour together with his father. The souldiers and the countrey people being affembled together (whereof one MAVRICE a Decurion, was the chiefe and first motioner of the matter) they entred in a tumult into GORDIANVS his house and lodging, who thinking nothing of any such thing, in the beginning was in great feare and trouble, thinking that they came to have killed him, but after that he understood wherefore they came (for they told it him) he utterlie Gordinus refused their offer, excusing himselfe by reason of his oldage. But they came so refused the resolute, that although he would neuer so faine, yet he could not otherwise Empire. choose, but must accept of the ensignes, and title of Emperour which they gaue to him, together with his sonne. GORDIANVS although he were thereto compelled, and accepted thereof against his will, yet he presentlie wrote with all expedition, giuing the Senate aduertisement of his election, and how that he had confented thereto and accepted of the Empire, to the end to deliver the same from the tyranie and crueltie of MAXIMINVS. And having published the same in the citie of Tildro, where he was chosen Emperour, he tooke his way towards Carthage, with the magnificence, enlignes, and officers of the Empire, where he was with great ioy received. From thence he fent his Ambaffadors to Rome with particular letters to many his friends and kinfemen, and likewife tooke order that VALERIANVS the Pretorian Prefect of the legions and companies which lay neere Rome should be flaine, whom HERODIANVS calleth VATALIANVS (who was a most cruell man) a fauourite and great friend of MAXIMINVS. These letterswere received with incredible ioy and gladnes, for the great hatred which they bare against MAXIMINVS, and VITALIANVS OF VALERIANVS was slaine accordinglie, by those which were sent for that purpose.

The Senate and people of Rome approved the election of GORDIANV and

Maximinus and his fonne adjudged for rebels and enimies to the Romane commonwealth.

of his fonne, and MAXIMINY sand his fonne (who was alreadie made C & SAR and named for his fucceflor) were adjudged enemies and rebels; and the people with great furie tare in pieces many ministers of MAXIMINVS his crueltie, among which were some which were not culpable. They also slue SABINY s the Prefect of the citie, for that he endeuoured to have hindered the approbation of GORDIANY s, and the Senate chose and made C & s AR a young man whose name was also Gordianvs, who was the old Gordianvs his nephew: and so there was a fodaine great alteration in all things, for every where was great feare and confusion. The Senate afterwards confidering in how great danger the citie was, and what might enfue thereof, by reason of the great power of MAXIMINVS, made great preparation, writing their letters into all the Provinces, commanding that all those governours which were therein placed by MAXIMIN vs. should be displaced, and therewith also they published GORDIANV s for Emperour. This order and direction (as HERODIANV's writeth) in the most part of all the Prouinces was obeyed, and in the most of them they slue the governors set there by MAXIMINV s. And in some places they did the contrarie, killing or apprehending the messengers, so as every where was bloudshed; for the crueltie of the Emperour had made all men cruell. So foone as the newes of that which happened in Rome and Africa came to MAXIMINVS (CAPITOLINVS writeth that) he tooke fo great griefe, and was therewith fo enraged, that he cried out like a man bereaued of his wits, and running his head against the wals, tumbled in the floore, rent his cloaths, and made many other shewes and signes of furie and passion. This fit being past, the next day he affembled his whole armie, whereto he made a speech complaining to them of the treacherie of the Africanes, and of the lightnes and inconstancie of the Romanes, prouoking them all that he could to be reuenged, and making great promises, assured them that they should possesse the goods of all those which had offended: And when he had ended his oration, he presentlie gaue them their ordinarie pay with great aduantage, shewing himselfe very liberall, so as they all promised to serue him faithfullie, notwithstanding that many among them hated him deadlie. In this manner ving all possible diligence, MAXIMINVS directed his journey towards Rome, with the best souldiers, and the greatest prouision of munition that he could make, with intent to asswage his wrath, by the execution of his extreme crueltie, and so he began to march, not so fast as he would, for the great number of men, of carriages, and baggage which went with him, and want of victuals: for all the cities (being rifen against him) had put all the victuals and fruites of the earth in fafe keeping.

While as these things passed in Germany and in Rome, CAPELIANVS Who was Gouernour and Captaine of the Prouinces of Numidia, and Mauritania in Africa, arose against Gordianvs, aswell for that they were auncient enemies, as for that CAPELIANVS was a very great friend to MAXIMINVS, and established there by him, who so some as he heard that the GORDIANS were chosen Emperours, put those legions which were vnder his commaund in order, leuying thereto the greatest force that he could, and tooke his way towards Carthage 2gainst them, against whom came young GORDIANVS, with all the forces that he could leuie (the old man remaining in the citie in great care and feare of that which afterwards followed) and thefe two armies ioyning battaile (which was very bloudie) CAPELIANV s in the end had the victorie, and GORDIANVS Was ouerthrowne and slaine : for the greatest part of his people were Visconies, or raw fouldiers, and not accustomed to the warres. The father hearing of the death

of his sonne, and of the losse of the battaile, seeing no hope of reliefe, and the vi-Storious enemie at the gates of the citie, with the girdle which hee ware hung Einsfelse and so died he with reproch & dishonorably (having a few daies enjoyed distinct lung the name of Emperour) which had lived fourescore yeeres very honourably and himselfe in bie in great reputation. And CAPELIANV s following his victoric entred Carthage, sirale. where he flew the most principall of those which escaped from the battaile; and robbed many houses and temples, shewing great crueltie both within the citie. and abroad in the countrie also; robbing and facking townes and villages, under colour of reuenge of the wrong done to MAXIMINV s, feeking by all meanes possible to please his fouldiers, with a defire to make himselfe Emperour.

The fame of this aduenture came speedily to Rome, wherewith the Romanes

were incredibly troubled and perplexed, to fee themselves deprived of the favour and fuccour which they hoped for from G o R D I ANV s and his fonne. And knowing that MAXIMINVS came like an enraged lion against them (for redresse and remedie against so great a daunger) the Senate affembled in the Temple of I v P I-TER; and after many confultations held betweene the most principall and best experienced men of the citie, they chose MAXIMV & PVPIENV s, and CLODIVS BALBIN v s for Emperours 5 both which had held great offices, and had been valorous Captaines and gouernours, and lived with great fame. And to please the pienus and people which confented not to this election, the Senate named yong GORDIA- Claudius Bal-NV s nephew to that GORDIANV s who hanged himselfe in Carthage, C # SAR, Emperous and who was his daughters fonne, and of the age of eleuen yeeres. These two being Gordianus the created and fworne Emperours, and having taken the Imperiall robes and en-nephew of old fignes, and leuied the greatest forces that in Rome and the borders thereof they made Cafar. were able; MAXIMV'S PVPIENVS, who was the wifer, and most sufficient man of the two, departed from the citie, to make head against MAXIMINVS; who with great hafte and furie came towards Italy, and had conceived incredible joy. for that he was given to vinderstand of the death of G o R D I A N V s and of his fon. and of the victorie which CAPELIANVS had obtained against them: but after that he knew of the election of the new Emperours in Rome, his rage and wrath redoubled. And understanding that Pupienus came against him with a sufficient armie, he put his troupes in order; and having passed the Alpes, entring into Italy (where hee thought to have found great plentie of victuals) he found all entreduals. cleane contrarie: for al fustenance was carried away, and those places and townes which were not fortified, and able to defend themselves, were abandoned and left defert: wherefore the fouldiers for the hunger and want which they endured began to murmure and to speake ill of MAXIMINVS; and hee punishing some of them for it, grew hatefull to all. And drawing neere to the citic of Aquileia, which hee made account to enter without difficultie, hee therein found very great refistance: for besides that the citie was very populous and rich, there were therein for the defence thereof two Romane gentlemen, which had been Confuls; the one was called CRISPINVS, and the other MENEFILVS, which had in fuch fort furnished the citie with men and munition, that MAXIMINVS with great difficultie passing the river, and encamping himselfe before it, gaue a very cruell affault in which much people died of either fide : but those which were within, defended themselves so valiantly, that he was enforced to alter his determination, to raise his siege, and to retire. And while as MAXIMINVs lay before Aquileia, and PVPIENVS with his armic marched towards him, Rome endured a great misfor-

tune: For there arose contention and debate betweene the Pretorian souldiers

and the people of Rome, about two fouldiers which were put to death by two Senatours, whose names were GALLICANVS and MECENAS. And both parties taking armes, there were flaughters and cruelties committed, the like whereof have been feldome heard of: for the citie was fet on fire, and great part thereof burnt, without that the new Emperour BALBINV s was any way able to quench or flay it : and feeing that he could not redreffe fo great an euill, he retired himfelfe to his palace. So as who foeuer shall well consider hereof, shall finde that the three yeeres tyrannous gouernment of MAXIMINVS (for folong it lasted) was the cause that the citie of Rome and the whole Romane Empire were never free from warres tumults robberies murthers and all manner calamities. And he (as I haue faid)lying before Aquileia, getting little by the affaults which he gaue, by reason of the great resistance made by the besieged, and wanting victuals: for Pv-PIENVS, and the Senate had commaunded all to be carried away out of that territoric, and the borders and marches thereabouts: and joyntly herewith his fouldiers daily heard that all the East renolted and rebelled against him, by letters from the Senate of Rome. With this feare and for the fecret hatred which the old Romane fouldiers bare against him, they agreed to mutine and to kill him; seeing that Rome, wherein were their parents, their wines, children and kinsfolkes; and also that all Italy was enemie vnto them, and had proclaimed them rebels. It happened that MAXIMINVS and his fonne one day about noone reposing themfelues in his Tent, the fame fouldiers and many others with them, came very boldly to his paulion, and without any refiftance flew him; the like they did by his fonne, faying. That of an enill fire could never prooue good whelpe: when he had raigned three yeeres, and was fixtie and odde yeeres old; and his fonne nine-

teene, and fomewhat more. His death was allowed and appropued by all the armie: and so soone as it was knowne in the citie of Aquileid, they opened the ports and became all friends. And they fent the heads of the tyrannous Emperors to Rome, where with inspeakable ioy they were received, and by the way they caried them to PvpI a-NVS, who was in Ranenna. This happened in

the yeere of our Lord 240.

Anno Dom.

Maximinus

and his fonne

flaine in bis

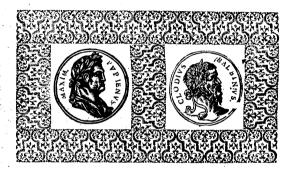
Tent.

THE



#### THE LIFE **O**F MAXIMVS PVPIENVS, AND CLODIVS

BALBINVS, ONELY OF THOSE names, and seuen and twentith Romane Emperours.





Free the death of Maximinus; Maximus Pupienus, and CLODIVS BALBINVS, without any contradiction continued Emperours; which (as I faid) were fo alreadie created: and P v-PIENVS Who then was in Rauenna, with all speede went to Aquileia, to fatisfie and content the armie, which MAXIMINVS had left there; where, by those of the citie and of the armie, he

was with great joy received, fworne, and obeyed: and he paid the fouldiers, and gaue them great rewards; and afterwards dispatched and sent the legions very well contented to their prouinces, and places where they yied to remaine. And himselfe came to Rome with some companies of Germanes for his guard; by reafon of the discord betweene the Pretorian souldiers and the citizens, which vnderstanding of the death of MAXIMINV s, pacified themselves, and went with the Senate to receive BALBINV sinto the Empire, and GORDIANV s for CE SAR, as is aforefaid: and fo they were most folemnely entertained. And being come into the Senate, befides the ordinarie acclamations, bleffings and applaufes, in remembrance that these Emperours were created by the Senators, they vsed fuch like speeches: The Princes wisely chosen, rule accordingly; and those which speeches sed are chosen by vnwise men, and such as know little, in such like manner end their by the sende,

daies: wherein they feemed to note the men of warre which made choise of MAXIMINVS. Which speeches the Pretorian fouldiers tooke in so ill part, that they presently began to dislike and to bee displeased with the raigne of PVPIE-NY s and BALKIN'S; and held themselves for scorned and disgraced, in that the Senate should seeme to triumph ouer them, and to have taken from them the authoritie to make Emperours: 10 great was their pride and ambition that from thence-foorth they not only wished but practifed the death of them both; which gouerned all things most excellently and prudently and made very good and profitable lawes and ordinances; and into all the provinces where neede required, fent ordinarie legions, doing inflice to all men indifferently, greatly honouring the Senate; and generally to all men shewed themselves gentle and courteous.

tweene Balbinus and PupiBut all this sufficed not to get the goodwill of the fouldiers: for vertue and goodnes doe not pacific the hatred of the wicked; and by fo much their enuie and malice the more encreafeth, by how much they fee those whom they hate, exercise themselues in vertuous and good actions. In such fort, that as those accursed men, in time of peace were not fo much effeemed; neither had the libertie to live fo diffolutely and licentiously, as in the time of warres, all their care and studie therefore was (although they diffembled and kept it secret) how they might without daunger to themselues, kill those two vertuous and honorable old princes, PVPIENVS and BALBINVS. Whereto the emulation, lealousie and contention betweene these Emperours, although in secret, opened the way to their determination; for BALBINVs held himselfe for farre more noble and of a more auncient house and family, then Pypienvs: For it was three hundred yeeres or little leffe fince that his ancestors came from the Ile of Cales in Spaine, with the great Pompey, and being made citizens of Rome had lived euer honorably and richly; and therefore as P v P I EN V s. was but of a new rifen family, he made account to be more regarded then he, and disdained him. And PUPIENUS notwithstanding that he was a newer citizen and lately risen; yet was he of greater courage, very graue, and feuere, and had held many offices and magistracies; which with great valour and wisedome he had discharged, and therefore was of opinion that in true nobilitie, which wholy confifteth in the vertue of the person, he did farre excell BALBINVS. And thus their vaine prefumption cost them both their lines. And nor withstanding that they stood vpon these points; yet they no way forgat ought that might concerne the good gouernment of the Empire. These two wise Emperours having agreed betweene themselues, to goe the one into the East against the Parthians 30r to say better, the Persians, which ruled in the East, as I have alreadie declared, and by meanes of the ciuil discords past, had entred the bounds of the Empire and taken certaine cities. And the other to the warres of Germanie. And as one day all the whole citie was busie in beholding certaine games and pastimes which were made, and with them was the greatest part of the Emperours guarde and household; so as they remained in their pallaces finally accompanied, without any mistrust or suspition of any infurrection. Whereof the Pretorian fouldiers being aduertifed; came with great fury fully armed in order of battaile, towards the Emperours pallace: which when PVPIENVS vnderstoode, and that they came to kill him, he commaunded in great hafte the companies of Almaines which were his guard, to be called: which truely had been sufficient to have defended them. And he also gave BALBINVS to understand thereof, desiring him to doe the like. But BALBINVS entring into a fond fuspition, that PVPIENVS sent for his guard to have done

fomething against him, did not onely leave that vndone which was requested at his hands, but letted and hindred it, fo that the guard was not called. By which meanes the Pretorian fouldiers had oportunitie to enter the imperiall pallace in fasetie; and there finding none to resist their furie, they tooke both the Empe-The Emperouse rours, and despoiling them of their imperiall robes, ysed the poore princes with Papierus staine all kinde of villanie, as if they had been two theeues; carrying them through the by the Pretorimiddest of the citie towards their lodging: but hearing that the Almaines came an fouldiers. to rescue them, they slew them you the way; leaving their dead bodies in the streets. And the young GORDIANV's meeting them by chaunce, who (as we haue faid before) at the request of the people was chosen C & s AR, was by them hailed Avovstvs and Emperour. And they crying to the people faid, that Gordinnus Nefeeing that those two Emperous were dead, which in despite of them were phone of the old chosen by the Senate; they should now receive GORDIANVS for Emperour, claimed Empewhich they themselves had defired to be made C # s AR; and so they went to rour. their lodging leading the youth with them, who yet was not fully fourteene veeresold. The Almaines after they vnderstoode of the death of PVPIENVS and BALBINVS, seeing there was no hope to rescue them, returned to their lodgings, which was in the fields necre vnto Rome. And so these two good Emperours ended their lives, having raigned two yeeres, and in reward for pacifying the Empire and deliuering the same from the tyrannie of MAXIMINVS, these base rascalles put them to death by murthering them, which PVPIENVS (as saith Thewords of IVLIVE CAPITOLINVE) did before Prognosticate: for when they were cho- Pupienus to fen, he faid to BALBINYS; tell me BALBINYS, what good shall we reape, if we Balbinus when Lilithis accurfed cruell beaft MAXIMINY S. BALBINY Sanfwered, we shall win for Emperours. the love of the Senate and of the people of Rome, and generally of all the world; it is true quoth Pyrienys, but I feare me we shall

incurre the hatred of the men of warre, and that it will

cost vs our lives. Which happened, as wee

have declared in the veere of

our Lord 242.

PUPIENUS AND CLODIUS.



#### LIFE OF GORDI-ANVS THE YOUNGER, SO CAL-

LED FOR THAT HE WAS NEPHEW

TO THE OLD GORDIANVS, BEING ONLY OF THIS NAME, AND THE eight and twentith Emperour of Rome.



This Gordianus was Nephew of the old Gardianus which died in



Fter the death of these two good Emperours PVPTENVS and BALBINVS; GORDIANVS being chosen by the Pretorian fouldiers (who in their life time was C E S AR) the Senate and people of Rome feeing no other remedie willingly approoued his election; for he was generally well beloued of all men for the deferts of his Vncleand grandfather; and through this election enfued concord and agreement betweene the fouldiers and the citizens; and fo

he began his gouernment in good order and had good successe. The first thing that he did, was to make many feasts, games and shewes, and to give many gifts and rewards, both to the citizens and fouldiers; whereby he made himselfe exceedingly well beloued. This happened by reason that this young prince tooke, and followed the counsell of wife men. Presently in the beginning of his raigne a certaine Captaine named Sabinianvs rebelled in Africa, and it happened fo well, that the gouernour of Mauritania by the commaundement of Gordi-ANV s, comming against him; those which conspired with him, tooke him prisoner, and crauing pardon for their offence, brought him to Carthage; and there deliuered him into the hands of GORDIANV shis Captains. Who being deliuered of this care, there remained yet another, which was for the warres against the Persians, who (as we have said) vsurped certaine lands of the Empire; against which it was concluded that the Emperour Gordianvs should go himselfe in person; and notwithstanding that he was then very vong, having married the daughter of a most learned and eloquent Gentleman, whose name was Misi-THEVS, whom he presentlie made Prefect, the authoritie and counsell of the father in lawe made the raigne of the young Emperour GORDIANVS verie fortunate, and much esteemed. For notwithstanding that MISITHEVS was but of a Missibeus meane parentage, yet he was a man of much vertue, and to discreet & confiderate to Gordianus, in all his actions, that notwithstanding that GORDIANVS was but a child and very young, and fomewhat inclined to vice and fenfualitie; yet he made him an excellent Prince and Gouernour, both in peace and warre. Whereby it plainely appeareth, that the principall and most necessarie thing that apperteineth to any King or Prince to make him good, is, to have good and wife men for his counfellors, and that his court be replenished with honest men, and of good conversation: Which the same GORDIANV sapparantlie manifested in a letter written by him to his father in lawe, in answere to another written by him, wherein he had counselled him what he ought to do, and had reproued him for some thing that he had done in this manner. The Emperour GORDIANVS AVGVSTVS to his Autter Father, and Pretorian Prefect, greeting. If the Almightic Gods had not defen-veritten by ded and protected the Romane Empire, I had truly by this time bin deceived, Gordianus to and fold by these wicked and dishonest men: for I now know, and do very well law Missions. comprehend, that I ought not to have given the charge of the Romane Cohorts to FELIX, neither to SERAPIO of the fourth legion: and because I will not recite all my errours. I acknowledge that I have done many things that I ought not. But thanks beginen to the Gods, that thou guiding and instructing me, which doest nothing for couetousnes or reward. I have perceived and vnderstood many things, which being thut vp in my pallace with my feruants, I should never have learned, neither was it possible for me to have knowne. For consider thou alittle I pray thee what I could do, being blinded, and fold by May Ry s, who was confederate with GUNDIANUS, REVERENDUS and MONTANUS; fo as whatfoeuer they commended or reproued, trufting to their judgement, I presentlic accepted and allowed. The truth is, Father, that that Prince is very infortunate, who hath not about him those which may plainely tell him the truth : for as the King cannot be among the people, neither can he know what paffeth and what is faid, of necessitie he is to understand it by the relation of those with whom he is conuerfant, and according to their information, good or cuill, to gouerne and dispose of all matters. God give thee health. By this letter is confirmed that which I faid, and how that the good counsell of his father in law, was of great efficacie to make

him a good Gouernor. In the beginning of the raigne of this good Emperour, there were seene certaine fignes and tokens in the aire, and vpon the earth, whereby many men did prognosticate that his raigne should not long continue. The first was so great an A great eclipse eclipse of the Suane, that the day seemed to be turned to night: so as every where of the Sunne. the people kindled lights, thereby to fee to do their necessarie busines, so long as the eclipse continued. And one yeere after that, there was so great and so terrible an earth-quake in a manner through all the provinces of the Empire, that many A great cities and townes were destroyed, and some cities were swallowed up by the carth-quality.

the best manner that could be, GORDIANVS departed from Rome towards the

that he sent to intreate PHILIP, that if he would not permit him to be his equall,

vet at the least that he would be pleased to allow him the dignitie of C E S AR:

which feeing he could not obtaine, he defired that he might be his Pretorian

Prefect: which being also denied, he requested him to do him the fauour, that he

might be one of his Captaines fo long as he should line. To this his last perition

worthie young Emperour GORDIANV s, who raigned fixe yeeres, four ealone,

and two in the companie of Pupienus and Balbinus, in the vecre of our

and very noble condition, of gentle behauiour, very studious, and given to lear-

ning : fo as they write that he had in his Librarie threescore and two thousand

bookes. He was infinitely beloued of the Senate and people of Rome, and gene-

rallie of all nations of the Empire, and no leffe by the fouldiers and men of warre

which called him their fonne: although in this short sodaine surie, after the maner

of beafts they killed him by the procurement, deuise, and treason of PHILIP;

and their furie being past, they made him a sepulchre in the confines of Persia,

whereupon they wrote this inscription in the Latine, Persian, Hebrew, and E-

gyptian tongues, to the end that of all men it might be read and vnderstood:

Gordianus going to the the Perfians.

Gordianus bis gainft Sapor King of versia.

warres of Persia, with great provision and infinite summes of money to pay the fouldiers which he caried with him, which were many in number, and excellentlie well armed and trained: for he had fo good an armie as euer had any Emperour; and marching ouer land from Italy to passe the streight of Hellespont, he tooke his way through Missia, to stay the Gothes and other nations which came downe with intent to have inhabited Thracia, against which he obteined some victories, and left those prouinces free from troubles, and in peace. And having past that streight, he marched with his armiethrough Soria, and came to the citic of Antioch which the Persians had taken, and fought some battailes with the mightie SAPOR King of Persia, who succeeded his brother ARTAXERXES in that kingdome; where obtaining some notable victories, he recoursed the citie of Antioch. And from thence went further, and conquered the great cities of Carras, and Nisibe: for being terrified with the first battailes, SAPOR was in so great a feare, that notwithstanding that he had leuied a very sufficient army, yet he not only durst not fight with GORDIANYS, but abandoning the faid cities and others, retired himselfe into his kingdome, forsaking and leaving the limits and confines of the Romane Empire. In this warre all things were gouerned and done by the counsell and direction of MISITHEVS, GORDIANVS his father in law, who was his Prefect and captaine generall, and gonerned all things fo well. that he failed not in any thing; and fo by his counsell and valour GORDIANYS obteined many victories: and the Romane armie proceeded, being excellentlie well instructed and trained, aswell in the discipline which apperteineth to souldiers, as in all other things which were requifite for the warres. The like happened in all other matters, which were expedient for the good government of the whole Empire: for he was so good and so wise a man, and therewith the good inclination and disposition of the Emperour did so concurre, in whom wanted no fufficiencie nor discretion for his age, that all the time of his raigne (which were fixe veeres) the Romane Empire enjoyed peace, rest, and all happines. And while as all things were in this estate, MISITHEVS fell fick and died. IVLIVS CAPI-TO LINVS writeth, that he was fecretile poisoned by PHILIP, who succeeded him in his charge, and was afterwards Emperour, and who also was the cause of the death and destruction of the Emperour Gordianvs; who fo some as MI-SITHEVS was dead, made PHILIP his Prefect and Captaine generall, nothing fuspecting him of treason. This PHILIP was borne in Arabia, of a base and dishonorable parentage, but was a very valiant man, and bred vp in the warres in the Romane Armies, and had held many offices and governments. So foone as this barbarian was aduanced by GORDIANVS to that high dignitie, he practifed how he might obteine the Empire for himselfe, and sought by all meanes to win the good will of the fouldiers, and to make them enemies to GORDIANVS. It hapned that in the armie was great scarcitie of victuals, which was done by the secret practice of PHILIP, and the fouldiers imagining the negligence of GORDIA-NV s to have bin the cause thereof, determined to make PHILIP equall with him

in the Empire, and that he should be as his tutor and governour: which the vertuous young GORDIANVS patientlie endured. For he could not withftand the audacious determination of the fouldiers; and PHILIP feeing himfelfe equal with him, became presentlie so insolent and audacious towards GORDIANVS, (by reason of his young yeeres, and the fauour of the armie) that he began to

commaund

The death of

241

vnable to indure this difgrace (for great and noble minds can hardlie fuffer themselues to be despised and oppressed) affembling the armie, complained openlie to the Captaines and fouldiers of the pride and ingratitude of PHILIP, Trestided

calling to mind the benefits which he had beftowed vpon him, and fought to muse of perswade them to depose him from the Empire. PHILIP seeing this, setting all Philip, and fhame apart, affembling togethers fuch as were of his faction, and feeking to get the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to face of the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to face of the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to face of the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to face of the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to face of the strate of the strate of the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will of all men brought his purpose to the good will be supposed to the the good will of all men, brought his purpose to so good issue, that the miserable Emperour Gordianv's being abandoned, was brought to fuch extremitie,

his cruell mind feemed to yeeld, but afterwards confidering how much Gor-DIANVS was beloued in Rome, in Africa, and in all the other Prouinces, as well for his naturall vertues, as for the nobilitie of the house from which he was descended, he commaunded him to be flaine. And this was the end of the noble and

Lord 247, and in the twentith yeere of his age. GORDIANVS was of a pleafant Ann. Dom. 247.

To the facred Gordianus, who ouercame the Persians, the Gothes, and the Sarmates, extinguished the Romane Civil discords, and likewise subdued the Germanes, but not the Philippicks

which seemeth to be annexed thereto, for that in the Philippica, fields he was put to the worse by the Alanes; and also for that he was commaunded to be slaine by PHILIP.



### THE FIRST, AND NINE

AND TWENTITH EMPE-ROVR OF ROME.





Y the fubtiltie and wicked practifes (which wee haue alreadie before declared) this traitor Philip came to the Empire, and was fworne and obeyed by all the whole armie: and he presently advertised the Senate of his election, and of the death of GORDIANV s, concealing the manner thereof; alleaging that hee died of his naturall infirmitie. The Senate guing credit to his letters, confirmed and approued his election, and gaue him the name of Av G v s T v s: which when he vnderstood, having 2

great defire to come to Rome, and to fee himselfe Lord thereof, hee made a dishonourable peace with the Persians; and leaving vnto them the province of Mefopotamia, and part of Syria, he came with his armie towards Rome. But first he defired to visit his countrie Arabia; wherein, for a memo iall of his name, he builded a citie, which he called Philopopolis, in the fields neere the place where he was borne; & made his fon his companion in the Empire, whose name was also P HI-

LIP, a child of fixe or feuen yeeres old: who (as AVRELIVS VICTOR, and Evr R O PIVS doc write) was naturally fo fad and fo fowre, that he was neuer feene to laugh neither could any man by any deuice prouoke him to laughter. PHILIP being come to Rome, although hee was received as foueraigne Lord, yet was his comming nothing pleafing to the Senate nor Romane people, confidering that he had left and given away the province of Melopotamia to the Perfians : Which when hee viderstood, after that hee had made a great alargesse, and distributed much money and other gifts among the people, thereby to get their good wils and friendship; he sought occasion to make warre against the Persians, and proclaimed the same; with a determination therein to haue recoured the honour which he had loft. But that warre ended before it began, without any breach of peace: for the Perfians promifed to restore the provinces without warre or any refillance.

PHILIP having now raigned two yeeres (and a thousand yeeres being expired fince that Rome was founded) hee commaunded certaine feasts and games to bee made, which they called Secular, which was (as it were) to celebrate the birth day secular games, of Rome; which feafts were made in Rome enery hundred yeeres. Yet concerning and very for the time there were many opinions; and some Emperors celebrated these feasts salled.

and showes before their time, as the Emperour C LAVD IVS before remembred. But the truth is, that they were called Secular: for they could be made but once in all a mans whole life time. Finally, they were the most sumptuous and notable that euer were made in Rome: for fo did Octavivs make them, and Clay-DIVS also, as I have said. And afterwards the Emperor Do MITIANVS, although he observed not the just computation of the yeeres, as did the Emperour C LAV-DIV s, but followed the account of A v G v s T v s C E S A R: and after that, S E P T I-MIVS SEVERVS; and now this PHILIP celebrated the fame, with the greatest pompe and magnificence that ever had bin seene before this time, as E v S E E I V S recordeth, who faith, That in the place called Circulus Maximus, were hunted and flaine an infinit number of wilde beafts; and that there also fought two thousand Sword-players, who (as wee haue faid) flew one another to give pleafure and delight to the beholders, in as furious manner as men now adaies vie to fight vpon challenges in fingle combats. It is also written, that in Pompetes Theater were fuch shewes and games, that they lasted three daies and three nights continually; wherein were so great lights that men might see as well at midnight as at noone daies; whereof Evtropivs and Pomponivs also make mention. In these disports and about the end of them, as they were many, and there was little heed taken, Pomperes Theater tooke fire, and the greatest part of the timber worke was burnt, with other very fumptuous buildings neere vnto it; which fire was hardly quenched. PAVLV'S OROSIV'S Writeth, that this PHILIP was the first Christian Emperour that was truly baptized, and that beleeued and received the faith of Christ. Other authors affirme, that both hee, his mother and his sonne were christened; and that ORIGENES wrote certaine letters to himswherein he perswaded him to beleeue and to obserue the Christian faith. Others say, that he did but faine and diffemble it, thereby to make himselse the stronger against D Eciv s, through the helpe of the Christians, which DECIVs rebelled against him: But I rather beleeue OROSIVS and EVSEBIVS.

PHILIP and his fome living thus in the quiet possession of the Empire, the Goths, which in the time of GORDIANVs had infefted Thracia, came now from Scythia with a very great armie through Missa into Thracia, and did much hurt

Philip made peace with the Perfians.

Marinus rebelled against Philip.

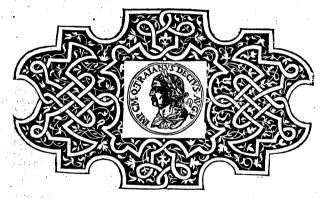
Captaine one MARINVS, a man very expert in the warres, and very valiant of his person; who so soone as he was established in his charge, with the aide and fanour of the men of warre, whereof he before was Captaine, and of the ordinarie legions of Illyricum, leaving the service wherein he was emploied, resolued to rebell, and to make himselfe Emperour, holding it lawfull to betray him, that had been a traitor to another: and for fuch was presently sworne and proclaimed by the armie. When PHILIP understood hereof, hee was much troubled: and in great feare complained to the Senate of the ingratitude and prefumption of M A-RINVs. Some write that DECIVS was there present, who being a man of great wisedome and experience, very nobly descended, and was afterwards Emperour, did recomfort and encourage him, and perswaded him not to bee grieued therewith: for (quoth he)MARINV s his prefumption will shortly cost him very deere, which happened fo indeed: For within few daies after, the fame armie which had chosen him, being discontented with the manner of his carriage toward them. were as readie to bereaue him of his life, as they were to make him Emperor; and accordingly flew him. Which newes being brought to PHILIP, and he remembring what DECIVS had faid in the Senate, gaue him the charge and commaund of the armie against the Gothes and Scythians, with a great encrease both of men and munition, and of all things necessarie for such an enterprise. DECIVS as a man of experience and discretion, and sufficiently able to discharge that office, came to the armie, where within few daies al the fouldiers as well for the worthines of his person, as also for that they stood in feare of PHILIP for those matters alreadie lately passed, resolued to make him Emperor: and so indeed by force and against his will they made him to take the ensignes, name and dignitic of Emperour. When DECIVS faw himselfe aduaunced to so high estate, hee practised a Decius made cunning policie, which was thus; He privily fent a fecret messenger to tell PHI-Emperour by against his wil. LIP that he had accepted the title of Emperor, being perforce constrained thereto, as was well knowne; but held no man for Emperour but PHILIP; and that he therefore should not be offended: for hee did affure him that so soone as he could possibly get any libertie, he would renounce the Empire. This hee did to the end that PHILIP should take no care, nor make any such preparation against him, as reason required: and finally, to temporize vntill that he might encrease his power, and make himsefe able to defend his cause. But PHILIP (whether he gaue credit made by Philip to his speeches or no) for flowed not his busines, but determined with himselfe to again Decius. repose no trust in any other Captaine, but to goe against him himselse in person; and to that end leuied many new troupes, and fent for the ordinarie legions out of fundrie prouinces, threatning and fwearing that he would teare DECIVS and the rebellious legions which were with him in peeces. And so departed from Rome, commaunding his men of warre with fuch choler and in fuch hautie manner, that he became hatefull to all men. And they holding DECIV's more worthie of the Empire then him, before hee went out of Italy in the citie of Verona, proclaiming DECIVS Emperour, his owne fouldiers killed him, cutting his head off, by

Philip flaine in Verona by his owne foul the middest of his face, inst with the vpper row of his teeth. So foone as the newes hereof came to Rome, the Pretorian fouldiers killed his fad sonne, who was neuer knowne to laugh; being (according to some writers) about the fift yeere of his and his fathers raigne; and after some other writers, the seuenth: which happened in the yeere of our Lord two hundred, fiftie and two after Evs EBIVs his computation. Truly

Truly it was the just indgement of God, that by the same meanes that he obtained the Empire, he loft the fame: and the fame fouldiers by whose hands he put his good liege Lord GORDIANVS to death; even the very fame fouldiers killed him: fo as, as he was a traitor and difloyall to his foueraigne; fo found he none faithfull to him being lord.

# THE LIFE OF DECIVS, ONELY OF THIS NAME,

AND THIRTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME.





HILLP and his fonne being both dead (in fuch manner as before is expressed) DECIVS without any contradiction was confirmed Emperour: for the Senate prefently chose him in his absence, and gaue him the title of Av-G v s T v s, and fo did all the provinces and the armies: For all writers affirme, that morally this DECIVS was an excellent man, and was endued with many vertues and infficiencies, and was very wife and different and of great ex-

perlence, and had held many offices and dignities before he attained to the Empire: which he obtained not by fauouror any finister meanes: but for his defents and goodnes: and so executed the same wifely and vprightly, with singular equitie and authoritie. The like he did in the Empire, during the small time that he enjoyed the same: and about all, he was a most politicke, valiant and excellent Captaine; so as he might justly have been numbred among the good Emperors, if he had not (as an infidell) persecuted the Church of God and all Christians, with most excessive cruekie, such as the like thereof had never been seene: the

The feuenth perfecution of of the Church of God.

which (as some writers affirme) he did of malice, and for the hatred which he bare against his predecessor the Emperour Philip, for that he was a Christian: And so in his time the Church of God suffered the seuenth persecution. In fuch fort hee perseuered in his crueltie, staining therewith his other vertues. that he crowned many with martyrdome; leauing to vs examples of their holv and vertuous lives and endings. This emperour was borne in a citie called Cabali in the lower Pannonia, which we call Hungarie, and (as we have faid) was of a very noble and auncient linage. So soone as he saw himselfe an absolute Lord through the defire he had to come to Rome, he made CORNELIVE LICINIVE V ALERIANVS generall of his mightie armie, who was a wife man and of great experience: fo as for his good conditions, and his age! being threefcore and fixe yeeres old; he was of great authoritie, and to all men feemed most fitte for that charge. When DECIVS was come to Rome hee shewed himselfe in all thing a very good gouernour, and preferued the authoritie of the Senate; following their counsell and opinion in all matters of gouernment. And among other things, he permitted them to chuse a censor at their pleasure, which was an auncient magiltracie of great authoritie; for his office was to correct the manners and customes, and to reforme the abuses and disorders of the people, and therefore had supreme jurisdiction over all men: and this office, from the time that Rome came to be commaunded by one head, the Emperouts vsurped, and made themselues Cenfors. Whereupon the Senate chose the said VALERIANVS for Cenfor notwithstanding that hee was absent: and moreouer, without any request made by DECIVS; they nominated his fonne (whole name was also DECIVS) C & SAR, and his fuccessor. And so he remained in the citie about one yeere, gouerning all things with great wisedome and equitie, by the adulse and consent of the Senate, to the great contentment of all the Romane people, excepting the Christian common-wealth: against which, he (as a blinde man) made generall edicts and decrees, whereby he commaunded them to be flaine, and perfecuted (as Evserivs testifieth.) And whereas the Gothes at this time inuading Thracia and Misia, had subdued the greatest part of those prouinces; DECIVE determined in person to make head against them, and carrying his sonne with him, he left the gouernment in the hands of the Senate; and leuying new forces, he marched against the Gothes; and comming where his legions were, within few tweene Decius daies after he joined battaile with them: wherein although it were very doubtfull: yet in the end he obtained the victorie, and flew 30000. of them; and constrained therest to slie to the mountaines and other places of hard accesse, not daring to come into the plaines; and brought them to fuch extremitie that he had eafily destroyed them, if he had not been betraied, as you shall heare. For the King of the Gothes sent him word, that if he would give him leave quietly to depart, he would abandon that land, and returne to his countrie; but the Emperour having taken the passages, imagining that hee might easily kill them, or take them prisoners, and so punish their breach of peace graunted them in the time of BALBINVs, would not yeeld to the Kings request; and having brought them to such a streight that they could not escape out of his hands, he gave the charge to a notable Captaine of his, whose name was TREKONIANVS GAL-Lvs, being a Romane gentleman and gouernour of the frontiers of Missa, to keepe certaine passages, through which the Gothes might passe; and to that effect gaue him the commaund of a great number of fouldiers. Who having a defire

to make himselse Emperour, by such meanes as then were vsed, not onely dis-

Valerianus made Cenfor by the Senate.

The Senate chose young Decins, Cefar and his fathers fucceffor.

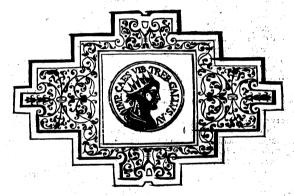
and the Gothes,

charged his office wherein he was employed, very ill, but gaue secret intelligence to the King of the Gothes that hee would let him paffe, adulting him therewith to divide his armie into two parts, the one halfe whereof hee should lay in Trebusianus ambush; and with the other, hee should assault the Emperours campe, who Gassins bernard mistrusted no such matter: and that faining feare hee should flie backe and draw or as the case the Emperour into his ambush, where hee might in faftie kill him. This con- of ins death, tractbeing made, the effect followed (as writeth Pomponivs Letvs) but I ORNANDES relateth it after another manner. Yet all authors agree that through the treason of his Captaine GALL'vs, the Emperour DECIVS came to a battaile A battaile bewith the Gothes, to their great aduantage; wherein notwithstanding that he, and invested besthis fouldiers fought most valiantly, yet both himselfe and his sonne therein ended Gather, their liues. I ORNANDE, s writeth, that before that a man could well judge of the victorie, the young Dacivs was fo mortally wounded with an arrow, that he fell The source us from his horse in fight of his father the Emperour, who with a loud vovce called speakers fed to his fouldiers, willing them not to bee difmaied: for the death of one Knight by Decinsfee would be no hindrance to the common wealth, neither to the battaile. But in the mortally wonnend foreseeing his perdition, and that the Gothes apparantly had the victorie; to ded fall to the the end that he would not fall into his enemies hands, he clapt his spurres to his horse fides, and giving him the head, lept into a deepe lake of water which was there by wherein through the waight of his armour he was soone drowned: so The miserable as his body was neuer found. The Gothes following the victorie, made great death of Deflaughter in the Romane armie, which was put to route; and those which escaped cius. fled to the legions which TREBONIANVS GALLVS commaunded, who as a confederat with the Gothes, was in faftie; and fought no reuenge for the death of the Emperour. And in this manner ended the life and raigne of the Emperour DECIV s, who had oftentimes deserved the same for the cruelties which he commaunded to be executed vpon the Christians, which happened in the yeere of our Sauiour 254. and in the fiftith yeere of his age, when hee had raigned but Ann.dom, 254. onely two yeeres. It is not knowne who was this Emperours wife, neither what his father and auncestors names were, or who they were; neither can wee fer downe any particularities, as we have observed in the lives of other Emperors, for that no author maketh any mention thereof, and all write very little of him. I fav this to the end that the reader may understand, that I will not presume to write at large in a matter, wherein I finde fuch breuitie yfed by the authors: for I feeke ratherbriefly to set downe the naked truth, then to beautifie the Historie with leafings, as I have seene some men doe. My purpose from the beginning hath been to be briefe: for I doe not properly write an Historie, but the sum and an abridgment of Histories, containing the liues of the Emperours, whereof we will write more largely when it shall seeme more expedient, although that in the times whereof we now write, the historiographers wrote so negligently, and observed so little order, that a man can hardly draw that little out of their writings which we treate of.



### NIANVS GALLVS, ONLY

OF THIS NAME, AND ONE and thirtith Emperor of Rome.





HE Gothes having through the occasion aboue expressed, obtained this victorie, wherein both DECIVs and his fon died, those souldiers which thence escaped recouring GALLY's his campe, hailed him Emperour, knowing nothing of the treason which hee had committed; and hee which defired nothing more, accepted the fame, and tooke the Enfignes of the Empire. When the newes of the death of DECIVE and of his fon came to Rome, and of the flaugh-

ter made in the Romane armie (before that GALLVs his treason was discoursed) the Senate vnderstanding that the armie had chosen him for Emperour, and that his companies had refcued those which escaped from the battaile, confirmed his election, and gaue him the name and title of AvgvsTvs. But this GALLVS, notwithstanding that he was a gentleman, and descended of an high linage, was A diffionorable not contented with the treason which hee had vsed towards his Emperour and foueraigne Lord, but through a defire to come to Rome, made peace with the Gothes; the most shamefull and vituperable, that euer was made by any Romane

fince that Rome was first founded: for he agreed and promited to pay them yeerely a great fumme of money; making that people which was held for Lord of the world, and subduer and tamer of all other Nations, tributarie to the barbarous: so as to the end that he might be called Emperour, hee made both himselfe and the Empire tributarie, and fubicat to the Gothes. Such power hath ambition and defire to raigne, that men thereby make themselues slaues and bondmen to some, conditionally that they may commaund and haue authoritie ouer others. And he prospered as ill therewith as he had deserved: for the Gothes afterwards brake The Gothes afterwards brake the peace, and did more harme in his time then in any age before facking and made with Galendard and Ga spoiling the provinces of Thracia, Misia, Thessaia, Macedonia, and the confines and lus. frontiers thereof: for all which hee tooke little care: And of the other side, the Persians in Asia seeing the good successe of the Gothes, entred with great power into the countries of Melopotamia, and Syria ; which were prouinces of the Em- The Perfans pire: and afterwards paffing forwards they subdued Armenia. But GALLVs ta-uinces of the king no care for these things, made his sonne Bolvssenvs his companion in Empire. the Empire, who was a very childe. And afterwards, hee not onely permitted the perfecution inflicted by DECIV sypon the Christians, but encreased the same, There began also in his time a most cruell generall pestilence, whereof died an infinite number of people; which began in Ethiopia in the confines of Egypt; and An univerfall from thence infected all parts of the world, and continued tenne yeeres: during time of Deciut, which time(as PAVLVS OROSIVS recounteth)there was no prouince, no citie, nor particular house which was not left in a manner desolate with this vniuerfall plague, whereof he compiled a booke, as Ev seeves and S. Cyprian beare record. which lived in those times. So as all the raigne of this wicked Emperour was infortunate and forrowfull, as well for the prouinces which hee loft, as for the calamities before recited. Onely he had one notable victorie in the prouince of Milia against the Gothes, under the leading of EMILIANVS a Captaine of his: where-Emilianus in he flew many thousands of them, and followed the execution for certaine daies our threw iourney. This ouerthrow was the ruine and totall destruction of GALLVS: for the Gother in a EMILIANVS Waxing proud for so great a victorie, and returning from it with an imagination of that which afterwards enfued, gaue great gifts among his fouldiers; and fo getting their loue and goodwill, was called, chosen and sworne Emperour. Which when GALLV s vnderstood, with al the haste that he could make, perour, perour. Vynich when Gally synderhood, with a unit had the countries of the Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with a great armie, leading his fonne with him: againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with him againft The Emperous hedeparted from Rome with the Rom Whom E MILIANVS boldly came to a battaile and had the victorie, wherin GAL- fonne both

LV s and his fonne were both flaine, and their fouldiers went to ferue E MI-LIAN V s. This happened in the yeere of our Lord 256. GALLVs being then (as testifieth AVRELIVS VICTOR) of the age of feuen and fortie yeeres, and in the fecond yeere of his most vnhappie raigne.

flaine in bat-Anno Dom. 256,

THE

peace made by Gallus vvith the Gothes.

#### EMI NVS, ONLY OF THIS NAME,

AND TWO AND THIRTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME.



MILIANVS Succeeded GALLY s in the Empire: Some authors account him not in the number of the Emperours, and thew a reason for it, considering the small time that he held and enjoyed the fame: which was rather in name then effect: but feeing that hee was fo, I have thought good to make particular relation of him, for as much as EvTRO-PIVs and other authors have done the like. I say then, that the Emperor GALLY's being ouerthrowne and flaine, and

EMILIAN V s remaining victorious, joyning both armies in one, he began to vie the name and authoritie which was given him. But as the time of his raigne was fo short, that it lasted not aboue foure moneths, there can no notable thing bee written of him; for as his time was very briefe, so doc authors briefly write. Hee was by birth an Africane, borne in the countrie of Mauritania, of base and obscure parentage, and from his youth was bred up in the warres: and as he encreased in vecres fo did he in honour and offices. At length the Emperour DECIVS made him Captaine Generall, and governour of the frontiers and confines of Sarmatia; in which charge G A L L v s left him, and there succeeded that which wee haue recited, which was to obtaine a victorie against the Gothes, and to rebell against GALLYS; and afterwards to ouerthrow and kill both him and his son, and to make himselfe Emperour. So soone as these matters were ended, hee wrote with all speede to the Senate, giving it to understand of his victorie and election, putting them also in minde of the negligence and euill government of GALLVs, and Large womiles of the provinces which the Romane Empire had loft in his time, promiting very confidently to recouer Thracia from the Gothes, and Melopotamia and Armenia

The origine of

now are wicked and finners; but let the discreete reader make a comparison of

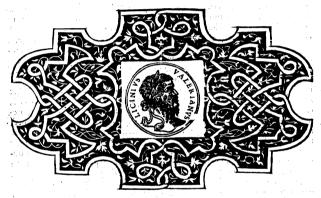
from the Persians, and to cleere all the confines of the Empire from all their enemies: which his purpose as he would have put in execution, he was hindred; for the armie which was in the Alpes, wherof VALERIANVS, a man of noble linage and of great authoritie, was Captaine, who reprodued and in no case would allow the election of E MILIAN V s, role against him, and chose their Captaine for Emperor. Which when EMILIANV shis fouldiers understood, moved with the reputation of VALERIANVS, which, as we will declare in his life, was very great. and to avoide civill warres; they determined to approoue and confirme his election: and so in a manner by the common consent of them all, EMTLIANY S Was flaine, being fortie yeeres old, when hee had raigned little more then three mo- Emilianus neths. And all his troupes went to ferue V A L E R I A N V 5, to whom they sware, and soldiers, and obeied him for their Lord and Emperor. And this was the remnant of the raigne Valerianus of E MILIANVS, because his end should bee such as was his beginning. And in truth writing this discourse, and considering in my minde of the estate and condition of things in those times, I was moued with great admiration and pitie, to thinke of the miferies which then were in the world: for where there was fuch diffolution and diforder, that fouldiers did daily murther their Emperours, and chose others such as they pleased, and no man sought to punish them, or to reuenge the wrong; what shal a man think was done in the particular prouinces? what robberies, what injuries and outrages were there yied? What execution of iustice could that Emperour commaund to be done, which came to the Empire by treason, and by killing his soueraigne Lord? It is credibly to be beleeved, that he would eafily pardon all offences, vpon condition that hee might be obeyed; especially such as were committed by principall and mightie men. And moreouer oftentimes the newes of the election of an Emperor was scariely published, andhis election confirmed, before that the like newes came, that he was flaine by those which had chosen him, or by some other more mightie personage. And it may be that it happened so vnto them, for that they tooke no other care, nor bufiedthemselues about ought else, but how they might support themselues in the Empire. And so the reader shall finde that thirteene Emperours which preceded VALERIANVS, of which wee will treate, died violent deaths, and none of them naturally, as wee fay, in his bed, beginning from the time of the good MARCYS AVRELIV s, vntill this man. And so the same VALERIANVS, together with his fonne, and other Emperours also died by the sword. In the time that this VALBE RIANVS and GALIENVS raigned, there were thirtie tyrants which vsurped the name of Emperour; which killing one another, or complotting it by fome other meanes, none of them died of his naturall death: fo as, fo foone as one was proclaimed Emperour, he might be affured to come to an cuill end. In fuch fort, that among all the miseries of those times, the greatest was to be an Emperour; and the Emperours were fuch, and came to that dignitie by fuch meanes, that by the iust judgement of God they made such ends. And although that in al estates there were diforders and confusion, and so it appeareth by the histories of those times; yet onely the holie faith and Christian doctrine encreased, as well in vertue and holines of life, as in number of people: but they escaped not free from persecution and miseries. This I have thought good to note and to consider in this place, thereby to shew that men ought not so much to blame these times wherein wee now live, as some have done; commending the customes of ancient times, diffaming and reproouing all that passeth in our time. I doe not denie but that wee

VALERIANVS.

the common order now observed in all things, with that manner of government in those daies; and he shall cleerely perceive the difference, and how farre this doth excell the time then, through the mercie of God, whom we befeech to amend what is amisse.

### THE LIFE OF THE EM-PEROVR VALERIANVS, ONLY

OF THAT NAME, AND THREE AND THIRTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME.





E haue alreadie declared, how that VALERIANVS was chofen Emperour, by the fouldiers whereof he was Generall, and how that EMILIANVS was afterwards flaine, by the hands of his owne fouldiers; and that all reduced themfelues under the service of VALERIANUS; and that in this manner he was held for Emperour both in Rome, and abroad, with as great fauour and good liking of all nations, as euer any had bin. VALERIANVS when he was chosen

Emperour, was of great age: for all authors which write of him affirme, that he was then fullie threescore and ten yecres old; which time he had spent with great honor and fame vnder both good and euill Emperours, by meanes of his excellent conditions and fufficiencies; and had attained to many dignities, and had held many magistracies and offices: among which, in the time of the Emperour DECIVE he was made Cenfor of Rome, and was highlie honored and extolled by the same DECIVS, and by all the Senate; and was also of a very noble and auncient house and familie. Finallie, in all his life time before that he was Emperour, he was honored and happie in all his doings; and so there was great hope

that he should have redressed and ended all the calamities and miseries of his time. All which hapned cleane contrarie: for after his joyfull beginning, in all the rest of his age he was miserable and infortunate. When he came to the Empire he had two fonnes, the one called GALIENVS, and the other (as himselfe) VALE-RIANVs, which he had by feuerall women. TREBELLIVS POLLIO and others fay, that VALERIANVS was but his nephew. His victorie and election being knowne in Rome, and with great iou and gladnes confirmed, GALIENVS being Gallenne made then there, was by the Senate and people chosen C # s AR, and his fathers success Gefar by the for, as afterwards he was, as EVTROPIVS writtth: but SEXTVS AVRELIVS Victor faith, that his father made him Av G vstvs, which was, his equall and companion with him in the Empire, both the one and the other might well be. His fecond sonne VALERIANVS (4s some say) was made C # sar; and others name him not. VALERIANVS beginning to take vpon him the gouernment of the Empire, the first thing that he did, was to nominate and appoint Captaines chosen among many noble men, which had served in the warres against the Parthians, the Perfians, the Gothes, and other northerlie nations, and which were men of experience, and had shewed themselves valiant in armes; and so he determined to go himselfe in person (and did so) to the warres of the East, against the Persians, which was the most dangerous: for SAPOR King of Persia had inua-

ded and taken certaine provinces of the Empire.

and of great account, who with the consent of SAPOR King of Persia, proclaimed Emperour by himselfe Emperour, and seased on the cities of Casarea, Antioch, and other cities the construct and places in the borders; but his prosperitie soone ended: for his owne people Persia, and of malice, and fearing the comming of VALERIANVS, flue him before that VA. his death. LERIANVS arrived. Evsebivs reporteth, that this Emperour in the beginning of his raigne was so gentle and so great a friend to the Christians, that he suffered not any wrong or violence to be done vnto them, but fauoured and honored them in so high degree, that his house and pallace was as a Church and an habitacle for them, but afterwards through the deceit and perswasion of a Magician or Nigromancer, who was an Egyptian borne, an arrant coofoner, and a notable maister in sorcerie and witchcrast, he not only desisted from sauoring them, but vsed extreme crueltie in all places wheresoeuer he found any of them: so as in his The ninth pertime was the ninth perfecution of the Catholike Church, whereof PAVLVS O-fecution of the ROSIVS in his histories maketh particular mention. For which sinne it was be. christians. leeued, that God permitted the great misfortunes which befell him, which were: that he passing with a great armie into the East against SAPOR King of the Perfians, SAPOR which was a man of great courage and very mightie, came to meete him; betweene which it was supposed that there would have been a very great battaile; but it happened otherwise: for the Emperour through the negligence (as some say) of the Generall of his armie who conducted him, but as others say, through the treason and deceit of the same Generall, was set in a place without any sufficient guard, where being compassed about by SAPORs men of warre, Valerianus all the paffages were taken in such fort, that being vnable to make any resistance, taken prisoner he was taken prisoner by Sapor. Who as a prowd barbarian, besides the other by Sapor King injuries which he vsed to the poore old imprisoned Emperour, euery time that he of the Persians, tooke horse, he made him to stoupe downe, and he setting his soote vpon his

neck, mounted on horseback. In this forrowfull bondage and miserie lived this

poore old man fixe or feauen yeeres, and his sonne GALIENVS tooke no care to

There was also in those times in the East one Cortalvs an audacious man, corialus chose

Valerianus fauouredof A Letter from

King Belfolus

to Sapor King

of Perfia.

procure his libertie, to the great shame and disgrace of the Romane Imperiall

maiestie. This imprisonment of the Emperour was so much abhorred through the world, and SAPOR was so much reproued for the excessive crueltie which he vfed towards him, that not only those which were subject to the Romane Empire; but also the barbarous Kings which were friends to it, were greatly displeafed therewith: so as presentlie so soone as they vnderstood thereof, they wrote their letters vnto him, that he should freely without any ransome set him at libertie; of which letters TREBELLIVS POLLIO translateth one, which I will set downe verbatim, whereby it may appeare how much the power of the Romanes then was by them effected. BELSOLVS King of Kings, to King SAPOR, greeting. If I were assured that the Romanes might at any time be wholie ouercome, I would reioice with thee for the victorie which thou hast obteined against them, whereof thou makest such vaunts, accounting thy particular good to be profitable for vs all. But seeing that through their fortune, or their force and vertue, that nation is so mightie, consider and take good heed that the taking of an old Emperour (and that through treacherie) redound not to the hurt of thy selfe and thy successors: and consider how many people and nations the Romanes, of enemies, haue made subjects and vassals to their Empire, by which in former time they have bin ouercome. We have heard & do know, that in times past the Gaules ouercame them, and that the great and mightie citie of Rome was entred. yea and burned by them, and now it is manifest that the same Gaules are subject to the Romanes. And haue not the Africanes ouerthrowne the sometimes : yet at this day they are their fubiects, and do ferue them. I will not make mention of any more auncient and farther remote examples, only I will fav, that MITHRI-DATES King of Pontus was Lord of all Afia, and yet in the end was ouerthrowne by them, and at this day all that part of Asia which he commaunded, is subject to the Romanes. If thou wilt follow my counfell, make benefit of the occasion which is offred thee, to obtaine a perfect peace with them, which thou mailt do, by restoring VALERIANVS to his people: and so I conclude, that thou hast had great fortune, whereof I am glad if thou know how to vieit. This is the contents of this Letter, and of others, which he received from other Kings, which in effect import the same. And the Ballrians, the Albanians, the Iberians, the Scythians of mount Taurus, and other nations of the East were so much displeased with the taking of VALERIANVS, that they would not receive the letters, wherein SA-POR Wrote vnto them of his victorie: and fo they fent their Ambassadors to the Captaines of the Romanes, offering them their aid and affiftance for the deliuerie of the Emperour. But all did not availe to mitigate the pride and prefumption of that cruell King. For all the time that VALERIANVS lived in his power, he vsed him worse, then if he had bin the arrantest slaue in the world; and in the end (as Evserivs writeth) having commaunded his eies to be pulled out, he died of age and forrow in prison. And A G ATHYS, 2 writer of no small authoritie, writeth, that before that he died SAPO'R made him to be fleyed alive : fuch was the of Valerianus. pride and crueltie of this barbarous King. VALERIANVS died in the eight veere after that he was chosen Emperour; and because that the most of the time he lived in prison, the rest of his raigne they out to the account of his sonne G A-

LIENVS, who was chosen Emperour at the same time with him.



#### THE LIFE OF GALIENVS, ONELY OF THAT NAME.

AND FOVRE AND THIRTITH RO-MANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.



Alerianus being taken prisoner by the King of the Persians, his sonne Galienus, in whose companie he had ruled the Empire the space of feauen veeres; neither made any preparation to revenge the wrong done to his father, neither tooke any care to redeeme him from imprisonment with money or any other meanes; and so seeing himselfe alone in the Empire, wholy forgetting his father, leading a lifeno lesse retchlesse then dishonest; spending his time in banketting, ba-things, lasciniousnes, and in beholding sometimes blondie and cruell; and sometimes pleasant and ridiculous spectacles. This Emperous made so small account of his owne glorie, and was so carelesse of

the Empire which he possessed; that notwithstanding that he understoude of the rebellion of many proninces, and that many men were made Emperours, yet be feemed not to regard the fame, alledoing that he could live well enough without them: In somuch that a woman, the Queene Zenobia. was so bold as to make bead against him, and to defend her selfe against his armies. Finally, going against Aureolus, who made himselfe prince of Slauonia and was besieved in Milane, through she conspiracie of some which aspired to the Empire, he was staine in a battaile, when he had raigned eight yeeres alone, and senen together with his father; whose death although it was displeasing to his Souldiers , was not much lamented by the Romanes; which under his genernment had seene in a manner all the whole Empire ruinated, together with his owne greatnes.



Hen Valerianvs was taken prisoner his son Galienvs was admitted for sole and absolute Emperour; although that in his fathers time he was but Avgvs Tvs. I have alreadie declafathers time he was but Avovstvs. I have alreadiedecla-red how offensive the imprisonment of Valerianvs was, and how that all the world furmifed that GALIENVS would

haue employed all his power, for the libertie of his father, and to have been revenged of the injurie done vnto him: but he put no such matter in execution, for it was the least part of his thought; so as it is to be believed, and many were then of opinion, that he was rather glad that his father was a flaue to the King of Perlia, then otherwise: for by that meanes he was sole Lord of the Empire: which he commaunded fifteene veeres, feuen veeres in the life time of his father, although in prison; and the rest afterwards. The Historie of which Emperours, is the most confused and hardest to write, of all that ever I have read or handled in any life: for in the space of these fifteene yeeres: there were more excellent men which tooke vpon them the name of Emperours, or were fo, although tyrants; then in three hundred yeeres before, after that Ivivs CESAR had oppressed the libertic of Rome. For in the time of GALIENVS there were thirtie Emperours chosen, and obeyed in divers places: let the discreete reader then confider, that where there happened fo many accidents, which often came together, what order or rule there can be observed, but that there will be confusion and obscuritie in the Historie, principally considering the breuitie which I am to vie; and having to little light from the authors. For I fay, that although that many have treated of the life of this Emperour, yet no one hath written fo plaine and diffinctly as he ought to have done : and befides this, in some things the one writeth cleane contrarie to the other. Therefore I will vie my best endenour to bring this obscuritie and confusion to light, wherewith let the reader rest satisfied, seeing I cannot possibly doe otherwise; except I should write the matter very much at large, which were to diforder the whole, thereby to fet one part in order. I say then that in the raigne and time of GALIENVE; there were greater warres and calamities, then the Romane Empire had euer endured. For VALERIANVS (as PAVLVS OROSIVS noteth) having generally and particularly perfecuted the Catholicke Church in all places and parts in his subjection, it pleased God, as well in his owne person, as in his ministers and officers, and in all those which therein were confederates, to vse publike and notable punishment in all parts, in the time of his sonne, and the greatest part thereof in his owne time, liuing in captinitie. And notwithstanding that GALIENVS so soone as hee alone swaied the scepter of the Empire (as EVSEBIVS and OROSIVS testifie) commanded the perfecution inflicted vpon the Christians to cease, sending his letters and edicts to all parts: but as hee did it as an Infidell, and for feare onely, so the divine inflice ceased not to punish the excessive cruelties past, for a fained present amendement. So as during the whole.

life time of GALIEN vs, the Empire was vsurped by divers tyrants, which were

called Emperours: onely Italy and Rome continued firme to him. And in that

time also, strange Nations entred and invaded the Empire with fire and sword; of

one fide the Germanes came downe into Italy, and passing the Alpes came as

In the time of Galienus were thirtie Empedrie parts.

Theauthors excuse.

Harmes done in the Empire by firange nations, in the time of Galie.

farre as Rauenna: The Gothes robbed and spoiled al Pontus, and a great part of Alia the leffe : and in Europe all Gracia, Macedonia, and their confines : The Sarmates fubdued and robbed Austrich and Hungary: The Germanes passing through France entred Spaine, so farre as to the citie of Tarrazona, which they destroied: The Persians and Parthians alreadic possessing Mesopotamia, seised upon the greatest part of Syria. So as in conclusion all things went so to wracke, that all writers affirme, that the Romane Empire had then ended and come to confusion, had not those tyrants, which in many places rose and called themselves Emperours some of which were very valiant and worthie men) holpen to defend and plucke the Empire out of the hands of those strange Nations, as wee will declare. And the Emperour to whom irappertained to prouide for all things, although that in the beginning he made some good shew of himselfe, perfourning some things as a valiant Captaine, and ouercame and flew In GENVVS a wife and valiant Knight, which rebelled and was called Emperour, being Captaine and gouernour of Hungary and Austrich; and also fought a battaile wherein hee ouercame the Gothes, in which victories he vied incredible crueltie, fo as in one citic he left no man living of what age focuer: But yet afterwards hee gave himselfe fo much to vice and fenfualitie, that while as the world was infefted with wars and battailes. hee remained the most part in Rome, taking his pleasure among whores and bawdes, compassed about with roles and flowers; seeking new delights; oftentimes bathing himselfe; studying how hee might keepe figges and other fruites greene all the yeere; and how they might last two or three yeeres; having ordinarily at his table most exquisite and delicate meates, and of great cost. And in fuch manner he passed his time, that nothing troubled him, neither tooke hee any care for the losses which daily ensued of the lands of his Empire. It is a straunge matter to confider, that the Romane Empire at that time was not onely vexed and molested with warres and persecutions by men, but even the very heavens and elements did feeme to conspire, and to plague it: for TREBELLIVS Po L- Great harmer LIO Writeth, that the heavens were darkened in flich fort, that for many daies doneinsundrie space, they neuer faw the Sunne; and therewithall the earth did oftentimes shake parts of the in Rome, in all Italy, in Africa, and other countries : and with those Earthquakes, time of Galiemany great buildings fell downe, and flew an infinite number of people. Princi-nus, by Earthpally in Afia many cities were destroicd, and the earth opened in many places, and quates and other fearest thewed great vautes and caues; and there sprang out at them great streames of things. falt water. And there were heard thundrings and rorings in the bowels of the earth, without any thunder in the aire, as is viuall: whereat many were fo amazed, that they died with feare. The Sea exceeded his limits, and our flowed and drowned many cities; and many prodigious and wonderfull things happened. After this followed the most cruell pestilence that ever was heard or written of: fo as in Rome there died in one day of that infirmitie five thousand persons. For all which accidents GALIENVS tooke fo little care, as though there had been no fuch matter. And when it was told him that the whole kingdome of Egypt rebelled against him, he answered; And what then? cannot we live without the linnen cloth of Egypt? And being aduertised of the spoile and losse of other proumces, he answered so scornefully, and so retchlesly, that hee seemed to care for nothing: which was the occasion that so many tyrants made themselues Lords and Emperours in his time. Of which it shall not be amisse to say something, seeing

that we have shewed the course and conditions of GALIENVS, and of his raigne;

to the end that his historie may bee the better understood. If I should speake of

Z 3

them all at large, and describe their parentage, and all their acts; it would bee an endlesse peece of worke: for (as I said) they were in all thirtie. But let the reader understand that all the accidents and occurrences cannot bee set downe in order as they passed: for they were so many and happened in so many places, and many of them at one instant, that it would bee impossible to bee well understood, if I should observe the order of the time, wherein every thing happened: for to speake of one matter I must leave another; so as the historie would be abrupt and very confused. And therefore we will begin with those matters which happened in the East; and when we shall briefly have given notice thereof, wee will passe to other parts. Wherefore let him that shall reade it understand, that many of these things came to passe at one instant; and sometime before those which are treated of.

in the Eaft to gether with his two fornes.

VALERIANVS then (as we faid in the beginning) being taken prifoner and his fonne ving no industrie to fet his father at libertie, the fouldiers and Capraines which of his armie remained in the East, went differred and scattered with great forrow for the difference which they had received; greatly offended with the carelefnes of GALIENVS. Wherefore BALISTA, who was Prefect and Generall of the Emperour V A LERIAN V/s his armie, a very excellent man of warre, very fufficient, and diligent in making prouision for the armie, and in all other things remade Emperor, quifite for the warres; and another fingular Captaine of great experience and age, who was of greatest estimation of any man of his time, whose name was Ma-CRINVS, affembling the Romane legions and cohorts togethers in a certaine place, with the confent and good liking of them all; they agreed to chuse an Emperour to defend and conferue the bounds of the Empire, to recouer what was loft and to fet VALERIANV s(if possible) at libertie; seeing that GALIENV s took no care thereof. And after long confultation betweene BALISTA and MACRI-NVs, in the end MACRINVS was chosen and obeied for Emperour; and with him his two fonnes, the one named MACRINVS, and the other QVIETVS, were made his companions in the Empire: and he prefently made B A L 1 S T A Prefect or Generall of his armie. When MACRINVS faw himselfe an Emperour and very mightie by reason of the armies in the East, which he speedily drew togethers and put in good order; he marched with them to the confines of the Perfians. and in some battailes repressed their insolencies by reason of their former victories. But standing in searce of a valiant Captaine whose name was V ALENS, who was Proconful in the prouince of Achaia in Gracia; hee fent against him a great armie vnder the commaund of P 1 s o, who had bin Conful, and was a very noble and valorous gentleman, to seife on that countrie, and thence to passe into Italy. When VALENS understood thereof, to the end to be of greater authoritie and power, he caused himselfe to be chosen Emperour, and tooke the ornaments and enfigues of the Empire, wherewith hee drew fo many men vnto him, that P 1 s o was driven to retire with his troupes into Theffalia, and there was overthrowne Valens bis fout- and flaine by fuch, as VALENS fent against him: PISO having first proclaimed himselse Emperour, vsing the same policie which his enemie had done. But V 4-LENS did not long enjoy this victorie; for within few daies after he himfelfe was flaine by his owne fouldiers. And MACRINVS who raigned Emperor in the East, after that he knew what paffed concerning V A LENS and PISO, not contenting himselfe with that which he held, determined with a great armie to goe to Rome, to ruinate the Emperour GALIENVS (if hee were able) and other tyrants which rebelled: and left behind him Q VIETV's one of his formes, and with him B ALI-

Valens made bimfelfe to be chosen Empe-

odam.

 $A_{\rm c}$   $T_{\rm c}$ 

diers.

Valens (laine by his owne fouldiers.

STA, with certaine troupes of his best fouldiers for feare of ODENATYS, of whom we will speake hereafter. And he began his journey with fine and fortie thousand good men of warre, and marching ouerland through Asia the lesse, passing the streights of Constantinople, he entred into Thracia. But before all this, there arole another tyrant in Slauonia and Dalmatia, whose name was AvREOLVS, and was commaunder of those men of warre, which for the Empire were in those Aureolas quarters, who (as some fay) against his will, was constrained by his souldiers to Dalmatia. take upon him the state and ensignes of the Empire. So as it appeareth that in that finall time, every one held himfelfe fufficient to be an Emperour; and that armie which made none, was held to be of little worth and of no reputation: but trulie the world paid them their due, for none of them died of their naturall death, and most of them were slaine by those which chose them. And MACRINV s being to paffe with his armie through those countries which were in subjection to AVR Bo Lvs. as both of them fought to be foueraigne Lords, they fell at variance, and MACRINUS fought a battaile with AVREOLVS his forces, whereof an excellent A battaile beman called Domicianvs was Generall: wherein Macrinvs and his sonne me and Auwere ouercome and flaine, there ending their high purposes and great power; reolas, where-But before that he fought this battaile (in his way passing through the prouince in Macronis of Achaia) he ouerthrew the Gothes, which had made great spoile and flaughter in the lands of the Empire, whereupon they retired, and alittle withdrew themfelues. And of MACRINV's his fouldiers which escaped from the battaile, 30000. went ouer to AVREOLVS, and fo where AVREOLVS thought that he should haue loft, from thence arole his fortunate gaine. Which newes when the lawfull Emperour GALIENVS understood in Rome, finding himselfe too weake to sub- Aprace made due Av n E o L v s, he made with him a kind of league and peace, thereby to end by Galienta the warres which he had begun against Posthy MV s, another excellent Captaine who rebelled in France, and was called Emperour: of whom (although this Posshumus be his place) we will speake hereafter, to the end first to make an end of the France. troubles in the East, notwithstanding that in all parts of the Empire there were tyrants: neither can we make an end of AvREOLVS, because he outlined GALI-ENVs. and died in the time of his successor CLAVDIVS. I say then, that in the parts of the East there was an excellent wife man, whose name was ODENATYS. who was Prince and Captaine of a certaine people called Palmerini, inhabiting a province in Syria, and he feeing all things out of order (as all the rest did) sought to make himselfe absolute, and in the beginning, as writeth TREBELLIVS POL 110, he was called a King; but afterwards things happening prosperouslie with him, he tooke voon him the name and state of an Emperour, imparting the title odenatus taand dignitie with HERODE the eldest of three sonnes, which he had by his first keth the name wife. This his tyranie was both honorable and profitable to the Romane Empire : for he perfourmed many very notable exploits against SAPOR King of Persia, who held VALERIANVS prisoner: so as saving the setting of his person at libertie (for that could not be done) in all the rest he gat sufficient satisfaction for that which was loft, and recovered what SAPOR had vsurped. For raising many troupes of excellent good fouldiers, he gaue him many battailes, in which he gat the victorie, recourred all Mesopotamia, and the noble cities of Nisibe and Carras, The provesse and compelled the same King SAPOR to flye (having first overthrownehim) of Odenatus. and taking his wives, his treasure and riches, he marched so farre as to the citie of Teliphonte, and had other great aduentures and victories. But for a smuch as his chiefest purpose was against MACRINVS and his sonnes, he sent a great present

resembled pearles then teeth. Her voice was cleere, but sounding deepe more like

Odenatus accepted by Galienus for his companion in the Empire.

of iewels and prisoners which he had taken from the Persians, to the Emperour GALIENVS: and GALIENVS was so fickle and so baseminded that he not only accepted of the prefents, but confirmed his election, giving him the name of A v-G V S T V S and his companion in the Empire, and he triumphed in Rome for the victorie which the other had obtained in Alia. While as ODENATY s gat these victories in the East, other great multitudes of Gothes (besides those which were alreadic entred Thracia and Grecia in Europe) came downe into Asia the lesse, and fo into Bithynia, burning and spoiling the countries.

When ODENATY Synderstood of the death of MACRINYS and of his sonne, (as I have declared) he prefentlie resolved to march against Qy127vs, who was his other sonne, whom he had left in the East with BALISTAthe Prefect of his armie, when he was proclaimed Emperour. And this journey prouing fo profoerous to O DENATY sas the rest had done, with little difficultie, he gat O VI E-Ty s into his power, and made him to be flaine, and afterwards did the like by BALISTA. And although that some say that BALISTA was consenting to the death of Oviervs, and that afterwards he attempted to make himselfe Emperour : yet all agree that he was put to death by O DENAT'V s, and in this manner remained he without any contradiction Lord of all the prouinces of the East and valiantlie warred against the Persians. He had two other somes, the one called HERENNIANVS, and the other TIMOLAVS by his second wife ZENOBIA, the

ODENATUS living in this prosperitie feared of all the Princes of the world, it

most manly and valorous woman that euer was in the world.

happened that a cofen germane of his, whose name was M = 0 N I v s, practised his death in hope to have had the Empire of the East after him, and vsed such meanes that ODENATUS and HERODE his eldest sonne, who by his fathers order was also called Emperour, were both found dead, and MEONIVS the traitor and Odenatus and bis eldeft fonne murtherer, as he was wickedlie moued to kill ODENATVS; fo it pleased God to permit him to be flaine in the like manner, and was within few daies after put to death by the same souldiers which holp him to execute his treason, being a man treason of his which no way deserved the Empire, except by being of kin to ODENATVS: for cofen germane he was a most vile and a wicked man, ZENOBIA, ODENATVS his wife remaining with her two yong fonnes a widow (feeming rather to have neede of a tutor and governour, then to be able to rule and governe others) with courage and prudence more then manly began to rule, and caried herselfe therein with such wisedome and valour, as is incredible: and to the great disgrace of GALIENVS in his lifetime, and of CLAVDIVS his successor, she possessed the Empire of the East many yeeres, on the one side making warre against the Persians, and on the other fide defending herfelfe against the Romane Emperours. The vertues and noble acts of this woman were fo many, that I would I had longer time to de-

fcribe them: but because they require a particular historie, we will with our won-

ted pace hold on our way, wherein of force we must returne to meete with her,

because that she lived in her prosperitie vntill the time of the Emperour AVR E-

LIANVS, of whom we are to treate hereafter, where we will speake of her fall and

end, if God permit. But to the end that the excellencies and vertues of this wo-

man may be the better knowne feeing we recite not her acts, I fay first that Z E-

NOBIA was of an excellent good constitution of bodie, and was exceedinglic

faire and beautifull, not very white, but fomewhat browne. Her eies were great

and black, very cleere and bright and in all parts of her body the was proportio-

nable. And as the was most excellently beautifull and amiable, so had she an ho-

the valour of Zenobia,

brought to

their end

through the

Meonius.

The flature and beautie of Zenobia.

a man then a woman. Herewith she was most honest and continent, and would neuer lye with her husband after that the was with child:neither twife, vntill that The chaffitie by naturall fignes she knew whether she had conceived or no. She was very wife, and learned, and most perfectly spake the Latine, Greeke, and Egyptian tongues, Her learning, and was very liberall and temperate in all things; somewhat seucre, and yet pitifull. In her diet she was most temperate, but yet when she inuited any guests, she Her moderawould alittle exceede, more to please others, then for any naturall defire. She was tion in ber die. ferued very ceremoniouslie, and with great honor, after the custome of the kings of the Perfians. When the made any speech to her men of warre, or sate in counsell among

them she came armed with a caske vpon her head, and rode in the like manner. She delighted much in hunting, and did other things shewing strength and zenobia decourage, as though she had bin a valorous and gallant Knight. She vaunted much lighted in bunthat the descended from CLEOPATRA, and from the PTOLOMYES Kings of ting. Egypt; and the faid, that the also descended by another line from the great SEMP RAMIS Queene of Babylon. By meanes of this her prowesse and valour, she held the Empire of the East, and was called Av G vs Tathespace of many yeeres. As for her two fonnes HERENNIANYS and TIMOLAYS, I find not written what their end was, but only that they had the habit and enfignes of Emperours, and Herganianus are reckoned in the number of the tirants of those times. TREBELLIVS POLLIO called Empe. writeth, that the Emperour AVRELIANVS made them to be flaine. Others af-rours, firme, that they died of their naturall death. So soone as the Emperour GALIE-NV s (being in Rome) understood of the death of ODENATUS, thinking to make a better hand against ZENOBIA, he commaunded souldiers to be leuied, and to be sent into the East against her and the Persians, and sent with them a Captaine whose name was HERACLIANVS, who with his troupes was ouerthrowne by Heraclianus ZENOBIAS forces. The Gothes also in those times made another incursion into exertificance Afia the leffe, failing through the fea called Mare Euxinum, and were ouercome by forces. ATHENVS and CLEOPHANVS Captaines fent by GALIENVS: but yet for all that they made great spoile in those coasts, and were also againe ouercome by sea. by another Captaine called VENERIANYs, and so that nation did much harme in the confines of the Empire, although that sometime they were overthrowne therein. About this time there was in the kingdome of Egypt another Captaine of certaine companies of Romanes, whose name was EMILIANYS, who after some tumults which happened therein, did as he saw others do, and proclaimed himselse Emperour, and with great courage and audacitie seised on that most auncient kingdome. But as these buildings had but weake foundations, so small force and a little foule weather ouerthrew them, which was in this manner. G A-LIENVS (notwithstanding that he was carelesse and negligent) sent from Rome against him a Captaine called THEODATVS, who tooke such a course, that EMILIANVS his friends failing him, he was apprehended by THEODATVS, and afterwards put to death in prison.

I prefume that the reader will imagine me to be very tedious in writing the life of this Emperour, feeing hee was fo remiffe and negligent; having briefly written the lives of others which were good and excellent: But if he shall con-except. fider that in this Historie are comprehended the lines of thirtie tyrants, whereof many did better deserue to have been Emperours then GALIENVS; he shall

Celfus made Emperour in Africa, and put to death by a vuoman.

Revilianus called Emperour in Hungarie and Dalmatia.

Titus made bis fouldiers and flaine by the fame.

Cenforinus began and ended in the fame manner.

haue greater reason to accuse me of breuitie, then of being too long. But to auovid the breach of order I will be as briefe as possibly I may. While then that matters passed in the East in this manner, the other provinces of the Empirewere neither in rest, nor peace, but rather there was not any of them wherein were not warres. battailes and tyrants which called themselues Emperours, the right Emperour GALIENVS folacing himselfe in Rome, contented with Italie, which only obeyed him in peace. The rest sometimes obeyed him, and sometime they denied him their obedience, and he taking no care to finde any redreffe, fent onely certaine Captaines which did some thing; whereof we will say somewhat. In this generall hurlie burlie Africa forbare not to vie some alteration, although not so much as other provinces did; for at that time there was therein for Captaine generall thereof, a Romane Knight called FABIVS POMPONIANVS; and for Proconful and gouernour another, whose name was VIVVS PASSIENVS; who for that they would have an Emperour of their owne making, agreed to chuse and nominate a Tribune whose name was Crisvs, a man much esteemed and commended, aswell for his excellent good cariage, as for his vertue and instice; and also for his personage: for he was exceeding tall of stature and of an excellent good constitution. And they having effected their purpose, the poore mans maiestic lasted but seauen daies: for he was put to death by the order of a woman dwelling in those countries, which was a kinswoman of the Emperour GALI-ENVS, whosename was GALIENA; and after that he was dead they shewed extreame crucltie to his body. After whom I finde not that any man rose against GALIENVS in Africa, yet hereof great and many scandales, and much trouble enfued in that countrie. While these things passed in the places aforenamed, in Hungarie and in the marches thereof, was a Captaine of the armies in Dalmatia and Slauonia, called REGILIANVS which rebelled; and with the confentand good will of the inhabitants of those prouinces, he was proclaimed Emperour: for they were greatly incenfed against GALIENY's for the cruelties by him ysed in those countries, when hee ouercame Ev G ENIVS, whom in the beginning (we fay) to have rebelled in that countrie, and to have been ouerthrowne and flaine by GALIENVS. Truely it is a trouble some peece of worke to make relation of all the tyrants, and it is as strange a thing to confider, that of all the Captainesthat VALERIANVS father to GALIENVS made, there was not any one of them, but in the time of GALIENVS was called Emperour, wherein they shewed little lovaltie to their countrie and their Lord: But it was growne to a custome to doe fo, fo as they seemed to have right thereto. Neverthelesse it argued the great judgement of VALERIANVS in chuling for his Captaines, men of fo great courage and valour. There were also besides these Captaines, others, which in this confusion of the Empire were called Emperours; amongst which was one TITVS, a notable man, who in the time of MAXIMINVS had been Tribune, buthe continued with this title but fixe monethes; for the same souldiers which chosehim, killedhim. And in the same manner, began and ended CENSORI-NVs a man which had been Conful; and had held other offices and dignities. And another Captain called T REBELLIANV s, was chosen and proclaimed Emperour, by the Yfauri; which are a people inhabiting the mountaines bordering vpon Cilicia in Asia the lesse; who many daies gouerned those quarters, against whom GALIENVS sent a Captaine called GAVSISOLEVS borne in Egypt: betweene which two, was fought a most crueli battaile, wherein TREBELLIANVS was ouerthrown e and flaine. Yet for all this, the Yfauri remained not in peace;

but rebelled many times afterwards; more for that their countrie was inexpugnable and of hard accesse, then for the valour or vertue of the inhabitants. And to make a conclusion, let vs write of those which in France, and the marches thereof were called Emperours, from the time of the imprisonment of VALERI-ANV s, vntill the death of his sonne GALIENVS: which of purpose I haue left till the last; because that in those warres GALIENVS employed himselfe, and finally therein ended his daies. There was for captaine generall of the armies in the prouinces of France, an excellent and valorous man, whose name was Post-HYMVs, of whom (speaking of the tyrant AVREOLVS) we made mention. whom VALERIANVS did highly honor and esteeme; and for that cause his fonne GALIENVS held him in great reputation, and so soone as he came to the Empire fent him his sonne SALONINYS, whom hee intituled CESAR, to be brought vp and instructed by him; and he began to doe so. But afterwards seeing the retchlesnes and ill gouernment of his father GALIENVS (forgetting the lovaltie which he ought to his foueraigne Lord) putting the fonne to death, he fought to get the Empire for himselfe. Yet others write, that he was prouoked and compelled by the inhabitants of that countrie (which deadly hated GALIENVS) Saloninus son to accept of the name of Emperour; and that they flew SALONINVS, fcor- of Gallenus put ning to hauea boy for their Lord. But how soeuer it was, Posthy my with posthymus great courage and discretion made himselfe Lord of all France, and with the like vehically vehically gouerned the same the space of seauen yeeres, defending it valiantly, and obtay- called Empening many great victories against the Barbarians and northerly nations, which continually inuaded it and made incursions. Against Posthymys, GALIEwys leuied an armie, for that he was so neere to Italie, and notwithstanding that he was retchles, vicious and carelesse, yet he wanted not sufficient courage for the warres; if he would have followed them, as he did his pleasures and ease. And went against Posthvmvs, having with him for generall of his armie, a noble man called THEODOTVS, and also another called CLAVDIVS, who was a man of great goodnes and vertue, and afterwards was Emperour. And being come before a citie wherein Poshhvmvs was the French-men did not onely defend him, and the citie, shewing great courage and loue; but the Emperour GALIENVS in a skirmish was wounded with an arrow, by meanes whereof he was constrained to raise his siege. And holding this for a very doubtfull warre, he made peace with AVREOLVS, who at that time was called Emperour in Slauonia. But that was not sufficient to defeate Posthymys: for he was supported by VI-CTORINVS, who was an excellent captaine and a yong man, whom Posthymys made his companion in his Empire; with whose aide & diligence (although that most commonly his side was ouerthrowne) he defended himselfe and prolonged the wars many daies; having fomtimes prosperous, & somtimes aduerse fortune. And GALIENVS returning to Rome, as though that he had left all in peace, entred thereinto in great triumph, giving himfelfe ouer to his old course of life and accustomed pleasures; whither daily newes were brought vnto him (besides the strange nations which molested the Empire) of captaines and other notable men which intituled themselues Emperours, whereof his wickednes was the occasion, being hated and scorned for his retchlesnes and stupidine; which are things which make wicked men audacious; and give good men hope and meanes toseekeredresse. Posthymys liuing all this time (as is said) in great prosperitie, together with his sonne of his owne name whom he entituled C & s AR, and afterwards Emperour, and his companion in his Empire, gouerned with great

Posthimus, in the warre against Lolia-

The French re- iustice and seueritie. But the Frenchmen desirous of noueltie, rebelled against him, and chose for Emperour a Captaine whose name was LOLIANV s.a man of and in his place great fort, very valiant and of great experience: and these two warring one against chof talianus. the other, Posthv Mvs and his some were staine by him and them; and so hee his some staine was paid for the treason which he committed against GALIENVS. And LOLIA-NV s remaining Emperour in those parts, notwithstanding that he was very valorous and of great power, yet hee could neuer attaine to that authoritie which Posthymyshad; as well for that hee was not chosen by common consentas for that VICTORINV s, whom (as we have faid) Posthv Mv s proclaimed Emperour and his companion, held great part of the countrie and was called Empefor. This VICTORINVS was a womans fonne, whose name was VICTORIAOT  $V_{ t ICTORINA}$ , which was fo valorous and manly, and fo defirous to raigne, that the was therefore called mother of Armies, and VICTORINVS Was altogether ruled by her counfells, and she afterwards after the death of her sonne, tooke vpon her to make an Emperour of her choosing: so great was her minde and policie.  $V_{ ext{ICTORINV}}$  s with the favour and reputation of his mother, made refiltance

against Lolianvs the new Emperour, which slew Posthymvs, foas Vic-TORINVS obtained the victorie against LOLIANVS and slew him; and remained fole Lord, together with his mother whom he called Av G v s T A. To fay the truth, VICTORINVS was an excellent and valorous Prince; but he was luxurious, and therefore raigned but a little while: for by the treason of a souldier (from whom hee had taken his wife) hee was flaine in the citie of Agrippina, now called Colleine in high Duchland: which fo foone as his mother understood, with the aide and affiftance of fome of her friends, she proclaimed her nephew Victoria NVS Emperour, who was the same Victorinvs his some. But the furie of the retrieus chosen men of warre was such, that they presently slew the sonne as they had done the father. Yet for all this, VICTORINA gaue not ouer her defire to rule and comthe meanes of maund: for by the meanes of her friends and fauourites, the perfwaded TETRIc v s a Senatour of Rome, who had a certaine gouernment in France, to proclaime himselfe Emperour, and his sonne C & s AB, and he did so; and prooued an excellent and valorous Prince, and made himselfe Lord of all France, and of the greatest part of Spaine, obtaining also some victories against the Northerly nations; and his raigne continued long, even vntill the time of AVRELIANVS. And the right Emperour GALIENVS enioyed Rome and all Italy, which never forfooke him: and the other tyrants (by turnes) the one destroied the other; or else were flaine by their owne fouldiers. I geffethat I have very neere treated of all the tyrants, except of one whose name was SatvRNINVs, and of another called Ma-Saturninus and RIVS. Of SATURNINUS then I fay, that the fouldiers which chose him presently bereaued him of his life: and MARIV shis Empire lasted but seuen daies,

Emperours, the one was flaine prefently and the other raigned 7 daies.

Victorine.

murthers, robberies, violences, infolencies, and alkinde of cruelties, tyrannies and treasons, with famine, pestilence, and other euils and calamities, seldome heard of, but in the time of this GALIENVS; and the greatest part thereof caused through his vice, crueltie, and negligence: and so it pleased God that hee had the like end as other euill Emperours had, which was complotted in this manner. An excellent Captaine (whereof the warres produce abundance) called MARTIA-NV s, compounding with another called HERACLIANV s, and one other whose name was CERONIVS, determined to kill GALIENVS, to the end that one of

Through all parts and prouinces of the Empire there were committed infinite

them should have the Empire; each of them alleaging that they did it for the generall good of the whole Empire. And having laid their plot, they presently put it in execution: for it happened that GALIEN v s went from Rome with a great armie against AvREOLVs, who (as we have faid) was called Emperor: and they two had been companions in the Empire. But afterwards falling at variance, Av-REOLYS tooke the citie of Milan; and GALIENYS having befreged it, MAR-TIAN V s and the other traitors, which had agreed with AVREOLV'S, fained that the faid AVREOLVS was making a fallie, and came to charge that place where GALIENVS Was: whereupon he with greater haste then good speed, went from his lodging smally accompanied; but before that the rest of the armie could come togethers, hee was flaine by those which came with him, together with a Galienus and brother of his, whose name was Valerianus. And so Gallenvs ended both Valorianus his life and his raigne, when as the Empire was little leffe, then rent in peeces and faine. viurped by forraine nations: for the Gothes and Scythians held a great part of Thracia, and of Macedonia in Europe, and some provinces in Asia. ZENOBIA raigned and ruled all in the East: and in France and part of Germanie, TETRICYS and VICTORINVS: and in Slauonia and Illyricum, AVREOLVS, who was befieged in Milan; and so all the rest lined, part vinder the obedience of GALIENVS, and part under tyrants. The fouldiers of his armie were greatly offended with his death: for they hoped to have had the facking and spoile of that cities so as MARTIANVS and his companions were driven to fatisfie them with readie money: but none of those conspirators could attaine to the defired title of Emperour. This happened in the yeere of our Saujour IESVS CHRIST

271. after EvsEBIVs, and in the fifteenth Anno Dom yeere of the raign of GALIENVS. \$7 I.

THE





### DIVS THE SECOND, AND

FIVE AND THIRTITH EM-PEROVR OF ROME.





Ethinketh that I have perfourmed a great peece of worke. feeing that I have ended the life and historie of GALIE-NVS; Whose historie is so consused and out of order, and by the authors written fo obscurely, as it appeareth: which being ended, I come now to recount vnto you the life of CLAVDIVS the second, who was one of the most vertuos and valorous Emperours that euer was in the world.

So soone as the Emperour GALIENVS was dead, the men of warre of his armie were so highly displeased, that neither MARTIANVS nor any of those which conspired with him in his treason, either could or durst take vpon him the name of Emperour; but rather by the common confent of all men, CLAVDIVS who came thither with GALIENVS, one of the most excellent Captaines of them all, as well for his goodnes and vertues, as for the worthines of his person, and great and notable services which hee had done in former time, was chosen Emperour. It cannot distinctly be set downe of what linage or countrie hee was: for some say and affirme, that hee was borne in Dalmatia; and

was descended of an ancient familie: others say, that he was of Dardania, and was forung from the bloud of the Troians: and some (as AVRELIVS VICTOR saith) affirmed, that hee was the some of the Emperour Gordianvs. He was a very tall man of person, his eyes were cleere and bright, and he had a great and ful face; and was very strong and of marueilous force: so as in wrestling and other exercifes, which young men of warre doe vie, he euer wanne the prize; and was also claudius, of holy, vertuous, and excellent good conditions and behaulour. He was very chaft and continent, very true, temperate, iust and vpright, both before that hee was Emperour and in the time of his raigne. He deerely loued his triends and kinfinen, and greatly honoured strangers. He persecuted the cuill, and seuerely punished them; and was an extreme enemie to vninist Itidges. He made excellent lawes and ordinances, and in very fhort time reformed the Common-wealth: fo as when he died it feemed to be another world. Before that he was Emperour, he did many noble feates of armes in the feruice of GALTENVS, against Posthy-MVs in France, and against the Gothes in many parts, and likewise in other wars. Wherefore he was worthily chosen by all men to the dignitie of the Empire. For which occasion so soone as his election was knowne in Rome, the ioy was great which was conceined thereat by all estates, and with incredible great goodwill they confirmed his election, with great applauses and bleffings of the Senate. When CLAVDIVS was inuested in the Empire, hee gouerned the same with so great wisedome and courage, as in a good Prince was requisite. The first battaile or conflict that he had after he was Emperour, was against A vreo Lvs, who (as we faid)was in Milan. Who understanding of the death of GALIENVS, fortified himselfe in such fort, that hee made account to have remained sole and absolute Emperour. But C LAVDIV s having reinforced his armie, fought many battailes with him; amongst which, in one which was very notable, he obtained the victorie, which hee deferued, fighting therein most valiantly. Whereupon Av-REOLV's retired himselfe into Milan, and from thence fought to come to forme The victoricas composition with CLAVDIVS, as hee had done with GALIENVS: but CLAV- Claudius a DIV s, as a vertuous and victorious Prince, would not heare of any agreement with inc. a tyrant, but answered, That such demainds might well haue been made to GA-LIENV s, who could have endured AVREOLVS his conditions, and stood in scare of him: but of him he was not to expect any vniust or vnlawfull matter. A vn B o-Lvs was afterwards flaine, as some say, by his owne souldiers, and as others say, The death by CLAYDIVs his commandement, fighting at the foote of a bridge. But where-darrens. foener, CLAVDIVS became Lord of his armie, and of all the countries which he possessed and going with this victorie to Rome, he was there received with great triumph and feasting: and there he established the affaires of the Empire in such fort, as could not be bettered: and did nothing without the confent of the Senate. And his goodnes comming to be knowne, hee was obeied in all places and parts of the Empire, saving in such as were vsurped by tyrants and barbarous nations. And as all his studie and care was how hee might restore the Empire to the former libertie, and to recouer what therof was loft, exposing his person to all kinds of daungers; it was debated in the Senate, and that very doubtfully and with diuers opinions, what warre was first to be undertaken, and whether he should goe against TETRICVS and VICTORINA, which held France and Spaints or into the East against ZENOBIA; or else against the Gothes and other nations, which also vsurped and infested fundrie parts of the Empire. But the good Emperor C LAV-

DIVS foone resolued them of that doubt, saying, That the first warre that hee

**e**rguments pared himselfe to go againft the Gothes.

tions made by

the Gothes.

they were enemies to the common-wealth; but as for the tyrants they were enemies to him only: wherefore he was bound to reuenge a publique wrong before a private injurie. This his resolution being approved by the Senate and people After fundrie of Rome, he with all possible diligence leuied the greatest armie that euer was leuied by any Emperour for fuch a warre; and truly he could not well haue had any lesse, considering the present necessitie : for the Gothes (as I ORNANDE s in the actes of the Gothes, and PAVLVS OROSIVS, and others do write) had for the space of fifteene yeeres vsurped many parts of the Empire, and had destroied many cities therein; amongst which, some were very great and principall. And notwithstanding that by MACRINUS, and by CORNELIUS AVITUS, and in one place by the same CLAVDIVs in the time of GALIENVS, they had beene fometimes defeated and ouerthrowne; yet neuertheleffe they still held all Thracia, and in a manner all Macedonia and other prouinces.

At the same season that CLAVDIVS determined to make warre against the Gothes, they through their greedie defire of spoile & bootie, and for revenge of fome battailes which they had loft, and beleeuing that CLAVDIVS would be fufficientlie busied in warring against TETRICVS and other tyrants, moued many northerly people & nations to come against the Romanes. Whereupon they ioined the felues with the Heruli, Trutungi, Virtungi, and other vnknowne nations. exceeding in all the number of three hundred thousand fighting men, besides feruants and difarmed people : and taking their way through Hungarie, and downethe Danubie, they fraighted two thousand barks and ships with men and munition. Some are of opinion (as I fay) that this fleete came down the Danubie; and others affirme, that this was a fleete that the Gothes had by fea: the auncient authors wrote it to cofused lie, that I continue of my first opinion, that the Gothes were neuer mightie by sea, neither then, nor at any time before. In conclusion, they brought so many men, and so great store of armes and victuals, that they made the whole Empire to quake for feare, only the inuincible Emperour was not difmayed, but with a felect gallant armie marched against them, and being readie to come to blowes with them, he wrote a briefe letter to the Senate, wherein he shewed the great difficultie and the danger wherein he was; and yet wanted

Letter to the Senat of Rome.

not courage to affault his enemies, the effect whereof was this: Fathers conscript, I do give you to understand, and hold you it for certaine. that into the lands of the Romane Empire are entred three hundred and twentie thousand men of warre; I go to fight with them, if I ouercome them, it is reason that you give me such thanks and reward as such a deede shall deserve. But if it happen otherwise, consider I pray you that I fight after that GALIENVS hath raigned, the commonwealth being rent in pieces, and almost ruinate, and that I shall fight after the tyrannies and rebellions of Evgenivs, Regillianvs, LOLIANVS, POSTHVMVS, CELSVS, and many others, which in contempt of G ALIENVS rebelled against their countrey and commonwealth. And we may well fay that we now have neither whole fword nor launce: for France and Spaine which are the finewes and strength of the Empire, are vsurped by Terricus, and the croffebowes and archers (although it be a fhame to fpeake it) ZENOBIA hath them all: fo as having fuch want of all things necessarie, whatfoeuer small matter shall be by vs perfourmed, is to be reputed great. Notwithstanding all these difficulties, CLAVDIVS led with him an excellent and well experienced army, and by his wifedome and good direction came to a battaile, wherein the Gothes

Gothes were ouerthrowne, and an indicible flaughter was made of them, which A most noble was one of the most noble victories that euer was gotten in the world, wherein vidioice obtains there was an incredible number of enemies flaine and taken prisoners, and a nedby clasgreat aboundance of spoile taken by the fouldiers: Insomuch as the same CLAV- the Garber, DIVS in a letter (extant to this day) written by him to IVNIVS BROCHVS, WIIteth, that he had flaine, taken, and put to flight three hundred thousand men, and taken two thousand ships: so as the houses were filled (almost to the tops) with fwords, lances, shields and targets of the subdued, and the shores of the rivers, the feas, and the fields were full of bones, and the wayes stopt vp with the dead carcafes of the enemies. For this victorie there was conceiued great ioy in Rome, and for that cause they made many vowes and supplications to their gods. In this battaile were taken many barbarous Kings, and other men of great account, and there were fo many prisoners, that there was neither prouince nor citie wherein were not many flaues of them.

After this victorie in Thracia necre to Constantinople, and in Macedonia necre to the citie of Thessalonica, CLAVDIVs his Captaines fought sundrie battailes with the Gothes which were possessed of those cities, in all which, through his good fortune, his enemies were ouercome, in fuch fort, that he restored to the Romane Empire all that which therein they had vsurped; so as the Gothes were wholie driven out of it, and in long time after durst not hold vp their heads. Likewise this most valorous Prince (as Evinopivs and Avrelivs Victor report) Claudius bis had another very notable victorie against the Germanes, neere to a lake called vistorie a Venacus (now Garda) the enemie being little lesse then two hundred thousand sainst the frong: fo as hauing freed the Empire from strangers, and meaning to haue gone against TETRICVS and ZENOBIA, or against some other tyrants remaining, it happened that the good Emperour fell fick in such fort, that (as TREBELLIVS POLLIO faith) within few daies after it he died of his naturall death, a thing The death which I most desire to see in an Emperour, which seldome happeneth but in fuch Emperours as are good and just, as this Emperour was. When he died he had raigned only two yeeres, and for his death (except Tetricvs and Zeno-BIA) all were very fory, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 273. and by a ARR. Down. 273. decree made by the Senate, he was honoured with all kind of honour, and placed in the number of the gods. His statue made of gold was set up in the Capitoll, and his target of gold was fet in the Senate. Truly they did it with great reason, for considering his high attempts in the beginning, without all doubt if it had pleased God to have

giuen him longer life, CLAVDIV s had wholie defeated all the tyrants of the Empire, and had againe fet it in perfect libertie. ···)



# THE LIFE OF THE EM-PEROVR QVINTILIVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME, AND SIXE AND

THIRTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME.





HE Emperour CLAVDIVS had a brother whole name was QVINTILIVS, who as he was his brother by nature: fo was he in behauiour, condition, and vertue: for he was very wife, and as expert in the warres as in civill government: by reason whereof he was much efteemed and beloued, and was left with certaine legions to guard Italy, when his brother went to

the warres against the Gothes. The death of CLAVDIVS being published, the little armie which QVINTILIVS commaunded, moued thereto by his deferts and vertues, chose him Emperour, and his election was approved by the Senate of Rome to foone as it was advertised thereof, and they gave him the name of A v-GVSTVS (after EVTROPIVS) and having accepted the Empire, and beginning to make a good shew of his valour, having raigned only seventeene daies, newes was brought him that the victorious armie which his brother had with him fo foone as he was dead, had made choise of a noble man called AVRELIANVS for Emperour, of whom we will presentlie discourse. Wherefore QVINTILIVS being out of hope to be able to make his partie good against him, as well for that he was a man of great valour and courage, as for that that army was the whole power of the Romane Empire, defiring to die in his estate rather then to line depri-

ued thereof, having first founded the will of his fouldiers, and finding no hope in them, he caused his vaines to be opened, and so died voluntarilie bleeding, having The death of raigned, as some say, twentie dayes, and as others say, but seuenteene.

### THE LIFE OF AVRELIA-NVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME,

AND SEVEN AND THIRTITH EMPEROVR OF ROME.





Fter QVINTILIVS, AVRELIANVS succeeded in the Empire. or to fay better, after CLAVDIVS: for fo foone as CLAVDIVS was dead, in the same maner as the armie in Italy chose Q v I N-TILIVS, the other great armie which CLAVDIVS led, chose AVRELIANVS, and he remained Emperour; and was one of

the most mightie that euer raigned in Rome; and is by the historiographers compared in his feates of armes with the greatest and best Captaines of the world, which were ALEXANDER the great, and IVLIVS CESAR, for the great victories which he obtained in the small time of his raigne, and the prouinces which he subdued with incredible celeritie, marching from one to another, as we will briefely declare; although that in his condition he was neither equall to them, neither did he any way imitate them; chiefely, he did much differ from CESAR in clemencie, for he was cruell and bloudie: wherefore it was faid of him, that he was necessarie for the Empire, but yet he was ill beloued by the most part thereof. Others faid, that AVRELIANVS was fit to be a Captaine, but not to be an Emperour; and so he is neither accounted among the good Princes, nor amongst the cuill: for of the one side he set the Empire at libertic, by destroying all the tyrants, and of the other fide he vsed much crueltie. Some fay, that he was borne in Dacia, and others fay, that he was borne in Missa, the truth whereof is incertaine, and fo FLAVIVS VOPISCY; who doth most copiouslie and particularlie write his life, leaueth it in doubt; but all agree that he was of a meane linage, and of poore parentage. He was tall of flature, and of great strength, and

Marcomanni : and from thence went to Rome, very angrie with those which had Cruelite refed

murmured and spoken ill of him; among which were some that had practized reliamus, and

against him: and whereas he was very cruell (notwithstanding that he was re-theoreas)on

ceiued with great feasting and solemnitie) he vsed so cruell punishment for light thereof.

was that battaile. But he afterwards reinforcing his armie (in three notable bat-

tailes having the victorie) ended the warre, destroying the whole armie of the

offences, and of fo fmall importance, that any gentle or mercifull prince would

haue diffembled, and made no reckoning thereof. But he would not doe to, but

to the contrarie put many horribly to death; for which cause he began to be ex-

tremely feared, and therefore generally hated. He encreased and enlarged the

had a gracious and pleafing countenance; and with his faire afpect he feemed to be a perfect man. In his diet he did somewhat exceede ordinarie. And from his infancie he was inclined to the warres and militarie discipline; and in observing it and making it to be observed, he was most severe. He was of great courage and fingular strength, and exceedingly defirous to come to have blowes with his enemies. And being a fouldier he euer defired to fight, and procured skirmishes and encounters : and for that there was another in the armie whose name was also AVRELIANVS, to distinguish the one from the other, they called this, Av-RELIANVS with his hand voon his fworde: for voon all occasions he was in a readines with his pike or fworde in his hand, defiring to be doing. With which readines and valour he made himselfe famous wherefoeuer he came, and performed notable matters in his owne person. In somuch that THEOCLIVS and FLAVIVS VOPISCUS report of him, that in the warres of Sarmatia he happened in one day to kill fortie of his enemies with his owne hands, and at feurrall times aboue nine hundred men, which made him fo much esteemed among the Romanes, that in their dauncings which they yied in those times, among certaine sonners and catches sung by the dauncer, they vsed to pronounce this verle.

> A thoufand and a thoufand, one alone hath killed a thoufand, A thoufand yeeres and a thoufand line he: alone which killed a thoufand.

He did other things, which although they feeme to be but meane and of fmall importance, yet they demonstrate the valour and fortitude of this man; whereby he was preferred to great offices and commaundes in the warres. He was many times Captaine and Tribune, and aboue fortie times was Lieutenant to other Captaines and Tribunes. In which offices he did so sewerely punish souldiers for their offences, and did to strictly observe the discipline of the warres, that he was therefore much feared of them: and did likewife many notable things in battailes and skirmilhes; and principally in the warres which his predecessor Craypivs had with the Gothes, he wonne more honor then any other Captaine did he being generall of the horse. Which his doings were the occasion that CLAVDIVS being dead, he was by the generall confent of the whole armie chosen and made Emperour. And after that QVINTILIVE was dead, who in Rome was obeyed. the Senate and people of Rome approved his election, and held him for Emperour. And he having accepted the Empire, without any longer flay, marched with his victorious armie against the Sucuians and Sarmates northerly nations, which had inuaded the bounds of the Empire. With which he came to a battaile. and obtained a most honorable victorie; but therein befell him one mishappe, wherof many inconveniences enfued, which was: That being bufied in this war, the Marcomanni and other most fierce nations of Germanie came downe into Italie, and made great spoile and slaughter in that part, which is now called Lawbardie, and in the marches of Milan, whereof they were in fo great feare in Rome, that they thought they should have been wholy lost, and there were many rumours, and many foake ill of AVRELIANVS. But fo foone as he heard the newes he was greatly grieued, and came with al speed to the rescue of Italy. And this was fo daungerous a warre that necrevnto Placentia there wanted but a little, that the Emperour had not been wholy ouerthrowne: for ioyning battaile with all their whole powers of either fide, they fought a whole day from funneto funne; and AVRELIANVS

walles of Rome, and fortified the fame, repairing that which was decayed, which Aurelianas enwas not lawfull for any Emperour to doe, but to fuch as had enlarged and en-larged the wals creased the provinces and limits of the Romane Empire: for by that title A v- of Rome. G V ST V S C E SAR, TRAIANE, and also N ER o enlarged the walles. Having established all matters in Rome (his chiefe delight confisting in armes) he couldstay but few daies therein, but speedily departed thence towards the Aurelianus de-East, against the great Zenobia; accounting it a shame that a woman should parted from hold the East Empire in disgrace of Rome, and the Emperours thereof. And Rome into the passing through Slauonia, and thence through Thracia; he had certaine conflicts Queene Zenoagainst certaine barbarous nations, which sought to resist him and to have stopped him in his journey; but keeping his way, hee came to the citie Byzantium which is now called Constantinople, and so passed with all his armie into Asia the leffe. which now is subject to the Turke, first pacifying the prouince of Bithynia which then rebelled, all the whole nations yeelding themselues into his hands, without any battaile or making any relistance. And from thence he marched into Cappadocia, where for that the citie of Tiana, which in that countrie was an auncient Colony of the Greekes, being the countriealfo wherein the famous Apollonivs Tianevs was borne, made resistance and would not receive him. he sware that he would punish the inhabitants in such fort, that he would not leaue a doggealiue amongst them, which his determination he afterwards altered and revoked. For by the illusion of the divell (God permitting it for some vnknowne cause) there appeared vnto him in a dreame; or it seemed vnto him that he faw a vision, which told him that it was Apollonivs Tianey st which warned him to forbare to destroy his countrie Tiana, and gaue him also further aduise. Which, as they write, was the occasion that he not onely pardoned the Tianeans, but also that from thence forth he was not so cruell, as theretofore he had been. So as in Tiana he did put but HERACLAMON to death which betraied the citie into his hands, which he faid he did, for that he which had been a traitor to his countrie, could neuer be faithfull to him. But his wealth which was A just remark very great, he commaunded to be given to his heires, to the end that no man for treafon. should thinke that he had condemned him to be executed for the defire of his goods. And to the fouldiers complaining, for that he had not given them the spoile of the citie, wherein he had sworne that he would not leave any living, no not a dogge; he answered, I promised that there should neuer a dogge remaine aliue in Tiana; and I give you leave to kill them all. When the Emperour had gotten this noble citie, he from thence marched to Antioch which bordereth vpon the mount Taurus; where graunting a generall pardon, with one onely

battaile of finall refistance, neere to a wood called Daphne, he seased on all that

prouince.

Aurelianus called Aure-Lianus with thefuvord /5

against ZENOBIA, who with another woman called ZAVALLA (in a manner as

manly as her felfe) attended his comming with a very great armie of fingular

A cruell bat-Zenobia and Aurelianus.

Zenobia ouer-Aurelianus.

good fouldiers and excellent Captaines, trained vp with great experience in the warres with her husband ODENATVS; and afterwards in other warres against the Persians: and the two armies comming negre the one to the other, a most cruell warre began betweene them. For ZENOBIA not as a woman, but rather as though she had been HANNIBAL, provided and performed whatfoeuer was fit against the Romanes. Finally, after some encounters they came to a battaile, Acruell bat-taile bitwoeen neere to the citie of Emesa, which bordereth vpon the deferts of Palmerina aprouince in Syria; which was so bloudie and doubtfull that AVRELIANV s was well neere ouerthrowne : for his Cauallerie being tired with fighting began to retire. refusing the battaile, and were readie to have turned their backes and to flie: but being detained, by their Captaines, and by the footemen constrained to stand

put to flight by firme he obtained the victorie; and ZENOEIA escaped by flight. When Av RELIANVs had obtained so noble a victorié, he went into the citie of Emesa, and from thence to the citie of Palmyra, which is the head of that prouince, and ZENOBIAS principall seate. In which way his people passed many daungers and difficulties, wrought by their enemies where they were to paffe: and the citie with fuch courage made refiftance, that his fouldiers were greatly distressed, and the Emperour himselfe in person incurred many great daungers. Which plainly appeareth by a letter written by him to a familiar friend of his. Whereupon AVRELIANVS desiring to make an end of this warre, thinking to induce ZENOBIAto yeeld her felfe into his power, fent her a letter wherein hee ting or requiring peace, became therewith more hautie & proud then before: an-

did affure her of her life, & that he would give her all her treature, her iewels, and her money; and that the thould line free & at libertie in any place or citie where the Senate should appoint. Z ENOBIA having received this letter, in lieu of granfwering him with another very proud letter; which NICOMACHYS a Writer of those times, translated out of the Syrian into the Greeke tongue; and FLAVIVS Vopiscvs hath left it to vs in Latin, which I will fet downe, to the end that the hautie presumptuous minde of this woman may be made knowne to the world, which faith thus: ZENOBIA Queene of the Easteto AVRELIANVS AVGVSsen by Zenobia TV s, greeting. No other Captaine vntill this day but thou, hath required by letter that which thou demaundent of me in thine : for those things (AVRELIANVS) which are to be tried by warre; by armes and by force, are to be demaunded and determined. Thou requirest that I yeeld and give my selfe into thy power, as if thou haddest never read that CLEOFATRA Queene of Egyps (from whom I am descended)would rather kill her selse then live in the power of O CHAVIANVS, in any dignitie or libertie graunted by him whatfoeuer. I let thee know that I shall not want the reliefe of the Persians, which I expect. The Saracens will also come to my aide; and the Armenians fauour me. Thou doest wel know that the theeues of Syria were sufficient to ouerthrow and disorder thy armie. If then the forces and fuccours which I expect shall come vnto me, thou wilt abate the pride and presumption wherewith thou doest now command me to yeeld my selfe, as though I were absolutely ouercome. And so she ended her letter, glorying more in her valour then in her eloquence. This letter being received by AVRELIA-NV s, he made no account thereof: but drew neere with his armie, and commanded his Captaines on all fides to befiege the citie more narrowly, and with fuch

order and policie to affault the fame, and to defend his campe, that hee failed not in any thing of the dutie of an excellent Captaine. For you the way comming to ZENOBIA, he ouerthrew the fuccours which came from Personal did the like by certaine companies of Saracens. And the forces which came from Armenia, what through feare, and faire promifes, hee drew them to his feruice and made them his friends: in such fort that ZENOBIA seeing her selfe ouercome, in the best manner that see could, departed from the citie, with Dromedaries, carrying property 44tuch treasure with her, as the shortnes of the time would permit; and transiling relianus. towards Persia, she was ouertaken vpon the way by certaine horsemen which the Emperour sent after her: And so AVRELIANVS tooke her, and the citie of Palmyra, and afterwards all the whole estate of the East. And although that many counselled himsyet he would not put Z EN OBIAto death, purposing to have her aline in his triumph. But he put the Philosopher Longinvs to death, for that it was faid, that he had penned the letter which ZENOBIA Wrote vinto him, TRE-BELLIVS POLLIO writeth, that when this valorous woman was brought into the presence of AVRELIANVS, he said vnto her; Tell me, ZENOBIA, how durst thou preliume to contemne Emperours, and to defend thy felfe against their power? Whereto the answered, excusing her selfe, and honouring him, saying: Onely thee, AVRELIANVS, I acknowledge to bee an Emperour, for that thou The answers knowest how to ouercome. But as for GALIENVS, AVREOLVS, and the rest, I made to Aureneuer held them for Emperours nor Princes. In this manner (as I faid) ended the lianus. power of Zenobia.

The Emperour AVRELIANVS having ended this warre, leaving order and forces in the East, returned into Europe by the same way that he went; and comming into high Duchland, he subdued a certaine people called Carpi, which warred therein, and ouerthrew them in a battaile. Vpon this occasion he was in Rome called CARPICVS: whereat hee was both angrie and forrie, that for that onely victorie they should give him a surname. And therefore caused himselfe to be called Gothicus, Sarmaticus, Armenicus, Parthicus, Adiabe- Autelianus bia NICUS, GERMANICUS, and SYRICUS, after the names of the countries and furnames.

nations which he had subdued.

As matters stood upon these termes, and hee being to march against T & T R Icv s the tyrant of France; newes was brought him that the Palmerins which had bin vnder ZENOBIA, were revolted, & did rebel, & had flaine SANDARIO whom The Palmering he had left there for Captaine and gouernour of the citie, with fixe hundred ar-rebelled. chers with him; and that they had made ARCHELAV s, who was of kinne to ZE-NO HIA, their Prince. When AVRELIANVS ynderstood thereof, with his accufromed courage and expedition (which was naturall vnto him) hee returned by great journeies into Alia; and being come into Syria, he made no stay vntill that he came to the citie of Palmyra; which when he had taken, he inflicted most cruell punishment, by putting all forts of people to death, men, women, old folkes and young children, without leaving any living creature therein. And afterwards he destroied and left the whole citie desolate, and almost all the other cities, which confented and confpired therewith in the rebellion. Without any long abode in Asia (in great haste) he returned into Europe, where he happily pacified all matters; so as there remained no part, but al was in obedience. Neuerthelesse, for as much as the people were accustomed to the libertie and enill customes permitted under the government of GALIENVS, a certaine Captaine called FIRMVS, who was in Egypt, arose and made all that kingdome to rebell; and as some write made him, The Egyptans

yeeres afterwards in great honour and rest, and ended his dayes as we will de-

Avrelianvs. felfe Emperour. And as others write, crying libertie, hee promifed to maintaine the libertie and priniledges of that countrie. Which when this warlike Emperor vnderstood(who for expedition in the warres was a second I v L I v s C E SAR)he would put no man else but himselse in trust, and returned the third time into Afia, and thence came into Egypt; and at his first entrie with little difficultie, he recouered all that kingdome, and left it in peace and quiet. At that time (as AVRE-LIVS VICTOR and EVTROPIVS report) there was a Captaine in Dalmatia whose name was SEPTIMIV s, who also rebelled, and proclaimed himselfe Emperour. But AVRELIANVS needed not to come against him: for the same legions and fouldiers which chose him conspired against him and killed him. So as there rested nothing for AVRELIANVS to do, but to deseate TETRICVS, which held a great part of France and of Spaine, with the title of Emperor, as is before faid. Whereof AVRELIANVS made great account, and came from Egypt with intent to goe against him: this warre being in all mens opinion very doubtfull: neuerthelesse AVRELIANV s tooke so good order therein, that it was soone ended. The occasion whereof was, that TETRICVS being a tyrant, and no lawfull Emperour, the legions and men of warre vnder his commaund became therefore fo diffolute and prefumptuous, that hee was no longer able to endure their infolencie and pride, but chose rather to line a subject to the Emperour AVRELIA-NV s, then to be an Emperour ouer fuch subjects, with conditions so reprochfull and vituperable. Wherupon he secretly wrote to A v R E LIANVS, and brought it fo to passe, that he voluntarily yeelded himselse; and so all became in peace and quiet subject vnto AVRELIANV's. And as at other times the legions had betraied their Captaines and Emperours; fo at this time, the Emperour to ridde himselse out of trouble deliuered vp his legions to another. Which is a great example and proofe of the miseries, suspitions, and troubles, which those men suffer and endure, which vniustly and tyrannously hold lands and dominions; daily expecting and fearing death, and to bee cast out and dispossessed of their governments. Whereof ancient histories are full, and in our time we have seene with our eyes, that although they escape for a time; yet there is no day wherein they are not grieued with the infolencies and diffoliutions of those, by whose aide they maintaine their tyrannies, and most commonly they are by them brought into grea-

test daunger. And so to keepe themselves on soote, they vie great crueltie against

their subjects, and show themselves partiall, remisse, and humble to their favourits

and friends. And aboue all, the secret martyrdome and remorfe of conscience

doth chiefly torment them: whereof DIONYSIVS, MARIVS, SYLLA, and o-

ther famous tyrants which have been in the world, are good witneffes: which

vpon their subjects inflicted and committed most horrible and terrible cruelties,

and with their friends and companions endured incredible infolencies and into-

lerable audacious prefumptions. Which TETRICVS knowing very well, not-

withstanding that he was not unprouided nor destitute of power, courage or va-

lour; yet he voluntarily yeelded himfelfe to VALERIANVS, holding it for a har-

der marter to commaund with trouble, then to serue in quiet. Which may also

ferue for a rule and admonition to flie and eschew a vanitie, much vsed by those

which in townes and common-wealths maintaine factions and discords, and will

commaund and tyrannize ouer that which is none of their owne; who thereby

vainly and foolishly make themselves servile and slaves to very base sellowes, flattering them and giving what they will have; because they will not endure the

companie of those which are their equals, then which there can be no greater

Tetricus sub-

clare: whereas otherwise if he had persisted in his tyrannie, he had made such an end as all fuch others had, which was either to haue been flaine by his enemies, or by his owne people; and that time which he should haue lined, would haue beene but full of continuall feare and vnrest. Avrelianvs having fullie subdued and pacified all the provinces of the Empire, and having reduced the same to the auncient power and reputation, by taming and subduing the tyrants, and by expelling the strangers and barbarous nations with force, felicitie, and admirable expedition, he determined to come to Rome to receive the triumph for his victories, which was given him with the greatest solemnitie and preparation that could be deuised, which in respect of my accustomed breukie cannot particularly be recited. It may suffice to say in summe, Amos stately that it was one of the most stately triumphs that euer was made in Rome, wherein triumph presawere led an infinite number of prisoners and captines of diners and fundrie nations, great varietie of wild beafts, as Tigres, Lions, Ounces, Elephants, Dromedaries, Beares, and fuch like. There was also an incredible aboundance of armes taken from those which were ouercome, and most rich and sumptuous chariots, one, which had bin of ODENATYS, ZENOBIAS husband; another which she herselfe had made; and another which the King of the Persians voluntarilie sent to AVRELIANVS for a present. There went also in that triumph the great ZE-NOBIA, most richly attired in cloth of great price set with pearle and stone, in manner of a prisoner led with chaines of gold. There were in the number of them, of whom AVRELIANVS triumphed, TETRICVS and his sonne, whom the father had intituled Emperour. AVRELIANVS entred in another chariot, which had been the Kings of the Gothes, drawne by foure stagges: and after him came all the victorious legions both of foote and horse, most rich and gallantlie armed, bearing boughes of lawrell or of palme in their hands : there were also many other things of great pomp. And he in this manner went to the Capitoll to do his facrifices according to the custome, and thence to his Palace, and the next day were made in Rome allkinds of sports and feasts, such as were wont to be made. with addition of many things aboue ordinarie, and more then other Emperours had done. He likewise gaue many gifts to the people, as the custome was at such like times. TETRICVS he made gouernour of Lucania, Calabria, Puglia, and Campania, with other provinces of Italy, and did him great honor together with his fonne. To ZENOBIA he gaue lands and possessions, the rents whereof sufficed to maintaine her honorablie, and so she lived and died, being highlie honored and commended of all men, still preserving her auncient reputation, and the honour of her person. Avrellianvs being victorious, and in this prosperitie (as his chiefest delight was in the warres, and to beare armes) determined to leuie a choise and selected armie, and therewith to go into the East, to make warre against the Persians, in reuenge of the iniurie done to the Empire by the imprisonment of the Emperour VALERIANVS, and within short space he departed thitherwards. And as he was valorous, wife and a most excellent Captaine, he had therein without doubt perfourmed great matters, had not death, through the fecret judgement of God, by the way cut off and made frustrate his high attempts and purpofes: which (as O Rosivs and Evsesivs testifie) God permitted to happen for a punishment of his wickednes. For having raigned fixe yeeres, fauou-

ring, or at least wife tolerating the Christians to live free and at libertie, he suffred

The ninth perfecution of the primitiue Church.

Menesibeus procured the death of Aurelianus.

The death of Aurelianus.

Ann.Dom. 278.

not the Catholike Church to be molested or persecuted, wherefore notwithstanding that he was an infidell, our Lord God (who leaueth no defert vnrewarded) gaue him fo many victories and fo good fucceffe in all his actions: But in the end deluded by the Deuill and the counsell of wicked men, he determined to perfecute the Christians, and sent abroad his letters and edicts to that effect, which was the ninth perfecution of the Church. But while as he was about to have figned the fame, there fodainely fell a thunderbolt from heaven fo neere vnto hun, that all men thought that he had been flaine: yet notwithflanding this figue and warning given him from God to defift from his ill determination, he permitted the rest which was his death, and that his owne servants in which he reposed most trust, should kill him, which was thus: That as he was euer cruell, and had put many to death for light occasions, his principall fecretarie who mannaged his most secret affaires (whose name was MENESTHEVS) being in feare of his life, for that AVRELIANVS had threatned him for a matter of small importance, refolued to practife the death of his Lord: which to effect, he prefentlie wrote a forged fained memoriall, wherein it feemed that AVRELIANVS had fee downe the names of certaine persons which he would cause to be slaine, among which he wrote his owne name, and shewed this memoriall to all those, or to the greatest part of them which were conteined therein, many of which were odious

Senate was very fory for his death, but the people much more : for they lived in greater fecuritie, and without danger of his crueltie. And for his noble acks they canonized him, and numbred him among their holie Emperours. When the treason of Men narrievs was discovered, they drawe a stake through him, & did cast out his bodie to the dogs, & to be devoured by wild beasts.

It is not written that the rest were punished, for that peraduenture they were principall men, and so great, that no man durst to procure them to be punished.

to the Emperour, which made the matter the more likely to be true. And as the fecretarie was of great credit by reason of the place which he held, and they knowing the Emperours crueltie, presumed as much, and throughlie beleeued it, they thereupon speedily agreed to make an end of the Emperour, for feare that he otherwise would have done the like by them: and having resoluted vpon the matner, they killed him as he one day with a small guard went from Heraeles in

Thracia (for many cities are fo called) towards Byzantium, now Constantinople.

He died (according to Evs BBIVs his computation) in the yeere of our Lord

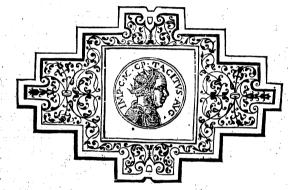
278, and in the fixt yeere of his raigne, a finall time truly confidering his great and noble acts. He left neither fonne nor nephew, but one onely daughter. The

THE



# THE LIFE OF TACITUS, ONELY OF THAT NAME,

AND EIGHT AND THIRTITH EMPEROVE OF ROME.





He warlike and inuincible Emperour A VRELIANVS being dead, as we have above faid, who with fuch valour brought all the provinces of the Empire to fuch peace and tranquillite, and in fo shorta time, that it seemeth that the search and reverence which they bare towards him in his life time held the same authoritie cuen after his death. Fornoman attempted to make himselfe Emperour, in any of the provinces wherein legions lay in garrison, as at other times

they were wont to doe, neither durst the armie which was with him chuse an Emperour, hee had in such manner tamed the prouinces and the pride of the people. And the Captaines which then were with him were also better aduised, and tooke warning by the death and consustion of those, which in the time of Galiens shad surped the name of Emperors. Wherefore, for that they deemed none worthie of the Empire, they desiring to auoyde the like inconveniences as befell in times past, and to the end that a good Emperour might be chosen, who with his authoritie might preserve and maintaine the present estate, the men

of warre of AVRELIANVS his armie fent word to the Senate, that it (as reason was) should chuse and name an Emperour; and that they would obey him and confirme his election. The Senate knowing that the armie was not wont to be chuse an Empe. contented with a prince of their chusing, made answere, that they should name and make choise of one, and that the Senate would approue their doings. In this straining of courtefies, fixe monethes passed (which may serue for a wonder to him that hath read the former Histories) in which the world was without an Emperour, and the Empire was gouerned by the Senate and fuch officers, as AVRELIANVS had left. At the end of which time ouercome by the entreaties and Ambassades from the armies, the Senate made choise of TACITYS 2 noble man, who had been Conful, and was a good man and of greatage, who Tacitus chosen earnestly refused the same : so as there were many complements betweene them about the matter. But in the end he accepted thereof, to the great toy of the Senate and Romane people, and also of the Pretorian Cohorts which ordinarily lav neere to Rome. And so he performed the solemnities, distributions, and gifts

which the new Emperours were accustomed to make. TACITYS was very old when he came to the Empire : but of great experience in magistracies and offices of charge, and had euer lived a vertuous life. He was very temperate in all things, gentle and kinde, and a louer of iuffice and equitie. When as TACITY'S had taken upon him the gouernment of the Empire (as a good prince free from ambition) he did all things by the aduife and counfell of the Senate, and held fuch a course in all his actions, that the whole Empire was in peace and tranquil-

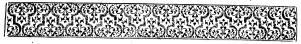
Emperour.

litie, and inflice was cuery where administred, with quietnes; and to that end he made excellent lawes and ordinances, abolishing certaine abuses and enill customes in Rome. But for any notable matters which readers commonly defire in Histories, as warres, battailes, great aduentures and accidents, there were none in his time; aswell for that he found all in peace and in good order, as for that he The death of

raigned but a little while; which was but fixe monethes, and those not fully expired. What death he died, the authors doe not certainely fet downe. Some fav that his owne fouldiers flew him vpon the way travailing towards Afia, whither he was going with an armie to make warre against the Persians. But SEXTYS AVRELIUS VICTOR and others write, that he died of a burning feuer in the citie of Tharfus, which seemeth most likely to be true : for he was a vertuous man and much beloued. Among his other vertues, he was very temperat in his diet, and in all other things; so as he would not allow his wife the Emperesse to weare any precious stones or iewels of any great price. And he much honored the memorie of the good Emperours. His countrie or linage I finde not written. Heleft no sonne either naturall or adoptiue. In those times sprung the famous Heretikes of the Manichees, whose originall and maister was a wicked man called MANES: who with his followers were fo wicked and fuch Infidels, that they prefumed to fav, that there were two Gods, the one good, the other enill: adding thereto, that the one was the original of all goodnes; and the other of all euill. And this horrible and diuelish herefie lasted in some wicked men aboue two hundred yeeres,

against which Saint AvgvsTINE and other holy doctors opposed themselues. The lite of this TACITYS is written by FLAVIvs Voriscus, whom I haue followed, and the other authors about named.

THE



## THE LIFE OF FLORIA-

NVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME. AND NINE AND THIRTITH EM-PEROVR OF ROME.





O foone as TACITUS was dead, abrother of his whose name was FLORIANVS, trusting in the necrenes of bloud to the last Emperour, without any authoritic or election, tooke vpon him the name of Emperour. Which he did through the fauour of part of the armie, and of certaine principall men which were with him. But his estate continued but a smal time: for so soone as the armies in the East understoode of the death of his brother TACITY's, they

made choife of PROBY s, of whom we will fpeake hereafter, who was a man of fuch authoritie and so well beloued, that FLORIANVS vpon the newes thereof held himselfe for forlorne. And knowing that all the martiall men would abandon him(as many of them alreadie had done)he made certaine of his vaines to be opened, imitating QVINTILIVS, who (as we have faid) did the like, and so he The death of died (as the other did) bleeding, about two monethes after that he had taken Florianus. vpon him the name and title of Emperour. Wherefore he could doe no fuch notable matter as might be worthie writing. He was a man very like vnto his brother TACITYS, as well in condition and goodnes of life, as in the shortnes of the time that he held the Empire. He died in the yeere of our Lord 279.

Ann.Dom.279.

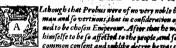
Bb 3

THE

## LIFE OF PROBVS, ONELY OF THAT NAME.

AND FORTITH EMPE-ROR OF ROME.





Libour bihat Probus were of no very noble blond, yet nevertheleffe he was to honest a man and so vertuous that in confideration of his vertuous deedes be worthily deferned to be chofen Emperour. After then he was confirmed in that dignitie, he shewed himselfe to be so affected to the people and so kind and louing to the Senate, that by common confent and public decree be was called Pater patrix : and to him moreo-

uer were graunted all the titles and dignities that might enoble and make him famous. In his time arose infinite warres and troubles, so as he spent all his life time in managing of armes; wherein being victorious he entred Rome in triumph, bauing tamed and subdued the Frenchmen and the Germanes, and subdued somewhich would have made themselves Emperours; among which was one Saturninus a valorous and politike man. And seeing that all the Empire was in peace and under obedience, he vied to fay, that within a while there would be no neede of martiall men: which when they understood, they began to murmure and to conspire against him, principally because that hee would not permit them to live in their accustomed libertie. And going with great preparation towards the warres against the Parthians, be was slaine by them upon the way. His death was greatly lamented in Rome, and generally through the whole empire, miffing fuch a father as in enery respell did worthily deserne to be called Probus.



ROBVS succeeded FLORIANVS, or rather TACITYS, in the Romane Empire, who was chosen Emperour by the legions, and the armie in the East, presently so soone as they understood of the death of TACITVS, to the end that they would not stay for one to be chosen at the pleasure of the Senate. But this PROBVS was so valiant a man, and so excellent a Captaine, and so held and reputed for such by all men, that the Senate and people of Rome prefently con-

firmed his election. There happened in the time of this excellent Prince, such and

fo many warres and battailes, as well against tyrants as against strangers; and hee obtained so many and so singular victories in them, that hee might very well be compared to AVRELIANVS, of whom a little before we have written: And for fach, as we may make him equall with him; to may wee likewife compare him With HANNIBAL, with C # SAR, or with any other great and famous Captaine of ancient time: Whose acts seeme greater then the acts of these Princes, by reafon that they were so fortunate, as to have them registred by those most eloquent and excellent writers which celebrated the fame. Which ornament failed in those which wrote the lines of the Emperours of their times, and a hundred yeeres before, and in long time after there were not found any to cloquent; or rather, neuer fince. And although they write the truth of the historic yet oftentimes it is written to abrupt, and to briefly, that it maketh their acts and doings to feeme leffe then they were. But the discreete reader, confidering the acts of some of those Emperours which we have alreadie written, and which we are to write hereafter, shall certainly know that the acts and proweffe of some of these Princes, were no way inferiour to theirs which were to famous, but in fome fort might rather feeme greater; if they well confider what nations and people they were, against which they fought. Which as they were no leffe valiant or fierce, then those of ancient times; To were they more expert and of greater skill in the warres, and in ought elfe that was requifite. But to returne to our good Emperour PROBVs, he was borne in Hungary in a citie called Sirmio, of noble parentage and bloud, prin- The origine of civally of his mothers fide. His fathers name was MAXIMV sa man very famous, Prolin. and one which followed the wars, & had had the leading of martiall men; and being Tribune, died in Egypt. His wife living after him, with this fonne and one daughter, which was his fifter. This young PROBV s prooued to bee fo vertuous and so valiant a young man, that the Emperour VALERIANVS which died prifoner in Perfia, made him a Tribune, being to young that hee then had no figne of any beard. He performed in the time of the same VALERIANV s, and of his some GALIENVS, and of AVRELIANVS, and of CLAVDIVS (wherein happened fuch warres, fo many battailes and conflicts) fuch notable feruices, both as a fouldier and a Tribune; and afterwards when he was a Captaine, that he was enery where held and reputed for a most valiant man, and now maketh men to admire him, which reade his doings. In giving affaults to cities, lie was many times the fitth man upon the scaling ladders, and the first that entred the enemies campe or fortreffes. He was victorious in many fingle combats man to man, and in battailes freed many Romane citizens from death: wherefore according to his deferts, there were given to him many civicall crownes, collars, bracelets, launces and banners, with other enfignes, deuices and martiall priniledges. And afterwards being a Captaine of legions, and Generall and gouernour of prounces; there was almost no nation but was subdued by him, in the infinite warres which were in those times. In Africa hee subdued a people called Marmarides, and in battailes and skirmishes ouerthrew some mightie tyrants and rebels. In Egypt being a captaine, he fought against the Palmyrines, which would have vsurped that countrie and kingdome; but he brought them to quietnes with great part of the East, in the fertice of AVRELIANVS. In the time of CLAVDIVS, hee ouercame the Gothes in many battailes; and in the time of AVRELIANVS, the Sarmates and Germanes; and often was victorious in many other parts. And with these victories and noble acts, with the goodnes and equitie of life and behaviour, hee made the discipline and knowledge of armes equall: So as he was in all, a good and a va-

lorous Souldier, Captaine, and Emperour. Many letters (recited by FLAVIVE Vopiscys) written by Galienvs, Claydivs, Avrelianvs, Tacitys, and other Emperours and Princes of that time, beare record of that which is faid of him; in which they extoll the vertues, valour, and excellencie of this man: wherefore he was infinitely beloued and honored of all men. Which plainely appeareth by the manner of his election: for the armie which was in the East defiring to make haste in choosing an Emperour, being aduertised of the death of TACITYS, the Captaines and Coronels drew their fouldiers into the field, and without any former request, practize or agreement, they began to shew vnto them, that it was requifite to make choise of an Emperour, a man which should be valiant, honest, religious, good, pitifull, wise, and replenished with all vertuous qualities: which speech they yied in fundrie squadrons & parts of the armie. The

fouldiers, without that one did heare or understand what the other faid, energy Probus proclai- where cried, Let PROBVS be Emperour Avgvs TV-s, God keepe and preserve med simperour. thee PROBV s, and with fuch other words and applauses, shewing the great loue and affection which they bare vnto him. When PROBY's had accepted of the Empire, he presentlie wrote a briefe letter to the Senate, but yet with great honor and respect, approuing what was done the last yeere in the election of his predeceffor TACITYS, and excusing himselfe for having accepted of the Empire, without the knowledge and confirmation of the Senate, he laid all the fault vpon FLORIANVS, who for that he had taken vpon him the name of Emperour, the armie was therefore constrained to make choise of him. His letters being read. there was made great flew of ioy, and they applauded his election with many bleffings, and gaue him the name of Avgvs Tvs, Father of the countrey, and they also made him highest Bishop, and gaue him tribunall power & authoritie.

When PROBVs had received this decree from the Senate, he was very glad,

and taking good order for all things, and leaving fufficient garrison in the East, he came into Europe, where he was received by the armies, which sware to be faithfull vnto him. The first thing that he did after his comming, was, to levie the greatest armie that he could, wherewith he went into France, which enerafter the death of AVRE LIANVS was subject to the Germanes, which made themselues lords and maisters of all the most principall cities of all that land. After that he came into the countrey of his enemies (whose number was infinite) there began a most cruell and bloudie warre: for the fouldiers of either side were very valiant and expert. There passed (as faith V o PISC VS) many bloudie battailes betweene them, whereof one continued two dayes, one after another: fo that each day the darkenes of the night parted the fight, the victorie feeming to incline fometimes to the Romanes, and sometimes to the Germanes, which is found written in the auncient Chronicles of Germany, as witneffeth HENRICVS MVTIVS a modern

A ernell batsaile fought betweene Pro Germanes.

all that which they had vsurped: and passing further forwards he also tooke other cities, and his armie made great spoile & hauocke. And after that they were ouercome, they yeelded obedience, and became vaffals to the Empire, which without my particular relation will plainely appeare by a letter written by PROBVS to A Letter writ- the Senate, which faith thus: I give thanks (fathers confeript) to the immortall ten by Probus Gods, feeing that they have approved your judgement of me, shewing it to be reasonable

writer: but in the end through the good prouision, and direction of PROBVS, after that he had obtained many victories against the Germanes, wherein died foure hundred thousand men of them, and a great number of the Romane army, he reduced out of their possession fixtie principall cities, and draue them out of

reasonable and true. For know, that I have conquered and subdued all Germany, and that wife Kings of fundrie nations and prouinces have proftrated and humbled themselues at my feet, or to say more rightlie, at yours, and now are subjects, and fight in our armie against other barbarous nations more northerly. You shall (fathers conscript) make your accustomed prayers vnto the Gods, seeing that we have flaine foure hundred thousand of your enemies, and fixteene thoufand men very well armed haue veelded themselues vnto vs; and we haue reconered threefcore cities which they possessed, and all the proninces of France. All the crownes which the French cities gaue vnto me for prefents, I fend vnto you, to the end that by your hands they may be confecrated, and offred to the most good and most mightie I VP ITER, and to the rest of the immortall Gods. The pray that we have taken, is greater then all the harmes that they have done vnto vs. The fields in France are ploughed and tilled with Oxen taken from the harbarous.&c. And so in his letter he proceedeth, signifying vnto them his victories, for which in Rome was made great ioy, feasting, and supplications to their gods.according to their rites and customes. After this conquest, he came with his forces into the prouinces of Slauonia, inuaded by the Sarmates, which are the inhabitants of Muscouia, Rusia, Polonia, and others, as is aforefaid, and had the same in possession, which warre was no lesse dangerous then the last, for the great multitude and fiercenes of those nations with which he fought certaine battailes: wherein he shewed himselfe a most prudent, hardie and valiant Captaine; and Probus drawne having wholie subdued them, he constrained them to flye out of the bounds and out of slavoconfines of the Empire, the greatest part of them being either slaine or taken, nia. And from thence with great expedition he marched with his armie into Thracia. which with the rest is now called Gracia, wherein is the great citie Constantimoble, and marching farther towards the North, with a refolution to make warre against the Gothes in their owne countrey, and wholie to subject that nation for revenge of the harmes and troubles which they in time past had done in the Empire. He was of fuch reputation, and all nations flood in fuch feare of him, that wherefoeuer he came he found no refistance: for they fent to yeeld their obedience, and to be bounden to be confederates and friends to the Empire: whereamon leaving Europe in peace, he went into Asia, with a determination to have warred against the Persians and NARSEVS, who then was King of Persia and

Parthia, and paffing fo through Afia the leffe, he invaded the province of Isanria.

which is a part thereof, bordering vpon Cilicia, which (as in the life of GALIE-

NV s we faid) is mountainous cragged, and hard to be affaulted, ill to be conque-

red, and easie to defend, wherein were many theeues and tyrants which sought

to make themselues Lords of that countrey all which the valiant Emperour sub-

dued, not without great toile and danger: for the inhabitants being fortified by the naturall scituation of that countrey, defended themselves couragiouslie, so as

there passed dangerous battailes and conflicts betweene them, but PROBVS in

short space pacified all. And they say, that entring the countrey he defired to see

the naturall and artificiall fortifications thereof, which he much meruailed at, and

faid, that that land was hard to be woon, and eafie to be defended. He deuided

the fields which he there tooke from the tyrants among his old fouldiers, and

fuch as had borne themselves valiantlie in that service. After that he had pacified

all that region, he marched into Seria, and into the Easterly parts, but first he went

against a certaine people which they called Blemij, which came out of Ethiopia,

and had taken part of Arabia, and of Palestina, of Indea, and the cities of Ptolemais,

of Persia yeel-ded to Probus.

and Ioppa which is now called Iapha, which was then a famous citie. And having ended this journey, he trauelled towards Persia against NARSEVS King of the Persians and Parthians, who was the most mightie King of the world, and whose predecessors and successors ever troubled the Romane Empire, and the Emperours thereof. But PRO avs (of whom we now treate) was fo much feared and esteemed, that NARSEVS durst not contend with him; but by all meanes procured peace, restored wharhe had vsurped, gaue him other great gifts, and made fuch composition and conditions, as PROBV's required. So as having no enemie against whom he might wage warre, he returned againe into Europe, leaving the whole state of the East in peace and vnder good government. Comming into Thracia, which countrie was dispeopled, through the warres and spoile which the Gothes, Sarmates and other barbarous nations had made therein; and for that many nations which were wont to be enemies, had now submitted themfelues to doe him feruice, and defired him to give them some land to inhabit. wherein they might be his subjects; he gaue vnto them the province of Thracia and the marches thereof; dividing fields by lottes amongst them, where they should inhabit and till the earth. These were of thany Tribes and nations. as Vandals, Gothes, Guntanes, and other people, whose number was infinit. But this counfell proued afterwards very daungerous; and much harme (as we will hereafter declare) enfued thereof.

In this time was a generall peace through the whole Empire, and there was no King or nation out of it, that durft to ftirre. But as mens harts are commonly (euen from their infancie) more inclined to cuill then good, through the corruption of our nature, wanting forraine enemies, there arole fome domesticall; and those which were wont to make head against forraine enemies, made themselves enemies.

There was in the East parts a Captaine whose name was SATVRNINVS. who was both very valorous, expert in the wars, diference and of great indeement and in the time of AVRELIANVS had been Captaine generall of those frontiers and was by birth a French-man. This man comming to Alexandria in Egypt about fome busines and matters of importance which weeknow not; without his knowledge or imagination, the Egyptians as they were euer vnquiet, rebellious and defirous of nouelties; by a common & generall confent, hailed him Emperor; and called upon his name with fo great resolution, that he durst not refuse it neither to forbeare to fay that he confented thereto. But imagining that through his absence that tumult would have bin pacified, he departed from Egypt & came into Palestina. But they neuer giving over what they had begun, and as those troups whereof he had the commaund, did not onely confent thereto, but were very glad thereof. He himselfe standing in searcof PROBVS, clad himselfe in purple, which was the imperiall colour, but we will fay crimfon, which was the colour of the imperiall robe, accounting it the fafest way. But it is written, that when his Captaines and fouldiers came to sweare obedience, and to doe him such honour as was accustomed in such actions; SATYRNINVS received and entertained them weeping, faying vnto them, let it not my brothers and companions in armes be imputed vnto me for pride and prefumption, what I now shall fav vnto you; for this day doth the common-wealth lose in me a necessarie member; for I was the chiefest man in restoring France. I being a free Captaine recoursed

Africa from the Moores. I pacified Spaine, and did other things to the honour

of the Empire; but what availeth it to have done all this: for with this daies worke

all is loft. And as his Captaines and Coronels encouraged and entreated him to be merrie, this wife man which well knew what it was to raigne with tyrannic, The miferable answered them, saying; My friends, you know not what it is to raigne, but I will condition of make you vnderstand it in my selfe: for from henceforth there will daily hang ouer my head threatning me and putting me in feare of my life, swordes, gleaues, shields, and on enery side I see my selfe assaulted with halberts, launces, and other kindes of weapons; and I begin to fland in feare of those which have the guarde of me; and to take heede of those which keepe me companie. Ishall not eate one bit that shall tast well, neither without suspition. I can trauaile no way in fafetie. I shall not vndertake any warre to my owne liking, neither shall I beare armes for exercise, but forced thereto : and although I did affure my selfe to the contrarie, vet truely it is impossible for any Emperour to please and content all his subjects. For if he be an old prince; they will say that he is insufficient and an unprofitable dotard: if he be young, they will fay, he is rash and surious, and hath not wit enough to be a foueraigne Lord. And so there never want imperfections to charge him withall. Beleeue me my friends, in that you make me Emperor, you binde me to die. But one thing doth something recomfort me; which is, that Ishall not die alone. But seeing that you will haue it so, I pray to the Gods that the time come not, wherein you will be as forrie for what you haue done, as I am at this present. These speeches are recited by FLAVIVS VOPISCVS, who writeth that he understoode them by the report of his grandfather, who was present when they were spoken. SATVENINVS, although as a wife man he knew and forelaw into how great daunger he thrust himselfe, seeing he could not returne. was nothing dismaied, but rather with great courage prouided all things necessarie for the preserving of the estrae which he had taken vpon him. And not withflanding that he was made a tyrant against his will, yet he defired rather to ouercome, then to leave to be. But as the Emperour PROBVS, was no leffe wife or valiant then himselfe; so he so soone as he was aduertised of what passed, with the greatest forces that he was able to leuie, returned into Asia, providing and ordering all things after a new manner with great care; being very lealous of this warre, in respect of the qualitie of the Captaine and souldiers. Both armies being come into one countrie, they made of either fide cruell warre, and the battailes warrabe were very fierce and bloudie; yet the Emperor PROBVs fought to have come to tweete Saturfome composition with SATVRNINVS, promising to pardon him, & to entreate minus and him very well. And it is supposed that SATVENIEV'S would willingly have accepted thereof, but his fouldiers would never yeeld thereto, holding themselves therby to be in no fecuritie, feeing they had constrained him to take you him the name of Emperor. But in the end SATVENINVS being apparantly ouercome, he was befreged in a Castle, and there was slaine by the souldiers against the Emperors wil, who would rather have forgiven him. After this victoric, which was held for so doubtfull; Probvs returned into Europe, and the souldiers and legions remained fo tame and quiet, and in such obedience, that it grew to be a common by word; that the Mife did not dare to gnaw for feare of Prorvs. But as he was busie herein (as it was not thought that he should have had so good successe) in France and Germanie were two Captaines, the one called Bonosys who was the principall; and the other PROCVLVS: which raising mightie armies in France and in Britannie (where PROBVS was ill beloued, for the victories which he there had had) and having also some Spaniards, besides the ordinarie legions Benefus and of their gouernments, they both tooke vpon them the name of Emperours, and Proculus called

the purple robe. But for that it would be a long storie, particularly to recount all

that paffed; it shall suffice to know, that PROBV's neuerrested; soasaccording

to the small time of his raigne, which was but fixe yeeres, it may seeme a won-

Bonofus in dehimselfe.

derfull thing to confider the warres and voyages which he made. But in the end he found out these tyrants, and inuaded them both; of which the warre against Bonosys (as they write) was very daungerous and lasted long: and finally PROBVS had the victorie, and Bonosvs falling into despaire hung himselfe. And PROCVLVS being likewise ouercome, fled into the land, where the Germanes (thereby to winne PROBVs his good will) deliuered him: and so he had an entire and complete victoric ouer all. This Proculus was borne in a place owne fouldiers. among the Alpes neere to Geneua, and Bonosvs was a Britaine, bredyp in Spaine; of whom they write, that he would drinke fo much wine, that ten great drinkers could not drinke so much: and that therewith he had two wonderfull properties, the one was, that how much fo euer he dranke, he was never therewith drunken; the other was, that when it pleafed him, he could piffe as fast as he did drinke, without containing any iot within his body: wherefore the Emperour Avrelianvs was wont to fay of him, that Bonosvs was not borne to liue, but to drinke.

After that PROBV s had defeated these two mightie Captaines and tyrants, it was to haue been supposed reasonable, that armes should haue given him leave to haue reposed himselfe in Rome; for now his weeres and trauailes required no lesse: but it happened otherwise, for the nations and people which he left (as wee haue faid) to inhabit Thracia, notwithstanding that the Bastarnari remained in peace and quiet: yet the Vandales and other nations feeing the Emperour pestered in the warres (trusting in their strength and multitude) determined to make no longer abode there, but to inuade all the provinces of the Empire, robbing and stealing all that they could lay their hands upon: And their number was fo great, that no citie or countrie could make head against them, but that they spoiled and burned all wherefoeuer they came. Which when the Emperor had well confidered, imagining that whatfoeuer he had theretofore done for the good and libertie of the Empire, was to no effect or purpole, if he suffered this plague to go forwards: he resolued therefore to put himselse in hazard, and to goe in person into al those places which these people inuaded. And for that they by reason of their multitude could not march togethers, he fought with them in fundrie places, wherein many men were slaine of either fide; and the Emperour himselse was sometime wounded, and in daunger of death. But in the end he ouercame them all, and took

fuch order that he compelled those which by flight escaped from the battailes, to

flie out of the confines and frontiers of the Entipire. And he very joyful and victo-

rious, finding now no refutance in the world, came to Rome, whereinto he entred

against the

Probus came into Rome in triumpi).

triumphing, in a triumph truly well deserved; for in Rome was a law that the triumph should not be graunted but for great victories obtained: which being so, I see not that either C # SAR or Po MPEY could or did better deserue it, then PROBVS. For if we confider the number of battailes and victories (although they be not at large described, which he fought and wanne before that he was Emperour, and those also after that he was so : I know not when we should make an end of reciting them. There was neuer a prouince in the Empire when it was furthest extended, which was not conquered a new, or pacified and brought into fubiccbetweene Pro- tion by him. C & S A R was much extolled for expedition, taking his enemies at ynawares and unprovided for him; PR o vs was no flower or made leffe hafte

then he; and although that his enemies were prouided for him, vet he ouerthrew them and put them to flight. It is faid that C & s AR flew in battailes in the warres aboue a million of men; and PROBVS in the first warres which hee made after that he was Emperour, flew foure hundred thousand: and France wherein C As AR warred tenne yeeres before he could fubdue it, PROBVs conquered in one veere. As for the other warres and battailes which he fought when he was but a Captaine, I hold the number of those which were slaine therein for as innumerable, as the warres were daungerous and desperate. But if we come to the civill warres which C & s AR made against the Romanes; I hold those which P R O B V S waged against three tyrants with old legions, to be no way inferiour. So as I know not wherefore we should not as much extoll the acts and doings of some of those Emperours, as of Pompey, or of C & sar. But not to fwarue from the common opinion, against which wee may not contend, giving to C & s AR and such excellent men the first place and degree; yet it is great reason that we should also make honourable mention of those which were vertuous and valorous; and that wee should preserve the memoriall of them for an example of fortitude. Which wanted no other thing(as I faid in the beginning)but writers, which might eloquently and with a good stile, have particularly written their acts, which the others had: for if of PROBVs and of some others, of which wee have alreadic treated, and are againe to treate hereafter, there had bin any which elegantly and eloquently had written the histories, relating all their acts and valiant deedes in particular; their bold attempts, their counfels, their orations, their aduertifements, their wonderfull policies, stratagems, and other matters of importance, which doubtles happened without number, in fuch and so great enterprises and battailes; wee should not onely be content to give vnto these men the second place, but peraduenture we should contend for the first; especially considering that they were no lesse excellent in vertue and bountie, then in armes and valour.

But leaving this disputation apart; for in the end the world will pronounce sentence in the behalfe of C & s A R, and of those famous men of ancient time: Our Probushis tri-PROBV sentred Rome triumphing of the Germanes, of the Blemii, and of many other nations and tyrants. His triumph was most solemne, and his men of warre entred with him: among which were Germanes, Spaniards, and other nations which had ferued him in the warres, as well as the Romanes. There were also fome excellent and great Captaines, of which the most noble were, LEONIDES. Dioclesianvs, Carvs, Constantinvs, Anaeallianvs, Maximi-NIANVS, PISONIANVS, HERCVLEVS, CECROPIVS, and fuch others, wherof some were afterwards Emperours. This triumph being ended, the next day (according to the ancient custome) began the feasts, games, and disports; wherein were huntings of fierce and fauage beafts, more and more strange, then ever before that time were feen in Rome: for which purpose he caused in a place called Circulus Maximus, a great groue of wood and a Mountaine to be made, full of very great trees, fet in fuch fort that they feemed naturally to have growne there. The fituation of the place was fo capable and fo large, that therein were hunted a thousand Ostriches, a thousand Stags, a thousand mountaine Goates, a thousand wilde Boares, a thousand fallow Deere, and other kinds of beasts: and the people were permitted to kill and take thereof at their pleasure. Afterwards there were killed with launces three hundred Beares; and in a manner as many Lions, of those of Libya, and of Syria; which was a spectacle representing more majestic and greatnes then delight or pleasure. The next day thither came three hundred Sword-

201

Sword-players, which were men (as we have alreadie faid) which killed one another to make the people sport; and those which survived, gained reward and libertie. These feasts being ended, the Emperour made certaine lawes, and tooke care for the good gouernment of the Empire; and all men liued in fuch peace and quietnes, that PROBVS vsed to say, that hee would speedily take such a course. that there should be no more neede of any men of warre. Wherefore, as also for that he would neuer suffer his fouldiers to be idle, but busied them in labours and necessarie edifices, they began to hate him and to wish his death; as men which had been accustomed to robbe and steale, and to live licentiously. And having taken order for all matters concerning a peaceable gouernment, he determined to goe into the East, to the end to subdue and wholy to subuert the kingdome of the Persians and Parthians: for there now remained no other power that he needed to care for, to confirme that peace which he published to establish through the Empire. And vndertaking this enterprise, with greater preparation, then ever was made in any other (for now nothing letted him) it feeming to his fouldiers that it was not good to haue a Prince fo valorous, in whose time they were compelled to liue in fuch subjection and were punished, and could not follow their old course and former libertie, they refolued to kill him; and in fecret many of them confpi-Probus flaine red against him: and so as hee passed through Slanonia, they murthered him by treason; when hee had raigned (after EvTROPIVS) fixe yeeres and foure moneths; which (as I faid of AVRELIANVS) was a very short space, for the accomplishing of such and so great acts and enterprises as his were. And some authors write that he raigned not fo long. His death was much lamented and bewailed in Rome, both by the Senate and Romane people. The armie stood not ypon the punishing of the offenders; for no man durst to attempt the same : but they erected to this inuincible Emperour a most honourable Sepulchre, wherein was en-

> Here lieth the Emperour PROBV s, infly for his goodnes called PROBV s; of all the barbarous nations and tyrants a Conquerour.

> This passed (as Evs EBIV s testifieth) in the yeere of our Lord 285. Heleft neither some nor kinseman that durst make challenge to the Empire: and so thereremained not any man that fought to eternize the memorie of fo great and excellent a man.

Auno Dom.

grauen this Epitaph.

by his ouvne

Souldiers.

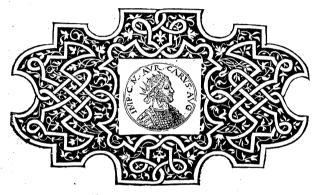
THE



## LIFE OF CAR ONELY OF THAT NAME,

AND ONE AND FORTITH EM-

PEROVR OF ROME, AND OF CARINVS and NVMERIANVS his fons. which were also called Av G vs + 1.





Ow were the men of warre againe in possession of authori- The men of tie to chuse Emperors. For as it appeareth by the processe ware our hated those Emperors of this historie, they ever hated that Emperour which was rors, valid chosen by the Senate. And although that in divers parts of vure chosen the Empire there were armies and ordinarie legions; yet by the senate. that armie wherein the Emperour was at the time of his death, ever pretended to have greatest right; and hee that

was chosen thereby, seemed to have the most just title, and was held for right Emperour. And for as much as PROBVS was dead and buried, as we have faid, the fouldiers began to confult about the election of a new Emperour and they all defired to make choife of fuch a man as might feeme to deferue the fame; so as neither the Senate nor other armies should have any just cause to gricue at his election. And in the opinion of the greatest part, CARVS (whom PROBVS had made Pretorian Prefect) was thought very fufficient, as well for that he was a man of great worth, as for that hee was of great experience in gouern- carits chosen ment, by reason of the charge and offices which hee had held and finally they Emperonr. chose him Emperour, and sware obedience vnto him, to the great good liking of the whole armie.

When his election was published in Rome, the Senate was nothing pleafed therewith, not in respect of himselfe, for of his good conditions and vertues they were very well affured; but for that he had two fonnes, the eldeft of which expected to be his successor, whose name was CARINVS, and was a wicked and most vitious man: but they durst not denie their obedience, and so approued his election, through the defire they had to preserue the peace and quietnes, wherein PROBVS had then left them. Whence, or of what countrey this Emperour Ca-RVS was, I find not written in any authors, FABIVS CECILIANVS which wrote the historie of his time (as Vopisevs reporteth) faith, that he was borne in Slauonia, but by descent he was an Africane. O NESIMVS saith, that he was borne in Rome, and that his father was a Slauon; neuertheleffe, he was held for a Romane, which he sheweth in some letters which are by the same V opisevs recited. But AVRELIUS VICTOR, EVSEBIVS, and PAVLVS OROSIVS make him a Frenchman, borne in Narbone. It little importeth whence he was, but so soone as he was cholen Emperour, he made his two fonnes C & SARS, CARINVS and NVME-RIANVS, with name and authoritie of Av Gvs T1, and received them as his companions in the Empire. NVMERIANVS was valorous, wife, learned, a great Mufician, and a Poet; but CARIN'S was wicked, dishonest, insolent, and given to all kind of vice.

Hatting ended these things, he presentlie began to make most diligent search for those which had murthered PROBYS, which he seuerely punished : which, together with the loue which PROBVs in his life time did shew him, tooke away the suspicion which some conceived that he had been consenting to his death. Hauing done iustice, and written his ordinarieletters to the Senate, he marched with his armie to make warre against the Sarmates, which so soone as they underftood that PROBV's was dead, came with great furie into Pannonia, & came with fuch pride, that they threatned all Italy, and the reft of the Empire, where after fome conflicts he came with them to a battaile, wherein he had the victorie, flue of them fixteene thousand, tooke twentie thousand prisoners, and put the rest to

he determined to passe presentlie thither, leaving to his eldest sonne CARINVS

the gouernement of France and of Spaine, and NVMERIANVS he tooke with

himselfe, and went with such power and with so great an armie, that he presentlie

tooke all the countrey of Melopotamia, without meeting any man to make any de-

fence or head against him. And passing further, he besieged the citie of Thesiphon-

te, where the Persians sallied forth to receive him with a sufficient army, betweene

which (as EVTROPIVS writeth) was a most cruell battaile; wherein CARVS

ouerthrew them, and following his victorie, he tooke by force of armes the fa-

mous cities of Seleucia and Thesiphonte. And as he was of a high mind, and of

great experience in the warres (if death had not surprized him) it was then belee-

ued, that he would have wholie destroyed the power of the Persians: for at that

time they were at civill warres and contentions among themselves. But com-

ming with his armie to the shores side of the river Tigris, through his travell and

heate, he fell extremely fick, wherewith being much oppressed, there happened

one day a great tempest of thunder and lightning, and there fell a thunderbolt

into the Emperours tent, wherewith some of those which were with him were

Carns his vic torie against the Saimates. flight. After this victorie, he ynderstood that in the East the Persians made some fturre: wherefore, and to the end to accomplish what PROBVs had pretended,

Carus ouerthrew the Per

Carus flaine voith a thun-

flaine, and among them the Emperour himselfe, having raigned but two yeeres Ann. Dom. 287. Only, which he spent in continuall trauaile and waters, in the yeere of our

Lord 287. in the beginning thereof. And notwithstanding that CARVS was a great and mightie Prince, yet the thunderbolt had no respect of him, and I see that those good Princes had as ill fortune as the most base & vntowardlie people of the world. I have read the Chronicles of Kings, and of other great Princes of many kingdomes and provinces: but I never heard nor read, that the like death euer happened vnto any as to the Romane Emperours, at least to commonlie: for it is certaine that no kind of death, how vile or strange soeuer, but hath bin of death hapinflicted upon some Romane Emperour. For amongst them, some have bin slaine good to the by treason, and eucry foote by the sword: some by thunderbolts from heaven as Romane Em-CARVS, as I faid but now: fome were burnt with fire, as we will tell you of VA-LENS: others were hanged, as before we told you of Bonos vs. who was called Emperour in the time of PROBVS, and before him the old GORDIANVS in Africa: others tormented and trailed along the ground, as we told you of HELIO-GABALVS and VITELLIVS: others were poisoned, as some before named: others captiues and throwne into prison, as most base and vile slaues, as V A LER I-ANY s died: others opened their vaines and bled to death, as did QVINTILIVS and FLORIANYS: others were drowned, as was DECIVS; and to others happened other kinds of death. So as having not written the lives of aboue fortie or 41. Emperours, it feemeth that death hath made experience in them, that there be as many conditions of death, as of dead men: among which may be numbred the deaths of CARINVS and NUMERIANUS, sonnes to the Emperour CARVS, which were called AvgvsTI, from whose life we will present lie begin; and the

processe of the historie will shew others no lesse strange and fearefull,

Of CARV s his two fonnes, which he made C & SAR s with power and author

ritie of AvgvsTI, the yonger whose name was Nvmerianvs, was with his father when he died, who as well for the goodnes and deferts of his father, as for his owne, was much beloued of all the armie and Romane people: wherefore by common confent, so soone as his father was dead, he was chosen Emperour, and Chosen Emperour for fuch was generallic obeyed. He was maried to the daughter of a rich and rour. mightie man, whose name was ARRIVS APER. This new Emperour greatly lamenting the death of his father, and imagining that in that warre at that time there was no more to be done, raifed his camp, and began to retire, and for that he was diseased in his eies, and could not indure the light; he made himselfe to be carried in a close Litter, so as he could not be seene. And as the defire to raigne and rule is the most strong & violent of all other passions; so his father in law A R-RIVS APER forgetting the dutie which he ought to his foueraigne Lord, and the loue to his daughter and sonne in lawe, resolued to kill him, and by meanes of his great wealth and friends to procure the Empire for himfelfe: which he might eafily bring to paffe, for that he was allowed to come to him fo often as he would, fo as by his hand (or fome other mans by his direction) N V MERIAN V S Was flaine Numerianus, in his Litter; and to the end it should not be reuealed, they left him therein, and stime by bis publishing that he could not indure to see any man, they caried him therein dead father in land two or three daies, practifing in the meane time what they had projected : but as the dead bodie began to finell ill, the treason was discouered sooner then A R-RIVS would, and there was fo great a confusion and forrow in the whole armic. that every man tooke armes and faid, that they would choose an Emperour which should punish so great a treason. But first of all Arrivs Aper was brought prisoner before the imperial iudgement seate: for it was presentlic

knowne that he had committed this murther. And the armie being in this con-

293

#### CARVS, CARINVS, & NVMERIANVS. 294

chofen Emperour

Arrius Aper flaine by Dio.

clesianus.

fusion and tumult, by the common consent of all men Dioclesianys was named and hailed Emperour, who was the most principal man in the armie, and one of the most excellent Captaines in the time of PROBYs, and was (as it were) the Emperours steward, and had the rule and gouernment of his household. He was borne in Dalmatia of obscure parentage, in so much that some say that his father was a Notarie : and others fay, that he was the sonne of a bondman. But he was a man of a great stomacke, very wife, a great defender and louer of the commonwealth, of a quicke wit and understanding, to make prouision for any occasion that might be offered, according to the time and season; and was of great experience in affaires and charges of importance. He was also a man of high conceites, which he put in execution; but with great wisedome and discretion.

Dioc Lesianus feeing himfelfe called by all men Emperour, with great courage accepted the Empire, and clothing himselfe with the imperial robe, he fet him in the tribunall seate ; and being saluted and hailed Avovs rvs, the first thing that he did, was to make inquirie, how NVMERIANVS came to his death. notwithstanding that he alreadicknew the same. And the treason and league being discouered vnto him, he made the wicked ARRIVS APER to be brought before him; and he with his owne fword killed him; so much was he displeased therewith: And afterwards he made those which were his complices and partakers to be flaine. And so in this manner was reuenged the death of the good Emperour Numerianus. Carinus the other brother, who was left Casar and was gouernour of France and Spaine, was very vnlike vnto him; for as this was noble, vertuous and giuen to all vertuous actions and exercises; and we know that besides all his other excellencies, he was the best poet of his time, and avery excellent Orator: fo was CARINV's dishonest, horibly luxurious, an adulterer, and finally given to all kinde of vice and dishonestie: wherefore he was generally abhorred of all men; in so much that his owne father hated him, and being aduertised of his behauiour, said, that he held him not for his sonne, purposing to haue depriued him of the Empire.

He then remaining in France, having put from him all the good and vertuous men, which his father left with him, converfing altogethers with fuch as himfelfe. vnderstoode of the death of his father and of his brother, and also of DIOCLESI-ANV s his election. And as (although wicked and vicious) he was valiant and of great courage, without amending any of his euill conditions; but rather with his libertie encreasing the same : so he leuied the greatest forces that he was able, and with great diligence made provision to make head against Dioclesianvs. hoping to remaine fole Emperour. Whereof when DIOCLESIANVS was aduertised, he with great expedition came out of the East into France against him : And as of either fide there was both great power and courage; fo they had fundrie skirmishes and battailes, which were very sierce and cruell; but in the end each of them setting vp his rest, they came to a battaile, which was the last

throwwne and and most cruell; wherein CARINVS was justly ouerthrowne and flaine. And in this manner remained Dioclesianvs at that time fole Lord and Emperour, which was in the yeere of our Lord 288.

THE

## THE LIFE OF DIOCLESI-ANVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME,

AND OF MAXIMINIANVS, THE TWO AND FORTITH RO-MANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.



toclesianus for his vertue deserued the dignitie of the Romane Empire. to whom the waight of the government feeming heavie and burthen-Some, he tooke for his assistant and companion therein Maximinianus; who carried and behaued himfelfe with such lone, faith and so much reserence towards him, and he towards (Maximinianus, that they feemed to bee rather two most louing brothers then Emperours. He made Constans and Galerius Armentarius Casars, to which he gane the charge of waging fundrie warres, which he could not himfelfe follow in person: and having obtained many victories, and triumphed together

with his Cafars and with his Augustus; in the end he deposed himselfe from the Empire, being growne now old; and he perswaded Maximinianus to doe the like; wherewith he was well content, and never after could be induced againe to accept of that dignitie and government; notwithstanding that he was by many men much entreated thereto. He was very cruell against the Christians and destroyed many of their Churches, because they should not have convenient meanes and places to affemble together. In the end being very old, it is faid that he killed himselfe with poison, for feare to be put to some shamefull death. An end unworthie truly of his glorious life.



He originall of DIOCLESIANVS; and the manner of his election we have aboue expressed; together with his wit and valour: It resteth now to declare the fuccesse of his life, and his acts, in such manner, as PAVLVS OROSIVS, EVTROPRIVS, and other auncient authors have left the same in writing. Before which I will tell you one thing of

Dioclesianus

Carinus oner-

flaine,

DIOCLESIANVS, which I doe not vie to doe in the lines of other Emperours, for that I hold it a vaine thing; although recorded by those authors which I follow in this chronicle, which was: the augurie or forewarning that each of them had, that he should be Emperour, before that he was so. Which I will set downe for that it seemeth pleasing; and to the end a little while to withdraw the readers minde from too much thinking of ferious matters, of greater importance. FLA-VIVS' VOPISCVS Writeth in the life of Numerianus, sonne of the Emperor CARVS, that DIOCLESIANVS being a poore fouldier, and in his youth feruing in the warres of France, was lodged in a womans house which was a Magician or fouthfaier; or as we fay, a cunning-woman: one of those which by the Frenchmen were called Druides, for so did they call all such: which woman was his hostesse and did dresse his meate, and making his reckoning with her for his diet (which he did enery day)as he was very sparing of his purse, this woman said vnto him; Thou art very miserly with me DIOCLESIAN, and truly art too very a niggard. DIOCLESIAN in iest answered her : Pardon me in that I am so sparing in my expences, for I am but a poore fouldier: but I promife thee that when I am an Emperour, I will be very liberall vnto thee. Quoth this woman vnto him, Doe not iest with me: for thou shalt bee Emperour when thou hast slaine a Boare. Dioclesian tooke this for a iest, and as hee was of a very hautie stomacke, he neuer forgat these speeches: and although that he alwaies followed the wars, yet he gaue himselfe much to hunting, and to kill wilde boares; moued thereto by her words. Afterwards in processe of time AVRELIANVS, PROEVS, TACITYS, and CARV scame to be Emperours, and he had alreadie killed and daily did kill boares; and sometime vsed to iest at the prophecie of this Druid, saying: I doe daily kill wilde boares, but others cate the fleth. And at the last, when with his owne hands he had flaine the father in law to NVMERIANV s, whose name was APER, which fignifieth a boare; it is written that hee then faid. Now is my prophecie expired and accomplished: for I have killed the boare which did prognofticate to me the Empire: and so he held the Druides prophecie for fulfilled. It is faid, that he came down from his throne of purpose to kill ARRIVS APER with his owne hand, although that it beseemed not his greatnes to doe so vile a deede, yet he did it, to the end to confirme the prophecie. It is fo written by these authors, and although I think not the contrarie, but that it happened so; yet I hold it but for a iest, for this Southsaier did not know what she said, and this which happened was but by chaunce; and so much the more, for that DIOCLESIAN was not made Emperour when he had killed one boare, but after that he had killed many boares, and in the end hee was made Emperour when he hadflaine a man whose name was APER, which in English signifieth a boare. And for that all the prophecies which I finde written of these Emperours are after this manner, I leaue to write them: for that they bring no fruite with them, but rather hurt and daunger, inticing and alluring Christians to have regard to Southsayings; a thing truly very pernicious, which the Infidels observed through the inftigation of the diuell. So foone as DIOCLESIAN faw himselfe free from the warres of NVME-RIAN's, beginning to take the gouernment of the Empire into his hands, an infinite number of people which were labourers and peazants, arose in France, in manner of a communaltie; the captaines whereof were two very sufficient men, whose names were AMANDVs and HELIENVS: wherefore accounting that warre vnworthie of himselfe, he sent thither Maximinianvs, whom hee had alreadie made C # SAR, for that he was a man of much worth and very valiant in

armes, who (although with great daunger) put to flight and flew a great number of them, so as all places there were in peace and quietnes. But other warres and tyrants rifing, holding himfelfe alone infufficient for fo great a charge, hee now madeMAXIMINIANV s(whom before he had made C # 5 AR) Av G V S TV S, Emperour and his companion and equall with himselfe in the Empire; as some o- those Maximither Emperours by others had done the like. And truly it was a wonderfull mat- manus for his ther Emperours by others had done the like. And trilly it was a wonderfull thatmonappears in terto fee, that they agreed fo well together if or MAXIMINIANVS was not onely the Empre. a good and loiall companion in the Empire, but there was neuer any fonne more obedient vnto his father, then he was to DIOCLESIAN; and to in loue and concord they gouerned the Empire a great foace, and obtained many noble victories against their enemies. When DIOCLESIAN had made this choise, he tooke his way towards the East, for that there was a certaine captaine in Egypt whose name Was Achillers, which had ferfed on that kingdome, and was called Emperour, sehillers eatand was mightie and of very great power. And MAXIMINIANVS Went into A-lea Emperour frica, where all the legions and old fouldiers were drawne together in a mutinie, and so other nations with their Captaines very orderly rose with the countries, and enjoyed the rents and tributes; and these for their continuance were called QVINGENTIANI, OF QVINQVAGENARII. These two enterprises were held to be most important, wherein they had good successe, as wee will presently declare. But before that those warres began, there happened other of no lesse importance: for a principall captaine called CRAVSIV sor(as others fay) CARAVs I v s, rebelled in Britannie, possessed himselfe of that Iland, and was called Empe-crausus rebelrour. And N AR S E v s King of Persia and Armenia, taking the benefit of the time, ledin Britanbegan to warre against the Empire, and inuaded Mesopotamia. And one I v L I A-NV s in Italy rebelled, and would have made himselse Emperour: But seeing how Inlianus rebelsmall meanes he had to maintaine the fame, hee stabbed himselfe to death with ling in Italy his pointard, and fell into a fire, as AVRELIVS VICTOR reporteth. For which flew himfelfe. occasions the two Emperours agreed that each of them should name one other to be CESAR and his successor, which should be such a man, as should be of qualitic able to helpe to preserve and defend the Empire; which they did: and Dio-CLESTAN Chofe one GALERIVS MAXIMINVS, Who by his furname was called ARMENTARIVS. This man was of fo base a linage, that they report him to be the sonne of a Cowheard, and borne in Dacia; but was a most valiant man, very wife, and an excellent Captaine; yet very feuere, and of a churlish condition. MAXIMINIANV s named another called CONSTANTIV s, and by his furname conflantive C LORV sta man both very vertuous, wife, a valiant Captain, & a Romane gentle- Clorus made man, borne of high and noble linage. His fathers name was Evrroplys, and cefar by Maximinianus. his mothers CLAVDIA, neece of the Emperour CLAVDIV s, who had the great victorie against the Gothes: and to the end to be the better assured of them, they made them to put away the wives which they had, and to marrie others. Con-STANTIVS did put away HELEN, by whom hee had alreadic one sonne called CONSTANTINE, which afterwards was an excellent Emperour, and he married With THEODOSIA the daughter in law of MAXIMINIANVS. When they had made this prouision, divided the Empire amongst them, and leuied their armies: the Emperour MAXIMINIANVS Went into Africa, and DIOCLESIAN into E-2700 against A CHILLEVS; GALERIVS ARMENTARIVS Went into the East against the Persians; Constantive Clorve Casar remained in France to make head against CARAVSIVS, who called himselfe Emperour in Britannie; and against the incursions of the Northerly nations. Which warres, although

Alexandria taken by Dio clesian, and Achilleus vvas sall to the lions

**Constantius** made peace with Carauhus in Britanny

Conftantius in great daunger buas ouerthrowne and in one day.

that some of them happened at one instant and togethers; I will recite in such manner as to me shall seeme most expedient. And to begin with the Emperours. Ifay, that DIOCLESIAN being arrived in Egypt, ACHILLEVS attended his comming with a huge and mightie armie; and ioyning battaile(notwithstanding that ACHILLEVS fought very valiantly) DIOCLESIAN had the victorie; and A-CHILLEVS fauing himselfe by flight, recourred the citie of Alexandria, where seeking to repaire his forces, he was befieged by DIOCLESIAN; and in the time of eight moneths (for fo long the fiege lasted) there happened many battailes, skirmithes and encounters, on the one fide and the other; but in the end the citie was taken by force of armes, and ACHILLEVS Was by DIOCLESIANS commandement cast to be deuoured by lions, and other fierce wilde beasts; and so he vsed in all that kingdome most cruell and extreme punishment, putting to death many thousands of men, but principally of those which had been leaders and motors of this rebellion, or had confented thereto. MAXIMINIANVS the other Emperour which went into Africa against the Quingentiani, in the beginning warred very doubtfully, and with great difficultie: but the greatest part of that people fighting with his power, hee constrained the rest to entreate for peace, and afterwards went into divers parts, destroying the tyrants and theeues which were in Maximinianus those countries: wherefore he was called MAXIMINIANVS HERCYLEVS, for that HERCVLES traviailed many parts of the world, doing the like. And Dro-CLESIAN by a new furname was called I ovivs of Ivpire R; who they faid did ouercome and kill the Giants: and fo he and his companions (in his name)ouercame and flew the tyrants. The other warres made by the C # s AR s prooued not fo well in the beginning: for Constantivs Clorvs, who remained to make head against CARAVSIVS; as CARAVSIVS was valiant & wily, and in possession of al Britannie, so could he no way prenaile against him, but was rather forced by the Germanes which came downe against him, to conclude a peace with CARAVSIVS : and so CARAVSIVS remained peaceable Lord of Britannie the space of 7. yeeres. Yet afterwards his companion & familiar friend called ALECTVs flew him, and tooke the gouernment of the land to himself, which he held a yeeres. But he at last was ouerthrowne and flaine by Asclepidorys, or Asclopivs Dorys, a Pretorian prefect: and so Britannie was againe recoursed, after that it had bin tyrannized, & held by rebels the space of 10. yeeres. When C o NSTANTIVS made peace with CARAVSIVS he warred a long time, & had a fore & dangerous war with the Germanes and barbarous nations; with which among other battailes, he fought one which was very memorable, wherin in one day he was ouerthrowne and lost: & likewise the same day he was a conqueror & a victorious Lord. Which happened in this manner: He comming to a battaile with them in the morning. neere to a citie of the Ligones or Cigones in Gallia Belgica, part whereof is now called Flaunders; his troupes fought so il, that they were constrained to turne their backs & to retire to the citie: and Constantivs Clorvs was forced to do the like. But when he came to the gates of the citie hee found them fast lockt, and was in fuch a streight, that if they had not let downe a rope, wherewith he was drawn ouer the wall into the citie, he had then bin flaine by the enemie. When he was within the citie, he called the fouldiers togethers, and made fuch a speech vnto them, that they were greatly as named at their received dishonor: so that in the ceuening within fine houres after the first fight (the enemie mistrusting no such matter) he commaunded all the gates to bee opened, and fallied out fuddenly at vnawares, and fet vpon his enemies with fuch courage, that after a long fight

they were ouerthrowne and torne in peeces, to the number of few leffe then threefcore thousand men. In like manner happened many great accidents to CONSTANTIVE in those parts. And while as DIOCLESIAN and MAXIMI-NIAN Emperors, and CONSTANTIVS CESAR followed these warres, GALE-RIVS waged a warre no leffe dangerous against NARSEVS King of Persia: against whom(as we have faid)he went. For besides that it lasted a long time, there were many men flaine of either fide therein, without any aduantage or figne of victorie to either partie, vntill at the last they came with their whole power to a set battaile neere to the citie of Carras, whereinto GALERIVS CESAR entred with leffer forces then he ought to have done or was requifite: and fighting with greater courage, then discretion, he was ouerthrowne, and losing almost his whole armie he escaped by flight. Whereat the Emperour Dioclesian was so much grieued that GALERIVS comming into his presence in Melopotamia, meeting him vpon the way alighted from his horse, and came to the litter wherein the Emperour was, to doe him honour: but Dioclesian fuffered him to goe a great while ouer the fields on foote, without staying or willing him to take his Gaterins rehorse; but reprehending him, for that he had with so little discretion suffered him-proud ly Diofelfe to be ouerthrowne in a raunged battaile. In the end he gaue him leaue to depart, iniovning him to leuie a new armie, and to endeuour to recouer his lost honour, and to defend his prouince. Which GALERIVS parting from him ashamed, with all diligence put in execution; DIOCLESIAN remaining with his troupes in Melopotamia in the meane time, to the end that the Persians should not inuade it. And fo GALERIVS with all speeds went into Europe to leuie fouldiers; and bringing with him the legions of Slauonia, Dacia, and Misia, hee returned into Asia, and went into the greater Armenia, whither NARSEVS the King of the Persians, by whom hee had been ouerthrowne, was alreadic come, with whom hee began the warre againe anew, in very good order and with good aduice, and with no leffe courage and force. And the two armies came so neere the one to the other, that by a mutual confent of their Captaines they ioyned bat- Afecond battaile: the one part prefuming on the victorie past, and to preserve the honour taile betweene which they had gotten; and the other part to recouer their losses: And so the Onlerius and the Persians. fouldiers for the same occasion fought with incredible courage and stomacke, which made the battaile very cruell and bloudie: But the Romane armie confifling of more choise men, and better trained, obtained the victorie; although not without great difficultie and daunger. The King escaped by flight, and GALE-RIV s following the execution entred his campe; where hee found great riches, Galerius his and tooke his wives, his children, his fifters, and many noble and principall men villorie aof the kingdome of Persia. And marching forwards with his forces, hee inuaded gant the Perhis countrie and did great harme therein, without finding any man that durft to make resistance against him. And from thence hee went into Mesopotamia to see DIOCLESIAN, where hee was received as in a triumph: and DIOCLESIAN himselfe went to meete him, and entertained and embraced him cheerefully, doing him great honour.

All matters in the East being pacified, and the Perfians and Parthians being ouerthrowne, and having therein spent many yeeres, they returned into Europe, where MAXIMINIANVS called HERCVLEVS, Emperour and his companion, and Constantivs Casarwere, who were buffed in the warres before recited, all being (in truth) gouerned and directed by the wiscdome of Diociss IAN, whose valour, policie, and courage was such, that there was not any that

durst to disobey him, no not his equall MAXIMINIANVS; so as they all seemed to be his fonnes and his Captaines, rather then Emperours and his companions.

These men held the Empire in peace in all the three parts, to wir, East, West, and South, but the Northerlie parts could neuer be throughlie subdued, aswell for their fiercenes, courage, and valour, as for that when they were ouerthrowne and put to flight, they retired and withdrew themselves into most cold, barreine. and inacceffible places, which they could well indure being borne vnder that climate: so as the Romane Captaines held it impossible to passe any further with their armies, contenting themselues to have chased them out of the bounds of the Empire, but they would afterwards returne againe more fierce then at the first, and euer were troublesome and feared. Now the Scythians, the Gothes, the Sarmates, the Alanes, the Carpi, the Catti, the Quades, and other nations in great number affembling themselues, with a desire to rob and steale, and to inhabit fome more fertile foile, began to make warre and great spoile in the lands of the Empire; against which the Emperours and their two CESARS marched with their armies, and dispersing themselves into fundrie parts they followed the warres, although not without loffe, and great difficultie, the one helping and affisting the other. In the end they all obteined victorie, and the barbarous nations were repulfed, and many thousands of them were taken prisoners, and afterwards being fet at libertie, certaine prouinces, which by the warres were dispeopled, were given them to inhabit. DIOCLESIAN having obteined this victorie and many other, and having established peace in the Empire by the industrie of himselfe, of MAXIMINIANVs his companion in the Empire, and of GALERIVS and CONSTANTIVE which were C ESARS, now willing to inioy the accustomed reward of victories, he came to Rome, where he entired in triumph together with the Emperour MAXIMINIANVS, and the two CESARS aforefaid, where was made vnto them one of the most stately triumphs that euer was seene in Rome. wherein was an infinite maffe of treasure of the spoile of the East, of Egypt, and of other nations by them subdued, and therein were chariots full of armes, and of veffels of gold and filuer; and therein also were led prisoners the wife and children of the Kings of Persia, with many other Kings and Captaines of fundric armies of the Alanes, of the Catti and others, which was in the eighteenth yeere of the raigne of Dioclesian: for fo long was the time that he had been bufied in the warres, and in prouiding and giuing order for fuch things as were done therein. This DIOCLESIAN was fo wife, fo politick and fo valorous in the gouernement of the Empire, that no Emperour either before or after him, held the Empire in the like subjection: for MAXIMINIANVS obeyed him as his father. and GALERIVS and CONSTANTIVS as their Lord, and so he was honoured and reuerenced more like a King, then an Emperour; and he would that his subiects should adore him, and do him reuerence kneeling vpon the ground, after the manner of the Kings of Persia. And as the custome of the Emperours in former time was, when they were intreated by any principall men to give them their hands to kiffe, they raifing them vp gaue them peace with their lips on the cheeke, and meanemen vsed to kiffe their knees: but DIOCLESIAN commaunded by a publike edict, that without any difference all men should kiffe his foote prostrate vpon the earth; and for the greater reuerence, he made his shooes to be fet with pearle and stone of great worth: And in the top of this his high prosperitie, by the instigation of the Diuell, he resolued to persecute the Christians, and

this was the tenth generall perfecution of the primitive Church after NaRo, and

Rarharous na tions rofe against the Em-

Dioclefians

The tenth per-Cecution.

the most cruell of all and lasted longer then any other: for it continued ten whole veeres. The Christians had lived in rest and libertie many yeeres after the perfecution of AVRELIANVS, and the number of them and of their Churches was now to great, that in all the cities of the Empire and out of it there was a great concourse of people, and their Churches were much frequented: with which rest and tranquillitic (as Evsebivs, who was a christian author of those times reporteth) the ceremonies and discipline of the Church began to be corrupt. and feruent deuotion began to wax cold, enuie and contention growing betweene the Bishops. And there was such discord among them, that (as he indgeth) God did juffly permit the punishment and perfecution which then happened, which in truth was to horrible and fo cruell, that no toong is able to expresse the same: wherefore well faith the same Evs EBIVs, as he which was present and faw the fame, that he cannot throughly expresse with words that which he saw with his eies. And herewith he and PAVLVS OROSIVS do write fuch things. which were of fuch qualitie, that there can be no heart fo hard, but will have compassion, and be grieued to heare the same, and what they have written: so as it is wonderfull to confider of the patience and constancie of the persecuted, and

In generall, Dioclesian endeuoured to destroy all the Churches and

Temples of the Christians, to the end that they should not assemble to pray and

of the fiercenes and crueltie of those which persecuted them.

to vie the divine fervice therein, and burnt all the bookes that he could get of the Harrible trusholic feriptures, and would not permit that any man of what condition focuer, if elite: fed by he were a Christian should hold any office or magistracie: and it he were alreadic gainst the chrisestablished in any, he should be deprived and held for infamous, if he escaped stans. with his life. The fouldiers and men of warre being Christians which would not renounce their faith, were caffired, and deprined of all militarie honor, and some of their lines. The Bishops and Prelates were robbed and spoiled of that which they had, and many of them flaine and martyred; and a flaue which was a Chriflian could by no meanes obteine his freedome. This was common in all the provinces of the Empire, but particularlie in some of them was done most indidicible great crueltie, as in Phrygia, in Egypt, in Syria, & in other parts. Some were fleved alive, others were torne with iron combes, and so their skins being rent, they were returned to the prisons, where they were lodged vpon tile stones, and the sheards of broken pots, to the end that their rest should be more cruell and terrible then their martyrdome. Honest and delicate women, but strong and confant in faith, were hanged up by the feete as naked as they were borne, to the end that their life should continue for a space with shame and double torment. Others had their eares, nofes, lips, hands, fingers, and feet cut off, having only their eies left, for a greater torment, and martyrdome vnto them: For others, they with great force bowed downe great armes and boughes of trees, and fastned the one leg to one bough, and the other leg to another bough, and then letting loofe the faid boughes with the force thereof the bodies were rent in funder. Betweene the nailes of the fingers and toes, which are very fenfible and tender parts, they thrust thornes and splinters of canes. Vpon other men being naked they cast melted lead and tinne, wherewith they indured most cruell torments. Finallie,

time of this perfecution) was infinite. As Dioclesian was in the height of this felicitic obeyed and feared of all

there were vsed against the Christians such torments and cruelties, as the like had

neuer beene seene nor imagined: and the number of the murthered (during the

Dioclesian venowiced the

Empire.

Constantius Clorus and Galerius Armentarius made Emperours by Dioclesian.

the world he refolued to doe a notable matter, the like whereof was never feene in any other Emperour before his time: which was, to renounce the Empire and to line private, confidering (as some write) like a wise man, the mutabilitie of all things in this life, which neuer continue in one estate; but when they are growne to their height, naturally they decline and diminish. Taking example by the great Pompey, Marcys Antonivs, Hannibal, and other great Captaines and princes, who having attained to the highest of all felicitie and prosperitie, were afterwards throwne downe and brought low. Accounting himfelfe also insufficient for so great a charge, by reason of his decrepit old age; and fearing therefore to fall into contempt, he would first contempe the dominion and rule, with fo many cares and troubles; and fo leade a quiet life in meane estate without care, feare, or suspition. And was not contented alone to leave the Empire himselse, but he perswaded, and (as we may say) in a manner compelled, the Emperour MAXIMINIANVS to doe the like. Which betweene them was concluded and agreed vpon by letters and Ambassades, in such fort, that both of them vpon one day, having ruled the Empire the space of twentie yeeres, in the veere of our Lord three hundred and seauen, MAXIMINIANVS being in Milan, and DIOCLESIAN in Nicomedia, they renounced the Empire; and putting off their imperiall robes and enfignes, they came downe from the thrones where they fate, and made themselues equall with other particular and private men. First nominating and chusing for Emperours and AVGVSTI, CONSTAN-TIVS CLORYS, and GALERIUS ARMENTARIUS; which before were C 2-SARS. Which DIOCLESIAN did so willingly and so vnfainedly, that he afterwardsvsed to say; that he then began to liue, and saw the beautie of the sunne. And it seemeth so to betrue, for after that these two had left the Empire, as we haue faid; he would neuer intermeddle with any matter of gouernment what so euer it were. But all his care was to plant and set a garden, and an orchard which he had in Solonia a citie in Dalmatia, where he was borne, and whither he retired himselfe. And afterwards in processe of time being required by his companion MAXIMINIANVS and his fonne in law GALERIUS, who then was Emperour, vpon some vrgent occasions which happened, againe to receive the Empire, alleadging that it was necessarie and expedient for the common good; he would not accept thereof, but answered: that if they had seene and enjoyed fuch quietnes and rest as he had; and the hearbes and trees which he possessed in his countrie; they would not have fent to have made any fuch request vnto him: for he had alreadie trauailed and done enough for the common-wealth; and that now God had given him time to travaile and to live to himselfe; and that he could not fay and account that he had ever lived, but fince that he lived in quiet and in rest in his owne countrie. And they replying, that he ought to hauerespect vnto the great acts which he had done, and not to lose the reputation of the victories which he might have in his owne time: He answered, that having chosen and placed his felicitie in the gifts of the minde; it was no vile or base thing, neither ought it so to be adjudged to contemne temporall riches and rule, and to professe an honest poore life; agreeing with the disciplineand examples of the fage and auncient Philosophers: And so finally he would not alter his determination. It cannot be said but that this wise Lord, did well knowe and vnderstand how little the dominion and commaund in this life is to bee effeemed; feeing that with it, it bringeth fo much trouble, anguish, and vexation. And I doe partly beleeve that for some good deed which he had done, it pleased

God (who leaueth no merit vnrewarded) to give him that rest and vnderstanding in this world, feeing that in the other life, as a cruell infidell, he was to pay for the cruelties which he had committed against the primitive Church: and in the The death of end gaue him fuch a death as he had deferued. Some fay, that he poisoned him- Dioclesian. telfe for feare of Licinivs and of Constantine, which afterwardes were Emperours; who in their letters had threatened him for that he would not come to their nuptials. Others fay, that he died mad, after that he had lived (as faith AVRELIVS VICTOR) feuentie and eight yeeres. What death his companion MAXIMINIANVS died, I will tell you in the lives of his fucceffors. Of two wives which DIOCLESIAN had, I finde not that there remained any other fonne or daughter, but VALERIA which he married to GALERIVS ARMENTARIVS. when he made him C & SAR. Of MAXIMINIANVS remained one sonne, whose name was MAXENCIVS, who afterwards tooke the name of Emperour, whom he had by a woman of Soria, called EVTROPIA and one daughter named FAV-STAWHICH he married to Constantine fonne of Constancivs Casar, which afterwards was Emperour.

## THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TIVS CLORVS, THE FIRST OF

THAT NAME, AND OF GARERIVS ARMENTARIVS, THE THREE AND fortith Emperour of Rome.



Refently after that Diociesian and Maximinian had refigned the Constantius Empire, Constantivs and Galerivs Without any contradiction Clorus, and Galerius Armerwere obeyed and accepted for Emperors, accordingly as the others had tarius made ordained; they being, as we may faid, sonnes in law to the two last Emperours; Emperours. for GALERIYS Was married to DIOCLESIANS daughter, and CONSTANTIVS to THEODORA the daughter in law of MAXIMINIANVS. This CONSTANTIVE was a very noble, vertuous, courteous and valiant gentleman, both of condition and in bloud. And GALERIVS although that he were but of a base stocke and li-

uided betwene Constantius and Galerius.

The Emperour Conflantius Clorus died in England.

Constantine chofen Empe. four in bis fathers place.

made Cefars by Galerius.

nage, yet was he neuerthelesse valiant, and a singular good Captaine; but therewith, cruell, terrible, churlish, incontinent, but well proportioned, and (as Av RE-LIVS VICTOR faith) of a comly and goodly conflicution of body. And notwithstanding that in conditions, there was great difference betweene them ; yet DIOCLESIAN through his great wisedome made them to live in peace and concord; fo as they no way disagreed. But hee being dead (they as wisemen) for feare to fall out, agreed by lot to divide the provinces of the Empire be-The Empire di tweene them, which they did: and to Constantive befell Italie, Sicilia, and Africa, with all the provinces thereof, together with France, Spaine, Germanie and Britannie: and to GALBRIVS, was allotted Slauonia, Macedonia, Thracia, Thessalia, all the provinces of Gracia, of Alia, of Egypt, of Soria and all the East, and the Ilands therein. This division being made, it seemed a great charge and a burthen to the milde condition of Constantive CLORVS. to have the government of fo many provinted as fell to his share: for hee rather defired to governe well, then to governe much; and therefore renounced to Galerius the provinces of Africa, and of Italie, contenting himselfe with France, Spaine, and the Iles of Britannie. Truely hee had reason, seeing that either of these Kings at this day is held for one of the most mightie Potentates of the world: fo as that part which Constantive held, for the small time that hee lived; hee governed very wifely and vorightly, to the great profit and contentment of the subjects; and was so highly esteemed and beloued, that in his time there was not any warre or rebellion in any of those proninces. He did much honour and favour the Christians; and would not confert that any violence or displeasure should bee done vnto any of them. Hee died in England of a discase, after that hee had been (as witnesseth Evs BBIVs) sixteene veeres CESAR; and two yeeres Emperour. And in his place his sonne CONSTAN-TIME (whom hee had by his first wife called HELENA, from whom hee was divorced to marrie with the Emperour MAXIMINIANVS daughter in law) was chosen Emperour. And the faid CONSTANTINE was also married to FAVSTA the daughter of the same MAXIMINIANVS. And this was the end of Constantivs. But his companion GALERIVS having accepted that which hee defired not; which was Italie and Africa; and confidering alfo that one man alone could hardly well rule and governe fo great an efface, to the ende therefore that hee might bee affifted in the warres, and in all otheraccidents that might befall him, hee made two Casas, which were almost equall in dignitie to himselse: the one was called SEVERVS, whom hee fet in the government of Italie and Africa; and to the other, whose name was MAXIMINVS, being (assaith AVRELIVS VICTOR) his sisters some, he gave the government of the East, holding to himselfe the provinces of Slavonia, and of Gracia, with supreme power, as soueraigne Emperour aboue the C & s AR s; fo as by fower heads the world was gouerned. Which were CONSTANTI-NVs, and GALERIVS, Emperours; and SEVERVS and MAXIMINUS, CE-

CONSTANTIVE CLORVE.

After that the Emperors Dioclesian and Maximinian had renounced the Empire, the Pretorian fouldiers which (as hath been often faid) remained neere to Rome, discontented with the gouernement of SEVERVS which ruled it, (he being farre absent from thence, going into Slausnia to see the Emperour G A-LERIVS) affembling themselves in a great tumult, chose MAXENCIVS for Emperor, who (as is faid) was MAXIMINIANVS his fonne which renounced the Em-

pire, whom he had by a base woman of Soria, called Ev TROPIA, which bred a great confusion in the Empire, which then was in peace, and there ensued so The Pretorian great troubles thereof, as can hardlie be described. When the Emperour GALE- foundations dif-RIV S ynderstood hereof, he commaunded SEVERVS CE SAR with all speede to the gournetake his way towards Rome, where the new tyrant MAXENCIVS was, and he did ment of Scuefo and being encamped neere to the citie, the greatest part of his armie (for no-Maxentius uelties are euer most pleasing) went ouer to MAXENCIVS, which his father their Empe-MAXIMINIANYS being then in Lucania, after that he had renouced the Empire, rour. understanding, through defire to rule, came in great haste to Rome, under pretext Maximianus to counsell and affilt his sonne in the gouernement, and sent to Dioclesian, nonneed the desiring him to do the like, who (as we have said) would not accept of his coun- Empire came fell, but lived in quiet.

MAXIMINIANY'S having received his answere, and perceiving himselfe to be counself to his

greatly accounted of, resoluted much himselfe to repossesse the Empire, and to some in the disposses of the second dispos that his sonne in law Constantine taigning in Britannie, Spaine, and France, all would yeeld obedience to him. But his imaginations had foill successe, that he not only mift of his purpose, but was so hardsie dealt withall by the Pretorian Cohorts (his sonne permitting the same) that he was faine to flye out of Italy into France, where his sonne in law the good Constanting had the gouernement, who very honorablic received him as his father in law, and as a man which had bin Emperour. But he which had fet his thoughts only vpon the Empire. and fought by all meanes how he might attaine thereto, like a wicked and difloyall father in lawe purposed to have slaine his sonne in lawe Constantine: death of his but it pleased God to discouer his treason, to the end that he should receive pu-sonne in lane nishment for the crueltie which he had vsed against the Christians : for flying Constantine. from CONSTANTINES COURT he was overtaken at Marfeilles, where he fought to The Emperour haue embarked himselfe, and there was flaine, and so MAXIMINIANV s made an Maximianus vnluckie end, his sonne MAXENCIV's remaining Emperour and tyrant in Rome, seller, as is aforefaid. When GALERIUS ARMENTARIUS, who was the right Emperour vnderstood of the ill successe and death of Severvs C & sar whom he had fent against MAXENCIVS, he resolved in person to go against him with the greatest power that he was able to make; and to the end to leave a good guard in the provinces of Slauonia, he made an excellent Captaine called LICINIV S. C. E SAR. who was a man of meane condition and base parentage, being but the sonne of a poore laborer of Dacia, but was very wife and an excellent Captaine in the wars. This being done, and having taken fuch other order as was requifite, he departed with his armie towards Italy, directing his journey for Rome: but by the way he was adjustifed that his owne fouldiers did treate among themselves of abandoning him, and of going ouer to MAXENCIVS, and that certaine companies of fouldiers in Italy which vntill then had held for him, had done the like: Whereupon fearing to be overthrowne, he returned to the place where he left Lici-NIVS, repenting also that he had made him C # s AR, for that he saw that he was of greater power and authoritie then he would he should have bin. GALERIVS being fo returned, there grew in his flanke an impostume, so vile & pestilent, that no medicines or remedies whatfocuer were of force to cure it, and it became fo corrupt, that there fell a number of wormes from it, which did put him to fuch intolerable paine, that he was readie in despaire to have killed himselfe. And seeing himselfe to dye in this manner, he made some of his Phisicions which had

alerius bis

mitie.

nentarius.

without any true repentance, he began to thinke that this happened vnto him for perfecuting of the Christians, and therefore in great hast consulting with CONSTANTINE, who raigned in Britannie, France, and Spaine, he commaunded all lawes and edicts what soeuer made against them to cease, and to be abolished: and to that effect fent his letters and decrees into all the provinces of Gracia, and of the East, where MAXIMINVS (who was C & s AR for him) gouerned, which EvsEBIVs an author of great truth and an eie-witnesse, setteth downe verbatim. And besides this, he made many Christians to be brought into his presence. which he defired and intreated to pray to God for his bodilie health: for he recurable difmembred not the health of his foule, but would have continued an Infidell still: fe and inwherefore either they would not make fo vniust a supplication to God for him. or else it pleased not God to heare their prayers; for within few daies after he died of that his incurable infirmitie; yet fome authors fay that he killed himfelfe. This his death happened in the yeere of our Lord three hundred and nn.Dom. 2 12 twelve, he having raigned fixe yeeres, the first two in companie with Conhe death of STANTIVS, and the rest with the CESARS. And he being dead, all matters realerius Armained in this estate: MAXENCIVS who tyrannouslie was called Emperour held Rome, and all Italy. Constantinus who indeede was Emperour, held France, Spaine, Britannie, and part of Germany. LICINIVS whom GALERIVS had made C & S AR, remained in possession of Slanonia, and of the provinces of

> remained with all the East, with the dignitie and name of CESAR: among all which only CONSTANTINE seemed to have just title. for that he was the fonne of Constantive, and had maried the daughter of MAXIMINIANVS, both which had beene Emperours.

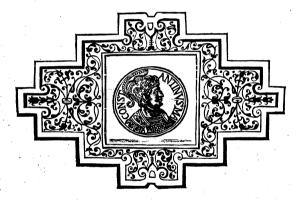
Gracia, and prefentlie made himselfe to be called Emperour; and MAXIMINVS

THE



## THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TINE THE GREAT, FIRST OF

THAT NAME, AND FOVRE AND fortith Romane Emperor. And of MAXENCIVS. and of Marcus Licinius, which in his time were called Emperours.



THE ARGVMENT.



He Empire was divided among fundry Princes, and each of them governed his part with equall authoritie: but Maxentius raigning in Rome as a tyrant, playing many vile parts, behaued himselfe in such sort that Constantine bare armes against him, not with standing that he was allied unto him, and to ned battaile with him, leffe confident in the force of his armie, then in the vision which he had seene; that under the signe of the Crosse he should overcome, which he ever after bore for his denice. He likewise onercame Marcus Licinius, who also gonerned a part of the Empire. Hee greatly fanoured the Christians, and while hee lined, the

persecution of the Christians ceased, and the Prelates and Primates of the Church were had in great veneration, and were made rich. He did put a sonne of his owne to death, whose name was Crispus, by the instigation of his wife Fausta, whom he afterwards also slew, being grienously reprehended by his mother Helena for the death of his sonne. He would have rooted out the heresic of Arthe Romane

Maxencius a

rius : but death intercepted him, which tooke him out of this life when he was very old, and be died as a Christian, as be had Christianlike lined, leaning the Church in great honour and rich, whereto he had of his liberalitie given many great and rich gifts.



Am of opinion and doe certainly beleeue, that it cannot be otherwise, but that the reader shall see himselfe in a great confusion, and will not without great trouble comprehend the tenour of this historie; by reason of the multitude of the Emperours and C & s AR s, which concurre at one instant: so as if it be a hard matter to remember their names onely how much more then will it be to vnderstand the doings of every of them particularly? It is true, that the Romane Empire was then fo great, that no

one man alone was sufficiently able to gouerne the same; neither was it possible that many should rule it: for in raigne and commaund (as I have elsewhere said) equalitie and companie cannot be endured. And from hence arose so much difcord, murther, and other straunge accidents, which then could not throughly bee vnderstood, neither can now be cleerely described; so as they may bee distinctly vnderstood in such fort as they passed. Wherefore it shall be requisite that the curious reader remember well what is past, to the end that he may the better com-

prehend that which followeth.

The tyrant MAXENCIVS being as Emperour in Rome, CONSTANTINE in France, LICINIVS in Slauonia and Gracia, who was also called Emperour, and the Romane Empire was di- MAXIMINUS CESAR in the East. The life and behaviour of MAXENCIUS in Rome was fuch, that hee was therefore extremely hated of all men: for hee was a cruell homicide and a murtherer of Noblemen, libidinous, an adulterer, difhonest, couetous, and aboue all a persecutor and destroier of the Church of God. Finally, in all his actions hee was a tyrant, a great forcerer, and a friend to Southfaiers, Enchaunters, Charmers, and fuch like. For which the vertuous and most reat enchaun- noble Constantine (being in France) was very forrie: and being called by the Senators of Rome and other Noblemen, he refolued to leuie an armie against MAXENCIVS, notwithstanding that hee was brother to his wife FAVSTA, as I haue faid. But the better to preserve his owne Empire, he made MARCV & LICI-NIV s, who commaunded Slauonia, and the other prouinces aforefaid, his friend, giuing to him his fifter Constance to wife, in the citie of Milan where they two met for that purpose, and made great feasting. Whither was inuited (but would not come) the old Emperour DIOCLESIAN, who yet lived in his voluntarie pouertie. Wherewith CONSTANTINE and LICINIVS being discontent, wrote vnto him sharpe and threatning letters, alleaging that hee fauoured Max-ENCIVS; wherefore (as some write) he tooke poison wherewith hee killed himfelfe; and others fay that he died mad. After that the feafts were ended in Milan, the good Constantine comming with his armie into Italy against Maxencivs, who notwithstanding that he was a wicked man; yet was he both valiant and hardie: and raifing also the greatest and best forces that heewas able, went to meete him, trusting in the enchauntments and charmes which he had made, and in the masters which hee had with him, which for that purpose killed innocent children, making with their bloud a thousand charmes and other vanities, wherewith he held the valearned and vabeleeuing people fo aftonished and amazed, that the greatest pars of his friends gaue a credit thereto; and his enemies

Roode in feare and in doubt to give him battaile. Wherefore, and also because that in truth, he had a great armie and very expert, principally the Pretorian foul. Vi arres bediers which first made choise of him; the warre grew to be very doubtfull, and fanine and there were some encounters and battailes betweene them, wherein for the most Maxentine. part Constantine had the victorie. But Maxencivs reinforcing his armie, and vling his diuellish arts, came finally to Rome, where he procured all possible fauour, and making greater preparation to offend his enemie, and by the counsell of a Magitian woman, or rather a witch; herefolued to fallie forth and to give Constanting battaile, who with his forces was come necre to Rome. And understanding what MARENCIUS ment to put in execution, and confidering the great cuill that might enfue; and standing in seare and doubt of the issue of the battaile, aswell for the great number of the enemies, as for MAXENcrys his enchauntments wherewith he amazed the world; he was in great care and perplexitie: And as he gaue great credit to the Christians, and was their protector and defender (notwithstanding that yet he was not baptized) but he had a firme and stedfast hope in IESVS CHRIST: EVSEBIVS, CASSIOD ORVS, and others write, that there appeared vnto him one of the greatest miracles that ever was feene in the world, which was: That he faw in the heavens a great croffe, of the colour of fire, like vnto that whereupon our Sauiour fuffered his passion; and therewith he heard a voice which faid, In hoc figno vinces, by vertue of this figne A miracle apthou shalt ouercome. By meanes of which signe and miracle, God raised so great peared to conand affured confidence in his heart, that he prefently affured himselfe to prevaile: he prepared to and therefore caused the signe of the crosse to be made in his imperial standard; & fight with euer after ysed to beare it wrought in some iewell or otherwise in his right hand, and in his forehead; and finally, from thenceforth his deuise was continually the

croffe and made it to be fet in all his enfignes. CONSTANTINUS then putting his hope and trust in the voice which he

heard from heaven; and MAXENCIVS his beliefe and confidence in his deuils and enchauntments, joyned battaile neere to a bridge ouer the river Tiber, called Pons Miluius, which was somewhat more then a mile from Rome; whither MAX- A field be-ENCLYS very couragiously came in the avantgard of all his armie; and the fight toverne Conbeing begun, and hee ouercharged by CONSTANTINE'S vauntgard, before Maxencius. which was carried the croffe, fled, and entring vpon the bridge which he had commaunded to be made youn Barkes and Boates neere to the other, both he and his horse fell into the river, where he was drowned: which bridge he himfelfe had caused to be made, to the end therewith to have entrapped and deceived Maxeneius fly

Lacum aperuit, & effodit eum, & incidit in foucam quam ipfe fecit.

CONSTANTINE having obtained this victorie in the feuenth yeere of his raigne, accounting from the death of his father, without any loffe or flaughter of his people; the Senators and people of Rome, with their wines and children came configuring atfoorth to receive him, as him, who had freed them from captivitie; and they in- companied into tituled him father of the countrie, and restorer of peace, and libertie. And in this Remety the manner was he accompanied into Rome, with incredible joy and feating; euerie phole Romene one chaunting his praifes; yeelding ouer all, fundrie congratulations, with mirth people with and gladnes. But hee attributed nothing to his owne power or policie, but all to great in and God onely. And in the right hand of all the Statues and Images, which in Rome by decree of the Senate were erected to his honour for his victorie against MAXEN civs, hee caused to be wrought and engraven the signe of the crosse, with the

his enemie. Wherefore to him may be well applied the faying of the Pfalmift. ned in the ringr

the death of he Emperou Diocle fian.

by Conftantine the Christians.

words which hee heard from heaven, Hoc figno vinces. And then hee forbad and commaunded by publike edict that no man should be condemned to the death of the croffe: which vntil his time was vsed and held for an ignominious death. And fetting all matters in order and peace in Rome, establishing holy and just lawes and statutes; and to shew himselfe gratefull for the benefits which he had received the did much good to the Christians, bestowing many fauours and gifts your them building them Churches and houses of prayer, endowing them with rents and necessarie meanes for the maintenance of the Priests and Ministers thereof, with ornaments and necessaries for the divine service. And he and his brother in law LICINIV s the other Emperour, by common confent fent their generall edicts and decrees through all the provinces and cities subject to the Empire, commanding that the Christians should be eased from all grieuances, made free, and receiued into honours and offices of dignitie and authoritie; in which decrees were contained the great praises of our Lord reciting the victories which Constant TINE had obtained under his banner with the figne of the croffe. Which decrees being fent into the East, where MAXIMINVS CESAR bare the fwav, were oobeied by him, as the Emperours commaundement, but much against his will: for he was wicked and a most cruell enemie to the Catholike Church : and so although he contained himselfe for a season, yet afterward he returned to his diucllish condition.

CONSTANTINE living in this felicitie, being Lord of al the provinces of Africa, I meane of that part therof which was subject to the Empire, of France, Spaine, Germanie, and also Italy, with the Ilands of Britannie and Sicilie; in all which countries he maintained peace and inflice: for the wifedome and policie of this prince was exceeding great, and no leffe was his courage and valour, in such fort that as he was most valiant and venturous in armes, to was hee very wife and politike in peace : and made and ordained new lawes, against the new slaunders and inuentions of the wicked. And he also tooke great care and paine to reduce all Arts and Sciences to their ancient perfection, greatly honouring fuch mafters as were excellent therein, which then were greatly decaied and diminished, and he augmented their dignitie. And hee also exercised himselse in most honourable exercises. reading, writing, and inditing; and in hearing the ambaffades and complaints which were brought to him from fundrie prouinces; and to all men was affable, gentle, courteous and liberall; conserving in all things the goodnes and sinceritie of his heart.

And being in Rome, as some reckon in the yeere of our Lord 314. and as other fay 316. some say more, some lesse; for which computation I take no great care, feeing it little importeth the truth of the historie: he was there taught and instructed by Pope SILVESTER in all matters concerning the Christian faith, which he (as some writers affirme) received with great servencie; and with his son Cars-Pvs, whom he in the beginning of his raigne had made C # s A R, was baptized in Rome, having first made for that purpose a most sumptious font, which (as P L A-TIN A affirmeth) is at this day there to be seene: yet some others affirme, that hee was baptized but a little before his death. But when soeuer, it hath greatest apparance that it was folemnized in Rome. But wee will leave this controuerfie vntill another time. He living thus in quiet in Rome, MAXIMINY'S C & SAR, who ruled in the East, seeing himselfe rich and mightie, held it for a disgrace to be inseriour to LICINIY'S OF to CONSTANTINE; and therfore taking upon him the name of Av G v s T v s and Emperour, and renoking the printledges given to the Christians.

ftians, he began to declare himselfe an enemie, especially to Licinivs, who ruled neerest vnto him: and knowing that LICINIV s prouided for him, trusting in the multitude of his men of warre, he addressed himselfe towards LICINIVS: but before they fought any generall battaile, they made most cruell warre both by fea and land in many parts: and after many conflicts, at the last they came to fight. power against power, wherein MAXIMINVS was ouerthrowne, and the battaile was fo cruell, that the greatest part of his people were slaine therein, and those therein days which escaped veelded themselves to Licinivs; and Maximinvs himselfe minus and Liescaping by flight, chaunged his habit, to the end that hee would not be discoue- cinius. red vntill he might come to some place of safetie. And (as E v s EBIV s Writeth) he imagining himselfe to be deluded by his Magitians, and the false Priests of his diuellish gods, did put many of them to death, & began to intreate the Christians very well; and fent abroad his decrees, wherein he commaunded that they should be suffered to line at libertie and to build Temples and to do what they listed. Which this wicked man did, more for that he hoped that God would therefore giue him victorie,& so he might be reuenged of his enemies, then for any beleefe he had in him: for what hee did was not willingly done, but with a fained heart, and through defire to be reuenged: for this wicked man thought that Christ should affift him with his mercie, who vpon the crosse prayed to his father to forgiue them which had nailed him thereon. And hauing once againe leuied the greatest and best forces that he could, with an intent to returne to fight with L 1-CINIVS, it pleased God to frustrate his purposes by his death, afflicting him first with the most cruel and grieuous disease that euer was heard of; wherein through the intolerable paine which he, felt in his guts and intrailes, he did bite his owne hands, and did cast himselfe desperatly from his bed to the ground: and this torment continuing many daies, to as hee could neither eate, drinke nor fleepe, at length his eyes started out of his head; and so he died inraged and in despaire. And The death of through his death the Christians enjoyed perfect peace and quietnes through all Maximinus. the provinces of the Empire : and Constantine and Licinivs remained absolute Lords and Emperours, and so continued in great peace and tranquillitie for a season: And LICINIVS presently went into the East, where he slew V A- Palent Slaine LENS, Which was a Gaptaine whom the armie there had made Emperour after by Lisinius. the death of MAXIMINVS; and that tyrant being flaine, and hee in possession of the countrie, hee punished the Sorcerers, the Inchaunters, and the ministers of MAXIMINY s his cruelties; and also caused his sonnes to be slaine which hee had made C & S AR S. So writeth E v S E BI V S, who as an eye witnesse reciteth, how great libertie and prosperitie the christians obtained through the death of MAXI-MINVS; and how they builded Churches and beautified the fame, and in how great account and reuerence CONSTANTINE held the Bishops and Prelates. And likewise the gifts, the rewards, and reuenewes which hee bestowed vpon

them. The Empire being gouerned in this manner; in those times one ALEXAN-DER a Captaine in Africa rebelled and vsurped the name and title of Emperour; against whom CONSTANTINE fent from Rome an armie: which comming to Alexander tea battel, ALEXANDER was ouercome and flaine therein. So as all matters remai- belied, and inned under the commaundement of CONSTANTINE and LICINIVS onely. And king the name although their dignitie and Empire was equall, yet was the authoritie and valour vvas ouerof CONSTANTINE farre greater, and he much more esteemed and better belo-throwne and ued of all men then Licinivs, and for the most part remained alwaies in Rome, flantines forces

Church of God, hearing and reading the holie scriptures, and in this manner re-

mained in rest for a space. But the Deuill, who never ceases the induce men to do

cuill, and to fow discord and enmitte amongst them, made Licinivs to alter his

feene: which he did (as some write) thereby to pick occasion of discord and war

CONSTANTINE THE GREAT.

lie gouerne and minister iustice: neuerthelesse he was very valiant, and followed

the warres all his whole life time.

mind, who in his hart fautored not the Christians, and drew him to perfecute Licinius perfethem. The first thing that he did, was to cast out of his house and seruice, and so, cuted the Chri out of all offices and places of charge, any one what soeuer that was a Christian; and afterwards he committed fuch cruclties against them as had seldome been

with Constantine, whom he greatlie enuied for his great authoritie and goodnes. He also sought many meanes to make him away either by poison or treason, wherein failing of his will, he resolued publicklie and openlie to fall out with him : whereto Consantine fuffred himselfe to be induced, more as a true Christian, for the defence of the Christian faith, then for his owne particular honor or interest: for Licinivs now destroyed the temples and churches which he himselfe had before commaunded to be builded, and without either feare or shame, commaunded all those Christians to be slaine which would not Licinius made those to be Jaine vobich

Licinius ouerput to flight by Conslantine

commit idolatric, and adore his idols: whereupon many as weake and inconstant renounced their faith, and others toy fullie received the crowne of Martyrdome. บบกนไส หกร commit idola-Each of these two Emperours mustering vp his souldiers and men of warre, they having raigned twelve yeeres in peace together, there began every where very cruell warres betweene them : and as Constanting euer bare the croffe in his enfigne and standard, it pleased God that most commonlie his people preuailed. And both these Emperours comming into Hungarie with their forces, to the end to draw neere the one to the other, the good Constanting having a fit oportunitie thereto (for Licinivs was encamped neere to the fide of a lake) in the night gaue him a camizado : and notwithflanding that LICINIVS fought very well and made great refistance, yet in the end his forces were ouerthrowne, and his camp was entred, and he escaping by flight, came to the citie of Bizantium, which ere long after was called Constantinople. Where to relieue himselfe and to recouer greater authoritie, he made one of his Captaines whose name was MARTIANVS, CESAR, who was maister of his offices, or high fleward of his house; and raising the greatest power that he was able both of foote and horse, he prepared himselfe for a second battaile: But in the meane season CONSTANTINE feifed on the provinces of Dacia, Missa, Macedonia, and other which were vnder Licinivs his gouernement. Licinivs having gathered his armie to a head, againe renewed the warre, which (as Evtropivs and Av-RELIVS VICTOR write in his life) was very variable and cruell, vntill that by the intercession of Constantia sister to Constantine, and wife to Lici-NIVs, there was a truce and peace taken betweene them: but through the enuie and malice of Licinivs it held not long, and they both againe returned to their weapons, warring with greater malice and power both by fea and land then before. And both the Emperours comming againe to a battaile, in the province of Bithynia, in Afia the leffe, whither LICINIVs had withdrawne himfelfe (hauing lost all that he held in Europe) it was extremely bloudic and cruell, but in the end Constantine had the victorie, and Liciniv sescaped by flight: And yet aficinius the cond time terwards through the intreatie of his fifter Constantia, and wife to Liciverthroppne. NIVS, CONSTANTINE graunted him his life, he yeelding himselfe into his power; but he confined him within the citie of Nicomedia in the same prouince,

where

where afterwards for feare that he should againe rebell, as MAXIMIANVS had done, as some say, or after some, for that LICINIVS began to practice with some to take armes againe, he was put to death by CONSTANTINES commaunde- to death by ment, and with him MARTIANVS whom he had made C & S AR, in the fifteenth Conflantines yeere of his raigne, and the threescore of his age, and in the yeere of our Sauiour commaundement. Christ three hundred and seuen and twentith. This Emperour LICINIVS Was Anno Dominia of amost wicked and cruell nature, dishonest, incontinent, a churle, couetous, 327. most ignorant, as he, who had no learning, and did abhor and detest it, affirming that learning was a publike peftilence; whereas to the contrarie, without learning, or learned counsell, there neuer was any King that either did or could right-

All the whole Empire remaining vnder the commaund of the good and christian Emperour Constantine alone, the world enjoyed a most happie time: for so great was his goodnes and wisdome, that generallie euery where he minifired inflice mixed with clemencie; so as there was vniuerfall peace and quietnes. And by all his fubicets he was beloued, and highlie extolled, and by the barbarous and strange nations greatlie feared : and aboue all, the christian faith was held in great reverence, and embraced every where. It is wonderfull what Evs E-BIV s doth write in the end of his Ecclefiasticall historie: And Socrates in his Tripartite historie, of the fauours, graces, privileges, benefites, and gifts, which CONSTANTINE bestowed vpon the Bishops and the Churches, and generallie vpon all christian people, annulling and abolishing all the lawes which his predecessors had made against their libertie : and he commaunded by publike edict. that there should no more temples be builded to the honor of the false gods and idols which the Romanes adored. But he commaunded through all the prouin- Benefites beces of the Empire, that the Bishops commaundements should be obeyed, and stored by conthat to those which had not whereof to live, there should be assigned goods and the church and rents to mainteine them during their lives. And he not only tooke care for the charch-men. Christians which lived in the countries subject to the Empire, but vnderstanding that to those Christians which lived in other provinces subject to the King of Persia, was vsed force and oppression, he sent his Ambassadors to that King, requiring him to commaund that fault to be amended; inducing and perswading him to honor and beleeue in Iesus Christ: so as by his meanes Christ was adored. and the Gospell was freely preached through the whole world, and under this Emperour the Christians indured not any oppression, or suffered persecution, and so there were many holicand learned doctors. And CONSTANTINE living in this great power and prosperitie was worthille surnamed the great, and so vntill this day in all histories he is called Constanting the great. Besides this, Titler of boner other honorable names and titles were given to him by the Senate of Rome, as given to conthe restorer of mankind, the enlarger of the Romane Empire, the sounder and Juntine. preseruer of perpetuall peace and safetie, and so he was generallie honored and beloued of all men, so much as possiblie a man could be. Some Authors write, among which EVTROPIVS is one, that CONSTANTINE through his great power and prosperitie diminished his vertues, waxing proud and cruell; and accuse him also for being too excessivelie desirous of glorie and honor: whereof AVRELIVE VICTORALIO maketh mention, and producth the same by the death of his fonne CRISPVS, whom he had made CESAR, and of his wife FAVSTA, who as we have faid, was MAXENCIVS his fifter, and of many other noble and principall

put his wife,bi fonne, and his Nephew to

pall men. But it cannot certainly be faid how it happened throughly to be able to condemne or excuse this Emperour: for as a man, he might fall into such sinnes: & yet afterwards acknowledging his errour, might aske mercie at Gods hands for his offences. It is true that some say, that he put his sonne CRISPVs to death. because that his wife FAVSTA, and mother in law to his said sonne, had complained to him that he would have rauished her; whereas to the contrarie she had dishonestly fought it of him, procuring his loue and dishonest companies whereto he as a loyall and honest childe would not consent. The truth whereof being afterwards knowne; Constanting made her to be flaine, which he did with great reason; although hee were deceived in the death of his sonne. Others fay that she as a mother in law, practized the death of CRISPVS, because he should not bee preferred before the other sonnes which she had by Con-STANTINE. But I am of opinion that these executions were not but for offences and causes sufficient to move him thereto, although they were not published and made knowne to all the world. And fo PAVLVS OROSIVS reciting the deathes of his wife, of his sonne, and of his Nephew, faith that the causes were fecret and vnknowne, which mooued him to doe it. And truely a man can prefume no otherwise, considering how wise and how good a Christian this prince was. And so Sozomenvs doth excuse him, as relateth Cassiodonvs in his Tripartite Historie. And EVSEBIVS and RVFFINNS in their writings and the same CASSIODORVS, onely declare his vertues, and blame him in nothing. Saint GREGORIE calleth him Emperour, of holy memorie. Saint AMBROSE speaking of the death of THEODORYS faith, that CONSTANTINE was worthie of great praife, who with the Empire left the Christian faith for inheritance to his successors: So as what such men commend. I dare not reprehend or condemne. Holding it then for certaine, that he was a good man, returning to his Historie, I say, that after that he raigned alone, there failed not warres: for the Warres against Sarmates inuaded the Empire, and he in person with a mightie armie marched

against them, and ouerthrowing them in a battaile, he forced them to obey, and to be quiet. The like he afterwards did by the Gothes, and other barbarous nations. Which when he had performed, and having made his three formes Con-STANTINUS, CONSTANTIVS, and CONSTANS, CESARS, and also his Nephew DALMATIVS: for some reasonable considerations, holding it more conuenient for matters of the East and to be necre at hand, which was his greatest care; he determined to transport his imperiall throne and seate from Rome into Constantine re- Bithynia in Asia, or into some other part of that countrie: and having considered thereof, and thought vpon fundrie fit places; he resolued in the end to reedifie the citie of Byzantium, which is in Thracia, and meaning to call it new Rome, he after bis name beautified it with edifices, priuiledges, and other riches more then any other citie of the world. And as Saint IEROM faith in his additions to Evseelvs, he enriched and adorned that citie with the spoiles and empouerishing of all the rest. For all the worthie and notable things which were in Rome, as statues, pillars, colosses, and all other things which were fingular and excellent, of gold stone or mettall, he made to be taken from Rome and to be carried to that citie: Whereto notwithstanding that he gaue the name of new Rome, yet was it then, and now to this day is called Constantinople, after his name: and so it became one of the greatest and most noble cities of the world: and he went thither and there established his imperiall throne and state, leaving his sonnes in Spaine, France, and Italie, which provinces he had given them to governe.

The Empire being in this prosperitie, the heresie of the Arrians through the inspiration of the diuell arose in the citie of Alexandria in Egypt, which denied the Theoriginal of eternitic of the sonne of God with the father, alledging that he was not of the the Arrian hefame substance with him. This heresie did then, and a long time after, trouble the quiet estate of the Church. The head and inventor of this herefie, was one Arrivs a Priest in the said citie of Alexandria, who was a man which outwardly made great shew of holines, and lived morally, well. At that same time was Bishop in Alexandria one ALEXANDER, a man of great holines and learning: But as he was gentle and of a mild condition, so he endeuored in the beginning to have cured Arrivs of that hereticall infirmitie, with foft and gentle medicaments, praying and admonishing him to leave his perfidy and misbeliefe, with holy speeches and exhortations; but he being proud and insolent, persisting in his herefie induced many others to follow his errors : and this pestilence encreafed and extended it felfe fo farre, that many were infected therewith, and all the possible diligence that ALEXANDER could vie, did nothing availe to suppresse the same; notwithstanding that ARRIVS was by him excluded and excommunicate out of the Church. Whereupon ALEXANDER aduertised the Emperour thereof, and the cuill grew to be fo great that it required a great remedie; and fo by order of the same Emperour, a generall councell was called in the citie of Nicea, which is in the province of Bithynia in Asia, wherein assembled three The Niceae hundredand eighteene Bishops. And Constantine himselfe in person was councell. present in the same councell: finally, ARRIVS and his wicked sect, was therein condemned by all the Bishops, excepting seuenteene which held with him. Whereof eleuen afterwards (as faith R v F FI N v s) fained recantation : and A R R Ivs together with the other fixe were excommunicated and banished; to all which the Emperour consented and approued the same, submitting himselfe to the iudgement of the holy councell. And so the opinion of ARRIVS was held for a wicked herefie, but he perfifted in his error, and had disciples and followers. And notwithstanding that the Emperour tooke great paines to redresse it, yet he could not by any meanes effect the same. This euill dida long time trouble the Church, and extended it selfe even into Spaine and other provinces; in so much that it seemed impossible to finde any redresse for so great an euill: but afterwards in processe of time, it pleased our Lord of his infinit goodnes and mer-

Among many other things which Constanting did in this councell, one was very notable, as among fo many Bishops, although many of them were holy and good men; so there wanted not enuie and contention among those which were not such: for some held erronious opinions; and others which were in sute and at debate, accused one another to the Emperour, exhibiting their complaints and informations vnto him in writing, entreating him to punish the offendors. The Emperour received the accusations, and concealed the same, so as no man faw them; and afterwards calling those Bishops which thus complained before him, he made vnto them a briefe speech, saying. Fathers, Bishops and Prelates, it hath pleased God to ordaine you for Prelates and Priests, and haue given you power to judge of me, and I may rightly and orderly be judged by you, but you cannot be judged by me: wherefore I referre your futes and debates to the divine fudgement, and to the judgement of the Church and councell. And seeing that you are set before vs in the place of God, it is not fit that I judge of you, but leave you to the judgement of God, of whom it is written, Deus fletit in finagoga deorum,

cie.to cure the fame.

the Crolle.

found.

in medio autem deus discernit, God stoode in the fynagogue of the Gods, and God alone among them is judge. Wherefore letting apart all this malice and contention, apply your sclues vnto that which appertaineth to the Christian faith, and to the Church, and for Gods fake forget these rancors and particular priuate miuries. Thelespeeches are written by RVFFINVS and CASSIODORVS. and are also seene in the decrees, wherewith the good Emperour exhorted those Billiops to concord and friendship, without interpoling himselfe betweene them as their judge, and fo was that most holy and Christian councell dissoluted. About the lame time or little after it, the holy woman HELENA mother to the lame Emperour Constantine, went to Ierufalem (I meane to that which is new builded for of the old Terulalem there remaineth not one stone vpon another) to feeke the croffe whereon our Saujour CHRIST fuffered his paffion. And commaunding a Temple to be throwne downe, which by the Gentiles was builded in The finding of that fame place to their Goddesse VENVS, there were found three crosses, but not in fuch manner as that it might bee well perceived which was the croffe of CHRIST: for the superscription was taken away, or else the letters could not be read, & the one was like the other. And HELENA being in this confusion, & with her MACARIVS, which at that time was Bishop of lerisalem, they caried the three crosses to the house of a great Ladie, which in that citie was then at the point of death, licke of a great and incurable disease; where(as it is written)the right croffe was miraculoufly discouered. Sozomenvs in his Tripartite historie writeth wonders, concerning the fame. The feast of the finding of the crosse is celebrated by the Church with great solemnitie, vpon the third day of May. And H E L B-NA having found what the to earneftly fought, caused in the same place where it Was discourred, a most rich and sumptuous Temple to be built : and taking the Helena caufed Temple to be crofte afunder, the one halfe thereof the left more inclosed in a filuer cheft, and built in the the other halfe the carried with her to Companinople, where it was kept by Con-Same place STANTINE with great reverence. She caried vnto him also the nailes wherewith where the Croffe vvas CHRIST Was nailed to the croffe, the one of which hee alwaies wore in his helmet or caske; and of another he made a bit for his horse, against such time as hee should enter into any fight or battaile; and the other naile, it is faid, that bearing it

> rour Theodosivs. CONSTANTINE having now happily raigned about thirtie yeeres, in the latter whereof he wholy applied himselfe to destroy and to root Idolatrie out of the world; and to build Churches, which he dedicated to CHRIST and his Saints; and to extinguish and extirpate ARRIV shis herefie, which yet had some roote, was finally forced to leuic an armie to goe against the Persians and their King, which inuaded the Empire. And marching thitherwards, in the 66. yeere of his age, and the thirtith of his raigne (although that herein is some small difference among the authors)he was taken with a grieuous ficknes; and to the end hee might recouer health, he caused himselfe to be carried from Constantinople, with intent to goe to Nicomedia, which is a citie in Bithynia, to certaine Bathes of natural hot water: but before that he could come thither, his difease so increased that hee died, humbly recommending his foule to IESV'S CHRIST, in whom hee constantly beleeved. And to holily died this holy and great Emperor; leauing behind him three fons,

about him, and being in a great storme at sea, he threw it into the sea to asswage

the tempest. How true or false I will not argue. This historie and the finding of

the croffe, besides RVFFINVS and CASSIOD ORVS alreadie alleaged, S.A M-BROSE Writeth at large in the oration by him made to the honour of the Empe-

The death of constantine. the Great.

CONSTANTINUS, CONSTANTIUS, and CONSTANS, which he conflituted and ordained for his heires and fucceffors in the Empire, together with his nephew DALMATIVS; and two daughters, the one named HELENA, which was afterwards maried to Iv LIANVS who was Emperor: and the other CONSTAN-TIA Which maried with GALLVS. Some suspected that CONSTANTINE Was Anno Dom. poisoned. He died in the yeere of our Lord 342.

Although that we shall somewhat exceed ordinarie in this discourse, yet I account it time well spent to treate of some doubts, which rise and grow in the life of CONSTANTINE. The first is, for that some say that this holy Emperour was not baptized, untill a little before his death, and that he was then baptized by Ev-SEBIVS Bishop of Nicomedia; and that all the rest of his time he lived without baptisme, alleaging for a reason why hee did so, that he hoped to have gone to haue been baptized in the riner Iordan, wherein our Saujour CHRIST was baptized by S.Iohn. But I account the opinion of those to bee most certaine, which write that hee was baptized in Rome by the hand of Pope SILVESTER, after the death of MAXENCIVS. For it is hardly to be beleeved, that there could be fuch spirit and deuotion found (as Constantine snewed in his workes) in a man which was not baptized; and therefore it carrieth no colour of truth. The writers doe also proone and affirme, that he was baptized with his sonne C R I S P V S. and that hee caused the same his sonne to be slaine long before he died as by vs hath been alreadie declared: so as it appeareth that he could not be baptized with his fonne, being alreadie dead. And whereas it is written in a little booke, that CONSTANTINE was infected with a leprofie, and that hee was cured with the bloud of certaine little children which hee caused to be flaine for that purpose; PLATINA holdeth this for a fable and a forgerie: and none of the ancient writers neither moderne that are along credit, write any fuch matter. Some also write, that C o NSTANTINE was barrized in his latter daies, and that he feemed to be inclined to the Arrian herefic. But he was deceived which wrote fo: for that was his fonnes error and doing, who was alfo called Constantine as he was. and that which was faid and written of his sonne (being deceived through the name) was imputed to the father, of whose true faith, life and death there ought no doubt to be made; neither in their histories treating of his life, doe make any doubt, OROSIVS, EVTROPIVS, S.GREGORIE, RVFFINVS, nor CASSIO-DORVS: Of which S.GREGORIE calleth him, of holy memorie. S.AMEROSE in an oration which hee made at the death of Theoposives giveth him the name of holie, and highly extolleth him because he left the Christian faith for an inheritance with the Empire. And the Greeke Church doth celebrate his feast as a Saint, upon the twentith day of Aprill. And so doe also defend his faith and holines both in life and death ANTONIVS SAEBLLICVS in his Æneades; PLATI-NA in the life of Pope MARCUS; POMPONIUS LETUS in his abridgement of the Romane historie; and BAPTISTA IGNATIVS in his epitome of the Emperours; and S.Antoninvs in his Historials: and generally all the moderne authors, besides the ancient alreadie named. And whereas it is written that hee recalled ARRIV s from exile; if he did so as some write, yet according to the same authors, he was induced thereto by a certaine Priest, and at the entreatic of his sister, but principally through a writing fent to him by ARRIVS, wherein he declared what opinion he held concerning the faith; feeming by his words to be conformable to the decree of the Councell; and the Emperous not comprehending

218

the deceit in those words, released him from banishment. Neuerthelesse he referred the examination of the cause to a new councell of Bishops, which was then assembled about the building of the Temple at Ierusalems, without approoning his opinion in any respect. And it happened that ARRIVS died in this demaund, accordingly as his sinnes and heresic had deserved: for it pleased God that he died suddenly, and his intrailes came foorth at his lower parts. And many of these authors affirme, that this happened in the time of the Emperour CONSTANTINE the sonne, and not of the father. Their being both of one name causeth this constitution and doubt in the historie. So as it may be set downe and auouched for certaine, that the Emperour CONSTANTINE at what time societ he was baptized, the most certaine is, that he was baptized in Rome many yeeres before his death; and he died holding & beleeuing the holy Catholike faith. And as an holy & true Christian he never consented vinto, nor beleeued any point of ARRIVS his heresite, as some charge him, being deceived by the name of his sonne, who was infected with the venome of that wicked heresie.

Now concerning the donation, which fome fay that CONSTANTINE made to Pope SILVESTER and to his fucceffors, of the citie of Rome and of all Italy, when hec went to Conflantinople's notwithstanding that all authors agree that hee gaue great gifts, and builded many Temples; yet of this so notable a donation, finde not that any author of that age doth testifie or auerre any such matter. PAVLUS OROSIVS, EVTROPIVS, S.IEROME, nor THEODORETYS Which lived neere to that time, and wrote the rest, make no mention thereof. Wherefore it is

to be doubted, whether there were any fuch donation.

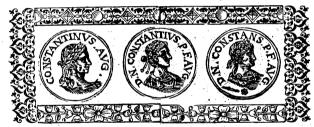
It is true that there is a text in the decree, which reciteth this faid donation of Rome and of Italy and other orientall provinces: but that text is held for Apocryphasneither is it found in GRATIAN'S ancient originals. But finally, this is a queftion which I cannot determine and therfore I will not thrust my fickle into another mans harueft, neither wil I be judge herin, feeing that I am but only an Hiftoriographer. Yet to one thing I will not forbeare to make answer, thereby in some fort to fatisfie the malice of our times. And I fay, that they have no reason to blame the Emperor CONSTANTINE, as some have done, alleaging him to have bin the cause of much euill, in that he inriched the Bisnops, Prelates & Priests, for that before his time they followed the true rule and forme of a Christian life; all liuing in the perfection of the Gospell, imitating the pouertie of Cusis rand of his disciples. To the first, let it be that this were true; the good & holy meaning of CONSTANTINE was much to be commended, and therein hee did well and acceptably before God. To the other, it is not certaine that before the time of Con-STANTINE the Clergie had no temporall goods: for it seemeth to the contrarie in the chapter Videntes 12. quastione 1. wherein it is expressed that the ancient fathers feeing and confidering that it was not fo profitable to fell the goods and to distribute the money in commune, as the Christians did in the beginning; as it was to keepe those heritages & possessions, to the end that by meanes of the fruits thereof the Ministers then being might be maintained, and their successors might doe the like after them. And comming to the ground of the matter, although that our Lord I ESVS CHRIST and his holie Apostles and Disciples, regarded and commended pouertie, preferring it before riches, as chastitie before wedlocke, for the full perfection of the holie life which he had chosen; it doth not therfore follow that he would not that Bithops, Priests and Ministers should have no temporall

porall goods of their owne; for if hee had meant fo, it is to be beleened that hee would have ordained it fo, and fo it should have been observed even to this day. And if they shall fay to me, that before the time of Constantine, they lived without rents or renenewes, and yet there were many holic Bishops, as C LEMENT, LINVS, CLETVS, IGNATIVS, POLICARPVS, MARCELLVS, and fuch others which lived in povertie, contenting themselves with a little in holic exercises: whereto I answere, that in part all these holie men were not altogether without goods, but that they and their Churches had some possessions. And I also say, that it is certaine, that in the beginning about the first propagation of the Gospell, as the name of Christian was odious and hatefull to the Emperours and Princes of those times, principally the Bishops and Priests: so it behooved them of neceffitie to be contented with that which they had, and to maintaine themselves as they were able. And whereas it appeareth that commonly they then lived more denout and holie and in greater humilitie, then after that the Emperour CONSTANTINE became christian, and after that the Church obtained libertie. and that the authoritie thereof was confirmed with riches; yet it is certaine, that after that time there were also many very holie men. And although that afterwards there was not generally fo great finceritie and holines of life, as before there was:yet neither the Emperour nor the riches were to be blamed therefore, but the cuill nature and conditions of those which had the vie thereof and old abuse the same. For it is not to be believed that those ancient holie men in the beginning of the Primitiue Church, would by reason of riches have left to have been holie; neither am I affured that those which afterwards were proud and infolent, would have been holie and denout, notwithstanding that they had been poore. It is true, & I acknowledge the fame, that voluntarie pouertie is a state of great perfection, and that great riches oftentimes minister occasion of pride and wickednesse, but hereof men themselves are the cause: for we are naturally all inclined to cuill: but to put the fame in execution, the rich haue greater power then the poore. Therefore neither riches nor pouertie are the occasion : for neither are all rich men wicked; neither are all poore men good: which would be fo, if these riches onely were the occasion thereof. For neither riches nor pouertie in their owne nature are good or euill : but rather, as faith S.P A V L. All things are cleane to the cleane. Neither ought riches to be contemned, because that some wicked man doth abuse his wealth: for if that argument were of force, so were likewise to be condemned and despised the strength of the body, beautic of countenance, sharpnes of wit, and quicknes of vnderstanding; and a man should defire to be vgly, feeble, dull, ignorant and of little differetion: for those which be strong, faire, beautifull, quicke witted, and of great capacitie and understanding, may doe more harme and vie greater deceit, then the deformed, decrepit & ignorant. And if a man shall judge according to the occasion onely, pourtie bringeth with it retchlesnes and great distrust, and therewith men become enuious, greedily couetous, malefactors, coueting and stealing other mens goods: yet I will not denic, but that in riches is the greater daunger. But in both the fault is in vs. and not in the goods, which of themselues are neither good nor euill, but are according as is he who hath the vse of them. And so not to swarue any further from our historie, I conclude and fay; Let vs leaue to blame C o NSTANTINE, and blame those which have abused and mispent the goods which were given by Constant TINE. And let those which are so zealous of the generall reformation of the Church,

Church, reforme their owne consciences, and amend their owne liues and abuses, and let them with teares pray vnto God to amend the rest. For if every man in particular would doe thus and amend one, all would prefently be amended. But truly most men take care for the gouernment of Empires and dominions even at home in their houses: but of their owne houses and consciences they take little care. And to the end that they thinke not, that all the mischiefe consisteth in the Church goods, let them know that after that the Churches were rich, and that the Prelates were of great power and authoritie, there were therein, a S.L. E.O. aPope, a S. GREGORIE, S. AMBROSE, S. IEROME, S. AVGVSTINE, S.BER-NARD, and an infinite number of other Bithops which possessed riches, and despissing them were poore in spirit, which is acceptable before God.

## THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TINVS, CONSTANTIVS, AND

CONSTANS, BRETHREN, SONNES OF THE EMPEROVR CONSTAN-TINE the great, and fine and fortith Emperours of Rome.



#### THE ARGVMENT.

He Emperour Constantine being dead, the government of the Empire remained in the hands of his sonnes, to wit, Constantius, Constans, and Constantinus: but as customarilie it happeneth in matters of State; so after that the Provinces were divided, they imagining them to be unequallic shared, fell together by the cares among themselues, and two of them being dead, the government of the Empire rested wholie in Constantius, who had no lesse to do to defend himselfe against domesticall tyrants, which sought to v surp his estate, then to offend Princes strangers, thereby to enlarge the Romane Empire. After many casualties of warre, he overcame Magnentius, and the last battaile betweene them was so blondie, and the execution so great, that in a manner it enfeebled the forces of the whole Empire, but finallie Magnentius was driven to fuch extremitie that be flue himselfe. He made his Cofen-germane Gallus, Cafar, giving him his fister Constantina to wife, who behaved himfelfe so wickedlie in his gouernement, that Constantiss was forced to cause him to be slaine in whose place he made his brother Iulianus, Cafar, who going into Gormany against the high Dutch, had so good successe in all his enterprises in the warres, that the souldiers of France constrained him perforce to take the ensigne and name of Emperour Which when Constantine understood (who then warred against the CONSTANTINE THE SECOND.

Persians ) he ordred that warre in the best manner that he could, and came with a mightie great armie against Iulianus, but falling grienouslie sicke by the way, he died, and made Iulianus he succeffor, leaning the Empire to him, from whom he was going to bereaue the same.



OW needefull and how good the Empire or raigne of the Emperour Constanting was, and how great was his goodnes and valour, plainely appeareth, feeing that immediatly with his death the vniuerfall quiet and peace was disturbed, the fauour and reuerence to the Church was diminished, and the execution and administration of Justice was likewise peruerted and troubled. The good Emperour

CONSTANTINE left behind him when he died three sonnes, and two daugh- Constantine ters. His fonnes names were Constantinus, Constantivs, and Con- bis children. STANS; and his daughters were called HELENA, and CONSTANTIA. The fonnes presentlie after the death of their father were Emperours: for in his life time he had made them CESARS, together with his nephew DALMATIVS: and he also left them by his testament heires to the Empire. The daughters were afterwards maried to Emperours; as in the processe of this historie we will declare, which in truth is very abrupt, aswell for the varietie and difference among the authors, as for the great discord and warres which grew betweene these three brethren, and through the tyrants and viurping Emperours which arose in their time. Let the reader endeuour to reade attentiuely : for I will do my best to write

the most plaine and cleerely that I shall be able.

These three brethren deuided the Romane Empire amongst them in this manner: To Constantings who was the eldeft brother, was allotted Spaine. Britanny, France, and that part of Germany which was subject to the Romanes. To CONSTANS, who was the second brother, was allotted Italy, and all Africa. Continuine with the Ilands Sicilia and the rest betweene them, together with Slauonia, Dal. his three sonne matia, Macedonia, Achaia, Morea, and all Gracia. The third brother, which was Empirebe-CONSTANTIVS, possessed the province of Thracia, wherein is the citic of Con-tweene them. stantinople, with all the East prouinces of Asia the lesse, Soria, Mesopotamia. and Egypt. And in the dominion of this CONSTANTIVE by his confent and accord his cofen DALMATIVS gouerned as CESAR. SEXTVS AVRELIVS VICTOR faith, that he raigned also in Armenia, and in the borders thereof, and that ANNI-BALLINYS Was therein established C & S AR. And so in this manner began the Empire to be governed by three Emperours, and one C & s AR, which was D AL-MATIVS: whereof enfued great discord and warre, for that either of them would take place before other, and be Lord of the whole: and of the other side the Romane Empire was fo great, that no one man could well gouerne it alone, and fo very few held the whole in quiet possession; and therefore it declined and diminished: as alwaies haue done, and euer will do, all kingdomes, principalities and dominions which are farre extended and enlarged : for neither mans life, force, nor humane wisedome are sufficientlie able to weild and gouerne so great a matter. In the beginning of their raigne, these brothers lived in peace, for ioy to see themselues so great Lords: and DALMATIVE who in the East assisted Con-STANTIVS, began to make shew of himselfe, to be a most excellent Prince, in his actions and vertues imitating Constantine the great: wherefore by the good he was much beloued, but feared of the wicked, & enuied by Constant level by the TIV s himselfe, which was the cause of his death. Constantiv s permitting it, good, and fine or being accessarie thereto, he was vpon a day in a mutinie staine by the souldiers with

Dalmatius Raine by the fouldiers through the practice of Constantius.

conftantine vuarred against his brother Constans.

**Constantine** (laine in Italy. Ann, Dom. 343.

which he had leuied against the King of Persia, and so the Empire remained absolutely betweene the three brethren. After this it presentlie ensued, that Con-STANTINE who was the elder brother began to find himselfe grieued, alleaging that he had the least part in the division of the provinces : for he possessed but France, Spaine, part of Germany, England, and Scotland, his other brothers holding fo many provinces: and therefore he fent Ambassadours vato them requiring a new division to be made; and as their parts scemed to them to be but little, they would not yeeld to his request. Whereupon he mustered vp his men of warre. and leuied an armie, determining to take that perforce which they would not allow him by their will, and with a great power inuaded the frontiers of his brother CONSTANS his Empire, to whom befell Italy & Africa. At that time CON-STANS was in Dacia (which is Transiluania and Walachia) making warre vpon the Gothes and Sarmates which had made incursions into the limits of the Romane Empire: and he understanding what his brother did, sent a Captaine with men of warre into Italy, who with fuch power as he was able to raife, made head against Constantinus, necre to the citie of Aquileia in Italy. But Constan-TINVs little regarding his brothers forces, vnaduisedlie resolued to fight, and being entrapped in an ambush laid by his enemies fighting vnknowne, his horse being killed vnder him, and he falling to the earth was flaine, hauing enioyed his Empire but three yeeres only, being of the age of 25. yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord 343. Which as some imagine happened vnto him for his sinnes: for they write of him, that he beleeued and fauoured the herefie of ARRIVS. And CAS-SIODORVS, RVFFINVS, and THE ODORETYS in their Ecclesiasticall histories write, that vpon the death of CONSTANTINE the Great, father of these young men, those which were infected with the herefie of ARRIV s, tooke stomack and courage audaciouslie to maintaine the same, contrarie to the decree of the holie councell, and by their illusions they perswaded Constantivs thereto, which ruled in the East parts, and many Arrian Bishops sought to suppresse and disposfeffe the Catholikes, whereto Constans the other Emperour & brother made great relistance, who was of the Catholikes opinion. And particularly was persecuted the holie Bishop ATHANASIVS, who was the chiefe man in the Nicene Councell, and in that perfecution were fent into exile both he, and others, which endured great injurie and infamie. There were also many councels and affemblies held by the heretikes, and others by the Catholikes, wherein were many contentions. Finallie, the Catholikes were greatly troubled and molested, by reafon that many revolted from the faith, and joined with the heretikes, which I forbeare to write, because it requireth much time to relate the same; and also, for that I rather write the liucs of the Emperours, then any Ecclefiasticall historie, whereof I must of necessitie make often mention hereaster.

CONSTANTINE the elder brother being flaine by his brother CONSTANS his fouldiers, Constant tooke possession of all the lands which his deceased brother was seised of : and so he became Lord of all the West and of Africa, whereof alreadie he was in possession. After this, presentlie ensued another dangerous warre, against a kind of people called Francques, a people of Germany, inhabiting neers the river Rhine (as AGATHIAS writeth) which Francques rebelled and seised vpon great part of Gallia, from which the Frenchmen vaunt themselues to be descended, and of Galli were called Franci, and Gallia, Francia: And to make their originall feeme to be of greater antiquitie, they alleadge that those Francques descended from those which escaped from Troy, and that they

came to inhabit Germany with one of HECTORS fonnes, whose name was From whence FRANCYS: but hereof we will speake more hereafter. These Francques came to the French blowes with Constans, and after cruell warres and much flaughter betweene affirme to have them, they were vanquished and made subject to the Empire. And although that Constant made CONSTANS were much troubled with these warres, yet afterwards he lived the Francques fome yeeres in peace and prosperitie, but very weake and impotent of bodie both Jubiel to the in his feet and hands, by reason of the gout wherewith he was oftentimes much gricued. His gouernement in the beginning was good and agreeable to all his fubiects, but afterwards he became vitious and negligent in the execution of iuflice, and by meanes of his infirmitie grew vnweildie, and ill disposed and therefore ill beloued by the prouincials, and subjects of the Empire; so as certaine wicked men making benefit of this occasion, practifed his death. The principall authors wheref were CRESPIVS and MARCELLINYS his owne Captaines, which agreed to make one MAGNENTIVS Emperour, a man of base condition and meane parentage, although that through his courage and valour in the warres he rour, had woon great reputation: and they found the fouldiers very willing and readie thereto: for they hated Constans; and giving the imperial habit to Magnen-TIVS, they fent to kill CONSTANS, who mistrusted no such matter. In the manner of his death the authors do varie, but in conclusion he was slaine in a certaine place called Helena, neere to the Pirenean mountaines, which divide France from the Emperour Spaine, in the thirteenth yeere of his raigne, and the thirtith of his age, in the yeere Constants of our Lord three hundred, three and fiftie, according to S.IEROME his com- Anno Domini.

CONSTANTIVE THE SECOND.

putation.

Whilst matters passed in the West after this manner, in the East with the third brother and Emperour Constantivs, who ruled all that part of the Empire. things prospered not so well, especiallie in the warres: for he had great and dange- constantius rous warres with the King of the Persians, and having fought with him nine se-outsthoomne uerall times, he was at every time overthrowne, with the loffe of many of his in nine feuerall battailes by people. In the end, they fought one most cruell battaile, and the victorie being the Persons. apparant of the Emperours side, his people yied the matter so ill, that those which were held for conquered, became conquerours: and fo Constantive soloft this continuous battaile alfo, as he had done many others, in fuch fort that the King of Persia reco- in the tenth uered certaine principall cities in Mesopotamia. Moreouer, in the same parts of the battaile by the East, there happened many earth-quakes wherewith certaine cities were destroyed, and were swallowed into the earth, which by the true christian authors was not hove to attributed to the iust iudgement of God, for that this Emperour did maintaine vie the vitto and defend the herefie of ARRIVS, and perfecuted the true Christians. But retur- Great earth. ning to our new Emperour MAGNENTIVS, it happened in this manner: that ha- quakes in the uing murthered Constans, as we have declared, the armie which was in France time of Conobeyed and received him gladly, and all Spaine presently did the like, together florting. with Italie and Africa also: whither he determining to come, made his sonne whose name was DECENCIVS, CESAR, to leauchim in the gouernment of France and Spaine with their confines. But in Hungarie, Austrich, Slauonia, Dal- Detentius matia, and part of Gracia, the ordinarielegions which were in those places, chose Magnesius. an old and valorous captaine for Emperour, whose name was BRITANNIO or VETRANIO; who was a man highly beloued of the fouldiers, for his great wifedome and valour in the warres; and for the victories which he had obtained in the defence of those provinces against the barbarous nations. Of BRITANNIO you shall heare more hereafter.

Nepotianus taking the title of Emperour, was flaine by Magnentius hi Captaines.

About the same time, to soone as it was knowne in Rome that VALENS Was dead; NEPOTIANVS prefuming on the necrenes of blood to the deceased Emperour (for he was the Emperour Constantines fisters sonne) assembling together a companie of fencers, sworde players and such others, proclaimed himselfe Emperour. But as his beginning had no sound foundation; so had he an valuckie end: for within nine and twentie daies after that he had with great difficultie enjoyed the title of Emperour he was flaine by MAGNENTIVS his captaines. And fo MAGNENTIVS remained Emperour (although a tyrant) of Italie, Africa, France, and Spaine, in despite and disgrace of Constantivs

in the East, who in truth by institle, was sole emperour.

CONSTANTIVS being aductifed of the death of his brother CONSTANS and of the successe of MAGNENTIVS, was greatly perplexed, seeing himselse oppressed with warre against the Persians; and on the other side, bound to reueng the death of his brother, and to roote out so mightie an enemie as was Ma-GNENTIVS, who grew great in a very short time; and BRITANNIO also, who was not flightly to be regarded. But after many confultations, it was concluded to establish all matters of the East in the best order that he might, and to passe into Europe, against MAGNENTIVS. Whereupon he determined to make his Cozen Germane GALLVS, CESAR, who was brother to Ivlianvs, of whom we shall speake hereafter. Both which were sonnes to a brother of Constant TINE the great, named CONSTANTIVS, whom his father CONSTANTIVS had by a fecond wife: and to the end to be the better affured of this new C # s AR, he married him to one of his owne fifters, whose name was Constantia. And leaving this GALLVS in the East, having first concluded a kinde of truce or peace with the King of Persia, he came into Europe against MAGNENTIVS, with the greatest power that he was able to leuic, and by the way purposed to have fought with the old Captaine BRITANNIO, whom wee faid to bee called Emperour in Britannio yeel- Austrich, Hungarie and Slauonia. But BRITANNIO would not make any rededhimfelfe to filtance: for laying afide his imperiall robes he came fo farre as Thracia, to meete him, and humbling himselse before Constantivs, said vnto him, that he renouncing the Empire yeelded himselse into his hands; to the end that he conflantius as- should dispose of him at his pleasure. Constantive very ioyfully accepted his humilitie, and lifting him vp from ground imbraced and honored him much nis for his fixed and call in fpeeches, and calling him father, did fet him at his owne table, and they two fupt that night together. And being enformed of all matters by BRITANNIO concerning MAGNENTIVS, he kept on his journey and fent BRITANNIO to a citie in Bithynia in Asia, and gaue him rents and reuenues sufficient for the maintainance of his estate: whither hee retired himselfe with many his

led bim father.

Gallus made

Cafar by Confantius.

Constantius.

CONSTANTIVE paffing forwards, drew necre to Italie where MAGNEN-TIVS lay in waite for him: and the warre began betweene them, not onely with great power and numbers of men; but with great hatred and malice also: for befides that they both fought for the Empire, they had fent letters and meffages the one to the other, which had much incenfed them both. And so the warres began to be very cruell, and there enfued some battailes wherein fortune shewed herselfevariable; MAGNENTIVS having sometimes the victorie and sometimes Constantivs, as Cassiodorvs reportethin his Tripartie Historie. But after many conflicts each of them fetting up the rest of his whole power,

friends and familiars, and lived there fixe yeeres after in great rest and tranquil-

CONSTANTIVE THE SECOND.

they fought a great battaile neere to the citie of Mursia in Spaine, which was one of the most cruell and bloudie that euer was seene, and the Romane Empire lost Acruell battherein the best men of all the ordinarie legions. For it continued the greatest daile betweene Magnetius part of all the day and part of the night; and there were flaine of both parties, and confinfoureand fiftie thousand men, all valiant old souldiers: and Constantivs thus. obtained the victorie, and MAGNENTIVS escaped by flight. It is very strange what fome authors doe write concerning this battaile, which is, that MAGNEN-TIVE his troupes did confift of but thirtie and odde thousand men, and CON-STANTIVE his armic amounted to the number of threefcore and tenne thoufand, and of those which were ouercome there died foure and twentie thoufand; and of those which ouercame, thirtie thousand. Whereby it appeareth with what resolution, force or obstinacie, MAGNENTIVE his men did fight, which flew as many of their enemies as they themselues were in number; and there remained but fixe thousand of them living. MAGNENTIVS being overthrowne fled into Italie, (as EVTROPIVS and AVRELIVS VICTOR doe write) where reinforcing himselfe the best that he could, hee determined to have returned againe to trichis fortune, and once againe to fight with Con-STANTIVS, having first in vaine sought to come to some composition of peace. feeming to be contented if Constantivs would suffer him to possesse but Thracia onely. Finally, comming to another encounter, hee was againe ouerthrowne and flying from the battaile, thut himselfe vp in the citie of Lions in France: where being advertised that his fouldiers practized to deliver him alive Manenting into the hands of Constantivs, hellew himselfe with his owne pointard, being overleaning against a wall (as saith AVRELIVS VICTOR) and so ended his Em- Goodstime pire which hee had tyrannically vsurped, together with his life; being of the fleve himselfe. age of fiftie yeeres. When his sonne DECENCIVS, whom hee had made CESAR and governour of France, understoode of his death, being out of hope Decencius beato make head against Constantive and to defend his iurisdiction, he hung ring of the himselfe. Constantive having happily ended so daungerous a warre, all death of his fathe provinces which had held for MAGNENTIVE (without any refistance) felfe. fubmitted them to his will; and he very joyfull came triumphing to the citie of Milan, where for a certaine space he made his abode.

While as these matters befell Constantivs in the West, his cosen Gal-LVS whom he left for C ESAR and governour generall of the provinces in the East, administred no point of iustice, neither defended that estate with such valour as he ought to have done. For it is written, that SAPOR King of Perlia ouerthrew him in a battaile, and in the rest he vsed extreame crueltie: And writers principally affirme, that in the citie of Antioch he did put to death the greatest part of all the nobilitie therein. And of the Iewes of Iudea, and of Palestina, for that they had attempted to rebell, he most cruelly made many thousands of either fex, and of all ages to be flaine. And he commaunded the cities of Tiberias, Diospolis, Casarea, and others to be set on fire: Which Saint I ER O M affirmeth, and writeth in his additions to EVSEBIVS. When CONSTANTIVS VINDERstoode of these and other matters, which Ammianvs Marcellinvs reciteth at large, being an eie-witneffe, which author wrote the life of Constantivs, IVLIANVS, and I OVIANVS Emperours of those times, very truly, and diflinctly: but with the most rigged stile that euer I read in any Latin author; but fuch as it was, it was great pittie that fo many books of his workes were loft: Con-STANTIVE being defirous to take order for the euils, which I told you of, and

Constantius made his Cofen Gallus to be flaine.

ftanding alreadie in some feare of GALLYs, sent some secretly to kill him: which was easily effected, having first sought some other remedies. And so for that time CONSTANTIVS remained fole Emperour without any CESAR or companion in all the Romane Empire: and from Milan provided and fent captaines and gouernours to all parts. Whereas hee was of light beliefe, and delighted and tooke pleasure in schismes and factions (an ill thing in any man, but in princes most daungerous) and to commit cruelties and to inflict punishments, there were daily offered new occasions, by reason whereof he vsed great crueltic and put many to death, which MARCELLINVS describeth at large. And among other matters, there arose an excellent old captaine against him, whose name was SILVANYS; who at that time was generall against the Germanes; and was accused to have practized some matters against the imperial maiestic. Which accufation (all writers affirme) was through the enuie which they bare against him for his victories and good successe. And the credulous Emperour, as it seemeth. did also enuie him, and intended to cause him to be flaine: Whereof SILVANVS being aduertised, as he was very much beloued for his age and bountie, and for the great honour which he had wonne in fundrie warres and battailes, but principally in the warres of Constanting the great, against Licinius; and finding no meanes to affure his life, constrained more through feare, then mooued by his owne voluntarie choise, he resolued to rebell and to take vpon him siluanus chosen the name of Emperour. Which he did hewing first to his fouldiers his disgrace. and how he was odious to Constantivs; and how that for the service which Emperour by he and they had done, he had commaunded him to be flaine. Which being vnderstoode, they all with one voice hailed him Emperour, swearing and promising to protect and defend him. These newes did greatly trouble Constantivs. who was yet in Milan, and at the very inftant that he was aduertifed hereof, without discovering it to any man making shew as though he knew nothing, he compounded with a certaine subtill and valiant captaine, named Vasicinvs, who besides his familiars and necessarie servants, tooke with him tenne companions. extraordinarie men and very valiant; with which he vndertooke to kill SILVA-NVS, vnder this pretext and policie. Constantivs wrote certaine letters vnto SILNANVS, wherein making no shew to have understoode ought of his rebellion, faining that hee would depart from Milane and haue him with him, with many honorable words willing him to repaire to him and to deliuer up the charge which hee held to the captaine whom he had fent. Vasicinvs made great haste in his way, to the end, that through shortnes of the time, it might be the better believed, that all his proceedings had been vnknowne to Constant TIV s. As he with his companions came neere to the armie, among which one Was MARCELLINVS the writer of this Historie; SILVANVS thinking no other but that this man was fent to be his fuccessor; and then being no time to debate of the matter, made no account thereof. And VRSICINVS feeming carewed by Vrfici- leffe and fimple; so cunningly handled the matter, conferring with certaine captaines his friends, and others which were discontented with SILVAN VS; and by meanes of some gifts which he gaue, and great promises which he made, they resolued to kill poore SILVANVS. Whereupon assembling together a good number of fouldiers, they went one morning to his palace, where killing his Silvanus staine guard, they entred perforce, and SILVANVS flying into a Church of the Christians, was therein found and slaine. And in this manner ended his Empire with

his life, having vsurped the same but onely thirtie daies.

A ftratagem aus thereby to kill Siluanus.

This

This being ended to the good liking of CONSTANTIVS, there followed other troubles and cares: for the barbarous northerly Nations of high Almanie, came downe to make warre in the Empire; and as matters were yet very much out of order, by reason of the death of SILVANVS, they did much hurt, by taking certaine cities, and by robbing and spoiling the countrie. Which when Con-STANTIVS faw, confidering with himselfe that if hee went thither in person, the whole Empire was without any defence; and imagining also that a Generall was not to be trusted with that warre, he resolued to chuse his cosin germane Iv LIA- Julianus made NV s, and to make him C & s AR, who was brother to G A'L LV s, of whom we have cofar by Coufpoken heretofore, and had been C # s AR in the East, and slaine by his commaun- stantius. dement; both which were the fonnes of CONSTANTIVS, brother to CON-

STANTINE the Great before spoken of.

This IVLIANVS was a young man of whom there was great hope: for he was of a fine constitution of bodie, of an excellent wit, inclined and given to studie, and therewith was very well learned. IVLIANVS was made Casar and adopted by Constantivs, with many ceremonies and great folemnitie in the citie of Milan, where Constantivs then made his abode: yet some fay, that it was in Athens, in Grecia: and the better to confirme the friendship and parentage. he married him to his fifter H E L E N A. Other matters also passing which for breuitie I omit, IVLIANVS departed towards the armie which was in Germanie. where all things prospered so well with him, that he not onely recovered the losfes received, but also made great spoile and flaughter of his enemies. Constant TIV s leaving the West in charge with I VLIANV s, determined to passe into the East, where was no lesse daunger and neede of his presence: for the Persians being ancient and ordinarie enemies to the Romanes, as the offpring and succeffors of the Parthians, neuer ceased from inuading and making warre vpon the frontiers of the Romanes, robbing and spoiling the lands of the Empire. And in his way he purposed to goe to Rome, where he was received with great ioy and magnificence. But he could not flay there aboue thirtie daies: for besides other newes from the East, hee vinderstood that the Sarmates, a fierce and barbarous nation, which were the Ruffians, Mufcouites, Polonians, and fome others, had entred and passed through Misia, now called Bulgaria and Seruia, and other nations also had entred Hungary: wherefore he presently departed and sent towards the warres of Marcellas Pethe Sarmates MARCELLYS PEBERVS, an excellent Captaine of great expe-bern feat by rience, and himselfe passed through Slauonia towards the East. And notwithstan-gainst the Sarding that he had a great armie, yet he was not free from feare: for as this Empe-mater. rour euer preuailed in all his ciuill warres and against tyrants; so against the Perfians he was euer infortunate: wherefore he practifed to come to fome compofition of peace with SAPOR the fecond of that name King of the Perfians, who then raigned, and refused not to give care to an Ambassadour which motioned the fame. Whereof SAPOR growing beyond all measure proud, wrote a most hautie letter to Constantivs, which, with the answere thereto, MARCELLI-NV s fetteth downe. Wherein he required if the Emperour would have any peace tib.7. with him, that he should first resigne into his hands the prouinces of Mesopotamia, Theterour of a and Armenia, which had been subject to his ancestors (so great was the power by Saper King and prefumption of the Kings of the Persians, that they would not graunt peace of persia to the and truce to a Romane Emperour, except hee would give them two of the best families: and provinces of the world.) To this letter Constantive fent him another for an- an anjuvere fwere: which was a very notable letter and very discreete, which for breuitic I doe thereto.

CONSTANTIVE THE SECOND.

229

The effect of not recite. Wherein he held the granitie and maiestie of a Romane Emperour, conflantists his and reprehending SAPOR for his pride and ambition, hee not onely denied what the other required, but did also put him cleane out of all hope to haue any peace

fulianus was

by the armie

made Empe-

your and Au-

gustus.

answere to Con-

with him: and so afterwards there began a very cruell warre betweene them. At the same time that these matters passed in the East, I v L I AN v s who remained in France, C # S AR, and General against the Germanes; after some other victories. fubdued his enemies in a very great and bloudie battaile: and having obtained this so notable a victorie, by a generall consent of all the whole armie he was called Emperour and AvgvsTvs; and they made him equall with ConsTAN-TIVS. These newes within few daies were brought to CONSTANTIVS in the East, and he was so forrowfull and so much grieued thereat, that hee was once of the minde to haue abandoned the warres there, and to haue returned with all his legions against IVLIANVS. But afterwards altring his determination, he resolued to fend Ambassadours vnto him, and thinking with good words to winne him, he fent to entreate and to perswade him to content himselfe with the title and dignifadour to tulia- tie of Cresar, and to renounce the name of Emperour and Av G v s T v s. With this ambassade he sent a principall man whose name was L E o N A s, who for that he came from Constantivs, was honourably received in the armie: and audience being giuen him, and hee hauing deliuered his ambassade, and the Emperours letters being read, the armie would not onely not yeeld thereto, but they all with one voice confirmed what they had done, calling IV LIANVS Emperour and AvgvsTvs: only they obeyed him in putting FLORENTINVS out of the office of Pretorian Prefect, which was given to N EBRIDIVS. Touching the reft, IVLIANVS answered CONSTANTIVS in humble manner, with the best words that he could deuise, promising to be to him both a loyall and an obedient companion; defiring him that he would not depose him from his dignitie, seeing that he had accepted thereof against his will, being thereto compelled by the armie. And herewith he returned to make warre with greater force and circumspection then before. And prefaging and foreseeing that it was very requisite to tame and subdue those nations, imagining that he should have warre (and could not eschue the same) with Constantivs; he aduised his Captaines and troupes to make haste, and to affaile their enemies before they were by them affailed: whereupon there enfued betweene him and the Germanes, some very notable battailes and encounters, which I cannot recount, without altring my ordinarie course of writing briefly. After that Constantivs understood that his Ambassadours could not ob-

taine what he required, he determined to make warre against Iv LIANVS, presuming vpon his great power and the good fortune which he had euer had against other tyrants. Wherefore hee fought meanes to confirme the peace and friendthip, which then was in question betweene him and ARSAX King of Armenia, and other Kings of the East; to the end that they should not ioyne in league and confederacie with the King of Persia, his chiefest enemie; against whom hee left fuch forces as hee thought sufficient to defend the countrie, and to continue the warre. After this hee came into Europe, and tranailing from Antioch in Syria to the citieof Tharfus, by the way he felt himselfe somewhat ill of a light seuer : but yet that notwithstanding he held on his journey, thinking that his exercise would haue holpen him by diuerting the humour: and therefore he caused himselfe to be carried in a litter, making finall iournies. But comming to the foote of the Mount Taurus, he felt himselfe much oppressed with his disease; the seuer increa-

fing you him in such fort, that hee seemed to be all on a fire. And so he knowing his euill to be mortall, and that his death approched, hee made his will; wherein he nominated IV LIANV s(his enemie and atyrant) for his heire and fucceffor; fo constantius bis that him whom in his life time he would not admit for a companion, at his death testament. he chose for his heire; having in this matter (as a good Emperour) great regard to the common peace and quiet of the Empire. This Emperour raigned foure and twentie yeeres; feuen with his brothers, and feuenteene alone, although in contention with the tyrants aforenamed. And in his fathers time he was C E S AR The death of thirteene yeeres: wherefore some say that hee raigned in all, eight and thirtie Constantius, yeeres. He was when hee died (as faith E v TR O PIVS) fitte and fortie yeeres old: vet all authors agree not hereupon. This Emperour was reckoned among the indifferent Emperours: for notwithstanding that he was endowed with some singular vertues; fo was hee not altogether free from vices. For as hee was courteous, gentle, and of a pleasant conversation, liberall and affable to his servants, and verv temperate in eating and drinking, and would take great paines, and delighted and defired much to speake well (yet naturally he was neither very sharpe witted nor eloquent) and was an excellent Archer, and delighted greatly therein: fo was hee otherwise very credulous, and delighted to heare men speake cuill of others. Which occasion moued him to commit many cruelties: for hee was by nature mistrustfull, and euer feared treason; and therefore trusted few men: so was hee likewise much given to women. With these vices and vertues, he well preserved and defended the Romane Empire: and died according to S.IEROMES com-

## THE LIFE OF IVLIANVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME, CAL-

putation in the yeere of our Lord, three hundred fixtie and foure.

LED APOSTATA, AND SIXE AND FORTITH ROMANE EMPEROR.





Free the death of Constantivs, which happened in fuch manner as is before declared, his cofine germane IVLIANVS remained fole Emperor of the whole Romane Empire; who in the others life time 220

compared.

was comming towards him with the same determination) in great hast he mar-

ched fo farre as to the citie of Constantinople, which ever fince the death of the Emperour Constantine was the head of the Empire; where, by all meanes possible he fought to win the loue and good will of the people of all nations, which the better to bring to passe, he vsed this policie: first, he caused the Temples of the Gentiles to be fet open, and suffred them therein to commit their superstitious Julianus made idolatries, and to adore their Idols. And notwithstanding that he abhorred, and the idulates to was an enemy to the Christians, yet at that time he persecuted them not with be opened. death and tortures; and in contentions betweene the Christians and the Arrians he was newter, shewing himselfe inclined to neither partie: wherefore he was not notoriouslie hatefull to any, and the barbarous nations standing in searcof his great name and renowne (for by reason of the Germane warres he was growne very famous) absteined from making warre and fro troubling the Empire; and so fent their Ambassadors to him to treate of peace and friendship; which he granted. In this manner he began to rule the Empire, with as great prosperitie and idolater, so he determined to finde some meanes to supplant the true christian religion, induced thereto by the Deuill, and his owne wickednes: And the better to by Iulianus to effect the same, he practised a meanes never before yield by any other, which was perfect the

enjoyed the title of AvgvsTvs. This Iv LIANV's was by birth fuch as we have specified in the life of CONSTANTIVS, and in valour and sufficiencie for his perfon was one of the best Emperors that ouer was in the world: as presently we will make manifest. All which good graces, hee corrupted and defiled, by renouncing the Christian faith, whereof he had before made profession, and by turning to the idolatrie of the Gentiles: wherefore he was commonly called I v LIANVS AP O-STATA: whereof some authors affirme, that one LIBANIVS an Idolater and a famous Rhetorician was the occasion. Which besides the reasons which may be hereto annexed, is a notable example for all Princes, and men of all estates and conditions whatfoeuer, that they not onely with all diligence feeke out mafters for their fonnes, which may be expert in those sciences wherein they purpose to instruct them; but that principally they be vertuous, honest, and sound men in religion: for learning without vertue is little worth. And it is most certaine and manifest, that such things as children learne in their youth, are so imprinted in their hearts and understanding, that they neuer forget the same. And those exercifes and qualities wherein they bee bred up in their tenderage, become proper and naturall, and are neuer relinquished by them in their whole life time; whereof the masters which have charge of the children are the principal occasion. And although we might produce many good and faire examples, yet this present shall now fuffice, returning to IVLIANVS, in whom his mafters infidelitie tooke fo deepe impression, that it well appeareth what harme he thereby received: for in the rest hee was so accomplished, and so singular, that in goodnes, bountie and To whom Iucourtesie they compare him with TIIV s; in clemencie with ANTONINV S; in tianus vvas his fortunate enterprises in the wars against the Germanes, they make him equall to TRAIANE; in temperance and modeflie, to MARCY's AVERLIVS: and in knowledge and learning, to the ancient Philosophers. He was endued with a fingular memorie, and was very studious, and therefore learned in many Arts and Sciences: and was eloquent and well spoken, no lesse by the gift of nature then by art. He was most temperate in his diet and rest: and most chast and free from all carnall passion and dishonestie. He was so valiant and hardie in armes, although but of a small constitution of bodie, and delicately limmed; that hee was therefore noted and reprodued to be more hardie and aduenturous, then for a Generall or Emperor was fit or conuenient. Of glorie and renowne he was greedily couetous, which is a vice wherein great spirits and mindes doe oftentimes offend. With his friends he was very pleasant and bountifull, and loued to doe iuflice indifferently to all men; which he strictly observed in the time that hee was C & s A B, and in the small time that he injoyed the Empire. He was likewise adorned with many other vermes, which EVTROPIVS as an eye witnesse, Av RE-LIVS VICTOR, and AMMIANVS MARCHLLINVS do record. But with all this, hee was an Infidell, which was great pitie, and his vnderstanding was blinded by the perswasion of his master LIBANIVS, who was a Gentile and an Idolater.

Idelater by the perswafien of his schoolema-

These things which passed in the time that he was C # SAR and Emperour, are very largely & particularly described by Ammianvs Marcellinvs, as by him which faw and understood the fame: for they happened in his time, and he also followed and served him in the warres of Parlia. But I will recite but the fumme of that which happened when he was Emperour, and that briefely: for he raigned but only two yeeres; wherefore I hold it not fit in a raigne of so small continuance to spend much time. Presentlie so soone as he was advertised of the death of Constantlys (which newes were brought to him in France, whence

contentment of all men, as euer any man had done. But as in his heart he was an to shew himselfe pitifull and not cruell, well perceiuing that by meanes of tor- out bloudfled. ments inflicted vpon the Martyrs, the holie christian faith was greatlie increased, and therfore he determined to take a cotrarie course (as R V F F INVS, S.I ER O ME. and CASSIODORVS do report, which was : to induce them by gifts, fauours, flatteries, and by bestowing vpon them offices and dignities, to the end that they should renounce the Christian faith, and do sacrifice to his talle gods. And as the fame authors do affirme, there were some, and they not a few which being couetous and ambitious, through defire to grow rich and to be honoured, renied the Antendanish christian faith. And this was one of the greatest persecutions that ever the Church Julianus to endured, aswell in respect of those which abandoned the same, as for that I v L I A- perfecute the NV s perceiuing that by this meane he could not throughlie accomplish his de-Church. fire, although as is faid, he put none to death; neither vied any violence to any. He therefore made lawes and generall decrees, that no Christian should be mai- perces made fler of any arts or sciences, neither should any studie in any Schooles, but such as by intianus would adore his Idols, to the end that through the defire of learning, they should against the become Idolaters, or else at the least should remaine idiots, and without learning, and so be insufficient and vnable to preach the christian faith. He likewise orderned that no Christian should have any charge, or hold any office of iustice, neither should be a Captaine in the warres, neither enjoy any other dignitie. Finally, he vsed all the inventions and meanes that he could devise to make warre against I BSVS CHRIST, without shedding any christian bloud, which I hold to be the inuention and subtiltie of the Deuill, to hinder and take the crowne from the Martyrs, which they obteined through the perfecution of the fword, vfing this pittifull crueltie against the Christians (as a man of courage and valiant in armes) he determined to make warre against the Persians, which only had not shewed any humilitie, or acknowledged any superioritie. Wherefore he went into Asia with a great army, with which & the ordinarie legios having passed through Asia the leffe and other prouinces, he entred Melopotamia, which (as is faid) was the

Lady, for whom the Romanes and Perfians did ordinarily contend: and after

Iulian bis enthe Perfians.

fome light encounters and skirmishes, he came to repose himselse in the citie of Cercasio which was held by the Romanes, and was enobled by the Emperour terprife againß Dioclesian with wals and bulwarks; and from thence he passed to Zaita, where he was aduertifed that the King of Persia was necre at hand with his whole power, whereupon he marshalled his troupes, with a great defire to come with him to a battaile. But his enemie at that time durst not fight with him, but sent him many Ambassades, intreating pardon, and promising him great part of his countries: to whom this valorous Emperour would give no audience, and so feeing that he refused the battaile, the more to prouoke him, he entred his countrey by fundrie waies, taking many cities in Soria, some by force of armes, and others yeelded themselues without any resistance : and he did much harme and made extreme spoile in all that countrey, vntill at last the Persians for very shame were constrained to fight with him, which battaile was very terrible and cruell. Before which, this blind Ivlianvs (as Orosivs and S. Ierome recite) of very malice and hatred which he bare to the Christians, which he called Galileans (as faith THEODORETYS in his historie) made a vow to his gods, that if he obtained the victorie, he would do sacrifice to them in the bloud of those Christians which would not worship idols. And it pleased God in his secret iudgement to giue him victoric at that time, thereby to reward him in this life for the morall vertues wherewith he was endued, to the end that perpetuallie he should be punished in the other world, for his damnable infidelitie. And he feeing himfelfe victorious, and finding no refistance, marched even to the famous citie of T besiphonse, and finding no forces that durft to ftop his paffage, he determined to returne to winter in Mesopotamia, but vpon the way his people indured great penurie and want with thirst and hunger, aswell for that his armie was exceeding great, as also for that his enemics did suddenlie often affault and molest them. And notwithstanding that the Perlians would never come to any equall fight, but gave camizadoes, with light skirmishes, sodainly charging, and then running away, after the manner of the Arabians in these daies; yet therewith his armie was exceedinglie much toiled and tired. And in this manner it pleafed God (who with his death would frop the execution of formany innocents which he purposed to have facrificed) that a Persian fugitive, who was the guide to his army, trecherous lie led him & his people into a place where many of his enemies lay in ambufh; where being by them charged, he was constrained to fight, and in the fight pell mell being vnknowne was striken with a launcethrough the arme into the bodie: with which wound lofing his fenfes, he fell vpo his horfes mane, and so his people tooke him, & caried him into a tent, wherein with some medicines which they applied vnto him, he came again to himfelf, and recourring strength, he called for his horse and armes: for he would again returne to the battaile. But feeling his force to faile him, they write, that with extreme pride he vsed these words against our Sauiour CHRIST, It sufficeth that thou CHRIST of Galilea hast ouercome, for so he yied to call him. After this, seeing that all those which were about him began to weep, he red by tulianus reprehended them, faying, that they did ill to weep for that Prince which died in the grace and fauour of the gods; and so he discoursed of the immortalitie of the foule fo long as he was able to speake, vntill that his bloud being wholie spent, he died, which in truth was great pitie that there should be such accursed blindnes in a man, in whom there was fo great valour, & fo many good & vertuous qualities. He died in the 7 yeere after that he was made CESAR, and in the third yeere of his Empire, being 31. yeers old, in the yeere of our Lord (according to S.I. ROME) 366.

tulianus his wow to the gods.

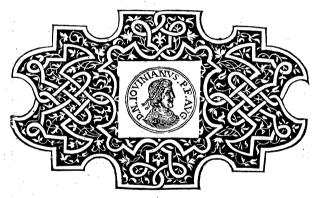
The promd a listle before bis death. Inlianus died talking.

Anno Domini.



## THE LIFE OF IOVIANUS. ONELY OF THAT NAME

AND SEVEN AND FORTITH EMPEROR OF ROME.





ch was the death of Iv LIANVS bewailed and lamented in the campe by the whole armie: for he was highly beloued by all his men of warre. But the Church and all Christians rendred thankes to our Lord God, that in his mercie he had delinered them from the voke of fo great a feruitude. There was fo great a confusion in the campe, by reafon of the death of this Emperour, that they were at the point to have been overthrowne by the Persians: besides

that, they were greatly diffressed through want of victuals. And the enemies vnderstanding of the death of the Emperour, neuer left to molest them on every side, with such continuall sudden affaults and alarmes, that they were not able to endure them: Wherefore the chiefe and principall men of the armie affembled themselves together to chuse an Emperor and Captaine, which might rule and gouerne them. And after much contention and divertitie of opinions, they agreed to chuse one (as saith EvTROPIVS) whose name was MARCELLINVS. But finally they concluded to name a very famous man, called I o VIANVS, who was the

334

Touignus bis profession.

sonne of a Nobleman called V ARRONIANVS, a Hungarian or an inhabitant in Hungary, who leaving the warres which he had long followed, and to avoide the numults and troubles which he faw in the Empire, retired, and gaue himselfe to his rest and quiet in certaine possessions which he held in Hungary. But his sonne I OVIANVS came to the Emperour Constantivs his Court, and followed the warres. Who for that hee was valiant and a goodly personage, was greatly esteemed by Iv LIANVS, and whilest that he was C # s AR and afterwards Emperour this man was the principall captaine of the ordinarie troupes which went with the Emperour. This I ov I AN V s was of an excellent wit and found indgement, given to letters and therewith well learned. He was tall of stature and well proportioned, and a faithfull and Catholike Christian; in so much that when Iv-LIANY'S commaunded that no Christian should be a Captaine, neither should have any charge or office in the warres; Iovianvs pleafantly faid, that hee made greater account of the faith whereof he made profession, then of any dignitie or honour that he enjoyed; and so gaue vp his charge. And being afterwards chosen Emperour(R V FFINVs and THEODORETVS doe write) that seeing that IVLIANVS had made and induced the men of warre of his armie to commit idolatrie, and to doe facrifice to his gods; he in a publike oration which he made to them, faid, that he (although he might) would not (being a Christian) be an Emperour of Infidels: And so hee resisted and absolutely resused the Empire. But all men were fo well pleased with his election, that after they had approoued the fame, they cried out alowd, faying, That they were all Christians. And for his fake those which were not so, resoluted to become Christians, voon condition that he would accept the Empire. In this manner with incredible iov and gladnes thev fware obedience vnto him, and gaue him the Imperiall enfignes. Whereupon he presently ordred and reinforced the armie, which could not bee done without great difficultie: for SAPOR understanding of the death of IVLIANVS (who for his noble acts and great courage was generally feared of all men) made finall account of this new Emperour: but gathering together the greatest forces that hee was able, gaue to fierce a charge in the Emperours armie, that the Romanes were likely to have bin wholy loft; and the Perfians apparantly had the better. I o v I A-Nys marching with great trouble and daunger, for that the waies were craggie and mountainous; the first day hee followed his journey, and making an Alt in a valley, his armie was presently compassed about on enery side by the Persians; who affailed and skirmished with them after their manner. The next day he came to the citie of Carras, where I o VI ANVs and his fouldiers remembring that in ancient time, MARCVS CRASSVS was in that coast ouerthrowne and saine by the Parthians; holding that place for fatall they accounted themselues lost, if the enemie euer gaue them battaile. The principall cause of which seare was, by reason of their weaknes through the hunger which they had endured, and at that instant did endure, through want of victuals: for as two fo great armies marched fo neere togethers, no prouision to be made could suffice to sustaine them. But in all these extremities, I o VIAN VS neuer fainted or was discouraged, neither omitted to vse all diligence in guiding, defending, and animating his people, vntill they came to the river Tigris, their dangers still encreasing : where King S AP O R sent him Ambaffadours, giving him to vnderftand, that confidering the weaknes of his armie, and his owne force, he was most assured of victorie; yet if hee would render vnto him the prouinces which he required (which were many) he would be content to hold perpetuall peace with the Empire. I ov IAN vs feeing the present necessitie wherein

wherein he was, tooke counsell hereupon of the chiefest men in the armie: and A peace made after three or foure daies confultation, a peace was concluded for thirtie yeeres. Persuand I OVIANV s leaving to King S APOR all the provinces beyond the river Tigris, the Remains and some cities in Mesopotamia, with further condition that the Emperour should for thirtie not aide or affift ARSAX King of Armenia . which peace or truce, as write Ev-TROPIVS, whose historic endeth with the life of this Emperour, and many other writers, was held for very shamefull and dishonourable to the greatnes of the Romane Empire, for voluntarily giving to the enemie part of the provinces thereto belonging, and for thortning the bounds and limits thereof. But for that Princes actions are ever diverfly judged of PAVLVS OR OSIV sand other writers excuse him, alleaging that he made fuch a peace as was requifite, coffdering the time, and although it were not honourable; yet at the least it was profitable and needfull; for he was in manifest daunger to have lost his whole armie, and the greatest part of the prouinces which hee rendred. Hereof enery man may judge according to their fantasie; but thus it was. I ov IANVs having concluded this peace, went into Soria, where he commaunded by publike proclamation, that all those Bishops which were exiled for refifting and contradicting the herefie of ARRIVS, or for any other vnlawfull occasion, should be recalled and restored, and principally the great ATHANASIVS. He likewise renoked and made voide all the prohibitions and decrees made by IVLIANVS against the Christians; and ordained that they should be admitted to any dignitie, office, charge, Magistracie or studie, as they were wont to be in the time of the Emperour Constantine the Great. He likewise caused to be paid to the Churches those rents of corne and other things which Constantine had appointed for them, and which by the commandement of IVEIANVS were fequefited: which is written by THEODORETVS and RVFFINVS. I o VIANVS having laid fo godly a foundation to his Empire, concerning the Christian faith, giving in all things good signes of a good and just Prince & prouiding for all matters in the East, as to him seemed most needfull, began his journey towards Constantinople, shewing himself every where as he passed in all his actions, a just and a gracious Prince, so as al men conceiued a great good hope of him. But this and all his noble determinations and other Christianlike purposes, were interrupted by death: for the iniquitie of the people did not deferue to haue fo good a Prince; which happened in this manner: He comming to a place which was called Dudastana, in the confines of Bithynia, and Galatia, in Asia the lesser, the weather being very cold (for it was in the winter) they set in the chamber where the Emperour should lie that night, a great panne with kindled coales, which coales were wet, and as the officers of his chamber were gone to take their rest, the chamber doore being lockt, and he asseepe, the vapour of the The Emperour fire waxing groffe and thicke, and filling enery thing with smooke, and finding no thered in his place to enaporate, stopped the Emperours breath, in such fort that he was smoobed with thered fleeping, and in the morning was found dead; all men imagining this to fronte. be the cause of his death. Yet some were of opinion that hee died by eating of Mushrumpes, which are held for venemous. And others coniectured that hee are fo much meate at supper, that his naturall heate could not digest the same, and so through the cruditie thereof he was suffocate. But howsoeuer it was, all men were very forrowfull for his death, hee having weilded the scepter of the Empire but only eight moneths; being, according to some writers, of the age of fortic yeers,

Who so defireth to know more of this Emperour, as well in warre as in peace,

and after some other, thirtie and odde.

let him reade the authors aboue named, and particularly Ammianvs Marcel-LINVS, who was with him in all his aduentures: and the Tripartite Historie of CASSIODORVS in the seuenth booke: and RVFFINVS in the tenth booke of his ecclesiasticall Historie: and EVTROPIVS, although he be briefe was an eie-witnesse. And here endeth his Historie. Many things may be gathered of the life of this Emperour, by reading the first booke of the epistles of Saint A M-BROSE: and the fourth booke of THEODORETVS.

## THE LIFE OF VALENTI-NIANVS, THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND OF HIS BROTHER VA-LENS, THE EIGHT AND FORtith Romane Emperour.



THE ARGUMENT.

M. Alentinianus being the sonne of a roupe maker, for his vertues deserned to be made an Emperour; euen as his father mounted from making of ropes to the highest martiall dignitie. He having taken upon him the imperiall dignitie, chose his brother Valens for his companion, and shortly after made his some Gratianus, Casar. In their time the world was troubled, with so many productions earth-quakes, remouning of the sea, strangeraines, and so many warres, that there hath seldome been read of the like. Neverthelesse the wife Emperours excellently well provided for all these troubles and perils; and not onely overcame barbarous Kings and strangers which were their enemies, but also tamed and subdued the domesticall tyrants, among which was one whose name was Procopius, a kinsmanto Iulianus the Apostata; who taking the ensignes of Emperour, was so venturous, as to come to blowes with Valens. Valentinianus was a great friend to the Christians, yet Valens was to the contrarie, and being earnest to give answere to certaine Ambasadors, he was taken with an Apoplexie which bereaued him of the vse of his tongue onely, leading all his other fenfes found; whereof within foort space be died. Whereupon Valeus remay-

ning in the Empire with his Nophew Gratian, as the manner of Vncles is, began to make small account of his Nephew: and fauouring the fell of the Arrians, gaue himfelfe to inchannements, nigromancies, to persecute the Christians, and to martyrize many of them. For which his wickednes God punished him; for he comming against the Gothes (to whom he had done good) in a peece of Seruice, mas by them ouerthrowne, and flying wounded into a farmers house in the countrie. the house was fired by them, and he burning therein, made such an end as his euil life descrued, receiving such punishment at Gods hands, as such obstinate heretikes are worthie of.



T pleafed God of his goodnes, to give to the Christian and vertuous Emperor IoviAnvs, a fucceffor, although he left neither sonne nor kinsman, which was like vnto him in faith, goodnes and vertuous conditions : and this was VALENTINIANVS, who although that he were but of a meane stocke, and came of a poore father: vet hee was a faithfull Christian and endued with excellent vertues. His fathers name was GRATIANVS. The descent of borne and bred in Hungarie, in a citie of the Cimbales, Valentinianus.

a man of a meane parentage, as faith AVRELIVS VICTOR; and as he and PAV-LVS DIACONVS affirme, was very poore, and by his trade a rope maker: but was of so great strength, that vpon a day fine fouldiers strining with al their might to take one of those ropes which he fold, out of his hands, were not able to doe it. Wherefore feeming to be strong and a very able man for the warres, he was counfelled to follow the same, and he did so; and having no lesse courage of minde then force of body, he profited so much in armes, through the notable exploits which he performed therein, that offices were bestowed vpon him, aud so ascending by degrees, he became Pretorian Prefect. And by these meanes his sonne VALENTINIANVS of whom we purpose to treate, came to bee bred vp in the warres, and therein wanne great honour. And being captaine of the companies which were called Scutari, which were targettiers, so called, for that no others did beare targets or pauoifes, but they: IVLIANVS the Apostata commaunded Valentinianus him to doe facrifice to his gods, or otherwise to give vp the office which he held, face of captaine (as he did by others, and as we faid, he did by Iovianvs:) but he as a good Ca-rather then be tholike and not as a fained Christian, voluntarily surrendred his office and cap-would doe fatainship, to continue in the faith of CHRIST. And the good and Christian crifice to Idols. I o VIANVS comming to the Empire, drew vnto him all fuch, as hee was: by meanes whereof VALENTINIANVS was in his service when hee died, in the same place and office which he forsooke in the time of Ivlianvs. So soone as I ovianvs was dead, the first and chiefest care that V ALENTINIANVS tooke. was, to prepare his body to be fent to Constantinople to be buried; and the second and next was, to treate of, who should be the next Emperour. And the principall captaines marched with the armie to the citie of Nicea, which is the head and Metropolitane citie of the prouince of Bithynia, where determining to nominate an Emperour, there were some which made account to have been to; and among many one was named, which was a Tribune called Equitive; who (as Man-CELLINVS reporteth) was afterwards for his currish and sharpe conditions deposed. But finally after long consultations, VALENTINIANY'S was chosen, by Valentinianus reason of his goodnes and valour, being at that time absent, having remained chosen Emptcertaine daies iourney behinde the whole armie; and being fent for, and come, they all sware obedience vnto him, with great loy and contentment. For truly hewas (as all men write) a goodly personage, very valiant, and magnanimious;

by Valentinia-HUS to the army

the Empire.

The Empire infelicd by for-

Augustus.

very wife and temperate; a louer of iultice, eloquent, and of a good grace, honorable and valorous and a man who knew how to make himselfe beloved and respeed of all men. Having accepted the Empire, and beginning to provide for such things as might be needefull for the good government thereof; it feemed good to the captaines and fouldiers of the armie to name and give him a companion and an equall in the Empire, to be an affiftant to him in the government; which the Emperours of their owne accord did often vie to doe. VALENTINIANVS being advertised hereof, commaunded the armie to be called together, and with a bold and prompt from acke and courage, among other matters spake vnto them in this manner. Gentlemen and fouldiers, it was in your hands and at your pleafure, when I was not Emperour, to give me the government and commaund of the Empire; but now that I have the government and am in possession thereof, it is no part of your charge, neither ought you to entermeddle therein : for that is my charge onely, and the care thereof appertaineth to me to commaind and gouerne the common-wealth, And as for a companion when neede shall require. I will take care for one. These speeches are written by THEODORETVS; and other authors make mention of them; which made fuch an impression in the fouldiers mindes, that from thenceforth they all tooke care to obey his commaundements, without daring to speake a word concerning any such matter. But when hee came to the citie of Constantinople, which ever fince the time of the Emperour Constantine, was the head of the Empire, imagining it to Valentinianus be a matter very requisit, he made his brother VALENS his companion andequall with himselfe in the Empire, which truely he ought not to have done, for that he was infected with the Arrian herefie, as hereafter we will declare. And having made this election, they devided the Empire betweene them, fo as VA-LENTINIANVS tooke charge of the prouinces in the West, and VALENS of those in the East. And matters standing vpon these termes, they both fell sieke of a burning feuer, so grieuously, that all men thought they would have died; but afterwards recovering, there happened vnto these brothers so many warres and fuch troubles, that they both had enough to doe. For the Saxons and the Scots which are northerly nations, came in great troupes to make a conquest of the Ile of Britannie, and the Germanes came againe downe into France : and the countries of Hungarie and Austrich were troubled with the Sarmates and the Catti: into Thracia came certaine companies of Gothes to robbe and steale. The King of Persia brake the truce, and inuaded Armenia, and afterwards Mesopotamia. Whereupon by reason of these tempests and others which were feared, and which were alreadie begun, VALENS tooke his way towards the East, and VA-LENTINIANYS towards Milan: And into Hungarie they fent a valiant captaine whose name was Severian vs; and so they prouided and placed in diuers parts excellent captaines and gouernours. To recite all things which passed in particular, would be a long peece of worke, but in fumme it was thus: that in the first three yeeres of the raigne of VALENTINIANYS, hee had very cruell warres with the Saxons and Germanes, which in the end, after many battailes, valentinianus he ouercame and subdued. In the third yeere of his raigne, he made his sonne GRATIANVS his companion, Emperour, and Avgvstvs. And in Rome by reason of the death or deprivation of TVRCIVS APRONIANVS, for the Historie declareth it not (or I am forgetfull) he placed a noble man, named ORPHI-TV's. And as a good Christian, he honoured and fauored the Christians, their Temples and Churches: which his brother VALENS did not in the East; but

lying for the most part in the citie of Antioch, permitted the idolatries and superstitions of the Gentiles, and likewife the rites and ceremonies of the Iewes. But ring tablarie, the Arrians and Hereticks he extremely fauoured, only he molefted and was and the coreenemie to the true Christians: and about all, gaue himselfe to dininations, force- 100 to the ries, and prohibited Aftrologie, which CASSIODORVS, IOANNES MONACYS, an encimie to otherwise called ZONARAS, and RVFFINVS also treate of at large.

These two brethren gouerning and commaunding the Empire, although af-

ter divers manners, refilting and making head against the incursions of strange and barbarous nations, which infested the same: a noble man called Proco-PIVS. borne in Sicilia, and necre kinfeman to IVLIANVS Apostata (who beginning by meane degrees, came to be Captaine generall of the Imperial armies in the East) rebelled in Constantinople, and with the fauour and affishance of certaine Processing square Captaines, and fome other men of warre (taking the Imperiall enfignes) he pro- called Empeclaimed himself Emperour, which greatly troubled the two Emperours: for they 10HT. knew that he daily grew greater, and that his forces cotinuallie increased and that he had fent for fuccours to the Gothes, and other strange nations. The Empire being thus troubled, there also followed in those daies so vinuerfall and so terrible day with the an earth-quake, that an infinite number of houses, and fundrie cities fell downe. earth quake. For in Sicilia and in many other Hands, whole countries perished, and the sea ouerwhelmed and drowned many townes and cities, ouerflowing the naturall bounds and limits; and aboue all, it was most terrible in the province of Bithynia, in Afia : fo as the citic of Nicea was therewith wholie destroicd. And in many o- Nicea destroyther provinces bordering ypon the fea, the fea altring his course, in some places ed by an earthdiscovered and left dry land, where before was nothing but sea; and in some o- quake. ther places made fea, where before were greene fields and pastures without water-as PAVLVS OROSIVS and other authors do write, principallie MARCELLI-NVs. who faw it with his eies, and S. I EROME also. Whereof the Cosmographers of our times should take notice, and not so much blame and maruell at the auncient, if they find not described and set downe in their bookes the sea-coasts, the capes, points, hauens, and entries into the fea, to be fuch as they described them then to be: for these and many other naturall mutations have been the cause thereof, befides the error which may be in the letter & depainting of the bookes. or in the phrase, through their fault which wrote and translated them. Alittle wooll fell fit while after this earth-quake (S. IEROME writeth) that there rained from heaven, beaven like like as at other times it vieth to fnow, an infinite quantitic of wooll, so perfect as fiene. the most fine wooll that the sheep beareth. But returning to our historie. This attempt of Procofivs fo much troubled VALENTINIANVS and VALENS, that V ALENTINIANVS was in doubt whether he should go against him in perfon, or leaue it to V ALENS; whom it seemed more to concerne, aswell for the

necrenes to him, as for that those parts were under his jurisdiction. And being re-

folued to go in person, he was constrained to alter his determination, for that cer-

taine strange nations made new inuasions in the Empire, as well in Germany as in

Britannie, and the cities and prouinces in these parts by their Ambassadors requi-

red fuccour. Whereupon he determined rather to relicue those which were

friends to the whole Empire, and to the common estate, then his owne in parti-

cular: and publishing his determination, he returned to make warre against the

ftrangers, fending an excellent Captaine with a very good armie against Proco-

PIV s, to the end to relist and make head against him, and not to fuffer his power

to increase; and he himselfe went to the warres of Germany, wherein he did many

worthic

Proceeius

worthing feates of armes against the Saxons, the Burgonians, and other nations. whose force was so great, that although that they were overcome by him and reduced to his obedience, yet untill this day the remembrance of them continueth. and they inhabit those parts. On the other side, VALENS as a man which had the leffer charge, marched towards PROCOPIVS, and he came to meete him in Alia the leffe, or in Phrygia, neere to a citie called Natolia, where they fought, and PROCOPIUS was overthrowne and fled. But before this battaile, VALENS had

The death of Procopies.

Valens razed thevvals of

Chalecdonia.

The Pitis and Scots.

fent a Captaine whose name was I v L I v s, with a very good armic, against those Gothes which came to the aid of PROCOPIVS, he having forcad a rumor that VALENTINIANYS was dead in France, and those Gothes were overthrowne by IVLIVS. PROCOPIVS, as is aforefaid, escaping from the battaile, vsed all possible meanes to reinforce his army, to the end again to returne to fight: but he not only failed of his purpose, but was by his owne Captaines which fled with him thereby to obtaine pardon and grace with V ALENS, apprehended and delivered into his hands. Some write, that VALENS to foone as he had him, made his head to be firiken off: and others fay, that bowing downe two trees by force and policie, one leg was bound to the one tree, and the other to the other, and the trees being let loofe, he was torne in pieces, and so ended he his life, parted and divided, which had caused so great parts-taking, and division in the Empire. Procorvs when he died, was of the age of one and fortie yeeres, and was of a very tall and goodlie constitution, but that he went somewhat stooping. It is reported of him that he was cuer very fad, and was neuer scene to laugh, and that he alwaies thought on heavie and fad matters, and so had an heavie and an infortunate end, as one which was diflovall, and a traitor to his fourraigne Lord. After that VALENS had obteined this victorie, he extremely punished those which had fauoured and affifled Procorivs, and because that Chalcedonia, which is a citie in Asia the lesse. ouer against Constantinople, had taken part with him, he caused all the towne wals to be throwne downe, and made even with the ground, which before were very faire. When Procortys was dead, a Captaine and neere kinfeman of his named MARCELLYS, being in the citie of Nicea with certaine companies, and with three thousand Gothes which he had caused to come thither, tooke vpon him the name of Emperour: but he was foone fet vpon, taken and flaine by another Captaine, whose name was E ovicivs, gouernour of Slauonia. This so important an enterprise being by VALENS brought to happie end, he then endeuoured himselfe to persecute the remainder of those souldiers, and to prouide for other accidents in the East, which for that they were many and of lesse importance, I will omit. But in matters concerning our religion, as an heretick and a wicked man, he committed fo many outrages, exiled fo many, and did fo great harme, that it would require a long time to describe the same. His brother VALENTINI-ANY's following the warres aforefaid, obteined fundrie victories, fome in his owne person, and some vader the leading of his Captaines. In the great Britanny, by a Captaine of his whose name was VALENTINE, he ouercame and subdued the Picts and the Scots, from whom the Scots at this day are descended, and the Kingdome of Scotland in that Iland tooke name. And THEODOSIVS of whom we will speake hereafter, obteined some other notable victories in Germany, whom VALENTINIANVS sent also into Africa, for that therein rebelled a mightie Captaine whose name was TIRMVS, whom THEODOSIVS ouerthrew in battaile, and tooke prifoner, leaving the countrey in quiet. But notwithflanding that he had so good & so happie successe, yet the Romane Empire was so odious

and hatefull to all the strange nations, that they never defisted, so long as they had any oportunitie thereto to inuade and molest the same. Whereupon the Sarmates, a barbarous people, of which we have often spoken heretofore, rebelled, and entred Hungarie: against which VALENTINIANVS (being greatlic offended) went himselfe in person, and having overthrowne them in battaile they acquired the fent their Ambassadors vnto him : and the Emperour being in an earnest dif. Sarmates. course with them, it is reported that he was very angrie, and cried out so loud, that with the force thereof the bloud gushed out at his mouth in such aboundance. that he died within few daies after. Others write, that he was taken with an apoplexie, wherewith he loft his speech only, all his other sense remaining perfect. Finallie, of the one, or other, he died within a short space, nothing auxiling any phifick that could be ministred vnto him, being of the age of 55, yeeres, in the twelfth yeere of his raigne, and according to S.IEROMB his computation in the Anno Domini. vecre of our Lord 379.

This Emperour is accounted among the good and vertuous Emperours, and with great reason: for besides his valour and sufficiencie, he was a very just Prince, and a great enemie and a punisher of vice, especiallie of briberie and couctousness. When he died he left two fonnes, and three daughters, which he had by two women. His eldest sonnes name was GRATIAN, whom he had by his lawfull wife, named SEVERA: him before his death he made Emperour AvgvsTVs. His other sonnes name was VALBNIINIANVS, who afterwards was Emperour alfo. And his three daughters, Ivsta, GRATA, and GALLA, he had by a Gentlewoman called Ivstina, of which one, which was Galla, was afterwards maried to THEODOSIVS, who in processe of time came to be Emperour. It is written, that this Ivstina, mother to these three sisters, was the fairest woman of complexion, of the most excellent constitution of bodic, the comeliest personage, and was endowed with more commendable parts, then any woman then to be found in the world; so as she was brought to the Emperours Pallace to his wife the Emperesse for a miracle in beautie, where he had by her these three children, as PAVLVS DIACONVS reporteth, by the confent and permission of his wife the Emperesse.

We have declared the principall of all that passed in the time of VALENTINI-ANVS, Emperour in the West, and of his brother VALENS in the East. VALENGRALIANTE TINIANV s dying in such manner, as we said, left his sonne GRATIAN VS for Em-mained Empeperour of all that which he possessed, and made him Emperour in his life time. row in the And VALENS seeing himselfe freed and at libertie from the respect and dutie place of bis which he ought to his brother VALENTINIAN, making small account of his fonne GRATIAN, began to fauour and support the Arrians, and to persecute and Valens sanouoppresse the true Christians. Amongst other things S.Ierome writeth, that he ans. commaunded and compelled all the Monks and Hermites in Egypt, and other parts (that leaving their monasticall life) they should become souldiers, and fol-Valens made low the warres: but before that he could bring them to it, he put many thousands Hermits to of them to death, and did many other cruell deedes, for which God gaue him leave their cels, fuch an end as he deserved. To the contrarie, his nephew Gratian was a good foundaters. Christian, and was likewise a good Poet, and an Oratour, a very vertuous, temperate, honest, and courteous Prince, and endued with many noble qualities; but he was condemned to be very remiffe in matters of gouernement. But concerning the Christian religion, he fauoured and supported the Christian Churches in Phanicia, and other prouinces in the East, like as his father had done before him.

A great victorie octained by Gratian aeamit the Germanes.

By meanes of whose death the high Dutch tooke heart and courage to come downe, and make warre within the bounds of the Empire, with great multitudes of men : and he with a farre leffer number went to fight with them, neere to a citie called Argentine, where recommending himselfe to I E SV S CHRIST, hee fought a most cruell battaile, and obtained the victorie: and as PAVLVS OR Osivs reporteth flew of them about 40000. men. S.IERO ME faith 30000. When the young Emperour GRATIAN had obtained this victorie, he resolued to make his brother VALENTINIAN his companion in the Empire, who was his brother by the father, and sonne to the most faire Ivs TINA; which hee performed with great folemnitie. The Empire being in this estate, V A LENS lining in Antioch in Soria, and GRATIAN and this his young brother VALENTINIAN living in France, VALENS as hee was given to divinations, inchauntments, nigromancies and fuch other like vanities, made certaine figures to be cast; and the dinell great credit to willing to shew him that after him there should raigne one, whose name began inchaumiments with this Greeke letter & which in Latin is th: he therefore caused to be flaine the most excellent Captaine THEODOSIVS, and others whose names began in that

manner.

These things being past, as God in his secret judgement had ordained that the Romane Empire should fall into a generall decay and diminution (as not long after it did) it pleased him in his divine wisedome to permit that there should first happen some notable particular aduersities, which should be as signes and forewarnings prefaging the great and generall euils which afterwards enfued, and continue euen vntil this day. For a beginning, and annunciation of the commune and generall aduerfitie, which in processe of time afterwards followed it pleased God to permit (for VALENS his infidelitie) that in those daies in the Northerly parts of Scythia, betweene a people called Hunnes, bordring vpon the Rifean mountaines; and the Gothes which with them divided their frontiers, and were their necre neighbours (both most valiant and fierce nations, as in this historie hereafter shall appeare) great warres arose: and after many battailes and slaughters betweene them (which make nothing to our purpose) al beginning about the parting of fields and dividing their bounds and limits, and other ancient quarrels, as viually happen betweene nations which are fo neere neighbours; in these controuerfies, the Gothes were finally ouerthrown in a great battaile by the Hunnes, and driven out of their owne countrie by force of armes: and being a huge multitude of people(compelled through necessitie, as ouercome, and desiring to line in peace) they sent to entreate the Emperour VALENS by their Ambassadours, that it might please him to receive them for his servants and vassals, and to give them some lands and fields which they might till and inhabite the same. The Emperour simply graunted their request, affigning vnto them a great countrie beyond the river Danubius, and certaine fields in the province of Missa, which at this time is called Bulgaria and Servia (as PAVIVS OROSIVS, and PAVIVS DIACO-NV's and others doe report) and there for a certaine time they remained in peace and rest: and it was believed that they would so have continued, had not two of the Emperours Captaines (which divided the fields amongst them, and remained there as their guard and ouerfeers) begun to vie them cruelly, like tyrants, doing them daily great wrongs and injuries, as though they had been rather flaues then subjects. Whereupon they converted their obedience and humilitie into rebellion and desperation; resoluing to beare armes, and to take perforce that which those men denied them. And so raunging themselues in good order (leauing that

Countries affigned by Valens for the Gothes to inha-

which was appointed for them)they marched forwards, destroying, robbing and spoiling all wheresoeuer they came. And entring into Thracia, they tooke some ftrong holds and cities, untill they came neere to Constantinople, where V A LENS then was : for fo foone as these troubles began he was aduertised thereof, and departing from the citie of Antioch, came by great journies to Conflantinople, out of which he afterwards fallied with a great and very wel ordred armie, to make head against the Gothes, which from ancient time had bin euer much feated, and were still famous. And although they understood of the Emperours comming yet they were therewith nothing difmaied, nor doubted to meete him, but rather fought to fight with him. Which VALENS refused not; so as there was a cruell battaile toverne Vabetweene the two armies, wherein at the first encounter the Romane horsemen lens and the behaued themselues so ill, that disbanding, they left the squadrons of footemen Gulber. naked without any defence; which the Gothes horsemen perceiuing, charged the Romane Infanterie, and compassing them about on enery side with an infinit multitude of archers, brake through them, and constrained them to flie; and fo the Gothes had an entire victorie, and did great execution in the Imperiall armie. And VALENS flying thence wounded with an arrow, would have hidden himfelfe in a Farmers house neere to that place, and being found, the Gothes set the The death of

house on fire, and he being therein was burnt. Some write that he died fighting, the Emperour

affirme. One of which is S.IEROME, in whole time these things happened: so as he died a death conformable to the course of his life. The Gothes having obtained this victorie, marched forwards, and befreged the Imperiall citie of Constantinople, where ensued that which wee will hereafter declare. The Emperor V ALEN'S died in the fiftith yeere of his age, and the fifteenth of his raigne; of which, he had raigned about eleuen in the companie of his bro-

and that he feeing the horsemen flie, alighted, and putting off his Imperial robes,

placed himselfe in a squadron of footmen, and there being vnknowne, was flaine.

But I hold the first opinion for most certaine, for so doe the most and best authors

ther, and the rest with his nephew GRATIANVS, which was in the veere of our Lord IRSVS CHRIST, three hundred, fourescore and two. after S.IEROMES computation, who in that yeere ended his historie, which PROSPERVS afterwards profecuted. I have not read that this Emperour left any

children behinde him.

Anno Dom.

Gg 4

THE

# NVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME,

AND OF HIS BROTHER VALENTI-NIAN the second, and nine and fortith Romane Emperour.



#### THE ARGVMENT.



He whole burthen of the Empire resting upon Gratianus, he was advertised that the Gothes daily encreased their power, and were growne so audacious as to assault the citie of Constantinople: wherefore he made prouision to goe against them, and made one Theodosius a Spaniard Generall of his armie, who ouerthrew and subdued them, and reduced the Empire to the ancient dignitie. Wherefore Gratianus made him his companion in the Empire, affigning unto him the East part, and he remaining in France, purchased the enill will

of his men of warre, by shewing himselfe too much affected to the Alanes, and to other strange nations, whose fushions in attire he often weed to weare. In which time one Maximus rebelling in Britannie, made himselfe a tyrant; and Gratianus seeing himselfe for saken by his legions, returned into Italy, in which tourney Maximus by a stratagem, caused him to be slaine. He had been a very vertuous and good Emperour, if he had applied himselfe to the government of the Empire : for otherwise he was endued with many good parts, and lived little more then 28 yeeres.



Fter the death of VALENS which was so ill and infortunate, as wee haue declared, the gouernment of the whole Empire, East and West, remained in his nephewes GRATIANVS, who was his brother VA-

LENTINIANS sonne aforesaid, which before ruled the West Empire, and in his brother the young VALENTINIAN, whom he had made Em-

peror; although that by reason of his infancie no great account was made of him The Gothes then following the victoric which they had obtained against the confluentinople Emperour V ALENS; Without any stay, became maister's of all the countrie round before day, became maister's of all the countrie round Gather, about (and as I faid) befieged the imperiall citie of Constantinople, wherein was the Emperesse Dominica, wife of the valuekie Valens; and they assaulted it with great furie and very resolutely, burning and destroying all the suburbes thereof, which were very great. And so they begirt the citie, vntill that the widow Emperesse (as written Cassion or vs) vsed such diligence in encouraging and animating the fouldiers which were therein, with good words, gifts, and readic money, which the diffributed amongst them, that they fought so valiantly, that the Gothes received great losse, and could not enter the citie; and so it was defended by the diligence of this woman, and the valour of the befieged. And the Gothes dividing themselves into severall troupes, became Lords of the provinces of Thracia, Dacia, and their confines. Here the historiographers at large describe the originall and countrie of these Gothes; and by what meanes, and when they came foorth of their countrie; wherein they are so tedious and so contrarie in opinions, the one to the other, that I purpose to eschew that labour, for that it little importeth; neither can the truth be fully explaned. But it is true, that they were a people which came out of Scythia in Europe, according to the The Gothes, most writers; but whether they were borne there or came from some other and whence countrie (as some say they did) it importeth not much: neither the difference in their names in calling them Oftrogothes or Visogothes; for herein is no greater difference, but that the Ostrogothes were more easterly, and the Visogothes more westerly; but generally both the one, and other were called Gothes. and fo I purpose to call them, so often as I shall have occasion to speake of them. which will be very often: for in truth the greatest wound, and chiefest hurt that the Romane Empire received, and the beginning of the fall thereof, was through The occasion of their occasion. Wherefore these people may justly be accounted and esteemed the salies the fourther most valiant in armse of all other parions in the world, salies the salies Empire that for the most valiant in armes of all other nations in the world; seeing that they through the (although with much labour, and by fighting many battailes) were able to tame Gothes. and subdue that people and Empire, which was the tamer and subduer of all other nations.

GRATIAN understanding of the death of his Vncle VALENS, and of all the accidents which enfued; and being also aduertised of the power of the Gothes, and how that daily they became Lords of more lands of the Empire; and how that following their example, other northerly nations called Hunnes and Alanes, no leffe valiant in armes then the Gothes (as it was reported) made preparation to enter the Romane Empire, and to doe the like: resolued with the greatest armie that he was able to raife, to goe into Hungarie to stoppe their passage. And forasmuch as in so great an extremitie, in his owne person hee was not able to prouide for all occasions; he determined to make choise of the most sufficient man that he might finde to be generall of his armie, to whom he might commit the charge and care of the warre against the Gothes; which was both of great importance and very daungerous. There lived at that time in his countrie in Spaine, one THEODOSIV s, the some of a noble Captaine whose name was also THEODOSIVS; whom, as we have told yo I, VALENS caused to be slaine. This THEODOSIVS after the death of his father, holding himselse to be in danger, retired himselfe into his countrie, being aswell for the noblenes of his auncestors, and his fathers name and worthines, as for his owne valour, and his exploits in

Theodolius made generall of the Emperiall armie.

armes, the most renowned and of greatest account of any man in his time. Whereupon the Emperour GRATIAN, in great haste sent for him, and wrote his letters ynto him, wherein hee made him Captaine generall of all the Empire: and within a little while after, Emperour, Av Gvs Tvs, and his equall in the Empire, he being of the age of three and thirtie yeeres.

When THEODOSIVS had received the Emperours letters, and accepted of the charge offered vnto him, with the greatest speed that he could make, he went into those countries where the Gothes were; which knowing of his comming gathered themselues together to fight with him. And THEODOSIVS being very defirous thereof, having first leuied a sufficient armic, and taken such order, and made fuch prouision as was most requisit; with great heede and circumspection drew neere vnto them: and after that hee had practized and tried his A great battaile fouldiers in some skirmishes and encounters; he came to give them a field batbetweene Theotaile: which was one of the most cruell and bloodie that euer was. But THE odosius and the Gathes, where Dosivs carried himselfe so wise and valiantly, aswel in fighting, as in encouraging and directing his men, that he obtained the victoric and made incredible flaughin the Gothes ter of the enemie; and afterwards in the remainder of those which then escaped,

Theodolius made Emperor

mere ouer-

throwne.

untill that he had driven them all out of that province; so as there remained not any enemic therein. And leaving his owne people in good order, he went to doe his dutic to the Emperour GRATIAN in Hungarie, where he then lay in the citie of Sirmie. Who for so noble a victorie (after that hee had well considered and weighed his vertue and worthines) made him Emperour and Avovs rvs. and his equall and companion. Yet some say, that he did this in the beginning in the same place, before the battaile. But howsoeuer, he shared the Empire with him giuing to THEODOSIVS. Constantinople and Thracia, with all the provinces of the East, in like manner as VALENS held the same; referuing to himselfe Italie, and all westwards, wherein also raigned his young brother VALENTI-NIANVS. This being ended, GRATIAN presently returned into Italie, and from thence

into France; and THEODOSIVS went to make an end of his warres against the most feared and redoubted nations of all the world, which were the aforesaid Gothes, the Alanes, and the Hunnes; all people of Scythia. We reade that ALE x-ANDER the great would not goe to make any conquest of these people: for they were feared of all the world.

The Alanes tooke their name of the river in Scythia, called Alane. A MMIANVS. MARCELLINY's faith, that these were called in auncient time Massagetes. The Hunnes are also Scythians of Scythia in Europe, inhabiting ouer the bogges of Meotis, all which were most fierce nations: and although that all the northerly nations were fuch, yet were these more then any of all the rest; as in this Historie. hereafter will appeare: and these (they say) are those which at this day are called Tartarians. This people being againe entred into Hungarie, THEODOSIVS Went to fight with them, fometimes with one nation and fometimes with another. All authors write, that he fought many very cruell battailes with them, and in them all had the upper hand: fo as he flew an infinit number of them, and those which escaped the sword, he made to flie out of the confines of the Empire. And to the end that he would not so much tire his men of warre, being humbly required of peace by ATHANARICVS King of the Gothes, offering himselfe and his people to doe him feruice; he graunted it. And comming victorious to the citie of Constantinople, which was his imperial feate, he brought ATHANARICY'S

Athanaricus King of the Galbes fued to Theodofius for

GRATIANUS. with him; and was received with great folemnitie, joy and triumph. Where (they Athanaricus write) that ATHANARICVE did fo much wonder to see the power of the Em- conflantinople, perour, the folemnitie and greatnes of his court, the fumptuousnes and magni- and his speech ficence of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the furniture of his house Emperature of the buildings of the citic, and the richeffe of the citic and seruice, that he said, that truely the Romane Emperour was god of the earth, row, audrepresented the god of heauen; against whom no man ought to be so hardie, as to lift vp his hand, or heart, except he would prefently be condemned to death.

Within few daies after that this valiant King ATHANARICUS came to Con-

flantinople, he was taken with a gricuous ficknes, whereof he died, after that he The death of

had been tormented therewith, the space of three monethes; whom THEODO- Athanarican. sivs fumptuously buried and bestowed great cost upon his obsequies. Some authors, as IORNANDES and others fay, that this peace with the Gothes, was made by GRATIANVS; for THEODOSIVS fell fo grieuously sicke, that all men thought that hee would have died; and that in that feafon the peace was graunted to ATHANARIOUS more for feare then for any good will: and that THEODOSIVS recouering health, would not breake what GRATIANYS had concluded. Avrelivs Victor, Pavivs Orosivs, and others report it after the first manner; but this difference is of small importance. The Gothes which ferued ATHANARICVS in his house and in his armic, knowing and perceiuing the goodnes and bountie of THEODOSIVS, defired to continue in his feruice; and afterwards ferued him faithfully and valiantly, in such warres as happened. In this time through the grace and mercic of God, GRATIANVS and THEODOSIVS being true Christians, the Catholike Church was fauoured and protected by them. Yet some write, that THEODOSIVS was baptized after that he was Emperour: But therewith, that before that time hee did reverence and beleeue the Christian faith. Sozomen vs, after CASSIODORVS, affirmeth it fo, which to me seemeth hardly to be beleeved. But how soever it was, THE O-DORETVS writeth, that fo foone as he came to Constantinople, having ouercome and subdued all the barbarous nations; heapplied himselfe to the reformation of the Church, and to the subuersion and rooting out of the Arrian heresie, which was dispersed ouer all the East parts. And vpon this occasion he ysed meanes to affemble a great number of Bishops at Constantinople; and although that the enill was not throughly cured thereby, yet that which he did, was very profitable. CASSIODORVS Writeth THEODOSIVS his decree, wherein he professed and protested that he believed the same faith, which was preached by the holy Apoftles, and which was published in the Nicene councell. He setteth downe also. how that THEODOSIVS banished certaine Bishops from Constantinople, for that they were of the diuellish and abhominable sect of the Arrians. In the West, there was no neede of any fuch care or diligence; for this Arrian pestilence had not fo much infected those parts: as we have alreadie declared in the lives of the three fonnes of Constantine the great, Constans which raigned in that part, tooke great care to preserve and defend the auncient Catholike faith; and after him Iovianvs and Valentinianvs. Soas, aswell in matters

concerning religion, as also the warres and civill government, THEODOSIVS

shewed himselse a singular and maruellous good prince, and was so much seared

and honored by all nations that the King of the Persians, notwithstanding that The King of the had slaine the Emperour Ivlianvs, and obtained so many victories; in great Persia fixed to humilitie, sent his Ambassadours to Constantinople, entreating a perpetual league Theodosius for 348

Gratianus ill beloved by his

and peace with THEODOSIVS: and he feeing with how great submission that King fued for peace, graunted it him. THE ODOSIVS living in this profperitie, the better to assure the succession of the Empire to his posteritie, made one of his fons whose name was ARCADIV s, his equall and companion therein: notwithstanding that he was but a child, and very young. In this meane while lived GRA-TIAN in France, from thence making prouision and fending direction to all parts; as into Africa, Spaine, Britannie, and Germanie; and as he was a man very remisse and soft spirited (as the most part doe write of him) he waxed much more. after that hee had taken THEODOSIVS for his companion; depending much vpon his diligence and valour: so as he became ill beloued of his men of warre. And this difliking also encreased; for that he seeing that THEODOSIVS had enmen of vvarre. tertained the Gothes which served ATHANARICUS into his pay and wages. drew to his seruice certaine companies of Alanes, and respected and honored them fo much, that he fometimes apparelled himselfe after their fashion, and made them his guarde; wherewith the Romane and Italian fouldiers were highly difcontented.

In Rome and in all Italie the Empire was of no absolute authoritie: for therein

Maximus chofen Emperour by the legions a Britannie.

was the young VALENTINIAN, brother to GRATIANVS; who for that he was very young and of little discretion, a noble man called PROBV s had the charge of the gouernment, which had been Conful, and was then Prefect of the citie. These matters gaue occasion to the legions which were in Britannie to presume to rebell, and to chuse an excellent captaine, whose name was MAXIMVS for Emperour, and they did fo; and as PAVLVS DIAC ONVS writeth, mauger the faid MAXIMVS. But afterwards having accepted the name, hee determined couragiously to proceede and so with all expedition possible, hee went into France; and foralmuch as GRATIAN was ill beloued of his armie, the greatest part of his men of warreforfooke him, and calling MAXIMV's Emperour, went to his campe. Whereupon PRATIANVS finding himselfe vnable to fight with him, purposed to retire into Italie, where his brother was. MAXIMV's being aduertized thereof, vsed such meanes that GRATIANVS fell into his hands. Which was this, he caused a rumour to be spred abroade, that GRATIANVS his wife was comming to fee her husband with a good companie of fouldiers, and to goe with him into Italie, and sent some messengers before with counterfeit letters, which aduertised him thereof. After this, hee sent a valiant and subtill captaine called ANDRAGATHIVS, to the end that hee should put himselfe in a horselitter, with some chosen souldiers, and goe to meete GRATIAN, faining to be the Emperesse, and so take him and kill him. This cunning Champion persormed what his Lord had committed to his charge, and at Lions in France, in paffing the river Rhodanus, he came to joyne with him: some going before and telling him that the Emperesse was necre at hand. The goodnes and sinceritie of GRA-TIANVS were the occasion that hee suspected nothing, neither discouered the deceit, vntill he came so neere, that he saw it with his eies, where being compassed about with ANDRAGATHIVS his fouldiers, he was there by his commaundement flaine. In this manner ended the life and raigne of the Emperour GRATI-ANY s, being of the age of nine and twentie yeeres; fifteene yeeres after that his father made him Emperour and his companion; whereof eight yeeres were in his father time, more in name then effect; and of the other feuen yeeres, three were with his Viicle Valens who was flaine by the Gothes, and the rest with THE ODOSIVS Whom he chose for his companion, and with his brother Va-LENTINIAN;

Gratianus Naine by Andragathius, throughthe procuerment of Maximus.

LENTINIAN; who for that he was a child was not regarded. He died (after PR o-SPERVS his computation) in the yeere of our Lord three hundred, fourescore and feauen. This prince was endued with many excellent vertuous: for he was valiant, nobleand discreet, and about all, a Catholike and a very deuout Chriflian; but he had a fault, which was that he was too foft spirited, remisse, and negligent, taking little care for the gouernment: which (as is faid) was the principall cause of his ruine. And truely this is a great and daungerous fault in Kings and princes: for as their principall charge and office is to governe and rule, and they therefore are called, Reges, failing to performe their office and dutie they

make themselves hated, odious and vnworthie of the power and dignitie which

### THE LIFE OF THEODO-SIVS THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND FIFTITH RO-MANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.



they enioy.

ter that Gratianus was dead, the whole burthen and care for both peace and warre, appertaining to the Empire, rested upon Theodosius. The first enterprise that he undertooke, was in Italie against the tyrant Maximus, who made the Emperour Gratianus to be staine. And besteging him in Aquileia, made him die like a traitor, together with a sonne of his. And haning triumphed in Rome, he restored the emtire to Valentinian. And returning to Constantinople within short space after, ne understoode that Valentinian was

flaine; and that onely two (to wit) Arbogastes and Eugenius, vsurped the Empire. Wh. reupon returning againe into Italie, he fought with these two tyrants, and ouercame them both, more by miracle and by the especiall grace of God, then through his power or any humane wisedome. After this victorie, the whole charge of the Empire both East and West, rested upon him alone; but he calling his Conne Honorius, inuested him in the Empire of the West, and to Arcadius be left the Empire of the East: but because they were bath children, and very little, be gave them two tutors, men no lesse valuant in armes in the warres, then politike in peace. After this, happening to be excommunic ate and absolued by S. Ambrose Bishop of Milan, for certaine cruelties committed in Thessalonica. falling grienouflie sicke he dyed at the age of fiftie yeeres.



Ixe yeeres raigned THEODOSIV sin companie with GRA-TIANVS, when GRATIANVS was flaine by the commandemet of Maximys, who as a tyrant and viurper proclaimed himselfe Emperour: and by reason of GRATIANS death, all the care and trouble both for warre and peace refled vpon THEODOSIVS, who was very fufficient, and wellable to support the same. For although that young VALENTINIAN was in Italy, yet he had neither power

nor the hart to revenge the death of his brother GRATIANVS; but knowing that MAXIMVS came with a great armie, and was alreadie entred Italy, he abandoned it, and went to Constantinople to intreate aid of THEODOSIVS: Who taking compaffion of the two brothers, the one flaine by treason, and the other wrongfullie dispossessed of his Empire, of his naturall and accustomed valour, he resolved to go into Italy to reuenge the death of the one, and to restore the other to his estate. by purlying and destroying the new and mightie tyrant. Whereupon leaving his fonne Arcadivs in Constantinople, taking VALENTINIAN with him, he made preparation for his departure, raising the greatest and best forces that he was able. and began to march through Gallia Cifalpina, which is now called Lombardie. where MAXIMV salreadie was in the citie of Aquileia, having made ANDROGA THIV s generall of his armie to make head against THEODOSIVS.

This ANDROGATHIVS was a politick and a valiant man in the warres, and he, which flue the Emperour GRATIANVS, who with great care and diligence had taken all the streights, rivers, bridges and passages, whereby THEODOSIVE might passe: and afterwards changing his mind, thinking that THEODOSIVE peraduenture would have paffed his armie by fea, he drew his forces from the mountaines, and from those places which he had left them to guard, and embarked them abourd a great number of ships and barks, purposing to ouerthrow him, and to take him prisoner upon the water. The valorous THEODOSIVS being advertised hereof, marched by great iournies, and finding the passages open, entred with his troupes into the plaines of Lombardie, and befieged the citie of Aquileia, wherein the viurping Emperour was, before that ANDROGATHIVS could ouertake him; and compaffing the citie round about, those which were within it with him of meere feare having guiltie consciences, delivered him into the hands of THEODOSIVS, without staying for any assault, or fight, and he instly made him (as a traitor and a rebell to his Prince) to be put to death. The like was afterwards done by a sonne of his, called Victor, whom his father had created bis sonne Vic- and entituled Emperour, to avoid the perils & troubles that might ensue. When ANDROGATHIVS which was his Generall, being upon the fea with a very mightic nauic, vnderstood of the taking and death of MAXIMV s, he was so ouer-Androgathins come with forrow and despaire, that he cast himselfe over-boord out of his galley wherein he was, into the sea, and therein was drowned, and his people wanting a leader, yeelded themselves to THE OD OSIVS: And so without either death or bloud-flied God gave him a very great victorie; and from France, Britanny, Ger-

tor put to death by Theodofins.

THEODOSIVS.

many and Spaine, came Ambassodours vnto him, yeelding him their obedience, with great humilitie and deuotion. Having perfourmed this enterprife, he went with young VALENTINIAN to Rome, the principall head of the Empire, where they were received with a solemne triumph (as R v FFINVs and CASSIODO-RV S report) whither he fent for his young fonne ARCADIVS from Conflantinople where he left him, to the end that he might be knowne and honoured in Rome: triumphed in wherein heremained certaine daies reforming the abuses and disorders therein, Rome. and he inflicted great punishment, and did great inflice vpon certaine cuill and wicked persons. And, as he was a deuout and good Christian; so he tooke great care to reforme the abuses in the Church and in religion. And finallie, setting all things in good order, he returned to Conflantinople, to gouerne the Empire of the East, and to VALENTINIAN he left all the West, leaving him an armie & power fufficient to defend the fame, which is no small argument of his goodnes and loyaltie, that being of power able (if he had would to have made himselfe onely Monarch and lord of the whole) yet he held it for greater honour and greatnes to reconquer the Empire, and to restore it to him, to whom in right it did appertaine, then to hold the fame himselfe. THEODOSIVS being returned to Constantinople, VALENTINIAN went for France, to the end to be neere at hand if any occasion should be offred: where liuing in prosperitie and void of care, a Captain of his, whose name was ARBOGASTES, practised his death, who was a man of a hautie stomack, politike, venturous, and of great power, by reason of the place and authoritie which he held neere about the Emperour, whom PAVLVS OROSIVS and PAVLVS DIACONVS do call Comes, or Earle: for in those times we find that name and dignitie, and before that also, and these were those which were Gouernours and Captaines of Prouinces, and sometimes were the Emperours companions, to which were comitted matters of the greatest importance: In like manner as the auncient Confuls, when they went to make a conquest of any countrey, had with them Legates, which is as much as, Lieutenants. This Arboyafter ARBOG ASTES resolved with himselfe to kill VALENTINIAN, thereby to ad-the Emperour uance an Emperour of his making, although it prospered ill, not daring to vsurp Valentinian. it himselfe, for that he was of base parentage, a stranger borne, and an Infidell, and for other causes which in the historie are not mentioned. Finallie, he practised with one Evgenivs, who of a Grammarian and a Rhetorician, being for that cause well beloued and esteemed, came to beare armes and to follow the court, and was now highlie regarded and of great account, promifing him to kill Va-LENTINIAN, and to make him Emperour, letting him to understand that it was a matter possible and easie to be done. Ev G ENIVs accepted what this wicked man offred him, and ARBOGASTES vsed such meanes that he corrupted the Eunuches which waited in VALENTINIAN's chamber, and agreed with them that they should strangle him in the night, and give it out in speech that they found him dead in the morning, and they did fo. VALENTINIAN being in the citie of Vienna in France, fleeping in his bed, was by these Eunuches strangled, and fleangled by they published abroad, that he had hanged himselfe eighteene yeeres after that his Ennuches. his brother had nominated him Emperour. The manner of his death was kept fo fecret, that it was bruted abroad that he had hanged himselfe: fo as PROSPE-RVS in the addition which he made to EVSEBIVS his booke of times writing his death, faith, that he died in that manner.

Presentlie so soone as his death was knowne, before that the treason was distance made couered, ARBOGASTES nominated and made Ev GENIVS Emperour. What Emperour by

thefe Arbogaftes.

these two men did, being of greatest authoritie, was generallic approved by all men; and by meanes of their reputation, and through their cunning, large promiles and great gifts, they leuicd a great number of men of warre, aswell Barbarians as Romanes, and so became Lords of all the Provinces: And although that Ev-GENIVS bare the name of Emperour, yet all was ordred and disposed accor-

THEODOSIVS.

dinglie as it pleased ARBOGASTES. Within short space Theodosivs was advertised of this sact. for which he was very fory, and therewith much troubled, feeing how dangerous a warre lav before him; but accounting it a great dishonor and a shame to suffer such a matter to passe vnpunished, with the greatest expedition and diligence that could be made, he mustred up his men of warre, and with all possible speed, departed from Constantinople, leaving his sonne ARCADIVS therein, and HONORIVS also. whom he then made Emperour, appointing him to be equall and companion with his brother. But as a good and deuout Christian, the first prouision that he made, was to fast and to pray, that it might please God to give him victorie against those infidels and tyrants; and so he sent to a Monke which was accounted a very holie man, whose name was I oun, dwelling in the citie of Thebes in Egypt, to pray for him: who fent him word that he should have the victorie, but should dve in Italy, and neuer returne to Constantinople. THEODOSIVS being come to the confines of Italy, the tyrants had fo great forces, and had taken fo good order for all matters concerning the warres, that all passages were stopt in the Alpes, and at the foote thereof were EVGENIVS and ARBOGASTES, with their whole armic: fo as THEODOSIVS was much troubled and diffressed, aswell after that he had passed those passages and mountaines, as when he was entred into Lumbardie, where he found himselfe inclosed about with enemies, which on energy fide stopped the comming of any victuals to his camp; they having besides this. a greater number of men then he had, and no leffe experienced and valiant in the warres then his were. But the valiant Emperour vling the best meanes that he could in all things, as a faithfull Christian expected and hoped for his best reliefe from God, to whom with teares he made his continual supplications. Truly the danger and extremitie wherein he was, and the multitude of his enemies was fo great, that all writers affirme, that he had been vtterlie loft, if God in a battaile that enfued, had not shewed a manifest and apparant miracle. The night before the battaile he spent altogether in prayer, without either eating or sleeping : and the next day feeing himfelfe charged on every fide, he fet his men in very good order to fight; and with great courage and boldnes, attended the comming of his enemies, and presentlie in the beginning a captaine of theirs called ARBICIVS came ouer to his fide with his whole charge, which was a good figne of his good fucceffe: and the battaile beginning where Romanes fought against Romanes, they fought at even hand, most cruellie killing and wounding one another. The other battailions and squadrons which were auxiliaries of fundrie nations, those of THEODOSIVS his fide had the worfe; fo as at the first charge tenne thousand Gothes which were in his pay were flaine: which when he faw and confidered, he lifted up his cies to heaven, and with a true faith and fledfast hope shedding many teares, prayed to the Lord that he might not be overthrowne in so iust a cause. At that instant a Captaine of his called BARBARIVS, with a great troupe of fouldiers came to the rescue of certaine squadrons which in shew were even ouerthrowne; and he came with fuch courage, that they which were in a manner vanquished recovered strength and heart, in such manner, that without retiring,

they fought most valiantly for the victorie; but the enemies were so many that it feemed impossible for them to defend themselves. At that instant it pleased God to fend them fuccour from heaven, which was, that fuddenly there arose so violent a winde and tempest, as the like thereof had neuer been seene by any man A miraculous then living; which without annoyance to the Emperours people, did beate in their enemies faces with fuch force, that it wholie bereaued them of their fight; fo as they were not able to march forwards: and the winde was fo strong and fo mightie, that all the arrowes, stones, darts, and launces, which they shot and hurled were thereby borne backe againe, and they which threw them were therewith wounded, in fuch manner, that it most plainly appeared to be miraculous. and the especiall gift of God. Which the most Christian Emperour perceiving, rendring thankes to God for the same, incouraged and animated his people, so as Agreat vittewithin short space hee obtained a complete victorie. For his enemies souldiers Theodossius tooke no other care, but how they might faue themselues by flight: but E v G E-NIVS perseuering obstinate in his treason, was taken fighting, and brought to THEODOSIVS, who commaunded him to be flaine: yet fome write that he kil- Eugenius led him himselfe. All writers affirme, that ARBOGASTES seeing himselfe ouer-prefence of throwne, fled from the battaile, and finding no certaine place of refuge, with his Theodofius. owne fword did cut his owne throte So as THEODOSIV'S obtained a most glo- Arbogastes did rious victorie, followed the execution, and had the spoile of his enemies Campe. All his owner throntowill be the description of the spoile of his enemies Campe. Of this battell & the strange accident that happened therein, we have for testimo-bis or one nie, not onely Christian and godly authors, more then a few, as well such as lived sound. at that time and neere vnto it, as also one CLAVDIANVS a Heathen Poet of that age, who reciteth the same in heroicall verse most excellently, in the third and fourth Consulthip of Honorivs the some of Theodosivs.

After that THE ODOSIVS had obtained this victorie, there was no man either in the East or West that durst oppose himselfe against his power; so as all the Princes of the Empire sent him their Ambassadours to congratulate his victorie: and many barbarous nations did the like, and fo hee became absolute and onely Lord of the whole Empire. And feeing that he was free from warres, he came to Milan, whereof S. A MEROSE was Archbishop, where he remained all the rest of his life time, applying himselfe to civil government; whereof in the warres he neuer left to haue all possible care. Being thus in Wilan, acknowledging himselfe to be but mortall, and knowing how vnfound and difeafed hee was in bodie, he purposed to prouide for matters to come: wherefore he sent to Constantinople for his fonneHonorivs; to whom(by the affent and good will of all men)he affigned after his daies the Empire of Italy and of all the West; and to his other some Theodosius ARCADIVS, the Empire of the East; and into Africa and the proninces thereof, Acadims and he fent a principal man of great wifedome and experience called GILDVS to go- Honorius Em. uerne the same, and he himself tooke care for and had the oversight of the whole. Perous. With such prosperitie was the world gouerned (as PROSPERVS Writeth) the fpace of three yeeres: for fo long time lived THEODOSIVS in Milan, in companie with the great Doctor S. A MBR O S E, with whom there happened a notable matter, which because it is an example of humilitie. I meane to declare in a more large manner then ordinarie, which is also written by THEODORETVS4 PAVLYS DIACONYS, RVFFINYS, and CASSIODORYS.

Theodosivs being in The falonica, a very rich, a very populous and a noble citie in the province of Macedonia, there happened a great tumult among the people, against the Magistrates and governours of the citie; and their suric and presump-

353

tion grew to be so great, that they flew the Judges and all those which tooke part with the Emperour in the gouernment. Which when THEODOSIVS vnderflood notwithstanding that he was very vertuous, yet did hee much desire to execute his displeasure against them, and not without inst cause: but hee did therein fo farre exceede the bounds of reason, that hee made his souldiers put to death seuen thousand persons of the common people, without making any difference betweene the faultie and the faultleffe. Which punishment was held for rigorous and very cruell; although the offence were very great, chiefly against a Prince so iust and so much admired in al his actions. Amongst those which reprodued him therefore, the holy Doctor S. A MEROSE then Bithop of Milan was one; and the Emperour afterwards comming to that citie, and being received as to his estate appertained, the next day he meant to have gone to the Church to have done his deuotion and to pray, as of custom he vied, nothing thinking of what he had done at The Calonica, whereof it was thought that hee had long before repented. But S.A MEROSE to the end that his punishment should be as publike as his offence. with great authoritie and boldnes fet himselfe in the Church doore, and told the Emperour that hee should not enter thereat; and making a learned oration vnto him, wherein with the authoritie of a Bishop, hee opened vnto him his fault and offence; concluding with excommunicating him, and forbidding him to come into the Church All which speeches the Emperour heard, with great patience, and returned to his palace, obeying the excommunication and prohibition, and fo remained eight moneths without comming any more to the Church; at the end whereof, a private servant and Captaine of his (whose name was RVFFF NVs) finding the Emperour melancholike, and discontented for that hee was so long excommunicated, offered to goe to S.A M BR O S E to get him absolution. perfivading him to come to the Church, and he would goe before to obtaine his leaue. The Emperour, although he much doubted thereof, did fo. But R v F FI NV s was not onely denied of his request, but was highly reprehended by the Bithop, as a minister and counsellor of the Emperours crueltie: which when hee perceiued, he sent to aduertise the Emperour thereof, and to aduise him not to come thither, for that at that time he should by no meanes be received. The Emperour met with the messenger vpon the way, and hearing what message hee brought, answered; Yet truly I will goe to see what penance my Pastor will lay vpon me for my offence. And fo went forwards untill that hee came to the Church doore, and went not in, but came where S.A M BROSE was, whom hee requested to abfolue him, and to permit him to come into the Church there to heare the diuine feruice. When S.A MEROSE faw the Emperour, and heard what hee faid, imagining that he came of purpose to goe into the Church, which hee was resolued to withstand, untill that he were absolued, or had done some open penance for the great crueltie which he had commaunded to be done, hee asked him wherefore he came so as a tyrant, contemning and violating the lawes? Whereto the Emperour mildly answered: I come not to breake the lawes, neither thy commaundement, neither will I passe ouer the threshold of this doore: but I come to request thee to loofe the bands wherewith thou hast bound me, and that thou wilt pray to God to forgine me my finnes, and not four the doores of his Church against me, which God openeth to all finners which heartily repent. What repentance haft thou shewed (quoth the Bishop) for so hamous an offence? and with what salue haft thou healed so mortall a wourd? Thou (quoth the Emperour) art to instruct me, and to fhew me what I ought to doe, and thou shalt see that I will accomplish

it a fufficient penance for him to be excommunicated from the Church the space

CADIVS to rule Constantinople and all the East. And for as much as these his two

his historie, & the most part of the other authors, in the fiftith yeere of his age, and

the eleuenth of his raigne, accounting from the death of GRATIANVS, raigning

perour, according to all authors that write of him, was of constitution of bodie,

countenance, and gesture, very like to the Emperor TRAIANE, as by TRAIANES

statues and pictures, which in that time were remaining, might eafily be percei-

ued, and might be imagined by that which was written both of the one and the

conditions, and had the fame qualities, and was naturally fo inclined; fauing that

of eight moneths, with faire and charitable speeches said; Thy penance Theo-D. o s I v s shall be this, that (seeing that thou to follow thy owne will and to execute thy wrath diddest commit so cruel a murder) thou shalt presently proclaime Emperor These and establish a law, that no man, whom thou shalt adjudge or condemne to die, or dofus by Saint any thy fucceffors, shall be executed within thirtie daies after that thou hast pronounced the fentence of death against him. At the end of which thirtie daies, thou fall be againe demaunded, whether thou doest hold thy commaundement for just: for by that time being free from passion, thou wilt judge of thy selfe whether thou hast infly indged, or no. When THEODOSIVS heard this, hee presently commaunded that law to be written & made it to be proclaimed: and he himself observed it so long as he lived, wherof much good ensued. This law being made, the Emperour came into the Church, where making his prayers and doing his denotion, he received the Sacrament : and from thencefoorth loued the Bishop very deerely, and vsed his counsell in many matters: For as he was hastie and cholerick, this law was a bridle to restraine him from being too extreme in punishing offenders. THEODORETVS reciteth one example thereof, which was, that the citizens of Antioch having committed a great offence, and made a great vprore in the citie, THEODOSIVS commaunded great punishment to be inflicted vpon the malefactors, which was not presently executed, by reason of this law: and afterwards he altered his opinion, which hee attributed to the counsell of S.A M-BROSE, whom hee loued so much, that to enjoy his companie and counsell hee Raid in Milan, and therein made his abode althe rest of his life time. From thence he fent to Constantinople for his sonne Honor Ivs, who came to Milan; and within a little while after, THEODOSIVS fell fo extremely ficke, that after care taken for his foules health, he disposed of the Empire, ordaining his some Honor Ivs to have the government of Rome, and of all the provinces of the West: and A x-

fonnes were very young, and not of fit yeeres to gouerne, hee left with them as their tutors and gouernours, two very sufficient men both in warre and peace, the made Stillie one called RVFFINVS, and the other STILICO; RVFFINVS to be With ARCA- and Ruffinus DIVS in the East, and STILICO with HONORIVS in the West: and into Africa tutors and and the provinces thereof he fent Gildes, to governe the fame as Lieutenant two former Hoto the two Emperours, to whom hee gaue that charge. After that hee had fet all norms and Arthings in order, his difease so much encreased, that hee could not endure it any Gildus to be longer: wherefore recommending his foule to God, he departed out of this pre-their Lieutefent life, as SEXIVS AVRELIUS VICTOR faith, which here maketh an end of nant in Africa.

alone, and with GRATIANV s other fixe yeeres; fo as in all he raigned seuenteene yeeres; and in the yeere of our Lord, three hundred, ninetie and feuen. This Em-

other: And they write, that he was not onely like vnto him, and did refemble him Theodofian in bodie and gefture; but that hee did imitate and excell him in vertue and good Traine.

qualities.

if TRAIANEWere spotted with any vice, THEODOSIVS was free from it. It is Theodofius his Written that TRAIANE Was a little too much given to the drinking of wine, but we reade that THE ODOSIVS Was most temperate, in eating and drinking. TRA-I ANE was very defirous of triumphs, glorie and honour, THEODOSIV'S defpiled them and held them for things of no moment: but he ever fought to obtaine the victorie, and in all battailes and skirmishes was both valiant and politike, euer giuing thankes and honour vnto God as a good Christian. In conclusion, THE opost v s was of admirable valour force and courage, very politike and expert in the warres, of an excellent wit and judgement in civill government, a lover of juflice and equitie, merciful, pitiful, and of a most noble inclination, although somewhat hastie and cholericke against malefactors; but hee was presently appealed and easily entreated. And to moderate this passion, besides S.A MBR OSEhis law concerning matters of death, he yied of custome (knowing his owne hastie condition)not to determine of any thing, untill that he had repeated ouer the foure and twentie letters of the Greeke Alphabet: for in that space his wrath would bee affwaped. He was much honoured and beloued by all men, especially by such as were honest. He was exceeding liberall, continent and shamefast, very circumspect and carefull, indifferently well learned and seene in historie. He much desired to know the acts of the ancient, and greatly honoured learned and wife men. He was well spoken, and of a pleasant and merrie conversation, framing himselfe with great discretion to the qualitie of those persons with whom he discoursed. maintaining the mateflie of his effate and the authoritie of his person; and had also other excellent conditions and vertues too long to recite. THEODOSIVE when he died left two formes (of which we have alreadie spoken) and one daughter. His fonnes ARCADIVS and HONORIVS were Emperours, both

which he had by his first wife whose name was FLACILLA an excellent and a most religious woman; his daughters name was

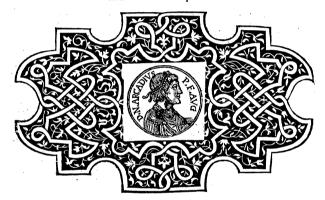
PLACIDIA GALLA, which hee had by his second wife, who was the daughter of the Empe-TOUT VALENTINIANV sthe first

THE



### HE LIFE OF ARCADIVS AND HONORIVS, ONELY OF

THAT NAME, AND THE ONE AND fiftith Romane Emperours.



THE ARGVMENT.



He Empire being under the government of Theodosius his two sonnes, and so under the tutors ordained by him, that is, Ruffinus and Stilico, which ought to have taken care for the youngmen, and to have governed them as fathers: but they not only neglected the tutele of the youthes committed to their charge (nothing caring that they should bee acknowledged for Emperours) but sought to make themselues absolute princes, but they both came to an enillend. For

Ruffinus who was Arcadisu his tutor in the East, his treason being discourred, had his head Striken off and set ouer one of the gates of Constantinople. And Stilico, who was Honorius his tutor in the West, notwithstanding that he went against the Gothes, yet he temporized, to the end to bring his treason to some effect; which being in the end discourred, he was staine by Honorius his commaundement: which was the beginning of the otter rume of the Romane Empire, which was in a manner wholy destroyed by the Gothes. In which time Arcadius, who had very peaceably enioyedhis Empirethe space of certaine yeeres, died in Constantinople. But sundrie barbarous nations onerranne all Honorius his Empire, he lying in Rauenna making small shew to be an Emperour; being very negligent, when there was neede of great care and diligence. Neuerthelesse gining charge of thewarres to Sundrie of his captaines, he freed his estate (excepting Spaine which was

conquered by the Gothes, the Vandales and other strange nations.) In which time he fell sicke and died in Rome, without leaning any heires of his body : for he had no children by any wife ; when he had held the Empire in a manner eight and twentie yeeres.



Ruely I am afraid that those which shall reade this Historie. will reproue me for spending more time about the life of THEODOSIVS, then I vieto doe in writing the lives of other Emperours; but he that shall duly weigh and consider his vertues and excellencies, will judge that I have been rather too briefe, then otherwife. Wherefore holding the time and labour herein spent for wel employed, let vs come to speake of his sonnes, in whose Historie I can vie no grea-

ter breuitie, then in that of their father, confidering the great and fundrie accidents which happened in thirtie yeeres; for ARC ADIVS raigned little leffe; and fo likewise from henceforth we shall be constrained to write more at large, according to the alterations of estates and other matters, whereof we shall have occasi-

on to speake.

THEODOSIVS left the Empire in such subjection, so peaceable, and in such quiet to his sonnes Arcadivs and Honorivs, that if the wickednes of their tutors had not altred and troubled it, they might eafily have ruled and supported the same. But those which were put in trust to see that all should be well, were the cause that the Empire was molested, in such manner, that it plainly appeareth. that they were the occasion of the totall perdition of the Empire, or at the least. the beginning thereof. For fo foone as THEODOSIVS was dead, GILDYS which was Gouernour of Africa, and of the provinces therein, and Rypfinys and STILICO in their gouernments, each of them practized to get the Empire for himselfe, and to dispossesse their sourraigne Lord; and each of them shewed his determination so soone as he had opoquinitie thereto. Arca-DIVS with his gouernour RVFFINVS went to Constantinople, whither he commaunded his fathers dead body to be brought to be buried with great folemnitie. Honorivs remained in Italie, with Stilico: and fothey began to raigne without any contradiction or refistance, in the same order as their father had left them. So soone as GILDVS, gouernour of Africa, understood that THEODOSIVS was dead, he tooke no longer care to conceale his determination. but presently shewed it openly in his actions; and beginning to make himselfe Lord of all that countrie, not with the title of Comes or Earle, as vntill then he held (which as PAVLVS DIACONVS writeth, was then given to governours of prouinces) but as absolute Lord thereof, without acknowledging any subiection or dutie to Honorivs, or to Arcadivs. This Gilbys had a brother whose name was MASTELZERIVS, avery good and loyall Christian, who to the vttermost of his power refisted his brothers proceedings. But GILDVs was alreadic fo mightic and of fuch power, that MASTELZERIVS whom some call MASTELZEZ was driven to flic into Iialie, and so he remained fole and absolute Gildus put two Lord of all Africa. And GILDV's vnderstanding that his brother was gone of his brothers to the Emperour (like a cruell tyrant) made two of his fonnes which were his Nephewes and left in Africa, to be flaine, nothing regarding how necrethey were to him in bloud. MASTELZERIVS came into Italie, and making relation to Honorivs, for to fay better, to Strice, of what was happened (whose wisedome and courage was very great, although grounded vpon disloyaltie) had

Each of those for tutors over bis fonnes fought, particu-Inly to make bimselfe an Emperour.

The title of Earle to who it was given.

an armie giuen him, and all things thereto needefull, and so was fent against his Mastelzerius brother, as against a common enemie. And MASTELZERIVS aswell to perfourme his dutie, as to be reuenged of the death of his fonnes, with the greatest gainst bus broexpedition that he could make, departed towards Africa, although with small ther Gildus. forces, trusting in the equitie of his cause, in the friendship that he had in that countrey, and aboue all, in the help and power of God, which he dayly implored with teares, and most deuout prayers. And, as PAVLVS OROSIVS reporteth. comming to an Iland called Capraria, neere to Naples, he caried with him from thence certaine deuout religious men which lived there, in whose prayers he reposed greater trust, then in the strength of his whole armie: with which he made fo many faltings and prayers, that it seemed that God heard him; for he prenailed without any battaile or bloudshed, which happened in this manner. Comming youn the coast of Africa with the small forces which he brought, with great courage he went to land, and entrenched his armie and fortified the same, and fent abroad to give notice of his arrivall, and of his power in all places, fro which he thought his friends and fouldiers would have come to joine with him: but his brother came against him with threescore and tenne thousand men very well appointed. MASTELZERIVS feeing himselfe in this distresse, was no way discouraged, neither made any doubt of the victorie, affuring himfelfe that to obteine the same, it lay in the hand of God, and not in the multitudes of men and horses. And having a determination to passe by a certaine port, by that meane to avoid his enemie and brother, but confidering with himselfe how hardlie it was to be perfourmed (as PAVLVS OROSIVS writeth) he made his prayers, and praying, fell asleepe and dreamed, that within three daies he should obteine the victorie. Hereupon MASTELZERIVS remained there vntill the third day, and then with inuincible courage fallied out of his trenches against his enemies, which thought of no fuch matter, but rather dayly expected to have had him in their hands, and they comming foorth against him, he went towards them, before his troupes, aduifing and perswading them to yeeld obedience, and not to beare armes against him: for he was sent thither to them by the Emperour their soueraigne Lord. And as an Enfigne-bearer would have charged him, and those which were with him, he stept to him and wounding him, smote his colours to the ground; with which one onely blow, it pleafed God that he subdued and pacified all the rest: for there was not any one that made any resistance, but all the Ensigne-bearers and ordinarie fouldiers came ouer to him, and yeelded their obedience; and Maffelzerius the fouldiers of that countrey fled, and fo did his brother, and he had the victorie, against he brother, as we may fay, miraculoufly, for fo all men accounted the fame.

This GILDV's feeing himselfe abandoned by his souldiers, fled to the sea side, and embarking himselfe aboord a ship did set faile, thinking to haue escaped, and having failed some space, it pleased God that the wind came contrarie, and he for ought that he could do was driven to land, where he was taken, and by his broand behealed
their commaundement had his head flriken off, in requitall of the crueltie which by his behealed he had shewed to his sonnes, and for his treason against his Lords: MASTELZE- commaunde-RIVs remaining without controulement victorious, and maifter of his brothers ment. Camp. But afterwards feeing himfelfe mightie, as of custome, in prosperitie men grow infolent, having no fuch feare of God before his cies as he ought to have had, he purposed and attempted to have the Empire of Africa to himselfe, with- Mastelzering out any regard of the Emperour Honorivs, who had fent him thirher, which fouldiers, and his disloyaltie his captaines could not indure, and therefore they flue him. These the care.

follicited the Gothes to inuade the Em-The death of Ruffinus.

> Stilico father in law to Ho-

Elifes and trea-

The Alanes, and their originall. The originall of the Var-

two brothers being dead. Africa remained for a space in quiet subjection to the Emperours. These warres aforesaid are excellentlie well written in verse by CLAYDIANY s. While as these matters passed in Africa, ARCADIV s was not idle in Constantinople: for his governour R v F FINVS vnwilling any longer to conceale his wicked purposes, sought by all meanes to bring ARCADIVS into some distresse, that he might vsurp the Empire; and to that end sollicited the Gothes and Ruffinus Area- other nations to make warre in the Empire. Which being discourred, ARCA-DIV s procuring it, although but a boy, he was flaine by certaine companies of Italian fouldiers, which striking off his head, set it ouer one of the gates of the citic of Constantinople. This RVFFINVS, as some say, was borne in Britannie. Others fav, that he was a Frenchman, a man of great judgement, and an excellent Captaine, but difloyall, and ill inclined. His goods ARCADIVS gaue to an Ennuch of his called EVTROPIVS, who was very private with him. Against this RVFFINVS (declaring his doings) the aforefaid CLAYDIANVS Wrote two bookes in heroicall verse, and by his death A R C A D I V s remained at libertie, and Lord of his Empire in the East with greater quietnes, then his brother Hono-RIVS: for Stillico who gouerned in the West was farre more cunning and fubtile then R v F FIN v s, and was very valiant, and a most expert man of warre: and as he had as wicked or a worse intent then he, so he knew better how to couer the same as well by his wit, as the great power which he enjoyed. For besides that he was Honorivs his gouernor, or tutor, he was twife his father in lawe: for Honorivs had his daughter to wife, having been first contracted to another daughter of his, which died vnmaried. This STILLE o was by birth a Vandall, and having purposed to make a sonne of his called Evenerary s Emperour. by his great (although malitious) wit, he concealed the fame, vntill time of better oportunitie: whereto he thought that the best and most assured way was, to bring the Emperours into necessities, destresse and dangers, to the end that he only might be the meane to redreffe and recouer all losses. For he had so prowd a heart, and to great power, that he was perfwaded that to often as it pleafed him he was able to remedie all matters, and that the need which the Emperour should haue of him, would open the way to his purposes. And to that end by denises and fecret practifes, he follicited many nations to make warres upon the Empire: as the Alanes, whose originall I thinke we have described, which according to PTOLOMY Was of Golland, and after MARCELLINYS and PLINY, Was of Sarmatia in Europe, who at that time inhabited part of Germany: and the Sweuians. a most fierce people of the same Germany, and the Vandales borne also therein. called Vandales, after the name of a River of that name in Scythia, from whence they first descended, as is about declared, which by PLINY and PTOLOMY are called Vandalines: and those Burgundians which we now call Burgonians, of which CORNELIUS TACITUS faith, that they were of the same Vandales, & all one nation. They were called Burgundians, for that in times past being driven out of Germany by DRV SV s and TIBERIV'S NERO, in the time of AVG VS TVS CESAR, they were constrained to dwell in the fields, and suburbs of cities called Burgi, or Burghes, and thereof tooke their name of Burgundes or Burgundians, but they were very famous by many authors. He having mooued these nations, and procured them to make warre, fometimes by letters from certaine persons which promised to aid and affish them, and sometimes by causing displeafures and violences to be offred them, the more to incense them: He vsed yet another policie, which was, that the Gothes, called Vilogothes, which (as we

haue faid) for the space of 21. yeeres had serued in the Emperours pay, and had ferued faithfullie euer fince that the Emperour THEODOSIVS had received them into his service, after the death of ATHANARICV s their King, he found a meane to cassiere them, and that they should be ill intreated. & had in contempt. Which they tooke for such a disgrace, and in such scorne, that they presentlie determined to mutine: and doing fo, chose a Nobleman of their owne nation for their King, whose name was ALARICVS, and began to inuade the countries of Alaricus Hungarie and Austrich. Matters standing in these termes, STILICO his drift was Gather. that the Gothes, as men which knew, and had good experience in Italie, should go to make a conquest thereof; and as the other nations, as Vandales, Alanes, and Sueuians, should inuade France, he should have the charge to defend Italy: and Honorivs being thus diffrested, should defend France in person, where he should be either slaine or ouerthrowne, or at the least be so oppressed, that he ouercomming the Gothes which he held to be eafily done, would make himfelfe Lord of Rome, which was the head of the Empire, and afterwards would do the like by all the rest, which happened not as he expected; but of his treason arose the destruction and totall decay of the whole Empire, and of himselfe also. Eight vecres were expired fince the death of THEODOSIVS, and that HONORIVS and ARCADIVS raigned, when STILICO, and another Noble man, whose name was AVRELIANVS were chosen Consuls, and the Visogothes which were put out of pay, began to make open warres in Hungary, and Austrich: and this warre The warres which in the beginning feemed to be of small importance, their force and power of the Gother. in short space increased in such maner, that all the world stood in seare of them. For as PAVLYS OROSIVS an Author of that time, PAVLYS DIACONVS and others do write, So foone as the Gothes were in a mutinie, a certaine King whole name was RADAG ASIVS, joyned with them, with two hundred thousand other Gothes, all most fierce men of warre. But it is true, that they write not how, or from whence came so great a number of men, neither what this King R AD A G A- Radagasius says was. It feemeth that then it was a thing fo publikely knowne, that no man King of the was ignorant, or stood in doubt thereof, and therefore needlesse to be repeated. Gothes, by reason whereof we are now ignorant thereof: but they most constantly affirme, the number of the men of warre to be fuch as is alreadie specified.

A LARICV sand RADAGASIVS comming together, without finding any refiftance or force able to offend them, ouerranne and spoiled all Thracia, Hungarie, The ernell Austrich, Slauonia, Dalmatia, and the frontiers thereof, in such fort, that it see- voarres which med that divels, and not men had passed that way: for they left nothing stan-medein the ding, but the earth and the aire: which S.HIEROME, who lived in that time, lands of the writing to PAVIVS and EVSTACHIVS plainly expresseth in these words: The Empire. brute beafts have also endured the wrath of the Lord in this warre: for the cities being laid waste, and the people thereof put to the sword, the like is done by the very fields; fo as they lie bare, defolate, and defert; whereof the prouinces of Thracia and Slauonia, and the countrie wherein I was borne beare true record: whereby it seemeth that nothing remaineth but the earth, the aire, the bushes and the woods, for all the reft is spoiled and destroied. After these inhumane spoiles, ALARICVS and RADAGASIVS resolved to come into Italy, dividing their armies into fundrie troupes: for it was impossible that so huge an armie should be able to march together. When these newes were knowne in Rome, there fell so great a terrour among the citizens, and generally ouer all Italy, that they all held

themselves for lost and dead men.

Radazafius came into Italy

Vldinus and Sarra Captains against Rada. gasius.

The Hunnes aided the Romanes.

feated.

The death of Radagafius.

К лиеппа.

Alaricus can into Ftaly.

excellent Captaine of his

RADAGASIVS being arrived in Italy, and having passed the Apennine mountaines, came to the mountaines Fiefole in Tuscane. There came in the behalfe of the Empire against R AD AG AS IVS two Captaines, which served the Emperour HONORIVS, the one of which was called V LDINVS, and the other SARRA, with

ARCADIVS.

a great number of Gothes and Hunnes in the Emperours pay, which made head against RADAG ASIVS, and stopped the passages in the mountaines against him. and cut off his victuals, whereof he stood in great want, confidering the greatnes of his armie. These Hunnes and Gothes which came to the aide of the Ro-

manes, PAVLVS OROSIV's, who, as wee may fay, was an eye witneffe, and also PAVLYS DIACONV sand others, write of their comming: but they write not how, or from whence they then came; although it bee alreadie declared from whence they were: but neuerthelesse they were a great desence of Italy; so that the Lord abated the pride of RADAGASIVS, through hunger, thirst. and the want of necessaries. But herein the authors disagree: for PROSPERVS

faith, that RADAGASIVS was ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, STILICO leading a great Armie against him. But PAVLVS OROSIVS, and PAVLVS DIACONVS, after they have spoken of the two Captains VLDINVS & SARRA. fay, that RADAGASIVS and his host were ouerthrowne through pure hunger and thirst without any battaile, and that they were taken prisoners like sheepe. But howfoeuer it happened for it might be that there was a battaile, and the rest alfo, the truth is, that hee and his armie were overthrowne in this journey, and all taken prisoners by Honorivs his souldiers, in such fort that S.Avgvstine

Dei, affirmeth, that in one only day RADAG ASIV sloft about one hundred thoufand men; and all authors affirme, that a great number of them died of hunger: and that there was not a fouldier among the Romanes but had a droue of captimes, as if they had been sheepe; and that they were so cheape, that for a peece of gold, which is now worth but a ducat, a man might have bought a whole companie of them. And there fell fo great a mortalitie and ficknes amongst them, that within short space they in a manner all died. And their King and Captaine R A-DAGASIVS Was likewise taken prisoner and put to death by HONORIVS. Ho-

NORIVS his vertue and valour is much commended in this matter by PAVLVS

who lived in that time, whose reports are to be beleeved, in his booke de Civitate

On os iv s; but (as by the histories it appeareth) hee seemed to be of very little worth, a very negligent and carelesse Prince, chiesly in matters concerning the wars, & at that time lay in Rauenna where he held his Court, which in those daies was a great and principall citie. And his brother ARCADIV slay in Conflantinople, from whence he lent aide and fuccors to his brother. This feare being past within a little while after Alaricus entred Italy, who was a man of greater wit & courage then R AD AG AS IVS Was, & his fouldiers were better trained and of greater Stillied the most experience; against whom STLLICO couragiously opposed himselfe, & the war began between them in the marches of Rauenna, and A LARIC vs was ouerthrown in battell by STILICO: for in those daies, STILIC of or valour and policie in the wars, had not his equall in the world. But his purposes being such as we have said, he would neuer throughly ouerthrow ALARICVS, but fometimes would make shew to be carelesse, & leave open the waies for him to passe; so as ALARICVS

well perceived that STILIC o had no meaning to overthrow him; and this war The comming continued betweene them (as some authors write) the space of three yeeres. About the fame time the Alanes, Hunnes, Vandales and Burgonians entred the lands of the Empire, making warre vpon the snoare sides of the river Rbine, wherof a new feare feifed the hearts of the people. When ALARICVS understood these newes, he sent to Honor Ivs to have peace, and some countrie in France, wherein he and his people might inhabite, promifing to defend that prouince against those nations, and therewith aduertising him that STILICO did cunningly prolong the warres against him. The Emperour beginning to be icalous of STILLE o, and notwith standing that hee was also certified by others of his treafon, yet for the present he dissembled the matter, and agreed with ALARICVS, touche Ala-

granting him his request, and taking securitie of him, sent him into France. Where ricus and Hoof it was imagined that two great benefits would have enfued; the one was, the norius the Empeace and quiet of Italy through his absence; the other was, the defence of person. France, wherein the Vandales, Hunnes, Alanes and Burgonians were alreadie entred; which all men affirmed to be aboue two hundred thousand men. But STI-Lico his treason marred all: for notwithstanding that he did that which Hono-RIVS commaunded in fuffering ALARICVS and the Gothes to begin their jour- Alaricus go ney in peace, and gaue them fuch things as were needfull, accordingly as the Emperour had appointed; yet as a man which altogether repined against peace, and chiefly that to A LARICVS should be committed the defence of France, he resol-

ued to breake and scatter all those troupes, and had such meanes thereto, as I will tell you, whereof enfued his owne totall destruction, and the ruine of the whole Empire, which happened in this manner.

ALARICVS, free from any fulpition (according to the agreement) went for France: but STILICO fecretly practifed with a Captaine in his armie which was stillio. a Iew whose name was S Av L, that he with his companie, faining some displeafure, or particular quarrell, vpon an Easter day when the Gothes mistrusting nothing (being Christians celebrated dinine service) should then set vpon them, and kill so many of them as he could: for by these meanes he was assured that the wars would begin againe, and therewith would his power and authoritie also begin, which with the peace was at an end. The Iew put this secret practise in execution. and the Gothes being luddenly fet vpon, received great hurt and dammage: but he presently paid for its for the Gothes in great haste putting themselves in armes fought with him; and there was SAV I flaine with the greatest part of his fouldiers. A LARICUS being herewith highly offended, returned against STILICO his armie, and STILIC of faining to stand in great feare, made shew not to dare to fight, but fent to the Emperour for new fuccours; who being aduertised of that which STILIC o thought to be most secret, and what had happened, concerning the Iew Savi, and standing in great feare of Srillo, fent certaine persons to the armie, which finding oportunitie thereto should kill both him & his sonne: which was performed accordingly, and his treason was disclosed, and the cause wherefore they were put to death. But herein although the Emperour Hono-R I v s vied a good policie, yet hee was retchlesse in prouiding for the rest: for hee fent not any fuch Generall to commaund his armie as the cafe required. So as the King ALARICVS either beleeued that the iniurie which SAVI had done to him, was done by the Emperours confent, or else he knew and saw his time and oportunitie: and thereupon finding no refiftance, marched directly with his whole armie towards Rome, the head and Empereffe of the world. And making most Alaricus recruell warre by fire and fword, he drew neere vnto it, in the yeere one thousand, turned as air fi one hundred and threescore, after the foundation thereof: and the Romanes and tooke it. standing upon their guard, he could not take it at the first assault; wherefore hee belieged it, which fiege continued two yeeres. Of the belieging of Rome, and how

red to Alari-

A LARICVS tooke it in the end, many authors write that it was for but in what manner it was taken, and what exploites were done during the time of the fiege, they write to briefly that in a manner they fay nothing thereof. But that it was takeil Pavivs Onosivs in his feuenth booke Pavivs Diaconvs in the life of Honorivs, Idriand sim his historic of the Gothes, S.Avgverine in his booke De Civitate Dei, S.HIER OME in his epiftle ad Principium, as a matter which happened in his time, an erre the fame and fo doth S.I sip on win his historie of the Gothes. Procopies a Greeke author, and others of latter time, as I could gather out of their writings, fay, that A LARICV's marching with his armie towards Rome, with a determination to doe that which afterwards he did, as to a Christian, although fierce and cruell, there came a Monke which very boldly (A-LARICY'S gitting him audience) admonished and counselled him to defift from his enterprise, and to consider that hee was a Christian, and that for the love of God hee should moderate his furie, and not seeme to reiovce in the slaughter of men and the shedding of humane bloud; and sith that Rome had not done him any offence, he should not goe thither. To whom they say, that A LARICV's made this answere: I let thee vnderstand, man of God, that I goe not of my owne will and defire against the great citie of Rome, but I affure thee, that there daily appea-A vision appear reth vnto me a man, who doth vrge and importune me thereto, saying, Get thee to Rome and destroy it, even to the ground. Whereat the religious man being greatly amazed durft fay no more. This I finde written in the Annales of Conftansinople annexed to the historie of EVTROPIVS: whereby it plainly appeareth. that the affliction of Rome was the especiall punishment of God. PAVLVS OR osays likewife affirmeth the fame, faying. That in like manner as God drew the mift Lor' out of Sodome, when he inflicted fo great punishment upon that citie; To did hee draw Pope In nocent the first out of Rome when Alanic's came to beliege it; who went to Rauenna to fee the Emperour Honor Ivs. Yet PLA-TINA writeth, that this misfortune happened in the time of Pope Zozimvs: but it may be that it began in the time of the one and ended in the time of the other. S.HIEROME lived also in those daies out of Rome, being then gone to doe penance in Bethlehem.

> belieged round about; where betweene the beliegers and the belieged, were many skirmishes, and many men were flaine in those two yeeres space; and the famine was fo great in Rome, and they endured it with fo great patience and conflancic, that Saint HIEROM faith, that when the citie was taken, there were very few men therein that could be flaine or taken prisoners, for that extreame hunger had confumed them, and had conftrained them (in horrible manner) to eate the flesh the one of the other; so as the mother did not spare the child which she held at her breaft, but through hunger, lodged the fame againe in her wombe, from whence not long before it issued. These are the words of Saint HIBROM. But in what manner Rome was taken, the authors agree not : for PROCOPIVS faith, that ALARICVS feeing that he could not take it by force, refolued to vie some

But returning againe to the matter, ALARICVS held the citie of Rome, strictly

stratagem, and faining that he would raise the siege, made a kinde of truce, and fecretly fent into Rome three hundred prisoners in which he reposed much trust, having first instructed them what they had to doe; setting them at libertie and

their appointment, which port they tooke and held in despite of those which

promifing them great rewards. The which one day at a certaine hower, making thew as though they went to fee the citie, metall together at a port according to

nation to haue wholy destroyed the same, to haue rooted out the name thereof, stroyed tibut and to have left it defolate; which his cruell determination he altred at his wines forbare through intercession, who with teares entreated the same. When ATHAYLPHY 5 depar- the entreatie

that portentred, and furprised the citie. Others affirme, that by the commaunde-Thetaking of ment and policie of a woman, which was a great ladie of that citie, a port was Rome, giuen to the Gothes, in at which they entred. And that she did this of pittie, to see the great famine which raged within the cities imagining that the enemies could not doe so great hurt in Rome, as the Romanes did to themselves, as we have said. Some authors there are, which fay, that the citie of Rome was taken by force of armes, for that those which were within it, were not able to man the walles or to make any longer refistance. But how soeuer it was, all authors affirme that ALA-RICVS before he entred the fame, commaunded upon paine of death, that no man should be so hardie, as to touch any of those which had withdrawne themfelues into the Churches and temples, chiefly of Saint PETER and Saint PAY L Placidia filter Apostles; which was afterwards duely observed. But all the rest of the citie was to the Emperor robbed and spoiled, and many thousands of people slaine, and many taken prioriginer. foners; among which was a fifter of the Emperours, whose name was PLACI-DIA, whom ATHAVLPHVS one of the most principall men among the Gothes,

and neere kinfman to King ALARICUS tooke, and had in his keeping; and afterwards married her. The next day after that they had taken the citie, in difgrace and disdaine of the Empire, and to make themselves merrie, they chose one ATALYS for Emperour of Rome, and the same day they carried him up and downethe streetes in the habit of an Emperour; and the next day they made

him serue like a slaue. Three or fower daies the Gothes remained within Rome, Rome set on sier which being past, setting fire in fundrie parts of the citie, their King A LARIC V & by the Gother,

when the newes was fodainly brought to him that Rome was loft (nothing re-

membring the citie whereof he was Emperour) he thought that they had told

him of a French-man, whom they called Roma, which was one of those which

ATHAVLPHVS fo fooneas he was King returned towards Rome, with a determi- Athaniphus

and they departed. All this while the Emperour Honorivs was in Rauenna, so carelesse, that

were men maintained by the Emperours to fight man to man, one with another, after the manner of the Gladiators in Rome, whereat the Emperour greatly marueiled that he should be so soone dead or taken, for it was but a little while since that he faw him fight with others: whereby it plainely appeareth how carelesse and retchlesse he was. This was the first time that Rome, after that it grew to be mightie, was taken by the barbarous nations: for when the Gaules tooke it, it was of no fuch account; being in the beginning but of small power. After this time that ALARICV's tooke it, the Romane Empire daily declined, and the ci-mane Empire tie of Rome was afterwards oftentimes taken and destroyed, whereof we will began to dedeclare the most notable accidents, to the end that the reader may know and cline. perceive how weake, and of how small power the Empires and mightickingdomes of the worldare: and how that Rome which was the queene and empe- The death of refle of the vniuerfall world, in time became a flaue to all the nations thereof. Alaricus King A LARICYS departing from Rome would have failed into Sicilia, but a tempest Athaulabus returned him into Italie, and he died in the citie of CoszNZA; and the Gothes made King of after that hee was dead, chose ATHAVLPHVS for their King, who (as we faid) the Gother in place of Alarimarried with PLACIDIA the Emperour THEODOSIVS his daughter. Which cus.

ted Placidia.

Famine in Rome in the time of the fiege.

ted with his armie from Rome, it is not written, whether he placed therein any gouernour, or left itat libertie to the Emperour. For his wife PLACIDIA was 2 meane to bring HONORIVS and ATHAVLPHVS to some agreement, and concluded a truce betweene them. And ATHAVLPHV's confummating his nuptiall rites with her, which vntill then were not folemnized, he went out of Italie. and marching with his armie through France, to the citie of Barcelona in Spaine, and taking the same and the territorie thereof, hee staied there a certaine space. What end he made, you shall heare hereafter.

In the time of these troubles in Italie, ARCADIVS lived in peace in Constantinople, and in the easterly parts free from troubles: for the authors write not of any warres of any importance that hee waged, or of any aduerlitie that befell him: for it pleased God to lay his scourge vpon the prouinces of the West onely : and so having raigned thirteene yeeres, in the one and thirtith of his age, he died in The Emperour Arcadius died in Constantino-

410 413.

Emperor Theo-

Constantinople. Others fay, that he held the Empire a great while longer; alledging that he died after the taking of Rome; but PROSPERVS and others affirme that he died before it. Some say, that it was in the yeere of our Lord soure hundred and tenne: others fay, foure hundred and thirteene. And he feeing death neere at hand, and that he could not live, and that his some THE ODOSIVS whom he left behinde him for his heire, was but eight yeeres old; he tooke adaungerous course, but it prooued very profitable, which was : That leaving his son C & s AR. Arcadius made and his successor, hee ordained by his last will HISDIGERDVS King of Persia King of Puffa and of Parthia for his tutor; who at that time was a friend and in league with the Empire; notwithstanding that the house of Persia was ever a capitall enemie tutor of his fon. thereof. When the King of Persia understood what ARCADIUS had ordained. he accepted of the government and of the protection of the child, and speedily fent one Antiochys an excellent man, and a great warrier to Conflantinople: who with the goodwill and consent of Honorivs, who was not a little glad of the friendship of Persia, gouerned the East Empire, with great sidelitie, and discretion; and so conserved the same in peace and instice, vntill that young THE o-DOSLYS sonne of the Emperour ARCADIVS, came to age. ARCADIVS being dead, whether before or after the facke of Rome, the name of Emperour refted in HONORIVS, and in his Nephew the young THEODOSIVS.

#### A relation of what happened after the death of the Emperour ARCADIVS.

Sucuians and Alanes tooke their way towards Spaine.

LI things being in such confusion, that the Gothes, Vandales, and other na-Lations inuaded and made a conquest of the lands of the Empire; and the belled and took Emperour Honorivs lying in Rauenna, taking no sufficient order for the the title of Em fame : In the Ile of Britannie also a great Lord borne in the same Iland, whose name was GRATIANVs rebelled, and tooke vpon him the title and enfignes of Emperour, with the consent of some of the men of warrein the same Iland. But flue Gratianus his prefumption had an euill end, for within few daies after, the fame men of and in his place warre flew him. But they fetting all dutie spart, determined to make another mane Conjuntine Emperour, fouldier among themselues Emperour, whose name was Constantine, who was a man of greater courage and of more witte, then GRATIANVS; and he drawing all the armie out of England, went into France, with a conceit to have made himselfe Lord thereof; and to that end, made peace with the Vandales, Sueuians and Alanes, which alreadie were in France marching towards Spaine:

for the Burgonians made their abode in that part which is now called Burgundie. This peace betweene CONSTANTINE and these three nations could not well be concluded: for Constantine drew to him many men of warre of France, and growing mightie made a full account to become Lord of Spaine also, before that those Barbarians should be able to come thither. Whereupon he sent thither certaine gouernours, with a competent number of fouldiers, and many townes in Spaine were of the mind to have obeied his commaundement holding it for better to ferue him, then those nations which were comming thitherwards. But two noble men, rich, and of great authoritie, whose names were (as faith PAVLYS DIACONYS) DIDIMYS and VERODIANYS borne in Valentia, Tidimus and withstood them, and found meanes to drive them out of Spaine. And there-Verodianus opupon with the aide of their kindred, friends, and acquaintance they went to the pofethemselines Pyrenæan Mountaines, with a determination not onely to defend the passages flantine. against Constantines armie, but also against all the other nations which we have before named: vsing all meanes to retaine Spaine in the obedience and feruice of the Emperour Honorivs; which they continued along time, although with great trouble, effusion of bloud, and daunger. Constanting holding himselfe herewith greatly injured, assembled together a certaine number of the most active and best tried souldiers that hee had, and made his sonne CONSTANS their captaine, who by fome authors is called Constantivs; whom for this purpose, he tooke out of a Monasterie wherein he was a Monke. Constantine and making him CESAR, fent him against the two brothers. His people were Constant Colors of fuch power and so expertin the warres, that they ouerthrew, and killed the and fent him two Spanish brethren, and entred Spaine, which was the ruine thereof: for the into Spaine. men of warre which came with Constans, after that they had robbed and spoiled the countrie, and had vsed all kind of hostilitie, returned to the Pyrenæan Mountaines; and driving the Spaniards from thence which garded the paffages, tooke vpon them the defence thereof, and were well able to have performed the fame. But CONSTANS going to Arles a citie in France to speake with his father, who then lay there, those which had the guarde in the Mountaines came to an agreement with the Vandales and the other strange nations, and fold to them the passages, suffering those Alanes, Sueuians, and Vandales to passe into strange nati-Spaine, which there made fuch hauocke and did so much harme, as can hardly onstacked be expressed: especially neere vnto the Pyrenæan hilles where they found greatest refiftance. From thence they marched into the maine land to the citie of Valentia (against which they bare an old grudge) which citie they destroyed, and the countrie round about it; and then went to the citie of Afterga, which they entred by force of armes; and paffing further made great spoile in all Galicia. And afterwards croffing through Caffile they came to the citic of Toledo, which by reafon of the scituation and naturall strength thereof, and the valour of the inhabitants, they could not take; notwithstanding that they besieged it for a certaine space, and were constrained to raise their siege with shame and dishonour, from that citie which for wars and feates of armes hath euer been famous in that countrie, through whose example many townes in Spaine continued their alleagance to HONORIVS; notwithstanding that he sent neither souldiers, captaines, nor reliefe. This people did much harme in the territorie of Toledo, and paffing forwards they followed the river Tagus, still spoyling the countrie vntill they came to the citie of Lisbon, in Portugall: which in those daies also was very fa- Lisbon. mous, and giving an affault thereto, it was fo well defended by the inhabitants,

that they could not take it, but came to a composition: and they receiving a great

quantitie of treasure raised their siege, and returned the same way that they came,

making warre on eueric fide. And by reason of a great famine and scarcitie in

the land (as Onosivs writeth) they laid downe their weapons for a space, and

fell to tilling of the earth, as inhabitants of the countrie; dividing what they had

gotten amongst those nations, and their captaines or Kings, Vandales, Sueuians,

and Alanes. The Empire being in this estate, ATHAVLPHVS and the Gothes

possessing Narbona, Barcelona, and the marches thereof, which in name were con-

federates with Honorivs, the tyrant Constantine and his fonnes pos-

fessed the rest of all France. The young Emperour THEODOSIVS being a child.

was bred up in Constantinople, under the protection of the King of Persia, and of

Antiochus whom he had fent. But of his house and person a very vertuous and

honorable nobleman tooke charge, whose name was ANTHEMIVS, who was

his Pretorian Prefect. This child was bredyp in all learning, and became a ver-

tuous prince and a good Christian. Now his Vncle Honorivs, which then

lay in Rauenna, bethought himselfe how he might make to the West Empire, as

free from the flauerie of these tyrants and barbarous nations, as was the East; and

Romanes; who like a perfect Romane, with a pickt and selected armie, entred

France, and fighting with the Emperour Constanting the tyrant, ouer-

threw him, and belieged him in the citie of Arles, and at length getting him

CONSTANS sonne of the said CONSTANTINE, whom his father had made

was gouernour of the young E.mperour Theodofius.

to that end he made an excellent man, whose name was Constantivs, ge-Honorius made nerall of his armie against those tyrants and Barbarians. Which Constantivs Conflaritius ge- vntill then was an Earle, borne in Rome, descended of the noble and auncient nerall of bis armie.

conflanting put into his hands, fmote off his head. And it happened fo well with him, that withthe tyrant Con- in few daies after that the death of Constantina was published, young fantine to

Constantius bi

CESAR, was flaine in the citie of Vienna in France, by the hands of a captaine of his whose name was Genoncivs. And the same Genoncivs, who also fought to have made himselfe a tyrant, and to have created one MAXIMVS 2 friend of his Emperour, was also slaine by those souldiers which in England rebelled with CONSTANTINE; with a determination to returne to the service of HONORIVS. And GERONCIVS being dead, they dispoiled MAXIMVS of his Imperiall robes, and fent him in exile into Spaine. In this manner was France freed from these tyrants, by this excellent man Constantivs; & the armie reduced to the service of the right Emperor Honorivs. After this, Honorivs speedily fent Captains and fouldiers into Britannie, which held for CONSTANTINE, from the first beginning of his tyrannie, and they recourred and reduced the same to obedience and subjection. And in France, a man of great parentage and authoritie in that countrie (as fay PAVLVS OROSIVS, and PAVLVS DIACO-N v s) fought to make himselfe Emperour; but he was presently slaine : and in the like manner another brother of his, called SEBASTIAN; both which rebelled (as it feemed) without any occasion or reason, but onely that they desired to die with the name and title of Emperours. This Constantive Generall for the Emperour Honorive, being of

great power in France, ATHAVLPHVS king of the Goths which lay in Barcelona, and was Lord of all the countrie round about, and had there lived in peace and quiet the space of three yeeres, at the entreatie of Piacid iato whom hee was married, which was Honon rvs his fifter; began to fland in some feare of the power of the Emperor and of his Generall Constantivs, knowing that they

had fortified the Alpes to the end that hee should not any more returne into Italy. Whereupon he determined to aduenture to make himselfe Lord of al Spaine, and Attalus called perswaded a Romane Captaine whose name was Attalys, to take upon him the Emperous. name and title of Emperour, and to goe with a fleete which he would give him, to feife yoon the countrie of Andaluzia, which was then called Betica; and to doe the like by so much as he should be able in Africa, and he would also make warre in his owne person. A TTALV s very vnwisely accepted his offer, and presently sent into Africa an armie with Judges and governours, as though hee had been the peaceable Emperour thereof, and began to make warre in Spaine. Against whom. Honorivs lent a wife and a valiant Captaine called HERACLIANV s, who driuing all A TA A L v s his Judges and governours out of Africa, leaving the countrie in peace, with a Nauie came to feeke him himfelfe; and finding him, fought with him in a battaile by Sea and ouercame him. And hee flying to the shore in Heracumus Spaine, was taken by the Spaniards, and fent to Constantive, who was Gene- and tooke Atrall for HONORIVS, who was then in France; and he presently sent him prisoner talus prisoner. to Honoriv s; and Honoriv s made his hand to be striken off, and fent him in exile into the Ile of Lippari, negre vnto Sicilia. And to HERACLIANVS for the victorie which he obtained against him, was given the Consulship and the gouernment of Africa. But as in prosperitie pride and ambition increaseth, and men are then farre more excessive therein, then in time of advertitie: fo this H 1-RACLIANV s feeing himselfe fauoured and in great authoritie, thought that hee might also be an Emperour. And as he was in possession of Africa, PAVLVS O- Heraclianus Rosivs writeth, that taking another Captaine for his sonne in law and compa- rebelled in Anion in his rebellion, whose name was SABINVS, a most subtill fellow and very valiant, he affembled (to goe into Italy against Honorivs and to make a conquest thereof) the greatest Nauie of all manner of shippes that I euer read of. For OROSIVS affirmeth, that hee gathered together (if there be no error in the fi- An incredible gures) foure thousand and seuentie sailes of all forts little and great; which without comparison was the greatest in number that euer was seene vpon the Sea: for we doe not reade that XERXES OF ALEXANDER ever armed fo great a Nauie. With this great fleete, fraught with fouldiers, armes and victuals, he came to the Heraclianus coast of Italy, and fet his men on land to march directly to Rome, being many in came into traff number, but neither fo well experienced and trained as were the Romanes; which in the fields by Honorivs his commaundement attended their comming, led by a good Generall called MARINVS, with the title and dignitic of an Earle: who had raunged his Romanes in very good order, with a refolution to die or to ouercome, and not to fuffer themselves to be besieged, as they were by ALARICVS. HERACLIANVS, who thought to have amazed the world with the name and number of his fleete, and that he should have found no resistance, was so discouraged when he faw MARINVs his armie, that hee presently fled to the Sea; and Herselianus embarking himselfe aboord one of his ships, returned by slight into Africa with his shameful that onely ship; from whence he came with so many as is before faid. He being fight. arriued, and his base cowardize discouered, the ordinarie Garrisons upon a day mutined and flew him. And his fonne in law and companion SABIN V s, altring The death of his determination, fled to Constantinople to entreate the young Emperour THE O- Heraclianus, Dosivs, nephew to Honorivs, to take compassion of him: from whence within a little while after he was brought to Honorivs, and having his life graunted, was condemned to perpetuall exile. And so through the prudence and

good happe of Honorivs, all these tyrants were defeated which rebelled a-

gainst him. As wee haue alreadie related in so plaine manner as I possibly haue been able; which trulie was not without great paine and difficultie: for matters which passed in the time of ARCADIVS, and afterwards in the time of HONORIVS were so many and so divers, and many times so many accidents happened together, and the Historiographers treate of them fo confusedly, that in writing them I am much troubled, as well in collecting and abbreuiating them, as in relating them, in such fort as the readers may understand and comprehend the same; and to recite them in order as they passed and happened one before another, which hath been my principall care from the beginning, and by the grace of God shall be, vntill I have ended. All the victories and about recited good haps of HONORIVS, after so many advertities and warres which he had in his time, the authors attribute to the care which hee had of the Christian faith and religion. For in those times through the diligence and endeuour of a Captaine of his called MARCELLINVS, with the affiftance of his great Captaine CONSTANTIVS, he procured concord and an vnitie in all the Churches of frica, and of other prouinces; wherein were many contrarieties and erronious opinions concerning the Christian faith. And truly S.Avovstine was a speciall good meane to bring this to passe, who at that time was Bishop of Hippo in Africa; which the Emperour CHARLES the fift in his journey and conquest of Tunis tooke from the mightie and most cruell tyrant BARBAROSS Abut his sonne PHI-Lip the second within few yeeres after agains lost the same.

HONORIVS then feeing himselfe free from those tyrants, and the most part of the prouinces of his Empire in peace, and obedient, resoluted to drive the straunge and barbarous nations out of those countries which they held in Spaine and in France about Narbona; and thought it best to begin with the Gothes, which were the most mightie and most warlike people of all other nations, and possessed fuch part of Spaine, as is aforesaid: for these being defeated, he judged it an easie matter to make an end of the rest. The King ATHAVLPHVS as he deerly loued his wife P LACIDIA, much defired peace with Howo xivs, and fo by all meanes fought the fame: which when his men of warre perceived, which were of a farre contrarie opinion to him, they so much abhorred him that they slew him: but the authors fet not downe in what manner. And they presently chose a great man among themselves for their King, whose name was SEGERICV s;and for that they suspected him as they did ATAVLPHVS, they handled him in the fame manner, as they did their laft King. And having flaine thefe two their Kings, they chose one VV ALIA for their King, conceining that he would be a great ene-Journal of the Romanes, with whom they defired to have cruell warres; they having the Emperors fifter PLACIDIA in their power which was then a widow, whom

they entreated honourably and honeftly.

This VV ALIA beginning to rule his kingdome and government, held it for necessarie and sound counsell to hold peace and friendship with Honorivs, but taking warning by his predeceffors (to fatisfie his people) he rigged vp a great fleet, which he sent to make a conquest of Africa, which in peace held for Honorivs: and as it pleased God so to worke for Honorivs, without that he should set his hand thereto, such a tempest tooke them vpon the sea, that the whole fleet was in a manner loft and cast away. Which misfortune, together with the newes of the comming of Constantivs, generall of the Emperours armie with great power, did much asswage the fiercenes and furie of the Gothes; and VV ALIA tooke fo good order with them, that of their owne accord and confent, a treatie of peace was made with Honorivs, which was concluded upon Honorius made codition, that Placibia should be rendred to the Emperour, and that VV alia VV alia Sing and his forces should faithfullie aid CONSTANTIVS, to drive the Vandales, of the Gother, Alanes, and Sueuians out of Spaine, which had alreadic made themselues Lords of the greatest part thereof. This being concluded, hostages were given in the behalfe of VV ALIA, and PLACIDIA was deliuered, whom HONORIVS afterwards gaue to wife to Constantivs, in reward of his feruices and victories Conflantius obtained by him, and making him C & s AR, he proclaimed him for his fucceffor. made cefar, And then began Constantive his warres in Spaine against the Barbarians, and sent gene-King VV ALIA affifting and feruing therein with his Visogothes, as we will pre- against the sentlie declare. While these matters (whereof we have spoken) were a doing, the Barbarians

tooke and were in possession of the greatest part of Spaine, especiallie the Van-

Galicia and Leon, they inioyed great part from the beginning, and had divided

these countries amongst them by lot. CONSTANTIVS the Imperiall generall

being come into Spaine, and with him the Gothes, according to the agreement.

the first warre that they made was against the Alanes neere to the citie of Merida.

nations, that they presentlie in great humilitie sued for peace, and sent to intreate

Honorivs to graunt them truce, and some place in Spaine wherein they might

ruled, who was now come to riper yeeres; and being at libertie free from his tu-

tors, there happened some controuersie betweene him and the King of Persia.

And it happened, that as CONSTANTIVS was busied in the warres of Spaine.

which held with Honorivs, fighting with him, he was by them ouerthrowne

into Italy to conferre thereof with the Emperour, the better to keepe them in

peace in his absence, he departed out of Spaine, and came into Italy: the like did

dals, which conquered a great part of Betica, from whom that countrey tooke the name of Vandaluzia: and afterwards in processe of time, leaving out the letter V, called after it came to be called Andaluzia. And the Sueuians and Alanes held Merida, and a the Vandales. great part of Lusitania, which is now Estremadura, and part of Portugall: and in

where was fought betweene them a very cruell battaile, wherein the Alanes were ouerthrowne, and Constantive had the victorie, and the King of the bis victorie Alanes, called ACHACE, was flaine in the battaile. This victorie obtained by against the CONSTANTIVS, strooke so great feare into the harts of the rest of the barbarous dlanes.

liue. While the seaccidents happened in Spaine, Honor on Ivs went to Constanti-Honorius nople, to visit the Easterne parts, wherein his Nephew theyong THEODOSIVS stantinople.

and HONORIVS out of Italy, a principall man, borne and inhabiting in Rome, being of the auncient Nobilitie thereof, named TARTALLYS, affifted by a great Tartallus repart of the Romane people, and by many townes in Italy, rebelled and tooke the Romane, name and title of Emperour, and began to leuie fouldiers. But the loyall subjects

and flaine. But difloyaltie and treacherie was then fo much in vie, that another whose name was ATTALV s did the like, who putting on the Imperiall Robes, Analusvebeland taking the Enfignes, was called Emperour, and began to leuie great forces in led, and tooke and taking the Emignes, was canced Emperour, and began to lead glear folces in von him the Italy. When the Imperial generall Constantives, being then in Spaine, heard name of Emthese newes, after the victorie aforesaid, putting the Vandales, Sucuians and A-perour. lanes in good hope to obteine what they defired, and giving it out that he went

the Emperour Honorivs, who (as I faid) was advertised thereof in Constantimople. When the comming of Honorius and Constanting was knowne Honorius and in Rome, the people arose in great furie, and apprehending the tyrant ATTALVS, Constantius

fent him to Rauenna, to the Emperour Honorivs, whither Constantivs Italy.

The Gothes Cleve their King Athaul-

Segericus Kim of the Gothes Naine by his

was alreadic come, with his wife PLACIDIA, where ATTALVS by HONORIVS Attalus bani- his commandement had his hand striken off, and was banished to Constantinople, wherein Honorivs in the opinion of the world shewed too great patience and clemencie.

Honorivs.

HONORIVS being in Rauenna, whither his brother in law Constantivs CESAR was alreadie come, and having confideration of his worthic feruices, and how profitable he had been to the Empire, made him with very great fo-Honorius made lemnitie to be called Av G v S T v S, Emperour, and his equall and companion in the Empire of the West, and made a long set Oration in praise of his vertues, and there the two Emperours by mutuall confent (to the end that VV ALIA King of the Gothes should continue in their service) consigned vnto him the citie of Thologain the kingdome of France, with all the countrey neere adiacent, called Aquitania, which they then named Basconia, and is now called Gasconia.

After the feasts and Coronation of Constantivs, Honorivs went to

Rome to pacific some commotions which were therein, and the new Emperour

Aquitania.

Gafconie.

companion in

the Empire.

The death of Constantius. Ecius made

emerall in Spaine againft the Vandales and the reft.

Castinus fucceeded Ecius in bis charge.

Boniface came aid of Casti-

CONSTANTIVS determining to go into Spaine to make an end of the war which he had there begun, commaunded for that purpose souldiers to be mustered. Surely the valour and wisedome of this excellent Captaine and Emperour was fuch, that if God had permitted him life he had freed Spaine from the barbarous nations, but death stayed his journey, so that he neuer came thither. Whereof when HONORIVS was aduertifed, he was extremely fory, and in his place fent into Spaine a famous and valiant Captaine, called Ec IVs, who tooke charge of the armie which Constantiv shad leuied, and marching thitherwards, by the way ouerthrew the Burgonians which attempted to have entred France. The like he did by the Franckes, which afterwards entred and inhabited therein. And being come into Spaine, his principall care was to finde out the Alanes, which after their ouerthrow by Constantivs, did not choose them any King, but ioyned with the Sucuians, which were Lords of all the countrey about Liben. But so soone as they knew that CONSTANTIVS was dead, they returned to Merida, and the Vandales and Sueuians were now growne to flout, that they would neither require, nor accept peace, but came to the aid of the Alanes, and began to make warre against such Cities as held for the Emperour. Eczvs being come into Spaine, seeing that all made head against him, and having no sufficient armie to encounter them, protracted the time for certaine daies, and leuied more forces, which by Honorivs (without reason) was imputed to him for cowardize, and he sent the Earle Castinvs to be generall, and his successor, displacing Eczys from his charge. But CASTINVS perceiving how the world went, approued the judgement of Ecivs, and in the fame manner prolonged the wars, vntill that BONIFACIV's who was gouernor of Africa, (whom we reade S.Avinto Spaine in Q V S T IN E for his vertue to have much loued) came into Spaine to his aid bringing very good troupes with him, and they two together began the warre, and obteined many notable victories against the Barbarians; and so handled the matter, that it was held for certaine that they would have freed the countrey. But this commaund is such a thing as can never be well shared : for these two excellent Captaines fell at fuch variance, that Bonifacivs would not flay any longer, but returned to his government of Africa (as PROSPERVS, and PAVLVS DIA-CONVS have written, yet EVTROPIVS differeth from them) and CASTINVS remaining alone, the Emperours partie began to grow weake in Spaine. Whilft thefe matters paffed in the West, Honorivshis nephew Taxono.

says, Emperour in the East, being now of sufficient age, was freed from his tutors: and as he was a good Christian, his chiefest care was for the seruice of God, and for the defence of his holie Church. Whereupon he fell at variance with BARRABANYS King of Persia, who succeeded Isde Gerdys which had been his tutor (as is before faid) for that he was given to understand that BARRABA-NV S perfecuted the Christians which lived in his dominions, whereof THE Oposivs had admonished him, requiring amendment: but seeing he could not obtaine it, he sent ARDABURUS an excellent Captaine against him, who fought a battaile with N ASIVS generall of the Persians, and therein ouerthrew him, and VV arres bea Dattaile Witti : A STV Section and afterwards entred the countrey, and did tweenethe made great flaughter of his people, and afterwards entred the countrey, and did tweenethe great harme and spoile therein. And by another way THE ODOSIVS sentanother Captaine called GRATIANV sagainst ALAMANDER King of the Sarrazins, and Barrabawhich came in aid of the king of Persia: this King was likewise ouerthrowne in Persia. battaile by GRATIANVS, and a very great multitude of his people were flaine, and he himselfe escaped by flight. And in another place another Captaine called Theodosius ARSOBVIDA ouerthrew the Persians also, so as this warre was made to the great bis villaries, aduantage of the Romanes, and with hurt and dammage to the Persians, vntill that BARRABANVS ceaffing to perfecute the Christians, a peace was treated and concluded betweene him and  $T_{\,\text{H\,{\sc e}}\,\,\text{O\,{\sc d}}}$  os rvs. This happened in the time that I told you that the Emperours partie began to wax feeble and weake in Spaine. which weakenes increased by reason of the death of Honorivs, who as PAV- The death of LVS DIACONVS writeth, died of an infirmitie in Rome, having raigned fole Em- the Emperous perour of the Welt about fifteene yeeres after the death of his brother ARCA-DIVS, in whose companie he raigned other thirteene yeeres; so as the whole time of his raigne was eight and twentie yeeres, besides two yeeres in the time of his father. HONORIVS left no heires of his bodie, for by two wines which he had which were the daughters of STILICO, he had neuer any child. And a little before he died, he fell fo farre at diffension with his sister PLACIDIA, that she went to Constantinople to her Nephew the Emperour THEOD OSIVS, with her two sonnes which she had by the Captaine and Emperour Constantivs, of whom we have alreadie treated: her fonnes were named Honorivs, and Va-LENTINIANVS: this VALENTINIANVS was afterwards Emperour: He died Anno Domini. in the yeere of the Incarnation of our Sauiour Christ 427.

Honorivs (as before is touched) was a vertuous and a very good Christian. very noblic minded, and very pitifull. He did one notable thing, which was the part of a charitable and good Christian, which was, to abolish the Gladiators Honorius put or Sword-players, which (as it is written) did vie in Rome vpon pleasure most downe the cruelly to kill one another. He much loued his eafe, and fo we fee, that in his Sportd players owne person he neuer followed the warres; and in his gouernement was very tori. negligent. But in the end by his Captaines he so much preuailed, that excepting Spaine, he brought all the rest of his Empire to quiet subjection in his life time.

although after great rebellions, warres, and troubles. A few yeeres before his death died the great Doctor S.HIEROME, being of the age of fourescore and twelue yeeres, in Betheleem in Iewry,

where Christ was borne, who departing out of this life, went to enjoy the life euerlasting.

Κk

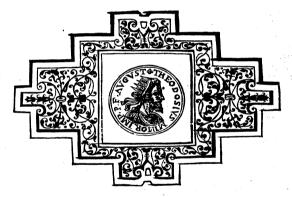
The death of

S. Hierome.

## THE LIFE OF THEO SIVS THE SECOND OF THAT

NAME, AND TWO AND FIFTITH RO-

MANE EMPEROVR, AND OF HIS Colen germane VALENTINIAN the fecond.



THE ARGUMENT.



Fter the death of Honorius, Theodosius lawfully succeeded in the Empire, who perceiving that many went about to make themselves tyrants of the West Empire, refolued to make his cosen Valentinian, Casar, in these parts. Who within a small time after, making himselfe Lord of all Italie, was by the confent of Theodosius, and of the people, called Emperour. All the while that these two Emperours lined, there were so cruell and blondie warres made by the

Barbarians, as Hunnes, Gother, Vandales and such like nations, that the whole world seemed to have been turned upside downe. But abone all other she warres of the Hunnes was most daungerous and of longest continuance, for they having conquered Hungaric, would have gone into France. Against which, Valentinianus continually sent fresh supplies, under the leading of his generall called Ecius. But Theodosius his Empire in the East was in farre better rest and quiet. For the West Empire was c ontinually infested with cruellwarres, whither Theodosius neuer left to fend new supplies of captaines and souldiers. By reason whereof, Astila King of the Gothes,

thinking to finde the Empire of Constantinople unsurnished of men of warre to defend it, inuaded the same: whereupon Theodosius recalled those captaines which be had sent into Sicilia to the aide of Valentinianus, and encountred the Gothes; and during the time of that warre, which on the Gothes side was managed very coldly, by reason of some suspitions and tealousies among themselves, Theodosius falling sicke died of the plague, when bee had raigned two and fortie jeeres, whose death was bewailed by the whole Empire: for he was a very good man and much beloued in his life



Reat in truth are the accidents and wars, happie, and infortunate, which have happened in the Romane Empire in the space of fourehundred and seauentie yeeres (little more or leffe) that we have written thereof, as the reader may eafily perceive. But notwithstanding that we have sometimes seene it in distresse, troubled, and in daunger to haue been loft in the whole, or in part; yet in the end, although those aduersities continued for a space, we have seene how

it hath been delivered from those calamities, by overcomming them and redresfing them by some meanes. So as we may say, that it hath been cured of those infirmities wherewith it was oppressed, and recoursed the losses which it sustayned, vntill the time, whereto we are now come. But through the secret iudgement of God, from henceforth matters succeeded not in any such manner, but the losses multiplied, and the forces diminished. And although that sometime through the valour of some excellent Emperours and their captaines, the Empire enforced it felfe to recouer the auncient maiestie thereof, and was both honored and feared, yet it could neuer attaine to the former: and this also was very seldom. So as from henceforth, at fundrie times and by divers accidents, the Emperours The declining lost provinces and countries, and in them began kingdomes and particular do- of the Romane minions; and of those countries which the Empire lost, arose great and mightie Empire. monarchies: and as principalities and kingdomes multiplied, fo great and more strange were the accidents which happened, which I cannot relate, neither am I bound thereto: for my purpose and intent was, not to write a generall historie, The original of but onely of the Emperours, and that briefly and in fumme. Wherefore as briefly the kingdomer. as I shall be able, I will discouer the substance, and hold on my way, writing such things as shall be of greatest importance in the historie of the Emperours, leaving that of other Kings and kingdomes which in processe of time shall present themfelues to others, which either alreadie haue, or hereafter shall take that charge ypon them. For this which I have alreadie taken in hand, will be enough for my fmall abilitie, which I pray God, I may be able to bring to any reasonable good end and honest satisfaction of those which shall reade the same.

By the death of Honorivs, in reason, and of right, the whole Romane Empire appertained to his Nephew THEODOSIVS, then sole Emperour, who then was in Constantinople, and held the East Empire, as by that which is alreadic said may eafily be understood; although that in the time of Honorivs, there be no notable mention made of his doings aswell for his few yeeres, as for that the Empire of the East was in better rest and greater quiet, then the Western Empire, which then was infelted and turmoiled. When it was commonly knowne that HONORIA was dead, some which meant to continue their allegeance held for THEODOSIVS, as reason as d their dutie required. But the greatest potentates, began to make themselves Lords of the Empire or of part thereof. In Africa was BONIFACIVE (as we fay) gouernour of that prouince, who in the beginning

ned through the death of Honorius.

The alterations held himselfe neuter. In Spain the Vandales, Sueuians, and Alanes, thinking that CASTINVS who was generall for the Empire against them, should not beable to withstand them; began vpon'a sudden to bee discontent with that which thev held; and so tooke armes and would have more. The Gothes which were Lords of Barcelona, Narbona, Toloja, and all the countries round about, by the leaue and permission of HONORIVS, as his allies and friends; tooke the same resolution as the rest did. And the Burgonians in like manner which dwelt vpon the Rhines fide, and the Franques which had been driven out of France, refolued to returne thither againe. The Hunnes also a most fierce nation, whose originall was in Sevthia, as was that of the Gothes, desirous to leave the sterilitie of their countries departed thence in great numbers, and came to the confines of Pannonia Inferior, entred Himge- Which now is called Hungarie: fo that into all those nations and into fundrie others, the death of Honortvs did put new thoughts and conceits; although that they all did not prefently put them in execution: of all which as it shall bee most fit for my purpose, I will hereafter make particular mention. The state standing in these termes, as THEODOSIVS prouided not for his comming into Italy, or to fend fome noble personage with his power and authoritie; there was a principall man in Rome whose name was IOHN, who by meanes of his dignitie and riches, was of great power. He by the counsell and direction of CASTINVS (although in fecret) which, as wee haue faid, was an Earle and Generall in Spaine, rebelled, and tooke the name of Emperour, and E civs whom Honorivs depofed from the government of Spaine, was also of his counsell, and favoured and af-

THEODOSIVS THE SECOND.

fifted him in his proceedings. This Tyrant I OHN having made himselfe Lord of Rome, and of the greatest part of Italy, great part of France holding for him alreadie, and all that part of Spaine which was under the government of CASTINVS; the fame Ecivs and CASTI-NV & as they were both enemies to Boniface gouernour of Africa, seeing that hee tooke not part with I on sperfwaded him to declare him for an enemies yet they discovered not themselves as then, to the end the better to bring the other to confusion. Wherefore CASTINVS, from Spaine where he then was, with a great fleete and a great number of fouldiers failed into Africa, spreading a rumour that he fled thither for feare of the Vandales, from which in no part of Spaine he could live in fafetie. Vnder colour whereof, and writing very louing letters to Bo-MIFACIVS, setting his men on land, he seised on many cities in the coast of Africa, and so lived for certaine daies in counterfeit peace and friendship with Bon I-FACIVS; yet BONIFACE Was not free from Suspition of him. Hereof are at this day epiftles extant, written to him by S.Avgvstine, who then was Bishop of Hippo, and the answers thereto; discouering the suspition. And CASTINVS afterwards manifesting his ill meaning, S.Av G V S T I N E sought meanes to reconfacein Africa. cile them: but his godly endeuour taking no effect, they fought a battaile, which although it were very cruell and bloudie, CASTINVS Was therein ouerthrowne come in battell and fled to his ships, and with such of his souldiers as hee could gather together, (being put to flight) he returned with shame and dishonour into Spaine. Which When I OHN the viurping Emperour vnderstood, hee fent for him, to the end to leave him for his Lieutenant in Italy; and affembling together the old Captaines and fouldiers which remained fince the time of Honorivs, with the greatest power that he was able to leuie, and a very strong sleete, he made preparation to passe into Africa. Some authors write, that hee went thither in person, and that

after many battailes he was flaine by BONIFACIVS. So writeth BLONDVs in his

THEODOSIVS THE SECOND. booke of the declining of the Romane Empire, and G v 1 D o of Rauenna, and A s-TONIVS SABELLICVS in his AEneades, & other moderne authors, which in my opinion are deceined, or at the least, I know not what ancient authors they follow therein. Whereof that which I finde written, is, that THEODOSIVS being aduertifed of the great Commotions in the West Empire, and daring not to leave the East, thought it his safest course to nominate his cosin germane V A LENTIthe East, thought it his latest council nonlineach in coun germany in the East, who was the some of Placidia, fifter to the two Emperours made his some ARCADIVS and Honorivs, and wife to the excellent Captaine and Emperor Palentinian, CONSTANTIVS. And after fome time and accidents which happened, with coffee fuch troupes as he thought good, he fent him into Italy with his mother Piaci-D 124, whose vertue and wisedome was sufficient to governe the whole, vntill the young C # s AR came to age fit for the gouernment. Before this, the viurper Iоня fent his Ambassadors to THEODOSIVS, requesting him to allow of his election, and to be pleafed to accept him for his companion in the Empire. Whereto / The od osivs his answer was to command his Ambassadours to be apprehended as traitors and rebels. And hee fent commaundement to ARDABVRIVS OF Theadofus ANDADVRIVS, an excellent Captaine of his, that with the greatest power that four indubution he could, he should take his passage by Sea into Isaly, before PLACIDIA and her Islandelyfonne, and should fecke to defeate the tyrant I o un. And A R D AB V R I V S present- 10011 ly put the matter in practife: but there befell him fuch a florme you the Sea, that his ship was driven from the rest of the sleete, and arrived where he was taken and and abunius carried pritoner to Rauenna. And his fonne A spar within few dates after being taken primer aduertised hereof (who also came in the same sleete) after that the tempest ceased by lot rant. and that the Seas were calme, fethis men on land, and vsed such meanes, that pasfing through certaine lakes or meares of water, which are, or were neere to Rauenna (where the vourping Emperor I on withen was, and held his father prisoner: which was heldfor a matter impossible, and so it is written for a wonder) hee by tobathe tyrant which was neutron a matter imposition, which nothing suspected any such mishap, and he force of armes entred the citie, which nothing suspected any such mishap, and he after some of not onely did fet his father at libertie, but tooke the Emperour I o HN the vsurper Andabarius. prisoner, and smote off his head. In this manner writeth Bishop PHRECVLPHVS Phresulphus in in his historic of the death of the tyrant I o HN, who wrote the same about seum house audie. hundred yeeres since; with whom PROCOPIVS agreeth, an author of about a neith chapt. nunarea yeeres mice; Will wholl I a so on vs in his tripartite historic declarethitat large; and PROSPERVS and IORNANDES of little leffe antiquitie; and the startes of alfo PAVIVS DIACONVS. And although they all briefly paffe it ouer, yet they the Variables. fignifie that hee died in Italy, and not in Africa. And PLATINA, CVSPINIANVS 1:12 looke and other diligent moderne authors follow them therein: whereby it is to be pre- 18.6 has. fumed, that they were deceived which wrote that he was flaine by Bonifacivs in Africa; although it be not to be doubted, but that he went into Africa, and was there ouerthrowne. And holding this for the most certaine, let vs proceede to the reft, wherein in a manner all agree in the taking of Rauenna; and that after that they were entred, A SPAR and his fouldiers tooke and executed cruell reuenge. Fine yeeres did I OHN enjoy the name of Emperour before his death; and was commended for his vertue and good conditions by the authors, so as they condemne him not for any thing, but onely for making himselfe a tyrant, in vsurping the Empire: whereof the greatest fault is laid vpon CASTINVS and Ecivs, which persuaded him thereto. This victoric being obtained, within thort space The comming after it came PLACIDIA with her fonne V ALENTINIANV sthe new made C z- of Placidia SAR into Italy, through whose comming and the death of the aforesaid I o HR, in a and Italy, through whose comming and the death of the aforesaid I o HR, in a minus half.

short space there followed a great alteration: for being come to Rauenna, and vnderstanding that CASTINVS came from Spaine, with forces as he was able to put himselfe into Rome with Ecrys, who held the same against VALENTINIAN: PLACIDIA fent ARDABURIUS against him, or after some others, BURGUN-DIV s, and it may be both; which fighting a battel, CASTINVS Was ouerthrown, and escaping from the furie, his owne souldiers mutined, and deliuered him to the Emperours Generall, who fent him to Rauenna. The like happened to Ectvs in Rome: for the fouldiers and citizens arose and apprehended him, and hee was brought prisoner also to Rauenna. This is that Ecrys whom some call Acrys. fo much commended by the writers of those times for one of the best Captaines in the world; and in truth fo had hee alreadie shewed himselfe in all his actions, but he shewed it much more afterwards. And no lesse great was Bonifacivs which gouerned Africa. And ARDABURIUS Was very famous for his victories. as wee have faid, against the Persians; and so was Castinv salso. These Capraines being brought prisoners, and the neede of such men in the Empire considered as well in Spaine against the Vandales and the rest, as in France against the Gothes and Burgundians, which alreadie inuaded that kingdome, and against the Hunnes which were in Pannonia. After many allegations pro & contra. PLACIDIA vndertooke to procure her fonne VALENTINIAN to pardon them their lines: and fo CASTANVS after some few daies imprisonment, was banished. And Ecros having put in securitie for his fidelitie, was made Generall of the armie in France against the Gothes; who tooke such order that the Hunnes came no further forgainft the Huns wards: for he had great friendship amongst those nations, and was borne in those parts; and in the time of his difgrace with Honor ivs, he lived amongst them. VALENTINIANVS being in full possession of all Italy, was with the good will

of all men, and by the consent of his Cosen THE ODOSIVS called Emperour and

Iland would fall into the hands of the enemie. When Eczys understood these

newes, he present lie sent one Legion of his armie under the leading of a Captaine

whose name was GALLIO, into Britanny and he joining with the inhabitants

which fent for aid, fought oftentimes with the Scots and Piels and obtaining the

victorie, compelled them to leave that countrey in peace and quiet: and fo they

Av Gv s Tv s, and for such obeyed and received by the Senate and people of Rome: and the Earle and generall Ecrys without delaying any time, undertooke his charge of generall of the warres in France. And at that time that he came into France (as PROSPERVS and DIACONVS doe write) THEODORICES by the death of VV ALIA was King of the Gothes, and had belieged a principall citie then called Archilla, after the taking of many other townes. But so soone as Ecrys came with his armie, he began the warres in fuch manner, that to the loffe The vuerres wobich Ecius of the Gothes the citie was relieved, and they raifing their fiege, retired themmade in Franc felues into their Countries, and he every where made fuch head against them. gainst the that they could not take any other places either in France or Spaine. In the same time in the Ile of Britanny; which then was vnfurnished of such garrisons as it was wont to haue, were great warresand troubles: for the Scots a fierce people, of which we have alreadie made mention, and after whose names part of Britanny is called the kingdome of Scotland to this day, with other people called Picts, or Pictauians, whose original was of Sarmatia in Europe, robbed and ouer-ranne all the land, and made themselves Lords of a great part thereof. Wherefore such of the inhabitants of that Iland as continued subject to the Empire, fent to Ec 14's for fuccour, certifying him that if reliefe came not within a fhort space, the whole

The comming of the Scots inte Britann)

Ecius made

Generall a-

and Gothes.

whom they would appoint, and to come to them: which Boniface openlie Rouiface rebilrefused to do, and leuied men of warre to defend him against the Emperour, led in divise. LIOOR GALBIO, he, who (as I said) went to the aid of the Britains with a legion, Maboreius and which being arrived in Africa with great power, BONIFACE which was an ex- Galbio Capcellent man of warre with a very good armie attended their comming, and kno- taines against wing where they landed, went to meete them, and feeing his power equall, they Boniface. the victorie, and the Emperours Captaines were ouerthrowne and flaine, toge- A battaile ther with a great number of their fouldiers, and fo Boniface became more twant Boniface mightie, and a greater Lord then before. The losse of this battaile and of men of pressiled, warre greatlie increased the strength of the enemies to the Empire: for first the Gothes followed the warres in Spaine with greater force then before, aswell aauthors) so called after their name, as truly writeth AG AT HIV s(although of their The comming of the Francors originall there be many fabulous opinions) feeing that Ec 1 v s had enough to do or Frenchmen against the Burgonians and the Gothes, and that the Emperour VALENTINIAN into France, had loft his armie in Africa, and that his cofen T HEODOSIVS was bufied about they had been expelled by the Vandales, Alanes, and Sucuians, in the time of the Emperours

the Burgonians, which alreadie had paffed the Rhine, and began with great furie to inuade France, being feared to have meant to passe into Italy, drew that legion out of Britanny, and left it in the borders of Paris in Franceto guard that countrey: and left another legion neere to Tarragona in Spaine, under the commaund of a Captaine called SEBASTIAN, to defend the same against the Gothes, and he with the rest of his armie went to the warres against the Burgonians, with which he oftentimes came to blowes, and ouercame them in fome battailes. But the Britains being abandoned by that legion which Ecrys fent for out of that Iland. were so distressed, that if VALENTINIAN had not sent commaundement to Ecrys to fend back that legion which he had drawne out of Britanny, thither againe, they had been in great extremitie; but that legion comming to their aid, they were sufficientlie able for that time to defend and support themselves in the Emperours service. While these things passed in Britanny, France, and Italy, Bo-NIFACE grew daily more mightie in Africa, who although that he vet shewed not himselfe to be against V ALENTINIAN, but rather seemed to be of his partie. euer after that he was troubled by the viurper Iohn, but yet he seemed to be a friend in such manner, that he would not leave any part of that which he posfessed. Which VALENTINIAN and PLACIDIA perceiuing, determining to found his intent, fent to commaund him to leave his governement to a fucceffor It is true that some Authors write, that he was deluded by Ecrys, who sent him word that if he came into Italy, VALENTINIAN would put him to death, whereof he advertised him as a friend: and he likewise told PLACIDIA, that BONI-FACE would not come, but would rebell; so as they affirme that more for feare then for any euil inter, he made himself a tirant, of which opinio is PROCOPIVS. But how foeuer the matter went, VALBNIINIAN fent presentlie two Captaines against him, the one called MAHORCIVS OF MABORCIVS, the other called GALcame to a battaile, wherein BONIFACE through his great valour and policie gat gainst the Emperours subjects, as against the Vandales and other nations inhabiting other parts of that countrey. And the Burgonians began to make a more refolute refistance against Ecrys, then before they had done. And aboue all, the Francks or Francons (a people of Germany) comming from Franconia (after some matters of the East, they resolved to invade France; out of which alittle before

continued, untill that Ecrys standing in neede of succours to make head against

when HONORIVS fent him into Spaine. But now taking the benefit of the time.

they came with very great power, and entred the prouince called Senonensis, and

the countries about Orleance and Paris, and presentlie tooke those countries.

MARCOMVNDVs having been before this time their Captaine, and afterwards

his sonne FARRAMOND, was the first King of the Francques, whom CLODIVE

fucceeded, who at that time was their King. And in processe of time their power

increased so much that Gallia from them tooke the name of France, and the King

thereof is called king of the Francques or Frenchmen. Of these Frenchmen

(which in truth were a warlike & valiant nation) fome French Historiographers

recite certaine fables, faying, that they descended from the Troianes, from one of

HECTORS sonnes called FRANCY's, and that from him they tooke their name.

Others fay, that they had this name for certaine franchifes, priviledges, and im-

monities which they injuved in the time of VALENTINIAN the first. All which

is fabulous and vntrue; for neither had H a c T o R any fuch fonne, neither def-

cended they fro the Troianes, neither is there any memorie of those Francques,

ther obtained they this name in the time of the Emperour V ALENTINIAN: for

he raigned long afterwards, and they (as I faid) were to called two hundred yeeres

before. But they were then a new people, of which neither C ESAR, STRABO.

PLINY, CORNELIUS TACITUS, POMPONIUS MELA, nor Prolomy, made

any mention, neither were they then of any name, or knowne: which if it had bin

otherwise, it had bin impossible but that some of those authors, if not all, would

The fucceffe of the French.

Gallia called

France.

The antiquitie but from the time of the Emperour AVRELIANVS, which ouerthrew them aof the French. bout the yeere of our Lord two hundred and threefcore, little more or leffe. Nei-

ded not from the Francons.

he changes wubich bane happened in

peace to the Burgonians.

have left some memoriall of them. The Franques might begin to be knowne a little before the time of AVRELIANVS, the rest is but winde. And it is to be vnderstood, that the Kings which in our time raigned in France, are not descended from this people; for in the house of France there have been two or three alterations and changes : the first was about the yeere of our Lord feuen hundred & fiftie, at which time King CHILDERICVS OF CHILDERICVS was deposed by Pope Z ACHARY, that kingdome having cotinued three hundred and thirtie yeeres in the line of the Franques. And PEPIN, father to CHARLES the great, being a Germane borne, was chosen King, and so the Francues then loft the royall (cepter. And in King PEPINS posteritie it afterwards continued two hundred and eight and thirtie yeeres, vntill the yeere of our Lord nine hundred, fourescore and ten, at what time LEVVEs the sonne of Lotharivs then raigning, was poisoned, and for that he had no sonnes, they sought to have made his brother CHARLE'S Duke of Lorrain their King. But agreat and mightieman, whose name was I o HN CAPV TIVS, and borne in that countrey, hindred the fame, and was of fuch power, that he tooke CHARLES prisoner, and rose with the kingdome, and in his posteritie the kingdome continueth vntill this day the next in bloud inheriting, for want of heires males. So as we are not to hold the Kings of France to be of the linage of the Francques, seeing they come not, neither are they descended from them. Herein do all good and true authors agree. But to returne to our historic, I say that the Frenchmen entred with such force and furie, that they tooke all that they inuaded; which Eczy's confidering, and the warres which the Gothes made in Spaine, notwithstanding that he had oftentimes ouerthrowne the Burgonians, and was in hope shortlie wholie to have subdued them.

yet he resolued to graunt them peace: which they humblie sued for, to be the

Theodosivs the second.

better able to give fuccours to other places where neede required: but especially to come against the Frenchmen for they were a mightie and a valiant people.

In this time whilest that E c I v s was thus troubled to defend the Romane Empire against so many nations, the new Emperour VALENTINIAN being still in hope to recouer Africa, with a greater resolution then at any time before, commaunded fouldiers to be leuied in Italie and Sicilie; and with the aide of men and thips which his cosin the Emperor THEODOSIVS fent him from Constantinople. he fent an excellent Captaine called SISVLPHV s, against BONIFACE in Africa; Valentinio Who by PAVLYS DIACONVS is called SIGISVLDVS. And he brought fuch an fent an armie armie and vsed such meanes, that taking land in Africa neere vnto Carthage, hee against Bonigrew fo strong in that countrie, that BONIFACE durst not abide his comming in in Africa, Carthage, but went into Mauritania Cafarienfis, and the marches thereof, which now containeth the kingdomes of Bugia, Argier and Oran, and the countries bordring yoon Spaine. And yet not holding himselfe there in safetie, he sent to treate with GENSERICVS King of the Vandales, who then was in the prouince of Betica, then called after their name Vandaluzia, to the end that he should come from Spaine to relieue him, and hee would give him townes and cities to possesse, if hee would helpe him to recouer what he had loft. This ambassade came to GENSE-RIC vs When he stood more in neede of helpe, then was able to send anv: for the Gothes which had many times inuaded Spaine, taking the benefit of the time. when as all things were turned vpfide downe, THEODORICVS being their King and leader; and not contenting themselves with what they held, and was given them in Spaine, entred, making a conquest of the countrie, & determined to make warre particularly against the Vandales; wherewith GENSERICVS was so oppreffed, that hee was out of all hope to be able to defend himselfe. Whereupon more of necessitie, then for any good will, he accepted the offer made by B o N I-FACE, and abandoning the province of Vandalozia, he passed the streights of Gi. The vindale braltare; as well with his people of warre; as of peace, women, children, goods, and and faile into carrell, and feifed on the best part that he could, of all Mauritania; and having en- Africa. tred under the name and title of fuccour he made himselfe absolute Lord robbing and spoiling the cities and townes with great crueltie. And this people thus abandoning Andaluzia, was the occasion that THEODORICVS and his Gothes took great part therof, and so the Gothes continued Kings of Spaine. And althoug that at fundtie times they had wars and battailes with the Alanes, & Sueuians, yet in the end the power of the Gothes preuailed: And from this THEODORICY & the first, is descended the roote and stocke of the Kings of Spaine vntill this day. The Vandales being barbarous and misbeleeuers (for they were of the fect of the Arrians)held not promise nor league with BONIFACE in Africa, who had placed them there: but taking the cities upon the coast which hee had given them, they entred and tooke the rest in despite of him: wherefore he was constrained through necessities to become enemie to those which hee had drawne thither for his fuccour and reliefe feeing that they tooke all. But as he was hated by the Emperour VALENTINIAN, and could hope for no fuccours from any where elfe, as wife and as valiant as he was, he was not able to make fufficient relistance against The Paraleles all, but being too weake, was driven to flie from place to place. But the province made themof Carthage and all the countries thereabout, were valiantly defended by the Ge- felues Lords of nerall STEV LPHVS, whom the Emperour VALENTINIAN fent thither against drives. BONIFACE. GENSERICVS King of the Vandales being so mightie in Africa, and finding S Is Y L P HV's of power able to make head against him, and fearing (as a wifeman)

which being inticed and allured thereto, partly for pay, and partly through the

fertilitie and fruitfulnes of that countrie came into Britannie, under the leading of their Captaine Hengillus (as faith BEDA) who affifting the inhabitants, in such many

ner subdued their aduersaries, that they rebelled no more. But they afterwards

growing strong and ambitious, did the like in Britannie as the Vandales did in A-

frica: and making warre upon the countrie and fubduing the Britaines, made

that in the time of Av G vs T v L v s, as wee will hereafter declare, they banished

dominion of that Iland refted in the Kings of the Angles or English, and hath con-

tinued in them with great alterations, warres and troubles, which import not

me to recite. Of all which, befides B E D A, and other ancient and moderne authors

not a few.Polidore Virgilan author of our time, with great care and indu-

strie hash written a notable historie, of the beginning and successe of all matters

in Britannie or England. But to returne to our storie of GBNSERICVS King of the

Vandales, I fay, that being vnfatisfied with Africa, hee rigged vp a fleete and failed

into Sicilie, and tooke great part thereof, robbing and burning the countrie: And

all possible diligence to prouide what was needfull, so farre as hee was able: who

presently sent comandement to SEE ASTIAN, his Generall in Spaine, to transport

himself with the greatest power that he was able, into Africa, and to make seisure

thereof while as GENSERIC VS was bufied in Sicilia. GENSERIC VS was aduer-

tized of this preparation, and understanding that without delay it should be put

in execution, resolued to leaue Sicilia, and to returne to defend Africa which was

of greater importance, and concerned him more : and so Sicilia escaped out of

his hands. And SEBASTIAN forbare to goe into Africa. But he feeing himselfe of

greater power then before, and that his Lord was oppressed with warres and ad-

uersities (wherein those men are seldome faithfull, which in prosperitie shew

themselues most seruiceable) and purposing to make himselfe Lord of all that

which the Emperour possessed in Spaine, was the cause that the Empire lost the

fame, and he without obtaining his defire, loft both his life and honour. For mo-

granteth peace

in Africa.

L'alentinian

wous ill acti

Genfericus

King of the

Gerferiers

The death of

to the Vandales Lated the peace. Gevu Beniface.

S.Augustine.

After the taking of Hippo, the power of GENSERICV s daily encreased in such

would not become Arrians, as he was, as the like had feldome been feene: most cruelly putting many of them to death, and banishing others. The like he yied towards all kind of people, committing incredible infolencies and robberies, as many credible authors affirme, whereof Victor on wrote a particular booke, which

ainß the true he intituled the Vandalicall perfecution, whereto I referre the curious reader: which booke is newly imprinted and annexed to Evs BBIvs his Chronicle, and to the tripartite historie. After this accident thus happened in Africa, VALENTI-NIAN had daily aduertifements, that the Hunnes which alreadie were become

Lords of Austrich and Hungarie, with the marches thereof, made preparation to come downe into France, and to that end had raifed a great number of men of

Totile King of deleignes he daily fent new forces to Ecivs, who followed the ordinarie warres

of France) by meanes whereof Ecivs could not fend any fuccours to those of the Ile of Britannie, which newly had fent to him for aide against the Scots and Picks:

THEODOSIVS THE SECOND.

a wifeman)the mutabilitie of fortune, fent to entreate a peace with VALBETT NI AN youn condition that he should suffer him to enjoy that which he had taken from BONIFACE feeing that he was not possessed thereof himselfe. The Empe-TOUT VALENTINIAN Confidering that ECIVS was much troubled in France against the French, new inhabitants therein; and that there was little assurance of the truce with the Burgonians; with a defire to recover that which was loft in Spaint (for he was advertised that his Generall SEBASTIAN, who was there in his feruice against the Alanes and Suguians, had obtained certaine victories against them, and that they were joyned with the Gothes, so as he was vnable alone to defend himselfe against all) determined to graunt the Vandales in Africa that peace which they required, and taking fecuritie and great promifes of their King GENSERICVS, the peace was concluded between them; and VALENTINIAN relying more upon that peace, then he ought to have done, fent for SISVLPHVS. commaunding him to come into Italy with his armie, without leaving or fending any Garrison to keepe Carthage or Africa. For his meaning was with all his whole power to have reinforced Ectvs his armie, and to have driven out those nations which were entred France, and to have recovered, or at least to have preferued that which he possessed in Spaine. SISVLPHVS being arrived in Italy, GEN-SERICVS King of the Vandales, as an ambitious impudent Infidell, went prefently to Cathage, and entred the same by force of armes. Fine hundred, foure score and five yeeres (as PROSPERVS reporteth) after that SCIPIO Subdued it to the Romane Empire. The like he afterwards did by all the reft, and in the end came to the citie of Hippo, wherein S.Av Gv s Tin a was Bishop, and therein also as faith POSIDIVS (a disciple and familiar of S.Avgvstines) was Boniface, who had retired himselfe thither; and holding it belieged the space of sourceene moneths (God having first taken away S.Av G v s TIN a, being when hee died of the age of seventic and fixe yeeres)he tooke it, and put BONIFACE to death. Herein Pa ocopi vs doth differ from other authors, who writeth that he raifed his fiene without taking the citie; and concerning BONIFACE, PROSPERVS and PAV-LVS DIACONV s recount it after another manner, faying that hee had his pardon, and went into Italy, where he died of a natural infirmitie.

manner that he made a full conquest of all Africa; and so the Vandales remained for a long time absolute Lords thereof. Wherein this cruell King committed for many cruelties against the Bishops and Priests, which held the true faith and e fed by Genfewarre(Torila a most fierce proud man, being their King) against which their

for which cause the Romanes and Britaines which inhabited Britannie, despairing The Pritaines of any other redresse, called to their aide, and sollicited with faire promises, the called the sax-Angles then called Saxons, a people of Germany inhabiting neere to the Sea fide; side.

themselues Lords of all the land, excepting that which is now the kingdome of saxons tooke Scotland. In this manner the Empire loft this Iland, and the Angles remained the lie of Bri-

Kings thereof; and afterwards it loft the name of Britannie, and by them was cal-tamie. led Anglia, and now is called England, which is as much to fay, as the land of the Britannie cal-English; & so from henceforth we wil call it. And their power so much increased. led England.

and draue the Britaines wholy out of that countrie, so that none of them remained: but io well as they could came ouer into France, and inhabited that coun- France why

trie which is now called Britannie, wherein before that time dwelled the Turones for called. and Veneti, which through their thither comming is called Britannie; and so the

truly hee had taken all the rest of the Iland, if that VALENTINIAN (notwithstan- went to make ding that he was very tender and delicate, and in his person did nothing neither warein sicio would follow the wars) had not (as it cannot be denied) taken great care and vsed lia-

ued by this ambition, as I faid, he treated with THEODORICVS, and the Gothes, Thetrester and with the Alanes also, that they should come to a peace with him, and that and death of they should divide the land amongst them, without yeelding any acknowledge- Sebastian Gement to VALENTINIAN. Wherewith in outward shew they seemed to be very Emperous Valentinian. well pleafed, and yeelded to his propositions, which they observed for certaine lentinian in daies: but afterwards upon a fafeconduct they flew him; and he being dead which spaine.

was wont to defend the countrie, they tooke all Spaine, excepting fome fmall part of Galicia and Bifcai, which by reason of the inaccessible steepnes of the mountaines, and the valour of the inhabitants, defended themselves for a scason.

Valentinian. Emperor Thee dosius his daughter.

Ariobindus and Ansila Captaines sent

the Greeke Empire.

While as in Spaine and Africa these cuents happened. Ecrys neuer desisted from warring against the French, and Burgonians & other nations in France: and V.ALENTINIAN leaving althings in the best order that he could in Italy.took his paffage for Gracia, and went to Conftantinople to fee his cofin the Emperor THE o-POSIVS; whose Empire as it pleased God was then better in peace and in more Gantinople, and quietnes then the West. At this meeting VALENTINIAN married with Evmarried with DOXA THEODOSIVS his daughter, and then presently returned into Italy, to prouide for the defence of that which remained, and to recouer that which was loft. Which the Emperor THEODOSIVS CONDOLEING fent him two Captaines called ARIOBINDV s and ANSILA, with a very great number of fouldiers, to the end that they should reconquer Africa; and was very wroth with GENSERICVS King of the Vandales, for the breach of the peace, and for the great cruelties which he had committed in that countrie. These Captaines and men of warre failed into Sicilia, from thence to passe into Africa: but they so detracted the time and prolonged their departure in fuch manner, that they spoiled the whole land of Sicilia, and it pleased not God that they should proceede on their journey. For ATTILA2 mightie King of the Hunnes, which of long time had purposed to make himselfe Lord of the Empire; after that, besides Hungarie, hee had made a conquest of many cities in Germanie, drawing to him for pay and by faire promifes and fubtill meanes, an infinite number of people, part of which were cal-Autile inuaded led Turlingi, Tungri, Oftrogothes, and Marcomanni, and other barbarous northerly nations, which like swarmes of Bees arole and came to him in that time: which (as PAV LVS DIACONVS recounteth) determined to inuade the Empire of Constantinople, knowing that the best and greatest part of the men of warre thereof, were gone with the two Captaines aforefaid into Sicilia. At this his entrie he tooke many cities in Thracia, and in Slauenia also, and made so great spoile in that countrie, that the Emperour in great hafte fent for ARIOBINDY's and Ansıl A, which with a great armie (as I faid) were in Sicilia, to the end that they should come and defend the countrie; together with other great forces which hee had commaunded to be leuied. And so hee began the warre and to oppose himselfe against the force and furie of ATTILA; whereto this was a great helpe, that at that instant there began to grow fome suspicions and jealousies betweene ATTILA and his brother BEDA, and enuice and emulation betweene the Kings which came with him; by reason whereof, the warre was not so terrible as before, although that they still did much harme. THEODOSIVS Emperour of the East being in this care, and at warres with the mightie ATTILA, and his cosin VALENTINIAN in such trouble, as is before faid, that the Vandales and their King held Africa, the Gothes and Alanes Spaine, and his Generall Eczvs in France, held warre with fo many nations, and therein passed so many aduentures, that they would be too long to recite. And THEODOSIVS applying himselfe in Constantinople, with great care and diligence to fend greater reliefe and forces against the said ATTILA, was striken with the plague, whereof within few daies he died. Whose death was generally greatly lamented: for hee was a very good, pitifull and a very vertuous and Christian Prace; as it plainly appeareth by many letters which at this day are extant, written to him by L o Bishop of Rome, who lived in his time. It is written of him, that he was very devout and religious,

and spent much time in prayer; and that hee fasted two daies in the weeke, and Thereligion exceedingly much honoured the Church and the Clergie. Finally, hee left no Theodofins, thing vndone which a Christian was bound to doe, neither what was convenient for an Emperour. He was very studious and addicted to letters, and to Philosophie, and made great Libraries, principally of the holie Scriptures. He was fo pitifull and mercifull, that being one day reprehended for giving fo many malefactors their lines, he answered: I would to God that I could raise againe those dimension which I have put to death. In conclusion, hee was accomplished with all vertues. and voide and free from all vices, so as he was not subject vinto any, onely he was noted to be somewhat mutable and hastie. He was married to E v D O X I A a very godly and discreete woman, the daughter of Leoncivs, whom he married for her vertue onely: she was called before that she was married to him, A TAN AIS, and with her mariage her name was chaunged. For this his goodnes and vertue, it pleased God that his raigne continued two and fortie yeeres, sourteene or fifteene being a childe vnder the protection of the King of Persia, in the time of his Vncle Honorivs, as is alreadie written; and scuen and twentie with his cosin V A-LENTINIAN and that for the most part hee enjoyed the Empire of the East in peace and quiet: and died being about fiftie yeeres old: for almost fo foone as he was borne, he inherited the Empire. He departed this world, according to Ma-

THE VV PALMER VS computation in his additions to EVSEBIVS his Chronicle, and after PROSPERVS, in the yeere of our Lord, foure hundred fiftie and three; and after some others, source hundred and fiftie; and after the most common opinion in the feuen and twentith yeere of the raigne of the

Emperor VALENTINIAN, who then raigned in Italy, and lived in the citie of Rome.

Anno Dom 453.

THE



## THE LIFE OF VALENTI-NIAN THE SECOND OF THAT

NAME, AND THE THREE AND FIF-TITH ROMANE EMPEROVR, and of his brother in lawe MARTIANVS.



#### THE ARGVMENT.

M Alentinian remaining alone in the Empire of the West, tired with many warres, and seeing that Attila molested the eastern parts, to please his lister Pulcheria, and to the end that that part should not remaine without an Emperour, he game the charge thereof to an old man called Martianus, who was a man of great indgement, and very wife. In which time Attila determining to give over his enterprise against Constantinople, being long and very hardly to be effected, came towards the western parts, with a determination to passe into France and into Italie: Against whom Valentinian made Ecius his generall, who ordinarily was his generall in France: having first concluded a peace with Gensericus King of the Vandales, wherein the new Emperour old Martianus entredatfo. This Ecius gave Attilamuch to doe, and made him to know, to the orest loffe of his people how valorous a man he was in the warres; fo as be compelled him to flie. For which victorie Valentinian began to have Ecius in suspition, that he had an intent to have made himselfe Emperour, and to that end had some intelligence with Attila, seeing that he did not throughly destroy him when be might: wherefore he made him to be staine, which was the cause of the ruine of Italie, and of the West Empire. For Attila understanding that Ecius was dead, re-turned into Italie, which Valentinian enjoyed in peace, and being inuaded, there was not one of the Emperours that fet his hand to refcue it, being unableso leuie any sufficient armie to withfrand the enemie. Whereupon having taken Aquileia, and comming towards Rome, at the entreatie of Pope Leo, be spared that citie, and so leaving Italie be returned into Hangarie, where marrying with the lifter of the Emperor Valentinian, upon his wedding day be gorged himfelfe fo ful with wine

and meate, that in the night (nature being whable to support so great a charge, casting up aboundance of blond ) he died in his bed. Whose death reelded some libertie to the Empire, notwithstanding that the Well remained in a manner destroyed, whereof grew the greatnes of the Empire of the Falt, and of Constantinople. And one yeere after the death of Attila, Valentinian was allo flaine by a fouldier, whose name was Tansillus, notesse to take reveny for the death of his captaine Ecius, then verged by the hatred of one Maximus, whose wife Valentinian had forced, when he had raigned Emperour thirtie yeeres.



Ruely I know not whether the reading of that which I haue alreadie declared and am prefently to recount, shall make the reader so much to wonder, as it doth me which doe write the same. For mine owne part I can verefie, that no A consideratiwarres, alterations or changes of kingdomes, of all that euer on of the cala-I haue read in auncient or moderne histories, seeme worthie of fo great admiration as those of these times, whereof we are now to treate. Neither doe I remember that I ever

maruelled more at any thing then at these; considering the great and fundrie calamities, of so many prouinces and cities, the battailes and effusion of bloud. the alterations and falles of estates, the diversitie of people and nations which flocked togethers in them. And aboue al, I do most wonder at the infinit numbers of people which came out of the northren parts, so that it seemed that the earth did flowe with armed men. And likewife to confider, what fo great, rage, furie, pride or ambition (for I can give it no other name) might move so many fundric nations, to abandon their owne countries, and to destroy and conquer the world. without being viged, or moued thereto by any offence or injurie received. But it was the just judgement and permission of our Lord God whose counsels are vnfearchable, and whose providence cannot bee perceived by the light of any humane eie. Let vs giue humble thankes vnto his diuine maiestie, that although that for our finnes, he fuffereth warres and troubles in these our times; yet they are not fo generall, neither fo miferable and cruell, as those which the people endured in that age, as the reader may plainly perceive by that which is alreadie. and hereafter shall be expressed, which passed in this manner.

The state of Italie and of the West, wherein VALENTINIAN raigned, standing in fuch manner, as is before faid, THEODOSIVS dying in Conflantinople, leaving Pulcheria files neuer a fon to succeede him, and but one fister, whose name was Pylcheria, a to Theodosius. wife and worthie woman, who as she bare a great sway in the government, and confidered the wars with the Gothes, and in what state the whole Empire of both East and West stood; she endeuoured to procure that some excellent man, both in peace, and war, might be chosen Emperor, whether he were descended of imperiall bloud or no. And it feemed that there was not any man in whom more noble and excellent qualities did concur, then in an old captaine called MARTIANVS. who although that he were but of meane parentage, yet with his age he was of great experience, and was a very valorous and excellent captaine. PVLCHERIA and those which were of her counsell having taken this resolution, concealed the death of THEODOSIVS for certaine daies, untill they had taken fuch order as was requifit oncerning the election of MARTIANVS. And notwithstanding that he was old, PVLCHERIA tooke him for her husband, to the end to give the greater affurance and authoritie to his Empire, and so he was soyfully received by fen Emperor of all men for their foueraigne Lord and Emperour. And VALENTINIAN like- Confantinople. wife who then was in Rame, was well pleafed therewith; aswell for his deferts, as

A notable example of

Attilatran-Rated his vvar from the Eaft. into the VVeft.

Attila [lue bis brother Beda by treason.

great power

Attila bis title.

Attila his

also for that it was done by PVLCHERIA, of whose vertue and worthines there was a generall good opinion. ZONARAS an auncient author, whom some call I OHANNES MONACYS, Writeth (as I OHN CVSPINIAN relateth) that Pv 1-CHERIA married with MARTIANVS to give the greater authoritie and reputation to his Empire: but first she tooke securitie of him, that they should both line chaft; for the was a maide, and had refolued to keepe her virginitie inniolable: and that MARTIANVS accepted thereof, and they both observed the fame, which is a notable example. So fooneas MARTIANV's wasmade Emperour of the East, the first thing that hee did, was to make prouision to reinforce the armie which THEODOSIVS had left, and to fend against ATTILA fresh fouldiers and a new generall. And the writers affirme, that if ATTILA had continued the warre which he began against Constantinople, he had without doubt come to confusion, by reason of the mutinies and contentions which began among his men of warre; which that politike and mightie King comprehending, and also for that (as they say) that a great Captaine of his counselled him to leave that conquest, and to go from thence to make warres in the rest of Germany, and afterwards in France, Spaine, and Italy, where VALENTINIAN ruled : knowing that the Empire was divided and viurped by divers nations, and therefore was very easie to be conquered. He resolued therefore to go into Hungarie, where by treason he slue his brother Bada, who together with him was equal King. for that he suspected that B = D A was the cause of the dissension and discord, and to the end to make himselfe absolute Lord: so great was his pride, crueltie, and ambition. And after this giving good pay to his old fouldiers, and continuing them therein, and raising other new, he grew to be so mightie, that the Kings and Captaines of the Oftrogothes, and the Heruli, and other Nations which in the beginning came to aid and affilt him as a friend, did now ferue and obey him as their Lord. And the Authors affirme, that he raifed an armie of fine hundred thousand men, which were fouldiers, and hazardours or adventurers (so great was his fame and reputation at that time) with which armie comming out of Hungarie and Austrich, and the confines thereof, which were in his fubication. together with many other countries which he had taken in the last troubles. wherein the Empire was brought fo low, he presentlie began to make a conquest of Germany, and tooke the most part thereof, and the best cities therein, as Colein, Argentine, Spire, Constance, Bafil, and many other, making all possible hast to come into France, and into Italy, imagining that VALENTINIAN should not be able to protectand defend the same. Wherewith (such was his pride) he pretended not to rest contented, but to make himselfe sole Monarch of the whole world. through all which his name was greatly feared, and so he intituled himselfe King of the Hunnes, of the Medes, of the Gothes, and of the Danes, the terrour to the world, and the scourge of God. Priscy san Historiographer writeth (who being Secretarie to the Emperour VALENTINIAN, was fent Ambassador to him into Scythia before his comming into Hungary) that he was but a little man of stature, and had a large broad breft, a great head, little eyes, but very quick, a very little thin beard, and some gray haires therein, a flat note, and was of a very swarth complexion; and that in his going and lookes he shewed the pride and greatnes. of his mind. He greatly delighted in the warres, and was both politike and valiant therein, although he did not often vie to fight in battailes in person, but reserved himselfe for greater occasions. He was gentle and casie to be pleased, by those which humblie required pardon, and fubmitted themselves ynto him; and held and maintained his faith and word, and defended those which yeelded themfelues into his protection: but with all this, he was most proud, and desirous to make himselfe Lord ouer all others. VALENTINIAN the Emperour of Rome vnderstanding ATTILA his successe, determination and desire, whereof of long time before he had stood in feare, did the vitermost of his power to resist and make head against so great force and furie. The first prouision that he made, was to conclude a peace with GENSERICUS King of the Vandales, who was now Valentinia also King of all Africa, to the end to have his back in safetie from so mightic an with Genteenemie. This peace was very acceptable to GENSERICVS, and as to a thing ricus King of which he greatlie defired he gladlie yeelded: for at that time there was great dif- and of Africa. sension and rebellion amongst his Captaines and men of warre. This peace was concluded betweene them, vpon condition, that the King should resigne certaine prouinces and cities to VALENTINIAN, and MARTIANVS the new Emperour of the East was included in the same. This being ended, Ecivs which followed

(comprehending that ATTILA preuailing would aswell seeke to deseate him af-

terwards as he did now the Romanes) raifed all his whole power, and drew neere

ATTILA, then for any good will to the Romanes, refolued to take part with E-

civs, whose wisedome and discretion was so great, that they all willinglie joined

with him ; yet for all this ATTILA entred France with fuch power and furie, that

without finding any refistance he tooke the greatest part thereof before that E-

crys was in order to fight with him. But while as he made this spoile and con-

quest in France, the Kings and people aforesaid ioyned with Ecivs in the fields

called Catalanes, in the borders of Tholonfe: fo as he had one of the greatest and

best armies that euer was seene aswell for number, as goodnes of men, and his

partie was held to be of no leffe power then that of ATTILA. Wherefore the one

armie drew neere to the other, and betweene them began a most cruell warre.

wherein (as I ORNANDE saffirmeth) dyed fourescore and ten thousand men, be-

fore that they came to the generall battaile, whereof we will speake presentlie,

either partie desiring it, but chiefely ATTILA, who held his power for inuincible,

and so all nations attended the issue thereof: for it seemed that of the victorie de-

the ordinarie warres in France, was made generall against ATTILA, for that he was the best and most expert Captaine in his time, whom A TTILA had not for gainst attila.

borne to haue seduced with many faire promises, putting him in mind of former friendship, but he for all that he could do, gaue no eare to him.

Ecry's understanding that ATTILA with his armie had alreadic passed the river Rhine, and knowing himself to have no sufficient army to make head against him, notwithstanding that many new supplies were come to his aid, he therefore by all meanes and deuises sought the friendship of THEODORICVS, whom some Ecins sought

call THEODOREDVS King of the Gothes (who possessed the greatest part of the friendship Spaine, and a great part of France also, and was a mightie Prince and very valiant, King of the and at that time lay in Tholoufe) to induce him to aid and affift the Romanes, who Gother, and franklie promised, and faithfullie perfourmed the same; which the Emperour of Spaine. VALENTINIAN had also before attempted. And although that ATTILAby his letters had fued to the contrarie, promifing him affurance of his eftate; yet he

to ioyne with Ecrys, and made the Alanes and Sueuians which lived in Spaine to do the like. And with the like perswasion Ecivs concluded a peace with ME-The Kines ROBEVS king of the Frenchmen, and with GVANDARICVS king of the Burgo. withich inited ther nations; all which more for feare, and through the hatred which they bare to

pended

nians, which of custome were his ordinarie enemies, and with the Saxons and o- against attilda

The vvarres between Ecins and Attila.

pended the dominion and empire of the whole world. And to fay the truth, at this meeting were gathered together the best, and the greatest part of men of all Europe, and therein concurred about a million of people: wherefore it shall not be amisse that we describe this battaile more distinctlie then we do others, seeing that it cannot be faid, that there was ever feene any that was greater or more bloudie. First then, there fought therein in proper person aboue ten mightie and warlike kings of the one fide, and of the other. Of ATTILA his partie was ARDARICUS king of a people called Gepidi, and ANDARICUS, VALAMIR, and THEODOMIR brethren, and kings of the Gothes, or Oftrogothes, and the king of the Marsomanni, and others whose names I find not written, and the people alreadie named which were without number. Of Ecivs his partie, was THE O-DORICUS, (who was of greater power then any of the reft) king of the Gothes. Visiogothes, and of Spaine, and his sonne THORISMVND, MEROBEVS, kings of the Francoues, GVANDARICVS king of the Burgonians, SANGVIBANVS king of the Alanes, and the Captaines and kings of divers other nations, which tooke his part, besides the Romane Legions and Captaines of the Empire. But A 7-TILA made small account of all these men: for he had alreadie theretofore overthrowne the greatest part of them, so as nothing made him to feare or to doubt of the victorie, but only the difcretion and valour of Ecrys, who was their generall. Wherefore as he was an Infidell and superstitious, he commaunded his foothfayers and wizards to be called togethers, to the end that vfing their inchantments and forceries, they should tell him what successe he should have, and how he should speede in the battaile, and they sacrificing their beasts, told him. that he should lose the victorie, but that the greatest Captaine among his enemies should dye therein. Whereto giving credit (although that it grieved him to thinke that he should be ouerthrowne, imagining that Ecrys should dve) he fought and procured it: for he made account that if Ecrys were dead, although he loft the day, yet he would raife new supplies, and prevaile against the rest, and fo he disposed himselfe to fight. And as Eczys and his partakers defired the fame, the two armies came so neere togethers, that there rested nothing but to come to blowes, and fo they fought, which as PROCOPIVS, IORDANVS, ALA-BIVS. PAVLYS DIACONVS, and others do write, was in this manner. Both parties being defirous to fight the one armie being in the morning by breake of day in fight of the other, both Generals commaunded to marshall and raunge their troupes in order, and to forme their batailions, to the end to charge their enemies. but as their numbers were so infinite (notwithstanding all the diligence and expedition that could be vsed by either partie) it was past noone before they could fet their men in order. ATTILA with all his carts and wagons which he brought for his cariage, made akind of fortor sconce vpon the side of a hill, wherein he put the women and disarmed people of his armie, and of his whole armie made three battailions, referuing to himselfe with his Scythians and Hunnes, the maine or middle battaile. And ARDARIC vs king of the Gepids with his countrymen. & many others in whom he reposed greatest trust, led the battaile on the right hand, and to Andaricus, Valamir, and Theodomir, brethren kings of the Ostrogothes, with their owne people and their most friends, he gaue the charge and leading of the battailion on the left hand. And in this order he marched against Ecrys: who had somewhat prolonged

the time, by reason of a great mistrust which he had conceived of SANGVIBA-

fet his armie

ATTILA graunted to refigne to him a citie, wherein he had lien, and which was taken from him. Wherefore ranging his armie into three squadrons also, in the middle foundron, he fet the faid SANGVIBANVS, placing in the auaunt, and How Ecius arriergward of the troupe, the most valiant men of the Romanelegions, to the mass findled bis end that he should not chuse hur fight. And to T. end that he should not chuse but fight. And to THEODORICVS with his sonne THORISMYND with his Gothes and Spaniards, he gaue the leading of the squadron on the right hand: to the end that they should encounter the Gepidi, which were a mightie people. And he tooke to himselfe the leading of the left wing. taking with him MEROBEVS King of the French, with his people, and the Burgonians, whose King with the greatest part of his forces were slaine in an encounter which happened the night before this battaile. With these troupes he placed himselfe against the Ostrogothes, which made the right wing of the enemies, chaunging it in this manner, for that hee imagined, that if the Visogothes which were of his fide, should have been placed against the Gothes which were of the other fide (for that they were countrie men, and neighbours) they would not have charged with fuch furie as he defired. In this order these two mightie armies marched the one against the other, with incredible courage and assured confidence, the one to ouerthrow the other. And so there began between them Abattaile the most cruelland the most bloudie battaile that euer was. For although it may fought bebe faid, that in other battailes there hath been fo great a concourse of menthat and Attilathe they could not well be numbred; but yet that they were fuch men as were these most cruell that which fought herein, or that it was so obstinate and cruelly fought with the fought in the flaughter of fo many men and effusion of fo much bloud as this was, I doe not viveld. remember that I euer read. For therein fought the flower (for valour and courage) of almost all the nations of the world: As the Romanes, the Scythians, the Hunnes, the Gothes, the French, the Germanes, the Spaniards, the Gaules, the Burgonians, and of each of these avery great number: So as in my judgement. this may bee canonized for the greatest and most fierce battaile that ever was. The first attempt was to get a little hill betweene the two armies, which either of the two generalles thought requifit to be taken, thereby to have the advantage of the other. ATTILA fent certaine troupes to take that hill, but to that effect, thither was alreadie come THORISMVND, THEODORICVS his sonne with his people, which were Gothes and Spaniards; fo as these heere by this his and all the rest presently gaue the charge, and the slaughter, the cries, and the sound of the blowes with fwords and launces, was fuch, that it feemed that the firmament had rent in funder; fo as no man could doe any other but fight. And they all fought with such furie, that there was not any advantage seene from noone till night, for folong it endured. What particular exploits were therein performed, cannot certainely be knowne (for the historiographers, which treate thereof) affirme that among fo great a multitude of people it could not be seene nor judged how things passed; for every one applied himselfe to strike, and to kill, and there was not any foundron or troupe that stoode still, or to looke on. But it is certaine. and they all affirme the same, that a little brooke which ranne where this cruell battaile was fought, grew so high with the blood of those which were slaine, as Astrange siebt. it ysed to doeaster some great raine had failen. And the streames of blood were fogreat, that they carried the dead bodies downe the valley. This ought not to be held for incredible, feeing that the number of the flaine was fo great, that all authors agree that it exceeded the number of one hundred and fourescore thou-

NV & King of the Alanes, doubting that he would have gone over to ATTILA:

Theodoricus King of the Oothes flaine.

rie obtained by

Ecius against

Attila.

fand men; and they all lay dead in a small circuit of ground. For in this fight there was no retraite, nor running away, but all died fighting. In this manner in the heate and furie of the fight, the night came vpon them, and parted them, but with great and apparant advantage of Ecivs his fide; for ATTILA his troupes began to give ground, notwithstanding that he vsed all possible meanes that they should have maintained the fight. And THEODORICVS King of the Gothes and of Spaine, charging too far in amongst his enemies, was slaine. Some fay that his horse fell with him, and so he was troden to death by his owne men, and that his fonne THORISMOND incurring the like daunger, was refcued by his people. ATTILA perceiuing the defect and weaknes which was in his people. in the best order that he could retired to his fort or sconce, which he had made of his carts and wagons, and therein fortified himselfe that night, with those which repaired to him from the battaile (for some were fled other waies) there expecting the next daies fortune. Ecrys went vp and downe the fields, as the greatest Lord thereof, gathering his people together and setting them in order, to the end that their disorder should not incourage the enemie: for by reason of the multitude of people, and the darknes of the night it could not certainely be faid, who had the victorie; and so they passed that night without any certaine knowledge whether THEODORICVS were aliue or dead. The next morning by the breake of day the victorie was apparant and manifest: for ATTILA durst not A great victocome forth of his campe; and fo Ecrys and his fouldiers had the spoile of the field and were Lords thereof. The armies were fo neere togethers, that notwithstanding that ATTILA held himselfe for ouerthrowne, yet he neither durst neither could retire, wherefore he refolued to fortifie his campe and to defend himsclife therein. And as THORISMVND found his father dead in the field he with his Gothes and Spaniards was so extreamely enraged, that he purposed to haue affaulted ATTILA in his campe, to reuenge the death of his father, by his destruction. For all writers affirme that he might have done it, if Ec Iv's would have conferred thereto, and have given him such aide as he might have done. And they also write, that ATTILA was in such despaire, when he vnderstood that they ment to affault him, feeing the fmall forces he had to defend him, that he resolved rather to kill himselfe then to come into his enemies hands. But the wife and valiant captaine Eczys, knowing both the ambition and the power of THORISMYND, THEODORICVS his fonne, and how mightie the Gothes were, was in great doubt, that they having wholy defeated ATTILA and his armie, would have converted their armes against the Romanes, which would haue been ill able to haue defended themselues against them: and that therefore it was most profitable (the time considered) to give A TTILA meanes to escape, to the end that the Gothes and French-men should not be freed from the feare of him. And to that end without discovering his conceite, he counselled THO-RISMYND, that fetting all other mattersafide, he should goe to take possession of his kingdome of Spaine, before that the Alanes, the Sucuians or any other nations should cause any alteration therein, or rebell against him. And that before this, he should not attempt any other enterprise, for it was vncertaine whether he should be able to bring his purpose to effect or no. Thorismynd deeming this to be the counsell of a father, and a friend (as in deede it was profitable for him) accepted his aduife and without any delay presently departed towards his countries; aswell those which he held in France as those in Spaine. And Ecivs for the confideration aforefaid forbare to affault ATTILAES campe, and so he and the kings which were with him had meanes to escape, and abandoned what in France he possessed. But the counsell of this great Captaine (although that to this effect it feemed profitable) afterwards fell out cleane contrarie: for it was the cause of his owne death, and of great hurt (as hereafter shall be declared) to the

Romane Empire. ATTILA being in this manner departed out of France, by long journeles as a man ouercome, went with his armie into Hungarie, and the countries there adiacent of which he was in peaceable possession; where relieuing his people he refled certaine daies. From whence (they fay) the Hungarians are descended, forming their name from the Hunnes and another nation called Catti or Gattisand fo they were called Hungary, and Pannonia is now called Hungaria; although that neither in Hungary, neither in other prouinces are observed the limits and bounds which in ancient times they held. For as there have been great chaunges and alterations in the names; so have there been likewise as great in their limits and confines. But feeing this concerneth me not, without producing any example this shall suffice for an advertisement to the reader. Ecivs having obtained so great a victorie, leaning all that which in France the Romanes enjoyed, and A T-TIL A had possessed, and the French and Burgonians in amitie and friends thee came to Rome, where the Emperour VALBNTINIAN expected the iffue of the battaile. This victorie freed all Italy from feare, and purchased to Eczvs the greatest honour possible. He entring Rome with great solemnitie and incredible iov of all forts of people: within few daies after (as the most of the authors which I follow doe write) VALENTINIAN began to suspect, that he had a determination to Ecius had in have made himselfe Emperor, and that he had intelligence with ATTILA. The sufficiently suspition growing (as he said) for that Ecivs after the battaile did not throughly Valentinian. bring ATTILAto confusion. And as EVTROPIV s particularly relateth, VALEN-TINIAN Was so highly incensed against Ecrvs by MAXIMVS a gentleman of Rome, that he made him to be flaine. Which (they fay) MAXIMV s did to the end The death of to be reuenged of VALENTINIAN (as afterwards he was) for ranishing his wife; Ecius. which injurie he diffembled, and made no shew to vinderstand, vitill that hee had oportunitie to effect that which afterwards he put in execution, which was to kill the Emperour; which he neuer durft to attempt follong as Ecrys lived. Ecrys being flaine at this time (although that PAVLVS DIACONVS sceme to be of opinion that it was afterwards) with him ended the whole force and power of the West Empire, which PROXIMV sa discreet and noble Romane gentleman gaue VALENTINIAN well to vinderstand. Who being demaunded by the Emperour, Proximus to (as PROCOPIVS Writeth) whether hee had not followed the best and most profi- the Emperour table counsell, by putting Ec I v s to death, answered: Whether the Emperour Valentinian, hath put Ecrys to death with reason or without reason, I dare not determine: but this I dare affirme, that by killing him, thou hast with thy owne left hand cut off thy right. And truly he was a true prophet, as the historie hereafter will make manifest.

While as these things passed in the Westerne parts, the Emperour MARTIA n v s raigned in great prosperitie in Gracia and the East: for he was a very wiseman and a louer of peace; and so he maintained and preserved the same with the Perfians and other nations, without lofing any iot of his confines: but rather in all treaties which he had with them, had ever the advantage and got ground. And fent aide and men of warre to serue VALENTINIAN in the warres with ATTI-L M'aforefaid: fo as MARTIAN lived in prosperitie and well beloved. But retur-

Attila bis comming into Italy. Forum Iuly.

The beginning of the citic of Venice.

Same are of opinion that it is called Venetia of thefe qua, vsed by Shofe wobich vvere firft there to induce the rest vubich wvere on land to come thi-

The fiege of Aquileia.

ning to our Westerne historie(thus it went) so soone as ATTILA vnderstood that Ecrys was dead (the feare of whom made him to containe himselfe within Hungarie and Germanie) he refolued without any delay, fetting all other matters apart, to come against Italy, which onely in peace and entier, held for V ALEN-TINIAN. And comming downe with a very mightie armie, with some of those kings before named, which after that he was driven out of France he had iovned with him, he descended with great furie, taking by the way all the cities and countries as he passed, putting all to fire and sword. And in this manner he entred poore Italy through the province of the Venetians now called Friuli, robbing and spoiling all places: where there came against him a Captaine sent by V A-LENTINIAN with a great and mightie armie, with which ATTILA fought a very cruell battaile: but the imperiall generall and armie were both ouerthrowne, with great losse and slaughter of men; and so ATTILA marching forwards, tooke many cities, which put all Italy in fuch feare, that the inhabitants in no part thereof held themselves in safetie from the power and rage of ATTILA. And this his comming and the feare of him was the cause of the originall of the mightie and famous citie of Venice, which in those daies begun to be builded (according to the most part of the best Historiographers) by people which flying from the rage and perfecution of ATTILA, reduced themselves to dwell in certaine little Ilands, with their wives, children, and goods, where that citie now standeth, imagining that there they might live in fafetie: and there fortifying themselves in the best manner that they could, for A TTILA his armie did consist of landmen only, and afterwards they refolued to continue there, notwithstanding that the feare was past, and began to set orders in their government and instice. And hauing happie fuccesse, they grew in processe of time to such greatnes, that they in a manner became absolute Lords of the sea, and gat many Ilands, kingdomes and noble cities, and are vntill these our daies the honour & credit of all Italy, and preferue their libertie inuiolate, calling their citie Venetie, after the name of the prouince from whence they came, which was the maine land vpon the shore side neere to Venice: which for that it appertaineth not to my historie, I will passe ouer words Venite with filence, referring the reader to BLONDV s and SABELLICVS, and other authors which treate thereof at large. A TTILA having taken all the countrey behind him, belieged the citie of Aquileia, which at that time was of great power, whereinto besides the inhabitants, and such as were borne therein entred many Romanes, and others of the Emperours fouldiers which escaped from the battaile wherein their generall was ouerthrowne, and they so valiantlie defended the fame, that ATTILA befieged it three yeeres, and could not take it, holding it for a great dishonor to raise his siege before he had it, in which time he did much harme in all the countrey round about with his men of warre, and there were many conflicts and flaughters betweene the befregers and the befreged.

During the time of this long fiege, GENSERICVS king of the Vandales made himselfe peaceable Lord of all Africa. And the French with MEROBEVS their king grew mightie in France, and enlarged their dominion, and the Burgonians in the countrey now called Burgundie did the like. And the Gothes, Alanes, and Sucuians in like manner in Spaine, and in fuch part of France as is aforesaid. And the Emperour VALENTINIAN neuer came to relieve Aquileia, and as little did MARTIANY s the Emperour of Constantinople, either through cowardize, retchlefnes, ill gouernment, or want of power fufficient for fuch an enterprife, standing in feare of ATTILA and his power, who at the end of three yeeres that he had held the same besieged (resolutely assaulting it upon a day with his whole power, without any intermission, withdrawing such as were wearie and tired, and setting others in their places) he tooke it by force of armes; and after that he had facked it, and put all those to the sword which he found therein, he made it to be cast to Aquileia taken the ground, without leaving any one house or building that might be inhabited, Attila, it having bin one of the richest and most noble cities of that time : for Aquileia. and Rauenna, after Rome, were the most principall in that age. A TILLA having thus like a fauage barbarian destroyed Aquileia, marched forwards with great expedition, and within very few daies tooke many excellent cities and townes: among which, were Mantua, Brescia, Cremona, Bergame, and all their confines. The Cities taken like he did by Milan and Pauia, and other neighbor townes: and went to the citie in Italy by of Rauenna, which for that the Emperours held their courts therein, was the most excellent and famous citie in all Italy, which yeelded to him without any affault. From thence he marched into Tuscane, with a determination to have made no stay vntill he came to Rome, and wholie to have destroyed the same, and so in speeches he gaue it out. At that time L z o the first of that name was Pope, who at the request of the Emperour VALENTINIAN, accompanied with many Senators, went to ATTILA, intreating him for pities fake to spare Rome, and not to destroy that citie, which intreatie he made with such discretion and wisedome. and it pleased God to give such efficacie to his speeches, that notwithstanding that ATTILA was the most cruell and inexorable Prince in the world: yet the Popes supplication did so much prevaile with him, that he not only gaue ouer his journey to Rome, but determined to depart out of Italy, and to returne to his auncient seate in Hungary, requiring first a great summe of money to be leuied voon the citie for a figne and acknowledgement of Soueraigntie. And the state of Rome was now come to this point, that they durst not denie any thing that ATTILA required, and they held it for a very great good hap, that ATTILA would forbeare to put his cruell determination in execution. Some Authors write (whether true or falle I will not maintaine) that all men wondring at this fodaine alteration of ATTILA his purposes, and some of his fauourites asking him the cause thereof, he answered, that he durst not denie the Popes demaund: for whilft he flood talking with him, he thought that he perceived two old men A great mistanding behind him with vnsheathed swords in their hands, threatning to kill racle, if trage him if he performed not what he required, and that he therefore durst do no other, which was held for a miracle. After this agreement ATTILA returned into Hungarie, wherein he was held for the greatest and most mightie Prince of the world, and was so much feared, that MARTIANVS the Emperour of Constantinople sent to sue for peace with him, and therewith sent him presents and money to obteine the same. And he to the contrarie sent to the Emperour VALENTI-NIAN, requiring him to fend him his fifter HONORIA for his wife, threatning, that if he fent her not, he would againe returne into Italy, and destroy Rome. Whereto VALENTINIAN agreed by the consent of his fifter, for she by meanes of an Eunuch had written and received letters to and from him, procuring him to require her to wife whatfoeuer happened, which she did for that her brother constrained her to live a maid, lockt vp to her disgrace, and to the dishonor of the Emperour her brother: and he fearing ATTILAS displeasure, sent him his Attila had fifter, according to his request, and he tooke her to wife, together with others, fifter to wife,

which as a barbarian he held. This his mariage was the cause of his death: for he holding a royall feast, and bankets at his wedding, dranke and ate that day so The death of Attila.

The end of the Empire in the VVcst. musling or groueling vpon his face, and nature being oppressed with what he had eaten and drunken, such aboundance of bloud gushed out at his nose, and with fuch vehemencie, that in the space of an houre he was choked therewith, and so he ended, shedding his owne bloud, which had made streames and rivers of humane bloud, and had flaine a greater number of men, and vied greater crueltie, then any King or Captaine that euer was before him. The death of ATTI-LA gaue libertie to some Kings and Nations which were vnder him, and had serued him in all his warres, and there enfued great warres betweene them and his fonnes. But the Empire could neuer recouer the prouinces and countries which it had loft in Germany, in France, in Spaine, in England, and in Africa : although that in France and Spaine it held some part : and so it so much declined and fell to so meane estate, that from henceforth we shall write of the Emperours and such accidents as happened in Italy, as additions annexed to the Empire of the East. principallic naming the Emperours of Conflantinople, wherein confifted the frength and power of the auncient Empire. For after fine or fixe Emperours, and some of them tyrants (as we will shortly declare) AvgvsTvLvs being the last of them; for the space of three hundred and thirtie yeeres the westerne Empire was wholie loft, and that which in Italy remained was subject to the Emperours of Conflantinople, which ruled the fame by their gouernors (called Exarchi) (vntill the time of Pope L a o the third, in which time through the negligence and basenes of the Greeke Emperours, the Imperial seate was transported to the West, as when time commeth we will specifie. The next yeere after the death of ATTILA, the Emperour VALENTINIAN was flaine in Rome, by the fecret Dra-Cife and treason (as it was afterwards knowne) of Maximys: and he which executed this murther was avaliant fouldier, which had ferued the excellent Captaine Ecrys, whose name was TRANSILA, who did it in revenge of the death of his Captaine. And so ended VALENTINIAN after that he had raigned thirtie veeres: five and twentie in the companie of his father in lawe THEODO-\$ 1 vs the leffer, and five with MARTIANVs the Emperour of Conflantinople,

The death of the Emperour Valentinian.

Anno Domini. 456. who by reason of his death remained sole Emperour of Conflaminoph who by reason of his death remained sole Emperour, which happened in the yeer eof our Lord (after the most writers) source hundred fixe and fitie. He left not any sonne that might succeede him, but two daughters by his wise Eypoxia.

THE



## THE LIFE OF MARTIA-NVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME,

AND FOVRE AND FIFTITH ROMANE EMPEROVR.





Refently vpon the death of the Emperor VALENTINIAN in Rome, as PROCOPIVS, PAVLYS DIACONYS and fome others doe write, MAXIMYS for that he was a Romane citizen, of high parentage, noblie descended, and of great authoritie in the citie, presently vsurped the name of Maximus Emperour; and was possessed for Rome and of all Italia also. name of Emperour to assure the strange of Emperour the strange of Emperour to assure the strange of Emperour to assure the strange of Emperour the strang

that (more by constraint, then for any good will) he married with Evdonia, which had been Valentinians wife, and daughter to the Emperour Theodosivs the lesser. To whom after that he had her in his power, thinking thereby the better to winne her loue, he discourred and conselled that he had caused her husband to be slaine: with this addition, that he did it languishing for the loue of her, which did nothing assward be rediscontentment, but rather so much incensed her, that she resolued to be reuenged on him by any meanes how soe use. And imagining that from Constantinople, or from the Emperour Martianys, the should not have any redresse, the secretly wrote to General Martianys, the should not have any redresse, the secretly wrote to General Martianys, the should not have any redresse, the secretly wrote to General Martianys, the should not have any redresse, the secretly wrote to General Martianys.

rour Martian vs, the should not have any redresse, the secrety wrote to Ganseric vs. King of the Vandales, who then raigned in Africa, very effectuallic recommending her vnto him, and earnessie intreating him to set her at libertie, and to deliuer her from the power of Martin vs, who was a tyrant and a traitor. Ganseric vs to take the benefit of the time, and in hope to make himselse

Mm Lo

Genfericus. came into Italy with 300000.

The death of Maximus.

The Empreffe Endoxia, and her two daughinto Africa.

> Auitus chofen Emperour by the Romanes.

Lord of Italy, or at least to rob it and to have the spoile thereof, employing his whole power, raifed the greatest armie that he was able, and vsing all possible expedition failed into Italy, fo mightie, that the authors affirme, that he brought with him three hundred houland men in his armie : against whose power M a-XIMVS was neither abile, neither durft to make any refiftance, notwithftanding that he attempted fo farreas he could: wherefore being altogether hopeleffe and in despaire, he resolved to flye, and to abandon Rome, but by the way he was slaine by a Romane Captaine called V Rs v s. When G B N S ERIC v sarriued in the coast of Italy, there was fo great feare in Rome, that all the principall citizens thereof abandoned the citie: wherefore Pope L 2 o feeing the calamitie likely to fall voon it, resolved to hazard his life for the same, and knowing how great crueltie GEN-SERICY shad yied against the Bishops in Africa, as an heretike (for he was an Arrian) before that he came to Rome, he went forth to meete him, and in great humilitie intreated him for the honour of Christ to mitigate his furie, and to content himselfe with the pray and wealth of Rome, without spoiling and sacking the Churches and Temples. But this cruell king forbare not to march to Rome, and with his whole armie to enter it, and robbed and spoiled without any difference as fwell the sacred, as the prophane. And being in Rome busied herewith the space of foureteene daies, he departed from thence, carving away with him infinite by Gensericus. wealth, and rich prisoners; and so Rome being the head of the world, and Queene of all Nations, was spoiled, dishonored, and sacked by the Vandales, having alreadie at another time bin spoiled by the Gothes, as aboue is expressed: a wonderfull example, to induce a man to make little account of the power and riches of this world. And leaving the citie thus destroyed (notwithstanding that at the intreatie of Pope L no he commaunded that no edifice or buildings should be fet on fire, neither any man to be flaine or tortured) he led with him from Rome the Empereffe E VD O XIA, and her two daughters which she had by VALENTI-NIAN, which he afterwards caried with him into Africa. After that GENSERIcys departed from Rome, he did the like in many other cities in the marches thereof, as he had done therein, and destroying the citie of Capua, for that it made fome refistance, he went to Naples, and belieged it, thinking to have woon it by affault. But the inhabitants so manfullie defended it, that he was driven to raise his fiege, and so returned into Africa, loden with the spoiles and wealth of Italy, where he maried one of the Emperour VALENTINIANS daughters, which he brought with him from Rome to his fonne T R AS I MV ND V s. who fucceeded him in his estate. This befell in the fixth yeere of the raigne of MARTIANVS, being the next veere after the death of VALENTINIANVS. GENSERICVS with his armie having left Rome, and being departed out of Italy, the principall Senators and Romane Gentlemen which through want of forces and of an Emperour, had abandoned the citie, prefentlie returned, and by common confent chose for Emperour of Rome, Italy and Sicilie, (for now in a manner all the reft of the state was vsurped) an auncient noble Romane Gentleman, both for age and bloud, of the order and dignitie of Senator, whose name was Avirvs which when the Emperour MARTIANVS vnderstood, as a gentle and religious Prince, he was very glad thereof, and allowed and ratified his election, in hope of better order to be taken in the gouernement; and so it seemed that there was good hope to haue preserved the Empire in that state wherein it then was. But all was marred through the death of MARTIANYS, who was poisoned in Confiantinople, by the configurationle, practice and deuice of ARDABYRIVS, and his father ASPAR, which were his Captaines,

Captaines, which happened in the yeere of our Lord foure hundred, nine and Anno Dom. fiftie, he having raigned seaven yeeres. This MARTIANVE was a vertuous and a 459. iust Prince, and preferued and enlarged the East Empire.

# THE LIFE OF LEO THE

FIRST, BEING THE FIVE AND

FIFTITH ROMANE EMPEROVR, AND

OF THOSE WHICH IN HIS TIME tooke vpon them the name of Emperours.



THE ARGUMENT.



Hen Martianus was dead, some which had bin the causers thereof sought to have vsurped the Empire, wherein failing to effect their desires, they made Leo Emperours being a Greeke borne, who in the beginning of his Empire bare himselse so valorouflie, that there was not any enemie so hardie, as to make warre against him. But in the West Empire many tyrants arose, and many Emperours, which for that they lined

not long, were the cause of great mutations and commotions: and the Vandales adventured to come into Italy, against which Leo sent a good and a worthic fleete, under the conduct of a Captaine called Basiliscus, who encountring them, overthrew them. In the meane time Leo in Constantinople was driven to fight against some which sought to have vsurped, which being overcome and staine, he had much to do to rescue Rome, which was sacked and spoiled by many under the name of Emperours, which for that they lived not long, or were deposed from that dignitie by others which were more mightie then they, were the cansers of very great troubles in the Westerne Empire, in the middest of which tumults ensued the death of the Emperour Leo in Constantinople, when he badraigned seamenteene yeeres.



Resentlie so soone as MARTIANVS the Emperour of Constant tinople was dead (whose death was greatly bewailed) the principall men therein began to confult about the choosing of a new Emperour, and Aspan who wrought the last Emperours death, fought to have bin his fucceffor, but he prevailed not, foralmuch as he was of the fect of the Arrians: for as the Ca-

tholike Christians were of the stronger side, they would not consent to his election. But seeing that he could not obtaine the Empire for himselfe, he bare a great (way in the election of another, which was an excellent man both in peace and warre, which was a Tribune, whose name was L E o, a Greeke borne, and the first that euer was Emperour of the Greeke nation, and as most authors write. was borne in the citie of Besica. But Aspan first made this bargaine with him. that when as he should afterwards be in full possession of the Empire, he should then make his sonne ARDABURIUS CASAR, although it followed not so. This being concluded, LEO was chosen and obeyed for Emperour, and governing the Empire in good order and with good successe, in the beginning thereof he wan great credit and reputation, so as neither Africa, Asia, nor Persia durst to stirre against him but in the West in Italy and in Sicilia, there were great alterations, and many were Emperours, more in name, then in power or authoritie comparable to the Auncient. And that old and mighticking GENSERICVS neuer defished from infesting Italy, comming himselfe in person, and sending his fleets to rob and spoile the countrey: so that (as Evrnorivs relateth) he destroyed and laid wholie wast many cities, and in the end became sole and absolute Lord of all Sicilia. In the first yeere of the raigne of LEO died in Rome Avirys, which The death of (as we faid) raigned therein: and the Romane armie being then neere to Rauenna, chose and nominated for Emperour a good man of warre, whose name was MAIORANVS, whereto the Emperour LE o gaue his confent. This MAIORA-N v s was a good Prince, and an excellent Captaine, for the time that he raigned: for he tooke great care, and vied great diligence in defence of Italy against the Vandales, and GENSERICUS their King; and to that purpose raised agreat armie, and remained for the most part of his time vpon the sea side, to the end to be the better able to fend reliefe and fuccour where most neede required. And this prospering well with him, and seeing himselfe mightie and strong in men and munition, he resolued to have sailed into Africa, in hope, and with intent to have reconquered the same; but he could not accomplish that good worke: for death furprized him, when he had raigned three yeeres and od moneths. Some fay, that he died of a disease : and others say, that the same armie that chose him, slue him. In place of MAIORANVS rose vp another Emperour, which was a principall man, called Severtanys, who besides the ordinarie warres against the Vandales, was yet troubled with another against the Alanes: which with GEORGE their King departing from Spaine, where they had of long time inhabited together with the Gothes, refolued to come into Italy, thinking to haue conquered the same, and to have made themselves Lords of certaine places in Lumbardy: against which Severianvs commaunded an armie to be levied, and made a valiant man whose name was RITHINER generall thereof, who was by linage a Goth, but now made a citizen of Rome, and received into the degree and dignitie of a Romane Gentleman. And the King of the Alanes comming with the Romane Generall neere to the citie of Bergamo, to a battaile, which of either partie was very cruell, in the end the Alanes were ouerthrowne, and their King was flaine therein. After this victorie and other matters which happened

of leffe account, Severianvs died in Rome, when he had ruled the Empire in

Italy almost four eyeeres, and in his place was chosen a very excellent man of war,

fent thither by the Emperour L z o, to fuccour and protect Italy against the Van-

dales, who was called Anthemivs, and was sonne in lawe to the late Emperour

MARTIANVS, LE o his predecessor. And there present lie arose against Anthe-

The death of Maioranus

chofen Empe-Scuerianus chofen Empe-

The death of Severianus.

Anthemius ehofen Empe-

MIV s(intituling himselfe Emperor)a Captaine whose name was GERVANDVS, Geruandus who was Prefect and gouernour of the prouince of Narbone, which was all that in prour. France remained subject to the Empire. But ANTHEMIVS speedily sent his Captaines against him; and being by them taken, hee was condemned to perpetuall exile, and ANTHEMIVS established in his place a friend of his which was a good Captaine, called BELIMER, to gouerne the countrie of Gallia Narbonensis. This rebellion was fearfely ended, when in Rome another principall man arose and Would also have rebelled, whose name was PATRICIVS: but ANTHEMIVS pacified that matter, with as great facilitie as the rest.

Whilest that there were such alterations, and Emperours died in this manner in Italy; the Emperour L E o gouerned Gracia and the East very valorously and in peace. But the old and valiant GENSERICVS King of the Vandales in Africa, feeing the alterations and troubles which daily happened in Italy, throughly refolued with himselfe to innade it and to make himselfe Lord thereof; which was a thing that helong defired, as a man which had tafted the fweetnes of the wealth and richeffe of Rome. Whereupon hee mustred up his valiant Vandales, and the countrie inhabitants of Africa and other nations; and armed and rigged the migh- Genfericus tiest armie and Nauie that he euer before had leuied. Whereof when L E o was King of the aduertifed, and knowing that ANTHEMIVS had not power fufficient to defend agains into himselfe against GENSERICVS; and that if ANTHEMIVS spedill.his estate was Italy. not affured (at the least Slauonia, and those countries which bordred vpon Italy)he therefore refolued to employ his whole power against GENSERICVS, in defence of ANTHEMIVS; who of his fide made all the provision of men and armes that possibly he was able, for the defence of Italy: and had rigged vp an excellent fleete for the Sea. When L E o had prepared and armed his armie and fleete, hee made one Basiliscus a great man in his countrie, Generall thereof, who was his brother in law, being brother to his wife the Empereile, and was also brother in law to Anthemivs: for Anthemivs had married his fifter. Basiliscys with his great fleet departing from Grecia, fafely arrived in Italy; and ioyning with the fleete which ANTHEMIVS had prepared, they went in quest of GENSERIcvs, who with no leffe a fleete was come vpon the same coast. These two Nauies being come within fight the one of the other, and GENSERICVS knowing his enemies men of warre to be farre more readie and expert in Sea services then his were, would gladly have avoided the fight; but he was fo foundly charged by B Asilise vs, that he could not chuse but come to blowes: and as the battaile was fearefully begun, so was it cowardly maintained. And he seeing his disaduantage, would have gone out of the fleete, whileft as the fhips were fighting one with another, and did attempt to have done fo: which the rest of his fleete perceiuing, Genfericus they all presently turned their backes, and hee was apparantly ouerthrowne, and in a battaile by lost many of his ships and much people; and so very shamefully sted into Africa. Sea. Whom BASILISCVS pursued, and tooke land but two hundred and fourescore furlongs from Carthage, and (as PROCOPIVs reporteth) if he had presently gone thither he had eafily taken the fame. And GENSERICV s being without forces (as he then was) he might have taken all that province : for alreadie in the other fide towards the East, another Captain whom L & o had fent thither, whose name was HERACLIVS, had taken the citie of Tripeli, and other townes: but through ignorance, or as some say, BASILISCV s being corrupted with a great summe of money by GENSERICUS, he forflowed the warres, and was content to retire his armie into Sicilia, and there to recouer what GENSERICUS possessed. Whilest

red by Afpar anfacre.

Aspar made Cafar by his

> rius flayne by Emperour Leo

as the Emperor L E o his Captaines and fouldiers performed these services himfelfe was not idle in Constantinople: for Aspan and his sonne Andaevnivs had raised great insurrections therein. And as they were chiefe in making him Emperours to were they of great power and authoritie in his Court, and in the gouernment of the Empire: besides that, both the father and the some had euer been principall men, and were very mightie. This Aspan perceiuing that BASILISc vs the Emperors General prospered wel in al his actions, began to feare to fall from that dignitie which he then enioyed; imagining that the Emperor being out of feare of GENSERICVS, would make small account of him: and to the end to avoide this, he determined whilest as BASILISCVS was in the warres, to importune and vrge him to nominate and make his sonne ARDARVRIVS, CE-SAR, according to his former promise when he was chosen Emperour; which he had hitherto deferred, by entertaining them with some apparant reasons. But now A s P A R (as a mightie man) so audaciously importuned him to hold his word, that taking hold of the Imperiall robe which the Emperour then ware, he faid, Speeches vite. LE o thou oughtest to performe what thou hast promised me : for hee that weareth this robe ought not to lie. Whereto the Emperour answered: And much leffe ought he to endure that any man vse violence or force him. Aspan perceiuing the Emperors determination, resolued to make his sonne C & san by force of armes, and accounting himself of sufficient power thereto, gaue him the name of C & s A R : and leuying fuch forces as hee was able, the warre began betweene him and the Emperour. Some fay that L E o nominated him C E SAR, and that the Catholike Christians would not yeeld thereto: for that Aspan and his sonne ARDAEVRIVS were both Arrian heretikes: whereof enfued great tumults. But howfoeuer the matter went, it is certaine that they tooke armes against their Soburius, by force ueraigne, and that their men of warre fought one partie against other. Wherefore in great haste L E o sent to recall his Generall B As I L I S C V s from Sicilia, to the end that with his armie and fleete he should come to his aide: but before that he could come, the Emperour was in great daunger, and likely to have been vtterly lost and ouerthrowne. But being come with his armie, notwithstanding that there were many skirmishes within the citie of Constantinople, and that in apparance it seemed that the matter went in a manner at even hand (for Asparand his sonne were excellent men of warre, very rich and of great power) yet in the end L E o his partie prevailed, and the two tyrants were taken and put to death by the Emperours commaundement: and so was hee freed from this daunger and feruitude. But there presently ensued other troubles with the Ostrogothes, which the commande had accompanied Attila in his warres. For Balemir and Theodomir Kings of those Gothes, with all their whole power, after many battailes fought betweene them and the sonnes of ATTILA (which I write not for that it appertaineth not to our historie) resolued to make warre in the East Empire: and beginning in Slauonia, they put the Emperour Leo to great care and trouble. But he as a wife Prince and a louer of peace (feeing that there was no other remedie) gaue to them Hungarie and Austrich, and taking hostages and great assurance of them, concluded a peace; which at that time was very necessarie and profitable for the Empire, although nothing honourable. He also graunted vnto them Seruia, Misia, and Walachia.

In this meane feafon, after the overthrow of GENSERICVS, the Emperor A N-THEMIVS lived in peace in Italy. But as there is no stabilitie in humane estates, and that in the time of chiefest prosperitie, there happen the greatest desafters and ca-

lamities; RITHINER, who (as we faid) ouerthrew the Alanes and flew their King neere to the citie of Bergamo, being growne prowd and vainglorious, by reason of that fo famous a victorie, forgetting the fauours and rewards which ANTHE of that to famous a victorie, rorgerting the fautories and sowned aughter; and hithing re-butlet shad bestowed upon him: first in marying him to his owne daughter; and hilling and building and then making him gouernour generall of Gallia Cifalpina, now called Lombardy, re-the Emperour folued to rife and rebell against his father in law, and Soueraigne Lord; in either Anthemius in of which he was bound to have been a faithfull and a loyall irruant. And to that July. end resolued to come with the greatest force that he was able, against the Emperour ANTHEMIVS: whereupon all Italy was in armes, either for the one partie or for the other. But Pope EPIPHANIVS vsed the meanes to bring them to a peace, which hee caused to be confirmed upon certaine conditions, and with exceeding great othes. But the wicked RITHINER (within a little while after) brake all, and with his armie came to the walles of Rome, making warre against all such as tooke part with the Emperour. An THEMIVS was then unfurnished of any fufficient armie to take the field, and therefore contenting himselfe to defend the citie, suffred it to be besieged, expecting the succours which came to him out of France. For BALEMIR (Whom as we have faid, he had made Gouernour of Gallia Narbonensis) understanding in what distresse he was (as a loyall and gratefull seruant)determined to come with the greatest power that he was able to leuie, to relieue his soueraigne Lord and to raise the siege. And the Emperour L Bo vnderstanding what past in Italy, and knowing how small meanes and power ANTHE-MIVS had to defend himselfe, and being enformed also of the treason of RITHI-NER, he with all speede sent into Italy a Captaine whose name was OLIBRIVS. with a good armie against him: with authoritie, when hee should see time fit for it, to take the name of Emperour. Which when Anthemivs understood, thinking by this meane to be freed from the fiege, wherewith the citie was diffressed, hee agreed that the other should be called Emperour, and willingly allowed his name and title. But before that OLIBRIVS could come, BALEMIR arrived with fuch fuccours as he brought with him out of France: and feeking to enter Rome, and to ioyne with ANTHEMIVS, RITHINER got betweene him and the citie, in fuch manner, that whether BALEMIR would or would not, they came to blowes, and Balemir overthere was betweene them a cruell battaile, wherein the loyall Captaine (through flaine by Rithe secret indgement of God) was slaine by the traitor. Whereupon the people thiner, of Rome being out of hope of this succour (and as O LIBRIVS which came from Constantinople was in Rauenna, so farre from Rome) they so cowardly fainted that RITHINER entred the citie by force, and being in possession therof, put his Lord and father in law the Emperour to death, and facked the whole citic, excepting Rome taken two streetes wherein he was lodged. And so this was the third time that Rome en- third time by dured famine and much trouble in defending it felfe, and violence and spoile after Rithiner, where it was taken. So as, as it hath been seene, and hereafter it shall often appeare, this rour antibeworld knoweth not how to give any good thing, but to the end againe to take a- mins was way the same; neither knoweth how to advance, but to the end to pull downe. Saine. Rome had commaunded and fubdued the whole world, and had raigned ouer all the habitable knownenations of the earth; it had tamed and deprined great kings and Common-wealths of their kingdomes and dominions, and had enriched it felfe with the spoiles and wealth of (in a manner) all the nations and cities of the world. Neuerthelesse, through the dinine prouidence of God, in processe of time it was taken and spoiled by the same people and nations which it had subdued, and brought under her yoke. And the people of all those nations came to Rome,

tooke the same, and made boote and spoile thereof, as if they had come to fet home, and to have that restored to them which in former time was taken from their auncestours, which the reader shall plainely perceive by that which is alreadie written, and shall be written hereafter: which will shew how often Rome hath been entred and taken by force of armes, and how often it hath been facked and

Rithiner made Rome, and his

Glizerius

pofed.

made Emperour, and de-

fent by the

Orestes being Emperour Nepos with an armie into France, made salled Empe-YONT.

spoiled, and indured such like other desastres and calamities. But to returne to our historie, RITHINER being maister and commaunder of Rome, and of the rest of Italy, with power and name of Emperour (excepting Rauenna, and the marches thereof, which was defended by Olibrius) three moneths only enjoyed this foueraigntie: after which, he was ouertaken with an extreme ficknes whereof he died, in terrible paine. And so soone as he was dead, Olibrius made O LIBRIVS was proclaimed Emperour in Rome, who then was in Rauenna, and Emperour, and comming thither and giving but the fignes and shew of an excellent good gouernour, within foure moneths he died of his naturall death. And as Rome had loft her power and authoritie; fo had the Emperours thereof little health, and short life. For who so shall make a computation thereof, shall finde, that whilest that LEO raigned in the East, there were, and ruled in Italy (by good and bad titles, one and other) fixe or feauen Emperours. Presentlie after the decease of O LIBRIVS, the Senate of Rome confidering the loffes and tyrannies paft, would haue vsed their authoritie in choosing an Emperour by voices, and by generall consent, with good aduise and consideration; but they could not bring their purpose to effect : for being ouerswayed by GVANDIBARVS (a Captaine who then was in Rauenna) they made choise of one GLIZER IVS a Senator of Rome, which was in Rauenna with him. But his Empire lasted but awhile : for the Emperour Lao understanding that his election was by force, fent against him a Captaine called NEPOs, with the title and name of Emperour, who being affifted by the Romanes which against their wils had sworne obedience to GLIZERIVS, deposed him, and made him against his will to take Monasticall orders, and gaue him a Bishoprick; but he tooke the Empire to himselfe, which was the occasion of many commotions and troubles in Italy. For GVANDIBARY s which had aduanced GLIZERIVS, tooke his suppression for a great disgrace and an indignitie done to himselfe: wherefore he leuied an armie, to the end to haue restored him. But Pope Epiphanivs vsed such diligence, and tooke such paines in the matter (of whom we faid that he made the peace betweene BALEMIR and ANTHE-MIVS, although it continued not long) that he made a flav thereof, establishing peace betweene them; fo as they laid downe their weapons, and for that time NEPOs remained in peace in Rome. But as he lived in that effate, he was advertifed that HENRY King of the Gothes, who then raigned in Tholonfe in France, and in the greatest part of Spaine, made warres upon those countries which were subiect to the Romanes, and had taken certaine townes; so as it was feared that he would have proceeded further: N EPO s to shew his power, leuied a very good armie against him, and making one ORESTES a private friend of his generall thereof, commanded him to take his way towards France. But ORESTES departing with very great forces, tookeno care for going that iourney according to his commission, which had bin more for his honour; but rather so soone as he came to Rauenna (having first sounded the good will of his armie so farforth as he thought expedient) made his sonne to be called Emperour, whose name was AvgvsTvs, whom the Romanes called AvgvsTvLvs (for that name they gaue him when he was a child) and so he is called by all Historians. And having

brought this to effect, he resolved to returne to Rome against N EPOS; who as he had employed all his men of warre and whole power in that armie, was not of force able to flay his comming, neither to make any defence or reliftance against him: wherefore he abandoned Rome, and the hope to be any longer Emperour, The Emperour having him to have alimber and fled into Defend which was an American having him to have a long to the state of t having bin fo but alittle while, and fled into Dalmatia, which was vnder the iurif-ning Rome, fled diction of the Emperour LEO; and fo AvgvsTvLvs continued in Rome in pof- into Dalmana. fession, and with the name and title of Emperour. Whilest the affaires of Italy Augustulus made Emperour stood in this estate, the Emperour L & o died in the citie of Constantinople, having raigned (as writeth PAVLV's DIAC ONV's) scauenteene yeeres with great valour The death of and honour, as an excellent Prince, in the yeere of our Lord four hundred, Legin Conthreescore and fixteene, who left not behind him any sonne to inherit, but two saminople, daughters, the one called ARIADNE, and the other LEONCIA; the one was dano Domini. maried to ZEN'o who afterwards was Emperour, and the other to MARTIA-NV s sonne of Anthemivs, who (as we have said) had bin Emperour of Italy: yet some fay, that ARIADNE which was wife to ZENO, was not his daughter, but his fifter, and that he inflituted a sonne of hers before his death for Emperour and his fucceffor. His death was condoled by all, and many lamented the same with teares.

The Emperour LEO being dead in Conflantinople, and AvGVSTVLV staigning in Rome, the generall estate of all the provinces which were wont to be in subiection to the Empire, flood in this manner. The Gothes with their King called by some Evrig vs, and by other Henricus, held Tholonse, and that part of France which bordereth vpon Spaine, and the greatest part of Spaine it selfe. The Sueuians in Gallicia, and in part of the kingdome of Leon, held warres with the Gothes, and to the Empire remained some hauen townes in the coast of Arragon, Carthagena, and Tarragona, and some others also. The Alanes which remained in Spaine, dwelt together with the Gothes in a part of Spaine towards Italy, and after the names of these two nations, that prouince was called Gotalonia. which now through corruption of speech is called Catalunia. In France raigned the French, in Paris and in all the countries round about it, and in other countries, with all that which we now call Flaunders & Picardie, whose king was called HEDERIC QVE. The Burgonians held the two Burgundies, and the Empire held no more but Narbone, and some land thereto neere adjoining, which continued but alittle while in the Emperours iurisdiction. In England raigned the English Saxons, and in Scotland the Picts and Scots. In Hungarie, Austrich, and Missa, Sermia, and Walachia, the Ostrogothes, with their King Todomir, and his sonne THEODORICVS, by permission of the Emperour LEO, bare the sway. In Africa were the Vandales, and their very old King GENSERICVS, many times spoken of, who died within alittle while after, and his fonne Honoric vs succeeded him. The most of the provinces of Germany were vsurped by the successors of the Hunnes, called Heruli, Turigi, and others which came thither with ATTILA:

and betweene all these nations and countries and their Kings were great warres, each of them coueting to inlarge his territorie and dominion. All the Easterne prouinces were in peace subiect to the Empire, and to the Easterne Emperour who then was Lao, Nephew of

that LEO, of whom we but now discoursed.

## THE LIFE OF LEO, THE SECOND OF THAT NAME.

AND SIXE AND FIFTITH ROMANE Emperour. And of his father ZENO.



### THE ARGYMENT.



No a He Emperour Leo being dead, his nephen whose name was also Leo, tooke possession of the Empire, to whom it seemed a matter unreasonable that his father whose name was Zeno, should live as a private man, and he an Emperour: wherefore he renounced the Empire unto him and crowned him with his owne hand, and within short space after died. Zeno being then made Emperour, the widow Emp. Je being much displeased that he should entry so great a dignitie, procured Bashissus a Captaine of his owne, to rebell against him; who making himselfe Emperour, compelled

Zeno to flie into Isauria in Asia: but he continued not long in that miferie, for Basiliscus being bated for his pride, behaued himselfe so, that Zeno was restored to the Empire. Whilest as he lived in the East in peace, the Westerne Empire and Rome were so turmoiled, that Orestes father to the Emperor Augustulus was taken prisoner in Pauia, and there staine. And Augustulus (for feare) left the Imperiall ensignes, the Empire and Rome to the discretion of Odoacer, which was afterwards bereased him by Theodoricus King of the Offrogothes. And Zeno hauing been somewhat troubled with warres in the East, and having obtained victoric against two tyrants, which were Aftar and his sonne Ardaburius, which rose against him, died of an ordinarie death in Constantinople, when he had raigned fixteene yeeres.



7 Am of opinion that the reader hath sufficiently underflood, in what state the Empire remained, at what time as the Emperour L E o died in Constantinople: wherefore I hold it needlesse to make any repetition thereof. I say then, that so soone as L BO departed out of this life, his nephew without any contradiction was acknowledged and obeyed for Emperour, whose name was L E o also, as was his. For as I faid, his grandfather had chosen and so

appointed him to be, before his death, and so he held the Empire the space of certaine moneths, at the end of which he did a thing which feemeth strange, and maketh me much to wonder. Which was, that of his owne accord and voluntarie free will (holding it a hard case, that the father should be fubiect and inferiour to the sonne) he renounced the Empire, and gaue it to his father ZENO, and he himselfe crowned him, and presently did him homage. For Learthifed the fathers in their life time to give to their children their kingdomes and dignities, gaue it to his it is a thing that we have feene, and often read of; and it feemeth that there is rea- father Zeno. fon to induce them thereto: but feldome hath any man euer heard, that the fonne would dispossesse himselfe of a kingdome or Empire to give it to his father. For it hath rather happened to the contrarie, that the sonne hath bereaued the father thereof by force in his life time; yea and fometimes hath wished and practised his fathers death, to the end to be his heire, and to succeede him. Therefore I say, that this accident is very strange, and the reuerence and obedience of this sonne much to be noted.

Well, the matter passed in this manner, that ZENO was crowned and obeyed for Emperour in Constantinople, and his sonne L no remained in such estate as before. To the contrarie hereof in Italy, ORESTES made his sonne Av GVSTVLVS Emperor, without defiring or procuring it for himselfe. Leo having renounced the Empire and given the same to his father (as I o R NANDES and other authors fay) died within few daies after. But PAVLVS DIACONVS reporteth it after another manner: for he faith that the father fought his sonnes death, from which he was deliuered by making himselse a Priest, and so liued certaine yeeres. But howfocuer it was, there is no more mention made of LEO, and his father ZENO began to rule the Empire. And going in progresse to visit the same, being in Chalcedonia, the widow Emperesse his wives mother, which remained in Constantinople, repining to fee ZENO Emperour, whom her husband LEO neuer accounted worthie of the Empire (as I o RD ANV s writeth) induced her brother BASILIScvs, who (as we faid) ouerthrew GENSERICVS in a battaile at fea) to take you han the name of Emperor. And as by reason of that victorie and the affinitie which he had with the late Emperor I. E o, he was very mightie and highly effecmed, fo was hee both able and willing to make himselfe Emperour, and for such passificute Was received; and they sware obedience vnto him in Constantinople. Which so made himselfe foone as ZENO vnderstood (whether it were through basenesse of minde, or to Emperou a loone as ZENO vnderitood (whether it were through date enfued) he tooke gain Zinoia auoide the warres and the effusion of blood which would haue ensued) he tooke Constantage. no care to make any head against him, but retired himselfe into Isauria, which is a very strong and guardable province in Asia the lesse, where hee assured himselfe to line in securitie. Whereof BASILISCVS waxing proud, and infinitly joyfull,

ther Bafilifcus.

408

Basiliscus the feffed,taken prisoner and banificd diea in exile,toge ther with his fonne and Gfter.

Augustulus made peace with Genferi. Vandales in Africa. Augustulus Emperour in Rome.

Odoacer king of the Herula

Oreftes father to Augustulus marcheth against Odoa-

Ticinum. Panis.

Odoacer.

and holding himselfe now safe and past all daunger, made his some MARCVS. C & S A R. But his pride and joy continued but a little while: for as he was infected with the Nestorian heresie, so hee began to persecute and afflict the Church and Catholike Christians; by meanes whereof(as I o RDANY sand PROC OPIVS recount) he grew fo hatefull, and was fo abhorred by all forts of people, that those Captaines which he fent against Z E NO, returned against himselfe, and by the generall consent of all men Z no was restored, and reestablished in the Empire; and hee with his sonne MARCVS and VERINA his sister, were taken prisoners, and being banished died in exile. In this manner remained ZENO mightie and in peace, having bin dispossessed of the Empire the space of eighteene moneths: where we will leave him, and returne to speake of Av G v s T v L v s the Emperor of the West, or to say better of Italy.

Whilest these things passed in the East, we told you how that ORESTES had exalted his fonne, and made him Emperor against N EPO s, who held his Empire in Rome, and as NEPOS had abandoned Italy, and AVGVSTVLVS remained therein, and feeing that in Italy no man durft oppose himselfe against him; by the aduice and counsell of his father hee made peace, and entred into league with GENSERICV s King of the Vandales in Africa, who was now growne old and worne out with bearing armes in the warres, and euen at deaths doore. By reafon of which league, hee held himselfe to be in great securitie: for of ZENO hee ens King of the made no account, seeing the discord betweene him and BASILISEVS. But his trouble and ruine sprang from whence he least mistrusted it; for the Heruli and the Turingi, a people of which we have made mention, and which had ferued in the warres vinder ATTILAthe mightie King of the Hunnes, and which in that time inhabited along the rivers fide of Danubius, in the furthest confines of Hungary; tooke for their Captaine a man of their own nation called O DO A CAR, with a determination to come into Italy, and to make a conquest thereof; seeing that no man had any right thereto, but he who was of greatest power, and could give most blowes for it. And it was the will and pleasure of God, that as Italy had sent Captaines to the conquest of all parts and nations of the world, so should Captaines and men of warre come from all parts and nations of the earth to make a conquest thereof. Leauing apart other accidents which by the wav befell Op o a-CER, he being approched to the borders of Italy, ORESTES the father of Av G vs TVLVs fallied foorth to encounter him, with an excellent armie which the father and sonne (hauing intelligence of his comming) had leuted. The two armies being come within fight the one of the other, both Generals would have fought: but certaine companies of ORESTES his fouldiers went ouer to ODOACER; which when he perceiued (reposing no firme confidence in the rest which remained) hee retired in the best order that hee could to wards Ticinum, which is now called Paula, a citie in Lumbardie: and O D O ACER pursued him. But ORESTES having no sufficient armie to take the fields to fight with him, suffred himselfe or be befreged in that citie. And notwithstanding that he did as much as was possible for his defence, yet the affaults given were fo terrible, that the citie was entred by force, after that he had defended it many daies, and ORESTES Was taken therein; vpon whom, and the fouldiers which were with him, O D GACERS fouldiers executed extreme crueltie. And from thence ORESTES Was carried prisoner to Placencia, where by ODOACERS commaundement he was put to death. After that ODOACER had obtained this victoric(as Av Gv STV LV s his Empire had but a weake foundation, and leffe equitie of his fide all things went against him, and prospered

profoered with his enemie : and fo with small difficultie, and as little refissance, ODOACER tooke all the cities of Italy, and presentlie proclaimed himselfe Lord and King thereof. When AvgvsTvLvs vnderstood that all the townes and people tooke part with O DOACER, he departed from Rasenna, where he then kept his court, to go to Rome; but by the way before he came thither, being out of hope, he voluntarilie put away his roabes and Imperiall enfignes, and abandoning Rome, fled, contenting himselfe with the hope of fauing his life, when he Augustulus as had raigned two yeeres a peaceable Emperour: and so he afterwards ended his Rometo Odolife in pouertie and forrow (as it is to be prefumed) for the Historiographers accomake no more mention of him. Rome being abandoned by AvgvstvLvs, O- Odeaccr made DOACER without any refistance possessed himselfe of all Italy, which he enjoyed himselfe Lord, foureteene yeeres in great prosperitie, after which we will tell you who were of all Italie, Lords thereof. And so in this AvgvsTvLvs ended the Empire and dominion of Rome, which afterwards had no Emperour for the space of three hundred Anso 1229. and thirtie yeeres. This happened in the yeere one thousand, two hundred, nine building of hundred of the building of and twentie after the building of Rome, and in the fine hundred, nine and twentith Rome. after that Iv LIV & C & SAR made himselfe tyrant and Lord thereof, and in the Anno 520. veere foure hundred seauen and seauentie after the birth of our Sauiour Christ. after that

ZENO.

In these times (as say Pavlvs Diaconvs, and Blondvs) there arose a made limites for noble man in England, by linage a Romane, descended from those which in aun-monarch of the cient time had dwelled in that Iland, whole name was A MEROSE, who ioining Romanc Emwith the Britons the auncient inhabitants of that countrey, against the Angles, Anno dom. fought many battailes with them, but in the end he was ouerthrowne and flaine. 477. Whereupon many of those Britons resoluted to abandon that Iland, and in barks and ships (such as they could get) embarked themselves, and failed over into that The Briton tacoast of France, which for that cause is now called Britanny, where in those dayes bandoned Engdwelled a people called Veneti, Cenomanni, & others: where, fomtimes by leaue, land and well welled a people called Veneti, Cenomanni, & others: where, fomtimes by leaue, land and well well a people called Veneti, Ocerinto Briand with the good will of the inhabitants, and sometimes without it; they inhabi-tannie in ted and possessed themselves of that countrey, and have continued there ever France. fince, with fo good fuccesse, that the name thereof, and their language continueth therein vntill this day, and is one of the best Provinces of all France: wherein haue been mightie Princes, but by meanes of fundrie alterations, the French king

is now Lord thereof.

After this, the Emperour ZEN o raigned in Constantinople, and ODOACER in Italy, some yeeres peaceablie; so as there happened not any thing in the Empire worth the writing: but in the end fortune turned her wheele in such manner, that ODOACER iustlie lost all that which he had wrongfullie gotten, and one tyrang was bereaued of what he had taken from another tyrant, which happened in fuch manner as we will fet downe. THEODORICYS sonne of THEODOMIR King of the Ostrogothes, who in the time of the Emperour L H o the first had lien in hostage in Constantinople, when his father and vncle made peace with the same LEO, when it was granted vnto them to inhabit Austrich, Hungary, and Misia. At this time his father THEODOMIR being dead, THEODORICVS succeeded him in the kingdome: whereof when the Emperour ZENO was aduertifed, he fent Ambassadors to him, giving him to understand, that he was very glad of his fuccession, and therewith requested him to come to his court, for the great desire Theodoricus he had to fee him, and to do him honour: which THEODORICV s gladlie per- King of the fourmed, remembring the honour and good entertainement which in former Gaibes came to time he had received in Constantinople. Whither when he came (besides that he zeno bis court.

Theodoricus made fute to the Emperous to give bim leave to conauer Italy from Odoacer.

was very folemnely received, at his first comming) he was afterwards very honorablic entertained by the Emperour Zeno, who gaue him enfignes of armes. and other honors and dignities, affigning to his people pay, and perpetuall penfions, and fo was THEODORICVS well beloued and effeemed by the Emperour and his whole court. And living in this manner with great contentment, for a certaine space, his people which came with him, and those which remained behind also in his countrey, being accustomed to the warres, and to rob and spoile. and now grieued with liuing idle in peace, continuallie perswaded him (that imitating those from which he was descended) he should seeke to make some Conquest, and not to spend his life in banketting and feasting: but principallie they counfelled him to fue to the Emperour, to give him leave to make a Conquest of Italy, which ODOACER had taken and vsurped; and they told him so many things thereof, that in the end he refolued to follow their counfell; and awaiting time and place convenient, hee made a faire speech to the Emperour. intreating him to graunt him what is before faid, which Bishop IORNANDES writeth at large in his booke of the originall, and actes of the Gothes. When ZENO had heard his discourse, and understood his meaning, he was very fory for it : for he defired euer to have had him neere to himselfe, and not to have suffred him to have departed, aswell for the love which he bare him, as for the feare and doubt which he euer had of the Gothes. But feeing his determination, after counsell taken with the Senate, he was of opinion that he might well graunt him (as he requested) the conquest of Italy, considering that the Empire had lost it. and that it was now in the power of ODOACER: wherefore it were better that a King which was a friend and a confederate should possesse the same, then another : and if he did not accomplish his conquest, yet it was a meanes to weaken both their forces, of which the Empire flood in feare, having been oftentimes molested by them. When the Emperour had made this graunt, and confirmed the same by publike instruments, THEODORICVS tooke his leave, and went into Hungary, and into Missia, where his people inhabited: where he gathered together the best and most choise men of warre that he was able for this enterprise. and began to march forwards with his armie; and by the way was hindred, and encountred by certaine Kings and barbarous people which were the remnant of ATTILA his troupes: so as by that time that he came into Italy, he was well trained in the warres, and his fouldiers were accustomed to overcome. O D o A-CER, who some daies before was advertised of his comming, had levied a very great armie, and had affembled togethers the people of that countrey, and had perswaded them to aid him, to defend them. When THEODORICV'S Was arriued in Italy, he encamped himselfe by a river side called Sonza, neere to the ruines of old Aquileia, to rest and refresh his people in those fertill fields. And so some as O D O A C E R knew of his comming, as he lay in wait for him in those Marches, he drew so neere with his armie, that in short space they came to a battaile, which THEODORICVS with great courage offred, and ODOACER refused not: for it feemed that both the commaunders defired the same, which was one of the most cruell and bloudie that hath been seene, for the commaunders and souldiers of either fide were very valiant, and the one fought to win a kingdome, fame and honor; and the other fought to preserve all these. The fight lasted a great part of the day, and after great flaughter, and effusion of much bloud of either side, THEODORICUS obteined the victorie, and ODOACER was faine to flye when he had done all that was possible for him to have maintained the fight. And al-

though

Theodoricus entred Italie, and Odvaces went to encounter bim.

A battaile betweene Odoacer and Theodoricus. Odoacer was ouerthrowne by Theodorithough that O DO ACER lost this journey, yet he lost neither courage, nor hope to defend himselfe, but gathering together the remainder of those which escaped from the battaile, he railed new forces, and againe taking the field neere to the citie of Verona, returned to fight with THEODORICVS, who followed him thither; and the two Kings came the second time to the battaile, which was no adversages. leffe cruell then the first. For this was the last of O D O ACER his hope, but he was come the feagaine ouerthrowne: for those supplies which came to his aid for sooke him, and conditine by he loft great part of his armie fighting, and afterwards in his flight paffing the river Po, many of his people were drowned. In this flight ODOACER neuer staved vntill he came to Rome, where he thought to have gathered new head. and there to have refifted his enemies; but there they would not receive him: for feeing that he had been twife ouerthrowne, they had no hope or confidence in him, but fought to gratifie THEODORICVS, fo as the citie was in armes: wherefore Odo Acer returned, and with the best forces that he was able put himselfe into Ranenna; and THEODORICVS for that time forbare to pursue him, and went to Milan and tooke it, and other cities in that quarter: whereupon, many cities in Italy fent to him to yeeld their obedience, and many companies of fouldiers came to ferue him in his warres. And in the meane feafon O DOACER forti- VVarres in tfied himselfe with armes, men, and victuals, thinking at the least to have been talie betweene able to defend himselfe in Rauenna, which at that time (after Rome) was the prin- Theodoricus. cipall citie of all Italy. And THEODORICVS being in a readines to beliege it. there followed fo fodeine an alteration, that he neither could, neither durft to abide before it: for by the procurement of one of O D O ACERS Captaines, who was either a prefident or admiral of some part of Italy, many Captaines, townes. and people against tooke part with O D O ACER, and they grew to fo great a number, that THEODORICY'S was in such feare, that he put himselfe into the citie of Paula, and many daies passed before that he againe drew his armie into the fields. fo as neither OdoAceR came to feeke him, neither he OdoAceR. Within few moneths after this, they made frontier warres, and Theodorics secouring forces, committed his Mother and Sifters to the keeping of Epiphanius Bishop of Paula, and went to Rauenna (wherein Odoace Rlay) and laid siege Theodoricus thereto: but ODOACER so manfullie defended the same, that in three yeeres besieged Odofoace (for fo long the fiege lasted) he not only made head against THEODORI- 1840 cy s, but made so many sallies upon him, and gaue him so many alarmes, that he neuer fuffred his armie to rest. But in the end wanting victuals, and out of hope of any reliefe, having first tried all meanes, both to offend and defend, and seeing that it availed not, he resolved to yeeld to THEODORICVS, vpon condition that he should give him affurance of his life, with promise to allow him some place in Italy, wherein he might live; which promife was ill perfourmed: for he commaunded both him and his sonne to be slaine and so ended the life and raigne Odoacer slaine by the comman

O D O A C ER being dead, the people of his armie called Heruli, which escaped Theodoricus. from the battaile, were entertained by THEODORICVS, and hee gaue them pay, and in short space made himselfe Lord of all Italy, without finding any resistance; and went afterwards to Rome, where hee was received with great joy and folemnitie as well for the fame and good report which they had heard of him as for that he was fent thither by the Emperor Z ENO. And this moreover did greatly helpe him to get the good will of the citie; that at his very first comming thither, he caused a great quantitie of wheat to be distributed amongst the citizens, wher-

of O DOACER, which cannot iustlie be tearmed, cowardlie.

Theodoricus went to Rome and made himof and of all

of they then stood in great want: And so he remained Lord of Rome, and of all Haly, calling himselfe king thereof, as O D O A C E R had done, thirteene veeres before. fel/Lord there- This THEODORICVS Was a very vertuous, a very just, & a most excellent Prince and gouernour, and made himselfe very mightie, and much both beloued and feared : and aboue all, was very wife and circumspect in preserving his estate. And to the end to make himselfe the more mightic, he procured alliance with althe kings then in Europe: for he presently treated a mariage with ANDEFREDA the French Kings daughter, which hee solemnized with great feasting and triumph. And of his owne three daughters, one hee married to SIGISMVND King of the Burgonians; and another to ALARICVS King of the Visiogothes, and of Spaine; and his third daughter called A MALASIVNTHA, he married to a Prince of Germany called EVTHARICUS; and his fifter ALMAFREDA hee married to Honoricus King of the Vandales and of Africa, who was GENSERICUS his heire and succeffor. So that with all the Princes neere vnto Isaly, hee made fome affinitie and band of friendship, and held that kingdome, which he with such honour had con-

The alliance and league made by Theo

VVbat befell the Emperor Zeno in Conftantinople.

The trecherie Ariadne.

> Ry what meanes the Emperelle was delinered from death.

quered, with no leffe honour, the space of thirtie veeres after. Whilest these things passed in Italy, ZENO the Emperour of Constantinople and of the East, had had somewhat to doe with the Bulgarians, which euer fince the death of ATTILA had dwelled in Germany: and had made an incursion into the prouince of Thracia, and had done much harme in that countrie: but they quickly returned to their habitation. In Constantinople also happened a great fire, which burnt a great part of that citic. There befell vnto ZENO also another very great difafter, complotted by a fauourite of his, who was steward of his palace, whose of illo against name was Y L L o s, which was thus: This Y L L o s made the Emperour beleeve. (though vniustly) that his wife the Emperesse, whose name was ARIADNE, daughter of the Emperour L E o, lined diffnoneftly; and fo Z EN o being deluded, commaunded her fecretly to be flaine. And he to whom the charge of the execution was committed, reuealed the secret to a young gentlewoman of the Emperesse chamber; who presently aduertised her Ladie thereof. And she at the very instant without any delay, fled from the palace in the closest manner that she could, leaving her in her chamber, which had advertised her thereof, and went to the house of Acacivs then Bishop of Constantinople. The Emperour the next day affuring himselfe that his commandement had been fulfilled, clad himselfe in mourning attire, faining that his wife had died naturally. But presently came to him the Bishop, who with great authoritie scuerely reprehended his lightnes and hastie resolutions; aduertising him of his wines innocencie; and that that wherewith the was accused was vntrue. Finally, he handled the matter fo well, that hee perswaded him the truth, and reconciled him to his wife, and made a persect peace betweene them. But the Emperesse ARIADNE, after that she vinderstood that it was Y L L 0 s which had accused her (as a woman) would be reuenged, and commaunded a certaine man, whom the held fit for that purpose, to kill him; who the better to bring his purpose to effect, lay in waite for him, and purposing to haue striken him vpon the head, his blow failed, and it happened vnto him as to S.Perer: for milling his head, he smote off one of his eares, and so hee escaped. And daring not to remaine in the Emperour ZENO his Court, he resolued to commit a greater treason then the former; which was to goe into Asia, and there to rife and rebell, with great part of the East: which hee might easily doe, for hee was very cunning and of great account; and Z ENO for his conditions was in those parts very ill beloued. But he speedily sent a good armie against him, vnder

the leading of a Captaine called LEONCIVS: but this YLLOSV fed fuch meanes and perswasions to LEONCIVS, that hee did the like, and so of one tyrant there arose two, which made themselves Lords of a great part of Asia the lesse. But within few daies after, the Imperiall armie which had conspired with them, after that the fouldiers were grown rich by spoile & bootie, repenting their misdeeds, spired with and to the end to obtaine pardon, upon a day mutined and flew them both, and Yilas, and both brought their heads to Constantinople. And so was Zeno deliuered from this worth sudditions. trouble and commotion, and lived the rest of his time in rest and peace: notwithstanding that hee put certaine principall Noblemen to death without any just cause. All these things being past, in the seuenteenth yeere of his raigne ZENO died of a naturall ficknes in Constantinople. It is written of him that he was exceedingly ill favoured and deformed and of a lothfome afpect and gefture. He is not The death of reckoned among the good Emperours; and it is also said of him, that he would zeno. fometimes be drunke. He died in the yeere of our Lord foure hundred, fourescore Anno Dom. and fourteene.

## THE LIFE OF ANASTA-SIVS, THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND SEVEN AND FIF-TITH ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGUMENT.



Eno being dead, Anastasins was chosen, who was greatly fanoured by the Emperefle, to whom she was married at the end of fortie daies after the objequies of her dead hulband. This man finding all things in peace, in the beginning of his raigne did many good deedes: but he suddenly altred his condition, and being potted with the heresie of Entiches, or Enticetus, which made a quaternitie of the Dininitie, he began to grow batefull to God and men; and many countries rebelled against him. Against which

Anastasius

chofen Empe-

putting himselse in order to sight (although that he overcame many of the rebels) neverthelesse he was once brought to such an extremitie, that be was driven shamefully to buy his peace with money; and afterwards the Persians rising against him, caue him much to doe in sundrie battailes, but sinally he made a truce with them, and during the time of the truce, was staine by a thunderbolt



En o had not any some that might succeed him in the Empire: wherefore after his death fome of the most principall Lords procured themselues to be chosen; among which was this Anastasiv s, who although that he were not of any noble linage, yet he was a man of great reputation, and well beloued. By reason whereof, and also for that he was in great fanour with the widow Emperesse, he was chosen Emperor, with the aide and affiftance of an Eunuch called

VRBICIVS, which was of great authoritie in the Court. And ARIAD NE did not onely procure his election aforesaid, but within fortie daies after the obsequies of her dead husband were folemnized, and his bodie intombed, the married with the new Emperour: and by this meane obtained ANASTASTV sthe Empire. In the beginning whereof, without any contradiction, but with the generall contentment of all men he was obeyed: and he not only found the Empire in peace, but there was peace also in Italy, France, Spaine, Germanie, and in Africa; they gouerning those kingdoms as their owne, which were successors to them which first vsurped and tooke them from the Empire; notwithstanding that shortly after there arose great warres betweene them. And THEODORICVS who was called King of Italy, chose the citie of Rauenna for his royall seate; which was by him enobled with fumptuous buildings: and in his absence he commanded the like to be made in Rome, and did much good through all Italy, directing all things like a good and an excellent Prince; in so much that the people praised God for him, and held themselues for happie, in that they had so good a man for their Lord and gouernour.

But returning to our new Emperour; fo foone as he was crowned, he commaunded by a publike decree that all fuch debts as were due to his chamber of accounts, or as we fay, his exchequer, vntill that day, should be pardoned, and not be recouered from the debters; which amounted to a very great fumme. He began also to give offices and places of charge to such persons as were of worth, and fufficient for them, and not for money (as the custome was) by reason of later wants. By meanes whereof and of other apparant fignes of a good prince, in the beginning of his raigne, he became very well beloued. But this lasted but a little while: for he was infected with the herefie of EvTICHES; who held an abominable opinion of the person of CHRIST. And for as much as nothing can be of any affurance, or acceptable without faith; this Emperour began to grow fecretly hatefull to God, and publickly odious to men; and so although thathe died old, yet he died an euill death: And in his life was neuer free from tyrants which rebelled; and other warres and troubles. The first which rebelled, were the people of Isauria (a very valiant nation in Asia the lesse) the occasion whereof was, for that he tooke from them, that pay which his predeceffor ZENO had promifed, and given them, when he subdued the tyrant ILLOS, who (as we faid) falfely defamed the Emperesse. This people making choise of a valiant Lilingus rebel- and expert warrior, whose name was LILING vs for their captaine; made cruell warres upon the lands of the Empire, for the space of fixe yeeres. In which time,

betweene

The berefie of

betweene the fouldiers of Anastasivs and of Lilingus, there happened fome battailes, and many conflicts and skirmishes, vntill that LILING VS dying, the Isaurians being scattered, and lost through want of a captaine, were cruelly punished and many citties were destroyed, and laid wast, as relateth I ORDANVS the Bishop: who although briefly, yet he expresseth the greatest part of that historie. There arose also against ANASTASIVS, another captaine in Cilicia, at the fame instant, called ATHEMIDORVS, but he was soone brought to ruine. In Sla-Athemidorus, wonia and Dalmatia, rebelled two mightie men and very rich, called SABIANVS Manno, and and Myndo: and neere to Adrianople another, whose name was Pompey: Pempey tyand within the citie of Constantinople, were certaine tumults and riots committed, rants. wherein many men were flaine. By reason of all which rebellions, A NASTASIVS was much perplexed; and being in great feare, came to fome compositions (little to his honor) and loft fundrie townes. After that hee was delivered from this trouble, he had another civill warre, which was of great importance and long continuance, against a valiant warrior, a Scythian borne; but trained and brought vp in the warres of the Romanes, and in the Emperours house, and court; and was high constable, or commander of his men of warre, and was called VATI-LIANVS; who either of ambition and defire to beabfolute, or for fome difpleafure or discontentment (which the historiographers write not) arose against ANASTASIVS; and with threescore thousand men, which he leuied of Hunnes. and other nations, began cruell warre against him, both by sea and land; so as fometimes he came within three miles of the imperial citie of Constantinople. Against whom the Emperour raised a great armie, and made his nephew HIPA- Hipatias made TIAS generall thereof, who before that he could come to fight any battaile, by a Vatilianus. wile was taken prisoner by the Hunnes, and deliucred into the power of VATI-LIANVS: After which, the Emperours other captaines were ouerthrowne; fo as the warre continued fixe yeeres, and in the end thereof, the Emperour bought his peace of VATILIANVS, for a great fumme of money which he gaue him. and by this meane was deliuered from the perill, although not from the difference and dishonor, of buying peace. In this warre (as writeth Zonaras) called Io-HANNES MONACHUS (as relateth I OHANNES CUSPINIANUS) ANASTAsiv s was greatly holpen by the skill and industrie of Procives, an excellent philosopher and Mathematician, who was most skilfull in inuenting instru-Protlus an exments, engines and stratagems. Amongst other matters, they report one thing of pher, him, which feemeth incredible, which I durst neither affirme, nor deny, but will recite it for a wonder, let the reader belieue what he lifteth; yet I say that the secrets of nature are fo great, that we ought not to hold all for impossible which we cannot comprehend how it may be brought to passe. That which I say, these authors write for certaine, and that it was fo; which was, that in the manner, as we now fee certaine glaffes, which being fet in the funne, with the reflexion of the pronderfull beames thereof will fet tow or flax on fire, and fuch like other dry stuffe neere at burning glaffen hand: fo did this Process make a very great many of these glasses, which wrought effect with fuch force, that being fet voon the high turrets of the walles and bulwarks, they fet on fire and burnt whole fleets of shippes in the harbours, with all the people that were in them; and in like manner any other engines, that were erected against the walles, wheresoeuer they were (if where the sunnebeames might reuerberate from those glasses) wherewith the enemie was greatly annoyed, which was done in the fame manner as we now fee tow fet on fire. Whilft these things passed in the Empire of Constantinople, there were great wars

Nn 4

betweene

ANASTASIVS THE FIRST.

417

betweene the Kings of France, and of Spaine, and THEODORICVS King of Italie, which for that they are long to recite, and nothing to my purpose, I pre-

Canadas king of Perfia.

VVaryes with

the Perfians.

Anastafius bis

Generals a-

of Persia. Arionindus,

Patricius,

patias.

Celer, and Hi-

But returning to our Emperour, who feemed now to becat fomerest, being freed from the warres with VATILIANVS; there happened another warre with the Persians, which was of as great importance, and no lesse perillous, the cause whereof was this. At that time in Persia raigned a King both mightie and valorous, whose name was CAVADAS; who by reason of warres and other expences, stoode in neede of a summe of money, therewith to pay a certaine King which was his neighbour to whom he was indebted: which by ambaffade he requested the Emperour Anastasivs to lend him, as to a friend and confederate (as he then was). But ANASTASIVS taking counfell upon the matter, was aduited not to graunt it, for that it was a meane with his owne money to joyne in league of amitie and friendship, those which were the ancient enemies of the Empire: and that therefore the best course was to take away the meane from the Persian to be able to make paiment; to the end that they might make warre one against another, and so waste and consume themselues. And in this manner it was concluded, in the best fort that might be, to excuse the matter, without granting what the King requested. The King of Persia having received this answere, was so extremely enraged therewith, that he resolued to make warre against the Romane Empire: and putting his determination in execution, leuving a great armie, and making great preparation for the warres, hee personally entred the limits and confines thereof, and made cruell warres therein, and incamped himselfe before the citie of Amida, which was then a great and a famous citie in the province of Mejopotamia, as writeth PROCOPIVS; before which were many conflicts: but in the end the Persian tooke it, and held the same for some space after. As he lay before this citie. Anastasivs raised the greatest and best armie that ever hee had done before; which he divided into foure parts, and fent the same under the gainst the king commaund of foure Generals, against CAVADAS: whose names were ARIO-VINDVS, who then was Pretor in the East; and CELER, the Captaine of the Emperours guard; and another was called PATRICIVS borne in Phrygia; and the fourth was called HIPATIAS, who was the Emperours nephew, as is before faid. And with these went other great men: as Ivstinvs who afterwards was Emperor, and some other noble and expert men in the warres.

These armies marched by seuerall waies, and directed not their course to relieue Amida; but to make warre in fundrie parts of CAVADAs his kingdomes. And he being aduertised of their comming, went to meete with ARIOVIND VS; who behaued himselfe so cowardly, who daring not to fight, retired very shamefully, and left his campe full of many rich things, and of great value, which were taken by the Persians, which had them in chace, and pursued the Imperiall armie. The other two Generals, to wit, PATRICIVS and HIPATIAS, ioyning their forces together, being neere the enemie, began the warre, without any certaine knowledge where the King was, after the retreit, or rather flight of ARIOVIN-Dvs; and they by chaunce met with eight hundred horse of his, the King being but a little behind them with a very mightie armie: which putting themselues in order for their defence, were all flaine and torne in peeces, without any newes learned of them by the Romanes: and they having no fight of CAVADAS his troupes, pitched their tents vpon a rivers fide; the currant whereof ranne directly that way as CAVADAS came, and so they began to victuall and refresh them-

felnes of their wearie journey; and went into the water, and did fetch water from the faid river And as CAVADAS and his Captaines faw the water come downe troubled, bringing therewith other things which feemed to be lately throwne into it, they suspected as it was, and CAVADAS in all haste commanded his armie to Canadas his march, in order readie to fight. Which came so suddenly upon the Imperialists, vittorie against that before they could range themselues in order, they were broken and ouer- anastrajus bis throwne: and the most part of all these retchlesse Captaines were slaine, except Captaines. fome which escaped by flight. And without question if at this time the Hunnes had not come downe out of Scythia Asiatica, and with great power had not made warre vpon the Persians, which diverted CAVADAS his thoughts into other parts, and made him returne into his countrie, to take order for the defence thereof he had after this ouerthrow done great harme in the Empire. But he vpon this occasion retiring himselfe, there came in good time the fourth Captaine called CELER, with his Imperial armie, who began in better order and more aduitedly to follow the warres: and gathered together those troups which ARIOVINDVS had left (for he himself was commanded by ANASTASIVS to come to Constantia nople) and ioyning with PATRICIVs the Captaine which escaped, they besieged the citie of Amida, which the Perfians had taken; and after a long fiege, they gat it by a wile. And this most cruell warre continuing two yeeres, with great slaughter and dammage to either fide; and the Perfians being much diffressed by the Hunnes, and other nations which with them entred their countries, a truce was the Perlans concluded with the Empire for seuen yeeres. Afterwards, the time of the truce for fenen yeers. being expired, ANASTASIVS commaunded a citie to be builded in Mesopotamia, which he called after his owne name, Anastasia: wherewith the Persians were much displeased. But they were so oppressed by the Hunnes, that they durst not breake with the Emperour, and so the peace lasted so long as ANASTASIVS liued wherewith he was well content: for in the warres hee had lost both many men and much reputation; and being (as wee faid) infected with the herefie of

EVTICHES, raigned in great trouble. And in the end when hee least thought thereof, when he had raigned seuen and twendie yeeres, a Thunderbolt fell from the heavens which flew him, in the yeare of our Lord, fine hundred and nineteene, without leauing any fonne that might succeede him.

The death of the Emperor Anafiafius, Raine by a thunder boit.



## THE LIFE OF IVSTINUS, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME.

AND EIGHT AND FIFTITH RO-MANE EMPEROVR.





Fter Anastasivs, Ivstinus Europalates fucceeded in the Empire. And truly it is a wonderfull matter to confider and vinderstand, from how base estate and from how poore a beginning he mounted to so high a dignitie; and of the waies and meanes whereby he attained thereto. Which for an example of the strange aduentures and variable accidents in this life, I hold worthie to be declared in fuch fort, as it happened. This I vs TINVS was borne in

began

Thracia(yet some say, that he was of Slauenia, or Dalmatia) of poore and simple palife of Justinus rentage; so as from his infancie hee was bred up in keeping of beafts. But as it pleased God in his secret judgement, to ordaine him to raigne and rule, to some good end; he inspired him to leaue that base kind of life: so as at the age of seuenteene yeeres he went to the warres, with a determination to continue in the exercise of armes. And he prooued so worthie a souldier, that within short space he purchased the name of Valiant, and fought oftentimes with great dexteritie and courage, with his enemies in fingle combats man to man; and in all occasions made good proofe of his person. Wherefore within short time he was made a Captaine; and within a while after an Earle; which (as is alreadie faid) at that time was, and still is, a great dignitie. In that estate was he when ANASTASIVS died, being now well growne in yeeres: And as presently after his decease, the Lords

and course of before he was Emperer.

began to confult of whom they should make Emperour; a great Courtier named AMANTIVS which was an Eunuch, and had been the Emperors Steward, and was now the best monied man of his time, fought by all meanes to make a great and mightie man, called THEOCRETIANVS, who was his great friend, Emperor. And for as much as the armie and men of warre bare greatest sway in the election (for now nothing was done in fuch order as it behoued, but by force and for benefit) he therefore determined to buy the good wils of the Captaines and men of warre. And to this effect, he purposed first to winne Ivs TINVs, and to vse him for a meane to perswade the rest, and conferred with him concerning the fame: And comming to a composition, he gaue him a great summe of money, to the end that he should divide the same amongst the Captaines and men of warre where he thought good; conditionally that THEOCRETIANY's might be chofen Emperor. When Ivstinvs had gotten this money into his fingers, he for- Amantius gat to deale for THE OCRETIANYS, but fecretly fought to buy their good wils fought to get for himself; and carried the matter so cunningly, that when A MANTIV's thought bis friend that the fouldiers would have made his friend Emperor, hee found that they had Theoretianus. nominated, would have Ivsrinvs. And in this manner they presently sware whereby Justin to him fidelitie and obedience, by the generall consent of both the Senate and nus eat the the Armie. For besides what is alreadie said, he was well beloued and held for a Empire. vertuous man and a good Christian. AMANTIVS sceing himselfe deluded, although for the present he could not refuse to yeeld him obedience; yet shortly after he practifed the death of the new Emperor, and conspired with THEOCRE TIAN v s, who pretended to have been chosen Emperor; and with another called ANDREAS, and with MISSAHALE, and ARDAEVRIVS, all which were of the Emperors chamber, to the end they should kill him, so soone as any oportunitie thereto were offered. But it pleased God that their treason was discouered, and being prooued, I v s TINV's commaunded, A MANTIVS, ANDREAS, and THEO-CRETIANVS to be flaine; and the rest to be perpetually banished. And to the end the better to affure himselfe in the Empire, he vsed a meane that VATILIA-NVs, which rebelled against A NASTASIV s, came to his Court, whom hee made ordinary Conful, and Master, and Generall of all his men of warre, and bestowed great gifts and honours vpon him. But with all this, he (as ingratefull and a traitor) within few daies after, practifed with some others, against the life and estate and death of of Ivstinvs; which being discourred, he was vpon a day flaine in his palace, Vatilianus, together with PAVLV s, and CELERIANV s, which were confederates and complices with him in his treason. Iv s TIN v s being delinered from this danger, and feeing himself in peace in the Empire, being a good Christian, and knowing how farre the Arrian herefie had extended it felfe ouer the world, refolued to vie therein all the remedie that possibly he could: whereto he was likewise perswaded by Pope HORMISDA, who from Rome fent GERMANVS Bishop of Capra, to confer with him of matters concerning the faith. Whereupon IvsTINVs fent his de-Institute crees through all the East, commaunding that no man should be accepted into cuted the Arthe Church for Bishop, or Priest, that should be of the sect of ARRIVS. At what rians. time I v s T I N v s did this good deede, T R A S I M V N D King of the Vandales died in Africa, who was an Arrian heretike, and his sonne ELDERICVS possessed his kingdome, whom hee had by the Emperour VALENTINIANS daughter. This man following his faithfull mother, and not his hereticall father, fo foone as hee was established in the kingdome, recalled from exile all the Catholike Bishops which his father had banished (as is aboue faid) and reformed all the Churches.

Theodoricus King of the Gother defended the Arrians.

The crueltic of Theodoricus, and his death.

But the Emperour and this King having done fo good a deede, THEODORICY'S which ruled in Italy being of great power, and for that he was (as the most of the Gothes were)an Arrian heretike, was therewith much displeased; and determined, if the Emperor did not reuoke his decree, to vie through all his dominion. al manner of crueltie against the Catholikes. But first he constrained Pope I O HN. who succeeded H'o R MISDA, to goe to Constantinople, and with him THE O DO-RV s, and AGAPETVS (men which had been Confuls) to treate with the Emperor, to the end that hee presently should restore those Arrian Bishops which hee had deposed; otherwise that in his dominions he would put to the sword, all such as did not beleeue as he did. Pope I o HN and the other Ambaffadours being arriued at Constantinople, were very honourably received; and the Pope with teares intreated the Emperour to be pleased, notwithstanding that his sute was vniust: vet to avoide the excessive crueltie which was expected, for the present to permit the Arrian Bishops to be restored. The Emperour to eschew this crueltie. granted his request: and so the wicked Bishops were restored to their Churches and the Emperor did Pope I o HN great honour, and those which came with him. In the meane time, whilest they were in Constantinople, THEODORICVS king of Italy, made SIMACHYS, and BOETIVS SEVERINVS to beflaine, which had bin Confuls, and which were very noble and excellent personages, very denout Christians, and excellently learned in all Arts. And not herewith contented, having been vntill then a good and a just Prince; but now having Pope I o HN and the other Ambassadours which came with him from Constantinople in suspition, by reason of the great honour done vnto them by the Emperour, he commaunded them to be apprehended and cast in prison; wherein they all three of hunger and cruell vsage died. After which crueltie, it pleased God that within ninetic daies he died fuddenly, leaning a nephew of his called A THALLARIC vs for his heire: for he had not any fonne. And for as much as his nephew was but eight yeeres old, his mother tooke vpon her the gouernment of the kingdome, as a woman which was very wife and valorous.

Returning to Ivstinvs the Emperor, I fay, that it grieued him much what THE ODORICVS had done; but he was not of power able to redresse the same: for besides the wants and necessities wherewith he was oppressed, the Persians made warres against him; which were a people of all others most feared by the Romanes. But for the finall time that he lived, he had good fucceffe in those wars. and his Captaines obtained some victories; Scita and Belisarivs being his Ganerals. Of which two. BELISARIVS (which then was very young) project afterwards to be one of the best Captaines in the world, and which conquered more countries, and obtained more victories, then any other man in his time: as we will hereafter briefly declare. And I v s T I N E liuing in this prosperitie, seeing himselfe old, and without any sonne to succeede him, resoluted to make Iv sri-NIAN, who was his nephew and his fifters fonne, C # S A R, and to adopt and nominate him for his successor and so presently made him his companion in the Empire. And within foure moneths after, falling ficke, he died in the citie of Conflantinople, when he had raigned eleuen yeeres, or (as some authors write) but nine. I finde little more written of him, then by me is rehearfed. He died in the yeere of our Lord, fine hundred, nine and twentie; and as some say, eight and twentie.

The death of the Emperor Justin.

Anno Dom.
529.

THE



## THE LIFE OF IVSTINIA-NVS, THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND NINE AND FIFTITH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.



Fter Iustinus, without any contradiction, succeeded Iustinianus, who among it his first attempts, made that against the Persians, under the leading of Belisarius; which with variable fortune of the warves, in the end he ouercame. Tet he made peace with them afterwards. After this there ensued a civill warre in Constantinople, wherein them afterwards. After the state of the manes of Belisarius, he was treed listinians as the list of home speadout its, but by meanes of Belisarius, he was treed

thereof; norwithstanding that there died therein many thousands of people; which being ended, be returned to make a conquest of Africa, which of long time had been vlarped by the Vandles; and getting it, he came agains to Constantinople, where Instituted prepared by the Vandles; and getting it, he came agains to Constantinople, where Institute of the Constantino of the Was not long before the Emperour sent him into Italie against the Gothes, where after many changes of fortune, and treaties of peace, and of trace, having taken the cities of Naples (wherein as it seemed conssisted the trace) have to was to ward knome, wherein as it seemed conssisted the constantino of the Gothes; whom Beliarius at lass topical the same, with perest valour, against Vitiges King of the Gothes; whom Beliarius at lass topic prisoner. After this victorie Institution recalled Beliarius, to employ him against the Persans, which was the occasion that Italie againe sell into the hands of the Gothes, particularly Rome, which by Tatila was burnt and asserted at that for no other defett, but for that it could not be relieved by Beliarius, who then was sicks. Who so some as be hadreconered but is leath, tooke it agains from the Barbarians. And returning agains to Constantingle.

of the warres

betweene the

nian and the

Perfians.

the state of Italie was very happily governed by Narses an Eunuch. In which time Iustinian haning applied himselfe to reforme and abridge the lawes; when he had raigned nine and thirtie recres departed out of this life, no leffe replenished with yeares then full of clorie.



Free the death of Ivstinvs, Ivstinianvs was without any contradiction received and obeyed for Emperor: being of the age of foure and fortic veeres. He was a mightie and a good prince, and fuch a one, as might well be compared with the best in auncient time, for his good government, both in peace and warre. The warres and conquests which happened in his time

(which was little leffe then fortie yeeres) were to many, & fo noble, that I cannot expresse the same as I would, and as they deserue; following my accustomed breuitie. I will therefore write as I may not with standing that the length of the time. and the varietie of accidents, will compell me to exceede my prefixed limits.

So soone as IVSTNIANVS saw himselfe confirmed in the Empire, he rested not contented to conceive that which he enherited from his vncle; but (bearing the minde and having the witte and discretion of an auncient and good Emperour) began to desire, and therewith to practife, to enlarge the Empire, and to reduce the same (if it were possible) to the auncient maiestie and dignitie The beginning thereof. The first occasion of warres that was offered, was against the Persians: which in the time of his predeceffors, had broken and violated the peace, and had inuaded the bounds of the Romane Empire, and vsurped certaine countries Emperor Iuftiand provinces thereof, in so much (as Procorry s writeth) that for the space of fiftie veeres before the raigne of IVSTINIAN, in all the warres the Imperialifts commonly had the worst, and all conclusions of peace were made to the aduan-

tage of the Perfians.

The cause of this warre betweene the Emperour Ivstinian and Cavadas king of the Persians, was in truth the emulation and hatred which these two Empires, and the Lords thereof had of auncient time borne, and still did beare the one against the other, which was continuallie nourished and increased, as by that which we have written may plainely be perceived. But the occasion and principall cause was this, Ivstinianvs so soone as he was Emperour, sent BELISA-RIV s, a most excellent Captaine, into those frontiers, with direction, in a certaine principall citie, which was in the borders of Persia, to build the strongest and most inexpugnable castle that could be deuised for that citie was one of the entries and passages of greatest importance: which order BELISARIV spresentlie put in execution. Whereof when CAVADAS was aduertifed, he was highlie offended, and presentlie sent thither Captaines and men of warre, to require Bulisarivs to giue ouer the worke, which if he would not do, that then they should throw downe what he had builded. These men being come to the place where this castle was abuilding, there passed many words, and some deeds between them: and forasmuch as the builders were not of force sufficient to make resistance against the Persians, the Emperour sent thither two captaines, brothers, with some companies of fouldiers. These being there arrived, and the Imperialists perseuering in their building, and the Perfians in hindring the same, they came to fight a battaile, wherein the Imperialists being fewer in number, were by the Persians broken and ouerthrowne, and many were flaine, others were carried away captiues, and the building was laid leuell with the earth. When IVSTINIAN vnderstood of this ouerthrow, he presently made BELISARIVS Generall of all his

forces in the East; who as a wife and valiant man, with all expedition raised a very Belifarius mightie armie; and taking to him another Captain called HERMOGENE (Whom made Generall the Emperor with a good supplie had sent vnto him) he tooke his way towards fant, the cife of Duras, in Melopotamia, which at that time was the frontier of the Perfians; where began a cruell warre betweene the one and the other nation. But as IVSTINIAN, to employ and spend his time in recourring some other of those provinces, which the Empire had loft defired peace with the Persians, he sent an Ambassadour whose name was R v FIN v s, to C A v AD As King of Persia, to treate of a peace (if you honourable conditions it might be concluded). This Ambaffadour being come into the borders where the King was, before that hee was to come to his Court, certaine motions were made of peace, and as they treated thereof, the Imperiall Generals were given to viderstand, that the Persian armie came to feeke them, and was within halfe a daies journey, and had for Generall thereof, a great man called PEROZAS, who was a Mirranes, which was the name Perozas Geneofa Magistrate, of great dignitie and authoritie in Persia. Whereupon BELISA-King of Persia. RIV'S fet his troupes in order and the two Campes came to lodge very neere the one to the other; and so they continued the space of two or three daies, ranging themselves every day in order of battell, either partie expecting when the other should charge. Vpon one of those daies, certaine Archers of the one and other fide began a skirmish, whereupon the squadrons moued and brake the one vpon the other, and fought in such manner, that it was a very cruell and a very bloudie Abattaile battaile, and lasted vntill neere night: wherein the Romanes in the right wing with the Perhad the worse, and the better in the lest; and every Captaine did his best to ob- Belizarius had taine the victorie: but in the end the Romanes prevailed, and made great flaugh- the victorie. ter of their enemies; and PEROSAS the Mirranes escaped by flight.

BELISARIVS having obtained this notable victorie, within few daies after recovered some places in Mesopotamia, which the Persians had vsurped; wherein also passed fundric doubtfull conflicts and encounters. In the kingdome of Ar- sittas General menia, wherein the Persians held many places, Sixtas being Generall, and Armenia. DOROTHEYS Pretor; the Warres were made with the like good fortune, and ouercame the the Imperiall armie obtaining victorie, recourred the most part of what was lost. The warres standing on these termes, and kindled enery where RV FINVs (who we faid went Ambaffadour to the King of Persia) vpon safe conduct came to his Court, and had many treaties and discourses with him; but no peace could be concluded: and CAVADAs determining to profecute the warres a new, to the end to be fatisfied for the losses which his people had received; by the counsell of ALAMANDER, a valiant old Captaine of his (who in times past had got- Alamander. ten many victories against the Romanes) he made Ezaretha Generall of his armie, a man both valiant and of great experience, and a Persian borne. With whom BELISARIVS, together with SITTAs the other Generall, after some en- Ezaretha Ge.

all that happened in those warres.

This battaile was fought neere to the river Euphrates, and much against the opinion of Belisarius, who knowing that the enemie had the aduantage, would not have fought: but his troupes against his will, prepared themselves thereto. Whereupon he feeing their determination, marthalled and encouraged them against the Persians, which were alreadie in order. And the fight began with fo great furie and obstinacie of both sides, that for the greatest part of the day, it appeared not whether partie should have the victorie, vntill such time as the Im-

counters, came to a battaile, which was one of the most cruell and the greatest of Persians,

perialifts

perialists being vnable any longer to endure the labour and toile thereof for they were fasting, being Easter euen (Christians of our age may see how inutolably fafling daies were observed in those times) they disbanded, and began to scatter. Whereupon the Persian horsemen charged Belisarivs his horse troupes with fuch force, that the Romanes brake, and began to flie, and the like did the other squadrons of soote. Which when BELISARIVS perceived, after that he had vied all meanes to stay them, and to have renewed the fight, and could not prenaile, he alighted from his horse, and placed himselse in a squadron of sootemen, which kept together whole and vnbroken, and encouraging them with his presence, they all resolued rather to die, then to be ouerthrowne. And EZARE-THA and the Persians, which followed the chace of those which fled seeing that squadron to remaine whole, returned with great furie, thinking easily to have had the execution of them: but they failed of their purpose, for they kept themselues fo close together that they could not be broken, and fought so valiantly, that they did the Persians more harme, then they received from them. And so vntill night held their ground, and kept themselves in such order, that EZARETHA and his people were faine to leaue them. But they had the ransacking of their Tents, and foreturned to their Campe. And BELISARIVS in very good order withdrew himselfe to a little Iland, which the river Euphrates maketh in that place, whither the greatest part of his people which fled, were alreadic retired. And there the next day he againe set himselfe in order, and gathered together his souldiers : but the Persians holding themselues for victorious had the spoile of the field. After this journey Ezar ETHA removed his Campe to another quarter; for there hee had received greater loffe then BELIS ARIVS; in fo much that CAVADAS King of Persia vnderstanding what number of men were lost in that battaile, held not himselfe content, nor for well served in that victorie. And dying within few daies Canadas King after, his sonne Cosnoes succeeded him in his kingdome, with whom, after many ambassades and treaties, a peace was concluded; and BELISARIVS reconquered other countries, which other nations held in the East. And so much hono-Cofroes fuccee red and victorious, being fent for, by the Emperor IvsTINIAN for the warres in Africa, SITTAS remaining Generall, he came to Conflantinople, where he was receiued in triumph with great folemnitie.

of Persia dy-

ing his fonne

in Constantinople.

Ipatius rebeltinople, and was flaine by Iuftinian.

This being past, within few daies after there followed so great an vorore and tumult in the citie of Constantinople, that it was likely to haue gone ill with I v s T 1-NIANVS: for this hurly burly in the beginning, growing from the factions of the common people, came to that point that I PATIV's and Pompey brethren, the most principall men of that citie, with the fauour of the people which tooke their part, they being the Emperor Anastativs his fifters sonnes, arose against Iv-STINIAN; and I PATIVS took the Enfignes and name of Emperor, and in such manner warred within the citie, that thirtie thousand persons were slaine thereinthanns rever-led in Conflam-But in the end the faid I PATIVS was taken and flaine, and I V S T I N I AN S troupes remained victorious: wherein BELISARIVS did him especiall service aboue all others. And afterwards punishing such as were offenders, confisking their goods, the conspiracies and troubles were all appeazed, and I vstinian lined more in peace, and in better estimation then euer before. But soone after followed the warres of Africa, the occasion whereof grew through the diffension betweene GENSERICVS his nephewes, the first King of the Vandales that ever raigned in Africa, which was after this manner: YLDERICVS one of the nephewes of GENSERICVS succeeding in that kingdom, in contention and in despite of ano-

ther

ther which was his cofin germane, and nephew also of the said GENSERICUS The occasion of whose name was GILIMER, both which pretended to have title to the king-the conquest of domes upon what occasion for breuitie I will omit. This Y LDERIC vs grew to Gilmer kinz be so retchlesse and negligent, that GILIMER who was both wise and valiant, thereof. tooke him prisoner, and against all reason made himselfe King and Lord of all Africa: vnder this title, that the other was vncapeable and infufficient for the gouernment. Wherewith the imperor Iv s TINI AN was very much difpleafed: for before that he was Emperour, hee held friendship with Y LDERICVS, which was now depriued of his kingdome. Whereupon (after that he had required GILI-MER by his Ambassadours to render the kingdome to his cosin YLDERICVS. (which he refusing to performe)he resolued to make a conquest of the kingdoms of Africa; and rigged up a mightie Nanie, and fent the noble Generall BELISA-RIVS vpon that service; and to that effect commaunded a great armie to be leuied.with which BELISARIVS imbarking himselfe, accompanied with many Belisarius ment excellent Captaines in fine hundred faile of finites, and fourescorce and tweline gal- to the ventres lies, he began his voiage towards Africa. Wherein a great man borne in that countrie, whose name was PRVDENTIV s, was rifen against GILIMER, in the citie of Tripoli, in the behalfe of the Emperor I vs TINIAN; and another Captaine in Sardinia, whose name was God As, had done the like. So that when BELISA-R I Vs arrived in Africa, he found some which tooke his part; and having landed his armieneere vnto a citie called Tittimuth, marching along the Sea coast he tooke his way towards Carthage; and his Nauie did the like by Sea. When the tyrant King GILIMER understood of the comming of BELISARIVS; with the armie which he had in readines he departed from that citie wherein he first intituled himselfe King, and sent commaundement to his brother called A MATA, whom he left in Carthage for the guard of the citie, and of Y LDERICVS the depofed King, that he should presently kill him, and such other prisoners as were in his power; and that then with his whole force he should sallie out and take the field against BELISARIV s, and at a certaine time appointed should fight with himsfor that he at that same instant would charge him in the arreregard. And he sent ano-Belisarius be ther Captaine all the day long to trouble him on one fide, and to tirchis people africa, King with continuall alarmes. To be briefe, there passed many things in that journey Gilmor come Worthie to be noted, and comming neere to the citie of Carthage, AMATAbegin-against bim. ning to fight at fuch time as his brother had appointed, was flaine by BELISA- Amatabrother RIVS his Vauntguard: And GILIMER Without having any intelligence thereof, to Gitumer. with his troupes fo refolutely charged in the Arrereguard, that the Imperialists Abattaile began to retire in fuch manner, that if GILIMER had not made an Alt. PROCO- wherein king PIV's affirmeth that it was cuident, that he had that day had the victoric. But when outerbrowner it was told him that his brother was dead, he caused his troupes to stand. And B E-LISARIVS his fouldiers understanding of the good successe of their Auantguard, which was farre before them, being by him animated and encouraged, returned to fight, with fuch furie, that GILIMER was wholy overthrowne and scattered, and many of his people flaine, and hee by flight faued his life; and his fouldiers which escaped from the battaile, straggled into divers parts; vpon which greater execution had been done, if night had not overtaken them. The next day after this battaile, BELISAKIVS marched with his armic towards the citie of Carthage, where he arrived that fame day in the evening, and found no reliftence, for they opened their ports, and made great lights to have received him; but hee would not by night come into an enemies citic, leaning it vntill the next day,

DAS, which (as we faid) was rifen in that Iland against GILIMER, whom ZA-

ZON had ouerthrowne and flaine, and recourred the Ile. But ZAZON feeing

pall men of the Vandales; which stroke such a feare amongst them, that they be-

gan to faint: and BELISARIVS charging with his fquadron, they turned their

backes and fled to their campe, which they had very well fortified; and Gill-

GILIMERS campe, with intent to have affaulted it, and to have accomplished

his victorie. When King GILIMER faw his battailions come, knowing that

there he was notable to defend himselfe, with some few servants which follow-

ed him, he fled: and BELISARIVS with little refistance, by reason of the Kings

absence, gat their campe, his fouldiers putting to the swordall those which they

therein found able to beare armes, tooke all the women and children captines:

and in the campe they found an infinit quantitie of gold, filuer, money and iew-

els: Which (as Procopivs affirmeth) was one of the greatest and richest

spoiles that euer was seene or taken. For the Vandales hauing no place of refuge

which they accounted fafe, carried their gold, filuer, money, and all their treasure

with them : So as within one houre they loft all that they had ftolne, and gotten

together in Africa, in fourescore and fifteene yeeres. For solong had they been

Pelifarius entred Carthage with viftorie.

and then entred with great quietnes, without any robberie or murther committed by any of his people, for so had hee commaunded: For his authoritie and reputation was fuch, that no man durst doe to the contrarie. The Vandales which were in Carthage, withdrew themselves to the temples, and churches; and Belisarivs graunting them their lines, commaunded them to come forth, vpon his word, which hee held inuiolably; poffeffing himfelfe of that citie, commaunded the walles thereof to be remained, which were in many places decaied, which was the occasion why GILIMER did not draw himselfe thither. Belisariys being thus in Carthage, fent in posta principall captaine called SALOMON to the Emperour IVSTINIAN, to give him to vinderstand of all, what had passed. And GILIMER which escaped from the battaile, recovered certaine fields of Getulia, called Bulla, which are foure daies march from Carthage: where (as a man no way difmaied) he gathered togethers his troupes which were scattered, and leuied other new; and also sent in great hast, to recall his brother ZAZON, who then was in Sardinia, whither hee had fent him against Go-

King Gilimer escaped from the battaile.

Zazon brother to King Gilimer came to his aide with fue -

the message from his brother left all, and came with his forces to ioyne with him. GILIMER after that his brother was come, having recovered a sufficient armie, tooke his way towards Carthage, to befiege BELISARIV's therein, or to give him battaile, if he would come forthand fight : but BELISARIVS for certaine daies, would not take the field, vntill that he had throughly repaired the walles of the citie, and taken order for the rest. Which being done, he tooke the field with his armie, drawing very neere to GILIMER; who attended his comming. The next day, the one armie having fight of the other, either of the commaunders fet his people in order; and the fight, on either fide began with fuch furie, that in the first charge, ZAZON, GILIMER'S brother was slaine, and certaine other princi-

The jetona valuation MER vinable to stay them, did the like. Belisarivs gathering together his

rie obtained by forces, both of foote and horse, the very same day in the cuening, made towards gainft Gilimer.

The Vandales mintie fine

in possession thereof.

The next day, BELISARIVS, to let slip no occasion, dispatched an excellent captaine called IOHN, with a good troupe of hotfe to purfue GLLIMER, he himselfe purposing to doe the like; and leaving good order in all things in Carthage, and a fufficient garrison therein, he followed with some the most pickt men

of his armie. King GILIMBR riding without any flay, rested himselfe in cerraine inexpugnable mountaines and rockes in the prouince of Numidia, called Papua, inhabited by a people called Maurusij, which were great friends to the Vandales. But before that he came thither it mist but a little, that he had not been The flight and taken by IOHN, and he escaped out of his hands when he was very neere vnto partiale of him. But it was his ill hap that one of his fouldiers shot at a bird, and missing it. King Gillmer. flew his captaine, who being shot through the throte, fell downe dead; and by that meane had GILIMER oportunitie to escape, and to take the rockes and mountaines, where he had not staied long, but BELISARIVS came. But forafmuch as it feemed along peece of worke to take those rockes, wherein GILI-MER was by force of armes; he left one PHARAS a captaine, with sufficient forces to encompas GILIMER round about; so as by no meanes he could escape. And he with the rest of the troupes returned to Carthage, and in his going and Gilling bester bester comming, tooke many townes; and much people with great joy and content- ged by Pharas. ment came to doe him seruice, glad to see themselves delivered from so great feruitude, and so restored to the libertie of the Empire. And being come to Carthage, for the full accomplishment of his victorie, he sent a captaine to take the Ile of Sardinia, and fent other captaines into Mauritania, and fo into divers parts, in all which he had most happie successe: for the Vandales in all places (for the most part) were ill beloued. So as in little more then fower monethes, BELISA-Belifarius con-RIVS reconquered all Africa, after that the Empire had loft the fame the space quered all Aof fowerfcore and fixteen eyeeres. And truly it was a wonderfull thing: for all fricain little that people were Arrian heretikes, and for fuch the same Ivstinian recordeth four moneths, them, in his booke de officio pretoris: wherein although that he faith, that there which had been were one hundred and fiftie yeeres expired after that Africa was loft, it doth not Vandales nintherefore gainefay the nintie and fixe, as I have reported: For that was written tie fixe yeares. nine yeeres afterwards, and he speaketh according to the day of the making of that law. But the truth is, that they possessed Africa but nintie sixeyeeres. PHARAS which remained behinde, to befiege King GILIMBR, begirt him in on cuery fide, in such manner, that GILIMER seeing no other remedie, after many letters which past betweene them, yeelded himselfe vpon securitie of his life: which affurance BELISARIVS fent vnto him; and to certaine his kinfinen which were with him. And PHARAS fo foone as he had him in his possession, came with Gillimer him to Carthage to BELISARIVS, who received and entertained him very ho-brought prinorablie. And so accomplished the great B m L 1 s A R I v s his victories and enter-faring. prifes, which truely was a marueilous matter and worthie of great confideration, if we call to minde the valour and power of those Vandales, and the great victories which they obtained against the Romanes, of which we have touched some. BELISARIVS presently sent to give the Emperour IVSTINIAN to vnderstand of the successeand issue of the warres, and to entreate him to give him leave to make his repaire vnto him, and to bring GILIMER with him. Whereto IvsTI-NIAN aunswered, that he should doe therein what best pleased him, either to continue in the government of Africa, or to repaire to him at his pleafure. But BRLISARIVS to cleere himselfe of certaine whispering mutterings, vniustly raised against him chose rather to goe to Constantinople, and left SALOMON before named for generall and gouernor of Africa, with good part of his armie; Belifarius left who afterwards had warres with the Maurusij, which rebelled, and he subdued, Salomon gourtalthough with great daunger and trouble.

Balls ARIVS followed his journey, leading with him the King and many of

Delifarius his triumph.

his kindred, men and women prisoners, with infinite iewels, treasure and riches. which was the greatest and best part of all that the Vandales had robbed and stolne from Rome, Spaine, Africa, and other provinces, in almost a hundred yeeres before. And being come to Constantinople, the Emperour commaunded him to be received in triumph, with all the ceremonies and folemnities, which the Romane Confuls in old time, and the Emperors afterwards, triumphed in Rome.

The historie of I vs T I N I A N of force must be longer then that of many other Emperors, as well for that he raigned a long time, as also for that the accidents which happened in that time, were great and notable, and the feates of armes done in that time, noble and excellent: wherefore it shall not be well done to leane to speake thereof. And I doe also know, and(as I think) have said, that the readers take pleafure in reading of great battailes, straunge aduentures, conquests of countries, and alterations of kingdomes and estates: wherefore the histories of peaceable Princes, and of happie times, without warres and defasters, are nothing like so pleasing, as are those which treate of slaughters, ruines of estates, alterations of kingdomes, notable victories, infurrections, factions, tumults, rebellions, and finally great accidents whether good or euili: for which cause the bookes of lies and tables are read, and doe commonly please: for that they kill and teare in peeces thousands of men, batter cities, and faine things in a manner impossible. Herein I following the aduice of HORACE, have determined to take care as well to please, as to profit the reader (when I may) with the truth; relating fometimes the great deedes of armes, without concealing the examples of peace also, and the good conditions and customes of the peaceable and gentle Princes. reproouing and condemning vice and finne, by detefting and abhorring those which yied and committed the same. For therefore principally histories are written, and are to be read; to the end that reading vile matters and wicked actions. the readers may eschew them, and follow those which are good and vertuous. And by the variable aduentures and accidents they may be aduised, and frame the rule of their lines according to fuch things as may befall them.

To what end bifories are to

> But returning to our purpose, BELISARIVS rested not long in Constantinople, before that I v s T I N I AN gaue him the charge of the warres, and conquest of Italy, and Sicilie, against the Gothes, and THEODATVS Who at that time was Lord thereof: which enterprise was held to be of no lesse importance and perill, then that of Africa; and the successe thereof shewed it afterwards to be fatte greater. in regard of the great battailes and flaughters which followed therein. The originall and beginning of this warre summarily was such, as in the end of the life of the Emperour Ivs TIN was by vs related. For the great and redoubted King THEODORICUS being dead, his nephew ATHALARICUS (for that he had no fonne) succeeded him in the kingdome of Italy, being of the age of eight yeeres. Wherefore his mother AMALAS VNT Ahad the gouernment of the kingdome, which began to rule with infinit wisedome, and to bring vp her sonne in vertuous exercises, and in the studie of learning and good letters. But it was not long before that contentions and factions arose betweene her and her sonnes kindred; and particularly the malice and enuie grew between cher and THEODATVS, cofin germane to ATHALARICV s. Whereupon the feeing her felf opprefied, gaue the charge of the bringing vp of her fon to certaine principall men of them, and leauing him in Rome, the came to Rauenna, where the still had great authoritie in the gouernment. And the enmitte encreasing betweene her and THEODATVS, who was a man of great power, and openly had made himselfe Lord of the pro-

uince of Tuscane; either of them, to wit, AMALASVNTA and THEODATYS fought the friendship and affistance of the Emperor Ivstinian, and promised to give him entrance into Italy. As matters stood in this point the young King A-THALARICV s died, wherewith AMALASVNTAWas greatly troubled, and very hartely forrie for that the was a widow enuied, and ill beloued of the most principall men of the Gothes. And afterwards studying with her selfe what course was best to be taken, she resolved to come to an agreement with THEODATVS, and to make him King of Italy, perswading her self that he for so great a benefit, could not chuse but be her faithfull friend: and that she should still hold the authoritie. and he the name and title of King. She having resolved hereupon, procured certaine treaties, and a meeting to be had: where, after long discourse and great promifes, bound with folemne othes, made by the one and other partie, the proclaimed him King of Italy; and hee joyning his power with her forces (which were greater then his) without difficultie obtained the kingdome, and all men obeied him. But this denice prooued ill with A MALAS VNTA: neither was it any found course for her; for so soone as THEODATVS faw himselfe an absolute Lord, and Theodatus ap. in possession, he began to rule; little to her liking, and within few daies commanmalafanta, and ded her to be apprehended, and in the end to be put to death, like an ingratefull caused to to and wicked Christian. Ivstinian being advertised hereof, was highly displea- be slaine. fed (for he tooke part with AMALASVNTA) and detecting fo vile a fact, holding this for a good occasion, through the defire which he had to recouer Italy to the Empire, he refolued fuddenly to make open warre against THEODATV s, in hope to make a conquest thereof by armes, which before he fought by wiles and secret practifes. And to that effect he chose BELISARIVS for General of his armie, who then came triumphing and victorious from Africa. Iv s TINIAN at that time had an Ambassadour in Isaly, called P E T ER, who went thither to treate of peace between AMALAS VNTA& THE ODAT VS, With who THE ODAT VS took great paine to come to some conditions of peace, for he greatly seared the power of Iv-STINIAN: and whilest that he was busie hereabouts, BELISARIVS arrived with a Nauie and an armie in Sicilia, for that he held it expedient first to take that Iland, and fuddenly landing his men, he prefently took the citic of Catania, & within few daies after marched towards Sarragoffa, and with the like fortune entred and took the same, and did the like by many other townes and cities. And then he marched to Palermo, where hee found greater force and refistance, for it defended it selfe certaine daies, and many men were flaine of both parties: but those which were within it fearing their destruction, yeelded themselves to BELISARIVS; and so Belifarius took did all the rest of the Iland. Such was his expedition and good hap in the warres. And for as much as he (for his fame) was greatly feared, THEODATVS feeing what was happened in Sicilia, standing in feare of him treated with this Ambaffadour PETER concerning certaine conditions of peace; wherein he renounced his right to Sicilia: and that in Italy in all decrees and proclamations that should be made, I v S T IN I AN should be first named, and that every yeere THEODATVS should fend him a crowne of gold, in token of subjection, and other things which PROCOPIVS fetteth downe at large. And PETER being departed with this meffage, feare fo much encreased in THEODATVS, that hee sent upon the way to recall the Ambassadour which he had sent with PETER, whose name was RVSTIcvs; and making him to fweare, that hee should not reueale his determination, vntill that he came into the presence of the Emperor, and saw whether he would accept of the first offer, or no; and if that he did not, that then he should offer the

uncle to Ata laricus procured the king-dome of Italy for him felfe.

. Theodatus

Theodatus of whole kingdome of Italie to Ivstinian, vpon condition, that he should give him some lands and possessions in Gracia or else where, where he might live. And of trais into the to that effect he wrote a notable letter to the Emperour, with his owne hand. hands of Iusti- When IV STINIAN had heard and understood the first offer made by THEO-DATVS, as he was a valorous prince, and of an hautie stomacke, he would not accept thereof: whereupon the Ambassadours discouered the second, wherein he offered him Italie, wherewith he was exceedingly glad, and wrote a gratious letter to THEODATVS, and therewith fent Ambassadors to establish the agreement, and to commaund BELISARIVS that making an end in Sicilia, he should passe ouer into Italie, and possesse himselfe of the forces thereof; which was not so concluded. For in the meane time that these Ambassadors went and came, THEODATVS his captaines had obtained a notable victorie, and had flaine MV.N-DVs. and his sonne MAURICIUS, which were IUSTINIANS captaines in Slauonia, and had defeated the Imperiallarmie. By reason of his victoric THE o-DATVS grew fo proud, that hee not onely refused to accomplish what he had offered, but faining himfelfe much displeased with some speeches vsed to him by IVSTINIANS Ambassadors, caused them to be apprehended. This also encreased his presumption : for atthat instant BELISARIVS was gone out of Sicilia into Africa to rescue SALOMON, whom he had lest there. For a Captaine called ESTORZAS, mutined with the greatest part of the armie, and making himselse Lord of the countrie, did put to death the Judges and gouernors thereof. But BELISARIVS arriving in Africa, tooke fuch order that within very few daies he ouercame them in battaile, and vied extreme punishment in the countrie : and fo leaving all in peace and quiet, returned into Italie, where he found the affaires of Italie, in fuch state as before faid. At this time (as PROCOPIVS writeth) there The funne gane was feene fo prodigious a fight in the funne, as the like hath neuer been heard of. for the space of which was, that the greatest part of one whole yeere the sunne gaue so little light. almost a whole that it was but equall with or little more then the light of the moone, the skiebeing cleere and without clowdes, or any other thing to shadow the same. And so without any apparant occasion, it was obscured all that time; which as it was afterwards deemed, was the occasion of the famine and want of graine, which generally enfued through all the world, and did prognosticate the warres and effu-

Theodatus refused to per-forme his pro-

IVSTINIAN seeing the inconstancie of THEODATYS aforesaid, and being greatly displeased with the death of his captaines in Dalmacia, and the imprisonment of his Ambassadours in Italie, with great wisedome and the minde and defire of a worthie prince, prouiding for both occasions, sent into Dalmacia and Slauonia for his generall, a valiant captaine whose name was Constantivs, who recouered much of that which was loft, and renewed the warre in that part. And as for the affaires of Italie, he commaunded BELISARIVS speedely to enterit, with the greatest power that he could. Who with his accustomed expedition and courage, left, in the fortreffes and firong holds of Sicilia, fuch garrifons as he thought good, and transported his armie into Italie at the streight of Messina, power into Italy. and began to feife on the places and townes neere the fea fide, without finding any armie to hinder him, and so he conquered all the coast to the cittie of Naples, wherein THEODATVS had put a great garrifon of the Gothes, which valiantly defended the same. Where passed many conslicts, and the besieged sent secretly to craue reliefe, but in vaine, for in the end they were taken by force of armes, and the souldiers had great spoile, and made great slaughter of the Gothes. But B B-

fion of blood, which afterwards followed in Italie.

LISARIVS the next day affembling his armie tooke fuch order with the fouldiers, that they fet all the inhabitants of the citie at libertie, and restored to them the greatest part of the goods which were taken from them, contenting themfelues with the spoile of their enemies onely, sparing the citizens; to which they protested the cause of their comming to have been to set them at libertie. Great was the feare which the taking of Naples strake into the Gothes; for they held it for impregnable. Wherefore all the principall men and captaines of them, The Gather diffeeing the small provision that THEODATVS made, and affuring them that BE- contented with LISARIVS would not continue long in Naples, before that he would come to the bule Vities Rome. one of them inuiting another, they met at a place neere vnto it, and after for their Kine. long debating and confultation upon the matter, they chose a wife and valiant captaine for their King, whose name was VITIGES, to the end that he should presently take order for the leuving of men of warre, and the defence of the countrie against Belisarivs. Which when Theodarvs understoode, who then was in Rome, deeming himselfe there to be in no securitie, he fled thence towards Rauenna, but he was ouertaken vpon the way by a captaine called Op-TARES, whom VITIGES fent to pursue him; and so was slaine by his commandement, when he had raingned three yeeres King of Italie. THEODATVS be-Theodatus ing dead. VITIGES called a counfell, and being of opinion that he had not flaine by the power sufficient to attend Brisarivs in Rome, neither to fally forth to fight ment of Vitiwith him in the fields, resolved therefore to goe to Rauenna, and there raising suf-gos. ficient forces, thence to returne to give him battaile. And he was the rather induced thereto for that he stood in doubt of the French, which had declared themfelues for the Emperour. And being thus resolued, he left for governour of Rome a captaine whose name was BADERES, with fower thousand mercinarie souldiers in garrison, and encouraging the citizens to defend themselues, he tooke his way towards Rauenna. Belisarivs leaving a good guarde and garrifon in Naples, marched with his armie towards Rome; where the inhabitants knowing of his comming, refolued that they would not stand upon their defence, but opened the portes and let him in, and they so agreed together, that the Gothes could not let it, but held it for their best course to be gone. And it so happened, that in one selfesame day, and at one instant, Be LIS AR IVS entred at one port, and Belistrius enthey fallied out at another. Who after that he had made a most excellent speech tred Tome. to the Senate, and encouraged them to embrace their libertie, prefently applied himselfe to repaire the walles and every where to fortifie the citie; bringing in victuals and prouision from all parts. For all the countrie round about was at commaundement. In the meane while, the new King VITIGES, who was neither idle, nor a coward, left nothing vndone that might encrease his power against Belishrivs. First he concluded a peace with the King of France, to the end that he should not be his aduersarie, and gaue him those lands which THEO. DORICVS held in France, thereby to be the better affured of his friendship: and fending for his ordinarie captaines and fouldiers which he vfually held in France. he commaunded them to come and iovne with him. And from Germanie and other parts he procured all the aide that he possibly could. Finally, he yield such meanes, that he raifed in Rauenna, and the marches thereof, one hundred and fiftie thousand men, of foote and horse; very good souldiers, and the most of them very wellarmed. With this armie he began to march towards Rome, wherein Vitiges leuied BELISARIVS was; but not with any fuch force as might suffice to take the field, 150000 men or to fight with fo great an enemie. Whereupon King VITIGES (nothing offenteand doubting borfe.

IVSTINIAN THE FIRST.

doubting of the victorie) grew so proud, that he not onely tooke care that BELL-SARIVS should not flie and abandon Italie, but by the way he cuerasked, whether Belis Arivs were fled or no: and reioyced infinitly when it wastold him that he fortified himselfe in Rome; and that it seemed, that he meant there to abide his comming. But the valorous Belisarivs was farre from that which VI-TIGES supposed, for he was resolued rather to die, then to abandon what he had gotten. But sceing his small power, in respect of his adversarie, hee sent to BLESSYS and CONSTANTIANYS, captaines which he had fent into the mar-

Belifarius.

ed towards

Rome against

A ftrange en-

ches, that they should presently returne to Rome with their troupes, where he was with his, and had fortified and furnished the citie; with a resolution to defend the same, and to stoppe the enemie, if he purposed to goe forwards, to recour what he had gotten in Campania, Pulia, and Calabria. But VITIGES held on his way directly towards Rome, imagining that it could not be held: and at his arriuall there happened fo great and so notable an accident, that although I know it will somewhat detaine me, yet I will describe it. Belisarivs at a bridge ouer Vitiges march the river Tiber, about a mile from Rome where VITIGEs should passe, had caused two very strong towers to bee builded, and placed therein a very good guard to entertaine the enemie; but VITIGE's being come with his armie, those which had the guarde at the bridge, one night were in such feare, that without any fight they presently gaue up the place; and the same night Virio Es began to passe ouer a great part of his armic. The next morning, BELISARIV's suspecting no fuch matter, fallied forth of Rome with a thousand choise horse, and came towards the bridge, to the end to chuse a fit place to lodge his people, for the defence and ftopping of the paffage; but being come somewhat necre vnto it, he suddenly met with VITIGES his men atarmes, who that night had paffed the river by the bridge: wherewith BELISARIVS was fo much despited (imagining that those which guarded the bridge had been lost) that with lesse discretion then he ought, hee began to fight with VITIGES his people; with so great rage and furie, that there followed a cruell fight, fo as VITIGES his vauntguard retired to the battailion, wherein he himselfe was; whence he charged with so great a troupe of Gothes, that Bellsarivs his companie was held for loft, and he in his owne person did wonders, slaying and wounding many of his enemies, and charged fo farre in amongst them, that all authors which write thereof affirme, that he discharged the part of an excellent man atarmes, but not of a good and discreet generall. For he put his person in such daunger, that he was held for dead, and so it was presently reported in Rome by some of his people which fled. He being in this diffresse, wherein he loft many of his friends and servants, being vnable any longer to maintaine the fight, his people began to retire a maine gallop, and he did the like, after that they had flaine a thousand of the Gothes. And many of VITIGES his horsemen pursued them, euen to the very gates of Rome, which were shut, and those which held the guard there, would not open them, for feare with them to let in the enemie. And for that with the noise and callings, they knew not B BLISARIVS by his voice, whom they accounted for dead, he hauing fought the greatest part of the day was driven to leane to the wall, and raunging his fouldiers into a quadron, made head against the enemie; and so continued fighting without any meate or fustenance, vntill it was night, in the which he did a valorous, though a daungerous and desperate exploit, which was, that he charged the Gothes with fuch furie, that they all beleeued (through the darkenesse of the night) that great troupes had fallied forth of the citie; and in this

doubt

doubt they began to retire towards their campe, Belisarivs fill charging them in the arrereguard, vntill that he found a free place, and then returned; and comming to the port, was knowne and received into the citie with his people, although by many, fewer in number then they fallied. And so he escaped this perillous conflict, with a great number of arrowes sticking in his horse and armour, and had some blowes and cuttes with the sword, but none of them touched his flesh, which was held for a wonder, by those which saw in how great daunger he had been.

The next day VITIGES arrived, and overranne the fields of Rome, and being vnable to beliege the citie round on every fide, by reason of the greatnes thereof, he dividing his armie, befieged it with fixe campes; and for a much as it would be too long to recite the conflicts which paffed in that fiege, they were fo great and strange, I will leave them all. Onely let this suffice to know, that it was one of the most terrible and bloudie sieges that euer was before any citie; for it Rometeribly continued one whole yeere and nine daies, and the first seauen monethes of that befreed and time, VITIGES and his Gothes, which were most valiant men, neuer ceased to the cothes, batter and affault the citie on all parts; where they did, and received much hurt. And BELISARIVS and his people neuer suffered their adversaries to rest, neither forbare to fallie forth and to fight with them in the fields, so as in skirmishes and sallies (writers affirme) that they slew about fortie thousand of the Gothes: in which time he did maruailes in armes, aswell for valour and hardinesse, as for Vitiges bestewisedome and policie, as an excellent captaine. The Emperour Ivstinian gedkome. was not carelesse of this siege, but sent reliefe and succor both of men an munition to Belisarivs; and so sent him certaine captaines and companies of horse and foote, with corne and other victuales, which without great trouble and daunger could not come to Rome. But this was not fo fufficient, but that in Rome they endured extreme famine. Yet that notwithstanding, he carried the matter so Rome hardly wise and valiantly, that VITIGES seeing himselfe and his armie tired, and weakned, fought to take a truce with him, which was concluded for three monethes: but it continued not fo long, for VITIGES through the cunning and treacherie of some, demaunded to have leave to come in, and to see the citie, within the truce milb Betime of the truce: whereupon the warres againe began. And Bells Arivs fent lifarius for commaundement to a captaine of his called IOHN, who was Marshall of his armie, that he should make cruell warres in the marches of Rauenna, whither he had sent him with aboue two thousand horse, and certaine other souldiers beforethe time of the truce, imagining that he harrying that quarter, VITIGES would rife from before Rome. And to the faid captaine sped so well in his enterprise, that he tooke the citie of Arimino, and other places. And VITIGES stan-Viligerrajed ding in feare to lose Rauenna, raised his siege from before Rome, and returned to his siege from before Rome. defend the rest. But in his retreit Bellsarivs charged him so soundly in the arrierguard, that he flew a great number of his people. And fo with shame, dishonor, and diminution of his power, VIII GES returned to the countrie of Rauenna, and very resolutely belieged the citie Arimino, wherein this captaine IOHN was. And BELISARIVS to avoide losse of time, leaving such forces as he could get, staied not any longer, but whilesthe went to Naples, and fortified that cities and then hee prefently tooke his way towards Rauenna, and so the warres were

renewed in divers parts of Italie. And to Belis Arivs came a captaine, fent Naties fent by by Ivstinian, whose name was Narses, who was an Eunuch, with a great the Emperour

number of fouldiers. This NARSES afterwards was Generall and an excellent to the aide of Belifarius.

which was befreged in Arimino; and with some losse of men constrained VIII-

A battaile : Belifarius vi-

> Belifarius took King Vitiges prisoner. Bel sarius lest Italy by the

riedhing Viti-ges and his wife prifoners to Constantinople.

> chofen by the Gathes for king of Italy, and after bim Araricus.

Totila made

Persia made warre in the Empire.

GES to raise his siege. Before and after which, in Gallia Cifalpina, now called Longbardy, Milan, Bergamo, Nouarra and other cities tooke part with Belisariys. whither he sent some Captaines, and there followed great conflicts and battailes. as well with the Gothes, as with THEODORICVS King of France, who came with a determination to haue made himselfe Lord of that countrie, while as they were busied in these warres. And BELISARIVS, after many great aduentures, fought a battaile with VITIGE s, who had leuied his whole power to that effect. And to vie breuitie, BELISARIVS getting the victorie, VITIGES flying to Reuenna, was therein encompassed and besieged; which siege lasted many daies, and there were many treaties of the one and the other fide, to farre foorth as to offer to make BELISARIVS king of Italy. But he continuing his siege, and the citie being taken, VITIGES was deliuered into his power; with whom in a manner all Italy came under his obedience. The affaires of Italy standing in this estate, by the commandement of Ivstinian, Belisarivs was to depart from Isaly (which he ought not to haue done) for the Emperour meant to employ his person in his Emperors com- warres against the Persians, leaving Italy in subjection: although that afterwards through his absence there followed great alterations and insurrections. For although that IOHN, and BESA, and VITALIS, all valiant and principal men, remained for Commanders and gouernors in his place; yet there was no comparison betweene them and him, for he was a most excellent and singular Captaine. The Belifarius car- great Captaine BELISARIVS departed then from Italy, carrying with him King VITIGES, and the Queene his wife, with many of his kindred, and other principall men of the Gothes, prisoners; and was received into Constantinople with exceeding honour, and much gladnes. And was so beloued and esteemed, that all men, both inhabitants and strangers, went to see him, as a wonder of the world: extolling his vertues and noble acts: which for the breuitie of my stile I am not able to expresse. This was also a great helpe thereto, in that he was a man of a most pleasing countenance, tall of stature, of an excellent constitution, noble of condition, gentle, courteous, and endued with many other heroicall vertues.

Within few daies after that BELISARIVS was gone out of Italy, some cities rdibaldus was role and rebelled, and chose YDIBALDVs for their King, a valorous captaine and of great authoritie amongst the Gothes, who began to grow mightie by meanes of the euill gouernment, and the powlings and extortion vsed by the Emperours Captaines in the countrie. And he leuying an armie (which vntill then he durft not doe) prefumed to fight with VITALIS, and ouerthrew him in battaile, and began to be feared by the Imperialists. But because that he slew a nephew of V 1-TIGES, one of his guard flew him, when he had raigned little more then one yeere. And in his place was chosen Araric's (whom Pavivs Diaconvs and I o R D A N v s called A R AR I v s) who was also staine within five moneths. And then they chose for their King ToTILA, who wrought the milerie and destruction of Rome, as I will presently tell you, so soone as we have declared how and vpon what occasion BELISARIVS was drawne out of Italy, by the Emperor Iv-STINIAN, which before wee spake not of: which passed in this manner. Cos-ROESKing of Persia, seeing that BELISARIVS (whom he principally feared) was busied in the warres of Italy, sought some occasions, whether fained, or iust, to make warre in the lands of the Empire; and entring some prouinces, tooke certaine Imperiall cities. Whereupon Ivstinian, who very circumfpectly proui-

ded for all parts, and besides the ordinarie garrisons, sent an armie into the East, and for Generall thereof a valiant gentleman named SITTAS, who in a battaile Captaines fint was ouerthrowne and flaine. And I vstinian fent another called B vcen, a ve- flass, Sittat, ry rare man at armes, and also a nephew of his called GERMANVS, and other Bucen, and Captaines and fouldiers; so as the warre was very cruell and bloudie betweene Germanus. Cosnon sand them, which I have not time to relate. But the Imperialists could not make sufficient resistance against the Persians and so Cosno is entred farre into the Empire; and leaving Mesopotamia on the right hand, marched towards The Personal Siria and Cilicia, and by affault tooke many noble cities. Wherefore I VSTINIAN tooke many ciholding no man sufficient for that warre but BELISARIVS, sent for him out of usin the Em-Italy, at what time as he had brought it all vnder subjection, excepting some few pire. Holds and Castles in Lombardy: wherein the Gothes had fortified themselves, B E-LISARIVS leaving Italy, and arriving at Constantinople, within few daies after was fent into the East, against Cosnors the mightic King of Persia: And with his Delifarius sent comming the Imperialists tooke heart, and hee remined the warre with such dif- remains. cretion and courage, that there was a present alteration in all things: and having obtained some victories against certaine of CosRoBs his Captaines (for he himselfe durst not fight with him)he recouered much of that which was vsurped. By reason whereof the affaires of the East went daily from well to better, through the presence and good government of BELLIS ARIVS. But in the meane season. which were two yeeres, the estate of Italy waxed worse: for as we faid, To TILA being made King of the Gothes, with fo great courage and in fo good order followed the warres, that having overthrowne and flaine some of the Emperour Iv-STINIANS Captaines, the Gothes wanne such reputation, that all the townes therein tooke part with them, excepting fuch as were held by garrifons. And To- Toilla his good TILA marched through all Italy, without finding any refiftance, and besieged the fucuspie in Italy great citie of Naples: and after many exploites both by sea and land, he tooke the fame, and many others in that quarter; and prospered so well in his enterprises, that it seemed that in short space he would (without speedie redresse) make himfelfe Lord of the whole. Which when Ivstinian perceived, grieuing more for Italy, then for all the rest, he commaunded BELISARIVS, that leaving the affaires of the East in the best order that he could, he should make his repaire vnto him; and he as a seruant accustomed to obey, did so. Leauing his people in the East, and comming to Constantinople, without any stay was sent by the Emperor into Italy; Belifarius by whither he went with fo great haste, that he could not leade with him aboue fiftie the Emperors thousand men: for it was thought that hee should have found sufficient forces commandethere; and was made to believe that the Emperours partie was not brought to fo into fially. great extremitie as it was. But he found all quite contrarie, in so much that it did partly seeme that his comming did more harme then good: for being wished for and expected by his friends, and feared by his enemies, feeing him come with fo small forces, the one dismaied, and the other tooke courage: and so in the beginning his enterprise was very doubtfull and tedious. And he putting himselfe into Rauenna, to the end to fortifie and defend the same, within few daies tooke such order, that notwithstanding that he could not keepe the field and beard the enemie(for that he was too mightic for him) yet the Gothes neuerthelesse did rather lose then get. Wherwith To TILA being much displeased, and desirous to make warres to the vttermost, assembled all his whole power, and sent Captaines and companies to Rauenna against BELISARIVS. And he with his whole armie went to Rome, which was fo flenderly prouided for, with either men or munition, that Rome.

remembring with how much trouble and extremitie he had defended that citie

Pelifarius paftion to relieue

in former time, and seeing that he had not forces to keepe the field, neither could but himselfe into it by land, was very heavie and forrowfull, and wrote an earnest letter to the Emperour Ivstinian, defiring him to fend him men and money; refoluing to put himselfe into Rome by sea from Rauenna, where he then was. And passing ouer into Dalmatia, and thence to Durasso, he found captain I o HN, whom I vs TINIAN had fent with a good armie, wherewith he was of opinion to be able to fight with Totila. But the reliefe of Rome hee deemed to be prouided for, with greater expedition then could be made with that armie: for it To TILA should take it he feared that all Italy would reuolt. Wherefore he resolued to goe thither by sea, and to put himselfe into Rome by the river Tiber: for the citie called the port, in the mouth of Tiber, held for the Emperour; and Offia on the other fide of the river held for the Gothes: and that Captaine I o HN should crosse the Sea with his armie, and comming into Calabria, should march by land, to vnset and relieue him. This being thus concluded, BELISARIVS failed, and arrived at the port in the mouth of Tiber; and having no sufficient power to march by land, by reason of Torilahis great armie, hee speedily rigged a great number of Barkes and Fregates, which hee fraughted with men and munition, and so pafuer Tiber, with fed up the riner. And notwithstanding that Torica had in the narrowest place of that river stopped his passage, with chaines, and a bridge, and two Castles at the ends of the bridge, guarded with a great number of fouldiers by this meanes to stop his passage; yet Belisarivs followed his course vp the river, and comming to the bridge, he and his people in such fort charged those which guarded the same, that they brake and scattered them and passed through; and Rome had been presently relieued, and enery thing had had good fuccesse, had there not befallen a strange mishap, which troubled and marred all. Belisarivs had left his wife and familie (which hee loued so much that in his other warres he ener carried her with him) in the port before named, at the entrie of the river, with a garrison which held the fort, and a good Captain whose name was Is A Az, with expresse commaundement that he should not fallie forth without the walles, but should keepe the fortresse. But Is A z hearing the newes of B B LISARIVS his victorie, and being defirous to doe some notable exploit of himselfe, sallied out of the towne with his garrison, to charge Torila his souldiers, which lay there against him: and although that at the first he disordred them and made them retire, yet in the end he was ouerthrowne by them and taken prifoner. Whereof BELISARIVS was prefently aduertifed by fome which fled, and the report went (without any author) that the towne was taken, and that his wife was in the enemies hands. Which when he vnderstood, he was so grieued and enraged that without expecting any further newes, he returned downe the riner, with a determination either to die, or to fet his wife at libertie; imagining that if hee sped well, he might speedily returne to the rescue of Rome. But being come to the port, he found the place at his denotion, and that his wife was well and at libertie, although the Captaine were loft. Whereupon hee tooke greater displeasure to see himselfe thus deluded, then at his first euil newes; and the same night after his arriuall at the port, through the extreme anger and griefe which he had taken, or some other vnknowne occasion, he was so extremely taken with a feuer, that he fell downe for dead, and his disease daily encreasing, he was oftentimes at the point of death. And in this meane time, which was for the space of

A great miffortune which befell Belifa.

many daies, Torila did so begirt the citie, that they within died absolutely of hunger, and did eate dogs, cats, rats, and other things which seemed impossible. And Torila in the end having the citie in his power, fent his Ambaffadours to Totila tooke IVSTINIAN, offeringto be his feruant and good friend, and to preferue and keepe the citie, if he would graunt him peace; if not, that then he would race it and make the most cruell warre that hee should bee able. Iv stinian answered that his Generall Belisarivs was in Italy, to whom hee referred all matters therein. TOTILA was so enraged with this answere, that he resolued to destroy Rome, and did so. For he made the Capitollto be burned, and the best part of all the citie, and the third part of the walles to be throwne downe, and commaunded the inhabitants to abandon the citie, vpon paine of death, and to goe to liue in fome other part. And so he left burned, desolate, and wast, that citie which had and destroyed commaunded the world, and which had been greatest, most frequented, and best Rome. peopled of all others. And marched against Iohn, which with the armiesent by Ivstinian, came through Calabria, towards Rome, who shewed himselfe so very a coward, that he durst not stay for him in the field, but put himselfe into Otrante. the furthest place of all Calabria. And so Totila without any resistance tooke all Calabria, Abruzzo and Lucania, which untill then held for the Emperour Ivs Ti-NIAN.

In this meanetime, Belisarivs recoursed his health, and performed one of Belisarius cathe most desperate enterprises, that ever he had done at any time before; which tredkome to was with those troupes which he had, to goe and put himselfe into Rome, with a the end to fordetermination to repaire, reedificand to defend the same; and so he did. And fendthe same, fo first sending his wife to Constantinople, he presently went to Rome (as desolate as it lay) and caused withall expedition, trenches to be digged, and rampers to be made, where the walles were throwne downe, and all the victualles that poffibly could be gotten, to be brought thither, and made a citie of that which lay wast. And through the fame hereof, many citizens, that could get to him; for the law of their countrie came, and did put themselves thereinto with him. Whereof so foone as Totila was advertised, by long journeiss without any intermission. he returned thither againe, affuring himselfe presently to enter it and therein to take BELISARIVS: but BELISARIVS fo valiantly defended the fame, that to Totila befirged his great loffe, Totila was driven to raife his fiege. Whereby it may be imagined, how well he would have defended it before that it was ruinated, and he failus, repaired it with new ports and rampiers. And in the meane feafon, captaine IOHN in Calabria and Pulia gathered the citizens of Rome together and fent them thither, in whose citie BELISARIVS remained; and having fortified it, and left a good garrison therein, with an excellent gouernour called Conon; he went to joyne with Iohn, and other captaines, to goe in quest of Totila, and many things passed too long to be recited. But the King of Persia againe making warres in the East; Ivstinian determined to send Belisarivsthither, al- Belisarius though that afterwards he went not, for peace was concluded betweene them. vvas fint for Vpon this occasion Belisarivs againe went out of Italy, although not with out of Italy. lo great good fortune, and victories, as at the first, yet not with no diffrace, neither with any leffe honor, for he neuer failed in any thing, to doe what behoued him, or what he was able. And so in summe went to Constantinople, where he remained all the rest of his lifetime. And after he had lived there certaine yeeres, A G ATHIVS writeth, that the Hunnes came downe into Thracia, euen very neere to Constantinople, robbing and spoiling the countrie. And BELISARIV's being

and tooke

Navles came

generall into

Italy against

and Totila.

was flaine.

Gothes.

Tosila.

nowold, was sent against them, and ouerthrew them in battaile; and had not Iv-STINIAN fent for him to returne, he had wholy destroyed them. Within few daies afterthat Belisarivs was departed out of Isaly, Torila returned to Totilabesseed Rome, and againe besieged it, and after long time and great extremities and famine endured by the besieged, through the negligence of IOHN which should have relieued it, and the treason of some others. The fierce barbarian againe tooke it. but the taking of it at this time was quite contrarie to the last: for now he did not any harme, but fought to repaire and repeople it, and gaue great gifts, priviledges, and exemptions to the inhabitants, to the end they should returne to dwell therein. And afterwards tooke many other places, and passed ouer into Sicilia: and for that he could not easily make a conquest thereof, he left foure captaines with many men of warre therein, and returned into Italy. And if NARSES 2 captaine whom Ivstinian fent, had not come thither, he had within short space made himselfe absolute Lord of the whole land. This NARSES Wasa famous captaine, valiant, and of great experience, and very primate with the Emperor Ivstinian; and therefore rich, and of great authoritie; who came into Italy with a great armie, amassed together of fundrie nations, as Hunnes, Heruli, and other warlike people. Amongst which there came to his service, a people called Longobardi, whichthen dwelled in Hungarie; and he marched by land along all the coast of the Adriaticque sea, now called the gulfe of Venice, vntill he came to Ranenna; notwithstanding that at his entrie into Italy, he had some encounters and conflicts with some of Totilahis captaines, where came to joyne with him some of those captaines and companies, which BELISARIVS had left. And staying but few daies in Ranenna, in very good order he tooke the field with his armie, directing his course for Rome. But Totila who was not any A battaile bewaya coward, attended his comming upon the way; and prefenting him battweene Narfes taile, they fought, and in the fight TortLA was flaine, and his people scattered wherein Totila and ouerthrowne. Which victorie was the occasion that N ARSES casily reconquered all Italy: torafter this fight, he held on his iourney and befieged Rome. And notwith standing that the Gothes which Torila left there in garrison, did desend it well, yet NARSES tooke it by affault, with great losse of the desendants. And departing from thence, he tooke all the townes and cities round about. After the death of ToTILA, the Gothes made a great man amongst them Teyas'made King of the whose name was TEYAS, their King, who tooke all Totlla his treasure which lay in Paula; and fought to get men and aide against NARSES, and sent to entreate reliefe of the French, which would not intermeddle in that warre. But TEYAS seeing that NARSES tooke cities and townes, without finding any man to fight with him, departed out of Lombardie with all the power that hee could make, and marched towards Campania, where NARSES flaied for him; and they both lodged their armies vpon a river fide, where after some notable A most cruell skirmishes, they came to a battaile, which was one of the most cruell that had battalle phece-been fought in all that warre. For historians report wonders wrought by this TEYAS, King of the Gothes in his owne persons but in the end being ouer borne by NARSES his people, he was by them flaine, iust at twelde of the clockeat noone, at which time he had fought about fixe howers, and yet not withflanding

his death, the battaile ceased not, vntill that the darke night parted them, without

apparance of any victorie of either fide: and repoling themselues so well as they

could that night, the next morning the Gothes in despaire, and the Imperialists

despited, to see that a people without a captaine should so desend themselues, re-

turned againe to fight, without any ceasing; and the Gothes taking the benefit of the side of an hill, defended themselves. But in the end towards night they sent their Ambassadors vnto NARSES, offering to render all that they held in Italy, conditionally that he should give them leave to live in it, without any armour or weapons. Which request NARSES graunted, for that he would not fight with a desperate kinde of people, and for the great hurt which his armie had alreadie receined, and so they delivered what they possessed, and some of them continued in Italy, subject to the inhabitants, in such manner that within short space the name of the Gothes was wholy extinct, rooted out and forgotten, although not presently after the victorie aforesaid: for some captaines and companies which remained in Gallia Cifalpina, now called Lambardy, and in the province of Traspatant, dana, now Piemount began to fortifie; and they crauing, and fuccours com- Piemont, ming out of France, and Burgundy, the warre was renewed, which lasted well neere one whole yeere, and therein passed great battailes and slaughters : but in the end NARSES obtained both the field and the victorie, and was absolute commaunder of all Italy. And it pleased God to make him the instrument to rooteout, and to extinguish the name of the Gothes and Ostrogothes in Italy, Authin tree eighteene yeeres after the beginning of this warre, and threefcore and twelve, tabo fibit war after that THEODORICVS first entred and made himselse Lord of that coun. in a particular trey. But to the contrarie, the Visogothes in Spaine grew daily more mightic, and the name of the Alanes and Sucuians vanished and was extinct, and the Gothes Narses draue onely remained. At that time raigned ATHANAGILDYS in great prosperitie the Gother out in Spaine, and ruled that kingdome the space of two and twentie yeeres. These enterprises being ended, NARS BS applied himselfe to the vttermost of his power to the reedifying of Rome: and forasimuch as it was extremely ruinated and lav waste, and many of the citizens were absent, he caused the inhabitants to reduce themselves to one part thereof; and so he tooke the best order that he could, both for the government of the same, and of all Italy also. This N ARSES was a man of great judgement, a good christian, very zealous in religion, and desirous of the good of the common-wealth, and befides all this, was one of the most excellent captaines of the world. By reason whereof hee held the gouernment of Italy so long as the Emperour Ivstinian lived; who during all the time of these great warres, made his continuall abode in Constantinople, prouiding men and money for the warres in all parts; as well for those in Italy as in the East, where he had as daungerous warres against Cos Roes King of Persia.

There happened in the time of IVSTINIAN (besides the warres and conquests before specified, and many others, which for breuitie, and for that they were of no great importance, I omit) earthquakes, famine, and other great calamities. For in his raigne the times were to variable, and there happened The valour and fo strange accidents, as the like had neuer been. And hee (as I said in the be-prudence of the ginning) was an excellent prince, and exceedingly carefull for the warres, interprouiding captaines, fouldiers and money, without taxing or oppressing his fubiects, with incredible magnanimitie and libertie. By meanes whereof, hee preserved the Empire of the East, and reconquered the provinces of Africa, wholy subuerting and expelling the Vandales out of those countries: and did the like by the Gothes in Italie. And concerning his government in time of peace, hee was no leffe carefull; so as it feemed as though that hee had never applied himselfe to any thing else: for as the lawes and statutes made by other Infinian a-Emperours his predecessors, were so many, that a man could hardly reade them; bringed laves,

Codix Lufti-

Empire.

Iustinian died in the yeere

ç68.

and so variable and dissonant, that it seemed that many of them did contradict the one the other; he reduced them alto agreement and breuitie; drawing out of them that onely which was necessarie, and made other new. And in this manner hee abridged all the lawes of the auncient Magistrates, Judges and Lawvers. which contained about two thousand bookes, and reduced them to fiftie, and compiled the fower bookes of the influtions, commonly called Inflituta. And the lawes and decrees of all the Emperours and CESARS, which were difperfed abroade in very many bookes; hee reduced to twelue; called Ivsri-NIANS booke. And hee made another booke intituled the volume, wherein hee included three of those twelve bookes aforesaid. To bring these things to effect, hee held about him great learned men, but the principall ministers and authors thereof were, IOHN PATRICIVS, and THEOPHITYS, and DORO-THEVS, but chiefly TRIBUNIANUS; all fingular Lawyers and Philosophers. Besides all this, IVSTINIAN was very curious in architecture, and builded many great and sumptuous edifices. But hee was taxed with this vice, that hee willingly gaue eare, and was a friend to backe-biters and fuch as spake ill of others, and was very reuengfull against such as any way offended him. He was also noted of ingradice, and couctouines, and that by all waies and meanes he fought to enterease his rents, and his treasure; but he afterwards spent it all franckly and liberally in the warres, and voon his fouldiers.

Being now very old and having no sonne that might succeede him, hee chose Infinian made his nephew Ivstin, for his companion in the Empire; which Ivstin, was his daughters fonne. They write of him, that in his old age, hee was infected Iuftin, bis comwith the herefie of those, which beleeved, that the lesh and bodie of CHRIST was impassible. Which herefie is to bee supposed proceeded through want of indgement, whereof he was bereaued fome daies before he died. Finally, after so many noble acts and many others, which for breuitie cannot be expressed,

the good Emperour Ivstinian being aboue fowerfcore veeres old, left this for a better life, when hee had raigned nine and thirtie yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord, five hundred fixtie and eight, and was greatly lamented and deplored through all

the whole Empire.



### O F THE SECOND OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGUMENT.

MP on the death of Iustinian, his daughters sonne Iustin tooke possession of the Empire ; who was farre unlike to his grandfather, both in condition, and in his vigilant care for the gouernment: for he left the administration thereof to his wife Sophia. He had warres with the Persians, but they were soone ended, and he particularly applied himselfe to the affaires of Italy, which for the Empire was governed by Narfes: for Instin in the East gave himselfe to pleasure and sensualitie. This Narses having to his great gloric performed many worthic enterprifes, was ill remarded by Instin, and his wife Sophia: but the injuries done unto him were the occasion of so great euils, that poore Italy shall ever have cause to be sorrie for them. For Narses calling Alboinus King of the Longobards into Italy and afterwards desiring to have staied them (when he could not) was the occasion of great miscrie: for they neade themselves Lords of the greatest part thereof, and possessed the same about two hundred yeeres. In time of which warre sustin died of the gowt, when he had raigned eleuen yeeres.



T was fo hard a matter to abbreviate, and in order to relate, the accidents happened in the time of the Emperour IvsTINIAN; and I was fo much troubled therewith, they were fo many and fo notable, that I doe not onely feele my felfe eafed of that burthen, and doe likewife rejoyce in that I have brought that work to an end, but am also of opinion that from hencefoorth I shall

be leffe troubled: And although I be in some daunger to be deceined therein, ne-

for Emperor.

nertheleffe I reioyce in this hope; wherein(with the grace of God)I will proceed. IVSTINIAN being dead, his daughters fonne the fecond Ivstin, without any difficultie obtained the Empire: for (as wee haue faid) his grandfather in his life time made him his companion, and proclaimed him his successor; his mother (as we faid) was Ivstinians daughter. His father was a very noble man in the Sophia wife to the Emperor

Justin.

VV arre and Persians.

beace with the

uernment of Longinus fent to governe fialy.

countrie of Slauonia; and hee himselfe was of a quicke and a good wit, and both apt and sufficient for any thing; but ill conditioned and vnworthie of the Empire, and proued farre valike his grandfather. For as PAVLVS DIACONVS writeth, he became couetous and tyrannous, a robber and a despiser of the poore, and aboue all, was retchlesse and negligent in matters of instice and government; and thereof left all the charge and care to his wife the Emperesse, whose name was SOPHIA, whose wit was incapable thereof, neither had she conditions or vertues deseruing the same. At his first comming to the Empire, this SOPHIA to win the loue and good will of the people, counfelled I v s T I N, out of his Exchequer, to pay the debts of fuch poore men as were imprisoned for debt, and were vnable to make satisfaction without their vndoing. And he did so: wherefore in the beginning of his raigne he was commonly well beloued. There also happened war Hormifda king betweene him and Hormis DaKing of Persia, who through the death of Cos-ROES succeeded in that kingdome: whither was sent a Nobleman called MAR-TIN for Generall, and there passed great matters, but principally a cruel and bloudie battaile, wherein the Imperialifts preuailed; and finally they returned to treate of peace; and that was confirmed, which was made in the time of the Emperour IVSTINIAN. And so the East remained in peace, and IVSTIN passed his time without care in pleasure, giuing himselse ouer to vice and sensualitie. So that of him there is no notable matter to be written, but of the affaires of Italy, which happened in this manner following. In the fourth yeere (as some write) of the raigne of the Emperour IVSTIN, and the tenth or twelfth of NARSES his gouernment of Italy, after the great victorie through his wifedom & policie by him obtained therein against the Gothes; some malicious men enuying his great honour and dignitie, and the great riches which he had gotten in former warres, reported and wrote to I v s TIN much euill of N ARSE stand as in Court (as is vsuall) there wanted not some that also enuied him, and were glad thereof, so they found the fauour to be heard; and Ivstin through want of wit, and the Emperesse Sornia through light beleefe, were perswaded that what was told them of him was true. And so without respect or regard of the daungers and troubles wherewith he had conquered Italy, they refolued to depose him from his government, and to fend him a fucceffor, which was one of the greatest indignities that could be done him. And it pleased God to permit so great an ingratitude to be punished. For SOPHTAWas not content to embase NARSES by deprining him of his gouernment, but the also difgraced him in speeches, saying, that the would have him come to spinne wool amongst her women at Constantinople. And a princi-Nater depoted pall man called Long invs, was prefertly fent to take his place and to fucceed him. Which when NARSES vnderstood, his great heart could not endure so shamefull a disgrace, without extreme wrath and displeasure. Wherefore being no lesse griened with the words vsed by Sophia, then with what they had done; it is written that he faid; That, feeing that the meant to make him to fpinne, hee promifed to twift her fuch a web, as the should neuer be able to vntwine: which he well performed, as hereafter shall be faid. And he vnderstanding that I. ONG I NV3 Was arrived in Rauenna, durst not goe to Constantinople, but came from Rome

· (where

(where he then lived) to Naples, where he was fo much beloved and honored, that he held himselfe to be there in securitie. And from thence as a man disgraced and in despaire, he by often letters and otherwise, sollicited King ALBOINVS King of the Longobards, who was his friend, and had sent men to aide him in his warre against the Gothes, and at that time made his resiance in Hungarie, that he should come into Italy, and make himselfe Lord thereof; and that hee would affist him and direct him in what hee had to doe in that conquest. And ALBOINVS afterwards followed his direction. These Longobardi, as some say, were so called, for that they ware long beards. Their originall and the place of their birth (as PAV-LVS DIACONVS Writeth of them) was in an Iland in the Germane fea, then cal- what people led Scandinauia, from whence they being many, and accounting their countrie they vvere. too little for them (as many other Northerly nations had done) with two Captaines, the one called Ay on and the other THATON, they left their countrie, and went to feeke some place wherein they might inhabite, either by peace or warre. And these Captaines being dead, they chose one AGELMOND for their King, and afterwards had other Kings, and divers warres at fundrie times with variable fuccesse, against the Gothes, the Vandales, and other nations; vntill that after many veeres they became Lords of Hungarie; from whence their King A 1-BOINVS fent men of warre (as wee faid) to the aide of NARSES against the Gothes; whereof grew the occasion that he called him into Italy, to the end that he should make himselfe Lord thereof; and he resolued to goe thither, as well for the proffer made to him by NARSES, as for that hee had heard of the fruitfulnes of that foile, not onely by common report, but also by the particular relation, made by those whom hee had fent to serue NARSES in those warres. Whilest that he mustred up his fouldiers, and made such preparation as for so great an enterprise was requisite, Longin vs the new Captaine and gouernour of Italy. established a new forme and order of gouernment, which continued a long time after: which was, that comming into Italy he tooke the name and title of Exarch. Exarchus the which is as much to fay, as Generall or supreme gouernour. And resting in Rauen-preme gouerna, without any care to fee Rome, in enery citie of Italy he placed a gouernour cal-nour. led Dux : whereof (as I imagine) for ang the beginning of the title and dignitie of a Duke, which now is vied through all the world. And so each of them gouerned of Dukes. a citie; and not as in former time, when every province had some principall man of great authoritie for their particular Captaine or gouernour. And in Rome for the greater honour was placed a gouernour called Præses, who was (as we say) a Prefident or Lord Deputie. And so the authority of the Senate, and dignitie of the Confuls, was wholy loft and extinct, so as they were neuer after in that manner as in ancient time: for NARSES and his companion BASILIVS were the last Con-The last Rofuls. This forme of gouernment being established, and ALEOIN'VS king of the Longobards being in a readines to take his journey towards Italy, it followed that Pope I o HN the third, with the generall confent of all the Romane people, which infinitely loued N ARSES, went from Rome to Naples, where he then was, and perfwading him to returne to Rome, prevailed so much that he brought him with him, where he was received with great loue and gladnes, they pretending to protect him, and to keepe him there amongst them. Whereupon NARSES repented that ever he had called ALBOINVs, and againe wrote to him, to take no care to come into Italy, alleaging many difficulties. But as A L B O I N V s Was refolued, and knew the small force that was in Italy, with the gouernment of Longinvs, and the little discretion and care of the Emperor Ivs Tin, he would not be disswaded

IVSTIN THE SECOND.

The death of Narles.

from his determination, but haftened his comming. Before which N ARSES died in Rome, where he left great treasure hidden, which afterwards was found; and his bodie was carried to Constantinople. And at the same time died Pope I o HN which brought him from Naples.

King ALBOINVS departing with a great armie of Longobards from Hungary, to gether with a great number of Saxons and other nations which hee had leuied, and were ioyned with him, through the defire they had to dwell in Italy, all which might amount to the number of two hundred thousand men, with their wives, children, and heards of cattell, and moveable goods, fuch as they could carrie, would not abandon Hungarie, but left the Hunnes, which lived in that countrie, and were the remainder of the great armie of the fierce King ATTILA (of whom heretofore we have made much mention) to guard it. Which Hunnes, as the Longobards prospered well in Italy, remained owners and possessors of the land and the countrie, which after their name is now called Hungary, which before then was called Pannonia, as some say; yet some others say (as is before noted)that a certaine people called Hungri, came from the frozen fea, and together called Hunga with them the Hunnes dwelt in Pannonia, and so after these two nations it was called Hungarie. But how soeuer it was, vntill this day it is so called, and the succesfors of the Hunnes haue possessed it, and valiantly defended the same against the Infidels, vntill our time, that for our finnes SOLIMAN the king of the Turks took

the greatest part thereof.

The comming of Alboinus and the Lombards into Jtaly.

Pannonia

wwherefore

ALBOINVS passing with his armie and people towards Italy, came into that prouince which now is called Frieli, wherein he tooke many cities, and vied no fmall crueltie, and much more would have done, if hee had not been somewhat pacified by the prayers and entreaties of PAVI the Patriarch of Aquileia, and of FELIX Bishop of Trenigi. But being desirous to enter further into Italy, and to leave that to fafe keeping which he had gotten, he left therein for governour and to guard the passages into those countries, a valiant Captaine which was his nephew called S 18 V L P H V s, and he followed his journey: and God permitted that he found small resistance in Italy, for it was then afflicted with both famine and pestilence. By reason whereof Longinos, the gouernour and Exarch before named, was not of power to leuie any fufficient armie to fight with A LBOINVS. and therefore held himselfe in Rauenna, where he drew together the best men and the greatest number that he was able, with a determination to make frontier wars by fortifying the townes, and putting good garrifons in them; which he principally did in Cefarea, which at that time was a very noble citie, neere to Ranenna, whither he drew the greatest number of souldiers that he could possible leuie, and fortified Patania, and therein put a garrifon, which is now called Padoia, and is vnder the gouernment of the Venetians. The like he did by Cremona and Mantua, and in other the strongest cities, imagining that if he could hold those countrics, ALBOINVS would passe no further; and if he did, he should be greatly endammaged by them in his Arrereguard. Which was no ill deuice, if in that prouince there had been any armie to haue made head against ALBOINVS and his forces in the field. But I. o N G I N O s had neither heart nor power to doe fo, and ALBOINVS holding it for a long piece of worker batter and affault all those townes, tooke another course, withdrawing himselse from them, for that hee would not be viged and constrained to stay before any of these townes: but went and affaulted Ferona and Ficenza, wherein were no garrifons, which with others yeelded without refistance. From whence passing ouer the river Adda, he tooke his way towards Milan, where the citizens (induced thereto by the perswasion albainus tooke of Honorary stheir Bishop) gaue up the citie, to the end to avoide slaughter the stores. and to be facked. After this, other places did the like: for the famine was fo great, and so generall, that without any force the townes yeelded, being vnable to victuall themselves for a siege; excepting those places which were victualled by Longinos, amongst which in that quarter were Paula and Brifelli, now called Vercelli, which by the faid Longinos were fufficiently furnished with all things needfull. And ALBOINVs determined to befiege it, having been now fixe moneths in Italy, and befieged Pania: but it fo well defended it felfe, that the fiege continued three yeeres long. In the beginning of which time, perceiping that it would be a long fiege, he remaining before it with fuch part of his armie as hee thought sufficient sent the rest to make warre in other parts of Italy, and to make a conquest thereof: and they all sped as hee desired, for they tooke many townes, cities and castles in Italy. And the President or gouernour of Rome scaring to bee The warres befieged, and feeing the great scarcitie and famine which was in the citie, sent to bards in Italy. defire reliefe of men and victuals to the Emperor Iv s TIN, who commaunded a great quantitie of wheate to be brought from Africa to Rome, and some souldiers also. Wherewith the citie was well relieued, and the Longobards at that time came not thither, neither durft they inuade Rauenna, nor the cities thereunto: for they were all very well fortified and garrifonned by Longinos. But in other places they made themselves Lords of great part of Italy, in so much that between Bologna and Milan there were few places of strength, but within three yeeres war were brought under their subjection: and so they afterwards possessed all that prouince aboue two hundred yeeres, with variable fortune, as hereafter wee will touch; and by them it was called Lombardy, and is so still untill this day. About the Gallia cisaloiend of this time ALBOINVS tooke Pania, and feeing himselfe mightie, he tooke na called Lomhis way towards Verena, whither he had caused his wife the Queene Rosamy ND Longobardia to come, with his treasure and wardrobe; and there holding his Court hee gaue himselfe to feasting and banketting, and was slaine by treason, by the order and consent of his wife, whose father he had slaine, and in a banquet gaue her to drink The death of in her fathers skull: for reuenge whereof, the worthely and justly complotted his Albeitus. death.

ALBOINVS dying in this manner, after many bickerings and fights, the Lon-Paulus Diacogobards chose for their King a great man of bloud and of worth amongst them, "" lib. 2. 6.24called CLEPHIS, or CLEVE, who produed a most cruell Prince; and renewing clephis King of the warres, committed great cruelties in those cities which held of the Empire, the Lombards. in the province of Venetia: for in those daies the citie of Venice, which in the time of ATTILA began to be inhabited, was greatly increased by those which (to escape The prosperitie the cruelty of the Lombards) went to dwel in those Ilands, and were now of force of Venice. able to defend themselues; and this citie began to be famous & of great account, and hath continued and increased untill this day: so as it is now one of the most noble and excellent cities in the world. At this time the Emperour IvsTIN who lined viciously, carelesse & negligent, in Constantinople was taken with so grieuous The death of paine of the gowt in his feete, that hee died thereof. And some daies before his the Emperour death, by the consent of his wife SOPHIA, by whom he was wholy ruled (for that Iulin. he had no sonne)he made an excellent Nobleman C & s AR, whose name was Ti-BERIVS, and having exhorted him very effectually to yeeld obedience vnto So-PHIA, having swaied the Imperial scepter 11. yeeres, he died, in the yeere of our Anno Dom. Lord 579: and after some, 576.

THE

Patania. Padeita.



## THE SECOND OF

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND ONE ROMANE EMPEROR.





Vch were the conditions and behauiour of the Emperour IvsTIN in his life time, that when he was dead no man lamented or mourned for him, except his wife SOPHIA, who through her husbands infufficiencie gouerned and commanded al, and had a conceit to have continued therein; meaning to have married with TIEERIVS, who prefently upon the death of I vs TIN was created and crowned Emperor. But he, as he was a vertuous man, iust, pitifull,

The vertues of Tiberius.

gentle, charitable, and endued with fuch other vertues, as in a good and Christian Emperor were requifite, would not have her to wife; all whole conditions hee knew to be quite contrarie thereto; and with whom even in the life time of Iv-STIN(as some write) he was at some controuersie. Time iv safte sthat he was created C m s AR, made distribution of much of the Imperial treasure to the poore; and afterwards at his coronation named for Emperesse a great Ladie whose name was ANASTASIA, with whom hee was secretly married. Whereupon Sophia at the same feast practifed by treason to have had him slaine, with a determination to have made one Ivstinian, another of Ivstins nephewes, Emperor. But it pleased God that the good TIBERTY's escaped this treason, and others also which the same SOPHIA complotted; and his coronation was held with great folemnitie, and the treacherie of Sophia being discouered (the cra-

Sophia.

ming mercie) he pardoned both her and I v s T I N I A N. But many daies passed not before that the attempted the like, in a house of pleasure whither TIBERIVS went for his recreation. At this time he caused her to be apprehended, and despoiled of all her riches. But as he was milde and pitifull, he pardoned her her life, and gaue her maintenance, and made her to be ferued with great reuerence and honour; but he tooke from her all her old fernants, and placing others to ferue her by his appointment; he againe pardoned I vs TINIAN: for he knew that he was induced to all that he did by S O PHIA. And he was afterwards greatly beloued by

TIBERIVS, and served him faithfully, as recounteth PAVLVS DIACONVS.

These were the private and domesticall accidents which in the beginning befell TIBERIVS. In the generall estate of the Empire, he euer maintained instice. and raigned valorously. And Africa, and all the provinces which the Empire held in Alia and in Europe peaceably obeyed him. But the warres in Italy against the Lombards, and in the East against the Persians, did put him to much care and trouble. In the warres of Perlia he had good fuccesse, whereof we will first speake briefly. For so soone as TIBERIVS came to the Empire, he sent his Ambassadors VVarres with to King Horm 13 DA, to confirme with him the peace in such manner as his pre-decessors held the same before him. But Horm Ma. who saw himselfe rich and Horm Ma. mightie would not accept thereof, but made warre vpon the frontiers of the Empire. And TIBERIVS speedily sent a mightie armie against him : but at that time they fought not, for there was a truce taken for a time, which being expired, a cruell warre began chiefly in the kingdome of Armenia, where the Romane Generall and armie came to a battaile with HORMISDA; which fight was very Abattaile cruell and of long continuance. Neuerthelesse the Romanes had the victorie, and person the HORMISD A faued himselfe by flight; and therein were taken the greatest and ri- questbrowne. cheft spoiles and booties that cuer were gotten from the Persians; all which were giuen to the men of warre, excepting the Kings treasure, and the vessels of gold and filuer for his feruice, which (PAVLVS DIACONVS faith) was carried to TI-BERIVS in Constantinople upon twentie Elephants, which had no other loding. with a great number of priloners, to which the Emperor commaunded rich and gallant apparell to be given, and them to be fet at libertie, to returne to their countrie. And in the meane time the Imperial armic entred the countries fubicct to the Persians, and burning and spoiling the same returned with victorie. But within small time after, HORMISDA leuied the greatest forces that he was able, and made a very valiant and expert man of warre Generall thereof: for by reason of his last ouerthrow he made a law, that the Kings of the Persians should never be present in any battaile, and so he againe remined and renewed the warre against the Empire, to the end to recouerhis lost honor. Against whom the Emperor sent for a new Generall, a valiant and wife Earle named MAVR TO E, who afterwards was Emperor: who with the like good fortune fought to fight with the Persians; Maurice made and leuying infinite numbers of fouldiers of either fide, they fought a great part gainfithe Perof the day, witill that after many thousands of the one and other side were slaine, sans. the victorie shewed it selfe to be of MAVRICE his side; and he recovered certaine places, and conquered others anew from the Persians: so that HORMISDA Was Abattaile constrained of necessitie to conclude some peace or truce with the Emperour. viberin Man-And Mavric a came with victorie to Constantinople, where he was solemnely re-victorie, ceined by TIBERIVS, who married him to his owne daughter, in reward of fo noble a victorie.

Whileft these things passed in the East, the affaires of Italy prospered not so well:

The state of

of the Lom-bards.

well; for CLEPHIS the new King of the Lombards made cruell warres against lialy against those townes and countries which held of the Empire, and all things happened fo according to his defire, that he tooke many cities : and being defirous to repose himselfe for a while, he sent his Captaines and their companies towards Rome; and they tooke al the cities in the marches thereof, and Rome it felfe was befieved by them, and was in great daunger to have been entred by force. So that (as the authors affirme) if CLEPHIS had lived but a little while longer, he had made himselfe Lord of Rome and Rauenna, which were the two eyes and fortresses of al Italy. But his purposes were made frustrate by death, as other Kings and captaines haue been, which have been as great and greater then ever was he; which his death was practifed by the treason of his owne people. After his decease the Lombards would neither chuse, nor have any more Kings at that time: but there arose thirtie principall men, or to speake more properly, thirtie tyrants, which inuested themselves in thirtie of the best townes which they held in Italy. And so every of them gouerned his towne and the territorie thereof. And each of them likewife made warres a part by himselfe, sometimes the one aiding and assisting the other against the Empire. And as the Emperour TIBERIVS was bussed in making prouision for his warres against the Persians, and did not sufficiently prouide for Italy, these Captaines of the Lombards had oportunitie to extend their power therein. and took many other cities to farre as to come before Rome and Naples. In which warre they committed fuch cruelties, robberies and infolencies, as the like had neuer been seene. So that from Rome to the Eastwards there remained little more fubicct to the Empire then the kingdome of Naples, and the citie of Rome, with fome townes in the marches therof; and the citie of Naples fell also into the hands of the Lombards: but we cannot certainly fay, whether at this time, or afterwards. Yet Rauenna held for the Empire, and some other strong holds neere thereunto. which through the wisedome and foresight of Longinos were defended. And there also held for the Empire of either side of the river Po, Como, Cremona, Mantoa. Padoa, Bologna, and Vercelli; and the Lombards at this time had all the reft. And fo the warre was waged of either fide with great crueltie: for the Lombards as they were barbarous, and had not yet wel received the faith of Christ-robbed and spoiled all, as well facred as prophane, without any difference. Whereto befides what is alreadic faid, this was a great furtherance, that in the time of this hurly burly, TIBERIVS fell fo extremely ficke, that hee could not applie himselfe to the gouernment of the Empire, and his infirmitie neuer left him vntill he died. Wherefore the Romanes seeing themselues oppressed by the Longobards, motioned a treatie of peace; and a truce was concluded betweene them for a certaine time. Which truce the Lombards graunted, for that the kings of France (wherein at that time raigned three brothers) being much grieued to fee the Lombards growne fo mightie in Italy, sent a great armie against them, which was alreadie entred Lombardie. And they also the more willingly graunted the truce, for that the Saxons, which untill then had aided them in their warres, had now left them and were re-

turned. TIBERIVS being ficke in Conflantinople (as we faid) as a good Emperour

desirous as well to prouide for the time to come, as he had done for the present

and past; nominated for C & SAR and his successor his sonne in law M AVRICE.

And afterwards leaving all the Empire entier and in peace, as hee inherited the

fame (the state of Italy onely except) in the seuenth yeere of his raigne (although

fome fay lesse) he died, in the yeere of our Lord fine hundred, fourescore and fines

and after some others, fine hundred, sourescore and nine. And his death was much

forrowed

The death of Tiberius. Anne Dom 585.er 589.

fortowed and lamented by all estates, for his great vertue and goodnes, and for that he was liberall and bountifull to all men.

### THE LIFE OF MAVRICI-VS, ONELY OF THAT NAME,

AND THREESCORE AND TWO ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.



He Empire being come to Mauricius, sonne in law to Tiberius, he shewed bimselfe to be of a very vile nature, and particularly suned in conetonsnes, notwithstanding that in martiall affaires he was very wife of politike. He sent captaines and men of warre into Italie against the Lombards, accordingly as Pope Pelagius hadrequested, with which after long warre in the end a truce was concluded, he afterwards brake the peace with the Persians, and the warre had this issue, that after many routes and onerthrowes equally given andreceived, of the one side and of the other; the new King of Persia, to suppresse a tyrant which rose against him, became

afriend to the Emperor of Constantinople. After which peace bending himselfe to the affaires of the West, he welded the estate with indifferent good fortune, through the valour and vertue of the Exarchi, which he sent into Italy : yet in this time God sent many plagues and scourges into the world, as inundations and overflowings of waters, famine, and Peftilence, which happened more in Rome then in any other country. Besides which enill, it became besieged by the Lombards, and . Maurice for the hatred which he hare to Gregorie (who then succeeding Pelagius, was Pope therein) would not relieve it, so as to abase the Pope, he was content to lose all Italy, which God afterwards seuerely punished. For his owne souldiers rebelling against him, made a prinate Collones, whose name was Phocas, Emperor, who comming towards Constantinople with an armie, made Maurice to flie, and he being unable to leuie such forces as might defend him, and being taken by the souldiers of the new tyrant, was brought backe to Constantinople, where having first some the

death of his wife and children, by the hands of an executioner, be had his bead firthen off, all which he endured with exceeding greatnes of minde when he had raisned twentie yeere's.



AVRICIVS peaceably obtained the Empire, by the death of his father in law TIBERIVS, whom he nothing refembled in his vermes, for he was both vicious and conetous; yet in the affaires of the warres he was very prouident and diligent, and as he was both valiant and politike in martiall actions, so he had, and chose singular captaines for the warres of his time; which were many very great and daungerous. Whereof great part happened at one

time, notwithstanding that they were in fundrie parts and prouinces. Wherefore to relate that with breuitie which I have collected, it is requifit that I write each accident a part: which I will performe in the bell manner I can, so that in the end of all, we may have to fooken, that the whole may be understood. And beginning with the affaires of Italy, I fay, that the truce made with the Lombards, was not of their part throughly observed, but that daily from one citie or other, there were robberies committed, and fome encounters and bickerings. Wherefore as Longinos was but of finall power, and the Romanes were in great feare to be besieged; Pope P & LAGIV s. the fecond wrote a letter from Mometo GR a-GORIE whom he had fent to Conflantinople, informing han of the flare of Italy, and of the great daunger and necessitie wherein it was, and gave him especiall charge to be an earnest suror to the Emperor, to send reliefe and men for the wars against the Lombards; which he procured with such efficacie, that the Emperor MAVAICE (notwithstanding that he was much troubled with the warres of Persia, whereof we will speake hereaster) provided a new Exarch and governor for Italy, who was a good fouldier and a wife man, called SMARAGDVS, with a good number of fouldiers; and fent for Long INOs to returne. SMARAGDYS came then by sea to Rauenna, and with him Saint GREGORIE. His comming for the fame and good report which was spred of him gaue greatioy and hope to the Imperialists in Italy; and he presently tooke order for martiall affaires. And foralmuch as necre vnto Rauenna, a valiant captaine of the Lombards called Fa-ROALDVS, held a citic called Class, and had made, and ftill did make, cruell warre against those of Ranenna; he determined first to vicall meanes to disposses him thereof, and to drive him from thence. And to this effect he fent to Doc TRVIA an Imperiall captaine and gouernor of the citie of Vercelli, that leaving a competent garrison in that citie he should come with his power to loyne with him and he making prouision of boates and barkes, purposed for his better securitie, to passe downe the river Po, to the end that being arrived at Aspenetico, which is at the mouth of the river, he might faile from thence by feato Rauenna. But Fax o-ALDVs had intelligence hereof, and with the greatest power also that he could make; likewise with barkes came to stoppe his passage downethe river, where they came to blowes, and Docravia by meanes of the aide which cameto him from Ranenna, had the victorie, and FEROALDY's was ouerthrowne and fled by water to Class, which the new Exarch SMARAGD vs in the meane time had befieged and battered, so that it was readie to have yeelded when FEROAL-D vs came; who for the present hindred the same, by encouraging and animating the befreged.

But so soone as they understood that he was ouerthrowne by the enemy and

MAVRICIVS.

camethither by flight, they resolued to yeeld, and did so. And SMARAGDVS entred the citie, where all the Lombards which were found therein, were put to the fword, and in like manner their gouernour FEROALDVS, in reuenge of the like cruelties committed by them.

This victorie obtained by SMARAGDYS, was so highly esteemed, that those of his partie gathering hart and courage, and their aduerfaries waxing fearfull, he tecourred some cities and holds, the greatest part whereof yeelded of themselues. Which the captaines of the Lombards considering, who after the death of CLEPHIS continued as tyrants and would not chuse them any King; they tefolued to chuse one whom they all should obey, and under whom they might live: for they were of opinion, that if they continued so divided, they should be all ouerthrowne and brought to confusion; as they alreadie began to be. And having resolued hereupon, they chose one of King CLEPHIS his sonnes, whose name was ANTHARIS, a young man of great spirit, and who had purchased grea- Antharis choter fame in the warres then any other man of his nation; and so was much spo- Longobards. ken of both among his friends and enemies. The name of a King, and so valiant, as was ANTHARIS, caused a great alteration in the estate; to whom all the captaines and gouernors contributed of their treasure, each of them giving him the one halfe of what they had, for the maintenance of the warres, and his new estate. The first enterprise that he vndertooke, was against Vercelli, and Doctav-LA the gouernor thereof, aswell for the late dishonor which he had done them. as for that, that citie at that time was of great importance, wherefore he belieged it both by water vpon the river Po with barkes, and by land with great forces which he had raifed; and scaled it in such manner, that notwithstanding that

to Rauenna; and ANTHARIS made great spoile in the citie, destroying the best part thereof, and raced the walles downe to the earth, fo as they were neuer after

repaired or made like as in former time they had been. ANTHARIS having obtained this victorie, determined to goe against FRAN-CILIONE, which the citie of Como held, and other fortreffes in the lake of Como, and had very gallantly defended the same for the space of seuenteene yeeres. But in the meane season motions were made of peace or truce, and either partie was glad to treate thereof. SMARAGDVS, for that he stood in seare of the King, who

DOCTRVIA did all that possibly he was able to doe, being out of hope to hold

the place, he came to a composition, and gaue it vp; and so came downe the river

was both young and valiant, and also for that hee imagined himselfe to have no fufficient power to make head against him, and the King being but newly come to his gouernment, holding not himselfe for throughly settled and confirmed, the better to establish himselfe therein, thought it best to conclude a peace, and to bring vnder some, to whom his election was nothing pleasing. All which laid together, gaue occasion that a truce was taken for a certaine time, although the A truce taken Lombards neuer truly observed the same. For that time al Italy remained in some with the Lam-

that which the Lombards held, and had vsurped; and in the meane time, to emoy

the peace in rest and prosperitie. But it followed not according to their expecta-

rest, and in the manner of peace 3 and S M A R A G D V S sent to Rome for Presect or bards. gouernour therof, a noble Knight borne in Constantinople, whose name was GEN- Germanus go-MANVS, with whom went S.GREGORIE, and they were received with greatioy Rome.

and folemnitie: for GREGORIE for his good life and conversation, was generally beloued and honoured. So as with their comming, and the good hope which was conceived of their new Exarch, they thought to have a hand in recovering al

Smaragdus

into Italy.

came Exarcb

tion: for God sent other persecutions, as you shall heare. But let ys leave Italy in this truce, and briefly speake of those warres which M AVRICE made by his captaines in the East against the Persians, which for numbers of men, and battailes and great conflicts were farre greater then those of Italy: for they were waged betweene two the most mightie Monarchs which then were in the world to wit,

nerall against the Perlians.

A battaile wherein Philippicus bad the vittorie.

The Shame full

Priscus made Generall aoainft the Perof Philippicus.

the King of Persia, and the Romane Emperour. MAYRICIVS then fent his armies, and for Generall of them, an excellent Philippicus Ge- Nobleman called PHILIPPICV s, to whom hee had married his fifter. Against whom K.Hormisp Abeing come, engroffed his armie, & made a great man called CARDARIGA his Generall. With whom, after some notable skirmithes and encounters, PHILIPPICVS came to a maine battaile, with power against power. which lasted about tenne houres, the one charging the other, it such manner that no aduantage could be perceived. But in the end PHILIPPICY sand his troupes gat the victorie, and flew a very great number of the Perfians, and took two thoufand prisoners, which he sent to the Emperor to Constantinople, and the rest escaped by flight, and with them their Generall CARDARIGA. PHILIPPICUS hauing obtained this notable victorie, marched forwards with his hofte, and fent a good Commaunder called HERACLIVS, with fome selected troupes, with direction to pierce so farre as he might into the countries of the Persians, he promifing to fecond him. And notwith franding that CARDARIGA was ouerthrowne, vet was he not therefore discouraged, neither omitted to vie all the meanes and diligence which to a good Generall did belong : and fo gathering together all fuch forces as he could, making thew that hee would reinforce his armie; with those small troupes which hee had, passing ouer certaine mountaines, in a very darke night he fet vpon PHILIPPICVS his Arrierguard, wherein the feare was so great, that PHILIPPICVS, as though he had not been victorious, shamefully fled all the whole night long, with no small losse and detriment to his people: in fo much that the Persians imagining their flight to have been fained (seeing how few they were) dared not therfore follow the chace: & fo refted vntil that the day light freed the one from feare, and shewed to the other the advantage that they had lost. But HERACLIVS whom PHILIPPICVS had fent before, followed his direction with better discretion, and greater diligence : for passing ouer the river Tigris, with the fame of the late victories, he took some cities, and did much hurt, and returned towards PHILIPPICVS very rich with the pray and the spoiles of victorie. This being past, and the Romane armie being gathered against ogether, the Emperour commanded PHILIPPIC vs, that leaving the armie with HBR A-CLIVS, he should make his repaire to him to Constantinople; and PHILIPPICVS accomplished his commandement. And in his place was fent a valorous and expert captaine called Parsevs, who being come to the armie, shewed himselfe so proud and hautie to the Captaines and men of warre, that they mutined against him, and he was generally so ill entreated by all men, that hee was driven to saue himselfe by flight, having received some such blowes and knockes with stones, that he was likely to have been flaine : and they amongst themselves chose (even against his will) GERMANVs for their General, who was a man of great account in the armie. But at that time MAVRICIVS was fo oppressed with the warres a gainst CAYANVS, and the Auares, and against the Slavons in Slavonia and in Misia, and in other provinces, whereof we will speake hereafter, that hee could not then punish so great an insolencie; and therefore so soone as he understood thereof the held it for most expedient to fend backe PHILIPPICV s, for their governor

and Generall, and that PRISCVS should returne. And besides PHILIPPICVS, hee Philippicus reand Generally and that PRISCVS Hound returner. And beneas PRIST PRICVS, the flored to bis also fent another Nobleman of great estimation, called ARISTORY LYS, to pa-thange. cifie the mutinie and rebellion of the armie, by entreatie, gifts, or otherwise in the best manner that he could, which he performed. And so PHILIPPICVS againe vndertooke his charge, and returned to warre against MARV ZAS a new Generall of the Persians; who with a greater armie then any of those before named, came against him. Which is an argument of the great wealth and power of the Kings of Persia, that being so oftentimes ouerthrowne, they still returned with as great force, and that alwaies when soeuer they would have peace, the Empire willingly graunted the same. And in the end the Emperors were well contented to defend

their confines against them, and held that also for a great matter.

These two great Captaines and armies came so neere together, that both parties defired to giue battaile, and they waged it in fuch manner, that it was one of the most cruell battailes in the world, and both the one and other partie fought therein with fuch obstinacie and stomacke, that it lasted the greatest part of the day, and the Persians were ouerthrowne; not for that they were either discouraged or ranne away, but for that they were almost all slaine. For in the Annales of Constantinople I finde written, that three thousand of them were taken prifoners, and two thousand escaped by flight, and that all the rest died fighting, and with them their Generall M ARVZAS; To as their camp was left to the Romanes, which found no man therein to make refistance. And so they passed one whole yeere in frontier warres, at the end whereof King Hormson commaunded a very great armie to be leuied. And PHILIPPICVS presuming on his former victories, made no doubt to give them battaile; and the Persians refused it not and so they fought neere to the citie Marticopolis; and therein was PHILIPPICY's and the Romanes ouerthrowne, to their great losse and confusion. For which the Emperour was very forrie, and prouided a new Generall for the East, and sent for PHILIPPICVS to come to Constantinople, with direction to leave the armie with HERACLIVS, of whom wee made late mention, vntill that another Generall should come, which was performed. And afterwards Romanus was sent, and the King of Persia sent another, whose name was BARAS. These two Generals being arrived with their new charges, either of them fought to winne honour against the other, and by divers devices they slew the one the others people, burned townes, and did the greatest harme every where that they could, vntill at last they drew neere the one to the other, and fought in a ranged battaile, wherein BARAS and the Persians were ouerthrowne, in the fields of Albania in Asia, which is a very great prouince in the East, bordring vpon Armenia. HORMISDA Was fo forrie for this loffe, imagining that it happened through the defect of his Generall, that thereby to diffrace him he fent him a woman's garment, and commaunded him presently to leave his government. Notwithstanding that he had set matters in very good order, and had gathered together his scattered armie. But hee stood in such feare of his King, that the best remedie that he could deuise, was to rebell against him; which hee might easily effect, for HORMISDA Was very cruell, and therfore hated by his subjects. And after this it ensued (taking occasion from the rebellion of BARAS) that VINDOIS, a man of great power (whose brother HORMISDAkept in prison) conspired against him, with many others, which for his crueltie and couetousnes extremely hated him : and they tooke him prisoner, and made his sonne Cos RoEs their King. But his other sonne, with his wife, they put to death, and pluckt out his eyes; and afterwards his owne sonne made fonne.

the Persians fled into the Empire.

Harmifda King him to be flaine : and fo ended the raigne and life of Honmisda. But the crueltie which the some ysed against his father, seemed so horrible and abominable. that he prefently fell into as great hatred and difliking of al men, as his father was in his life time; in so much that going to fight with BARAS, who as I said rebelled the greatest part of the men of warre which he led for sooke him, and went ouer to BARAS. So as CosRoBs feeing himselfe abandoned, resolved to sue to his enemies for reliefe, and fled into the territories of the Empire, and put himfelf into the power of PROBYS PATRICIVS, who had the guard of the frontiers, through which he passed, where he was very honourably entertained. Whereof when the Emperour MAVRICIV'S was given to vnderstand, hee was very glad, and fent ynto him a very honourable Captaine whose name was NARSES, and a Bishop, a man of great authoritie and his kinsman, offering him all fauour and aide for the recouerie of his kingdome, and adopted and tooke him for his

Mavricivs.

N AR SES who went for Generall in this action, putting the fame in execution, commaunded all the armies and men of warre which the Empire held in Asia, to be drawne to an head: and so he and CosRoEs went to seeke BARAS, who with the courage of a valiant tyrant staied for them, and fighting was overthrowne, and by flight escaped into certaine mountaines. After this so noble a victorie, CosRoEs recouered all his kingdomes, and he and the Emperour continued great friends: and fo ceased the warres betweene the Empire and the Persians, which had continued fixe yeeres. This happened in the eight yeere of the raigne of the Emperour MAVRICIVS.

Whileft the EmperorMAVRICE waged these warres in the East, Europe continued not in rest nor peace; for besides the miseries and calamities of staly (as I will presently relate) the Hunnes which dweltin Hungarie, & in part of Noricum, now called Bauaria (which we but now called Auares) after the name of a King of theirs called by that name, then raigning ouer the a King called Caranva, who was both yest proud and very valiant, and therewith very mightie, they and he concluded a mongh themselves to make war against the Empire: which they followed with fuch resolution, that it caused no small feare: for entring through the vpper Miss. which now containeth the two prouinces of Seruia, and Bassina, he found so small relifiance, that he came into Thracia, now called Gracia or Turkey, for that therein flanderh the great citie of Constantinople: against whom MAVRICE sent an armie, and for generall thereof a valiant and prudent captaine whose name was COMENCIOLYS, and these two made cruell warres, and after many skirmishes came to a battaile, which I leave, being too long to recite; and therein CAYANYS was ouerthrowne with great loffe of his people, and fo was conftrained to retire. But within short space after, he returned againe with no lesse power then at the first, to warre in the marches of Slauonia, and MAVRICE sent thither his sonne THEODOSIVS, and his father in law GERMANY s, with other captaines; which had fo good fuccesse, that although they lost some journeies, yet they not onely draue them out of that which they had vsurped, but also wholy rooted them out of all Hungarie. But MAVRICE either for feare or retchlesnes forslowed those warres, and losing oportunitie (which is feldome recourred) the inconveniences enfued, which we will describe. For a kinde of people called Slauons, a nation inhabiting farrein the North, which vntill that time had neuer been heard of, fenttheir Ambassadors to the Hunnes Auares (moued thereto, by the newes

which they had heard from them) and by them offered to come to their aid, as

Noricum, Bauaria.

Baras ouer-

throwne in a battaile by

Cofrees.

Warres be-

bis people dri-Hungarie.

MAVRICIVS.

in deede they afterwards did, and ioyned with them, and did much harme in The Stanons the lands of the Empire, and out of it, as hereafter we will recount in few words. came to make Let vs now returne to Italie, which wee left in peace and at truce with the warres in the

Lombards, wherein it happened, that as neither partie concluded the peace for  $\epsilon^{mpre}$ any remorce of conscience, or for the seare or loue of God or their neighbours: but for their owne aduantage and private interest, and to awaite a fitter time and oportunitie for the warres; (as for our finnes it often happeneth in the world) and as it was not pleafing to God, neither made according to his will, so it pleafed not him to maintaine the same : for he sent his wrath and scourge you Italie, and chiefly upon Rome, as to a place which most needed amendment. The first was withraine, which fell in the monethes of September and October, for the space A vvonderfull of many daies continually without ceasing, in such fort, that the water was so high, and all flaly. that the rivers and lakes of Italie overflowed and drowned an infinit number of people and cattell; and the river Tiber waxed fo high, that all the fields which were not hillie and mountainous, were overflowne with water; fo that all men feared that it would have proved another generall diluge; particularly in Rome, where the river Tiber did swell so much, that in some part it was as high, and in fome other it exceeded and ouerflowed the walles of that citie; and the water entred in fuch manner into it, that it spoiled and defaced the greatest part of the buildings necre to the river. And the floud afterwards ceasing, the fields remained fo flimie, fo muddie and fo foft, that they could not be tilled nor fowen; by reason whereof a generall famine ensued through all Italie. And in like manner Italy and Rome through the excessive moisture, the earth and the aire were so corrupted, that the plague of pestilence began, which raged in such manner, that many townes were and pestilence. left defolate, and dispeopeled; and where they died least, two thirds of the people perished. But in the citic of Rome (as all writers affirme) was the greatest furie thereof: for in the beginning it tooke away Pope Pelagivs the fecond, in whose place (against his will and perforce) was chosen Saint GREGORIE, who feeing the wrath from heaven, made many devout prayers to God, and many Termons and orations to the people, exhorting them to amendment of life, and repentance for their finnes, to the end that it might please his maiestic to withhold his punishment from them. And in this extremitie he ordained the Letany, The Letanie which is to this day vied in the Church. Finally, the Lord in his mercie tooke ordained to be pitie of them, and the plague ceased, and the earth began to be into the chief effect full Church by and to change colour, and to bring forth fruite. But yet this faudur which the Saint Gregorie. Lord beflowed ypon them, availed not to establish any peace, or amitic amongst those which escaped this plague; for the Lombards having gotten supplies of men of warre, without any respect of the seare or love of God (the time of the truce being expired) renewed the warres with greater furie then at the first. And forasmuch as the land had been punished with so great calamities, and lay waste, and dispeopled, it was an easie matter for them to doe great harme among the Imperialists. First their King ANTHARIS in person went against FRANCILIon, which was commaunded by the citie of Como, with two other most strong fortresses in the lake of Como; and besieging it the space of sixe monethes, without being any longer able to defend the citie, the befreged gave hyp, and went to Rauenna: that citie having valiantly defended it felfe with much honor, the space of twentie yeeres. The taking of this citie, did greatly enrich King An-

THARIS, for FRANCILION had in that time gathered together, and had in it

much treasure: and departing from thence with great honor and wealth, he tooke

other places. Whereupon the Emperour MAVRICE, at the entreatie of Pope GREGORIE, and the Exarch SMARAGDVS (which daily follicited him for aide and reliefe) fent to CHILDEBERT, which at that time raigned King of France, a great fumme of money; to the end that he should enter Italie with some great power, in his behalfe: and the King of France promised to doe fo, and began to put it in execution. And comming into Italie, the fame of his comming began to worke great effect, and some captaines of the Lombards renolted to him. But CHILDEBERT imagining, that if the Emperour againe recoursed Italie wholy to himselfe, he should hardly live in safetie in France; and therefore comming to a composition with ANTHARIS. he returned into his countrey. without intermedling in other mens quarels. At his returne died ANTHARIS King of the Lombards, and the principal men of that nation falling at variance amongst themselves about chusing of a new King, at last agreed that he should be King whom TEODELINDA (which was the last Kings widow) should take to husband, and she made choice of A G I S V LPH V s, gouernor of Taurino, now called Turin; and so he was made King, who was as valorous a prince as any his predecessors had been before him. At that time the Emperour deposed SMA-RAGDVS from the gouernment of Italie, and sent thither for Exarch a Knight called ROMANVS (of whom we made mention in the warres of Persia) with some companies of souldiers, for the defence of Rome, and to make warre in other places. ROMANY'S comming in the meane time, whileft the new King A-GISVLEHUS was busied with some of his captaines, which holding certaine cities rebelled against him; prouided and furnished with men and victuals. Padia. Mantua, Cremona, and the rest of the cities which were in greatest daunger; and fetting all things there in order, he came to Rome, from whence afterwards with those forces which he brought, and those also which before his comming were in the citie, he departed to recour the townes and caftles, which the Lombards possessed in that quarter; many of which he wanne by force of armes, and others voluntarily yeelded themselves. Whilest that the Exarch was busic about these things, the Pope fent three very learned men into England, which with their preaching converted the King and the inhabitants thereof to the true faith, which vntill then was not throughly received amongst them. The like care he tooke for Italie, and for all the other provinces: and TEODELIND A wife of King A GISVLEHVS being a deuout Christian, he practised with her and her husband, to cause their people to leave their Idolatrie, which he obtained, and afterwards he perswaded him to surrender to the Church the goods and reuenewes which he withheld from it. About this time grew great contention betweene the Bicontention be- shops of Rome, and of Constantinople, about the supremacie: for I o HN Bishop of Constantinople alleaged, that to him did appertaine the Papacie, and to be vniuerfal and of constan- Bishop of the Church, seeing that Constantinople was the head of the Empire. Against which the Bishop of Rome opposed himselfe withall his power, alleaging himselse to be Christs vicar, and head of the Church: so as there passed many things of the one fide and the other about this matter. In this meane time died ROMANVS the Exarch, and another was fent in his place, whose name was GALLICIANYS, OF GALLICANYS, who was a vertuous man and very valiant; and he presently applied himselfe to redresse many things which ROMANVS had peruerted, and put out of order. And although that he much defired warre, yet through the counsell of the Pope he tooke truce, which being expired he carried himselfe so valiantly in the warres, that hee tooke the citie of Parma by

tweene the Bi-Shops of Rome sinople for the Supremacie.

The Exarch Remanus dying Gallicanus was fent in bis place.

affault from the Lombards, and therein tooke a daughter of King A G IS V L PHV S. which he had by his first wife, and grew to be so strong in the field, that A G I S V I-PHVS durst not give him battaile. Whereupon seeing himselfe overmatcht, hee fent to the Slauons for aide, which were alreadie joyned with the Augres; and GALLICANVS leaving new forces died in Rauenna, and SMARAGDVS Was againe fent thither to be Exarch; who came into Italy with fo small forces, that his comming did rather encourage, then difinay or daunt the enemie. Which proceeded from this, the Emperour so deadly hated the Popes presumption, that ra-

ther then to endure the fame he was content to lofe all Italy.

And to this his euill will was conjoyned the trouble which the Slauons, which came to his enemies aide, did put him to: for CAYANVS the fierce and proud king of the Auares (the Slauons and their king M v s A C I v s being come into Germany) ioyned his forces with his enemies, and some Frenchmen came also to them, and entred the bounds of the Empire. And the Emperour fent against them one PRISCYS, a captaine of great account, with a mightie armie, to stop their passage ouer the river Ister, now called Danubius; who warred so admisedly and with fo great valour and difcretion, that the most times that he fought with them he obtained the victorie. And one night he gaue the Slauons a Camizado, and tooke their King Mvs Acivs prisoner, and slew a great number of them. There Musacius afterwards happened many things in that warre, which would be too long to King of the relate: for CAYANY. King of the Auares, as hee had many men, and those very slauons taken expert and accustomed to the warres, besides the multitude of the Slauons, ne- Priscus general uer ceased to make cruell warre against the Emperour M AVRICE; yet sometime of the Empethey tooke truce, which lasted some space: and Parscvs and he came and spake rours forces. together concerning an agreement. After all this, CAYANV s with his Auares and Slauons entred Dalmatia, and did great harme, robbing and spoiling many Cayanus innatownes therein. But Priscys comming to relieue them, he retired to his losse, pire, and altring his courle tooke his way towards Thracia: and marching without stay, came within few daies iourney of Constantinople. And as the report and feare is viually greater then the daunger; fo he strake so great a terror into the citizens of Constantinople, that they were of the minde to have abandoned the citie, and to have passed over that arme of the Sea into Asia, as the Annales of Constantineple doe testifie. But the Emperour MAVRICE (as in truth he was valiant) commaunded all the people to be put in armes, and the gates of the citie to bee shut. and order to be taken in all things that were needfull, vfing infinite diligence; and gaue direction for the defence of the countries through which CAYANVS Was to passe. But all this needed not, for at that instant there fell so pestilent a mortalitie in CAYANVs his armie, that in one day onely seuen of his sonnes (for he had in Cayanus his many)and a great number of other people died of the plague : wherefore he was campe, whereof constrained to returne into his countrie: And the Emperour sent for Generall fonnes died in another Captaine, whose name was Comencio Lvs, who ioyning with Pris- one day. cvs, obtained certaine victories against CAYANVS. But he was of so hautie a minde, and therewith fo politike, that notwithstanding that he was ouerthrowne, yet within very few daies he euer reinforced his armie, in such fort that he put his enemies in greater feare, then at the first; and in the end at the request and entreatie of the Lombards which lived in Italy, he refolved to warre in Slauonia, drawing neere vnto Italy: where, although that he found some resistance, yet the Slauons which came with him feifed vpon great part of that countrie, and remained

Prodigions vi-

nofticating bis

Allyricum cal- vntill this day is called Slauonia; and so from henceforth we will call it. And from this people (as BLONDVS, VOLATERRANVS, and others affirme) the Bohe-The origine of mians and Polonians are descended: for part of them tooke those countries, and and Polonians, vpon fundrie occasions tooke these names.

As matters stood upon these termes, the Lombards in Italy and their King A-GISVERHY s. knowing how much the Emperour hated the Pope, resoluted to besiege Rome; which they did with a very great armie, and the Pope was therein befreged about one whole yeere, and by his industrie onely the citie was defended for from the Emperour came no reliefe at all: whereupon he wrote him certaine letters, which are yet extant to be read, out of which is drawne great part of this historie. But notwithstanding all this, the Emperour MAVRICE would not relieue him, but rather wisht his destruction: but yet both hee and the citie escaped, and at the yeeres end A G I S V L PH V S raifed his siege and departed.

It is written, that youn a day about noone, in the citie of Constantinople, in the open market place of that citie, there appeared a man to the Emperour in the habit of a Monk, holding a fword in his hand, who fpeaking with a lowd voice, faid, to the Emperor The Emperour MAVRICE shall die by this fword: and this man presently vani-Maurice, prog. fined amongst the people, so as no man could say from whence he came, neither what he was. This is written by Pope GREGORIE, which you may beleeve if

you will.

They also say, that in his sleepe he saw a souldier whose name was P HOCAS. who murthered his wife and his children, and afterwards flew him alfo. With this dreame he was fo much troubled, that hee presently commaunded his sonne in law Philippievs to be fent for, who was charged by him to have had a determination to rebell against him; and he (not without great feare) came to him. And the Emperour after hee had defired him to pardon him for the falle accusation wherewith he had flaundered him, asked him whether he knew any man of account in the armie called by the name of PHOCAS: whereto he answered, that he knew a Centurion in the campe of that name, whom hee had a little before made pour uour for the campe. And MAVRICE againe demaunded, what manner of man he was? Quoth he he is a cholericke licentious young fellow but therwith fearefull and a coward. Whereto they fay, that the Emperour being much troubled and in despaire, replied: If he be a coward, of necessitie he must be cruel, and defirous to flied bloud : and fo fliedding many teares, he told Philippicvs what he had dreamed, who was therwith also much troubled. In the meane time there came messengers vnto him, which he had sent to certaine religious persons to defire them to pray for him; which in some fort did recomfort him, perswading him to be of good cheere, for God would have mercie on his foule: but yet he neuer ceased to bewaile his sinnes, and lived in continual forrow and contrition. And PHILIPPICVS perswaded him to vse some great liberalitie to his armie and men of warre, thereby to winne their loue, and the better to liue in fafetie from them. But he followed not his good counfell, and so within few daies after his death was practifed in fuch manner as followeth.

He commaunded his brother PETER, whom he had made Generall of his armie, and warred against the Slauons in Slauonia, that to the end to auoide charge and expences, in any case hee should winter in the same prouince, and lodge his armie in fuch villages and other places, where he might most annoy the enemie. Whereto notwithstanding that PETER answered to the contrarie, and entreated that hee might not doe to, alleaging that the armie should sustaine intollerable trouble and extremitie in those mountaines; yet he continued so obstinate in his commaund, that PETER of force must obey, although against his will : and the armie tooke this in fo ill part, that without any respect of dutie and alleageance they mutined, and chusing the aforenamed P H O C A's for Generall, they marched against P B T B R, who was lodged about a daies journey from thence, and he fled to the Emperour. BLONDV swriteth that the captaines which fled, were THE O-DOSIVE the Emperors fonne, and GERMANVE his father in law. But I herein follow the Commentaries of Conflantinople, and Zonoras, which seeme to bee more conformable to the truth: for they write, that the whole armie fent an Ambaffade to THEODOSIVS, willing him to come vnto them, and they would make him Emperour, and if he would not, that then GERMANVS should come: but they refusing or not daring to accept their offer, the armie chose the same P HO- Emperous. cas for Emperor, and he tooke his way towards Constantinople. Which when the Emperour MAVRICE understood, calling to him his sonne THEODOSIVS, and GERMANUS his father in law, with COMINCIOLUS, PHILIPPICUS, and other great captaines, hee began to take order for the defence of the citie, and to leuie fouldiers, and to make preparation for the warres. But as this reuolt happened through the permission and ordinance of God; so the people rose in such manner, that nothing could be done to any purpose, and there were many great tumults in the citie. And amongst the people, and the Emperors owne kindred also, fome laid the fault of what was befalle vpon others, and some were in hope to be Emperors if MAVRICE lost the Empire, and others tooke part with PHOCAS the new tyrant or Emperor. During this confusion and hurly burly, Phoc As so fast as he could march came to Constantinople, accompanied with all the men of warre : and MAVRICE which (vntill then) had ever been fo mightie against all nations, having now no fufficient power to defend himselfe, fled out of the citie. and tooke shipping in a small barke, with his wife and children, and passed ouer the ftreight called S.G z o z G z s Arme; and entring into the citie of Calcedonia, The Experient (which is on the other fide) was there ouertaken and apprehended by PHOCAS from Conflanhis people, who was alreadic come to Conflantinople: and being brought backe timple. againe. P H O C As commaunded him to be put to death; but he first made his two fonnes, three daughters, and his wife the Emperelle, for his greater torment, to be flaine in his presence, which he saw and endured with admirable magnanimitiesand, as a faithfull Christian, recommending himselfe to God, he called upon his holie name, many times repeating these words; Instus es Domine, & rectum in- The death of dicium tuum. And so he patiently suffered death and had his head striken off. Hee the Emperous died in the 63. yeere of his age, and the twentith of his raigne, and in the yeere of Mauricius. our Lord (after most writers) 603. Some write that when he fled from Constanti- Anno Dom. nople, he fent his fonne THEODOSIVS to the King of Persia, there to be kept, and 603. that afterwards he was deliuered into the power of P HOCAS. And so ended and was extinguished the whole house and linage of the Emperour MAVRICE. There were also put to death by P H O C As his commaundement, the Emperors brother. PETER, and other principall men. In time of this Emperour there were warres betweene the Kings of Spaine and France, and betweene the Saxons and the Sucuians, betweene the French and the Auares, and some others, which for that they concerne not my historie. I omit. In this time also the Turks began to be knowne in the world: for it is found written that they made warres in Asia against the Perfians. Then also began the name of the Bulgarians to be knowne in Europe, a fierce

people, of whom we will speake hereafter.



### OF PHOCAS. ONELY OF THAT NAME.

AND THREESCORE AND THREE ROMANE EMPEROVR.





ter the manner as I have before declared, was the Emperour Mayrice put to death, who, as he was valiant, wife, and venturous in the wars, if he had bin bountifull and liberall, hee had been accounted for a good Prince, and had longer enjoyed the Empire. For all authors affirme, his niggardice and sparing to have bin the cause of his death, I meane of his corporall death: for the waies and judgements of the Lord are vnfearchable and incomprehenfible.

And to fay the truth, conetouines is one of the most dannagerous and hatefull vices wherewith a Prince can be infected : for besides that it maketh him ill beloued and odious to his subjects, it is the fountaine and roote of greatest euils in those which are rich and mightie: for from thence grow violences, wrongs, rapine, briberie, extortion, crueltie, intollerable taxes, and impositions, no reward for feruice, condemning the innocent, absoluing the guiltie for money, coueting other mens goods, vniust warre, and shamefull peace. Finally, in Kings and Potentates couctousnes is the mother of all euils, and a vice which maketh their raigne and government short and miserable; as may be prooued by mauy examples. And to the contrarie, liberalitie hath been the occasion that many (notwithstanding that they were wicked)raigned longer then others. And forasmuch as I have not time to make any long digreffion, I conclude that the couetouines

and miserable sparing of the Emperor MAVRICE, made PHOCAS so mightie, as to be able to bereaue him of both his Empire and his life. And the same vice was afterwards the cause of his death also, as wee will shew you, so soone as we Shall have related what happened in the Empire. When the Emperor MAVKICE was dead, there was none that durft lift vp his hand against Phocas, and therefore he was generally obeyed of all men (excepting NARSES the generall commaunder in the East, before named.) This NARSES when he vnderstood that PHOCAS had caused MAVRICE to be slaine, he with an armic went into a citie of Arabia, called Edissa; with a resolution to yeeld him no obedience, but with the aide of the Perfians to make himselfe strong against him.

But Phocas was crowned in Constantinople by the Patriarch thereof, with great folemnitie, and great ioy and gladnes of the people, which is euer defirous of nouelties: And as they fuddenly defire them, so they as suddenly abhor them. And the like happened in Rome upon the newes of his election: for the Romanes hated MAVRIDE, for the enmitte betweene him and the Pope whom they loued. And so some as Pope GREGORIE understood that Phochs was made Emperor, he wrote vnto him a notable epiftle, which vntill this day is extant; wherein he admonisheth and counselleth him what he ought to doe, to be a per-

fect Emperor.

The first thing that Phocas did, was to send into all the prouinces and nations of the Empire, priviledges, exemptions and kind letters, with new garrifons and fouldiers where neede required: all which he did with fuch expedition and in so good order, that he made himselfe well beloued of his subjects, and respected and feared by strangers, but both in the one and in the other it continued but alittle while. And to GERMANYS who was Pretor and gouernor in the East, he fent commaundement presently to goe and besiege NARSES, which rebelled against him. In the meane season, A GISVLPHVS King of the Lombards (who in the troublesome time wherein Phocas was chosen; and before his election, had taken the cities of Cremona, Mantua, and Volturnia, and therein had done irrepairable harmes, aswell in the walles and buildings of the citic, as among the cittizens, the inhabitants, and their goods) for feare of the new Emperor concluded a truce and a peace with SMARAGDVs the Exarch, and with Pope GREGORIE, and withall Italy, for one yeere. And from thenceforth to be the better able to liue in securitie, he sought to match his eldest sonne AD o-ALDYS in mariage with the daughter of THEODOBERTYS King of France. And so Phocas raigned in great prosperitie the first yeere; vntill he began to discouer his base condition, and little worth, together with his extreme couctousnes, and negligence in all things; by meanes whereof he became flightly regarded and effeemed by all men, whereof enfued warres and troubles. In the fecond yeere of his raigne died Pope GREGORIE, and SABINIANVS succeeded him, who also tooke truce for another yeere with AGISVLPHVS, which was afterwards prolonged for other three yeeres more, by Ambassadors sent by AGISVLPHVS to the Emperor Phocas. And in the second yeere also of the raigne of PHOCAS, began the warre against the Persians, which in all mens VV arrewith iudgement was least to be feared, considering how greatly Cosnoes King of the Persians. Persia, stoode bound to the Emperor MAVRICE, and to the Empire, for restoring him to his kingdome. The cause of this warre is written so diversly, that I therefore leave to fet downe the same; in the beginning whereof, GERMANVS the captaine generall in the East, leuied an armie to make head against him, and they

Phoeas violating his faith made Narfes to be barut.

fought a battaile, wherein GERMANVS was ouerthrowne, and the greatest part of the Imperiall armie flaine, and he wounded escaped by flight, and within eleuen daies died thereof. When Phocas vnderstoode of this losse, he then graunted the peace, which we spake of, to the Lombards, and procured the like with the Bauares, with the Hunnes, and with the Slauons. And he with great diligence and little discretion, passed the greatest part of his power into Siria, for the warres in the East, under the conduct of very good captaines; and commaunded LEONCIVS, and MAGNATES, which were two of them, to make warre vpon N ARSES; who vpon the faith and securitie given vnto him yeelded himselse: but Phocas breaking his faith and promise, made him most cruelly to be burnt. His armie in the East had yet another battaile with Cosnos, and was againe ouerthrowne with great dishonor and confusion. And whilest as the Emperors captaines lost these battailes, there grew very great tumults and factions in Constantinople, and in many other cities in Asia; which rose of very light and friuolous occasions. Which were, that as in auncient time, in Rome, and afterwards in Constantinople, they yield certaine sports and games of running with chariots, and on horse backe, after a kinde of turneying, as heretofore in the life of Domicianvs we have declared: fo now in the like fome clothing themfelues in greene, and others in gray, the common people which faw the fame (as their manner is) affected some the one colour, and some the other; and this so much encreased, that (as in time past there had been great scandales, and murthers done upon the like occasions) so it pleased God to permit, that in the time of PHOCAS, the matter grew to that extremitie, that there were infinit flaughters and murthers committed, in Siria, in Egypt, in Gracia, and in many other prouinces: which the Emperor by his letters and commaundements was not able to remedie. For notwithstanding that he was very cruell, and did wrongfully put many to death; yet was there small account made of him; for all menknew the basenes of his mind, and his disordinate vices, and concronsines, and how that he applied himselfe to nothing, but to his pleasure amongst women, and to seeke new meanes to encrease his tributes, and to heape money together: by reason whereof euery where were tumults, confusions, and riots; and the princes and nations bordering upon the Empire knowing this, determined to feife upon fuch part thereof as they could. CAYANVs with the Bauarians and Hunnes, comming from Noricum (by them called Banaria) and from the countries of Hungarie and Austrich; after they had enlarged their territorie, concluded to make warre vpon the Lombards (which was the onely thing that kept the Empire in peace) and fighting a battaile with a great armie, and a captaine of them; the Bauarians obtained the victorie. After which CAYANY's tooke by force of armes a citie called Forum Iulij, which he wholy destroyed, and having done much harme and taken great spoiles in the prouince of Venice, he returned to his kingdome. Then the Slauons which before had made themselues Lords of great part of Illyricum, in this time tooke all Illyricum, and Dalmatia, which now continued all the coast and countrey from Friuli to Duraffo, by them called Slauonia. In this meane time, Cosnons King of Persia was not idle, but entred with a mightie power into Mesoporamia, and tooke it all into his power, and part of Siria also, where, in battailes and conflicts, he wholy defeated the legions and Romane armie. And on the other fide, his men of warre made themselves Lords of all Armenia, and Cappadocia, and did much hurt in other prouinces of the Empire. Whilest these things passed in these parts in Africa, which of long time (euen euer since the

Mesopotamia, Armenia, and Cappadocia taken from the Romanes by the Perfians.

death of the Emperor IVSTINIAN) had been in peace, and in the service and obedience of the Empire; HERACLIVS whom some call HERACLIANVS. which for the Emperor Phocas was governor thereof, feeing his pufillanimitie and euill gouernment, began to leaue his feruice and to doe what best pleased himselfe, without any respect or regarde to his decrees or commaundements. And to the end that the mischiefe should be generall, and in all places, in the citie of Antioch in Soria, the Infidels rofe against the Christians, and slew a great number of them, together with the Patriarch of that citie; vpon which Phocas commaunded great punishment to be inflicted. Finally, in all the provinces there was great disorder and little instice, and those provinces which bordered ypon the enemies were destroyed, and great part of them lost. And the matter came to this iffue, that one of these two things of necessitic must ensue; which were that either the Empire must be rent in funder, and wholy lost, or else Phoc As must die. Whereupon the most principall captaines, and his chiefest friends. feeing it expedient for the common good, and the estate of the Empire, confpi-Hard conditiredagainst him, and resoluted to kill him. Amongst which was his greatest fauorit PRISCYS, who by letters agreed with HERACLIVS (which gouerned Africa and rebelled, and with whose daughter PRISCVS was married) that he should kill him, and make his sonne HERACLIVS which was his wives brother, Emperor. There were also confederates in this treason (if it may be said to be treason to kill a tyrant and a traitor) PATRICIV's, and other principall men. And as PRISCY'S was in great credit with PHOCAS, so he fained to reduce his father in law HERACLIVS to his feruice; and under his pretect, he first brought his brother in law HERACLIVS to Constantinople, as for a pledge and an affurance of his fathers loyaltie. This treatie was double, for his father was presently to come to Constantinople, with the greatest power that he was able to make; vnder colour to passe into Asia, against the King of Persia; and according to this rumor he did so. and came with a very great nauie, and fuddenly landed in Thracia, which coast is now called Romania. And his fonne which remained in Constantinople with the fauour and in companie of PRISCVS, and many others, entred the pallaceand Thoras flaint flew Phocas; and then presently arrived his father with his forces, and accor-which after ding to the agreement betweene them, yong HERACLIV's was made Emperor, him succeeded and generally obeied. In the manner of Phocas his death, the authors which in the Empire. write thereof make fome difference: but they all concur in this, that he was flaine through the conspiracie of the captaines, and great men before named; in the eight yeere of his raigne, and of the incarnation of our Sauiour CHRIST

Anno domi 611.

fixe hundred and eleuen, without leaving any fonne to fue-

ceede him in the Empire.

HTE



# VS. ONELY OF THAT NAME.

AND THREESCORE AND FOURE ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGUMENT.



Eraclius hauing staine the tyrant Phocas without any contradiction was made Emperor; who found the Empire very weake and in great trouble. In the beginning of his government, the citie of lerufalene was taken by Cofroes King of the Persians; and the crosse of Christ which was left there by Helena, mother of Conftantine the great was carried away. He obtained victorie against John Campsinus a captaine of his, which rebelled against him, and made himself a tyrant over part of Italy; by another of his captaines whose name was Elutherius, who by reason of this victorie grew so proud, that he also dared to rebell, and to call himselfe

King of Italy; but he was presently slaine by the same captaines which tooke his part. And having concluded a peace with the Bauarians, he made his some Constantine Casar, and his companion in the Empire; and leaving him (for that he was very yong) under good keeping in Constantinople, he went against Cofroes, who had taken from him great part of the Empire. Towhich warre he went himselfe in person, and having given his enemie two great overthrowes, he constrained him to slie. When he had expelled Cofree, and recovered many countries of the Empire he made peace with Cofroes his sonne, which rose against his father, for an injurie received from him; which peace was a great helpe to the Empire, and very hurtfull to Cofrees: but by meanes thereof the Conne bereamed

the father of both his kingdome and his life. In these times sprang the sell of Mahomet, against which Heraclius in the beginning made no resistance, making no account thereof: but afterwards he becan to feare the same when he could not represse it. This Emperour made a great exchaunce from vertue to vice; so as when he grew old he became supersticious, an heretike, and libidinosu, vining himselfe to pleasure, as a young man, when it had been more requisite and more honorable for him to have lined gravely, as an old man: and tooke towife a young woman, giving himselfe more to carnall delight, then for his yeeres, and the dignitic of fo mightie an Emperor was fit. But falling into the disease of the dropsie, be died suddenly, when he had raigned twentie yeeres.



S the life and conditions of PHOCAS were odious to the world, and his raigne founhappie and infortunate, that the Imperiall scepter and dignitie was likely to have wholy falne and to have come to ruine; so all men rejoiced at his death. And forasmuch as HERACLIVS was the actor and executioner thereof, they

very peaceably and joyfully admitted and received him for Emperour; who was a man fortunate in the warres, and obtained many noble victories, and possessed the Empire many veeres, although that in the end thereof many things happened contrarie for his finnes and little constancie in the Christian faith; as in his historie we will relate, as briefly as possibly we may. PHOCAS and those of his partie being put to death, HERACLIVS was with great ioy and solemnitie crowned in Constantinople, by the hands of SERGIVS Patriarch thereof; his father HERACLIVS being there present, with PRISCVS and other great men, which had bin confederates in the conspiracie against P H O C A S. And ypon the same day hee solemnized his marriage with a principall Ladie, whose name Was E v D O X I A, who afterwards in the second yeere of his raigne died in childbed of a some called CONSTATINE; and he married for his second wife with a neece of his owne called MARTINA, which also bare him a sonne called HERA- In what state CLIVS. This Emperour HERACLIVS found the Empire in fuch trouble, and so found the Emrent in peeces, that it feemed impossible to hold and to continue. The affaires of pire. the East were in such case as we told you where Cos Ros s had descated all the armies, and entring into the Empire, daily tooke townes and holds. In the prouince of Arabia Petrea, which bordreth vpon Egypt and Indea, the Sarazins rebelled, with which the wicked MAHOMET afterwards made himselfe very mightie. Mahomet be-CAYANVS and the Bauarians which inhabited Bauaria, Austrich and Hungarie, ganto grove feeing the Empire fo weakened, came into Thracia, and made warres therein. In mighile. Illyricum or Slauonia, the Slauons were of great power; and in Italy, although there was peace with the Lombards (for they were broken and weakened by the ouerthrowes which they had received from the Bauarians and Slauons) yet there wanted not commotions, and hurly burlies: for Phoc As before his death had bereaued S M AR A G DV s (oftentimes before named) of his Exarchat and gouernment, and had fent thither another Captaine called I OHN; who comming to Rauenna, with his wife and familie, and a great number of Judges and officers for all Italy, PHOCAS Was by that time dead; and IOHN being more earnest in requiring tributes, and other exactions then he ought to have been, the people were therewith so much moved that they slew him: and so Italy remained without a gouernour. And at that time the Church of Rome was without a Bishop, and so by the death of Pope BONIFACE, and by meane of discord among the Clergie, that feate was voide the space of eight moneths. And a Captaine which lived in Naples, whose name was I OHN CAMPS INVS, and gouerned that citie with the territorie thereof, determined to rebell, and to make himselfe Lord of Pulia, Cala-

bria, Campania, and of great part of that countrie, which at this day is the kingdom of Naples; imagining that the new Emperour should have enough to doe to defend or to recouer the rest, and so he might make himselfe King of Italy.

HERACLIVS comming to the Empire fo torne and difmembred; to encounter with fo many extremities, in the beginning vsed not fuch diligence, as was requisite neither had he power or meanes thereto. For as al authors write he found the Empire so disarmed and vnfurnished of men of warre, that there were neither old fouldiers, neither experienced legions left, but were all flaine and scattered. Neuerthelesse he began to make Captaines, and to leuie men of warre, and sent CRISPYS with fuch forces as he could get, together with those which his father brought him out of Africa, into the prouinces of Afra the leffe (now called Turkie) to guard and defend the fame, feeing they were not able to gine battaile to the Persians; and caused his father to returne into Africa, which was all that the Empire peaceably enjoyed, together with Sicilia and Sardinia; and he himfelfe remained in Constantinople, procuring peace with the Bauarians and their King CAYA-NV s, by all possible meanes, as well by gifts as entreatie. But these things were so long a doing, that CosRoss King of Perfia, as mafter of the field, taking some cities by surprise, and others by force of armes, came conquering all Siria, and thence into Palestina, and so to the citie of Ierujalem; northe old Ierujalem, for that (as is alreadic faid) was destroyed and laid waste by TITVs and V # SPASIAN, but to that which the Emperour ADRIAN new builded, in the same place, or at least neere vnto it, as alreadie is declared; which then was a great and an excellent cirusalem taken tie. And entring it by force of armes he vsed great crueltie, and did much harme by the Persians. to the Christians; so as therein (as it is written) were slaine 80000. persons; and taking the wood of the croffe of Christ, which HELEN mother to Con-STANTINE the Great had left there, and carrying it thence with him, he fet it with great renerence vpon the top of his chaire, or royall throne, made of fine gold, let with many iewels and pearles. And hee likewife carried with him prifoner ZACHARIAS the Patriarch of Ierufalem, who was an excellent Prelate. This taking of Ierusalem, some authors write to have happened about the end of the raigne of the Emperour P H O C As: but the most certaine and true opinion is, that it befell in the time of HERAC LIVS, wherein I place the fame. CRISPVS which was fent by the Emperour, and then was in the province of Cappadocia in Asia the leffe, endeuoured to leuie fouldiers, and to prouide (fo much as in him lay) for the defence of those countries, against the great power of the Persians : but it availed not at that time. And for as much as it was bruted that the Persians meant to goe into Egypt, and thence to go to make a conquest of Africa; HERACLIVS father to the Emperor being then in the citie of Caribage, leuving a great number of men of war, departed thence, marching along the Sea coast, to goe into Egypt to make head against the Persians; where we will leave him, to the end to tel you first what enfued after that I OHN CAMPSINVS rebelled with the citie of Naples, and althat prouince, as we faid. The Emperor being much moued with his audacious rebellion, sent a captain into Italy, whose name was E LEVT HER IVS, with a goodnumber of fouldiers; which captain was of a great & noble parentage, & very wife and

expert in the warres. And he fo foone as he arrived at Rauenna with his fleete, was

received and obeyed therein; and understanding what they were which conspi-

red in the rebellion and infurrections past, he punished some of them, vsing grea-

ter clemencie then seueritie. And therewithall he speedily assembled such forces

as remained in the government of Rasenna; with which, and with those which

#leutherius fent by the Em perour against Iohn CampliHERACLIVS.

he brought with him, he purposed to take his way against CAMPSINVS, who lay in Naples, and by the way went to Rome, where he was well received and honored by DEVS DEDIT, who then was Pope. And being past towards Naples, CAMP-SINV s confidering that by prolonging the warres hee daily loft, and the Emperors partie encreased; with the greatest and best power that he was able to make he tooke the field, and neere to the citie of Naples they two fought a cruell battaile; and ELEVTHERIVS obtained the victorie (although very hardly) for CAMPSINUS fought valiantly, and died fighting. After this battaile, ELEVTHE- Camplinus of uerthrowne RIVS with small difficultie recoursed all that CAMPSINVS had vsurped, and re- and state by turned with victorie to Rome: and for his better fecuritie, and to bring to effect Eleuiberius. fuch things as he had projected (which we will presently tell you) he practised to prolong the peace with AGISVLPHVSKing of the Lombards, which was concluded for other tenne yeeres. And he procured and leuied money, wherewith he paied and contented his fouldiers and men of warre: for which his doings fo valorously and so speedily accomplished, the Emperor HERACLIVS sent him the authoritie and title of Exarch and gouernour of all Italy; wherewith he came to Rauenna, which was the feate of the gouernours, leaving all Italy in peace and in quiet subjection (Lombardy excepted, and the rest which the Lombards possessed) by meanes whereof he grew fo proud and fo ambitious, that without the feare of God, or of the Emperour, knowing himselfe to be greatly beloued by his souldiers, he rose and rebelled against his soueraigne Lord, and tooke vpon him the Eleutherius title of King of Italy, and presently departed with his armie from Rauenna towards rebelled and Rome, to the end to make himselfe Lord of all the land. But it pleased God to give called bumselfe him speedie punishment: for the same captaines which advanced him and vpon king of Italy. which he had grounded his difloyaltie; the fame I fay to fhew themselves lovall to the Emperour, within few daies iourney from Rome flew him, when he nothing fuspected any such matter; and the armie approoued his death, and they altoge- Eleutherius ther returned to Rauenna, and fent his head to the Emperor to Constantinople; who staine and his being aduertifed of what passed, was very well pleased with what they had done. bread for the being aduertifed of what passed, was very well pleased with what they had done. And fent for a new Exarch, a great noble Constantinopolitane, called Ysancivs, who was very well received. And at the same time died the valiant A G ISVLPHVS king of the Lombards, and his fon O DOALDVS being a child of tender age, was The death of made their king; and the wife and Christian Queene THEVDELINDA his mo- Agisaphus ther, tooke vpon her the gouernment, and ruled and gouerned that kingdome ve- Lombards. ry wifely and discreetly, and observed and renewed the peace with the Italians, and the Imperialists; and so Italy remained for some space in rest. But in the wars against the Persians, matters happened to the contrarie: whereof wee will make

a briefe relation, and of what end it had. HERACLIV sthe Emperours father, who was gouernour of Africa, marching with great power towards Egypt, to make head against the Persians, being very ioyfull, and of great power, by the way died of an infirmitie. And by his death The death of all was out of order and came to nothing : for there was not any man amongst them capable of the gouernment, or fit to leade an armie. This happened in the fixt yeere of the raigne of the Emperor HERACLIV s, who althat time remained in Constantinopte, giving himselfe to pleasure and his ease. When the King of Perfia vnderstood of the death of HERACLIVS the gouernour of Africa; with the greatest haste that he could make, he sent a very mightie armie into Egypt; and as that kingdome was vnfurnished of men of warre, and the Persians came victorious, so in few daies they made themselues absolute Lords thereof, and the same

The infolent answere of the King of Perfia Heraclius.

The citie of

Carthage taken by the Persians.

Meraclius made bis fonn Constantine Casar.

Meraclius in

veere passing further forwards, they conquered Africa even to the citie of Carthage; for no citie neither people were of power able to make head against them. Which HERACLIV'S Well understanding fent Ambassadors to King CosRoEs, with milde words entreating him for peace, defiring him to defift from shedding fo much bloud, and to rest satisfied with what hee had done. To this Ambassade the Infidell made answere, so hautily, and with such pride, that among other to the Emperor things he fent him word, that he would graunt no peace to HERACLIVS, except he would renounce the faith of I E s v s CHRIST, and adore his Idols. With this answere the Ambassadors returned and the Persians the veere following (prosecuting their warres) belieged the citie of Carthage, and tooke it, with the marches thereof, and leaving governors and garrifons in that countrie, returned into Afia most richly loden with spoiles.

HERACLIVS having seene and considered how much of the Empire he had loft, resolved with himselfe to goe in person to recover the same, or to lose the rest; whereto the Bauarians and their King CAYANVs, were a great hinderance. But to the end that the reader may the better understand the matter, let him know, that these Bauarians (in former time called Hunnes Auares) of a long time called their Kings CAYANI, as the Egyptians called their Kings PHARA-ONE s, and as many other nations gaue their Kings ordinarie and peculiar names. I fay then, that CAYANVS returned with his forces to infelt the countrie of Thracia, which untill then had free passage. And this was the cause that the Emperor HERACLIVS was detained the space of two or three yeeres, after that which happened in Africa; vntill that at length he fought all waies and meanes to come to a peace with CAYANVS, although to his dishonor and with losse of reputation. Finally, it was concluded and confirmed with great othes and promifes, and so leaving all Italy and Gracia in peace, he determined to depart of fet purpose against the Persians, and to that end hee named and ordained for C = s AR and his companion in the Empire, his sonne Constantina, tomake hisabode in the citie of Constantinople. And forasmuch as hewas very yong, heappointed SERGIVS Patriarch of Constantinople, and Bonosvs a wife and noble gentleman, for his gouernors and tutors. Which being ordained, preparing the greatest power and munition that hee was able, with many praiers and solemne processions, he departed from Constantinople with great solemnitie; and embarking himselfe with his people, he passed ouer into those prouinces which were vnder his obedience in Asia, & entertained into his pay many other nations. And forafmuch as his fouldiers were but newly raifed, he thought it not fit prefently to march untill that they were better practifed and trained. Which being done, calling upon the Lord for aide, he entred into his enemies countries. This his journey was fo much bruted, noted and regarded by all the nations of the world, that there was no man that had not an especiall eye thereto.

Cosnoes King of Persia, being well informed, how valiant and how good a captaine HERACLIVS was, and how refolute an armie he led, determined not to give him battaile, but retired himselfe within his countrie, and made all the victuales to be withdrawne and carried away, and the trees to be cut downe, and laid athwart the waies where he supposed the Emperor would passe. And on the other fide, he fent an huge armie of very expert old fouldiers, vnder the leading of a captaine called SAVARAGVS, or SALVARVS (for in these names the authors ever vary) to the end that hee should charge the Emperor, either in the flancke, or in the backe; who with great refolution and in good order marched

against King Cosnoss; and by the way recoursed and wonne many cities. Butholding it for no affured course to leave so great an armie behinde him, he rookeanother way, and fought out SARAVAGVS; and having passed the great mountaine Taurus, the two armies drewncere the one to the other, neere vnto ariuer: before which time there passed many conflicts and other accidents betweene them, which I cannot possibly set downe at large. The conclusion thereof was, that they came to blowes, and as the Perfians of long time had been victorious, and made small account of the Romanes (I alwaies call those Romanes which were of the Emperors armie: for although that the seate of the Empire was in Gracia, yet the Emperors euer tooke a glory to be called Romane Emperors, and their armies, the Romane armies) and as the Imperialists holding them- A battaile befelues for difgraced and dishonored, had a great desire to be reuenged (the pre-tweenesthe Ko-manes and the fence and great valor of the Emperor being a great helpe thereto) both the one Persians, with and the other fought, with fo great courage and obstinacie, that the battaile continued long, and was very cruell. And although that in the beginning it was very doubtfull, yet in the end the Emperour obtained the victorie, and made great flaughter of his enemies. With this victorie the Imperialists were so much incouraged, that they left of the feare, which vntill then had possessed them; and the Emperor was incredibly folaced, and joyfull to fee himfelfe victorious. And forasmuch as winter drew on, he purposed to retire himselfe, being loden with exceeding rich spoiles, and many prisoners; to the end to return e againe the next foring with greater force, which was in the eleuenth yeere of his raigne.

But on the contrarie fide, Cos Rozs was very forrie, and much grieued; and imputing the fault to his Generall, deposed him from his charge, purposing to have caused him to be flaine, and made another Generall, called SAIN, or SATHIN. a very valiant man and of great account, and gathering together the remainder of the last armie, commaunded him to raise one farre greater; and that he should follow the warre with a greater resolution and vehemencie. And the Emperor which had not shaken off all care that was needfull, although he would willingly have accepted of peace, conditionally that he might have had that restored which was taken from him (which he attempted, but could not obtaine) after that he had made his accustomed praiers to God, couragionsly returned to the warres. And as this SAIN desired to excell his predecessor SARAVAG Vs. and to recouer what he had loft, without delaying of time, went to meete the Emperor, and defiring to come to a battaile with him, he drew his armie neere vnto his; which wanted neither force nor courage to fight. The next day in the morning (feeing themselues so neere together, they began to set their people in order : but their troupes of either fide were so great, that they therein spent almost one whole day. Whereupon they tooke truce, vntill the next day, to the end to avoide fighting by night: fo refolute was either partie, and so they slept in the same places, A truce for one and in the same order as they were set. The next morning by sunne rising, the high betweene one armie began to moue towards the other, and there began one of the most and the Robloudie and cruell Battailes that hath been in the world, which continued untill manes. a good space afternoone, without any signe of aduantage or victoric of either fide, fighting at equall hand: but by that time the Persians had so oppressed the Romanes, that they began to shew their weaknes, & the Emperor was in feare to haue been overthrowne: but it pleased God miraculously to relieue him, for suddenly fell fo much raine and haile, with fo terrible winde and tempest, beating in the backes of the Romanes, and the faces of the Persians, and did so much trouble

them and put them so out of order, that in a very short space they were broken and overthrowne, and turning their backes they ranne away. And the Empe-TOT HERACLIV'S remained with the victorie, mailter of the field, when he had flaine thirtie thousand of his enemies in the battaile; although with no small losse of his owne people; having obtained two fo great and notable victories against the Infidels. And the Emperor fent to make the same knowne in Constantinople, in Italy, and in all the other prouinces of the Empire; for which every where was made great joy; and in the meane while he himselfe was not idle, but reinforcing his armie, and encouraging his people, he recovered great part of Siria, and Mejopotamia, which he had loft; part in his owne person, and part by his captaines, and he still followed his victorie, untill that the great waters, which by reason of the winter staied him and forced him to returne, and to winter that yeere in the prouince of Albania. And Cosnons King of Persia, ashe was a mightie prince, and his dominion great, so the losse of these two battailes, was not such as to bereage him of meanes againe to make head against his enemie: for gathering together his whole forces, he leuied men of warre, and issuing his treasure, railed a greater and a more mightie armie, then any of the former; and made a prudent and resolute captaine called R AZ AT ENES Generall thereof, who being very valiant, was not afraid to draw neere to the way, where he knew that the Emperor was to passe the next spring. Finally, after many skirmishes and effusion of much blood, and fuch like cafualties of the warre. HERACLIVS putting his whole truft in God, fought to come to a battaile, which the Persian refused not; so as with equall mindes and in a manner, with equall force and armies, two foundrons first began the fight in the morning, and afterwards others, and in the end all, and this battaile continued untill about fun-fet, wherein the Imperialifts, in power and courage furpassing the Persians, constrained them to turne their backes, and to veeld themselves for overthrowne. And RAZATENES as a good captaine, failing in no part of his office, died fighting, for that he would not live being overoutriorowne by the Emperor come, after that many thousands of men were flaine and wounded of the one and their gene- fide and the other. In these three especiall battailes, and in many other of lesse account it is written, that the Emperor himselfe in person, shewed great valour:

The Persians the third time

cofroes abanfled into Per-

Cosrocs made bis fecond fon equall with bim together with

weake, and his forces were fo much diminished, that daring no longer to defend dening wobat that which he had vsurped in Armenia, and Mejopotamia, he abandoned the same; and passing ouer the river Tieris sted into Persia: HERACLIVS also passed that river, and overranne the countrie burning and spoiling great cities. And in this manner conquering the kingdomes of Cosnons and Cosnons not so hardie as to defend the same, but by flight hiding himselfe; for his refuge and defence, in his life time he made his fecond fonne whose name was MEDARSES. against all equitic and reason, equall with himselfe in his kingdome; for he had an elder sonne, a man of greater spirit, and of more discretion, called SIROES, and (as it often happeneth to the wicked) through the meanes whereby he in his king and (as it often nappeneur to the wholes) thought to have defended his kingdome, he loft it, together with his life: for his thought to have defended his kingdome, he loft it, together with his life: for his together with his life: for his containing in G. ill name that he he toft the fame eldest sonne tooke this injurie done to him by his father in so ill part, that he practifed his death, and to be reaue him of both life and kingdome. Towhich purpose he began by letters and secret messengers, to treate with the Emperour,

principally that in this last, he slew with his owne hand, three excellent men

which he encountred in fundrie places of the battaile, befides others which he

By meanes of this victorie, HERACLIV'S grew fo mightie, and Cosnoss fo

flew and wounded of leffe account.

entreating his fauour, and to be at peace with him: in requitall whereof, when he should be established in the kingdome, he promised to yeeld vnto him what he should require, if it were in his power. In conclusion, briefly to set down the composition, they agreed upon these conditions: That he should resigne to the Emperour all those lands and countries which his father and predecessors had vsurped in the provinces of Asia, and all that which they had gotten by conquest in Africa, and all the treasure of his fathers royall house. And that he should resigne the two inuincible fortreffes, which the Persians held in the principall passages of the river Tigris, with the croffe, and the Patriarch which they brought from Ierafalem, and that he should be a perpetuall friend and allie to the Emperour.

This league being concluded, SIROES was so magnanimous, and therewith fo well beloued, that within few daies space, with the aide and fauour of HERAerrys, and fuch forces as he fent him, he gat both his father and his brother into his power, which he apprehended and caused to be slaine; and throughly performedall that which he had agreed vpon with HERACLIVS, and so enjoyed the kingdome in peace, although of leffe power then his father was. And HERA-CITYs returned, leaving all the provinces of the Empire restored and furnished, and all the passages of the river Tigris fortified; the most joyfull and honoured Prince that then was in the world. And being come to Ierusalem, he sent his captaines into Africa, which he wholy recoursed and reduced the fame to his quiet government. This was in the fixt yeere after that he began the warre in his owne perfon and the fixteenth and seuenteenth of his raigne; although in these computations there be euer some difference betweene the authors. When hee came to Ierafalem, he restored ZACHARIAS the Patriarch thereof, and the crosse which had been foureteene yeeres in the power of CosRozs, and came into the citie Heraclius vebearing the same vpon his shoulders, with the greatest toy, seasting, and solemni-fored the tie that could be made: and this restitution of the crosse was so highly esteemed, selem. that it was afterwards folemnized energy yeere upon the foureteenth day of Sep- The exaltation tember, which is called the exaltation of the croffe. In those daies the false Prophet MAHOMET, the deceiver and seducer of the

greatest part of the world, with his illusions and tromperies, in the countrie of A- The fuccesses greatest part or the world, with his intitions and tromperies, in the countrie of A- the falle pro-rabia drew many to his feet, and grew mightie and a tyrant; whom H E RAC L IVS phet Mahomet, might then easily have defeated; but making small account of him, he contented himselfe with the taking of a certaine people from him called Sarazins, which fallely boafted themselves to be descended from SARA, ABRAHAMS wife; which were also called Scenites, and lived in the fields, as the Arabians doe at this day; and giving them pay, the Emperour sent them into other provinces, which at that time feemed to have been a sufficient redresse. And having taken order for his affaires in those quarters, he returned to Constantinople, whither he came with Heracius the greatest triumph that could be made. Herein is some difference: for some came vitioauthors write, that before his going to lerufalem he returned to Constantinople: but umbbant to it importeth not whether were the first; but in the end the Emperour came to conflaminople, repose himselfe in Constantinople, with very great honour and reputation amongst his subjects, and was by all other Kings and Princes at that time much beloued and feared.

In Italy all was in peace with the Lombards in those daies, O D O ALD V & raigning with his mother THEVDOLINDA; and she dying, the subjects making no account of him, for that he was a very childe, denied him their obedience, and choic Arioldys, who was of the bloud royall: and he maintained the peace

Mahomet his

fucceffe.

with the Empire in as ample manner as did OD OALDV and THEY DOLINDA. HERACLIVS having fo good successe in all things, as aforesaid prosperitie (25 ordinarily it worketh in many men) made him proud and careleffe, forgetting God, and those workes and exercises whereby he had attained to that prosperitie. For in steede of prayer and contemplation, he gave himselfe to pleasure, to augurie, fouthfaying and divination, prognofticating things to come, by superfficious came an bere and vnlawfull Arts and meanes; and from one to another fell into herefies: for being seduced by two wicked Prelates, the one called PIBRHV s. Patriarch of Alexandria, and the other a Bithop called CIRVS, he came to beleeve that there was a will onely in Christ, and so consequently he denied the two natures, divine and humane. Neither could the admonitions and letters of Pope Ho NORIVS availe to diffwade him from that herefie, who banished PIRRHY s into Africa. It pleased God to permit in his secret and incomprehensible judgement, that MAHOMET began so to prosper and prevaile in his proceedings, that HERAcrivs began to stand in feare of him, of whom in former time he had made small account: for he had daily newes that he leuied men of warre, which came vnto him as well out of Arabia, as out of Persia; some illuded through his allurements and fuggestions; others to enjoy the great libertie which he gaue them to robbe and steale: for these were the miracles wherewith in the beginning he planted his divilifh fect. And it followed that the Sarazins, which we faid HERAC LIVE had gotten from him, by reason of the Emperours ill pay and entertainment, mutined and went to MAHOMET into Arabia. So as hee went out of Arabia Felix, where he first gathered head, and making himselfe Lord of the three Arabia, went into Egypt, and afterwards into Siria, and into Mesopotamia, and had so good succeffe, that with those Sarazins and fuch other forces as hee could get he resolved to make himselfe King of Persia. Whereto this was a great helpe, for as much as that kingdome was much wasted and weakened, as well by civil diffention, as through the great flaughter made therein by HERACLIVS: and besides this, the

> There raigned at that time in Persia, a great man whose name was HORMISDA. allied to the forepassed Kings: for SIROBS (who was HERACLIVS his friend) raigned but one yeere in that kingdome, and after him his sonne ADHESSER O-

inhabitants of meere lightnes revolted to MAHOMET.

ther fo long time onely, By the death of which two, HORMISD A attained to the kingdome, but not in peace or without great tumults and contradictious. Arthat time MAHOMET marched towards Perlia With his Sarazins, and much other people, against whom came Horm is D A, and they two fought a very great battaile, wherein HORMISDAWAS ouerthrowne and flaine. Yet some write that MAHO-MET was first ouerthrowne. This onely battaile, and the illusion and deceit of his fect and fuperstitious religion, brought all fia vnder his obedience, together with all Africa, Babylon, and all the other provinces subject to the mightie kings of Persia. And he wholy subuerted that Empire, so as from that time forwards it had not any title of any kingdome, but all those nations lost their names, and from thenceforth were called Sarazins, and Mahometists, after their false Prophet and leader. Whereas in truth they ought to have been called Agarenes Ismaelites: for MAHOMET descended from AFRAHAM, by the way of AGAR a bondwoman, and his fonne I s M A E L. The Emperor vinderstanding of these victories, applied not himselfe to result the course therof, with such magnanimitie as he ought to have done; notwithstanding that he knew that hee returned into Siria and Palestina with a determination to take Iersusalem: but hee sent thither to fetch from

thence the croffe of CHRIST only, & to bring it to Conflantinople, from whence afterwards in processe of time it was brought to Rome. MAHOMET the came and tooke many great cities in Siria, wherein he found small resistance, and amongst them the citie of Ierusalem, publishing himselfe every where to be the Prophet of God. Yet some write, that lerusalem was not taken by MAHOMET, but by his succeffors, after that he was dead : but it importeth not greatly whether it were taken by him or the others. Within few daies after thele victories, MAHOMET deceased, being of the age of two and fortie yeeres: but leauing disciples of his wic- Mahomet. kednes, his feet and superstition died not, nor tooke any end, but continueth vntill this day, and will continue untill it shall please God for his mercies sake to cure this contagion. For his fucceffor remained a great Arabian Captaine, called C A- calipha Malo-LIPHA; and him others succeeded, which conquered Africa, and other countries. mets succession

peace with the Lombards; as it is oftentimes seene that forraine peace causeth

civill warre; fo MAVRICE CARTVLARIVS who was Prefident of Rome, making

fmall account of the Emperor, or of his Exarch I s ANCIVS, rebelling made him-

as in the processe of this historie shall be expressed. While these things passed in the East; in Italy, notwithstanding that there was

felfe a tyrant: against whom Is and Ivs came from Rauenna, and after many aduentures apprehended him, with many other his confederates; and carrying him to Rome smote off his head; and shortly after this Is ANCIV's died: And the Empe-TOUT HERACLIVS fent a Nobleman called THE ODORE GALLIOPA, to be go- Theodorus uernour of Italy. But none of all these things could move the minde of HERA-CLIVS to leuie any armie against the Sarazins, hee gaue himselfe so much to his pleasure and licentious liuing, marrying in his old age with his brothers daughter, which was a young damfell called MARTINA: and so it pleased God that vpon a day he was taken with the dropfie, whereof he died fuddenly, when hee had The death of raigned thirtie yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord 641. Others fay that hee died of a difease called Priapismus, a straunge sicknes, and such as with modestie cannot be 641. expressed. He left behind him two sonnes, and one daughter, which he had by his first wife: his daughters name was EPIPHANIA; one of his sonnes was called HERACLIVS; the other CONSTANTINE, whom he made C & SAR, when hee went to the warres in the East against the Persians. By his second wife he had one fonne, a child of ten yeeres old, called HERACLIVS also. And so ended this Emperour, of whom it may be faid that two Emperors might well have been made; one very good, and the other passing ill, considering the contrarietie in his actions.

At what time as the Emperour HERACLIVS died, the Empire of the East was much decaied: for all the prouinces, of Siria, Mesopotamia, Egypt, and Arabia were in the power of the Infidels. In Italy, THEODORE GALLTOPA Was governour, and in Lombardy, through the death of ARIOLDVS, ROTARIVS Was king. The Slauons possessed Illyricum, and the Hunnes and Bauarians held Hungarie, Baniere, and Austrich. In Spaine raigned the Gothes, and the French prospered in France: and in Germany fundrie other Princes. So as the Empire contained Thracia, the prouinces of Gracia, the Iles of Sicilia and Sardinia, and the greatest part of Italy in Europe: And in Asia, Armenia, Asia the lesse, Cilicia, Pamphilia, Galacia, Bythinia, Cappadocia, and other provinces therein, with all Africa, which I have fet downe of purpole, to the end that the reader may the better understand what shall be faid hereafter.

The originall of the Saragins and their Jucceffe.

prouince of Cappadocia in Asia the lesse. Also PIRRHVs the Patriarch which came the Empire, be from banishment out of Africa, and came to intrude himselfe into these counfels, died likewife, as an heretical Wolfe clad in shepheards rayment; and in his place was chosen P AVL, who in the end proued like to his predecessor. Which befell in the yeere of our

Lord fixe hundred foure and fortie.

ther did, or that passed in his time; fauing that he gaue good signes and shewes PETER the hereticall Patriarch of Constantinople. The Emperor Constan-TINE being thus wickedly made away; the murtheresse MARTINA, with such fauour and aide as the procured, made her fonne HERACLIANY's Emperour. brother to him whom the had poisoned, being of the age of eleuen yeeres; and cannot divine ought, saving that in this yeere the Sarazins tooke the citie of ·Cesaria, which they had besieged the space of seuen yeeres; and therein slew seauen thousand souldiers of the Empire. The Senate and nobilitie ioyning with Constans, sonne of the deceased Constantine, and Nephew of the Emperor HERACLIVS, made him Emperor; apprehending MARTINA and her some HERACLIANUS: and so ended the voluckie and infortunate raigne of those two brothers, which scarcely merit to be accounted amongst the Em-

having first his fire ber tongae.

475

Anne Dom.

### THE LIFE OF CONSTA TINE THE THIRD OF THAT

· NAME, AND THREESCORE AND FIVE ROMANE EMPEROR: AND of his brother HERACLIANVS.



no open contradiction that might hinder his eldeft fonne.

N the Historie of the lives of the two sonnes of the Emperour Heraclivs, Pavivs Diaconvs and Beda feeme to diffent from the other Historiographers; first placing the Empire of HERACLIANVS, who was yonger then CONSTANTINE, and son of his second wife MAR-TINA; but I follow the opinion of the other authors. The Emperor HERAGLIVS being dead and buried, there was

borne of his first wife EVDOXIA which died in childbed of this CONSTAN-TINE, (which CONSTANTINE had a young man to his sonne called CON-STANS) from obtaining the Empire: aswell for that he was made C = s AR in his fathers time, as also for that in right he ought to have it, being his fathers eldest sonne and of full age; and also for the hope which they conceived that he would proue a good prince. He was then prefently accepted and crowned with great ioy and folemnitie, although to the great discontentment and griefe of his

THE



### THE LIFE OF CONSTANS THE SECOND OF THAT NAME.

AND THREESCORE AND SIXE ROMANE EMPEROVR.





THe making of CONSTANS Emperour (whom some call CONSTANTINE) by the Senate of Conflantinople (which we may call Romane; ) and the apprehension of his vncle HERACLIANUS, of whom we now left writing, was all at one inftant: and the great wickednes vsed by MARTINA in poisoning his father, made the raigne of the sonne more firme and affured. But Constant proved not to be fuch as they hoped of him, and as in deede was needfull for the

present estate of the Empire; for he was infected with the Arrian Heresie; and concerning the affaires of the East, he contented himselfe to make head against MAHOMETS fuccessors; by placing garrisons in the passages of Cilicia, to keepe them from entring into Asia the lesse; and so they remained Lords of those prouinces which they had gotten in the East. Pope THEODORE vnderstanding that PAVL the new Patriarch of Constantinople held some erronious opinions of the Christian faith, wrote vnto him certaine louing monitorie letters, perswading him to amendment, and to reduce himselfe to the truth. But when he perceiued his labour to be in vaine, he proceeded otherwise against him, and depriuing him of his dignitie, commaunded him to be banished : but the new Empeyor would not permit it, but rather shewed himselfe to be of the same opinion; which made a generall confusion enery where; for the head being sicke, the rest

of the members ill execute their office. In Constantinople and in Gracia, the catholike Christians were much troubled with the new heretikes; for that the Emperor tooke their part; and in Asia, they held warres with the Mahometicall Sarazins. In Italy, although there were peace with the Lombards, through the good gouernment of the Exarch THEODORVS, and the care and endeuour of the Pope, the diuell after his accustomed manner fowed tares among the good seede, which was; that by the meanes of some of his disciples, he perswaded ROTHARIVS King of the Lombards to leane to the infirmitie of his auncestors, which was the Arrian herefie; and the more earnest the catholike Christians were in resisting the same, with so much the greater obstinacie he placed in euery citie an Arrian Bishop, where before had been catholike Bishops. And Pope MARTIN who suc- A councell held thop, where before had been catholike billiops. This Pope Make I'm who lite in the time of ceeded Pope Theodore, against the new heresie held by the Emperor and Pope Martin. some prelates in the East; affembled a counsell of one hundred and fine Bishops; wherein they which held those opinions, were condemned and proclaimed heretikes, and he depriued the faid Patriarch and fundrie Bishops of their prelacie and dignities : wherewith the Emperor Constans was highly offended, and did that which hereafter shall be declared. On the other side, the Pope by all meanes fought a reformation in the Lombards, which he could not effect fo long as ROTHARIVS lived; for hemade warreagainst the Imperialists, after that they had lived many yeeres together in peace: which warre was very re- vvare: befolutely begun with great preparation by ROTHARIVS of his part; and by the tweene the Exarch THEODORE of the other partie. And the Exarch comming from R. Limbards and senna drew his forces to an head in the citie of Bologna; for now the cities of Italy by reason of their long peace and rest, were growne rich and populous; and R o-THARIVS leuied no leffe an armie in the citie of Parma; and the one taking his way against the other, they came to joyne neere the citic of Modena: where (as SIGIBERTY: and PAVLYS DIACONYS doe report) after some encounters and skirmishes, they fought a very cruell battaile; wherein the Romanes were ouerthrowne, and seauen thousand of them slaine; and the Exarch THEODOR The villerie of escaped by flight. RoTHARIVS after that he had obtained this victorie, came to the Lumbards. the coast of Genoa; and assaulted and tooke many cities, which vntill then he could not doe; and so marched victorious, untill that THEODORE the Exarch gathering together those which were scattered, leuied a new armie: wherewith he entertained the enemie, and victualled his frontier garrisons. The Emperor CONSTANS vnderstanding hereof, tooke no care to relieue his Exarch, but being very much offended with Pope MARTIN, he put THEODORE out of the gouernment of Italy; and in his place fent another called O LIMPIVS (asvery an heretike as himselse) giving him direction, to seeke to bring all the Bishops in Italy to hold of his opinion; and if that he could not bring it to passe, that then he should vie his best meanes to get the Pope into his hands, or to kill him. With which commission and resolution being arrived in Italy, he departed from Ranonna, and tooke his way towards Rome, vnder colour to goe to see the Pope; accompanied with many fouldiers and men of warre; first procuring an agreement and truce with the Lombards. And being come to Rome he fought how to apprehend the Pope; and being vnable to effect the same, he agreed with a desperate venturous bold souldier to kill him; but it tooke no effect.

In the time that these things passed in Italy, the principall insidels (MANG-MET's fuccessors) were growen so mightie, that they now contented not themselues with Egypt, and those provinces which they held in the East; but prepa-

ring a great fleete in Alexandria in Egypt, they inuaded the Ile of Rhedes, and tooke Spoile made by it, and afterwards other Ilands in those Seas; and from thence came spoiling and robbing through all the East Seas, even to the He of Sucilia, wherein they tooke fome townes upon the Sea fide; and landing their armie, burnt and spoiled the countrie in the maine land: whereof when O LIMPIVS the gouernour or Exarch of Italy was advertised, within whose government Sicilia was also contained; comming first to an agreement with the Pope, he tooke his way towards Naples, whither hee had commaunded to come, and to be brought, the greatest number of men and ships that could be gotten from all parts of Italy : and finding himselfe fufficiently furnished, he went in quest of his enemies, resolute and in very good order: and they understanding of his comming, affembled themselves, with a determination to fight with him, which he refused not: And so, so soone as the two Nauies came within fight the one of the other, they fet themselves in order, and each Generall animated and encouraged his people, and the fight began with great furie, and was maintained with fuch resolution, that many thousands of men of the one and other fide were flaine. And notwithstanding that in the end the victorie appeared to encline to the Imperialists; yet before they could obtaine it. they had loft fo many men and ships, that although that the Exarch might have driven the enemies out of the Iland, and have recovered what was loft; yet hee was so beaten and distressed, that it seemed not that he had overcome. And (as the Historians affirme) he endured so great trauaile, and was so much tired in the battaile before and after it, that he fell so extremely sicke, that within few daies he dicd.

The death of the Exarch Olimpius.

> Theodore fent into Italy.

The death of the Lombards.

Pope Alartin apprehended and fent to Conftantinople.

Pope Martin died in exile.

The death of Arriopertus king of the Lombards.

The Emperour Constant vnderstanding of this victorie; by reason of the discontenument betweene them fought the destruction of the Pope; and to that end gaue the charge of the government agains to THEODORE, from whom he had taken the fame. In the end he fent THE ODORE into Italy, with a fecret charge and commaundement, to doe that which he afterwards performed, and I will difcouer: and for his confort and companion therein, another aduenturous fellow whose name was PAVLV'S PELLARIVS. In this time died ROTARIVSKing of Rotaris king of the Lombards; and another called RODOALD vs succeeded him; who shortly after falling in loue with a principall mans wife, and being taken with her, was 1 dus succeeded. Slaine by her husband; and ARRIOPERTVS succeeded him. All which observed the peace with the lands of the Empire. And the new Exarch THEODORE comming into Italy, and with him his friend and companion, was very well received; and afterwards in Rome whither hee came: for from the first time of his being thereathe people were well content with his gouernment. And he remaining certaine daies in Rome with his people, concealing his purpose, went one day to the palace, as though he had gone to visite the Pope, and seising thereon, apprehended him, and deliuered him to his affociate PAV 1, who prefently departed with him towards Rauenna, and speedily took the Sea and went to Constantinople, where the Emperour held him for certaine daies prisoner, and then banished him to Chersona in Pontus, which was in the confines of the Empire; where he afterwards died, when hee had been Bishop of Rome sixe yeeres. A little before this died the king of the Lombards ARRIOPERTY s, who (as I faid) fucceeded RODOALDYS. This ARRIOFERTY's left behinde him two fonnes, which were but young, the one called Pertheritys, and the other Gundiberys; between which (each desiring to be absolute) there grew diffention and discord: and GV NDIBERTYS which was the younger rose with Milan; the elder brother, which ought to have

been King, remaining in Paula, then the head of that kingdome. When this came to the knowledge of one GRIMOALDVS, a great captaine of the Lombards, and Duke and gouernour of Benenent, and other townes; he leaving his sonne Ro-MOALDY S with a good garrison therein, came to the citie of Paina; which he entred by force of armes, and thence draue out the young King PERTHERITYS, made time of and tooke fuch order in all the rest, that the two brothers were driven to abandon the Lombards.

The Emperor Constant in Conflantinople, furmizing that by meanes of the

warres which the Lombards made amongst themselves, he comming with any

their countries and he remained in their place a mightie King.

great power might drive them out of Italy; which his defire he determined to put in execution, and to that effect made his sonne Constantine his companion The Emperor in the Empire, to the end to remaine in Constantinopl. And so preparing a great his some con-

fleete by Sea, and a great armie by land, he came into Italy to the citie of Taren- flantine bis tum; where landing his people, he marched therewith to joyne with the ordinarie companies which THEODORE commaunded. And GRIMOALDVS the tyrant King of the Lombards (more like a wife and prouident Prince, then one that was any way fearefull or a coward) had by that time lenied all the power that he was able to make, both to defend himselfe and to offend his enemie. After many aduentures in this warre, the Emperour went to befiege RIMOALDVs the sonne of GRIMOALDVs in Benement, and did put him and the citie to great diffresse: and shewing himselfe very valiant, he published abroad that he came to restore Italy to her former libertie, and that he would againe make Rome the seate of the Empire: alleaging that it was greater reason to honour the mother, then the daughter. Whether this were fained, or in earnest, I know not; but I am sure the Kings sonne being besieged, sent to his father for aide, who (as I said) was not constant in careleffe thereof, but daily engroffed his forces, to the end to come to fight with Italy. the Emperour. But as he staying longer then Romonibors would for so was the sonne called)he wrote certaine pitifull letters to his father, by one which was his nurse, who was husband to her which had nursed him at her breast : whom the father meeting upon the way fent backe againe to certifie his sonne of what he had feene, and to tell him that hee came to vnfet him. This man feeking to get into the citie, was apprehended by the Emperours fouldiers; and being brought into his presence, and examined, and his reports found conformable to that whereof he was otherwise aduertised; the Emperour being in great feare resolued not to abide his comming: but defiring first to doc some notable exploit, whereby he thought to have taken the citie, it happened contrary to his expectation; which I have thought good to relate for an example to others which are feruants and vaffals to Kings and Princes: which was thus. Constans promifing great matters to his nurse, requested him to go to the walles; and that calling

the befieged Prince, hee should aduise and counsell him to give vp the citie; for

that his father was not able to relieue him. And herewithall hee threatned the

nurse, that if he did not so, he would presently cause him to be slaine. The nurse

feeing that there was no other way left for him to encourage the befieged; fai-

ning a desire to satisfie the Emperour, promised to performe his commaund.

Whereupon the Emperour the next night following, commaunded him to be

brought neere to the wall, with a guard which held him fast bound; and he com-

ming thither, called alowd to those within, willing them to call ROMOALDVS to

him, for that there was a man which much loued him, defired to speake with him.

ROMOALDYS fo foone as he was aducrtifed hereof came to the wals, and with a

lowdvoice asked who would speak with him. His nurse knowing him well by his freech and he him also, answered; It is the nurse which bringeth you an answere The lovalite of from your father; who willeth you to be of good cheere, for this day he arrineth at the river Satrico, and within these three daies will be here with an infinite army: I can fay no more, for I am in the enemies hands which alreadie begin to murder me: I recommend vnto thee my wife and children. Hauing faid these words. those which were within the citie were therewith greatly encouraged; and those without were so much despited, that they presently killed him by the Emperours commaundement: who not daring to stay any longer (to his great shame and dishonour)raised his siege from before Beneuent, and tooke his way with his army towards Naples. GRIMOALDVs being come with a very great armic fent an excellent captaine called VITOLA, with the best and most choice men of the armie to pursue the Emperour: and hee marching a great pace, ouertooke himat the passage of a river called Caloro: And the Emperour being alreadie past with the greatest part of his armie, VIIO LA charged his arrierguard, and there began a fierce battaile, wherein the Emperors people (for that they could not be feconded by reason of the river) were overthrowne, and the most part of them slaine: and so the Emperour was driven to retire to Naples with both losse and dishonor. And being to depart from Naples to Rome, hee commaunded a Captaine of his whose name was SABVRVs, borne in Naples, that he with twentie thousand chofen men should stay behinde to guard that citie and prouince: who more hardie then wife (the Emperour being gone) with the armie aforefaid, drew so neere to the Lombards, that the Kings sonne, ROMOALDVs desiring his father to give him leave, came with his forces to fight with him; in fuch fort that with equal desire of both the captaines the two armies ioyned, with Ensignes displaied; and The victorie of after great flaughter of men of the one and other fide, the Lombards obtained the victorie, and following the chace flew SABVEVEVE the Generall, and many of his people. The Emperor with all his troupes was folenmely received into Rome. as well by VITILIANYS who then was Pope, as by the citizens and inhabitants thereof; but he remained but twelve daies therein : and when he had visited the whole citie, not as an Emperor and their Lord, but rather like an enemie, he commaunded to be borne out of the citie all the best statues of Marble and mettall, of most excellent and curious workmanship, and much gold and filuer, and other rare things: all which being brought aboord his ships and gallies, he commaunded them presently to depart; and he himselfe from Rome Went to Naples, without making any prouision against the Lombards: by reason whereof they became more mightie then before. The Emperour then came to Naples, purposing to passe ouer into Sicilia; and being past with much people he went to the citie of Siricufa, now called Sarragoffa, having (to no purpose) all his armie together in armes, as though he had meant to have done some great exploit therewith; so as men greatly suspected it, and were of sundrie opinions. But he did it to no other purpose, then vnder colour to repaire the harmes which he had received, with excessive greedines to gather the rents and services of althe provinces of the Empire; and to impose new taxes and tolls in Africa, in Italy, in the Iles of Sardinia and Sicilia, and in all the rest in his subjection: which as it vsually happeneth vnto all Princes which doe fo, without iust cause or reason, made him extremely hated through all the Empire, and was afterwards the cause of his death. He remaining thus in the Ile of Sicilia, continually feafting and banketting, neuer leaving to re-

quire loanes and imprests, and to lay new impositions vpon the people, ransom-

ing and pilling them through all the Iland; and in Africa and Italy alfo; in fuch confiant flaine manner, that being hated of all men, the Sicilians aduentured vpon a day (he being in a bath) to kill him; by the direction and commaundement of a captaine in a bath. of his called MICENCIVS, or as others write, MEZENCIVS and MAGVENcivs, a bold audacious fellow and well beloued: more for the constitution of his body (which was very comely, tall, and well proportioned) then for his valour or nobilitie. This happened in the seauen and twentie yeere of his raigne, and in the yeere of our Lord, fixe hundred fixtie and eight. Constant left be- Anno Dom. hinde him three sonnes; Constantine who remained in Constantinople, for 668. CESAR and gouernour, HERACLIVS and TIBERIVS. About this time in Italy dved King GRIMOALDVS, whom we but now faid to have made warres with the Emperor: and he being dead, thither came out of France, whither before he fled for refuge, PARTHARIS OF PARTHERITYS King ARRIOPERTYS his fonne, whom GRIMOALDVS had dispossed and throwne out of Pauia, as we haue alreadie recited.

### THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TINE THE FOVRTH OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND SEÁVEN ROMANE EMPEROR.





He Emperor Constans (as I haue faid) was flaine in Sarra. gossa in Sicilia, and so soone as he was dead MEZENCIVS who caused him to be flaine, or (after some) which himselfe killed him; with the fauour of those which affisted him in that action tooke vpon him the title of Emperor, and for the present, all Merensus

the rest of the people of Sicilia approued and confirmed the fame; more for the defire of innovations which are ever pleafing, then for any good liking they had to his person. Whereof the Emperors son Constanting was soone aduertised, who then remained in Constantinople, and held the name of Emperor, and had done so euer since that his father departed from thence,

CONSTANTINE THE FOURTH. and hee was therewith so much perplexed and in such feare, considering the strangenes of the accident, that he for the time not onely had not the heart to doe ought in reuenge of his fathers death, but was also in feare to have loft the name of Emperor, which he then held; and therewithall scarcely durst to maintaine whathe possessed in Gracia. And the like in amanner befell THEODORE the Exarch or gouernor of Italy: for notwithflanding that he had a good number of men of warre, well trained, and of good experience; yet he durft not feeme to be greatly grieued for the death of his soueraigne Lord; neither to attempt ought against MEZENCIVS. Whereof the cause was that all the people greatly rejoyced at his death; for he was generally abhorred of all men for his couetoufnes. And in this confusion in all things passed some daies; all men expecting the fuccesse of the new tyrant; not daring to declare themselves either for the one or other parties for he had with him many good men of warre. But as his entrie was by treason, and grounded upon an ill foundation; and in him were neither the vertues nor merites requisit in an Emperor; the captaines and men of warre began to murmur at what he had done, and to wish his death; which was speedely published enery where, and gaue occasion to all men to take heart, and to feeke reuenge for the treason & murther committed vpon the person of the dead Emperor Constans. The first were the Italians; and so Theodore the Exarch began to stirre, leaving and mustring forces, therewith to passe into Sicilia, as he did; and the companies which were in the prouinces of Africa did the like; whereto the peace with the Sarrazins and other nations, was a great helpe; for it feemeth, that Constans being in Sicilia fo accompanied with men of warre, they durst not make warre against him. So great forces comming into Sicilia against Mazancivs, and he being slenderly supported by his owne people, was in short space taken and slaine; and many of his friends which were with him, were taken and carried prisoners to Constantinople, to the young Emperor Co N-STANTINE; who presently after this victorie began enery where to be obeied and held for Emperor, and tooke vpon him the minde and courage of a prince. Somealfo write that he went into Sicilia. And notwithstanding that afterwards he proued a good and perfect Emperour; yet in his beginning he committed a most cruell fact, which was; to put to death his younger brothers, thereby to be affured that they should not seeke to depose him: and some also write that he caused the toppes of their noses to be cut off: but the truth is, that he commaunded them to be flaine; and so he became Lord of the whole Empire, without any difficultie. But the Sarrazins Mahometifts, and PHADALAS OF SOPHIAS their King, perceiuing the hurlie burlie, and the fit oportunitie to inuade the Empire, by reason of the before recited accidents in Sicilia, and also for that it seemed that Constantine was not yet firmely fettled in his throne; they the most closely and couertly that might be, rigged vp a mightie nauie at Alexandria in Egypt; with a determination to inuade Thracia, and Gracia: and if the diffention happened which they expected, then to take those prouinces: but afterwards as matters proued better in Constantinople then was hoped for they altered their determination, and inuaded Sicilia, which was left ill provided of men of war: and they came with such force and power, that they entered the citie of Sarragossa, and some other townes; where robbing and spoiling, they continued certaine daies; and it feeming to them an hard matter to hold those places, carrying away with them an infinit number of prisoners and great richeste of gold, filuer, and other iewels; they returned to Alexandria. In the Constantinopolitane commen-

The Sarazins

Mezencius

Conflantine

flaine.

taries I finde this warre written more a large; where it is affirmed, that they first made warre in the coast of Thracia and Gracia, the space of many daies, and tooke many places; and that in the end being repelled thence by the Emperor, they went to Sicilia, fo writeth Zonar as: but after the first manner, writeth Pavlvs DIACONVS, an author neere to that time, and afterwards others of leffe antiquitie. I sometimes take the paines to set downe the fundrie opinions of the authors (although it shall not be needfull alwaies to doe so;) to the end to satisffie the curious readers, and that they shall not condemne my historic, finding therein contrarie or different from what they shall reade in some others. But although that I do not alwaies thus let them rest assured that I follow an author. which writeth it as I relate it; for in the diuerlitie of opinions, I follow that which feemeth to be most true and probable, weighing the many conjectures; and when I cannot or defire not to doe fo. I briefly fet downe both opinions, as now I have done. That which to me seemeth to be the most certaine, is, that they first inuaded Sicilia, and did as I recounted; and afterwards raising greater power through their successe and victorie, there ensued that which these authors alleadge, which is, that they along time made war in the coast of Gracia, and in the confines of Conflantinople; wherein they tooke many places; out of which by the diligence and valour of the Emperor, they were driven by force of armes: this warre lasted fixe yeeres. And all authors affirme that Constanting herewith not contented, fent a great armie by land against the Mahometicke Sarrazins, into the prouince of Soria, which is the auncient Syria, which fought with all their whole power, and the Christians obtained the victorie; and of the infidels were flaine thirtie thousand. And they were brought to such distresse, that victors of the their prince or King, whose name was MAVIAS, sent to entreate the Emperor christians afor peace, offering very profitable and honorable conditions; and thereby bound gainft the Sara-

himselfe to pay veerly to the Emperor, a great number of pounds or markes of golde; and for the prefent, to release many thousand prisoners, which he held Manies King captines: whereupon the peace was graunted and confirmed by Constant fourth to the TINE, to ease himselfe of that trouble; and to the end to apply himselfe to the Emperor conreformation of fome other matters concerning the Christian faith; for he was fantine for concerning what he ought to beleeue, a very good Christian. This was conclusively

ded in the tenth yeere of his raigne.

But there presently ensued another trouble and a warre equal to the formerwhich was, that a certaine people of the prouinces of Scithia (the fountaine of many others before mentioned) called Bulgarians; not those which I hereto- vvares before spake of, but others a new, of the same name and stocke came downe into tweenethe Thracia, being in numberaboue one hundred thousand persons; and they be-the Bulgarians, gan to make warre in the Empire, with a defire to take fome good countrie, wherein they might dwell and inhabit, as many other nations before them had done. For the Northeren countries are barren and ill inhabited; yet by reason of the cold, men multiplie and encrease in them exceedingly, as we daily see by experience, and PAVLVS DIACONVS noteth the same. The furie wherewith this people came, was so great, that they did infinite harme; and they made themselues Lords of some especiall countries; which being seene and perceived by the Emperor (in whom there wanted not the minde of a valorous prince) he railed his forces, and in his owne person went to defend his subjects; and the war for some daies space was very sharpe and cruell; and the Bulgarians sought to fight with him in the plaine field, which he (prefuming much of his people, as a

taile was exceeding terrible. But it feemeth that through fome his ill direction, or

his people flaine, and he himselfe was constrained to vie the common remedie of

those which are ouercome, which is to flie, by that meane to escape and to saue

his life. And as in the battaile he had done what he was able; so afterwards ga-

thering his people together, he retired with great good order and difcretion.

And it pleased God that at what time, as it seemed, and when it was also seared,

that the Bulgarians would have brought the Empire into great distresse, meerely

of their owne accord they fent to the Emperour, and fuing for peace defired him

to give them some place wherein they might inhabite and they would become

Abattaile be- valiant Prince) refused not; and they fought with banners displaied, and the battrivcene Conname and the Bulgarians, the great force of his aduerfaries, the Emperour was ouerthrowne, and many of wuberein he vvas ouerthrouvne and put to flight.

fue to Coustantine for peace.

The province to the Bulga-

VVonderfull alteration of Jialy.

A Councell held in Constantinople.

his friends, yea and even his subjects: whereto he gave eare, considering his preof Service street fent estate, with a very good will. And so treating of the matter for a certaine space to the purpose, the province of the lower Missa was affigned vnto them. fore called Bulgaria: wherein they have quietly and peaceably inhabited yntill that of late yeeres they were subdued by the Turkes; a new fcourge and plague to the Christians, after MAHOMET. While these things passed in Sicilia, in Gracia, and in Asia, which was the space of tenne veeres; in Italy although there were peace betweene the Lombards and Italians, yet there failed not other miseries and persecutions: And there happened fo great and fo many tempests and alterations in the avre-that it seemed that the foure elements had conspired against mankinde: for the windes were so furious and violent, that they ouerthrew many buildings, and rooted vp many the elements in trees by the rootes; and the raine likewise was so great and tempessuous. that it destroyed all their tillage, as well for breadcome as all other kind of hearbs and feedes: And therewith fell an infinite number of thunderbolts, and fires from heaven, which flew a great number of people: and the earth with thefe fo great alterations became so corrupt, that there ensued many very contagious diseases. Wherfore the people repenting them of their sinnes, made their prayers and supplications to God, that it might please him to cease these so great calamities: but yet the reliques thereof remained a long time after. At this time died Pope DE ODATV s, and by reason of his death the seate was void source moneths: and making a new election in Rome, Donvs onely fo called, was chosen Pope, who was held for a Saint, and lived two yeeres and a halfe (as faith PLATINA). In his time THEODORE Archbishop of Rauenna wholy submitted himselfe to the Church of Rome, whereas some of his predecessors, with the favour of the Exarchs or gouernours had before him denied the same. Others (amongst which is BLONDVS) affirme, that this happened in the time of his fuccessor AGATHVS. who lived two yeeres and a halfe in which time, although but short, he treated with the Emperour concerning a generall councell to be held, principally against the herefie of the Monothelites, which was dispersed ouer all the Churches of Gracia, which confounded the two natures in Christ, humane and dinine; affirming that in him was but a will onely. And so for this time the Greeke Church remained conjoyned with the Latine: but it pleafed God afterwards to fuffer it to come (as wee now fee) into the power and fubication of Infidels. In this councel were many other matters handled concerning the reformation of the church and the ceremonies thereof: and this was the fixt of those Councels, which for their excellencies were so renowned and famous, and among the rest called yniuerfall. About this time Pope L z o the second ordained the Paxe to be given in

the Church, which is observed in the Church of Rome vntill this day. And he being dead, BENEDICT the second succeeded him, with whose election the Emperour was fo well pleafed, that after that he had confirmed the fame, he renounced the right and custome which the Emperours held to confirme the election of the Popes: to the end that from thencefoorth, fo foone as by the Clergie they were cholen they might vie their authoritie, without any neede of the Emperors confirmation, or of their Exarchs or gouernours, as of long time they had vied.

CONSTANTINE living in this prosperitie, had peace with the Sarazins; and the provinces of Africa, and the Ile of Sicilia were in quiet, and fo was Italy : for the Lombards being at variance and diffention among themselves, very firmely maintained the peace with the lands of the Empire: and the estates of Gracia with the territorie of Constantinople, were all in very quiet subjection. But this good forme and manner of gouernment was disturbed by the Emperors death, which shortly after ensued; when he had raigned seventeene yeeres, and had protected and defended the Empire which he enherited, with inflice and equitie, reforming errors in the Christian religion, as aforesaid. And thus it was, that falling grieuously sicke in Constantinople, and the incurablenes of his disease being in short space bruted abroad through the world (as vsually it happeneth) in some parts his death was published before that he was dead: whereof GIZET King of the Sarazins, whom they called A M V R A T B s, being advertised, and belecuing the same to be true, with all haste levied a very great armie both by Sea and land, which he praces made fent from Egypt, and conquered all the coast of Africa to Carthage : Wherein, by by Gizet King reason of the Emperours death, he found no sufficient resistance. The warres of of the Saragus

Africa proceeding in this manner, the Emperor died before he was able to prouide for the fame, as he would have done if he had lived. He departed out of this world in the yeere of our Lord, fixe hundred fourescore and fixe; his wives name was A NASTASIA, by whom he had lawfull heires; of which Ivstinian and I v s T I N fucceeded him in the Empire. as prefently shall be declared.

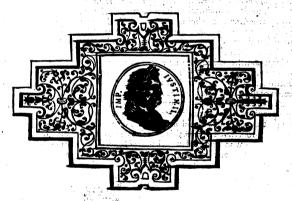
The death of the Emperous

Conftanting. Anne Dem.

THE

### THE LIFE OF IVSTIN THE SECOND OF THAT NAME.

AND THREESCORE AND EIGHT ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.



lis Emperour attained to his dignitie being very young: in the beginning of his raigne he made warres against she Turkes, and constrained them to fue for peace : which for that he maintained not, it so happened that be losing a battaile in the second warre, was driven to see to them for peace: and returning bome with diferace was deposed from his Empire, having his nose and his eares cut off: and in his place Leoncius a Captaine of his was made Emperour. Afterwards another of his Captaines, whose name was Tiberius, rose against Leoncius, and deposed him from the Empire, and condemned him to perpetual imprisonment,

with a determination to have put him to death with greater torment. Which Tiberius was likewife drinen out of the Empire by Instinian : who with the aide of his father in law the King of Banaria, returned and reconcred the Empire; wherein vsing extreme crueltie against the fancorites of Teberius and Leoncius: finally mouing warres against the Bulgarians, wherein he had but little good fortune, he was compelled to returne home, to his great shame and dishonour. And beginning to stand in feare of one Philippicus, whom Tiberius had banished, and seeking meanes to kill him; Philippicus arose against him, and being made Emperour came to a battaile, wherein both Instimian and his some Tiberius miserably ended their tragedie, represented in this scene of the world; with such varietie of fortune, that never any other Emperour was so much tossed and turmoiled as be was : and gonerned the Empire at both times fixe and twentie yeeres.



T is a rule in Rhetorike, yfed and observed by great Orators, A rule in Rhein the beginning of what they purpose to treate of, whi- torike. ther in writing, or pleading; to procure the attention, and willing audience of their hearers, or readers: which is principally done when they extoll or magnific that which they haue to fay; fignifying to them that it shall be very agreeable or profitable: for with the defire to know fome great matter, or moued with the greedines of the profit, or allu-

red with the hope of the delight and contentment which is promifed them, they attentiuely heare, or willingly reade what is proponed: yet the author alwaies ought to take good heed that he performe what he promise, and that in his speech

he come not short of the expectation held of him.

Inow comming to write the life of the Emperour IVSTINIAN the second, fonne of the Emperour Constanting the fourth; with an imagination to be found true in what I shall say, and that he which shall reade the same shall not be deceived, doe entreate the reader to be attentive. And although I tell not wonders and maruellous things happened in the heavens and in the earth; yet truly hee which with attention shall reade the historie of fifteene yeeres following, shall fee and understand a pleasant and strange comedie, which fortune, or (to say better)the world represented in those times. The principall and chiefe parts whereof we may fay, were acted by the person of Ivstinian; who sometimes as an Julinian his Emperour, and fometimes as a private man, entred upon the stage: I may well affi. fay fo, for that he was twice chosen and obeyed, and other twice deprined and bereaued of his Empire: fo that it seemed that he went in and out, making a thew upon the theater of the world: and with him other two or three Emperors or tyrants, which were in his time: as LEONCIVS, TIBERIVS, and PHILIPPIcvs: which like comedians or actors in a tragedy did nothing but put off and on their maskes: for fomtimes you should see them come in with a nose, and fomtimes noselesse: sometimes by force of armes, and sometime by fauour; the one supplanting the other. Finally, I say that in my opinion, this historic seemeth to be as an old wives tale, or a fained fable, only to depaint some great adventures, or great misfortunes, it being for certain a most true historie: from which may be drawne a notable example of the inconstancie and incertaintie of the estate of this life, and lightly to account thereof; and to the end that men leave to toyle and to take such care for the obtaining of riches and soueraigntie; and that they grow not proud when they have compassed the same neither be forrowfull or diffnaied when they lose them, but alwaies account them for doubtfull matters, without any firme perseuerance: seeing and considering how great perill and daunger they passe in getting them, and how little assurance they have to enioy them. Comming now to our historie, it passed thus: After the death of the Emperour Constantine, as he held the Empire in good order and gouernment in his life time; so his sonne I vs TINIAN after his decease found no difficultie, but was gladly received and obeyed by all men: and notwithstanding that he Was very young, being but fixteene yeeres old, yet hee began peaceably to gowerne his Empire; fauing that in Africa in the time of his fathers ficknes, and af-

Fullinian contrary to his league, made warres against the Mahumetanes, and wha enficel.

ter his decease, the Sarazins became Lords of great part thereof. In the beginning of his raigne he commaunded great forces to be leuied, for the defence and recouerie of Africa; and as to a new Prince, so many and so good men of warre made repaire vnto him, that the Sarazins stood in feare of him. Wherefore VALDVLA their King and Captaine which succeeded GIZITES (the authors differ much in these names) sent to him for peace: and for as much as he offered very large conditions, IVSTINIAN graunted the fame for tenne yeeres. The first of which was, that he should restore all that which he held in Africa; which was the citie of Carthage, and all that which lieth betweene that and Egypt, neere vnto the Sea fide. befides other contributions of money and horses, which were to be paid vnto him yeerely: and this peace being confirmed, there was generally peace through all the whole Empire, without any fuspition of warre: yea and some Historians report, that there was an univerfall peace through all the world: fo as neither the Kings of France, Spaine, nor England; neither the Princes of Germany, or the kings of the Bauarians, of Slauonia, of Misia, of Bulgaria, neither the Hunnes which inhabited Hungarie, among themselues had any warres, or were at any contention with any others: the like was in the estates and prouinces of the East. Which peace and quietnes Ivstinian through pride and cuill counfell diffurbed, by warring contrary to his promise and agreement made with the Sarazins's which he began very resolutely with great preparation: and after that he had sent L ONCIVS for his Generall, he went in person and did much harme, and recoursed fome countries in Soria, and entred Mesopotamia; where the Sarazins reinforcing their troupes, and repairing their armes, gathered together an infinite number of them, and came to give him battaile; which the yong Emperor refuled not : but vet after great flaughter of his people he was ouercome, and driven to flie, and to abandon what he had recourred, and was brought to fuch extremitie, that he was faine to fue and entreate them for peace : which after many treaties and demaunds was concluded, and the Sarazins for that time remained in quiet. In this time died THEODORE Exarch or gouernour of Italy, and in his place was fent another principall man called I o HN, and Pope C o N o N aforefaid also died: and after much controuersie about the election of a new Bishop, for an Archbishop called THEODORE, and another called PASCVAL, fought to have been Popes, and with money had bribed the Exarch I o H N, to affift them with his voyce and fauour: And the matter being likely to haue come to blowes, they all agreed to chuse one whose name was SER GIVs, borne in the citie of Autioch in Syria, who was held and obeyed for Pope: yet afterwards there were some commotions about that matter, which concerne me not to recite. In those daies died C v M-PERT Vs, who then was King of the Lombards, and him succeeded a sonne of his called LIMPERTYS, of which we have not made any mention, for that they liued in peace with the Italians and the Emperours Subjects. The Emperour Iv-STINIAN being returned out of Afia to Constantinople, with great losse and disgrace for the warre aforefaid; repairing his loffes and harmes received, and making new prouision with little discretion and worse direction, resoluted to begin the warre againe: wherein he had no better successe then in the former: And this by constantine Was against the Bulgarians which inhabited Missa, with which his father had estaagainst the Bul- blished a perpecual league and amitie; and Ivstinian (as a light inconstant young man) breaking the conditions, entred their countrie with a great armie, with fuch power and furie, that neither the Bulgarians, nor their King durft take the fields to give him battaile; but retired, and abandoning many places, fortified

themselves in the strongest; which so much emboldened the Emperour, that he profecuted this warre with leffe heede and circumspection, then so important a case required: which when the Bulgarians perceived, recovering courage, they affembled a great number of men, and cutting off all victuals from the Emperors armie, and stopping the passages of certaine rivers, they brought him to such extremitie, that although he would retire, he found so great daunger and difficultie fued to the Bultherein, that hee was compelled to fue to them for peace; against whom, of his garians for owne minde, voluntarily and without reason he made warre; which they graunted, vpon condition that hee should restore to them all the prisoners, and the townes and other things which hee had taken and that hee should personally fweare, well and faithfully to maintaine the same, as well by himselfe as by all his Princes and principall Captaines. IVSTINIAN returning from this journey, with no more honour then from the last, caused a new Councell to be affembled in Constantinople, to the end to reuoke and disanull that which therein in the former was determined, concerning certaine points in religion: and the Pope being herewith discontented, sent his Legates to hold his place therein, and to see what the Councell would treate of: wherein by the Emperours authoritie there The Pope bewere fome things handled against the determination of the last Councell:whereof the Pope being aduertised, reproued and disanulled what was therein concluded; and appropued and confirmed the last Councell, and sent commaundement to diffolue the present. Wherewith the Emperour was so highly displeased, that Pope Sergius he presently sent ZACHARIAS the Commander generall of all his men of warre Connectlas to Rome, with commission to apprehend the Pope and to send him to Constanti- sembled by the mople: And Z ACHARIE being arrived in Italy about this exploit, notwithstanding fanting. that he diffembled the matter, yet was it foone discouered, and SERGIVS had fo wonne the hearts of the people, that all the companies which lay in Rauenna, and themarches thereof, and in other parts of Italy, came with all speede to Rome, with intent to haue slaine Z AC HARIE, and to haue released the Pope, whom Z A-CHARIE had alreadie apprehended. When ZACHARIE understood with what furie these men of warre came against him, despairing of any other remedie, hee yeelded himselfe to the Popes mercie, whom he then held prisoner: and the Pope pardoning the offence, protected him, and hid him in his palace; and fitting in his throne, holding great estate, hee attended the comming of the armie which came from Rauenna, together with the Romane people: and they very earnestly defiring him to deliuer ZACHARIB into their hands, hee made an oration vnto them, perswading them to moderate their displeasure, seeing that he had pardoned the offence: whereto they all confented and ZACHARIE being brought into his presence, had leave to depart, although with much shame and disgrace. And the Pope so cunningly handled the matter, that hee brought the Emperour into fuch hatred, and made him so odious to the people, that their whole studie was how to depose him from the Empire: and as they were all willing thereto, the effect eafily enfued.

IVSTINIAN having represented (as I faid) the first act of the Comedie, a great Captaine called L E O N C I V s before mentioned, whom he had of long time held prisoner, determined to rebell against him: and having secretly conferred of the matter with GALLICANVs the Patriarch of Constantinople, and with "is other friends supon a day he fuddenly came from his house, accompanied with many Leoncius rebelarmed men; and calling and gathering men together against the Emperour, hee led against the went to the layles, and fet all the prisoners at libertie; and the people very wil-Emperour.

lingly accompanying him, he went to the Emperors pallace, and eafily apprehended him : and proclaiming himselfe Emperor, deprined the other of his Empire ; and was crowned with great ioy of the people, which euer delighteth in nouelties, but chiefly with the chaunge of princes, and great magiftrates; for the prefent estate doth neuer please them, they ever commend that which is past, and Still desire a new. LEONCIVS was crowned, and IVSTINIAN had his eares and his nose cut off, and some say his tongue also, to make him seeme vely and the more to be abhorred; and having brought him to this estate, he banished him for euer, to the citie of Chersona in Pontus, the furthermost boundes of the Empire. Which befell him in the tenth yeere of his raigne, and in the yeere of our Lord, fixe hundred fowerfcore and fixeteene, yet fome fay more; where let vs leave him for some space, whilest that LEONCIVS may in the meane time represent that part of the comodie, which we promised you.

Anno Dom.

The great hatred which the people bare against the Emperor Ivstinian, was the principall occasion that moued the tyrant LEONCIVS to rebelland to take the name and state of Emperor: for IVSTINIAN was brought into such hatred with the people, that they would have accepted of any man that had dared to attempt to have made himselfe Emperor; and much sooner of LEON-CIV s, who was a valiant and expert man of warre, and had held great charges and offices therein. In the beginning all things happened vnto him, according to his defire: for IVSTINIAN had neither the heart nor meanes, in his banishment to reffore himselfe; neither was there found any relistance or contradiction in any other man in the Empire : and so L B o N C I v s began to enjoy his Empire in peace. But the Sarazins or Agarenes and HADIMILECH their King, who alreadie had a determination to subvert and wholy to destroy the Empire: seeing the diffention therein, and accounting the state of LEONCIVS nottobe firme : they with a great and mightie armie from Egypt (as at other times they had done) inuaded the prouinces of Africa, and tooke many cities and ftrong holds therein : against which LEONCIVS with no small feare and care, sent a fingular captaine called IOHN; but he gaue him no fuch armie as therewith he might be able to give his enemies battaile in the plaine fields; by reason whereof, he was constrained by wildes and stratagems to maintaine the warres; and defended the countrie for some time, daily solliciting the Emperor, to send him fuch supply of fouldiers, as therewith he might be able to fight with them: and feeing that neither by letters nor messengers he could obtaine his sure, vpon a time when he thought his absence might be least prejudiciall; leaving his armie in the best order that he could, and a very good captaine called TIBERIVS AB-SIMARYS for commaunder in his place; he tooke his way towards Conflantinople, to the end to conferre with LEONCIVS about the fending of some better supply for the warres of Africa, and comming fuddenly thither, he found not that prouision which he expected and as was needfull; and therefore was driven to flay longer then was expedient; for the Emperor busying himselfe about other matters of small profit, tooke least care for those things which were of greatest importance. The armie in Africa feeing his long absence, began to murmuragainst their captaine, for so leaving them; and likewise against the Emperor La-ONCIVS: and from murmuring in speeches, they became so audacious, as to perswade Tiberivs Absimarys, who was left for their commaunder, to make himselfe Emperor: and he was presently created and obeyed by the whole armie. And as ambition and defire to commaund is a thing which chiefly moueth men in this world; fo TIBERIVS to his owne harme, accepted that which they offered him; as hereafter this historic shall make manifest. But as he was neither carelesse or a coward; so he speedely so soone as he had taken upon him Absimarus crethe title of Emperor, determined to procure the possession and government ated Emperor. thereof: and preparing with the greatest haste that might be to take the Emperor LEONGIVS vnprouided, he departed from Africa, abandoning the fame to the The logic of Infidels, which was the cause that afterwards it was wholy lost: and he with a very good fleete, brought his people to the coast of Gracia; where, with the aide and fauour of his friends and kindred, which were on land, he tooke harbourgh, and came to Constantinople, wherein LEONCIVS had fortified himselfe, thinking to defend the fame: whereupon they came to blowes, without inflice, or just cause of either side; for hec which came to take away the tyrant, did it to the end to be so himselfe, and was so already: but betweene the two euilsthe last preuailed, and TIBERIV's entred by force of armes, and became Lord both Leancius depaof the citie and of Leonervs also; although not without much trouble and led by Tiberiflaughter of many men. And vpon LEONCIVS he commaunded the fame punishment to be inflicted which he had given to Ivatinian; which was to haue his nose and his eares cut off, and to be committed to perpetuall imprison. Leancing bis ment; with an intent to have shewed him greater crueltie: LEONCIVS having cut off. raigned three yeeres onely; which was within little (more or leffe) of the yeere of our Lord, fixe hundred nintie and nine. And in this manner LEONCIVS Anno Dom. went out of the Theater, and TIBERIVS plaied his part therein, during the time 699. that LEONCIVS was in prison, and IVSTINIAN banished; and untill such time as IVITINIAN returned to the stage, which was so soone as TIBERIVE had acted his part.

In such manner as I have declared, Tiberive tyrannized the Empire, and as it may be conjectured by the histories, had continued a long time, if he could have been contented, and not have attempted more then was fit for him to have done: fo as he himselfe wrought his owne consustion. The first thing that he didafter that he was Lord and absolute; was to commaund many of LEONcivs his friends to be either flaine, or despoiled of their goods; as fauorits of a tyrant. And truly he had reason on his side, if he had had authoritie to haue inflicted fuch punishment, and had not himselfe been guiltie of the same crime, and been a traitor and a tyrant to him, to whom he had sworne fidelitie, as to his Emperor; and also to the captaine which left him in his place: punishing the treason, wherein he himselfe had been a partaker, and had approved the same. And this his holy zeale extended it felfe to farre, that a great familiar friend of his whose name was Philippiers, and who had greatly aided him in his enter- Philippiers baprife, and to bring him to that estate, onely for faying that vpon a night in his dreame. fleepe he dreamed that an Eagle alighted upon his head (imagining that to prognosticate him to be an Emperor) was by his commaundement apprehended and banished into an Iland, wherein he could have no conference or societie with any body: notwithstanding that hee was a noble gentleman, and of high linage, from whence he afterwards fent him, to the citie of Chersona, whither the deposed Emperor Ivstinian was also banished. We will tell you hereafter what happened vnto this Philippicvs; for he was one of the actors in this comodie. TIBERIVS having executed these his cruelties, sent his brother HERACLIVS with an armie to aide the Armenians, which in auncient time had been subject to the Empire, and now rose and rebelled against the insidels: and he

Theophilatus Exarch of Italy,

wonne a great battaile, and flew a great number of them: but it seemeth that he did not long enjoy the victorie; for the Infidels in proceffe of time preusiled. and their Empire greatly encreased. In Italie also there fell discord and diffention betweene the Lombards and Italians, which had lived together a long time in peace. The cause whereof was for that TIBERIVS, through the death or absence of I OHN the Exarch about named, sent into Italie for Exarch or Gouernor, a chamberlaine of his, called THEOPHILATVS, wherewith all Italie was much grieued; for the greatest part thereof now pretended to be subject to the Pope; or at least abhorred the gouernment and Empire of the Greekes. THE O-PHILATVS came not to Rauenna as his predecessors wied to doe, but landed in Sicilia, from thence to come to Rome: which so soone as it was published, all the companies which lay in Rauenna, and inother places, came to Rome, attending his comming rather as an enemie, then as their Generall. And fobeing arrived if IOHN which at that time was Pope, had not protected him, he had there been flaine. But through his fauour he had libertie freely to depart and to goe to Rauenna: out of hope to doe whathe had proiceted, for in Rome they would not obey him: whereupon hee procured the Lombards to make warre against the Romanes, or at least against those cities which the Romanes held neerest to Rome, principally Beneuent, whereof was Duke and Gouernor a great man whose name Was Sisviphus, who was therewith much annoyed: but the Pope redreffed and restored all his losses with his riches and treasure, and buying peace, the estate of Italie recouered rest and quiet. But our Lord would not permit TIBERTY : to rest in peace: for waxing lealous of the Emperor I vs TINIAN, which earelesse and noselesse lived exiled in Chersona, or as some fay, vnderstanding that I v s TI-NIAN purposed to procure aid, to returne to challenge the Empire, whereof he was dispossessed by the Emperor LEONCIVS; he began to practise his death: and to that effect fent some to deale with the inhabitants of that citie. Ivatini-AN being aduertifed hereof, and standing in great feare of his life, in the best manner that he could, tooke shipping, and failing over the sea called Enxinum or Pon-Tiherus foucht to put Iufinian ticum, landed in Europe, and came to the King of the Bauarians, who was a very mightie prince; by whom he was not onely well received, but was also married to his lifter or daughter. And hee appointed him an house and estate, promi-Inflinian fled to the King of fing him all aide and fauour to restore him; soas there began to bee agreat alteration through all the Empire, feeing that Ivstinian was now to returne made alliance. to play his part upon the stage of the world. TIBERIUS being advertisedhereof, tooke it to heart (as indeede hee had reason) and imagining that hee should preuaile little by force, he practized to see whether moncy would take effect, which commonly can doe more then either fword or launce; and to that effect delt with CAYANVS (for as I faid to the Bauarians called their King) to King of the Ba-deliuer Iv stinian into his hands; for whom he would give him a great fum of money, and this couetous and inconftant King, greedy thereof agreed with the into his hands him vpon the fumme, and promifed to accomplish his defire; and being readie to have put it in execution, by chaunce Ivstinian had intelligence thereof; and so alone pursued by him which was either his father in law, or his brother in by the King of law, he escaped by flight. And about one yeere after that he had long wandred, heewent to the King of Bulgaria, whose namewas TREBELLIVS; who pittybereturned to ing his calamitie, gaue him great entertainement; and in short space made so Conflantinople, great prouision of men and armes, that he tooke his way with him towards Con-

Aifed with the Liver Inflinian

to death.

the Bauarians

Iustinian saued by whose aide eius and Tibe- stantinople; wherein were many which desired his returne, for the harred which rius to death.

they bare to TIBERIVS. To be briefe, in short time and with little difficultie, although with some effusion of bloud, he came to the Imperial citie, and entring it by force of armes, TIEBRIVS fled from it: but being afterwards ouertaken and brought backe into his power, he committed him to that prison wherein L E O Ncivs was, which had deposed him, and cut off his nose and his eares: and making them both to be first carried through all the most publike streetes of the citic he caused them openly to be flaine, after that TIBERIV's had raigned seven vectes. Such are the rewards which the world gineth to those, which to the end to beare sway and to commaund therein, forget God. And so ended these two mightie Emperours, or more properly, proud tyrants. And I v & T I N I AN not con- Juffinian mede tented to execute his wrath vpon those two alone, made TIBERIVE his brother Tiberius his to be hanged; and many of the friends vnto both of them, to be either robbed or biother to be flaine: and the Patriarch GALLICANVS who conspired with LEONCIVS against him, had his eyes pluckt out. And they further report of him, that so often as he lustinian made Would have wiped his nose (if he had had it) he caused some of those which had the Pairtarch been followers of his enemie LEONCIVS to be flaine. And so the banished Em-nople his ever perour Ivs TINIAN recoursed his throne and Empire; and returned agains to to be pur out. the theater, to act the rest of his comedie, which was nine yeeres after that he was Juliman reeast out of it; in the yeere of our Sauiour I E s v s CHRIST seuen hundred and Empire. Presently after that I v s T I N I A N saw himselfe restored and confirmed in his 706.

Empire, and having executed fo great cruelties, as the like had feldome bin heard of vpon those which he supposed had offended him; he sent great and rich prefents to TREBELLIVS King of Bulgaria, who had holpen him to recouer his dominion with a very gracious and pleasing ambassade: but as it shall hereafter ap-Deare he continued but a while fo gratefull. He also fent for his wife THEODOR A. daughter of CAYANVS King of the Bauarians, from whose Court he fled; the liuing in a certaine place absent from her father; for as some write, she advertifed her husband of the treason which her father pretended against him. And she being come, hee made her to be honoured as Emperesse and Augusta: and his young fonne whom hee had by her in time of his exile, he caused to be chosen and called Emperour. Other matters concerning his gouernment and execution of inflice, were corrupt and out of order: for as the princes were wicked, so were the subjects; for such as is the head, such are the members: so that so farre as I can conjecture, these were the most miserable and lamentable times, that ever the Christian Common-wealth endured fince Christ was borne; God permitting it for a punishment of the wicked, wherwith the world did then abounds and for the greater reward of those which suffered amongst them: for besides the warres and troubles of the Emperours, which tyrannized the Empire, there was fo little faith and feare of God, that the Church loft in those daies all the prouinces of Africa, wherein, in steed of CHRIST perfect God and man, MAHO-MET is adored and worshipped vntill this day, without recouerie. Which to relate in such manner as it passed. I neither have time thereto, neither doe I finde it distinctly written: but that after that TIRERIVS went thence with the name of Emperour, and deposed LEONCIVS from the Empire; the Sarazins seeing the countrie abandoned came out of Egypt, Arabia, and other provinces of the East, and made a conquest thereof; finding so small resistance, that within the space of

four eyeeres they became Lords of all the countries from Egypt, vnto the pro- The infidels timee of Mauritania Tingitana, and to that which now is Centa, Taniar and Arci- conquered A-

The conquest of Spaine by the Jufidels Moores.

that they came out of Abrabia; being one hundred and seuentie yeeres after that Africa was recovered from the Vandales, and had ferued and been subject to the Empire. And within tenne veeres after this, with the furie and joy of their vistorie (Don Roder Gothen raigning King in Spaine) they being aided by a traytor an Earle called DON IVLIAN, and others, came ouer into Spaine, and in three veeres conquered almost all the land, slaving in barraile King R op R i G o, and the most part of the Gothes excepting some few which lived in the mountaines of Bilcay, Galicia and Ouiedo: from whence afterwards (although abandoned by the Christian Kings and Princes) they have by little and little, not without great trouble and effusion of much bloud, recourred their countries: and finally about one hundred veeres since, the Insidels were driven out of all Spaine by King Fax-DINAND and Queene I s ABB L. So as if the other Christian Kings had done their parts as well as the Kings of Spaine, it is to be beleeved that Christiandome had not been so much diminished, but had againe recovered what it then lost, and had been restored to that greames wherein it was in the time of some ancient Emperours. But for as much as it is the judgement of God, wee will leave it to him, and returne to our historie, which is of the Emperours onely. Iv s T IN IAN being in Constantinople, executing his cruelties against the friends and parents of TIBERIVS and LEONCIVS, it so happened that the subjects to the King of Bulgaria, which had been so much his friend, fell at oddes with some of the Emperors subjects of Thracia, a prouince of the Empire, wherein standeth Constantinople, about parting their bounds: which when he vnderstood (forgetting the benefits received) ypon this small occasion hee raised an armie against TREBEL LIV s King of Bulgaria aforefaid, and entring his countrie, destroyed many places and did much hurt : wherewith the King being greatly moued, gathered such forruffinier made ces together as he could, and came to fight with the Emperour and they two where upon the king of Bulfought a cruell battaile, wherein the Emperour was juftly ouerthrowne and fled geria, and was out of the countrie of the Bulgarians : and so this warre was ended to his dishonour But as God neuer made any thing without some propertie; so this Empem bataile. rour euer respected and reuerenced the Church of Rome and the Pope, namely CONSTANTINE which then was Pope, after the two I OHNS, the fixt and the feuenth, which succeeded S & R. G I v s, who went to Constantinople to fee the Emperour, and by the way met with I OHN TOZOCOPOS, which came to be Gouernour of Italy; and comming to Rome would have taken up the Church rents. and goods, but was refuted by the Popes ministers, and he slew some of them: wherfore he grew so hatefull, that he was driven to go to Ramenna, where for the fame cause, or the hatred which they bare against the Exarchs and former gouernours, the people vpon a day arose and killed him. The Pope was with great ho-

> vices which viually goe together. And here hence it sprang, that in time of his greatest prosperitie, he began to stand in feare of PHILIPPICVS, who lived in exile in Penths; by the commandement of the tyrant TIBERIVS; and that for no other cause but for saying that he had dreamt of at Eagle. And Iv stinian defired also to be reuenged of the citie Cherjona, alleaging for his reason, that the citizens had missifuled him when hee

> nour receined by the Emperour, and when they had seene the one the other, the Emperour proftrated himselfe vpon the earth, and so much abased himselfe, as to kiffe the Popes foote, with vnmeasurable shew of obedience : for as it may be gathered by this Princes doings, he was both fearefull and reuengefull, which are

lay there in time of his banishment: wherefore he commaunded a great armie to he leuied and a nauje to be rigged, to the end to goe to destroy that citie, and to take and kill PHILIPPICVS, who lived there merrily and well content with his banishment if they would have suffered him to have been at rest. And it pleased God to order matters in such manner, that what Ivs TINIAN did to affure himfelfe in the Empire, was the cause of his destruction, and the losse thereof: for-PHILIPPIC VS vnderstanding that he came against him, and acquainting those of Cherfona therewith, which also expected their owne destruction, he resolued to take vpon him the name of Emperour, and to die like a man at armes fighting. Before which, there passed other matters, which I omit: but the conclusion is. that feeing no other remedie they all confented together, and the armie and captaines, fent by Ivstinian against Chersona, forfaking him revolted to Philip-PICVS, who by his furname was called BARD ANIVS. And he feeing himself with power fit for his purpose, in steed of being affailed resolued now to give the asfault; and therefore in great haste with a very great power, he tooke his way towards Constantinople, where by stinian expected him: for after that hee underftood what passed, hee had raised a new armie, and encamping himselfe about twelfie miles from the citie, attended the comming of PHILIPPICVS: who fo foone as he arrived fet himfelfe in order of battaile, and I v s T i N I A N did the like. and they fought the greatest part of the day very resolutely; but in the end the victorie remained with PHILIPPICVS, and IVSTINIAN Was ouerthrowne and Inflinian and flaine in the battaile, and together with him his fonne TIBERIV s, being but a ve- in a battaile a. ry childe with much people of either fide : And so ended the cares and Empire gainst Philip-

of the most infortunate and valuckie prince I v s T I NI AN; seeing that in his time pieus. were fo many difafters & calamities in the world: whose life & acts were such as

geffe he will not hold me for a lier, in that which I faid in the beginning, that the historie of his time, for the varietie of chaunges which then happened. was as a fained Comedie, or to fay more properly, a Tragedie, confidering the beginning and end thereof. He died in the yeere of our Lord, seuen hundred and twelue, little more or leffe, and in the feuen and twentith yeere after he first began to raigne.

I have thewed you. And if the reader have attentively read what I have written. I

Anno Dom. 712.

### THE LIFE **o**f Phili CVS, ONLY OF THAT NAME,

AND THREESCORE AND NINE ROMANE EMPEROVR.





He Emperor Ivs TINIAN being ouerthrowne and flaine. PHILIPPICES CALLED BARDANIES OF BARDANES remained Emperor, of whom, there is little to be written.

ons of the Christian faith; aswell concerning the divinitie of CHRIST, assome other matters, contrary to the determination of the fixth generall councell, holding with the Monothelites: and hereupon he affembled certaine Bishops in Constantinople, banishing Cynys the Patriarch thereof, and in his roome placing a Monke called Ions. And therewith not fatisfied, he wrote his letters and fent an Ambassade to the Pope, requiring him to approue; his opinions. Which the Pope not onely refused to doe, but for answere, commaunded him vpone great curies and excommunications to renounce the opinions which he

for that he fo small a time enjoyed the Empire, and for that the authors which I follow, make small mention of him. And of that little which we know of him, the first is, that so foone as he came to Conftantinople, and was there fworme and crowned, he began to hold certaine doubtfull opiniheld: and in Rome, in the Cloifters, and in the Porches of Saint Peters Church, he commaunded to be painted and written the determinations of the fixth generall councell, to the end that all men might know and beleeue the fame. Whereof when the Emperour was aduertifed, he prefently commaunded that painting and writing to be rased and defaced, and the like to be done to all the crucifixes images, and pictures of CHRIST, of our Ladie, and of the Saints, which he affirmed not to be adored, or to be fet up in Churches. But his commaundements were little regarded by the Pope, or the Romane people; Philippicus exfor by a generall decree they proclaimed him for a scissmatike and an heretike, by the Pope. and the Pope further commaunded that in their divine service hee should not bee prayed for, neither should there be any mention made of his name in any publike act or proclamation, which was executed accordingly: by meanes whereof he became odious and hatefull to the people of Rome, and generally of all Italy, wherein the Empire and government of the Greekes began to bee of small authoritie; by reason of the great power of the Lombards; and the great commaund and authoritie of the Popes. For as much as the Emperors were contrarie to them in some points of religion, the people abhorred them, and denied to be their subjects: but PHILIPPICVS, notwithstanding the Popes fulminations, would not be diverted from his determination; wherefore and for fome other occasions, certaine principall men secretly conspired against him: the chiefe of which, was one ANTHEMIVS; which followed in this manner. The Emperour resting himselse vpon an Whitsonday euen, after certaine disports on horsebacke, vied in those times; the conspiratours violently rushing into his lodging apprehended him, and carrying him thence to another place pluckt out his eyes, and leaving him blind and imprisoned, refusing to kill him.

they deprined him of his Empire, when he had raigned but one yeere

and a halfe only: and they aduanced the same Anthemive to the Empire, and gaue him to name, ANASTASIVE. This happened in the yeere of oure, Lord sea-

nen hundred and fourteene.

Philippicus be-ing depofed, bad bis eies put out.

Anna Dom

THE

Cyrus Patri. arch of Connished by Phi



#### THE LIFE OF ANASTASI-VS THE SECOND OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND TENNE ROMANE EMPEROR.





the defire and libertie to finne in that time, had not taken such roote amongst men. Anastasivs had been an excellent Emperor, and had well gouerned the Common-wealth; for hee was a vertuous and a just man, and of a deepe understanding and judgement: but by reason of the former gouernment, the wicked were fo accustomed to the libertie of ill doing, that they could not endure to be ruled by any one that should minister and execute instice. For as in a body diseased

and so full of corrupt humors, that naturall vertue is therewith oppressed and ouercome, being vnable to refift the humour, no phisicke can preuaile or worke any effect, but is rather loathsome and cast vp againe: euen so it happened to -Anastasivs, and to Theodosivs the third also, who was his successor: for men werethen so hardened and nousled up in doing ill; and so accustomed to escape cleere without any punishment for the same, that it seemed an hard and intollerable matter for them to endure their good government, for the small time that they lived in subjection, as in their places shall appeare.

So soone as Anastasivs was Emperour, of two things he tooke especiall care; the first and principall was for the Christian faith and religion, wherein some

of his predecessours had erred: the other was to take order for the desence of the Empire, which he found ill guarded and out of order. Touching the first he fent his letters and ambafiadours to the Pope, whereby he protested to beleeue and to hold that faith which the Church of Rome beleeved, and approving and ratifying the generall councels, he commaunded all his fubiects to hold and beleeve the fame. And as concerning the Empire, knowing that the greatest harme that it received was from the Sarazins (MAHOMETS disciples) which then had conquered all Africa; against them onely he determined to employ all his whole force and power, feeing that he could not obtaine the peace which he had first procured. And thereupon he speedily leuied captaines and souldiers, and made a principall man (whose name was L E o) Generall of his army for the defence of the frontiers against Soria, for from thence the Infidels inuaded Asia the leffe. And for the feas he rigged vp a verie great fleet, and therein shipped his mightie army with an intent to fayle into Egypt, and to make a conquest thereof, attempting first the citie of Alexandria. All which being set in order, and sufficient prouision made of all things necessarie, the Emperour being verie ioyfull, hoping that foms great exploit would have been done, the fleet departed from Conftantinople and fayled to Alexandria, wherein the feare wherewith the inhabitants were striken, was greater than the hurt they received: for the imperialists having befieged the citie, through want of certaine necessaries (either in deed or fained) raifed their fiege, and returning to their ships, fayled to the Ile of Rhodes, and some fay to Phanicia in Asia the leffe, to make provision of engines, and other necesfaries, which they faid were needfull for the battering of Alexandria and other townes. Whereof when the Emperour had intelligence he was greatly difpleafed, and reprehending his captaines, fent them new prouision of all things necesfarie, commaunding them presently to returne to the warre which they had alreadie begun. But in that age militarie discipline was as much decaied and corrupted as other sciences, and as I said in the beginning. The people being accustomed to line after their owne fantalie, and being discontented with the gouernment of a good Emperour, the army mutined, and agreed among themfelues to leave their enterprise against the Infidels, and to turne head against the Emperour Anastasivs; and taking land in Afia the leffe, the greatest and most principall part of the armie marched ouer land; and imagining, that without an head and leader the army could hardly be well gouerned, they made choile of one to be their Emperour, whole name was THEODOSIVS, a man of Threedofinis chose meane parentage, but yet honest and of good behaviour, and well knowne to sen Emperaur. them all, for he had been treasurer or receiver of the Eschequor, and of the revenues of the Empire: who for his good conditions was well beloued of all men. and him they chose and made Emperour perforce and against his will. In my iudgement he had reason to refuse it: for in truth the estate of the Empire and the faith and obedience borne to the Emperours in those times was such that not onely those which were vnworthy ought not to accept of the Empire, but even those also which were capeable, and most sufficient and of greatest power, had reason by all waies and meanes possible to eschue the same.

ANASTASIVS vnderstanding of the rebellion of his men of warre, and how they had chosen THEODOSIVS for their Emperor, made little account thereof, (for he disdained him for the basenes of his linage, and the small experience hee had in the warres) neuerthelesse he raised a great power, and went into Asia to feeke him, and meeting him neere vnto the citie of Nicea, the principall citie in

THEODOSIVS THE THIRD.

501

Anastasius ta-Theodofius.

Anne Dom.

Bythinia, they fought a battaile, wherein through the fecret judgement of God. ANASTASIVS Was ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, when hee had raigned one veere and three moneths onely; yet fome fay three yeeres: And the new choien THEODOSIVS remained with the victorie, together with the Empire, and AN As TASIVS being deposed, remained prisoner and in his power, whom he made a priest. Which after the computation of ABBAS VV ESPERGENSIS, and of MATHE VV PALMERIV S, Was in the yeere of our Lord, seuen hundred and seuenteene; PHILIPPICVS being yet living, whom ANASTASIVS had deprived of the Empire; so as he was his companion both in estate and fortune. It seemeth that in the time of this ANASTASIVS, the Infidels made an end of the conquest of Spaine.

### THE LIFE OF THEODO SIVS, THE THIRD OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND eleuenth Romane Emperour.





HEODOSIVS feeing himfelfe fuch as he neuer thought to haue been; obeyed, and iworne Emperour, without any resistance or contradiction; went to Constantinople, and as he was noble in bountie and goodnesse, so he lost no iote of his good conditions, by being advanced to the greatnesse and height of the Empire, but rather seemed to haue increased the same. First he would not suffer ANASTAsivs to be put to death, neither to be any way grieued in

his person; but onely to be assured of him, he caused him to be made a priest, and gaue him exhibition, wherin he continued vntill the time of the Emperour L 10, fus to become a when by persuasion of a certaine captaine he sought to have recovered the Empire, which cost him his life, as hereafter we will recount, if so it shall be expedient. THEODOSIVS having fet matters in order in generall, particularly conrmaunded the images and pictures which PHILIPPICVS had caused to be rased and defaced, to be repaired and new made; and in other matters concerning religion,

made Anasta-

prieft.

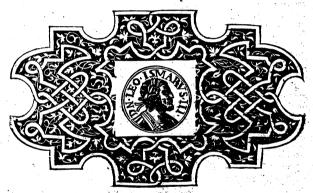
gion, he commaunded his subjects to observe and hold that which the councels had decreed, and the Church of Rome maintained, and to made thew of a pleafing Emperour. But fortune neuerthelesse shewed her selfe his enemy; for Lee whom his predecessour A NASTASIVS had made Generall for the desence of Alia the leffe against the Sarazins, and who yet had not done him any homage, under the pretence and colour to restore his master Anastasioyned himselfe with ARTAMASDVS another captaine, which in the confines of Armenia commanded the ordinarie garrifons of the Empire, & they both with all their whole power came against THEODOSIVS; and comming to Nicomedia they apprehended a son of Leventitled him which was there and from the property of the property of the second from the second fro his which was there, and from thence marching forwards he began to viurpe the prior. name of Emperour. Against this force and rage wherewith LEO came, THE O-\$1 vs durst make no resistance; but vpon assurance that he should not be put to death, or receive other wrong in his person, he yeelded himselfe into his hands, and chose to line a religious life in a Monasterie, and taking the habit remained therein; before that one yeare was expired, after that (against his will) he was made Emperour, so as now with him there were three Emperours which lived deposed. The first was PHILIPPIC vs, whom ANASTASIV shad cast in prison, Three Empe and had pluckt out his eyes, whose end what it was I find not written: the second one time de-Was Anastasivs, whom (as I faid) this Theodosive made to take religious pord orders and habit: and now the third was the fame THEODOSIVS, who yeelding Theedofus behimselse to L no, made choise rather of a religious life than to stand to his de-came a Mank. fence. Wherein if voluntarily he did it, or at least endured it with patience, (as is most likely) seeing that he was made Emperour perforce and a-

gainst his will, truly he was in the right, and chose the better part and left the worfer to L s o, which was the Empire: which he most wickedly gouerned, as hereafter shall appeare. This was in the veere of our Lord seuen hundred and seuenteene.

THE

### THE LIFE OF LEO, THE THIRD OF THAT NAME,

twelfth Romane Emperour.



HELEST that these Emperours of a yeares standing, as Constables of countrey villages or (to speake more properly) tyrants, did striue to subuert the one the other, without any conceit of making head against the Sarazins and Infidels, which daily increased and grew more mighty, so that Chriftendome was diminished and oppressed: for besides that which happened in the Empire, which now was of small force, in the kingdomes of France and in Germanie, were also

warres betweene the French and the Borgonians, and likewise betweene the Frizons and the Sucuians, and betweene the Saxons and the Bauarians, and other nations too long to be recited in this historie. At which time CHARLES MAR-TEL in France (through the fame of his noble actes) grew to bee verie much esteemed, and he conquered and subdued some, or the most part of all these said The originall nations. This CHARLES MARYEL Was Pretorian Presect, or rather High of thatles Mar- Constable of France, which was the highest dignitie in that time next to the kings who by reason of the insufficiencie of king CHILDERICV s, who afterwards was deposed, and of his owne great valour (although the other had the name) yet hee

had the authoritie of king. And in Italy also were some innountions so as the Infidels daily more and more prevailed; and having conquered the greatest part of all Spaine, they extended their power thence into France, and tooke Catatonia, and and afterwards Narbone, and belieged Awienon; which was within the bounds of the Gothish kings of Spaine. But those countries being afterwards recoursed by the kings of France, continued in their subjection. These heathen Princes also conquered the Iles of Maiorica and Minorica, and other Ilands in that Sea, with the Ile of Sardinia also. Presently after that THE ODOSIVS Was deposed from his Empire, and that LEO the third of that name, was received and established who Was vnworthie thereof; ZVLEMON (whom some call after another manner) king and captaine of the Sarazins, and now Lord of Asia, of Africa, and of Spaine, making small account of L B 0,00 of the decaied and weakened Empire; resolved zulemon with himselfe wholy to subuert the same: and to that effect vsed all meanes and king of the said denices possible, to amasse men and shipping, to the end to goe or fend against the vours against great citie of Constantinople, together with all Thracia and Gracia. The provision the Empire. which he made was fo great, that fome authors affirme that he had in his fleete three thousand faile of ships, and an incredible number of men of warre, which he fent under the conduct of two Generals, the one called MASGILDVS, and the other SOLIMAN. These armies came into Europe, and passed the streight of Constantinople, without any resistance for although that the Emperour L so had intelligence of their comming, yet was hee not able to raife fo great power as might suffice to keepe them from landing. Wherefore he thought it a better course to defend the citie, and so suffered himselfe to be besieged therein, rather then to abandon it to the enemies, which made themselves Lords of both Sea Configurities le and land, and befieged the citie round both by land and by fea, for the space of befieged by the three yeeres continually. And notwithstanding that the besieged valiantly de- seracion. fended it vet it was thought for certaine that it would have been loft, if in the befiegers there had been fuch valour and policie, as was to have been expected in fuch men : but through the defire to robbe, they dispersed themselues so wide ouer the land, that they were thereby greatly endamaged, and the citie was the leffe diffressed, and had the better oportunitie to prouide such things as werewanting. And particularly some captaines with part of this armie, seeing that no man made relistance against them, romed vp and downe the countrie over al Thracia. killing and robbing vntill they came into Bulgaria, which in ancient time was cal- sulgaria vobiled the lower Miss. for defence whereof, the king of that countrie sent to good lower stiffe, an armie, that he not onely defended his frontiers, but brake and ouerthrew his enemies, and flew of them (as some Historians have written) two and thirtie thoufand. But their power was fo great, that all Christiandome stood in extreme feare of them, and held the Emperour L E o, and all Gracia for loft. At that time there rested so much ambition, and so little charitie amongst christians, that they could not be induced to give over the warres, and private contentions amongst themselues: for in Italy the Lombards enlarged their dominion, and tooke all such townes as they could get either by force or policie. The Frenchmen and other princes did the like; and even their owne captaines and fervants failed them in this extremitie: for SERGIVS who was Pretor or Gouernour for La o in Sicilia. holding the Emperour for loft, with the confent of some others, chose one GR a. Gregorie called o ORIE for Emperour; and making him to chaunge his name, they called him Emperour,

Transitive; what end he made I will tell you hereafter. Onely the Bulgarians affifted

the Emperour, for in truth they had interest therein, considering the daunger that

The death of Zulemon king of the Sarazins.

Aminthas Hu mar cholen Yazins.

Tempeft, famine and pesti lence fell in th armie of the Sarazins by fea and land.

was within to defend the city, with the multitude and power of those which without befreged it; to whom by Gods ordinance, befell fo many misfortunes and difafters, that without any mans helpe they were destroyed. First in the time of the fiege died their King ZVLEMON, whom they also called AMVRATH; and about the chusing of a new king they fell at to great variance and diffention among themselves, that they were disordred, and the besieged greatly recomforted, vnrill at the last AMINTHAS HVMAR was chosen, who followed the warre more faintking of the Sa- ly and retchlefly then before : and there afterwards followed fo cold weather. fuch fromes, and to many plagues of famine and peffilence among them, that the greatest part of them died, as well by land as by sea. Besides this, there followed so many tempests and violent windes vpon the seas, that in the best and safest harbours, their thips were ouerfet and cast away; in such fort, that the Infidels were fo much diminished and decayed, that the citie of Constantinople was not only freed and deliuered from that fiege, but that few of them escaped with their lives from before it: for of three thousand faile which they brought thither in the beginning, fafew returned with their people, that it feemeth to be a matter incredible; and besides that they were cast away in foule weather at sea the Historians recount, that very many of their ships were burned by one mans indufirie. Finally, all that great multitude and number of men and shipping, which feemed to have been sufficient to have overrunne the whole world, and to have laid the same waste; in little more then two yeeres was loft and consumed; and L # o remained the fole absolute Lord of all that which before he possessed who shewed not himselfe so thankfull to God for his so great benefits as he ought to haue done. He had also no lesse good happe against TIBERIVS atyrant, which rebelled in Sicilia, who in short space was brought to confusion: for the Emperor L no fending from Constantinople the captaine of his horsemen called PAV L, with title and authoritie of Gouernour of Sicilia, with letters to the captaines and fouldiers there: which PAVL by a stratagem gat into the citie of Siracusa, now called Sarrages[a; where shewing his authoritie to those of the citie, and of the armie; and they all knowing that the Emperour whom they held for loft, was aliue and at libertie, obeyed his commaund; and with fuch fauour received and entertained gorie to death. their new Captaine, that they apprehended their new king, and deliuered him into the power of this PAVI, who put him to death : and SERGIVS the Pretor of Sicilia, who was the author and originall of this rebellion, fled into Italy to the Lombards; and so that Iland remained in peace and obedience to the Empe-

LEO THE THIRD.

hung ouer their owne heads, if the Sarazins preuailed. And the Christians which

in Conflantinople were befieged, made fuch prayers and supplications, that it see-

med the Lord tooke compassion of them, and protected them: for no humane

power was sufficient to have resisted so great forces. Which as Historians af-

firme, was manifestly of divine miracle, that in fo long time as the fiege lasted, the

whole Empire had not been loft confidering and comparing the garrifon which

The Emperour L E o being freed from fo great diffresse and oppression ought truly to have applied himselfe to the service of God, and to have rendred thankes for the same, and to have relieved his poore subjects and vassals, of the losses and harmes by them fultained: but hee to the contrarie, under colour to recouer the charges which he had been at, laid new impositions and taxes vpon the people, and tooke order that the Churches should have been ransacked; against which Pope GREGORIE, to the vitermost of his power, opposed himselfe; by reason whereof whereof (enmitte growing betweene them) the Emperour fought to haue made Leo/ought to away the Pope, or to have taken him priloner; and to that end fent thither for pope Gregorie. Gouernor one MARINV s, and afterwards the Exarch PAV L, and there happened many accidents which I omit, vntill that at last the Pope found reliefe where he neuer thought to have had any, which was in LEVTPRAND king of the Lombards. After this, the Emperour feeming defirous to be at peace with the Pope. requested him to cause the images to be taken from the Altars, and to be put out of the Churches and Temples, in fuch manner as he had done in Constantinople: whereto the Pope making a prefumptuous answere, with great authoritie dispatched and fent his letters and Buls through all Christendome, excommunicating The Emperor the Emperour, and commaunding the images to be honoured and had in reue-nicated by the rence. The pontificall commaund of this Pope GREG ORLE, was of fuch au- Pope. thoritie, and the Emperour was therby brought into fuch difliking with the people, that the most of the citties in Italie, and the men of warre in Rauenna tooke part with the Pope against him; and there was so great debate and dissention in Rauenna, that they flew the Exarch PAV Land defired the Pope to depose the Emperour LEO, and to chuse another in his place. This diffention gaue occasion and opportunitie to the Lombards (contrarie to the peace) to take the cittle of Bologna, and many other citties and townes in that quarter. Which the Emperour perceiuing, defired and practifed the Popes death or imprisonment, and to The Emperor that end fent a new Exarch or gouernour into Italie, called EVRISTIVS; who Popes death, landing in Naples (to be neere to Rome) endeuoured either by force or pollicie to execute his commission writing letters to many his friends in Rome and elsewhere, to that effect, which put the Pope and his friends in great feare and perplexitic, feeing themselves of the one side oppressed by the Emperour, and on the other fide flanding in feare of the Lounbards: wherefore they fought by all meanes to be at peace with them, which LBVTPRAND their king in confideration of his owne advantage and benefit, granted, and came to Rome; having occafion to passe by it with an army against certaine captaines which rebelled in Spoleto and Benevent, fo as the Emperors practife was the second time made frustrate, but he had his will in throwing downe and burning all the images : and for as much as the Patriarch GERMANVS would not confent thereto, he deposed him from his prelacie, and placed another in his roome. And the case standing in this estate, Pope GREGORIE died, which was the second of that name and him succeeded another of the same name borne in Syria, who commanded a generall councell to be affembled in Rome, whither came many bishops, and there- The kingdome in the vie and veneration of images was againe appropuled and ratified, and the of Ameching Pope proceeded against the Emperor, in such manner, that he was excommunicate and Anathematized by the councel. In that time hapned many terrible earth- The Emperor quakes, whereby many cities in Alia the leffe, and in Gracia, were deftroyed: and nicated by the the Sarazins came out of Syria into Asia the leffe, and did much hurt, and tooke connectibeld certaine cities in Cappadocia. Before this, the Emperor made his eldest sonne being in Rome. ayoung man, whose name was Constanting, Casan, and nominating Leo made his him his fuccessor, married him to the Kings daughter of Bauaria called YRENE. fonne conflan-This feemeth to have passed in the seauenteenth yeere of his raigne, all which bis successor in time with the rest of his Empire, which was in all foure and twentie veeres, he the Empire. gouerned with greater rigor then befeemed a King or an Emperor, and notwith-

Empire; yet matters were carried by fuch violence and couetouines, that in his

standing that he wanted neither valour nor policie to continew himselfe in the

CONSTANTINE THE FIFT.

The death of Leo Emperor of Constanti-Anna Dom.

time were great warres. In Italy the Lombards tooke many cities, and belieged Ranenna, and the people within it, once againe flew their Exarch or gouernor. In Asia the lesse the Infidels entred the countrie, and robbing and spoiling the same. carried away an infinit number of captines, and made a conquest of great part of the land. And all the provinces thereof, with Gracia, Italie, the Isles of Sicilia and Creta, now called Candia, which were in his fubication, were greatly oppreffed with tributes, imprefts, and other intollerable exactions, in such manner, that many reioiced at his death, which happened in the yeare of our Lord feuen hundred and one and fortie, he dying of a Diffenteria; and in his place remained his fonne Constantint the fift of that name, who was verie like to his father. The house and king dome of France in these daies greatly increased, through the valour and wisedome of CHARLES MARTEL, which conquered and annexed to that kingdome the countries of Freezeland, Saxonie, Auftrich, Burgundie, and other great estates. The cittie of Venice was now verie great and famous and began to be gouerned by Dukes.

### THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TINE THE FIFT OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND THIRTEENE ROMANE



THE ARGUMENT.



Onstantine being established in the Empire, made present preparation for the warres against the Infidels in Egypt; but hee was molested and hindred by Artausus a tyrans, which rose against him, and intisted himselfe Emperor: wherefore he returned, notwithst anding that he was alreadic arrived at Alexandria, and tooke Constantinople by force, and punished the tyrant, although not with such seneritie as his offence deserved. As that time Aistolpbus King of the Lombards making warre against Rome, Pope Stephen sucd

so the Emperor for aide, but he provided no such armie as the importance of the case required, thinking to pacific Assolphus by letters and ambassades: whereupon the Pope seeing the delay

and little regard of the Emperor, called the French-men into Italy to relieve him; and they commine, swice freed the citie of Rome from the hands of the Lombards : wherewith Constantine (understanding what the Pope had done ) was displeased, and sent him an ambassude promising succours. which came not in time; for the French being already passed the Alpes, had compelled Aistolphus torender the cities, which Pepin gaue to the Church of Rome. A councell was called in Rome, and the Emperor was condemned for an heretike about the pulling downe of Images; and at that time alfo ended the king dome of the Lombards under Desiderius their King. And Constantine making warre against the Bulgarians, fell sicke of a kinde of leprosie, called Elephancia; and dying, left the Empire to his sonne Lea, when he had generned the same fine and thirtie recres.



OTVVITHSTANDING that LEO was but a bad Emperor. and therefore ill beloued; yet so soone as he was dead, his sonne was received and obeyed, in hope that he would haue prooued better than his father, or else for that in his fatherstime he was growne so mightie, that they durst not attempt to make choise of any other. But he prooued so good a scholler to his father L no, that in all things he excelled and surpassed him much, and lived longer than he:

so that these seeme not to be the lives of Emperors which we now relate, in comparison of those which are passibut like as in great vessels wherein wine or some other good liquor hath bin kept, as it confumeth, fo it becommeth of a worse tast. and in the bottome there remaine some lees and dregs: so befell it in the East Empire, wherein had been verie great and mightie princes, whose head and beginning was such as you have seene, and whose end we may say drew neere, seeing that within few yeares the title and dignitic of the Empire was translated from them to the Frenchmen and the Germanes: notwithstanding that in Gracia there remained Emperours a long time after. Prefently after that Constanting was crowned, to the end to give a figne of a future good Emperour, he provided a great armie and a nauie, therewith to go in person into Egypt: and Pope Z A-CHARLE understanding thereof, sent him two ambassadours to congratulate his Pope Zachary CHARTE VIOLENTIAN OF THE COMMING OF THE VIOLENTIAN OF THE VIOLENTI ding him from his fathers opinions, and exhorting him to beleeue as did the ple with arti-Church of Rome, and he therewith fent him in writing the Articles which hee detto be beld would have him to beleeue. These ambassadours staied so long vpon their way, and beletted. that when they arrived at Constantinople, the Emperor was alreadic departed with his fleet towards Egypt against the Infidels, thinking to have surprised the citie of Alexandria, and afterwards to have conquered the whole land : for in that kingdome, and in other prouinces which were but lately loft, lived many Christians which continued therein a long time; and in some citties were bishops, by the permission of the Sarazins. Within few daies after the Emperour was embarked, a principall man which remained in Constantinople, whose name was A R- Arthaustus THAV TV s, being assisted by many which tooke his part, role with the cittle and the role of the name of was called Emperour: whereof Constantine was speedily aduertised, euen Emperor. at fuch time as with his fleet he was come within fight of Alexandria in Egypt. So foone as he had certaine notice thereof, without any longer stay he returned towards Constantinople; and ARTHAVSTVS which was in possession thereof, put himselse in armes, with much people to defend the same. But Constanting landing, befieged the cittle, and entring it by force, apprehended the tyrant, and conflamine put commaunded his eies to be pluckt out, & him to be perpetually banished; which out Arthurstus in my opinion was too small a punishment for so great a treason : but then was bit eies.

vsed so much disloyaltie, that it was not punished accordingly as it deserved. And this being soone ended (although not without bloudshed) he heard the Popes ambaffade, finding his ambaffadours there in that confusion; which he answered with good words, but without performing what they required: perfifting in his opinion concerning the abolishing of images, and other points which his father held, and therewith he defired that the Church of Rome should doe the like: which put the Pope into a great agonie, as well by reason hereof, as of the tyrannicand warres of the Lombards. And the Emperours fuccours fayling, it pleafed God to fend it from elsewhere: all which from the root and ground paffed in this manner.

At that time the Christian faith and religion flourished in the kingdome of France, principally amongst the princes and great lords thereof; wherein by the death of CHABLES MARTEL, who as we faid was high Constable of that kingdome, his two fonnes, whereof the one was called CARLOMAN, and the other PEPIN, remaining in their fathers place, came to the government asabsolute lords of the whole land. Which kingdome was then much greater than now it is (although it be yet verie great) for befides that which the French now hold, they then possessed a great part of Germanie, as Austrich, Saxonie, Flaunders, Burgundie, Sucuia, and other provinces. The elder of these two brothers (which was CARLOMAN) making no account of the world, wherein he had fuch part (as I fav) determined to leave it, and went to Rome to Pope ZACHARY, who gauchim Church orders, and hee became a Monke of the order of Saint BENEDICT.

wherein he continued and ended. And his brother PEPIN remained alone in the gouernment of the kingdome of France, and did many noble feates of armes, in enlarging that kingdome against the enemies thereof, and governed the same fo well, that there was no speech or mention made of King CHILDERICKE: wherefore, and foralmuch as in truth the King was a man of small discretion. and altogether incapable of the gouernment, Pope Zachary deposed him depoid childs from the kingdome, and confirmed and approved the election of King Paris, rick Kingof from the kingdome, and confirmed and approved the election of king P apin, France from bis as write Thomas Aqvinas, Robert Gagvin, and Pavivs Emilivs, French historiographers. And CHILDERICKE became a religious man, and in him ended the line and lineall defent of the Kings of France, extract from the bloud of the famous FRANCO NS; and the crowne paffed to the linage of this PEPIN, wherein it continued almost two hundred and fortie yeeres, vntill such time as there happened another change, as shall be declared when time and place shall permit. This PEPIN was father to CHARLES the great, which afterwards was Emperor: wherefore it behoueth me heere to make mention of him.

The state of France standing in this manner, in Italy died Pope ZACHARY, and STEPHEN the second of that name succeeded him; in the beginning of whose papacie, AISTVLPHVS was King of the Lombards; and as we may lay, of all Italy; for his brother RACHISIVE which was King became a Monke, of the or-Rachifus King der of Saint BENEDICT. This new King feeing the small care that the Emperor

tooke for the affaires of Italy, breaking the peace whereto he himselfe was sworne, raifed a great power of men of warre (as a man that had fufficient meanes thereto) ced the kingdome and beand cruelly harried the land, and then belieged, battered, and took ethe citie of Rauenna, which of long time (excepting Rome) had bin the principall citie of all Italy, and the searc of the Exarches or gouernors; and he also won many other townes, which vntill then had valiantly defended themselues; so as there remained no more but the citie of Rome and the territorie thereof: for in a manner all Palin, and Calabria

Calabria were held by them. Which when Pope STEPHEN the second faw and confidered, he fent to give the Emperour to vinderstand thereof; plainly manifesting vnto him, that if he did not speedily send reliefe, all staly would come into the power of the Lombards.

The Emperour in this case made not such prouision of an armie and men of warre, as the necessitie of the cause required, and sent but only an Ambassadour to the king of the Lombards; and other Ambassadours were sent by the king to the AISTVLPHYS Without respect of any person sent to the Pope, requiring him to King Aistul giue vp the citie of Rome into his power; if not, that he would then come and take face to the Pope

Emperour, and long treaties and many speeches were spent about the matter:but it by force of armes, and strike off the heads of all such as he should finde therein. The Pope feeing this, after long confideration and confultation had about the matter, with the confent of the whole citie, feeing there was no other remedie, agreed to fend to PEPIN king of France for reliefe, which was done with the greatest secrecie that could be; he seeking by other meanes to entertaine king AISTVLPHS with presents and promises. The king of France willingly heard his ambaffade, and promifed to doe what he required; and therewith fent to the Pope, counfelling him for his more fafetie to come into France. In the meane time returned the Ambassadours which were sent to the Emperour to Constantimople, which brought no other redreffe, but direction for the Pope to goe in perfon to king A 15 TV LPHV s, and to entreate him for peace. The Pope having alreadie fully determined of his journey, must of necessitie passe through AISTVI-PHVs his dominions, and therefore resolued to doe both: and so departed from Rome, accompanied with the Ambaffadours of both the Kings, and of the Emperour, and came to Paula, where the proud King AISTVLPHVS then lay; but could not come to any composition with him, for he required to have the dominion and rule of Rome, and the rest of all Italy; and that they should yeerely give him a certaine peece of gold for enery head. And notwithstanding that they treated of peace yet he neuerthelesse daily made preparation for the warres: so as the Pope in the best manner that hee could tooke his leave of him, and by long journeys came into France, holding his way towards king PEPINE court, who commaunded his eldest some CHARLES, which afterwards was Emperour, that so some as he were come into France, he should conduct and accompanie him; and hee himself afterwards came three miles from Paris, where he then held his court, to meete him: and alighting from his horse he kist the Popes foot, and would ride no more but led the Popes horse by the bridle: and in this manner with excessive humilitie, he couducted him to his palace, where he was magnificently received, and royally entertained, and there hee confirmed king PEPINS election; and fo annointed and crowned him king of France. And king PEPIN after many matters which passed about this businesse, resoluting to relieue the Pope, caused an armie to be leuied: but he first sent Ambassadours to king AISTVLPHVS, to treate with him concerning an establishment of peace, offering him reasonable and honorable conditions. Whereto he answered with greater pride then besitted him: for making small account of king Papan, he reposed his chiefe trust in the multitude of his people. The peace being broken, and the warre determined, Papin VV arres becommaunded his troupes to march; whose auauntguard in passing the Alpes, tweene King fought with AISTVLPHVS his forces which guarded the passages; which be flulphus hing of ing broken and scattered, the king passed with his whole armie; and A 15 T V 1- the Lambards. PHVs staying in the plaines with the rest of his power, and vnable to make head

against

Pepin and the Lembards.

against him, was constrained to retire, whom king Papin pursued vntill that hee had enclosed him in the citie of Pania, where (being master of the field) he besieged him: during which fiege, many rapines, robberies, and outrages were committed. Pope STEPHEN feeing what ill was befalne; notwithstanding that he apparantly faw the victorie, and that he himfelfe was the procurer of the warre, vet he procured peace, and dealt with AISTVLPHV Sto that effect, persivading him to refigne what he had taken, and to binde himselfe by oth to maintaine the peace, and to give hostages and securitie for the observing of the same. A 15 TV 1-PHV s being thus belieged, & hearing these newes, in outward shew praised God, faining great humilitie and thankfulnes to the Pope, and extolling him, promifed and fware to be his most obedient son, & so the matter was agreed upon: for king PEPIN pretended nothing, but restitution to be made to the Pope, and the quiet of the Church of Rome, and as it feemed that he had effected the fame, taking with him fortie men of account which AISTVLPHVS deliuered vnto him for hoftages and pledges, for the performance of his promife, hee within a certaine prefixed time, raifed his fiege from before Pania, and returned towards France, leauing a great noble man called VARNERIVS to fee the conditions perfourmed: whereof the Pope holding himselfe assured also towards Rome, and Ar-STVLPHVS accomplishing some matters of small importance, with faire words deferring the principall (which was the rendring of cities and townes) temporized, vntill that king PEPIN was returned into his countrie. And afterwards contrarie to his oth, would performe nothing of what he had promifed, but went to Rauenna, and thither fent for the greatest part of his forces; and continuing his pretended purpose, within a very small time after, tooke his way towards Rome, where the Pope was; and encamping himself before it held it befreged the space of three moneths; in which time (as all histories beare record) he did greater harme in the fields and territorie thereof, then had been done before in three hundred and fortie yeeres, by the Vilogothes, the Oftrogothes, the Heruli the fame Lombards themselues, or any other nation. In the beginning of this siege, what passed I have not time to set downe; but that the Pope sent his Ambassadours downe the river Tiber, and thence by fea to king PEPIN into France, then the Popes only refuge, to entreate him to come to his reliefe; whom they found bufie in making preparation for his comming, notwithstanding that they had not requested him: but with their comming the farre greater haste was made. Wherof when AISTVLPHVS had intelligence, he raised his siege from before Rome, and came into Lumbardy, with an intent to have stoppedking PEPINS descent from the Alpes; where we will leave them for a while, to the end hereafter to make an end of the storie. And let vs now speake of Constantine, of whom this Chronicle is, whom wee haue not without reason forgotten, for in truth it hath bin to give light to the reader, to fee and to understand the cause and reason why the Pope transported the Empire into the Westerne parts, first into the house of France; for which cause it was requisite to declare what is said, and what shall be faid hereafter: for although it be not directly of the Emperours, yet it is very expedient for the historie of them, and the cleerenes and order of what we shall write hereafter. I say then that CONSTANTINE was not idle all the while that these things passed in Italy, but attempted to make warre against the Insidels, somtimes in Egypt; and sometimes in Syria, but euer with ill successe. His Empire was also much distressed and weakened, by reason of a great pestilence, which fell aamong the inhabitants in those parts, which was so terrible, that it was feared that

by the Lom-

the land would have been dispeopled; which as HvG o FLORIACENSIS Writeth, began in Calabria, and from thence passed into Sicilia, and afterwards into Gracia, and to Constantinople, afflicting those countries. So that it is beleeued and held for certaine, that if there had not happened to arise new and vnexpected enemies against the Sarazins, the East Empire had been in great danger to haue been loft. But in time of this aduerfitie the Turkes descended, in a most huge multitude, out of Scithia Asiatica; for being in a manner innumerable, and in a cold and the trigine of barren countrie; moued thereto through the fame of the wealth of Afia, they came into the prouince of the Alanes, and afterwards into the countries of the Colchi, and from thence descended into Armenia; and lastly into Persia, and so into Asia the leffe, robbing and subduing those countries: in such fort that the Mahometifts could not attempt ought against the Christians, neither were of power sufficiently able to defend themselues, and therefore concluded a peace with them: and so the Turkes remained Lords of great part of those prouinces. and afterwards received the accurred feet of MAHOMET, which they found in the countries by them subdued. The Sarazins being much troubled in this warre, fuffered CONSTANTINE to live in peace. But the fame Turkes did him much harme, for they tooke from him certaine prouinces in Afia the leffe, and therein. and in the rest of Asia, remained a long time after, mixed with other nations. hauing no rule or dominion, but liued obscurely, vntill that about two hundred and fiftie yeeres afterwards, as when time shall serue wee will tell you, one amongst them whose name was O TTOMAN, began the dominion and empire which outsman king they hold this day. This nation of the Turkes (fetting a part all other opinions) of the Turkes had their originall beginning in Scithia in Asia : Of all the ancient writers, onely PLINI in his fixt booke, and POMPONIVS MELA in the end of his first booke. make mention of them, and place them amongst the Sarmates in the confines of Scithia, ouer the Caspian passages in the Hiperborean mountaines; and they say that they lived dispersed in the fields, by that which they could get by hunting : to as they were vnknowne (yet some mention was made of them) vntill this their descent in the time of CONSTANTINE the fift; and so for almost other five hundred yeeres, there was no great account made of them. The opinion of those which fay that the Turkes descended from the Troianes, is meerely false, and shall not neede to be reproued, or impugned, for that it is ridiculous, and not to be regarded for what is before faid is true. But returning to my storie I say that the affaires of the East remaining in this estate, and the Emperour knowing that Ar-STV LPHVS king of the Lombards had befreged Rome, & that the Pope had fent to the Frenchking for aide, and that he made preparation to come to vnfet him; being greatly grieued therewith, in great haste he sent two of his fauourites to the Pope, requesting him not to retaine the succours of France, for that he himselfe would relieue him. But this tooke no effect, for as much as they spake too late, and also for that the Pope and state of Rome had no good conceit or hope of him: so as the Emperors Ambassadours staied not in Rome, but went to the French court, where they fought to have diverted the King, and to have diffwaded him from going into Italy. But king PEPIN notwithstanding relented not, but rather with a greater and better armie passed the Alpes; in which passage were many skirmithes, and many men were lost of the one side and of the other. But in the King Pepin end A 15 TV LPHV s durst not abide the battaile, but setting all matters in the best came the seorder that possibly he could he retired himselfe into the citie of Pania, which was could time into the head and royall seate of that kingdome; wherein king Parin againe besie- July.

Pepin and the

against him, was constrained to retire, whom king P = PIN pursued vntill that hee had enclosed him in the citie of Pania, where (being master of the field) he besieged him: during which fiege, many rapines, robberies, and outrages were committed. Pope STEPHEN feeing what ill was befalne; notwithstanding that he ap-Peace between parantly saw the victorie, and that he himselfe was the procurer of the warre, yet he procured peace, and dealt with AISTVLPHV Sto that effect, perswading him to refigne what he had taken, and to binde himselfe by oth to maintaine the peace, and to give hostages and securitie for the observing of the same. A 15 T V 1-PHV s being thus befreged, & hearing these newes, in outward shew praised God, faining great humilitie and thankfulnes to the Pope, and extolling him, promifed and fware to be his most obedient son, & so the matter was agreed upon: for king PEPIN pretended nothing, but restitution to be made to the Pope, and the quiet of the Church of Rome, and as it feemed that he had effected the fame, taking with him fortie men of account which A ISTV LPHV'S delivered vnto him for hoffages and pledges, for the performance of his promife, hee within a certaine prefixed time, raised his siege from before Pania, and returned towards France, leauing a great noble man called VARNERIVS to fee the conditions perfourmed: whereof the Pope holding himselfe assured, departed also towards Rome, and Ar-STVLPHVS accomplishing some matters of small importance, with faire words deferring the principall (which was the rendring of cities and townes) temporized, untill that king PEPIN was returned into his countrie. And afterwards contrarie to his oth, would performe nothing of what he had promifed, but went to Rauenne, and thither fent for the greatest part of his forces; and continuing his pretended purpole, within a very small time after, tooke his way towards Rome, where the Pope was; and encamping himself before it, held it befreged the space Rome besieged of three moneths; in which time (as all histories beare record) he did greater harme in the fields and territorie thereof, then had been done before in three hundred and fortie yeeres, by the Vilogothes, the Oftrogothes, the Heruli, the fame Lombards themselues, or any other nation. In the beginning of this siege, what passed I have not time to set downe; but that the Pope sent his Ambassadours downe the river Tiber, and thence by fea to king PEPIN into France, then the Popes only refuge, to entreate him to come to his reliefe; whom they found bufie in making preparation for his comming, notwithstanding that they had not requested him: but with their comming the farre greater haste was made. Wherof when AISTVLPHVS had intelligence, he raised his siege from before Rome, and came into Lumbardy, with an intent to have stopped king PEPINS descent from the Alpes; where we will leave them for a while, to the end hereafter to make an end of the storie. And let vs now speake of Constantine, of whom this Chronicle is, whom wee haue not without reason for gotten, for in truth it hath binto giue light to the reader, to see and to understand the cause and reason why the Pope transported the Empire into the Westerne parts, first into the house of France; for which cause it was requisite to declare what is said, and what shall be faid hereafter: for although it be not directly of the Emperours, yet it is very expedient for the historie of them, and the cleerenes and order of what we shall write hereafter. I say then that CONSTANTINE was not idle all the while that these things passed in Italy, but attempted to make warre against the Insidels somtimes in Egypt, and sometimes in Syria, but euer with ill successe. His Empire was also much distressed and weakened, by reason of a great pestilence, which fell among the inhabitants in those parts, which was so terrible, that it was seared that

the land would have been dispeopled; which as HVG o FLORIACENSIS Writeth, began in Calabria, and from thence passed into Sicilia, and afterwards into Gracia, and to Constantinople, afflicting those countries. So that it is beleeved and held for certaine, that if there had not happened to arisenew and vnexpected enemies against the Sarazins, the East Empire had been in great danger to haue been loft. But in time of this aduerfitie the Turkes descended, in a most huge multitude, out of Scithia Asiatica; for being in a manner innumerable, and in a cold and the triples barren countrie; moued thereto through the fame of the wealth of Afia, they came into the prouince of the Alanes, and afterwards into the countries of the Colchi, and from thence descended into Armenia; and lastly into Persia, and so into Asia the leffe, robbing and subduing those countries: in such fort that the Mahometifts could not attempt ought against the Christians, neither were of power sufficiently able to defend themselues, and therefore concluded a peace with them: and so the Turkes remained Lords of great part of those prouinces. and afterwards received the accurred feet of MAHOMET, which they found in the countries by them subdued. The Sarazins being much troubled in this warre. fuffered CONSTANTINE to live in peace. But the fame Turkes did him much harme, for they tooke from him certaine prouinces in Asia the lesse, and therein, and in the rest of Asia, remained a long time after, mixed with other nations, hauing no rule or dominion, but liued obscurely, vntill that about two hundred and fiftie yeeres afterwards, as when time shall serue wee will tell you, one amongst them whose name was OTTOMAN, began the dominion and empire which outsman king they hold this day. This nation of the Turkes (fetting a part all other opinions) of the Turker. had their originall beginning in Scithia in Asia : Of all the ancient writers, onely PLINI in his fixt booke, and POMPONIVS MELA in the end of his first booke. make mention of them, and place them amongst the Sarmates in the confines of Scithia, ouer the Caspian passages in the Hiperborean mountaines; and they say that they lived difperfed in the fields, by that which they could get by hunting : fo as they were vnknowne (yet some mention was made of them) vntill this their descent in the time of CONSTANTINE the fift; and so for almost other fine hundred yeeres, there was no great account made of them. The opinion of those which fay that the Turkes descended from the Troianes, is meerely false, and shall not neede to be reproued, or impugned, for that it is ridiculous, and not to be regarded for what is before faid is true. But returning to my storie I say that the affaires of the East remaining in this estate, and the Emperour knowing that Ar-STVLPHVSking of the Lombards had befieged Rome, & that the Pope had fent to the French king for aide, and that he made preparation to come to vnset him; being greatly grieued therewith, in great haste he sent two of his fauourites to the Pope, requesting him not to retaine the succours of France, for that he himselfe would relieue him. But this tooke no effect, for as much as they spake too late, and also for that the Pope and state of Rome had no good conceit or hope of him: fo as the Emperors Ambassadours staied not in Rome, but went to the French court, where they fought to have diverted the King, and to have diffwaded him from going into Italy. But king PEPIN notwithstanding relented not, but rather with a greater and better armie passed the Alpes; in which passage were many skirmithes, and many men were lost of the one side and of the other. But in the King Pepin end A 1 3 T V L P H V S durst not abide the battaile, but setting all matters in the best came the setting all matters in the setting all matters i order that possibly he could, he retired himselfe into the citie of Pasia, which was could time into the head and royall feate of that kingdome; wherein king Papin againe befie- Jidy.

Church of

The Exarches

The death of King Aistul

> The Emperor made péace with Hadalia King of the Sa

.Constantine flantinople to be bebeaded.

iffue thereof.

he had taken. The Emperors Ambassadors solicited, that Rauenna and all that government might be reftored to the Emperor, and the reft to the Pope: Whereto King PEPIN answered, that he came to that war, onely for the defence of the Church of Rome, and that all that therein was conquered, should be her enheritance, and no bodies else in the world. Finally, a peace was concluded, and A r-STVLPHVS before the fiege was raifed, rendred vnto the Pope, Rauenna, and all King Pepin his the cities which in those warres he had taken, in that Exarchate, or out of it: adonation to the mongst which were Bologna, Mantua, Cefena, Modena, Rezzo, Parma, Placentia, Ferrara, Fauencia, and many other cities and townes, whereof King PEPIN made to the Church of Rome a perpetual donation; as a thing by him conquered and gotten. The Emperors Ambassadors seeing this, being out of hope returned, and the peace was confirmed. So as the government and dignitic of the Exarches was wholy ended and extinguished in Italy, which had continued one hundred threescore and fifteene yeeres, and the Popes remained sole Lords of all those countries, and possessed the same together with the citie of Rome, and the rest. And King PEPIN being returned into France, King AISTVLEHVS which deferred the deliuerie of certaine places, thinking to have effected fome innovation. was ouertaken by death, the manner whereof is written diuerfly. And after his decease one Desiderivs a greatman among the Lombards, was chosen for their King; who was Duke of Hetruria, now Tuscane. And notwithstanding that fome great men perswaded R ACHISIVS brother to AISTVLPHVS, which of long time had been a Monke, to take vpon him the name and title of King, ver this tooke no effect, and DESIDERIVS, with the fauour of Pope STEPHEN, to whom he promised to be a perpetual friend, remained King; and so the peace was established. And Pope Stephen applied himselfe to the government of his Church. and the estate thereof. And when he was most busic about those matters, he was taken with an infirmitie whereof he died, and Pay L the first of that name, a Romane borne, succeeded him. In the meane while that King Papin in Italy made warres againft the Lom-

bards, the Emperor Constanting endeuored to put the images out of the Churches, and made peace with HADALIA King of the Sarazins, to the end that hee should induce the Christians to doe the like, which were in Armenia. Palestina, Soria, and in all the other provinces in his subjection, which were infinite, and continued in those countries a long time after, and it is said that many liue there yet untill this day. This Emperor is reported to have restrained the libertie of the Monkes and prelates very much, without respect to their immunities and privileges; amongst which he cut off the head of Constanting the eaused the Pa- Patriarch of Constantinople, for opposing himselfe against him, and there with suptriarch of Con- pressed certaine Monasteries. In this time there grew warre and dissention betweene him and THESSALIVS King of Bulgaria; who entred Thracia and did much harme, spoiling and robbing the lands of the Empire; against whom conflantine and CONSTANTINE leuied an armie, and fighting with him obtained the victorie's Theffalius King and THESSALIVS returned by flight, with loffe of many of his people; for which diffrace and for his euill carriage in the battaile, his people rofe against him, and flew him; and chose another called SABINVS for their King: who to make the Emperor his friend, consented and agreed with him to deface and cast the Images out of the Churches; wherewith his subjects were somuch discontented, that if he had not escaped from them by flight, they had flaine him:

but he went to the Emperor and was there protected; and the Bulgarians chose another for their King, whose name was PAGANVS. At this time CONSTAN-TINE made his eldest some called LEO, his companion and successor in the Empire: this LEO was afterwards Emperor and the fourth of that name. Whileft that CONSTANTINE was busied about these matters. Pope PAVL in Italy lived in peace with the Lombards, and their King DESIDERIVS, according to the composition made and established by King Perin of France, who within short The death of fpace after died, having been one of the most excellent princes of the world. Af-King Pepin. ter the death of Pepin, Charles and Carloman his fonnes succeeded medite great, him, which divided the kingdome betweene them; and by the death of CAR- and his brother LOMAN it came wholy to CHARLES. Presently after that King PEPIN was carded their dead, Pope PAV Lalfo died, whose death caused a Scisme in the Church of Rome; sather, for DESIDERIVS King of the Lombards, lending a captaine of his with certaine troupes of fouldiers to Rome, procured his brother Constantine to be made Pope, who without regarde of the order of election tooke possession of the pallace and held the papall state for the space of one yeere: and others of a contrarie faction and opinion chose another Pope, whose name was PHILIPPICYS: but CONSTANTINE being of greater power, PHILIPPICY'S was deposed. But as all was done by force and violence, so by the like force it was determined: for the people and cleargie agreeing together made choise of STEPHEN the third, who was a Sicilian borne, and compelled Constantine to refigne the papacie, and Pope Conflant he did fo, and put himselfe into a cloifter. The first thing that the new Pope did, and made a was againe to fet vp Images in the Churches, and to that effect wrote to the two Monke. fonnes of PEPIN the deceased King of France, to send to the Emperor some of the prelates which were in their kingdome; which then was fo great that it extended it selfe from the Alpes to the Pirepian mountaines; and thence so far as to Hungarie, and on the other fide to the fea; so that these two brothers were Lords of all that which we now call France, together with Flanders, Frifeland, Braband, and on both fides of the river Rhine, of Austrich, Bauiere and other provinces of Germanie, besides what rebelled in his time, which was a great part; all which this CHARLES conquered and pacified, although not without great trauell, and made himselfe absolute Lord of the whole. The Pope by their consent sommoned a The Emperer councell to be held in Rome, wherein the Emperor CONSTANTINE was againe condemned by condemned; and all that he and his father had commaunded to be done in Con- his council. flantinople, was reproued and difanulled: but this tooke small effect, for he little regarded it. The councell being defolued, DESIDERIVS King of the Lombards fought to have caused some alteration in Rome and in Italy, by meanes of one A N-FIARATA, the Emperors chamberlaine, who then was in Rome, wherein although there were no gouernors for the Empire, as in former time (for it now feemed that the Popes had the fole gouernment) yet was this capitols of great authoritie: who with the affiftance of DESIDERIVS, which fought to procure the Emperor to haue some footing againe in Italy, thereby to weaken the power of the Pope, and of the French, he apprehended certaine Romanes, and committed them to prison. Three yeeres passed in these matters, and Pope STEPHEN dying, The death of ADRIAN the first of those which were so called was chosen, who at his first en-Pope Stephen. trance released those out of prison which were committed in the time of Pope STEPHEN by ANFTARATA. Whereupon King Desiderly's feeing how much the papal power by meanes of France encreased; sought to have made a

league and confederacie with him, which the Pope refused, alleaging that he

would not beleeve him, who no better held his word. At this time died CARLO MANking of France, and his brother which afterwards for his great acts was called CHARLEs the Great, made himselfe Lord of that kingdome; and the widów Queene, wife of the deceafed King, went with her fonnes to king DESIDERIVS into Italy; who being glad of her comming, received and entertained her very honourably, thinking to have raifed some trouble and diffention amongst the French; and to that effect practifed with Pope ADRI AN, to make the eldeft sonne of King GARLOMAN, King of that part of France which his father enjoyed, with intent by that meane to have fet him and King CHARLES at variance, whom hereafter we will call CHARLE sthe Great: whereto the Pope would not be induced, and DESIDERIVS purpoling by force to bring it to passe, began to make warre on every fide. The first was against the citie of Rauenna and the marches thereof; and took the cities of Ferrara, Fauentia, and other townes: and the Pope by ambassades and letters entreating him to desist from those warres, he threatned to befrege Rome it felfe, and took his way thitherwards. Whereupon the Pope Sent three Bishops to meete him upon the way, and by them sent him a decree. wherein he charged him not to passe any further, neither to presume to come within the bounds of the territorie of Rome, vpon paine to be presently excommunicated. And notwithstanding that DESIDERIVS Was a very resolute man, and of an hautie stomacke, yet so soone as hee had received this decree, without fetting one foote further, he returned with his forces to the citie of Paula; but the warres ceased not. For all which the Emperour Constanting was nothing forrie, he fo much enuied the Popes greatnes, and in Constantinople he caused one STRPHEN to be flaine, for defending the ambition of the Romish Prelates. And about this time hee rigged vp a very great fleete of about two thousand saile of thips, therewith to transport his armie ouer the fea called Excitor, against the king of Bulgaria; which fleete was ouertaken with fo great a tempeft, that the greatest part thereof was cast away and drowned.

The Pope knowing that by the Emperor he should not be relieued in his wars against Desidering Rivis sent to Charles the great for aide, who with very great forces tooke his way towards Italy: but he first required DESIDERIVS by Ambaffadours to make fatisfaction for the harmes which he had done, and to bee at peace with the Church: And feeing that he preuailed not he marched forwards with his troupes; and DESIDERIVS engroffed his forces to stop his passage: but being vnable to compasse it, he sent the wife and children of CARLOMAN to Verona, and fortified Paula, and suffered himselfe to be therein besieged. Wherein ereat into Italy he was ill aduised: for by reason thereof the greatest part of his gouernours and captaines seeing him thus distressed, losing all courage sent to yeeld their obedience to the Pope, and defired to be received for his friends & vaffals; and giving vp their holds, many of their people went to Rome, to dwell and abide where the Pope should appoint. And CHARLES the Great leaving an vncle of his at the fiege of Pania, went against Verona; which he tooke without any great difficultie, together with his fifter in law, and nephewes which were therin; and from thence went to Rome to kiffe the Popes foote, and to hold the feast of Easter, where he was received with all the folemnitie that could be devised. At this his comming thither he confirmed to the Church and to the Popes of Rome, the donation which his father had made, of Rauenna, and other lands; and made another new of many other places, amongst which is reckoned the Ile of Corsica, and all the coast of Genea, with the cities of Parma, Ancona, Vrbin, and many other townes,

Charles tooke

Charleshis Church of

CONSTANTINE THE FIFT.

which BIBLIOTHECARIVS fetteth downe, besides Rome and the territorie thereof; which the Popes had alreadie in possession, whether by the pretended donation of Constatine the Great, or by the donation made by the faid King Papin, or by common confent or ancient prescription I know not. So as to the Emperours remained but onely that part of Italy, which was called Magna Gracia, which is part of Calabria, and of Pulia, and great part of that which now is the kingdome of Naples. CHARLES the Great having been Deliderius but onely eight daies in Rome, returned against DESIDERIVS, who had been king of the aboue fixe moneths befieged in Pania, and now yeelded vpon composition, and ded to charles CHARLES carried him with him, and banished both him and his sonnes into a the great. certaine Iland; and then tooke Milan, and all the other cities in Lombardy, which is the ancient Gallia Cifalpina, where he placed Frenchmen for Dukes and gouernours; and in other Duchies and cities of that kingdome, he placed Dukes of the fame nation of the Lombards, which became his subjects and did him homage; and fo Italy remained in his obedience and fubication, excepting those provinces and lands which were left to the Church, and those which the Pope held in for- The end of the mer time; but all in peace and quiet. And so ended and was wholy extinguished the Lombards. the kingdome of the Lombards, which had continued two hundred and foure vecres in Italy.

CHARLES the Great having ended these exploites, returned with triumph and victorie into his kingdome of France: and within short space after there befell him a very daungerous warre, against certaine nations in Germany, which rose and rebelled against him namely the Saxons and other people in those quarters: which he subdued, although long first, and with great trauaile, but with great honour and the fame of an excellent captaine. But for as much as it is tedious to recite it and also for that it happened before that he was Emperour, we will speake no more thereof to be the better able to relate what happened after that hee was Emperour, as shall be said hereafter. The Emperor Constantine which now had raigned a long time, againe made warre against the King of the Bulgarians. which began betweene them with great force and vehemencie: but it lasted not long for he was taken with a kind of leprofic called Elephancia, whereof he after-

wards died: but he first concluded a peace with the king of Bulgaria, after the which, his infirmitie encreased in such manner that he died, leauing his fonne LEO, whom he had by his first wife YRENE (who alreadie was in possession) for his successor, when he had raigned 35. yeers, in the yeere of our Lord, feuen hundred feuentie and feuen.

The death of the Emperous Conftantine. Anne Dom. 777.



### THE LIFE OF LEO, THE FOVRTH OF THAT NAME.

AND THREESCORE AND FOURE-TEENE ROMANE EMPEROR.





N the time of the Emperor Constantine, by his order and commaundement his sonne LEO was chosen Emperour, and his companion; whom he had by the kings daughter of Bulgaria, with whom he was married, whose name was YRENE. And LEO had to wife a woman borne in Athens, whose name was also YRENE, which was the fairest woman of her time; and for wisdome and policie one of the most noble and excellent Ladies that euer was in the world. Wherefore without

any contradiction he was presently held and obeyed as Emperor, in place of his deceased father. In the beginning of his Empire, he made shew to be very deuout and affected to the Churches, and to religious persons, of whatsoeuer order, seeking to aduatince them to dignities. And he likewife made preparation of men and thipping against the Infidels, and went into Afia in person, and inuaded the prouince of Soria: but his iourney tooke small effect, for within short time after hee returned, with losse of some of his people, and of his owne reputation alfo.

This Emperor L Bo held also other warres with the Infidels, by his Captaines, wherein happened many matters, but not of any account. In this manner he paffed the first three yeeres of his raigne, and in the fourth with this shew and apparance of a good prince, hee practifed with his subjects to chuse a young some which he had, called CONSTANTINE (as was his grandfather) Emperor. And in the fame fourth yeare also, he knowing that fundrie of his Court were of the Romish sect concerning the worshipping of images, he made many of them to be apprehended, and openly difgraced, and deprined and deposed them from their dignities: whereupon he began to be hated, and held for an euill prince. But by his wives meanes and his owne death, which shortly ensued, it was The death of mitigated; for he died of a carbuncle which arose in his head, without leauing the Emperor ought done by him worthy of memorie, at least that I have found written. This Least happened in the fifth yeare of his raigne, and in the yeare of our Lord seuen hun- Anno Dom. dred four score and two. He was much condemned for the taking of a crowne 782. of gold, and certaine stones of great price, out of the famous temple of S. Sophia, which by the Emperour MAVRICE were offered and dedicated to the image of our Ladie in Constantinople, which he tooke from thence, and put vpon his owne head.

In this time in France and Germanie flourished CHARLES the Great, of whom (for that he was afterwards Emperour) I have made this mention, as well in matters of war, as peace; who honored and fauoured the valiant and hardie knights. and letters also and learned men, and procured instice to be maintained in all his dominions, and that his gouernment should be just and vpright. Whereupon he created many Dukes and other dignities, and amongst them the twelue peeres of France, which are fo famous in all histories. He also made and ordained the parliament at Paris: afterwards in the yeare feauen hundred and ninetic, in the lifetime of CONSTANTINE sonne of this LEO, he founded an Vniuersitie in the same citie, which hath been samous and excellent, and is yet so vntill this day: and another in the cittle of Pania, which was the cause that both chiualrie and learning so much flourished in his time. In the time of the Emperour L 20, of whom we now leaue to make any more mention, the faid CHARLES came into Spaine; where he was by treason ouerthrowne and broken at Roncenaulx, and lost the flowre of his nobilitie and chiualrie: by meanes of A LONSO the Second, called the Chaft, aided and affifted by the Moores and Infidels which then lived in Arragon, and in the territorie thereof. In matters which preceded and succeeded this battaile and the causes thereof, and what passed therein; there is great difference betweene the French and Spanish Chroniclers, & among themselves The battaile of of either nation. Wherfore, and forafmuch as the actes of CHARLES the Great Roncewalls. (before that he was Emperour) concerne not my historie, I therefore leave to speake any more thereof. And also for that we know that FLORIAN DOCAM-Po hath written thereof at large in his generall historie of Spaine, of whose fingular diligence there is no doubt to bee made, but that hee hath inuiolably ob-

ferued the truth, without omitting any thing worthy of memorie, especially in a matter so famous and memorable; and therefore referring the reader to him. I will returne to profecute my iourney.

THE



### THE LIFE OF CONSTAN-TINE, THE SIXT OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND FIFTEENE ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGUMENT.

A.G. Eo being dead, his some Constantine (notwithstanding that he was but a childe )succeeded him, and through the prudence of his mother, and the oath of the men of warre, was obeyed. This woman was of such wisedome that she ruled the Empire tenne yeeres, and was she cause of the councell assembled about the controversie for Images; and agreement to be made betweene the Greeke and Latin Churches. But the yong man comming to riper age, bereaued her of the government, and made her to line a part from him, and became so displeasing, that his owner people conspired against him, although the conspiracie tooke not the wished effect. But he being ill beloved, certaine of the most principall men of the Empire incited her to resume the government; and the fetting aside the love of a mother towards ber sonne, apprehended him and caused his eies to be pluckt out, as he had done by many others. This was the occasion that the East Empire was tranflated into the West; for the Pope seeing the East Empire to decline, and that it was gonerned by a woman, he annointed and crowned Charles the great, Emperor, with whom Trene fought to have bin married, but it tooke no effect, she being dissimaded by the princes of Gracia, but she made a sirme and assured peace with him, which she not long enioyed: for sundrie valiant men, which tooke in ill part to be ruled by a woman, conspiring against ber, by a wile approbended, and deposed her from the Empire, giving the charge thereof to a very noble man, whose name was Nicephorus.



O foone as L z o the fourth was dead, his fonne C on STANTINE being little more then twelue yeeres old, was received for Emperor; (notwithstanding his small age) whereto his mothers wisedome and valour was a great helpe, and also for that the subjects of the Empire Empire were sworne to him in the life time of his father, yet this could not be effected without difficultie; for some principall men disdaining to be commaunded by a child, and a woman; secretly practised to make NICEPHORVS Emperor, who was the young manes Vncle, and brother to his father L no: although that through forgetfulnes, no mention was before made of him. But this was not fo fecretly done, but that YRENE had intelligence thereof, and tooke fo good order, that the apprehended and banished those which were the authors thereof, and made their haire to be cut, which then was a great diffrace; yet vpon Nica. Puniforment in PHORY & the inflicted no other punishment, but onely made him take a monafti- such as confis call habit; and so the Empire remained in peace to her sonne. But notwithstan - red against the ding that the young man was Emperor, yet his mother commaunded all, and (as flastine. all authors write) very vprightly and prudently; for she was a wise and a very excellent woman, and aboue all was very much denoted to the romish religion, wherof this may ferue for proofe; for the feeing the discord betweene the Greekes and Latins about the worthipping of Images, & other points in religion wherein they disagreed, endeuored very earnestly, that a councell generall might be called and her industrie tooke such effect (although somewhat long first) that a councell was affembled in the citie of Nicen, in the province of Bythinia, wherein other Counted held councels in former time had been held; in which were three hundred and fiftie Niem. Bishops, and therein were handled many matters concerning the estate of the cleargie, and thuse were condemned for heretikes, which denied the veneration of Images in the Church. In such manner that during the gouernment of YRENE, the Images and pictures of CHRIST, and our Lady, and fundrie other. in the easterne Churches were againe set up, whereat the common people which euer delighteth in nouelties, was very joyfull; and fo was THERASIVS the Patriarch of Constantinople, which succeeded PAVL, who had sought and much defired the fame. It is faid, that this THERASIVS was he which principally moued YRENE so earnestly to sollicite the calling of a councell; the resolution whereof concerning Images, is contained in two verses, which then were made.

and at this day are placed in a Church in Venice, which in Latin are thus: Nam Deus quod Imago docet, sed non Deus ipfa, banc videas, sed mente colas, quod eernis in ipsa.

Which in effect is asmuch to say, as that which this Image doth shew and signifie, is God; but the Image is not fo, behold the same, but with the minde reuerencethat which therein is represented. Having ended a matter of so great importance, as that which I recited, in all the rest of the time of hergouernment, both before and after the councell, which were some yeeres, she bare her selfe farre more like a politike valorous man, then a delicate and most beautifull woman as the was: but her fonne Constantine, who was now come to mans estate, repined at, and disliked his mothers gouernment, and in the end deposed her from the same, and from the councell also, making her to liue prinately, without any authoritie; when she had with great wisedome ruled in his name, the space of ten yeeres, and had maintained the Empire with iustice, in peace with all the world.

It is written that in those daies was found in Constantinople in a very old Sepul- A plate of gold this written that in those dates was found in companion in a test of the cher, a plate or leafe of golde, ypon the breaft of a corpes, which therein had been found you the cher, a plate or leafe of golde, ypon the breaft of a dead buried, wherein were written these words, CHRIST shall be borne of the birgin body in con-MARY, Thou some shalt see me againe at what time as Constantine and satisfies his mother YRENE shall be Emperors. This was held for a great matter and true.

Charles the

great vuly fo

YRENBand her fonne made great account of this table, for it feemed to be written before the comming of Christ.

The Emperor being now at libertie began freely to vie those qualities whereto he was naturally enclined, in such fort, that he became ill beloued, and they againe the fecond time conspired against him, seeking to make his vncle NICE PHORVS Emperour. But as to Princes (whether good or bad)most matters are commonly discouered; so this conspiracie was likewise repealed, and he knowing it, commaunded some of those which had been practisers therein to be anprehended, which he seuerely punished, and commaunded his vncle NICEPHO-R v s to be perpetually banished. And after this he put away his wife, who was a very noble woman called MARY, and discording himselfe from her shut her yo in a Nunrie, and married one of her maides, called THE ODORA, of whom hee was enamoured, a woman of no defert, but onely that the was faire and very beautifull. At what time as CONSTANTINE and his mother raigned in the East. CHARLES the great, King of France, so called for the great exploites which in armes he had perfourmed: yet some are of opinion, that he was so called by reafon of the great constitution of his bodie, for he was corpulent, very bigge limmed, and tall, and had not lived at his case, but had waged great and davingerous warres. In the beginning of the Emperour Constantines raigne, King CHARLES came in person into Italy to see the Pope, and to pacifie certaine commotions raifed by some Dukes, which were desirous of innouations; which being quieted, he had intelligence that the Duke of Baniere (for now they were no more called kings) practifed against him, with an intent to exempt himselfe from his subjection, and to that effect had leuied his forces: whereupon CHARLES resolued to goe against him in person, and by another way to send his some P s-PIN VPON the same service, and so hee began to make cruell warne against him: whereof when the Easterne Emperour Constanting was advertised imagining that CHARLES being busied in those wars, would not be able to provide for the affaires of Italy; he therfore fent commandement into those countries which he held therein, with some new troupes which hee leuied for that purpose, that they should make warre against the Pope and king CHARLES, which they prefently put in execution: but the Dukes of Beneuent and Spoleto, and of other cities, made fuch speedie preparation against them, that they were easily repelled and ouerthrowne; fo that from thencefoorth they lived quiet and in peace. And CHARLES had likewife fo good fucceffe in his warres against the Bauarians (although not without effusion of much bloud) that he made all that state still and in quiet, and reduced their prouinces to his feruice. And from thence hee went against the Slauons, which held the prouinces of Istria and Dalmatia, by them called Slauonia; and in one fummer brought all vnder his dominion. And afterwards raising a new power, he determined to make a conquest of Hungarie and Austrich, which are the ancient Pannonie, which the Hunnes Auares had of long time poffeffed, as is before faid: And notwithstanding that this was a very daungerous warre, and that therein were many great and notable battailes, wherein all the nobilitie and the greatest part of the common people of those countries died, so as the land lay in a manner waste and dispeopled; yet in the end, in the eight yeere Charles warred after the beginning thereof, he became absolute Lord of all the land. After these aforesaid warres, he had warres with the king of Denmarke, for the Danes harried mark; and fub the fea coafts with their fleetes of men of warre; and herein(as well as in the reft) this glorious prince had the victorie: and he afterwards made peace with their

Charles the great conquered Hungary and Aufrich. king of Den.

king, and determined to make an end of fubduing the Saxons, whose warres at times, as they rebelled, continued thirtie yeeres, and he flew of them in one battell thirtie thousand; and in another which hee fought with them afterwards, hee brought them wholy to obedience, and made them subject to the Empire: and for his better fecuritie heled the most principall of them with him into France. In the which conquests which I so briefly have recited, some battailes were fought by himselse in person, and some by his sonne P EPIN; in all which he wonne the name and renowne of a most excellent captaine. These things being past, in the veere of our Lord feuen hundred ninetie and fine, Pope ADIAN died in Rome, Anno Domi through whose death they chose Pope L n o the third of that name, who present- 795. ly after his election, sent great presents and a solemne ambassade to CHARLES the great. In shele times the Emperor Constantines men of warre did greatly crosse and hinder those of CHARLES the great; for after that he lived a part from his mother, he became very cruell, and in his gouernment negligent and diforderly: wherefore hee grew to be so ill beloued by his subjects, that some the most principall of them, perswaded his mother YRENE to depose him, and refume the government of the Empire into her owne hands, whereto they promised to assist her. The mother which had rather the heart of a reuengefull man, then of a delicate woman, preferring the displeasure which she had conceiued, before the loue of a mother to her fonne, with the aide of those which tooke her trene made part in the action, vpon a day by a wile apprehended him, and caused his eyes to her sonnes eyes be prefently pluckt out, as he had done to many others: which was one of the strangest & most cruell and inhumane parts that euer woman plaid in the world. And this being done, all obeyed her, and the alone had the government of the Empire, which yet was very great; for it contained in Europe, Thracia, and all the provinces of Gracia, the Iles of Sicilia, Candia, and those in the great sea called Archipelagus, and that part of Italy which was called Magna Grecia, and all the prouinces of Asia the lesse; all which were gouerned by this valorous woman, with great policie and authoritie. Who as the understood of the victories and great POWER OF CHARLES the great, defiring to be at peace with him, and fearing his greatness the commaunded those cities which she held in Italy, and the gouernors of them, to hold good corespondence and neighbourhood with those cities which were under the Pope, or king CHARLES: and besides this, she sent her Ambassadours vnto him, excusing her selse of that which had happened concerning her fonne, and made him many great offers : which CHARLES gladly entertained, for hee was a gentle prince to the meeke, and sharpe and cruell to the proud and rebellious. All Italy being in peace under the shadow and protection of CHARLES the great, where now was no memorie of the Lombards, which were wont to oppresse it; the diuell, a sower of dissention, acted his part in the citie of Rome, which was, that Pope L & o fitting (as they fay) in S.P ETER's chaire, two priests Cardinals of great account, called PASCVAL and CAPVLVS, confpired against him, and held so strong an hand amongst their complices, that they vpon a day apprehended him going in procession, which they did with such an vprore and tumult, that they had almost killed him, and handled him in such manner, that as most writers affirme, they put out his eyes, and cut out his tongue, and fo they committed him prisoner to a Monasterie of S.ER AS MV s, publishing abroad that they did it for the crimes by him committed, and the errors which he maintained; and being there, as BIBLIOTHECARIVS and some others affirme, he was miraculously restored to the fight of his eyes and his speech also, and a

chamberlaine of his vied fuch fecret meanes, or elfe by the permission of his keepers, that he was hidden in a certaine graue or fepulchre, and by night conveyed to the Duke of Spoleto, who then was Lieutenant to CHARLES the great in Italy, (which offices then were given for ever, or for terme of life) by whose aide hee Went to king CHARLES in Germany, to complaine of the violence done vnto him whither alreadie were meffengers fent by the other two Pascy AL and CAPVLVS, with informations and acculations against him. But not withstanding the same, the Pope was solemnely received and honoured by him, and remaining there some few daies space, the king promised him to come in person to Rome. and appointed fo many prelates and religious men to accompany him as fufficed to bring him thither and to restore him to his seate and estate with great process. from which were made for him; and the two priefts Cardinals aforefaid, which were fo mightie, absenting themselves, ever gave out in speeches that they attended the comming of the king.

CONSTANTINE THE SIXT.

Charles the great came to Rome.

> Pope Leo bis speech in the Consisterie in his owne de-

fence.

King CHARLES the great having taken order for the affaires of France and Germany, wherein he was a most mightie prince, determined to come into Italy; and at his comming by the hand of his fonne P EPIN, he pacified fome commotions therein, and came to the citie of Rome, accompanied with many great Dukes and other princes his subjects; whither did concurre out of Italy and other parts, many Bishops, prelates and other great men; and he was received with such entertainment as to him did appertaine; and kiffing the Popes foote did him fuch other funerstitious renerence as the custom was. And after this having remained eight daies in Rome, he commaunded al the prelates and princes which then were in the citie to be affembled; and the pope and he, and all the reft being together. there were some which complained and accused the pope to the Emperour: and so the Emperor began openly to aske every mans opinion concerning those accusations, and each of those to which he spake, answered: The highest chaire and head of the Church no man ought to judge: which the king noting, forbare to aske any more questions. Then the pope, which thitherto had been filent, rose from the place where he fate, and went into the pulpit which was there, and with an high voyce faid, That feeing that of his life and behaulour, no man would, or had authoritie to make enquirie, or to give sentence, yet he next day (following the custome of his predecessors) would purge and cleere himselfe, as it behoued: and therewith for that day the Confiftorie was diffolued: And vpon the next day, they all being together affembled in the like manner, he againe went vp into the fame place, audtaking a booke of the holy Euangelists in his hands, faid with so lowd a voyce as they all might heare him, that hee sware by God, and those holie Euangelists, that al that which his adversaries had laid to his charge, was false and vntrue, and that he had neither committed or thought any fuch matter as they obiected; but that they had of malice and enuie flaundered him: and that he therefore publikely made this protestation, and confirmed and made the same manifest by his oth, fith that to them all the manner of his life and gouernment was well knowne. Having ended this his protestation, his oth was allowed, and himselfe commended; and the king commaunded his accusers, PASCVAL and CAPVLVS. to be fought out and apprehended, and would have condemned them to death: but the Pope was contented to spare their lines, so as they might be committed to prison, and thence condemned to perpetual exile. Eight daies after that this was past, the Pope having first considered how much the Greeke Emperours enuied his greatnes, together with the small affection they bare to the worthipping of Images, and other points, wherein they were contrarie to, and seperated from the Church of Rome; and how requisit it was to have an Emperour which might maintaine the prouinces of Italy in peace, which vpon enery light occafion were disturbed: but chiefly to shew himselfe gratefull for the benefits which he and the Church of Rome, had received of him and the house of France, but aboue all and for accepting his protestation in his owne defence, for a sufficient proofe of his honestie, he resolved to make CHARLEs the great, Emperor; and to paffe the head of the Empire into the West. Wherewith as most writers affirme. he did not acquaint the King, deeming the greatnes of his minde to have been fuch, that he neither had defired it, neither would haue accepted the same. And having ruminated hereupon against the day of the nativitie of CHRIST, he commaunded all the Priest Cardinales, and all the other prelates to come to a Masse. whither CHARLES was also inuited, and came ; together with all the other princes; and so about the middest of the Masse, the Pope then saying it, he turned about from the Alter to the people, and with a loud voice faid. That he did there elect, create, and publish CHARLES the great, the most mightie and victorious King of Italy, of the Germanes, and of the French-men, Emperor, and euer Av-GVSTVS. Which being done, he fet the imperiall crowne vpon his head, and all those which were present consented thereto, with acclamations and applauses, faving. To the most godly, euer Av Gvs Tv s, great and most victorious Emperor charles the CHARLES, Godgraunt long life and victorie. This acclamation being ended, great crowned the Pope annointed him, and therewith annointed and intiteled his sonne Papin his sonne Pepin his sonne Pepin (by the will and consent of his father) King of Italy; which coronations were King of Italy by performed, with fuch feaftings and folemnitie, as the discreete reader may well Pope Leo. imagine; vpon the birth day of CHRIST, which was the twentie and fine of December, in the yeere of our Lord eight hundred, foure hundred threefcore Anno Dom, and eight yeeres from the time that CONSTANTINE the great transferred the 800. seate of the Empire into Thracia, to the citie of Constantinople, and three hundred and thirtie yeeres from the time that Avovsxvivs was the last Emperorin Italy. And fo CHARLES remained Emperor, and the Empire was transported from the Greekes to the Germanes; for although that CHARLES was King of France, yet his originall, linage, and countrie was in Germanie, and so it appeareth by the histories; and notwithstanding that he was King of the French-men, he The original of was borne in Germanie, and the French-men also had their originall and descent charles the from Germanie; and the kingdome of France extended it selfe so farre in the time of this Emperor, that the most of the provinces of Germanie were called by the name, and contained within the kingdome of France; fo as there is no reason that any authors should say, that the Empire was first transposed to the French, and afterwards in processe of time to the Germanes; and so doe approue and affirme OTHO FRISENGENSIS, GODFRIDVS VITERBIENSIS, WESPERGENSIS A BBAs, and others, although of leffe antiquitie, yet of no leffe diligence, as PLA-TINA, MARTIANVS, ROBERTUS GAGVIN, and most diligently I OHANNES NAVCLERYS, and about all, BEATYS RENANTS, HENRICUS MYCIVS, in his notable bookes of the state of Germanie, and CVSPINIANVS in the life of the same CHARLES. These matters being thus ended, the new Emperor returned towards his kingdome and countries; leaving his sonne PEPIN King in FAMONTS be-Italy, which he left in very good order. In this his journey (the authors write) goned by that he did many graces and fauours to the citie of Florence, and that he com-charles the maunded the decaied walles and buildings thereof to be reedefied, and many o- great upon the

ther faire edifices to be erected; and that he procured gentlemen to come and inhabite the same. The same of this his election being spred ouer the world, the manly Empereffe YRENE, which ruled the Empire of the East, fent Ambaffadors unto him, defiring peace with him, and (as some write) to treate of a marriage betweene them feeing that they both were fingle: and although that the treatie of marriage tooke no effect (for the princes of Greece perswaded YRENE to the contrarie) yet a peace was concluded betweene the two Empiers: The Empire of Gracia containing that which it then held in Alia, which I haucalreadie repeated; with that countrie which now is the kingdome of Naples, or the greatest part thereof; the Iles of Sicilia, Candia, and the reft; with Albania, part of Slauonia, and all Grecia and Thracia, the citie of Venice and the dominion thereof, which is not lightly to be regarded, remained friend to all, and subject to none. This being concluded, YRENE the Emperesse enjoyed the same but a little while after it: for in the end, as the was a woman, men of hautie mindes holding it for bafenes, disdained to be commaunded by her, and found meanes that a man of high degree, great power, and of noble parantage, whole name was NICEPHORVS. should rise against her, and take upon him the title of Emperor, which tooke efplace of Trene, fect, so as by a stratagem she was taken, and dispossessed of her Empire.

Venice euer a free citie.

Nicephorus . made Emperor of Gracia in

#### THE LIFE OF CHARLES THE GREAT AND THREESCORE

AND SIXTEENE ROMANE EMPE-ROR, AND OF NICEPHORVS in Constantinople.



ARGVMENT.

Hen Charles the great was made Emperor, bewas of the age of fiftie and eight yeeres, and returning into Germanic, he wholy conserved the Saxons to the Christian faith, and made an accord with Nicephorus Emperor of the Greekes, which afterwards was broken, for that Nicephorus aided the Venecians, against him and his sonne Pepin; but Charles finally making peace with the Venecians, left them in that libertie, wherein they have maintained themselves untill this present, and cameto a full peace with Nice-

phorus. He divided the Empire betweene his three sonnes, and commanded Penin to oce to Corsica and Sardinia, to defend the same against the Insidels which went thither to inhabit. And under the concernment of Charles his some onercame many other nations, rebels, and Infidels; and he became To great, that the King of the Mahometist sought his friendship. Two of his sounes died, to wit, Pe-pin, and Charles, so as his whole hope remained in Leves, whom he made his successor. And being now very olde, departed out of this world, ouercome with a paine in his side, having governed the Empire fourteene yeeres; and his kingdome, senen and fortie.

Onlidering the great paines that I have taken in writing this historie (I take God to record) that I stand in more neede of some rest; and to be eafed of fo great a burthen, by abbreuiating the historie, and leaving our to much as may be, without reprehension, then to redouble my travell and to enter into a new band, through the occasions which now present themselves. I fav this much for that the Pope in this time passed the Empire to CHARLES the great; and it hath ever fince continued in Germanie: And in Gracia also remained princes, which in like manner were called Emperors, and pretended good right to be for fo as we may fay that the Empire and the title thereof, was divided, and came to be two Empires and to have two Emperors. But I finde my felfe in a great confusion, to thinke how this matter may be handled; for first to write of one, and then to returne to write of the other, as did BAPTISTA IGNATIVS. in the short epitomie which he wrote of the Emperors; it seemeth to be inconuenient to bring one of them to an end, and then to make the reader turne backe againe feauen or eight hundred veeres in the historie. And to write one or two lives of the one Empire, and then as many of the other, as did I OHN C V SA PINIAN, that liketh me as ill: for it greatly confoundeth the historic, and so in a manner neither the one nor the other can be vinderstood; and well to discour all together at large (for the many occasions which are offered, and the diversitie of the times and places) I see not how it can be. To treat onely of the one (as some have done) and wholy to leave out and forget the other. I also hold it for an initial rie and crueltie: to let fincke and die in obliuion a matter of fo great importance as is the dominion of the Greeke Emperours, which continued fo long time afterwards, and to leave the successours of CHARLES the Great, in which at this day the Empire remaineth, were to leave the right way which leadeth to the place whither I am bound, and to take another whereby I should neuer attaine to my iournies end whither I am to trauaile. Wherefore feeing that I cannot goe both waies after some confiderations, I have resolved to take for my principall subject and historic of the Empire, that which the Church of Rome approved and then established, which is that of Italie and Germanie, in the person of CHARLES and his fucceffours, recounting their lives and actes with fuch order as I have observed in those which are alreadic past; and by the way of discourse eyer to make some mention of the Greeke Emperors, as occasion shall be offered, whereby he that shall reade this historie, may understand the successe of both Empires, under the name and title of one only. And having refolued your this course, let vs returne to our CHARLES the great, whom we left newly made Emperor: and to NI-CEPHORYS who tyarnnically vsurped the Empire of Constantinople, by deposing the Emperesse YERENE. I say then that CHARLES was fiftie eight veeres old. when in fuch maner as I have fet downe, he was by Pope Leo the third crowned Emperor in the citie of Rome; and had raigned three and thirtie yeeres the mightic King of France and Germanie; all which time he had spent in the warres, against rebels and Infidels (whereof in Germanie were many) with great felicitie

Charles the great subdued the Saxons.

Nicephorus fent an ambaffade to Charle the great.

and victorie, raming and fubduing people and prouinces. CHARLES being come into Germany, wholy subdued the Saxons, and reduced them to the faith, wherein as the other nations of Germany, they ever were inconstant and negligent NICE-PRORY s which then raigned in Constantinople, knowing his great power:after that he had fetled himselfe in his throne, and was well assured of those which hee had dispossessed, and had most cause to suspect, and had banished YRENE: sent Ambaffadours of great account to CHARLES the great, very louingly defiring him to hold him for his brother and friend. The Emperour CHARLES who was a benigne prince knowing how mightie the Sarazins were, and the great danger that all Christendome should encurre through discord betweene the two Empires, graunted and concluded a peace with NICEPHORVS; and with his Ambaffadours fent others of his owne, to conclude and confirme the same: which was established in the same manner and with the same conditions, as it was made with the Emperesse YRENE: the citie of Venice remaining friend to both parties (neutrall) without any fubication to either. There was also a peace concluded betweene him and G o D FREY king of Denmarke, which some call Dac 14: whereupon the faid GODFREY departed out of his kingdome, royally accompanied, to fee and speake with the Emperour, although that this interuiew tooke no effect; for his people diffwading him, counfelled him not to fee him: neuertheleffe the peace was made, and tooke place.

After this, it followed that for some matters which the Venetians attempted against the Empire of CHARLES, in the behalfe of NICEPHORVS Emperour of Coultantineple(yet some affirme that it was through the falle information of Fox-TYNATYS Patriarch of Grade) CHARLES the great commaunded his sonne PE-PIN king of Italy, to make warres against them : which he began very resolutely. and tooke the cities and fortreffes which they held in the maine land, and befieged the citie of Venice it selfe both by sea and land; to the reliefe whereof the Greeke Emperour NICEPHORVS Sent a fleete. Of these warres of Vanice the ancient authors doe write so diversly, that a man can hardly well say which was the truth: for some say that Vinice was wholy taken; and others say that but some Ilands thereof, and that that which is called Rio also defended it felfe: howfoeuer it was, the warre continued many daies, and C H A R L E S graunted peace and libertie to the Venetians, to live after their lawes and customes, for that he was to renew the peace with the Greeke Emperour, which he had broken by reason of the

Venetian warres,

CHARLES living in this prosperitie, made his will and testament, wherein he divided his kingdomes betweene three legitimate fonnes which he had to wit, CHARLES, which was his eldest sonne, PEPIN, and LEVVES; wherein he made his sonne CHARLE sking of the greatest and best parts of France and Germany; PEPIN he made king of Italy and Bauaria, and other provinces; and LE vy Es of Provance, and of that part of France which bordereth vpon Spaine, and other prouinces. Which his testament he sent to be ratified by Pope L a o; and shortly after gaue to his sonnes the names and titles of Kings: but all happened afterwards after another manner; for God otherwise disposed thereof at his pleasure. This testament I have seene written by some authors. It afterwards happened that a great flecte of Infidels which inhabited Spaine, with the aide and affiftance of the Africanes, inuaded the Iles of Sardinia and Corfice : for the defence whereof the Emperous CHARLES fent commaundement to his sonne PEPIN, that he should fend thither a captaine, whose name was Bycarnys; who tooke so good order that he draue the Infidels out of those Ilands, and slew fine thousand of them in one battaile. And with no leffe good fuccesse, he waged another warre with the Dukes of the Bohemians, and of the Polonians, which is part of the ancient Sarmatia, which infested the countries under his dominion; against which he sent his fon CHARLES, with great forces of Burgonians, Saxons and Germanes. And the young CHARLES imitating his father, warred valiantly and with discretion: and comming first to a battaile with the Bohemians and LE o their Duke, hee onercame them, and flew L E 0; although that therein passed many daies, and there was an intermission in this war : and in the end he had the like successe with the Polacres so that they all became subject to his father. For which his victories he was so much feared and renowned through the world, that a great king in the East, and AMVRATES the greatest of all the MAHOMETISTS, Sent their Ambassadours East, and AMVRATES the greatest of all the transfer of a first specific dient Alloure feat to Charles fadours with rich presents vnto him, desiring peace and his friendship; and the the great. like did all the kings christian.

Whilest as these and other such like matters happened vnto CHARLES the

great, NICEPHORVS Emperour of Conftantinople, shewed himselfe to be very couetous, imposing new taxes and tributes vpon his countries and subjects; having euer a desire and a conceit to disturbe the Empire of CHARLES the great, which he neuer forbare to doe; endammaging his countries, by robbing and spoyling the same, and secretly fauouring his enemies, wherby he gat little honour, & lesse profit: for this enuie and malice being fixed in his heart, he not only left to make wars against the Infidels, as he ought to have done, but knowing that they would warre with him, he bought his peace of them; and to his great shame and disgrace bound himselfe to pay them yeerely a great summe of money; and for that instant sent them great gifts and presents, having his purpose wholy bent against the Christians, which cost him his life, as presently shall be declared. CHARLES living in this tranquilitie, GODFREY king of Denmarke made warre against him. who was a mightie prince, and commaunded a large dominion : and with great forces came into Friseland and into Saxony, wherein he did great harme. Against whom the Emperour addressing himselfe (although now old and vnweldie) speedily departed with a great armie, and by the way newes was brought him, that the faidking was dead, and his armie returned; which was held for great newes, the Kine of confidering how great warres were expected. And vpon the same day, newes Denmarke. came also how that his some PEPIN, which in great prosperitie raigned in Italy, The death of was also dead in the citic of Milan: whereof he was forrie, and returned to the ci-Pepin king of tie of Aken, whither Ambassadours came to him from HERMIGVS king of Italy. Denmarke which succeeded GODFREY, humbly desiring peace; the like came from NICEPHORVS Emperour of Gracia, and the like petition also came from AMBULAT a king of the Moores, which raigned in great part of Spaine: to all which hee made gracious answeres, and graunting their petitions, gaue hartie thankes to God, for that he was generally fo well effeemed. But after this prosperitie, a great punishment and scourge ensued; which was, that it pleased God to take away his other sonne called CHARLES, who lay in the borders of Germany, for the defence thereof: so that now his whole hope rested in his third sonne LEVVES.

NICEPHORYS the Emperor of Grecia being affured of CHARLES the great, and having bought his peace of the Infidels, tooke his fonne STAVRATIVS for his companion in the Empire; determining to make warre against his neighbours the Bulgarians, whose king was then called CRVNVs, with whom hee fought

The death of

Anno Dom.

Stauratius fuc phorus vvas deposed by Michael vobo fucceeded him.

fought some battailes, wherein hee had the victorie, and slew many of his enemies. By reason of these victories hee grew so proud and insolent, that making finall account of his enemies, he warred with little care or discretion: which this CRYNVS perceiuing, raised the greatest and best power that hee was able to make, and the most secretly that might be marched by night, and before that it was day affaulted the Emperours campe, who being vnable to fet his people in order, they were broken, and the Emperor was there flaine: and his fonne STAVperor relicepho. RATIV's being fore wounded, escaped by flight: and so ended the life and raigne of NICEPHORVS. At this ouerthrow great wealth was loft, and much of the Greeke nobilitie then perished: which happened in the yeere of our Saujour CHRIST eight hundred and flue, he having then raigned nine yeeres. His fonne STAVRATIVS comming to Adrianople, and faluted and fworne Emperour, was fo ill inclined, and fo infufficient, and therewith aboue all fo deformed, ill fauoured, and churlish in behauiour, that there was no man pleased with his succession: fo that within foure moneths after that he came to the Empire, he was dispossedfed thereof by his brother in law MICHAEL, who apprehending him, put him into a Monasterie; & this MICHAEL remaining peacefull Emperor, was a vertuous man & a good gouernor, but so inclined to peace, that afterwards through his excessive feare of warre he lost his Empire, as we will tell you. Now, so soone as he was chosen Emperour, he with all expedition sent his Ambassadours to the honourable old Emperour CHARLES the Great, desiring friendship and peace with him, which was concluded in fuch manner as it was with his predecessour NICEPHORYS. And CHARLES the Great being now very old, defiring to take order for the estate of the Empire, called a most solemne parliament in the citie of Aquisgran or Aken, where he made his some L EVV E s to be intiteled C E s A R, and his fucceffor; and his nephew BERNARD fonne of his fonne PEPINking of Italy, with the consent of Pope L E o, which vntill then lived. And this being perfourmed the rest of his time hee spent in almes-giuing enriching the Churches and clergie, and relieuing the poore people: and reforming abuses, ordained good lawes and statutes. The yeere following, the Infidels Sarazins of Spaine and Africa, invaded the Iles of Sardinia and Corfica, wherein they made cruell warre, and did the like in the coast of Italy; but yet (although not without great trouble) they were repelled and scattered by the Emperours captaines, and by his nephew BERNARD king of Italy. It followed that MICHAEL the Emperor of Constantinople being affailed by CRVNVs king of Bulgaria; against his will was forced to take the field, and to fight with him; and in the first battaile gat the victorie: but fighting againe the second time, was ouerthrowne, and therewith lost both the day, and the mind to rule: fo as he voluntarily renounced the Empire: or (as some fay)a principall captaine of his called L E o rebelling, and he not daring to make head against him, deposed himselfe from the Empire, and went into a Cloister, having raigned not fully three yeeres. And this LEO who was the fonne of a gentleman called PARDVS, was made Emperour, and prefently in the like manner as MICHAEL had done, he fent his Ambassadours to CHARLEs the Great, to establish and confirme the peace concluded with his predecessors; which was perfourmed. In the meane time that LEO was chosen and crowned, CRVNVs king of Bulgaria, following the victorie, which he obtained against the Emperour MICHAEL; marched with his armie the direct way towards Conflantinople, whither the Emperour L z o had drawne his forces, and had raifed new; and C R v-NVs came so neere to the citie, that he might well see the same. Which disgrace

Michael Emperour of Con-Cantinople deposed bimselse from his EmLEO could not with patience endure (being as he was a valiant man) but tooke the field with all his forces, in very good order, and made head against his enemic; who with the ioy of the late victorie attended him : & there was fought between them a cruell battaile, which lasted a great part of the day, and many men were flaine of either partie: And therein happened a notable matter seldome seene in other encounters, which was, that in the furie of the fight the Emperor and the King chanced to meete, and to know each of them his aduerfarie, and the one charging the other, the Emperor carried himselfe so well, that he felled the King Crunus Kine dead to the earth; fo that within a little while after, the Bulgarians began to re- of the Bulgaria tire, and presently to runne away, in such manner that L & o had a full complet ans staine by and noble victorie, together with the spoile of their campe; and so returned to Leo. Constantinople with great ioy. And the Bulgarians being now contented to defend their owne limits, the Greeke Emperor remained in peace, as CHARLES the great did in Germanie. But as all things in this world have an end; fo ended the good fortunes and great power of CHARLES the great, together with his life: The death of good fortunes and great power of Charlette the great, together with his hie. Charlet the paine in his fide, whereof within the space of seuen daies he died, in the yeere of Anno Dom. our Lord eight hundred and fourteene, when he had raigned Emperor four-814 teene yeeres, and seauen and fortie King of France and of Germanie; and of Itale fortietwo.

This noble prince was endued with fo many excellent vertues, that we reade of very few in auncient histories that excelled him, so as iustly he may be compared with any of the most excellent who so euer; for in martiall dicipline, in manly valour, and dexteritie in armes, I know not any that hath furpassed him: he obtained fo many victories, fought fo many battailes, and tamed and subdued so many fierce & warlike nations, before, & after that he was Emperor, as any of the most famous that euer was in the world. He was tall of stature, very well proportioned in all parts, passing strong, of a faire and grave countenance, valiant, gentle, mild, pitifull, a louer of iustice, liberall, very affable, pleasant, well read in historie, a great friend of Arts and Sciences, and fufficiently well seene in them, and a man which aboue all honored and rewarded learned men. He was very charitable and a great almes giver; and so good an harbourer of strangers, that in Siria, in Africa, in Egypt, and in other prouinces of the Infidels, wherein Christians lived, he found meanes to have hospitals, and publike almes houses. for such of them as were poore; and in his kingdomes, and euen in his court alfo, he harboured and relieued strangers and pilgrimes. Concerning his faith and religion, he was very zealous; and the most of the warres which he made, were to enlarge the Christian faith. He superstitiously honored and obeied the Church of Rome, and the Pope Bishop thereof, and other Bishops and prelates, and commaunded his subjects to doe the like; whereof besides the histories, some chapters in the Decretals bare record. He was likewise very deuout, and fpent great part of the time in prayer, and hearing diuine seruice. In his diet he was very temperate, and a great enemie to all riot and exceffe; for at his table were neuer serued aboue fower or fiue dishes, and those of such meate as best pleased his taste; which he vsed to the same end that God created them, which was for his fustenance, and not for a shew and vaineglorie, as now a daies is vsed; in such fort that the meates which naturally are but to please the taste, or at the most the sauour or smell, they will now have them to satisfie all the other sences; and likewife finding new inventions, the greatest part of their life time is spent at the table; and fo they eate of a greater number of exquisit meates, dreft in such manner and with fuch fauces, that it is hard to know of what tafte they are: fo as they feeme strange and rare : and sometime meate is made of such things as were nos created of God to fuch purpole, no more then he made Goates to draw carts. or to till the earth. Our CHARLES was not as fome are at this day ; for as he was rich and mightie, so he was temperate and vertuous; and maintained his body with what was needfull and wholesome. His ordinarie exercise was hunting. when he had leasure, in time of warres; and in time of peace, he gaue eare to such as did reade histories to him; and sometimes he heard musicke, wherewith he was much delighted, and had good skill therein. He was much condemned for having many baftard fonnesand daughters, but this was in time of his youth. for afterwards it is to be supposed, that he contented himselfe with his wife : and for remedy of this imperfection, although he was three of four times a widower. vet he euer married againe the daughters of mightie Kings and princes. Finally. to make an end of that, whereof I have treated at large, he was an excellent Emperor, and feared and loued God, and died, as I faid, very olde and honorable; and in peace with the Kings of Spaine, England, Denmarke, Bulgaria, the Greeke Emperor L E o, and with all the princes of that time. His body was buried in a fumptuous temple, which he caused to be builded in the same citie of Aquisgrane or

Where Charle the great was buried.

The authors from which I have drawne all that I have faid, and where the reader may see and reade all the rest, concerning Charles the great, and the other Emperors, and the histories of those times, are those which ordinarily I vie to alleage, since that the most authors have failed, to wit, the Annales of Constantinople in the twentie three booke, where they make an end, Blondys in his second booke of his Decades, Zonars a Greeke author, and Sigisbruys, and the Abbot Wesperger Raysis, and Mathevy Palmerys, all three in the processes of their Chronicles; Platina in the life of the Popes, Cyspinan, Baptista I onativs, Beneventanys de Romaldys, Iohn Caton, Iohn Evitchivs, Raphael Volaterrandys, all these in their Emperors, Vinebucius an Higoriographer in his Mittor, besides the which it shall be necessarie to see, and so may he doe which shall be a curious reader. The French Historiographers, in matter concerne the time of Charles the great, which are Pavivs Emilius a singular author, Robert Gagvinand

MARTIN, OTHO FRISINGENSIS in the fifth booke of his hiftories, wherein he treateth at large of Charles the
great, and likewife Richard of Saint
Villor, and the Archbishop
Typpin,

THE



# THE LIFE OF LEWES THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, SVRNA-

MED PIVS, AND THREES CORE AND SEVENTEENE ROMANE EMPE.

ror, in whose time L B o and M 1 C HABL raigned in Constantinople.



THE ARGVMENT.



Ewes being come to the Empire, confirmed the peace with the Emparor of Gracia, and made warre in Dacia; from which it was requish that he should returne in person, for receise of certain accidents which happened in Italy; which he easily pacified by meanes of his nephem Bernard, them King of Italy. This Emperor renounced to have any authorities to confirms the Popes election. Bernard King of Italy rebelled; but being ouercome, was led prisoner into France by his Viscle Lewes, who gave to his eldess some Lotharius that government. He ouercame some tynatic which rebelled agains him, and construed to the Church

the donation made by his father. There happened unto this Emperour one pitifull case, which was, that his owne children rebelled against him, and deposed him from the Empire: hus ther afterwards repenting, referred him to his estate, and him be best lime besell an extreame great designs and value to Rome and Italy; for the Mahometists understanding of the discord between Christian princes, and standing in no seare of Michael the Greeke Emperone, haning prepared a good namy, scaled Cinita Vecchia, and robbing and burning, came so farre as to besiege Rome: from whence

532

(so some as they saw succours come out of Lumbardy) they returned to their home. They also did much harme in Sicilia. After which ruine, Lewes falling ficke of a grieueus infirmitie died within fortie daies, baning first fet in order the state of the Empire.



N fuch manner as I have recounted in the historie of CHARLES the Great, his sonne L E vv E s was by him in his life time nominated, & chosen Emperor: wherfore fo foone as his father was dead, he was by al men peaceably held and obeyed for fuch, and proued a vertuous prince: and for his vertue and goodnesse was called Pivs. The first thing that he tooke in hand, was to come to the citie of Aken, where he held a generall Diet or Parliament, and tooke order for all things, concerning

Lewes and Leo. the peace, and government of the Empire, and the kingdomes which hee inherited; whither came Ambassadours from L E o Emperour of Greece, to ratifie the peace made with his father: for the better affurance whereof, he fent Ambaffadours with those which came, to the end that L = o should confirme the same in Constantinople. He determined also, as a new Emperour, and greedie of honour, to make warre against the Danes, in the behalfe of EROALDVS, and RANFREDVS. two kings which were friends and fubica to the Empire, and were deposed from their kingdomes by the fonnes of G o D FREY. For this enterprise he made great preparation, sending for his nephew BERNARD king of Italy, as is before faid: and for the better defence of his countries hee left his three fonnes, to wit, Lo-THARIVS, PEPIN, and LEVVES. LOTHARIVS which was his eldeft sonne, hee made governour of Banaria, and the marches thereof; and to Perin heleft the gouernment of Aquitania, and other places thereabout: in the other provinces, he confirmed the Dukes thereof, and in all he fet very good order. And departing with his armie, and being come into Saxony, the weather grew to be fo cold, that in all that winter he could march no further forwards; fo as he was constrained to winter in a citie in Saxony called Parburnia, or Parburina; for the cold was fo extreme, that the seas in all that coast were frozen, and the warre was afterwards made by his captaines. LEVVES returning into France; by reason of other accidents which happened: for it was fo, that in Rome some great men seeing Pope LEO old and fickly, conspired against him, against which he proceeded, determining to have done inflice vpon them; for which cause there was a tumult in Rome. and in some parts of Italy: whereof when L E vv Es was aduertised, he sent commaundement to king BERNARÓ, speedily to goe thither, to preuent rebellion in those parts: and BERNARD did so with all possible expedition, and fully pacified all matters in Rome, and in all Italy also. And within few daies after Pope LEO died, The Emperour Lewes crowned having bin Pope one and twentie yeeres, and in his place was chosen STEPHEN the fourth, who presently after his election went into France to the Emperour; and finding him in the citie of Arles, was honourably received; and he with very great ceremonies and folemnities, crowned and annointed L E w E s Emperor, and then returned to Rome.

by Pope Ste-

The coronation and folemnities being ended, there enfued fome infurrections in the kingdomes of this Lavvas; for the Gascons and other people their neighbours, rebelled; for that L E vv Es had taken from them their Duke and gouernour, called SIGVINIVS; for it seemeth that then Dukes were made gouernours of prouinces, and that they for the most part, continued their whole life time in their

gouerne-

gouernments, or at least a very long time; from whence afterwards proceeded the estates, and great houses of Germany, and other parts: some by the Emperors gift; and others by force, making themselues tyrants; which in processe of time were ratified, and confirmed in their dignities. These aforesaid gouernments were also given with the titles of Earledomes, and Marquesses, as it appeareth by the the title of histories: for there was given to them a marke of land, or land (contained within Dukes and certaine bounds or markes) to gouerne; so as they diriued their titles in such man derined. ner as did the Dukes. At this time another king of certaine Ilands in the North sea, taking part with the king of Denmark, warred also against the Emperour LEVYES: vpon these two occasions LEVYES raised new armies. The matters of Galgony were ended in few daies with little difficultie; but the warres with the Danes were more doubtfull for in the beginning the Saxons and the Imperialists had ill fuccesse: but in the end the Emperour prouided such captaines and souldiers, that they not onely obtained the victorie, but restored EROALDVS to his kingdome, who lived in subjection to the Empire, having been before deprived. This happened in the third yeere of the raigne of the Emperour L EVV E s, in the beginning of which, newes came that Pope STEPHEN was dead, who had been Pope but seven moneths onely; whom Pascvar the first succeeded, and executed his authoritie in the Popedome, without the Emperours confirmation, being thereto vrged by both estates of Rome, ecclesiasticall and secular: whereupon he fent to excuse himselse to the Emperour; for Pope Adrian and the clergie had graunted that preheminence to his father CHARLE's the great, and to his fucceffors, which was observed untill this time; which authoritie L E vv E s renounced. as it appeareth by the chapter Ego Ludonicus in the distinction 62. LEVVES accepted this excuse, and ordained that from thencefoorth the imperial authoritie should be observed in this manner, viz. that so soone as the Pope was chosen. he should give the Emperour to understand thereof, as to a friend devoted to that Church; but not that he should stay untill the Emperour had confirmed his election. Yet this norwithstanding the Popes afterwards vsed to sue to the Emperors to approue their election, vntill the time of LE VVEs nephew of this LE VVES. who voluntarily left this custome, which had continued from the time of ADRIAN the fecond, as shall be declared in time and place, if our memorie faile vs not. Whilest that these things passed in France, in Germany, and in Italy, L & o(as I have aboue faid) ruling the Empire of Constantinople, and through his victorie obtained against the king of Bulgaria, living some space in peace and prosperitie, and highly effeemed; waxed fo proud, and therewith fo feuere and cruell to his fubiects, that he purchased their hatred; whereto this was a furtherance, in that he sought images out of to put down the images in their Churches, as some of his predecessors had done. the churches of And it afterwards happened that one MICHAEL, a man of meane parentage, the Greeke whom he had advanced and preferred to great estate, and had placed neere about Empire. himselfe, and then held in prison, with a determination to have cut off his eares, was of power with the fauour of many men of great reputation which tooke him out of prison, and affisted him herein, to murther the Emperour L E o, and to The Emperour feize vpon the Empire; when he had raigned feuen yeeres and certaine moneths. Leo mardered. He left behinde him foure fonnes, which afterwards had divers adventures; but none of them obtained the Empire. In this manner MICHA BI gat the Empire of coded lain Constantinople, wherein we will leave him, to the end to make a conclusion of the the Greeke historie of L E VV E s the Emperour of the West. And thus it passed, that having Empire. yntill then had good fucceffe in his affaires, in the parliament which he lately had

comman-

The Emperour Lewes made his fonne Lotharius his companion in the Empire.

Bernard ling of Italy rebelled againft his uncle the Emperour Lewes.

Bernard king of Italy being condemned to die was execu ted.

> Levves pacified the tumults in Hangarie.

Anewo donation to the thurch of Rome made by the Emperour Ludowcus Pius.

commanded to be held in Aken, among other matters which therein were ordained one was that his eldest some LOTHARIVS was made his companion in the Empire, and his second some PEPINking of Aquitania, which containeth Lanquedoc, Gascony, Vienne, and Aniow: and his third sonne L E vv Es Was made king of Bauaria: and these three brethren presently tooke vpon them the gouernment of their principalities. But (as nothing in this world is permanent) after this there befell fome troubles and warres betweene the Emperour and the Danes, which began to rebell: through which occasion, by the counsell and perswasion of certaine wicked persons, whereof some were prelates, his nephew BERNARD, king of the greatest part of Italy, rebelled also, and denied the dutie of superioritie, which he owed to his vncle I. E vv Es ; and leuving an armie, held the Alpes and the passages into Italy, thereby to defend himselfe. Whereof when the Emperor had advertisement, adjudging him in the parliament for an open enemie, he departed towards Italy, and by the way leuied men of warre; whither when he came he was of fuch power, that BERNARD durft not stand to his defence, but yeelded himselfe into the Emperours hands; who after that hee had pacified the state of Italy, returned into France, and leading BERNARD with him prisoner, would that his doing should be determined by instice, as so great an offence required, and he was condemned to death, and so was executed. And LEVVES in BERNARDS place made his sonne L otharivs king of Italy, whom before he had made Cas A R, and his companion in the Empire: and he departing thitherwards, at his arrivall was therein annointed and crowned by Pope Pascval. After this little dangerous warre, there followed another against the Duke, or gouernour of little Britanny (a prouince of France) which also rebelled, with the people of that prouince, intitling himselfe an absolute king, and not subject to the Emperour; and his heart was fo great, that hee leuied an armie, and came with him to a battaile, wherein this tyrant whose name was VIOMARCHUS was ouerthrowne. but not without great difficultie and effusion of bloud, but the Emperour had the victorie. After which, enfued the death of his wife the Emperefle called H = R N =-G A R, for whom he was exceeding for rowfull; but yet he flortly after married the second time. After this, the Emperor L z vv z s lived two or three yeeres in peace; at the end whereof, a Duke, gouernour of Hungary, moued with the defire to raigne, rebelled, and began to warre in Austrich, which in ancient time was called the upper Pannonia, and in Dalmatia and in Slauonia likewife; against whom L z vv z s raifed a great armie, and the tyrant being in fundrie skirmishes and battailes ouerthrowne, submitted himselfe, and the Emperour graunted him his life; and so those provinces remained in peace. After this, certaine Romanes came to complaine to the Emperour against Pope Pascvar, alleaging that hee had caufed certaine principall men to be flaine, for that they were his followers, and defirous to do him feruiee: whereof the Pope excused himselfe by his Ambassadors, which the Emperor not only accepted but much favoured & honored the Papall fea. And for a fmuch as there arose fundrie doubts & questions about, which of the townes and cities of Italy appertained to the Empire, and which to the Pope; the Emperor Levels made a new donation to the Church of Rome, ratifying the charters of his father, and grandfather; which RAPHAELL VOLATERRANVS writeth in the third booke of his Geographie, as having feene the originall in the Popes library, in the Vaticane; the tenor whereof, as he fetteth it downe, is as followeth, at whose perill I write the same. In the name of God almightie, the father, the sonne, and the holy Ghost, I LEVYES the Emperor, doe graunt vnto Lypovicys Pivs.

thee PETER the Apostle, prince of the Apostles, and for thee, to the vicar, the Lord PASCVAL the highest Bishop, and to his successors for ever the citie of Rome. with all the jurifdiction thereof, and lands and marches there abouts, the confines, cities, ports and places upon the Tuscame and Mediterrianean sea side, Civita, Vecchia, Valneo, Reggio, Viterbo, Sauona, Papulonia, Rosello, Perugia, Maturano, Sutri. Nepe, and towards the countrie called Terra di Lauoro, Amenia, Seguia, Settentino. Alano, Patrico, Frusino, with all the lands and places in their subjection, and also all the government of the citie of Rauenna wholy, accordingly as my father the Emperor CHARLES of holy memorie, and also our grandfather PEPIN, in time past graunted the same to S. Per en the Apostle, that is to say, Ranenna, Bonio, Emilia, Foropopuli, Forli, Faenza, Imola, Bologna, Ferrara, Comacchio, Adeia, Ceruia, and in the Marca, Pefero, Fano, Senigaglia, Ancona, Aufino, Numana, Efio, Fofsombrone, Feltro, Vrbino, the territorie Valnense, Caglio, Luceolo, Ogobio, and alfo in Terra di Lauoro, Asola, Aquino, Arpino, Theano, Capua, and all the lands therein appertaining to our iurifdiction, to wit, the dukedomes of Benchento. Salerno, and Calabria the Superior and inferior, and that of Naples, of Spoleto, Tuderto, Oricalco, Narnia, and all that inrifdiction; and also the Ilands in the sea called the inferior, Corfica, Sardegna, and Sicilia. All which lands and cities, PEPIN our grandfather of holy memorie, and afterwards our father CHARLES, by their prerogatiue in writing, gaue and graunted by their Ambassadors, A THERIVS and MAYNADVS Abbots of their owne franke and free will fent to Saint Peter and his fucceffors, and we also doe graunt and allow the same. Moreover we will and declare, that the power and authoritie to chuse the Pope, is, and shal remaine free to the Romane councell and colleage, to be made without any scisme or difcorde; and that after that hee is chosen and consecrated, for the preservation of loue and friendship betweene vs. he shall send his Ambassadours to me, and to my fuccessors which shall be kings of France, as the custome was in the time of my great grandfather CHARLES, and PEPIN my grandfather, and of my father CHARLES, and this our will and grace which wee doe, we give in writing, and confirme with an oth, and fend the same to Pope PASCVAL our Lord, subscribed with our owne hand, by THEODORE the Legate of the holie Church of Rome. Signed, Ego Ludonicus. This donation was likewife attefted by the Emperours three sonnes, tenne Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteene Earles, one Secretarie, a chamber-keeper, and a doore-keeper. The which donation the same author V o-LATERRANYS, affitmeth to have seene confirmed by the Emperour O THO the third in the yeere of our Lord, nine hundred seuentie and two, in the time of Pope I ohn the twelfth. Of this donation (although not so much at large) mention is made in the Decretall, in the chapter Ego Ludouicus, in the distinction 63. In which chapter is expressed, the citie of Rome, with all that Dukedome, which then contained all the lands, townes and cities vpon the sea side, and the Hauons thereto appertaining, with all the other townes and cities of Tuscane, but their names are not set downe, neither the llands about named. This donation being made, the Pope within few daies after it died, having been Pope eight yeeres, and Ev G EN IV s the second was chosen, after that there had been a schisme, wherein two were chosen, which were perswaded by mutuall consent to renounce their election, and in their steede was chosen Ev G BN IV s, in the yeare of our Lord, eight hundred, foure and twentie, and in the eleventh yeere of the raigne of the Emperour L E vv Es. At the same time the Emperour with three armies inuaded Britanny in France, which againe rebelled, and with effusion of

much bloud subdued the same. And in the like manner the yeere following, he defended the kingdome of Hungary against the king of Bulgaria, which warred therein, and compelled him to fue for peace. He also sent an armie to the reliefe of Bernaldy's Earle of Barcelona, against the Infidels of Spaine, which made cruell warres vpon him. And so the Emperour L E vv E s liued euer (although not without some troubles) in prosperitie and with good successe.

In the meane time there were no lesse warres and troubles in the East Empire, wherein the Emperour MICHABL raigned, a wicked and misbeleeuing prince, which held abfurd and wicked opinions, fasting the Saturday, with the Iewes, and denying the refurrection of the dead; and it pleased God that the whole time of his raigne was infelted with warres and troubles, and the Infidels abridged both his honour and empire. First hee had very daungerous warres with a great Lord called THOMAS, who taking part with LEO, whom MICHAEL had put to death-being in Alia amassed together much people, and with the aide of the Inted againft Mifidels tooke many cities; and comming into Europe against the new Emperour MICHAEL, tooke many cities in Gracia, and befreged the citie of Constantinople, perour of Grawherein the Emperour was, and did put him so to his shifts, that hee hardly escaped from being either taken or flaine. But being thus diffressed and in despaire, he resolued to trie the last and most perilous remedie; which was, that hee arming the greatest number of souldiers that he could get sallied into the fields, and with fuch furie affailed his adverfaries vpon the fudden, that he flew a great number of them, in such fort that within very few daies THOMAS was driven to raise his fiege and to retire: And it followed also that his fleete at sea was ouerthrowne by the Emperors nauie; so as his power every where began to decay. And shortly after this, the king of Bulgaria came with an armie to the aide of the Emperor, The Bulgarians Whom THOMAS determined to encounter, before that hee should in with him; and comming to a battaile THOMAS was ouerthrowne, and the Bulgarians the Emperour returned to their countrie, rich, with the spoiles of their victorie. Whereupon the Emperour aduentured to take the field, wherein his force fo much encreased, that THOMAS daring not to fight with him, suffered himselfe to be besieged in Adrianople; where after many chances of warre, he fell into the Emperors hands, by whose commandement he was put to death and pardoning some, and pubel put to death mithing others, he subuerted all his enemies, and his people returned to their obedience. Neuerthelesse, the Insidels in the warres and enterprises past became so hardie, that they every where invaded the lands of the Empire, robbing and taking many places: principally there came a great fleete of them into the Ile of Candia, wherein they made great flaughter, and obtained a notable victorie by sea against the Imperialists. They likewise came into the Ile of Sicilia, and tooke a great part thereof, as I OHANNES MONACYS, BLONDYS, and SABELLICYS doe write.

The Emperour L EVV ES was required by Pope GREGORIE the fourth (EV-GENIVS being dead, after whom VALENTINIAN Was chosen, who enjoyed the Papacie but fortie daies, and after his decease this GREGORIE was made Pope) to relieue Sicilia; which LE vv Es having other occasions, refused; alleaging, that the Emperour MICHABL ought to rescue it, for that Sicilia was in his empire. By reason whereof the state of the East Empire at that time endured many difasters, and MICHAEL the Emperour of Constantinople living in great vnrest, continued but a while, as hereafter wee will declare. And although that for that time the Ile of Sicilia was relieued by the Venetians, which then were very mightic

mightic by feat yet that had not fufficed, if that a mightie man called BONIFACE, Earle and gouernour of the Ile of Corfica, with the aide of a brother of his, and other great men in Italy, had not leuied a good armie, and failing ouer into Africa, made so cruell warres in the marches of Carthage, ouerthrowing the Infidels in foure battailes, so as they were constrained to recall their armie from Sicilia (as they did in the time of Scipio the Africane, and HANNIBAL of Carthage). By this meane was the Ile of Sicilia deliuered from the Sarazins: for constrained by this necessitie, they abandoned what they had therein gotten, and returned into

Africa.

The Emperour Lypovicys Pivs living in great honour and prosperitie.it pleased God to lay some affliction upon him : for his owne sonnes, upon which The Emperour he had bestowed kingdomes and provinces, conspired against him, and began to Levves his refuse to yeeld any superioritie; and leuying souldiers, raised armies against him. formes conspi-The causes that moved them thereto, or as they falsely alleaged the same, Histo-their falser. rians write fundrie: fome fay it was, that for as much as he fo tenderly loued his young fonne called CHARLES, whom he had by his fecond wife, his eldeft fonne LOTHARIVS fearing to be difinherited, fought the destruction of his owne father. Others fay that it was, for that he retained into his feruice a valiant Spaniard called BERNALDO DEL CARPIO, nephew to king ALONS O, of whom Spanish Historians write wonders; of whom hee made so great account for his valour in the warres, that in all matters of importance he was wholy led and by his counsell. Others fay, that his wife I v D I T H, which was a woman very ill conditioned, only ruled and bare al the fway with him: fo as charging him with thefe defects, and others as vntrue and vniust as these, they opposed themselves against their father. And some great prelates interposed themselves to pacific so dishonest a controuersie; and seeking to reconcile them, the gentle Emperour loued his fonnes fo tenderly, and was fo defirous of peace, that to grace his fonnes, he repudiated his wife (although much against his will) and bestowing many great rewards vpon BERNALDO DEL CARPIO, he discharged him. But the certaine cause was ambition and arrogancie, which encreasing in them, this fained agreement endured not long: for the fonnes, by the confent of certaine great men which iouned with them, apprehended their father; and bereauing him of the robes and enfignes of Emperour and King, and generally of all gouernment and The Emperour authoritie, did put him into a Monasterie, which hee endured with so exceeding and put into a great patience, that when (being prisoner) he faw any of them, he neuer vttered Monaflerie by any euill speeches, but willed them to take heed, that those their private friends his sonnes. and fauourites did not one day deceive them: and to remember what dutie and obedience they ought vnto him being their father. Finally, there passed many treaties about this matter, and he lived one whole yeere deposed, and as a prisoner; at the end whereof, his fonnes acknowledging their error (although some write against the will of his eldest sonne Lothartos) restored him to his former cstate, and he forgaue them: and as for the rest of their confederates, he was content with giving them a very light punishment. The Emperour L nvv ns being restored, his second some PEHIN (whom he had made king of Aquitania) deceased, and left one sonne called after his name. This domesticall and civil distention betweene the Emperour and his fonnes, was very deere and costly to all Christendome: for the Sarazins of Africa being of great power and very mightie, and making small account of MICHAEL the Emperour of Constantinople, and feeing that the Emperour L E vv E s was prisoner, and Italy abandoned; they with

came to aide

of Confianti-

Thomas rebel-

chael the Em-

by the commandement of Michael Emperour of Con-

flantinople.

#### Lypovicus Pivs.

The Sarazins

The Vaticane in Rome taken and facked by the Sarazins.

The death of Michael Emperor of Conftantinople.

Saints ordained by Pope Gregorie the faurth.

PopeSwines face, afterwards called Sergius the Jecond.

The death of the Emperer Lewes.

an exceeding great natie, and a great number of men of warre came into Italy. and at their first landing tooke the citie of Cinita Vecchia, and dispersing fundrie ty and before companies of horse and soote into diners parts, they robbed and burned many townes in Italy. And not content therewith, they befreged the citic of Rome it felfe round about, and battered the same for many daies space, whereby Pope G R E-GORIEthe fourth, and the townesmen and inhabitants thereof were much distressed, and many of them were slaine. And notwithstanding that VINCENTIVS VILVACENSIS, GINARDVS, and some other Historiographers say, that they entred and tooke the citie; it was not fo, for the citie defended it selfe; but they took all the Suburbs called Vaticane, & burned the Church of S.Peter. Which comming to the knowledge of GVIDO, an excellent Captaine, Marquesse of Lombardy, and gouernour thereof for the Emperour, being thereto moued by letters from the Pope, and fundrie other confiderations, he raifed a great power, and tooke his way towards Rome: which when the Infidels understood, being loden with the riches and spoiles of Italy, they raised their siege; and doing all the harme that they could, went to Civita Vecchia, where they embarked themselues, carrying with them an infinite number of captines and butin, and returned into Africa; and in their way they made what spoile they could in Sicilia.

At what time as Italy endured this calamitie, the Emperour MICHARL died in Constantinople, when hee had raigned nine yeeres: and (as it had not of long time before been feene in that empire) his sonne THEOPHILVS succeeded him; who although that in conditions he was a better Emperour then his father, yet was he no better affected to the Pope, nor to the adoring of Images; for which cause he put many to death: what befell him we will hereafter briefly declare.

But returning to the matters of Italy, which was deliuered from the daunger and oppression of the Insidels. Pope GREGORIE the fourth died, having been The feel of all fo about fifteen eyecres. This Pope inflitted the feaft of All Saints, which is celebrated in the Church vntill this day. After the decease of this Pope, a Cardinall called S VV I N ES FACE Was chosen: and for as much as it was a very vnseemely name for so high a dignitie, by a generall consent it was chaunged, and he was called S RR G IV s the second. This was the cause why it hath been ever since vntill this day held for a custome, that the new chosen Popes leaue their old names, whereby they were called before, and take the name of fome of their predeceffors. Within few daies after the death of the Pope, within the fame moneth LEVYEs the Emperour of Rome and king of France fell ficke and died; fo as within the space of soure daies died three the most famous heads of the world, viz. the two Emperours, MICHAEL, and LEVVES, and Pope GREGORIE. LEVVES before he died, made his youngest and well beloued sonne CHARLES, King, and Lord of Austrich. And LOTHARY who was Emperour elect, remained his heire generall of all the rest, excepting Banaria, wherof his other son Levves was

king. And so ended the life and Empire of LvDovicvs Pivs, in the yeere of our Lord, eight hundred and fortie, when he had raigned full 26. yeeres, and had lived 64. SERGIVS S VV IN ESNOVT being then Pope in Rome, and THEOPHILVS fon of MICHAEL raigning Emperour in Conftantinople.

THE

## RIVS, THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND EIGHTEENE ROMANE EMPE-

rour : and of THEOPHILY'S Emperor in Constantinople.





Fter the death of Lydovicus Pius, the West Empire Kinedomes descended to his eldest sonne LOTHARIVS, and ioyntly left to Lothatherewith his father left vnto him those kingdomes, which riss. he, and his father CHARLES the Great, possessed in France, in Germany, and in Italy, excepting those prouinces which were given to his brothers Levy es and CHARLES, which were Bauiere and Austrich, with some other thereto adioyning. So soone as the father was dead, these two sonnes dis-

content with their portions, determined to rife against their elder brother Lo-THARIVS; and LOTHARIVS in like manner pretending all to be his, for that hee was the first borne, meant therefore to depose them: whereupon there presently began betweene them a very cruell warre, either partie being aided by fundrie Dukes and great personages. Some writers affirme, that these two brothers Lo-THARIVS and LEVVES, which were fonnes of one mother, held together in this warre against CHARLES, who was the Emperours sonne by his second wife. But there is no reason why it should be so: for it seemeth not likely, that CHARLES alone could have power fufficient to make head against the other two; and also for that LOTHARIVS fought to be Lord of the whole, allowing neither the one VV arres betuveene Lotharius and bis beethren.

nor the other. And it afterwards plainly appeared, that L o THARIV s in the Deace which they made, entreth not as a partaker, but as absolute and alone: wherefore I follow the most common and most likely opinion, which is, that LOTHARIVS warred against the other two; and was thus. LEVVES and CHARLES came out of Germany, with many valiant men of warre against the Emperor LOTHARIVS. who in like manner out of France, Germany, and Italy, leuied the greatest and best armie that of long time had been seene : so that all authors which write thereof affirme, that fince the warres between EcIvs and ATTILA, there had not been gathered together in Europe the like number of good men of warre. And the hatred and enuie betweene these brothers was so great, that they could not avoide a battaile, which was fought neere to a little towne called Fontano: and as the captaines and fouldiers of either partie were valiant and expert in armes, the fight was the more cruell, and one of the most bloudie that hath been in the world, and wherein most men were slaine and most bloud spilt, and lasted great part of the day; the victorie euer shewing it selfe doubtfull, inclining sometimes to one fide, and fometimes to the other, vntill that towards the euening, the Emperour LOTHARIVS his forces being vnable to endure the furie of their aduerfaries. began to faint; wherewith courage encreasing of the one side, and failing on the other LOTHARIVS & his people were driven to flie, and LEVVES and CHARLES remained with the victorie. All those which write of this conflict, affirme, that therein were flaine the greatest part of all the Nobilitie and flower of the French nation; and that in number more men died, then in any other that in France hath flaine in a bathappened ever fince the battaile which was fought between Ecivs, and ATTI-LA king of the Hunnes, in the fields of Catalonia, as before wee have recounted. LOTHARIVS escaped thence by flight to the citie of Aken, and holding himself to be there in no fafetie, he by fundry waies came to Viene in France, where he again gathered head, and leuied new forces out of Italy and other parts; and his brothers resolued to pursue him. And notwithstanding that from the Pope came the Archbishop of Rauenna, and many other prelates voluntarily, to treate of peace between them, yet it availed not, but that L o THARIV'S Would the fecond time trie the fortune of the warres, and his brothers fought no leffe: And they fought. and he was againe ouerthrowne (and the Archbithop of Rauenna also with him. who came as an Ambassadour of peace, and was that day in Lotharthis armie with three hundred horse, which he brought with him out of Italy) and in despite of himselfe was constrained to flie, the greatest part of his people being first flaine. After these cruell battailes betweeue these brothers (which as it is to be beleeved God permitted for a punishment for the contumacie and disobedience which they shewed towards their father) and after they had broken and diminished their forces, they gaue care to a peace, and the faid Archbishop of Rauenna, and many other prelates, brought them to an agreement; wherein the Emperor (as a man forced and ouercome) lost much. The conditions were, that the kingdomes should be parted betweene them; which diuision so much diminished the power of France, that it neuer after recourred that greatnes, which vntill then it held: the accord was made in this manner. That LEVVEs should be Lord and King of all that part of the kingdomes and provinces which lie over the Rhine, in the east fide of France, containing all Germany; to wit, Hungary, Bohemia, Morauia, Frisia, Bauaria, Saxony, Sueuia, and all the rest, and should be called king of Germany: And that CHARLES the youngest brother should be called king of France, and should be sole Lord thereof, excepting Gallia Narbonensis, now called Pro-

Lotharius one throughe the fecond time.

The nobilitie

of France

taile.

The dinifion of the kingdome of France betwoeenc Lotharius and his brethren.

wence: and that those lands which lie betweene the rivers Rhine, and the Maze, (which euer fince that time are called Lotharingia, or Lorraine, after LOTHA-RIVS) and part of Burgundie, should be subject to the Emperor LOTHARIVS. together with Lombardy, and all that part of Italie which was in his subjection; with the title and dignitie of Emperour. After this peace was made with Lo-THARIVS against his will, he reinforcing his troupes, tooke his way towardes Italy, and fo to Rome; where after fome lealoufies betweene them, Pope S & R-GIVs crowned him Emperour; and his Sonne was chosen his Successor. Yet fome writers fay, that onely his Sonne was crowned: but this in my opinion feemeth to be most likely. But let vs leave both the Father and the Sonne, (for Totherius intruth Lothory was of finall power after that he was ouercome, and yet li-crowned Emued in greater peace then those times permitted) and we will say somewhat of peror by Pope the Emperor of Constantinople, who then was THEOPHILVS, and of the harmes which enfued in Christiandome, by reason of the warres betweene these three brethren.

The Greeke Emperour THEOPHILVS differted not from his Predecessours in points of Religion, and concerning his gouernement, he tooke very good order, and maintained himselse well in his estate: yet somewhat noted of crueltv. In the East he had great and cruell warres with the Sarrazins, which made incurfions into his Dominions in Asa the lesse: in which warre two Captaines didhim especiall service: the one was called MANVEL, and the other PHEBVS. and the Emperor himselfe in person went to this warre, wherein the victories were variable, fometimes of his fide, and fometimes against him. And being in this manner busied, and on this side our Emperor and the house of Fraunce. (which then was the onely defence and refuge of all Christiandome) being weakened and diminished, by reason of the said warres, and dissention which happened; the Moores of Africa with a great Nauie came into Italie, and into Sicilia, and landing in many places, tooke fundry Townes. Lastly, a mightie King of Africa, called SABBA, with a great fleete of Shippes and Galleys entered Italie: And knowing that the Coasts neere to Rome was well Garrisoned and fortified, he affailed Otranto, and that place being taken and fackt, he did the like by other Townes in the same Coast : and returning from thence, he sayled into the Adriatique Sea, now called the Gulfe of Venice, and tooke and spoyled many places. The Emperour of Gracia THEOPHILY's feeking to redteffe this mischiefe, sent thither a good Captaine, called THEODOSE, with a great fleete, to which, the Venecians ioyned theirs, which they had already rigged for the fame purpose, (containing threescore Galleys:) This Infidell King of the Moores was nothing afraid to come to blowes with Theodosivs, and they fought a most cruell battell, wherein the Christians were overthrowne, and the Venecian fleete fell into the hands of the enemies. But Throposivs escaped by flight. The Mahometists became so haughtie by reason of this victory : and the same caused so great feare in Italie, that if God had not sent redresse, the infidels in short space might have made themselves Lords thereof: for presently after this ouerthrow, they affaulted Ancona, and tooke it, and burnt it, with fundry other Townes voon that Coast. And their power was then so great, that neither the Emperour LOTHARIVS, nor the Pope, were able to make head against them, but contented themselves to keepe and defend what they had in possession: Neither was the Emperours brother Charles King of Fraunce, able to fet any fleete to Sea, or yeeld any reliefe: for the Normans (a most fierce Nation)

North-men.

Infidels caft

avvay in a iempest.

Nation) made warres upon him, robbing and harrying his Countreies, with which he fought many battels. Of these Normans I find no auncient Authors that make any mention; whereby I conjecture that it was then some new name of the people and Inhabitants of those Countreyes which rose in that manner: vet SABELLICVS, and NAVCLERVS, and some other affirme, that they came from Denmarke. When all other fuccours failed, it pleased Godto send a remedy: for there happened so great a tempest upon the Sea, that the greatest part of King SABBAS fleete was drowned, and cast away: and those which escaped, re-A fleete of the turned into Africa, rent, and fore weather beaten: and so Italie for that time was relieued, and restored to libertie: but yet asterwards they againe insessed it. At this time died Pope Sergivs, having beene Pope little more then three veeres, and him succeeded LEO the fourth, in whose time PLATINA affirmeth this shipwracke of the Moores Nauie to have happened: but the most fav. as I haue recounted. In the beginning of Pope LEOS papacie, THEOPHI-Lys Emperour of the Greekes dyed in Constantinople, who before his death feeling himselfe deadly sicke, and that he could not escape; and considering also that he should leave his Sonne MICHAEL very young; and that THEOpostvs the Captaine before named, was rich, and very mightie, he resolued with himselfe, first to dispatch him out of the world, to the end that he should not vsurpe the Empire when he was dead: which was a very good resolution. and signe of a good Christian in a Man so neere to his end. First, he caused him to be deteyned in his Pallace, and feeling his ficknesse so increase vpon him

The death of the Emperor Theofilus and bis good refo-

> Michael fucther in the Empire.

The Moores landed in Oftia with intent to have

taken Rome.

The Moores burnt the Ta ticane and Saint Peters Church in

cloister, and so he remayned sole absolute Lord. Within a little while afterwards, the Emperor Lotharivs remaining in Lorraine, and Pope LEO in Rome; the infidels growne proud, by reason of their late victories; and coueting the wealth of Italy, trimmed up the remainder of their fleete, and building other vessels a new, returned to make a conquest thereof, with greater power and resolution then at the first: And after harme done in some other places they sayled directly to the port of Oftia, where setting their Army on Land, they marched towards Rome, with an intent to have taken the same, and afterwards all the Land: which as they hoped, so the poore Inhabitants feared. But it pleafed God that they were repulfed, and deceaued in their expectation. Neuertheleffe, they came and befieged Rome, and gaue a very great affault vnto it, but it was fo well prouided and furnished, and those which were therein did so valiantly defend the same, that losing all hope to get it, and understanding that succours were comming; robbing and burning the Vaticane with great cruelty, they rayled their fiege: first burning and prophaning Saint PETERS Chuch which was therein, and where it standeth at this day. And forasmuch as the Moores raised their siege from before Rome without taking it, the French writers attribute the honor thereof to CHARLES King of Fraunce, who (they say) came to relieue it, and for feare of whom the Moores

that he could not live, he made his head to be striken off, and within fewe

houres after dyed. After his death, his Sonne MICHAEL was made Emperor.

and forafmuch as he was very young, his Mother THEODORA the Empresse

(asheretofore did YRENE Mother of Constantine) tooke vpon her the

government, and ruled the Empire for her Sonne MICHAEL, and not ill, as

it is written: but as he increased in yeares, so therewith grew in him the defire

to gouerne alone, and his Mother became more ambitious: in fuch manner.

that the young man fetting all respect apart, compelled his Mother to goe into a

LOTHARIVS THE FIRST.

Moores departed; and leaving their attempt against it, setting their Army in order, they tooke their way towards Naples, burning and spoyling all as they went. In the meane while, Pope LE o sallying foorth of Rome, with the avd of the Emperor LOTHARY, and his Sonne, whom in his life time he had made his companion in the Empire, and in the kingdome of Italy, which fent him great supplies; he rayled a sufficient Army, wherewith he went to seeke his enemy, which laden with great riches and spoyles, were come neere to the port of oflia; where the Pope confidering how mighty they were, if they should remaine in Italy, (as they published that they would) and how much the countrey was facked and ruynated, if they should embarke themselues with their prisoners and riches, and the Emperour staying longer then they would he should have done; he resolved to vie the sword, and encouraging his Souldiours he fet vpon his enemies, and fought with them a sharp and bloudy battell, wherein many were slaine of either party. But in the ende it pleased God that the Christians had the victory: and a great slaughter was made of their ene- fought bemies, and a great number of Captines were released, and all that they had ta- invente Pope ken, recoucred, and the greatest part of those which fled, were ouertaken and Leo and the carried to Rome in great triumph. Those which remained in the harbour at Ofia, understanding of this ouerthrow, hoising their failes, with all the hast they could make, returned into their Countrey: And so was Rome freed from the The victorie great calamitie and miferable feruitude which it feared to have endured. Great of Pope Leo. was the joy which was conceaued through all Christiandome for this victory. and the Pope was highly extolled, who speedily returned to Rome, where with the confent of the Citizens, he determined to encompasse with a wall, all those Suburbes called Vaticane, wherein are Saint PETER's Church, and the Popes Pallace, to the end that they should no more endure the like, as they now twice had fuffred. To the performance whereof, the Emperour LOTHARIVS and his brothers, LEVVE's King of Germanie, and CHARLES the Bauld, King of Fraunce, fent thither much of their Treasure : and the worke began with such efficacie, that notwithstanding that it was very great, and the walles full of Turrets: yet in the space of fine yeares it was perfected and fully ended: and fo that part was made a Citie, and called Ciuitas Leonina, after the name of Pope LEO. The yeare following, the Emperour LOTHARY went to Rome, to fee and speake with the Pope, the Pope for that he was informed that he purposed to have reduced the right title of Emperour to Constantinople, whereof the Pope gaue him full satisfaction, and so contented the Emperour returned into his Countrey. And seeing himselfe now old, and that his Empire had ever been infortunate, as well for that he was ouerthrowne and dispossessed by his brothers, as for other accidents in Italy, imputing it to the defert of his finnes, especially The Emperor for the disobedience and little regard which he had shewed to his Father; he wided his Emresolued to put himselfe into a religious house, and to leave his Empire to his pirebetweene Sonnes, and putting it in execution, he made a division thereof in this manner: his three to his eldest Sonne L E VV E S, he gaue that which he held in Italy, and to the second, whose name was LOTHARIVS, he gaue the province of Lorraine, and other Lands which in the division were allotted to him in Fraunce, and in Germany, about the river Rhine, and to CHARLES his third Sonne, he gave that part of Fraunce, which is called Gallia Narbonensis, and now Prouence and Languedoc, which fell to his share in the peace which he made with his brothers, when he

was by them ouerthrowne. In these estates as well as in others were afterwardes

Aaa 2

great

great alterations, which I have no time to relate: this done, he became a Monke in the fifteene yeere of his raigne, in the yeere of our Lord, eight hundred, fiftie and fixe, and so he lived, and within a while died. MICHAEL continuing yet Emperour of Constantinople. And shortly after died Pope L E o the fourth, whom succeeded I o HN an English woman, as Historians affirme; who disguising her selse in apparell, and chaunging her name, being excellently well learned, was chosen Pope, and having two yeeres lived in the Papall dignitie, died suddenly in Partu; and her succeeded BENEDICT the third.

### THE LIFE OF LEWES, THE SECOND OF THAT

NAME, AND THREESCORE AND NINETEENE ROMANE EMPEROR.





E haue alreadie said, that the Emperour LOTHARIVS, voluntarily and of his owne free will, bestowed vpon his eldest foune L E VV Es the name and dignitie of Romane Emperour; of whose life, and for some time after, Historians haue written very little; and in that little is a great confusion amongst thein, which hath put me to much trouble, for that I have been so carefull and have vsed all diligence to write the truth. The difficultie is, in that this LEVVES and his

vncle king of Germany were both of one name, by reason whereof authors attribute the acts and doings of the one, to the other, being deceiued therein: And what is worst of all, there are some which of the raigne of this Emperour LEVVES Write nothing at all, of which BLONDVS is one, notwithstanding that in all the rest he hath shewed great diligence, ending in his father; so as presently after LOTHARIVS, they place CHARLES the Bauld, king of France, whereas to the contrarie they should first write the life and raigne of this his sonne L E W ES: but I will follow the most approued authors, and (in the best manner that I shall LEVVES THE SECOND.

be able) will bring the truth to light, and will rather chuse to say but little, and that certaine, then to please with many forged accidents. In the beginning of the raigne of this Levyes there happened a very prodigious portent; which was, that in the citie of Brescia in Lombardy for three daies it rained bloud, so fresh and It rained bloud fo perfect, as if it had bin of a Bull, or of some other beaft lately killed. First of all, the time of the this Emperor was very zealous and denout in religion; much affected to the Ro- Emperour mish church, and the ministers therof (for he knew no other) and was very pitiful, Leverthe ferrole fineste vulnotted of a good condition and of his word and gentle, fincere, vnfpotted, of a good condition, and of his word and promife very inft. After the decease of Pope BENEDICT, NICHOLAS the first being chosen. the Emperour went to Rome, to confirme his election; where the Pope and he conversed together very louingly. It afterwards followed, that a great seete of the Moores of Africa came into Italy : but the Emperour gathered together fo good forces against them, that (with small hurt done) they were repulsed: for which his care and diligence he was highly extolle. And notwithstanding that this prince was fo well inclined, yet ADVLGIFV Duke of Beneuent rebelled. with Capua, and some other cities; and denying to be subject vnto him, held for the Emperour of Constantinople. And whereas Italy in times past had been subject to those Emperours, they had now lost it, as being vnable to defend the same; vet Pulia and Calabria were of long time after under their gouernment. Against this Duke the Emperour L B vv B s leuied an armie, and in person went to pacifie the rebellion: but ADVLGIFVS being vnable to defend himselfe against him, sent to make his excuse; alleaging, that what was done, was against his will, and that he had purposed to come to his seruice, and did so; and L E vv Es received and pardoned him: and then went to fuch places as rebelled, which hee eafily tooke. excepting the citie of Capua, which stood at defence; but in the end crauing pardon, they yeelded. And thence he went to Beneuent, where ADVLGIFVS receiued and lodged him, in outward shew, as his soueraigne Lord, and whom hee loued; by whose perswasion and counsell (for hee seemed to speake from a loval) heart) the Emperour discharged his armie, and retained few more then the officers of his house: but within few daies after, ADVLGIFVS (as disloyall and a traytor) fought to put in execution what he had projected, and getting together certaine armed men, he fuddenly rufht into the Emperors lodging, with intent to have killed him; and had done so, but that being perceived, the Emperor & those few which were with him, so valiantly defended themselves, that they gat out of Beneuent, and went to Rome; from whence by the counfel of the Pope, he fent fuch an armie, that the traytor was constrained to for sake the countrie and to flie into Sardinia: and fo L E vv E s remained in peace, Emperour in Italy.

In the meane scason, whilest he was busied with these matters in Italy; in Conflantinople, in Gracia, and in part of Asia, MICHAEL raigned; who deposed his mother from the government: but hee prooued retchlesse and vicious and applied himselfe onely to feasting, disports on horsebacke, and other pastimes; his estate and house being ruled by fauourites: and in the warres which he made in Asia against the Infidels, he was twice shamefully ouerthrowne; yet PETRONAS a captaine of his obtained a noble victorie. In the end, one of his great fauourites, called BASILIVS (a man of base linage & condition, whom he had aduanced to Basilius steve great power and dignitie) killed him by treason, and gat the Empire to himselse; made himselse for alreadie in MICHAELS daies he was made CESAR. This happened in the Emperour of thirteenth yeere of his raigne, and in the yeere of our Lord, eight hundred scuenty the East. and fixe. Yet the empire of MICHAEL was fortunate in one thing, which was, 876.

#### LEVVES THE SECOND.

that the king of Bulgaria, and many other people which beleeved not in I as v s CHRIST(at the least in such fort as they ought to have beleeved) in his time were wholy conuerted. In these daies also France escaped not free from warres, betweene CHARLES

of Lorraine.

inuade France. the Bauld, vncle to this our Emperour L E vv E s, and the Normanes ; a most fierce nation before named: neither was L = vv = s the king of Germany without warres against other nations, which I am not bound to relate, neither such as happened in other kingdomes, but onely such as are for our purpose. I say then that within certaine yeeres, LOTHARIVS king of Lorraine, brother to the Emperour, died; Latinarius sing and his vncle CHARLESking of France, would have made seisure on Lorraine, and all the other lands which hee held: but the Emperour opposed himselfe against it, and vsed so good meanes, that hee tooke possession of all, as heire to his father: whereupon there arose great warres and controuersie betweene them. which lasted about five yeeres. And within a while after this, the Emperour being in Milan, was taken with an infirmitie, whereof he died: who in my opinion (so farre as I can gather out of histories) left no sonnes to succeede him: wherefore those which say that CHARLES and LEVVES were his sonnes, are deceiued therein; for they were the fonnes of his vncle L wv Es, king of Germany and Bauaria: the cause of which error was, for that these two princes were both of one name; but hee that diligently readeth the histories, shall finde that which I fay to be true, and the rest false. I doe not produce reasons and coniectures to verifie my opinion, which are to no other purpose, butto wearie the reader, and make the historie more obscure : presuppose that I say the truth, and then all is

The death of the Emperour Lewes. Anno Dom.

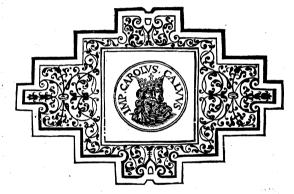
cleere. And to conclude with L B vv Bs, of whom I have faid little, and that confufedly (for that I could not cleerely discouer any more) I say that he died in the veere of our Lord, eight hundred, seuentie and eight, when hee had raigned one and twentie yeeres; yet some say but nineteene at which time I OHN was Pope of Rome, and in Conflantinople BASILIVS was Emperour, who although he entred into the Empie as a tyrant, yet he was no cuill prince or ruler.

THE



## THE SECOND, SVRNAMED

THE BAVLD, AND FOVRESCORE Romane Emperour. And of BASILIVS Emperour of Constantinople.





HE death of the Emperour Levy es was soone knowne and published enery where, as viually is the death of fuch kings and princes as hee was: but his vncles CHARLES the Bauld, king of France, and L EVV ES king of Germany, which were his fathers brothers, had soonest intelligence; all which were fonnes of the Emperour Lydovicys Piv sithe first of that name: and although they were now old and vnweildie (for they had been kings aboue thirtie

yeeres) yet each of them pretended to be Emperour. CHARLES for that he was king of France seemed to have the better title, for it was passed thither in the perfon of his grandfather: and L E vy Es for that he was his elder brother conceived as much. But CHARLES vsed greater expedition, and made better prouision, by reason of the necrenes of France to Italy, being thereto aided by his owne condition; for hee was naturally proud and ambitious, so that with greater celeritie then any man would have thought, he had levied a great armie, and passing the

Sonnes.

Alpes came into Italy, and tooke his way directly for Rome; but he fent his Son LEVYES another way, to feise vpon that which the Emperour LEVYES had taken in France, by the death of his brother, which was Austrasia, now called Lorraine. CHARLES being come to Rome, where he had already by messages and letters (and as some lay by money and bribes) sollicited, and gotten the goodwill of the Romanes, and of Pope I o HN the eight, or ninth, was presently Crowned by him, and held for Emperour, and in the meane time, his brother LEVYES in Germany failed not to leuy forces to come against him: with a determination to deprive him of the Empire, and of his life also if he could. But CHARLES having fetled the affaires of Italy in very good order, (in great choler against his brother) returned into Fraunce, against whom he raised his whole power, and they beginning to march, the one against the other, Lavvas was arrested by death, which ouertooke him at Franckford, leaving his Dominions. First, divided betweene his three Sonnes, which were very valiant men, to witte, LEVVES, CARLOMAN, and CHARLES, of which three names, the offpring of CHARLES the Great made great accompt: which causeth a great confusion and obscuritie in the history, if the Reader be not very attentiue. The division was made in this manner, by the mutuall consent of the three brothers; to LEVVES was given Saxony, Turingia, The division of Freefeland, and the provinces within them contained, and that he should be King Lewes his called King of Ostrofrancia, or East Fraunce. To CARLOMAN, was allotted Banaria, Austria, Carinthia, Slauonia, Bohemia, and Morauia, with the title of King of Bauaria. To CHARLES befell Suenia, Franconia, and all the rest of Germanie, and some Cities in Lorraine, which had beene under his uncle LOTHARIUS. and he (as his Father had beene) was called King of Germany. Their Vncle CHARLES the Bauld, and King of Fraunce, being hereof aduertifed, making leffe accompt of the Sonnes, then he had done of the Father, being more proud and ambitious, then hardy or valorous, entred Germany with fifty thousand men, and went so farre as Coleyn, necre whereunto his nephew L E vv Es, the newe King of East Fraunce, stayed for him, with the greatest part of his Fathers Army. affisted by his brothers CARLOMAN, and CHARLES, and other great Dukes and Princes of Germany, first seeking peace: but seeing that the Emperor would not graunt the same, he joyned in battell with him, which was fought of either fide very obstinately. And the Emperour seeing his enemies fight with such resolution, fled from the battell, and his nephew Levves remained with the victorie. In this battell and pursuit, was made great slaughter of the French Nobilitie: And so the Emperor returned into his Countrey, with lesse power, and more dishonour, where he reposed himselfe for a season: his nephewes taking no care further to trouble him. After this, it happened that one BALDVVIN, Raldwin Ear then Gouernor or keeper of that Countrey, which now is called the Earledome fell inflower with of Flaunders, (and was lately to populous & to well inhabited, and then for the most part was nothing but wood and forrest, with some few little villages ) fell Charles the in loue with one of the Emperours daughters, and her Father being absent in the warres, he found meanes to convey her out of the Pallace, and so hid himfelfe with her in those woods: against whom the Emperour meaning to have proceeded with all rigour, at the entreaty of many religious persons, and of estate, was perswaded to marry him to her, and doing so, gaue him that countrey, with the title of Earle of Flaunders : and this BALD VVIN proued to be fo

excellent a man, and yied fuch industrie, that he replenished the countrey with

Inhabitants,

Inhabitants, which so manured the Land, that within few yeares it did abound The Originall with people and all other things necessary; And his Sonne Arnylphys, and of the Earlehis successors, vsing the like diligence, it came to be one of the most flourishing ders,

countreyes of the world; of fuch power is diligence and humane industrie, this was the beginning of that estate.

The Emperor CHARLES being thus in his kingdome of Fraunce, in the meane time while that he warred with his nephewes, the Moores of Africa. which already had a taste of the wealth of Italy, came thither with a great Army, and did great harme in the Marches of Capua, and belieged that Citie: The Moores whereupon Pope I OHN fent to request the Emperour, to come to protect his came into that befreged lands of the Church, which he performed with the greatest speed that he could the citie of

make, for he was very politike and cunning in leuying of men of warre; but Capua. before his going into Italy, (to satisfie his wives humour) he made her brother Boson, which was also his necre kinsman, King of Prouence. And comming to Rome, the Infidels leaving that coast, tooke another way, which was into Sicilia, which yet was vnder the Empire of Constantinople, whereof Basilivs was Emperour, of whom we will presently make mention. When LEVVES, CHARLES, and CARLOMAN, understood that their Vncle was in Italy, they vnited their forces together, with a determination to goe against him, in reuenge of former iniuries. Whereof, to foone as the Emperor had intelligence, he departed from Rome with his forces, to make head against them vpon the way: but it pleased God to saue him that labour, which was, that comming to Mantos with his hoaft, being now old and decripit, an infirmitie tooke him, whereof he feared not that he should have dyed. But a Iew called Z BD BCHIAS (which was The death of his Philition) poyloned him, and to he presently died: and his affaires remained the Emperor confused, & out of order: leaving for his heire in his kingdomes, his Son called cond, por long Lydovicys Balbys, and other three which he had, which also had ill suc- by his Phisticeffe: which appertaineth not to my history. They called this his Sonne BAL- on which was Bys, for that so in Latin they call him which stuttereth, and cannot pronounce Lodonicus Balcertaine letters, but have that defect in their speech. At this time in the Empire bus and voly of Constantinople, raigned BASILIVS before named, which (as I said) proued no fo called. ill gouernor; for he released many of the tributes and exactions, which his predeceffors had imposed upon the people, and defended the Empire with great valour and discretion, although that in some things he had ill successe. First, against certaine great troupes of Infidels, which came from Alexandria in Egypt, into the Ile of Candia, and had taken many places therein, he rigged a Nauie. and fayled thither in person, where he fought, and was ouercome, to the great domage of the Christians: and (by great hap) escaping, he returned by flight to Constantinople, but not daunted, neither discouraged, and prepared a newe fleete, and to try his fortune with a new Captaine, he fenttherewith his wives Father, whose name was CHRISTOPHER, a man very valiant, and of great experience; who had so good hap, that obtaining the victorie, he cleared that Iland. After this, he waged other warres in Asia, by his Captaines, against the Infidels, Turkes and Perfians: wherein for the most part he had good successe, and lastly, against the Africanes, which for feare of CHARLES the Bauld, (as I but even now faid) leaving Italy, went into Slavonia, or Dalmatia, and had ta-

ken some Townes of BASILIVS his Empire, he sent thither his Army and

Nauy, and with the aide of the Venetians, draue them out of those Countries,

and recouered what they had taken therein. And so he raigned with greater

LEVVES THE THIRD.

The death of Charles the Bauld.

honor, and to the better liking and contentment of his Subjects, then many of his Predecessors. At which time the Emperour CHARLES the Bauld died in Mantoa, when he had raigned little more then two yeares, Iohn the ninth being then Pope. Some Authors say that he raigned a longer time; but the truth is as I haue set downe.

# THE LIFE OF LEWES THE THIRD, SVRNAMED BAL

BVS AND FOURE SCORE AND ONE ROMANE EMPEROR, TOGETHER with the life of BASILIVS Emperor of Constantinople.





F in the time of CHARLES the Bauld there were warres and troubles for the Empire; there were no lesse after his decease, as the reader may well perceive by the processe of this historie; wherein, although it feeme that I vse breuitie, for that I waste lesse paper in one then in another, yet is it not so; for I seeke (so much as I may) to make an euen division of this booke be-

tweene the Emperours, whose lives I write. But for a much as these Princes of whom I doe now treate, liued but a little while in the Empire, (to observe an equalitie, and due proportion, so farre as possibly may be) I hold it reason, that the Storie and Chronicle of them be briefer, according to the time of their raigne, and to the end that more at large we may have space to write of matters neerer to our time. The Emperor CHARLES being deceased in Mantoa, as is aforesaid, his nephew CHARLES King of Germany, with his brothers, which already had entred Italy against him, stayed with their Army: for the enemy being dead, the warre was ended. His Sonne L B VV Es, fo soone as he in Fraunce was aduertifed of the death of his Father, and how that his Coufins had laid downe their weapons: first endeuoured to establish himselse in his Fathers Kingdome, and also sent to entreat Pope Ionn to aide him and to stand his friend in attaining to the Imperiall dignitie. In the first he found some difficultie, being contradicted

tradicted by his mother in law the Emperesse, who was counselled and assisted by her brother Boson king of Prouence: but the matter was carried fo cunningly. that within few daies hee was held and obeyed for king. Now concerning the Empire, he found greater difficultie; for CHARLES furnamed the Fat, being king Levves made of Germany, besides that he alreadie had some townes in Italy, had also the good will of fundrie the most principall men in Rome; so that notwithstanding that Pope I OHN Would have had LEVVES king of France to have been chosen Emperour vet he could not fo bring it to passe: for they not only denied to accept him. but were fo bold as to lay hands upon the Pope, to the end that he should not doe The Pope agit. But he staied not long in prison, for some of his servants, either by force or policie released him, and he in great hast went into France, where he was honorably entertained by the king. And being there (of his own authoritie) he intitled Levyes Emperor; and giving him the Imperiall enfignes, crowned him with great folemnitie: & after this, remained one yeere in France, where he called a councell and made certain orders concerning the state of the Church, and created a Bishop for the Countie of Flanders, wherein neuer had bin any before, being but lately inha- The first Eisthop bited. In which time the warres and troubles betweene the new Emperour, and of Flaunders. his cousin germane CHARLES king of Germany ceased not; who was also so called by the will of the Romanes, which were the occasion of a worse matter: for the Moores of Africa (seeing Italy abandoned by the Pope, and that the defence The Moores incame flow and flenderly) prepared a great nauie, and did much harme therein: uade Italy. whereof Pope IOHN being advertised, with the aide of CHARLES the Fat. king of Germany, who was also called Emperour, came into Italy; at whose comming the Infidels retired, and the land was freed from the great danger wherein it was: And the Pope feeing how much Rome and all Italy had been better relieued by CHARLES, then by LEVYES, and how much CHARLES was more favoured by the principall Barons in Italy; and to the end to come to agreement with the faid Barons, altring his minde, he approved and confirmed the nomination and election made of CHARLES king of Germany, who for his corpulence was furnamed the Fat; and so he annointed and crowned him Emperour; disanulling the coronation of LyDovicys BALBysking of France; for which cause it was thought wided. that great warres and troubles would have enfued: but by the intercession of certaine great personages, a peace was concluded betweene the two Emperours in this manner: That they both should hold the name and title of Emperours. and that the countrie of Lorraine (about which was wont to be great contention) should be equally divided betweene them two; and that for the Empire no warre should be made, but that in all parts peace should be maintained betweene the lands and fubicets of the one and of the other partie; and that in Italy (vntill that equall partition were made) each of them should hold such lands and townes as he then had in possession: and if that the Insidels inuaded the dominion of either of them, the other was bound to aide him with his forces. This peace being concluded (although doubtfull and fained) the Emperour L BVV Es died in France, The death of whereof he was king, having raigned not fully two yeeres; in all which time hee Lodowicus Balneuer came to Rome, neither into Italy. But for as much as Pope I o HN crowned bus king of him in France, and afterward in Rome difanulled his election and coronation, France. some Historiographers leave him out of the catalogue of the Emperours. He left when he died two bastard sonnes behinde him, the one called GARLOMAN, and the other LE vv Es, and his wife great with a sonne, whereof the was afterwards deliuered; which some being posthumus (for so doe they call him which

CHARLES THE SECOND.

is borne after his fathers descafe) he left for his heire of the kingdoms of France; wherein grew great discord, warres and miserie about the gouernment and the kingdome; and in the one and other were great alterations and chaunges, too long to be recited: for the bastard sonnes pretended title and right to the crowne. and fo did Boson king of Provence. Others would have the child (wherewith the Emperesse was great at the death of the Emperour, who was afterwards called CHARLES the Simple) to be king. The gouernours also tooke vpon them the name of kings, sometimes one was a king, and sometime another, and each of them made himselse Lord of what hee could get. In these troubles the kingdome endured great calamitie. This Emperour L z vv z s died in the yeere of our Lord, eight hundred and fourescore, according to the computation which I hold for most certaine.

Charles the simple postbu-

Anno Dom. 280.

### THE LIFE OF CHARLES THE THIRD, SVRNAMED THE

FAT, AND FOVRESCORE AND TWO Romane Emperour. And of Basilivs and LEO, at that time Emperours of Constantinople.





Resently upon the decease of Levves the Emperour and king of France, the king of Germany, CHARLES the Fat, without any contradiction possessed the Empire: for in the others life time he had in a manner robbed him of that maiestie, which (as the reader may well consider) was at that time but onely in name; for the authoritie of CHARLES the Great and his fuccessors, consisted more in letters, and in the kingdomes which they wonne and possessed (which

were the dominions of Germany and Italy) then in any part of the Empire, whereof there remained but Italy onely, and therein the Pope held the greatest part; and the Greeke Empire had ever some share: and that likewise which the Emperoursheld in Italy, was recoursed by the faid CHARLES, and by his father; yet the name of Emperour was in the highest degree desired, and the authoritie and maiestie thereof was very great, and so continueth vntill this day. CHARLES the Fat remaining then fole Emperour in peace, as his vertues described, leaning Italy in good order, went into Germany, to take possession of his brother L EVV Es his kingdomes; who also at that time died without heires, whose dominion contained Frifeland, Saxony, Lorraine, and other provinces; and he had so good hap, that within short space after this, his other brother died also without sonnes or issue: which prouinces were afterwards divided into fundrie houses and states (in proceffe of time) by the gifts of the Emperours, and through fundry other accidents, as it plainly appeareth. If ay then that he remained Lord of all Germany, and king

The next yeere after this died BASILIVS Emperour of Constantinople of a very extraordinarie death, for riding on hunting (as his custome was) he was slaine rour of con. by a Stagge. BASILIVS in his life time had chosen and nominated his eldest son flatinople Dy a Stagge. BASILIVS HIRE LINE had thortestand nonlineating the city flunc by a flag, LEO for CESAR, after the death of his other eldeft fonne CONSTANTINE: and his founce wherefore to foone as the father was dead, the fonne LEO was crowned and Leofucceded obeyed for Emperour, and was called the Philotopher, for that he was much in-him to Emclined to learning: BASILIVS left also another sonne called ALEXANDER. And the Emperour CHARLES having good fuccesse in his affaires; and knowing what warres and factions were in France, under colour to warre against the Normanes which harried the countrie, fought (as many others did, and had done) to make himselfe king thereof. He leuying then a mightie armie of Germanes and Italians, entred France, and went to the citie of Paris, which the Normanes held belieged; and having taken all the countrey and put the Normanes to route, he was called king of France : the young king CHARLES the Simple, or BONOSVS king of Prouence, having no furficient power to make head against him. In this war were many great fights, which for that the authors handle the same so confufedly, I passe ouer in silence. And the Emperours partie became so mightie, that henot onely enjoyed the title and name of king, but the kingdome it selfe also; and to the end that he might the better draw the Normanes to his feruice, he trea- The comming and to the end that he had ouerthrowne them) of peace, and gaue to their king of the Norted with them (after he had ouerthrowne them) of peace, and gaue to their king manes into to wife a kinfwoman of his, which was a Dukes daughter; and affigned to him wormandie. that part of France which lieth beyond the river Seine, bordring vpon the English fea, which after them is at this death called Normandy, and is a very good countrey and well inhabited. Yet some Historians say, that the Emperour CHARLES did not this, but that CHARLES the Simple afterwards did it when he came to be king of France; who at that time was but an infant, and under the gouernment of EVDONE: but in my opinion that was too long a time, for they afterwards had wars with him. But how focuer it was, the Emperor CHARLES the Fat was Lord of the greatest and best part of France, and was called king thereof, being before that time king of Germany, and Lord and Emperour of Italy; and setting all things therein in good order, he retired himselse into Germany: where being arrived, as the state of his dominion and empire was grounded voon but weak foundations, so it suddenly fell from the heigth of that throne. Some alleage the cause thereof to be, for that he became foolith, proud, and vnfit to gouerne: others fay, that a disease tooke him which bereaued him of his senses, which commethall to one in effect. To conclude, the Princes, Dukes and gouernours of the prouinces of

charles the Fa deposed from the Empire, and Amolph chosen in his place. Germany and of France, seeing his great insufficiencie and vnaptnes to gouerne. resolved to deprive him of his Empire and kingdoms: and for as much as he had neuer a fonne (being as they write of him, vnapt by nature for generation) by common consent they nominated and chose a great and valiant personage called ARNOLPH, who was by CHARLES advanced to the Duches of Bauaria, and Carinthia, and (as some write) was but of meane parentage, and no way allied to CHARLES: and fo they account CHARLES the Fatto be the last of the linage and bloud of CHARLES the Great. But after some, which is the most common opinion, ARNOLPHWas nephew to CHARLE sthe Fat, baftard or naturall fonne to CARLOMANKING of Bautere; which feemeth most likely to bee true feeing that he without any gainfaying attained both to the kingdome and to the empire; and was not onely entitled Emperour, but also king of Germany: but in France after ARNOLPHS first furie, they made OTHO (who was CHARLES the Simples Protector) king of France, whom CHARLES the Simple afterwards succeeded. After this many great matters enfued, which appertaine not to my historie: And fo CHARLES the Fat loft both his empire and understanding, when hee had raigned nine yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord, eight hundred, fourescore and nine; and lived afterwards about one yeere, in great penurie and miferic.

In Constantinople yet raigned L 20, not so ill as some others: for notwithstanding that he was somewhat cruell, yet he was a louer of instice and equitie, and very zealous, and builded some stately Temples. He warred with the Bul-

gares, and ouercame them, and was ouercome by them; whose death and actions wee will declare hereafter, for hee raigned fine and twentie yeeres.

THE

### THE LIFE OF ARNOLPH ONLY OF THAT NAME, AND

FOVRESCORE AND FOVRE ROMANE
Emperour. And of Leo, Alexander and
Constantine Emperors of Gracia.





T is alreadie declared in what manner ARNOLPHATTAIned to the Empire, who is placed amongst the good
Emperours, for he was wise and vpright in his gouernment, and had both valour and courage to desend and
protect the Empire: yet in his time were great wars. So
soone as he was Romane Emperour and king of Germany, it came into his minde to make himselfe king of
France also: and he sought some battailes with the Normanes; which vnderstanding that Charles was de-

prined and dead, rebelled, and made warres in France, wherein he had the victorie: but conftrained through fome innouations in Germany, he returned thither and abandoned France: which I omit as a matter impertinent. Being come into Germany, his first busines was with a certaine people in the prouince of Morania called Magarens, which warred in all parts of Germany, and did so great harme, and put him in so great feare, that he sought to pacific them rather by policie then by force of armes: and to the end that they should line in peace and quiet,

Bbb 2

he

Anno Dom. 889. he agreed to give them that countrey to inhabite; fo that to them was affioned the prouince of Morania, with part of Bohemia, where it bordereth voon Hangarie, Poland, and Slesia. But neuerthelesse, this lasted but a small time, for this people waxing proud of their agreement, with greater prefumption inuaded the countrey : against which ARNOLPH leuied an Armie of insolent valiant men at armes brought out of Hungarie; with which, and his other ordinary forces, he ouerthrew the Morauians in a notable battaile, and he cutting the greatest part of them in peeces, the rest sled and abandoned the countrey: but it being freed from the subdued, was much more oppressed by the victorious Hungars, which mutinying for want of their pay, facked the cities and townes of Germany; and croffing ouer the countrey without any refiftance came into Friseland, and thence into Gallia Belgica; part whereof at this day is the Earledome of Flaunders. These Hungars as some affirme, were of the same countrev of Hungarie, and others, as VICENTIVS in his Mirror, and MARTIN'affirme that they came out of Scithia into that prouince: but whence soeuer they came, it importeth not much, it suffiseth that they all agree, that ARNOLPHYS was much troubled with them, and that they burned and spoyled great part of Germanie and ARNOLPH did all that was possible for him, and at length constrained them to returne into Hungarie, from whence (follong as he lived) they neuer durst to come thither againe.

Whilst these things passed in Germanie, Italy escaped not free from warres and troubles: whereof the Emperors long absence was the occasion; for he had neuer beene there but went thither being called by Pope Formore, who was chosen after the death of STEPHEN before mentioned, which FORMOSVS was chosen against the will of the most part of people of Rome, which favoured a Cardinall called SERGIVS, to whom they had given their voyces: wherefore the Pope holding himselfe for greatly inituried, went to the Emperor, and was the cause of his comming into Italy: of whom before that we enter into any discourse, it shall not be amisse to speake (after our accustomed manner) of the Emperor of Constantinople, in the life time of LEO the fifth, who (as we faid) at that time held that Empire: wherein ordinarily enfued great accidents; for the Emperor was euerat contention and variance (in Europe) with the Bulgarians, the Hungars, the Russians, and other Nations: and in Asia with the Armenians, the Perfians, and other infidels. But I defire to be held excused in that I write not that historie at large, seeing I am bound to write but of the Emperors of the West onely, which are held for the right Emperors; and of the others to make but a briefe relation. L no having then ended his warre with the Bulgarians, refolued to warre in Asia against the infidels, and did so, wherein although that many losses happened to either party, yet in the end ( his Army being led by a good Generall) obtained a very notable victory; whereby his name came to be very famous and renowmed : fo as in these matters, and others which I write not, fine and twenty yeeres of his Empire were fpent, in the end whereof he died of the cholicke; And after his death, his brother ALEXANDER was chosen Emperor, notwithstanding that heleft a Sonne called Constant TINE; But forasmuch as he was of more yeeres and better beloued the brother had the Empire, and held it for thirteene, or fourteene monethes; during which time he did nothing that was good; and for abusing the Ambassadors of St-MEON King of Bulgaria, warre was made against him: and he bestowed offices and dignities upon ignoble and base personages, and in the end wastaken with a flux of blood at the nose which neuer left him, vntill he left the Empire; and Alexander his brother LEO his Sonne CONSTANTINE had the Empire, of whom we will Confidentinople speake hereafter, for this happened in the time of Arnolph Emperor of the dyeableeding West, whose life we now write, which ended (as I said) comming into Italy, in at the nose. fauour of Pope Formosvs; and to recover fuch Cities as were therein vsurped by certaine Dukes and Earles; betweene whom and them enfued many batrailes; and in all Italy were factions, and diffentions, especially betweene G v 1-DO Duke of Spoleto, and BERENGARIVS Duke of Frioli, which were made Dukes by the old Emperor CHARLBS; being men of the greatest account of any in all the Land, he thinking by this meanes to defend the Countrie against the Lombards and Frenchmen, and to hold the fame in subjection, having such mighty Commaunders. But these men made themselues!Lords of all that they could; and either of them was a great enemie to the other, and warred, and fought a great battaile, wherein Gvido was ouerthrowne, and BERENGARIvs had the victorie; who vnderstanding of the Emperor ARNOLPHES comming fought to make a league with him and offred him his feruice; more to feeke his enemies destruction, then for any service he meant to doe to the Emperor. ARNOLPH being come into Italy with a great Army, fought meanes to make himselfe Lord of the countrey, assisted by BERENG ARIVS, whose dukedome of Frioli was in his way; and he tooke many places which Gvino had vsurped, and went to Bergamo, into the castle whereof, a certaine Earle (one of those which conspired against Pope FORMOSVS) was entred, who together with others of that citie, were therein befieged by the Emperor; and he taking it by force, made him to be hanged. And so he punished and did instice vpon many others, and redreffed many injuries and wrongs done in Italy; and afterwards went with his Army towards Rome, where the Pope attended his comming : but his aduersaries were of such power, that whether the Pope would or not, they put the citie in armes, and shutting their ports would not receaue the Emperor; whereupon he befreged it, which caused great tumults and riots therein but in the end the Popes authoritie and the feare of the Emperors power fo much prevailed that he was receased; wherein by his will and direction great punishment was inflicted upon such as could be taken; and the Pope crowned him Emperor with great honor and folemnitie: and within few daies ned Emperor after he departed, with an intent to destroy Gvido the Duke of Spoleto, who in Rome by was of great power, and thought as well as BERENGARIVS to have beenking the Pope. of Italy; and having taken certaine townes, he belieged his wife in a citie: and the Duchesse practizing with one of the Emperors fauorites, to give the Emperora certaine drinke, which she made him to belieue, would make him gentle, milde, and curteous; but so soone as he had taken it, he fell into a deepe sleepe. which held him folong, that they thought he would neuer haue awaked againe; for he flept three daies and three nights, without that any man could make him to moone; but in the ende he awoke, and found himselfe so ill at ease, that contenting himselfe to settle the affaires of Italy in the best order that he could, he returned into Germany, in hope in his native countrey to recover his health. At what time as the Emperor Arnolph departed Italy, Pope Formosys died, and after him BONIFACE the fixt was chosen, who was Pope buttwentie fix daies, and him succeeded STEVEN the fixth, who was so great an enemy to Formosvs and to his actions, that when he was Pope, he fought to defeate and disanul all matters done by him; which he put in execution, which

nople died of the cholick and Succeeded bim.

of constanti-

Bbb a

med the prece-

death of the

Emperor Ar-

Anno Dom .

molph.

901.

The fucceeding was an cuill example, and whereof afterwards many cuils enfued: for fome Popes did the like by fuch their predecessors, against which they had conceamea time prece-dents aftions, ued displeasure. This being done, Pope STEPHEN dyed in the third yeere of his papacie, and him succeeded Komanys, a Spaniardborne, who was Pope but three monethes, and after him came THEODORE the fecond, who held the chaire but twentie daics, in which time his chiefest care was to confirme the doings of FORMOSVS, which STEPHEN had disanulled; and after his death IOHN the tenth was chosen: while these Popes ran in such haste to death one after another, the Emperor ARNOLPH with his Army went into Germanie and out lived them all, and raigned in prosperitie, without that any thing befell him worthy memorie; but in the ende he was affailed with a kinde of ficknes, which resolued in the worst disease that could be imagined, which was an infinite number of lice, wherewith he was fo tormented and eaten, that he could not be cured thereof, and dyed; this happened in the yeere of our Lord, nine hundred and one, and in the twelfth yeere of his raigne. ARNOLPH at his death left behind him three children which he had by his two wines; by his first wife, he had An-NOLPH, whom in his life time he made duke of Bauiere, and BERNARD Earle of a certaine prouince: and by his second wife he had L z vv z s, who afterwards was Emperor; he had another bastard sonne called ZENEBALD vs. whom in his life time he made Duke of Lorraine; and one daughter called BERTA, married to the Duke of Cleve. In the time that ARN OLPH raigned, began the dukes of Normandie; for the King or captaine of the Normans married the daughter of CHARLES the Simple, king of Fraunce, & making himselfe to be Christianed, was called R OBERT, whose some was the first Dake of Normandie. There were also Dukes in Burgundie of the house of Fraunce, which a long time after were called Kings: & in Saxony alfo, and in other parts, as hath been shewen, & hereafter shall appeare in this historie: for the Kings and Emperors of those times did vie to gouerne their citties and provinces by perpetuall Dukes, fo as at that time were very great Earles and Dukes, and the Emperours gouerned Milan by an Earle, who was called Earle of Milan; the like they did by other prouinces. whereof it afterwards enfued, that their estates became perpetuall, they holding the fame by inheritance. At this time the principall Earles of Castill, through the many murthers and iniuries committed by Don Hordonio in that countrey; chose among themselues two to be judges betweene them, and to determine their differences and warres : which were HVNNO HVNNES RASV-RA, and LAIN CALVO: after this followed Don Alonso the Sonne of Don Fruela, who became a Monke. And the same yearethat the Emperor ARNOLPH dyed, DON RAMIRES raigned: this DON RAMIRES performed great matters against the Moores. In Fraunce raigned CHARLES the Simple. There were then Kings in England, in Denmarke, in Morauia, in Pronence, in Bulgaria: and in Polonia were Dukes, and so were still untill the time of the Emperor OTHO.

In Constantinople (as is abouesaid) Constantine the some of Leo, and nephew to the Emperour ALEXANDER, was Emperour, and raigned a long time, for he was Emperour thirtie nine yeeres: whereof fifteene were in the company of the tyrant ROMANVS: In the beginning of his raigne (for that he was a child) he was gouerned by certaine Princes, and by his mother ZoE, and had some warres with the King of the Bulgarians, which he ended with happy fuccesse, Phocas being Generall of his Army, who was of greatest account

of any man in his court. Afterwards, through treacherie, his fouldiers abandoned him and the Bulgarians became Lords and mafters of the field to as he was constrained to buy his peace of them for readie money. After this, in despite of himfelfe and of his mother, one which of a pettic prince was come to be of great power, was made C & s AR, and his companion in the Empire, and had the juperioritie the other fifteene yeeres that hee lived, notwithstanding that they both had the title of Emperors : as we will tell you hereafter.

## THE LIFE OF LEWES, THE FOURTH OF THAT

NAME, AND FOVRESCORE AND

foure Romane Emperor. And of CONSTAN-TINE the fecond, Emperour of Constantinople, and of the tyrants in Italy.





Fter the death of the Emperour ARNOLPH, there was great confusion in the Empire; the Italians and Romanes desiring to make one Emperour, that should be to their liking; and the Germanes defiring to doe the like, they fell at fuch variance, that the one partie held one for Emperour, and the other part another; fo as rightly there was not any. And some Historiographers account none, from these Emperours of which wee now write, vntill the time of O-

THO the second, which was for the space of threescore yeeres, little more or lesses for that none of them were crowned by any Pope. Moreouer, the historie is written so confused and abruptly, that it can hardly be explaned. The worst of all is, that those times were most vnhappie, through want and defect of Emperours; for thereof infinite warres enfued ; vices, wrongs and rapines abounded, little iuflice was executed, learning decaied, vertue was nought fet by, charitte languished, and the Infidels in many places had the upper hand; untill that it pleased his dinine Maiestie to bring matters to a better estate. I fay then, that the Germane Princes chose for their King and Romane Emperour, L Evy Es the sonne of the Leweschofen Bbb 4

Emperour

Emperour ARNOLPH: but he could not (fo foone as he defired) come into Italy; without which they neuer held themselues for Emperours, holding Italy for the feate and originall of the Empire; for the Hungars in those daies were the most feared and redoubted nation in the world, and which did greatest harme in Germany and in Italy; for after they were freed from the feare of ARNOLPH, they brake the peace made with him, and warred vpon the new Emperour Lavves in Italy: whereof the Princes of greatest power were the about named BERENGA-RIVS Duke of Frioli, and GVID o Duke of Spoleto, which of Dukes, governours, became tyrant Lords, each of them pretending to be Emperour: but BERENGA-RIVS being of great power in Lumbardy, put his deseignes in practise, and vsurped the whole countrie, and any place else that he could get, in despite of the Emperour, faying, That Italy was the true seate of the Romane empire, and that Germany might rather be faid to be the marriage right of CHARLES the Great his fuccessors, than the Empire. But LEVVES for that he was the sonne of an Emperour, and descended from CHARLES the Great, which restored the Empire, pretended that Germany ought to chuse the Emperour. Matters standing in these termes, the Hungars fallied out of their countrie, and began to robbe and spoyle the countries of Austrich and Bauiere, ving in them extreme crueltie with fire and fword. LEVVEs being a couragious young man, was highly displeased with this their presumptuous audacitie, and gathering together such troupes of souldiers as he was able, with the aide of his brothers, went against them, and neere to the river Lieus they met, where LEVVES greatly defired to come to blowes with them; which the Hungars and Moranians perceiuing, laid a baite for him; for offering to give him battaile, they retired, vntill they had drawne him within the daunger of an ambush which they had laid in a wood; and there they main-A battaile betained the fight to their great advantage, in regard of the place: but the fight was tweene I emes fo well maintained by the Emperours people, that if the Hungars had not beene and the Hunresoured by their ambush, he had that day obtained a most faire victorie: but when the aduauntage was discouered, and that so great a number of men on euery side came ruthing out of the wood vpon fuch a fudden, with fo great force vnexpected; the Imperialists began to retire, & afterwards to flie, in fuch manner, that the victorie manifestly appeared on the Hungars side, and the Emperor was driven to faue himself by flight & they afterwards did much harme throughout al Germany, without that the Emperor was any way able to refift, or make head against them; but was constrained to withdraw himselfe into the land, and secretly to give great fummes of money to the captaines and principall men of the Hungars, to the end that they should treate of a peace; and he openly gaue great pay to their men of warre, and promifed to allow them yeerely prouision for their houses: by these meanes he deliuered his countrie from that miserie for that time; but the peace continued not long.

After this exploit, the Emperor understanding that his bastard brother ZENE-BALDV s, gouerned the countrie of Lorraine cruelly, and as a tyrant, hee deprined him of that kingdome, and feifed it into his owne hands; and tooke L v I T G V AR-DA, daughter of OTHO Duke of Saxony, to wife; which prouince was then fubicat to the Empire. In those daies France escaped not free from warres and troubles. And the Emperour thinking that he had fetled all matters in peace with the Hungars, faw himselse in a new perplexitie; for they not content with the promised pay(which was very duly paid them)a great armie of them againe inuaded Almamy, and the Emperour in person went against them, and twice sought with them in the promince of Baniere, and both times had the victorie, although with great loffe of men, and with no small difficultie and daunger: but not knowing how to execute his victorie, or to follow his good fortune, giving too much eare to forne mens counsell; the Hungars fled into their countries, which (in most mens opinions) might haue been wholy extirpate and defeated: where they reinforced and refreshed their troupes, and did greater harme in the empire, then at the first. and were so expert in the warres, and so greatly feared, that croffing through Germany, facking and burning many towns, amongst which the citie of Basil was one, they paffed into Lorraine, which then contained the estates of Flaunders, Brabant. Gelders, Clene, Trenier, and many other provinces; in which they executed great crueltie, and with the like furie they returned by the same way which they went, burning and spoyling what before had escaped; and so they retired themselves into their countrie, loden with riches and spoyles; but fewer in number then they came from thence. This people at that time was growne fo proud and of fo great power, that all nations bordring upon them stood in feare of them, and did as the rest did: for after the same manner as they had entred Bautere, they afterwards inuaded Bulgaria, and the Emperours countries of Gracia, facking and burning his cities; and constrained the Emperor Constanting to give them pay and ordinary tribute to be at peace with them; and the Emperour Lavy as was driven to doe the like, to affure Germany from this raging fire.

The Historiographers record, that in those daies were great warres in France and in Italy, betweene BERENGARIVS and other princes; and the like in other parts, and that princes yied fraud and trecherie one against another; so as a man can write nothing that is good of those times; so much did malice, ambition.

pride and crueltie abound.

It afterwards followed that the Hungars moued with the fame of the wealth and abundance of all things in Italy, and through the civill differtion which was therein the ordinarie gates by which destruction entreth into any kingdome) and for that L n vy n s with food them mightily in Germany, they resolved to ransacke and make a conquest of Italy; for which their journey they legied greater forces. then at any time before they had done: the fame hereof put all Italy into fuch a feare, that they chose BERENGARIVS for their captaine and defender, which was called Emperour, but vntill this time was not held for fuch. BERENGARIVS then with great diligence and expedition leuied many fouldiers both of foote and horse; and at their comming into Italy opposed himselfe against the Hungars. The Hungars and comming to blowes, fought a battaile with them: some authors say two, wherein being overthrowne he fled, and loft therein the greatest part of his armie, and retired himselfe into the estate of Milan, wherein consisted his greatest power. The Hungars after this victorie were masters of the field, and robbed all the countrie taking and ranfacking many cities, and in leffe then one yeere ouerranneall the land; in which time these Barbarians moued with the brute of the riches of the citie of Venice, made Barkes, Brigandines, and other veffels, therwith to have affaulted it; and so they scaled the citie, and tooke some of those Hands; but their comming was before hand suspected, and therefore prouided for; so as although they took some part thereof, yet the Venetians so fortified the rest, with strong chaines, and some places with walles, that after some conflicts by sea and by land, they despairing to be able to take the citie, returned to Padea, where they had left the remainder of their Cauallerie, and their luggage. BERENGA-RIVs seeing that by force he could not deliuer Italy from the Hungars, put that

Perengarius bought his peace of the Hungars.

The Hungars came the fecondtime into Italy.

peace by way of money; whereto the Hungars gaue care, and it was concluded. and he gaue them a huge summe of gold and filuer, which by the industrie of BE-RENGARIVS Was collected from all parts of Italy; wherewith, and with the rest which they had stolne, they departed rich and victorious; which had so good a tafte that it made them to come thither againe. The comming of the Hungars into Italy, was in the time of Pope SERGIVS the third: for BENEDICT the fourth being dead, of whom it was faid that he was a good Bifhop (which ought not to be accounted for a small matter, considering how few were so in those times) LEO the fift succeeded, who enjoyed that dignitie but fortie daies; for a great Cardinall called CHRISTOPHER, tooke him prisoner, who within few daies died in prison, and CHRISTOPHER remained Pope, and within seuen moneths was deprived, and put into a Monasterie; and then was SER GIVs the third chosen, in whose time happened this calamitie through the Hungars. But returning to our history, I say that the Hungars being retired into their countrie, Italy was not therfore free from troubles: for the Moores of Africa infested the same with their fleetes, and this notwithstanding the civill factions and discord, ceased not betweene the princes; for especially EDILBET Marquesse of Tuscane, which vsurped that countrie, being of great power, rebelled against BERENG ARIVS; and the Popes authoritie and power was not such now as it had been, neither were they of such force, by reason of their insufficiencie and little worth, and through the want of the accustomed succours from France, which they had in the time of the fuccessors of CHARLES the Great: which considered LE vy Bs the Emperor was of opinion, that Italy might easily be subdued, and that he might bereaue B =-RENGARIVS both of the name and dignitie of Emperour, which hee viurped. Whereupon with a great armie he came into Italy, against whom came BEREN-GARIVS With a good number of men of warre, and they two fought a battaile. wherein BERENGARIVS was ouerthrowne, with little bloudshed, by reason of the small resistance made by his people; and L E vy E s went to the citie of Verona. neere to which the battaile was fought, and lay there like a conquerour, and as one that stood in feare of no man, and therefore carelesse: whereupon BE-RENGARIVS, notwithstanding that he was our come, practifed with fome within the citie, and with some also of the Emperours owne people, to let him into the citie, and he entred it by night and tooke L E VV E s prisoner. Others fav that The difference L B VV B s had not the victorie, but that hee withdrew himselfe into the citie for feare; and fo in the manner (as I faid) fell into BERENG ARIVS his power. But howfoeuer it was, BERENG ARIVS had him prisoner, and put out his eyes, and fo within few daies through griefe and forrow he died; and BERENGARIVS remained fole Lord of the empire of Italy. In this manner ended L E vv E s his empire. which he held with fo much trouble, when he had raigned Emperour full eleuen yeeres, and died in the yeere of our Lord nine hundred and twelve, after the Abbot WESPERGENSIS his computation, which I follow: other authors (of no final authoritie) as BLONDVS and CVSPIAN recount this after another manner, faying, that this Emperour L E vv E s neuer came into Italy, neither was ouerthrowne by BERENGARIVS; but that he died of his naturall death in Germany: and that, that L E vv E s which was ouerthrowne and taken in Verena, was I. E vv Es the some of Bosonking of Prouence, which came into Italy against BERENGA-RIVS proclaiming himselfe Emperour; and that BERENGARIVS released him vpon his oath, that he would come no more thither; which oath he afterwards

hetweene the anthers about the taking of the Emperour Lewes and his death.

Anno Dem. 912.

brake. But in that manner as I haue declared it is written by PLATINA, HENRI-CVS MVCIVS, NAVCLERVS, I OHANNES VTICVS, S.ANTONY, VOLATER-RANVS and some others. In this time lined Pope SERG IVS the third, and in Constantinople C stantine Levy Es left not any sonne that might succeed him. There befell also in his time (besides what is alreadie recited) great warres and troubles betweene the princes of Germany; which was tyrannized, fometime by one and sometime by another, wherby his Empire was weakned and came to be of leffe power. This was the last Emperor of the line of CHARLES the Great, vet in the kingdom of France the succession continued, although within a while after it ended also. & passed to another linage, which lasteth until this day. And in Spaine then flourished the flower of chinalrie against the Infidels, conquering their countries & kings which raigned therein, the Earle FERNANDO GONSALVES.

In Hungary Tasson first took vpon him the authoritie of a king, which countrie in former time was gouerned by Dukes, and fundrie other Magistrates, from the time of ATTILA king of the Hunnes: This TASSON Was grandfather to STEPHEN, which was canonized for a Saint, and the first confirmed king, by the authoritie of the Emperour FREDERICK.

### THE LIFE OF CONRADE THE FIRST OF THAT NAME,

AND FOVRESCORE AND FIVE ROMANE Emperour. And of those which in his time tooke the name of Emperours in Italy.

And of CONSTANTINE the Emperour of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Ewes being dead, there arofe a contention betweene the French and the Germanes about the Empire : for either of these two nations presended to have rightfull title to chuse an Emperour, by reason of their ancient authority and custome: But in the end the Germanes preuailing, would have chosen Otho Duke of Saxony, who for that he was alreadie olde, and unfit to governe the Empire so much troubled, refused the charge, and counselled them

to chuse Conrade the Duke of Franconia, who by the consent of the Germanes, and of good part of the French being made Emperour, was ever ruled by the counsell of the old Duke Otho; and hee dying, left a sonne called Henrie, whom Conrade suspected and feared: And taking occasion of warre, bent his force against him, notwithstanding that his father made such and met of him, that he preserved him to the Empire; and onely seeking meanes to bring him to destruction, tooke no care how matters went in Italy, which was extreamely turmoiled. And Conrades brother fighting a battell with Henrie was by him ouerthrowen : wherupon Conrade feeing the losse, and the dishonour. reinforced his armie to be reuenged; and fending ambassadours to Henrie to submit and yeeld himfelfe, they were not heard, neither could they come to any composition of peace. Whilest he was bufied here abouts, Conrade fell very fore ficke, and knowing his end to be nigh, more regarding the good of the Empire, then his owne private passion, he chose his enemie Henrie for his successor, and commanded his brother to yeeld him obedience; which was a deede (indeede) very heroicall, and befitting a Christian.



He time of the Emperour L Evv Es was troublesome and tempestuous, and his death caused not any calme, but brought greater flormes in all estates; for in his life time the Imperial power was divided into two heads, in Italy, and in Germanie, which were, Levy e sand Beren Garivs, and Levves being dead, one alone pretended not, but many, to fucceede him both in name and in dignity of the Empire: France would have nominated an Emperour, alleaging that

France the same remained, & that Germany was conquered by the same Charles; in right therefore the title of the Empire appertained to his fuccessors, and so it ought to returne to the Crowne of France; for CHARLES the Great had it not about the elecwith the Empire as he had Italy, but it was given to him being King of France, and by the same title his successors held the same. The Princes of Germany denied this, fearing to returne into the subjection of the French, and stood vpon the posfession and authority to chuse the Emperour, alleaging for their reason, that the Empire was transported to the Germanes in the person of CHARLEs the Great. and that Germany was the Empire, and not the kingdome of France, and that they were in possession therof. The Italians said, that Italy was the ancient true seate of the empire, and that they gaue it to CHARLES, and had authority to give it to any other, and so they called & held BERENG ARIVS for Emperor, notwithstanding his competitors. And in France LEVVEs the sonne of Boson King of Prouence challenged the Empire, for that he was descended from CHARLES the Great. But the Germanes which feemed to have the best right, and chiefest authority, and have so therein continued. (having not any that might succeede Levy es. for that he had no fonnes) choice OTHO Duke of Saxony for Emperour, a man of great wisedome and valour, but he would not accept of that Empire, which others fo much defired; for as he was now old, so he knew that the affaires of the Empire flood in fuch estate, that they needed a man of greater force, and of longer life then himselfe. The Lords Name be blessed, that in time of so great ambition, one man was found that refused to be an Emperour. O THO then answered those which had chosen him Emperour, that hee had neither such health nor ffrength, as to be able to gouerne the empire, and therefore would not undertake

a burthen which he was not able to beare; but he would affift them with his best

counsel, concluding, that in his opinion CONRADE Duke of Franconia was wor-

thie to be chosen, in whom all the qualities and vertuous conditions did concur,

that might seeme requisite in an Emperour: And so by common consent of the

Germanes,

Contention be- fith that the line of CHARLES the Great was extinct in Germany, and that in

Otho Duke of Saxony chofen Emperour refufed the Empire.

Germanes.

Frenchmen

and Italians

Germanes, and part of the French, CONRADE was chosen and obeyed for Emperour, who (as some write) descended from CHARLES the Great. And he prefently began to gouerne the empire, and in all things followed the counfell and opinion of O THO, by whole meanes he attained thereto: and so the first veere he lived and ruled very happily. But the great Dukes and Princes of Germany waxing enuious, and defirous to raigne; ARNOLD Duke of Bauiere rebelled against him. and went into Hungary, and induced the Hungars and their king to warre vpon the new Emperour; whereupon, in the second yeere of his raigne a sharpe and cruell warre began: but as he was very valiant and expert in armes to he drew his forces to an head, and came to a battaile with the Hungars, and ouerthrew and conffrained them to flie into their countrie; and so deliuered Germany from that perill. And although that afterwards it was fortimes molested, yet by his diligence and courage it was euer defended; and so hee maintained the same in peace so long as Duke O THO lived, upon whose counsell he chiefly relied, but never durst come to make warre in Italy. After the death of OTHO, who left one fonne behindhim called HENRY, which was a very gallant yong man, and of great power. CONRADE began to suspect him; which was the occasion of the troubles which I will recount, BERENGARIVS being held in Italy for Emperour, besides CON-RAD E which with better title was Emperour in Germany; LEVVES the fonne of Bosonking of Provence determined to come into Italy, to bereaue BERENGA-RIVS of that empire, who held the fame, not without great vexation and trouble. as well with the princes of Italy (whereof some rebelled against him) as with the Infidels and Hungars which infefted the fame. And (as I faid before) some authors write, that this LE vv Es came the first time to the same purpose, and was ouerthrowne by BERENG ARIVS, and this (as I beleene) was the first; and if it were the second he came being called by some of BERENG ARIVS his enemies: And notwithstanding that in the beginning of the warres he had good successe, yet in the end he was overthrowne, and constrained to flie. This much shall suffice for him, the matter being so doubtfull. Yet here is some diversitie amongst the authors, whereof fome lay, that at that time raigned in Italy BERENG ARIVS the fecond, with the title of Emperour, as his father had done, who was fonne of the other BERENGARIVS before named: others attribute it to the father alone: but to the end that we may the better vnderstand the matter, wee yeeld that this was the second BERENGARIVS, for that wee shall hereafter have occasion to treate of another, which shall be the thitd. I say then, that at what time as Con-RADE Was Emperour in Germany, and BERENGARIVS in Italy, poore Italy (befides domesticall and civill warres) was afflicted with other farre more grieuous and pitifull. This was, for that the townes which the Greeke empire held in Calabria and in Pulia, together with the partialities and factions which were in them, were not in subjection: whereupon Constantine, which at that time raigned in Constantinople, or (as others say) ROMANVS the tyrant, which with him gouerned the empire for a time, procured the aide of the Moores in Africa, and of the Arabians; of which a great number came into Italy, spreading a report, that The comming they became Lords of all Pulia, Calabria, and the rest which containeth now the kingdome of Naples; and they drew so neere to Rome, that they sought to have taken the fame, without regard of the Emperor of Constantinople, vnder whose name they first came into Italy: The cause of al which enils, were the wars and troubles betweene the Christians: for CONRADE Emperour of Germany was busied in warrying

rableingratitude: but his passion was such that he neuerthelesse proceeded. But

HENRY gouerned himself with such discretion, & had alreadie lenied such an army

of Saxons, which were his subjects & friends, that he met with EBERARD in the

field, and offered, and gaue him battaile; wherein his people behaued themselues

fo valiantly, that the Emperours brother was ouerthrowne, with the loffe of the

greatest part of his armie, and himselfe escaped by slight. CONRADE being ad-

nertifed hereof (in extreme choler) raised the greatest power that he could make,

and called all the princes against HENRY, first sending Ambassadours vnto him.

to perswade him to yeeld to his mercie, and not to perseuere in his contumacie:

which concluded nothing: but returning, reported that in their presence one of

will counfell, and resolution. The noble minde and counsell of the Emperor was

generally of all men infinitely commended; only his brother ERERARD shewed

himselfe for rowful and discontented: but CONRADE perswaded him to patience

and quietnes, and recommended to them all, peace and concord. Then he made

the Sword, the Scepter, the Robe, and the other Imperiall enfignes to be brought

before him, and by the confent of all the princes, he appointed and charged his

brother to carrie the fame to HENRY, and in his name to make his peace and

friendship with him, and to yeeld him obedience as to his soueraigne Lord; which

he perfourmed, and continued in HENRIES good grace and loue folong as hee

held the Empire; which truly was a most noble part of both these brothers: of

ther, in voluntarily obeying him which was chosen. This his good determination

being concluded, and put in execution, within few daies after CONRADE depar-

ted out of this life, leaving neither some nor daughter; when he had raigned on-

the Emperour, in making choise of his enemie for his successor; and of his bro-

warrying against HENRY Duke of Saxony, sonne of OTHO: BEREN GARIV'S Was perplexed with the wars against LEVVEs the some of Boson king of Provence, and others which for breuitie I ouerpasse: and another occasion was, the small authoritie and little worth of the Popes of Rome. But Pope I o HN the eleuenth. whom some call the tenth, seeing this so great anecessitie, sentro ALBERICVS Marquesse of Tuscane, or (as some authors say) to his brother, which was the greatest. Lord in all Italy (BERENG ARIVS excepted) with whose father BERENGA-R 1.v.s had warre and controuerfie; who promifed him fuccour, and gathering all his forces together, with the aide of many others which followed him in that enterprise, hee went to Rome, wherein the Pope had alreadie leuied an indifferent good armie, which he ioyned with A LBERTOV s his forces; and so hee marched against his enemies: some write that the Pope in person went to this warre, which had so happie successe, that besides many encounters, ALBBRICV s fought one battaile against the whole power of the Moores; wherein, notwithstanding that it was very sharp and doubtfull, yet in the end he gat the victorie; after which he was so absolutely master of the field, that he no where found any one to make head against him, and so in short time recovered all that the Moores held in Italy, excepting some little, and certaine fortresses neere to Mount Garganus in Pulia; whither the remainder of those Moores reduced themselves: which for that he then forbare wholy to destroy and ruinate (an error for want of forefight) was the occasion of many euils which ensued. ALBERICUS having obtained so noble a victorie, and leaving it in such estate, that it seemed an easie matter for any other to have wholy effected the rest; returned to Rome, where hee was received with great pompe and triumph: but there within few daies arose discord and controuersie betweene him and the Pope, each of them attributing to himselfe the honour of that iourney: whereupon ALBERICVS went despighted out of the citie; whereof afterwards enfued great warres and mischiefes: and he was so ouercome with rage and defire to be reuenged, that fo foone as he came into his countrie, he began to practife against the Pope, and to mone the Hungars to warre in Italy. promiting them his aide and affiftance, thinking it a finall matter for him to haue made himselfe Lord of Rome. The Hungars came into Italy, and it pleased God that the greatest harme that they did therein, was in the faid Marquesse ALBERIcvs his owne countries, and amongst his subjects which called thither. In the meane while that Italy was thus oppressed, the Emperour Con RADE (whose life we now write) fought the destruction of HENRY Duke of Saxony, who was the fonne of that O THO, by whose direction and counsell he was chosen and made Emperour, and was by him gouerned in the beginning of his raigne, as before hath been shewed.

The principall cause hereof, was the sear and sealousie which he conceaued of him, for this Henry was a young man of very great courage and valour, and about measure desirous to rule; and in the warres of Hungary had done great service to this Emperour Conrad by the house of Baniere, which sted into Hungary, as we have before said; by teafon whereof, Henry was so much beloved and esteemed by all men, that Conrad be stood in search to be by him despoiled of his empire, and that he would have rebelled agains him, and therefore determined (if he might) to make him away; first practising his destruction by fraud and cunning, and that taking no effect, he resoluted not to dissemble any longer, but sent his brother Edebara with an armie to destroy his countrie, and if he might to be request him of his life:

Duke HENRIES captaines whose name was DIEMATE, said, that the Duke had no reason to come to any agreement; for hee knew that thirtie legions of souldiers were comming to his aide. These words strake such a seare into the Emperours armie, that without any battaile, or fight of any enemie, the greatest part thereof disbanded; whereupon he was driven to retire, with a determination to returne with greater force. But God, in whose hand are the hearts of princes, in very fhort time altred his purposes; for Conrade was affailed with an extreme kines are in ficknes, whereof he afterwards died. And knowing that his end drew neere hee the hands of in great hafte fent for the princes of the empire, the principall of which at that God. time were By CARD Duke of Sucuia, SIGISBERT Duke of Lorraine, & his brother EBERARD, whom he had made king of Franconia, and many others, excepting ARNOLD Duke of Bauiere, which remained in Hungary, and HENRY Duke of Saxony which rebelled. These princes being in this manner affembled, the Emperour as a wife and a good Christian, having more regard to the good government of the empire, then to his owne choler or private paffion (which is an extraordinarie example) made vnto them a very fet speech, wherein in conclusion he exhorted and counfelled them, that after his decease (which so farre as he could comprehend would be shortly) they should chuse the same HENRY Duke of Saxony (which then was in his difgrace) for Emperour: for notwithstanding that

he had a brother, whom he loued very well, and was worthie of great estate, yet he neuertheleste chose He was as onely worthie to be an Emperour, and his successfor: for as he very well knew, he was an excellent man, and endued with verbis enemie tue, and with all the conditions which were requisite in a good prince; and that floring in the he pardoned and restored him to his greece and sauour; and that this was his last Empre.

### CONRADE THE FIRST.

The death of the Emperour Conrade in

ly seuen yeeres and somewhat lesse, in the yeere of our Lord, nine hundred and twentie; CONSTANTINE yet holding the empire of Conflantinople. In Italy raig-CONTAGE IN ANNO DER EN GARLY S With the title of Emperour, notwithstanding that he held no part thereof but Lombardy onely, and some cities there about, and those not without warres and troubles, with Lavvas sonne of the king of Presence. The state of Italy being such as I said, the Hungars inuaded it, being called thither by ALBERICUS Marquesse of Tuscane, and destroyed the countrie : and on the other fide the Moores of Africa fallying out of fuch places as they held in Palia, troubled the state of the Church of Rome, and the frontiers thereof. And betweene ALBERICVS and the Romanes was warre and discord.

Forasmuch as in the life of this Emperour CONRADE, mention hath been made of ARNOLD Duke of Baniere, and for that heretofore this promince hath been treated of, as of a kingdome, and so it is said, that L a vv as king of Germanie, in the division made between his three sonnes, made CARLOMAN king of Bawiere, and now wee call ARNOLD, Duke thereof, which feemeth to be a contradiction: let the reader therefore know, that in this prouince (as in all other of the world) there have been great alterations: the last was, that after the said CHARLES, the Emperour ARNOLPH succeeded in the state of Bautere, and after ARNOLPH the Emperour Lavvas, who dying without iffue, made this

ARNOLD Duke of Bauiere: and afterwards in processe of time in this kingdome happened many alterations and changes, and in the end it iovned with the state of the Countie Palantine of Rhine: and afterwards it was againe divided; and fo through fundrie accidents, it came to that estate wherein it is at this day.

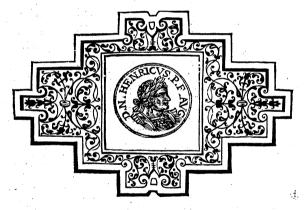
THE



# THE FIRST OF THAT NAME.

AND FOURESCORE AND SIXE ROMANE EMPEROVR.

And of CONSTANTINE Emperour of Gracia: And of those which in his time were called Emperours.



THE ARGUMENT.



ary being chosen Emperour, first applied himselfe to pacifie the troubles of Germany, which were very tumultuous; but aboue all, to affure the high waies from theeues, rifen by reason of the warres; and to maintaine instice. There arose against him one Arnold, which lived in Hungary as a banished man; and each of them having lenied a great armie, and being in a manner readic to have come to the shocke, Henrie called Arnold to a parley, and knew so well how to perswade him, that he overcame him with words, which

peraduenture he should not have done by armes; and Arnold became his obedient subject. He tooke truce with the Hungars, and subdued the Slauonians: but the time of the truce being expired betweene him and the Hungars, and new occasions of warre arising, they came in the end to fight together; wherein the Emperour obtained so great a vistorie, that all the Princes of Christendome sent to reioyce with him for the same. This good Emperour had set his minde upon the affaires of Italy, and purposed to have freed the Church from Hugh, and other tyrants: but God

which had otherwise determined, when he was providing for his iourney, visited him with a mortall infirmitie; and he knowing his life to be neere to an end, ordained, by the confent of all the Princes. his eldest sonne Ocho for his successor, having raigned semonteene yeeres, and lined fixtie.



HE election which the Emperour CONRADE before his decease made of HENRY Duke of Saxony, naming him Emperour and his fucceffor, is to be thought to have bin done by Gods inspiration; for he proued a good Prince. & worthie the Imperial maiestie. So soone then as Con-RADE was deceased, all the States received him for their Emperour, and didhim homage, calling him HENRY Avcers, that is to fay, the Faulconer, for that he tooke

Henry called Henricus Au-

570

fuch pleasure in hawking; and when the newes was brought him that he was chosen Emperour he was found busie in that exercise, which he vsed at times of leafure for his recreation, without omitting any care for his busines. He then taking you him the government of the empire, applied himselfe to doe instice. with a defire severely to punish the wicked; chiefly those which robbed by the high waies fide to the end that men might passe in safetie, which by reason of the warres had done much harme. He gaue himselfe also to abolish discord and disfention, and to establish peace and concord betweene the princes, which for marters past were at variance amongst themselves: for all which he provided a good remedic, employing his wit, authoritie and powers and being obeyed by al men. excepting By ccarp Duke of Sueuia, who with the fauour of France (for that he was some in law to the Duke of Burgundy) attempted some innovations : against whom the Emperour raised forces; but the matter was pacified, and the Duke acknowledged the Emperour for his Lord and Superiour. Befides this, it happened(which some recount before this time) that A R NO LD Duke of Bauiere, which (as we faid) for feare of CONRADE, lived as an exile in Hungary, returned to his countries gathering together a great number of Hungars, was fo hardy as to cal himselse Emperor, and to denie his obedience to the Emperor HENRY; which he vnderstanding leuving his old subjects of Saxony, & others of the empire, went with a mightie armie against ARNOLD, who likewise marched towards him; and as a good Christian, being much grieued for the troubles which were likely to have ensued, forbare not to procure ARNOLD to give over his attempt: and it pleased God that his good desire tooke effect in this manner: Both the armies being in a readines to fight, notwithstanding that it was apparant that the Emperour had the greater number, and better and more choise men; yet he fent Ar-NOLD WORD by a Trompet, that hee vpon sufficient securitie should come and speake with him; which Arnold perfourned: where the Emperour, among many graue, good, and discreete speeches, faid vnto him in these words: Take heed ARNOLD, and confider that what thou doeft, is to oppose thy selfe against Gods ordinance, who is the giver of kingdomes and worldly power. Thou maift know that I was chosen of him by the mouth of my predecessor Con RADE before his death; and that to this election have agreed all the estates of Germany, and thou onely feekest to resist the will of God, and the generall consent of all men. I fay vnto thee, that thou take heed what thou doest, and counsell thee to come to my obedience, and I will vie thee as my fonne or my brother: and if thou wilt not doe this, I take God for judge betweene thee and me. And one thing I will fweare and affure thee, that if it had pleased his divine Maiestie that thou haddest been cholen

Speeches vfed by Henry to Arnold.

chosen Emperour, as I am, I would have bene an obedient subject, and have serued thee faithfully: wherefore I pray thee, that fith I am fo, thou wilt do the like by mee. Thou mayest see that Lintreat thee for peace, at such time as my party hath the advantage in the warres; confider wel what thou doeft for I wil not faile in any thing, that I have promifed. These and such like speeches were of such force, that they marueiloufly touched ARNOLD at the heart, fo that he prefently mitted himsubmitted himselfe & his countrey vnto the Emperor HENRY, and from thence selfeto Henry, forth was ever most obedient vnto him, without any remembrance of matters past. There happened likewise discord betweene Henryand the house and kingdome of France, about the fourraignty of the Prouince and Duchie of Lorraine: neuerthelesse comming to a peace and agreement, matters passed prosperoufly, and he continued Lord thereof. And so Germany (by meanes of his good government) tooke a tafte of the fruits which Iustice and the tranquility of peace bring forth. But in Italy notwithstanding that BERENG ARIVS was called Emperour, the want of fuch a Prince as was Hanky wrought the contrary : it shall not bee amisse therefore to speake of what followed, in the meane while that HENRY was bufie about these matters.

HENRY THE FIRST.

**571** 

It is already faid, how that betweene Pope I o HN and the Romanes of the one fide, and ALBERICV's Marquesse of Tuscane of the other, were great warres, after the victory obtained against the Infidels; and how that ALBERICVS had induced the Hungars to come into Italy against the citie of Rome, and that the greatest harme that they did, was in his owne countreys, God permitting it for a punishment for his wickednesse; yet they did much harme in the Church lands also. The Hungars having in this maner robbed the countrey, BERENGARIY s which was called Emperour, came to a composition with them; which was, that they should depart out of Italy, in consideration of a great summe of money which was given them. And Pope I OHN and the Romanes (in revenge of the iniurie received from ALBERICVS) leuied an armie, which was broken and overthrowen by the Hungars, the Duke of Spoleto being Generall of that armie and A LBERICUS was belieged in a towne of his called Ortano, and was therein taken and flaine. In the same time the Infidels which remained in Pulia leaving news fuccours and fupplies again began the warres, which was not forefeene in time by reason of the domestical discord, and they tooke many castles and cities, while the Pope applied himself to be reuenged of ALBERICVS; & their power so much encreafed, that the people voluntarily yeelded themselues, by reason of the small reliefe which they had from the Emperour of Constantinople, in whose dominion the greatest part of those countreys was, or from BERENGARIVS, or from the Pope, untill that feare seised Rome, wherin making a certaine Earle called G v I D o their General, they leuied a good army, and it pleased God to give him the victory, & he made the Moores to retire themselues into those holds which they held before the bringing in of this fecond war, and fo the citie was delivered from that feare. But this Erle G v 1 D o afterwards comming fro Rome, with a determination Pope Folia the to make himselfe Lord thereof, apprehended the Pope and put him to death, and totilib taken made another Pope; but his purpose tooke no effect: for hee whom he made prisoner and Popewas presently deposed, and L z o the fixt was chosen, who was Pope but Earle Guidge feuen moneths, and him succeeded STEPHEN the seuenth. Whilest these matters passed in Rome and the marches thereof, BERENGARIVS the Emperour (whom we may call Italian) liued not free from troubles; for through the infligation of certaine Italian Lords, RODVLPH Duke of Burgundy with a great armie came in-

Redulah depo-

572

The death of Berengarius.

Rodulph Duke of Burgundy Emperour in Jealy.

The comming of the Hungar into Italy.

The comming of Hugh Duke of Orleans into Italy.

to Italy, with the title of Emperour, and hee therein found fo many friendes. (especially in Lumbardy) that in very short space he despoiled BERENG ARIVS. and was made Emperour and King of Italy; and BERENGARIV s fled into Hungarie, thinking there to have found reliefe: and therein, as faith BLONDVs and fome others, died, and that BERENG ARIV sthe nephew of the first BERENG A-RIV s, was he which came afterwards, as shall be specified. Some write that hee died in Italy, flaine by the treason of Countie FLAMBERT, which was his goffip: But how foeuer it was he died bereaued of his dignity, and he of whom we are to treat, was nephew to the first BERENGARIVS, sonne of his daughter, and of a Marquesse, which was his sonne in Lawe. I write thus much for that there is a great confusion amongst the Authors about these BERENG ARII tyrant Em. perours, for that they all were of one name. RODVLPH remaining with the victory in Italy was called Emperour, and held his Empire therein the space of three yeeres in prosperity: In which time the Emperour HENRY in Germanie ouerthrew & repelled the Hungars, which after their departure out of Italy went into Germany, wherein they did much harme: But (as I fay) the Emperour put them to route, and chased them thence, and taking their Generall prisoner, constrained them to sue to him, and to make peace for ten yeres; he restoring to them their General without ransome, yet they offred a great summe of money for him. RODVLPHV shauing reigned three yeeres in Italy, the Hungars whose ordinary qualitie was to robbe their neighbours and other Prouinces, folicited thereto by BERENGARIVS then ephew, under the conduct of a great man called FALAR-Dvs, came into Italy, and encamped before Paula, which they befreged: for reliefe whereof Rodvlphvs made fo small provision, that the inhabitants of the countrey discontent with his government, conspired against him, and slew his father in law Boc ARD Duke of Saxony, which came to fee Milan; and then they called and folicited Hv G H Duke of Orleans, a French man, to come to their defence, promifing to receive him for their King and Lord, and to make him Emperour, which he accepted, notwithstanding his neerenesse in blood to Ro. DV LPH: and he came with fo many good men of warre, and with fuch fauour of the Italians, that none of his enemies durft to encounter him: and RODVLPH leaving Italy, returned into Burgundie, where he afterwards had fuch fucceffe, that he was for a space King of France; and Hv G H continued in Italy, and subdued greater part thereof then they of the other tyrants had done; banishing such as he suspected, and rewarding his friends: he procured peace and friendship with the Emperour HENRY, which hee granted, thereby to fettle peace in Germany with the Hungars, and with other nations and Princes. And he afterwards preuailed against ARNOLPH Duke of Bauiere: So that Hv GH was a greater Lord, and of greater power then any of long time had been in Italy; where leaving him vitill his turne, we will returne to our Emperour HENRY.

HENRY having overthrownethe Hungars, and made peace with them for nine or ten yeares, as an ambicious Prince, and desirous to enlarge his Empire: after that he had taken care for the establishment of peace and justice, and for the good gouernement thereof, leuied an Armie, and fent the same into the countries of Slauonia and Dalmatia, from which he had been annoyed and endamaged: and ouerthrowing the inhabitants thereof in battaile, hee tooke many towies in those Provinces, and doing therein great harme; victorious and loden with spoyles, he joyfully returned into Germany. The next yeare after this victorie (which was the tenth yeere of his raigne) he marched with his power against

the Bohemians, and WENCES LAV s their Duke, for that many of them held not Henry brought the true faith, and also for that they refused to be subject to the Empire, & against the Bohemians him had affilted the Hungars: wherein he shewed such valour, that ouerthrow- into satisfication ing the Duke, he tooke Prage, which is the chiefe citie thereof, and brought that kingdome into fuch subjection, as was the rest of Germany, and so it continued all this Dukes lifetime. This warre being thus happily ended, another followed. which was against the Danes; which with a mighty nauie came into Freeleland. and into Saxonie, and tooke certaine townes therein; but hee made them to flie out of al that countrey, to their great loffe; and he also ouerthrew those of Norway. which then were called Abroditi. HENRY having obtained fo great and fo many victories, the time of the peace with the Hungars being expired, they presently fent their ambassadours to him, to require certaine pay granted to their ancestors, at what time as peace was made with them: whereto HENRY gaue no good anfwere; for he accounted it a matter vnworthy the Maiestie of an Emperour, to pay tribute for peace; wherewith the Hungars were fo much despited, that with their Duke or Captaine (for at that time they had not the dignity of a King) they issued out of their confines with the most flourishing Armie that euer they had. and began to warre with greater fury and cruelty then ever they had done at any time theretofore, & neuer stayed until they came into Saxony, & into other places which were the Emperor Hannis patrimony, wherein they did much harme, and shewed great cruelty; which was done so suddenly, that Hank r in the beginning could not redresse the same: But in short space he levied a great Armie, and notwithstanding that he was extremely sicke, yet neither the Princes, nor his Philicians could withhold him, but that he would goe with his Armie: and encountring the Hungars (being so weake that he could hardly sit his horse) he offered them battaile, which they refused not; where the Emperour, although with a weake and low voice, made a speech to his souldiers, which did so much encourage them, that they prefently charged with fuch force; and the Hungars (being a most valiant nation) fought with such eagernesse and sury, that it was one of the most bloody and cruell battels of the world: But in the ende the valiant heart of the Emperour HENRY fo much prevailed, that hee obtained the victorie, and flew an infinite number of the Hungars, and many of them were Henry bis vilikewise slaine vpon the way as they fled; and those which survived, fled scatte- tiory against red into their countrey; from whence they never after stirred one foote so long the Hampers, as the Emperor H B N B Y lived. He wan fo great reputation and glory by meanes of this victory, that all the Princes Christian, sent their Ambassadours to him, as being glad thereof, and to defire his friendship: But with the greatest instance came Ambassadours from H v G H, which in Italy was called Emperor. H B N R Y was likewise called by his subjects, semper Augustus, Pater patria, and other ancient names and titles of honour; and he as a good Christian gaue thankes to God; and the tribute which at other times he had payd to the Hungars, he made to be distributed among the poore, and so did other good deedes, and ruled the Empire in such maner that Germany enjoyed both peace and Iustice, which are two benefits, which make mighty and rich kingdomes.

Italy in the meane time endured warre and miserie; for the empire of H v o n which last raigned, being turmoyled with warre and discord, was neither firme nor good, but tyrannicall and violent: by reason whereof the Infidels which in Pulsa held certaine townes and fortreffes, made ordinarie wars vpon their neighbours. And at that time a mightie Nauie of Moores came out of Africa, vpon the

and taken by the Jugares.

The death of

Henrie.

937.

Anno Dem.

The death of

Conflantine

Emserour of

Conftantinople.

coast of Genoa and of Tuscane; and taking land did great harme, robbing many places, amongst which they besieged the citie of Genoa: and the multitude and force of the Infidels was fo great, that notwithstanding that the besieged fought very valiantly, yet they entred it by force of armes; all the Genowaies comming first to the fight in defence of their citie. After that the Infidels had entred it they put all those to the sword which therein were able to beare armes, and robbing and ranfacking it, left nothing therein that was worth the carriage : and all boves. women and children they tooke prisoners, and carried abourd their shippes and galleys, which they led away with them; and so left Genoa desolate and without any inhabitants: yet some prisoners were soone released, and some were taken in their fleetes at fea, and elsewhere, which reinhabited the citie: neuerthelesse it was long before it could recouer it felfe of this calamitie: And fome write that the Infidels horse troupes were taken upon the way, and that the prisoners were not carried into Africa. The Emperour vnderstanding hereof, and being well enformed of the state of Italy, and that setting aside that which the Church held by fo many titles and donations, all the remainder of that Westerne empire, excepting some townes in Pulia, was held by the Greekes, hee therefore resolved to come thither in person with a mightie armie, to free Italy from the voke of H v G H, and of other tyrants; and to reforme and reduce the fame to fuch order as it ought to hold, and as he had established in Germany. And beginning to make preparation for his journey, and having mustred vp his men of warre, it pleased God to dispose thereof after another manner; for he was taken with a most deadly infirmitie; and knowing that his end drew neere, vfing fuch diligence as a good Christian ought to doe, he gaue order that all the princes (if possibly it might be) might be affembled; with whose good will and consent he ordained his sonne OTHO(whom he had by his wife MAVVD) Emperour and his fucceffor: and his ficknesse encreasing, within few daies after he yeelded his foule to God, being of the Emperour the age of threescore yeeres, in the seuenteenth yeere of his raigne, and in the veere of our Lord, nine hundred seuen and thirtie. He left two other sonnes befides O THO, the one was called as he was, HENRY, who was afterwards Duke of Baniere, for ARNOLDS sonnes were deprined of that estate, and he married his legitimate daughter IVDITH; and one other fonne called BRVNVs, who was Archbishop of Colein; and he had one daughter whose name was GEREIRGA. and was married to a Duke; and another called ADALCIDA, which was married in Africa to Countie Paris; and another called M AVV D Which was a Nunne.

In Constantinople ended the empire of CONSTANTINE, when he had raigned eight and thirtie yeeres, in companie with the tyrant Romanys; and part (as I faid)alone; in which time hee had great conflicts in the Easterne parts, with the Infidels in Asia, and with the Bulgarians in Europe; amongst which he wonne one battaile by fea against the king of Russia, wherein were aboue a thousand faile of ships, which came to the coast of Constantinople, by the Sea called Euxinum: and other great accidents happened too long to relate: At the end whereof he died, leauing his empire to his fonne, which after his grandfathers name was called

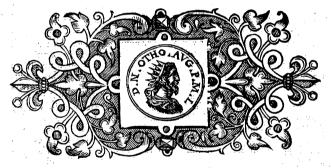
ROMANVS; for GONSTANTINE had to wife the daughter of the other Ro-MANVS which was the tyrant of whom I have alreadie made mention. This CONSTANTINE was a good prince, very denout,

and excellently well learned in humane letters.

# THE SECOND OF

NAME, AND FOURESCORE AND SEVEN ROMANE EMPEROR.

And of ROMANVS and the rest which were Empeperours in Gracia.



THE ARGUMENT.



The succeeding in the Empire, was in that his dignitie much troubled, for not onely the Princes of Germany, but even his owne brothers and kinsemen made warre against him, and fought bloudie battailes with him: of which, after long troubles he had bonorable victorie. He also freed his brother in law Lewes king of France from certaine Dukes. which oppressed him. He was by the Pope called into Italy against Berenearius; and comming with a great armie forced him to flie. Afterwards his sonne, and one Conrade his sonne in law, which he had left for the defence of Italy, rebelling against him, and in the end the soune com-

ming to a battaile with the father (a thing more fit for Turkes and Infidels then Christians) was the lofer, and his fathers prisoner; who seeing with how great humilitie, and with how many teares he fued for his life and par non, he restored him at length to his grace: and he afterwards became most obedient. After this warre there grew a greater, made by the Hungars and Slauens, which the Emperour bappily ended. He againe came into Italy by reason of Berengarius, which tyrannized the same, and forced him to flie; and comming to Rome was crowned Emperour by Pope Iohn. Many other rebellions enfued by the Popes and the Romanes against the Emperour, whilest he warred against Berengarius and his sonne : of which, having for tunate victorie, he returned into Germany, and ordained his sonne Otho for his successor; where being now old, and busied in vertuous exercises, he yeelded his soule to God.

This Otho is called the first, for that he is first of the Germane Emperous called by that name.



Eing come to write the life of OTHO the first of that name of the Germane Emperours, of which I am now to treate; me thinketh it fareth with me, as with one which hath wandred, and is now againe returned into his right way. I make this comparison, for that there are some which account not those amongst the Emperours, which I have placed after ARNOLPH, the some of CARLOMAN, until this OTHOS of whom I say, that after the death of his sa-

ther he found no contradiction in attaining to the name and dignitie of Emperour of Germany; for his father HENRY before his death had nominated him for his successor, as I then said. Truly this OTHO was very well worthin of the empire, for he was a prince of an excellent wit, and of a wonderfull great and noble minde; and his great valour was accompanied with fingular humanitie and clemencie: but notwithstanding all these deserts and vertues of a good prince, yet there were many great infurrections and rebellions against him; and hee was a prince which had greater warres then any other then in the world, for the space of thirtie and odde yeeres that he held the empire; in which time he paffed many aduentures, and obtained great victories: and notwithstanding that he incurred fundric daungers and hazards yet hee euer shewed himselfe gentle and pitifull to the vanguithed; which (in my opinion) in the end made his empire more stable and firme, then all the victories which he obtained. I say then, that so soone as his father was dead, he was in the citie of Aken, or Aquiferan choien Emperour, and annointed and crowned by O LDER ICV's Archbishop of Mentz, all the Princes of Germany (which could come) being there present and the rest which could not, wrote their letters, and fent their Ambassadours, acknowledging their obedience: And so his beginning was very peaceable and highly esteemed, and hee shewed himselfeiust, and valorous, and gouerned the estate with wisedome and clemencie. It happened presently after this, that Bossiavs brother of the Duke of Behemia (which at that time had not the title of King) by treafon flew his brother WENCESLAVS (for fo was hee called) to the end to have the Sourraigntie; and rebelled against the Emperour: whereof when OTHO Was aduertized, moued with the hatred and vilenes of the fact (for WENCESLAVS was a just and faithfull prince, and his father HENRY had received him, for his feruant and fubiect, after that (as we faid) he had fubdued him, he refolued to fend a good armie, vnder the leading of a valorous captaine against him, and did so, which the tyrant Duke attended in the field, and therewith fought a terrible battaile; and was ouerthrowne with so great losse of his people, that the Imperial General affuring himselfe of the victorie, was lesse carefull and circumspect, then he ought to have been; and Bois LAVs within few daies reinforcing his armie, gathered courage from the others retchlesnes; and charging him suddenly in disorder and at vnawares, brake and ouerthrew him, and flew the greatest part of his people: wherewith OTHO Was highly displeased, and sending thither a new supply he sufficiently reinforced his armie: But Bois LAVs was growen fo haughty, and had fuch reliefe from the Hungars, that the warres grew to be doubtfull, and of long cotinuance, and in the meane time others happened; but O THO his mind and resolution was so great, that he neuer forgat to prouide for this warre; in the middest of the furie of all the other, as we will declare: yet it lasted fourteene yeeres, before that he could obtain any complete victory; and then Boislavy speelded as you shall vnderstand. The Emperour then proceeding in this warre of Bohemia, in the greatest fury thereof, there began civill and domesticall Commotions and Insurections, which resoluted in a very cruell warre, the beginning whereof was this. Eberard which (as I remember) was brother to the Emperor Conrada, and caried the Imperiall ensignes to the Emperour Henry, father of this Otho, being a great Lord, rich and mighty, did an iniury to an Earle, a man of lesse account then himselfe, and burned a towne of his; which for that the new Emperour would not suffer to escape vnpunished, hee condemned him in a certaine summe of money, and to bee imprisoned and banished: with which sentence Eberard was highly displeased, expecting opportunitie to shew his discontentment.

It happened also that a bastard brother of the Emperours called DAVZMAR. found himselse grieued, for that the Emperour had not given him the government of the Prouince of Saxony, with the title of Earle, which was O THO'S patrimony by the death of Earle SIPRHERIDE, lately deceased. In like manner the fonnes of ARNOLD Duke of Bauiere, which then died, were discontent, for that OTHO had given that estate to their elder brother BERTOLD, and they would not accept of the Earldome, and of that part which the Emperour had affigured them: wherefore vpon this occasion EBERARD made a league and confederacie with them, and with SIGISBERT Duke of Lorraine, notwith standing that he had married one of the Emperours fifters; and contending with HENRY the Emperours fecond brother, which was a very yong man, about the bounds of certaine lands, he belieged him in a citie, and very shamefully tooke him prisoner. And his bastard brother DAVZMAR, with the ayde of the said EBBRARD, at the same time tooke a citie in Saxony, and sacked it, thinking to have gotten the Earldome. which he required perforce. The Emperour vnderstanding thereof, marched against his brother; and entring the citie by assault, DAVZMAR was slaine in a Church, whither he was brought by EBBRARD the motor of this treason. And after other practifes, EBERARD agreed with HENRY the Emperours brother, whom he held prisoner, to release and serue him, alleaging that the empire appertained vnto him, for that his father begat him after that he was Emperour, and OTHO before. HENRY moued with the defire to raigne (a thing which leadeth men to greater euils) resolued to rebell against his elder brother and soueraigne Lord: whereto Sigisbert Duke of Lorraine yeelded ayde and affiltance, who was a mighty Prince, and had the fifter of the Emperour and of HENRY to wife. And as the report went, that HENRY should be Emperor, each of them defired to haue the Empire for himselfe, and so practifed the same in secret, for amongst the wicked there is neither faith nor trueth: But they all agreed together to ruinate OTHO; and that let being remooned, each of them thought to have been a fourraigne Lord, and to have had the Empire. The power & armie which they levied was fo great, that they tooke many townes, and as it you ally happeneth, fame and feare aduanced the effect, fo as OTHO was in great danger. Neuertheleffe the other Princes of Germany did well and faithfully helpe and relieue him; and hee, with the courage and diligence of a good captaine, leuied his forces, and marchedagainst his enemies; and being come with his armie to the bankes of the riuer Rhine, and part thereof being transported in boates to go against his enemies, which were encamped on the other fide, whereof his brother HENRY was Ge-

Boislaus slew bis brother Wencesslaus b treason. I'm brother Heary.

ned in the

Rhine.

the Emperors nerall; his enemies having marched with great hafte, were gotten thither before them, and charged his people in fuch manner, that they were likely to have been ouerthrowen in the Emperours fight, who was not yet passed: but in the end, the Emperour making his prayers to God, obtained the victorie, and his brother in ill plight, and wounded, faued himselfe by flight. After this victorie, the fame went, that the Emperours brother HENRY was dead, which brought the Emperour this profit, that the most of the cities which held for his brother, yeelded to him: which when HENRY vnderstood, he gat him into the citie of Merefbergh, which is in Saxony, and fortified the same in the best manner that hee could and the Emperour followed and befreged him, and brought him to that extremitie, that he was driven to give vp the citie vpon condition, that hee should suffer him freely to depart whither he would. After which he went into Lorraine, and renewed the warre, joyning with Duke Sigisber T, and with Duke EBER ARD his kinsmen, which with greater rage and power then at the first, inuaded the Emperours countreys, who then was busied in besieging a towne of Duke EBB-RARD s, called Stifaca, before which he lay longer then was fit that he should have done, through the deceit and treachery of the Archbishop of Mentz, who secretly was a traitour to him & had intelligence with his enemies to the end that HENRY and his confederates should in the meane time make themselves Lords and Mafters of the land: which when HERMAN Duke of Sueuia, and his brother OTHO. and CONRADE called the wife, and other great Lords and Knights (which were the Emperours loyall servants and subjects) perceived, they joyned all their forces together, and by his direction, with a good armie went to feeke their enemies: and meeting them, fought a very terrible and cruell battell: But in the ende the Imperialists had the victorie, and EBERARD, the ringleader of this rebellion, was Duke Eberard flaine fighting, and SIGISBERT Duke of Lorraine, flying from the fight, was Caine fighting, drowned in the Rhine, neere to the place where they fought: yet some say that he and Duke Sigisbert drondied in another battel, and that H & NR Y the Emperours brother was not that day in the field, but warred elfewhere. In this ouerthrow were flaine, and taken prifoners, all those which held with these Lords; amongst which were many Earles. Henry fled into and principall personages. This great victory being obtained by O THOEs faithfull friends and fubiects, the citie which hee befieged yeelded to him, and he prepared himselse to pursue his brother HENRY, who fled into France. And then the Emperour went into Lorraine, where his fifter gaue her selfe into his power, together with her sonne: And having set good order in that estate, and made peace with LEVVES King of France, and recourred certaine townes which hee theretofore had loft, he returned into Germany. In this manner he wholly fubdued and tamed all the rebels, and in the end his brother HENRY with his leaue humbly yeelded himfelfe into his power, and he forgaue him, and gaue him lands and reuenues for his maintenance, and likewife pardoned the other Earles and great men which had been his aduerfaries, together with FREDERICK Archbishop of Mentz, who was a traitor vnto him, and was now in his power; but in the end hee pardonedhim alfo. And forafmuch as his brother HENRY perseuered loyall vnto him, he inade him Duke of Bauiere, after the death of BERTOLD, who died without iffue male, whose brethren lost their right to that estate, for that they had conspired against the Emperour; and HENRY had his legitimate daughter to wife, & so in good Grace remained in his brothers service: Who having brought these matters to an ende, determined to make an end of the troubles in Bohemia, which through the aide of the Hungars still continued, without any one dayes

intermission,

intermission, from the first beginning of his raigne, which was a long time. Finally, in some battels, wherein he was himselfe in person, Boislays was ouerthrowen in such maner, that he submitted himselfe, and became subject. And ha- Boislaus oueruing in this maner subdued the Hungarians, the Bohemians, and such as rebelled, the Emperor. he determined to relieue L n vv n s the French King, who was his brother in law. and had fued ynto him for fuccours, whom for fome occasions, too long to beerecited certaine Dukes and great Lords of France oppressed. Yet some authors fav. that this his going into France was before the warres of Bohemia: but at what time. or in what order focuer it was, he went thither with a great armic, and relicued his brother in law, and so againe returned into Germany, where we will leave him to enion his victories and good fuccesse, and will briefly declare, in what estate Italy then flood, & the accidents which the happened therein, which appertaine to our history, as well for that it was part of the Empire, as also for that Hv o H before named raigned therein with the name of Emperor, although a tyrant. Hygh having for certaine veeres space possessed Lombardy, and great part of Italy, with that any man fought, or went about to be reaue him of his estate; for OTHO(as is already fayd) was bufied with the troubles of Germany : in the ende BERENG ARIVS the third after many long iourneys, having a defire to recover the kingdome which his father and vncle had possessed, and of all Italy also, whereof the Emperour Rody LPHVs had bereaued him, with the aide of certaine Princes of Germany, and of Italy, he resolved to make warre against Hv GH, and to that effect waged a great number of selected men of warre, and tooke his way towards Italy. And Hv G H holding himselfe vnable to make his party good against him, for that he found that fuch as were of greatest power and authority in the cities, did not fauour his faction, he resolved therfore to come to any composition; and so finally they agreed, that Hy G H should leave the title of King of Italie, and returne to his Duchie of Orleans in France, vpon condition that his some Lothary should remaine King in Italy, together with BERENGARIVS. BERENGARIVS accepted these conditions, & Hv G Hreturned to his old Dukedome, and left his sonne a King, and companion with BEREN GARIVS. This LOTHARY was maried with ADELHAIDA, which by some was called ALVADA, daughter of ARNOLPH Duke of Burgundy, who had reigned for some certaine time in Lombardy, as wee faid before, and was expelled by Hv GH. It happened that Hv GH afterwards died in France: and within a short time after (and after other matters which ensued, The death of which I leave to relate) LOTHRIVS died in Lombardy. And BERENGARIVS Hugh, and of feeing himfelfe freed from company, tooke to wife the widow Queene ADBL- tyrants, HAIDA, which was a very excellent Lady. And fith that he found no contradiction orrefistance in the Estate of Italy, against the dignity of the Emperor OTHO. (from whom he had received many benefits and favours) hee tooke vpon him the name and title of Emperour, and instituted his eldest sonne, called ALBERT, King of Italy, and began to intreat the people very ill, and in other matters to behaue himselfe like a tyrant.

At this time A GAPETVS the second was Pope, who was held for a vertuous, religious, and an innocent man (which amongst men of that coate, was a matter not flightly to be regarded) and he confidering the violence and tyrannie vsed by Bz-RENG ARIVS, having now bin Pope the space of fixe yeeres, sent to solicite OTHO the Emperour of Germany to come into Italy, to free the same from so pernicious a tyrant. The like was done by fundry other Prelates and greatmen. O THO at that time was a widower of his wife EDITHA, by whom he had a sonne whose

name was Lylto LPHVs, a valiant and high minded young man, and having heard the Italian ambassadours, at such time as he had ended the warres before mentioned, moued by their perswasions, and through the desire he had to martie Oueene Adelhaida, whom Berengarivs heldprisoner in Paula, and to make himselfe Lord of Italy, hee levied an armie of fiftie thousand men, and came downe against BERENGARIVS; who having no sufficient power to make head against him, in the best order that he could, gaue ground, still defending the strongest castles and fortresses. And OTHO marching forwards, taking townes and cities comming to Paula, fet ADBLHAIDA at liberty, and with her good liking married her, holding folemne nuptials: by reason whereof, his sonne Lv I-TOLPHYS was very fory; and after it enfued many inconveniences. This being done, and O THO having fetled all matters concerning the State of Italy in good order, he returned into Germany, leaving CONRADE for his Lieutenant in Lombardie. This CONRADE was called the wife, and was Duke of Franconia, and formal law to the Emperor by the mariage of his daughter Lv 1 G V ARDA: but his some LVITOLPHV's was gone before into Saxony, which was his fathers house and patrimony, where he raised some Commotions against him, for hee was much grieued and discontented with his fathers late mariage. OTHO being returned into Germany, and BEREN GARIVS feeing that by warre, hee could not recouer what he had loft, came into Germany, and brought with him his fonne A LBERTY's, and desiring pardon, yeelded himselfe into the Emperours power. vowing to be his loyall feruant and fubicet; which he protested in such manner. that the Emperour thought himselfe well affured of him, and thereupon made him his Lieutenant in Milan and all Lombardy, the auncient inheritance of the rengarius his Empire, and gaue certain lands to him, and to his faid sonne ALBERTVS; where-Licutenant in with his sonne in law CONRADE, which before held that charge, being greatly discontented, joyned with LVITOLPHVs the Emperors sonne, and so the sonne and sonne in law rebelled against him. BLONDVs and other Italian writers. make no mention of Conrades abode in Italy, neither of BERENGARIVS his going into Germany; yet they mention his pardon, and the offices that the Emperour bestowed voon him : But ABBAS WESPER GENSIS writeth in the same maner as I have recounted; and so do Navelervs and other Dutch writers. Italy remaining in this estate, the Emperour did not so soone abandon it (as I suppose) without some suspition conceived of his some LVITO LPHVs, who departed from him and rebelled : truely hee had reason to mistrust him, for Ly r-TOLPHVs being accounted for his successor, found many friends to soyne with him against his father; amongst which was his brother in lawe Conrade, and ARNOLD, and the other fonnes of BERTOLD late Duke of Baniere; who dying, Luitolph and the Emperor gaue to his brother HENRY that Estate: wherefore all those which were called Dukes of Bauiere, were so much grieued at him, that they raised an armie, and tooke many townes and castles, meaning by force of Armes to defend the fame, with a determination to depose him from the empire, without regard of the faith and loyalty which they, as his fonneand fonne in lawe, ought to him. Or Ho making such account of this warre as the importance thereof required; leuied his forces, and went against his sonne; who daring not to keepe the field against him, fortified himself in the citie of Mentz, wherein his father belieged him Luitolphus be- the space of threescore dayes, after that hee had recoursed many of those townes which had given their voices against him: the citie in the meane time being bat-

tered, and most valiantly defended, in the end the besieged made a motion of

peace: and to the ende to have time to treate thereof, a truce was granted; in which time, the forces brought by the Emperours brother HENRY to his feruice. through the fecret perswasion of ARNOLPHV s, and his brethren, which were called Dukes of Bauiere, came to an agreement with LVITOLPHVS; with which. and with those which already were in Mentz, in a night hee found meanes to depart the citie. & to get into Ratisbone. The Emperor without making one daies tariance, raifed his fiege, and went to Ratisbone, which was better fortified and furnished then Mentz was, and so the siege was more hard and doubtfull; and in the affaults and fallies many men lost their lines, of the one and other party. And although that LVITOLPHV's defired peace, and his father to pardon him, yet the Emperor would never yeeld thereto, vntill that by the importunacie of some Prelates, he limitted a certaine time, wherein his faults and offences should be examined, and a treaty should be held concerning what was to be done; and so LYITOLPHYS gaue vp the citie: And going thence, absented himselfe from his fathers presence, vntill that vpon a day, within the time prefixed, the Emperor being on hunting in the fields, his strayed some acknowledging his error, and Luitelphia fib. being very fory for the same, without any security or safeconduct from his fa-mitting him. ther came before him vpon the way, bare headed and bare footed, and kneeling felfe to bis faat his fathers feete, wept; who being amazed at the strangenes thereof, expecting him. no fuch matter flood ftill: and the fonne recourring spirit, in this maner entreated him to have compassion on him, acknowledging his faults and offences to be very great, rather deferuing a thousand deaths then any pardon; and therefore being heartily forie for the fame, (like the prodigall childe) hee presented himfelfe before his father, who also had a father in heaven, by whom he hoped to be forgiuen: and if it might please him to grant him his life, he should be affured of him, to be euer after a loyal and obedient sonne, and one which lived, and would liue in continual forow for what was past: if he meant to doe otherwise by him. he should yet consider that he was his owne flesh and blood, and although that the offence were onely his, yet of the punishment inflicted upon the culpable fonne, the Iust father would beare part of the sorowe for the same; and that in shewing him mercie, there could no inconvenience ensue thereof but if he did to the contrary, he should tather lose the most obedient some that ever father had. Hauing ended these speeches, and other to the same effect, with great humilitie he prostrated himselfe vpon the earth, expecting his fathers sentence of life or death. This strake so great an impression into the Emperours heart, to heare and fee his sonne to shew such humility, and to shed so many teares, that he could not The pittie of forbeare from doing the like: and commanding him to arise from the ground, Otho towards with ioy mixt with teares from himselfe, and the rest which were there present, he bit some Luis presently pardoned him, and restored him to his grace and fatherly fauour, and to the same place and dignity which he held before; and so he continued constant in that loyalty and duety which he ought to his father and soueraigne Lord. This is a notable example to be read with confideration, whereby fonnes and fubicets which have erred and offended their foueraigne Lords, may learne to repent and amend; and Princes to pardon those which truely desire to bee reduced to their grace and service: for although that it be most certaine, that it is expedient for the good of the Common wealth, that offences be punished; yet generally it ought not to be held for so rigorous & cruel a rule, that no exception be made, seeing that fomtimes for the comon good, clemencie is as profitable. Moreouer, the shame

figed by his fa-

other rife a-

gainst Otho.

Lembardy.

Ddd 2

& lorow for the offences comitted is no smal punishment to him that is pardoned.

great power and authoritie in Rome, was chosen Pope, and called IOHN the The commen-

Otho bis vic-

OTHO then having pardoned his sonne, and recovered Mentz, and Ratisbone. and all the other frong holds which had rebelled, and (according to the most and best authors) reclaimed his some in law Con RADE, (yet some say the contrary) when he should have taken rest, and have reposed himselfe, there arose new warres, more dangerous then the former; for on the one fide the Dalmarians and Slauons entred the lands of the Empire; and on the other fide, the Hungars (which now had lived some time in rest) gathering together an infinite number of them, began against him the most dangerous and cruell warre that they euer had made; for besides that they were a most valiant and proud people, they were fo many in number, that they reported of themselves, that the skies might fall and so kill them, or the earth might open and swallow them ; but the power of no nations, or of any Kingsof the earth was fufficient to make head against them. Against people so valiant and resolute, the valorous Emperour leuied the best and mightiest armie that ever he had done; for it consisted of eight legions. under the leading of excellent Captaines, and those Dukes and Princes of the Empire. In this warre were many conflicts and feates of Armes worthy to bee recited, which I omit for breuities sake, which I am bound to observe.

In the end these two mightie armies loyned, and fought a battaile necre the riuer Danubius, which began about noone, and continued vntill night, without any figne of victorie to either fide; the fields lying full of dead bodies, and died with the bloud of the flaine and wounded; and the darknes of the night parted the armies, and made them leave fighting: but the Emperour fpent the whole night in dreffing the wounded, giving them meate, and in encouraging the reft and fo foone as it was day, fetting his troupes in order, he tooke the field, where they againe began the fight, with as great furie as the day before: But the Hungarians began to give ground, and within short space were overthrowne, and the Imperialists made an exceeding great slaughter of them, and obtained one of the most famous victories that hath bin in the world: wherewith the Hungarians were fo much daunted, that they never durst after that time attept to make wars in Germamy. There died that day of the Emperors fide some principal men, among which was his sonne in law CONRADE Duke of Franconia, of whom all authors write. that he was the best and most valiant captaine of his time. Of the Hungarians died in a manner all the Nobilitie, and three Dukes or Reguli, were taken prifoners, which the Emperour commaunded to be hanged, for an example and punishment of the rebellion and pride of that nation. This battaile was fought in the eighteenth yeere of his raigne, after which he spent many daies in procesfions and in shewing himselfe thankfull to God for so noble a victorie: which being ended, he sent the greatest part of his armie against the Slauons, and other nations which warred against him sall which he tamed and subdued with the like felicitie, and then went to vife fundrie townes and cities of his empire, to the great ioy of his people. Great matters in these times passed in France, & in Spaine, and in other parts of the world, which I have not time to relate In Italy BEREN-GARIVS and his fonne ALBERT, seeing the Emperour busied in those daungerous warres, forgetting the good which they had received from him, committed many tyrannies and infolencies, aswell against the Church of Rome, as against the people of the countrie: and therein also were other tyrants in divers other parts. At this time died Pope A G APBT vs, who had held that feate almost tenne yeres, and by meanes of his death(by finister meanes more by force and fauour, then by any just forme of election) Octavianvs, a Romane borne, sonne of a man of great power and audionate in analysis and given to all kinde of diffoliation and ri- dation of Pope twelfth, a most vicious wicked man, and given to all kinde of diffoliation and ri- officialianus, bauldrie; and aboue all, extreme cruell and couetous. At this time died also in Constantinople R o MANV s the Greeke Emperour, who twelfib. was a Prince farre vnworthie therof; for he was both wicked and of a base mind, Romanuthe and suffered his servants to rule him. In his time were two great warres in the East Greeke Empeempire; one against the Mahometists Infidels, which had taken the Ile of Candia; "our. and the other in Alia, against the Turkes and Persians: In the first, NICEPHORVS (nephew of that NICEPHORVS which in the time of BASILIVS was fo excel-

called lobn the lent a captaine) was Generall, and wan great victories: In the other, Lao was Generall cousin germane to this NICEPHORVS; both which had happie successe: In the rest of his government he was a wicked and cruell Emperor; for although that he had an excellent sharpe wit and understanding, yet hee abused the same. ROMANY s being dead, notwithstanding that he left two sonnes, BASILIVS and

NICEPHO RVS Was chosen Emperour, who in the warres was very fortunate. and both valiant and carefull, but in peace retchlesse and couetous.

CONSTANTINE, and one daughter called THE OD ORA; yet by reason of their

young yeeres, and the hatred borne to their father, they then obtained not the

empire; but yet afterwards in processe of time they gat it: and the said captaine

Returning now to our Emperor OTHO, I fay, that it was about fixe yeers after his first comming into Isaly, in which time having ended the wars with his sonne; with the Hungarians and with the Slauonians, as we have declared; when as befides other times, that he had been prayed and entreated, Ambassadours came vnto him from Rome, and from fundrie cities of Italy; entreating him to come thither, and to free them from the force and tyrannic done them by BERENG A-RIVS, and the cruell tyrannous Pope I OHN, who also sent Ambassadours to him: whereto OTHO confenting, resoluted vpon his journey into Haby with strong hand; and staying to fet some things in Germany in order, he fent his now louing and obedient sonne LVITOLPHV's before him with the greatest part of his forces against BERENGARIVS; who after some victories obtained against him, and the taking of many cities, died of an infirmitie: whereupon his father hastened Luisobbus. his journey; but first he made his then eldest some called O + 10 of the age of feuen yeeres, whom he had by his fecond wife, C & s AR and his fucceffor. And being come into Italy, neither BERENG ARIVS nor his some ALEERT durft to keepe the field, but fied to their holds and castles; and A LBERT gat into the Ile of Corfica, and BERENGARIVS put himselfe into a most strong castle in Mount Leon: And fo OTHO, without shedding any drop of bloud, tooke all Lombardy. and marched towards Rome, where Pope I OHN attended his comming, and had by all meanes possible sought his friendship; his conscience accusing him of his vices. In matters which paffed at OTHO his fecond comming into Italy, there is fome difference betweene the Historiographers which write the same : but I will follow that rule which the most of them have set downe, and that which by many conjectures feemeth to be most true. Being come to Rome (where of long The Emperor time they had not seene any Emperour) he was received with great solemnitie othe crowned and incredible pompe, by Pope I OHN and the Romanes; and with the like was by Pope Iohn by him crowned, having first sworne those things contained in the Chapter Tibi the timelith. Domine in the thirteenth Distinction. The Emperour being enformed in what. manner Pope I o # N had attained to the Papacie, and of his loofe kind of life; after that he had remained there certaine daies with him, in friendly fort he fecretly admonished Ddd 4

Berengarius

perour Otho the fecond.

admonished him to amend his diffolute behaulour, and the maner of his government in the Church; and seeing that his secret warning prevailed not, hee spake to him in the Confistorie before his Cardinals, with greater authoritie and seueritie, then the other would that hee should have done: which being ended, in hope that the Pope would have refourmed himselfe, he departed from Rome, to feeke Bar and Arivs; and belieging him in a citie which hee had fortified, hee daily affailed it with great force and resolution: in the meane time that he busied himselfe herein, Pope I on N, with some of his confederates (shewing himselfe an enemie to the Emperour) called ALBERT the sonne of BERENG ARIVS into Italy, and made an infurrection against him: whereupon, O THO leaving to be siege BERENG ARIV s, returned towards Rome, wherein the Pope had vied great crueltie to those which held for the Emperour; among which (it is faid) that he cut off the nofes, and put out the eyes of some of the Cardinals and citizens: but knowing with what furie the Emperour came, he durst not stay his comming, but fled, and so lurked in fundrie parts: and OTHO being come, the greatest part of the Cardinals clergie and people of Rome informed him of the Popes indignitie, and the infufficiencie of his election; defiring him to place a new: whereto he anfwered, that if their informations were true, they had authoritie of themselves to chuse whom they listed: And they holding I OHN'S election to be of no effect, made choife of another, whose name was L E o, and the eighth of that name, who was presently received for Pope, the Emperour holding him for such: And leauing him feated in his throne. OTHO Went from Rome, returning to his enterprise against BERENG ARIVS, and his sonne ALBERT, wherein he vsed such diligence, and had so good hap, that BERENG ARIVS despairing to be able to defend himcondemned to felfe, yeelded to his mercie; and his sonne ALBERT, with his wife and children, perpetuall impulsament, and were taken prisoners: And the Emperour O T HO (vsing his accustomed clemenbert to be exi. cie and magnanimitie) would not put them to death, but contented himself to baled, by the Em- nish them : BERENGARIVS he sent prisoner, and banished into a strong Castle in Saxony; and his sonne ALBERT to Constantinople, and so ended the tyrannie of the BERENGARII in Italy. Well I know, that BLONDVS and other authors recount this their imprisonment to have been so soone as O THO came into Isaly: but I follow the Abbot WESPERGENSIS, and the most part of all the other Historiographers.

Within few daies after that O THO was departed from Rome, wherein hee had left L B o the eighth for Pope, the Romane people, by the perswasion of Pope Ionn, and of his allies and kindred (with the like lightnes as they viually are moued)altered their minds, and determined to cast out L B O, and to receive I O H N; and fo I o HN was restored, and LE o driven to slie, and to complaine to the Emperour at Spoleto. When the Emperor was aduertifed hereof, making an end of such busines as he then had in hand, he concluded to come within few daies with his forces to Rome, against his enemie Pope I o HN, who died therein before his comming: some writers say, that a Romane taking him with his wife, slew him, when he had continued Pope nine yeeres. The Romanes abhorring Pope I. E o, which was now with the Emperour, chose another called BENEDICT the fifth; and he and they presently sent their Ambassadours to the Emperour, to entreate him to be pleased with his election: wherewith the Emperour was worse offended then before, and gaue them a very sharpe answere: But the Romanes (which by this time loathed the Germanes, murmuring against the Emperour) perseuered in their opinion of holding BENEDICT for Pope: for this cause, OTHO remoued

with his armie, and came to Rome, where Pope Benedict and the Romanes had made prouision of men and munition for their defence; and he first spoyling the territorie thereof, befreged the citie, and brought it to fuch diffreste, that they Reme befreged write wonders of the famine and want which the befieged endured; which was the Emperous fuch that being vnable to endure the extremitie thereof, they gaue vp the citie to Otho. OTHO; who being now Lord of that citie, deposed BENEDICT, whom he held for no Pope; and therefore reestablished L E o, whom hee brought with him: which being done, he staied some daies in Rome, setting all things in such order as was most expedient, and carrying BENEDICT with him, whom they had chosen in contempt of him, together with the fonnes of many the most principall men in Rome for his better fecuritie; he departed thence, and came into Lombardy; wherein placing gouernours and garrifons in all the cities which appertained to the empire, he returned into Germany; where he was folemnely received by all the princes and estates thereof: And within few daies BENEDICT (whom the Emperour brought with him) died of forrow and griefe, fixe moneths after his election: so that Pope L E o remained sole Pope without any competencie: but his prosperitie continued but a little while, for within little more then one yeere after that hee came to be Pope, he died also; and through his death they chose Pope I OHN the fourteenth of that name, but hee was not received; for the President of Rome, who then was called PETER, rofe against him, and with the favour and affiftance of the Decarconi, which were Rulers for one yeere; and of the two Confuls of the city(this was the maner of their gouernment at that time)&a certaine prince which was Earle of Campania, whose name was Gofred vs, rising Pope Folm priagainst the Pope they became so mightie, that they apprehended him, and com-castle S. Angelo mitted him to the Castle S. Angel; and afterwards, being masters of the citie, they released him thence; so as he lived exiled eleven moneths: which being passed, with the aide of Iohn, Prince or Duke of Capua, he was restored to his estate, and the aforesaid GOFREDVS was put to death: this was in the yeere of our Lord. Anno Dom. nine hundred, fixtie and feuen. O THO having raigned Emperour thirtie and odde 961. yeeres; and being in Germany aduertised of what passed in Rome, and much grieued therewith, he determined presently to take his way towards Italy, to punish fo great a contempt, and to supplant other tyrannies which were therein; and putting the same in execution, he came thither with great forces of foote and horse, and brought with him his eldest sonne and successor; and comming to Rome, inflicted notable punishment upon this Prefect PETER, and the rest of the Otho his fecond most principall offenders. This being ended, he sent his some O THO with part of uelv. his armie against the Moores, which possessed many townes in Pulia; and this OTHO draue them thence by force of armes, and was then contracted by his Ambassadours to The ophania daughter to Nicephorvs, at that time Emperour of Constantinople: And for as much as her father would not send her vnto him, he determined to make a conquest of those lands which were subject to that empire in Italy, and did so: for which cause (as some authors write) the Greekes rebelled against NICEPHORVS, and depriving him of his empire slew him, taking The death of I ohn for Emperour, whole fifter or cofine germane O THO afterwards married. perour Nice-Others fay that the cause of this warre was, for that the Greekes which dwelt in phorus. Pulia, held peace and friendship with the Infidels which dwelt amongst them, and did affift them. But what soeuer was the occasion, O THO and his sonne bereaued them of the most and best lands which they held in Italy: wherein PANDV L-

PAV: Duke of Capua did him especial service. Al which being brought to a wish-

with

The death of

the Emperous Otho.

Anno Dom.

974.

### OTHO THE SECOND.

ed end, Pope I OHN with the confent and good will of OTHO, crowned and made his sonne OTHO his companion in the empire, with great feasting and solemnitie ; and so very ioyfull and victorious, both the father and the sonne returned into Germany, leaving the Pope in peace absolute Lord of Rome; and so was Italy maintained seuen yeeres in peace without any tyrannie. The Emperours being come into Germany, were with great ioy received; and to them came Ambassadours of amitie and friendship from all the Princes christian. The rest of his life, which was not long, he spent in doing instice, in building of Churches and Monasteries, and in fuch like exercises: In which, in the fixe and thirtith yeere of his raigne in Germany, and the thirteenth yeere after his coronation in Rome, it pleafed God to take him out of this world, in the moneth of May, in the yeere of our Lord, nine hundred seuentie and soure.

A little before the death of OTHO, NICEPHORVS Emperour of Confiantinople was deposed and slaine, who had raigned fixe or seuen yeeres, and had obtained great victories against the Infidels; but through his euill gouernment in time of peace, they rebelled and flew him: And an excellent Captaine, whose name was ZIMICES, was chosen Emperour; who, the better to confirme himfelfe in the empire, chose for his companions the two sonnes of ROMANVS. which was Emperour before NICEPHORVS, whose names were BASILIVS. and CONSTANTINE; and married himselfe to a sister of theirs called

THEODORA: This proued an excellent and valorous Emperor, and fubdued the Ruffians, and others Northerly nations, together with PHOCAS a tyrant, which rebelled against him; of whose end you shall heare more hereaster.

THE



# THE THIRD OF THAT NAME.

AND FOVRESCORE AND EIGHT ROMANE EMPEROR.

And of IOHN, BASILIVS and CONSTANTINE, Emperours of Constantinople.



THO the fonne of OTHO (and therefore called the fecond. yet in truth hee were the third) fo foone as his father was dead, aswell for his fathers worthines, as for that in his life time he was elect, and crowned in Rome by the Pope, as we haue recounted, was without any contradiction received and obeyed for Emperor. This O r Ho was a man of a great according to spirit, and very valiant, and so shewed himselfe in all his ac- theorder of the

tions; although in the latter end of his raigne he was infor-Romane Empetunate, as you shall vinderstand. He beginning to rule the empire, all the Princes cond, but the christian sent Ambassadours vnto him, to condole the death of his father, and to third Romane congratulate his succession, and the Princes of Germany came to do him homage; that name. onely HENRY Duke of Baniere (who was his cofine germane, sonne of the other HENRY, brother to his father OTHO, of whom wee have made some mention, and whom his father made Duke of Banaria; being a man of great power, and therewith very proud) refused to yeeld obedience to the new Emperour: but O-THO raised an armie, and went against him, and compelled him to submit himfelfe, and to yeeld his obedience; this befell in the first yeere of his raigne: from

two brothers having placed good captaines and garrisons in the provinces of

The Emperor

of Constanti-

Greeke Em-

thence he marched against some townes in Slauonia, which warred against him. In the meane time, in the prouince of Lorrain were some insurrections, procuredby LOTHARIVS King of France: vponthe newes whereof, OTHO returnedinto Germanie, but the French King had raifed such forces, and was so suddenly entred Lorraine, that he made himselfe Lord thereof; pretending that that province did appertaine to the crowne of France; and not content to haue subdued all that countrie, within few daies after he marched forwards, spoiling and wasting the land, euen to Aken, wherein OTHO then was with small forces. nothing mistrusting that the King of France would have proceeded so farre in that warre, where hee was likely to haue been taken, and was driven to depart thence in more then hafte: but the French King retyring with great pray and spoiles, the Emperour much displeased with his doings raised a very mightie armie, and the next yeere following, with great courage, and equall power, entred the kingdome of France, in such manner that the French King neither durst, or was able to fight with him; but retired, and fortified himselfe in the citie of Paris; whither OTHO came (the King being therein) and spoiled the countrie, in reuenge of the harmes received: and in comming within fight of the Citie, he lost some of his people in a skirmish against the French; and seeing that the King fallied not to give him battaile, and that he could not befrege him with any aduantage; he refolued for that winter to returne into his countrie; and in his retreit, the King of France sent the Duke of Burgondy, and other princesto charge him in the areirguard (as write G A G VIN, and other French Historians) and at the passage ouera river, which was growne so high by reason of the raine, that as it could not be waded, he received great harme by his enemies, and they flew great part of his armie; which the Germanes doe not so brauely depaint; (vet they acknowledge to have lost some of their people at that passage) and the Emperour being returned, purposed to have prosecuted that warre; but it happened otherwise, for he gaue eare to a treatie of peace, betweene him and the French King, moued by certaine prelates; which was concluded, as we wil shew you; whereof the warres in Italy, made by the Greeke Emperor, were the chiefe occasion: which passed in this manner.

IOHN ZIMICES (as is before recited) having obtained the Empire of Conflantinople by the death of NICEPHORVS, and taken for his companions therein, the two sonnes of the Emperour Romanus, whose names were Basi-LIVS and CONSTANTINE; and having obtained many victories, and governed the Empire very well, was poisoned in Constantinople, when he had raigned fixe yeeres and a halfe, and BASILIVS, and his brother CONSTANTINE, which nopie possonator. Were his brothers in law, remained Emperours; but Basilivs bare the chiefest sway in the gouernment, being now twentie yeeres old; who in processe of brother Conflanine succeetime wanne many great victories, as well against tyrants which rebelled, as other people, and raigned fiftie and odde yeeres; in which time many raigned in Germany, the storie whereof I am to recount, although I ever make some mention of Constantinople, as I have done hitherto. In the beginning of the raigne of BA-SILIVS, and of his brother CONSTANTINE, they being both young, and of great power, and feeing that OTHO was busied in the warres of France, and forrowing that he and his father had taken the lands belonging to the Greeke Empire in Pulia and in Calabria, determined to recouer the fame; accounting the time fit thereto, confidering that OTHO was peftred with these troubles, and that the Popes were of small power, by reason of the great tyrants which were

Alia, and of Gracia, tooke their paffage into Italie, and brought in their armie many Infidels, aswell such as were newly entertained, as such as in former time had warred in that countrie, and began to take Cities and Castles, and in short space tooke all the rest of Pulia, and Calabria, and Rome it selfe and all the countrie there about it stoode in great feare of them. OTHO having intelligence hereof (at what time as he was in parley of peace with France) and grieuing much that the Greekes should recouer what he had conquered, at the time of his fathers coronation in Rome, with a refolution to recourrand to defend the fame, he con- The Emperor cluded a peace with the French, wherein was graunted to him the supreme iu-made peace risdiction, and all the prouince of Lotharingia, Otherwise called Austrasia, which afterwards was deuided into fundrie estates, as Braband, Gelders, Cleue, Gulicke. and that which now is called Lorraine; whereof he gaue the dominion to the French Kings brother, whose name was CHARLES, with the title of Duke, the more to binde the King of France to observe the peace: And having taken such order herein, and in the rest of Germanie, as was expedient; he went with great power into Italy, where his comming was long expected; and taking his way towards Rome, was therein againe crowned by the Pope, notwithstanding that he was so in the time of his father; and he required the Cities of Italy, that at a certaine time and place appointed, they should fend him their men of warre. which was performed accordingly: and staying but a very little while in Rome, he drew all his armie to one head; and so in order went to seeke his enemies. which refused not the battaile; and both parties desiring the same, it was fought, wherein Otho hadvery ill successe; for having a greater number, and better men, then were the Greekes, the Romanes, the Beneuentanes, and others which had the auauntguards, at the first encounter charged so cowardly, that without making any refiftance, they abandoned the field in such confusion, that they disordered the other Battallions and Squadrons of the Germanes; so as the Greekes encouraged hereby, followed the chace of them which fled, in such manner that OTHOS people being vnable to doe as they would, and ought to have done, were broken and ouerthrowne, and a very great number of them flaine. The Emperor seeing no hope of better refuge, fled from the battaile; and comming to the Sea fide (which was not farre from thence) put himselfe into a small boate, Othoraten by a which he found there by chance, thinking so to escape, but hee was taken vn- Searoner. knowne by a pirate, and carried into Sicilia, where he was discouered by a Merchant of Slauonia, who vpon promifes of rewarde made by the Emperor, bewrayed him not, but agreed for his ransome. This is reported in sundrie manners: but in the end he was foone delivered by the Merchants meanes, they nothing knowing that he was an Emperor; and so he returned into Italy, and came to Rome, whereof the Greekes might have been masters, if they had knowne how to have followed their advantage; for their enemies being overthrowne, they had not found therein any refistance: but God having otherwise ordained, they left the warre, contenting themselues with the victorie. OTHO being come to Rome, gathered together the remainder of his armie, and adding thereto new supplies; the first enterprise that he attempted, was to goe to Beneuent, where he put the greatest part of the inhabitants to the sword, and sacked the Citie, because they fled from the battaile. It is written of him, that he inflicted cruell punishment in Rome for the same cause; so as he was therefore called bloudie; the

The death of

the Emperor

Anno dem.

484.

cause whereof, was the great gricfe and sorrow which he conceiued for the losse of the battaile, and his flight; confidering that through the fault and cowardize of his friends it had happened; fo as they write of him, that euer after fo long as he lived, his countenance was ever fad and penfive, and that he often gave great grones and fighes; and finally in his apparell, and in all other things shewed continuall forrow and extreme heatines; and all his speeches and discourses were. kow he might be reuenged, and recouer this losse. After this, liuing in this care and forrow in the Citie of Rome, he was taken with a mortall infirmitie, which (as some say) came through forrow (but not without suspition of poisoning) which encreased so fore that he died thereof, having raigned tenne yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord, nine hundred fourescore and foure. He left behinde him when he died, one sonne called O THO (as was himselfe) of the age of twelue veeres, who was afterwards Emperour, and another called Hv GH, which was Duke of Saxon, and one daughter called ALASIA, which afterwards was matried to a prince of Saxony, whose name was ALRANE or ALEDRANE, and was Marquesse of Monferrate, in whom that house and state had beginning. All these he had by his first wife, whose name was THEOPHANIA, who had been late wife of IOHN Emperour of Constantinople. He had also another daughter called VTILHVID A, by his second wife, which was the Marquesse of Austrich his daughter, which was married to THEODORICV s, the first Earle of Holland; and OTHO being dead, the Greekes for that time continued Lords of Pulia and Calabria.

THE LIFE OF OTHO THE FOURTH OF THAT NAME.

> AND FOURESCORE AND NINE ROMANE EMPEROVR.

And of Basilivs and Constanting Emperors of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Fier long disputations and contentions about the election of the Emperor, betweene the Ro-Manes and the princes of Germanie; in the end Othe the forme of the deceafed Emperor, was

sholen, being a childe not fully twelve yeeres old; and so one Crescencius in the beginning of his raione rebelled against him in Rome; which aspired to the Empire, and made himselse a tyrant over many countries, and perfecuted the Pope, driving him to flie, but finally forfeare of the Emperor which came into Italy to protect the Pope, he made his peace with him, and became his subject : the Emperor being departed, Crescencius againe tooke armes and made a new Pope, and persecuting the Pope made by the Emperor, he constrained him to flie to the Emperor, who conducting him into Italy, tooke Rome, and flew Crescencius; and the other Pope died milerably. In this time an order and forme was fet downe for the chusing of the Emperor, and the honor being ginen to the Germanes, the Romanes were therewith much displeased, and conspiring against the Emperor, put him fo to his shifts, that he was driven to flied squised; but in the end, unable to eschew treason, he died of poison, when he had raigned eighteene yeeres.



N fuch manner as I have declared, the Emperor called Observing the OTHO the third deceased (yet in truth hee was the comfe thirdfourth) and in the Citie of Rome was great contention the was the and controuerfie about the election of a new Emperor, fourth of that betweene the princes of Germanie which were there, the third of the and came with him; for some would have his sonne Germane Emto succeede him, whose name was OTHO, as was his, Perors. being then but a childe of eleuen and halfe veeres old. Others were of opinion (by reason of the childes

nonage) to make HENRY Duke of Bauaria Emperor, who was his fathers cofine germane, the first Orno his brothers sonne; who being a mightie man and there present, sought to have gotten his young cosine into his power, to the end that he should not have been chosen; and did so, and tooke vpon him the title of Emperor: and the Romane and Italian princes (defiring to be exempt from the gouernment of the Germanes which they naturally hated) fought by all meanes that an Italian might have been chosen; and they named one which was a very mightie Romane, called CRESCENCIVS NVMETANVS, who at that time was gouernor, & Confull in Rome, for (as it is faid) they had established a new manner of government, imitating the auncient custome; for at this time; hey had a certaine kinde of Confulate. The princes of Germanie standing in feare of the Romane and Italian people (in a manner) by common confent, mauger HENRY Duke of Bauaria (which thought to have been Emperor) determined to chuse OTHO, sonne of the last OTHO; for although that he were but young and scarcely twelue yeeres olde, yet he gaue great figne and hope of a future excellent prince; and taking him out of the power of the faid HENRY of Baniere, they departed with him from Rome towards Germanie, and came with him to the Citie of Aken, where he was crowned with great folemnitie, and obeyed and held for Emperor; and so he was in Milan, and in other parts of the Empire. But in Rome CRESCENCIVS NUMITANUS, who (as we faid) fought to haue been Emperor, possessed himselse of the citie, and of the territorie thereof: and for a smuch as Pope IOHN tooke part with OTHO, he made him to be apprehended in the crefeenius third moneth of his papacie, and committed him prisoner to the Castle Saint apprehended Angelo, wherein within fiue monethes after he died of forrow. Afterwards I O HN fift, and comthe fixteenth came to be Pope, who was a couctous wicked man, and confented mitted him prito the tyrannie of CRESCENCIVS afore named, and rebelled with Rome against foner to the the Emperor OTHO (whereof the Emperors nonage gaue the chiefe occasion, Angele, where and for the same cause some princes of Germanie likewise rebelled against him) he died of sorbut within short space, having attained to the age of fourteene yeeres, he was of row.

fuch courage and discretion, as hee might well be accounted for a perfect staied man: and with the aide of those which continued his loyall subjects he subdued and ouercame (although long first) al such as rebelled against him, with such happines and good successe, that he was held for the wonder of the world, seeing in him fo great valour and so ripe a wit in so greene yeeres. What rebellions these were, and in what manner he had so great good fortune, none of the Historiographers doe write particularly that I could cuer fee; so briefly doe they passe ouer this place: wherefore I can relate no more then what I finde written; onely this they affirme, that for the space of tenne yeeres, he was busied in pacifying and ordring the state of Germany: in which time CRESCENTIVS tyrannized Rome, which passed in this manner. Pope I o HN the fixteenth, who (as I said) succeeded I O HN the fifteenth (as it pleased God) lived Pope but seven moneths, all which he fpent vilely; and hee being dead, a learned man was chosen, whose name was IOHN also, which was I OHN the seventeenth, but much vnlike his predecessor, for he was an honest man, and for being so, was soone at variance with the tyrant CRESCENTIVS; who was of fuch power, that Pope I o HN was driven to leave Rome, and to give place to his tyrannie: and he oftentimes fent to the Emperour OTHO for fuccours, and to come and reforme the state of Rome and of Italy: But the Emperor could not then performe his request, by reason of his other waightie affaires; yet afterwards he did it as you shall heare. In the meane time, C R E s-CENTIVS fearing the Emperours comming, acknowledging his error, practifed with Pope I o HN to returne, promifing him to be obeyed and respected: and hee fo effectually handled the matter, that a peace was concluded betweenethem; and the Pope came, and was received with great folemnitie. But this notwithflanding the Emperour held on his way, and came into Italy with great power; of the Emperor Which was in the elementh yeere of his raigne, and was received every where as Othermolitaly. he passed with great ioy and feasting: and so hee came to Rome, where the Pope and CRESCENTIVS (after some treaties and ambassades which passed) made great preparation to receive him; and the Emperour being come neere to the citie, the Pope accompanied with all his Cardinals and clergie, and with all the Romane Nobilitie and gentlemen, went foorth into the fields to entertaine him; and so in peace and good friendship the Emperour stated some dates in Rome; and to gratifie the Pope and the Romanes, he went with his armie to Capua, and to Beneuent, which disobeyed, and were at warres amongst themselues, which he compelled to line in peace, to the contentment of the Romanes. About this time died Pope I o HN; and the Emperour returning to Rome, procured an vncle of his of the house of Saxony, whose name was BRVNV sto be made Pope, and he was called GREGORIE the fifth; who being feated in his papall dignitic, annointed and crowned the Emperor, with fuch folemnitie and pompe, as his father and grandfather had been before him. Which being ended, and O THO imagining that the estate of Italy stood now in good forme and order (considering that his vncle remained highest Bishop) he tooke his way towards Germany, and by the way visited Lombardy, and other parts subject to the empire. •

In the meane time, whilest that OTHO Was busied about the affaires of Italy, the successors of Charles the Great were deposed from the crowne of France, which although that it concerne not our historie, yet for as much as it is a matter fo notable, I thinke it worthie to be reduced to memorie: And thus it was. King LOTHARY being dead (who as wee faid made warre against OTHO the second) his sonne L & vv & s succeeding him, within one yeere died also: And this L & vv & s being dead, HVGH called CAPVTIVS, Earle and gouernor of Paris, being a man High Capet being dead, it von taned Oxfor 11 von and gotternor of variously a than offerest power and authoritie in that kingdome; tyrannically tooke vpon him kingdome of the title of king, and made himselfe Lord of France; having no right thereto, but France, the right of warre : and first he tooke CHARLES (brother of LOTHARLYS) prisoner by treason (who by the death of his nephew L E vy E s was called king) and made him to die in prison, and (ouercomming and subduing all such as made refistance)gat the crowne and kingdome; which hath continued in his successors

untill this day.

OTHO being returned into Italy, the Romanes which had euer murmured at the election of Pope GREGORIE, and loathed the rule and dominion of the Germanes, chose the tyrant CRESCENTIVS for Conful; by whose aide and counfell they againe rebelled against the Pope, in such fort that he was driven to flie Rome, and carneftly to entreate the Emperour to relieue him: which he did, in hope that he would have come to his refere; or that CRESCENTIVS and the Romanes fearing the Emperours comming, would have recalled him, and have made peace with him, as they had done with his predecessor. But it fell out cleane contrarie: for CRESCENTIV's alleaging that Pope GREGORIES election was violent (the Emperor forcing the same) caused the Bishop of Placentia to be chofen and made Pope, who was called I он n the eighteenth (yet fundrie authors accounthim not for Pope.) Wherefore Pope GREG ORIE leauing Italy, went into Germany to the Emperour; who being highly displeased, leuied an Armie and came into Italy, and fo directly to Rome, wherein CRESCENTIVS had fortified himselfe, and prouided a garrison to defend the same, and the Emperour besieged the citie; which put the Romanes in such feare, that they dared not to stand to their defence, but opening the gates, defired the Emperour to pardon them; and the two tyrants, CRESCENTIVS and Pope I OHN, withdrew themselves into the castle S. Angelo, which CRESCENTIVS had so well fortified that it was held for impregnable: whereupon O THO came to a parley with him, to the end that hee should have yeelded, and CRESCENTIVS presuming that his life should have been faued (whereof he was put in some hope) deliuered up the castle; and he and the pope comming towards the Emperour, were apprehended vpon the way; and CRESCENTIVS Was prefently put to death by his commandement, as a vio. Crefcenius par later of his faith, and one that had been twice a traytor. Others write that he made to death. him to be hanged, and Pope I OHNS eyes to be put out, who afterwards died mi- Pope John the ferably: fuch are the rewards which the world bestoweth voon those which to eighteenth had follow the same forget God, their owne honor and honestie. These tyrants being suppressed, the Emperour restored pope GREGORIE to his seate and dignitie, Pope Gregorie and fet the best order in all matters in Rome, that that time would permit.

All this which I have recited being ended, Pope GREG ORY acknowledging feate. the fuccours which the Church of Rome had received from the Emperour, and from the princes of Germany (as a man affected to his native countrey, and to the Germane nation; by the will and consent of the Emperour, and to preuent and eschue the discord which did arise, or might happen, about the chusing of the Emperour) made a law and Canon, which hath lasted about sixe hundred yeeres, euen untill this day, which was, that the election of the Emperour, fo long as the empire should be voide, should appertaine to fixe princes onely, which we will prefently nominate three, whereof were Prelates, and the other three, secular Princes, viz. a Duke, a Marquesse, and an Earle, and if by chaunce there should be equality of voyces betweene these fixe, the king of Bohemia (which then was no

Eee 3

The originall of the order of

ordained by

the fift.

Pope Gregorie

king) should also haue his voyce, and the party whereto he inclined, should make the choise, and their election should stand : the Prelates are, the Archbishop of Mentz, the Archbishop of Colein, and the Archbishop of Trenier: the Princs are the chapping of the County Palantine of Rhine, the Duke of Saxony, and the Marqueffe of Brandenburgh. And he further ordained, that no man should be chosen Emperour. except he were a Germane borne; and that being chosen by the princes electors aforesaid, he should be called king of the Romanes, and not Emperour Augustus. vntill that hee were confirmed and crowned by the Pope, as it is observed vntill this day. This decree and law(as the most authors write) was made in the yeere, one thousand and two : which cannot be so, for all agree, that Pope GREGORIE the fifth which made the fame, died in the yeere, nine hundred ninetie and feuen: but this contrarietic is easely falued, for the Emperour OTHO died in the yeere. one thousand and two, or three, and so in that yeere, or the next, that law was out in execution, notwith standing that it was made some time before, and therefore they say that it was made that yeere: And thus are they excused, which attribute this order and forme of election to pope SILVESTER, which succeeded pope GREGORIE, Who indeed was the man which made the fame. And he further ordained, that the election should be made in the citie of Franckford, and that hee which was chosen, should come to the citie of Aken to be crownedking of the Romanes. And the Emperour OTHO ordained certaine preheminences and offices, which each of these Electors should hold in the Emperours house and court; as one to beare his Sword, and another to be his Cupbearer, with fuch like, which concerne not our historie. This being ended and concluded in this manners some authors write, that the Emperor went into Germany, to fet an order in the affaires of the empire, where this election before recited was approoued and ratified: others make no mention of this his going, but rather give to understand, that hee spent the rest of his time in Rome. How socuer it was, after the death of pope GR 2-GORIE (which was when he had been pope two yeeres and halfe) in his place was chosen one GILBERT, a more excellent man for wit and learning, then any in his time was to be found: but he abused and ill employed the same, for he was a great Necromancer and enchaunter, and gaue himselfe to bargaining with the diuell, and to other vulawfull Artes: he was a Frenchman borne, and was called SILVESTER, and had been the Emperours Schoole-master, whom most authors affirme, to have learned Magicke in the citie of Senill in Spaine, which not withstanding that it was in the power of Infidels, yet the Artes and Philosophie did florish therein. This pope held the chaire foure yeeres, in which time the Emperour came againe to Rome (or had not gone foorth of it) and very effectually applied himselfe to the good government of the empire, punishing and reforming the abuses committed by fundrie, through the small authoritie and worth of the former popes, and the tyrannies and factions which had been in Rome: all which was done by the popes confent, as by him which had bin the Emperors Schoolmaster, and was placed there by his authoritie. The Emperour (as it is written of him) was a man of great viderstanding, and of a very good condition: But the Romanes which now were much discontented with the forme established for chusing the Emperour, wherein they had no voyce or authoritie, either to chuse or to be chosen; they being the chiefe seate and head of the empire; and being also extremely gricued, to see that O THO did so absolutely commaund in Rome, and in Italy, and made fo long abode therein: first they began to murmure thereat, and afterwards fecretly to conspire, and to practise his death, and in the end

Pape Siluefter

OTHO THE FOURTH.

their enuie encreasing, their audaciousnes and contempt likewise encreased: The Romanes whereupon, one day when the Emperour suspected no such matter, and the people which he then had with him in the citie being but onely Courteours, the Ro- the Emperour manes, rose in a great tumult, and putting themselves in armes, slew many of the and would base sure by Germanes, and then went to the palace wherein the Emperour was, and being vnable to enter at their first approach (for that his guard & gentlemen which repaired thither defended the same) they compassed the house, in such fort that the Emperour had been either prefently taken, or flaine; but that one H v G E(which was his Lieutenant, and gouerned great part of the Emperours countries in Italy, with the title of Marquesse, and was well beloued amongst the Romanes) came to a parley with them, defiring some treaties of peace and agreement : and with him ioyned HENRY Duke of Bauiere, to whom they also gaue care; which restrained the furie and rage of the people: and holding them thus in talke, a meane was found whereby the Emperour (chaunging his habit) gat foorth of the citie. without being discourred, and went to the place where his forces lay(and the pope did the like) whither repaired to him al those which fled from the furie: and To for that time he escaped death. But although that he was delivered from this publike treason, yet hee could not free himselfe from that which was secret: for within short space after, being busie in gathering his forces together (with an intent(as fome fay) to have gone into Germany, and as others fay, against Rome) hee was poyloned (as some write) by the wife of CRESCENTIVS the tyrant before named (who hee commaunded to be hanged in Rome) with whom, as the was the fairest woman of her time, they say, that the Emperour being in Rome had secret conversation, and that she faining to be greatly in love, poyloned him in a paire of gloues, which she sent him excellently perfumed: whereof within three or foure daies after he died, the poyfon working flow and leifurely. Other authors beleeve not this, but that he was poyfoned by others; yet they all agree that he The death of died of poylon, in the veere of our Lord, one thousand and two; when hee had the Emperour raigned eighteene yeeres complete, and lived onely nine and twentie and a halfe, anno 1002 without leaving any fonne to fucceede him: which fome affirme was the cause why he procured pope GREGOELE to ordaine that manner of chusing the Emperour as I have already described: And they say moreover that he was married with the king of Arrogans daughter, whose name was MARY, a woman not so carefull for the preservation of the honour and honestie of her person, as she ought to have been. This prince is accounted amongst the good Emperours, for his many vertues, and for that he ruled the empire with inflice and vprightly. Before his death there appeared great fignes in the firmament, as Comets, which lasted many daies; and the most notable was, that one day in the morning about nine of the clock, there appeared in the element a great flaming fire like to a burning torch, which continued a great while; and the light being vanished, there appeared in the same place the likenes of a Serpent: The bodie of the Emperor Was carried by HENRY Duke of Bauiere, and the other great Lords, into Germany, The Emperous and was buried in the citie of Aken. A little before his death pope SILVESTER Otho buried in died in Rome, whither it seemeth that he was returned, who died through Gods Aten. great goodnes(as it is written) very penitent for his sinnes; and in his place was chosen I OHN the nineteenth, who dying within foure moneths after, without doing ought worth the writing, another IOHN fucceeded him, which was IOHN the twentith, of whom we will hereafter make mention.

During the raigne of O THO; in Constantinople raigned BASILIVS and CON-

STANTINE

STANTINE brethren; but (as Ifaid) Basilivs was the more valorous, and the man by whose counsell and direction, all actions were worthely and happely atchiued in the warres : for he inlarged that Empire both in Afa and in Europe. and obtained many great victories. In the beginning of their raigne (as is before declared) they came into Italy, and ouerthrew O THO the second: after this, their quarrels were with Tirants; the first was with a Captaine called SCLERVS, avery valiant man, and of great power, who was their Lieutenant in Syria and in Phenicia; and rebelling, made himselfe to be called Emperour: this was a very dangerous warre, but in the end he was ouerthrowne, and cscaped by flight to Babylon: but afterwards (many things happening in the meane time) he was reduced to their seruice. The second was with Phocas, another Captaine of no lesse renowneand valour then Schervs, who would also have been Emperour, and to that effect had leuied so great an armie, that he doubted not to fight a battaile with BASILIV s, wherein he was slaine, and therewith ended his life and tiranny; and so atchieued BASILIVS these two greatexploits: after which, ensued the warre which he had begun with SAMVEL, King of the Bulgarians; from whom, the lands of the Empire had received much harme by fire and fword, in the time of the warres with the Tirants aforefaid; of whom BASILIVS was sufficiently reuenged in many battailes, as hereafter shall be touched when time shall serue: the Greeke Emperours also held the greatest part of Pulia and Calabria; for the faid BASILIVS and CONSTANTINE recoucred the same, when they ouerthrew OTHO the second in Italie, and therein commaunded some, with

the titles of Gouernours and Captaines, and were called Calisti, as in auncient time were the Exarchi: yet Sicilia was in a manner wholy possessed by the Insidels of Africa.

THE

## THE LIFE OF HENRIE THE SECOND OF THAT NAME

AND FOVRESCORE AND TENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGVMENT.

Tho being dead, the Germane Princes Electors, according to their authoritie chose and Crowned Henry Duke of Baniere (Coussin Germane of the deceased Emperor United to the Emperour. This Prince, in the beginning of his raigne, was much troubled; by reason of certainerebels. He warred against Robert King of France, and lenied a power against the Duke of Bohemia which rebelled in both whole attempts, he obtained honourable victory. He made the King of Hungarie (who despreads is softer in marriage) to be basinized; and went into Italy, whereto he had a great desire; and merching with an armic against the Instidels, which held mant towness in Italy, chiefely in Pulia, he subdued them. And returning into Germany, he innited Pope Renedict to come to voist him; and the Pope comming thither, was received with exceeding great bonour. He lined with his wife in continuall chassitite, and left her as good a mayde as he found her; and soften subject to a good Christian, he departed out of this life; but he first intreated the Princes Electors, to make choyce of a good Emperour.

T cannot be denied, but that the three O THORS, the Father, the Sonne, and the Nephew, of whom we now left to discourse, were very valorous and worthie Princes; and which repaired the credit and reputation of the Empire, very much rent and decayed; and for such are commended and recorded by the Historiographers. O THO then dying in Italy, sin such maner as I have declared) after that

the Germane Princes and people were returned into their.
Countrey, with the Emperours dead bodie, and had buried the same, with such solemnitie as thereto appertained: the aforenamed Princes, which were made Princes Electors (which were the Archbishops of Meniz, of Colen, and of Trenier;

Menry the fecond. chofen Етрегонг.

the Emperour.

the Duke of Saxony, the Marquesse of Brandenburgh, and the Countie Palatine of Rhine) purposing to shew their authoritie, and to chuse an Emperour, met together in the Citie of Franckeford; where knowing and confidering the many vertues and deferts of HENRY Duke of Baniere, they chose him for King of the Romanes, and future Emperour Av G v s Tv s; and he was annoynted in Aken by the Archbillion of Mentz, which was in a manner by the common consent of them all, excepting HEREBERT only Archbishop of Colen, who was of a contraric faction. This HENRY was coufin Germane to OTHO, whom he succeeded in the Empire, and Nephew of HENRY Duke of Baniere, Brother to O THO the first (yet second of that name) who by the same O THO was made Duke of Bauiere, as in his life we have specified; and was the second of the Emperours so called; yet the Italian writers fay, that he was the first, for they doe not reckon the other HENRY, Duke of Saxony, for Emperor, (whose life we have before written, who was Father to O THO the first) for that he came not into Italy, neither was Crowned therein by the Pope. The election of the new Emperour was commended and approued by all those which defired the good of the Commonwealth, for that he was a good man, yet there were some ambicious, and vnquiet Princes, which rebelling, tooke Armes against him; but he shewing his rower and valour, in short space tamed and brought them to his obedience: who they were which thus rebelled against the Emperour HENRY, I could neuer reade, for the writers doe not specifie the same. This HENRY being confirmed and affured in his scate, defired to come into Italy, but he could not bring it to passe, vittill the eleuenth yeare of his raigne, by reason of such warres as happened. First, fome Authors write, that there presently grew warres betweene him, and Ro-BERT King of France, who (by the report of all writers) was also an excellent Prince, although the sonne of Hv G H C APET, which vsurped those Kingdomes: for what cause those two good Princes fell at variance I finde not written; but those which make mention thereof, say, that HENRY had the victorie in this warre; and that afterwards they came to an agreement: which being ended, there followed a farre more dangerous warre than the former: which was against Bodislays Duke of Bohemia; who being of great power, and avded by the Slauons, the Polacres, the Morauians and other nations, rebelled against the Empire; and the Emperour with a great power resolutely marching against him, the warres grew to be very cruell; and some battailes were fought, wherein Bo-DISLAY'S Was ouerthrowne: but not difmayed therewith, perfifting in his rebellion; he reinforced his armie, and leuied the greatest power that he was able, and againe gaue the Emperour battaile; which, through the valour and courage of the Captaines and Souldiers of either fide, was very doubtfull and terrible, and the Emperour HENRY with much difficultic obtained the victorie, and executed the same in such manner, that BodIslavs was constrained humbly to craue pardon, and to fue for peace; which was graunted vpon very hard and heavy conditions; and so he was subdued, and made subject to the Empire, together with his abbettors.

This enterprise being ended, and he free from warre, in the meane time that he made preparation for his going into Italie, (which he greatly defired) he applied himselfe to matters of peace and good government, doing instice to all men indifferently; and builded and enriched many Churches and Monasteries; and honoured and aduanced Bishops, Monkes, Priests, Friars, and other such like religious people. In those dayes (being importuned, and in a manner compelled

by the great Princes of the Empire, wholy against his will) he married the daughterof the Countie Palantine of Rhine, called A MIGVNDA, with whom (vnditcouered and vnknowne to any, vntill his death) he liued most chastly, both of them observing voluntary virginitie, without having any carnall knowledge the one Voluntary of the other; which is one of the most notable matters that I euer read, of any ued by the Em-King or Emperour. This Emperour had also a fifter called GISELA, which (as Peror and the they write) was the fairest woman of her time; whom STEPHEN, Duke and Empereffe. Lord of Hungary, defiring to have to wife, could not obtaine his fute, except he would first become a Christian, and be baptized (for although that in that King The King of Hungar) bedome were many Christians, yet the Princes were Infidels) whereto STEPHEN came a Christian veelded, and became so deuout, that he is accounted amongst the Saints: and the an, and was Emperour gaue him his Sifter, and with her the title of King, and so he was the first that was called King of Hungary. Some write that this GISELA was Neece. and not Sister to the Emperour. In these accidents before recounted, Hanny foent ten veeres of his raigne, and then refolued to leuie a great Armie, there with to goe into Italie, wherein had passed some great matters: those which are for our purpose, are, that Molochys, gouernour of Pulia, and of Calabria, for the Emperour of Constantinople, and with him WILLIAM, and his other Brothers. Sonnes of the Duke of Normandy (a Prince and great Lord in France, who at that time was in Italy with great forces, whither they came about some certaine enterprises) ioyned their forces together, and agreed with the Duke of Salerno, and other princes, to expell the infidels of Africa, out of the Ile of Sicilia, wherein they inhabited: which they did with fuch force and courage, that within leffe then two yeares they recourred the whole Iland : whereof (according to the agreement) certaine cities and townes were to haue bin giuen to the fayd WIL-LIAM, and to the other Dukes; but MOLOCHVs fatisfying the debt with part of the pray and bootie, which they had taken; of all the rest would part with nothing, but put garrifons into all the townes, to holde the same for his Lord the Emperour : and WILLIAM, and the rest discontent herewith, came into Italy, wherein they took by force of Armes, fuch cities as were vnder Molochy shis gouernment; and Molochys comming out of Sicilia to make head against him, they iouned in battaile, and WILLIAM obtayning the victorie therein, became Lord of the most part of Pulia, and of Calabria; and hee dying, his Brother DROGVs succeeded; and afterward through fundry accidents, his ofspring became Lord of those prouinces, and in processe of time, of Sicilia also for a long time after: first with the title of Dukes, and afterwards of Kings of Sicilia, and in the end of both the Sicilia, which are Sicilia and Maples, as in time shalbe remembred in our History. In the time that this WILLIAM and the Normans came into Italy, the Authors differ; but so farre foorth as I can coniccture by the true computation of times, it happened at fuch time, as I recounted. This being paffed, Pope Sengivs died in Rome, and Benedict the eight, of those fo called fucceeded him: yet Brondys calleth him Stephen, which is contrary to the opinion of all the other Historiographers, so that I imagine it was thorough the errors of the Writer; for in that time there was not any Pope The Emperous of that name. In the time of this Benedict, the Emperour Henry pre- Henrie, his pared for his comming into Italy, and came very mighty, and by the way visit-comming into ting Milan, and the other Imperiall cities, he came to Rome, where by Pope B a. Italy. NED ICT he was most folemnly receased, and afterwards crowned with exceeding feathing and magnificence: where making his aboad for some few dayes

space, he marched thence with his army against the infidels, which through the ayde and permission of the Greekes, (to vsetheir seruice against the Normans) came into Italy, and had befieged the citle of Capua, with which the Emperour fought, and ouerthrowing them, forced them to abandon the countrey. And after that he went against Syba G BN Vs. Generall for the Emperour Basilivs. for that he had supported the infidels in Pulia; and making cruell warre against him, dispossessed him of many townes; and in the end laying siege (which lasted fower monethes) to the citie of Treya, which was but newly erected and ennobled, he tooke it by force of Armes: fo as expelling the infidelles, and taming the Greekes, leaving them some part of Calabria to inhabite in, and in part favoring the Normans, as those which had shewed themselues his obedient and dutifull feruants, he left to them Pulia, whereof they were alreadie possessed, and returning to Rome, stayed there certaine daies, and thence went into Germany, with great honor, and by the way, vifiting Milan and other townes, was in Germane received with great toy and folemnitie; and fo his dominions being in peace, he spent his time in ministring iustice, and in well gouerning his Empire. As the Emperor HENRY busied himselfe in those actions before specified, and had raigned twentie and two yeeres, some set two yeeres lesse, yet PLATINA and BLOND's fay, that he raigned but onely eight yeeres, wherein they are manifeftly deceived: but I thinke for certaine, that (as they were Italians) fo they reckon his raigne but from the time that hee was crowned in Rome, which was in the twelfth yeere thereof; and so commeth their account to agree with the rest of the authors; whereof let the reader be well aduised, as well in this, as in what shall be said hereafter. At the end of which time being taken with a greeuous ficknes, wherewith feeing himselse oppressed, he commaunded such of the princes electors as might come in fo short space, to be sent for; which being come, he counselled them, that after his decease they should chuse the valorous prince CONRADE, Emperour; who was one of the Dukes of Sueuia, others fay of Franconia, the cause whereof, may be, that he came of both houses, and so after the Germane manner, was called by both names, as at this day the Dukes of Bautere are called Counties Palantines of Rhine. He named this man vnto them, for that he thought him to desire the Empire: and within few daies after died, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand foure and twentie, leaving his wife as good a virgin as she came to him. It is written that she being accused of adulterie, shewed her innocencie, by going barefooted upon certaine plates of fiery hot yron; and that the Emperour became very penitent for permitting her to expose her selfe to such daunger, being so chast and vertuous a woman.

The death of the Emperor Henry the fccond, auno. dom.1024.

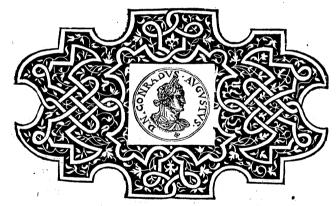
In a manner about this time died BASILIV's Emperour of Constantinople, Ifay in a manner, for that in this place, it is a harde matter to agree the times, by reason of the incertaintie and variablenes amongst the writers. BASILIVS when he died was seventie and two yeeres old, and had raigned two and fiftie; in most matters, in great prosperitie, at least in armes, aswell against the Bulgarians, which ror of conflan- he compelled to pay him tribute; as against the Infidels: and dying left his Empire to his brother Constanting, who raigned three yeeres, and gouerned the same negligent and viciously; and he before his decease, ordained and left a great and valorous personage, called Romanvs Arginophilvs, for Emperour, whom he first married to his daughter. This Roman's in the beginning, shewed himselfe to be an excellent and valorous prince, but being afterwards ouerthrowne by the Infidels in Asia, he altering his condition, became couetous

and gave himselfe over to many other vices; for which cause he grew to be somuch abhorred, that having raigned but onely five yeeres, his owne wife Zon practifed his death, by the hands of one MICHAEL PAPHLAGONV s, with whom she lived in adulterie; and afterwards married him, being a man very well conditioned; who by her meanes had the Empire, which he valiant and manfully defended the space of seauen veeres, in the warres which he held with the Infidels in Alia, in Soria defending the frontires of Phenicia.

## THE LIFE OF CONRADE THE SECOND OF THAT NAME,

AND FOVRESCORE AND ELE-VENTH ROMANE EMPEROVR.

> And of MICHAEL Emperour of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.



Onrade the second was chosen Emperor accordingly as the Emperor Henry before his death had ordained, and thereto had perswaded the princes electors; yet that notwithstanding his election was not without some contradiction and difficultie. Being in possession of the Empire, he was to prouide for many matters, and to subdue many rebels, which rebelled through the long vacation of the imperiall feate, which was two yeeres without any soueraigne. But all

these rebellions and tumults of warre were pacified without shedding any droppe of blood, or drawing of sworde, for he subdued them all through his humanitie and courtesse: these warres letted him three yeeres. This being done, he came into Italy with a very great armie, and tooke Milan, which was a more rebellious citie, then any of the rest, and comming to Rome was erownedby Pope Iohn the one and twentith. Afterwards understanding of certaine tumults in Ger-

CONRADE THE SECOND.

manie, he speedily returned thither, and that enterprise being ended, he came againe into Italy. wherein many cities hadrenolted, but inflitting terrible punishment upon the malefactors, he came at length to Rome, to relieve the Pope against such as molested him; and having reformed all matters in Italy, he returned into Germanie, where being affailed by an infirmitie, he died, hauing raisned Emperor ten yeeres.

He princes electors of the Empire being affembled, to chuse a fuccessor for the Emperor HENRY (whose historie we have but now written) notwithstanding that he counselled them to make choice of CONRADE, yet they could not fo eafily agree, but that the difference continued betweene them the space of two yeeres, without being able to resolue, who should, or

ought to be Emperor; whereof many inconveniences and diforders enfued, and many cities and townes in Italy, and some princes in Germanie, attempted to set themselues at libertie, and to shake off the imperiall yoake, wherewith the new Emperor clect was afterwards greatly troubled. At the end of this time, the aforesaid Conrade was chosen, and crowned Emperor, as Hunry had willed, yet he was in some sort contradicted, particularly by Conon, one of the Dukes of Baniere, and Vncle to the late Emperor HENRY; who himfelfe would haue been Emperor. This Emperor Connada was a fingular good man at armes, and had been Generallin the warres for the Emperor Hanky. Here the authors doe vary, and contend about the matter, viz. whether, that he were of the Dukes of Suevia, or of Franconia, and spend many speeches about prouing their opinions; but I will awoide this travell, not with flanding that it feemeth to be most certaine, that he was of the house of Suettia, or (as I said aboue) was peradventure descended from both the houses, and after the Germane manner. enjoyed both titles, as arthis day is accustomed. But let it be, as it shall please the reader. He was chosen as a man which best deserved the same of all others. which he afterwards very well verefied and made manifest. So soone as he was established he wrote his letters to all parts, procuring peace and friendship with all the Kings and princes which defired it, and commaunded his fubices duely to observe the same: but the two yeeres vacation had bred such a custome of libertie, that they rebelled against him. The first was Bodislavs Duke of Aufirich, whom Hanny had subdued, and made tributarie to the Empire, who (taking upon him the title of King) denied both his vaffelage and tribute: against whom CONRADE leuied an armie, purpoling to have gone against him in perfon; but at the same time Bodislavs died, and left two sonnes, the one called OTHO, and the other MISICVS. MISICVS was the elder brother, and remained absolute Lord, and imitating his father, perfisted in his rebellion against the Emperor, and expelled his brother O THO, because he would not io yne with him in the action; and this OTHO went presently to the Emperor, who entertained him well, but was fomuch displeased with his brother MISICVS his prefumption, that he fent the same OTHO with part of his armie to begin the warre, and within few daies, he himselfe followed with the rest, and entred the countrie with fuch power, that MISICVS durst not abide his comming, but went into Bohemis, to craucaide of WALDERICVS Duke and Lord thereof, who was also one of those which rebelled against the new Emperor. WALD E-RICVS having entertained and affured him; in liew of ayding him, fent to treat fecretly with the Emperor, to the end to have delivered him vp into his hands thinking by this meane to have come to the better composition with him. But

CONRADE THE SECOND.

the Emperor disdaining to entrap his enemie by treason, was so much displeased

with WALDERICUS, for his treacherie, that befides, that he would not accept

which his father and he had vsurped, and with a small traine, came and veelded

himselfe into the Emperors power, humbly submitting himselfe, more in regarde

of his kinde and gentle admonition and aduice, then of the force of his armes:

and the Emperour pardoned, and graunted him peace upon the same conditi-

ons, as before. Following the example of Misicus, the Duke of Polandand

all the rest which had taken armes, and rebelled, came to the Emperors service

his offer, he showed the greatnes of his noble heart, by sending to Misicy's, The loyaltie of fecretly adulfing him to come to his obedience, or to feeke reliefe fomewhere the Emperor elfe, for in Bohemia he had no certaine refuge. Misicy's vnderstanding what passed, and well considering and waighing the Emperors goodnes, went out of Bohemia: and comming into his countrie, left the enfignes and title of King.

and obedience; amongst which were STEPHEN King of Hungarie, and WAL-DERICUS Duke of Bohemia, notwithstanding that they first failed not to try the vimost of what they were able to doe by force of armes. In all which Con-RADE spent the first three yeeres of his raigne, and could not (accordingly as he defired) goe into Italy to be crowned; where he had much to doe, by reason of the great leagues and confederacies made against him, to the end to free themfelues from the imperiall voake and fubiection. This time being expired, and having taken order for the estate of Germanie, he levied the greatest and most mightie armie that he could, and came into Italy, but he first nominated his sonne HENRY, King of the Romanes: and forafmuch as Milan, and all the townes in Conrade come that quarter, which in former time were wont to be most serviceable and in grea- into Italy. test subjection, were now in armes, and rebelled; he therefore marched directly thither, and so it behoued him to doe, for Pope GREGORIE the fifth (in the rule and Canon which he made in the time of O THO the third, concerning the princes electors, and the chufing of the Emperour) instituted and ordained, that he which was chosen, besides the golden crowne which he should receive of the Pope, should be crowned with two other crownes; the one of straw in Monzi, a citie in Lombardie; and the other of Iron, in the citie of Milan; which I hauere-

any his predeceffors had done the like) the Emperour battering and scaling such townes as would not peaceably receive him, came to Milan, which then was more obstinate and rebellious then any other, and doing much harme in the territorie thereof, he narrowly begirt the citie with a fiege, with a determination to haueruinated and burnt the same, for the great displeasure which he had conceined against it; and for an example to the rest. Which he might and had eafily performed, and that in short space (as many writers affirme) but that (I know not vpon what occasion) he raised his siege from before it, and went towards Rome (no man daring to make head against him) where Pope I o H N the one and twentie most solemnly received him, and with the like solemnitic crowned him with the crowne of gold: at which cronation (as affirme some authors which I follow) was KANVIVS King of England in pilgrimage, with whose daughter, they say, that HINRY, sonne of this Emperor CONRADE, WAS before this time maried. And there was also Rodvirh, King of Burgundie, and and Vicleto Giselathe Emperesse, who was descended from Charles the

great; and being depriued of his estate of Burgundie, by Robert brother to the

ferued to be written in this place, and doe here finde it written by my authors.

Wherefore, for the full accomplishment hereof (although I have not read that

in Rome, there arose a great tumult betweene his traine, and the citizens; in so

much that they all tooke armes and fought all one whole day together, and many were flaine of either fide, but the Imperialifts had the better ; and the Emperour in the best manner that he could, pacified this ryot, and staying but a shorte space after this in Rome, he departed thence, and out of Italy also towards Germany; for his sonne in law ERNESTVS Duke of Suenia, sonne to the Emperesse GESILA. by her first husband Duke of Suenia, rebelled, and made warre, seeing him pefired in Italy. But he being come into Germany, ERNEST VS being of no fufficient power long to defend himselfe was soone ouerthrowne, and sled to the Mountaines, where he was afterwards taken and flaine by the Emperours fouldiers. and his estate was given to his brother, whose name was HARMAN. At this his comming (so farre as I can gather, comparing the times with the accidents) CONRADE gat by his captaines the countrie of Burgundie, and made it subject to the Empire, which one hundred and odde yeeres had been subject to the house of France (but yet there had been very mightickings and Dukes therein) which was effected by the will and testament of RODVIPH, who was present at the Emperors coronation in Rome, and hee bequeathed it to the Emperours sonne HENRY, which could not be done without warre and bloudshed; for the King of France of the one part, and a certaine mightie Earle of another, pretended right thereto, and were possessed of great part of the countries but to be short (for herein much might be laid) at this time the supreme dignitic of Burgundie was The division of transported to the Empire: yet ROBERT GAGVIN in the end of his fifth booke, faith, that Burgundie was then divided into two parts, the one remaining the Duchy. Subject to the French, and the other to the Empire. The Emperor CONRADE and the Counhaving ended these things so well for his profit, after that he had in rest lived fome yeeres in Germany, without any accident worthie writing (by reason whereof the historie of his time is more briefe then of other Emperors) he determined to come the fecond time into Italy; for at the first, by reason of the small time that he made his abode therein, he could not leave matters in such order as he defired; and also for that he understoode that the Italians sought aide and reliefe from the Slauons, and the Hungars, against him, with a determination not to yeeld him any obedience. So that having all things in a readines for his journey, to speedily as hee could hee departed, and came with greater expedition and power, then any man thought of; and in his journey ruinating fome townes, and punishing some offenders which thought to have made head against him, he came to Milan, which prefently yeelded, where he punished the guiltie for former offences, and remained some daies therein; and departing from thence, tooke all the cities in that territorie; and then went to Rome to fee the Pope, and to relieue him against such as disobeyed him (which now, as I coniecture, was BENEDICT the ninth, I OHN the one and twentith being dead, who was Pope eleuen yeeres) and from thence with great power he trauelled ouer all Italy, visiting all the lands belonging to the Church of Rome, and to the Empire, without finding any refistance; yet in Pulia, and in Calabria, the warres still continued betweene the Greekes and the Normanes. In this manner returned CONRADE into Germany triumphing and mightic, whose historie I have written very briefly,

for so doe the authors handle the same : and thinking now to repose himselfe

after his former troubles (which for the space of fifteene yeeres that he was Em-

perour he had endured) he was taken with an infirmitie, whereof within few

convade bis fecond comming into

daies he died, in the yeere of our Lord 1040. fome adde thereto three yeeres, he The death of left one fonne whole name was Henry, who as I will prefently tell you fue-contain. ceeded him in the Empire. In the time of the Emperour CONRADE, MICHAEL Annu Dom. PAPHLAGONVS (as is alreadic faid) raigned Emperour of Conflantinople, for 1040. that Zon tooke him for her husband, with whom the had lived, ever fince the decease of ARGIROPHILVS her first husband; and heruled the Empire seaven veeres. After his deceases she tooke another husband of the same name called MICHAEL GALAFATES, and being accustomed to that trade she made him Emperour, but for that heeliued with her but foure monethes, she remained a widow: by reason whereof, the same Zoe, together with her fister Theodo-RA (which were the Emperour Constantines daughters) gouerned the Empire three monethes; and as she was both inconstant and incontinent, so she resolued once againe to haue an husband: and vpon this occasion banished her fifter, and married a man whole name was Constantinus Monacus, for that he came of the line of the Emperors, who neverthelesse was a wicked and euill Emperor, which was the occasion that the Empire began to decline, and to be of small account. In this time died the Emperor CONRADE. Of what end this Emperor Constantinus Monacus made, more shall be said hereafter.

## THE LIFE OF HENRIE THE THIRD OF THAT NAME.

AND FOURESCORE AND TWELFTH ROMANE EMPEROR.

> And of those which in his time raigned in Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

N the beginning of this Emperors raigne there were some troubles, for that he was not chosen according to order; neverthelesse, being held for such, he warred upon the Duke of Bohemia, which denyed him tribute; and taking him prisoner, constrained him to become a good and obedient subiest. He afterwards warred against the Hungars, as well for that they had given aide to the Bohemians; as for contriving some unlawfull innovations, and gave them a very great overthrow; and their King being dead (which knew not how to make benefit of the Emperors elemencie) he respect Peter to the crowne: and afterwards subdued the Duke of Lorraine, which denied him obedience. He came into Italy, where be redressed the estate of the Church, which was farre out of order, and was crowned in Rome; and afterwards bending his forces against the Insides, he drawe them out of Italy: and being come into Germanie be sent a Pope to Rome (haing accepted the offers made unto him by the Cardinals concerning the Popes election) who being received by the Cardinals, lined like a Pope; this Pope going against the Duke of Normandie, being in a battaile taken prisoner, was the very same day set as libertie, and obeyed by the victor. This Emperor once againe warred against the Hungars, for putting Peter their King to death; and after many accidents came to an agreement with them; in which time, there were so many calamites and sould the Empire seawnteen everes.

T cannot be denied, that after that the Empire was wholy tranfported to the Germanes in the person of Otho, but that the
Emperours thereof defended and gouerned the same very valorously, as by the historic appeareth principally the Othons
and the Henries likewise, as is to be seene by the two, of
which we are to treat: this Henry being the some of Con-

RADE, Was a good Emperor, and in condition no leffe vertuous then his father, or any of the HENRIES or other his predecessors; neither in armes of lesse valour and courage. We have tolde you before how that his father in his lifetime had made him King of the Romanes, which was a policie, which the Emperors haue euer fince yfed, to procure the Empire for their fonnes; and by that meane to leave the fame to them by election; seeing they could not doe it by inheritance: which in truth seemeth to be but a device to frustrate and prevent the law and decree made and established by the Emperor OTHO the third, and Pope GRE-GORIE the fifth, concerning the place where, in what manner, and by whom, the Emperors (the Empire being voide) should be chosen, and that it should not be inherited by fuccession, but by election: whereupon there grew some question and doubt about the matter, viz. whether this HENRY should be held for Emperor or no : for the princes of Germany held it for very inconvenient and vnfit, that his father should nominate him; and that it was a daungerous matter to introduce such a custome, for this was a thing that ought to be done by the princes electors onely: but in the end (they acknowledging his good parts and deferts) he was confirmed and crowned Emperour, and generally obeyed for fuch, according to the accustomed manner: Onely GRATISLAVS Duke of Bohemia, whom the Abbot WESPREGENSIS, BLONDYS, PLATINA, and OLDERIcvs call FRATISLAVS (who was a man of great power) rebelled against him, denying any superioritie, or to pay him any tribute, which (as I o HN Cv sp.1-NIAN faith) was one hundred cowes, and fine hundred markes of filner veerly; against whom HENRY (as a new Emperour, of an high stomacke, desirous to winne honour and reputation) raifed a great armie, and that fooner then hee should have done; for they write that hee began his warre in the winter, and therefore failed of his expectation, and that through the vnfeafonablenes of the time, and the distemperature of the countrie; in skirmishes and encounters he lost many of his men, which were taken and slaine by the enemie; so as for that time he had the worst, and was driven to retire, without accomplishing what he had projected, and with loffe of reputation; wherewith he was fo much grieued

and ashamed, that presently in the beginning of the next spring, he returned to the warres of Bohemia, with all the force that he was able to make; and GRATIS-LAVS growne proud of his late good successe, and through the new supplies which came to him out of Hungary, offered him battaile, wherein (notwithstanding that both armies fought couragiously) yet in the end the Duke was overthrowne, and afterward taken flying, and the Emperour (shewing that compassfion, which the other craued) graunted him life, and pardoned the offence vpon torie against fecuritie, that from thence forth he should be a loyall subject; first gathering in the King of the arrerages of three yeeres tribute, which was behinde vnpaied, as Cosmvs Hungarie. DE ANDREPRAGANA recounteth in his Annales; whereby the Emperor wanne muchhonor. And presently after this, followed another warre against the Hungarians for the same occasion. By the death of King STEPHEN which was King of Hungarie, PETER came to the crowne, against whom for some ill vsage, his fubicets rebelled, and made a kinfman of his, King, whom the Abbot WESPER-GENSIS calleth VBO, and others call him ABA, and the tyrant ABA being of greater power then the King: Parar was expelled his countrie, and driven to feeke redreffe and reliefe of the Emperor Hanny, who notwithstanding that he was not well pleased with him, tor affishing the Duke of Bohemia against him, yet for that he had subdued them both, he as his soueraigne Lorde entertained him. feeing that to him it appertained to doe iustice, and not to permit any tyrannie in his time: and ABA or VBO being advertised hereof, and having sent his Ambassadors to the Emperor, to shew him the equitie of his cause, and to desire his confirmation in the kingdome, not contenting himselfe in that hee had tyrannized Hungarie, entred Austrich and Banaria, and robbing and spoiling those countries, carried great bootie and pray out of those quarters; this hee didat fuch time as the Emperour held a diet, or Parliament in Celen; where the princes of Germanie were affembled: whereupon by the generall confent of them all the Emperour (accompanied with some of the princes) with a great armie departed from Colen towards Hungary, sending GRATISTAVS Duke of Bohemia before him, to begin the warre, which ABA the tyrant King of Hungarie fearing, fent Ambassadours to meete the Emperor vpon the way, withall the butin and pray that they had gotten in Austrich and Bauaria, desiring and entreating him. for peace; promising to doe what he should enjoyne him vnto, conditionally that he might not be deposed from that kingdome: whereto the Emperor for that time yeelded and confented; moued thereto by a rumor fpred abrode, that the Duke of Lorraine, with the aide of France, was in as mes, and rebelled; which was the occasion of the peace graunted to the King of Hungary, to the end that the Emperour thereby might have the better leasure and oportunitie to follow the warres of Lorraine, which were so much doubted. But A sa tooke not the benefit of that peace (as a wife, and a peaceable prince would have done; but intreated his subjects rather with greater pride and rigor then theretofore, putting many of the most principall of them to death; vpon which occasion the Emperor the yeere next following (with no leffer an armie then the former, but with greater resolution) entred Hungarie; where ABA alreadie attended his comming with his whole power; and with fuch other aide and affiftance as he could get; which was such and so great, that assuring himselfe to preuaile against the Emperors forces he offered him battaile, which was exceeding resolutely sought of either fide, and was very bloodie and cruell: but the King in the end was ouerthrowne, and (as writeth HENRICVS MyCIVS) twentie and fixe thousand of his

Henry the third chafen and crowned Emperor.

Abaking 0/ Hungary ouer thrownein a batta:le by Heavy the Em perour, and flaine by bis omne people.

men were flaine therein : and of the Emperours fide, which had the victorie, three thousand: And A BA escaping by flight, was afterwards in a village (wherein hee had hidden himselfe) found & slaine by his own people : yet some fay, that he was taken and slaine by his competitor PETER. After this ouerthrow, all the whole kingdome of Hungary fued to the Emperour for pardon, imputing all their former faults to their king; and hee gaue them a generall pardon, and restored king PETER to his throne, first reconciling him to his subjects, & placed a noble man to be in some fort assistant to him in the government: But this king (as he was naturally cruell) agreed so ill with his people, that in the end hee lost both his king-

dome and his life also, as hereafter shall be specified. This warre being ended, in fuch manner as I haue recounted, the Emperour longed to come into Italy, aswel to be crowned, as to take away the schisme out of the Church: but first hee determined (for so was it requisite) to tame the pride of GODFREY Duke of Lorraine, who would neither obey nor acknowledge him. but rather tooke and viurped some townes of his; which he had long diffembled, awaiting fitter opportunitie, thinking that at length he would have reduced himselse to his service : but now holding it vnsit any longer to dissemble, calling a Diet or Councell in the citie of Spire, without declaring his intention vntill that all the princes were affembled, he then manifested the offences and contempts committed by the Duke of Lorraine, and by common confent it was concluded to make warre against him: whereupon the Emperour without any further delay, departed with fuch forces as he had alreadie leuied for that purpose, towards Lorraine; and made fuch hafte, that the Duke (notwithstanding that he was promised great aide and fauour both out of France and Germany) before that he could vnite those forces together, the Emperour had entred his countrie, and besieging him in a towne tooke him prisoner, and so ended that exploite: yet they write Lorraine taken not in what forme the state remained. And so I aduertise the reader, that in the orprisoner by the Emperour. der and time wherein these warres were, those which wrote the same doe much vary: I therefore haue chosen this which I haue set downe. And the Emperour having now ended and performed (fo much to his honour) three fuch enterprises and warres, as these before mentioned, of Hungary, of Bohemia, and of Lorraine, 2bout which he had spent sixe yeares, he ingrossing and reinforcing his armves. (wherein he staied some daies) took his way directly towards staly to be crowned, and to procure a reformation of abuses in the Church thereof, wherein was a schisme, such as before that time had nener been, which was thus. The Emperour CONRADE being dead, and BENEDICT the ninth being Pope (as I then faid) the Emperour HENRY having then raigned more then foure yeeres; the Romanes which knew not how to line without factions and tumults, rebelled against the Pope: the cause whereof, and in what manner it passed, I finde not written; but their boldnes and audacitie was such, that they deposed him from the Papacie, alleaging that he neither was, neither ought to be Pope, and so they placed in his feate a Bishop, whosename was I OHN, who tooke part with them, and was called SILVESTER the third: And as PLATINA and BLONDVS report, was Pope but nine and fortie daies, at the end whereof BENEDICT was restored by those of his faction, and he within fixe weekes after, as a coward (being a wicked man and of of ill behauiour and condition) for feare to bee againe deposed, for a certaine

Gldbis papacy, fumme of money before hand paid, compounded with the Archdeacon of Saint andhauing re- Iohn de Lateran, who was a mightie rich man in Rome, to renounce to him the Paserved the mo. pacie; and did fo, but afterwards recanting of his bargaine, challenged to be still

Sinue Pope.

Pope: and the Archdeacon with the title of BENEDICT's renunciation affifted by his friends, was made Pope, and was called GREGORIB the fixth, his owner name being I on walleaging that he held the Papacie by graunt by renunciation. and also by election; and enjoyed the name and authoritie of Pope(as P LATINA faith)aboue two yeeres: BLONDVs and others fay, but one yeere and feuen monethsandhalfe: and some authors, as GILBERTVS, and IOHANNES DE CO-LVMNA, and ANTONINVS are of the same opinion, and write in their histories that he performed the office of a good Pope, and was valorous, ministred inflice. maintained the Papall dignitie, and recoursed much of the Church patrimonie. which others had vsurped: so as in time of this confusion, and of setting vp, and Three Popes in putting downe Popes (for there were at one time three which were so called, and Rome at one had been so) and (as writeth Gothiffendvs Viter Biensis, an author of time. foure hundred yeeres antiquitie) they all three came to a composition, and divided the Church rents amongst them: whereof one of them dwelt hard by S.P. x-TERS Church, another at S. MARIES; and this BENEDICT in the palace at

Things standing in this estate, the Emperour Hanky with many good men of warreentred Italy, and came to Rome; whither he called a Synode and Councel to The Emperous be held of all the Bishops in Italy, and of most parts of Christendome; which cameinto Italy being affembled, together with the three Popes, they treated of them three. and (after many verdicts and opinions) the Emperour and all the rest concluded. that these three should be held for no Popes, but be deposed, and that another should be chosen, considering the voluntarie renunciation made by BENEDICT. and other nullities and infufficiencies in the three elections: And this refolution was put in effect, and they were condemned, deprined, and banished the countrie: And by the same Councell, with the fauour of the Emperour, a Germane prelate and Bishop of Bambergh was chosen, and was called CLEMENT the second; who fo soone as he was Pope, annointed and crowned the Emperour, af- Pope clement ter the accustomed manner, with great feasting and solemnitie. After this coro- the second nation the Emperour departed from Rome towards Capua, which the Africane Infidels had taken, in time of the warres made by the Normanes in those parts; and perour, obtaining notable victories against them, draue them out of the countrie; and fetting the best order that hee could in all the rest, returned to Rome; and thence vifiting Italy and Lombardy, he returned into Germany, and was scarcely come this ther when Pope CLEMENT the second (whom he had chosen) died in Rome, when he had been Pope but onely nine moneths; and not without suspition of poyson by the practife of one STEPHEN a Bauarian Bishop, who more by force and through friendship, then any right of election, gat the Papacie, and was called DAMAS V s the second: Onely BLOND Vs putteth another Pope betweene CLE-MENT the second and DAMAS VS, whom he calleth STEPHEN, of whom no other author (that I have seene) maketh any mention: but I gesse that he is deceiucd in the name, for this DAMAS VS Was first called STEPHEN. In those times the Popes were of fo little worth, and the Church lands were fo viurped by tyrants. that they durft attempt nothing, and therefore were accordingly disobeyed and lightly regarded. Returning to Pope D A M As v s. I say, that the Papacie which he 🛶 obtained by force, he held and enjoyed the fame but three and ewentie laies, and he being dead, the Romanes neither would, nor durst make choice of a pope, Without the Emperours consent, for (as some write) pope C LEMENT the second had so ordained when he was (at his suite) chosen; and they did so, imagining that

Pope Leo the

ninth woas in

throwne and

the Emperour would have fent them word, that they should have chosen him whom they should hold most worthie thereof. The newes of pope CLEMENTS death, and of his fuccessor DAMASV s, and the Ambassadours, came to the Emperour in a manner all at one instant : to the Ambassadours he gaue no such anfwere as they expected, but accepting their offer, chose in Germany the Bishop of Tulon, whosename was BRVNVs, whom he nominated to be chosen pope, and made him presently to depart towards Rome; which the faid Bishop was constrained to accept, much against his will, and in a manner perforce. PLATINA and BLONDVs fay that from the time of his departure out of Germany, he made him to weare the papall habit: but a Monke whose name was ILDEBRAND meeting him you the way, perswaded him to put off that weede, seeing that vet he was not chosen; alleaging further, that the Emperour had no authoritie thereto: which perswasion so much prenailed with BRVNVs, that he went to Rome as a private man, repenting that he had entred fo farre into the action. This was in

yeere of our Lord 1049.

Being come to Rome, the Cardinals, clergie, and people thereof, confulted about chusing a new Pope, but would not accept of BRVNVs, because the Emperours should not challenge to themselves any right of election : but this I LDE. BRAND vied fuch meanes, and gaue fuch counfell to the Cardinals, that by a generall confent BRVNV s was chosen, and called L E o the ninth; when the Chaire had been voide the space of fixe moneths. LEO being made Pope, GISV LEHVS Duke of the Normanes, being then Lord of Pulia and Calabria, made war against him, and befreged the citie of Benevent, which the Emperour HENRY the second gaue to the Church of Rome: whereof when the Emperour was advertifed, befides the forces which the Pope had already leuied, hee fent him other; with which the Pope departed from Rome against GISVLPHVS: but GISVLPHVS minin vons in abattaile outer being the better man of warre, and having alreadie taken the citie of Beneuent, gathered his forces together and staied for him in the plaine fields; and the pope taken prisoner by Gisulphus more like a valiant Almaine, then an expert man at armes, gaue him battaile, and was ouerthrowne and taken prisoner therein. So, as faith IOANNES DE Co-Duke of Nor-LVMNA, it might be faid to him as CHRIST faid to S.P ETER: Put VD thy fword into the sheath: But being prisoner, GISVLPHVS entertained him with great honour, and presently the same day set him at libertie, and gaue him companie and feruants fit to attend on him, wherewith hee went to Rome: and they afterwards came to a composition betweene themselues. Herein is a great confusion among the Historiographers, for the Germanes write that this pope went into Germany to see the Emperour, and that there he affembled a Synode or Councell in the citie of Mentz, and that the Emperour came the fecond time into Italy: Others write nothing, either of the popes going, or of the Emperours fecond comming; in the rest they all agree. L so held the chaire fine yeeres and halfe, and when hee was dead, one GEBEARDVS a Germane Bishop borne in Bauiere, was chosen, and called Victor the fecond; which they did to gratifie the Emperour; and prefently without any delay, to the end that he should not be discontented, for that they had made choice of a pope without his confent; the new pope and clergie fent I t DEBRAND to him, who perfourmed his legacie in fuch fort, that the Emperour approoued and confirmed all what they had done.

While these things passed in Italy, the subjects of PETER king of Hungary (whom the Emperour had placed in that kingdome) rebelled against him; and fent into Polana for certaine great men of Hungary which lived there in exile, one

of which was called And REVV, and another LEVENTA, which were their cap- Peter king of taines; and after other great matters (which I omit) they laid hands on their king, taken by his and putting out his eyes, made him die in prison; and with the helpe of certaine subject, and Barbarians and Infidels, which came to their aide, flew fome Bifhops: which ladhis eyes when the Emperour knew, hee made great preparation for warre against them. principally against ANDREVV, which tooke vpon him the name of king; and hauing builded and rigged vp a great number of Barkes and Ships, the Emperour came downe the riner Danubius, from Austrich to Buda, and to other places, where this ANDRE vv and the rest were; which voiage had ill successe, for his aduersaries gat certaine excellent swimmers and divers which would lie a long time vn- Expert swimder the water, and these in a night buldged the Emperours barkes, in such fort mers. that the greatest part of his munition and victuall was lost; so as he was constrained to return with his people in the best maner that he could, without effecting any thing of worth. Afterwards hee twice entred Hungary; in the first, notwithstanding that he went with great preparation of horse and soote, yet he obtained no notable victorie; and the third yeere hee made peace with the Hungarians. AND REVY remaining still their king, who acknowledged a certaine kinde of superioritie. This being ended, and it feeming a small time since that the Emperour began to repose himselfe; through the secret judgement of God, great calamities enfued in many countries, as famine, cruell plagues of petitilence, horrible earth- calamities by quakes, and other lamentable disafters: after which ensued the death of the Em- Gods promiperour the end of whose raigne was for the causes aforesaid, pitifull and sorrowfull. It is written, that of forrow and griefe, to fee fo great euils and miferies to happen in his time, he fell ficke and died leaving behind him one fonne of about The death of tenne veeres old called HENRY, whom before his death he made to be crowned the Emperour king of the Romanes, the Electors confenting thereto; and three daughters, cond. which afterward were married to feuerall princes: he raigned cuenteene veeres. Anno Dom. and died in the veere of our Lord 1057.

In Constantinople during the time of this Emperour H ENR Yof whom we now spake)raighed Constantinvs Monaches, by his marrage with the Emperefle Zo E, as I faid in the end of the Emperor CONRADE: This CONSTANTINE was a retchlesse and vicious Emperour, and a publike ill liuer. In his time began When the the Turkes to be of great power in Asia, and did much harme in the lands of the Turkes because empire. This Emperour was also much troubled by some which rebelled against to grove mighhim; yet he at length subdued them all: and so betweene prosperitie and aduersistie, he raigned thirteene yeeres. In his time also the empire did greatly decay, both in power and authoritie. One onely good qualitie he had, which was, that he was an almes giver, and a great relieuer of the poore; and made a great Hospitall for old men only, such as through their great age being decrepit, could not get their liuing Both he and the Emperesse died (in a manner)at one time; and both of the plague. The husband and wife being dead, THEODORA, fifter to ZOE had the empire, by the authoritie and fentence of the Senate, and people of Constantinople, and gouerned the same with such equitie, justice and quietnes, for the space of two yeers, that they forrowed that the had not lived much longer. Before that the died, by the counfell of certaine Eunuches (by whom the was much ruled) the made Y s ACIVS CONNENUS Generall of her forces, who was avaliant and Wife captaine. THEODAORA being dead, a man of great age, called MICHAEL, was made Emperour: but prouing to be incapable & infushcient for the gouernment, which he had not ruled one whole yeere to an end; by a generall confent

612

he was deposed from the Empire, and YSACIVS CONNENVS (Whom THEO-DORA had made her Captaine Generall) was chosen in his place; who raigned two yeeres; and although he made a good shew of himselfe, yet (considering his short time) he could doe no notable matter, and him succeeded Con-STANTINUS DUCA.

## THE LIFE OF HENRY THE FOVRTH OF THAT NAME,

AND FOURESCORE AND THIR-TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.

> And of those which in his time raigned in Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Enry being yet but a childe when his father died, and he chosen and proclai-

med Emperor; it behoued him therefore for many yeeres space, to live under the government of his mother, who by the consent of all men, tooke the charge of him, and the protection of the Empire; but afterwards being come to riper reeres, he would no longer line under her commaund, but tooke the gouernment into his owne hands. The first enterprise that he undertoooke in the warres was against the Saxons, wherein hee behaued himselfe so gallantly (notwithstanding that he was but young) that he brought them to his obedience; yet they afterwards rebelled against him, for that he would not endure the inscience of the Pope and court of Rome, which he little regarded; this fecond warre was farre more dangerous then the first (although be had the victoric) and made him more disobedient to the Pope then before : whereupon he was so-Icmily excomunicated, and deprined of the title & dignitie of the Empire, for that he called a Councell in Germany against Pope Gregorie. Of which excomunication he could never be absoluted antill that he had three daies together come barefooted, to intreate the Pope for pardon, who met him at Vercelli. Whilest the Emperor was in this parley with the Pope (many princes of Germanie rebelling against him, made another Emperor, which was Rodulph Duke of Saxony; with whom Henry comming to a battaile, had no fuch victorie as he expetted; but was againe excommunicate, and

deprined of the title of Emperor; which was given to Rodulph newly chosen: upon this occasion,

Henry being highly despited chose another Pope, called Clement, and made a schisme in the Papaeie which was the occasion of very great war; but Henry after the death of his competitor Rodulob. came into Italy, and believed Rome; and entring it, was crowned by the bands of Pone Clement the other Pope being retired into the Castle Saint Angelo; to whom great succors being comming. Henry abandoned Rome, and with Pope Clement went into Germany, and Pope Gregory accompanied with his crue of Cardinals, went to the citie of Salerno, where he ended his daies. At this time followed the enterprise of Ierusalem; and the rebellion of Henries eldest some Conrade, who rebelled, for that the Emperor Sought to make his second some whose name was also Henry, his successor, which being done, he also rebelled against his father, so as there were more then civell warres betweene them; neither could there any meanes or waies be found to anneale them; neither could this warre be ended but through the death of the old Emperor, who baning publikely (but by constraint) renounced all his jurisdiction of the Empire to his some, and afterwards repenting, and feeking to recover the same, could obtaine no composition with him, and so for forrow and griefe falling licke, died, God permitting him to make so miserable an end.



Ruly the three Emperours called HENRIES, of which we haue treated, were very valiant and worthic princes in armes, as the father of him of whome we now begin to write, and the other two before mentioned; but none of them can be compared to this fourth, of whom we are now to discourse. It is certaine, that he was valiant, and addicted to the bearing of armes, as being trained vp therein, and was one of the most excellent princes that euer was in the

world; for vntill this day it is not found written, that any Emperour came so often to blowes with his enemies as he did; for all authors affirme, that he fought in raunged battailes with enfignes displayed threescore and two seuerall times; and forthe most part had euer the victorie; to which number IVLIVS CESAR. MARCY'S MARCELLY'S neuer attained (which two in their time excelled all others) This Emperour raigned fiftie yeeres. He was a man liberall, well spoken. very wife, and had many other naturall gifts and vertues; but (as faith this author) The qualities he stained and spotted them all with his ambition, for he would be Lord ouer efthe Emperor all, both spirituall and temporall, contemning the Canons and Decretals of the fourth. Church of Rome, which was the occasion, that in his latter daies, he was disobeved by those which ought him greatest obedience, which were his owne children. The Historie of him cannot be but longer then ordinarie, for that it treateth of many great accidents which happened in the space of more then fiftie yeeres that he raigned. I fay then, that when his father died, he was not fully ten yeeres old; but yet for his fathers worthines, and his mothers vertues, whose name was YNEs (an excellent and very wife woman) he was crowned and obeyedfor Emperour and King of the Germanes, as his father in his life time had intitled him; and by the confent of the most part of the princes, his mother tooke vpon her the gouernment, both of his person and of the Empire also: And all that time she gouerned very wife and valorously, as well in peace as in warre, against some princes, which for that she was a woman, and her sonne the Emperor To very a childe, rebelled against him: Into Italy she sent one GILBERT for Gouernor, who afterwards was the cause and moter of great schismes and disfentions in the Church of Rome. Of those which rebelled, the first was a great Lord called FREDERICEE of GILBERGH, and his brothers, all which were men of great power: but she tooke so good order with them, that she compelled them to sew for pardon, and to yeeld their obedience. The greatest trouble and difficultie

difficultie that she had, was against Rodvirh, Earle of Reinsfelt; with whom in processe of time, HENRY had most cruell warre; who by the aide of Romoi-Dy's Archbishop of Constance, tooke the Emperours fifter Mayva, and married her, reckoning by this title to have been Emperour: and the Emperelle to the end (to bring him into fauour, and to reduce him to her sons seruice) made him Duke of Suenia, which then was voy de, through the death of O THO which died without iffue; which Dukedome was promifed to a great Earle called BERT OLDE in recompence whereof, the Empereffe gaue him Corimbia, & fo she pacified the great troubles which then arose; and some other by force of armes, with the aide and affiltance of fuch as remained loyall subjects. But in the end the young Emperour growing to riper yeeres, by the aduice of some which were of his counfell disobeying his mother, sought to be out of her authoritie, being thereto perfwaded, chiefly by ANO (and as others fay OTHO) Archbishop of Colen, who delt so cunningly, that hee gat him into his protection, and by the affiftance of fome others, he affembling the princes, alleaged, that it was very vndecent, and ynfit to be rulded by a woman, leeing that the Emperour was of fufficient discretion and understanding to doe what was convenient. The Emperor being gotten out of the power and controulment of his mother, the Archbishop commaunded in such sorte that all went to wracke; for being bred vp at such libertie. he did what he listed, which in the end was the cause of his ruine; for he became both licencious, and prefumptuous; fauoring some, and grieuing others; by reason whereof he was ill beloued of many, and gaue himselfe to hunting, and to fuch other disports, as that age is chiefly delighted with all. His mother seeing her felfe so little regarded, and that fire could beare no more sway with him, went to Rome, where she lived and died in a Cloister of Nuns. Germany standing in these termes, in Italy a little before this time died Pope NICHOLAS thesecond, Tope Wicolas, when he had held that chaire four eyecres. This Pope recourred much of the Church lands which were vsurped by fundrie Captaines and Gouernors, which made themselves tyrants thereof. And healso gaue the title of Duke of Pulia and Calabria, to G v 15 c AR Da Normane, being alreadic Lord of those prouinces, who made himselfe and his countries subject and feudatorie to the Church of Rome. This Pope held a Councell, wherein hee ordained that from thenceforth, the Cardinals onely should chuse the Popes, thereby to avoide the factions and disfention which arose concerning the same; as it appeareth in the chapter In nomi-The dignitic of me domine in the three and twentith diftinction; which is observed vntill this day. By this meane, the Deacons and Cardinals attained to great estimation, for vn-Cardinals. till then, they were not of any fuch account (although alreadievery much efteemed.) This name and dignitie of Cardinals, was in Rome at the beginning, but a troublesome and painefull office; for they were as the Curates of parishes, and had the charge of ministring the Sacraments, and of burying the dead, and were called Priests Cardinals, as the more worthie & of greater reputation: and as Rome was then held for the head of all other Churches, so these Priests Cardinals were regarded and more respected then any other; and they afterwards attained to greater preheminence, for that they were euer neere vnto the Pope; and being in the time of this Pope NICHOLAS the fecond established electors, they grew to be of greater reputation; but not in fo high degree, as we now fee them, vntill the time of Pope Innocant the fourth, about the yeere of our Lord, one thoufand two hundred foure and fortie; for hee gaue them libertie to ride on their footeclothes, and to weare such robes as they now vse to weare, to the end, that as they did excell other men in their weedes and ornaments, so should they in their behauior and vertuous conditions: wherefore to depaint Saint AMBROSE with a Cardinals hat on his head is a meere mockery; for in his time there were not any and fo at length the dignitie of Cardinall came to be the greatest, and the highest degree next to the Pope, and they accompany and counsell him in all matters of importance: but many of them have carried themselves so prophanely, that they have given iuft occasion to the world, to note and murmure at their Confistorie.

Pope NICHOLAS being dead, ANSELME Bishop of Luca was chosen, and called ALEXANDER the second; against whom, GILBERT the Gouernour of Lombardy for the Emperor, by the consent of certaine Bishops of that Province, made a schime in the Papacie, and chose another Pope: But Gothifredvs and his wife M AVV D, (which were the greatest Princes in Italyat that time) protected the first Pope: And in Rome and abroad elsewhere, followed many slaughters and murthers of the one and the other partie, vntill that in the ende Pope ALEXANDER preuailed, and the other Pope fled to Milan. Whilest these matters paffed in Italy (the Emperor, as it was faid, permitting and allowing the same) the like or greater were tolerated in Germany, for he suffered Priests to marrie, and gaue Benefices and Bishoprickes without the Popes licence or authority, wherewith the Pope was much displeased, and twife or thrise sent his ambassadors to the Emperour about that matter. And in other matters were great troubles and factions, and many role against the Emperour: the first were the Saxons, for from O THO Duke of Saxonie and Bauiere, who was accused of treason, the Emperour tooke the Duchie of Baniere, which his mother had given him, and gave the same to a principall man, whosename was G v = 1 PHO; against these Saxons was the Emperors first attempt in the warres, when hee was scarcely eighteene veeres olde; wherein shewing himselfe to bee of an high minde, and free from feare or cowardize, he personally fought in many battels and skirmishes against that people, which is, and euer hath been accompted for one of the most valiant nations of the world : but he finally ouerthrew them, and compelled them ( for this time) to yeeld to doe him feruice. Having obtained these victories, the Emperour sent into Italy for his ambassador to the Pope, the Archbishop of Colein, with sufficient authoritie to conclude, what to him seemed best to be done, and to excuse him of such things as were layd to his charge: who being come into Italy, put GILBERT out of the Chancellorship and government of Lombardy, which the Empresse I N & shad given him, and placed therein the Bishop of Bercelli, and from thence, with great authority and maiestie, he went to Rome, where (Pope ALEXANDER giving him publique audience) he made a solemne Oration; wherein in effect, in the behalfe of his Lord the Emperour, he reproued the Pope; for having accepted the Papacie without his confirmation, with other matters in the behalfe of the Emperor: wherto the Archdeacon HILDEBRAND. by the Popes order, made avery peremptory answere, alleaging that the Pope ought not to attend any fuch confirmation; and he fo sharpely reprehended the Emperor, that the Archbishop was constrained to hold his peace. After this, many matters in Italy, which (much against my will) I omit, to the end to treate of the rest of what passed in the time of the Emperor HENRY, of whom onely I Write this History.

About this time, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand fixty and fixe, Edward King of England dying without iffue, made WILLIAM Duke of

Normandie Ggg 2

Normandie his heire, who with the aide of BALD VVIN Earle of Flanders, obtained the kingdome, and fo the houses of England and of Normandie were vnited. and so continued a long time in the Kings thereof, and in their successors. The Archbishop of Colein having dispatched his businesse in Italy, returned ( discontent with his answere) into Germanie, and within fewe dayes after died Pope ALEXANDER, having been so eleven yeeres and halfe: afterwards the Archbishop of Rauenna revolted from the Church of Rome. ALEXANDER being dead. by the general confent of al the Cardinals and Clergie, HILDEBRAND the Archdeacon (often before named) was made Pope, and was called GREG ORY the feuenth; who fent his ambaffadours to the Emperour, praying and requiring him to become an obedient sonne to his Church, and to alter the manner of his gouernment in Germanie; and therby gaue him further to vnderstand, that he was determined not to allow thereof, but to vse his authority in redressing the same. The Emperour hereto gaue an equiuocall answere, but performed in effect nothing of what was required, perfifting that the Pope ought not to accept the Papacie without his confirmation, according to the agreement made betweene his father the Emperour HENRY the third, and Pope CLEMENT the second, and so these ambassadors returned without any conclusion: this was in the seuenteenth veere of his raigne, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand seuenty foure. At this time, (and also both before and after it) the Emperour held cruel warres with the Dukes of Saxonie, which againe rebelled against him, they alleaging the Emperours disobedience to the Church of Rome to be the occasion thereof. This was the most dangerous warre that ever hee waged, wherein passed many perillous conflicts and feats of Armes, the Emperor therein hazarding his person, (fovaliant and defirous was he to beare armes) & he principally fought one very bloody battell, wherein he prevailed; but (as faith BLONDYs) with the loffe of five thoufand men: and the Emperour, and his brother in lawe R o D V LPH, which afterward was his great enemie, fought therein with their owne handsmost valiantly.

While as these matters passed in Germany, Italy was not free from factions and controuerfies, between the Imperialists, the Pope, and others; for GILBERT the beforenamed Archbishop of Rauenna, (who had been gouernour for the Emperour in Italy ) layed a plot; which was that for a fmuch as the Pope had determined to excommunicate the Emperour, hee therefore secretly agreed with one CINCIV sayong Romane Knight, (whose father was Prefect of the citie) to apprehend the Pope; affuring him, that the Emperour would accept thereof, for a speciall peece of service; and he accordingly put the matter in execution: the pope being upon Christmas eeuen saying Masse in the Church of S. MARY the greater in Rome; this Cincivs, with a good guard, entred the Church, and laying hands upon him, caried him away, and in a tower detained him prisoner. But the people so soone as it was day (being aduertised thereof) went to CINcivs his house, and setting the pope at liberty, rased the tower, from the top to the foundation: and of all such of CINCIVs his servants as they found, they cut off the nofes, and banished them from Rome; and CINCIV's escaping the death (which they defired to have given him ) by flight, durft not flay in Italy, but went into Germany to the Emperor: And this Archbishop GILBERT, whose practife was not yet discouered, setting a good countenance vpon the matter, departed the citie; but being come to Rauenna, was by the pope excommunicate, and deprined of all his ecclefiafticall dignities and Benefices.

In Germany were no leffe contempts against his Holinesse then in Italy, for (25

the Abbot WESPERGENSIS and other Germanicauthors recount, behaves he in Germanya-Italians which verefie the fame ) by the procurement of SIGEFRIDVS Archbi-gainft the Pope. shop of Mentz, with some other Bishops and Abbots which ioyned with him. a Councell was held against the pope, (the Bishops of Saxony disallowing and contradicting the same) in which Councell it was determined, that GREGORY should not be held for Pope; and that they all should renounce their obedience vnto him: whereupon the Emperour and his Councel, sent for ambassadour to Pope GREGORIE, a priest, whose name was Rowland. The Pope in like manner called a Councell against the Emperor, at Saint I OHN DR LATRAN in Rome: where Roveland being arrived, and the Pope and his Councell giving him audience, he in the behalfe of the Emperor, required GREGORIE to defift from any longer exercifing the papall function, and to refigne the authoritie of Pope, and he further notified the fame to the Cardinals, willing them to repaire into Germany to the Emperour, who would appoint them a pope. GREGORIE was herewith much troubled, and for as much as Rovvland was but an Ambaffador, he made him prefently to depart without any answere. But it is also written, that the Emperours mother, at the popes request, went into Germanie, accompanied with many great prelates, to perswade her sonne, to defist from intermedling with the donation of Bishoprickes, or other ecclesiastical Benefices: to forbid the mariage of pricits, and to yeeld obedience to the Church of Rome: but for that it tooke no effect, the pope very folemnly excommunicated the Emperor, and deprined him of all imperiall dignitie; and he also excommunicated all fuch as tooke his part, and released all the princes and Lords of Germany, and else- The Smeron where, which ought him any dutie or allegeance, from their oathes, homage, and Heary the bands of obedience or subjection, giving free libertie to all men; and authoritie manicated by to the princes electors to chuse another Emperor, such as should best please them. ibe Pope. The Archbishop of Mentz was likewise excommunicate, and deprived of all ecclefiafficall dignitic, and with him all fuch others as had bin in the Councel aforefaid; but before the pope had proceeded so farre herein, hee aduertised all the princes in christendome of all, both past, and present: and the Emperor wrote to them in like manner defending his cause, and excusing himselfe against the popes accusations. The popes terrible sentence being published in Germany (as there were many that tooke his part, principally the prelates of Saxony and others) Ro-DULP H Duke thereof with many other princes called a Diet or Councel wherein they refolued to require the Emperor to aske the pope forgiuenes, and to submit himselfe to the Church of Rome, which if he refused to doe, they concluded to renounce their obedience vnto him. The Emperour notwithstanding that he was avery braue man, and exceeding valorous (as some say) fainedly, and as others fay of his owne accord, promifed to doe what they required, which hee openly protested. Finally, it was agreed, to send to the pope, to come into Germany, where full and entire obedience should be yeelded vnto him; and in the name of the Princes and Lords affembled at that Diet or Councell, the Archbishop of Trevier and some others of great account, went to the pope, and intreated

him with fuch instancie, that he was perswaded, and to take his way towards Ger-

many, to meete the Emperor, who stayed (as they said) for him, and would come

to aske him forgiuenes, and submit himselfe into his hands. The pope came to

the citic of Bercelli in Lombardy, where being advertised, that the Emperor came

towards him with great troupes of men at armes; fearing that he would have ei-

the Abbot WESPERGENSIS and other Germane authors recount, besides the & Councel beld

ther killed him, or taken him prisoner, gaue ouer his journey, and turned into the Ggg 3

countrie

The Emperors fubmillion, who merall dayes barefooted to the citie gates wherein the Pope was, fueine for abfolution.

countrey of GOTHIREDV sandhis wife MAVVD, and was by them protected in an expugnable towne and caffle, called Canufio or Canifio, whither within fewer dayes came the Emperour; who lodging his armie before the towne, in great humilitie fent to intreate the pope to absolue him of his excommunication, offering to become his obedient fonne and fubiect, and three dayes together came came three fe- barefooted to the gates of the citie to fue for this absolution; but the pope would not yeeld thereto. In conclusion, there passed many treaties, oathes and promifes; but at length (through the instant suit of the said MAVD, and of ADELAVS Earle of Sanoy, and as some say, of I NEs the Emperors mother also ) the pope admitting the Emperour into his presence, absolued him: but whereas he had deprived him of his empire, and had layd other penalties vpon him for former matters, he referred that to the judgement of the next generall Councell, which should presently be called; and the Emperour promised to stand to the Councels arbitrament, and to banish from his company CINCIVS, which apprehended the pope in Rome, and some excommunicated prelates.

HENRY THE FOURTH.

The Emperour remained some dayes in those quarters, (as some write, expe-Aing when the pope would have come foorth of that Citie, imagining that hee trulting to the peace might have been apprehended) and departing from thence, went to Paula in Lumbardie, where the before named Cincivs died, and the Emperor by reason of the great abundance of raine which fell at that time, made his abode there for certaine dayes; in which hee was given to vnderstand, that in Germany, the Saxons and other his enemies, (among which were BBRTOLD Earle of Carinthia, the Duke of Bauiere, RODVLPH Duke of Suemia, and others) rebelled against him; and affembling themselves together (denving him their obedience) made the Duke of Saxenie Emperour, of whom wee have heretofore made mention, who was a man of the greatest accompt both for power and valour, of his time in Germany. This (after the Abbot WESPERGENSIS his computation) was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand seventy and nine, and in the twentieth yeere of the raigne of the Emperour HENRY the fourth.

These newes being being brought to the Emperour Henry, (as hee was a man of an high minde and great courage) with the greatest fury of the world, he departed towards Germany, and by the way gathered together all fuch his friends as tooke his part, which were many: and RODVLPH, affifted by the Saxons and Sueuians, accompanied with some Princes and great prelates; the most cruell warre began betweene them two, that had beene euerseene in German; which lasted full foure yeeres after. In the beginning whereof (besides fundry conflicts and fortunes of warre, whereto either of these Emperours did set their hands) they came to a field battell of power against power: which for that their A battell be- forces were in a manner equall, and both the Generals very valiant, was very tween the Em- doubtfull and bloody: HENRY to defend the Empire, and RODVLPHO get the perour and the fame, did both that day marueiles in Armes in their owne persons. Finally, the authors affirme, that either partie fought with fuch resolution, that having spent the greatest part of the day therein, the battell was ended without any certaine apparance of victory, both Campes remaining ful of dead and wounded bodies; and each Captaine was constrained of necessitie to withdraw his armie from the other, to the end to refresh and relieue his troupes; but yet the warre ceased not.

In the meane time both these Princes sent their Ambassadours to the pope, either of them entreating him to condemne the other: and the pope returned ambassadours to both these princes, requiring them both to lay downe their weapons

weapons; and HENRY (according to the agreement made with him in Lanufio) to permit a generall Councell to bee held in Germanie; and that either of them should stand to such arbitrament, as by that Councell should be awarded. Ro-DY LPH accepted these conditions; but HENRY answered that he was not bound thereto, except the pope would first excomunicate R odvlph; and so prosecuted the warre with greater resolution then before. The pope receiuing this aunfwere, fent a new excomunication against him, and approved and ratified the election of Rodulphus; to whom (as I OHANNES DE COLUMNA, ANTO-NINVS, VINCENCIVS, IOHN CVSPINIAN, IOHN CARION, and manyothers doe write) he fent a crowne, wherewith he should be crowned, with this incription, Petra dedit petro : Petrus diadema Rodulpho.

After this, both these Emperors purposed againe to try their fortunes by battaile: notwithstanding that it was in the middest of winter, which was no lesse cruelland doubtfull then the former, but rather more, and therein (as faith Pla-TINA) was as little figne of victorie, as in the last: some authors attribute the victoric to RODVLPH, and others to HENRY; the cause whereof was (as faith the Abbot WESPERGENSIS and some others) forthat in the beginning Ro-DV LPHS vauntguard of Saxons was put to flight, and HENRY profecuted the victorie: wherein the Duke of Bohemia, who bare R o DVLPHs imperiall standard. ma lea great shew of his valour, which standard his successors afterwards bare in the wars, in remembrance of this victorie. And in this meane season, Robvirds arrierguarde robbed the Emperor HENRIES tents and his campe, and so they might retire without being broken, and either party might pretend to haue got-

ten the victory: this is the cause why it is so diversly reported. But howsoever it was. Henry was wounded, although not dangeroufly, but yet the war ceafed not: for thorry after either of thefe Emperors reinforcing his army, defired to fight the Athird basthird battaile, with power against power, (notwithstanding that betweene them the Emperor was dayly notable feruice) and neither partie refusing the fight, the two armies Heavy the iovned, and they fought with greater furie then at any time before, for the harmes fourth, and which were done, and the flaughters made of their people of either fide were fo of Saxony. great and so many, and their harred and malice was growne to so high degree. that they thought on nothing elle but how to kill and destroy; with this desire and rage they maintained the fight: wherein after the death of an infinit number of men, and the effution of much bloud, HENRY obtained the victorie, and RODVLPH was ouerthrowne, and lost many of his Saxons, which were very good men; but notwithstanding that R odvlph was ouerthrowne, yet (as a valorous prince) gathering his people together, and reinforcing his armie, he rerired into Saxony, which was his best refuge: where were some treaties of peace and of a composition to be made betweene the Emperor HENRY and him; which tooke no effect, for HENRY would not determine the wars, but by the fworde: for as he was a man of a great and high minde, so he presumed to subdue all his aduerfaries by his power, and his hautie stomacke was such as could endure no

riuall or equall which through his late victorie greatly encreased. The affaires of Germany standing upon these termes, HENRY still following the warre, sought the popes destruction, and procured to be assembled in a citie in Germany, fuch prelates as tooke part with him, in the name of a Councel; which chose and made the before named GILBERT Archbishop of Rauenna, pope (who was pope GREGORIES capitall and deadly enemie; and had laid the plot before remembred for his apprehension in Rome by CINCIVS) and was called CIE-

fen Emperor.

MENT. Hereupon began a schisme and division in the Church of Rome, for those which tooke part with the Emperour HENRY, held him for pope. The Emperor at that time fent his sonne H E N R Y into Italy, there to gouerne such estates as were fubicat vnto him, and to warre against such as held with pope GREGORIE: of which, that M A vv D (before named) was the principall; and the leuied her power and came to a battaile with HENRY the sonne, wherein she was ouerthrowne. for which the pope was very forie; comparing this his ill fortune, with the schissine made by pope GILBERT. The Emperour was herewith so much encouraged, that he leuying the greatest power that he was able to make, went to seeke RODVLPH; who (as I faid) was in Saxony, making preparation for the warres: and was alreadie in so good readines, that he doubted not to fight with the Emperour, in hope to have overthrowne him. And so they sought a most cruell and bloodic battaile; wherein (as then there were no Cannons, Culuerines, Musket shot, or other artillerie, as now is vsed) neither partie wanting either force or courage, or standing in any seare or doubt to come to blowes with the other; with dint of fword and launce, they flew and wounded their enemies ; the two Emperours in person fighting in the thickest of the prease. This fight was maintained the greatest part of the day; the end whereof is recounted by Historiographers A fourth batin fundrie manners: the most common opinion is, that the Emperor HENRIES taile hetuveen partie was overthrowne, and that Rodviph had the victorie; but was fore wounthe Emperour and Duice Roded and loft his right hand: fome fay that hee received that hurt by mischance adulph : and bis monest his owne people, which wound bled so much and pained him so fore, that he could not profecute the victorie, and therefore was constrained to retire himselfe to a strong castle to be cured; wherein within few daies after he died. So as the Emperour H E NR Y of a man conquered became a conquerour: for Ro-DVLPH being miffing, his people disbanded, and fo HENRY became Mafter of the field. Yet BEONDVS writeth, that the Emperour HENR vfled out of the field the fame day wherein the battaile was fought, and lay close in a castle, vntill that he was certified of the death of RODVLPHVS; and that he then came foorth to enioy the victorie, through the death of his enemie, whom hee had not ouerthrowne. And RODVLPHVs his feruants going about to burie the body of their deceased Lord, with the enfignes and ornaments of Emperour; some asked of the Emperour HENRY, wherfore he fuffered RODVPHVS to be buried with fuch honour, seeing that he was a tyrant and his enemie: whereto he truly made an excellent answere: I would to God (quoth he) that all mine enemies were (like Ro-DV LP H)buried with the ornaments and enfignes of Emperours.

ing of the Em-perour Heary the fourth.

The Emperour HENRY having flaine his competitor RODVLPHYS, making fmall account of the rest, seised Suevia into his hands, and dispossessed BERTOL-DV s therof, to whom RODVLPH had given the fame; & leaving garrisons in the frontiers of Saxony (which was not yet throughly pacified) and establishing the best order that hee could in all parts of Germany; with his victorious armie hee tooke his way towards Italy; whither he came within few daies, having with him the pope CLEMENT which was chosen in Germany, with a determination to depose pope GREGORIES to whose aide the aforenamed MAVV D had sent a great Supplie of men of warre; and pope GREGORIE had alreadie fortified and victualled Rome: for the Emperour came with fo great force and furie, that there was no reason to attend his comming in the open fields; so as without encountring any refistance, he came to the very walles of the citie, whereto he presently commaunded affault to be given: but he found fuch refiftance therein, that being HENRY THE FOURTH.

out of hope to enter it at that time, he burned and spoyled all the countrie round about it, continuing his fiege before the citie notwithstanding; which was one of the most notable that hath been seene before any citie in the world, aswell for continuance of time, as for the many accidents and aduentures in armes; for it Rome hestigged continued about three whole yeeres, in which time there were many cruell affaults and fallies; and the belieged endured great famine and want of all things necessarie: and in the meane time the Emperour made some roades into Lombardie, and into other parts of Italy: the Germane pope CLEMENT commanding his armie in time of his absence. In this siege was taken the Vaticane, wherein are the Popes palace, and S.P ETER'S Church, which were destroyed and burned by the Emperour, together with the best and fairest houses and buildings therein. And whilest that the Emperour was busied in Italy, they were not in quiet in Germany: for befides the ordinarie warres, the Saxons aduaunced a great man called HARMAN to the dignitie of Emperour: but this was a matter which continued not long, and did little hurt, for they themselves expelled him. And in the end of the long time that Rome was thus befieged, ROBERT GVISCARDA mightie Normane, Prince and Lord of Pulia and of Calabria, being griened to fee the pope thus diffressed, resolued to giue ouer his warres with the Greekes in Dalmatia and in other parts, and (as the popes liege man) to come to the reliefe of Rome: and to that effect left his sonne BOHEMVND in his place and levied forces and other necessfaries fit for so high an enterprise. The newes hereof being euery where published, the Emperour with greater care and circumspection more strictly continued his siege; and vsing as well policie as force, caused to be published amongst the Romanes, that his desire was, but to be absolued and crowned by the pope, and that hee confirming him in the empire, he would prefently depart from Rome: Whereto the pope would not give care, except the Emperour would give fecuritie for the performance of his promise. But the Emperour vsed such meanes, that the greatest part of the Romanes being tired with folong and so cruell a siege, went ouer to the Emperours campe; and others were so bold as to tell the pope to his face, that he did ill in not receiving him into Rome, seeing he promised presently to depart againe from thence : besides this the pope was certified, that fome had determined, whether he would or no to let the Emperour into the citie: whereupon he withdrew himselfe into the Castle S. Angelo, and with him all the Cardinals; and made a nephew of his whose name was R v s T I c v s, to possesse himselse of another Castle called Septem Solia; wherein he was well aduised, for the Emperour was presently received into the citie, and with him the Germane Pope CLEMENT, and the said castles by his commaundement were presently strictly besieged, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand sourescore and soure: And the Emperour with great so- 1084. lemnitie was annointed and crowned by Pope CLEMENT, more accompanied The Emperous with men of warre then with Bishops and prelates. Yet hot omitting to batter the annointed and castles, wherein Pope GREGORY and his nephew were; the assaults given were crowned in fo furious, that RvsTICVs was driven to yeeld himselfe prisoner: but the castle S. Angelo was fo strong that the Emperour could not preuaile against it. The matter standing in this estate, the said ROBERT GVISCARD so much hastened his comming with fuch and fo great power, that (as the Italian authors write) the Emperour durst not stay for him; but spreading a report, that by reason of some vigent affaires in Germany, it behoued him presently to depart; he left part of his forces for the defence of the citie, and to continue the fiege of the castle, wherein

Hildebraad called Pope

Gregorie the

the Pope was; and fortified the Capitoll, which then was strong, and repayred other towers and fortreffes decayed. The Abbot WESPERGENSIS, and other Germane authors write nothing of any fuch feare as the Emperour was in. but write all the rest. But howsoeuer it was, he went out of Italy, and with him his pope, whom RICHARD Duke of Beneuent did support for a season. And within few daies following, ROBERT GVISCARD came to Rome with all his troupes of Normanes and Calabrians (it had been better that he had neuer come, as it afterwards happened) and others which came to his aide, to fet pope GREGORY at libertie: for from elsewhere there was no pope, for in Gracia the Emperours were at warres : and from France could come no reliefe, for that Lombardy held for the Emperour : and in Spaine the princes were troubled and turmoyled with warres against the Moores; so as onely ROBERT GVISCARD had meanes to doe it, and none other: And being come, as I fay, the citizens of Rome which had received in the Emperour, with the affiftance of those which he had left there in garrison, addressed themselves to defend the citie, so as hee entred it by force of armes, with the aide and fauour of some which were within it. He found so great relistance in his aduersaries, that the two factions oftentimes fought within the citie; the greatest part of the citizens taking part with the Imperialists: and there was fo great disorder and confusion, that the greatest part of miserable Rome was burnt and destroyed; for whatfocuer either partie gat, they ouerthrew or fet on fire: fo great was the rage and furie wherewith they made this warre. But in the endROBERT GVISCARD, and the popes partie prenailing against their enemies, tooke, burned and destroyed the Capitoll; and left Rome so destroyed and ruinated, that neither ATTILA, or any other nation, did ever the like harme as now was done: for at this day there are orchards, vineyards and gardens, where before that warre, were streetes, houses, Churches, and other sumptuous buildings. ROBERT having obtained so pitifull a victorie, went to the Castle S. gelo, which vntil then was befreged: and releasing pope GREGORY from thence, restored him to his seate and palace. But within few daies after, the Pope considering into how miferable and pitifull estate the citie was brought; by the counsell of the faid RODERT, he determined to absent himselfe; and being accompanied with the fame ROBERT, and with his Colledge of Cardinals he went to the citie of Salerno, where he afterwards died, having been pope twelve yeeres, one moneth, and three daies. It is written that this Pope was a just, an vpright, a wife, and a charitable man, and an almes giver: but it is certaine that he was an obstinate, presumptuous, stout, and firme defender of the Romane presacie, with the liberties and immunities thereof. For I have read one BRYNY's, and one SI-GIBERTUS which report him to haue been, both ambicious, a Negromancer, and an Inchaunter; and that he had poyfoned feuen other Popes before he could Cenenib. 4 notable Inchains attaine to the Papacie. ter and Negro-

Before that we proceed any further, it shall be very requisite to make some relation of the Emperours of Conflantinople (feeing that wee are not to discourse of other kingdomes and common-wealths) to the end that having ended herewith, We may proceede with our HENRY and the fucceffors of Pope GREGORY I fay then that in the space of seuen and twentie yeeres of HENRIES raigne, little more or lesse, fine or fixe Emperours had raigned in Constantinople, before which time, the Infidels, Turkes, Persians and other nations made themselues Lords of what the Greekes held in Asia, whose event was this, as wee said in the end of the life of HENRY the third, father of this HENRY of whom we now wrote, the better to vnderstand which raigned two yeeres Emperour in Constantinople: and him succeeded Con-STANTINGS Dyca, who in the beginning behaued himselfe very valorously. subduing and punishing such as rebelled against him, and in the rest was a very deuout christian: but being infected with the disease of couetousnes, was therefore contemned, both by his owne subiects, and by the Barbarians also; and in his time were lost many townes in Asia; and in Constantinople was so great an earth. Agreat earth quake, that Churches and other buildings fell downe: and so his empire being quake in Coninfortunate, he died in the feuenth yeere of his raigne, and his fonnes remaining flaninnople. his successors; his wife Evdoxia tooke vpon her the gouernment, who held the same the space of seven moneths onely: for by reason of the warres with the Turkes and Barbarians, the Greekes made her to take to husband a great man amongst them called ROMANYS DIOGENES, to helpe to defend the empire; who not contented to gouerne in the behalfe of her fonnes, but proclaiming himselse Emperor, vsurped the empire, and going into Asia with an army against the Turkes, had variable successe, and was sometimes victorious, and sometime vanquished, and in the end was in a battaile ouerthrowne by them, and many of his people were flaine; and being afterwards by the Generall of the Infidels well intreated and fet at libertie, comming to Constantinople, he found alreadie placed in his throne the eldest of his wives sonnes, called MICHAEL PARAPINASSYS: And notwithstanding that he attempted by force of armes to have recovered the empire, yet he could not bring it to passe, but was taken prisoner, and had his eyes put out a crueltie much vied in Gracia in those daies) and was banished in the habit of a religious man to a certaine Iland, where he died, when he had been Emperour about the space of source yeeres. And MICHAEL PARAPINNASSUS remaining in the imperiall throne, grew to be so carelesse and negligent, and therewith of so little worth, that he applied himselfe to nothing but to making of verfes, and to dreffe the gowt wherewith hee was griened: he held the empire fixe yeeres and halfe, with great diminution of estate in Asia, the Infidels conquering many cities thereof: for which cause his subjects role against him, and chose for their Emperour a man of great renowme and parentage, whose name was NI-CEPHORVS BOTANIATES, Who was descended from the Emperour PHOCAS aboue mentioned: this man much honoured the brothers of his predeceffor MICHABL PARAPINASSUS, which were the fonnes of Constantinus DVCA and of EVDOXIA before named; and giving them offices and captainships, ouerthrew by their meanes, BRIENIVS and BASILICVS, which rebelled against him: for which and other things which he did, hee was very ill requited, for they being sonnes and brothers to Emperours, sought to bee so themselues: and so the youngest and most valiant of them, called ALEXIVS CONNENUS. (procuring friends thereto) deposed him from the empire, and gat the same for himselfe; when he had raigned three yeeres, and made him to take a religious habit: and this ALEXIVS held the empire seuen and thirtie yeeres, and sought ma-

ny battailes, both with Infidels and with Christians, but chiefly with ROBERT GVISCARD, Lord of Pulia and Calabria, who releated Pope GREGORY, as wee

haue recounted; who also thought to haue been Emperour of Grecia; which

warres he continued with the aide of the Venecians. In this estate stoode the af-

faires of Gracia, at such time as the Emperour HENRY the fourth departed out of Italy, and Pope GREGORY the seventh died: wherefore let vs now returne to

speake of them.

The Emperour HENRY being departed out of Italy in fuch manner as we haue declared, and (as I faid) leaving Rome in fuch trouble as aforesaid came into Germany, where he called a Diet or Councell in the city of Mentz, aswell to excuse and instifie himselfe concerning such matters as were done in Italy 325 to profecute and end the war against the Saxons and their adherents. In this Councell (being perswaded and in a manner compelled by fundry prelates) he veelded to the altring of some matters in the Church; as to graunt that priefts should haue no wines, and some other matters; yet he perseuered in supporting Pope CLEMENT, who was chosen against Pope GREGORIE, and in such other things as before he did. This Councel of Mentz being diffolued, the Emperour againe profecuted the warre against the Saxons; in which, betweene both parties enfued much harme, many flaughters, and great battels and encounters; wherein the Emperor did often hazard his person, and in the most of them fighting most valiantly the victory, there being of either side great princes, captaines and very valiant men, with many of which he came to agreement in the end, and fo grew dayly more mighty, yet neuer without enemies: wherein passed many and fundry accidents, which the breuitie whereto I am bound, permitteth mee

not particularly to relate.

In the meane scason that he was busied herein, Pope GREG ORY the seuenth died in Salerno, in whole place was chosen (notwithstanding that CLEMENT was still called Pope ) an Abbot, called DESIDERIVS, who being installed, was called VICTOR the third; this Pope also with food the Emperors proceedings. At this time also died ROBERT GNISCARD, Lord of Palia, of Calabria, and of great part of Sicilia, and him fucceeded his fonnes, Roger and Bohrwynd. VICTOR continued Pope one yeere and foure moneths onely, and hee being dead, they chose to succeed him, the Cardinall of Hostia, whose name was O T HO. and called him VRBAN the second; who in the beginning of his papacie was fomewhat troubled in Rome, by fome which were the Emperours adherents, and tooke part with Pope CLEMENT, which yet lived, whom a certaine Duke of Italy maintained in his countrey: whereupon this Pope (for his better fafetie) went from Rome to the citie of Melfi: but hee afterwards removed to the citie of Placencia, (there to be of the greater power by reason of Mayon, the great Lady fo often before named) where he affembled a Synode, wherein fome new orders were made; but he still veheld and maintained the quarrell of his predecessors Pope GREGORY, and Pope VICTOR, against the Emperour and his followers: and there also he held not himselfe to be safe, for that the Emperour Hanny was of very great power: wherefore he determined to goe into France, where what befell him you shall understand. In this place the authors doe greatly varie, in reciting the actes of this Emperour: for fome make not any mention of his fecond comming into Italy: others account it to have been at this time; and those which doe recite it, agree not well together in the times, neither doe they distinctly set downe what he did there; which hath been a great trouble to me, and hath caufed a great confusion: wherefore let the reader passeit ouer as he may, for I cannot certainly auerre, which accidents proceeded the other. The Abbot Was-PERGENSIS and BLOND vs fay, that the Emperour Hanny after that hee had buried his first wife, whose name was VBERTA, and had maried against the second time, came into Italy, and made his abode therein about seuen yeeres, warring against the Popes dominions in his owne person, and that he tooke many cities by force of armes; among which were Manton and Ferrara, which were held

by MAVVD. And the same BLONDVs affirmeth, that others write that these cities were in the same warre recourred by M Avv D, through the permission and avde of CONRADE the Emperours eldeft fonne, who openly favoured her and the pope against his father: whereupon (they fay) M A VV D grew to be so valiant. as to leuie all her owne forces, together with the power of his friends and allies. to the end to stoppe the Emperours passage to Rome; and that she fought, and onerthrew him; to as he was constrained to depart out of Italy. Howfocuer it was, among fuch diversitie of opinions, the trueth is, and is approved by all without any difference, that in this time the pope being come into France, affembled a generall Councell in the citie of Cleremount, in the yeere of our Lorde 10943 Anno Dorn. wherein he attempted the greatest matter that euer any other pope had done; 1094. which was, by conquest to recouer the citie of Ierusalem, and other cities in the marches thereof, which of long time had been subject to MAHOMETS succesfors: and he folicited the same in that Councell, with such instance and efficacie, and his speeches so incensed the hearts of the people, that many great princes refolued to vindertake the action : for out of France, Spaine, England, Italy, and Ger- The conquest many went fo many, that all writers affirme them to exceede the number of three of the Holy hundred thousand fighting men, which tooke for their deuice the figne of the Croffe: the principall Captaines whereof for one partie, were Patar the Hermit, and another great Lord Duke of Lorraine, called G o D FREY of Buillon, and his two brothers, the one called Evstac Ethe other Bald vvin, and with them other great princes: And on the other fide went Hv G H, brother to the French King, ROBERT Earle of Flanders, ROBERT Duke of Normandie, STEPHEN Earle of Carnute, R AIMOND Earle of S. Angelo, and BOHEMVND prince of Otranto in Italy, and others of equall and inferiour degree; some taking their way through Germany, Hungarie, and Gracia, passed ouer into Asia; and others tho- Many authors row Italy, (taking the Popes bleffing with them, who then was VRBAN the fe- write of this cond) and paffing the feas, divided themselves into two armies, although not bas VVelperwithout great trouble and difficultie; the cause whereof was ALEXIVE Empe-gensu, in the rour of Constantinople. In the end, these troupes passed ouer into Asia, and made the south. great warres in fundry parts, principally in Soria, and in Iudea: This was one of Paulus Emithe most notable warres that ever was in the world, which I forbeare to write at lius in bis large, aswell for that it maketh nothing to my purpose; asalfo, for that it is so of the history great a matter, that it deserueth a particular historie alone; but the conclusion of France. thereof is, that after they had wonne many battailes, taken many cities, and continued the warre the space of three yeeres; the citie of Ierusalem was taken by the hillery of GODFREYOF Buillon, the Duke of Normandie, and the Earle of Flanders, and o. Milan. thers, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand ninety and nine, vpon the 15 day of Blandus in his July: foure hundred & ninety yeeres after that it was first taken by the Sarazins, in fecond Decade, the time of the Emperor Heraclivs. And the faid city being taken, the fame God- Autoninus. FREY was made King therof, and of all the countrey round about it. Other of the Sabellieur. princes and captaines before named remained Lords & governors of other great Nauclerns. cities & townes in Syria, yet many of the returned to their countries, after the performance of fo honourable an action; among which were the Earles of Flanders, and of S.GILEs and others: And the war continuing, this kingdome remained in him, and his successors, the space of sourescore and eight yeeres: which being expired, through the weaknesse, and dissension among the princes, it was againe loft, in the time of the Emperor BARBAROS SA, as hereafter you shall understand. Let vs now returne to our discourse of the Emperor HENRY, who at such time

as these matters passed in Ierusalem, being returned out of Italy, the last time that euer he was there; wherein he then left his eldeft fon Connada for his Lieutenant; and affembling some of the princes Electors in the Citie of Colon, he procured to have his sonne Henry to be chosen King of the Romanes, whom he had alreadie made Duke of Franconia (which was his house and patrimonie) which HENRY was his second sonne, and whom he best loued. Witen this was made knowne to his eldeft fon Co NR AD B, he became very wroth, and much grieued at his fathers determination; and therefore resoluted openly to deny him his obedience (as to an Emperor, which was a schissmatike, and excommunicated) and so he feifed into his hands all the lands of the Empire in Italy, finding al men well affec-Contade rebel- ted thereto, for the hatred which they bare to his father; & he held the fame nine led against bis yeeres with the title of King of Italy: his father either diffembling, or not daring to come thither against him, and they say that he gouerned as a wise and vertuous

The death of Godfrey of Buillon.

A battaile fought betweene the father and the

prince: at the end of which time, hee fell ficke and died, about the yeere of our conrade decea- Lord, one thousand and twentie: and at the same time died G on FREY the new King of Ierusalem, whom his brother BALDVVIN succeeded, and pope VRBANE the second likewise died in Rome, and him succeeded Pascvar the second, and within few daies after died CLEMENT, who was made pope by the Emperor, and after his decease, the Earle of Capua, and others attempted to make one ALBERT pope; and afterwards one Theodoric vs; and in Ranenna one Maginvileus, a man of great courage and power, affaied to have made himselfe pope, but none of them all continued long: and so Pascval remained pope in effe, who recouered and defended the Church patrimony, which the Emperor could not hinder, as he would have done, for at that instant, his some Hanky (being defirous to rule) rebelled against him, and warres began betweene them two, which Heavy rebelled were more then civill, which in fumme I will fet downe. The Emperor Hankt (the better to assure himselfe in his estate) procured his sonne Hanay to bee chosen King of the Romanes (publishing that he meant to go into Italy) and summoned a generall Councell to be held in Rome, with intent (as some write) to have deposed pope Pescyal: the pope being advertised hereof, presently excommunicated him, for which cause, after many accidents which happened (which for breuitie I flightly ouerpaffe) by the aduice and counfell of some of the princes and prelates of Germany; his fonne Hanny began to stirre against him, publishing that he did so, for that his father was disobedient to the Church, and that he abhorred his fimony, and other crimes which he laid to his charge: and in short space under this pretext (which as is most likely, was rather to depose his father, then for any loue he bare to the pope) he grew to be so mightie, that his father offered him large compositions, to the end to reduce him to his feruice and obedience; which taking no effect (for the some was resoluted to be absolute) they tooke armes, and each of them assembled their power, and leuied armies, and began to make cruell war one against the other. The sonne was aided and affifted by the Dukes of Baniere and of Saxony, and by other princes and great cities: and the father by the Duke of Bohemia, and the Marquelle of Austrich, with other mightie Dukes and Earles. In the beginning, neere the citie of Ratisbone, with the aide of those of that citie, the father obtained the vpper hand against the fon, so as he was driven to retire to reinforce his troupes: afterwards much defiring a battaile, the sonne came in quest of his father, in whom his people now for his old age had lesse confidence then in former times. And the armies and Emperors drawing neere together, stoode the space of three dayes continually in fight,

fight, the one of the other marshalled, and in readines to fight; a little river being betweene the two camps, where were many skirmishes, in which died many notable personages; and both father and sonne being resolued to fight, the night before they should have fought, LEOPOLDVs the Marquesse of Austrich being wearie of the fathers quarell, counselled him to withdraw himselfe and not to fight; but feeing that his aduice was not accepted, he departed with all his forces. and the Duke of Bohemia being aduertifed thereof, did the like with his, and prefently after this came a gentleman of his sonnes troupes, to warne him to looke to his person, and to take heed whom he trusted, for he was in daunger: whereupon the old Emperor, with some small troupes of horse, and those the lightest that he could chuse, for sooke the campe, and went into sundrie parts, emploring aide and fuccors. The sonne by reason of the fathers slight, seised into his hands the best and most of the cities of Germany, and the most of the princes came to his fide: and then he went against the citie of Spire (wherein his fathers treasure and iewelslay) and tooke the same. After this were moued some treaties of peacebetweene the father and the fonne; which was concluded voon condition, that they two should meete in the towne of Binge, which lieth vpon the Rhines side, before that the Councell should be affembled, which the sonne had procured to be called, of all the princes Secular and Regular, to bee held in the citie of Mentz. the next Christmas following; which was in the end of the yeere of our Lord one thousand one hundred and fiue, and the beginning of the yeere 1106. And Anno Dom. they two meeting there, the sonne protested that hee pretended nothing but 110% the peace of the Church of Rome, with a reformation of matters in Germany, and that his father should be absolued and reduced to the popes obedience; and that he never meant to be reaue him of either title or dignitic of Emperor, but that he should set matters in such order as was convenient. The father promised to doe all that hee ought to doe, and offered more then hee either would or could performe: but the one distrusting the other, the father said that hee would stand to that which the estates should award in Mentz, and in the best manner that hee could, departed thence to a strong Castle, where hee made account to liue in fafety in the meane time; and the sonne being there with his troupes, tooke all the waies and paffages towards that Castle; in such manner, that the Emperor could have no conference with any without the knowledge of his sonne. Some authors write, that he was apprehended, and committed thither prisoner by his fonne; and that his fonne perforce made him to renounce the Empire, and that heafterwards died in his power. But the Abbot WESPERGENSIS (an author of those times) and Otho Frising ansis, and the most and best Historiographers write, as I have recounted.

Christmas day being come, all the great princes of Germany met in Mentz, excepting the Duke of Saxony, who could not come, by reason of his great age; and with them pope PASCVALS Legates; where the faid Legates (as it was thought) not without the fonnes will and procurement, againe pronounced the popes fentence against the father, and all such as tooke his part: and as they debated hereof, and of the Emperor which was in the Castle (who offered to performe what they required; humbly fuing for absolution, for which purpose he defired to come to Mentz) the sonne protested and alleaged that hee neither desired, neither pretended any other thing, but that his father should reforme himselfe, and become obedient to the Church of Rome; but in truth the issue manifested, that his principall intent was to make himselfe Emperor. The popes Legates aun**fwered** 

Hhh 2

The Emperor Henry the to bis fonne.

chofen Empe-

fwered to the Emperors offers and promifes, that they neither could, neither had authoritic to appoint any penance for the Emperor, neither could they give him any absolution, but that it must be done in a generall Councell, and that by the popes direction, as it had been handled by GREGORIE the feuenth concerning his deprivation, and all the reft. The matter standing in this estate, as all men were now most affected to the sonne, and desiring to winne his grace and fauour, for they faw that he was mightie and victorious, and the father as he was a man of an high stomacke, comming to have put himselfe into Mentz, many princes & prelates went foorth to meete him, and perswaded him, that accept he would wholy bring himselfe to ruine, there was no remedie but to renounce the Empire to his fonne, and to repose his trust in him. HENRY seeing himselfe thus distressed, and finding no redresse or counsell in any bodie, accepted here-Jointo Tenous-ced the Empire of, as some say voluntarily, as being tired and worne out with wars and troubles. Finally, repoling his truft in his sonne, or in despaire by reason of the solemne decree, he refigned his title to the Empireto his sonne HENRY, and sentto him from the Castle wherein he was, the Crosse, the Launce, the Scepter, the Globe. Henry the fifth the Crowne, and his other Imperiall enfigures and ornaments: which renunciation being received in the Councell, by a generall confent, HENRY the sonne was chosen and created Emperour, and called HENRY the fifth, after the Germane, and fourth after the Italian writers; for they allow not of HENRY the first, as is before faid: and the election was confirmed and ratified by the popes Legates, and like an Emperour, in that Councell he treated with the popes Legates, and with the princes of Germanie, of all matters spiritual and temporall, concerning the Empire: and for his Ambassadors sent certaine men of great account and authoritic to pope PASCVAL, and so remained and was held for Emperour. But before many daies were passed, the father seeing himselfe deprined, and his fonne exalted, repenting, fecretly fought and procured friends, to the end to have been restored; and wrote to the French King, and to other Kings and princes, complaining of his sonne, alleaging that hee was forced to what hee did : and standing in some good hope, he openly shewed his intent, and lenied men of warre, the Duke of Lorraine taking his part, and some others, with the cities of Colen, and Gulicke, and other imperial townes. The sonne having intelligence hereof, againe raifed great forces, and defiring to have gone to a Councell in the citie of Liege, he fent three hundred men at armes to take a bridge vpon the river Maze, all which were either taken or flaine by the Duke of Lorraine, who tooke the fathers part, and came upon them at unawares: whereupon Henry the fonne proclaimed him traitor, and depriued him (being absent) of his Duchy of Lorraine: in the meane time, the father entred the citie of Colen, fortifying and furnishing the same with men and munition, and thence went to have put himfelfe into the citie of Liege, whither the Councell was called, which is a most frong citie: in hope (as he was a man of a great (pirit) to have been reftored, hauing fome other affiltance, befides those alreadic named; principally amongst the common people, by which he was well beloued, they being moued thereto with composition to see him deposed. The sonne with his forces went against the citic of Colen, and belieging the fame, letters and meffengers came thither, in generall to him and to all the estates, from his father, complaining in that he was thus deposed and deceived, and laying great matters to his sonnes charge, he excused and instified his ownecause, so much as he might, desiring and requiring to be fatisfied: whereto the sonne made aunswere, reciting his fathers ryot, his simonic,

his schisme, and rebellion committed against the Pope and Church of Rome. to the generall domage of the states of the whole Empire; protesting further that what hee did, was to doe God seruice, by obeying his Vicor, procuring the vnion of the holy mother Church of Rome, with many other matters which the Abbot WESPERGENSIS, BLONDVS, and other Authors do fet downe verbatim. Finally, hee fent him word, that hee would not that hee should now dote by reason of his old age, but that hee should come private, and aske forgiuenes of the Church; & that then the equitie of his cause should be heard, both for himselfe, and for all the princes which were with him. The father not only refused to follow his sonnes direction, but ill entreated his Ambassadours, so as they could hardly returne to their camp before Colen in fafetie. Whereupon the fonne (feeing that he could not take that citie in any short space) marched with his army towards Lorraine; and before his departure, fent a second ambassade to his father. the effect whereof was, that if he defired inflice, he should peaceably come to the Councell, which he summoned to be held at Aken: if otherwise, he gaue him to vnderstand, that by the consent and will of al the princes, he was resolued to warre vpon him, as against a common enemie. These Ambassadours came to the citie of Liege, where HENRY the father then lay; who was fo greatly enraged with his fonnes answere and resolution, that he did and said many things in surie. And matters standing in this estate (whereof it was both thought and seared, that great warres, troubles, and other euils would have enfued) it pleased God to take compaffion of his people, which by reason of the cruell warres betweene the father and the fonne, endured daily grieuous and intolerable oppressions, robberies, and irrepairable calamities; which was, by taking the old Emperour HENRY out of this world, which happened in the feuenth day of the moneth of August, about The death of this world; which happened in the redefinition day of the indicated the figure, and in the emperor the fiftith yeere of his raigne, and in theyeere of our Lord, one thouland, one hundred and fixe. It is written, that he died of passion and griefe to see himselfe (as it anno 1106. were)a prisoner, and besieged in that castle, and deposed and forsaken by his own fonne and blood. The dead bodie of the Emperour HENRY, was buried by the Bishop of the place where he died, in a Monastery; from whence (by the decree of the Prelates, and confent of his owne fonne) it was afterwards removed to the end, that (as a man excommunicate) hee should not be buried in Christian buriall; and was caried to Spire, where, in a prophane place, was made for him a marble sepulchre, wherein he lay five yeeres; at the end of which time it pleased the Pope to permit him to bee buried in Christian buriall. This Emperour had two sonnes, and three daughters by his first wife V RERTA, which was the daughter of a great Marquesse in Italy, kinne to the Lady MAVVD: his sonnes were CONRADE, who died before him, and HENRY the fift which succeeded him; his daughters names were INES, which married with FREDERICKE Duke of Suenia, & was mother of the Emperor Connade the fecond; and I. IMPERGA, which married with the Duke of Corinthia; and SOPHIA, which was wife to the

king of Hungary. In Constantinople at this time raigned ALEXIVS, whose empire continued seuen and thirtie yeeres, and he died afterwards in the time of HENRY the fifth: and him succeeded his sonne CALOIGANNES, as hereafter you shall understand.

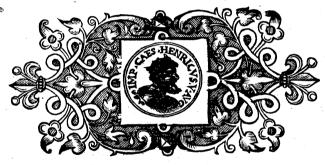
> THE Hhh 2



THE FIFTH OF THAT NAME.

AND FOURESCORE AND FOUR-TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.

> And of ALEXIVE and CALOIDANNES in Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.



enry taking upon him the government of the Empire, after that the death of his father was published, was proclaimed Emperor, and the cities and princes which had bin his adner faries made their peace with him, and became his fubiells. He sent ambassadours to the Pope, promising to become his good sonne; to whom he granted to call a Councell, wherem all matters concerning the Church should be reformed, chiefly those which were introduced by his father. He committed the Countie Palantine to prison, by reason of some Commo-

tions, and made warres against the King of Polonia, which intitled himselfe King and subdued bim; but not without great difficultie. He came afterwards into Italy to be crowned by Pope Pafcual, and being come to Rome, in S. Peters Church he apprehended the Pope, and committed him to prison, sacking Rome and the frontiers thereof; neither would be release the Pope untill that he had confirmed his privileges of inwesting prelates in the Benefices of Germany : the Pope being out of prison, and the Emperour returned crowned into Germany, the Councell disanulled the authoritie given him of investigation, as a matter granted perforce : which when be understood, he waxed extremewroth, and committed the Bishop of Mentz to prison, who fauoured the Popes partie. But the Emperour comming into that citie the people arose and apprehended him, and would not release him, untill that he had promifed to fet their Bishop at libertie. He was afterwarde excommunicate.

and in danger to have bin deposed from the empire; but leaving Germany, be went to Rome, where be found not the Pope, neither would be come thither fo long at the Emperour was therein, neither would be give credit to his promises, or believe any thing that he said. He againe returned the third time into Italy, and fet a schisme in the Church, and understanding of the Popes comming against him, he returned into Germany, and then made his peace with the Pope, basely, humbly Submitting himselfe to him. There ensued in those parts a very grienous famine, and postilence, and the Emperour falling extremely fick dyed, without leaning any sonne to succeed him : when he had raigned Emperour, little leffe then twenty recres.



N that I was longer then ordinarie in writing the life of the Emperour HENRY the fourth, whom the Italian writers call the third, I have alreadie made my excuse; which was, for that hee raigned a long time, in which many great accidents happened: and as he was a most warlike prince, valiant, and high minded, so his raigne was troublefome and virguiet; by reason whereof, all men (excepting fome few which tooke his part) were well pleafed with his death, which (as it then feemed)

brought to the estates of Italy and Germany, gentle calines and inilde weather, after long stormes and tempests: and to his sonne HENRY, who was Emperour in his life time, all lay smooth before him: And Colein, and all the other cities which had held against him, submitted themselues, yeelding their obedience; and the Duke of Lorraine submitting himselfe, sought his grace and fauour, and so he became absolute Lord ouer all: and then sent Ambassadours to Pope PASCVAL who with the affent of his Cardinals and of the Emperours Ambaffadours, fummoned a Councel to be held in October, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand. one hundred and fixe, in a citie of Lombardie called Gardacastello, wherein many things in the state ecclesiasticall, both in Lombardy and in Germany were altred: and the pope deposed such as were not confirmed by his authoritie. In the second yeere of this Emperour HENRY (the better to corroborate the peace betweene the Pope and him) it was agreed that the Pope should come into Germany to the citie of Ausburgh, where the Emperour (for certaine daies space) staied for him: but the Pope reposing small trust in the people of that countrie, by reason of the ancient enmitte betweene him and them, came not, but went into France, where he affembled a Synode in a citie called Trecas; whither came a great number of The Connect of prelates, and in that Councell amongst other matters which therein were hand. Trees. led, it was ordained, that the Emperours authoritie concerning the prelacies and Church dignities in Germany, should be abolished, and that he should not therein inuest prelates, contrarie to the Popes Canons and Decretals: which when he vnderstood, he sent to the Pope, intreating him not so to determine of the matter, but to allow him such right of donation, as his predecessors had done to the Emperour CHARLES the Great. This matter was greatly argued, but in the end it was deferred till the next generall Councell; and so the Pope returned to Rome, and the Emperour in his progresse visited fundrie cities of Germany; and vpon some occasion apprehended the Countie Palantine of Rhine, whose name was SIGIFRED, and for a time held him prisoner; I call him of Rhine, for the difference betweene him and other Counties Palantines.

At this time to him came ALNIVS king of Hungary, to complaine and to defire inflice against his brother Coloman, who had deposed him, and made himselfeking: whereupon the Emperour entred Hungary with an armie, purposing Hhh 4

Hungary. The wvarves o

Peland.

to have restored him; but through want of victuals, and by meanes of other difa-The warres of fters and difgraces which befell him, hee was driven to retire without effecting ought; and io Coloman enioyed the kingdome, the Emperor permitting the fame. There likewise grew warre betweene him and the Duke of Poland; who without his leaue, entitling himselfe king, denied to pay him any tribute, or to be fubicct: to which warre he went with a mightie armie (it behooued him to do fo. for hee was to encounter a mightie enemie) and some write that they came to blowes, and that the Emperour had the victorie: but not without much bloudfhed and great difficultie; and fo Polana returned to the Emperours denotion, and paid the tribute accustomed. In these actions and others of lesse moment, the Emperour spent little lesse then five yeers, which were in the beginning of his raigne; in the end of which, moued with a defire (common to all the Emperours) to be crowned by the hands of the Pope, he determined to come into Italy; and to that effect ordained a Diet or Councell to be held in Ratisbone; wherein thewing his intent, his departure by common confent was generally determined: and leuying thirtie thousand chosen men (besides the princes and other voluntaries, which had a defire to serue and follow him in that iourney)he came into Italy, where other troupes of the states of Lombardy ioyned with him, and by the way befell many matters, which I omit, to the end to relate fuch as were of most importance. And afterwards taking his way towards Rome, many ambaffades paffed betweene him and Pope PASCVAL; hee requiring to be crowned, and the other promifing the fame; but vpon condition, which was, that he should relinquish his demand concerning the inuesting of prelates: about this matter fome things fo fell out, that the Pope grew jealous, and mistrusted the Emperour: but in the end the Emperor promifing to maintaine and obscrue the privileges and immunities of the church of Rome, & to defilt from investing of prelates, as is aforesaid: the Pope fent a folehine ambassade to meete him, offering him amiable and Henry the fifth friendly entertainment: whereupon he came to the citie, vpon the twelfth day of February in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred and eleuen being the first Sunday in Lent, where he was solemnely received by all the Clergie and Romane people, with the greatest prouision, and shew of iov, that the Pope and citizens could possibly make; and the Pope accompanied with all his Cardinals. attended his comming in S.P E T ERS Church porch: And the Emperour with his Princes and men of warre being entred the gate of the Castle S. Angele, alighting, mounted vp the steps to meete him, and kist his foote; and the Pope blest him, and raising him vp, three seuerall times embraced him; and then they went together into the Church, and comming to the high Aultar, where the Pope that day was to fay Masse, they sate downe vpon seates prouided for them; where the Emperour againe defired the Pope to confirme the privileges which he and his predecessors had held, concerning the nomination of prelates, and the donation of Benefices; which the Pope absolutely denied. Some authors say, that the Pope requested the Emperour (in performance of his promise) to renounce the right which hee challenged to have in ecclefiafticall causes; and that the Emperour therewith displeased, arose, and with his Germane Bishops and princes went into a chappell, from whence hee fent him his answere, and denying what was required, perfifted in his demaund concerning the confirmation of his privilege: and that there was much strife and contention about the matter. Some report this after another manner; which is no great marueile though it so happen amongst Historians, seeing that we daily reade, that when sundrie men have seene a matter

which hath happened in their fight, yet the fame men which then were present. have afterwards related the matter after divers manners, each one pretending to tell the truth. I fay this, for that some men are so hard of beleefe, that if they finde any contrarietie amongst writers, they account the whole historie to be alie. which is too great a feueritie. But returning to my storie, I say, that although they differ herein, yet all authors agree, that youn this occasion the Emperours captaines and companies entred the Church, and the Masse being ended, by the Emperors order the pope was apprehended, together with the most part of the Car- Page Passwal dinals and that the Germanes made boote or prize of the Bishops, the pricits, and apprehendedby other the popes friends. The citizens and people of Rome tooke this in fuch dif-the Smeetour Henry the fifth grace, that betaking them to their weapons, they went against the Imperialists, which held the Vaticane; where fighting with incredible furie, they forced the Emperour to abandon that part of the citie, and to withdraw himselfe to his campe; betweene which and the citizens for three or foure daies space were great skirmishes, and much bloud was spilt, and many men were slaine of either fide. Yet BLONDVs and some others report, that during the three daies that the fight lasted, the Emperour held the Vaticane, and that hee being vnable to defend it, abandoned the same and went into his campe, leading the pope and his Cardinals with him prisoners. Finally, these three daies being past, he removed his armie, and pitcht his tents at the foote of the Mount S. Situester, and so marching forwards, left the pope with some of his Cardinals in a place of strength, and the rest hee left in another place, guarded with great troupes of souldiers, and then marched up and downe the countrey, burning and spoyling the castles, townes and villages neere there abouts; and so within some few daies after with great furie he returned to Rome, and fate downe before it; but the inhabitants were resolued not to receive him, except hee would first set the pope and his Cardinals at libertie: But he persenering earnest in his demannd, would have his request first performed; imitating (in the action, although not in the intent) the Patriarch IACOB. who wreftling with the Angell, faid, I will not let thee goe, except thou first bleffe me. Wherefore the pope to avoide further inconveniences, and to get out of the prison wherein he was detained, came to a composition with the Emperour, and confirmed to him the privilege of investiture which he required, & admitted and Pope Pascual allowed those prelates which the Emperour had preferred and inuested. And so from the Emall being concluded, the Pope was conducted to Rome, & at the day appointed, the perous prion, Emperour entred the citie, and came into S.P B T E R S Church, first setting a good crowned him guard in the ports and turrets of the Vaticane; and with the accustomed solem-perour. nitie was therein by the Pope crowned, with apparance of very great joy and gladnes generally, by reason of the wished peace, after so long inksome warre. The coronation being ended, the Emperour (taking his leave, and the Popes bleffing with him for his good speed) departed from Rome very peaceably; and so pasfing through Italy, and the estate of Lombardy, hee returned into Germany; where having made fufficient proofe, that his father dying, and acknowledging his fault. defired to be forgiven, he obtained leave to burie him in the Church; which was perfourmed with accustomed solemnitie; and in Italy and in Germany generally was peace.

A little while after this, died the great and mighty Princesse M AVV D, which was Lady of many townes in Italy: This Lady after her death, left great part of her dominion to the Church, among which, is reckoned the citie of Ferrara: but the Emperour FREDERICK neuerthelesse afterwards challenged to be her heire,

### HENRY THE FIFTH.

Mawd the -Empereffe daughter of king of Eng-

by reason of the affinitie betweene her and his mother. The Emperour being in England solemnising his mariage with another Mavvo, daughter to the King of that land; Pope PASCYAL at the request and perswasion of his Cardinals and clergie, fummoned a Councel of Bishops and prelates of many nations in which Heavy the first, Councel (amongst other matters) it was determined, that the privilege graunted by the pope to the Emperour, for the inuesting of Bishops and other clergie men. of the Emperor should be reuoked, and held for none; fith it was exacted by force, the Pope be-Heary the fift. ing then his prisoner; and for such they declared and published the same, excommunicating the Emperor, if he perfifted in the execution thereof: in this Councel were one hundred Bishops, some Archbishops and Patriarchs, and al the Cardinals. This being made knowne to the Emperour, he was very force for the same, and much more after that he vnderstood that many of the principall prelates in Germany took part with the Pope against him, and hadlest his service; amongst which was ALDELBERT Archbishop of Mentz, a very mightie prince and prelate, whom the Emperour commanded to be apprehended, and held him about two yeeres prisoner; whereof ensued many great tumults: And some Bishops were so bold (being authorised by a Cardinal Legate in Hungary) as to excommunicate the Emperour: And the number of those which conspired against him, daily encreasing, he fearing the like fortune as befel his father, appointed a Councell to be called in the citie of Mentz, there to treat of those affaires; offring to fand to that which therein should be determined; and to right any wrong that he had done. The day appointed for this Councel being come, and the Emperor therein appearing, so few made their repaire thither, that he was therewith much troubled, and highlie discontented, and therefore with greater instance procured the affemblie, but it little availed him: for before that they could come the inhabitants of Mentz arose against him; as well for that he held their Bishop prisoner, as for that in former time in the warres betweene him and his father, that citie had endured much losse by his meanes: whereupon they putting themselves in armes, went to the palace wherein he was, whereof they became mafters, and of his person also; and threatning to kill him, they made him to promise satisfaction for the displeasures and iniuries which they had received, and that he should prefently fet their Bishop ALDELBERT at libertie: all which he promised and confirmed with an oth, in such manner, that they holding themselues satisfied left the palace; and the Emperour departed, and in performance of his promise, presently released the Archbishop: but this notwithstanding hee continued extremely displeased, through the injurie received in that city, and no lesse with them which failed to come to the Councel. And the next yeere, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred and sixteene; he holding his Christmas in Spire, many prelates affembled themselues in the citie of Colein, and with them some princes, with a determination to feeke to depriue him, for that he was excommunicate, and disobedient to the Church of Rome: which he (to, his great disliking) hauing vnderstood, and desiring to redresse the same, sent his Ambassadours to that affemblie, promifing to be are what should be imposed, and protesting that he was in all points readie to fatisfie the Pope: but his ambaffade was ill received, and as ill answered, for they sent him word, that hee should make his peace with the Pope, and confourme himselfe to his will; otherwise, they would neither serue, nor obey him, but generally would all forsake him. Whereupon he tried his friends, seeking aide by all meanes possibly; and as princes never faile to find fome to helpe and affift them (fome of dutie, and others in hope of gaine) he ga-

thered many men together, thinking to effect his businesse by force of armes: and depriving some of his adversaries, which held with the Pope against him.of their estates, he bestowed many graces and fauours voon his followers; and leuving a great armie, resolued to goe into Italy, as well to be farre absent from the furie of Germany, as for that he purposed (as hee published) to come to some agreement with the Pope: for hee had newes (which were certaine) that through factions and partialities in Rome, which arose for that the Pope would not bestow the Prefecture, or office of Lord Prefident vpon the fonne of him which last prefided the most part of the people rose against him, and fought with such as tooke his part; and the matter came to this issue, that it behooved him to leave Rome. and to goe into Pulia, where hee was harboured by WILLIAM the Feodatorie Duke thereof, and by some other princes. The Emperour being with his armie arrived in Italy, tooke his way directly for Rome : yet fome write that he first sent his Ambaffadors to the Pope, and requiring absolution vsed some complements: but for as much as hee would not make such satisfaction as was required at his hands, the Pope would not absolue him. Others write, that the Emperours Ambaffadours found the Pope in Rome, and that hee understanding of his comming. Mand the Emwould not stay for him. But howsocuer it was, hee came to Rome with his wife pereffe at Rome without any relistance (but yet he found not the Pope therein) having first made cruell warres in the lands of the Church as he came: and pretending that his coronation was violent, and done by force, although by the Pope, he therfore made himselse to be crowned by an Archbishop, whose name was MAVVRICE DE BRACHIA, whom he brought with him; the whole Clergie and people of Rome murmuring thereat. This being done, hee departed thence, and made very cruell warres against all such townes as held for Pope Pascval: but knowing that through his absence Germany was like to be lost, for (as all writers affirme) at that time iustice and equitie tooke no place, and there were such warres, factions, robberies infultations, and other diforders, as cannot be recited : wherefore he marched with his armie thitherwards, taking his way through Lombardy. Comming into Germany with the aide of FREDERRCK Duke of Suenia, and of CONRADE Duke of Franconia, which were his nephewes (being his fifters fonnes) and of fome other princes which followed him, without any flay he went to make war against the Duke of Saxony, who renouncing his obedience held for the Pope; with whom he fought a terrible battaile, and had the victorie; wherby his power toveese the and authoritie greatly encreased with those which had rebelled against him. While these things passed in Germany, Pope PASCVAL came to Rome, and af-

ter some troubles which therein arose, he departed out of this life, having been Pope thirteene yeeres and halfe, in the yeere of our Lord, one thouland, one hundred and eighteene: and in his place was chosen a Cardinall, whose name was 1118. I O H.N. and Was called G E LAS IV s the second. About this time also died ALEXIVS the Emperour of Constantinople, and him succeeded his sonne CALOIDANNES,

as I haue aboue faid.

The Emperour having received the newes of the death of pope Pasc var, and of the election of GELASIVS (seeing himselfe excommunicate, and shunned by many prelates and princes, which neither ferued, neither faw him, al- The Emperouse though they warred not against him)setting the affaires of Germany in the och or- Rome. der that he could, with a great armie came the third time into Italy, addressing his Way to Rome, where Pope GELASIVS durft not stay his comming; for in Rome were parcialities and bandings against him; whereof the Frangepanes (which

626

were many in number, and of great power) were the chiefe; yet some others took his part, as the Cossi, the Normanes, the families of the Leoni, and the Columness.

which then began to grew great. The Pope being fled from Rome in his galleys downe the river Tiber ; the Emperour comming thither, alleaged that the election of GELASIVS Was infufficient for that he was chosen without his consent and therefore procured such Bishops and prelates as were of his faction, to make that MAVVRICE, who (as I faid) crowned him. Pope: and they did fo, and called him GREGORY; who being installed and lodged in the Papall palace, absolued the Emperour, and confirmed and ratified his donations and inuestitures: And having set up this new Idol. the Emperour recommended him to the protection of the Frangepanes, which were so much discontented with the election of GELASIVS, that they would have killed him; and then tooke the field and harried the lands of the Church, to the end to make his pope GREGORY Lord thereof. Which pope GELASIVS vnderstanding, with the aide of WILLIAM Duke of Pulia, ROBERT Duke of Capua, RICHARD, and other great Lords of Italy, he leuied fuch an armie that the Emperour doubting what would follow, published, that fith he was absoluted of his excommunication, hee meant to returne into Germany. And being departed. pope G IL AS I V s (leauing the armie which he had railed) came to Rome, where, betweene such as tooke part with him, and the Frangepanes, which held with pope G R E G O R Y, were so many affraies, and so many men were slaine, that hee was driven to forfake Rome, and (in a manner) to flie into France, where he died in the Monasterie of Cluniagne, having bin pope almost one whole yeere and halfe. And he being dead, CALIXTV sthe second was chosen, who before was called GVIDO; and before his comming to Rome, pope GREGGRY departed thence, and went to a towne called Sutrio, where what happened to him, you shall hereafter vnderstand. The Emperour to avoide losse of time, presently so soone as he came into Germany befieged the citie of Mentz, against which hee bare an old grudge, for the injuriewhich hee had therein received: and he holding it strictly belieged, fundrie Commotions were railed against him; for fuch as theretofore had shewed themselues his enemies, feared that hee would now be reuenged on them all: wherefore with him, and against him, were every where making of parties. ALDELBERT Archbishop of Mentz, with the aide of the Dukes of Saxonie, and of other princes and prelates, had a great armie in a readines: and of the contrarie side, the Dukes of Sueuia, and others, had no lesse in his behalfe; in such manner that it was feared that great warres would have enfued. But the Emperour(being perswaded by some his loyall servants, and certaine other ecclesiasticall personages which interposed themselues) inclined to peace, which was treated of; and all the differences and controuerfies were referred to the arbitrament of certaine princes of the empire; and a Diet or Councell was appointed to be holden in the citie of VVittenbergh, wherein all controuerfies should be decided and ended: and it was fo. And those which were appointed to be arbitrators and iudges of this controuersie, and of the rest, being there assembled (and certaine Legates, as some say, being also there from pope CALIXTV s) it was by comon consent determined, that through all Germany a generall and vniuerfall peace should be proclaimed and kept, betweene the Emperour, and all the princes both ecclefiasticall and secular and that the princes in like manner should maintaine the same peace amongst themselves, vpon paine of death; and that whatsoever was taken from any Church, should presently be restored; and that the like should

he done by any thing withheld from the Emperours chamber of accounts or Exchequer: and that the like should also be done between all estates, which had taken ought (from other) by violence : and that all matters in controuerfie should be speedily decided: and that instice should be equally administred in all parts: and that the offences and displeasures past should be forgiuen and forgotten: and that theeues and robbers by the high waies, should be fought out and punished: and that fuch order should be taken, that the countrey should be maintained in peace: For the due execution whereof, the most sufficient personages that could be found, were appointed; and euery where was done all that was possible to further the fame. And as touching the excommunication, and the Popes fulmingtions and censures; and the differences betweene the Emperour and him, all was referred to be at Pope CALIXTY's his order and discretion; to whom the Emperour sent Ambassadours about the same in great humilitie. This being ended. Pope C ALIXTYS fent his Legate Mlatere, and ambassadours Cardinals, to another meeting or generall Diet held at VVormes; the Emperour being there prefent, where peace and concord was concluded betweene them: and the Emperor acknowledging the Pope for Christs Vicar here in earth, and vniuerfall pope The Emperour of the Church, defired absolution; and renounced and refigned into the Legates reconciled to . hands, all the right and title that he could pretend to the inuefting of prelates, and the Pope. donation of any foirituall dignities; and then gaue vp the possession of all townes and goods belonging to any Church; and bound himselfe to vse his best meanes, that if any other princes viurped any, they should be restored; and himselfe to be obedient to the commaundements and Iniunctions of the Church, and to aide, protect, and defend the same. The Deedes and Letters patents made hereof at large, were carried to the Pope, who allowed thereof, and gaue his Bull; whereby he granted that all the prelacies and Abbeyes which in Germany should be void. should be prouided by the lections of the Chapters of the same Churches, and that the Emperour might be present at the election: prouided alwaies that it should not be made by force, or for bribes, or through any other kind of simonies and that hee which was chosen might receive from the Emperour, all that was meerely laicall or temporall; but must have recourse to the sea of Rome for the reft according to the Popes Canons. This being ended, the Emperour and all those which with him stood excommunicate, were publikely absolued, and then the Letters patents and instruments were solemuely read, which befell in the moneth of September, in the yeere of our Lord 1122. And the Emperour from Anno Dom. thence went to Norenbergh, from whence he dispatched the Popes Legates very The Emperour well contented, with great gifts and presents both for the Pope and for them absoluted from fclues, and they returned to Rome: by reason whereof Pope CALIXTVs and all the Poper exthe Romish court made shew of great ioy, for the recourry of their lost fat sheep, and truly they had great reason, for it much imported them; and they recoursed him but by great good happe.

In this time R o GER Earle of Sicilia, who afterwards was King, and very mightie, being vncle to WILLIAM Duke of Pulia and Calabria, and knowing that WILLIAM was gone to marrie with the Emperors fifter of Conftantinople, came into Italy, and by force of armes tooke all that his nephew held therein; and hauing made himselfe Lord thereof he was called King of Italy; and afterwards leaving the title of Italy, he was called King of Sicilia: I have reduced this to memorie, to the end that the reader may have the better light, of what shall be faid hereafter; and may also vinderstand, that his successors have beene ever

fince called Kings of both the Sicilia, which are Naples and Sicilia.

The Emperour HENRY being reduced to the Popes obediences in little more then two yeers which he lined afterwards, he had two warres, the one against the Hollanders, and the other against L a vv as the French King: against the Hollanders he went with an army, and subdued them; against the King of France he leuied a great armie, in the behalfe of his father in law, HENRY King of England: and marching towards France the warre cealed, and he returned; for the citie of Wormes rebelled, and he went thither, and belieging it, tooke it by composition. and punished the offenders. Arthis time in Rome died Pope CALIXTVs when he had bin Pope fixe yeeres, within two moneths; and in his place was chosen LAMBERT Bishop of Hostia, and was called Honorivs the second. And Ca-LIXTUS before his death fent a great army, under the command of a Cardinall. against Pope GREGORIE who lived in Surrie, which besieging the place, tooke him prisoner, and brought him to Rome, where hee was (shamefully to disgrace him)made to ride vpon a Cammell, and the Pope granted him his life vpon condition, that he should spend the rest of his time in a Monasterie. In Germany the Emperour applied himselfe to purchase the good wil of his people, and to make himselse well beloued staking warning by his fathers successe. But there befell in all that land fo great a pestilence, and famine, that it was thought(as all writers affirme) that the third part of the people perished: for which calamitie and afflia ction, the Emperour being very forowfull, and grieued, fell ficke, and within few daies died; penitent for his fins, defiring God to forgiue the fame. And although it pleased God to give him a good death, yet he left neither sonne nor daughter that might succeede him, but two nephewes which were his sisters sonnes; the mightie Dukes of Suemia, and of Francomia, the one called FREDERICK, and the other CONRADE: some authors call CONEADEDuke of Smenia, and others. of Franconia; he died the first day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1125, when he had raigned about twentie yeers and those which account but fourteene reckon but from the time of his coronation in Rome; but I ever make my account from the day of his election; his body was embaulmed and borne to Spire, and there buried amongst his auncestors.

When the Emperor HENRY died in Conftantinople raigned CALOIDANNES. who was an excellent Prince and very requifite for that empire. He was very liberall loued inflice and equitie, and obtained many great victories in Alia, against the Turks and Persians, and recourred from them many cities which his father and predecessors had lost; his brother I s ac z v s being Generall of his armies, whom he deerly loued; and waged Italian fouldiers in freed of Greekes. But with these vertues, entrying the wars & conquest which were made in Asia, he did greatly hinder the French and others which went thither; and for the same occa-

fion fell at variance with the Venecians, which tooke from him by force of armes fome certaine Ilands in the fea called Archipelagus: of his end shall be spoken hereafter. At this time in Ierusalem began the order of the Knights Templars, and also the order of

the Knights of S. I OHN's, called afterwards of the Rhodes, and now of Malsa, wherein they inhabite.

Henry the fifth. Anno Dem. 1125.

The death of the Emperour

The beginning of the order of the Knights Templars, and of S. lohns, or of the Rhodes.



VS THE SECOND OF THAT NAME, AND FOURESCORE AND FIF-

TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR. And of CALOIDANNES Emperor of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Enry the fifth being dead, Lothary Duke of Saxony was chosen Emperour, against whom Henries Nephewes (aspiring to the Empire) in the beginning of his raigne H rebelled, which after many fortunes of warre, in the end became his subjects. He came into Italy, to the aide of Pope Innocent, against a Pseudopope which had driven him out of Rome. The Emperor was no sooner returned into Germany, but the other Pope

whosename was Anacletus (through the fanour and assistance of the King of Sicilia) made Pope Innocent to flie: whereof the Emperor being aduertised, againe returned into Italy, and restored innocent to his feate, and tamed Roger King of both the Sicilia. But returning victorious towards Germany, he died in the Mountaines of Trent; when he had ruled the Empire fourteene yeeres, leauing neuer a sonne, that might succeed him in the Empire.



THE

Hetwo HENRIES, father and sonne which held the Empire seauentie yeeres, being dead; LOTHARY Duke of Saxony a mightie prince (like as his predecessors had been before him) was chosen Emperor. His house ever (or for the most part) was enemie to the Emperour HENRY, and to his house and family, and rebelled against him: wherefore, and for the wor-

thines of his person, many of the princes and people of Germanie, so soone as the Emperor 1 Lothary the

Emperor.

fecond chofen

Emperor Henry was dead, fixed their eyes vpon him, to the end to have him for their Emperor and Soueraigne Lord: for they having been likewise enemies to HENRY, stoode in feare of his Nephewes, CONRADE and FREDERICKE Dukes of Suevia, and of Franconia, which had ever held with him; and for the fame reason, to the contrarie, the two brothers sought by all meanes that the one of them might have been Emperor, and with all their might withfloode LoTHA. RY. These two brothers (as Isaid) were Nephewesto the Emperor HENRY the fifth, and his fifters fonnes, who was the daughter of the Emperour HENRY the fourth. LEOPOLD Marquesse of Austrich, and CHARLES Earle of Flanders. by reason of their estates and power sought also to have gotten the Empire. These foure great princes being competitors, by the procurement and industrie of Albert, Archbishop of Ment7, who remembring that he had been imprisoned and ill entreated by HENRY, for contradicting his friends; found meanes to draw the princes electors to meete at Mentz, where they chose LOTHARY Duke of Saxony Emperor. Wherewith Conrade and Fredericke were so much discontented, that in liew of doing him homage as to their Emperour, they rebelled against him as their enemie: and in him wanted neither will nor industerie to persecute them. First he sent to Pope Honorivs the second, to complaine of them; who appropued, and was well pleafed with the election of the Duke of Saxony; for a fruch as by that house the popes had ever been relieved and supported; wherefore he might easily obtaine of the pope, to commaund them (by his censures) to yeeld their obedience. But these two brothers (taking armes) found fo many friends; and their lands and countries were fuch and fo great, that a cruell warre began betweene them, which I omit, for that I finde it briefly written; yet it continued many daies, and came to that iffue, that Con-RADE the elder of these two brothers, with the helpe of his brother FREDE-RICKE, and of GODFREY Countie Palantine of Rhine, was called Emperour. and raising the greatest power that he was able (leaving his brother in Germany to make head against Lothary) he went into Italy, and tooke many Imperials cities in the state of Lombardy, where the Archbishop of Milan crowned him with the crowne of Yron: by reason whereof, Pope Honorty's afterwards depriued him of his Archbishopricke, and set another in his place: and the Emperor LOTHARY being thus distressed, knowing that HENRY of Baniere, (who was called the proud, and was descended from the linage of the famous GVEL-PHONS, of which the Abbot WESPERGENSIS and other authors make fo great account) was a mightie prince and very valiant; he practifed with him to marrie his onely daughter, whose name was GERTRVDE; and to the end that he should be a faithfull and loyall servant vnto him, he gave him with her for her dowrie, the title and fuccession of the Duchie of Saxonie, which after his death he enioved, and was Lord of both estates; yet afterwards in processe of time, there were alterations in them, and in others; whereof I will make no especiall relation, for that it requireth too long a time; yet I will fometimes speake thereof as occasion shall be offered. The Duke of Bautere, and other princes now helping the Emperor with all their powers, made cruell warre in CONKADES countries, whilest that he was busie about his coronation in Lombardy, with intent to haue gone to Rome. But as he had leuied more men then he was able to pay, and wanted meanes to give them satisfaction, he was driven to returne into his countrie, and to ioyne with his brother; and being returned, was not of power able to make head against the Emperour, or at the least, to goe thorow with what he had begun;

begun; whereupon he fought to make some agreement with him, and to obtaine his fauour: which was effected (as faith the Abbot WESPERGENSIS) at the intercession of Saint BERNARD, he renouncing the name and title of Emperor, and giving other securitie to serve him as a subject: the like did his brother FREDERICKE also, and so ended the Emperour LOTHARY this warre, which (as he writeth) was very bloody; during the which in Rome died Honorty the second, having beene pope five yeeres, and him succeeded Innocentivs the second, a Romane borne, who so soone as he was pope, determined to have driven ROGER Earle of Sicilia out of Pulia; where ROGER was called King of Italy (as I faid in the end of the life of the Emperor HENRY) having taken the famefrom WILLIAM, who was his Nephew, or (as some say) his cosine germane: and leuving a great armie for those warres he went thither in person. But forafmuch as the authors differ in the recital thereof (the Italians accounting it to be at this time, that the pope was taken prisoner therein: and the Germanes recount it to have happened in the time of CONRADE the third who succeeded LOTHARY) we will therefore leave it vntill that time; in which it seemed most likely to have passed. But here we will speake of another disaster, which befell pope Innocentivs; which was, that with the fame of his imprisonment, or (as I rather beleeue) of his death; a mightie Romane, of great power. whose name was PETER LEO, came to Rome, publishing the newes thereof: and procuring fauour and affiltance thereto, made himselfe to be chosen pope, and was called ANACLETVS; who taking all the gold and filuer out of the temples and Churches, and giving the same to his followers, grew to be of such power, that pope INNOCENTIVS being returned to Rome, could not make his partie good therein against him, but was constrained in a manner by flight, to get him into France, and from thence into Germany, to the Emperor Lother Y; who by reason of the peace and agreement betweene him and Duke CONRADE, was growne very rich and of great power; and giving him very good intertainment. offered to goe in person to restore him to his estate: and although that the affaires of Germany were not yet throughly fetled, yet he in shorte space made readie a faire armie, and they both together departed towards Italy, but by feuerall waies, dividing their armie to the end to march the more commodiously: and againe meeting neere to Rome, were therein received; without that pope Anaclets durst to make any resistance; whom his friends had hidden so secretly, that at that time, he could not be found; which was in the fixth yeere of the Emperors The Emperor raigne: and fo with great folemnitie pope Innocant was restored to his Italy. chaire; and with the like or greater, the Emperor Lothary was by him crowned; and within few daies after, returned with his people into Germany, without finding in the way any contradiction or relistance.

The Emperor Lothary being arrived in Germany, and having by the confent of the princes thereof fummoned a Councell to be held therein: by the authoritie of the Empire, he resolued to goe in person against the Duke of Polonia, because he refused to pay the tribute, in acknowledgment of superioritie which he ought for the space of twelue yeeres behinde hand unpaied: But the Polacres not daring fland to the hazard of warre; the Duke accompanied with men of peace, came foorth of his countrie to receive the Emperour; whom the Emperor would not fee, neither admit into his presence, before that he had paied him all the arrerages due for so many yeeres past; and the Duke accomplishing the same, came to fee the Emperor in the Duchie of Saxony; whether being come, and ha-

the same; the pope alleaging the countries of Pulis and Calabria to be subject

uing promised to performe the premisses, returned to his home in peace. At the fame time the King of Hungary fent his Ambassadors and presents, in acknowledgment of superioritie. Pope INNOCENT in the meane time had ill successe: for within few daies after the Emperours departure out of Italy, and that he had called a Councell to be held in the citie of Spire: Pope ANACLETVS aforesaid (through the fauour and affiftance of his friends and parents, and of Rogan which was called King of the two Sicilia) returned agains to Rome, and tooke vpon him as Pope, being alreadie Lord of the citie, and of some other fortresses: whereupon Pope INNOCENT fent to the Emperour, imploring his aide and fuccour, and to reftore him to his dignitie. The Emperour fetting the affaires of Germany apart, and raising a greater armie then at the first; within short space came into Italy; with whom (besides those which the Abbot WESPERGENSIS fetteth downe) came his sonne in law Hanny Duke of Basiere, with great and very good troupes of men of warre: O THO FRISINGENSIS faith that COM-RADE Duke of Suenia, which in former time had been his enemie, came with him also: and being come into Italy, entring Lombardy, he found therein great warre and diffension betweene the cities of Cremona, and of Milan, and heas foueraigne Lord, tooke vpon him to decide the cause of their difference; and finding those of Cremenia to bee faultie, he proceeded against them; and they rebelling were by him subdued by force of armes. From thence he went to the citie of Pania, and thence to Bolonia, visiting and pacifying the other cities of Lombardy; which through civill contention, and the long absence of the Emperours, were in a manner at libertie, and tyrannized, all which he subdued and brought to subjection: and from thence (sending his sonne in law with the one halfe of his armie into Tuscane, to receive the pope, which lay in Pisa) he himselfe by another way went with the rest into the Marca di Ancona, wherein he affaulted and tooke many townes which rebelled; aswell against him as against the Church of Rome; which he recouered and restored. And asterwards in with the pope and with his sonne in law HENRY, he tooke his way towards Rome, where he reflored the pope to his feate and Pallace; and thence marched forwards, to warre against Rooger, who with the helpe of his friends and subjects, had raised a great armie, vaunting in braue termes, that he would fight with the Emperor. But Ro-GER shamefully retiring without daring to meete him, put his men into garrisons. to defend his countries; and the Emperour followed the warres with fuch expedition and courage, that within short space he became Lord of Pulia, and Cala-Roger King of bria, and of all the rest that Roger held; and constrained him to flie out of Italy. and to get him into Sicily. And to the Emperour at his being there came Ambaffadors from CALOIDANNES Emperour of Constantinople, to congratulate his victories obtained against Roger, whom he much hated, and against whom he had afterwards great warres. At this time died the Antipope ANACLETVS. And fo the Emperor finding no refistance in Italy (having subdued the rebellious, and rewarded and honored those which had faithfully and valiantly serued him, in fuch manner that they write of him, that fince the time of CHARLES the Great, not any Emperor had cuer lived there in fo great power and authoritie) he returned into Germany: but before his departure, he bestowed vpon a great Germane prince, who was his neere kinfman and fauorite, whose name was RAYNOLD, the state of Pulia, with the title of Duke thereof, which he tooke from Rogen. About which gift, notwithstanding that the pope was well content therewith, OTHO FRISINGENSIS (who was an eye witnes and an author of those times)

writeth.

and feudatory to the Church of Rome; and that, that fauour and title which was giuen to RAYNOLD, was to haue been giuen by him, and not by the Emperor: butin the end, a meane was found, that it was done in both their names; and the armes and enfignes of Duke, were given to RAYNOLD by them both; and fo R AYNOLD remained a Duke; and the Emperor departing, left many good men of warre with him, whereof he afterwards stoode in neede, as you shall heare: and fo leaving the pope in Rome, he returned towards his countrie, triumphing of his victories: and vpon the way comming to the Mountaines of Trent, he fell to The death of grieuously sicke, that vnable to trauell any further, hee died in a little village, in the Emperor the thirteenth yeere after that hee was chosen Emperour, and in the seauenth af-Latharyter his coronation in Rome, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred Anno Dom. thirtie and eight: his body was carried into Saxony, and there most sumptuously 1138. entombed, and by his death grew great alterations in all matters, both in Italy and in Germany, as shall be recounted. He left no more children behind him when he died, but his onely daughter GERTRVDE, who (Isaid) was married to HENRY Duke of Bauiere; for his onely sonne called LOTHARY died a childe before him. In time of this Emperor (as he was a great Iusticer) the lawes and institutions collected by the Emperor IvsTINIAN, were againe reusued and tooke effect; which through the division and declining of the Empire, were grown out of vie, and in Areformation a manner quite forgotten; and VERNERIVS whom Acves IVS (a gloser vpon in the civill the civill law) calleth YRNERIVS, fought, and tooke out of the auncient Libraries, the bookes of the lawes which Ivstinian had compiled, and abbreviated out of the institutions of the Pretors, Ediles, and auncient Emperors; which lay forgotten, and euen lost: and he corrected and reduced the same into the best forme that he was able; which the Emperor Lothary commaunded to be read inschooles, and that all pleas should be determined by them; and so they are keptyntill this day. And within a while after this, these lawes began to be glosed vpon by Azo a famous Doctor; and afterwards succeeded Acvasivs, and The beginning they have still so encreased, that fince that time there have been many great and of the Civill famous man in the faculties which hald the great still and a still largers. famous men in that facultie; which hold the greatest authoritie and degree in the estate and government of all Common-wealths. In Constantinople yerraigned CALOIDANNES, warring against the Infidels, and against Rocke King of Sicily.

Sicilia driuen out of Italy.

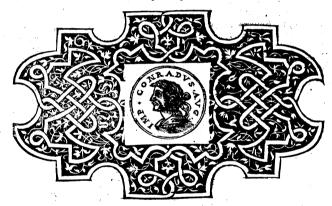
THE



## THE LIFE OF CONRADE THE THIRD OF THAT NAME,

AND FOURESCORE AND SIX-TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.

And therein is treated of CALOIOAN NES, and of his fonne EMANUEL, Emperours of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Fter Lothary succeeded Conrade, Nephew of the Emperour Henry the fifth; who was chosen by the Electors, and confirmed by the Popes Legate. He was in the beginning of his raigne diffurbed by the sonne in law of Lotharius, which withheld from bim the imperiall ensignes; and not onely refused to deliner them, but also to reelde him any obedience; whereupon the Emperor proclaimed him Rebell, and tooke from

bim by force of armes many estates: but this warre had so many variable fortunes, that the Emperor therein spent seauen veeres, during which time, he topke no great care how matters went in Italy. He went to the warres of the Holy land, and being come into his enemies countries, received fo great an overthrow, that there feareely remained the tenth man of those which went with him. After this reut, he prosecuted his attempt, in company of the French King, from whom he afterwards departed; holding his being with him for dishonorable. He returned thither the third time, and together with the Kings of France, and of Ierusalem, did nothing of any account. Afterwards, hib it pleased not God to favour the proceedings of the Christians in this enterprise, each of the princes returned into his countrie : and the Emperor being returned into Germany; whilest he was making preparation for his going into Italy, to be crowned, died (as many men thought) of por fon, in the fifteenth yeere of his raigne.



Haue alreadie told, how that the Emperour LOTHART maried his onely daughter to HENRY Duke of Baniere. (called the proud) which was a valiant and mightie prince; and that he gaue him the title of Duke of Saxomy, which was his house and patrimonie: and that this HENRY did him great service in his journey into Italy, and also against the two mightie brothers, CONRADE and FREDERICK, Dukes of Sucuia and of Franconia, which were his enemies a long time: for when Lo-

THARY was chosen Emperor, they thought to have had it for one of themselves. for that they were nephewes of the then deceased Emperour HENRY the fifth. and grand children of the Emperour H BNR y the fourth. So foone as the Emperour LOTHARY Was dead, his fonne in law HENRY Duke of Bausere, which came with him, and was alreadie called Duke of Saxony, gat into his custodie the imperiall enfignes; as the Scepter, the Croffe, the Crowne, and the Globe, imagining thathe should have had vie for them, for that he thought to have been himselfe Emperour, but they availed him nothing: for the two brethren, CONRADE and FREDERICK Dukes of Sueuia & Franconia (afore named) were of fo great power and authoritie, that affembling the princes electors in Confluence (which is where the river Mosella ioyneth with the Rhine, THEODORICVS a Cardinall and the Popes Legate being there present) CONRADE Was chosen Emperour, and all Emperour, the princes sware to him homage and obedience; which the Saxons and Bauarians onely withstood, together with HENRY their Lord, and his brother GVE Iрно, who was a great and valiant prince: whereupon the new Emperour called a generall Diet or Councel to be held in the citie of Bambergh, whither came the widow Emperesse, late wife of LOTHARIVS, and the Proctors of Saxony, to acknowledge and yeeld obedience vnto him: but Duke HENRY would not appeare, neither would he fend the Imperiall enfignes which he had in his power: and so by all the princes there assembled, with the Emperours authoritie, hee was enioyned to appeare and to fend the enfignes aforefaid, by the feast day of S.P E-TER and PAVL then next following; and he did fo(for he durft doe no other) but would not come himselfe in person: whereupon the Emperour (desiring to be at peace with him) after two or three fummons, enioyned him, within a certaine prefixed time, to make his appearance in the citie of Ausburgh; for which purposehe presently caused a Councell to be summoned, and made great preparation, meaning to haue proceeded against him with all rigour and seueritie. The Councell being affembled, HENRY accompanied with many men of warre, of Saxony and of Bautere, came neere to that place where it was held, and lodged his campe, and began to treate of meanes to come to the Emperours obedience; which treatie continued three daies without any conclusion: for the Emperour required him to refigne certaine lands which his father in law the Emperour Lo-THARY had given him : but the Emperour holding himselfe not in safetie in that citie, departed without any speech of his remouing, vntill hee was gone, and went to the citie of Herbipoli, where many princes meeting, by the generall consent of

of Sicilia, wherein the throwene, and taken prisoner with all his Cardinals.

646

WVarres betuveenetbe Emperour and the Duke Baziere and Saxony.

them all he pronounced sentence against HENRY of Baniere; whereby hee condemned him in the loffe of all his estates: and many great matters happened. which wee will declare fo foone as wee haue told you what befell in Italy, to the pope and to Duke RAINOLD, whom the Emperour LOTHARY made Duke of Pulia and Calabria, with R O G ER King of Sicily; which passed in this manner. So foone as the Emperour L o THARY was dead, there were presently so great alterations and troubles in Italy, that Roger in great hafter aifed his forces, and went into Pulia, with a determination to have reconquered those countries, whereof he was dispossessed : But RAINOLD had so good men of warre with him, that he fought with him in battaile, and ouerthrew him; so as hee was driuen to returne with losse of part of his armie: and being busied about making new preparation for the same enterprise, RAINOLD died in time of his good fortune; so as without any great difficultie, R o G E R recouered all the countries of Pulia and Calabria, which he first tooke from his nephew, and which had been his grandfathers. Pope Innocent seeing what passed, sent to the Emperour to desire him to come into Italy, or to fend thither an armie to drive R o G E R out of that countrie: but for as much as the fuccours came flowly (as writeth Gothifredvs Vi-TERRIENSIS) the Pope leuied a great armie, and went against Rogers but as he was no very expert man of warre, so by a deuice his armie was ouerthrowne, tweene the Pope and himselfe together with his Cardinals was taken prisoner. But R o G ER maand Roger king king a conscience of the matters set both him and all his Cardinals at libertie: for which his liberalitie and curtefie the Pope confirmed him king of Sicilia; and Ro-Pope was outre GER as his liege man did homage to the Pope, calling his countries the Church patrimonie; and so remained Roger and his successors kings of Sicilia, and Lords of Pulia and Calabria, and was a very mightic prince. This being passed, ROGER fearing the Emperours comming into Italy, fent to folicite HENRY the proud, and his brother GVELPHO, with letters and money to beare armes against. the Emperor CONRADE, with whom they alreadie had great warres; for HEN-RY the proud being condemned by the Emperour, in the loffe of all his estates of Bautere and Saxony; and the Emperour having given the Duchie of Saxony to A 1-BERT cofine germane to the Duke; and Baniere to LEOPOLD fonne to the Marquesse of Austrich (which was the Emperours mothers brother) so as all was turned topsie turnie, and the warre was prosecuted with great crueltie, the one partie feeking to hold and to defend their estates, and the other to get the same; and hee which chiefly followed this war was GVELPHO, brother to HENRY the proud, for HENRY now by reason of his oldage could not well beare armes; and hauing prouided a very good armie, the Emperour went against GVELPHO, and fought a battaile with him, which was very doubtfull, for GVELPHO was an excellent captaine and very valiant: but he being ouermatched, was ouerthrowne, and lost many of his men, both Bauarians and Italians, which Roger king of Sicilie had fent to his aide, and he himselfe escaped by slight. But he was a man of so haughtic a minde, and therewith vsed such industrie and expedition, that within few daies he reinforced his armie; and fought aide of the king of Hungary, who repined at the prosperitie of the empire, for that he would not acknowledge any Superiour : and so to his aide came many Calabrians and Sicilians, sent by Roger king of Sicilie, and the Emperour of necessitie was driven to do the like, and made his eldest son called Henry Generall of his armie, who afterwards died before his father: and he befreged a towne called Winfperg, and lying before it, his fon HEK-RIE, neere to a place called Elnofen, fought a battaile with GVELPHO, in which,

fome of GVELPHO his partie (which were Italians) cried, GVELPHO, GVEL- The original PHO, after the name of their Generall; and the Imperialists cried, GIEELLIN, and Gibeling, GIBBLLIN, for that HENRIE their Generall was bred up in a place fo called. Some authors affirme, that ypon this occasion it afterwards followed, that in the controuerfies betweene the Emperours and the Popes, the Imperialifts tooke the name of Guelphs; and the Papifts, Gibelins; and that herehence sprang the cruell factions of Guelphs and Gibelinsin Italy: hereof are other opinions, which import not much to be treated of in this place. The battaile was very cruell, but Gyeleno his troupes (being of divers nations and conditions) did not fo well fecond and relieue one another, as HENRIES did; fo as GVELPHO Was likely to haue been ouerthrowne, and finding no other remedie, to avoide further cuill, he abandoned the field, and HENRY apparantly had the victorie: who after that he left the pursuite, ioyned with his father the Emperour at the fiege of VV infperg; which being greatly diffressed, yeelded to mercie. But all the grace that the Emperour would graunt to the inhabitants, was to permit all the women which were in the towne, freely to depart, and to haue to their owne vie whatfocuer they could beare on their backes: whereupon they yfed a commendable and memorable deceit, which was, that as they went foorth of the towne, each of them took A commenher husband voon her backe, and those which had none, tooke their children or dable deceit brothers, and so comming into the fields set them at libertie : and notwithstan- in Germany. ding that FREDERICK the Emperours brother alleaged that it was deceit and colonage and therefore not to be permitted; neuerthelesse the Emperour held it for well done, and commended them for the same. And truly I hold it for one of the most memorable acts done by women that euer I read in my life. Through these two ouerthrowes, the partie of GVELPHO, and of his brother HENRY the proud, was fo broken and weakened, that A LBERT, to whom the Emperour had giuen the title of Duke of Saxony, had time and oportunitie to make himselfe Lord thereof: and LEOPOLD to whom hee had given the Duchie of Baniere. made daily conquest of more and more of that countrey. Duke HENRY seeing this came disguised to such places as held for him in Saxony, where he vsed such effectuall speeches, and wrote so pitifull letters to his friends and subjects, that they being moued therewith, repaired vnto him in fuch order, that A L B E R T Was driven to flie to the Emperour for helpe; and Hanay the proud having this good fuccesse, and being in hope to have prevailed, died: after whose decease, the Saxons in despite of the Emperor, tooke a sonne of his, called as he was HENRY. for their Lord; and they recourred great part of that estate: But L E OPO LD Was feiled of the greatest part of the Duchie of Bautere, who (as I faid) was the Emperours mothers brother: And GVELPHO fo foone as his brother HENRY the proud was dead, was called Duke of Bautere, alleaging that it did belong vnto him by inheritance: and many friends repairing vnto him, cruell warres began betweene him and LEOPOLD, and GVELPHO ouerthrew LEOPOLD in a battaile: And the Emperour feeking redresse (to the end that he would not at one time haue so many irons in the fire together) agreed, and made peace with the Saxons, marrying the widow Duchesse of Saxony, daughter of the Emperor Lo-THAR IS, with whom HENRY the proud had that Dukedome, of the greatest part whereof his sonne H x NR Y was then in possession: and this being effected, he determined to aide LEOPOLD against QVELPHO: But in the meane time LEOPOLD died, and with the same trouble his sonne called H FNRY had the Ducie of Baniere, against whom (with no lesse stomacke and diligence) GVELPHO profecuted

profecuted the war: but CONRAD affifting his cofine germane the new Dukes neither GVELPHO, neither his nephew HENRY Duke of Saxony, could premaile against him; notwithstanding that GVELPHO was so warlike, and so valiant 2

The Emperour tempt for the conquest of lerufalem.

captaine. CONRADE having spent fixe or seven yeeres of his raigne in these civill wars. a voyage was pretended to Ierufalem; which although it had no great good fucceffe, yet it was good and commendable. And to the end that you may the better understand the same, it shall be requisite briefly to set downe the most important causes thereof, and the estate wherein the affaires of Gracia then stood, and of Ita-Walfo: which was in this manner. The Christians having possessed lerulalem, and many other cities in Syria and in Melopotamia, now about fine and fortie yeeres; and having perfourmed wonderfull matters in armes in their continuall warres against the Infidels, which they waged at what time as Conrade was busie about this matter: and FVICO fonne in law to BALD VVIN, being then the fourth King of Ierusalem, and having done great exploites against the Sarazins, there arose some controuersies betweene some princes. Dukes of certaine places in the East; and so between them, and CALOIOANNES Emperour of Constantinople, which gaue occasion to the king of Persia his captaines, to doe much harme in the countries which the Christians possessed: against which, Fuco king of lerufalem made the greatest resistance that he was able, and did many worthy feates of armes. Then enfued the death of the Greeke Emperour, who had raigned fixe and twentie yeeres: And although he had troubled the state of the East yet neuerthelesse by reason of his great power he was much feared of the Infidels; and died of a small wound given him in the left hand with an envenomed arrow : and by his last will and testament, he ordained his youngest sonne for his successor for that his eldeft some was incapable of the government. The state of Syria being thus troubled, Fvico king of lerufalem went to encounter a great armie of Turkes and Persians, which came against the citic of Amioch; and joyning in battaile, ouerthrew and flew three thousand of them: whereupon the Soldan king of Persia, whose name was A LAPH, amassed all his whole power, and came before Ediffa, a very mightic citie in Melopotamia, which the Christians had held the space of fine and fortie yeeres; which citie by the lewes is called Aracha, and is a very famous citie, through the fertilitie and greatnes thereof; and for that it was the place, whither TOBIAS fent his sonne TOBIAS to GABBLYS for his money, and the same was converted to the Christian faith by THADEVS; and adorned with the bones of S.T HOMAs the Apostle, and at this time was inhabited and frequented by excellent Christians: But the faide ALAPH comming in person against it, without that King Fv LC o was any way able to relieve the citie. was taken and facked; wherein the Infidels vsed indicible cruelties and vilanies, fuch as have not been heard of: some writers reckon the losse of this citie to have happened after the decease of King FVLCO: but PLATINA and BLONDVs recount is as I have done. After the loss of this citie, another great misfortune enfued, which was the vnhappie death of F v L c o King of Ierusalem in this manner; as hee was busie, applying himselfe to recouer this lost citie, and to leuie new troupes of men of warre, being one day in the fields hunting an Hare, his horse fel with him, and his head fell under the arfon of the faddle, wher with he was brufed, and fo fore hurt, that losing both his speech and senses, he died within three daies after it, leaving behind him two young fonnes, the eldeft of which called B a 1 p-VVIN, had the title and kingdom of Ieru [alem : but through the want of Fv LC 0,

Ferufalem.

through other occasious, the Infidels daily took townes, and did much hurt to the Christians. Pope INNOCENT and the Christian Princes understanding how matters went in the East, and being forie to heare thereof (as in deede they had reason especially of the losse of the great citie of Edissa) began to consult of some redresse and reliefe for the same sand as S.BRRNARD was then in great credit and very famous, he tooke vpon him to perswade the Christian Princes, to goe in person to this warre, Pope INNOCENT giving him in charge to persorme that action; which Pope having held that seate the space of sourteene yeeres, died (as faithPLATINA) in the yeer of our Lord 1144. and him succeeded CELESTIN the fecond, who was Pope but fine moneths; and he being dead, LvcIvs the fecond was made Pope, in whose time (as faith PLATINA and BLONDYS) S. BERNARD vndertooke this enterprise; and as others fay, in the time of Innocentivs: this difference doth not discredit the authors, for the losse of the citie of Edista. and the death of king Fv Lc o, and other matters which happened in the East, paffed at senerall times, and might attaine to the time of all these Popes, for the small timethat they lived: for LvcIvs the second was not Pope fully one yeere, and this was firthe time of his successor Evg ENIVs. I say then that by meanes of the Popes letters, together with the perswasion of S.BERNARD, LEVVES which then was king of France, taking for his deuice the figne of the Croffe, determined with many great Lords and Knights of his countries, to goe to this warre in the East in the behalfe of the king of Ierusalem; and he leuving an armie, BERNARD Went into Germany to the Emperour CONRADE (whose life we write) and obtai- The Emperous went into Germany to the Emperour CONRADE (WHOICE HE WENTIC) and ODTALcontact and
ned of him to doe the like, as the French King pretended to doe: Whereto he will
Level king of lingly and speedily prepared himselfe; and it pleased God that this journey was so France wint to well liked of by all men, that not with flanding that there were very sharpe and hot termalem. warres betweene the Emperour, and G v E LPHO and his adherents, yet the fame GVELPHO notwithstanding offered to goe this journey with him, and to do him feruice therein. And so the Emperor and the French King (by their letters) agreed to goe to that enterprise personally. But for as inuch as they both could not conueniently march together in companie, by reason of the great multitude of their people; it was concluded that the Emperour should first set forwards (and so he did)in the yeere of our Lord 1147, according to the most authors, yet some write Anna Domi one yeere lesse: and hee departed, accompanied by these princes, FREDERICE 1147. Duke of Suenia, sonne of his brother FREDERICK deceased, the Duke of Lorraine, the Earle of Flanders and Friseland, the Marquesse of Austrich, and Gv 1 L-PHO his former cruell enemie, and his then fernant and companion, and whom the Emperour in all that iourney called fellow fouldier, and made great account of his person, with many other princes and Lords of great account. In this all authorsagree, that of the Emperours owne forces, with the forces of these princes, together with the aduenturers, which came from all parts, vpon the report of fo zealous an enterprise, his armie amounted to the number of threescore and tenne thousand horse, and (in a manner) to as many foote: with which, marching through Austrich and Hungary, he addressed his journey towards Constantinople; where hee was iovfully and honourably received by the Emperour ENANVEL fonne of CALOIO ANNES; and his troupes were lodged in townes and places necreat hand; and staying there some few daies, he crossed ouer the straight of Constantinople with his whole Armie; with lesse store of victuals then was needfull in fuch an action, through the Emperour of Constantinople his counsell and default, who promised to furnish him with all things necessarie; and so he marched

through the Emperors countries, in Asia the leffe, and had Greekes for his guides. fuch as well knew the countrie. And passing through the prouince of Licaonia. which bordreth ypon Galacia, in the middelt of Asia the leffe, being in his enemics countrie in great want of victualles, all his guides in one night forfooke him: which, as some write, was thought to have been done by the direction of the Emperor of Constantinople, who of malice or enuy repined at this war. Others imagine that they stoode in feare, and fled, for that they faw the armie so vnprouided of victualles, or for that they had miffed of their way: but how soeuer it was, the Emperor stayed necreto the citie of Iconium, which is in Silicia, and (as some sav) besieged the same, for that it was rich, wel furnished, & of great importance, thinking in short time to have taken it. But for a smuch as victualles came not according to the trust he reposed in the Greekes; his people within few dates space endured extreame hunger, & fickenes; and falling fick of the chaulke which (as some write) the Greekes did put into their meale, they died. The Emperor feeing himself thus distressed in his enemies countries, and his friends being doubtfull and variable in their opinions, whether they should goe forwards, or retire: (either of which was perillous) in the meane time, so great a multitude of Turkes, Persians, and other heathen nations (knowing the distresse wherein the Christians were) affaulted his campe, in fuch manner, that his person and armic were in danger to have been wholy lost: (God in his secret judgement, permitting it) and the Emperor knowing no better course to be taken, came to a battaile with them; some say two. and that the fight continued two daies together, one after another; and as the greatest part of his armie was fickly, and almost hungerstarged; so after that they had done what they possibly were able, they were broken and ouerthrowne; and fo many of them were flaine and taken prisoners, that there remained little more then the tenth man of his armie; with which he escaped by flight, and therein endured extreame hunger and many daungers; and flayed not any where vntill he came to the citie of Nicea, in the province of Bythinia, in Alia the leffe, which was fubication the Greeke Empire; where amaffing the remainder of his armie (which from many parts, held by Christians, came thither to him) he determined to attend the comming of L E vv E s the French King, who was alreadie vpon the way comming. This overthrow happened in the moneth of November, in the yeere

of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred fourtie and seuen. At what time as the Emperour Conrade was thus overthrowne by the Infidels, the French King was come from Constantinople into Bythinia; where he had been well received and lodged by the Emperor EMANVEL: and within few daies after that the Emperour Connade was departed from Germany, pope EVGENIVE the third, which succeeded Lycivs, flying from Rome, came to him in France, by reason of certaine Commotions raised against him in Rome, for the people would have placed certaine citizens in the government of the cities and the pope finding the King readie to depart, encouraged him to proceede in his journey, and gaue him his holy benediction; and the King in requitall gaue him men and money, wherewith he returned to Rome, and was with much obedience therein received. King LEVVES of France being arrived in Asia, and vnderstanding nothing of the Emperors misfortune; FREDERICKE Duke of Suenia, Nephew to the Emperor, came to him, and certified him of their overthrow: wherefore the King halfned his journey, and finding the Emperour in Nicea, he recomforted and perswaded him to proceede in his attempt in his company; which he then willingly did, and so they marched together to the famous

citie of Ephelus, which is the most principall citie of all Asia the leffe, in the prouince of Ionia, where the Emperour confidering that he went not according to his estate and honour, going with so small forces, but rather as a subject to the King of France, and for some other respects, giving good words he tooke his leave of the King, and departed; and drawing neere to the Sea, sent his people by land. and he by Shippe went to stay for them at Constantinople, where diffembling the injurie that he had received (or peraduenture not suspecting any such matter) he remained the rest of the winter; to the end that reinforcing his armie, he might from thence the next spring returne to his enterprise.

In the meane time the French King profecuted his journey, not without great trouble and losse of many of his men, in a battaile which he wanne; and in another, wherein part of his armie was ouerthrowne: how it passed I doe not set downe, for that it appertaineth not to my Historie. After this, enduring great trauaile and daungers, by long journeies, he came to the citie of Antioch, in company of RAIMOND OF REMON, Lord thereof, who came to meete him you the way, and to doe him honor, from whence he afterwards (as I will shew you) came to lerusalem. The spring being come, and the Emperour CONRADE having leuied new forces, which he joyned with the remainder of his last armie; in a great fleete which he had prepared, with the helpe of the Emperour of Constantinople, he embarked and came therein into Soria, and there difembarking in a certaine harbour, came with his armie by land to Ierusalem, where, by BALD VVIN the King thereof, he was very joyfully received; and within few daies they had intelligence, that the French King was comming thither also: whom the Emperour, and King BALDVVIN received with greatioy; and then to avoy de losse of much time, they prefently tooke counfel about profecuting the warre against the Infidels; concluding to beliege the citie of Damasco, from whence (for that it was very puissant and populous) they daily received losse, detriment, and ill neighbourhoode, and so taking that obstacle, they determined to have proceeded further, which plot was prefently put in execution; and the Emperor, and the two Kings departed, with a great and very well ordered armie, with a resolution, and in hope to haue effected some great matters : but it pleased God otherwise to Damasto bedispose of their purpose, for being come to Damasco, and having encamped them- feeed by the felues on that fide of the citie, towards Mount Libanus, they had many daungerous skirmishes, wherefore (through the aduice and counsell of certaine men of that countrie, which being corrupted with money by the befieged, defired to deceive these princes) they removed their campe to the otherside of the citie. and abandoned the most fit place for their fiege: whereof it ensued, that the Infidels taking the aduantage of an Hill (which they fortified) did thence greatly annoy them, and this Hill was fo fituate, that it stopt the comming of victuals to the campe: and the befieged defended themselves so valorously, and famine so much encreased in these princes armies, that it was impossible for them to live, if they remained there any longer, so as they were perforce constrained to raise their fiege, and returned to Ierufalem, forrowfull and in ill plight, there to confult of what course was best to be taken. In this siege (as saith the Abbot W # s P E R-GENSIS) GVELPHO, the Emperors auncient enemie (yet then his good friend) fell sicke, and fearing to die if he staied there any longer, he with his followers tooke shipping and sailed into Sicilia, where recouring his health, through the counsell and instigation of R o G RR King thereof, hee from thence went into Germany, and there againe rebelling, made warres upon the Emperors countries.

The Emperor throwne by the Sarazins.

warres of the Holy land.

The returne of The Emperour and French King then resolued to returne into their dominions. the Emperor and the French feeing it pleased not God to prosper their proceedings; and the rather to the end and the Extension to anoyde innovations and troubles that might grow in the countries, by reason of their absence; and they did so, leaving the affaires of the East in as ill estate as they found the same. The Emperour rigging vp his nauie, embarked himselfe with his people, and againe tooke land in Gracia (as faith OTHO FRISINGEN-\$ 15, who accompanied him in all this iourney) and in the prouince of Achaia. met the Emperour of Constantinople, where refreshing himselfe a while after his comming from Sea, he departed from the faid Emperor, and tooke his way into Germany, and so ended this religious enterprise, in the fourth yeere after the fame began. And the French King, within few dayes after the Emperors departure from the Holy land, tooke shipping also; and after some aduentures which befell him in the way, arrived in his countrie, in health and peace; and the Emperour againe warred against Gvelpho, to the end to punish him for his rebellion in his absence, but at the entreatie of his Nephew FREDERICKE, Duke of Sueuia, who was likewise Nephew to GVELPHO by his mothers side, he pardoned him, and graunted him peace, and allowed him certainelands and reuenewes for his maintenance. At this time came Ambassadours to the Emperour from the Christian Kings, and from the pope, to congratulate his returne; and hee commaunded a Diet or Councell to be affembled in the citie of Confluence; wherein, after many matters appertaining to the government of the Common-wealth, he concluded to come into Italy, to be crowned (being thereto inuited by pope V R-BANE before named) and making preparation for his journey, he was entercepted by death; not without suspition of poyson, given him by an Italian Phisition, through the procurement of Roger King of Sicilia; he died in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred fiftie two, in the fifteenth veere of his raigne (some reckon one thousand, one hundred fiftie and foure) and left one onely sonne called FREDERICKE, who afterwards being Duke of Sueuia, and died in Italy, which some he had by his wife the Emperesse, whose name was GERTRYDE, an Earles daughter which was a great Lord in Germanie: by whom healfo had had another fonne, called HENRY; of whom mention hath been alreadie made, who died before his father the Emperor.

In Constantinople raigned EMANVEL, and held the Empire after this almost thirtie yeeres; this Emperor is reckoned amongst the wicked and vicious Emperors, and is greatly condemned, as to have been the occasion of the losse of the two armies, viz. the Emperors, and the French Kings, as we have alreadie recounted. For which cause (it is written that) Roger King of Sicily warred against him, and having taken certaine Ilands from him; he came so neere to the citie of Constantinople, that the arrowes which he shot, fell within his pallace; and they affirme, that he gathered apples from the trees, growing in the Orchards and Gardens belonging thereto. This Roger died within a yeere of two after the Emperor CONRADE; and his sonne WILLIAM the first succeeded him.

In the time of this Emperor, in the veere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred thirtie nine, died in France, aman called IOHN of time, who (as many authorsaffirme) had lived three hundred fixtie and one yeeres, and had been an Halberdere of the Emperour CHARLES the Great his guard; it is a matter hardly to be beleeued, yet possible; and many authors write the same.

Anno Doin. Ichan de temps is reported to baue lined three hundred fixtic and one

yeeres.

Anno Dom.

1152. The death of

the Emperor Conrade.



## RICKETHE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, SVRNAMED BARBAROSSA. AND FOVRESCORE AND SEuenteenth Romane Emperor.

> And of EMANVEL, Emperour of Constantinople.



THE ARGVMENT.



Fter the decease of Conrade, his Nephew Fredericke Duke of Sueniawas chosen Emperor; aman endued with all excellencies, aswell of body as of mind, sauing that be was peraduenture more desirous of glory then was convenient. In the beginning of his raigne he shewed himselfe very desirous of peace, but afterwards in processe of time. he waged very great warres; and having stirred up many tumules of warres in Ger-

many, he purposed to make a sourney into Italy, there to be crowned; and having lenied a great armie, and being past the Alpes, he greatly endomaged the Milanois, which made an insurrection against him; but spending no long time about those factions, he went to Rome, where he was crowned by the Pope. In time of his coronation many troubles arose in Rome, wherewith he was much displeased; which he leaving impersect, returned into Germany, where he afterwards sell at variance with the Pope, by meanes of the King of Sicilia, which was his enemie: this controversie was pacified by Christian princes, which personaded him rather to seeke to be renenged on the Milanois, then to warre against the Pope. Whereupon heresolued againe to come into Italy, by reason of Milan, and came thither and destroyed it, and made it to be ruinated by the Milanois themselves, which were the citizens and inhabitants thereof; and besides this, he did much more harme. He highly maintained a schisme in the Church of Rome, and gaue great aide to the Antipope whose mame was Victor: but all Italy being discontent, by reason of the terrible punishment inslitted upon Milan;

so some as he was gone out of Italy, all the cities of Lumbardy united themselves together. and made a league against him; wherein particularly was included the citie of Venice, which tooke the protection of Pope Alexander. Which the Emperor bearing, fent the Antipope into Italy, who died in Luca; where, by the Emperours confent, a facceffor was chofen him, to maintaine the schifme. and he in per (on came against the league; wherein all Italy was in amanner combined and bent against bim; and comming to Rome, he constrained the Pope to flie to Gasta, bauing first done much harme in Inscane, in the Marca, and particularly in the citie of Ancona: and after many adventures he departed out of Italy, without effecting ought against the Pope as he defired. After some space, he againe returned into taly, but being abandoned by the greatest part of his followers. (instigated thereto by Henry Duke of Saxony) the Emperor was in such distresse, that he was confrained to goe sometime disquised, as another mans sermant : but he very sewerely punished the laid Henry, for his mutining. He againe tooke his passage into Italy, and comming to a battaile with his enemies, was vanquished, and held for dead; but recauting of his former proceedings, he sued to the Pope to be in peace with him; which was concluded in the citie of Venice; with a truce, with the citie of Lombardy; which being done, all was in peace. Afterwards he went tomake warre in the Holy land, and having done some matters worthis memorie in the most florishing time of his victories, going to refresh himselfe in a river, he was carried downe by the currant, without that any of his people mas able to helpe him, and therein was drowned, when be had raigned eight and twentie yeares.



Otwithstanding that the Emperor CONRADE when he died, left a sonne whose name was FREDERICKE, and was called Duke of Suema, neuerthelesse, so great was the reputation of his Nephew FREDERICKE, who was his brother FREDERICKS sonne, and Duke of Suemia, that the Princes Electors being assembled in Franckford, made him Emperor; and he presently went to be crowned, with the first crowne, in the citie of Aken, whither concurred

all the princes of Germany to fee the new Emperor. For without doubt, FRE-DERICKE (as all authors write of him) was a personage of great valour, and worthie of the Imperiall dignitic, as well for the gifts of the body as of the minde. He was of more then of a meane stature, of great strength and agilitie, very well proportioned in body, and of a faire and pleafing countenance, accompanied with grauitie and maiestie. His haire and beard were red, wherefore hee was called BARBAROSSA OF ENBOBARBUS. With these corporall gifts, he was endued with a sharpe and excellent wit, and spake wisely and effectually: and was of so excellent a memorie, especially concerning the gesture and countenance of a man, that who focuer had once negociated with him, although in long time after he had not seene him, yet he would know him at the first fight. He was also of a gentleand pleafant conversation, very liberall and bountifull, and an enemic to couetousnes, vertuous, without any noted vice: most valiant in armes, and a contemner of daungers, very active both on foote and horsebacke, and very expert, and vell aduised in the warres and militarie discipline. These vertues were accompanied with a great defire of glorie and renowne, for he was paffing ambicious, coueting to rule and to commaund, which in my opinion was the cause of many euils, of great warres, and of the effusion of much blood in his time: the warres he followed in his owne person, with great courage and valour, for the space of thirtie yeeres, that he held the Empire: and imitating HENRY the fourth, he supported and maintained a schisme in the Church of Rome, for the space of twentie yeeres; and reuiued the emulation, and competencie betweene the Emperors and the Popes, which LOTHARY, and CONRADE had pacified: as we will briefly recite. The first thing that he did after he came to the Empire, was, to

The Emperor Frederickes qualities.

Fredericke

Ba baroffa

chofen Em-

peror.

call a Parliament in the citie of Mesburgh, whither (amongst other princes) came the King of Denmarke, newly come to his inheritance, who there was crowned by the Emperor FREDERICKE, and did him homage, as a King subject to the Empire. And there hee also received the Ambassades of other Christian princes. which fent to congratulate his election, and he procured and concluded peace with them all. And so in his beginning, he made shew of a very peaceable prince. but he afterwards prooued to be one of the greatest warriors in the world: and it appeared and was manifest, that in the beginning he fought peace, thereby to be afterwards the better able to make warre. At that time was great contention betweene the Dukes of Saxony, and of Bauiere (both which weere called HENRY) which extended it felfe ouer all Germany; fome fauoring the one partie, and some the other: HENRY Duke of Saxony made claime to the Duchie of Bautere, which had been his fathers: whereof he was depriued by the Emperor Con-RADE, and now HENRY Marquesse of Austrico held the same, and was called Duke of Bauiere, for that his brother LEOPOLD had left ithim; for to him had the Emperour Conrade given the fame. The Emperor FREDERICKE, for that he was neere of kinne to both these competitors (for the one of them was his Vncle, and the other his cofine germane) agreed them after this manner; that to HENRY of Saxony should be restored the Duchie of Bautere (but yet he afterwards againe lost the same) and he made HENRY Marquesse of Austrich (who was called Duke of Bautere) Duke of Austrich, and gaue him some other places; and to Gyalpho, Vncle to the Duke of Saxony, hee gaue certaine lands, and estate in Italy, which he enherited from MAVVD, often before mentioned. This peace and agreement being concluded, and all other actions and debates in Germany ended, hee spent many daies in establishing peace, and in doing iustice. After which Hanky Countie Palantine of Rhine (a prince of great possessions) died without iffue or any of his linage, that might fucceede him; but the Emperour found a meane to make his brother C o NRADE his heire; who had that countrie and he afterwards dying, left it to his onely daughter, which was married to HENRY Duke of Saxony, by which marriage he gat that estate. These and such like accidents and alterations which I finde in the Histories of Germany, written by the Germanes themselues, maketh me to doubt of these genealogies, and antiquities of linages, which they fo much celebrate, to be of a thousand, and of twothousand yeeres continuance; descended in line masculine from the father to the sonne without basturdie; and other matters whereof the Germanes vaunt; which are, in a manner impossible, or at the least improbable: for we know that all those great houses and estates began since the time of CHARLES the Great; and I fee that in those principall houses there have bin notable alterations, & chaunges, from one linage to another; as heretofore hath bin seene in some of them; & now in this Countie Palantine, which in this place cleerely passeth from the auncient linage, to the house of Suenia, in this Emperours brother which happened in the fecond yeere of his raigne. This being past, the Emperour married the daughter of Diopold Marquesse of Bospergh called Alda, but forasmuch as it was found that they were within prohibited degrees of confanguinitie, a Synod was affembled in the citie of Constance, in which he was divorced and separated from her; and then he married with the onely daughter of RAINOLD Earle of Burgundie, by whom he afterwards had fine fonnes; Henry, Frederiche, Con-RADE, PHILLIP, and OTHO. These peaceable matters being ended, the Empeperor determined to goe to Rome, to be crowned, by pope ADRIAN the third, Kkk 4

Pope Adrian the third an English man.

Frederick in

who was an English man; and leuving a great armie, and setting order in the affaires of Germany, he departed towards Italy: it behoued him to doe fo, for the cities of Lombardy and others subject to the empire, through the long absence of the Emperours (for Conrade had never visited them) were accustomed to such libertic, that any kind of subjection seemed to them intolerable, especially Milan, which of them all was the richest, and most mightie. And so FREDERICK being arrived in Italy, Ambassadours came to him from Milan; which after their due reuerence, entreated him to be pleased, to make Como and Lodi subject to their citie promifing to give him therefore a great fumme of money: which request he held for vniuft, and therefore would not graunt it them: which was the originall occasion of the rebellion of Milan, and of the euils which afterwards ensued: and the Milanois presently began to shew their discontentment, for the Emperours campe being lodged within a mile of the citie, they not onely refused to lodge or to entertaine him therein, but denied to give him victuals for his people for his money: whereupon, taking this their contempt in very ill part(as hee afterwards manifested) he presently battered certaine Castles within their iurisdiction: but holding it no fit time presently to besiege the citie, his fouldiers ouerranne their fields, even to their citie gates; and he passing forwards, went to Bercelli, and to Turin, and passed ouer the river Po; and by the way burned Ase, for that it stood at defence; and afterwards belieged the citie of Tortona, for as much as it refused to receive him, which was a very strong hold. And the siege continuing certaine daies space with great losse of men of both parts, in the end he tooke it, and made fo great a spoile in it, that he left it (in a manner) desolate and wholy destroyed: whereupon those of Pauia (for feare) received him, making shew of great ioy; and there he received the fecond Crown, and thence marched towards Rome, whither hee went to be crowned.

Pope Adrian at that time was not well pleased with the Romane people, about certaine Confuls which they had chosen, which was a kind of gouernment (which of a good space they had sought to introduce) greatly abridging the Popes power and authoritie: about which, great matters had paffed between the citizens and some of his predecessors, as before hath been alreadie touched. Wherefore to the end to avoide this trouble, and to prevent certaine practifes. which WILLIAM the new king of Sicilia attempted against the patrimonie of the Church of Rome, the Pope absented himselfe, and with his Cardinals attended the Emperours comming in Sutrie; from whence, with a fnew of great love and good will, they came together to Rome, and the Emperour lodging his armie in the fields neere vnto it, he, together with the Pope (hauing a competent guard) entred the Vaticane, and the next day was crowned in S.PETERS Church with great folemnitie. But the coronation was scarcely ended, when youn the same day all the Romane people rifing in an vprore, without knowing any occasion thereof together with their Confuls, put themselves in armes, as men discontented gainst the Pope, with the friendship betweene the Emperour and the Pope; and comming into the Vaticane, they fet you the Germanes which came with the Emperour; and he knowing what passed, made certaine companies of souldiers, of those which were encamped necreto the citie, speedily to enter, which fought with the Romanists, and many were slaine of either side: but in the end the Romanes were constrained to retire by their bridges into the citie (seven hundred of them being first slaine and taken prisoners). The Emperour remaining commaunder of the

Vaticane, was fo wroth, that but for the Popes entreatie, hee would have caused

FREDERICKE BARBAROSSA.

the citie to have been affaulted, and would have given the inhabitants a terrible remembrance for their mutinying: but the Pope mitigated his displeasure, and the Romanes flood all that night and the next day in armes; wherewith the Pope being grieued, was little obeyed. The Emperour departed thence, and within few daies after his abode in that quarter, went into Germany (whereof the Pope complained for that hee left him at variance with the citizens) and by the way tooke fome townes by affault; amongst which, Spoleto was facked and burnt for resisting him: and so he afterwards passed through Lombardy, without any stay, with a determination to returne with greater power; where befell him some notable aduentures, which (to the end the better to expresse such as are of greater importance) I omit. Being returned into Germany, with great power and greater authoritie, for that hee was crowned by the hands of the Pope; the Duke of Bohemia whose name was VLADISLAVS, or LAVESLAVS, who came with him all this iourney, was (by reason of his great estate and the worthines of his person) made King: yet I finde it written, that the Emperour HENRY the fourth, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, eightie and fixe, gaue the title of King to BRATIS-LAVS Duke of Bohemia: but that title was then given to his person, and not to Viadislaus the countrie; and so his successors enjoyed not the same, vntill the time of this miamade kine. VLADISLAVS, which continueth vntill this day. And the Emperour passing forwards, without discharging his armie, marched against the Duke of Polana; who for certaine yeeres space had refused to pay the tribute, which hee ought to pay to the empire: but he compelled him to pay the fame.

The Emperour being gone out of *Italy*, great controuerfie arose betweene the pope and WILLIAM king of Sicilia; wherein the pope recourred certaine places which WILLIAM had taken from him; EMANVEL Emperour of Constantimople(and WILLIAMS enemie) furthering those discords, who sent to the pope. and made great offers and promifes to aide and fuccour him: whereupon, after some conflicts which past betweene them, WILLIAM by all meanes possibly fought the popes grace and fauour, submitting himselfe to his obedience; and the VVilliam conpope confirmed to him the title of King of both the Sicilies: wherewith the Em- firmed by the perour FREDERICK was much displeased, and greatly complained, for he hated both Sicilies. WILLIAM; and at his comming into Italy, he came of purpose to warre against him, although afterwards hee could not effect the fame as he thought to haue done. For this cause and other which are not mentioned, in those daies great strife and contentions arose between the Emperour and the Pope; which PLATINA nor BLONDVs specifie not, neither the other Italian authors: but RVDEBICVS FRISING ENSIS, who profecuted the historie which OTHO FRISING ENSIS leftalittle before this place, and other Historiographers, describe the same at large: the fumme whereof is, that the Emperour began to doe as some of his predeceffors had done before him, in giving ecclefiaftical dignities, and invefting prelates without the popes authoritie, or confirmation; and would not endure the Popes Legates in his countries, but when, how, and in what manner it pleased him; taking occasion hereof, that the Pope without his consent had made peace with his enemie WILLIAM: whereto the Pope answered, that he could doe no otherwise, for that the Emperor abandoned him in his distresse, when Rome rebelled against him. And the matter came to this iffue, that the Emperor would not permit any appeales to be made to the court of Rome; and about that matter hee apprehended certain Bishops, which Navclervs, & Henricus Mucius, proue by certaine letters passing betweene the Emperour and the Pope: which letters

them, that they (a great way) ouer went the battallions of the Germanes: which

when the Milanois perceived, turning head, they charged them in fuch manner

that they made them retire, and in their retreit flew many of their people: And

FREDERICK Which faw all this, charged with his fquadron with fo great force

and furic, that he made them of Milan to turne their backes; and wounding and

killing many of them, compelled the rest to flie to the gates of their citie, and hee fireing the Suburbes, prefently befieged the fame; and so hee held it besieged for

certaine daies space, in which were many great and notable skirmithes. But the

those countries; yet the people being vnaccustomed thereto, tooke it very grie-

uously; which was the occasion of the euils which ensued, although in the be-

ginning they durst not rebell. After this, the Emperor (for a troph w of his victo-

ries) made the citie of Lodi to be new builded, and with all speed and diligence to

be walled and fortified; and the Castles, which had bin aduerfaries to Milan, to

be repaired and victualled; wherein he placed gouernors and garrifons, and did

other things, which my breuitie permitteth me not to recite. And setting all

things in the best order that he could (notwithstanding that he knew that Milan

had not obeyed his lawes and ordinances, concerning the impositions which

hee had fet (as faith the Abbot WESPERGENSIS, and IOHN CVSPINIAN

and others)he tooke his way towards the countrie of Burgundy: which was an

they affirme to have feene in a Monasterie in Germany. They also recount certaine very snarpe ambassades from the one to the other; and that in the end the Pope standing in feare of the Emperors power (being aduised by certaine prelates) and also for that there was great discord betweene the cities of Lombardy, whither the Emperour meant shortly to come; they came to an agreement of peace. which was concluded by Ambaffadours in a Parliament, which the Emperour caused to be held in Ausburgh: wherein, after that this was ended, he made relation to all the princes, of the iniurie which the Milanoies, and certaine other cities in Lombardy had done him: and therein it was determined, that he should the fecond time come into Italy, with farre greater power then at the first. And whileft he was busied about these matters, the Milanois (which at that time were of great power and very rich) being offended with what hee had done in their fields and territorie, thought not onely to have freed themselves from subjection and to have denied him their obedience, but they also resolued to attend his comming in the plaine fields with an armie, and to make themselues Lords of all that countrie, with the marches thereof, and to shake off the Imperiall voke, presuming upon their great power, and the aide of their friends and confederates: and to they began to leuie men of warre, and to make leagues and confederacies with other cities, as with Crema, Brefcia, Placencia, and other townes: and they repaired and fortified Tortona, which the Emperour had ruinated and destroyed. And presently after this, they made cruell warre against Paula, Cremona, and other places which held for the Emperour; and destroyed the cities of Lodi and Como, which of long time they had hated, and were under the Emperours protection. The chiefe author hereof, was a man of great authoritie in Milan, whose name Was GVALPHAGO, who (as a Lord or tyrant) was of fuch power in the citie. that all was done at his pleasure and by his direction; which made the Emperour the more to hasten his comming into Italy; two yeeres being not fully expired fince his first comming thither: and with him came the King of Bohemia, L R O-POLD Marquesse of Austrich, his nephew FREDERICK Duke of Sueuia, and other princes, befides fome which were fent before to guard the citie of Cremona: and after that the Emperour was in Italy, thither came to doe him feruice. HENRY Duke of Saxony with a thousand and three hundred men at armes, and G v E L PHO with three hundred. The Emperours comming into Italy did put the countrie in fuch feare, that Brefcia (whither hee fent the king of Bohemia, and his nephew the Duke of Suenia) yeelded without affault, promifing to be at his denotion. From thence he marched with his armie towards Milan, and by the way had some skirmithes, which I paffe ouer: and being come into the marches thereof, he staied, and tooke certaine castles, which hee did of set purpose, supposing that the Milanois would have fued to him for peace, or have vied some complements : but they were now growne to proud, that they applied themselves to nothing else, but to fortifie themselues: whereof when the Emperour was aduertised, he commaunded the cities which were vnder his obedience, to fend him men of warre; and fo from Cremona (as faith the Abbot WESPER GENSIS) came to him thirtie thousand fighting men; so great was the enuie they bare against Milan: and from Pania and Noisarra, there came also great numbers; with which, and with his own armie he went to Milan, whither when he came, they fallied out of the citie into the field, in a very great number, both of foote and horse; and a battaile began betweene them, one wounding and killing another in most cruell manner: but the Milanois being vnable long to endure the furie of the Imperialists, retired, fly-

FREDERICK BARBAROSSA.

Milanois feeing the Emperours resolution, and great power, and the engines which he addressed to batter their walles, were in so great seare, that they resolued to yeeld, vpon the best conditions that they could get, and to send their Ambaffadours to the campe; which confessing their offences, and crauing pardon, with a long fet speech, entreated the Emperor to admit them into his seruice; and afterwards in particular they treated thereof with the princes in the armie, and (as fome authors fay) gaue great gifts and prefents: finally, they obtained mercie, to the Empeveelded the citie, and were pardoned. Milan being now brought to subjection (as vour. it was the head of all the rebels) the rest of the townes in Lombardy presently yeelded obedience, and gaue securitie, promising to serue the Emperour, and to doe what they should be commaunded; and the Emperour in person visited many of them, and appointed Roncalia to be the place whither they should send their Proctors or Agents with their authoritie; where hee determined to hold a Parliament to treate of the common estate of these provinces. And having had in so fhort space so good successe in Lombardy (as is alreadic said) he abolished some of their lawes and customes, and prescribed other new, with greater rigour then (in trueth) hee ought to have done : whereof many inconveniences enfued. The time appointed for their meeting being come, and they making their appearance accordingly; after many matters which therein were handled by the aduice of some of his counfell, he caused an Instrument to be made, concerning an vniuerfall peace; which he injoyned all the cities, and principall men, Marquises and Earles in all Lombardy, to obserue. This was done after the Germane manner, with penaulties therein accustomed; which being published and made knowneynto them, they all murmured, and held themselues wronged, principally the Milanois; and this discontentment encreased in such manner, that it was the cause of greater euils then the former, by reason of the tolls and taxes which the Emperour imposed upon all the countrie; referuing to himselfe the election and prouision of all officers: and although he did it by the aduice and counsell of learned men and Princes, which alleaged that the Emperour might doe it in all

estate which hee held by his wife: other authors recount not this departure.but recite what enfued, as though he had not gone out of Italy: but in my judgment. Milan, Crema, and Brefcia, and the other cities, would not have dared so peremptorily to have rebelled, if the Emperour with his armie had continued in Lombardy: wherefore (holding with WESPERGENSIS, and fuch others as are of his opinion) I say that so soone as the Emperour was gone out of Lambardy, these things

The Pope made a league with of Sicilia a vainft the Em. perour.

infued, which we will prefently relate. The Milanois (which neuer yeelded to obey the Emperors lawes) seeing themfelues of great power, tooke the fielde with their forces, and went to acastle which the Emperour had builded neere to Como, and affaulting it, tooke it by force; and so they began the warre, and did as much harme as at the first, but with greater resolution: and presently the cities of Crema, Brescia, and Placentia did the like, and all the rest of their partakers. I OANNES CREMONENSIS in his William king fourth booke faith, that the Pope made a league with WILLIAM King of Sicilia against the Emperor, which was the cause of great enmittee betweene them. The Emperour being aduertised of the bold attempts of the Milanois, and their adherents; with great celeritie (before that his whole armie was in a readines) returned into Lombardy, and went directly to Milan; and finding no relistance in the field, harried and spoiled the countrie, leaving nothing standing vndestroyed : so great was the wrath and displeasure which he had conceived against it: and departing from thence he went to repose himselfe in Lodi (to be cured of a lame legge which he had) whither to him came Ambasiadours from Cremena, to complaine of those of Crema, for the great hurt they did them, and to craue succour: the harmes done were the greater, by reason of the strength of the place, together with the aide and reliefe which they had from Brefeis, and from Milas. As the Emperour was a man of a very haughtie minde to he feeking a redreffe for all diforders, fent his brother C o NRADE, Countie Palantine of Rhine, and some other principall men, with part of his armie, to beliege Crema; and they went thither: and the men of warre which were in Crema tooke the field, and gaue them battaile, which lasted a long space, wherein many of both sides were slaine: but in the end the Imperialists had the victorie, and compelled their enemies to returne running to their towne; and they durft fallie no more: and fo the fiege continued. At the fame time new supplies came to the Emperour out of Germany; wherewith came his wife the Emperefle, with many men at armes out of Burgundie, and with her came H ENRY Duke of Saxony, and of Baniere; of whom we have much spoken: with which, and with the rest which hee had before, he laid a plot for those of Milan, whereby he tooke prisoners about three hundred of them, and flew fighting about fixe hundred : but holding it his best course, first to make an end with Crema (which by his commaundement was alreadie befieged) he remoued his campe thither; and the better to justifie his quarrell, heesent to require them to receive him into their citie, as their Emperour and liege Lord: which they not onely refused to doe, but gaue him many peremptoric proud speeches: whereupon hee caused fundrie great engines and inftruments to be made, therewith to batter the towne; and the befieged resolutely defended themselves, and all their prisoners daily taken of either side, were either hanged or slaine: but at crema believed length they were constrained of necessitie to yeeld, & held themselves for happy, and taken by and charitably dealt withall, that the Emperour would vouchfafe to give them their lines; and that leaning the citie, they might depart with their wines and children, and fuch luggage as they could carrie on their backes. Whileft

Whilest the Emperour was at the siege of Crema, Pope ADRIAN died : after whose decease, the Cardinals, being in number five and twentie, assembling together in Rome, chose ALEXANDER the third (before called ROVVLAND) in a manner by generall confent of them all, excepting only three which gainefaid it, A febifme in the papacie. which flood for the Cardinall of S. Clement, whose name was Octavianvs, whom the Emperour much favoured: and this Octavianvs (notwithstanding his few voices in the election) was fo bold, as to proclaime himselfe Pope, and was called Vicrox: and there wanted not some to take his part, and to support him. The other Pope ALEXANDER, seeing himselfe thus pestered, sent his Ambaffadors to the Emperour, lying then at the camp before Crema, whereby he requested him (that vsing the authoritie of the Emperour) he would fauour the Church, by taking away the schisme therein. The Emperor for answere willed the Pope to come to the citie of Pania, whither healfo appointed Victor to come, to the end that there he might heare both parties, and so determine of their controperfie: herewith ALEXANDER was much discontent, and resolved to feeke other redreffe. And the Emperour having raifed his fiege from before Crema, leaving to make warre against Milan vntill the next spring (which was after the Abbots computation, in the yeere of our Lord 1161) came to the citie of Pania, Anno Done from whence he sent two Bishops in Ambassade to Pope ALEXANDER, warning him to come thither to him, where he faid, many Bishops would meete in the name of a Councell, to the end that the schissne might bee decided; which Ambaffadors behaued themselues towards him, as to a Cardinall, but not as to a Pope, for the Emperour (as he difliked his election) defired to support Pope VICTOR. ALEXANDER taking this in ill part, dispatching the Ambassadors. commaunded them to returne, and they went to Vicron with the same mesfage, to whom they spake, and did reuerence as to a Pope; and he presentlie departed, and went to Pania, and was by the Emperour very well received and entertained, and there was pronounced and proclaimed for right Pope, and the Emperour killing his foote, vsed other accustomed ceremonies, whereof when ALEXAND BR was advertised, holding himselfe for intollerable injuried, he proceeded against the Emperour, and his Pope, which he excommunicated, and anathematized, and the Emperour fending his Pope into Germany, returned to the wattes of Milan, wherein what passed, I will tell you. Pope ALEXANDER after his going to Rome, holding himselfe not there in safetie, through the affistance of WILLIAM king of Sicilia, went by galleys into France, where he was very well entertained by Philip the French king (I fay Philip, for that Blon-Dvs, and all those Italian authors call him so; but hereafter I will tell you that it could not be Philip, but his father Lavvas, comparing and agreeing the times) and there he called a Councell in Cliermont, wherein he againe proclaimed the Imperour and his Pope for excommunicate; what after enfued, you shall underfland. The spring of the yeere being come, the Emperour very resolutely returned against Milan, Brescia, Placentia, and such other rebellious cities as were in league with them: but first he ouer-ran and destroyed all the countrey round about Milan: before and after this time were many skirmishes and encounters, which for breuitie I ouerpasse, wherein for the most part the Emperour had the better, vntill that he having withdrawne his armie to take in a castle and fortresse at the passage ouer a river neere to Placencia, and the Milanois having a good armie, led by the tirant GVALPHAGO, with the aid of those of Placencia and Brefcia, went to affault a strong castle, called Carcano, or Coracio, whereof the Empe-

tweene the

FREDERICK BARBAROSSA. fuccour, or meanes to line (the Emperour refusing all other compositions) they

were constrained to yeeld to his mercie; yet some affirme, that certaine Iewes

gave him entrance; and some there are which say, that he took the citie by force:

huthowfoeuer it was, the citie came into the Emperours power; who concei-

uing in his minde, that enough of them were flaine, hee gaue the rest their lines;

but in the citie, and in all the rest, he did the greatest harme that he could possibly:

for first he commaunded all the men and women to depart the citie, and his foul-

diers to facke it; and then the buildings and walles thereof to be throwne downe

and laid waste; and this to be done by the inhabitants themselves, and by such as

were borne therein; and whereas they sufficed not thereto, hee caused a great

number of people to come thither from Pania, and Cremona, which should wholy

ruinate it and leave it waste and desolate, like to miserable Ierusalem: which truly

should seeme to be one of the most lamentable spectacles that ever was seene in

this world. Some writers affirme, that hee made the ground to be ploughed, and

fowen with falt. The inhabitants thereof (as G V A L HA G o the tyrant, the Bishop,

and many of the most principall) hee commaunded to be sent prisoners into Germany: the rest of the people he permitted to dwell in certaine fields, which he ap-

pointed for them farre from Milan, amongst bushes, in cabbins and cottages. The reliques and bodies of Saints which were in the citie, and held in great account,

hee divided amongst the Bishops and prelates which were there with him; of

rour being aduertised, speedily sent for men to Pauia, Nouarra, and Lodi, with which, and with his ordinarie troupes, he put himselfe betweene Milan, and the faid castle (before which the Milanois then were) in such a place, and in such manner, that of force they must fight, or not returne. The Milanois seeing themfelues in this extremitie, fent some the most principall men amongst them to the Emperours Camp, to intreate him to fuffer them to passe, for they would not fight with him for the honor and dutie which they bare to his person : and the Emperour prefuming that he alreadie held the victorie in his hands, or that they durst not fight, would not graunt their request, by reason whereof, his adversaries drawing courage out of despaire, sceing themselues lost if their passage were ftopt, and that they were vnable to relieue their houses and friends, or to be relieued by them, resolued either to make way, or to dye in the action, and so marched in good order against the Emperour, who likewise in most excellent order attended their comming, and there began betwixt them a most cruell battaile, as betweene very expert and valiant fouldiers, and men in despaire. In the beginning A battaile bethe Emperour apparantlie had the better, and many of his enemies were flaine. and their standard was taken: but the fight continuing vntill noone, there came the Milanois. certaine companies from the vnited cities to the aid of the Milanois, which charged with such resolution and fury, that the Imperialists retired, and their enemies (as mafters of the field) flew and tooke prisoners very many of them, and the Emperour shewing the greatnes of his mind, amassed together great part of his armie in the best order that he could, and ranging his troupes into a round Battallion, most valiantlie defended himselfe against his enemies, but truly he had bin either flaine or taken if the fight had continued any longer; but it pleafed God that he being in this danger, there fell so much raine, and therewith the aire was so darke, that they neither saw, nor knew the one the other; and so the Emperour held it for his best course to retire towards Pauia, and his enemies as conquerors, with spoiles and prisoners went joyfullie to their houses, which afterward cost them very deere. This so notable an exploit, Platina, Blondys. and other Italian authors passe ouer in silence: but as they do not gainesay it, and the Abbot WESPERGENSIS and other Germane authors report the fame. I haue thought good to make mention thereof. This adventure being past and knowne in Germany, some Princes and great Prelates, with many very good men of warre, came to the Emperours aid, with which, and with all the rest he left Pamia, and with a mightic armie belieged Milan, purpoling not to rife from before it vntill he had taken it, and the befreged being well fortified and victualled, were no lesse resolute to dye in their desence, by reason whereof, this was one of the most cruell and terrible sieges that hath bin seene before any citie, aswell for the long continuance thereof, as for the skirmishes, fallyes, affaults, losse of men, and effusion of bloud, with the famine and other calamities which the besieged indured, and for the lamentable and pitifull end which it had. The fiege continued incessantlie two whole yeeres and one day: fome authors reckon fine, and fome more yeeres, accounting (as I thinke) from the time that the Emperour first made warre in the marches thereof. What skirmishes and affraves were between the befreged and the befregers, the reader may coiecture, confidering the power and wrath of the Emperour, and the obstinacie and despaire ioyned with the great force and multitude of the Milanois. During the fiege, there was fo great want of victuals in the citie, that after they had eaten all the beafts, and other food

that might be eaten, they dyed of hunger, and being out of hope to have any

tie, with good successe, vnder the soueraigntie and name of the empire: which happened in the veere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred, sixtie and two. Some fay fomewhat more. wifethe Emperesse then lay; from whence hee sent to dismantell and throw downe the walles of Brescia, and Placencia; which (Milanbeing taken) yeelded themselues. BLONDYS, PLATINA, PHILLIP BERGOMAS, and other Italian authors fay, that he also destroyed the citie of Cremona, which in my opinion seemeth not to be likely; for Cremona had euer ferued him, and been obedient. I belecue it is taken for Crema, the error being the writers, or printers; and not theirs. And the Emperor having tamed and subdued all the other cities which rebelled against him, and made them to yeelde obedience to pope V 1 C T O R, he resolved to take his way towards Germany, for he well knew that in the same yeere many commotions and troubles began therein, and that there was great want of Inflice; which grew principally through discord and enmitte betweene a certaine Earle called GVIDO. Countie Palantine of Tuigen, and GVILPHO the famous Knight of the Dukes of Bauiere before named, by reason of some iniury done by the faid Countie Palantine, to the faid GVELPHO: whereupon young GVELPHO comming out of Italy (as a valiant young man, defirous to revenge the iniurie done to his father) raifed a power against him, and the other in his defence, and many great princes taking part with either fide, a cruell battaile was Fallions in fought betweene them, wherein GVELPHO was ouerthrowne; whereof en-

which, the three Kings, which came out of the East to adore Christ in Bethlehem, were given to the Archbishop and Cathedrall Church of Colen, where (it is said) they are at this day. In this manner was the citie of Milan laid waste, and left desolate: which a little before was so mightie, that it was of power able to fight with the Emperor in the plaine field, and to ouerthrow him: it having three hundred, threescore and five yeeres (as reckoneth RAPHABL VOLATERRANYS, for fo long was it after that the Lombards were expelled that Seigniorie) enjoyed liber-After this victorie and terrible reuenge, the Emperor came to Paula, where his

fued great hurt, and the flaughter of many men, too long to be related: fo as if the

Emperor had any longer deferred his comming, the matter was come to that issue, that Germany was likely to have been lost and ruinated: but so sooneas he came, he endeuored in all that he could, to set peace betweene them: wherein he found great difficultie, by reason that so many men were slaine and taken prifoners of either partie. And notwithstanding that he had once concluded a peace betweene them, yet within one yeere it was broken, and warres were againe renewed: but the great valour and respect of the Emperour, was a sufficient meane to make an entier and perfect peace, and to pacifie all: wherein he was the more earnest, for that hee knew what was daily practised in Italy against himselfe, whither he had a great defire to returne. For so soone as he was gone out of Italy, leauing Milan desolate; the people conceiued a great feare and hatred against him: nissioned is of (as is viuall against princes which too excessively, and with crueltie punish the offences of their fubicets) and their feare and hatred increased in such manner, that they made new leagues and confederacies against him; casting out the gouernours which he had placed, and taking his rents and customes into their hands. In which league, besides those which before were friends, which were Brestia, Plarentia, Crema, and the Milanois, there now ioyned with them Verena, and the Venecians also, which greatly strengthened the league, theirs being a mightie commonwealth; together with Padua and other cities: all which took part with pope A LEXANDER, against pope VICTOR: and all these cities fortified and furnished themselves with men and munition. The Emperour seeing how resolutely those cities were bent against him, and knowing the doubtfull issue of the warre, and that the name and authoritic of Pope A LEXANDER was great; he determined therefore with himselfe to take another course, and by letters and ambassades dealt with PHILIPking of France, which supported ALBXANDER (yet in my opinion it could not be but L B VV B s, for this was in the yeere of our Lord 1175, at which time, as it appeareth by all the French histories, L n vv ns raigned) for a meeting between them two, whither he would bring with him Victor, whom he held to be Pope: for which purpose, a place was appointed in the frontiers of both France and Germany, and there a Councell to be held, wherein it should be determined whether of these two should be Pope: which (as some say) the Emperour procured by that meanes thinking to have deprived Pope ALEXANDER. The King of France, at the Emperours request, consented that this Councell should be affembled: but Pope ALEXANDER would not come thereto, alleaging that he held that for no Councell, which was not held by his authoritie. Finally the French King and the Emperour grew lealous and fulpitious the one of the other, which authors report diverly: but the truth is that the Emperor came, and brought with him his pope Victor, and with him came the King of Scots, and of Bohemia, and many other great princes and prelates, with a very great armie: and the French King brought no leffe; with whom came HENRY King of England with very choise men of warre(from whom in my opinion he ought rather to have feared warre, then expected or hoped peace) and these princes en-

camped the one necre to the other, a river being betweene them. The Emperor

vnderstanding that Pope A LEXANDER came not, but had summoned a Coun-

cell to be held at Turen in France, was greatly displeased therewith, and determi-

ned to depart : and the French King (to hold his word) without aduertifing the

Emperour thereof, came to the piace appointed: and some say that he washed

his hands in the river, and so returned to his campe. To be short, how societ it

thing; and not well pleased the one with the other. The Emperor, with the greatest preparation that he could make resolved to returne into Italy, whither he fent Pope VICTOR before him; who being come to the citie of Luca (which held for the Emperour and him) there died. And by letters and commandement from the Emperour (perfifting in his determation) the prelates which accompanied VICTOR (hee being dead) chose him a successorwhose name was Gvido, borne in Crema, and was called Pascval. Pope A-LEXANDER in France affembled the Councell which hee had fummoned; whither came many prelates and Bishops, out of England, Spaine, France, Sicilia, Gracia, and many other parts: where they ordained what they thought good. The Emperours preparation for his comming into Italy being published, the aforenamed cities, which were in a league and confederacie against him, sought new fuccours, and provided an armie to make head against him. It happened at this time, that in Rome died a Bishop called Ivivs, who was Vicar or governour thereof in the Popes absence; who being dead, the Pope sent thither a Cardinall called I on n: who (notwithstanding a kind of gouerment by Consuls, wherby the Popes power and authoritie was much diminished) ysed such meanes, that Rome and many cities of Italy fent to entreat the Pope to returne; and he knowing with what affection he was called, resolved to depart thitherwards; and for that he would not go through Lombardy (which held for the Emperour) he tooke his passage by sea into Sicilia, and from thence went to Rome; with great companie and prouision, which WILLIAM King of Sicilie gaue him. Some write that he himselfe accompanied him, and that he was received into Rome with marveilous great ioy of all the people. With his comming, the cities which in Italy held for him, tooke fuch hart and were fo much encouraged, that they(not contented to have rebelled against the Emperour) began to warre against the Imperialists. and tooke some townes; wherein none were so forwards as the citie of Verona: which gaue the Emperour occasion to hasten his comming, which he had prolonged, to the end, to come with the greater power, feeing that his enemies forces daily encreased and so he came into Italy with a greater armie then at any time before spoken of. What he did, and the effects which thereof ensued, I will recount as briefly as I may: for a raigne fo long, and wherein happened fo many and so great accidents, cannot be expressed in few words; neither reduced to a more breuitie. All this while raigned E MANVE Lin Constantinople.

The Emperour FREDERICKS comming into Italy with fo great power, made all the countrie greatly afraid of him; confidering what harme he had done therein in former times: but the hatred of those which were his aduersaries was so great, that they would rather hazard any daunger, then yeeld to his obedience. And he knowing by experience, that his rigour and feueritie had little auailed him, but haddone him more harme then good, determined now to warre after another manner then theretofore; at the least in Lombardy, wherein he pardoned those which submitted themselves vnto him, and would not permit the countrie to be facked or wasted; vsing all men honorably; dissembling and making shew, that he vnderstood nothing of any conspiracie, or league made against him; and so drew neere to Brescia with his forces, where he gave good entertainment to all fuch as from Crema, Verona, and Brejeia, came to visit him (notwithstanding that those cities were his greatest enemies, and which had most practised against him) and so passed by, without comming into any of them, or doing them any vio-

was, they both returned into their countries, without doing or treating of any

garrison sallied out of the towne, and assailed his enemies at their backes, in such

manner that the Romanilts were broken and ouerthrowne, and so many of them

wereflaine in the battaile and in the purfuite; that fome Historiographers haue

Ancona befieged by the Em perour.

lence; and went to Ferrara, where he was received; and from thence passed peaceably through the territoric of Bologna: fo as (at this time)he passed through Long. baray without doing any harme; and there he divided his armie; part whereof he fent to make warres in Tuscane, and the marches thereof, for that it fauoured pope A LEXANDER, and rejected Pope PASCVAL, which lay in Luca: and with the rest of his armie he marched towards the citie of Ancona; for that it held for his enemie EMANVEL Emperour of Constantinople: which he besieged, and began to batter with great furie: but it was fo wel defended, that the fiege continued longer then he expected. The Captaines and men of warre, which he fent into the marches of Florence, Luca, and Pifa, after they had taken certaine townes, marched through the territorie of Rome, and made terrible warre against all such places as held for Pope A LEXANDER; and in Rome wanted not some which fauouredthe Emperor, proceedings: yet the Pope left no meanes vnfought, aswell by gifts, as promises, to assure himselfe, and to have all at his devotion: wherein (it is written that)he iffued much treasure.

Whilest the warre was profecuted in this manner, the Emperour lying before Ancona; the Milanois which after the destruction of Milan, had for the space of fine or fixe yeere lived as banished men, in cottages, cabbins, and villages; gathering themselues together, being wonderfully aided and relieued with all manner of materials, instruments, officers and labourers, from the cities of Verona, Placencia, Crema, and other their neighbours and friends, began to reedefic their old destroyed citie; repairing what might be repaired, and the rest they new builded, and wrought with fo good a will, that within two or three yeeres the Emperour could not let them: and they reedefied it in such manner, that therein seemed nothing to be wanting. To all which (as writeth Hankics v Mycivs) the prefence of GVALPHAGO (called Earle of Angleria) was a great helpe; who escaping out of prison in Germany came thither. Whilest that the Emperour lay before An. cona, and cruell warre was made against Rome, WILLIAMKing of Sicilia died: and his sonne of the same name succeeded him, who was an excellent man of warre, and a great friend to the Church of Rome. At that time E MANVEL Emperour of Constantinople sent a solemne Ambassade to Pope ALEXANDER; whereby he promised in person with great power to come to his aide, and to drive FRE-DERICK BARBAROSSA out of Italy, and to conforme the Greeke Church, and to make the same subject to the Latine; conditionally, that he would reduce the whole empire into one head, by taking it from the Germanes and deprining Far-DERICK, seeing that hee had alreadic excommunicated him, and that hee was a schismatike and a rebell. But Pope ALEXANDER (notwithstanding that hee was much oppressed by the Emperour, reposing small considence in the promises or power of E MANVEL) gaue a pleasing equiuocall answere, and sent Ambassadors to temporize with him, but not to conclude any thing at all. It happened at this time, that the flower of all the men of warre in Rome went to believe the towne and castle of Tusculano, which is neere to Rome, and from whence they were annoyed; that towne holding for the Emperour, whereof a Germane prince was gouernour; and the belieged feeing themselves diffressed, sent to the Emperour (lying before Ancona) for reliefe: to be briefe from the Emperours armie came for Generall, CHRISTERNE Archbishop of Mentz; who with such troupes as he brought from the campe, and fuch others as hee could get by the way, came to fight with the Romanists which besieged that towne, being in number about thirtie thousand men; which fought with the Germanes (but not with order and

compared this overthrow to the battaile of Cannas, wherein they were overthrowne by HANNIBAL. Although the comparison be great, yet it is certaine that in a long time after Rome could hardly recouer it felfe: and Pope ALBXAN-DER tooke it very gricuously, and sought by all meanes possible to encourage and to animate the remainder of the citizens. The Imperialists, as Masters of the field. daily tooke townes belonging to the Church of Rame; and the Emperour (which Hill lay before Incoma) to foone as he understood of this victorie, knowing the time to be fit for his purpose, departed presently thence towards Rome, and made no stay yntill he came before the same; wherein the Pope and his friends had alreadie fet all things in the best order that they could for their defence; and the Emperor presently made the Vaticane to be assaulted; and notwithstanding that the affault was terrible, yet the place was so well defended that it sufficed to keepe him from entring it: wherewith he was fo much enraged, that the next day hee commanded a more terrible affault to be given, caufing fireworks to be throwne vpon S.Perens Church; in fuch manner, that the Pope out of hope to defend the place, abandoned the Vaticane, and fled into the citie, to lodge himselfe amongst the Frangipanes, which were his trustic friends, and set great guards to by the Empedefend the citie, and made many bridges over the river Tiber : the which the Em- rour. percur(being mafter of the field, and having the Vaticane) greatly annoyed and oppressed; with a determination not to have risen from before it, vntil it had yeelded, or that he had entred the same by force of armes: and during the siege, hee spoiled all the countrie round about Rome. WILLIAM king of Sicilie vnderstan- of Siciliarelieding how greatly Pope ALEXANDER was distressed, and being willing to imi- wed Pope Atate his father WILLIAM, sent to the Pope vp the river Tiber to Rome two gal-lexander aleys, with a great fumme of money, men, and fuch other necessaries as they could persur. beare, to the end that the Pope might in them flie thence, if he pleafed. The Pope made great account of this reliefe, and prefently divided this money amongst his friends and servants, wherewith they were greatly encouraged to defend the citie, and he fent backe the galleys to the king of Sicilia, and in them two Cardinals, to conferre with him, and to aske his counsell what was best to be done concerninghis person. In the meane time, the Emperour seeing that the citie desended it felfe, and could not in short space be taken by force, went about to perswade the Romanes both by fecret and publike meffages, to give vp the citie, and that then he would restore whatsoener hee held appertaining to the Romanes; and thatby them all, in peace and quietnes it should be determined, whether of the two ought to be held for Pope; to the end that he, generally by himselfe and by all others, might be respected and obeyed. With these practises which bare so great an apparance of a certaine peace, great part of the Romane people were much moved, and were of opinion that these conditions ought to bee accepted, whether the Pope would or not. The Pope vnderstanding hereof, held it for a great difference to his Holines, that hee being Christs Vicar, should be judged by

his enemies : and holding himselfe to be in no safetie in Reme, he for his more

fafeguard in a night departed the citie downe the Tiber to the citie of Gaieta, and

from thence to Benevent : from whence hee wrote his letters to the Emperour of

Conflammople, and to the Kings of France and Spaine, and to the cities of Lombardy,

perovs campe.

which held for him, imploring their aide and fuccour. And having in this manner abandoned Rome, within few daies after it the Emperour was forced to doe the A great pelli- like; for it pleased God to send so great a plague of pestilence, both in his campe lence in Rame, and in the citie, that there died daily thoulands of the one and the other partie: principally there died many Germane prelates, and some princes, which came with the Emperor: wherefore he hastely departed leauing Pope PASCVAL with a good guard of fouldiers in S.P E TERS in Rome: which was in the yeere of our Lord 1168, and he with his armie came into Tuscane, and the marches of Florence. where hee tooke some strong holds which held for the Pope; in which, and in many other he placed garrisons of his owne souldiers: and in the marches of Ancona and in Tuscane, hee gaue some places to certaine principall men of Germany. with titles of Dukes and Earles, to the end to annoy and oppresse Rome. Whilest the Emperour was busied about these matters, Pope ALEXANDER procured aide and fuccour from all parts, and fought to support such as were his friends: and EMANVEL Emperour of Conflantinople fent him an Ambassade, offering him a very great fumme of money, defiring the same which we have before specified, which was that he taking and transporting the title of the empire from Germany, by deprining FREDERICK, should give the same to him and to his house: But the Pope for many confiderations would not yeeld thereto, notwithstanding that he very pleasingly answered him. Within few daies after this, Pope PASCVAL died in Rome, where the Emperour left him: and the Emperour (perfifting in his determination) in his place chose one I o H N borne in Hungary, and was called CA-LIXTY S, whom Pope ALEXANDER presently excommunicated. The Emperor having remained some space in Italy, desiring to returne into Germany (for there was need of his presence) sent a Bishop to Pope ALEXANDER with certaine articles of peace and agreement, which what they were, the authors write not, but they all fay, that the Pope would not accept of them; and so they tooke no effect. And the Pope practifed with the Romanists for his returne to Rome; but as then the citie was gouerned by Confuls, which were odious vnto him, hee could not effect the same according to his defire : and so went to other places in Romagna. and in the marches of Pulia, where he was favoured and fuftained by WILLIAM king of Sicilia. The Emperour came to Paula which held for him, where he fortified certaine townes, and for a finuch as great part of his armie was ficke and many dead, hee could not make warre to any purpose against Milan, and the rest of the cities which rebelled: but within certaine daies hee tooke his way towards Germany, having done in Italy such harme as herein is expressed; without effecting what he principally defired.

And being returned into Germany, he tooke no fuch paines in any thing, as to make peace betweene all men, and to purchase the good will of the people, and to make himselfe rich; heaping money together, to the end to returne into Italy, which he determined to tame and wholy to fubdue. At this time he inherited all the Castles, lands and goods, which belonged to his cosine germane FRED !-RICK, Sonne of the Emperour CONRADE, who died of the plague at the fiege of Rome: and hee inherited also the lands and goods of some other princes, which died without heires, and he also rewarded some, giving them titles, and castles, and to some others he gaue new armes and dignities. To the king of Bohemia he gaue for his deuice, a red Lion in a filuer shield; and to others he gaue many such like honours. But in the meane time, GVALPHAGO tyrant of Milan, and the Milanois, were not careleffe, but continually fortified the citie which they had new builded: FREDERICK BARBAROSSA.

builded: besides which, with the other cities in Lombardy of their confederacie. in honour of Pope ALEXANDER (vnder whose title and name they opposed themselues against the Emperour) by a common consent and contribution they began to build another citie, which they called Alexandria, after the name of the Pope ypon the fide of the river Tanaro, in fuch a place as it should serve for a frontier garrison against Pania, Tortona, and the Marquisate of Monferrato, which were lovall to the Emperour. And in this his absence they made such haste (but chiefly those of Mitan, Placencia and Cremona) that they walled & peopled the same, in such Alexandria in manner, that it became a principall strong fortresse; & many of those which lived builded in boin the borders thereof in villages, and vnfortified places, came thither to dwell, in nour of Pope fuch number, that the first yeer that it began to be inhabited, therein were fifteene wird, and so thousand men fit to beare armes, which therein continued; so as at this day it is a called after his good and a famous citie, and is called Alexandria of Straw, which name the ene-name. mies thereof gaue it in the beginning in contempt. This noueltie (added vnto the rest) made the Emperour to hasten his comming into Italy, when as he now had remained some time in Germany: And having set all things in good order, hee set forwards and came with a mightie armie by fundrie waies, addressing his iourney directly towards the estate of Monserrato, and those places which held for him: but he first tooke a towne at the foote of the Alpes, called Secuja, which he made to be throwne down and destroyed, for that it rebelled: and from thence he marched(not without trouble) towards Afte, which yeelded vnto him, more for feare of the like fortune, as happened to Secula, then for oughtit wanted wherewith it might have defended it selfe. And having such good successe in the beginning. he went to besiege the new citie of Alexandria against which he came greatly incenfed, purposing to have vtterly destroyed and rased the same. In Lumbardy and in Piemont, the Marquis of Monferrate held for the Emperour, together with the cities of Pauia, Nouarra, Turin and their territories, subjects and friends, and some othertownes. He besieged Alexandria, and lay before it foure moneths, in which Alexandria time were done many notable feates of armes; at the end whereof, the Emperor Emperor was constrained to rise from before it, for that it was relicued by the river with greatstore of provision; and all the cities which were friends to it, sent thither fouldiers to defend it. But the principall cause was, that the great Duke of Saxony of Bauiere, and of many other estates called (as was his father) HENRY the proud, being at this siege before Alexandria, went from the Emperor with all his forces; alleaging that he would not be excommunicate, and a rebell to the Pope: it was suspected that he was bribed, and did this for money : or (which I rather beleeue) that he had some practise or conceit to have made himselfe Emperour, vinder pretext that FREDERICK was a rebell to the Church of Rome: for which cause the Emperor raised his siege, & went to ouertake him, & sought by al meanes to haue staied him; in so much that (as some write) he would have cast himselfe at his feet, if the other had not letted him; and a private servant of the Dukes called I or DAN standing by, said to the Duke, My Lord, suffer the imperial crowne to come to your feete, seeing that shortly you shall weare it vpon your head: Finally, Duke HENR y would not stay; and the Emperour had so few souldiers left, and was so voide of all reliefe, that within few daies he was constrained to leaue the warres, for that time; and so departed Italy, without effecting ought more then I have faid. And although that BLONDVS, & PLATINA conceale this his departure, let the reader neuerthelesse vinderstand, that I draw the webbe of my historic from all the best authors; and so I say, that hee departed in great daunger of his person.

WESPER-

WESPERGENSIS, NAVCLERYS, and HENRICY'S MYCIV'S Write, that hee was aided and succoured by those of Nouarra, and of Turin, in the passages over the mountaines, through which he tooke his way towards Burgandy, which was his wines patrimonie; and that vpon the way he was in some places in such danger, that he was driven to goe disguised as another mans servant. After all these extremities, arriving in Burgundy, he gathered together his people, and raifed fome new companies, and so went into Germany; where the said H = N = x had alreadie practifed fome innouations against him, some Earles conspiring with him; for he was the greatest Lord in all Germany: but the Emperour brought him to be one of the least thereof; for as he was much feared and very valiant, the Duke could doe little against him. But the Emperour so soone as he came into Germany, affembled a Diet or Councel of all the princes, whither he fummoned HENRY to come: but hee not daring to make his appearance, the Emperour proceeded against him (although not without contradiction and many difficulties) and in the end confisked his estate, and all his lands : which hee might easily doe, by bedeprined Date Heary of Saxo. Howing the fame vpon men of great power, all which making warre against him my of his estate. at once, tooke the same from him : yet some write, that this sentence and confiscation was afterwards, in the veere of our Lord 1180, when the peace was made betweene the Emperour and the Pope: It may peraduenture be, that at this time the processe began, and judgement was then given, but afterwards put in execution; which was in this manner. The Dukedome of Saxony he bestowed voon 2 valiant Knight, called BERNARD, Earle of Anhald, whom the Archbishops of Mentz and Colen, and the Lantzgraue of Turingia holpe to take the fame. The best and greatest part of the Duchie of Bauiere he gaue to one OTHO. Countie Palantine, not of the Counties Palantines of Rhine, but of Withlifeach; which he tooke by the helpe of two of his brothers, which were men of great power: that of this state, which lay on the other fide of Danubia, he added to the house of Austrich: other his lands and Earldomes he divided betweene Hanay Lantzgrave of Al-(Acia, LEVVES Marquis of Turingia, BERTOLD of Carinthia, and some others; all which together made warres against him; so as to him, to his offpring and descendents remained onely the Countie of Bruinswicke, which afterwards in the time of FREDERICK the second was erected to a Duchy; and that estate encreafing, great enmitic continued betweene the Dukes thereof, and the fucceffors of BERNARD, to whom was given the Duchie of Saxony. The Emperour did not onely applie himselfe to suppresse this HENRY in Germany, but from the very first day of his comming thither, was carefull for the amassing of money, and the raifing of forces for his returne into Italy: and fo, being affifted by all those princes. to which he had given and promifed to give those estates, and by his owne house and kindred of Suemia, and his fernants and subjects; hee in short space raised so good an armie, that he went very mightie into Italy, and with him carried his wife the Emperesse. And being come to the citie of Como, in the moneth of June, notwithstanding that he wanted neither courage, discretion, power, or forces yet matters prospered not with him as he expected, but rather cleane contrarie: for the Milanois and their confederates had now taken fo much heart, and were in fuch readines, that they resolued to give him battaile, after they had spoyled the fields about Pauia, and fuch other townes as held for him: and fo they tooke the plaine field inft in the way which leadeth from Como to Milan, by which the Emperor was to passe; who had no lesse desire to fight then they: but was very glad, after that hee knew their resolution. The two armies being vpon a cleere day

come within fight the one of the other, and the squadrons and battalions of citherfide being rainged in very good order; the Emperor drew neere to the place which his enemies held; and (in a manner) with equal wrath, hatred, and power both parties began to fight, first the horsemen brake; and then all the rest; and so A battaile bethere was fought a very fierce and bloudy battaile; the one wounding and killing tween the Emthe other most cruelly. It happened, that in this so great furie, he which bare the Milanois Standard and Imperial Eagle (through his rash hardines, and desire of victorie) ad- wherein be was naunced himselfe so farre forwards amongst his enemies, that he was slaine, and been slaine, the Standard taken: which when the Emperour faw, who (as it feemeth) was not farre from thence, he was therewith fo much enraged, that encouraging his fouldiers with a new furie and vehemencie, hee so oppressed and brake his enemies. that he flew and wounded many of them with his owne hands : but as this could not be done without great daunger to his person; so in the thickest of the prease, and greatest throng, his horse fell with him; being as it is thought, first wounded: and the charge on every fide was so hot, that the Emperor was held for dead; which gaue the Italians cause to gather courage, and the Germanes to lose the fame; for both parties crying, certified the death of the Emperour, which fo much discouraged the Imperialists, that the victory apparantly shewed it selfe for their enemies: and the Imperialifts fled and abandoned the field, where a very great and cruell flaughter was made of them, befides those which thinking to efcape by swimming, were drowned in the river Tesino, neere to the place where this battaile was fought. This battaile being loft, and all the Imperial armie broken and put to rout; all men holding the Emperour for dead; and his wife the Emperesse, remaining in the citie of Como, clad in mourning attire, suing to haue her husbands body, to burie the same, which she requested the Milanois to grant by her Ambassadors: the fifth day after the battaile, the Emperour appeared aline, and in health, in his Imperiall robes, in the citie of Paula: whither vpon the brute of his there being, came all those which were dispersed and escapedfrom the battaile; and those which most defired to aide him, and to doe him feruice. In what manner the Emperor escaped aline, it is not written; but it may be coniectured, that being falne, he remained in the field, although without hurt, and the night being come, escaped by secret and vnknowne waies. His enemies by reason of this victorie recourred so great credit and reputation, that many townes and principall men in Italy forfooke the Emperor, and went ouer to pope ALEXANDER. The Emperesse with some princes and prelates of the Empire, being come to Pauia, boldly and directly told the Emperor to his face, that for the schisme which he had made, and maintained in the Church of Rome, this calamitie was befalne him; for God would neuer giue him any entire victorie: and except he would reduce himselfe to the obedience of the Church, they could not well doe himseruice: whereupon he being mooued with these admonitions, and knowing the time; (notwithstanding that his servants and subjects day- ander the lie repaired vnto him with many warlike troupes) yet he fent his Ambaffadors third. to the pope; vnfainedly suing to him for peace: and so they began to treate A peace conthereof by Ambaffadors. In the matters which did proceede, and by what meanes eluded bethis peace was made, there is great difference betweene the authors; some re-peror and the counting it after one manner, and some after another, which I recite not, away- Pope in the ciding the loffe of time and labour: but they all agree, that after many daies spent the silvente, in this treatie, the pope went to Venice, whither came the Emperor, and that there peror presentawith great solemnitie the peace was concluded, and that the Emperor kist the the Popes seete

POPES and the Pope in

infulting manner fetting bis foote on the Emperors necke, vfed & Balilicum ambulabo,& conculcabo conem.

> peror of Comflantinople.

murthered by

his protector.

popes foote, and yeelded him obedience: and a truce was graunted by the Emperour to the King of Sicily, for fifteene yeeres; and to the cities of the league, for fixe: which (according to most writers) passed in the yeere of our Lord, one thoufand, one hundred feuentie and feuen; and afterwards in the yeere, one thou-Super aspidem sand, one hundred eightie and three, the peace with Lombardy was concluded in the citie of Constance; but all in such manner as it pleased the pope; and such townes as were withheld from him, were commaunded to be rendred: and fo leonem & drathe the Emperour continuing there some few daies space, returned into Germany, and the pope to Rome, but he first graunted to the citie of Venice, and the Dukes thereof, great privileges, immunities, and exemptions. And the pope being come neere to Rome, before he entred the citie, some speeches were vied concerning the depoling of the Confuls, and that no more should be chosen: but as it was a custome of fiftie yeeres continuance, so it could not then be abolished, but order was taken, that none should be chosen, but such as pleased the pope, and that before that they executed their offices, they should sweare to be in all things serviceable, and obedient to his Holines. This being concluded, the pope cameto Rome, where he was received with great folemnitie, and the other pope CALIX-TV s, acknowledging himselfe to haue erred, cast himselfe at the popes secte, crauing mercie (hauing first laide aside his pontificall habit) and renounced all the right and intrest that hee had to the papacie: and so ALEXANDER remained fole pope in peace all the rest of his life; and so this schisme (which had continued twentie yeeres) ceased. The Emperour FREDERICE being come into Garmany (now old and tired with five and twentie yeeres warres and troubles) frent his time in preserving the peace which he had graunted, and in establishing his fine sonnes in estates, which he did in such manner as you shall heare.

This peace being concluded, in such manner as I told you, pope ALEXANDE died, after that he had been pope the space of one and twentie yeeres, the most of them, in troubles and contention, and Lvcivs the thirdfucceeded him: in the yeere before his death, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred and eightie died EMANVEL Emperor of Constantinople, who raigned seuen and thirtie yeeres, and left a sonne who was a child and called ALEXIVE for his successor; appointing a kinfman of his, whose name was Andronicus (a man of high parentage) to be his governor and protector; who was fo very a villaine and fo The young Em- arrant a traytor, that after that he had gouerned certaine yeeres, and committed many infolencies he killed the young Emperor, and made himselfe tyrant of the Empire; putting many great men (fuch as he feared) to death: against whom for his detestable treason, WILLIAM King of Sicily made sharpe warre, and tooke many townes from him; which brought him to fuch end as he deferued, for the Constantinopolitanes seeing themselves thus oppressed, rose against ANDRO-NICVS, and against him, made one ISACVS or ISACIVS, descended of Imperiall linage, Emperor, and Is ACIV's prevailing, ANDRONIC'S was apprehended, and having one of his hands cut off, and one of his eyes put out, was carried through the streetes vpon a Cammell; and by the generall good will of all men had fuch a death as he deferued and as fuch deferue as through ambition and defire to rule, are traytors and difloyall to their Lords. And so Is Acivs remained Emperor, and was an excellent prince: what end he made you shall know hereafter. The Emperour FREDERICK enjoying peacefull times in his Empire, fummoned a Councell to be held in the citie of Mente, where he fettled his fonnes in such estates, as you shall heare: his eldest somehe caused to be chosen King he gaue the title of Duke of Burgundie, appointing him to fucceede his wife the Emperesse, to whom that estate appertained: to his fourth sonne CONRADE. and to his fifth sonne PHILLIP, he gaue other rents, and some townes wherein they might liue: but it afterwards ensued otherwise, for CONRADE succeeded FREDERICK in the Duchie of Sueuia, for that he died without iffue; and PHIL-LIP after the death of his elder brother HENRY, came to bee Emperor. Pope Lycivs knowing that there was great contention and discord betweene the princes of the Holy land, and the states of Seria, and searing the daunger that thereof might enfue, endeuored by his letters and Ambaffadours to reconcile them, and to make them friends: and procured WILLIAM King of Sicilia, which then warred vpon Andronicus, Emperour of Constantinople (who as I faid made away the young Emperour ALEXIVS) to give over his warres, and to relieue that countrie, which was oppressed by the Infidels; and so the King of Sicilia fent thither fortie armed galleies; wherein went some principall men and fouldiers to that feruice. The Emperour FREDERICK before that the time of the truce by him graunted in Venice to the cities which had rebelled in Lombardy, was expired; (defiring

FREDERICK BARBAROSSA.

of the Romanes, and his fuccessor: his second sonne FREDERICK he made

Duke of Suenia, which was his owne inheritance: to Otho his third sonne.

by faire and gentle meanes without rigour or force of armes, to reduce them to hisservice) summoned a Councell, or Parliament, to be held in the citie of Constance; whither he willed them to fend their Ambassadors, with sufficient power and authoritie to conclude a peace, making them fignes of great love and good will. The cities being wearie of the warres, imagining that this meeting would be for their profit, held it in a manner all for good, to as befides Pauia, Cremona, Afte, Alua, Tortona, and some others which had still perseuered loyall & in the Emperors seruice; the cities of Milan, Bercelli, Lodi, Bergamo, Brescia, Mantoa, Verona, Nouarra, Vicencia, Padoa, Treuifo, Bolonia, Fauentia, Modeno, Rezzo, Parma, Placencia, and others sent thither their Ambassadors: with which the Emperor came to an agreement; graunting them perpetuall peace and pardon for all offences paft; leauing to them, their lawes, customes, iurisdictions, civill and criminall, with au- Exemptions thoritie to chuse Consuls and Gouernors, and commaunded to bee restored all gramted by whatfoeuer had been taken from them in time of the warres; and they acknow- to fundrie ciledging him and his fucceffors for their foueraigne Lords, sware to him fealtie, ties in Lomand homage: and it was fet downe, how, and in what manner they were to doe him service; greatly to their advauntage and ease. And besides this, that whereas certaine appeales for certaine summes should come to the Emperor; he ordained therefore to have his agents in Lombardy, to the end that the people should not be constrained to come to him into Germanie: and that the Consuls and officers to be chosen, before they did execute their offices, should doe their homage and be fworne to the Emperor: fetting downe likewise what services they should doe, at such time as the Emperor in person should be in Lombardy. Finally, there were new couenants and agreements made, which were sworne, and confirmed by the Emperor, and the Ambassadors. The instrument of all which, as it paffed, appeareth at large, and in particular, in the Civill law, in the end of the volume intituled (depace constancia.) This peace being concluded in this manmer, the Ambaffadors with great joy returned; and all the townes approved and fware to obserue and keepe the same. Within few yeeres after this, in Verona died pope Lv civs the third, whither he came to the end to have affembled a generall

Saladine Soldan of Egypt.

generall Councell, for the relieuing of the King of Ierusalem, and the Christian princes of those prouinces in the East, betweene which was great controuersie. And the mightie King SALADINE did much oppresse them, who by stratagems. and wonderfull battailes, made himfelfe Soldan, and Calipha of Egypt, King of Damasco, and Areppo, and held great part of Almenia, Licia, and the most part of Melopotamia; fo as on every fide he warred vpon BALD VV IN the fourth, then King of Ierusalem, who valiantly carried himselfe; and against the princes of Antioch, Tripoli, and others which held, and defended those parts. And he so much oppressed BALDVV IN (who in former time had been of such power, that Egypt was tributarie vnto him, and he held certaine cities therein, which his father and predecessor Almericus had gotten, and had in person conquered Palessina. and other lands) that he now employed all his forces in no other thing, but to defend himselfe, and in the end what befell him, we will declare; for that it appertaineth to our historie, to shew the reason, mouing the Emperour FREDE-

RICK to goe to the warres of the East, wherein he died.

Pope Lucius (as I faid) dying in Verona, was buried therein; and in his place was chosen VRBANVs the third, borne in Milan. At this time, which was in the beginning of the yeere, one thousand, one hundred, fourescore and sixe. the Emperor FREDERICK came peaceably into Italy, and with the good will of the Milanois, and of all Lombardy, and at their especiall request and entreatie went to Milan, and was therein received, with the greatest ioy and solemnitie, that could be deuised; and there a marriage was solemnized, betweene his sonne HENRY, King of the Romanes, and the fifter of WILLIAM King of Sicilia (vet fome fay that the was his Aunt, fifter to his father King WILLIAM of Sicilia, and daughter of his grandfather Roger) she was a woman of the age of thirtie veeres, but very faire, and he of one and twentie, as G od FREY VITERBINSIS; and OTHO in the addition to OTHO FRISINGENSIS his Chronicle, and the Abbot WESPERGENSIS also write, which in my opinion is true; notwithstanding that PLATINA and BLONDV's say, that this marriage was made after that the Emperor FREDERICK was dead, by the procurement of pope CELE-STINE the third, and that she was threescore yeeres old, and that WILLIAM King of Sicily dving without hevres, the pope by this marriage made him King of Sicily. But in my opinion, the first authors are to be believed, for that they might be eye witnesses; and the others deceived; for as he was afterwards (through this marriage) King of both the Sicilia, they imagined it to have been done then. This wedding feast being ended, the Emperor leaving his sonne HENRY for his Lieutenant and Gouernor of Lombardy, returned into Germanie. Pope V R-BANK knowing what passed in the East with the King of Ierusalem, and the other princes; so some as he was confirmed pope, endeuored himselfe to perfwade and to encourage the Christian Kings and princes, to goe to succourand relieue those places: but they making long delaies (notwithstanding that they fent thither some supplies) it came so to passe, that Ierusalem, and many other cities held by the Christians were lost, the cause whereof (as well for that it was so great a matter, as also for that it appertaineth to our historie, I will set downe, although it will be somewhat long; for I presume that the reader will not be discontented therewith, which so briefly as I can expresse the same, passed in this manner.

BALD WIN the fourth (as I faid) raigning King in Ieru falem; and BOHEMVND Who was a mightie prince being Duke of Antioch : and R AYNOND, or REMON, Earle of Tripoly, who was also Lord of other cities, and of the provinces of Gali-

ea, and Tiberiades, which he had by the marriage of his wife, which was a great princes daughter, and Lord thereof; and so other princes and Captaines: which although they banded, and had quarrels with the Knights Templars, and of Saint IOHNS, yet they iountly together defended what the Christians held in the Fast (which was no small matter) against the forenamed mightie SALADINE. Matters standing in this estate, BALDVVIN who was a man of great spirit and valour being in the citie of Nazareth (wherein he then lay) was taken with fuch a leprofie, that he was not able to goe, nor to stand on his legges; whereupon he was carried to Ierusalem, and his disease held him in such manner, that he daily expected his end. Which being published, so much encouraged the Infidels. that they made continuall rodes and incursions into the countries of the Chriflians. And he feeing himfelfe in this plight (hauing neuer a sonne to succeede him or to goussie the land for him) made a man of great fort, called Gy In o LESIGNAN, gouernor thereof; who was the fecond husband of his fifter SIBIL-LA, who by her first husband, called WILLIAM LONGS VY ORD, Marquesse of Monferrato, had a sonne called BALDVVIN; and a daughter called SIBILLA. With this government some of the princes were much discontented, and SA-LADINE with a mightie armie innading their countries, the Christians disagreeing amongst themselues, GvID o the Kings brother in law, and Captaine Generall of all his forces, daring not to fight with him, the Christians daily lost townes and Castles: whereupon the sicke King BALD VVIN determined to take another course; which was before his death, to make his Nephew BALDVVIN, who was his fifters fonne. King, notwithstanding that he was but a childe, and R Ay-MOND of Tripoly, his Gouernor and protector; and to put his brother in law Gy in o from the government, by reason whereof, ensued new factions, which redowned to the loffe of those countries, through conflicts, besiegings, assaults, and taking of townes, by SALADINE in flue or fixe yeeres, that this warre lasted untill the greatest losse of all; which was the death of King BALD VVIN; which happened in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred, eightie five. And Anno Dom. RAYMOND Earle of Tripoly, comming to gouerne the kingdome, in the behalfe 1185. of the young King, GVIDO LESIGNAN and SIBILLA mother of the faid Baldwin King King, were so inuested therein, that he could not execute his office: whereof oftensalem. enfued new troubles, the one for private and particular passions and quarrels (forgetting the publike good) (ceking the destruction of the other. In this confusion died the young King BALDVVIN, eight moneths after the death of his Vncle. His father in law GVIDO, and his mother SIBIL, concealing his death; for feare that RAYMOND Earle of Tripoly, by meanes of his great power, would by the generall confent of the people, have made himfelfe King: and the matter was carried fo cunningly, that by meanes of gifts and faire words, the Patriarch, and other principall men of Ierusalem, chose him for their King; which Guide Lesignan was the occasion of the euils which afterwards ensued: for R AY MOND Earle brother in law of Tripoly, was so highly offended herewith, that (to the perdition of himselfe, win deceased, and of all the reft) hee made a league and confederacie with SALADINE; pro- was chosen miling and affuring him, that he would neither aide, nor relieue the King of King of Ieru-Ierusalem. This friendship being made, such courses were held, that after certaine salem. truces and treaties of peace and breaches of the same, SALADINE began to war against the King, and kingdome of Ierusalem with greater furie then at any time before: and as GVIDO wanted the aide of the Earle of Tripoly, and BOHE-MVND Duke of Antioch could hardly helpe him, by reason of the farre distance;

Mmm 2 and and for that he also had enough to doe, to defend himselfe against the Captaines of the faid SALADINE, he was much distressed and daily lost townes and Castles. neuer ceasing by Ambassadders and letters, to solicite the Emperor, the pope, and other Westerne princes for aide, and they determining to yeeld the same, and making preparation for the voyage, it happened, that RAYMOND Earle of Tripoly(either made a double league, as some write, or knowing that if the kingdome of Ierusalem were lost, he should be assured to have an euill neighbour of SALA-DINE) agreed, and made peace with the King of Ierusalem, and came with his power to his aide; whereupon SALADINE raifed his siege from before Ptolomaide, and encamped himselfe before Tiberiades, which belonged to the Earle of Tripoly, strictly besieging the same. And the King of Ierusalem having amassed all the power that he was able to make, came with a great armie, the Duke of Antioch, being with him; whither came with all their power, the ad Earle of Tripoly the mafters of the orders of the Knights and Templars, and of Saint IOHN. with other great men; Knights and Captaines; the Patriarches of Ierusalem, and of Alexandria, and certaine Bilhops; so that (as it is affirmed) there were 30000. horsemen, and 40000. foote: which was the vitermost of the Christians power in the East. After many Councels and opinions, the King at the instance of the Earle of Tripoly, resoluing to vnset Tiberiades, and to fight with SALADINE. which lay before it; presently began to march, and the troupes and men of warre which he had with him, which were fuch, that no man feeing them doubted of victorie; but it pleased God to permit it to follow after another manner: for Sa-LADINE, which knew their determination (as a man which wanted not conrage, and had an armie containing double the number of the Christians, of very well trained fouldiers) refolued to fight with them; (but not neere to the belieged city) and to that purpose went to meete them vpon the way: and it happened that the two armies drawing necre together, and the King of Ierusalem one day purposing to march with his people with great speede, and to lodge them in a palace wherein was very great plentie of water (whereof in those countries is great scarcitie) SALADIN & by especiall or some other missortune being aduentifed thereof, marched thither with fo great celeritie, that before the comming of the Christians, his people had taken the same place; and the Christians comming extreamely wearie, and thirstie, by reason of their long march, and the heate of the Sunne, found enemies in the palace where they thought to have found water and ease; wherewith they were much troubled: neuerthelesse the King feeing no other remedie, commaunded the place to be affaulted, prefuming to haue repelled the enemy, but the enemy missing of his purpose, he with his armie was driven to lodge all that night in the day fields; wherein they endured intollerable thirst, and by the breake of the dry, S ALADINE (which the most part of the night had been bufie, in orderinghis troupes) tooke the field with his fquadrons, wherein the Christians (with tired and weake bodies, through extreame thirst, and their horses being in the same perplexitie) staied for them: and notwithstanding that they began the fight with great courage and resolution, yet their strength failing they were ouerthrowne by the Infidels; and there was the greatest and most cruell slaughter made of them, that in those daies had been seene, either in Afia or in Europe.

The King was (fighting) taken priloner; and the Earle of Tripoly escaped by flight, and some say that he made all the rest to flie; and that he afterwards died miserably. The Duke of Antioch was slaine after that he was taken, with all the Knights

Knights Templars, and of S.I OHNS that could be found. SALADINE having obrained so notable a victorie, in execution thereof went to Ptolomaida, which hee easily tooke, and did the like by Berite, and other cities too long to relate. Finally, in his owne person, after the taking of many townes, which (out of hope of any fuccours or to be relieued) rendred; and the sooner, for that hee was a very inft prince in perfourming his promise, and courteous, entreating those very friendly which yeelded, he marched forwards and fate him downe with his armie before Ierusalem; and having fiercely belieged and assaulted the same, the space of thirtie veilded to sadaies continually, they yeelded, youn the second day of the moneth of October, in ladine. the yeere of our Lord 1187. And so was this citie lost, and fell; and at this day is in dane Dom. the hands of the Infidels; fourescore and eight and almost eightie nine yeeres, after that it was taken by Godfray of Buillon, and the other princes before mentioned: in which time therein had raigned nine Kings, with him which then was: Towit, Godfrey of Buillon, the first and onely King of that name; and then after him the two BALD VVINES, and FVLCO, and BALD VVIN the third; then AL-MERICVS, and BALDVVIN the fourth, and BALDVVIN the Child, and GVIDO which then raigned: and notwithstanding that the name and title of King of Ierulahm continued a long time, and that the Christians held many townes and cities in Seria, for the space of one hundred and odde yeeres afterwards, and many princes went thither to the end to have made a conquest thereof; yet in the citie of lernfalem they raigned no more, neither possessed the same, but a smal time that the Emperor FREDFRICK the second was therein. The East parts being brought to this estate, and Ierasalem lost; Antioch, and the princes thereto belonging, together with Tyre, Sidon, and Tripoli, were in the like daunger.

The Emperor FREDERICK in Germany understanding these unhappie newes. (although now old and tired) refolued to aduenture his whole power with his person, for the recouerie of what was lost, and to defend the remainder: and God did put the like minde into the hearts of the kings of England and of France, and of many other princes. The fame of SALADINES acts daily encreasing (it is written and affirmed) that besides the estate of Antioch, he took one hundred and fine and twentie walled cities, and that he made cruel warre ouer all the land: through forow and griefe for fo great losse, the greatest prouision and preparation was made to goe to the reliefe thereof, that hath been seene in Christendome, at any time before or fince: For first, the Emperour (leauing his sonne Hanny, which alreadie was king of the Romanes, for his Lieutenant, and with him his two brothers, CONRADE and PHILIP) prepared a very great and excellent armie, both of foote and horie, and began to march through Hungary, Bulgaria, and Thracia, towards Constantinople, thence to passe ouer into Asia; and with him went his fonneFrederick Duke of Suenia, and Bertold Duke of Merania, and his brother the Marquis of Banda, or Baden, and many other Dukes, Earles, Archbishops and Bishops. A little before this died Hanny King of England, who purpoled to have gone the same journey: for it was injoyned him for his penance,about the matter concerning THO MAS BECKET, called S.THO MAS of Canterburie, which I had no time vntill now to speake of. But his sonne RICHARD King of England, and PHILIP King of France, concluding a peace (for they were at wars about the Duchie of Normandy) either of them with the best armie that he could make, went to this warre in the East. The like did O T no Duke of Burgundy the Emperours sonne: and the Venecians sent thither a great sleete, and so did the Pifans, which then were mightie by sea. To this service also went CONRADE Mar-

A battaile faught betweene Saladine the Soldaine of Egypt, and the Chri-

Mmm 3

and captaines of Italy, France and England, whose names for breuitie I leave to set

downe. That which maketh me most to wonder in this zealous voyage of the

Christians at this time, is, that from Denmarke and Friseland came fiftie galleys, it being fo long a voyage from thence into Soria: and the Earle of Flanders fent twelve: and VVILLIAM king of Sicilia did very well fet his helping hand: for (befides the fortie galleys which he fent before)he furnished and relieued all fuch as went, and came by him, and wanted; with shipping, victuals, armes, and other neceffaries, and maintained (for a long time) a great Nauie, to affure all paffengers that would goe this voyage, from rouers and pirats by fea. The fuccesse which all these men had, and what befell them, as well by the way, as in that warre, is too long to be written (for they did great matters) and I should too much digresse from the historie of the Emperours (which is my taske) wherefore it shall suffice that the reader understand by me the issue of these proceedings; the rest let him reade in the authors which wrote thereof, which I will name: and I will conclude in the historie of the Emperour, who comming with his forces and companies to Constantinople, made a league and friendship with the Emperour Is A C I V s:and being there, was given to vnderstand, that Gvido Lasign NAN king of lerusaiem, was gotten out of prison, together with the Master of S.I o HNS: and that with fuch men of warre, as repaired vnto him, he had renewed the warre, and determined to take the field, in hope to have recovered certaine places lost: whereupon the Emperour in great haste passed his armie ouer the streight at Constantinople, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred, eightie nine, and began to march through Asia the leffe: where passing in peace through the countries of the Christians, he entred the countrie of the Soldan of Icenium, who was a mightie prince in those parts, with whom hee made peace; vpon condition, that hee should give him victuals, and free passage; which if he performed, then he would not warre vpon his countrie. But the Heathen king not onely brake his promise. but gathering together a great number of Turkes, stopt his passage, and did him the greatest hurt that hee was able: wherewith the Emperonr being very much moued, made cruell warre in his countries: and comming to the mountaines at the entrie into Cilicia, he made his passage with great difficulty and danger, for the Soldan had drawne head of a great multitude of Turkes, and other heathen nations, thinking to have ouerthrowne the Emperor in those streights: but it pleafed God that he paffed, although with great daunger and some losse: and comwidery against led God that he paned, authorigh with great damager and former to the content of ming downe into the plaines, he fought with the Infidels and ouerthrew them, and flew a very great number of them; and fo taking and facking cities & townes, he marched forwards, and entred Armenia the leffe, and by force of armes tooke the greatest part of all that province. The newes of his comming and victories, strake so great seare into his enemies, and so much encouraged the Christians; that GVIDO king of lerufalem, and his brother E MERICVS, and other great men before named, which were there affembled ; leaving the cities of Tyre and Tripoli,

whither they had reduced themselues; with a well ordred armie tooke the field,

and affailed Ptolomaida or Acon; purposing to have the same, for that it was a

Hauon of the sea, and of great importance; whither came the sectes from Den-

marke and Flanders, and from other parts; and the fiege was reinforced; and the

Christians armie daily encreased; and all men knowing the Emperor to be neere

at hand, SALADINE thought himselfe vnable to defend what he had gotten : and

King Gvido, and those which were with him, recoursed force and courage: Butit

pleased God in his secret judgement, that in time of this hope & of good successe. there happened fo great a difaster, that all was changed and turned vpside downer which was the death of the Emperour; which happened by great missortune, in this manner. The Emperour being very neere vnto Soria, vpon a very hot day in the fummer time, defiring to walh and refresh himselfe in a river (as they write that other times he had done in others) the swiftnes and depth whereof, was greater then he thought or mistrusted; and so in the presence of his people going into The Emperour the water, without that any of them was any way able to faue or helpe him, hee downed. was carried downe the streame, and therein drowned; and so in a little water died he for feare of whom all Asia trembled: which happened vpon the tenth day of Iune, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred and ninetie, in the eight and thirtith yeere of his raigne: through whose death the enterprise was extremely hindred.

A voyage to

Terufalem.

The Emperor Frederick his

At the same time befell another milfortune, which was a controuersie and difcord betwene the Princes of those parts, which happened by reason of the death of SIBILLA, wife of GVID o King of Ierusalem, and fifter to King BALD VVIN deceased. Whereupon, HERFRAND, who was married to Is ABE L, sister to this Ladie, with the aide of some his friends, would have bin King, by the right of his wife; which the widower G v 1 D o withstood; alleaging that he was the sworne and obeyed King, & therefore ought not be deposed. And it followed, that C o N-RADE Marquis of Monferrato, tooke this Lady from him perforce, alleaging that the was not lawfully married to HERFRAND; and so he married her, and in like manner challenged to be King of Ierusalem; which (besides that it was a vile deed) caused great trouble; for this prince held the citie of Tyre; by which meanes the widower King Gy 10 o lost much of his authoritie, for that he would not fall at variance with them; yet he still held the name and title of King. The matter remaining in this great confusion, ensuing the sudden and infortunate death of the Emperour; a man may eafily imagine and conceine the great griefe and forow of the whole armie: neuertheleffe, his sonne FREDERICK Duke of Sueuia, as a valiant and couragious Knight (being prefently vpon the death of his father(as reason was)made Generall, and their head)encouraged his people, and taking the dead bodie of his father, marched directly towards Soria; and fent certaine meffengers to GVID o King of Ierusalem, who lay before Ptolomaida, to advertise him of the death of his father, and desiring him to send him some such men as might guide and direct him in what was to be done. Which although it was not to be compassed without great daunger and trauaile(for the most part of their way lay through their enemies countries) king Gv 10 o fent him two Knights well experienced in the warres, which guided him and his people to the citie of Antioch, which lay neerest to his way: where after that hee had (for some daies space)refreshed his armie, he thought to have made great warres, and to have recovered the cities lost in that estate; and so to have proceeded forwards. But his armie of Germanes, which came wearied and tired of their long journey, finding there great abundance of victuals and delicates, by meanes of their forepassed hunger, and their present disordred repletion and surfetting; or that it was Gods will that it should be so; there fell so great a plague of pestilence amongst them, that within few daies space the most of them died in such fort, that FREDERICK (with such as escaped the plague) departed from Antioch, and drawing neere to the sea, imbarked himselfe and failed to the citie of Tyre, which (as I said before) was held by the Christians: and leaving there the dead bodie of his father, hee went from Mmm 4

The fiege of Amaida.

thence with his people (but not without great daunger of the enemie) to iovne with GVIDO LESIGNANking of levalatem, which lay before Ptolomaida: which SALADINE had so fortified and garrisoned, that the Christians were much troubled in the fiege thereof; and prevailed little, until the comming of the Kings of England and of France, after many accidents befalve them in the way which was in the same yeere: but they continued the siege, accompanied with other princes, although notwithstanding that there was ever little conformitie amonest them, where wee will now leave them, to the end to make relation of the succession ceffion in the empire, for this their historie appertaineth notto my charge: and how HENRY the fixth, the Emperour FREDERICE his eldeft fonne was chosen Emperour, who held his fathers place in Germany, being alreadie made king of the Romanes, and what he did in Germany and in Italy. Yet forasmuch as this enterprise of Ierusalem was so notable a matter, and so great Kings came to the seruice, we will briefly tell you what end it had, although nor the successe.

In Constantinople all this while raigned I s Ac I vs : In Italy a little before this, died without iffue, WILLIAM King of both the Sicilia, wherefore Pope CLEMENT the third challenged those kingdomes to appertaine to the Church of Rome, and HENRY King of the Romanes, and future Emperour, pretended them to be his, by reason of his marriage with Constance fifter to King WILLIAM. But the Sicilians and Neapolitanes, against the Popes wil, chose one TANCRED &, which was Vncle to King WILLIAM, abaltard fonne of Rocan King of Sicilie: who feifed on the kingdome. In writing this Emperours life, I have frent longer time then I ordinarily vie to doe, for that many great matters happened in his time, and for that fo much is written of him, I have bin in a manner conftrained thereto; and also as at other times I have faid, in matters which draw neere to our times, it shall not be amisse to make longer and more ample relation.

The authors out of which I have written, and in whose bookes the same may be seene more at large, are these which follow: OTHO FRISING ENSIS in the historie which he particularly wrote in two bookes, of the beginning of the Emperour FREDERICKS raigne and RAVDAVICVS in that which he added thereto, and GODFREY VITERBIENSIS, all eye witnesses, and the Abbot WESPER-GRNSIS in his Chronicle, an author of the fame time, wherein hee writeth his life: AbbotR OBERT in the addition which he made to SIGIBERTS Chronicle, OTHOOFS. Blafe, BLONDY sin his declination of the Romane Empire, PLATE NA in the lives of the Popes, I OHN COLVMNA in his Sea of Hiltories, IOHN BAPTISTA IGNACIVS, IOHN EVTICHIVS, BENEVENT DE ROMBALDIS, IOHN CARION, IOHN CVSPINIAN, RAPHABL VOLATERRANVS, in their particular writings of the Emperors, HENRY MYCIVS, GASPAR CHYRREVS in his booke of the affaires of Germany, in that part wherein he treateth of Fas-DERICE the first, FRANCISCUS IRENICUS, PAVLUS CONSTANTINUS PHRI-GIO, CHRISTIANUS MASEUS, MATHEUV PALMERIUS, and the rest of the general Historiographers, treating of theletimes, as S. Anthony, Anthonivs SABELLICYS, IOHN NAVCLERYS, which best of all handleth the matters of Germany, PHILIPPUS BERGOMAS; and besides these, PAVIVS EMILIVS, ROBERT GAGVIN, and other French writers, POLIDORE VIRGIL in his English Historic, Pope PIVS in his Historic of Bohemia, IACOR MRIER in his abridgement of the Historie of Flanders, ANT ONIVS SABELLICVS in the Hiftorie which he particularly wrote of the Venecians, ALBERT CRANTZ in his Historic of Saxony, GEORGE MERVLA in the Historic of the Dukes of Milan,

AUGUSTIN INSTINIAN in his Annales of Genea, MICHABL RICIUS in his booke of the Kings, and some others which I now remember not.

### THE LIFE OF HENRIE THE SIXTH OF THAT NAME,

AND FOVRESCORE AND EIGH-TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.



THE ARGUMENT.

Fter Fredericke, succeeded his eldest sonne Henry, who so soone as he had the gonernment of the Empire, went into Italy to be crowned, and to get the Linguistics which came unto him, by the right of his wife; and was crowned by Pope Celeftine.

which came unto him, by the right of the kingdome of Naples, but the plague made him returne into Germany. He againe came into Italy, upon the same occasion of

Sicilia, wherein finding Tancrede dead, be easily obtained the kingdome, notwithstanding that he committed some cruelises therein worthy of blame. Being returned into Germany, he sent many men to the warres of Ierusalem . And living in peace and quiet be came in progresse to visit his new kingdome of Sicilia, where for his pleasure riding on bunning (as his custome was )he fell sicke and died, when he had raigned eight yeeres.



HE accidents which happened in the time of the Emperor FREDERICK, were fo many and fo great, that I imagine to haue in some manner satisfied the desire, which men commonly haue to reade of great aduentures: and if they yet remaine with an appetite, from this time forwards they fhall haue fuch and fo many, that I prefume they shall not want I fay then, that as euill newes are commonly more fwift of foote, then the good: so the death of the worthie

Emperour FREDERICK was soone knowne in Italy and in Germany, for which all Christendome generally was sorie; as well for that it was so infortunate, as for that it brake off and interrupted the enterprise which he had begun, and followed with fuch courage and good fuccesse. His elder sonne H ENRY, who (as wee

Henry the eldest forne of Frederick Parbaroffa chofen Emperor. Anno Dom. 1191.

faid) in his fathers life time was alreadie King of the Romanes, and future Emperour; so soone as he vnderstood of the death of his father, wrote to the electors. and to the other princes of the Empire, and they yeelding him the obedience. which they had promifed in his fathers time, hee tooke vpon him the state and majestie of Emperour: which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, one hundred, nintie and one, and was called HENRY the fixth; yet the Italians call him the fifth, for that they reckon not the first Hanny. This man was a wife prince, of a sharpe and quicke wit, well spoken, of a pleasing countenance, but fomwhat pale faced, of a meane stature, and tender and delicate of body; but of a fierce and cruell minde, and very valiant, wherefore he was greatly feared of his enemies, and was more addicted to hunting, then was fit for the good gouernment of his estate. In the beginning of his raigne, those of Colen rebelled, and with them certaine Earles and other principall men, but it was a matter of no great importance and so was it soone pacified. Being freed from this care, seeking the aide and fauour of his friends, he made preparation to goe into Italy (which was in the next vecre) with a defire to be crowned in Rome, and to get the kingdome of Sicilia: which fell to him by the right of his wife the Empereffe Constance, whereto he was inuited and called by pope CELESTINE the third, who was newly chosen pope (yet some authors say, that at this time, this Constance was given to him in marriage by this pope CELESTINE, who gave her a diftenfation for that the was a professed Nunne, to the end, that they should have the kingdome) for the baffard TANCREDE, King of Sicilia and of Maples, who possesfed the same, was odious and an enemic to the pope.

The Emperor crowned in Rome by Pope Celeftine the third.

not take it.

The Emperor HENRIY being then come into Italy, passing peaceably through the States of Lombardy (according to the agreement made betweene his father and them) went towards Rome to be crowned; but before the pope gaughim the Henry the fixth crowne, he went against the citie of Tusculano, which was situate in the Mountaines neere to Rome, which rebelled and did, and had done the Romanes much harme; and he taking the same (for it yeelded without any resistance) gaue it to the Romanes (for fo was he enioyned to doe, before the crowne should begiuen to him) and they prefently destroyed the citie, and yfed the citizens with great crueltie; whereof the Emperor was much noted, and blamed for permitting fo cruell a fact. This crueltie being executed, and the Emperor being with great folemnitie crowned in Rome by pope CELESTINE; and other couenants and agreements being made betweene them concerning the kingdomes of Sicilia, and of Naples, as feodatorie kingdomes to the Church of Rome, and the fee and tribute fet downe to be paied for the same: the Emperor marching forwards, found all those countries in armes against him, holding for TANCREDE, whom they had chosen, and held for King, and their sourraigne Lord; yet he tooke fome townes by force of armes, and went fo farre as Naples, and befreged the same as the head of that kingdome; and the Neapolitanes valiantly defending their citie, the fiege continued the space of three monethes; in which time there fell in the campe so great a mortalitie, and so many of the Emperors souldiers died, that without effecting what he had purposed, he raised his siege and returned into Germany: and as he arose from before the citie, his wife the Emperesse (some say going into Germany, which seemeth most certaine, and others say that the comming to her husband, to goe with him to the warres) was taken by certaine Captaines upon the way; but so great diligence was vsed, and such a course

The Emperor besieged Naples, but could was taken, that she within few daies was set at libertie; and they which tooke her,

were seuerely punished: and so at this time, he returned crowned, but not victorious, into his country. Two yeeres of his raigne being expired, and he frustrate of his purpose, and desire to recouer the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia, but yet he fill had a determination to returne thither againe (ashe afterwards did) where let vs leave him; and I will tell you what happened vnto his brother FREDERICK. and the other princes which had continued in the East euer sithence the death of his father the Emperor FREDERICK BARBAROSSA: wherein if all the skirmishes, encounters, battailes, and feates of armes done by these three Kings, of Ierusalem, France, and England, in those two yeeres warres should be written. I should have much to say; but the successe thereof was this, that the siege of Piolomaida continued two yeeres, reckoning from the time that GVIDO King of Ierusalem first besieged it, vntill it was taken; during which time, many great matters passed betweene them and the besieged, and SALADINES other forces. At this time, died there the faid FREDERICK Duke of Sueuia, fonne of the Emperour FREDERICK BARBAROSSA, and brother to the Emperour HENRY. and other great personages. At the end of this time, the citie was yeelded to the Ptolomaida Christians; and the Kings were growne so mightie and so much seared, and the yeelded to the mightie SALADINE had lost so many men, that thinking himselfe vnable to de-christians. fend his countries, he caused the walles of Cesaria in Palestina, with Ascalon, Gaza. Parfiria, and of other cities vpon the Sea coast, to be throwne downe: and the power of the Christians so much encreased, that SALADINE began to parle of The French the giving vp of Ierusalem, vpon condition that he might live in peace. But God King left the otherwise disposed thereof, for the Kings of France, and England, were so ill met, Holy land. that they could neuer agree vpon any thing: wherefore the King of France refolned to leave the warres, and to returne into his countrie, and did so, and left the greatest part of his people with the Duke of Burgundy; and so the oportunitie of the taking of Ierusalem was lost; for by reason of his departure, SALADINES mind altered : neuertheleffe, RICHARD King of England was a prince of fo high cou-Richard CHENE rage, and carried himselfe so valiantly in those warres, that besides, that he new of England his builded and fortified Iapha (whilom called Ioppa) and some other townes; he marterin Pareduced the warres to fo good order and estate, as they were in before the French lesting. Kings departure. It followed in this time, that CONRADE Marqueffe of Monferrate, which was possessed of the great citie of Tyre, and the marches thereof, and was called King of Jerusalem, for that (as I told you) hee married with Isa-BEL fifter to SIBIL, which was King GVIDO his wife, was in the same citie flaine by certaine fugatives, Turkes; and the widow Isabel having one daughter by her husband, was married to HENRY, called Earle of Campania, Nephew to the French king; and he marrying her, had with her that citie, and the title to the kingdome of Ierusalem, against GviDo, which held that name and title. Whereupon king RICHARD dealt with GVIDO, to renounce the right which he pretended to the kingdome of Ierafalem, and he would give him the dominion of the Ile of Cyprus, with the name of king thereof; which Iland the king of England tooke in his way as he came to this warre. Gvido accepted this bargaine, and prouiding men and shipping necessarie, sailed into Cyprus, as king of that Iland, and raigned therein all his life time; and that kingdome remained in him, in his heyres and fucceffors, untill the yeere of our Lord, one thousand,

foure hundred and fixtie, that the Venecians (I know not by what title) made

themselves Lords thereof: and the house of England hath ever since pretended

right to the kingdome of Ierusalem, as saith PLATINA, and other authors. This

being

The cause why Terufalem was not taken by the Christians.

the warres in the Holy land Auftrich. Anno Dom. 1193.

being past, and many other matters in this warre, amongst which was a great battaile which continued from noone vntill night; wherein the valiant SALADINE was ouerthrowne, and the King of England, and the princes with him, had the victoric: which resolved to goe and beliege the citie of Ierusalem, knowing for certaine that SALADINE durst not abide them, for he fued to him for peace, or truce, promising to render Ierusalem, and other places in those marches, to the end that he might obtaine the same for some long time: but the Christians were of fuch power that they were not therewith fatisfied. And vpon a fodaine the King of England (very vnaduifedly) gaue out in speeches, that he would returne into his countrie, for that he was certified that the French King had entred and taken his Duchie of Normandy: which if he had concealed, he might have had what composition he would have required: but SALADINE knowing his determination. and that the fleetes of Pisa and of Venice were alreadie departed, by reason of difcord and diffention betweene them, would not refigne Ierusalem. In the end the king of England concluded a peace with him for five yeeres; and leaving garrifons and gouernors in the cities which the Christians had recouered; (O THO Duke of Burgundy, and HENRY the husband of Is ABEL, which chalenged the kingdome of Ieru(alem, remayning commaunders thereof, with the Knights of Saint IOHN'S and the Templars) he departed homewards, in the yeere, one thousand, somming from one hundred nintie three, and by the way was taken prisoner by the Duke of Aufirich, and was ranfomed, and other accidents afterwards befell him: and so he by the Duke of left the affaires of the East, and more townes, and better fortified then he found therein: yet not so many as a man would have thought that so great Kings, and fuch mightie armies, might have gotten: what enfued, you shall vinderstand here. after. The Emperor HENRY (as some men write) was well relieued and furnifhed with the money which the King of England payed for his ranfome towards his iourney into Italy, for which he then made preparation, but he first made his brother CONRADE Duke of Suevia, for that his other brother FREDERICK Was dead in the East without iffue. He then marching towards Italy, to conquer the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples, which fell to him by his wife, and the popes graunt; and having fent certaine Captaines before with an armie, by which the warres were alreadie begun; King TANCREDE which possessed those kingdomes died; and a little before him his eldest sonne called Roger, who was married to YRENE the Emperors daughter of Constantinople, and he left another fonne called WILLIAM (whom they presently made their King) and two or three daughters: by reason whereof the Emperor hastened his journey, leading with him his brother PHILIP, and other great princes: but for all this, the great men, and cities of those kingdomes left not to rebell, and to withstand the Emperor Hanry, who with his men of warre entred the countrie, befigging and battering cities with fuch rage and fury, that whatfoeuer citie refifted him, he caused to be destroyed and burnt: vsing greater crueltie then befitted a vertuous or Christian prince; and so perforce, and for feare, all the cities in the kingdome of Naples, and the most of those in Campania, and Pulia, yeelded; and thence marching into Calabria, did there the like: and feeing himfelfe Lord of the effates in the maine land, he passed ouer into Sicilia, wherein, as there was not any King, or head, to rule and commaund (for TANCREDES sonne was a childe, and his father had been wicked, and a tyrant) in short space he became Lord of great part of that Iland. Neuerthelesse, after this the prelates and great Lords of those kingdomes, with the greatest power that they possibly could leuie, gathered head

neere to the citie of Catanea, with a full determination to try their fortune: and they fought with the Emperour (yet some say that the Emperour was not in the battaile) and the Sicilians were ouerthrowne, and the citie taken; and of them was made great flaughter, and in it was executed extreme crueltie, putting to fwordboth men and women, so many as were found therein; not sparing those which had retired themselues to the Churches for sanctuary: and some Noble men and Bishops were taken prisoners. After this, many of the most principall men conspired by any meanes howsoeuer to kill the Emperour; which being reuealed vnto him, he made extreme inflice to be inflicted vpon all those which he could get, and had been accused to have been of that conspiracie, with such crueltie and rigour, that he could not avoide blame for it: for some he made to bee fleved aliue, others to be burnt, and of some he caused sharpe nailes to be driven into their heads: finally, he executed so horrible crueltie vpon those which had yeelded, that hee made himselfe the most feared man in the world: by meanes whereof within short space he became Lord of the whole Iland; and comming with his forces to the citie of Palermo (which was the richest and most populous citie therein)he was received without battaile or refistance, and made his entrie most folemnely, with all the representation, triumph and shew of victorie that could be imagined: in that citic(it is affirmed)that he found many precious iewels, and great riches, which had been the Kings of Sicilia, and there were kept. He gat also into his power YRENE the Emperours daughter of Constantinople, who Was betrothed to the deceased King TANCREDES Son, ROGER; which YRENE he married to his brother Philip, although against her will. And the child whom the Sicilians had made their King, hee made his eyes to be put out, thereby to make him incapable of the kingdome; and made him to be carried prisoner into Germany, where he afterwards died miserably: and his mother the widow with her two daughters, hee commaunded to be put into a Monasterie in Germany, so that he left nothing forgotten that might affure him of those kingdomes. This being done, he went into Calabria, carrying with him for hostages, such men as he held to be of greatest account in both the kingdomes: and for his better assurance, both in the maine land, and in the Iland, he placed Germane gouernours and captaines; to some of which he gaue certaine estates and titles. Before this. his wife the Emperefie which was there with him bare him a sonne called FRE-DERICK: at whose birth, by reason that some doubted whether that a woman of her yeeres might be with child or no he permitted all that would to be present at the birth, commaunding it first to be published, at such time as it was thought she should be delivered In this manner did the Emperour HENRY leave the two Sicilies in peace and subjection: and with the hostages before mentioned which were great Lords and prelates, departed towards Germany (Milan and all Lombardie peaceably obeying him, both at his comming and going) which was in the dance Dom. fifth yeere of his raigne, and in the yeere of our Lord 1195.

It is true, that although the Emperour obtained his defire in the conquest of Sicilia and Naples, yet all writers affirme that he therewith acquired the name of a very cruell, and vindicatife Prince, for the great cruelties which he therein committed And PHILIP BERGOMAS affirmeth, that through these cruckies, he fell at fuch oddes with Pope CELESTANE, that he excommunicated him, by certain Bishops and other men of orders, which the Emperour apprehended, and put to death: and that he afterwards fuing to the Pope for pardon, was absoluted. He was

also noted and taxed of excessive couetousnes, for the great loanes and imprests. which he exacted from the people in those kingdomes: which gaue occasion that it was not long before that in Pulia, some townes and great men, began to ftirre and to rebell against him: whereupon he put out the eies of all the hostages. which hee had fent into Germany; and fent Captaines and fouldiers to suppresse the Infurrections; and they by his commandement, inflicted cruell punishment vpon the offenders. And being in this prosperitie, so as no man rebelled, or held vp his hand against him, his brother CONRADE Duke of Sucuia died, at such time as he began to warre against BERT OLD Duke of Zeringe, which then, and before that time was, and had bin, a great house in Germany: and his brother Con-RADE being dead without iffue, the Emperour gaue the Duchie of Suenia to his brother PHILIP, Who (as I said) married the Emperours daughter of Constanti-

After all these things, he sought by all meanes possible, that the princes Elec-

tors should chuse his sonne FREDERICK (a child of little more then two yeeres

old) for King of the Romanes: and for a fmuch as he was of great power, and much

feared, they did so: notwithstanding that it seemed to them, to be a matter very

vniust and vnreasonable. At this time Pope Calastine very earnestly solicited

HENRY THE SIXTH.

Frederick the Emperours foil being a child was chofen king of the Ro

lem.

the Princes of Christendome. And especially the Emperour (seeing that the time of the truce, made in the East by the King of England was expired; and that the great SALADINE Was dead, but a little before, on whome depended the chiefest force of the Infidels) that they should not now forget the conquest of lerusalem, feeing they had so fit an oportunitie thereto. The Emperour (with the zeale of a Christian Prince (though a cruell one) seeing that hee could not goe himselsein person by reason of his small assurance in his kingdomes of Sicilia, and the tranquillitie of Germany: many Princes offring themselves to goe that iourney volunage to Ierufa-

tarily, and many fouldiers and men of warre, which he fent in his pay, at his own charges) prouided a very great and good army: wherewith went the Archbishop of Mentz, the Bishop of Ratisbone, BERNARD Duke of Saxony, CONRADE Chauncellor of the empire. LEOPOLD Duke of Austrich, HARMAN Lantzgraue of Turinge, the Duke of Brabant, and some other Marquises, Earles, and men of estate; all which leaving their houses and countries, of meere deuotion, with valiant mindes, after long trauaile by land and fea (wherein they were much aided and relieued by Is Ac IV s Emperour of Constantinople) came to the coast of Palestina, to the citie of Tyre and Ptolomaida, which they called Acon; where they prefently applied themselves to the warres; the truce graunted by the king of England being expired. In which time, G v 1D o king of Cyprus, which before had been king of Ierulalem, deceased; and forasmuch as hee had no sonne, his brother A -MERICVS had that kingdome: and it also happened, that at that same season, HENRY, which was called king of lerufalem, by the marriage (as I faid) of I SABEL fifter to SIEIL in his citie of Ptolomaida fell out of a very high terreffe or galleric in his palace, and so died infortunately: and ALMERICVS king of Cyprus, sought to marrie with his wife, wherewith the was content; and fo for a time hee was called king of Cyprus and Ierusalem. But for as much as he was negligent, and of small experience in the warres, and in matters of gouernment, he afterwards lost the title of Ierusalem, which was given to I O HN DE BREGNA, a Frenchman, being a man of great fortune and valour, who married the daughter of this I s A B # 1, which she had by her second husband Conrada. The Germanes sent by the Emperour

Emperour ioyning with ALMERICV's his forces, became mafters of the field; and marching forwards, befieged and affaulted fome cities, tooke Berito, and reedified Ioppa, now called Iapha. While the armie did these things in the East, the Emperour HENRY fetting all things in order in Germany, came with his wife and his young sonne into Italy, to visite his estate of Milan; and from thence went into Sicilia, the better to confirme himselfe in his new dominion; and the better alfo to prouide for the warres and conquest of the Holy land, which was generally defired. He came then into Sicilia, to the citie of Messina, with his wife and his fon-(who was alreadie called king of the Romanes) and gouerned the empire, and those kingdomes in peace, enlarging the same more then the Pope would hee should have done, for he held from him the Marca de Ancona, and some places in Tuscane. But it pleased God to frustrate all his thoughts by his death : for being much delighted in hunting, it happened that hunting vpon an extreame hot day, in the moneth of August, he laid him downe one night to sleepe in a greene field, neere to certaine fresh springs of water; and awaking, with the cold and the dew of the night, he felt himselfe very ill, and was carried to Messina, where his infirmitie increasing, hee died; when hee had raigned eight yeeres, in the yeere of our Lord 1198. having first recommended the protection and government of his Anna Dom. yong sonne FREDERICK, which was called king of the Romanes, and of the two 1195. Sicilies, to his brother PHILIP Duke of Suenia, vntill that he should come to age fit the Emperour to rule: and wrote his letters concerning the fame to Pope I NNOC IN T the third, Henry ibe who succeeded CELESTINE the third, which died a little before him in the same sath. veere. This Emperour was a wife, a valorous, and a mightie prince, but his ouer much fiercenes and crueltie obscured and blemished those vertues. All this while raigned I s Ac I v s in Constantinople, which he gouerned very wel for the space of eleuen or twelue yeeres in peace; after the death of the tyrant ANDRONICVS, as we recounted in the life of the Emperour FREDERICK.

> Nnn 2 THE



# THE LIFE OF PHILIP THE SECOND OF THAT NAME,

AND FOURESCORE AND NINE-TEENTH ROMANE EMPEROR.

And of Is ACIVs and ALEXVS Emperors of Constantinople.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

Were Philip and Otho, and either of them marshalling the forces of his abbetters and assistants, many fore battailes were fought between them. They both were crowned: but assistants, many fore battailes were fought between them. They both were crowned: but of the bis coronation was ratified by the Pope, and Philips reprossed, and himself excommunicate: but he making slight accompt of the excommunication persisted in his attempt; and basing in a bickering onerstrowne the Lantzgraue, became very mightie; and Otho his power did daily debitate; and he himselfe in the endwas driven to sye, and to goe into England. Philip afterwards fought to pacifie the Pope, and to be in peace with him: and the reconciliation being made, a peace was procured with Otho: which was concluded by making him his some in law, and his successful to Empire: but this ioy lasted not long: for Otho being come to the Court, the Countie Palatine of Wittlissach, who was Philips secret enemie, upon a day (with a resolution to kill him) came to his chamber, destring to speake with him, and being let in, he tooke his sword from his Page, and therewith structure the Emperor, when he had raigned tenne yeeres.

The death of great princes cause great alterations. T is a common and viuall thing through all the world, that vpon the death of great Kings and princes, enfue great chaunges and alterations, which is verified and experimented by the death of Henry the fixth, whole

whose historie wee now ended to write: for by reason thereof, ensued great innouations, and vnexpected accidents. First in the army which he fent into the East to the conquest of Ierusilem, and which had begun the warre with good fuccesse, his death being published, the princes and prelates which went this ther, agreed together in all hafte to returne home totheir houses, and did so; nothing prenailing with them the counfell and entreatie of SIMON of Monferrate, a most excellent warriour, who came thither with certaine troupes of Frenchmen to their aide: and so they left the countrey so throughly abandoned, and in fuch necessitie, that the Infidels taking the citie of Japha, destroyed the fame, and laid it even with the ground; and king ALMBRICVS and the Christians were brought to such extremitie, that they were driven to sue to the Infidels for peace : fo as it appeareth, that it was not Gods will that the warres and conquest of the Holy land should euer haue any good successe. Here in Germany enfued the greatest tumults, warres and battailes, about who should be Emperour, that euer had been seene for the like cause. Pope I N N O C EN T attempted, and began to recouer fome lands, which the Emperonr HENRY held from his Church. The Empereffe presently sued to the Pope, for the confirmation of Sicilia to her and her fonne, which the hardly obtained, with fufficient loffe of lands and dignities. So great effect worketh oftentimes the absence, or presence, of one man onely: for PHILIP Duke of Suenia, whose historic I now begin to write, was interrupted by his brothers death in Italy, he going to visit him; from whence, so some as he understood thereof (for as some authors say he was not present when he died)he returned into Germany, and by the way encurred many daungers: with an intent (notwith standing that he had the title of his Nephewes Protector) to get (if he might) the Empire for himselfe: whereto, being come into Germany, as well by meanes of his estate and authoritie, as also for that hee was the brother and the sonne of an Emperour, hee found great fauour, and great contradiction and refiltance alfo, by many princes which were enemies to his house and family: Philip chosen and for some other respects. Principally, the Electors voyces being divided into Empereur. two opinions, the one part named the same PHILIP for Emperour; for of his nephew, by reason of his infancie, and also for that he was king of Sicilia (notwithstanding their promise made to his father) they made small account; and the other partie chose O THO, Earle or Duke of Bruinswike, sonne of HERRY the proud, which had been Duke of Saxony, and was dispossessed (as we faid) by the Emperor FREDERICK, wherefore some authors call him Duke of Saxony: this OTHO his Other chosen mother was fifter to the King of England, by whose meanes (as some say) hee was Emperour. called to the Empire. Betweene these two was the cruell sharpe warre, and competencie, having recourse to their armes: yet the Abbot WESPERGENSIS faith, that BERTOLD Duke of Zeringe, before, or at the fame time, was a third competitor, and was called Emperour: but Duke BERTOLD's challenge conti-Emperour. nued not long, for he foone agreed with PHILIP and for that most authors write it not. I will passe it ouer, with the only remembrance thereof. Philip and Or Ho being in armes, each of them with his partakers and friends, began to warre, killing, robbing, and imprisoning one another. OTHOWAS holpen and supported by the King of England, as his vncle and friend, and by the Lantzgraue of Turinge, the Countie Palatine of Rhine, the Duke of Liconia, the Earle of Limburgh, the Archbishop of Colen, and his prelates and Suffragane, the Earle of Flanders and his friends, and fome other princes and prelates: Pope Innocentalfo fauoured his cause, calling to minde that the ancestors of this O THO, Dukes of Saxony, had

Nnn 3

greatly

Emperour.

greatly holpen and defended the Church of Rome: and to the contraric, PHILLPS predecessors Dukes of Sueuia, had persecuted the same, causing schismes and divifions; as HENRY the fourth, FREDERICK the first, and his brother FREDERICK had also held many places in Tuscane, and Ancona, belonging to the Church of Rome. Those which tooke part with PHILIP, were the king of France, the Archbishop of Mentz, the Dukes of Saxony, and of Austrich (which then came from the warres in the East) the king of Bohemia, the Duke of Bauiere, the Duke of Lorraine, and of Brabant; and all the rest of the princes which tooke not part with O-THO (but yet the successe chaunged these fauours) and PHILIP for his person was better beloued and more efteemed then OTHO, for he was gentle, of a noble condition, discreete, and liberall (whereby good will is principally gotten ) very valiant, although of but a weake bodie, and of a meane stature; of a good countenance, and faire, white and red. O THO had not so good parts of a man in him; for he was held to be, not very wife, rash, and without measure audacious. PHILIP having affembled his friends together in the citie of Mentz, was there annoynted and crowned Emperour by the Bishop of Tarantasia; the Bishop of Sutrino, who was the Popes Ambassadour and Legate, being there present, who came thither for another purpose; wherewith the Pope was extremely angrie. OTHO and his friends perceiving that PHILIP was crowned, went to Aken, which PHILIP had alreadie taken; and befieging and scaling it, tooke the same vpon composition: and there A DOLPH Archbithop of Colen preposterously crowned him, and he therefore was held for right Emperour: which coronation was afterwards confirmed by Pope INNOCENT, who fent GVIDO Cardinall of Prenefte, for his Legate, to the citie of Colen, for the same purpose, and to excommunicate PHILIP, and all his followers and abbetters. And PHILIP (as a man of great spirit) fought to fight with OTHO, and to that end entred his enemies countries, destroying the fame with fire and fword, and tooke some strong Castles neere to Argentine, where betweene his and O T HO his troupes, were many skirmithes and encounters, and many men were flaine of either fide : and the next yeere following hee came against the same citie of Argentine, which held for O THO; which yeelded vpon composition, and he was therein received and obeyed. And O THO in like manner with all his whole power came against PHILIP: and betweene the souldiers of the one and other, were some battailes and skirmishes, wherein PHILIP for the most part had the victorie, which made some to come ouer to his side: but yet the comming of the Popes Legate at this time, and the publishing of the excommunication, did greatly hinder PHILIPs proceedings, and was a great helpe to Otho, with the prelates and ecclefiasticall personages. Philip having the greatest quarrell against the Lantzgraue of Turinge, for that by his meanes principally O THO Was chosen; he therefore resolued to enter his countrie, and to destroy it, and putting the same in execution, took one or two very strong townes of his: the Lantzgraue raising his power, and sending for help to the Countie Palatine of Rhine, and to Otho Charvs, king of Bohemia (who now ioyned with Otho, by reason of the Popes excommunication) and to other his friends and kinsemen; leuied so great a number of good men of warre, that PHILIP not daring to fight with him, retired to a strong towne, wherein they besieged him: but he vsed such meanes, that in the night he gat out of the town, & put himfelf in fafety: and within few daies after came Orno to the aid of the Lantzgraue with his whole power, in hope to haue taken Philip for they had written to him, that he could not escape from the place wherein they held him belieged. So as O THO being then malter

the moneth of August, in the yeere of our Lord 1203; where, in the presence of Anno Dom. the before named Princes, and of his friends, he was the fecond time crowned 1203. by the Popes Legat; and his first election was approued and confirmed, and many revolted from PHILIP to him, under colour that they did so, by reason of the Popes censures. At this time, the Empresse Constance, tutrelle of the young FREDERICK, King of Sicilia, dying, recommended the protection of the child to Pope INNOCENT, who fent certaine Legates to gouerne those countries in the behalfe of the young King; who afterwards was Emperour, as you shall heare. OTHO his fauourites and partakers being departed from this Diet or Councell. with victorie; the next yeere following their fortune altered: for PHILIP with the aide of France, Saxony, Austrich, Mentz, Wittembergh, Sueuia, Baniere, and the rest of those which held with him, came vpon the Lantzgraue and his confederates, and entring his countries (as he had done the yeere before) tooke certaine castles, and the King of Bohemia and the Countie Palatine came to iowne with the Lantzgraue and so to fight with PHILIP: but PHILIP met and sought with them before they could ionne with the Lantzgraue, and obtained the victory, although bloody. The Bohemians running away and disordering themselues in the begin- The Bohemians ning, so as great flaughter was made of them in the chace. PHILIP thorough this overshrowne. victory wan fo great reputation, that many of those which vntill then had been silent and neutrall, came to ferue him, and from his enemy came to him not a few. And the Lantzgraue feeing his fuccours ouerthrowne and fcattered, and his countrey spoyled, fought meanes to come to some composition with PHILIP. and to ferue him: and PHILIP (as he was a gentle and courteous Prince) admitted him into his fauour and friendship, and the Lantzgraue with great humilitic came and yeelded himselfe into his power. And after him came ADOLPH, Archbishop of Colen, who nothing fearing the popes Excommunications, against such as tooke part with PHILIP, or defended his quarrell, compounded with him also, promising to bring the Dukes of Lorraine and of Brabant, to his denotion; a thing which P HILLE much defired, and gaue him to effect the fame a great fumme of money: which was the cause that many others did the like. So as this partie growing now to be strongest, a meeting was appointed to be had in Aken; and for as much as PHILIP had not been crowned therein by a generall affent, he was againe with great folemnitie crowned Emperour and King of the Romans, by the hands of the said Archbishop ADOLPH, who despised and contemned his popes censures and commandements: whereupon pope Inno-CENT depriued and deposed him from his Archbishopricke; and sent commandement to his Legate, which then lay in Colen, to cause another to be chosen:

and the Chanons affembling, made choice of one BRVN vs, a man of great ac-

count: and O THO tooke such order, that he was presently consecrated by two

Bishops which came from England: wherewith PHILIP was so inraged, that

he presently went and set upon the citie of Coles, and being unable to take it by

force, spoyled the fields, and put the deposed Archbishop in possession of some

townes in the marches and territorie thereof; so as neither the one nor the other

could gouerne that Church. The like happened afterwards in many Churches,

fome holding of the one faction, and others of the other: and miserable Ger-

many at this time indured grieuous calamities, for besides the great warres and

battailes, the Churches and Monasteries were robbed. After all this, the next yeerefollowing, which was the yeere 1205, PHILIP, with great power of Prin-Anno Dom.

ces and marshall men, came to make warre vpon O THO, who with his friends and allyes was in Colen; with whom, amongst fuch others as came thither, was GVIDO the popes Legate, and BRVNVs the Archbilhop thereof. And with PHILIP came the deposed Bishop, and OTHO having no sufficient forces to fight with him in the field, held himselfe within the citie, not daring to keepe the field against him: which PHILIP perceiuing, sent for all the forces that he could leuie, and befieged O THO and those which were with him in Colen: fo as OTHO was in greater distresse than he thought of in the beginning; and the fiege was so sharpe, that it was impossible for any man to get in or out, without the leave of the beliegers. And O THO knowing that if he staied any longer therein, besides the reputation which he lost, his person and life would be in great danger: resolued therefore to make way thorough his enemies, or to dye in the action; and making choyle of his best men, both of horse and soote, besides the principals, hee one day suddainly fallied and charged into his enemies campe. and in the beginning made great flaughter of them; but being oppreffed with the multitude, he vied the meanes and remedie prepenied, and fo escaped by flight: yet in the chace, many of those which fallied with him, were taken prisoners and flaine: amongst which, Bavnvs the new Archbishop was taken prisoner, whom PHILIP held in irons about one whole yeere after: and in this flight, () THO neuer stayed untill he came into Saxony, where he was harboured, and protected by Duke BERNARD. And PHILIP preuailing, offered so honorable composition to those of Colen, that they rendred, and came all to his seruice; and restoring ADOLPH to his seat and Bishopricke, he wholy disanulled and made voyd the new election of Bavavs, without any regard of the popes commaundements. OTHO perceiving that PHILIPS power did daily more and more increase, and that he had not any forces wherewith he might defend himselfe, tooke shippe and failed into England: and so for that time remained PHILIP peacefull Emperour, finding no man that in field made any relitance. but what the pope did with his Fulminations, whereof (as it feemeth) he made small reckoning. And the better to assure vnto himselfe the loue of the people. (he naturally defiring to end matters by clemencie) gaue his eldeft daughter in marriage to the King of Behemia, and another daughter to the Duke of Brabants eldest Sonne : and so vpon other Princes he bestowed fauours and benefits, wherein (as faith the Abbot Waspan Gansis) he spent his whole patrimonic, giuing Townes and Castles, and even Churches and their revenues: for so much doe men defire to raigne, that to bring the fame to effect, there is no lawe but they will breake and violate, yea, and they thinke they may lawfully doe it, which may well and sufficiently be proued by such matters as passed in these times in the Empire of Constantinople, which, for that they make to our purpole and historie, I will here briefely recite, although so great accidents, require a long relation; and fo for a while, we will leaue O THO fled, and banished into England, and PHILIP to inioy his victorie.

In Constantinople then raigned Isac, or Isacivs (of whom we have made mention) as a inft Prince and good governour; who with a great fumme of money redeemed a Brother of his, a valiant and excellent captaine, called A LEXVE, who in the warres was taken prisoner by the Turkes, to whomafter his comming to his court (besides the lands and estate allowed him for his maintenance) he gaue so great authoritie and command in the government, that all matters of greatest importance were ordered by his direction: and he being in this fauour,

the divell, ambition, and defire to raigne, possessed him, so as to bring his purpose to effect, he resoluted to breake all lawes, both divine and humane, together with the bands, wherein he stood bound to his soueraigne Lord and brother: for in requitall of the benefits received, with the helpe and affiftance of fuch as himfelfe. heapprehended his brother, and did put out his eyes, and feifed upon the Empire to his owne behoofe: and a son of Isacivs, called after his trecherous Vncles name ALEXVs, fled, and came into Germany to the Emperor PHILIP, whose wife YRENE was this young mans fifter: but as PHILIP was not so firmely seated in his Empire, as to be able to fuccour and relieue another, by reason of his warres with Orno, so he could not therefore doe as he would have done. At that time by chaunce (or else it was Gods will it should be so) were in Venice, BALDVVIN Noble men in Earle of Flanders, and his brother HENRY : and BONIFACE Marquesse of Venice. Monferrato: LE vv 15 Earle of Sauoy; and other noble personages, with many fouldiers and men of warre; induced to meete there, by pope INOCENT, for the conquest of Ierusalem and the Holy land: where they stayed for shipping to goe on their voyage, whither came recommended to them by the Emperour PHILIP and this young ALEXYS: whereupon these princes (by the confent of the Duke and Senate of Venice and of the pope) concluded to goe against the tyrant ALEXVS: whereto the Venecians gaue great ayde, fending an Admirall with a great fleete. The league and couenant being made with the Nephew ALEXVS; hee promised, that being restored, hee would reduce the Greeke Church, to the obedience of the Latine; and many other matters in recompence; and so they departed with good and faire weather. And omitting fuch accidents as befell them in their voyage (wherein they tooke the Ile of Creta, now called Candia, and other places:) it was so that they arrived neere to the citie of Constantinople, where the tyrant ALEXVS in a readines awaighted their comming, with a very great number of people; and they fetting their men on land, had a battaile with THEODORE LASCARVS the tyrants sonne in law, who fallied with an armie to fight with them; and he being ouerthrowne. they pursued him to the gates of the citie, which they befieged both by Sea and land. And at the end of eight dayes, that they had been there (wherein were many braueskirmishes and sierce encounters) the tyrant ALBXVS seeing that he could not preuaile, fled out of the citie by night: and after him followed the most part of his complices; and the next day, the citizens opening the ports. tooke the blind Emperour Isacivs out of prison, and with him went forth to the Campe, wherevery willingly they tooke the fonne to be Emperour, together with the father: and he was with great folemnitie received into the citie, and crowned in the Church of Saint Sophia, in the presence of all the Latine Captaines; wherewith the blind father was greatly recomforted; and it seemed that all went well, and to the contentment of all men: and the Knights, and commaunders of the Latines, to auoyde the scandales, which might arise betweene their people & the citizens, went to their tents in the campe. In the meane while, that the new Emperour and his father made payment to the Venecians, of what they had promifed, and accomplishing the same, the Greekes greatly murmured, for the naturall hatred which they bare against the Latines, and the blind Emperour Isacivs died, and presently began new scandales and tumults in the citie, they all exclaiming against the promises made by the young ALEXYS to the Latines, and alleaging that they ought not to be performed, put themselves in armes against them, but yet the new Emperor defired to have throughly accom-

plished the same. Yet some authors lay to his charge, this inconvenience, saying, that he would not have held his word. Finally, the matter fell fo out, that the tumultinfinitly encreasing; one MIRTILLY's, which had been a fauorite of the Emperour Isacivs (being the chiefe occasion of this mutiny, and whom the Greekes chose for their Generall, calling him Emperour) went to the palace. where the new Emperour ALEXVS was, and with his owne hand flew him. within one moneth after his coronation: and the new vpflart traitor MIRTIL Lys was fet in his place, who prefently studied how he might fet the sleete of the Venecians and of the princes of the Latins on fire, and to cut off all victualles from them, and by affaulting them in their lodgings, to have overthrowne and defeated them; but the effect enfued after another manner; for after many skirmilhes. flaughters, and effusion of much blood (which for breuitie take I omit) the Latines had the victorie; the tyrant fled, and they were Lords of the citie together withall the countrie round about it. And forasimuch as the Empire was without any lawfull successor, and that they had made a conquest thereof; by a generall consent they resolved to chuse an Emperor; and making among themselves fifteene electors; BALDVVIN Earle of Flaunders was chosen, and created Emperor; and for such was sworne, received and obeyed; and the Patriarch, THOMAS MOROSINI, a Venecian Gentleman, presently went to Rome, where his prelacie, and the Emperors election, and all the rest was approoued and confirmed by the pope; and he with his owne hands inuefted him, and gaue him for the Emperor the Imperiall enfignes. This great attempt being atchiued by these Captaines, according to their first agreement, they divided what they had gotten, and the Iles of then Creta, now Candia, and Eubeea, now Negropente, were given to the Venecians; which they have held untill this day; and torafmuchas Candia was first given to BONIFACE Marquelle of Monferrato, the countries Theffalia, which is a prouince of Macedonia was given him, with the title of King; with other rewards and shares made to other princes, as well in the Ilands, as in the maine; of which, remained estates, and houses, which I omit: and so the Empire rested in BALD WIN and his successors, for the space of more then threescore yeeres; with such aduentures, as you shall heare hereafter: but the citie of Adrianople rebelling, defended it selfeall this while; THEODORE LASCARY & the Emperor ALEXVS his sonne in law, who (as we said) sallied out to fight with the Latins, being gotten into the same. And the new Emperor BALD WIN befleged that citie, and died before it, and his brother Hanay succeeded him in the Empire: the rest you shall understand when the turne commeth. Now let vs returne to our storie of PHILIP Emperor of Germany, whom we left victorious; and to OTHO fled into England: yet let the reader confider, and abhorre the treasons of ALEXYS and MIRTILLYS; whereof the one put out the eyes of his owne brother; and the other murthered his fourraigne Lord, and let him confider what ends they had, and therewith, how little stabilitie and assurance there is in the Empiers and principallities of this world; and with how vniust titles they are oftentimes gotten and possessed; of all which, there hath been a fufficient and apparant example, in that which hath now been spoken of the Greeke Empire.

The Emperor Philiphauing expelled Othoout of Germany, he and his followers imagining that their aduerfaries should now neuer be able any moreto molest him: neuerthelesse in regarde of peace, hee being in disgrace with the Church of Rome, by the aduice and confent of the princes which were affembled

for that purpose, sent his Ambassadours to the pope, excusing his doings, alleaging the equitie of his cause, entreating him to establish some peace in the Empire, to absolue him, and to confirme his election, and therewith yeelded himselfe to his obedience. The pope hearing the ambaffade, gaue also eare to the treaties. and fent for his Ambassadours, Cardinals Legates of great account to the Emperour to treate of a peace: which being come, and with much honour received: among other motions, one was, that the Emperour should marrie a daughter which he had to be married, to RICAARD the popes nephew; and should give him therewith the estates of Spoleto in Tuscane, and the Marca de Ancona, which belonged to the Church of Rome, and were in the Emperours possession. This motion(as faith ABBAS WESPERGENSIS) was made by the Emperor, by that meane to winne the popes grace and fauour: yet some attribute it to the pope. These and many other matters were motioned, and there were many meetings of princes; whither his competitor OTHO also sent his Ambassadours; and afterwards came out of England into Saxony in person: and of the one side and of the other, many demaunds and offers were made (the Cardinals Legates being vmpieres and mediatours betweene them)in the end, in a generall meeting which was held in a towne in the borders of Saxeny, O THO being in a Castle neere vnto it securitie being giuen by either partie, a generall peace was concluded voon condition that OTHO should marrie with the daughter of the Emperor PHILIP. and beheld for king of the Romanes, and future Emperour after the decease of the faid PHILIP: which agreement was confirmed and fworne, and a generall pardon was given by the one to the other, and the pope difpenfed with their neerenes of bloud; and all fuch as were excommunicate, were absolued by the popes Legates: and so all was in peace and quiet, and OTHO remained the Emperours farme in law, and heire apparant, and for fuch was prefently fworne, and the Legares returned to Rome: all which paffed in the years of our Lord 1207, Anno Dom. wherewish all men were very glad and well contented, hoping that it would have long continued; for PHYLIP was an exceeding liberall and curteous prince, and deerely beloued generally of al men. But it otherwise happened for the yeere following the Emperour being in the towne of Bambergh, Or Ro Countie Palatine Willipsel, who had been his deadly enemie (and was fo fill in fecret) came to the Emperotirs court, thewing himselfe publikely to be his loyall squant, His comming (as it afterwards appeared) was but to practife the Emperours death, and as a traytor to kill him, which PHILIP nothing suspected. The Emperour being one day after dinner in his chamber repoling himselfe voon his bod for that hee finding himselfe somewhat ill at case, had been let bloud that day; the Countie Palatine called at his chamber doore, accompanied with some which were acquainted with his pretence: and the Emperour understanding who he was, made the doore to be opened, notwithstanding that none were with him but his Chancellour, the Bishop of Spire, and a page which waighted on his Cup, called Han-RIB of VVillpurch, without any weapons: and the Countie Palatine at his entrance, imagining the time now fit for him to execute his divilifhintent and treafon, at the doore he tooke his fword from a page which carried the fame, and fuddenly drawing it, before that the Bishop or page could rescue him, wounded the Emperour in the throat: which wound, although it were not great, yet it was mortall, and he presently died thereof, the organe pipes being cut. The page making an outcrie, would have shut the doore, to the end that the Countie Palatine should not have gotten foorth; but he gave him a fore wound over the face, and

OTHO THE FIFTH.

697

The death of the Emperour Philip,anno Dens, 1208.

696

opening the doore departed, and ioyning with a Bithop and a Marquis, which were his confederates in this treason, they all together fled from the court, vpon poalt horses wich they had laid for that purpose. This murther was committed ypon the 22.day of June, in the yeere of our Lord 1208. in the tenth yeere of this Emperours raigne. Great was the tumult which grewe hereof, and the concourse of the people which ranne to the Emperours chamber: which finding him dead, made great moane and lamentation for him: for he was a Prince well beloued for the noblenes and liberalitie of his mind: al men abhoring the Countie Palatines treason; for which he escaped not vnpunished; for he was slaine by the Emperours Reward HENRY, in revenge of his Lords death. The Emperour PHILLIP had neuer any fonne, but foure daughters then married, one with OTHO the King of the Romanes, when the peace was made betweene them, which OTHO fucceeded him: and another with the King of Bohemia, another with the Duke of Brabants eldest sonne, and the fourth with RICHARD Earle of Tuscane; nephew to Pope Innocent. In Constantinople raigned HENRY brother of BALD WIN, of whome we of late made mention.

## THE LIFE OF OTHO THE FIFTH OF THAT NAME, AND

HVNDRETH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

Fror the death of the Emperour Philip: Otho, without any contradiction was taken for Emperour: and notwithstanding that he was chosen for his successor in Philips time, it pleased the electors to chuse hime a new of he being confirmed, was crowned by the Billiop of Colen. After the ceremonies were ended, be applied him felfe to perfecute the murtherers of Philip: and notwithstanding that he was wel pleased with his death, neverthelesse he made this shew of remenge. He came afterwards to be crowned in Rome, but a great tumult and affray arising betweene his people and the sitizens, he departed in choler with the Pape; and made warre upon him ; so as the Pope excommunicated him and deprined him of the empire:

whereupen many Princes of Germany denying him their obedience, chose another Emperour, which was Frederick King of Sicilia, and although that Otho affaied by many wates to recover the Empire, yet be could never attaine thereto, and so died a primate Lord in Saxony, when bee had raigned fine yeeres.



Y how much PHILIP was a better Emperor then his com- According to petitor OTHO, it was not long before that the fame OTHO the Germane made it apparant; notwithstanding that in the beginning Othe Should be he gaue some signes to the contrarie : so as we may hold the fourth, but the old common adage to be true, which fairh, that autho-dinary course ritie will manifest a man. So soone as the violent death of he was the PHILIPWAS published (the agreement being yet fresh in fifib of that memorie, that OTHO should succeede him) by common

consent he was held for Emperour: and notwithstanding that in the life time of PHILIPhe had been twice crowned, neuerthelesse the princes electors (according to the ancient custome) met at Franckford; and he being there new chosen, went to Aken, and there was crowned by the Archbishop of Colen, although with some delay; for the Archbishop of Spire, which was Chauncellor to the late Emperour PHILIP, and was present (as we faid) when he was slaine, had lodged himselfe in a very strong castle, and would not deliuer the Scepter, the Crosse, the Crowne, and the Imperiall enfignes, which remained in his cuftodie; except hee were first confirmed in his office of Chauncellor: whereupon the new Emperor confirmed him; and so was crowned peaceably with great solemnitie: which being ended, pope INNOCENTS Legates came to him (who had ever been his friend)to with him toy of his election, and to approone and confirme the fame: the comming of which Legates, the Emperour attended in the citie of Hiperboli; and they deliuered their ambassade, and treated of other matters concerning the generall peace and publike good: and offered the Emperour in the behalfe of the pope, that if he would come to Rome, the pope should crowne him with his own hands, as his predecessors had done by his. OTHO having dispatched these Legates, took his way towards Suenia, to take possession therof, in the right of his wife the Emperour Philips daughter; with whom, at the establishment of the peace he was married; and to whom (he faid) that state did appertaine: yet FREDERICK king of Sicilia, PHILIPS nephew, which afterwards was Emperour, was called Duke of Sueuia; and was fo afterwards. And O T H O comming into Suenia (protesting his comming thither to be, to quiet the troubles, by abolishing robberies and violences committed in that countrie; much whereof hee redreffed) gaue fo ill entertainment and countenance to the Earles, Barons, and Gentlemen of that great Duchie, that many of them abandoned the countrey; and he made himfelfe to be generally ill beloued: yet there wanted not some, which to flatter him, commended his doings(a thing which maketh kings and princes most to erre, and to perseuere in their errors). And within few daies after hee went to Augsburgh, which is in the same province; whither he summoned the princes to come; and with their consent he proceeded against OTHO, Countie Palatine of VVitilspach, (who murthered the Emperour P HILIP) and against fuch as were his complices in the murther : all which were condemned, being absent as guiltie of high treason, and were deprined of all the dignities, goods and lands which they possessed; of which, some he bestowed upon others, and part hee confisked to the chamber of the Empire. And notwithstanding that all men judged that he was well pleased with the death of PHILIP, yet he inflicted this punishment; and outwardly made

thew of much forrow for the fame : and some were of opinion that the Countie Palatine killed the Emperour PHILIP, in hope that his successor OTHO Would haue rewarded him for it. But whatfocuer any man thought, he did as I fay and well might hee be pleased with his death; and displeased with the treason. By meanes of this punishment, and for righting some other wrongs; hee began in many mens opinion to be reputed a good Emperour, and a great Iusticer : vet a mongst men of the better fort he was blamed, for the oppression which he vsed. both in Sueuia and in other places: but in the beginning hee was without contradiction obeyed of all men. Few daies after this, in the moneth of March, in the veere 1209, he summoned a generall Parliament or Diet, to be held in the citie of Haguena; wherein the principall point that was handled, was but how to get aide and reliefe from the princes and estates of the empire, towards his journey into Italy, to the end to be crowned in Rome; and it was concluded, that he should doe fo; and many offered him their feruice, and to accompanie him in that iournev: and so hee, and those which were to goe with him, leuied their forces, and put themselues in a readines, with such expedition, that in the beginning of July following, they all met in the citie of Augsburgh; from whence hee tooke his way towards Italy : first leaving his wife the Emperesse in Saxony, in the citie of Brunschaiel, which was his inheritance; which, with other townes, hee held and defended, being part of the estate of Hana when proud, when hee was deposed; and descending down through the valleys of Trent, he went directly to Verona; where he was received and obeyed as their Lord: and from thence went to Milan, and by other cities of Lombardy, to Bologna; whither he summoned the cities of Lombardy, and all the townes and cities subject to the empire in Italy, to come to a Councel: wherein he was so fortunate, that all obeyed, and came at his summons peaceably, and furnished him with both men and money for his journey; and many Earles and Barons accompanied him in person, in such fort, that hee departed thence very mightie towards Rome; where Pope I NNOC BNT attended his comming; and he and all his Nobles which came with him, were there received with greatioy, and he himselfe was there crowned in S.P = T = & Church by the Pope; who had much defired to fee that day, perfwading himselfe that he should have had a great friend of him, seeing that hee had ever procured his greatnes against the Emperour Philip: and the Emperour, after the accustomed manner. Iware obedience to the Church of Rome, and to enlarge, and not to viurpe the patrimonie thereof; which he afterwards hardly performed. And the same day, betweene his people, which remained in his campe neere to the walles of Rome (part whereof were come to fee the citie) and the citizens; arose so great a tumult and affray, that aboue a thousand of the Emperours men were slaine; wherewith he was very wroth; and so was the Pope also, who indeed was his friend: And seeing that greater inconveniences were likely to have enfued, he departed, and came directly to Milan with his armie, accusing and blaming the pope for what passed; and in Milan he was received and ferued, and lay there all the winter, which was very tempestuous. And leaving there his Imperiall ensignes (wherewith the Milanois held themselues greatly honoured) reinforcing his armie (for that he had discharged a great part thereof) he departed in the spring, to make a conquest of the Church lands: first in the prounce of Tuscane, wherein he tooke many places: and thence he went into the Marca de Ancona, where hee did the like, and could not be refifted: and from thence it was thought that hee would have warred in the territorie of Rome, and have belieged the citie. And the Pope fent his Legates

A Councell beld by the Emperour ja Bologna.

The Emperour made warres against the

vnto himsputting him in mind of the fauours and good turnes which he had done him; and to perswade and admonish him to desist from his enterprise: but the Emperour making no account thereof, leauing garrifons in those townes, departed towards the kingdome of Naples, and began to warre against FREDERICK king of Sicilia: and tooke (the young king miltrusting no such matter) the citie of Capua, and many others in those quarters: wherewith the Pope was no leffe difpleased then with the former, but rather more, for that he held those kingdomes for feodatorie to the Church of Rome; and also for that the pope had the prote-Etion and government of the young king: so that the pope seeing that all his ambaffades and warnings prevailed not with him, refolued to vie a more violent course, proceeding against him by censures and excommunications, and by his letters and messengers excommunicated him through all Italy and Germany: and he also excommunicated all such as followed him, or did him service: which excommunications some prelates obeyed; whereupon new troubles began. But this the Emperour not onely regarded not, but was rather therewith the more incenfed, and prospered well in the warre, and tooke all Pulsa, and Calabria; and placing garrifons in the Castles and fortresses therein, made account to have bin king thereof. Whereupon the pope leuied fouldiers, and fortified the citie of Rome, fearing to have been befieged; and againe fent into Germany, to proclaime and publish the Emperour for depriued; and to release his subjects from the homage and faith which they ought him. O THO being aduertifed hereof, and that the Archbishop of Mentz, the Lantzgraue of Turinge, and some others, claue to the pope; and that there were both prinate and publike treaties and practifes against him, with the king of Bohemia, the Duke of Austrick, and other princes. he was therefore much afraid: and leaving garrifons in fuch places as he had taken, he in great haste left the kingdome of Naples; and marching by long tourneys, came into Germany, in the yeere of our Lord 1212, and called a Councell to Anno Dam. be held in the citie of Norimbergh; in which Councell it was decreed, that hee 1212. should warre against the Archbishop of Mentz, and the Lantzgraue of Turinge : and so the war began, and was very cruel. At this time died his wife the Empresse, daughter of the Emperor Philip. Notwithstanding al this, HARMAN Lantzgraue of Turinge, SIFRIDE Archbishop of Mentz, the King of Bohemia, the Duke of Aufirith the Archbishop of Trenter, and others which determined to take armes with them, and to obey the Popes censures, and to denie their obedience to the Emperour; taking the Popes aduice in the matter, who in all interposed his authoritie: chose FREDERICK King of Sicilia for Emperour; who was but a youth little more then eighteene yeeres old: and fent their Ambassadours vnto him, with their authoritie, foliciting him to come into the Empire, alleaging that in righthe was, and ought to be Emperour; for that he was chosen and fworne King of the Romanes, in the time of his father H n n x y the fixth: the like reason they alleaged to the other Princes in Germany: whereat Pope I NNOCENT greatly reioyced, and in word and deed approued the fame. OTHO herewith was very much troubled, and feeking meanes to defend his estate, by force of armes made terrible warres against his aduersaries. The Germane Ambassadors were well received by the King of Sicilia, who was in great doubt to undertake so great an enterprise; but being perswaded by them, and by the French Kings letters (who Frederick king Was Orno his enemie, for his affinitie to the house of England) he consented of Sicilia cho-

thereto and was called Emperour. FRIDERICK having in this manner accepted the Empire; first applyed him-

000 2

in Aken.

felfe to recouct such townes as OTHO hadtaken from him in the Kingdome of Naples, which being done, with the greatest power that he could raise, he tooke his way towards Germany: and in his journey went to kiffe the popes foote, and to intreate him that he might be crowned Emperour of the Romanes, seeing that he was called and chosen: but the pope resolued him that his request could not be graunted, for that thereby the auncient custome in the election and coronation of Emperours should be peruerted; and so incouraging him to proceede in his enterprise he sent his Legat with him, to be present at his Coronation in Germany; and therein to vie his authority, and to proceed against such as were disobedient, or rebelled against him. Herewith the Emperor elect continued his iourney; wherein, the cities of Paula and Cremone, and some other, ayded and affisted him; Milan and the rest being against him. Finally, with much trouble and danger he arrived at the citie of Constance in Germany, whither many men of warre repaired to him, together with some princes which were of his faction: which O-THO vnderstanding, as he was very valorous, so with the greatest power that hee could leuie he went to that citie, thinking to haue been able to haue either flaine or overthrowne this new Emperour FRED ERICK: but the men of warre which he brought with him, daily forfooke him and went ouer to FREDERICK; in fuch fort, that he feeing himselfe abandoned, retired into his countrie: and FREDE-RICK, very mightie, and accompanied with a great armie, marched a long the riuers fide of Rhine, to the citie of Mentz, where many prelates and princes were affembled; all forfaking O THO, holding him for depriued, in perfourmance of the Pope and his Legates commaundement: amongst which, thither came the Archbishops and Bishops of Mentz, Trenier, Colen, Constance Basil, Spire, Hiperboli, the king of Bohemia, the Lantzgraue of Turinge, the Countie Palatine of Rhine. besides those which were alreadie come with him; from whence, after the handling and concluding of many matters, FREDERICK departed towards Aken. where he was crowned with the first crowne, in the presence of the Popes Lecrowned with the first crowns gate, who appropued and confirmed his election; and so he attained to the empire; and for his better affurance in that effate, hee procured peace and a league With PHILIP, then king of France. And the Emperour OTHO feeing himselfe in Saxony thus for faken, gat from England, and other parts, such forces as he could, and came into the countrie of Guelders, wherein he made cruell warre, for that it held with FREDERICK; and from thence, together with the Earle of Flanders, who was so, for that hee married with I o AN & daughter of BALDVVIN Earle of Flanders, which held the empire of Constantinople, and at that time held with England against France, and with the Earle of Bologna in France; they went to ioyne with the king of Englands forces, to fight with the French king (which O TA o did for the alliance betweene him and the house of England) thinking, by ouerthrowing the king of France, who was enemie to them both, hee should be restored to his empire. But his conceits deceived him: for the king of France came and fought a battaile with them, neere to the citie of Tournay; which is recorded to haue been very bloudie and cruell, wherein the French king was in great daunger to have been flaine by the Emperour OTHO, who dismounted him: but he being rescued, encouraging his people, obtained the victorie; and O THO escaped by flight, but the Earle of Flanders was taken prisoner, and some other principall men : and O THO in the best manner that hee could gat into Saxony; voide of all hope to recouer the empire, when he had bin Emperour the space of five yeeres, and they not fully expired; and there with forow and anguish of heart he ended

his daies. How long he lived after that he was deposed, the authors write not : but Emperor Otho true it is that his raigne as Emperour, ended in the yeere of our Lord 1213.

In Constantinople(as writeth Brondys) the same day that Otho was ouerthrown, Anno Dom. HENRY (brother to the Greeke Emperour BALDVVIN) died; who being Earle of 1213. Flanders obtained that empire; and having warred with the Duke of Walachia, (which is part of the ancient Dacea) he made a peace with him, marrying himselfe. with his daughter, and married his ownedaughter to PETER, Earle ALTISIO-DORENSIS: and he (as I faid) dying at this time without any heire, the faid Earle PETER had the empire, and came afterwards to Rome, and was crowned by the Pope Intime of the Emperor OTHO; by whose aide, and the affistance of HEN-RY Emperour of Constantinople, an excellent French captaine, called I OHN DE BREGNA, had the kingdome of the East, with the title of king of Ierusalem; being called thereto, onely for the valour of his person; marrying him with the daughter of Isabel, to whom that kingdome appertained, as is aforefaid: the Captaines and masters of those parts denying their obedience to ALMERICVS king of Cyprus, of whom particular mention hath bin made. And fo I o HN DE BREG-MA had that kingdome, of whom wee must of necessitie speake hereaster: for which cause I remember him in this place,

#### THE LIFE OF FREDERICK THE SECOND OF THAT NAME. AND CI. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



ARGVMENT.

Rederick having obtained the Empire, made apublike folemne vow to goe to the warres of the Holy land; and comming to be crowned in Italy, was earnestly perswaded thereto by d the Pope; wherupon be entred into the Croifade; and he deferring his going, many Lords went into the East without him. In the meane time there grew discord betweene him and the Pope, for that he withheld certaine lands belonging to the Church of Rome; and for deposing certaine Bi-Shops from their Bishopricks in Sicilia; and placing others at his pleasure; upon which occasions the Pope proceeded against him with his postificall armes ; and excommunicated him : But the King

of Ierusalem comming afterwards into Italy, and gining the Empereur, his daughter to wife; he was absoluted, and againe promised to goe to the warres in the East; but delaying the time, and fine dino daily new occasious to deferre bu going; bewas in the end againe excommunicate; by reason whereof he resolued to goe: but being arrived in the East, he procured an agreement with the Soldan and obtained the citie of Ierusalem, and therein was Crowned: but this satisfied not the Pope, wein ther the Christian Princes; and then he returned into Europe with small reputation, and went into Germany, wherein his sonne (through his Fathers absence) had taken upon him very oreat an thoritie, whereof grew some suspitions betweene them which were some ended; neverthelesse, the Emperour comming into Italy (by reason of Lombardy) and finding that his some was his enemy he therefore causing him to be apprehende 1, made him to die in prison, and bending his forces against Lombardy, principally against Milan, he wied such rigour, that the Pope became his open enemy: and calling a Councell to beheld in Lions in Fraunce, he excommunicated him, and induced the electors to chuse a new Emperour : which was the Lantzgrane Henry, who lined but a while after. and then the Earle of Holland was chosen, against whom his some Contade continually warred. although with no great good successe. But Frederick being in Italy, seeking to be reuenged of certains cities which rebelled, and feeing that his enemies became daily more mighty, by reason of an ouerthrow given him, he reduced him felfe with dishonour into Pulia, where falling sicke be died (as it was thought ) through the practize of his baftard some Manfrede, when he had held the Empire, about fine and thirtse yeares.



N fuch manner as I have declared, had this fecond REDERICK the Empire, and therewith the Duchie of Sueuta, having first been King of Naples Sicilia and Sardinia, and held the same the space of thirtie and odde veeres, with great revolutions, warres, battailes and troubles, as you shall heare: wherefore I must spend more time in writing the historie of his life then of some others. He was at no leffe variance with the Church of Rome, than the other FREDERICE his Graundfather

was before him; and it now feemed to be an hereditarie maladie, thorough which, the Emperours and the popes neuer failed to be at contention and difcord; for the popes would vphold their supreme authoritie, their lands and patrimonie: and the Emperours after they had obtained the Empire, and were established in their thrones, pretending that all the jurisdiction and supreme power in both ecclefiasticall and temporall causes, both in Germany and in Italy appertained to them, and therefore could endure no superioritie; and there wanted not men of either fide to perswade them that they had reason: and sometimes ambition and couetoufnes of either fide were the occasions of the controuerfies aforefaid, and of fuch as we will relate. FREDERICK feeing himfelfe freed from his aduersarie OTHO: the better to justifie his title and raigne caused a new assembly and meeting to be held of the Princes of the Empire, and of the Proctors of the Imperial Cities, and went to Aken, and there made himselfe to be the second time Crowned with great solemnitie; and then made a publike solemne vowe, within a certaine time to goe in person to the warres and conquest of the Citic of Ierusalem, for the victorie which God had given him: and in requitall of the ayde and fauour received from pope Innosint, he gave for ever to the Church of Rome the Citic and Countie of Fundi; with all which the pope was very glad. After this coronation, Frederick went thorough fundry prouinces, and making himselfe absolute Lord thereof, brought them to his obedience as to their Emperour. And for as much as HENRY Duke of Brabant had not yet done him homage, he with all the speede possible, with a great Armie, marched

Discord betweene the Pope and the Emperour.

Frederick the fecond time crowned.

into that prouince: and the Duke seeing himselfe in danger, sought his fauour. offering to obey, and to doe him feruice, and was admitted, he giving his fonne and other noble men of his house, for hostages and assurance thereof. Few daies after this (by the Emperours consent) pope Innocant assembled a generall Councell in the Citie of Rome, whither came from all parts of Christendome. Greeke and Latine, the Patriarches of Ierusalem and Constantinople, threescore and ten Archbishops Metropolitanes, foure hundred and twelve Bishops, event Acouncell held hundered and odde Priors and Abbots couentuall; and Ambassadours from the thecitie of Emperour FREDERICK and King of Sicilia, and from the Emperour of Conflan. Rome. tinople, and from the Kings of France, England, Spayne, Arragon, Hungary, Cyprus and Ierusalem; and from other Kings and Princes: in which Councell were condemned certaine sects newly risen in France; but the chiefest matter that therein was handled, was for the warres and conquest of the Citie of Ierusalem, whereto they all gaue their consent, promising ayde and assistance. And the Pope sent his letters into all parts of Christendome, inciting and instigating all men to this war: graunting large Indulgences and Pardons to fuch as dyed in that action: and all fuch as gaue their names to goe to that warre, tooke for their device the figne of the Croffe of Ierusalem, which they ware vpon their apparell; and so were called Croifats. And so an infinite number of men, and many Princes tooke the same: amongst which, in Germany the Emperour FREDERICK tooke it, and HENRY Duke of Brabant, the Duke of Morania, the Duke of Iuliers, the Countie Palatine of Tubingen; the Marquis of Baden, the Earle of Nassan, the Duke of Limburgh and other Princes, with the Archbilhop of Ment 7, and many other Bishops : and in France, were many which prepared and armed themselves for this expedition. which afterwards tooke no fuch effect, as the preparation feemed to prognofticate. Amongst other matters, the great warres betweene the Pisans and the Genoaves (then two mightie common wealths by Sea) was a great let and hinderance; wherefore the Councell being ended (which was one of the most famous that euer had been) the pope went from Rome to Perugia, to the end, by his authoritie to have established some peace or truce betweene these two common wealths; where within few dayes, without concluding ought, he dyed, having gouerned the Church of Rome eyghteene yeeres and an halfe: he being dead, Honorivs the third was chosen, who in the beginning of his Papacie, crowned PHTER and his wife, Emperour of Constantinople, who (as I told you) fucceeded his Father in law HENRY. While these matters passed, the Emperour FREDERICE applyed himselfe to settle and confirme his estate in the Empire: and to prouide for his comming into Italy, to be Crowned in Rome, deferring his iournev to Ierusalem vntill this were done. But pope Honorivis (hauing a prophecie reuealed vnto him, importing that in his time the Citie of Ierusalems should be recovered) ysed all meanes possible to cause those which had yndertaken the same to depart into the East, and neuer ceased to require the Emperour Average into FREDERICK to accomplish the vow which he had made; threatning him with the Holy land, censures, if he perfourmed not the same : but the Emperour delaying his going, by the popes perswasion there went into the East, AND R'EVV King of Hungary, the Dukes of Bauiere, and Austrich; and out of France, the Earle of Niverne; WAL-TER the Kings chamberlaine, and other great men; and with them, went I OHN DE COLUMNA the Popes Legate, with so many good men of warre, that it was hopedthat they would have effected some great matter: which being arrived in Palestina in Asia, in the harbour at Ptolomaida, otherwise called Acon: after certaine confulta-

mantelled by The Citic of Damiata in Egypt, taken from the Sol-

704

dan, by the Christians.

Anno Dom .

1210.

consultations, joyning themselves with IOHN DE BREGNA, King of Ierusalem. and with the Masters of the Knights Templars, of S. I o HNS, and the Dutch orders and all their forces, whose number was great; they departed thence with a prosperous winde to the Citie of Damiata, called in auncient time Pelusium, in the coast of Egypt, in one of the mouthes of the river Nilus, where it falleth into the Sea, which they befieged the space of eyghteene moneths: in which time many accidents befell, which the authors write and I ouerpasse, as nothing to my purpose. The Soldan of Egypt was herewith so much put to his shifts, that he offered to give vp the Citie of Ierusalem and the marches thereof, vpon condition that they would raise their siege from before Damiata: and notwithstanding that there were fundry opinions betweene the Kings and Princes concerning the Ierusalem dif- fame; yet in the end it was concluded not to accept thereof, wherein they greatly erred, as by the sequell it appeared. In the meane time, the Soldans sonne Co Rforme of Egypt. DIRIVS, who was in Ierufalem, feeing what diffresse Damiata was in, and that both he and his Father were out of hope to defend Ierusalem; threw downe and ruinated all the walls thereof. In the end, the Christians tooke the Citie of Damiata, and certaine other townes in that quarter, and in all things had then good

fuccesse, although afterwards the contrarie insued. At this time, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1220, the Emperour FREDE-RICK came into Italy; and by letters and Ambassades understanding the Popes mind, came to Rome, and was therein received and crowned, with the ceremonies and folemnities accustomed, and there he againe vowed and bound himselfe, to make his voyage into the East, promising also great matters to the Pope: but being out of Rome, their frendship lasted not long, for he presently seised certaine townes into his hands, alleaging that they appertained vnto him; and then came into Lombardy, to fettle that estate; and passing through Tuscame, there arose some controversie betweene his people and the inhabitants of that countrie; the like happened afterwards in Lombardy; so as he began to grow odious, and ill beloued: and from thence he gaue a turne to visit his kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples: wherein befides the taking of some townes and places from the Pope, he placed certaine Bishops, in some Churches displacing such as the Pope had enstalled therein; alleaging that the Kings of Sicilia had a privilege to doe fo. Whereupon the Pope and he fell at open variance, and the Pope proceeded against him by his fulminations, commanding him particularly to accomplish his vow, for the conquest of the Holy land, and pronounced him for excommunicate, if within a prefixed time he rendred and restored not what hee had taken; and performed not his vow : and fo this contention continuing, hee feifing many townes into his hands (which hee left garrisonned and fortified) returned into Germany. Whilest these matters passed in Italy, great discord and diffention arose in the armie in the East, betweene the Kings and Princes, and the Popes Legate about the superioritie: and about what time, and in what manner the war was to be made: but finalthatbylon befie- ly, the Christians agreed to take the field, and to befiege the great citie of Babylon ged by the Chri- in Egypt, called Cair, and other townes thereabouts, in the moneth of July, in the yeere 1221, with an armie of threescore and tenne thousand excellent men of warre of foote and horse, besides groomes and horseboyes. And not withstanding that the Soldan had an exceeding huge armie, yet he durst not or would not fight with them, of purpose prolonging the warre, vntill that about two moneths after (the Christians having not encamped themselves in such place and order, as was convenient, and as they ought to have done) the river Nilus swelled and over-

flowed, as it viually doth in that countrie yeerely in August: besides which the Soldan caused the dikes and bancks thereof to be broken and cut, which in ancient time were made for a defence, and to keepe in the waters of that river: fo as the Christians campe was enuironed with water, in such fort that they could not forrage or get any victuals: finally, they were fo distressed, that they fent to the Soldan (who lay not farre from them) offring to come to a composition with him: In conclusion (to be briefe, and to returne to my historie) after many treaties betweene the Kings, the Legates, and the Soldan; a peace and truce was concluded for eight yeeres, and that hee should suffer them freely to depart; and that christians and therwith they should presently render the citie of Damiata, and such other townes the Soldan. of leffe importance, which they held in Egypt; and that all captines of either fide should have libertie; and that the Christians should depart with their troupes, to the cities of Ptolomaida, Tyre, and fuch other places as they held in Soria. Thefe conditions being agreed vpon, the Soldan made provision for them, and holpe them vpon their way, vntill they came to Damiata; where the Christians againe fell at variance amongst themselves, about giving vp of the citie: but in the end it was yeelded, and the Christian armie returned into Palestina, part by land, and part by sea. And from the port of Ptolomaida the king of Ierusalem returned to his countrie; and the king of Hungary, and the other Dukes, into Europe, vnto theirs; with little contentment and leffe joy; extreme fad and forowfull for their ill fuccesses hauing done little or nothing to any purpose: by reason whereof, there was great forow and heavines through all Christendome; and all men murmured against the Emperour FREDERICK, for that hee went not that journey. In the next yeere, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1222, the Emperour fummoned a Anna Dom. Councell to be held in the citie of Hiperboli, where hee procured the electors to make his young fonne HENRY of the age of eleuen yeeres king of the Romaness and for such he caused him to be crowned in the citie of Aken. Presently after this. IOHN DE BREGNAking of lerufalem, feeing the finall power of the Christians in the East, resolued to come in person to seeke reliefe, leaving the best garrisons in the countrie that he could (not with standing the truce) and came from Soria into Italy to Rome, where the Pope gaue him honourable entertainment, and hee presently vndertooke to be a mediatour between the Pope and the Emperour. who then was a widower; and the peace was made in this manner: The king of Ierusalem gaue his onely daughter in mariage to the Emperour FREDERICK, with the right of inheritance of the kingdome of Ierusalem: and the Pope absolued him of his excommunication: whereupon he promised presently after the mariage to goe with his whole power to the warres in the East, and to reforme all matters whereof the Pope accused him; and to restore such lands as hee held from his Church. Vpon this agreement he came from Germany to Rome, whither the kings daughter of Ierusalem was brought; and the mariage was solemnized with great ioy and feasting. By this title, and by the mariage of this Lady with the Emperour FREDERICK; CONRADE their sonne, and those which vntill this day have succeeded in the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples, have been, and still are, called Kings of Ierusalem. This being ended, the king of Ierusalem went into France, where he received a great fumme of money, which king PHILIP left him by his last will and testament towards the warres: there hee staied certaine daies for the Emperour, whom all men beleeued (for that the inheritance of that land belonged to him, and for the great power and fit oportunitie which he had thereto, being king of Naples and Sicilia) would now have perfourmed his vow and promise.

FREDERICK THE SECOND.

fi as. Anno Dom. 1221.

promise. But he departing from Rome, went with his spoule into the prominces of Pulia and Calabria, visiting his kingdomes, without proceeding on his journey, in more then two yeeres space : for which cause, and forasmuch as he had not thorowly accomplished the agreement with the Pope, they again fell at variance. After this his eldest sonne HENRY (who was in Germany) held a Councell in Franckford; under pretext to procure certaine princes to goe with their power to the conquest of lerusalem; to which the Emperour sent his letters, certifying his speedic comming into Germany, to the end to goe that journey : wherefore many princes gaue in their names promising to goe with him. At this assemblie was HENRY king of the Romanes, the Emperours sonne, married to MARGARET, daughter to the Duke of Austrich. The veere following the most of the cities in Lombardy made a league, & rebelling against the Emperor, denied him their obedience, alleaging the principall reason thereof to be, for that he was dispobedient to the Church: wherewith he was very much displeased; and many ambassades were fent from the one to the other; and there were many tumults, and much leuving of men, which continued many daies; which the Emperour alleaged to be the cause why he deferred his journey. At this time died Pope Honorivs the third having bin Pope tenne yeeres and halfe, in the end of the yeere 1226. This Pope is held for a very good Pope, the greatest reason why he is so esteemed, is, for that he folemnely confirmed the orders of the Franciscane and Dominicane Friers. After Honorivs succeeded Gragon wthe ninth, an Italian borne, nephew to Innocunt the third. The first matter that he tooke in hand was to require the Emperour to restore what he detained from the Church of Rome, and to goe the journey which he had vowed to Ierufalen; publishing him for excommunicate, if within a certaine time limited, he did not put the fame in execution: which he afterwards incurred: yet he presently answered, that he was content to goe from Sicilia, where he then was, and fent to his sonne to call a Councell in the citie of Aken in Germany; where (through his perswasion and the Emperours letters) many princes offered to goe that iourney: And the Emperour fent to them. that (with the greatest expedition that might be) they should repaire into Isaly, to the port of Brandizzo, which is in the furthermost part thereof, whither hee promiled prefently to come: and there met many men of warre, princes and prelates, attending the Emperours comming all the fummer: but he came not alleaging that he was sicke and ill at ease. Which(as most authors affirme) was but fained: and as BLONDVs and others affirme, he treated under hand with the Soldan of Egypt, hoping to have concluded some peace with him before his going out of Sicilia into Italy: so as by reason of the great heat of the summer, the most of the men of war at Brandizzo, and the countrie thereabouts, attending his comming, died, together with many principall personages, amongst which was the Lantzgraue of Turinge, a rich and mightie prince : which when the Emperour vnderstood, he came to Brandizzo, where he seised into his hands all the gold, filuer, armes and other things which the Lantzgraue brought with him; and it was faid that the Emperour came thither for no other purpose. But the sicknes increafing in the hoaft, and letters comming daily from the Pope; the Emperourto perfourme his promise departed with all his armie towards the East: but within few daies failing hee returned, and arrived in Italy, alleaging that the contrarie winds had constrained him so to doe. But this was held but for fained, and he was therefore ill spoken of by all men : and Pope GREGORY holding himselfe for diluded by the Emperours promife (other discord and disagreement remaining betwixt them) fent to declare him for excommunicate, & for fuch proclaimed him The Emperour through all Germany and Italy. At this time died the Emperelle, wife to the Empe[cosndexcemrour FREDERICK, and daughter to the king of Ierusalem; which left behind her municated by one sonne whose name was CONRADE.

These matters which we have recounted being past, the Emperor seeing himfelfe in a streight, by reason of the Popes censures on the one side, and the entreatie of many his friends on the other; with the greatest power that he could make, and with a great number of thips, fet his courfe towards Seria, and landed in the citie of Ptolomaida, otherwise called Acon; yet BLONDVS & some other say, that he first stayed in the Ile of Cyprus, and from thence sent a captaine with the greatest part of his armie to Acon; who by his commandement began a treatie of peace with the Soldan, before that he himselfe came to the warre. And FREDERICK comming afterwards thither, the Masters and Knights of the Orders, ill agreed with him; for they had intelligence, that he treated of a peace and agreement with the Soldan. And in Italy he was at as much oddes with the Pope: for RAINOLD. the Dukes sonne of Spoleto, whom he had left for Captaine and Gouernor in the kingdome of Naples, began to make warre, and tooke certaine places from the Church of Rome, in the Marca di Ancona, and other parts. Whereupon, the Pope called to his aide. I OHN DE BREGNAKing of Ierufalem, who then was readie to have taken shipping to have gon to defend his countries in the East; and to have holpenFREDERICK in the warres; which (it was thought) he would have made: and fo open warre began betweene the Pope, and the Emperours captaines and countries. I have not read in any author, in what manner hee began and continued the warre, during his abode in Palestina, onely they fav, that profecuting the treatie of peace begun with the Soldan, it was concluded, and that they came to an agreement, which was, that the Soldan should deliuer up the Cities of Ierusalem, Nazareth, Iapha, and other places in that kingdome; and hetvienethe should retaine to himselfe certaine fortresses of greatest importance, and that Emperour and there should be peace and truce betweene them for ten veeres. Many dayes the soldan. were spent about this matter, and vpon Easter day, in the yeere of our Lord 1220. the Emperour entred Ierusalem, and made himselfe to be crowned therein, and was called King of Ierusalem; and he presently sent an ambassade to Pope GRE-G on y giving him to understand of all that had happened; therewith requesting him, (eeing that he had accomplished his vowe, to declare him for absoluted à pena & culpa, for his long delaying the same, and for some other matters. But when hisambassadour came, the Pope adjudging the peace and agreement made by the Emperour dishonourable (fith the Soldan should continew in possession of the forresses and strong holds; presupposing that so soone as the Emperour should be departed from those countries, the Soldan would presently resume them into his hands, as he afterwards did) protested that the Emperour had done this, but only to make a fnew to have performed his vowe: wherefore, and by reason of the warres which his captaines then, and before that time had made against him: he not only affirmed the Emperour to have made no satisfaction. neither to be freed from the excommunication: and so practising with the Emperours subjects in Pulia to renounce their obedience to their Soueraigne, he recouered some townes which had been taken from him: which when the Emperour vaderstood, with the greatest speede that he possibly could make, he imbarkedhimselfe leaving part of his armie in Palestina, and the townes fortified and garrifoned in the best manner that he could; and with a faire gale of winde lan-



one night into the Emperours Pallace, to the Emperesse which should have been

A peace consluded betuveene the Emperour and the Pope.

Peter, Empe-

your of Con-

fantinople put

Lafcarus the

Tirant of A.

ded in Palia, fo as this exterprise of the Emperour FREDERICE the second, had no better successe than the rest. So soone as he was arrived in Italy, those places which had rebelled and had held for the Pope, revolted and held for him and he fent for men into Germany and into Sicilia; and began to warre vpon the Popes townes, and tooke many of them; and notwithstanding that he seemed to have foed well in the warre, yet he fought to be at peace with the Pope, by reason of some tumult and infurrections in Germany. And by the intercession of the Ma. fler of the Order of the Knights and Friars, called Tentonici (which like the Knights of S. Iohn and the Templars, lay in the East) and the Archbishop of Melsina, a peace was concluded betweene the Pope and him: LEOPOLD Duke of Austrich, with other Princes and Prelates of Germany, being there prelent: and the taken townes were reftored, and the Pope wholy absoluing him, proclaymed him King of Jerusalem, Naples, and Sicilia; and they met at a place appoynted and with great fliew of love and good will dined together at one table, and fo peace was established betweene them for that time; wherein, and in that which I have already recounted, were fundry opinions, as the custome is in this life, some excufing the Emperour, and others imputing the fault to him, for what had paffed: others attributed the fault to the Pope, for practifing against him in his absence. This peace being made, the Emperour returned into his Kingdome of Naples; and the Pope to pacific matters in Perugia (wherein had been great tumults and contentions) went thither; what befell in Rome in time of this his absence, I will presently tell you; first, bringing in few words to minde, the estate and successe of the Empire of Constantinople, whereto I am also bounden; for as the Emperour FREDERICK raigned long, it is not convenient to leave this, to make mention of another matter, wherein were great changes of Emperours, through the small time of their continuance : and thus it was.

By the death of HENRY Emperour of Grecia (as we have about faid) PETER had the Empire, for that he married his daughter I o LES; who returning crowned by Pope Honorivs to his Empire, had warres with THEODORE LAS-CARYS; who holding the Citie of Adrianople, was called Emperour, for that he married the fifter of the Emperour ALEXVS, who killed his owne Brother, as is before declared : and a peace was made betweene them, wherein Pater being intrapped and taken prisoner by LASCARVS, was afterwards put to death in prifon, when he had raigned three yeeres onely: which when his wife I o LES vnderstoode, she making her sonne, called Robert, to be proclaymed Emperour, vndertooke the gouernment, vntill that he should come to Constantinople: (for he was in Italy when his Father dyed) and he being come, was obeyed, and began to gouerne the Empire. Within few dayes after this, dyed LASCARVS the Tirant of Adrianople, and left the vsurped name of Emperour to his sonne in law, IOHN DE PLOBATACIO, who married his onely daughter, called YRENE; by whom he had already one Sonne, called THEODORE LASCARYS, as was his Grandfather. ROBERT having made shew of a good Prince (by the divels instigation) fell in love with a faire young damsell, which was betrothed to a Burgonian Knight (a man of great fort, and which had ferued the Emperour) and by the confent of her mother, brought her to his court, and married her, and made her to be honoured and held for Empresse: which did so much grieve the Burgonian that should have been her husband, that after some dayes diffembling, he tooke a terrible reuenge, which was, that ioyning himselfe with his friends and Parents, together with many Greekes, which hated this ROBBRTS

his wife, and cut off her nose: and her Mother which had been the causer of the marriage, he threw out at a window into the fea, wherein she was drowned: and having done this, he departed, and put himselfe and his friends into a place of safetie. foas the Emperour ROBERT could not punish the fact : who shortly after came to Rome to be crowned, and returning homewards, fell ficke in Macedonia. and dved, leaving behinde him one Sonne, called BALDVVIN; others fay, a Brother, who was presently received for Emperour and his successor. And for as muchas he was very young, by a generall affent I OHN DE BREGNA King of Ierulalem was fent for to be his gouernour and affiftant in the Empire, who then was in the Popes service in Italy; and he with the Popes leave and good will came into Gracia, and tooke vpon him the gouernment of the Empire of Constantinoples and betrothed a daughter which he had, to the young Emperour BALDYVING and gouerning that Empire fo long as he lived (which was about fome fixe or feuen veeres) he left it in peace to his sonne in lawe: who in what manner he afterwards loft the same, you shall know hereafter. This comming of I OHN DE BREGNER to Constantinople, was about the same time (little before or after) that the peace was made betweene the Emperour FREDERICK the fecond, and Pope GREGORY the ninth: which (as I then faid) being concluded Pope GREGORY Went to Perugia to pacific the Citie and the marches thereof: and the Emperour went to his Kingdome of Naples. In the time that the Pope was absent from Rome, the gouernment of the Consuls being abolished, (which was so hatefull to the Popes) and now the gouernment of a Senatour being brought in : fometimes one, and sometime fine, which governed the body of the Citie: aman of great power, called HANNIBAL, was aduaunced to that dignity: who incenfed the people against the Pope, he being absent, and the Pope comming to Rome at that time, many matters enfued; and in the end, this HANNIBAL was depriued of his office, and one IOHN DE POLI, a fedicious fellow alfo. fucceeded him, who put the Citic in armes against the Pope, and against such townes as held for him, and open warre began betweene them, yet the Pope by all meanes that could be imagined fought peace. The Emperour FREDERICE being in Pulia, was advertised hereof; offered to come to his ayde, and came to speake with him (and as saith BLONDVs) gaue him for a pledge of his friendthip a Bastard Sonne which he had, whose name was HENRY, whom he had made King of Sardinia, the Germanes call him Encivs, and fo doe fome authors call him; but the Emperour performed not what he had offered; for within few dayes after he departed for Germany: the Pope remaining in the chiefest of histroubles with the Romanes, wherewith he was extreamely discontent. but yet not fo as to breake the peace betweene them. And before the Emperors departure, the Pope with his money drew the Germane Souldiers to his feruice. and with them recourred certaine townes which rebelled; and his armie ouerthrowing the Romanearmie, he compelled them to be quiet; yet for that time he could not fafely come into Rome. And the peace betweene the Pope and the Emperour lasted aboue eight yeeres, although there were but little good will betweene them. The Emperour being come into Germany, from whence he had been absent a good space, wherein his eldest Sonne was resident for his Father, and had taken greater authoritie vpon him ouer the countrie than his Father would he should have done: there grew some suspitions and icalousies be-Ppp

tweene his father and him, and many Princes held with the Sonne, against the Father: vpon this occasion, many meetings and Councels were held; but in the end. FREDERICK constrained his Sonne to leave the countrey, and to goe as his Fathers Lieutenant and Viceroy, into Sicilia and those Countries. After this, the Emperour being a widower, married with the King of Englands fifter. In this journey, the Emperour bestowed vpon FREDERICE, Sonne of Lao-POLD Duke of Austrich, the title of King, and that his eldelt Sonne and his posteritie should so bee called: but his successors have not enjoyed this priuilege, the cause whereof I thinke to be, for that this Duke FREDERICK dved without iffue that might succeede him; and there was great strife for his eestate; but in the end, Rodviph Earle of Habspurg had it, who was afterwards Emperour, and gaue the estate of Austrich to his eldest sonne ALBERT, as when the time commeth shall be declared. This being past, the Emperour made no long aboad in Germany, but so soone as he could, leuved an army and went into Italy: for many cities in Lombardy rebelled, and some men in them waxing mightie, tirannized the fame, and many of them retained the old league and contederacie, which they held in the time of FREDERICK the first; as Milan, Brejoia, Mantoa, Bologna, Verona, Vicenza, Padua, Triuigi, and many others, which being affifted by the Venecians held against the Emperor; and for the Emperourstood, Cremona, Bergamo, Parma, Modena, and Rezzo, thele remained freinds, and bound the one to the other. The Emperour being come neere to Verona, after some Tkirmishes, the towne was driven to yeelde, through the policie and power of one ENCELINYS, called by his furname ROMANYS; who was the mightieft man in all those partes, and by discent a Duch man, nephew to another of the fame name, which came into those parts in the time of Orno the third. From Verona, the Emperour went into the territoric of Manton, wherein he tooke and facked two strong townes, the one of which was called Marcaria, and the other Claro. From thence he went to Cremona, where he was joyfully received, & made his aboad there the foace of nine monethes; at the end of which time, foreading a rumour that he would goe to beliege Mantoa; he hastily returned, and came before Vicenza, which he belieged; and the inhabitants being taken vnawares and unprovided, offered to yeelde upon composition; and the Emperour gave eare to their parle, giving them good words; but vpon a sudden, he commaunded the citie to be affaulted; and entring it perforce, let it on fire, and did much harme therein. And passing forwards spoiling the fields and marches of Padoa, thinking to have taken Trinigi, he befreged it, and put it to fuch diffresse, that if from Padea had not come reliefe, he had entred, and destroyed it. And as he lay before Trivigi, he had certaine intelligence, that his fonne Henry, King of the Romans, whom (for that in Germany he practized against him) he had made gouernour of Sicilia, was confederate with the citie of Milan, and the rest of that taction; and that some Princes of Germany were of that league also, and that they amassed their forces, to the end to succour those cities: the Emperour stood in fuch feare of this practife, that he determined for his refuge to flic to pope G x =-GORY; (notwithstanding that he knew him to bee displeased, for abandoning him, when he had warre with his citizens of Rome) and by letters and Ambassadours complayned to the pope of the perfidie and difloyalty of his fonne, humbly entreating him, to graunt his letters against him, as against one that was disloyall, and disobedient to his Father: and the pope knowing that it was true, did fo, thinking it aiust requestor else for seare of the Emperours power. And wrote

The Emperour Fredericks Conne Henry conspired against bis Fa-

his letters to the Princes of Germany, commaunding the vpon paine of excommunication, not to ioyne with HENRY King of the Romanes, against his father the Emperour; neither to obey his commandements. The popes command was of fuch authoritie, that none stirred to come into Halk accordinglie as they had promised: & the Emperor vsed such meanes, that he apprehended his sonne, and sent him prisoner to a Castle in Pulia, where he afterwards dved : some men thought him to be poyfoned by his Fathers commandement: and he injoyned the Dukes of Bohemia, and of Bauiere, to make warre vpon Frederick Duke of Austrich, The Emperour (whom he had made a King) for having conspired with his sonne against him. forme to proson Withinfew moneths after that HENRY King of the Romans was taken; his Fa- where be dyed. ther the Emperour leaving the affaires of Lombardy, in the best order that hee could (notwithstanding that Milan and other cities still continued disobedient) doubting of the estate of Germany, went thither, and making war in the countrey of Austrich, tooke the citie of Vienna, and many other townes; () as taming and well Viennain Aupunishing the Duke of Austrich, he was much feared, and generally obeyed. And Brich taken by knowing that his sonne Henry was dead, (who left a lawfull sonne called C o n- the Emperour. RADIN, of whom hereafter much mention shall be made) he vsed the meanes to affemble the Princes electors; and that they should chuse his sonne Conrada (whom he had by his fecond wife I o L Es, and whom he had already made Duke of Sueuia) for King of the Romanes, and notwithstanding that the electors did it in his absence, yet for the better assurance of what was done, he and his sonne called a Councell in the citie of Ratifbone, where what was already done was appromed and CONRADE was againe chosen and crowned King of the Romans from whence they both fent their ambaffadours to the pope, for a confirmation of the title to the kingdome of lerufalem, which his father in law I OHN DE BREGNA had refigned vnto him. The pope graunted his request, for the Emperour was of great power, and it was faid that he would againe come into Italy, which put him in feare, notwithstanding that the speech went, that he came but against Milan & the other cities of that parciality; with which he was much displeased, and had determined to bring them to subjection: and the cities alleaged that they were content to ferue him, according to the agreement made with the Emperour FREDERICK the first, called the peace of Constance, as we have declared in his historie; wherewith he held himselfe not satisfied, and so raising a very great power came againe into Italy, leaving his sonne Conrada, King of the Romanes, in his place in Germany,

The Emperour comming into Italy, tooke his way directly towards Pados, and the Padoans being induced thereto by Encur vs (who bare a great sway in Lombardy, received him into their citie; affuring themselves, that the libertie and privilege which the Emperor FREDERICK the first had given them, should hauebeen maintained: but this FREDERICK was of another mind, for when he was within the citie, he prescribed them such lawes and ordinances as pleased him, as to his vaffals and subjects. Pope GREGORY having intelligence of the Emperours comming into Italy, fent a messenger to meete him, called GREGO Emperous comming into ready, tent a menering to interest man, can be a find daught and menering him, (in Iter of tohin king requitall of the benefits which he had received of his Church, as well in the peace of Exeland, and absolution graunted him, when he came from Ierusalem; as in the fauour maried to the which he had shewed him against his some; and in dispensing with his ma-derick the seriage in England) that his now comming might be for the good, and the peace of cond, dyed in the countrey: and that he would maintaine that peace and agreement which was childhed.

Ppp 2

graunted

tweene the

the Milanois.

graunted by his Grandfather, to Milan, and to the other cities, and which was confirmed by the authority of the Church. And after this he fent three Cardinals with the same Message; but to neither of them he gaue any good answere: fo as they perceived by him, that he was scarce friend to the pope; and they all feared that he came no leffe against him, then against Milan; so as without any conclusion, they returned to Viterbe, where the pope then lay: and the Emperour leaving Padoa garrifoned, marching thorough Lombardy, tooke his way towards the citie of Brescia, which was of the league; & besieged a towne called Clarament. and taking it by affault, (the more to terrifie the Brescians, and to make them to yeeld) he destroyed and burned the same. But the Brescians for all this dismaid not, but shewed rather a greater obstinacie : and FREDERICE at that time besieged not their citie, but marched towards Milan, the captaine and head of all the rebels: and the Milanois (with the help of the Venecians, and of others cities their friends) had an army in a readines; whereof, PETER TEVPOLO the Duke of Venice his sonne, was Generall; together with CHARROCHIO a principall citizen of Milan, and other principal men of other cities: all which with great courage (for that not long before they had ouerthrown his Grandfather FR E-DERICK) stayed to fight with him in the field; and met with him, necre to a place called Crotona, and he came with as great a defire to fight with them; fo as they fought a very cruell battaile, the armyes being in number and in force (in a manner) equall: but after they had fought many houres, the Milanois began to fhrinke, and the victorie shewed it selfe on the Emperours side; and PETER TEV-POLO their Generall, and other captaines were taken prisoners; all which the Emperor commanded to be put to shameful death. After this victory he came to Cre-

fome cities which had rebelled, compounded, and yeelded their obedience. The Pope being aduertised of the calamitie of the Milanois, and of those of the league (whose cause he seemed to allow and desend) searing the Emperours greatnes (whom hee knew to hate him) made a league with the Venecians (which hee knew to be much grieued for the pitifull death of their Dukes fonne) and determined to succour Milan, and their confederats. And the better to bring this to passe, he made a kind of peace and truce for tenne yeeres, betweene the cities of Venice and Genoa, which at that time were at warres : and vied fuch meanes, that he himselfe was received into Rome, having ever since the last troubles lived out of it. And being in Rome, he fent abroad his Buls against the Emperour, which he published to all Christendome: and excommunicated both him, and all such as tooke his part, who then from Cremona (where he had refreshed his army after the battaile) came to Pauia, leaving Milan, to make warre vpon the Venecians. And there he was aduertised of the Popes fulminations, and of the great preparation made by the Venecians against him, both by sea and land. Vpon this he raised new forces, and so with a great victorious army (wherein many Moores of Africa (which they called Sarazins) serued him on horsebacke) he tooke the field, and ouerran the lands of the Venecians, wasting and spoiling the same; and encamping himselfe by the waters side in sight of Venice, the Venecians sailed forth with a great number of Archers and others, in barkes and boates, therewith to annoy his campe, so much as they could from the water. The Emperour seeing how little he profited by lying there, returned to Padoa, leaving ENCELINVS to warre against Trinigi and the countrie there about, and with him carried some principal men of Verena and Padea, for hostages, spreading a report, that he went to beliege

mona, to refresh and to reinforce his army, of what he had lost in the battaile, where

Mantos, and passing by it, hee went to Parma, and from thence to Luca, and from Luca to Pifa, with a determination not to fray, vntill he came to Rome. At this time GREGORY DE MONTE LONGO (who was the Popes Legate in Milan) came to Bolonia, and from thence tooke the field, with the troupes which came to him from Milan, and other parts; and ioyning with the Venecians, and others of the league (first taking Ferrara by force of armes) euery where began a most cruell warre; which was the greatest, that of long time either before, or after, had bin feene in Italy: fome holding for the Pope, others for the Emperour. This warre was fo great, and fo many and fo great accidents happened therein, that if I should relate what I finde written, I should neede to spend great part of this volume onely therein: wherefore I will write but onely the fumme thereof.

First the Emperour being in Pisa, with a determination to besiege and to batter Rome ; the great plague, of the parcialities and factions in Italy, began (which The original) fired and destroyed the same, and continued a long time therein) betweene the of the Guelphes Guelphes and the Gebelins: the Guelphs holding for the Pope, and the Gebe- lins in Italy. lins for the Emperour: the original of which, the authors write confusedly, that I will not enter into disputation concerning the same. Let their roote and beginning be what it will: I thinke it was the invention of some most perverse divels. as it should seeme by the sequell : for within short space, these factions extended themselues so farre ouer all liely, that no place was free from this insection (Venice except) wherein this pestilence tooke no hold: all the rest was divided into these two names and factions, without any other foundation of loue or hatred, but only for the names fake : and there daily enfued scandales and slaughters ; and in families and linages it often happened that the father was against his sonnes, and brothers were against brothers; which fighting, killed one another, ransacking The fallient of townes, burning and ruinating houses, in worse fort then if they had been tray- the Guelphes tors, or Infidels, with so great rancour and hatred, as the like thereof before that betweenethe time had never been feene nor heard of. And truly it was a wonderfull matter to Emperour Frebe confidered of: these two factions were so dissonant, and with such enuie were desich the sedifferent and contrarie the one to the other, that they could not in anything Gregoriethe endure any conformitie or refemblance: for they differed in their enlignes, in ninth. their colours, in the fashion of their apparell, in attiring themselues, in their disports in their feafts, yea, even vnto their very manner of going, speaking, feeding, riding, and in all things that mans wit could imagine. The Emperour and his adherents were called Gebelins; and he proclaimed that all fuch as tooke part with him should be so called, which was perfourmed throughout all Italy: and all the Guelphes held with the Pope. With this name the Emperour departed from Pifa towards Rome; wherein the fire of these factions was alreadie kindled, and the greatest part of the people were Gebelins, which were readie to have set vpon the Guelphes, and to have robbed and killed them, without any redemption. The Pope feeing himselfe in so great daunger, tooke the heads of S.Peter and S.P A v 1(as they fay) and made a solemne procession, and therewith a long oration to the people; shewing them how vaine a thing it was for men to kill one another, for that they had onely taken contrarie names; and diffwading them from their determination, perswaded them to defend his Church and their countricagainst his enemie FREDERICK, who was comming thitherwards: and of his bountifull liberalitie he gaue to all fuch as in his quarrell would take armes, and would beare the figne of the Croffe, plenarie Indulgence, and abfolution. The people were herewith so much perswaded, that when the Emperour with

his armie came before Rome, presupposing that the greatest part of the citizens had been Gebelins, he to the contrarie found them all markt with the figne of the croffe in armes against him: and comming with his people to the gates of the citie fome companies fallied to skirmish with him; and so some were flaine of either fide, which made him to vie extraordinarie crueltie; for all those of the citie which were taken with the figne of the croffe, he made to be flaine: fome of which had their heads clouen a croffe; and of some others hee made croffes in their foreheads with hot irons: and priefts hee made to be croffed upon their crownes: and after three daies (despairing to take Rome by force, spoyling the countrie round about it) hee went into Campania, and gaue a fudden turne and came to Beneuent, which he tooke and facked, and commaunded the fame to be difmantelled and defaced: and so marched through many parts of Italy, warring vpon the popes townes, and fuch as tooke his part; wherein he tooke Rauenna, and belieged Fanencia. And in Sicilia he confished the goods of many ecclefialticall persons, and apprehended and put some Bishops to death: others he banished out of that countrie; and he particularly caufed all places, which appearained to the order of the Knights Templars, to be facked and spoyled; vsing herein the feruice of his horsemen, which were Moores of Africa, which served him in that warre to which he gaue many preheminences and double paies; and the citie of Nuceria in Pulia to inhabite, which they possessed many yeeres after. Pope GRE-GORY seeing himselfe so driven to his shifts, sent his Legates to the kings of France, England and Spaine, bewailing his miferie, and complaining of the Emperour, implored fuccour, aide, and counfell: whereto they gave him gentle anfweres; and by their confent he called a generall Councell, for the reformation and confernation of his estate, pretending reliefe, and a conquest to be made of the Holy land, which was now in greater diffresse then ever before. The Emperor having intelligence that a generall Councell was fummoned, and imagining that the chiefest intent thereof was against himselfe; resolved therefore by all meanes possible to let it, by stopping the passages, and apprehending such as went to it; and fent his sonne Encivs (king of Sardinia) to Pila (which then was of great power by fea) where hee armed a great number of thips and galleys, to the end to flay the comming of the Cardinals, the Popes Legates; which with many prelates of Spaine and France came to the Councell: and they being upon the fea betweene Corfica and Pifa, within fight the one of the other, the Legates would have fled, and so avoided the fight: But the Admirall who was a Genoais, would not alter his course, so as they fought a most cruell battaile, which lasted the greatest part of the day: but in the end, the king of Sardinia had the victorie, and the Cardinals and Legates being taken priloners, were carried into Pulia. The French Bishops and Abbots which were taken, the Emperour set at libertie, at the request of the French king; the rest lay long in prison: so as the Councell could not be held, nor begun, as the pope would have had it; wherewith he was so much despited, that with very rage and anger he fell ficke and died; having been pope about fourteene yeeres, whereof the most part was in trouble and contention. He died in the yeere of our Lord 1241. This Pope in his lifetime, first canonized S.FRAN-CIS and S.Dominick for Saints: and afterwards S.Anthony, called S.An-THONY of Padoa, although a Portingall, and borne in the citie of Lisben. He compiled also the booke of the Decretals, and instituted the singing of Salae Regina, at certaine times and houres, with the ringing of the Sacring bell: and that our Ladie should bee praied vnto in the night, with Aue Maria, which should agree

the ninth died for anger. Anno Dom.

with the ringing of the bell, and did many other things like a Pope. Pope GREGORY being dead, by the generall consent of all the Cardinals which were in Rome, GVAN FREDE DE CASTILION, a Milanois borne, Was chosen Pope, and called CELESTINE the fourth; who presently sought to be at peace with the Emperor, and to that effect fent his Legates to his campe to him, he then lying before Fauencia: but this Pope could not tarry for an answere, for he died the eighteenth day after his election. CELESTINE being dead, the Cardinals could not agree about chusing him a successor: some say, that for feare of the Emperours threatenings, they durst not chuse whom they would have chofen: PLATINAT faith, that the Cardinals of Rome determined to chuse no Pope at all untill that the Emperor released those which he held prisoners: B L OND V S following his author (who as he faid was an eye witnesse) affirmeth the cause to be, for that the Cardinals which were prisoners, sent to require, and therewith protested that no Pope should be chosen without their voyces. So as you some of these occasions, or for all together, for the space of twentie moneths Rome was without a Pope. And in all this time the Emperour would not release those Cardinals which were his prisoners, neither would those of Rome chusea Pope. In which time the Emperour tooke the citie of Fauencia (which held out against him, about one yeere) and came before Bolonia; and feeing that he could not take it, he spoiled the countrie, and passed the Vniuersitie from thence to Padoa; and afterwards went to Modena, and to Rezzo, which also stood vpon their guard; and

tooketownes appertaining to the Church of Rome: fo as there were great warres

in all parts of Italy, which cost many men there liues.

At the fame time, that the Emperor thus warred in Italy against the faction of Theoriginal the Guelphes, the Tartarians inuaded Hungary: these Tartars are a barbarous na-and successes the Tartarians. tion in the North, which comming in time past out of Scithia asiatica (as some say, and VALATERRANES faith, out of Taurica Chersonesus in Europe) about the Anno Dom. yeere of our Lord 1202 warred in Asia, and subdued some prouinces therein, 1202. under the leading of their King and Captaine, called CANGVISTA; and they afterwards fo much encreased in the beginning of the Emperour FREDERICKS raigne, about the yeere 1222, that they conquered Georgiana, Armenia the leffe, Anno Dom. and other prouinces in Asia; and suppressed the power and people of the Turkes: 1222. (which I for breuitie fake then passed ouer) and comming afterwards into Europe by the Caspian sea, crossing the mountaines Riphei, became masters of those countries, and made warres in Russia, and in Polonia, and subdued a great part of Sarmacia, which at this day is called after them Tartaria; and their King is called the ded by the Tartaria; great CAN: they received the fect of MAHOMET, through their first conversing training with the Turkes, and in fuch manner they warred, that they put the world in feare of them. And the Emperour now making warre in Italy against the Guelphes, the Tartars under the leading of their king, called B A T V s, came into Hungary, and warred therein three yeeres, and did much harme; V a LA the fourth being then king thereof; at the end of which time they returned to the countries, which they before had gotten: and so Hungary, a prouince of the empire, endured as great

miserie as Italy. And it so happened that the Emperour of Constantinople lived not in peace in thole daies for IOHN DE BREGNAKing of Ierusalem (who was gouernour of the Greeke empire, with yong BALD VVIN Which married his daughter) being dead, the empire remained in BALDVVIN, against whom IOHN LASCARVS (nephew to the other of that name, who was called Emperour in Adrianople) raised such power,

Anno Dom.

1244.

Pope Innocent France, where be excommunicated the Emperour,and released bis fubietts from their alleaдеансе. Anno Dem.

power, and found fo many friends, that he tooke Swirnia, and Satilia, with other cities. townes and Ilands: fo as the Emperor BALDVVIN, accompanied with the Earle of Tolon/a (which had been with him in all his warres and troubles) came into Italy, to fue for aide and reliefe against his enemies: and finding it in such estate as you have heard (imagining that in time of such confusion he should not get anv) he fought meanes to have a Pope chosen, and so came directly to the Emperour; who having then taken the citie of Parma, and driven the Guelphes out of it, went thence to Placencia. And BALDWIN comming thither, and being well received and entertained, vied fuch meanes to the Emperour FREDERICE. that at his request all the Cardinals were released and set at libertie, which he had long detained prisoners in Melphi: and the Emperour of Conflantinople with the good leave of the Emperour FREDERICK, Went to Palagna, where the Cardinals were to treat with them concerning the election of fuch a new Pope, as might be acceptable to the Emperour FREDERICE, to the end that peace might be maintained betweene them. And he was with great ioy honourably received, in Iune, in the yeer 1244, and they presently conferred about the election of a pope. and one SINOBALD VS Cardinall of S.L AVVRENCE borne in Genes, was chofen, and called I N N O C R N T the fourth; who was the Emperours greatest friend of al the Cardinals: which when the Emperors friends and fernants vnderstood, with all possible speede they gaue him to understand thereof: when the newes was brought vnto him in the citie of Parma, it is reported that he prefently faid. (prefaging what would follow)I have exchanged my best friend, being a Cardinall for my greatest enemie, being Pope. After the election, the new Pope, the Emperour of Constantinople, and all the Cardinals came together to Rome, where they consulted of a peace to be concluded with the Emperour FREDERICE and Ambassadours were sent from the one to the other: but the Emperour in the time that the Papacie was void, was growne so great and so mighty a Lord in Italy, that he would not accept fuch conditions as were proponed: and so gaucequiuocall and incertaine answeres, such as they knew not how to resolute vpon-And foure moneths being spent in this parle, the Pope was certified that the Emperour had secret conference and intelligence with fundrie in Rome against him: the effect whereof was, that in a place called Caftella amar, whither it was agreed that the Pope should come, to yeeld his resolution concerning the peace, and there expecting the Emperours comming should be apprehended. This being discouered, and the Pope seeing how small power he had in Italy, speedily went to Hofia, and there embarking himselfe in certaine galleys of Genea, which hee had fecretly caused to be brought thither for that purpose, went to Genea, where he fell ficke, and recouering health he there againe shipped himselfe, and went into France; and arriving at Aigues mortes, and comming up the river Rhedanus, the French king received and entertained him with great folemnitie: and then he went to the citie of Lions, where he complained of the Emperour, and within fome few daies after, proclaimed through all Christendome, a Councell to be held at Lions in France, in the beginning of the yeere 1246, whither hee cited the Emperor to come and to make his personal appearance; and in many his sermons and orations which he made to the people, he with a lowd voyce fammoned him to appeare : and so prelates from all parts of Christendome repairing thither, the Councell began; and the Emperour fent his Ambaffadours to make his excuse; and otherwise made many large offers. But the Pope would accept neither his offers nor excuses; but published, that if within a certaine time limited

he appeared not, he would then pronounce sentence against him; as is contained in the chapter. Ad apostolicam sedem, dere Indicata, libro sexto, wherein he condemned him in the losse and deprivation of the empire, and of all the other kingdomes and dominions which he possessed; and presently proclaimed the same through all Christendome: and commanded the princes electors with all speede to chuse a new Emperour, releasing them from all alleageance and othes made to the Emperor FREDERICK Whatfocuer. At this time BALD VVIN Emperour of Constantinople, understanding that his enemie ROBERT LASCARVS Was dead. returned, and had fuch fucceffe as you shall heare.

So great account was made of the Popes sentence pronounced against the

Emperour in Germany (it being approued by the Councell) that the Electors began to treate of the chusing of a new Emperour : and notwithstanding that his fonne CONRADE King of the Romanes, was therewith much grieued, and by all meanes fought to have letted the fame; yet they met at Hiperboli, and chose H B N-R y Lantzgraue of Turinge, Emperour: and he according to the accustomed manner went to Aken, where he was crowned: whereupon presently between chim, and CONRADE the Emperours fonne, began a cruell warre; the end and fuccesse whereof we will recount hereafter, when we have related what FREDERICK did when he understood that hee was depriued. It was so that so soone as he knew it. he in extreme choler made the houses of the Popes friends and kinsemen in Parma to be throwne downe, and their goods to be spoiled: and wrote his letters into Germany, excusing and justifying his proceedings, and to animate his sonne. But imagining his estate to be in great hazard, he resolved to goe in person to the Councell at Lions in France; and to that effect he first made a league of friendship with the Duke of Burgondy; and had a fafe conduct & affurance from the French King for his going aboad, and returue. And leaving his fonne E NCIV s(King of Sardinia) in Parma, he commaunded him not to fally out of that citie, for that hee held the same and the marches thereof, to be of great importance: and so being accompanied with men of both peace and war, he tooke his way towards France; and having transiled fo farre as betweene Turin and Lions, messengers overtooke him, which gaue him to vnderstand, that Parma (whereof he made so great account)was loft, through his fonnes ouerfight: for he through a greedie defire to haue taken Brescia, which was of the contrary faction, by the aduice and procurement of those of Cremona, went from Parma with part of the garrison which lay therein; and in the meane time that he was about this exploit, the Popes friends and kindred, which lived in Placencia, having intelligence with some which were within Parma, came thither, & by furprise took it, although not without shedding much bloud. These ill newes touched the Emperor FREDERICK to the quick, and he fearing on the one fide, his vnfafe going into France, and on the other fide, that other cities in Italy following the example of Parma (he being absent in a strange countrie) would also rebell, resolued therefore in great surie to returne : and raised forces in Sicilia and Naples: and from Trivigi came his great friend ENCBLINVS with a great troupe of men of warre; all which hee fent against Parma, whither he himselfe marched with a full resolution to have destroyed the same, and to hauelaidit waste, and vsed some speeches to the same effect: but he failed of his expectation, for GREGORY DE MONTE LONGO, who from the time of GREGORY the ninth had been the Popes Legate in Milan, and in the other cities of that faction in Lombardy, getting fouldiers from Milan, and other cities of the league, put himself with them into Parma: and surnished and provided it with

all things requifite to endure a fiege. It was not long before that the Emperour came before it with his army (wherein were threefcore thouland men) and befieged it, with a full resolution not to rise from before it, vntill that he had taken the citie: and so he began to affault it on every side. But the besieged desended themsclues so wel, that they daily sallied out and skirmished with their enemies, in such manner that it behoued the Emperour to withdraw his campe a little further from the citie; and the warre continuing, he compassed the citie round about with a wall: and as he purposed wholy to haue ruinated Parma, so he caused a new citie to be builded in the same place where his armie lay; which he presently enuironed with walles, and made market places, Churches, and houses in it; and anpointed lands for those of Parma, which would come thither to inhabite: so as within short space the citie was builded, and peopled, and hee named it Victoria. And as the Emperour had lien about two yeeres before Parma, and the newes of this new citie, and the distribution made by him was bruted abroad, many came thither from all parts to dwell; in so much that PLATINA affirmeth, that therein were as many faire gardens, and orchards, with birds and beafts in them, and fo great concourse of men and women, as in any the most peopled ancient cities of

While the Emperour lay before Parma, his fonne CONRADE and the Lantzgrave Henry, made as cruell warres as ever were feene; which Lantzgrave through FREDERICKS depriving, was chosen and called Emperour and heraifing the greatest power that hee could (therewith to make himselfe Lord of the empire) met with the Emperours sonne C o NR AD E. neere to Franckford, who had as great armie as was his; and there they two fought (as some authors write) one of the most cruell battailes that of long time had been seene in the world; wherein CONRADE being ouerthrowne, fled into Sucriciand HENRY remaining mafter of the field was held for Emperour. And forafinuch as he understood that the Emperours sonne CONRADE leuied new forces, and gathered head in Swewia, he went thither with his armie, and befieged and tooke fome cities therein; and continuing his course of victorie, laid siege to the citie of Vine; and holding it very hardly befieged, at a time when he thought that nothing could have offended him, or defended it selfe against him; an arrow shot at randon out of the citie, (which was thought to be poyloned) hit, and so wounded the new Emperour HENRY, that within few daies after hee died thereof, within one yeere after his election: and the princes and men of warre which were with him difperfed themfelues, so that it presently appeared, that the partie of the Emperour FREDERICK and his sonne CONRADE would again prevaile. But yet the electors of the empire, within few moneths after (by the procurement of the Cardinall of Saint GEORGE, called PETER Image of gold, whom the Pope (being advertised of the death of HENRY) fent from Lions in France thither, without that the Emperors sonne Conrad E was any way able to stay or hinder the same) met at Waringen, and chose WILLIAM Earle of Holland for Emperour; who, accompanied with the electors, and other princes and prelates, went to Franckford, and therein was crowned. And forasinuch as he understood that CONRADE leuied a power against him, he called a Councell in the citie of Vtrecht; whither came the Archbishops of Mentz, Treuter, and Colen, and other prelates: and Layus Countie Palatine of Rhine, with many other Earles and Proctors, from more then twentie seuerall Imperial cities in Germany, and from some princes also; where they handled fome matters concerning his confirmation in the empire. But Connada

railing a great power in Sueuia, and in other parts, began to warre against W 1 L-LIAM, and WILLIAM levied an army to doe the like by him; in which warre we will leave them for this time: to speake of the Emperour, and of what successe he had in Italy; and then afterwards when time shall ferue, wee will againe returne to this matter.

Two yeres were now expired fince that the Emperor FR ED ERICK came to lie in his new citie Victoria, before Parma; daily expecting when it would have veelded. (for the besieged endured extreame famine) by reason whereof there was not so good watch and ward held in the campe as there was wont to be. And GREGORY DE MONTE LONGO the popes Legate, who had the commaund of the citie, as he had valiantly defended it, so he neuer let slip any oportunitie to doe any notable feruice; and perceiuing, and being also aduertised what manner guard was held in the new city (without attending any other forces to joine with him) he refolued to fally, and to attempt it: and laid fuch a plot, that he perfourmed one of the most strange exploits that hath bin seene or heard of; which was in this manner. Certaine companies of Moores and Germanes comming from the campe, drew neere to the citie, expecting that some would come foorth to skirmish with them, as at other times they vsed to do: the Legate perceiuing this. and thinking it now a fit time to put in execution what he before had projected. with all possible speede made all his troupes to be armed, and setting them in order, when the skirmish in the field was most hot, he commaunded the ports to be opened, and fallying fuddenly, charged with fuch resolution, that without anv great difficulty he ouerthrew those troupes, so that they turned their backes and Red; and he pursuing them came to the new citie (wherein was the Emperour FREDERICK in his pallace difarmed, suspecting no such matter, and so was the greatest part of his army) and charging with such fury, that the Guard could not withstand them, entred the citie, putting to the sword so many as they found to bearearmes against them: and so the bickering began on every side. But as the attempt was fuddaine and vnexpected, so great a feare surprised them, that without making any great refistance they all fled and the Emperour knowing no better course to be taken, tooke horse and so escaped, with such as could keepe with him: and all those which remained, were either slaine or taken: and the Legate and his people had one of the richest praies and booties that had been feene, as well of fuch things as were the Emperours and of the army, as of the inhabitants of the citie; which they prefently destroyed, and made levell with the earth: executing as much therein, as the Emperour thought to have done in The cities of Parma: and here was flaine I OHN TVRRIO one of the heads of the factions in Victoria taken Milan, who kept with the Emperour: and with the Legate, was MATHEYV VIS- by the Parma-COVNT, who was the other; for these two Viscounts, and Turrions, were the two fans. factions then in the citie of Milan. So soone as the fame of the taking of Victoria was spred ouer Italy, those which held for the pope were greatly encouraged. The Emperour in his flight staied not in any place, vntill he came to Cremona, but he trusted them not so well as to come into their citie, notwithstanding that they earnestly entreated him: but raising men from all parts (besides that many ofthe Gibelins came voluntarily to serue him) within a small time, as a valiant man, and as though he had had a great army, he came to Placencia, but befieged it not, onely spoiling the countrey about it: And leaving his sonne Enc t-King of Sardinia, for his Lieutenant in those townes which held for him; he Went into Tuscane, in hope to haue taken Florence, which in that quarter was a-

rentines would not receive him, but agreed with him to put all the Guelphes.

which were his enemies, out of the towne, wherewith he was content; and

in the next.

the higher degree, the leffe liberty. What followed after his death you shall know In maxima na licentia In Constantinople BALDVVIN was Emperour, who had great warres with eft.

MICHAEL PALEOLOGYS, who was called Emperour and succeeded Ro-BERT LASCARYS, before mentioned, who left him tutor over his fonne IOHN; but he tooke the Empire to himselfe, murthering the pupill, and warred to make himselfe absolute Lord ouer all. In France at this time raigned King Lavy as called a Saint, who vinderstanding that the Citic of Jerufalem, after that the Empe-TOUT FREDERICK had recovered it, was againe loft; and that the Christians in the rest of the Cities were greatly distressed, providing a great army and nauje. departed therewith in person and sayled into Egypt, to warre upon the Soldan. and taking land, befreged the Citic of Damiata aforenamed; and after some skirmishes and conflicts tooke the same, and performed other worthy aduentures. in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, two hundereth fortie and nine. But profecuting the warre, it pleafed God that in a battaile he was afterwards ouerthrowne, and by the Soldan taken prisoner, with two of his brothers; and to recouer their liberty, he gaue up the Citic of Damiata, and the rest of what he had gotten, and so returned to his Countrey, having effected as little as those which

went before him. The Kings of Spaine with equal courage to any of the other Princes (but with better fortune) reconquered the Countries which the Infidels held in Spaine: at that time raigned King FERDINAND, who wan Scuil and Cor-

dens, and many other Townes

and Cities.

The death of the Emperous Frederick the fecond. Anna. Dom. 1250.

staving in the countrey neere Florence, in hope to have levied some new troupes. and so to have recovered the honour which he lost; newes came how that his fonne Encivs, with the greatest power that he could leny, thinking to have done some notable peece of service, went towards Bologna; and the Bolognois. being aduertised thereof, with the aide of their friends, fallied forth to meete, and to fight with him; and ouerthrowing him, had taken him prisoner. Which when the Emperour vnderstood, he was extreamely grieued and offended; and seeing that in Lombardy his enemies were too hard for him, and that out of Germany he was out of hope that any fuccour could come; for that therein his fonne Con-RADE made warre against WILLIAM Earle of Holland, who was called Emperour, he therefore resolued to go into his kingdome of Naples, in hope there to reinforce his Army, and to take some other counsell. And comming into Pulia with greater wrath then honour, by reason of such aduentures as were befalne him : he made a bastard sonne of his, called MANFREDE, Prince of Tarent, and gaue him many places in subjection. And within few dayes after, he fell grieuously sicke, and his disease held him long, whereof in the end he dyed: which the Historiographers recount after fundrie manners, so as it seemeth that the truth can hardly be known. Some fay, that his difease killed him : others fay, that beginning to recouer health, he was poisoned: others fay, that his sonne Man-FRED B practifed his death, with defire to raigne; as it after appeared. But howfoeuer, he dyed at this time, which was in the yeare of our Lord 1250. in the fixe and thirtith yeare after his election. In the time also there is ever some difference; for some authors reckon, but from the time of his coronation, and not before. He was when he dyed feuen and fifty yeares olde, and left behind him. three sonnes, two bastards, and one legitimate: his eldest sonne Connada he had by IoLEs, daughter to the King of Ierufalem, who in his fathers time was King of the Romanes, and inherited the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples, and the Duchy of Sueuia. And his baftard fonne Encivs, whom he made King of Sardinia, liued, and died prisoner in the power of the Bolognois: whom they would neuer fet at liberty for any ransome. Some authors write, that he was prisoner there twenty and odde yeares, very well vsed, and dyed in Bologna, and there was buried: and MANFREDE, the afore named Prince of Tarent, he also had two daughters, Anne, and Constance, which married with feueral Princes. This Prince was adorned with fundry vertues, and excellent graces: and so likewise infected with dangerous vices: but he was very valiant, and of a strong constitution, able to endure trauell, very wife, and expert in the warre, defirous of glory and fame, very liberall, and enclined to learning, and skilfull in the tongues, and could very well speake Greeke, Latine, Arabick, French, and Dutch: and delighted much in the reading of Arts and Histories. But these vertues were greatly obscured, through his vnmeasurable desire of honour and renowne, and the ambition and defire to commaund and to be Lord ouer all men, and through his cruelty vsed in many exploites in the warres, destroying and racing townes, and in shedding bloud, for he was very vindicatife and fuddain: and aboue all was an enemy to the popes, and scorned their command. He was likewise noted of incontinencie, for besides that he had fundrie wives, he kept many concubines, and accompanied other women; all which in Princes descrue greater reprehension; for in

Qqq



# THE LIFE OF CONRADE THE FOURTH OF THAT NAME. AND CIL ROMANE EMPEROUR.

And of those which were called Emperours vntill that RODVLPHV was Emperour.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

Rederick being dead, the Empire being divided betweene two Emperours, was infested to many yeeres, each of them volve all meanes to suppresse to other. First Courade determined to ment to goe into Isaly, to take possessing on the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia, and eight mined to goe into Isaly, to take possessing with a mightie armie, he tooke those kingdomes by force of armes after which courages the dued, and William remained sole Emperor, who desiring to goe into italy to be crowned by the Pope, was letted through a tamult raised by the Frisons; and going against them with an armie, he was by them infortunately slame. The death of William was the occasion that the Empire was voide, and that the electors were divided and could not agree, for almost each of them would be an Emperour to his liking; whereof ensured year trouble and domage in Germany. In Italy also were great warres betweene Manfrede and the Pope, king Charles and Conradiu, whereof in the end king Charles that the victorie. And in Germany the electors being a long time at variance, in the end agreed to chuse Rodulph Earle of Habspurgh, when as for a long time they could never agree you on the man.

HE greatest part of the authors which wrote the lines of the Emperours, account all the time from the death of FREDERICK (whose life we haue now written) vntill that RODVIPH Earle of Habpargh was chosen Emperour (which were three and twentie yeeres, beginning in the

veere 1250, (in which FREDERICK died) and ending in the veere, one thoufand, two hundred, seuentie and three, in which RODVLPH was chosen) for an intercegnum, and vacation of the empire; accounting none of those for Emperours which in that time were chosen and so called for that they were chofen in competencie one against another, and were not crowned by the Popes: which were WILLIAM, who was Emperour in the time of FREDERICKE and FREDERICKS fonne CONRADE, who was king of the Romanes; and RI-CHARD, brother to the king of England; and ALONS O king of Calle, whom the Spaniards call the Wife: all which were chosen in contention, and were competitors: wherein (in my opinion) they have no reason, especially in that which concerneth WILLIAM; fith he before the death of FREDERICK, was in name and poffession Emperour; and although that hee was not crowned by the Pope, yet his election was approued and confirmed by him: wherfore I (not to deprive any man of his title and dignitie howfoeuer it were, as also not to alter the course of our historie) haue determined to treat briefly of all, in such matters as concerne the empire, which is the fubicat of al my travaile. I will likewife in fumme recount what passed in Italy, to the end that the historic following may be the better vnderstood. I say then that the death of the Emperor FREDERICK was soone published every where (as of Emperors and Kings is vsuall) and caused new accidents. In Germany his sonne CONBADE, which in his fathers life time was Duke of Suemis, and king of the Romanes, and his heire in the kingdome of Sicilia and Naples: and by his mother pretended title to the kingdome of Ierusalem, tooke voon him as Emperour against WILLIAM Earle of Holland, who by the Popes commaundement was chosen against his fathers and was in possession of the empire. And WILLIAM feeing that his competitor was dead, made account to have defeated and supplanted CONRADE: whereto hee was presently countenanced and encouraged by letters from Pope I NNOCINT, who all this while was in France, and was supported by many princes of Germany; which for as much as Con-RADE Was excommunicate (as well as was his father FREDERICK) WILLIAM alleaged, that CONRADE had lost his right to the empire, and was depriued thereof by the Pope, as in deede by the Popes sentence he was. Neuerthelesse, CONRADE Was still called Emperor, and so the matter was divided into two factions: yet VVILLIAMS was the mightier, for he commanded (in a manner)al the cities in Germany. In Sicilia and Naples, FREDERICK s bastard sonne MANFREDE, who (some say) drowned his father, had a conceit in time to make himselfe king of Naples and Sicilia, but fith he was a baftard, he knew that the lawful inheritance appertained to his brother C o NRADE, which was in Germany, in whose name (as gouernour for him, and to his vse) hee possessed himselfe of those kingdomes, excepting Naples, Capua, and some other townes, which would not receive him: whereupon he proclaimed them traytors and rebels, and began to warre against them. In other parts of Italy the warres ceased not, notwithstanding that the Emperour was dead : for malice and hatred had taken fo deepe roote betweene the Guelphes and the Gibelins, that they were neuer without warres and troubles, murthering one another: and ENCHLINVs (who as I faid before was of great Power in Lombardy, and a faithfull servant to FREDERICE) took part with Con-RAD E, as with the Emperour, and so did some others : yet the contrarie part which held for the Pope was more mightie. CONRADE feeing the affaires of the empire to stand in this estate, and considering that it was doubtfull holding of Germany against WILLIAM; and that Naples and Sicilia was a good portion, and came to him by inheritance from his father, railing the greatest power that hee could in Sueuia, leaving garrisons therein, and in such other parts as he held of the empire; with the aide of the Duke of Bauiere, with whose fifter he was married came to take possession of those kingdomes, as most certaine and assured; and with a very good armie came to Verona, holding still the name of Emperour. where he was received, and afterwards (being affifted and guided by ENCELINGS Gouernour of Lembardy) hee came to certaine Harbours vpon the coast of the Venecian sea, where he was shipped by the Venecians, and thence sailed into Palia (for from thence there was no lafe passage for him by land) and taking land with his people, hee was obeyed by his brother, and received into the townes of Naples and Sicilia. And notwithstanding that those of the cities of Naples, and of Capua, alleaged that in that they refused to be commaunded by MANFREDE, it was not in respect that they had any meaning to have rebelled against him, but for that they ynderstood that MANFREDE meant to become a tyrant. But this notwithstanding MANFREDE carried the matter so cunningly, that his brother was perswaded to the contrarie, and therefore highly offended: by reason whereof. the Neapolitanes and Capuans durst not put themselves into his hands, but stood vpon their guard; and CONRADE with great furie held Naples befieged the space of eight moneths, in the end whereof he took the same through famine, and executed cruell punishment therein, and thence went to Capua, where he did the like. and in some other places which were of their confederasie: so as from thencefoorth, wherefoeuer he went, hee found no refistance, by neither cities, Princes. nor Lords. And those which he any thing suspected, he banished, and then began to war against the lands and friends of the Church of Rome After this (two yeares after his comming into Italy) he fell ficke and died ; being poyloned in his medicines (as it was then thought) by the practife of his brother Manfarde, who did it of purpose to have been king. NAVCLERVS, and HENRICYS MVCIVS. write that the Emperour Connan, leauing garrisons in Sicilie; for that he vnderstood that the Emperour WILLIAM made himselfestrong, and was possessed of the whole empire, by meanes of the Legates which the Pope fent thither for that purpose and that CONRADE COMming into Germany, ioyned with the Duke of Basiere; and with an armie entred the iurisdiction of Ratisbone, and afterwards tooke the citie it selfe, wherein he did much harme; and that WILLIAM vnderstanding thereof, leuied such forces, that CONNADE durst not give him battaile, and that he then abandoning Germamy, went to Naples, where he died. Hereof the other authors make no mention, wherefore I am of opinion, that it was before CONRADES first comming to Naples, and that after his comming thither hee returned no more into Germany. But whither he returned into Germany or no (for it might be) hee died in the kingdome of Naples, and left his sonne CONRADINE (who was in Suenia, being very young, and whom he had by the Duke of Bauiers fifter) for heire of his eftate and kingdomes: wherein also is difference betweene the authors; for some say that he was his sonne (which is the most likely) and others say that he was his nephew, and some of his elder brother HENRY, who (as wee faid) died in prison in the time of his father FREDERICK. His sonne CONRADINE remaining his heire, and not of age fit to gouerne his kingdomes, hee left under the tutle and protection of his mother, and of certaine Duch princes. And MANFREDE (2s some write) for certaine daies space concealed his brothers will, and although (that as yet) he durst not take vpon him as king, yet in his nephew CONRADINES

The death of the Emperous Conrade the fourth.

name, hee fought by all meanes to possesse himselfe of the whole land. So soone as the death of CONRADE was published in Germany, all those which had taken his part, fought to be friends with WILLIAM; who being freed from his competitor, friendly received them; and fought(by force or policie) to drawe them to him, to the end to have made a generall peace. At this time Popel NNOCENT (who had made his aboade in France, for the space of nine veeres) understanding that CONRADE was dead, came presently into Italy: And Pope Innocent returned out of MANFRED E(as he knew him to have bin an enemie to the Emperours FREDE- France into RICK, and CONRADE; and that hee alleaged, that their wils and Teastaments 11aly. were of none effect, seeing they were by him excommuniate and deprined; and that the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples belonged vnto the Church) fainedly tookepart with him in Otranto: purposing to exclude those which came to gouemefor the child CONRADINE, who remained in Suemia, and by fifthing in troubled water, to get the kingdome for himself. The Pope being joyfully receiued into the most cities in Italy, with the greatest power that he could make, took his way towards Naples, where he was received, and thither to him came MAN-FREDE, and some other Princes, & gouernors of cities, to yeeld their obedience, as feudatories to the Church of Rome : and he excluding CONRADINS tutors, thought within short time to be Lord of the greatest part of the rest. And as this was his drift, so after that the Pope had confirmed him in his estate, and had bestowed other fauours vpon him; he began to publish the discord openly, which he before had sowen in secret, and to shew himselfe enemie to the Pope: but before that it tooke any effect, the Pope died in Naples, having bin so cleven yeeres and halfe, in the yeere of our Lord 1254. This Pope gaue order that the Cardinals Anno Dom. should ride on their foot-cloathes, and weare the red Hats and Robes, which they The inflination vieat this day; to the end that as they did excell other men in dignitic and pre-of the Cardiheminence, so they should goe different in apparel, and thereby be knowne from nals Hats and other men. Presently upon the death of Pope INNOCENT, MANFREDE pub- robes, by Pope' Clement, and lishing that his nephew CONRADINE was dead, cladding himselfe in mourning riding upon attire, proclaimed himselfe King of Naples and Sicilia; and raising forces, drew foote-cloathes. the Africane Moores, which dwelt in Nuceria, to his feruice; and fuddenly fet vpon those places which held for the Pope: fo as ALEXANDER succeeding In-NOCENT the fourth, fent a Cardinall whose name was OCTAVIVS to Naples, against MANFREDE, who proceeded so farre as to excommunicate him, but MANFREDF, which now was called King of both the Sicilies, tooke fuch order with the Legate that he constrained him to shut up himselfe in Naples; and so was he Master of the field, and not only in that province, but in all Italy fought to raise diffention and discord, shewing himselfe to be of the faction of the Gibelins, with whose aide he made himselfe mightie, and was principally assisted by the great tirant ENCELINVS. In Florence, in Lombardy, and in other parts, happened many great accidents, which I have no time to relate, being to returne to my History of the lines of the Emperours: neuerthelesse it shall be expedient for me to declare whatend MANFRED Eand his nephew CONRADINE made; who was also called King of both the Sicilies; and at that time, by reason of his nonage, was in his mothers keeping in her estate of Suevia; which gaue oportunitie to MANFREDE to rife as he did, with the kingdom. The Emperor WILLIAM, feeing in what estate Italy flood, & being now Lord of all Germany in peace, defiring to come into Italy to visit the lands of the empire, which had recoursed libertie through the long absence of the Emperours; and likewise to be crowned by the hands of Pope A-

The Emperour VVilliam, Earle of Hol-Land flaine and drowned. Anno Dom. 1256.

A LEXANDER furnmoned a Councel to be held in the citie of Colen, & having therein determined of his journie, was advertised that the province of Frieland was vp in armes, and rebelled against him; and that not content therewith, they had inuaded the province of Holland, wherein they had done great harme, by taking and carrying away whatfoeuer they found. And WILLIAM, to the end that the matter should proceede no further, resolued to goe in person to bring the Frisons to obedience, which were fuch men, and so many, that he otherwise knew not how to bridle them; and it feemed no found course for him to goe into Italy, and to leave Germany in an vprore. And so marching with his armie against the Frifons, which lay encamped not farre from him, as it was in the winter, and in that countrie are many Lakes and Morasses, which then were frosen, the Emperor with one or two with him, on horsebacke, went to view his enemies campe or to view forme ground where his own armie might lodge: and paffing ouer a lake. his horse flipt, and fell with him, and the Ice breaking, his horse and himselfe were so peftred in the water that they could not get out of it; which a company of Frisons (which lay yndifcouered in an ambush) perceiuing, fallied out, and vnknowne slew the Emperour, thinking that they had flaine but some meane horseman, without being perceived by any man in his campe, neither by them which were with him, or elle they durst not reueale it: and so hee lay vnscene in the water, vntill that afterwards he was found and knowne by his enemies. This happened in the veere of our Lord, one thousand, two hundred, fiftie and fixe in the eight and twentith yeere of his age, and the feuenth of his raigne. And as he was mift in his campe, and no manknew what became of him, nor what was befalse him (men being of fundric opinions) some imagining that he was gone and had abandoned them and others were of other opinions, at last they were certified of the truth by their enemies. Whereupon the armie disbanded, and went euerie man whither hee lifted : in this manner ended the high thoughts, life, and raigne of the Emperour WILLIAM, whom his fonne FLORIS, which then was a child fucceeded in the efface of Holland, and the reft: who afterwards made cruell warre against the Frisons, in reuenge of his fathers death; who vntil then lay in a poore Sepulture. In Sicilie and Naples MANFREDE grew daily more mightie, and was called King.

The cause of the declining of the Germane

The discord and division, which (as we faid) was in the Empire betweene FREDERICK and WILLIAM and afterwards betweene WILLIAM and CON-RADB, FREDERICKS fonne, and that which we will declare which happened after his decease, was the beginning and originall cause why the Empire lost in those times great part of the authoritie, power, and reputation, which it before inioyed, and that some Cities in Italy recovered libertie, and were exempt from the Empire, and that others fell into the hands of tirants, as it afterwards enfued. For notwithstanding that there afterwards were valorous and mightic Emperours, yet all matters were so corrupt and out of order in the Empire, that it could not be reduced to the Priestine rule and lawe, neither did the Electors and Princes of Germany (in whom confifteth the chiefest strength of the Empire) yeeld fuch obedience and fealtie to them, as their anneeftors had done to theirs, making themselues through these occasions and diffentions, free, and of greater power; and the Emperous became poore, of leffe account, and were leffe respected by them. I say then, that as the Princes Electors of the Empire were certified of the death of the Emperour WILLIAM (which were as all men knowe) the

Duke of Saxony, the Countie Palatine of Rhine, the Marquis of Brandenburgh, the

Archbishops of Ment?, Colen and Treuier, and (when they cannot agree) the King of Bohemia, they began to consultabout chusing of a new Emperour, first, writing the one to the other, and afterwards meeting in Franckford, they could not agree, for there were many Competitors, and the matter was carried by bribes, gifts, and finister meanes. Comming in the end with great difficultie to make the election, vpon twelfth day, in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, two hundred fifty and seuen, the voyces were divided into two parts: the Duke of Saxony, the Archbishop of Treuier, and the Marquis of Brandenburgh, chose Alonso King of Callile: and EBERARD Archbishop of Mentz, CONRADE Archbishop of Colen, and LE VV E & County Palatine of Rhine, gaue their voyces to RICHARD Duke of in chaffing of Cornewall, and brother to the King of England. In this manner they parted in dif- the Emperor. cord, either partie holding him for Emperour whom they had chosen: but most men affirmed that it was no election, for it seemeth not that the King of Bohemia gaue his voyce, or was present at the election, or would in with either of the parties, but was fingular in his voyce, feeking to have been Emperour himfelfe. Those which chose ALONSO and held with him, sent him their Ambassadours (which were the Bishops of Spire and Constance) to give him intelligence of his election, desiring him to addresse himselfe to come into the Empire : at their Castile chosen comming into Castile they were joyfully received by the King, who being very Emperour. glad of their Ambassade, accepted the election: but he being bussed in the warres against the Moores (from which he had a little before taken the towne of Niebla and other places) he could not then come into Germany: but writing his letters to the Princes Electors, he dispatched the Ambassadours (giving them and fending to the rest many iewels and great rewards) and so they returned very wel content. But King ALONSO his going into Germany, through many occasions which were offered in Castile, as well against the Moores (from which he twice wan the Citie of Xeres, the Citie of Murcia and other places) as for that his Brother PHILIP withdrew himselfe from his service, his journey was a long time deferred. The other partie of the Princes Electors, which had chosen the King ther to the fine of Englands Brother, lent him also a solemne Ambassade; and he came into Ger- of England many, and with the ayde of his Brother the King, came to Aken, and there was perous in Aken crowned by those which had chosen him, and he afterwards was possessed of in Germany. fome Townes and Cities vpon the Rhines fide: and fo began very great warres The death of and troubles in Germany, some holding for RICHARD, and others for ALONS O; Richard, Ereothers (which were the greatest number) admitted neither the one nor the ther to the hing other, holding the Empire for voyde: and fo milerable Germany flamed with of England. cruell warre, which continued the space of sisteene or sixteene yeeres, in which time, RICHARD dyed out of possession of the Empire, and King ALONSO could neuer come thither, by reason of sundry accidents which happened in Cafile, as in the Spanish Chronicles doth appeare.

At the same time BALDVVIN the Emperour of Constantinople being vnable to makehis partiegood, against MICHAEL PALEOLOGVS, (who by making away the two formes of the THEODORE LASCARY s, gat the Empire to himself) fled from Constantinople, and MICHABL PALBOLOGVS had the Empire, and so Baldovin deit returned to the Greeke nation, having bin about feuenty yeares governed by posed from the the Latines: the first that had the same was called BALDVVIN, and sowashe pire, by Miwhich lost it, which was in the yeare of our Lord 1260. At this time also came chael Paleolo-Ambaffadours to pope ALEX ANDER, from CONRADINE Duke of Suema (who sus was called, and ought to have been, King of Sicilia and Naples) entreating his fa-1260.

Pope Alexan-Saint Clare for a Saint.

Pope Vrbane led the Duke

The feaft of Corpus Christi instituted by Pope Vrbane the fourth. Anno Dem 3254.

Manfrede King of both Sicilies, overthrown and flaine by charles Duke ofAniouv.

your in his behalfe against MANFREDE, who vsurped the saidkingdomes; but could take no effect at that time; for MANFREDE was now growen so mightie. that the pope was not able to make head against him: and besides the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia, was Lord of Florence and other townes in Italy. Within few daies after this dyed pope ALEXANDER, having held the chayre about feuen yeares, with troubles and warres in little prosperitie. This pope canonized Saint CLARE, of the order of Saint FRANCIS, for a Saint, and he being dead, the Patriarch of Ierusalem (a French man borne) was chosen pope, and called Vn. BANE the fourth; who confidering what great power the Tirant MANFREDE had gotten in Italy, (for what his father held therein, was at his deuotion.) And feeing that there came no sufficient ayd from Germany, and moreover having no meaning to approve the fuccession of Conrades son Conrading, for that his ancestors had bin ancient enemies to the Church of Rome, but chiefly for that he had small confidence in his power, and for other occasions which I forbeare to write: by the aduice of his Cardinals he fent his Ambaffadours to Lavvas the French King, defiring him to fend his brother CHARLES Earle of Provence and Anion with an army in reliefe of the church, and to expell the Tirant Manof Aniovo in-tollabilio make FREDE out of the Kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia, and that then he would give warre in Na. the same to him in fee, as the Churches inheritance. The French King willingly pane eare to the popes Ambassade, and veelding to his demaund, offred aide, and to fend him into Italy: and began to prouide necessaries for his journey, which pope VRBANE could never fee take effect, for he was intercepted by death in the citie of Perugia, in the third yeare of his papacy; in all which time (by reason of factions and parcialities) he neuer came to Rome. This pope inflitted the feaft of Corpus Christi, which is celebrated by the church of Rome with great folemnity, untill this day, being first invented by the famous Doctor THO MAS OF A OVINE a Frier of the order of Saint Dominican, who florished in those times. At that time also florished S. BONAVENTVER, a Doctor and Frier of the order of Saint FRANCIS. VEBANE being dead, GVIDO Cardinall of Sulconia, borne in Narbone in France, was chosen pope, and called CLEMENT the fourth; in whose time at his instant entreatie, the French Kingsbrother, or cofine germane, Earle of Aniow came into Italy with a great armie, to the end to make a conquest of the kingdomes of Naples & Sicilia from Manfrada, who was already called king of Naples and Sicilia; and there passed betweene them many conflicts and feates of armes, which I ouerpasse: Charles being affished by the faction of the Guelphes. At length neere to the citic of Beneuent, MANFRED Rand he, with power against power fought a battaile, wherein MANFREDE was ouerthrown and flaine, after that he had seen Charles cast to the earth, and his army in a manner wholy ouerthrowne, but yet in the end Charles had the victory. This overthrow and death of MANFREDE caused a great alteration in Italy, for the faction of the Guelphes euery where preuailed (in a manner) in all the cities of Italy, being favoured by the new king of Sicilia, against the Gebilins. And in short space King CHARLES was possessed of the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia, being first crowned in Rome king of both the kingdomes; and in acknowledgment of the fee, he was bound to pay yearly to the Church of Rome, threescore thousand ducats, or crownes of of gold. In this manner, the state of Provence, whose head is the citie of Marselles, was vnited to the kingdome Naples, which was in the yeare of our Lord, one thousand, two hundreth, threescore and sixe.

In time of these alterations in Italy, Germany was still troubled about the elec-

tion of an Emperour : and whereas the king of Englands brother RICHARD, who contended with ALONS o for the empire at this time died, if ALONS o had then come into Germany he might easily have obtained the empire, seeing his competitor was deceased: but by reason of civill warres against the Moores, he could neuer haue oportunitie to come thither: and his brother PHILIP, and other great men of Callile, left his service, and overranne his countrey. Germany being thus without an head, endured great miserie, aswell for this cause, as through the great warres which the king of Hungary made against the king of Bohemia, and other princes, vpon fundrie occasions. CHARLES the new king of Sicilia lining in this prosperitie, all those which in Italy were of the faction of the Gibelins, sent to solicite CONRADE Duke of Suemia, and which was called king of Naples and Sicilia. (as sonne of the Emperour CONRADE and nephew of the Emperour FREDE-RICK) to come, and reconquer his kingdomes, and that they all would helpe and ferue him in that action: whereto CONRADINE (as a couragious young man) foone agreed, and began to gather forces and to trie his friends, whereto he was also perswaded & encouraged by HENRY the king of Castiles brother, who was banished from his brother for some leagues and confederacies which he had made against him. And he at that time was governour, and a Senatour of Rome, made by Pope CLEMENT; which dignitie he obtained (after that he had wandred through England, France & Germany) at the request of King Charles of Naples, by reason of his affinitie and the Popes fauour, to whose Court he came, lying then in Viterba. and the Pope made him a Senatour of Rome, which then was the highest dignitie and command therein. This HENRY was a man of fo great valour, and therewith fo politike, that he wholy commaunded the citie; and being fo, he induced Con-RAD I to come into Italy, (for he was also his kinfeman, and he had found him his friend at his being in Germany) promiting, and putting him in hope, that he should not onely have the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia (which were his by inheritance)but should also be Emperour of Rome; for hee would receive him into the citie. Finally, CONRADINE moued by these letters and messages, but reposing conradine bis his chiefest considence in the Gibelins, came into Italy with tenne thousand the comming into most expert men of warre that he could get; to whom many of the Gibelins re-the Duke of forted, and was received and lodged in Verona, whither the Sienois and Pifans fent Aniovo to him their Ambassadours (and many other cities wherein the Gibelins were masters) exhorting him to proceede forwards. When King C HARLES Was aduertised hereof he went from Tuscane, where hee then was, into his kingdomes; leauing good garrisons in those townes which held for him; and a gouernour with the title of Marshall. And Hann the Kings brother of Castile, which was then in Rome, whither CONRADINE was travailing, openly shewed himselfe for him, being of power able to doe so, whether the Pope would or not; who fauoured CHARLES his partie, as a King whom hee had made. But the factions in Italy made all poore, fraile, and inconstant. To be short, after other matters which befell CONRADINE by the way, hee being come neere to the citie of Arezzo, fought a battaile with the Marshal whom King CHARLES had left in those parts. And notwithstanding that the Marshall and his people fought valiantly, yet Con-RADINE Was victor and the Marshall was flaine in the battaile, and his partie ouerthrowne; whereby CONRADINE wonne fo great credit and reputation; that if he would have staied in those quarters, many townes would have yeelded vnto him: but being folicited by letters, and messages from HINRY in Rome, he tooke his way thicherwards, passing necre by Viterbe, where Pope CLEMBNT lay, who

of Anion kinz Duke of Sue-

Convadine Duke of Sueboth the Siciby Charles Duke of An-

as an enemie to wars, and bearing of armes, was very forie for what paffed: and comming to Rome, hee was folemnely received with all the ceremonies accustomed, and HENRY calling him Emperour, lodged him as fuch in the Capitoll. And he remaining some few daies in Rome, departed towards Naples, accompanied with the faid H = NR Y, in quest of king C HAR L = S; and HENRY left in his place and office in Rome, one GVIDO FERRETANVS, 2 man whom he much truffed. King CHARLES having alreadie intelligence of CONRADINES comming, and seeing that by delaies hee daily lost more and more, notwithstanding that hee had no equall forces, yet he resolued to end the controuersie by a battaile, which by Con-RADINE (Who prefumed much vpon the multitude and valour of his fouldiers) was chiefly defired, so as the one armie drawing neere to the other, necre vnto Alaa: and king CHARLES knowing how to take benefit of the ground wherein he was a variant vegreatest part of his armie behindea hill, and so the fight began and continued about three houres, in the end wherof, CHARLES his troupes being neere ouerthrowne, he brake out of his ambuscado, and charged with such furie, that he forced his enemies to turne their backes, and obtained the victorie: and CONRADINE. HENRY and FREDERICK, who (I know not by what title) was called Duke of Austrich, escaped by flight. But through sundrie casualties they all three within few daies after fell into his hands, and hee cruelly executing the law of Armes, made the heads of king CONRADINE, and of FREDERICE Duke of Austrich to win and king of be firiken off contenting himselfe to hold Hanay prisoner for their necrenes in bloud betweene them. By this meanes king CHARLES WORME great reputation for he had ouerthrowne and flaine two kings, MANFREDE and CONRA-DINE. And within fhort space all those townes which held for CONEADINE. hearing of his death, reduced themselves to CHARLES his subjection; and so in Sicilia, Pulia, Calabria and in all Italy, the faction of the Gibelius recovered the vpper hand. So as poore CONRADINE in hope to have gotten the kingdome of Naples, lost his life, and therewith his estate of Suenia, whereof he was affured: and in him ended the line of the house of Suemia, for he left no heire; and that state was lost, the most of the cities therein making themselues Imperiall: yet RODVLPH and his sonne IOHN, were afterwards called Dukes of Suemia. The victorious triumphantking CHARLES, with Pope CLEMENTS leave and authoritie, went to Rome, to execute the office of Senatour, which Hanky had loft, and to pacific the factions which were in the citie; and the Pope from Viterbo where he made his refidence, neuer ceased to procure peace and concord betweene the cities of Italy, and to pacific king CHARLES: but his defire tooke no effect, for he was interrupted by death, which ouertooke him in the end of the yeere 1278, having been Pope little more then three yeeres, and was reckoned amongst the Saints. Pope CLEMEN T the fourth being dead the Cardinals agreed fo ill about chusing him a successor, that for the space of two yeeres there was no Pope. What happened in the meane time, is too long to be written, wherefore I leaue it apart, amongst which S.L Evv Es king of France went against the kingdom and citie of Tunis, where he died of the plague. His going thither was to the end from thence to have gone to the conquest of Ierusalem, whereto he was induced and

incited by Pope CLEMENT before his death. And before the Popes death, ED-King Edward vv ARD king of England went to the same service with about two hundred thou-Longhauter at fand men, which from all parts of Christendome vowed to goe that voyage, but the Holy land. all was afterwards. Two yeeres being past that the Cardinals could not agree, by

their common consent in the yeere 1270, Theosald a Cardinall was chosen and called GREGORY the tenth, who was a Legate with King ED VV ARD in that enterprise, which EDVVARD perfourmed as little in that action, aswell by reason of King L E vy E s his long aboad before Tunis, where he died for whom King E D. The death of vy ARD staied; as also for that the Popes seate was voide the space of two yeeres, of France bewhich put all out of order, and caused him and such as were with him, to endure fore Timis. great want and penurie: and for that at this time also died the Patriarch of lerulalem, by whose counsell he began and continued that warre, and in the end THE On King Edward BALD which was the Apostolike Legate in this journey, came to be Pope, where the field of Enfore King ED VV A R D allo returned to his countrie, without effecting what he de- gland returned

When THEOBALD, or Pope GREG ORY the tenth, being in Aken was ad-land. uertifed of his election; with the aide of King E D VV ARD which furnished him with men and shipping, hee came into Italy, and was joyfully received and entertained by King CHARLES of Naples, through whose countrie he passed, who accompanied him some daies iourneys, and comming to Viterbo, where the Cardinals attended his comming hee was crowned after the accustomed manner; and hethen presently summoned a generall Councell, first to procure the reformation and peace of the Church: secondly, that an Emperour should be chosen; for Germany was brought to ruine through civill diffention and want of inflice: and thirdly to take order for the conquest of the Holy land, appointing Lions in France to be the place where this Councel should be held; whitherwards he prefently departed, first setting the best peace that hee could in Italy, principally betweene the Genoais and the Venecians, two mightie Common-wealths in those daies, which waged a most cruell warre. This being done he came to Liens, from whence he fent to the Princes Electors, commanding them to meet, and to make choise of an Emperour. To this Councell at Lions, came PALEOLOGVS the Emperour of Constantinople, whom the Pope confirmed in his empire, notwithflanding that he obtained the same by indirect meanes; and he and the prelates which came with him, in the name of the Grecke Church, submitted themfelues to the Councell in certaine points, wherein the Greekes diffented from the Latines, but they observed the same as little as at other times they had done. The princes Electors met at Franckford, to treate of the election of an Emperour, seeing how many yeeres the Empire was void for now twentie yeeres were fully expired fince the death of FREDERICK, in all which time, Germany was never free from factions and parcialities about the Empire, and thirteene or foureteene yeeres fince the Emperor WILLIAM died, so that Germany lay abandoned, without an head or soueraigne Lord : for RICHARD brother to the King of England, and ALONS o King of Callile, were chosen in discord and differ to fvoyces; and RICHARD within Thort space died, and King ALONSO could neuer come to enioy the Empire. All the Princes Electors meeting, spent three yeeres before they couldagree about the election; for either of them would have him to be Emperor in whom they thought to have greatest interest: some alleaged that no election could be made, for that King A L O N S O of Castile was chosen; and the same King fent his Proctors to protest that he prepared himselfe to come into the Empire: others hindred the election, for that they viurped the lands and possessions appertaining to the Empire, and were in feare to lofe the fame: finally, the matter was very confused and out of order, but in the end they agreed, and notwithstanding that OTHO CARVSKing of Bohemis, had wonne the most part of the Electors.

Emperour.

732

Electors, and affured himselfe that hee should have been chosen, yet they altring their determination, chose Rodvien Earle of Habipurgh and Hessia, who in line Habipurgh and masculine descended lineally from the father to the some, from Pharomond Melitabels King of the Francous: others have whether the some of the Francous: King of the Francons: others have written (amongst which is VOLATERE A. NYS) that this RODVLPH was descended from the house and family of the PERLE-ONES, OF LEONES in Rome, an auncient house of Earles, and that one of them voon certaine ocasion left his countrie, and went into Ergonia, and there built the castle of Habspurgh, from whence descend the Earles of Habspurgh: which they fay was in the yeere 1150. But it cannot be fo, for the towne and castle of Habfourgh, from whence these Earles are descended, is not in Ergonia, but another much more ancient, and farre diftant from that, whereof long before the time that they speake of, the Earles of Habspurgh were Lords: and I OHN STARIVE fetteth downe a pedegree of nine Kings and foureteene Earles before this Ro-DVLPH, of whom wee now treat: who besides that he was chosen and crowned Emperor, and gouerned the empire the space of eighteene yeeres, came (through want of heires) to be Duke of Austrich: and that house hath continued in that linage from that time vntill this day, and hath produced nine Emperours, and a great number of Dukes: from which RODVLPH the first, is descended RODVLPH the second now raigning in the yeere 1604. In Constantinople still raigned MI-CHARL PALROLOGYS.

#### THE LIFE OF RODVLPH THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, AND CIII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.

Andof MICHABL PALEOLOGY'S Emperour of Constantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.

Hen Rodulphs election was published, all Germany reioyced, as feeing the end of somany troubles, he was according to the custome crowned in Aken, but would never goe to be crowned in Italy, alleaging that all the Emperours which went thither, either died there,

or returned with great loffe. He held fore warres with the King of Bohemia, who by his wines per-Smallon violating his faith, rebelled against the Emperour, to whom he had sworne fealtie and obedience. After this warre the Emperour additted bim(elfe to maintaine sustice, and takine no care to come into Italy, contenting bimfelfe with their tribute; he held all Germany in peace, a thing which no Emperor ever had done. He subdued all those which rebelled, and being olde departed out of this life. He made alliance with many great Lords by meanes of his daughters, for in his sonnes be was not very fortunate.



O foone as it was published that Robylph was chosen. great ioy was conceived through all the townes and cities in Germany: and by all men which defired peace and iuflice, as well through the defire they had to have an Emperour, as for that RODVLPH was a man highly effeemed. through the hope they conceived that he would prove a future good Prince; for he was held to be a man of great iudgement, and very valiant, whereof he had made great

proofe both in peace and warre, in the feruice of FREDERICK the second, who was his godfather, and afterwards in the warre against the King of Bohemia: but the Ambassadours of King Alonso and of the King of Bohemia, departed very much discontented from Franckford homeward, making first their proteffations.

Earle RODVLPH little thought of any fuch matter when the newes was brought him of his election; and he at that time lay before the Citie of Bafil, beficeing the fame, wherein were two factions of the Psitaci and the Stelleseri, Psitaci and whereof the one had driven the other out of the Citie : and he tooke you him stelleferitue the charge to reftore the banished to their houses, with whose ayde, and the ayde fallions in Baof his friends and subjects, he besieged that Citie: and being advertised of his " election, came to the Citie of Aken, and there according to the accustomed man-The Emperate ner was crowned; whither came Ambassadours from the Princes of Germany to Rodulph crow congratulate his election : but neither the King of Bohemia, or the Duke of Ba-ned in Alem siere would obey, or hold him for Emperour: what thereof infued, you shall ynderstand hereafter.

After the coronation, the Electors fent their Ambassadours to Pope Gru-G on y the tenth, who then was at the Councell of Lions in France, and being very glad of his election, confirmed and approved the fame: and promifed to giue him the Imperiall crowne, if he would come into Italy for it; but he would neuer goe to be crowned in Rome, neither come into Italy: it is written, that he being demaunded wherefore he would not goe thither, for answere recited one of Es ors fables; faying, that the Lion as king of all other beafts being ficke, would Ataleof haue them all come to visit him, and they all went and recomforted him: but the a Lion. Foxe of purpose staying to be last, and being come to the mouth of the caue wherein the Lion lay, would not enter, and the cause being demaunded, answered, that the most part of the footesteps which he saw, were of such as went in, but he could hardly perceive that any of them came forth againe; whereby he well knew that the most part of them remained foode for the sicke Lion: wherefore he would not put his life in fuch hazard. After this manner RODVLPH faid, that it befell the Emperours, his predeceffors, in their iournies into Italy: for they altogether remained there, or returned with great losse: wherefore vpon Thecante wire this confideration, he would never come into Italy to be crowned, which was the Emperour the cause that many Cities exempted themselues and became free:

Rodulph would not come into

The Italy.

The new Emperour through a defire to reforme the estate of the Empire. fummoned a Councell or Parliament to be held in the Citie of Novembergh, whither came all the Princes in person; or else those which could not come. sent their Agents or Proctors, excepting the King of Bohemia, and the Duke of Basiere. which neither came nor fent; neither would they acknowledge him for their Emperour: whereupon Rodvlph by the consent of all those which were present, prescribed them a certaine time, within which they should restore and deliuer up the lands and possessions which they had vsurped in the time of the Empires vacation: as well fuch as appertained to the Empire, as to other particular persons; and charged them to make their appearance within the time limited, in the Citie of Anglburgh. The time being expired, and the Emperour being come thither, all came or fent their lawfull excuses: and notwithstanding that the Duke of Bauiere came not, yet he fent by his Agents, to yeeld his obedience to the Emperour; but in the behalfe of the King of Behemia it was not fo, for he fent his Ambassadours; amongst which was a Bishop, to whom publike audience being given, the Bishop began a long set oration, wherein he sought to have proued that the election of R ODVLPH was of no effect; and that the King of Bobe. mia was not bound to yeelde him obedience, neither to acknowledge him for his Lord: wherewith he and the Princes present were so much displeased, that without permitting him to end his discourse, they commaunded him presently to depart the court and the citie; and so he and his associates departed. In that Councell the King of Bohemia was proclaimed a rebell and disobedient, and as fuch, were they to proceede against both him and his estate: and the Emperour presently sent the Burgraue of Novembergh (which is a dignitic in Germany) to require him to furrender the Duchy and flates of Austrich, Carinthia, Carniela, and Stiria, which he viurped. But the king neither would, neither had any meaning to do fo, and therefore tookearmes to make refiftance: & the Councell being ended, the Emperour likewise leuied an army against him; what ensued, we will tell you after that we shall have recounted what end the king of Castile had in the Empire, which passed in this manner.

ALONSO king of Cafile understanding that RODVLPH of Habspurgh, was chosen Emperour, was very fory; and after many consultations held, and a peace established with the king of Granada; he departed from Spaine, purposing to have been Emperour, and fent fouldiers and other provision before him, by fea and by land to the citie of Marfelles; for he held the kings of France and of Naples for his friends and kinfmen: and so departing from Castile, accompanied with his brother EMANVEL, and other great men in the moneth of March in the yeare 1275, leaving his eldest sonne Hernandes governor in his absence, he came into France, with an intent to have proceeded on his journey. What enfued and how he passed, the histories record not; the effect is, that at the same time pope GREGORY having dissolved the generall Councell, and returning into Italy, met with king ALONSO, at a place called Bellocadoro; where the king shewed himselfe discontent, for that the pope (to his prejudice) had consented to the election of an Emperour, he pretending to be already lawfully chosen: but the pope so well excused himselfe, and gave the other so good counsell, that he preswaded him to give over his challenge, and to returne to Castile; which was greatly furthered through the newes of the death of his eldeft fon, and of the incursions made into his countrey by the Moores: and of the practizes of his second fonne called SANCHES, (who afterwards was king) who tooke vpon him the go-

uernment of the kingdome, and fought to have succeeded by depriving the fonnes of DON HERNANDES: for these and other great difficulties (whereof the king was ascertained) he returned into Castile; where he afterwards lived in great trouble, for his sonne SANCHES rose with the kingdome; onely the cities and kingdomes of Seuil and Murcia, remayned faithfull vnto him, vntill that about nine or ten yeares after he dyed in Seuil, in the yeare of our Lord 1284. and the faid Anno Dom. SANCHES succeeded him in the kingdome. And pope GREGORY after his 1284departure from king ALONSO, transiling through Italy towards Rome, dved in Arezzo, and in his place was chosen PETER TARENTASIVS Cardinall of Ho-Aia, a Dominican Frier, and was called Innocant the fifth: in whose time the truce betweene the Venecians and the Genoais being expired, cruell war began betweenethem: and the pope indenored to have made peace betweene them and the other cities in Tulcane, Pila, Florence, Luca, Siena, and the rest which were in armes; king CHARLES of Naples also interposing his authoritie. But before he could bring the same to effect he dyed, having been pope five moneths and two daies only and him succeeded Otho Bon, a Cardinal, and was called ADRIAN the fifth, who was pope but fortie daies: and after him was chosen one Peren borne in Lisbon, and was called I o HN the two and twentieth, who was a great phifition, and wrote of philicke: and notwithstanding that he was a great clerke, yet was he nothing expert in gouerning his charge; so as if he had lived long, he would have shewed his impersections, but in the eight moneth of his papacy (he being in Viterbo) the roofe of a chamber fell downe vpon him: and notwithstanding that he was taken out aliue, yet was he so fore bruzed, that he dyed within seuen daies after. He being dead, Cardinall IOHN CAIETANVS Was chosen, who was called NICHOLAS the third, with whom and with all the reft, the Emperour Rody LPH held friendship; whom we left making preparation for his warres against the king of Bohemia; which he was constrained to deferre for a space, for that L nvv no the County Palatine of Rhine, and the Marquis of Baden, wouldnot (within the time limited) furrender fuch lands and townes as they had taken, at what time the Empire was voyd: wherefore he went in person to recouer them perforce with much trouble and daunger. This being done, he marched first with his forces to make warre against the Duke of Baniere, for that he performed not what he had fworne by his Ambaffadours and Proctors: but ayded and fauored the king of Bohemia. And the Emperour with a mightie army entring his countrey, flew many of his people, and by force of armes tooke and destroyed some townes, so as he compelled the Duke humbly to submit himselfe. And the Emperour marching further, entred Austrich, which OTHO CARVS had taken, and therein had placed Bohemian garrifons: neuerthelesse some cafiles yeelded, and others were taken by force of armes; and he afterwards befieged the citie of Vienna, to the relicte whereof, after the fiege had lasted the space of feuen weekes, the king of Bohemia came with a great power, which he had leuied in his kingdome, and in Morania and other countries: and to the Emperours campe came against him the King of Hungary, who was an enemy to the King of Bohemia, and had taken some townes from him: and the two armies being come, the one neere to the other, and in a readines to have fought; certaine Monkes and Friers became mediators' betweene the King and the Emperour, which vsed such meanes, that a peace was concluded: and the Emperour pardoned the King, vpon condition that he should presently surrender the estates of Austrich, Carinthia, Stiria, and Carniola to the Emperor, and to the king of Hungary,

nernment

flaine.

what he had taken from him; and that the Emperour should anew confirme vnto him the kingdomes of Bohemia, and Morania, for which he should come in person to yeelde obedience, and be sworne after the accustomed manner. All which the king (feeing no other remedy) yeelded to performe, being at the point to have lost all the rest; but he instantly requested, that he might doe his homage in some secret place; for as he was a very haughtie minded man, so did it extremelie grieue him to kneele to a man to whom he had given pay; and thinking that the Emperour would have perfourmed what he requested, forasmuch as hee staied for him in a close tent, hee came, and kneeling downe before the Emperour to do him homage; the tent was so artificially made, that it fell open. in such manner, that he was seene by the whole army, wherewith he was much grieued. This agreement being made, and the king returned into his countrey. he was by his wife the Queene very ill entertained; for as the was a vaine proud woman, shee told him that he was not worthy the name of a king, neither to weare a crown, fith he had loft fo great estates without the hazard of one battaileand had humbled himselfe disarmed, before him which had bin his seruant : hauing an army of so good men to take his partas he had: and sith that he had made fuch a peace, he should now let her have his army, and she would by warre recouer what he had loft by eschuing the same. These his wives speeches, and such like which she ysed at other times, added to the forrow for what he had lost, did fo much moue him that he repented him of what he had done. And rebelling. meant to decide the matter, and to put away this reproch by armes: whereupon he drew his forces to an head, and fuch places as were not refigured, he repayred. and fortified; and went into Austrich to recouer what hee had already furrendred. which he did with fuch expedition, that he tooke many places therein. When the Emperour ynderstoode of the king of Behemia his proceedings, hee with no leffe expedition raifed his forces, and with some Princes of the Empire cameagainst him with a great power; who resolutely stayed in the field to give him battaile, which befell vpon the fixe and twentith day of August in the yere of our Lord 1277: which battaile was sharpe and cruell, and the king in the middest of the troupes being with a fword deadly wounded by one BERTOLD afauourite A battaile beof the Emperours, fell from his horfe: which fuddaine accident, together with the enemies force, was the cause of his peoples ouerthrow, and that the Empethe King of Bo rour being victorious was Master of the field: and the king was afterwards found therein, as naked as he was borne of his Mother. The Emperour hauing obtevned this so notable a victorie, followed not the same with such rigour and cruelans vuere omerthrouvne. tie as he might have done; for the king leaving a fonne called WENCESLAVS, and their Kin the Emperour married him to his daughter IVDITH and invested and confirmed him in the kingdomes of Bonemia and Morania; and forasmuch as he was but a child, he gauethe gouernment of both his person and estate, to the Marquis of Brandenburgh: and so had R o D V LPH the Duchy of Austrich, and other estates thereto appertaining; which he afterwards gaue to his eldest sonne A 1-BERT, who in processe of time came to be Emperour.

After the warre of Bohemia, the Emperour fought to establish instice, and to free the countrie from theeues and rebels which were therein, by reason of the late troubles; amongst which, one was so audacious that he shamed not to say that he was the Emperour Frederick the second, who died in Italy; stoutly maintaining himselfe to be the same: the cause whereof was, for that the common people neuer certainly knoweth what paffeth; and some reported that the Empe-

FOUR FREDERICK Was not dead, but lay hidden. This rumour was fo farre spread that ir came to the iffue, that this man gathered fo many vnto him, that he tooke fome A counterfeit cities, and so much troubled the Emperour, that he was constrained to leuie an ar- Emperour. mie against him, by which this counterfeite FREDERICK was ouerthrowne and taken prisoner; and afterwards burnt by the Emperours commaundement, and the rest of his confederacie were sharply punished : and so he was obeyed every where. But as for matters of Isaly, hee tooke no care to goe thither in person, but fought to gouerne there by his Vicars and Lieutenants, euer maintaining peace with the Popes; contenting himselfe that some cities in Lombardy, and others which acknowledged the empire, repaired ynto him with their customes and impress, whereof he was very greedy: for in truth, not with standing that this prince was adorned with many great vertues, yet he was much noted and reproched for being couetous and greedie of money, as he afterwards shewed. And in regard of peace betweene him and pope NICHOLAS, he freely graunted to him Rauenna. and the other townes of that gouernment, which the Pope challenged to be the Church inheritance; vniting thereto the citie of Bolonia, which of later time held for the empire. Pope NICHOLAS having the Emperors friendship, & for that he was a Romane borne, was of greater power then any of his predeceffors had bins and tooke from CHARLES king of Naples the office of Senatour, and made a law. that from thencefoorth no king or kings fonne should be Senatour: he also took from him the Lieutenantship for the Church in Tuscane, alleaging that it was not the Emperours pleasure that hee should hold that dignitie; and so icalousie and fusition grew betweene them: for it was odious to the Pope to fee that CHARLES was of fuch power; wherefore hee procured Paran king of Arragen, to make The Pope was challenge to the kingdomes of Naples and Sicilia; affirming that they appertained author of all the marrer be. wnto him by reason of his mariage with Constance daughter of Manera DE tweenethe king of Sicilia. All this the pope durst to doe, having the favour and friendship of French and the Emperour RODVLPH, whom they knew to be of great power in Italy, and o- kinedome of bevedin Germany.

About this time the Emperor sent one to be his Lieutenant in Italy, whom manv cities receiued and obeyed, and others would not. At this time also died Pope NICHOLAS, having bin fo foure yeers, lesse foure moneths; and vpon some occafion, that Sea was voide fine moneths; and then was chosen SIMON Cardinall of S. Sicilie, a French man borne, and was called M ART IN the fourth. In those times the Popes made their aboad in Viterbo, but he would not be facred there, but wet for that purpose to Ciuit a Vechia, whither came to see him CHARLES king of Maples, who (for that they both were Frenchmen) was very joyfully received, and afterwards much fauoured: which was in the yeere of our Lord 1281. In the same yeere, the Emperour established VV BNC ESLAVS king of Bohemia (whom he had maried with his daughter I v D I T H) in the gouernment of his kingdom; free from the tutorship of the Marquis of Brandenburgh, to whom hee had given the same. And the same yeere he had warre with the Gouernour of a people called Ethni, inhabiting a prouince in France about Lioneis, who rebelled, and would have made himselfe Lord of Burgondy, and of part of Sucuia; whither he went in person, obtained victorie, and left the land in subjection. And returning from his journey, he came into the prouince of Alfacia, wherein were many factions, and many great men rebelling, disobeyed his commandements: but with his presence all was still and in quiet: so that in all Germany he was both obeyed and seared, and raigned in prosperitie. But as in this life no estate high or low is free from disasters

The French-

and mishaps, so a sonne of his whom he much loued, whose name was HARMAN in a boat passing the river Rhine was drowned, together with certaine other principall personages: and his wife the Emperesse also died; and about three yeeres after he married againe, with the daughter of the Duke of Burgendy : and fo hee passed five or fixe yeers without any accident worth the writing. In Italy, CHARLES king of Sicilie, and of Prenence, being rich & of great power, through the fauour of PopeMARTIN, had a conceit to haue deposed MICHABL PALEOLO GV s, and to have restored BALD VVIN to the empire of Constantinople 3 who marrying his daughter, was deprined: and although he pretended this title, yet it was thought that he would have had the empire for himselfe. This being done, he thought to have recovered the kingdome of lerufalem, whereof he intitled himselfe king: whereupon he practifed with the pope, perswading him to excommunicate Pa-LEOLOG Vs. for that he had not observed what was decreed in the Councell late held at Lions, whither he came to Pope GREGORY the tenth, concerning the vniting of the Greeke Church with the Latine. He had also intelligence with certaine cities in Gracia which rebelled against PALEOLOGVS, and began to prouide men and galleys for that enterprise. But all these purposes were frustate: for whilest he fought to depose another from his empire, hee within few daies lost great part of his owne: for all the cities in Sicilia, vnable to endure the violence and oppression vsed by the French, rose and rebelled, and slew all the Frenchmen which were in the Iland: having first had intelligence with Paraking of Armen flaine in ragon, who lay in waight for Sicilia, (vnder this title, that he married the daughter the Ile of Siciof king MANFREDE) and came in great hafte with a fleete of fiftie galleys and thips, faining that he had rigged the fame, to the end to have paffed ouer into Africa; and so became Lord of the whole Hand. Afterwards there were great wars betweene them both by fea and land, during which, king CHARLES falling ficke, of an infirmitie and of forow, died; leaving his eldeft fonne CHARLES prisoner, in the power of PETER king of Arragen. And pope MARTIN fent his Legate to Naples, to hold that kingdome in Subjection to CHARLES who was in prilon, whom he proclaimed to be his fathers heire and fucceffor: the French king fent also to the same effect. Finally, at this time the kingdome of Sicilia was divided from the kingdome of Naples, and the king of Arragon held the same; and afterwards enfued other alterations. Returning to my historie, I say that the Emperor RODVLPH, through the counfell of HONORIVS the fourth, which fucceeded Pope MARTIN, in the yeere of our Lord 1286, fent for his Lieutenant generall, an Italian Earle called PINCINAGLIA DI FISCO (a man very private with the Pope) who comming into Tuscane; Florence, and many other cities which were of the parcialitie of the Guelphes, would not obey him; and there passed many treaties and requests, but in the end, he having made his protestations, and condemned some cities, returned into Germany: And the Emperour sent thither another Lieutenant, who (hauing commission thereto) gaue eare to certaine cities, which offered to compound for money; and so by the Emperours consent, Flo-Florence, Luca & Pisa bought rence, Luca, Pisa, and some others, bought their libertie, whereby the Emperour their freedome gat little honour; notwithstanding that in all the rest he was a good, a valiant, and of the Emperor a prudent prince: but the greedines of money, and his resolution not to come into Italy, made him to vie this basenes.

In those daies, EBERARD Earle of Wittembergh, being affished by some other Princes, rebelled but the Emperonr entring his countrie, befreged him in a strong Castle, and compelling him to sue for mercie, at the entreaty of the Arch-

bilhop

bishop of Mentz, he pardoned him: and although that he afterwards made some Rirre, yet he perseucred in his seruice. At this time died in Rome HONORIVS the fourth, having been Pope two yeeres and one moneth, and after his death the chaire was voyd tenne moneths; and then was chosen the Cardinall of S. Sabina. a Frier, and Master of S. FRANCIS order, and was called Nicholas. All this while the Emperour RODVLPH gouerned Germany in peace, yet in the prouince of Turinge, many infolencies and robberies were committed, by reason of the factions and controuerlies, betweene the Lords of the Castles therein: wherefore the Emperour called a Councell to bee held in the citie of Erfordia; and by the consent of the Princes, made threescore Castles in that prouince to be throwne downe, and laid leuell with the earth, whereby he brought all Germany into quiet Subjection; which continued so, vntill his death, which was within a little while after. So as it cannot be denied, but that this Emperour was a good Prince, and a prudent gouernor, both in peace and in warre (wherein he would intermeddle, which was but in Germany onely) defiring as a wife Prince to rule and gouerne the fame well, rather then to feeke to fubdue Italy, and other countries, and fo to lose both the one and the other; and to avoid contention with the Popes, which in Italy he could not eschue. One thing made his raigne infortunate, which was the lofte of the Holy land: the Christians lofing all the cities which they held in Soria, and Paleflina; for the Souldan of Egypt being Lord of Ierufalem, feeing the warres betweene the cities of Italy, and the Christian Kings of Arragon, and of Naples; and also betweene the Kings of England and of France, came with a great armie of foote and horfe, and belieging the citie of Tripoli in Soria, took the fame perforce and presently did the like by the cities of Tyre, Sidon, and Brite, with their The losse of the confines; which he destroying, slew and captivated an infinit number of people. Hely land, And the Christians which escaped, reducing themselves by sea and land to the city of Ptolomaida, whither came the king of Cyprus, the Masters and Knights Templars of S. I o HN s, and of the Duch order, together with the Partriarch of Ierulalem; fell there at variance amongst themselves, about who should be Governour, and have the command: which the Soldan understanding, and a certaine truce which he had graunted them being expired, he came with 150000 men before the citie, and taking and destroying all the countrie round about it, sent his sonne with his whole power to befrege the citie: who continued the frege, norwithstanding that his father died in the meane season: and after fundrie accidents which happened, the greatest part of those which were in the citie, abandoning the same fled by sea; and neere to the coast of Cyprus were overtane with such a tempest, that the most part of them were cast away and drowned and the next day, the Soldan entring the citie (fome few which had no meanes to depart, being left to defend the fame)commanded first all those which hee found therein to be flaine; and then the citie to be destroyed, leaving no house or wall standing : and fo the Christians were wholy expelled out of all, that Godfary of Buillon and other Christian Princes had gotten 196 yeeres before: which was in the yeere of our Lord 1290: which so soone as it was published in Europe, the Emperour, Anno Dom. the Pope, and generally all the Princes Christian were very forie: knowing 1290. that by reason of the warres betweene them those countries could not be relieued.

The next yeere after this, the Emperour falling fore ficke, was carried to the citie of Spire, accompanied with the Emperesse and his sonne in law, the King of

The Emperour Rodulph died in the yeare 1291,

Behemia and his Queene, the Duke of Basiere, and many other Princes: and dved the fame day that he came to the citie. This Prince may well be accounted for one of the most excellent of the world; seeing that being but a meane Lord and finding the empire divided, rent, and tyrannized, without an Emperour, and at liberrie for many yeeres space he pacified and brought the same into subjection. and maintaining inflice and equitie, left the fame in peace. His house and estare he so much encreased, that hee left to his some A LBERT, the Duchies of Mu. frich, and Carniola. He was twice married: first with a Countesse of Suemia called ANN 1: the second time with the Duke of Burgendies daughter, called Y NES: hu the first onely he had children. About the number of his children the authors varie: but when he died it feemeth that hee had but two fonnes ; the one was A I-BERT afore named, and the other RODVLPH, whom hee made Lord of part of Snenia, who was father to I o n n the parricide, who slew his vncle, as hereafter you shall understand. He had also (as writteh I o HN C v spinian) seuen danohters, which he married to mightie princes : the first was E v FB MI A, which was a Nunne; the second was IVDITH, married to WENCESLAVS King of Behemia: the third was Mayy D, married to the Countie Palatine of Rhine; the fourth was YNES, married to the Duke of Saxony; the fifth was KATHERINE, married to HARMAN Marquis of Brandenburgh; the fixth was ANN & married with OTHO Duke of Bautere; the feuenth and last was called C LEMENCE, and was married to CHARLES the second king of Naples: from which islued great Kings and Princes.

The same yeere that the Emperour RODVLPH died, MICHARL PALROLOovs Emperour of Conftantinople died also, and his sonne ANDRONICVs had the empire : and the next yeere following died Pope NICHOLAS, having hin so foure yeeres, and through discord betweene the Cardinals, that Sea was voide two yeeres and three moneths.

THE



#### THE LIFE OF ADVLPH ONELY OF THAT NAME, AND CIIII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

LL men shought, after the death of the Emperour Rodulph, that the Electors would baue chosen his some Albert, but through the cunning of the Bishop of Mentz, Adulph Earle of Nassawas chosen, which Albert disdaining, with the ande of the French King, bare armes against him, purposing to depose him. Hereto the Electors consented, and repenting that they had chosen him, deprived him of the Empire, and chose Albert, who going to be crowned in Aken, came to a bickering with Adulph, and slew him in the Battaile.



He Empire through the death of the Emperour RODVLPH being voide, all men were of opinion that his Sonne ALBERT Duke of Austrich should have succeeded him: and (in a manner) all the Princes Electors desired the same. But GERARD. Archbishop of Mentz (which was one of them) vsed such policie, that at the Princes meeting in Franckford, he (cunninglie) A policie ofed by the Archbi-

got their voyces, and made ADVLPH Earle of Nassaw, who was his neere kinse- by the Archbiman to be chosen. The meane which he ysed was this: he having already gotten to this effect the Archbishop of Colens voyce, vsed the same policie in obtaining the rest of their voyces: first, conferring with the Duke of Saxony, he told him that he had some of the Electors voyces to chuse the Duke of Bruinswick (who was his great enemy) but yet he would forbeare to doe it, if he would give him his voyce. The Duke fearing that this had been true (for he had heard that the Bi-



shop of Colen, and the Marquis of Brandenburgh, had graunted their voices to

the Bishop of Mentz) perswaded him, not to consent thereto, for if he did it

would be his destruction, if he were chosen; so as who soeuer were chosen (were

Adulph Earle of Nasavu chofen Empe.

742

to ferue the King of Engwarres against

it not the Duke of Brian(wick) he should have his voyce presently. The Duke of Saxony being thus deceived, with the like wile he gat the voyces of the Archbishop of Treuer, and of the Countie Palatine of Rhine; proponing vnto them in fecret, to the Countie Palatine, the king of Bohemia, and to the Bishop of Trenier. the Duke of Gueldres; whereto each of them answered him, that if he were nor chosen whom he named vnto them, they would give him their voyces: this they did, supposing that he would have chosen Albert the Duke of Austrich, for so he made shew in outward appearance: so that by this deuice he gat all their voyces, without that the one knew ought of what the other had done; and the Marquis of Brandenburgh promiled him his voice also, for that he had favored him in the controversie betweene the vncle, and the nephew, Marquiles, about whether of them should be elector: so as the day of the election being come. they all referring their opinions to the Archbishop of Mens to by common confent the Earle of Nasaw was chosen; whereat they all marueiled, as well for that they expected that ALBERT should have bin chosen, as also for that ADVLPH was a man of meane chate, and of too poore a reuenue to maintaine the imperiall dignitie; notwithstanding that for his owne person he was valorous, greatly effeemed, and held for an excellent man of warre; but as his revenues were fmall, he presently began to be held in contempt, especially by the Duke of Austrich and his adherents. ADV LPH being thus chosen, by meanes of the Bishop of Mentz, and of his other friends and kindred went to Aken, and there was crowned with great folemnitie; and then called a Councell to be held in a citie in Sueuia: and from thence, (for that there were then great warres betweene The Emperous the kings of England and of France) he fent to offer his avd to the king of England Adulph officed against the French king; and the king of England sent him a great summe of money, to the end that with an army he should in person have come to his ayd; wherewith the Princes of the Empire seemed to be much grieved, alleaging that it was a great dishonor to the Empire, that the Emperour should take pay of any forraine prince: and the Duke of Austrich said, that seeing the Emperour received pay of the king of England, he might as well take pay of the French king. The Emperor having received this money, and knowing that the Lantzgraue of Turinge his sonnes made war upon their Father, he went in person to avid the Lantzgraue, who to obtaine his fauour, and for the hatred which he bare against his fonnes, fold to him the Earledome of Mifne, for part of the money which the king of England had given him. The Emperour spent two yeares in those warres, desiring to advance his house, and to enlarge his possessions, as he did; and this timebeing expired, he defiring to fatisfie the king of England, and being vnable to performe the same, (for the Princes were much discontented for that he gaue them no part of the gold which the king of England sent him) open enmitte brake out betweene him and the Duke of Austrich: and the Duke practized with the other Princes to depose him from the Empire; by the consent of the same Archbishop of Mentz, who had chosen him : so as the Emperour ADV LPH was of no fuch power or authority as was his predeceffor; and men began to fland in feare of what afterwards enfued. While these matters passed in Germany, for that it is a very notable matter, I will tell you what passed in Italy, touching the Papacy: which was in this manner.

At the end of two yeares and three moneths after the death of pope NICHO-LAS the fourth, in all which time he had no fuccessor; in Perugia (whither the Cardinals repayred to make their election) was chosen a very zealous man, who was both a Monke & an Hermite, called Patan Munnon; who thinking himfelfe to have bin called of Godaccepted the Popedom, and was named CELE-STINE the fifth: and in his beginning (as it was written) who fo highly honored. that vp6 the day of his facring, there came to Perugia (as to fee a wonder) 200000. persons to see him : but as this man had wholy secluded him from the world. and given himselfe to contemplation and prayer; so the world could not well like of him, nor of his fashions; neither knew he how to deale in the world, for his small understanding, and lesse experience in worldly matters; which was the occasion that he gaue credit to what was told him; by meanes whereof he did fomtimes one thing contrary to another: whereupon fome of the Cardinals cunninglie counselled and perswaded him to renounce the papacic, whereto this good man willinglie agreed, accounting himfelfe incapable of that charge, and fo oftentimes protested, and in conclusion (notwithstanding that CHARLES King of Naples would have letted him, and to that end induced him to come to Naples) did so, and in an open solemne act renounced the popedome; fine moneths after that he had accepted the same: and vpon his renounciation, by the Cardinals, was the fift renounciation. chosen Cardinal BENEDICT, and was called BONIFACE the eight, who was cedibe Papacy, the man which chiefly perswaded CELESTINE to renounce the Papacy; and this devout man being about to returne to his hermitage, Bontrac a fearing that the people would againe have reftord him, made him to be apprehended and detained in prison untill he dyed, which was within short space after : whose fuccessor Bonifac was farre vnlike vnto him, for he was ambitious, proud, factious, and a great perfecutor of the Gibelins, yet very learned, politique, subtill, and of great experience; whose end was such as hereafter we will tell you.

Returning to the Emperour Advira, I fay that he understanding that the Duke of Austrich practized against him, and sought to deprive him of the Empire, warred against him, to whom the French king vnder hand gaue secret avdto the end that the Emperour should not be able to joyne with the king of England against him, as he purposed to have done. Vpon this occasion all Germany was in an vorore, some holding with one partie, and some with the other : and A DV LPH'S friends daily forfooke him, through his vnequall carriage towards them, for in his fauours he was parciall, a thing which maketh Princes to be hated of many: by meanes whereof ALBERTS party became fo strong, that the Princes electors (excepting the Archbishop of Treuier, and the Countie Palatine of Rhine which would not be there) met in the citie of Mentz, where alleaging fuch reasons as they thought good (which in my judgment weere very insufficient) they depriued A DV LPH of the Empire, and chose his enemie A LBRT; who with the greatest and most florishing power that he could procure, of his owne. and of his friends, went to be crowned in Aken: whom ADVLPH (who was not a coward or any way pufillanimous notwithstanding that his power was vnequal) went to meet: and the two armyes loyning neere the citie of Wormes, vpon a day in the moneth of Iuly in the yeare of our Lord 1298, there began betweene them Anno Dom. a most cruell and bloudy battaile: the despaire wherewith ADYLPH and those 1298. of his party fought, making their inequalitie equall. The battaile continued a- tweenethe boue fixe houres, either party fighting most cruelly, before that it could be per- Emperour Aceiued whether army should haue the victorie; and each Generall having lost best Duke of

great Auftrich.

great part of his people: A DVLPH fighting with his face against the sunne (which did greatly annoy him) in the middeft of the throughwhere the fight was most cruell, was in a great charge felled from his horfe to the earth, whither (by chance) came his enemy Almar, who (before that he could be ready to breake his thrust) with the point of his fword gaue him fo great a wound in the face, that it bereaued him of his senses, so that he was slaine in the place. Somewrite, that whilest that he was in this fight, ALBERT cried vnto him alowd; Here ADVLPH shale thou lose the Empire; whereto he answered, This (O A LBERT) is in the hand of God.

So soone as the Emperor was flaine and perceived by his fouldiers, they (with-Adulth flaint, Out making any more reliffance) were ouerthrowne, and ALEFRY remained victor, although it cost him deere, for a great number of hismen were slaine and wounded. In this manner was this Emperor murthered by the hands of a Prince subject to the Empire; in the seuenth yeare of his raigne : whether the cause mouing him thereto were right or wrong, I leaue to God, who is the righteous judge: but the reasons which they alleaged, were that he tooke pay of the kine of England, wherewith he was grown proud : that he made a Maffe prieft to be beheaded; that he had caused false money to be covned, and had degraded certaine Ecclesiasticall persons: that he had forced certaine damsels: and so others which they alleaged: which whether they were true or falle, it pleafed God that he dyed in this manner. Some authors write that all those which conspired 2gainst him, and were accessarie to his death, had euill endes: how A 22227 feed I will tell you hereafter. Of ADVLPHA fonnes finall mention is made, excepting one which with many Earles was taken prisoner in the Battaile; and the Duke of Basiere escaped by slightsother men of great account in this cruell battaile

were flaine. In Conflantinople, ANDRONICVS forme of MICHARL PALEOLOGYS WAS Emperour.

THE



### FE OF ALBERT THE FIRST OF THAT NAME.

AND CV. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



ARGVMENT.



Lbert would not accept of his first election, but Adulph being dead, cansed it to be made anew, and was confirmed by the Pope, who was easily drawne to confirme bim, to the end that he should warre upon the French king, which he would not doe, netther ever come into Italy. Germany then enioyed peace, and in twelve warres which he waged he euer had the victorie, by reason whereof he was called Albertus Tri-

umphans. Many notable matters happened in his time, as the translating of the pontificall seate from Rome to Aninion, the subuersion of the Knights called Templars, the beginning of the house of the Ottomans in Turkey, and many other things worth the reading. He died infortunately through the conspiracie of a nephew of his who slew him neere to the Rhine, in the tenth yeere of bis raigne.



S the chiefe right to kingdomes and empires many times confisteth in armes, so ALEBRT (who was(as it hath been often recited) some of the Emperour R o DV LPH. Duke of Austrich, and Lord of other estates) remaining victor: and the Emperour ADVLPH (who was his riuall) being dead, he finding no man in field to make head against him, remained sole Emperour. But forasmuch as his election was made in the time of the Emperour Advirt, in discord,

(many contradicting the same) he sought to legitimate and assure his estate. For which Albert Duke of fecond time chofen Empe-

of France by

bis censures,

and gave his

the Emperour

which cause (accompanied with many princes) he went to the city of Franchsord. where in presence of the princes electors, her renouncing his first election. and holding the empire for voide, was the fecond time by common confert chosen Emperour : and from thence went to Aker to be crowned, together with his wife Isabet, daughter of the Earle of Tirel, and of Carinthia, by whom he had many children, whose brother married ALBERTS fifter. Which coronation was perfourmed with fo great folemnitie, and fo many repaired thither to fee the fame, that vpon the coronation day, there was fo great a throng and prease of people; that the Duke of Saxony (who married another of the Emperours fifters) and many others were imothered to death, without that any man could refere them : which was a great diffgrace to the feast. After this coronation, a Diet or Councel was held in Novembergh, wherein he tooke order for such matters as anpertained to the empire; and thence fending his Ambassadours to Pope Bons FACE, gaue him to vinderstand of his election, and entreated him to confirme the fame: which the pope at that time would not graunt, but like a proud priest (as it is written)answered. That he was ill worthie the empire, which had murthered the Emperour. But hee shortly after confirmed him: for as this pope was a man of an high minde and prefumptuous, so vpon some occasion which happened (which I have no time to recount) he fell at fuch oddes with PHILIP the French king that the king apprehended a Bithop which was his Amballadour: and such other matters passed betweenethem, that the Pope summoned a Councell, to the end to proceed against the king of France; who would not permit any his subjects to sue to the court of Rome, neither to carrie or fend any rents or mibutes to the fame. Whereupon the pope to the end to viethe Emperous aide against the French king very willingly confirmed his election and inciting him to proclaime himselfe king of France, promised to deprine the king and to pine The Pope de printed the kingdome : about which matters were many treaties, and in the endthe Pope denounced sentence against the French king: whereby he deprined him of his kingdome, and gaue the same to the Emperour. Herein is great difference betweene the Historiographers, for they report this after fundrie manners. But the truth is, that the Emperour was the kings friend, and had married his eldeft some RODV LPH, whom he had made Duke of Austrich, to the kings daughter BLANCH: for which cause, or for some other, for many are alleaged, he accepted not the title to the crowne of France; but was contented with his confirmation in the empire; wherein (following his fathers counsell) he raigned in prosperitie, without any defire to goe into Italy; and so never went thither. The enmitte betweene the pope and the king so much encreased, that the king deadly hating the pope, practifed with a Nobleman of Rome, whole name was SARRA, of the house and familie of the Colvunois (who was Lord of many townes and caffles, and was of the faction of the Gibelins) whom the pope had banished: for which cause he made his aboad in France, and was highly favoured in the French court. The conclusion was, that this Lord should apprehend the popes which he undertooke, ving fuch meanes as you shall heare. This Lord SARRA COLVMNA having many friends of the faction of the Gibelins in Alania, where the pope was then relident(for it was his native countrie)departed France disguised, having first agreed with a captaine called Nog ARECT o, to put himself with two hundred souldiers into a place which hee had appointed; and he himselfe went into Alania, where having secret conference with his friends, he shewed them the French Kings letters and fauours: and so well carried the matter, that upon a day he affaulted the

popes palace, and tooke him prisoner, and presently tooke his way with him to- Pape Bourface wards Rome; which he entred with the aide of the Gibelins, and of his owne familie of the Colymnois which lived therein. But the pope within five and thirtie daies after died, having been pope the space of eight yeeres and nine moneths; which was in the yeer of our Lord 1302. In this manner ended the high thoughts of pope Boniface, who wrote the fixth booke of the Decretals. What the Lord Sarra meant to have done with him, is vnknowne; yet it is written that he purposed to have carried him into France, which he then could not, or durst not put in execution. After that BONIFACE was dead, NICHOLAS Cardinall of Ho-This was chosen and was called BENEDICT the eleventh, who was borne in Treuizi, and was a Dominicane Frier.

Whilest these matters passed in Italy and in France, ALBERT raigned prosperoufly in Germany: but in Hungary were great warres about the title to that kingdome for ANDREVV their King dying without iffue VENCES LAY'S fonne to the King of Bohemia, aspired to the kingdome: and afterwards. O THO Duke of Bawiere, against CHARLES sonne of the King of Naples, but in the end CHARLES. was King : and VENCESLAVS inherited Bohemia, which was his fathers inheritance, who was of the fame name: but he proued to be so wicked (not with standing that he was but a young man) that his subjects conspiring against him, slew him in a citie of Morania: and forafmuch as he also had no issue, the like controuersie arose in Bohemia, as was in Hungary: notwithstanding that he left a sister whose name was I s ABE L: which the Emperour ALBERT vnderstanding, resolued to procure her for his sonne R ODV LPH, by reason of a certaine conenant and agreement made betweene the houses of Austrich and of Bohemia; which was. that the one wanting heires, the heires of the other should succeed in the estate. But the greatest part of the Bohemians determined to chuse a Lord of their owne nation for their King, whole name was HENRY, and was Earle of Carinthia and of Tirol, and was the Emperors brother in law: neuerthelesse there was ener ill will and discord between them; and HRNRY defiring to raigne, with out any intermission hasted into Bohemia, and there was received and obeyed for King : but the Emperor presently leaving an army entred the countrie with so great power, that HENRY durst not abide his comming: and put his sonneR odv LPH in posfession(who was a widower, having buried the French kings daughter) and the better to affure him, and to make him the more acceptable to the Bohemians, married him to the widow I s A BE L late wife of King V ENCESLAVS deceased: which tooke such effect, that he was presently obeyed by all men, and began to raigne in peace. But it pleased not God that he should long hold that kingdome, for within few moneths after, when hee was freed from all his enemies, hee died fuddenly, in the yeere of our Lord 1306. By reason whereof, the old discord and The death of contention was renewed, fome defiring to have the desposed HENRY Earle of the king of Bo-Carimbia; and others would have FREDERICK, the Emperors second sonne to be their King. But the Earle HENRIES partie being the stronger, he was receiued and established in the kingdome: which the Bohemians did so willingly that the Emperour (within few daies after) comming thither in person with a mightie armie, to have preferred his son FREDERICK, they all so resolutely served their new King that after much harme done in the countrie, the Emperour was faine to returne without effecting what he came for seeing how constantly the Bohemians stood to their defence. In which warres and others which he first had with the Emperour ADVLPH, and other Princes, it is writen, that hee fought in person

moned his feate from Rame to Auinion in France.

The beginning of the Turkill Empire, anno 1307.

twelve feuerall times, and in them all had the victory, and therefore was called ALBERTYS TRIVMPHANS. In the time of this Emperour ALBERT, Pope CLEMENT the fifth leaving three Cardinals to gouerne Rome, removed his feare from thence to Aumien in France, wherein he and his fuccessors made their aboad for the space of seventie and odde yeeres, whereof ensued many inconveniences. In the beginning of the Emperor ALBERT'S raigne, in Afathe leffe, began the Empire and dominion of the great Turke, which is now fo mightie and foredoubted; the head and founder of which Empire was one OTTOMAN, of the fame nation, a man of base parentage, but of a high minde, and very politike, who of a finall beginning, grew to be fo mightie, and brought fo many nations to his feruice and fubication, that hee conquered many countries, and made himfelfe 2 King, and laid the foundation of that Empire, which his fucceffors have from time to time enlarged, and brought to that estate wherein we see it at this day; and from him is descended in line masculine, from the father to the sonne the great Turke now raigning in the yeere of our Lord 1604.

The Knights of the Rhodes.

In the tenth veere of the Emperor A LBERTS raigne, which was in the veere 1307, the Knights of the order of S.I o HNS tooke the Ile of Rhodes from the Infidels, where they made their feate and principall refidence, and therefore were afterwards called Knights of the Rhodes; and performed many marueiles in armes. both by fea and land, vntill (in our time) that Iland was taken by SOLIMAN the great Turke, who conquered the fame. In the time of the Emperour A LBERTAL fo in Lumbardy neere vnto Neuarra, began a fect of Heretikes, which under colour of religion, and of charitie, made all things common: and women in like manner moued men to carnall conjunction, alleaging it to be a deed of charitie; and did many other things: this error dispersed it selfe into fundrie parts, and many thoufands of people followed the fame. But the pope and other princes vied fuch diligence in punishing these Heretikes, that in the end it was suppressed yet not without great difficultie.

of the Cantons of the Swiffers.

The order of

dinia taken by the Moores.

In the time of the Emperour ALBERTS raigne, the Heluccians (now called Swiffers)began to be famous; all which toyning together made a league to en-The beginning framehile themselues, and to defend their libertie, and governed and ruled their flate by their Heads or Cantons; which they have maintained vntill this day, and haue done many fingular feates of armes against the Dukes of Austrich, and other princes; and from that time hitherto haue been accounted for a very valiant nation. Towards the end of this Emperours raigne, Pope CLEMENT, by the counfell and consent of the king of France, diffolued the whole order of the Knights Templars, and condemning their bodies, confisked their goods, which were fuch and of so great value through all Christendome, that what was taken from them, and of fo great value through all Christendome, that what was taken from them, Templars diff. was sufficient to haue enriched many princes, and the other orders of Knights, followand core wherever they were applied. It is in the control of the co whereto they were applied. In his time also Sardinia was taken by the Moores, which Iland pope CLEMENT bestowed upon the king of Sicilia, to the end that he The He of Sar- should recouer the same. About the end of the tenth yeere of this Emperours raigne, he having levied great forces, therewith to have gone into Behemia, with an intent to have made his fon FREDERICK king thereof, wherein then raigned HENRY Earle of Carinthia; a nephew of his, being his brother Rodylpis fonne, whose name was I on N, through secret hatred which he conceived against him, for not giving him any livelihood or estate (he withholding from him in Sucuia, what to him by inheritance from his father appertained) resoluted to kill him: and vpon this occasion, conspiring with other Barons, which were Rodviph, Vi-

RICHARD WALTER, vpon a day in the moneth of Aprill, in the yeere 1208, the Anno Down, Emperour being in a place in Austrich, purposing the next day to have passed the 1308. river Rhine; hee after dinner, for his pleasure taking horse, and riding over the ploughed fields betweene two little rivers, called Rifa, and Arula, neere to the Rhine, accompanied onely by these conspirators, which were his inward familiers: his nephew I OHN with his confederates, and others which followed him for the same purpose, getting before him; RODVIPH laid hand vpon his horses bridle; his nephew I O HN stabd him in the throte; and V LRICH with a blow claue his head, and the rest wounded him, some with stroakes, some with thrusts, fo that hee was foone flaine: and the murtherers fetting spurres to their horses. left the miserable Emperour dead in the place, in which, his sonne the Duke of Austrich afterwards builded a stately Monasterie : his bodie was carried to Spire, The death of The conspirators were sought out by his sonnes, and the most of them found and Albert the first but to death. This death was reputed to happen in this manner vnto him through murthered by the iust iudgement of God, for killing his predecessor the Emperour A DV LPH: his nephew. the truth is knowne to God onely, who ordreth all things according to his good pleasure: all that I can say is that the highest estates are in least safetie, and most Subject to daunger, both bodily and ghostly: what appertaineth to the soule is hard to be proued for that it is fecret, whereof God onely can judge : but as it appeareth, in great estates the occasion and libertie to sinne, maketh the matter the more doubtfull, and mens weakenes is alike as well in the great as in the fmall: which is an argument of the greater daunger; as our Sauiour Christ plainly expreffeth in the Gospell, wherein hee sheweth how hardly rich men inherit the kingdome of heaven: wherefore great princes ought to be circumfpect concerning bodily daungers. I will not wearie the reader with other examples, those shall suffise which I have written of the Emperours, on which (as I have before declared)there is no kind of death in the world, that hath not befalne them: And to the contrarie, in many meane estates, we find not any that in many yeres space. have died of a violent death, but that the greatest part of men of meane fortune have died naturally: but pride and ambition doe so blind mens eyes, that what is most hatefull is most desired; and wee euer seeke to attaine vnto that, wherein is greatest danger: yet some have been of so perfect understanding that they would not accept; but have refused empires and dominions, when they have been offeredthem, although their number was but small. But returning to the Emperour ALBERT, I say that he had by ELIZABETH his wife one and twentie children. fonnes and daughters, whereof tenne died in their infancie: and his eldest fonne RODVLPH died in his time king of Bohemia; fo as when the Emperour ALBERT died, he left five fonnes, and as many daughters: his daughters names were E LI-ZABETH, ANNE, GVTTA, KATHARINE and INES, all which were married to fundrie princes: his fonnes names were FREDERICK, LEOPOLD, HENRY, AL-BERTand OTHO, which OTHO married the Duchesse of Basiere; all which after the Germane manner) were called Dukes of Austrich, which causeth a great confusion in the histories; but the house of Austrich rested in ALBERT, who (for that he had the gowt) was called the lame, and was the stocke and original of

the house of Austrich, from whom are descended his successors. Atwhattime as the Emperor ALBERT was flaine, ANDRONICVS was Emperour of Constantinople, of whom I finde little written, and therefore make no particular relation of him.

Pope CLEMENT the fifth making his aboad in Auinion, gouerned Rome and SII 3

his estates of Italy, by his Legates; by reason whereof, and of the Emperours long absence, many cities in Italy tooke for their Lords, the heads and leaders of their factions (which prevailed in them) which they possessed a long time, and to this day some remaine, which of tyrants, have in processe of time made themselves absolute Lords; as in Verona, those of the house of Scala; in Ferrara, the house of ESTE extending it selfe afterwards to Modena, whose descendents at this day enjoy that estate; in Padoa those of CARRARA; in Mantoa the PASSER INIWERE expelled by the GONZAGHI, which afterwards were, and to this day are, great Lords: and others in other parts.

## THE LIFE OF HENRIE THE SEVENTH OF THAT

NAME, AND CVI. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

The Emy being chosen by the Electors was confirmed by the Pope, with an iniunction that he should come into Italy, by reason of much discord which was therein, the French King was greatly displeased with his election, for that he pretended to have been Emperour. The first enterprise that he tooke in handwas against the king of Bohemia, and against the Earle of Wittembergh, against both which he had good successe, he came afterwards into Italy as well to fatisfie the Pope as to visite the countries under his jurisdiction baning past the Alpes he found no great resistance by reason of the factions in Rome, where he was crowned with more sadnes then reioycing the citie being divided betweene the Colonness and the Vrsini, which daily fought together, the Florentines would not yeeld unto him nor lose their libertie, and having endured a long siege, in conclusion they defended themselves branely, so as the Emperour channging his minde went to the conquest of Naples, and while he made preparation for the same he was poy soned, and died in Ruon Connento, leaving Italy in greater trouble then before. He raigned seven yeeres.

Ruly I coniecture that in writing the life of the Emperor ALBERT, I have made too long a digression, by reason of the recitall of other matters which happened in his time: but yet neuertheleffe I did it, for that I was

briefe in writing his life holding it necessarie, to the end that the rest may be the better vnderstood and to explaine what is alreadie faid : and also for that the accidents were notable, it was not fit to passe them ouer in silence. The Emperour ALBERT being flaine through the treaton of his nephew I OHN, and his death being enery where published, his fonnes fought reuenge, and to get his goods and estates, and some of them to have the empire. The princes Electors to make choice of a new Emperour, reduced themselves (according to their custome) to the citie of Franckford: and PHILIP the French king, fo soone as he understood of the Emperours decease, having a conceit to have been Emperour, sought (by money and large promises) to get the Electors voyces: and for as much as Pope CLEMENT held his court within his dominion (which was in Auinion) he fought by meanes of his authoritie to obtaine the same, and to that effect fent to him his brother Charles of Valois (although vnder another pretence) accompanied with many men of warre, to the end that no man should dare counsell the Pope to the contrarie. The pope being fecretly aduertised of his purpose(and being together with the greatest part of his Cardinals of opinion, that if the French king were Emperour, he would by that meane make himselfe Lord of all Italy, and so his patrimonie should be oppressed, and brought to subjection, and that many other inconveniences would have enfued) by his letters and Bals enjoyeed the Electors. presently without any delay to chuse an Emperour, such a one as should be most fit for the state and common good, and they knowing his mind(notwithstanding that they were folicited and viged to the contrarie by the French king) by common consent chose HENRY Earle of Lut Zenburgh; vpon the first day of Nouem-Henry Earlest ber in the yeare of our Lord 1308 : whereto his brother BALD VV IN, Bishop of Lutzenburgh Treuer, and one of the Electors did greatly affift him. So soone as his election was chosen Emperor published and understood by the French king, he was extremely wroth (for he affured himselfe to have been Emperour) and much more after that he understood that the Pope had haftened the Electors, and had authorised them to make the election; for which, afterwards enfued fome discord between them. The new chosen Emperour, well accompanied, went to the citie of Aken, where with great folemnitie he was crowned; and thence fent his Ambassadours to the Pope, entreating him to confirme his election, which the Pope gladly perfourmed, injuyning him within the terme of two yeeres to come to Rome, there to be crowned by his Legates. This the Pope did to the end that the Emperour should have fought to make peace in Italy, for therein were then many factions and tyrannies. HENRY accepting these conditions, resoluted to come into Italy, and began to prouide for his journey, which neither RODVLPH, ADVLPH, nor ALBERT, his predecessors would doe; and to this effect called a Councell to be held in Spire, whither came (in a manner) all the princes. At the fame time new cares and troubles arose, besides his journey for Italy: the first was, that understanding that HENRY Earle of Carinthia, was king of Bohemia, and that the same Earle was in possession of the kingdome, the new Emperor (wanting none to incite him thereto)refolued to depose the faid Earle, and to make one of his owne sonnes king: whereupon hee caused the daughter of Wenceslavs king of Bohemia, and of the Emperour RODV LPH's fifter, to be brought to Spire, and notwithstanding that the was foure yeeres elder then his fonne I o HN, yet he married him vnto her, and with this title leuied an armie and fent him to the conquest of Bohemia, whither he was folicited to come by many of that kingdome. At the fame time also a secondoccation of care was offered, which was, to leuie an armie and to fend the

fame against EBERARD Earle of Wittembergh, who being discontent with HEN-RIBS election refused to come to his obedience, and being countenanced by the French king, tooke many townes in the empire. The enterprise of Bolomia had good fuccesse for the faid Earle having (as writeth Hanatevs Mucivs)raised a power to fight with the Emperour; and the two armies being encamped the one neere to the other betweene them many notable skirmifhes were mainrai. nedsbut in the end the Earle of Carinthia, who was called king, was conftrained to retire, and the Emperours sonne assaulted the citie of Prage, which is the head of that kingdome, and taking the same, was therein crowned by Paran the Archbishop of Mentz; and his power presently so much encreased, that the Earle of Carinthia abandoning the kingdome, went home into his owne countrey; and the Emperors sonne I OHN remained king of Bohemia. If he sped well in Bohemia. the armie had no leffe good fortune, which he fent against E BERARD Earle of Wittembergh, for the greatest part of his castles were taken, which (as saith NAV-CLERVS) were fourescore; and in the end he himselfe in the best manner that he could, was constrained to compound, not without great losse of his estate; which

he after the Emperours death againe recouered. During the time of these troubles, the Emperour forgat not within the time limited by the Pope, to prepare for his journey into Italy: Wherein, when his comming was certainly knowne, it caused so great feare, as though it had been a matter the like whereof had neuer been seene; for threescore yeeres were now expired fince that any Emperour had bin there, even from the time that FREDERICK the second died therein, who also was King of Naples: that time being spent in contention and discord in the Empire, by reason of the death of the faid Fas-DERICK: and afterwards in the time of the Emperous ADVLPH, and AL BERT, neither of them would ever come into Italy. The Emperour HENRY being in a readines to march with his armie, first fent his Ambassadours to the cities in Italy, and to their Gouernours, giving them to vinderstand of his comming, and of his armie; exhorting them to peace, and to lay downe their weapons, for to that purpose hee principally addressed his journey into that comtrey; and he further required them to receive him and his army into their townes and cities. His Ambassadours were very honorably received, and answered generally by them all: for as there were many factions and parcialities, each partie defired to winne the Emperours fauour: onely the Florentines holding themselues for free (hauing bought their libertie of the Emperor Rod v LP Hand being then very mightie, and having at that time made a league with ROBERTKing of Neples, and lying then encamped before Arezzo) answered the Emperor that they times an verere marueiled, that so wise a Prince as he was would come into Italy with so great a to the Emperor number of barbarous people, as it was faid he brought with him, feeing that the Emperours office and dutie was to take care to cleere and purge that countrie of barbarous nations, and not to bring them thither. And whereas he faid that they should leave to war against the Arctines; they answered, that that also was against his Imperiall office, for it was his part to right wrongs, and to redreffe iniuries: and whereas those of Arezzo had banished the Guelphes from their houses, her ought to command them to be reftored: and as for receiving him into their citie, they would be aduised and consider what ought to be done, and in time would answere him accordingly. The Emperor took this answere in very ill part: B 1 0 N-BVS, PLATINA, and others write, that DANTE an excellent learned Poet in that time, understanding of his country mens answere in his absence, said, that the Flo-

The Floren-

752

The Emperour

Henry made

his fonne Iohn

king of Bobe-

rentines were blind and faw not the present estate, seeing they had given such an anfwere.

HENRY THE SEVENTH.

The Emperour having past the Alpes, the Earle of Sanoy, and the Marquis of Monferrate came to receive him, and came with him to the citie of Turin; wherein he and his wife the Empresse were quietly received: with him also came R o-DV LPH Duke of Bauiere, and LEOPOLD sonne of the Emperour ALBERT, who (as were his brothers FREDERICK, ALBERT, and HENRY) was called Duke of Austrich: and the Archbishop of Trevier with other Princes, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1312. At that time Pope CLEMENT called a generall Councell to be held in the citie of Vienne in France, whither came three hundred Bithops, befides many other prelates, wherein the Begardes were condemned for heretikes. From Turin the Emperour came to Afte, whither came to him some Henries comprincipall heads and Lords of cities, offring him their feruice and to receive him ming sino Italy into their gouernments. And so came to him PHILIP which was called Earle of Paula; SIMON COLLYVIANO of Bercelli; ANTHONY VISERAGO from Lodi: to all which cities, and to Turin and Aste, the Emperour sent his Lieutenants to rule in his steed: which were received.

From Afte he went to Milan (the head and strength of all Lombardy) wherein were two houses and factions of great power: vi7. the Vicecomites or Vicounts. from which descended the Dukes of Milan; and the Turriones which were of the faction of the Guelphes; and as these two were then of chiefest authoritie, so they fought to let the Emperours comming into their citie: fo as there was a greatstirre about the matter: but either party fearing that their aduersaries would ioyne with the Emperour, they both received him into Milan, and he made many of the Viscounts which were expelled by the Turriones, to come in with him: and the Emperour to content both parties, and to make them friends; to Gv ID o TVRRIO gave the citie of Bercelli; and made GALRAZZO Viscount, his Constable of the citie; and left LEOPOLD of Austrich with certaine companies of Germanes to keepe the citie in peace. The other cities of Lombardy understanding that the Emperour was possessed of Milan, sent their solicitors vnto him to offer him their obedience, and received fuch Lieutenants as he fent them, and fo did those of the contrarie faction, excepting Alexandria and those which were further off, as Padoa, Ferrara, and Bolonia, which being of the faction of the Guelphes, and in league with the Florentines, sent not to him. The Emperour within few daies after was crowned with the iron Crowne in Milan, which was wont to be done in Mon (a, for which and for other occasions, a certaine contribution of money was leuied in the citie(as they thought which paid it)too exceffine: by reason whereof and of the Germanes ill behaviour, the people murmuring, tooke armes against the Imperialists and fought with them; and the Emperour fending for his fouldiers into the citie, GALEAZZO Viscount, head of that faction, vsed a notable (though doubtful and daungerous) stratagem; which was, that he leaving his father in his house, together with the greatest part of his adherents, went to LEOPOLD of Austrich (who was with the Imperialists) and told him that GVIDO TVRRIO and his abbettors had caused that tumult, to the end to make themselves Lords of the citie, as they alreadie were: but as for him and his friends, they were still readie to doe the Emperour service in ought they should be commaunded. It was an easie matter to perswade him, which had all men in fuspition, to give credit hereto, and fo L R O P O LD and the Imperialists ioyning with Galaazzo, set vpon Gvido and the Turriones, which suspected no such The Turriones driven out of Mılan.

754

matter.(yet armed and in order, expecting the iffue of that tumult) and wounding and killing many of them, draue them from the place which they had taken : and GVIDO TVRRIO furmifing what the matter might be (feeing the Imperialists iovned with his aduerfaries against him) abandoned the citie, and in the best manner that he could, with the greatest part of his faction, retired to the citie of Bercelli: in this manner were the Turriones (which were of the faction of the Guelphes) driven out of Milan: wherefore to foone as this was knowne, fome other cities which were of that faction, for looke the Emperours feruice, amongst which were Crema, and Cremona, which presently by force of armes thrust out the Emperours Lieutenants, together with the faction of the Gibelins: the like was also done in Brescia and in Parma. The Emperour leaving Milan vnder the gouernment and guard of the Viscounts, which (as he thought) had done him loyall feruice, marched with his armie against Crema and Cremona: but so soone as those of Cremona ynderstood that he was entred their confines, without making any refistance they submitted, and yeelded themselues and their citie, and the Emperour received them to mercie. But those of Grema suffering themselves to be besieged, were taken by force, and had the walles of their citie rased and dismantelled, and the Emperour otherwise punished them for an example: whereupon Parma fearing the like, fued to him for pardon. But the Brescians trusting in the strength of their citieschose rather to hazard themselues like those of Crema, then to follow the example of Cremona, and fo had the like lot: and the Emperor befieged them along time, and many men were flaine of both the befiegers and the befieged, but in the end the citie was rendred to the Emperour; who commaunded their gates and the most of their Bulwarkes to be thrownedowne. By these two iour neys the Emperour wanne fo great reputation, that the cities of Verona, VicenZa, Padoa and Trenigi, sent their Ambailadors; and entreating for peace, offered him their feruice, and to receive any garrison that he should send them. His Ambasiadours also which he had fent to Venice, now returned, certifying him that the Venecians were willing to do what he required of them, which was, to furnish him with (hipping to conucy his armie (if he pleased) to Rome.

The Emperour having taken order for the affaires of Lombardy, defired to fee the citie of Genoa, and being there his wife the Emperesse fell sicke and died; and thither came to him Ambassadours from ROBERT king of Naples, and from FRE-DERICK king of Sicilia; both to defire peace and his friendship: but the request of the king of Naples was held for fained, for that hee maintained two thousand horse in Tuscane, in the behalfe of Florentines and Lucanois which pleading libertie rebelled against him; and to the end also to relieue Bolonia and Ferrara if need required. The Emperor dispatched them, some with fained, and others with vnfained kind speeches of loue and good will, according to their ambassades; and within few daies after departed from Genea by fea, and fent his armie by land, which making great spoyle in the territorie of Luca, came to Pifa, a citie at that time very friendly and much denoted to the Emperours seruice, wherein hee was received with greatioy, and continued therein aboue two moneths. There hee was ascertained of the estate of Rome, and how that therein were great factions and hurly burlies, fome defiring his comming, and others feeking to hinder the fame. Those which sought to let his comming were the Lord I on, brother to theking of Naples, which came thither with men of warre, and with him came all the faction of the Vrsins, and were seised of the Castle S. Angelo, the Capitoll, the Vaticane, and other Holds, and all Rome ouer Tiber: against whom the Colonnois and their faction held the rest of the citie; betweene which was daily skirmishing and manslaughter of either side: for which Pope C LEMENT, by whose counsell and instigation the Emperour came into Italy, was much blamed : for it appeared that where he thought to have established peace, he kindled warre.

The Emperour departing from Pifa towards Rome, and (for that he would not be pestered with the Florentines) taking his way neere to the sea side, sent the Earle of Saury before with part of his horse troupes: finally, after some daies stav in Viterbo he came to Rome, where by the Cardinals Legates, and the Colonnois. he was received with great folemnitie: the Kings brother of Naples together with the whole faction of the Vriins having fortified themselves in such places as they had taken. The Emperour being entred Rome, how long he remained there, and what befell him therein, is not diffinctly written: some say that he staied there three moneths, in all which time were daily skirmishings, the King of Naples sending galleys and fouldiers vp the river Tiber to relieve his brother, which with the Vrsins, held the Vaticane, & the Castle S. Angelo: and that the coronation was deferred vntill they might fend to the Pope to appoint the place wherein it should be solemnized, for it could not be done in S.P ETER's Church (for that was held by the enemie) and that the Pope was in doubt to give order for the Emperors coronation, for that many of his friends and feruants were of a contrary opi- The Emperour nion. Others fet leffe time, and write not that the Pope stood in any such doubt: crowned in but they all agree that the Emperour (for that he could not get into S. PETERS Church) was crowned by the three Cardinals which were the Popes Lieutenants in Rome, in S. IOHN DE LATRAN; and that fo long as he was there, his people daily fought with the Neapolitans and Vrsins, not only in the streetes but even in the houses also wherein they dwelt: in time of which skirmishings he departed Rome. The Emperour being highly displeased with ROEERT King of Naples, leaning Rome Wet to Arezzo, which being at his denotion was enemie to the Florentines and Lucanois; whither all the Gibelins which were expelled Florence, Luca, Siena, and others cities in Tuscane, repared vnto him, and fro thence he went to besiege Florence, in which siege many notable matters passed: but the citie was with Florence betheir owne people (together with the Sienois and Lucanois which came to their feetd. aide) so well fortified and garrisoned, that it sufficiently defended it selfe: whereupon the Emperour having lien a moneth and halfe before it, raifed his fiege, hauing first builded a fortresse in a mountaine neere to the citie, wherein, and in other Castles and places of greatest importance, he left munition and garrisons daily to ouerrunne the fields of the Florentines, and to make warre vpon them; and so marching vo and downe their countrey for the space of two moneths, in the endhe went to Pifa, where vsing more then ordinarie authoritie of an Emperor, he summoned ROBERT King of Naples to make his appearance before him. as before his Emperour and foueraigne Lord, and to answere to such matters The Emperour as should be objected against him, for that he meant to proceed against him, and simmoned the to make him, for fuch matters as he had attempted and done against him, aswell to appear bein Rome, as in other parts of Italy, to be indited of treason. But King Robert fore him in making no account of these summons; the Emperour (lying at the siege of Flo-Pifarence) procured FREDERICK King of Sicilia (with whose sonne hee purposed to marry his daughter) to make warre against him in Pulia: which FREDERICK putting in execution rigged vp a fleet, wherein he fent great forces, which began the warre. And in the meane time the Emperour left not to profecute the warre against the Florentines & the other cities of their parcialitie; and the Florentines

feeing in what diffresse they were, and searing that the Emperour would the next Spring in person againe returne to the warre against them, sent to yeeld themfelues fubiest to the King of Naples (referuing certain preheminences and exemptions) your condition that he in person, or some other either his sonne or his brother should come to relieue them. The Emperour having many daies made his aboad in Pifa, in the middest of sommer (as writeth S. ANTHONY) departed thence very ill at ease; and passing through the territory of Siena (wherein he did much harme) he went to the citie of Are 370; whither being come, and the time limited to the King of Naples expired he pronounced sentence against him, wherby he deprined him of his kingdome of Naples, and released his subjects from the homage and alleageance which they ought him; and gaue authoritie to his enemie FREDERICK king of Sicilia, to make a conquest thereof for his sonne, and fonne in law, which should be, to the Emperour: which sentence, so soone as Pope CEEMENT vnderstood, he presently protested the same to be of no effect, alleaging that the Emperour neither could, or had any authoritie to condemne King ROBERT; for that kingdome was neither subject nor feudatorie to any but to the Church of Rome; and made other protestations contained in the Clementines, in the chapter, Pafloralis de Senteniia & re Indicata, and made other protestations contained in that chapter. The Emperour departing from Arezzo, with a determination to have belieged Siena, imagining that the Florentines seeing themselves on every side oppressed, would have come to some composition: and being by the way aduertifed, that in Naples and in other parts of that kingdom after the publication of his fentence pronounced against the king, were some Commotions and Infurrections against him: he thereupon with a desire to have been revenged of king ROBERT, and to have made a conquest of that kingdome. resolved to goe thither with all his whole power; and comming within three miles of Siena, he lodged his armie in a place called Monte aperto, where feeling himselfe ill at ease, he (by the aduice of his Phisitions) went thence to the Bathes of Macerata, and thence (feeling no amendement) went to Buoncouento, directing his journey towards Naples, you which hee had fetled his thoughts: all which, together with his other defeignes were abridged by his death, which through his infirmitie ouertooke him in the fame place; which happened vpon the day of the Assumption of our Lady, he having the same day received the holie Sacrament of our Lords Supper; wherein (as some say) he was poyloned by a Frier of the order of S.Dominic K, and died thereof the fame day: which was fo wicked and so odible a fact, that a man would thinke that no Christian would have committed, much leffe a religious man. The fame Historians write, that the Pope vnderstanding that a religious man was accused thereof, wrote his letters and Buls by which he published him for innocent and not guiltie. This Emperour died in the yeere of our Lord 1313 in the feuenth yeer of his raigne. Most authors which write of him, fay, that he was a louer of inflice and equity, of a pleafing convertatiuently who was on amiable, valorous, expert in the wars, of an honest life, a deuout Christian and possioned in the one that feared God: yet B 1 0 N D V s noteth him of imprudence, and couctousness. Help by a Frier. He had by his wife the Emperesse one son and three daughters this sonnes name was I OHN, whom he had alreadic made king of Bohemia, and was likewise by inheritance from his father Duke of LutZenburgh. The eldest of his daughters called BEATRICE Was maried to CHARLES king of Hungary, brother to ROBERT king of Naples, which within one yeere died in childbed: the second was MARY, and Was married to CHARLE sking of France, which also died in childbed: the third

The death of Henry the fewas married to R ODVLPH County Palatine of Rhine. His body was carried to to Pile, and there with great duile folemnely entombed. The Emperour being dead, there enfued a great alteration in all Italy, his army was dispersed and came to nothing: and great and cruell warres enfued betweene the Florentines and Pilans.

There is so little written of the Emperours of Constantinople in these times, that it it is hard to accord one history with another: what I can gather out of the authorsis, that the Emperour Andronicus of whom we have before made mention, by reason of his great age made his some MICHARL his companion in the Empire, who prefently dyed, and left one fonne called ANDRONICVS. after his Grandfather, who rebelling against the old Andronicvs, after fixe yeares warre bereaued him of the Empire; leaving him his life, and the title of Emperor. This Andronicus was called the younger, and was a great warrior. and very valiant. He that will know more of this Emperour, let him reade GEORGEMERYLA in his feuenth and eight bookes of the historic of Milan, and LEONARD ARET IN in his tourth booke of his historie of Florence.

## THE LIFE OF LEWES THE FIFTH OF THAT NAME.

AND CVII. ROMANE EMPEROVR: AND OF HIS COMPETITOR

FREDERICK.



THE ARGVMENT.

Enry being dead and long time foent before the Princes electors did meet, in the end Ithey were divided, and chose two Emperours, and each endenoused to defend and mainframe their partie by armes. They both were Crowned, and all Germany was devided into two fallions: Frederick was fanored by the Pope, yet he would not confirme any of them. This diussion encreased the troubles in Italy, wherein were long and cruell warres, and no lesse in Germany betweene the two Emperours, which fought a battaile which continued twelve houres, it the end whereof Lewes had the victory, and Frederick was taken prisoner. Lewes being sole Emperour

warred against the Pope, by who be was excommunicate: whereupon he was constrayed to set Frederick at libertie; who together with his brother Loopold dyed shortly after. So as he remayned without any ryuall, and without suspition, but not without griefe, for that he was constrayned to come ento Italy, called thither by those of his faction, wherein ensued many Innovations, by reason of the fallions of the Guelphes & Gibelins. After many accidens be came to Rome where he was crowned by Stephen Colonna, having an intent to have gone to Naples against his enemy Robert. Vpon certaine occasions he made a new Pope in Rome by whom be was absolued, which the other Pope in France understanding, againe excommunicated him with greater vehemencie; and the new Pope after the returne of the Empererour into Germany, fell into the old Popes hand, and this Emperor could never agree with the Popes, neither could be absoluted from the Popes curse, so much were they incensed against him. And so the electors fearing the Popes fulminations chose another Emperour, which was the occasion that Germany was againe dinided. So as this Emperours raigne was in the beginning and ending after one manner : and he in thefe troubles, onercome with griefe, dyed suddainly, when he had raigned in company and alone three and thirtie yeares.



758

Fire the decease of the Emperour Hanny (who dyed in Buon-connento and was buried in Pisa) the Princes of Germany which were with him, returned home with fome part of his army, for the most of his souldiers remay ned in Italy to get pay and enter-tainment in the warres, which therein were alreadie begun, and as it seemed would neuer haue beene ended; the rest were dis-

perfedinto fundry partes. But it was one whole yeare after his decease before the electors chose him any successor, by reason that it was long before they met, and also for that they could not agree in their election; so as (the Empire being without an head) there was in all things a great confusion, and the worst of all was, that in all their treaties and negociations, they could neuer agree (as reason required) but were still more discrepant and divided: and they at length meeting it feemeth that the most of them made choyce of FREDERICK Duke of Austrich: for HENRY the Archbishop of Colen, ALBERT Duke of Saxony, and VALDE-MAR Marquis of Brandenburgh, although absent by his Agent, tooke his part;all which were his coufins germans and his Fathers fifters fonnes, and Nephewes of the Emperour RODVLPH; and RODVLPH Duke of Bauier and County Palatine of Rhine, had promifed him his voyce : but I o HN king of Bohemia, PETER. Archbishop of Mentz, and BALDVVIN Archbishop of Treuier, were so contrary Vnto him, that thinking to get the voyce of Rodvier Duke of Banier and County Palatine on their fide, (procuring also the voyce of the Marquis of Brandenburghs deputy to that effect) they resolved by all meanes possible to make the said Lavvas Emperour: and either party was so obstinate in their determination; that making their election with the accustomed solemnities, upon Saint Lukus day, which was in the yeare of our Lord 1314, in fleed of one Emperour, they chose two: for the king of Bohemia, the Archbishops of Trenier and of Ment?, and NICHOLAS DE BOOC (who was deputy for the Marquis of Brandenburgh) chose LEVVES Duke of Bautere: And the Archbishop of Colen, the Duke of Saxony, and RODVLPH County Palatine of Rhine and Duke of Baniere, to hold his word, (notwithstanding that Levves was his owne Brother) chose Frederick of fin Emperors by Austrich; and so there was a division in the election; and either party affirmed the Elections. that he whom they had chosen, was and ought to be Emperour. LEVVES his party alleaged him to be chosen by most voyces, for of seuen he had fower. F R B-DERICK and his friends alleaged that the Marquis of Brandenburghs proctor had falcified his authority, who bringing in writing by the hand of the Marquis the name of FREDERICE, rafed it out, and wrote Lavvas in the place; wherefore

Anno. Dom.

Lewes Duke of Bautere, and Frederick

he was the man that was chosen: fo as all Germany, the Princes and cities, was divided into two factions, the one holding for the one party, and the other for the other; and from contrariety in opinious, they came to blowes; and the war continued betweene them the space of eight or nine yeares, vntill it ended in fuch manner as you finall heare.

LEVVES departing from Franckford with the ayd of those which tooke his part: went to the citie of Aken, where he was crowned by the Archbishop of Colen: but for a finuch as FREDERICK could not get in toit, (which was the right place) he was crowned in another citie. The folemnitie of the Coronations being ended, they could not fend to the pope for that the Sea had bin voyd aboue two yeares. through the death of CLEMENT the fift; but either of them sent to the Princes. cities, and potentates, fignifying vnto them by their letters and messengers, the equitie of their causes, and to instifie their election. And some being perswaded by the one partie and others by the other, the most part of the cities of the lower Germany as farre as Argentine, held for L E vv Es; and fo did (in a manner) all Sucwin also, excepting the citie of Vime, and some townes which were of the contrarie faction: and in high Duchland, and in Swifferland, almost all the cities held FREDERICK for Emperors and each of the princes electors tooke his part whom they had chosen, and so were divided: and notwithstanding that the greatest part fauoured Levves more then FREDERICK, yet his brothers, ALBERT and LEO-POLD did fo wel sticke to him, that he leuying an army and taking the field besieged the citie of Smina in Sueuia, and brought it to fuch extreamitie that the inhabitants sent to L E vv Es for reliefe; who raised his whole power, and with the avd of the king of Bohemia, and the Archbishop of Trenier, came to vnset the citie: and FREDERICK being aduertised of his comming, went to meet him, and neere to a river called Nechar, fought a battaile, wherein both the Emperours fought in their owne persons : and the battaile was so furious that it lasted the greatest A battaile bepart of the day, so that the darke night parted them without any appearance of tweene Fredevictorie; yet HENRICUS MUCIUS saith, that LEWUES lost more men then Lewes. FREDERICK: and so FREDERICK returning to the siege which he had begun, LEVVES went to the citie of Argentine, which held for FREDERICK, and was received into it by meanes of the great privileges and exemptions which he gaue and promifed thereto; which FREDERICKS brother LEOPOLD vnderstanding, raised a great power of his subjects and friends, and came to make warre against fuch as held for L E VV Es, and encamped himself before Spire; whereof so soone as LEVVES was certified, he departed from Argentine, and with his best power went to feeke LEOPOLD, with a defire to have fought with him before he joyned with his brother; but FREDERICK made fuch speed that he joyned with LEOPOLD beforethey could meet: whereupon Levves not daring to fight with them both together retired, with some dimunition both of his people and reputation, determining to warre after another manner without hazarding any battaile, and so tooke his way into Bauiere, to warre against his owne brother, for that he having chosen FREDERICK, tooke his part.

This aboue said happened in the yeare of our Lord 1316, and in the same yeare pope IOHN the three and tweentith was chosen in Lions in France, after two yeares and odde monethes that the feathad bin voyd; who prefently comming to Auinion, fauoured the partie of FREDERICK of Austrich, but for that time, he confirmed neither partie. The warrebetweene these two Emperours (notwithstanding that in the space of source or sine yeares, the one sought not to give the

Ttt 2

760

other battaile) was so cruell and generall through all the land, and betweene the cities and some Princes, as the like had not bin seene; whereof ensued many violences, and robberies by the high wayes; in so much that for redresse thereof the cities of Argentine, Spire, Wormes, Mentz, land others made a confederacie, and a. ereed together to raife certaine companies of foote and horse to guard and affure the wayes and passages for merchants and trauellers, whithersoeuer they went: and fo Germany being afflicted with trouble and mifery, without any battaile or feate of armes worth the writing betweene the persons of the two Emperours. vntill in the yeare 1323, in which time what happened in Italy, from the time of the Emperour HENRY the feuenth untill then, we will briefly bring to light.

especially in Lombardy, being a matter concerning the Empire. When the Emperour HENRY died, the Viscounts (from which descended the Dukes of Milan) were so absolute Lords thereof, that they being no longer content with that citie; MATHEVV Viscount, GALEAZZO and the rest tooke Pagis and other cities; which they might eafily foone bring to passe, having the aide of the Germanes, which of the Emperours armie therein remained; and they also taking part (as they did) with the Emperour L E vy E s: and as the empire was diuided and in strife, L E VV E S to have of his side so puissant a people and familie. fent him Ambaffadours and very kind and friendly letters. But Pope IOHN being of the contrarie faction, so soone as hee was chosen, willed FREDERICK to send his brother HENRY into Italy: who in hope that the Pope would have confirmed his election, did so. But his going was to small effect, for he came but neere to the citie of Pania, and from thence returned: for as the Imperialists euer maintained the faction of the Gibelins, and the Pope the Guelphs; fo he for that he could not hold with both parties, returned into Austrich; by reason whereof, the Gibelins prevailed in Lombardy against the Pope, and against King ROBERT of Naples which were of the contrarie faction: in fo much that MATHEVV Viscount of Milan, being of the Gibelins, with the aide of CANNIS SCALIGER GOUErnor of Verona, purposed to haue taken Genoa, vnder colour to haue restored the Spir-NO LAS and the DORIAS, which were banished thence, for that they were Gibelins (the Guelphs being of greatest power in that citie) and sent his sonne MARKE Viscount thither with an armie, who befieged the citie; and aide comming to either fide the warre was very sharpe, and the fiege was one of the most cruell that that hath been in the world; in so much that the Genowaies, to obtaine rescue and fuccour, became fubiect to the king of Naples for tenne yeeres. Before and after which fiege was cruell warre betweene the Pifans and the Florentines; the king of Naples affifting the Florentines, and other princes and cities the Pifans; a matter too long to be related. And the power of the Viscounts daily encreasing in Lombardy, the Pope which was their enemie, fought a meane to cause the French king to fend his nephew PHILIP with an armie into Italy; and he did fo, and comming into Lombardy, many things happened which I have no time to recount: but the conclusion is, that he returned againe into France, without doing any thing worthie memorie. And the fiege of Genea continuing, MATHE VV Vifcount befieged Bercelli, and tooke it, expelling thence the Turriones which were his old enemies fo as at this time the Viscounts were Lords and in possession of the cities of Milan, Pauia, Placencia, Lodi, Cremona, Bergamo, Novarra, Bercelli, Terdona and Alexandria, besides others which were his confederates, as Luca, and Ca-STRVCHO the Gouernour thereof, the cities of Pifa, and Are 770, and the Marquis of Ferrara, a citie belonging to the Church; and Scaliger of Verona: against

which ROBERT king of Naples, the Florentines, the Pope, and all those which were of the faction of the Guelphes, waged warre. The fiege of Genea continued fine yeeres, wherein many accidents befell both by fea and by land; whither the king of Naples and the Pope fent threescore galleys to the reliefe thereof; and in the end the citie was not taken, but the fiege was raifed, and many matters befell which I cannot write, for that I am to returne to my historie of L E vy E s and F R E-DERICK; both which were called, and pretended to be Emperours.

The eighth yeere being now expired fince these two warred, and FREDERICK pretending to make a conquest of the countrie of Bauiere, whereof the Emperour LE vy Es was called Duke, and was in possession (as protector to his nephew, thorow the death of his brother R ODVLPH) leuied 2200, armed pikes, and a great number of other footmen, which were his subjects, and of the king of Hungary and other his friends: and therewith (being accompanied with his brother HENRY and other princes and great men, daily expecting the comming of his brother LEOPOLD out of Sueuia to joyne with him, with eight hundred men at armes and a great number of foote) departed from Austrich, and entred Baniere, wherein he tooke townes and castles. And being there for a space master of the field, his enemie L E vy E s in the meane time was not idle, but of his owne forces, the kings of Bohemia, the Archbishops of Trenier, and other his friends which being absent sent their aide, leuied an armie containing aboue thirtie thousand foote, and about two thousand men at armes: With these forces hee went to feeke his enemie, with a resolution to give him battaile before that his brother LEOPOLD should in which FREDERICK purposed to have deferred vntill his brothers comming; but LEVVES came so neere him, and gaue him for many occasions, that contrarie to the opinion of the most of his friends, he refolued to hazard the battaile; and so vpon a morning in the moneth of September, in the yeere of our Lord 1323, each of these competitors marshalling his fquadrons; and both the one and the other affuring himselfe, that in the victoric confisted the possession of the empire; with equall power and courage most valiantly beginning the fight, maintained the fame with great furie vntill it was darke night (that author which fetteth downe least time faith) that the battaile lafted twelve hours; and in the end LEVVES having the victoric, FREDERICK Abattaile beand his brother H 2 N R Y valiantly fighting were taken prisoners, and many others perous Leves of great account were taken and flaine. It is written, that in this battaile were and Frederick, flaine foure thousand horsemen, and so great a multitude of foote, that they num-wherein Frederick was ouerber them not : fo as the victors received no leffe loffe then the vanquished. After thrower and this notable victorie, the most of the cities and princes which held with FREDE-taken. RICK(conforming themselves with the time) yeelded obedience vnto LEVVES, and so hee remained sole Emperour: whom all men imagined would have put FREDERICK to death; but he receiving him to mercie, fent him prisoner to the castle of Trisnir. FREDERICKS brother LEOPOLD (Who as I said came to ioyne with him) vnderstanding that his brother was ouerthrowne and taken, was incomparably forie: and the more, when he knew that if he had forborne to fight vntill his comming he might have obtained the victorie. This passion continuing in him, he neuer left to moleft the Emperor L E VV E s fo long as he lived; first procuting his brothers libertie; and afterwards in reuenge, to execute the wrath and displeasure which he had conceived.

In this manner L E vv E s through the ouerthrow and imprisonment of his enemie Frederick remained sole Emperour: but was not therefore free from troubles

Frederick fet

at liberty by

the Emperour

Lewes.

troubles and warres; for as hee was chosen in discord and controuersie. so his raigne (though of long continuance) was ever viquiet and full of crofles and troubles: wherefore the historie of his time will be longer then ordinarily of others. So soone as he had obtained the said victorie, he sent an Ambassadour to Pope I OHN the 23, (Who then lay in Aninion) and desiring him to confirme his election, yeelded apparant reason for the same. Pope I o HN which had ever been his adversarie, would not grant his request, wherof FREDERICE s brother L BO-POLD was the principall occasion, who leaving his estate of Austrich to his brothers OTHO and ALBERT, came into France to the pope, to the end to incense him against the Emperor L E vv Es, and to entreate him to commaund him to refigne the empire, and to release his brother: and thence went to the French king to procure the like: in both which places hee found good entertainment and fauour; and they fent their letters and Ambassadours to the Emperour, requesting and requiring him to release FREDERICK, and presently to set him at libertie: but he making his excuses and answeres, would not perfourme what they required; and knowing that the Pope was his enemie, he wrote his letters of fauour, and fent authoritie to MATHEVY Viscount, and to his sonne GALEAZZO, Gouernours of Milan, and of other cities in Italy, to hold and gouerne the same for him; and fent fouldiers to them, & to others of the Gibelines. The Pope being hereof aduertised (assembling many Bishops in Authion, together with his Consistorie of Cardinals, by the content of the French King, and through LE OP OLD's entreaty, which folicited the same excommunicating the Emperor, alleaged for his reason. that he favoured fuch as were enemies to his Church in Lombardy and in Italy: and therewith affigned him the terme of three moneths, within which, he renouncing the election which was made of him, should appeare before him, to aunswere to what should be objected; and should recall the forces which he had fent to the Viscounts in Italy, and other enemies to his Church. The Emperor made aunswere to these citations; and making his appeale, published his reasons and excuses through all Italy: wherein at that time were waged most cruell warres by the popes Legates and Captaines, and the King of Naples; against the Viscounts, the Pisans, the Lucanois, and other cities and princes Gibelines, which the Emperour Levves fauored and affifted; whereof George Me-RVLA, LEONARD ARETIN, ANTHONY, and MACHIAVEL haue written at large.

LEVVES THE FIFTH.

The enmitted betweene the Emperor and the pope so much encreased through the instigation of LEOPOLD of Austrick, for that he would not release his brother FREDERICK; that the pope meeting the French king, consulted with him how he might depose the Emperour, and give the Empire to the king of France; but the Emperour L E vv E s was of so great power in Germany, that this parley tooke small effect : neuerthelesse, he to pacifie LEOPOLD, and FREDERICK's other The Emperous parents and friends, (taking FREDERICKS oth, and fuch other fecurities he could give him, that he would no more take vpon him the name of Emperour, neither practife or procure the same) released him out of prison, and suffred him to go at liberty into the countrey of Austrich, where he afterwards for a small space lived in peace and sorrow: and LEOPOLD notwithstanding that he saw his brother at liberty, neuer defilted from molefting Levies his raigne, but could doe little, for the small time that he lived, and both of them dying without iffue to fucceede them, with their death the controuerfie ceafed.

LEVVES being freed from the contention with FREDERICK and LEOPOLD;

and letters comming daily to him from the Gibelines which took his part in Ita-Coliciting him to come thither) and from the citie of Rome it selfe, he with a defire to rule and to command, and to be crowned therein, resoluted to goe thither: wherefore, furnmoning a Councel to be held in Spire, he gaue the Princes of Germany to understand of his determination, which moued with the reasons by him alleaged confented to his going, and some offered to serue and accompanie him. and all to aide him with men and money; and fo leuying an army he departed out of Germany, carrying with him his second wife called MARGARET daughter of the Earle of Holland, and came to the city of Trent (in the yeere of our Lord 1327, 1327. and in the thirteenth of his raigne (reckoning from the beginning of him and of FREDERICK) where he stated: for thither he had appointed all the cities which were at his denotion to fend their Agents, to the end, there to treat and conclude vpon what was to be done: thither came Ambassadours from GALEAZZ o Viscount of Milan, and from his brothers I OHN, MARKE, LVCAS, and STEVEN. (for their father MATHE vy was dead) and the Marquis of Manton, and from him of Verona, and the cities of Pila, and Luca, and the rest within Lombardy held with Milan, and from many others; which making great offers to aide and affift him with men and money counselled him presently to march forwards and he did so, and came directly to Brefcia, and thence to Milan, and there was crowned with the crowne of Iron, and there staied aboue thirtie daies after his coronation, and from thence(as fome fay) fending to entreat the Pope to confirme his election and to absolue him of his excommunication, hee staied there longer then hee thought to have done, to get money to pay his fouldiers; by reason whereof 2 great contribution was to be leuied in Milan, and in other cities of the league. then they willingly would have paied and GALEAS Viscount sometimes by entreaty, and sometimes by counsell, sought to have avoided the tribute to be levied vpon his countrie: whereupon the Emperour made him, his fonnes and brothers to be apprehended, and deposed them from the gouernment of the citie: and to winne the good will of the people, and to shew that he gaue them libertie, he granted that they should chuse amongst themselus eight and twentie citizens and one President, which should have the government thereof. With this baite he obtained what he defired, and the taxe which he had laid vpon them: which deed (although recounted after fundrie manners) was the cause of great alterations; and that the Emperor was noted of ingratitude, and excessive crueltie, so to deale with those which had called him into the countrie; although it cannot be denied but that they were tyrants. Having dispatched his busines in Lombardy, he tooke his way through Tulcane towards Rome, by the procurement of CASTRVCHO. who was one of the most valiant captaines of his time, and commanding in Luca, maintained the warre against the Florentines, and against CHARLES sonne of ROBERT King of Naples, who with a great garrifon defended that citie by his fathers direction to whom it was become fubicct: and caried with him GALEAZzo Viscount and his brothers prisoners. The Emperour being come to Luca, was by CASTRUCHO received with very great toy and solemnitie: and from thence defiring to goe to Pila, the Pilans were in a doubt whether they should receive him, or no: but in the end he was entertained, and made his aboad there about two moneths; during which time, CHARLES of Naples being with great forces in Florence, the Emperor resoluted to hold on his journey without troubling himselfe with him: and being in Pifa, released GALEAS Viscount of Milan, and his fonnes Azzo, and MARKE, vpon their othes, and at CASTRVCHO his entreaty,

763

Lewes the fifth

Rome.

whose authoritie(gotten by his valour in armes) was then very great: which afterwards were released from all, in such manner as you shall heare. The Emperour going from Pila, acompanied by CASTRVCHO with 1500 horse of his owne went along the ica coast towards Rome, purposing (assome write) after his coronation to have gone against the King of Naples, who was his great enemie: whereupon fo foone as the Emperor was come neere to Rome. CHARLES departing from Florence, towards Naples to the aide of his father, left an excellent Captaine called PHILIP CARNOSENSE, in Florence, and within short space after, this CHARLES dying (his father the King having no more sonnes) left two daughters. The Emperors comming being knowne in Rome, caused great diffention and tumults therein, but as the greatest part was willing to receive him, and the rest to the contrarie, in the end, he was folemnly received: but his coronation, and who crowned him, where, and vpon what day, is diverfly recounted, which often happeneth amongst those which are present, much more amongst Historiographers: the truth is that LEVVES was crowned in Rome by the hands of STE-FHEN COLONNA, who at that time was Vicar of Rome (an office and gouernment then newly erected) yet LEONARD ARETINE, and ANTHONY fay that his sonne SARRA COLONNA crowned him, and that he was crowned against the will of the pope or his Legates, yet with great applause of the people both se-

cular and regular.

LEVVES being crowned, together with the Emperesse, was called Emperor

and Semper Av Gvs Tvs; and the newes being dispersed ouer Italy, thither repaired to him many principall men of the Gibelines; and he being very puissant. and accompanied by the valiant CASTRVCHO (of whom next to the Emperor was made chiefest account) to instific his coronation and his other doings in the iudgement of the people, publishing and auerring that pope Iohn the three and twentith, who then was in Auinion, neither was, neither ought to be held for pope, he of his owne authoritie created one PETER DE CORVARIA, a Franciscan Frier, pope; who (as faith PLATINA) had been a married man, and in his wives time tooke that habit: and he accepting the papacie, was called Nicho-LAS, and made Cardinals and Bishops, and held a pontificall court; and the Emperor gaue him the obedience and honor as to a pope; and being absolued of his excommunication, was confirmed in his Empire, and had elfe what he would defire: which was done against the will of many priests and other regular perfons, which therefore left Rome; yet there wanted not others which appropriate the same, tooke part of the benefit. When these newes were brought to pope IOHN, he aggrauating his censures and excommunications, proclaimed him for no Emperor, but a tyrant and an vsurper of the Empire. The Emperor being in Rome, the Emperessebarehim a sonne, called Lydovicus Romanus; and making preparation to goe in person against the King of Naples, practised with FREDERICK King of Sicilia to doe the like; but staying longer in Romethen was expedient, it happened that the captaine whom CHARLES of Naples had left with the garrison in Florence, together with the Florentines, surprised the citie of Pistoia, which was at CASTRVCHO his deuotion, and in league with Pisa and Luca: whereof when CASTRYCHO (being then with the Emperor in Rome) was aduertifed, hee for feare to lose the rest presently departed thitherwards, and comming thither, found great refiftance; but in the end he valiantly recouered the citie. CASTRYCHO his departure from the Emperor made him fo much to alter his determination, that he giving over the enterprise of Naples departed

departed with his pope from Rome (wherein he left the best order that he could for his purpole, first establishing therein two governors, one of the family of the Vrsins, and the other of the Colunnois, which were called the Emperors Vicars) and tooke his way towards Florence; whither when it was knowne that he was comming, all men were of opinion that he would by forte of armes have taken that citie, accounting it not possibly to be defended fith that CASTRVCHO was in his feruice, against whom alone the Florentines could hardly make their partie good: but it pleased God to dispose thereofaster another manner; for Cas-TRYCHO (in whom he reposed his chiefest trust) dyed, and his death caused so great an alteration, that the Emperor therefore, and through the loffe of many of his people, and also for that others mutined, resoluted to returne into Germanie, first placing his Lieutenants in Pistoia and in Luca, out of which he put the sonnes and parents of CASTRVCHO; fuch are the rewards which ingratefull princes vse to bestow upon the children of those which have done them good and faithfull service. At the same time also died in Pisa, GALEAS Viscount (ryrant of Milan) depriued of that dominion; and the Emperour for a great summe of money gaue leaue to his sonne Azzo to returne to Milan, which he promised the Emperor towards the payment of his fouldiers before his departure, and left his brother MARKE in pawne for the fame: and comming to Wilan was received with great affection into the citie, into the same place and authoritie which his father held; and (as BLONDVs writeth) recoucred in Milan the money promifed, and deliuered the same to the Germanes sent by the Emperor, which forgetting to come therewith to Pifa, returned home to their houses. The Emperor departing from Pifa, with a determination to continew his journey into Germany, left his pope there behind him; who afterwards by the practife of one BONIFACE of Pifa was apprehended and brought to Auinion, and comming in a private habit into the popes presence, dyed in his power a prisoner: and the Emperour passing through Lombardy into Germany, Azzo Viscount (now Lord of Milan) would not receive him into the citic, neither was the Emperor of power able to affault it: and so departing out of Italy, left neither the peace nor good gouernment which he found therein: but the citie of Pife and others, which had held for him, fo foone as he was gone, cast out his Lieutenants and Gouernors; and the tyrants which before were therein, tooke more townesand cities, the most of which were Gibelines; and those of the house of GONZAGA, then made themselves absolute Lords of Mantoiia, which they hold vntill this day. It feemeth that the long continuance of their possession hath made their title iust and lawfull, adding thereto the confirmations made afterwards by the Emperors and the popes after fundrie manners and conditions: and fome Captaines and Lieutenants, made themselves Lords and tyrants, as GALE-OTTO MALATESTA in Arimino; MANFREDO PIO IN Carpi; RICHARD MAN-EREDI in Fauencia; and others in many other places. But notwithstanding all this, the factions of the Guelphes and Gibelines had taken such roote in Italy, that all the Gibelines which tooke his part presently solicited the Emperor speedely to returne thither againe; for through his absence, the Guelphes, with the ayde of the Florentines, of the King of Naples, and the pope, warred vpon them: but the Emperor being otherwise busied in Germany, could not returne, notwithstanding that he defired the same. But I o HN King of Bohemia, by his direction leuied an armie and came into Italy, who passed many aduentures, which for breuitie I omit: the conclusion was, that he thinking to please both parties, was

The Pope ex-

called the peace-maker of Italy; and he procuring many treaties and parlies with the popes Legates, came through that occasion to displease both the one and other partie; as it ordinarily happeneth to those which seeke to pacifie two contrarie factions, and fell into suspition with the Emperor, but much more with the Lords of Italy: whereupon, Azzo Viscount Lord of Milan; MASTINO DELA SCALA Lord of Verona; PHILIP GONZAGA Marquelle of Mantoa: VIBERTINO DI CARRARA Lord of Padoa, the Marquesse of Ferrara, and fome others, as ROBERT King of Naples, and the Florentines which vntill then had been their enemies, joyned together in a league and confederacie, promifing to protect and descend the one the other against all the world: for which not onely the Emperour, but the pope also was very much discontented; and there enfued great chaunges and alterations in all matters in Italy, which I have no time to relate. The Emperor seeing himselfe excommunicate, and that the pope defifted not from proceeding against him; perswaded all men that he was vniustly accused, and searing some alteration, with faire words, large gifts, and good entertainement satisfied the Lords and princes of Germanie, seeking otherwise to be absolued, and some meanes of reconciliation, which was a matter (in a manner) impossible to be effected, for the King of France in whose countrey and (as we may fay) power the pope and his Cardinals then were, notwithstanding that the pope would, yet he would not confent thereto; and so the matter continued vntill the death of pope Iohn, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, thirtie and foure, having been pope nineteene veeres and foure monethes: at which time the states of Carinthia and Tirol came to be vnited to

the house of Austrich. Matters standing in such confusion as we have declared, and pope I o HN being dead, the Cardinall of Saint Prisca whose name was I Acos, borne in Thelonse in France, was chosen pope, who was a Monke of the order of C 18 TEL, and was called Benedic r the twelfth; and being installed, ratified and renewed the sentence pronounced by his predecessor against the Emperor, which he did fo speedely, that it was thought to have been done through the instigation of the French King: but within few daies after, the King defiring the pope to make him his Vicar or Lieutenant Generall in Italy, and to give him the tenth part of the Church reuenues and first fruites throughout all Christendome (to the end therewith to make a conquest of Ierusalem) so much troubled the pope with that request, that he made shew to be much discontent therewith; and began in secret to giue eare, and good hope to the Emperors party; whereof he being aduertifed, fent him a folemne Ambassade, praying and entreating him to absolue him, and to approue his election; whereto the pope made a pleasing answere, and the matter was at the point to have been concluded; but the Kings of France and of Naples (enemies to the Emperor) strake such a feare into the pope and his Cardinals, that he durst not performe it; so as the Emperors Ambassadors returned with good words of no effect; and the like happened to the Ambaffadors fent by the princes and cities of the Empire, the yeere next following. Whereupon, forasmuch as at that time there were great warres betweene Edward King of England, and PHILIP the French King, about the succession and right to the Crowne of France, the Emperor entred into league with the King of England; and great troubles and diffention were betweene the one and other partie: but in the end the French King feeking the Emperors friendship, promifed to make the pope to absolue him, to the end that he should stand his friend: so as the Em-

peror through the great defire he had to be confirmed in the Empire by the pope, came to a composition with him. With this confidence in the French King, the Emperour sent his Ambassadors into France, the which, together with the Kings Ambassadours, went to Auinion to treate of the matter; but the pope with divers reasons so prolonged the conclusion, that it plainely appeared, that it would take no good effect; which made the Emperor to suspect the King; for it was held for certaine, that the pope would therein haue done the Kings will, as in many other matters he had done, euen against his owne will, which was so euer, so long as the court of Rome remained in France, and is the reason why the Germane historians treating of the Emperors affaires, fay, that the King of France made shew to desire that which he would not have, and the pope to hauethat which he defired not. The Emperor despairing to come to any agreement with the pope, seeing that his Ambassadors returned without any such end or conclusion as he expected, returned to his former rigor; and affembling a generall Councel, fought out learned men to pen his determination, and finding The Emperors enough fuch as were for his purpose, after many matters treated of, he seeking to iniunction made against get the good will of the princes, caused an injunction to be dispatched, wherein the Pope, he affirmed the sentence pronounced against him by pope Ionn to be vniust and of none effect; and that his excommunication did no way binde him; wherefore he commaunded upon great penalties, that none should obey his interdictions and censures in that behalfe, alleaging other matters which in the faid iniunction are contained, & which the popes friends would not should be reuealed in any publike historie: which iniunction (being published, and commaunded to be observed) caused great dissolution in Germany, especially amongst the clergic; fome holding with the Emperour, and others with the pope. But DANTE, which at that time was a man of a most excellent witte and profoundly learned. wrote a booke of the Monarchy; wherein he seemed to fauour the Emperor; for which he was afterwards condemned, and his booke held for herefie; and other great men wrote bookes and treatifes defending the popes supreme authoritie, alleaging the same to be about all principalities and powers; which (befides other reasons) they sought to proue by histories, as how that pope ADRIAN translated the Empire of the East into the West, in the person of CHARLES the Great; and afterwards in processe of time the popes removed the same out of France into Germany, in the person of Otho the first; & how that many Emperors were excomunicated by them, yea, and deprined of their Empires; and how that the manner and authoritie to chuse them, was given by the popes; and from them was derived the power and authoritie of the princes electors; and that the Emperors were confirmed and crowned by the popes. Neuerthelesse there The Emperor wanted not some which defended the Emperors cause, and so the popes curses agains excomand commaundements were contemned and rejected: but hee knowing that digrined by the the Emperor had published an iniunction against him, againe renewed the same, Popes confures. and employing all his whole power alleaged the Empire for voyde, and that the government thereof during the vacation, appertained to him, vntill that a new Emperor were chosen, according to the declaration made by CLEMENT the fifth in the Councell of Vienne. And understanding that the Emperor purposed to come into Italy, he did one thing which then was held for wifely done; but experience sheweth that it was very domageable to his estate; which was that he made those tyrants or princes which in Italy held the townes of the Empire, his Vicars or Lieutenants in the same townes which they held; to the end they

769

should be resolute enemies to the Emperor; and commaunding that they should neither receive or obey the Emperour, gaue them power and authoritie to defend and maintaine the fame; as Lieutenants to the Church: which were L ve H I-NO Viscount, tyrant or gouernour of Milan, and other cities: MASTHINO SCA-LA in Verona and Vicenza: PHILIP GONZAGA in Mantoa, and then in Reggio: ALBERTINO DI CARRA in Padea, and other places: OBIZO DA ESTE in Ferrara, and Modena: and for as much as these were the Church lands, he enjoyned them to pay him yeerly ten thousand Ducats of gold; with which title they were the more strongly possessed of those estates. This disagreement continuing betweene the Emperour and the Pope, there failed not some which vsurped the popes townes; to which, or to the most part of them, in requitall of what the pope had done to him; and to binde them to doe him the better feruice and the more to incense them against the pope, the Emperour gaue and sent titles and Charters, making them Lieutenants for the Empire in the cities and lands appertaining to the Church of Rome: which they accepted and held, and the offpring of many of them have continued therein until this day; amongst which was G -LE OTTO MALATESTAIN Arimino; ANTHONY FERETRANO in the citie of Vrbin ; GENTIL VARANO in Camerino ; GVIDO POLENTA in Rauenna; IOHN MANFREDOIN FAUEncia; Is MADETIO in Sanseverino; NICHOLAS BOSCARE-

To in Elie: and in like manner others in other townes and cities. These matters passing in this maner in Germany and in Italy, Pope BENEDICT being dead (who had held that stoole the space of seven yeeres and three moneths) in his place was chosen in Aumion, in the moneth of May in the yeere of Our Lord 1342 Pope CLEMENT the fixth, in whose time were great alterations. as well in the cities in Lombardy, as in Tuscane. The Emperour sought to come to some composition and agreement with the new Pope (as write the Germane authors) but there was no peace to be expected, for the Pope alleaged that the Emperour fued not for peace in fuch humble and submissive manner as he ought to haue done. But C v s PINIAN, NAVCLER v s and M v c I v s write, that by meanes of the French king who fained to be a good mediatour betweene them, the Einperour fent his Agents to Pope CLEMENT, with full authoritie, to accept of any condition of peace that he would propone vnto them; to which the Pope gaue a certaine note in writing, wherein they in the name of the Emperour, were injuyned to confesse the Emperour to have erred, and to have been a schissmatike, and disobedient to the Church: and moreouer that the Emperour should presently renounce his right to the Empire, together with the poffession thereof; and that he should not intermeddle therein without the Popes leave and permission; and that the Emperours person together with his sonnes should be at the Popes dispoling: all which Articles the Emperours Ambaffadours accepted and graunted in his name; whereat the Pope wondred. But these rigorous and terrible Articles and conditions being brought to the Emperour, hee holding them for vniust and intolerable, fent the copie of them to the Princes and cities of the Empire; and therewith summoned a generall Diet or Parliament to bee held in Franckford, wherein with sharpe and graue speeches, he complained of the Pope; and there shewed what his Ambassadours without his knowledge or consent had yeelded vnto; alleaging these demaunds to be made but onely to ruinate the state of the Empire, with other matters which he thought might cause greater indignation against the Pope, and move the princes the more to favour his proceedings: And his words wrought fuch effect in them, and the Popes demands feemed to disho-

nest and so intolerable, that they adjudging the same to be rejected and not to be allowed, made great offers to the Emperour for the defence of his person and estate: yet some were of a contrarie opinion, which affirmed that the Pope ought to be obeyed, and that the matter ought to be referred to him, as it was fworne and promised. He which held this opinion, was I o HN king of Bohemia and his fonne CHARLES, which were discontent with the Emperour for some other causes: but the Councell resolued to send Ambassadours to Pope CLEMENT, to fhew him that the conditions graunted could not be perfourmed, without giving them authoritie to graunt any other, or to treate of any other matter: which Ambaffadours went, and what enfued thereof wee will tell you; which was, that the Pope holding himselfe for deluded; was so enraged that he againe proceeding against the Emperour, sent to all parts copies of the fulminations and censures giuen by Pope I on w, with a relation of his offences, including the fame within the compasse of herefie; and also that he had chosen and enstalled another Pope; and that he was not according to due order chosen Emperour, but by deceit and briberie; and that he neuer was Emperour, neither ought fo to be called; and that he gaue Bishopricks and prelacies at his pleasure, placing such as pleased him, and displacing such as were preferred by the Pope; and that hee making mariages. difpenfed (like a pope) with fuch as were married within prohibited degrees of Confanguinitie, as he had done by his sonne L E vv Es and the Countesse of Tirol, being kin vnto her, within an vnlawfull degree, and the hauing an husband aline, which was the sonne of the king of Bohemia: for which cause the pope sending his generall edicts against him, enjoyned the electors, ypon paine of excommunication to meete and to chuse a new Emperour; excommunicating all such as followed the Emperor Levves or obeyed him. So as the Popes edicts, & the Emperours contradictions caused many infolencies and riots in Italy and in Germany: And as the king of Bohemia and his sonne were his aduersaries, so they procuring the good will of the Duke of Saxony, and of the Archbishop of Colen, by bribes and large promises, sought to procure a meeting, & so to chuse an Emperor. And as at that time there were two which pretended to be Archbishops of Mentz, the one called HENRY DE VIERNER (whom the Pope condemned and deprived for that he defended the Emperours cause) the other was called GERLASSE of Nas-(whom the Pope had appointed to have the others place.) This GERLASSE to fhew his authoritie, and to accomplish the Popes commaundement, warned the princes electors to meete in the citie of Rens, in the yeere 1346: where met the Duke of Saxony, the king of Bohemia, the Archbishops of Meniz, Treuier, and Colon; and so by reason of the popes decree, all caging the Empire to be voide, they chose the king of Bohemia his sonne CHARLES for Emperour; LEVVES being then in Bauiere, busie in leuying forces to stay the same. And the new elect CHARLES Would presently have gone to have been crowned in Aken, but could not; for that citie held for the Emperour L EVV E s, and was sufficiently fortified. Pope CLEMENT being aduertifed of the election of CHARLES (as a thing done by his commaundement and against L E vv E s) presently confirmed and approued the fame, and procured the French king to aide and affift him, which he promifed to doewith all his power: but in the meane time befell a strange accident which marred all, which was, that shortly after Ed vy ARD the third king of England came into France with a mightie armie, and befreged the citie of Paris; and P H I-Lip the French king raised his whole power to fight with him, whereof the king of Bohemia and his sonne CHARLES (Who was newly chosen Emperour)hauing intelligence,

The intellevable pride of Pope Clement the fixt. tweeene Philip king of France and Edward the third king of England, battaile fought Ling of Bube

intelligence, they with more hafte then good speede, with all their forces came in person to his aide; the more to binde him to persourme what he had promised them against the Emperour; and it followed that they ioyning in battaile against the English (which as all writers affirme was very cruell and bloudie, and continued fixe houres) the king of England in the end had the victorie, and many great personages of the vanquished were slaine; amongst which was I o HN king of Bohemia; and the French king, and the new elect Emperour C HARLES escaped by flight. Through the losse of this battaile, the French king had so much to do to demia was flaine. fend his owne countrie, that hee could yeeld CHARLES no reliefe or fuccourat al against the Emperor L EVVES, which made his case the more doubtfull: but as he had the popes fauour and the fauour of those which chose him, so was Germamy divided; fome holding with him, others with the Emperour L E vv Es: fo that I, EVV ES his raigne ended as it began, with competencies and factions. But yet he forgat not to raise forces and to seeke aide and friends, which with his life lasted but a while: but before that we will declare his end, I will briefly relate a strange case happened in the citie of Rome, which shall neither be impertinent, neither vnworthie to be rehearfed, which was this.

LEVVES THE FIFTH.

Rome at that time being gouerned in the popes absence by two Senatours, as the popes Vicars or Lieutenants; one of which was of the familie of the Colonnois, the other of the Vrsins; a certaine man borne in Rome of meane parentage whose name was NICHOLAS RENZO, who being of a great heart and high minde, yet of no greater calling then a Notarie publique, in such manner wonne the good will of the people, which repaired vnto him, that he perswaded them to recouer the auncient libertie of Rome, which (as a man well read in histories) he laid open vnto them, and was not abashed to tell them that it was requisite for the good of the common wealth, to alter the manner of the gouernment, and to reforme and reduce the fame to the priftine rule and order: for fith that Rome was a free citie and Ladie of the whole world, they ought and were bound in dutie againe to recouer her libertie. To these speeches together with many other to the like effect, the common people (as light of beliefe, and defirous of nouelties) willingly gauecare; and he found fuch fauour and good liking amongst them, that the matter encreasing, he seised on the Capitoll, and without that any man durst make head against him deposed the Popes Vicars or Lieutenants from the gouernment, and intitling himselfe NICHOLAVS SEVERVS (the fauourable Tribune of peace, libertie, and inftice, the noble and excellent redeemer and restorer of the facred Romane Common-wealth) he made and ordained Senatours, and fetled the gouernment of Rome in fuch manner as it was in the time of the ancient Romanes, with fo great obedience in all men, as if he had come from heaven for the same purpose. And he presently established such peace and instice in the citie, and made the fame to be observed and executed in such manner, as the like had not been seene in Rome in siue hundred yeeres before. The same whereof was presently spred into many parts, and all the townes neere to Rome became obedient thereto, and so did many other that were farre off: and all the tyrants and princes hearing of so strange an accident, and of the title, and the enterprise which this man undertooke, sent Ambassadours to him, and making great offers, sought his grace and friendship. And the matter was so carried in the beginning, that it it seemed that in short space Rome would againe have become Lady of great part

of the world. And as the report of such accidents is euer greater then the effect, so these newes being carried out of Italy, caused every where such feare that ma-

ny altred their determinations: And this NICHOLAS as a proud vaine man (nothing confidering that you so weake and feeble a foundation he could not possibly build any great edifice) making Rome to be the head and Lady of all the world. wrote his letters with the aforesaid proud titles, to the Pope, requiring him to make his refidence in Rome, and to the Emperour Levy es and his competitor CHARLES, commaunding them within a certaine prefixed time to make their appearance before him and the Romane Senate, and to shew by what title they held the Empire: the like he wrote to the princes electors, and to other princes. These letters being seene and read (not with standing that they were held for vaine and friuolous) did put the Pope in a great perplexitie, feeing that Rome and the territorie thereof in his time was vsurped. But this vanitie continued not aboue feuen or eight moneths: for as it was grounded but vpon the fauour of the common people, so it soone waxing cold, and they repenting of what they had done. began to murmure and so to forfake him : whereupon he foreseeing his fall, departed from Rome, and went to CHARLES, the Emperours competitor; thinking to have found favour, and to have made fome league with him; but he made him to be apprehended, and fent him to Aninion to the pope, who commaunded him to be detained prisoner: what ill end he had we will tell you, which truly is a pleafant discourse, as you shall see in the end, and so have all the glories and vanities of the world, although some last longer then some. What I have spoken is written by BLONDY S,PLATINA, NAVCLERY S, and althe Historiographers. PETRAR-CHAinsome of his Epistles saith and affirmeth, that all the time that this man commaunded, there was such peace and quietnes; and inflice was so duly executed in Rome and in part of Italy, that it seemed that the golden age was come againe: whereupon he made that excellent Sonnet which Beginneth: Spirto gentil che quella membra reggi.

But now to returne to our Historie, Germany being thus divided, some holding for the Emperour L B VV B s, and others for the new cholen C HARL BS, who was alreadie King of Bohemia, this controuersie betweene these two was ended. through the sudden death of L E vy Es, which happened voon the seuen and twentith day of September, in the yeere of our Lord 1347, in this manner : He riding Anno Dom. that day ouer the fields on hunting, was taken with so cruell an Appoplexic that he fell from his horse and died suddenly, when he had raigned 33 yeeres, the first nine in contention and competency with FREDERICK, who was called Emperour: it was also suspected that he was poyloned. This Emperour having bin twice married, had fixe sonnes, and one daughter, which from their father enherited fundry Lordships and estates. At this time the Genowaies and the Venecians made most cruell warre one against another; the like did the English and the French. The Kings of Spaine wholy applied themselues to warre against the Moores.

In Constantinople raigned I OHN PALEOLOG VS called CALOIOANNES for of Andronicus the younger, who had much to doe with CATACVZENVS (whom his father left for his tutor) about the Empire; sometime the one prenailing, and fometimes the other: by reason whereof they both are accounted Emperors; but in the end CALOTO AN NES

PALEOLOGVS Was fole Emperour, as hereafter shall be declared.



## THE FOVRTH OF THAT NAME. AND CVIII. ROMANE . EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

Harles having no competitor, went to subdue those countries which beld with Lewes. Many were of opinion that the Empire was voide, wherefore some of the Electors met at Franckford and chofe successively two Emperours, which would not accept thereof. In the time of this Charles, mas that memorable pestilence through all Enrope in anno Dom. 1: 48; and the flaughter of an infinite number of lewes. After-

wards the electors chose one Gunther for Emperour, who comming against Charles, died before any battaile. Charles baning agreed with the electors which were his evemies, was freed from all his competitors, and came afterwards into Italy to be crowned, where he behaved himfelfe with fuch bumanitie, that there was no Lord or common-wealth that did not acknowledge him for their Emperour: and so contented with money to pay his souldiers giving privileges to fundry cities in Italy. he returned into Germany, wherein he maintaining peace and inflice, sued to make his eldest some Wenceflaus king of the Romanes, which he obtained for money. After all thefe things falling sicke, be died, when he had valorously raigned two and thirtie yeeres.



Hen the Emperour L E VV. E s died, his competitor C HAR LES (who in his life time was called Emperour) was in his kingdome of Bohemia; and so soone as he was certified of his death, he with the greatest power that he could raife left his kingdome, to the end to make himfelf

Lord of fuch townes as held for the deceafed Emperour L z vv z s, and comming to Ratisbone was therein without any contradiction received as Emperour; and thence CHARLES THE FOURTH.

thence went to Nurembergh, and was there likewise received, and generally in all the other cities whither he came; for he released al the actions which he had against them, and promised to procure the Pope to absolue all those which had continued in the service of L z vv z s: but he afterwards comming to Basil, they would not receiue him, except he first obtained for them the Popes pardon, and a release from all the curses pronounced against their citie, for that it held for the late Emperour : and while as they treated hereof, there came a Legate from the Pope, who hearing that LEVVES was dead, fent his Legate to CHARLES with authoritie to absolue them and all the rest: and although that in this citie and in others, there was great doubt and contention, about the oth and the forme of the confession which the Pope had commaunded to be made before they should be absolued; yet in the end absolution was given, and the Emperour with great solemnitie was received into the citie, and into some other places. And notwithflanding that in the beginning he had so good successe with some cities and princes, yet with the most of the rest he sped not so well: for those which had perseuered firme and loyall to the Emperour Levves, and had been enemies and made warre against CHARLES, would not accept him for Emperour; but holding for voide, pretended a new election to be made; especially those electors which confented not to his election; which were HENRY Archbishop of Mentz, (whom the Pope had deprived, and in his place had fet GERLASSE of Naslaw) LEVVES Marquis of Brandenburgh, ROBERT Counte Palatine of Rhine and Duke of Bawiere; all which alleaged that CHARLES his election was neither lawfull, nor of any worth for that it was not made in Franckford; and also for that the estates were not affembled by the Counte Palatine, neither were they present, or sent their Agents or Proctors: all which things (they faid) were requifite in a lawfull election: and HENRY the new Duke of Saxony and some cities ionning with them, alleaged also that those which chose him were for money bribed and suborned by CHARLES and his father IOHN king of Bohemia; and also that he was not crowned in Aken as hee ought to have been: for which causes (although in my opinion the greatest was the passion and enmitte which they bare against him) in the beginning of the yeere 1348, the aforesaid princes met in the citie of Anno Dom. Franckford (notwithstanding that CHARLES vsed all his power and policie to 1348. have from the fame) where declaring the empire for voide (the Bishops of Colen, Treuier and the other Bishop of Mentz being absent) by the common consent of those which were present, they chose the king of England (for that he was descended from the Germane bloud) for Emperour, to whom they presently sent their Ambassadours to the same effect: but hee after that he had well considered hing of Engof the matter, refusing their offer, sent to them, desiring to bee held excused: land being And they seeing themselves frustrate of their hope, chose FREDERICK Marquis to be Emperor. of Missia, who was a man of great iudgement and very valiant; who standing in doubt whether hee should accept it or no, and considering well thereof (for CHARLBS being thereof aduertifed, to the end that he should not accept the election, sent him a great summe of gold and silver, and therewith gave him to vnderstand of the inconveniences that thereof would ensue) made the like answere as did the king of England: to as for that time without agreeing vpon any other, these princes still perseuering disobedient to the Emperour CHARLES, departed from Franckford without chusing any Emperour at all. The chiefest cause of their departure was the plague of pestilence in that countrey, which in that through all time was so great and so vniuersal through all parts of Europe, that the like there- Europe.

Princes fought to reconcile them: the coditions of the peace were, that GVNTHER

should renounce the Empire to CHARLES, and that CHARLES should give him

two walled cities in Turinge, together with their confines. But in time of this treaty

(as most writers affirme) G v N T H B R died, poisoned by his Phisition; who being to

give him a purging potion, and taking but the affay of it, died together with Gyn-

THER the next morrow; which made men to thinke, that without the knowledge of the poore Phisition poylon was put into the decoction; so as G v N T HER dying

in the time of the parle of peace, CHARLES remained fole Emperor, and in good

of before that time had neuer beene feene nor heard of 3 for the Historiographers affirme it to haue continued about one whole yeere, beginning in the yeere 1248. and ending in anno 1350; which raged in such extreme manner that where it did least harme the tenth person escaped not. BLONDVs faith, that hee heard his grandfather GASPAR BLONDY's affirme with an oth, that many townes in Italy were therewith fo throughly dispeopled, that not any one remained therein aliue. During the time of this calamitie, there was a generall peace, without that any could or durst make warre against other, except a little which was made against the Synagogues of the Iewes: for the common people tooke a conceit, and it was also beleeued, that the Iewes had poisoned the waters, and caused this plagues whereupon (the princes and gouernours being no way able to let the same) the Iewes were enery where torne in peeces, and an infinite number of them were bu the Christians sacked and robbed, in France, Italy, Germany, and Spaine. At this time also the French king gat the countrey of Daulphine, and the citie of Vienne the head thereof; which now belong to the princes of France; which hee bought of HUNIPERT Lord thereof, and Daulphin of Vienne, who having no heires to fucceede him, fold his estate and became a Frier: first giuing to the poore all the money for which he fold it; which he laid vp in heauen. And for as much as that estate was subject to the empire, the Emperour gaue his consent to the sale, voon condition that it should belong to the French kings eldest sonne, and that hee therefore should acknowledge the Emperour for his soueraigne Lord, which (I know not the cause) at this day is not observed.

In the yeere 1350 our Lord mittigating his ire, and the plague ceasing. Pope CLEMENT in this yeere by the confent of his Cardinals ordained that the Jubile which Pope BONIFACE the 8 had granted to be held in Rome euery hundredth yeere, should be held that yeere; and thencefoorth enery fiftith yeere, considering the shortnes of mans life; so as an infinite number of people repaired to Rome to the Iubile. After the daunger of the plague was past, men prefently being free fro the feare thereof, returned to their wars & deffention, principally the aforenamed foure Princes electors, HENRY Archbishop of Ment?, LEVYES Marquis of Brandenburgh, RODVLPH Duke of Bautere & Countie Palatine of Rhine, and HENRY Duke of Saxony: all which rebelled against the Emperour Charles, and stood very well upon their guard; and the one aiding and assisting the other. they againe met at Franckford, and after many consultations, chose GVNTHER Earle of Swarzemburgh, who was an excellent and very valiant man of warre. This man with the aide of those which chose him, and of his friends and parents, with a great number of very good men of warre, came to Franckford, where attending his enemies comming, he kept the field the space of fixe weekes (for so they write was then the manner of the new chosen Emperors). And that time being expired, he was received into the citie, and fworne and obeyed for Emperour. And notwith standing that the Emperour C HARLE shadlenied a very great power, yet being vnwilling to hazard his whole fortune in one battaile, would not fight with GVNTHER: but some mouing the Princes of his faction, they all meeting in the citie of Spire, it was concluded that he should employ his whole power to make head against GVNTHER, and by force of armes to defeat him. With this resolution the Emperour CHARLES with his army tooke his way towards Ment, and the one drawing neere to the other, the warre began betweene them two, which men thought would have proued very terrible and cruell: but through the death of GVNTHER peace enfued: before which time fome fort compounded with those which were his aduersaries, who being weary of chusing Emperours, the controuersie ended to the contentment of all men. And forasmuch as the plagne was in Aken, he was with great solemnitie crowned in another citie; and going afterwards in his progresse, he visited many cities, to which he gaue fundry priuileges. In time of this prosperitie he had a sonne whole name was VV BNCBSLAVS, of whom we shall have cause to speak hereafter : and he applying himselfe with great care to maintaine peace and instice, there yet rested for him to goe to be crowned in Italy, whereof Pope CLEMENT the sixth was very desirous, but in his time it could not be, for he died within few daies after. At this time the Viscounts having made themselves Lords of Milan, whereof great power in many other cities, the chiefest of which was IOHN Viscount Archbishop of Milan, a man feared through all Italy; who by the Popes permission under the title of his Vicar, or Lieutenant, made himselfe Lord of Bologna, for which he was to pay yeerly 12000 ducats of gold. Pope CLEMENT being dead, INNOC ENT the fixt was chosen; in beginning of whose Papacie was fought the memorable battaile by fea betweene threefcore galleys of the Genowaics, under the command of PAGAMO DORA; and fourescore of the Venecians, the Kings of Arragon, and the Emperours of Constantinople, which were in a league together against them; which battaile was fought in the streight of Constantinople, and lafted from the break of day vntill the euening, in which the Genowaies had the victory, but with losse of many of their people: and the yeere following which was Annual bat-in theyeere 1354, the Venecians and Catalonians repairing their fleete, againe taile between fought with the Genowaies, neere to the Ile of Corfica, wherein the Genowaies the Genomates were so pitifully ouerthrowne and with so great losse, that one and fortie of their and the Venegalleys, with all the people in them, were funke in the sea; by meanes of which Ouerthrow their power was so much weakned, that they became subject to IOHN Viscount Archbishop of Milan, vpon condition that he should protect them vet there enfuing other alteratious, they afterwards committed themselues to the protectio of the French king. At this time also was a treaty between the Emperor and the Pope, concerning the Emperours comming into Italy to be crowned in Rome, he making preparation for the same. There befell in Rome also another great accident, although not so much spoken of, like to that of NICHOLAS RENz o who would have raifed Rome to her ancient rule and dignitie, and was called the Enfranchiser of Rome, which was, that another Notary publike, called FRAN-CIS VARONCELLO, imitating the faid NICHOLAS, incenfed the people, and with the same title of Romane Tribune, deposed the two Senatours, I O HN V R-SINO, and PETER DE COLONNA, which gouerned as the Popes Vicars: whereof the Pope being aduertifed, and fearing that the matter would have proceeded, to avoid a further inconvenience, thought it best to release NICHOLAS RINZO, whom his predecessor CLEMENT had left in prison; and thinking (as we fay) to

Gunther Earle of Swarzens-burgh chofen Emperour againft Charles king of Bobe-

The Emperous

Charles came

into Italy ..

drine out one naile with another, fent him to Rome against FRANCIS; and he ysed such meanes, through the helpe of the Romane Nobilitie, that by force of armes he expelled FRANCIS VARONCELLO out of the Capitoll and flew him in the fight but after this victory, the faid NICHOLAS with a defire to vsurpe, persecuting the Colonnois fell at variance with the most principal men of Rome, and in the end was flaine, and fo Rome was delivered from both the one and the other: and then one G v I D O I O R D AN(by the Popes consent) was made Gouer-

nor, and afterwardes there were two.

While these matters were in hand, it was agreed betweene the Pope and the Emperor (as write the Italian authors) that fo foon as the Emperor by the Cardinals should be crowned in Rome, without making any longer stay, should returne into Germany. The Emperor and Empresse accompanied with many Princes and a great army, in the yeere 1355 came into Italy, with intent only to be crowned. and to favour and further the popes proceedings, which heedid accordingly, which made his journey easie: for being come into Italy, and seene to vie no violence, or to oppresse any man, neither to deprine or dispossesse any man of his goods or lands, hee was very honorably received by the Lords of CARRARAIN Pados, and afterwards by the GONZAGAS in Montos, and by those of the house of ESTE in Ferrara, and by the Viscounts in Milan, and by the most of the Lords of Italy, which did him homage, and acknowledged him for their Emperour; and he left them in their lands and estates: and comming to the citie of Milan was crowned therein with the Iron Crowne, and from Milan went to Pifa; whither came folicitors to him from Florence, and from many other cities, which acknowledging him for their Emperour, and fuing for peace and his fauour, furnished him with money for the paiment of his fouldiers; and fo departing from Pila, he went peaceably to Rome, where they attended his comming, and was folemnely receiued by the Cardinals Legats which came to crowne him, together with the Senators, the Popes Vicars, and with all the Clergy and Romane people: and so vpon Easter day, which was the morrow after his comming, he together with his wife the Empresse, was after the accustomed manner by the aforesaid Cardinals crowned with great pompe. His coronation being ended, even so in peace and quietly as he came, without offending or grieuing any man he departed from Rome, contenting himselfe with their service and the money which they had giuen him, which (fome write) amounted to a very great fumme; and fo hee returned into his countrie, more peaceably and with leffe tumult, then euer any Emperour that came into Italy before him had done.

At this time king I o HN of France being in a battaile taken prisoner by the king of England; after foure yeeres imprisonment, was upon certaine conditions of peace fet at libertie. This king had by inheritance the Duchie and Countie of Burgundy, which after his decease he gaue to his second some Patler, whose offpring enjoyed the fame; from whom lineally descended the Emperor CHARLES the fifth by his grandmother, who was Ladie of that estate. What ensued after the Emperours returne into Germany is briefly and confusedly written, and the Annales of Germany treate of some matters of small importance, and that very preposterously; wherefore I will write onely what thereof shall seeme most agreeable, vntill we come to the end of his life. First this prince is commended for his wit and humanitie, and to have been discreete and just in ministring justice, and to have been learned in the tongues, and well feene in historie, and indifferently well in other Arts and Sciences, whereby he made no small benefit in his

actions. And as he was much affected to his countrey Bohemia, fo (as write Pope PIVS QVINTVS and other authors) in Prage he erected fundrie stately edifices and made the Church and Archbishoprick of that citie Metropolitane, exempting it from the Church of Mentz; and erected an Vniuerfitie in that citie, wherein Arts and Sciences are read; and all his whole life time had so great a care to adorne that citie and kingdome, that the rest of Germany murmured against him for it and so doe the Historiographers which write thereof. In those daies some fedition and tumults arose in the citie of Nuremburgh, which in the end he pacified, although with some difficultie. It happened also that EBERARD Earle of Wistembergh made an Infurrection against this Emperour, and had a great armie and many followers; but all was pacified and CHARLES raigned peaceably. In the yeere following, which was in the yeere 1362, died Pope INNOCENT the 1362. fixth and in his place was chosen Cardinall WILLAM of S. Victor, a Monke of

S.BENNETS order, and was called VRBANE the fifth.

This Pope having determined to come into Italy, sent to entreate the Emperor to doe the like, which he principally did, for feare of the Viscounts Lords of Milan, and of the greatest part of Lombardy; which the Emperour at his entreatic perfourmed, at which his comming I finde it not written that he came by Milan, for that BARNABY and GALBAS Vicounts were not his friends; but by Padoa, and from Padea to Bologna, and thence to Pifa, and fo to Rome, where he found the Pope: what they did there, I finde not written, either through negligence or for that it little imported; one thing BLONDVS, PLATINA, and others recount that it was vnknowne what was become of the heads of S.P ETER and S.PAVL, and that the Pope and the Emperour made great fearch for them, and at last found them and fet them where they stand(as they say) this day. After this, the Emperor having been but three moneths in Italy returned into Germany; and after his departure the Pope went to Marfelles in Prouence in France, and thence to Juinion

where he died; after whose decease PETER DE BELFORT Cardinall of S.M A-RY the new was chosen, and called GREGORY the eleventh.

The Emperour in the same yeere summoned a Councell to be holden in the citie of Franckford, where after much discourse, he entreated the princes Electors to make his sonne WENCESLAVS, King of the Romanes, and his successor; which was not onely folicited by entreatie, but by great gifts, and large promifes; which were so excelline, that (as Pivs Qvintvs writeth) he promised an hundred thousand Ducats to enery Elector: and as the summe was greater then hee was able to pay, he gaue in pawne for the fame many townes and lands of the Empire, which they hold vntill this day. This they write to be the cause of the weakning of the Emperours power which were his fuccessors; which ALBERT CRANTZ also confirmeth in his historie of Saxony, alleaging that this Emperour morgaged fixteene Imperiall townes in Sueuia, to the neighbour princes, which, together with the imbecillitie and retchlefnes of his fonne WENCESLAVS who fucceeded him in the Empire, so decaied and weakened the power of the Emperours in Germany, that they never recovered their former vigour: this was imputed to have been a great overlight in so wise a prince, not withstanding that in all his other actions he gouerned with great policie and wifedome. Yet many Imperiall cities, through fundrie accidents which happened, without his commaundement or leave, warred vpon the Earle of Wittembergh, which warre lasted many daies, and many men were flaine of either partie; wherewith the Emperor being much displeased, and fauouring and assisting the Earle therein, besieged the citie

The first comming of the Turkes into

Grecia.

of Vime, where hee punished some for example sake In this meane time, some cities in Italy belonging to the Church of Rome, discontent with the gouernment of the Popes Vicars or Lieutenants, rebelled against him: whereupon, the Pope knowing the great detriment which his Church received through his absence. refolued to returne with his court to Rome: for which purpose (vnder another pretext)in the yeere 1376, he caused certaine galleys to be rigged and armed in in the river Rodanus, wherein embarking himselfe he failed into Italy: and so the Papall court after it had seiourned in France the space of threescore and ten veres and formewhat more, and the most part of that time in the citie of Aumion, returned to Rome. The Emperour having raigned now 32. yeeres, and being buffe in pacifying the cities in Germany which warred against the Earle of Wittembergh. was in the yeere of our Lord 1378, taken with an infirmitie, whereof he dying, left two fonnes legitimate; the eldeft of which was called WENCESLAV s, who was alreadie king of the Romanes, and succeeded his father in the kingdome of Bohemia by inheritance, and in the Empire by election: the others name was SIG Is-MYND, who afterwards by the right of his wife was king of Hengary, and in processe of time came to be Emperour alfo. This Emperour CHARLES in a Parliament which he held in the yeere 1376, made a law called Bulla aurea, wherein he instituted an order to be observed by the Electors in chusing the Emperour, and in the preheminences amongst themselues, and in all the other ceremonies of the Empire.

Touching the Emperors of Conflantinople (of whom I am bound to make ever fome mention) I finde fo great confusion in the histories of those times, as there was in that empire; wherein were factions and warres: but in summe, in the time of Charles the fourth in Germany, the discord in Constantinople betweene I o had Paleologys Caloloannes, and his father in law I o had Catacyzenys (both which were called Emperours) was the cause that Amyrathking of the Turks (having taken all that the Christians held in Asalia) under colourto helpe and succour Catacyzeny spassing Hellespon, came into Europe, and tooke Gallipoli, and other cities in that coast, and afterwards the citie of Adrianople: and he passing forwards, there came against him Lazarys Dispote of Sernia (which is part of the ancient lower Miss) and Marke Dispote of Bulgaria (which is part of the ancient lower Miss) and many other princes; which in a battale about the yeere of our Lord 1363, being overthrowne, Amyrathecame Lord of great part of the Christians lands in Europe; and his some Baiazeth succeding him conquered more; and so the empire of Constantinople daily decrea-

fed. And afterwards in the time of the Emperour WENCESLAVS,

CALOLOANNES being now old, and having difpossessed

CATACVZENVS, dying, 2 sonne of his called EMANYEL PALBOLOGYS succeeded him.

BAGACKE:

#### THE LIFE OF WENCES-LAVS ONELY OF THAT

NAME, AND CIX. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGYMENT.

Ces. But Wencessaus would verifie this rule in himselfe, so being without any contradiction chosen Emperor, he came to be so vanishe his father in goodnes, that he less to thimselfe as much infamie, as his father did glory: neither did hee pacifie the warres which in Germany were kindled in his father time, but suffered them to proceede; which was the cause of much will in that countrie. In his time sprang the great schissnes which continued fortie yeeres. The Turkes in his time made great conquests upon the Christians: and solm Galeas made bimselfe in his time Lord of Lombardy. The electors seeing the small care that this Emperor tooke to bee crowned; for the desence of Christendome; to set his hand to the good government of the Empire, especially in the affaires of Germany, and that he led a base and licencious life, deposed him, as unpositiable and of no worth. When he had unworthily raigned Emperor two and twentie yeeres, be afterwards died a private Lord.



Lthough that the defire to come to an end of this historie (being neere thereunto) doth incite and animate me to make hase; yet there are so many matters to be written off, and the moderne Historiographers have so copiously set downe the same, that I am constrained (euen against my will) to prosecute the remainder more at large; wherein I presume to be held excu-

fed, for the pleasure and profit which the reader shall receive thereby: where-

H

ore

fore to anoyde prolixity, I fay, that WENCESLAVS King of Bohemia, and eldest fonne of the Emperor CHARLES the fourth succeeded his father in the Empire; who producd very vnlike to his father; for he grew to be vicious, retchleffe, and of little worth. But yet in the beginning as he was young, and men were in good hope of him; being chosen in his fathers time King of the Romanes. he was presently without any great contradiction obeyed for Emperor, and was fo two and twentie yeeres, and in the end lost it, as you shall heare. His brother SIGIS MUND being of more spirit and fifteene yeeres younger then WENCES-LAVS, LEVVES King of Hungary married him to his daughter (who was also by his mother King of Poland) and thereby SIGISMVND came afterwards to be King of Hungary, as we will declare, of whom in the history of WENCESLAVS we stiall make especial mention, for in processe of time he came to be Emperor; for by reason of the insufficiencie of WENCESLAVS, little is to be written of him, so that of these two and twentie yeeres that he held the name of Emperor, the least that is to be said, is of him; but yet neuerthelesse passing it vnder his name, we will briefly relate what passed in the countries subject to the Empire in his time, wherein he should have borne the greatest sway, if he had not been so remisse and negligent as he was; for although it seeme little to the purpose, yet it shall be expedient for the liquidation of such matters as follow. First for the warres betweene the cities of Germany, and the Earle of Wittembergh, which his father before his decease sought to have extinguished, his sonne had no such care: for in his time it encreased; and Germany from the beginning of his raigne, untill the end thereof, endured want of both peace & inflice. In his time also happened a schisme in the Church of Rome, for in the same yeere that the Emperor CHARLES the fourth died in Germany; in Rome died pope GREGORY the eleventh, who as I faid returned the Papall court to Rome, and after his decease the Cardinals affembling themselues in the Conclaue to chuse him a successor, of which thirteene were French-men, and foure Italians, whither all the Romane people running, defired them to chuse an Italian, and no French-man; and the French Cardinals vsed all meanes to haue had a French-man; and the rest an Italian: and notwithstanding that the greatest number were French, yet disagreeing amongst themselves, one BARTHOLMEVV a Neapolitan, and Archbishop of Barri was chosen pope, who tooke for his name VRBANE the fixth. The French Cardinals presently repenting, alleaged that what they had done was for feare of the Romane people; whereupon some of them departed from Rome: yet VRBANE notwithstanding was consecrated, and generally obeyed, and those which had abfented themselves returned, and so they continued three monthes, which being expired, through some discontentments which they conceived againsthim (and as PLATINA writeth, for that he shewed himselfe seuere and rigorous against the abuses and pride of the clergie) eight of the French Cardinals, faining that they left Rome by reason of the heate, went to Fundi; where being fauored by Queene I OANE of Naples which fold the citie of Auinion to the pope, they alleaging and publishing the election of VRBANE to have been made by violence, that he was no pope, and that the Sea was voide; they amongst themselves in Fundi chose a new pope and called him CLEMENT the feuenth; whom Queene Io ANE and all the kingdome of Naples obeyed and held for pope; and so began the schisme, which lasted fortie yeeres. Through the warres and diffention betweene princes, Christendome was divided into two factions; for besides Queene IOANE of Naples, the French Kingfauored

pope CLEMENT, and perswaded the King of Castile to doe the like. All Italy (excepting Naples) obeyed pope VRBANE; to did the Emperor WENCESLAVS. Germany, England and Portugall; and the one and the other alleaged such reafons, and so great and so worthy personages tooke part with the one and the other, as made the matter very doubtfull. This schisme (as I say) continued long, notwithstanding that those which were chosen died, for the Cardinals of either party chose a successor, and held the chaire for voide, as hereafter shall appeare. Pope CLEMENT went into France, where with the aide of the French King. and of the Queene of Naples and of Provence, hee held his court in the citie of Aninion, and VRBANE remained in Rome; and they two warring, either of them by all meanes possible sought the others destruction. Pope VRBANE sent his Ambassadors to complaine to the Emperor WENCESLAYS, of what washappened, and to perswade him to come into Italy in his behalfe, against the Queene of Naples, which then was widow of Levy es Duke of Tarent, after that the had killed her first husband: but he giving them good words tooke little care for the matter, but yet he and his brother Sigismand fent to pope CLEMENT at Aumon, admonishing him to leave the name of pope and to submit himselfe to Pope VRBANE. Pope VRBANE finding himselfe much grieved against Queene IOANE, for that through her affiltance the schisme began (that kingdome being subject and held of the Church of Rome) sent to treate with CHARLES Nephew of LEVYES King of Hungary (who as some say) was sonne of her husband Andrew King of Naples, whom she had made away) to come into Italy with an armie; promifing him (as a schissmatike and disobedient to his Church) to depriue Queene IOAN 1, and to make him King of Naples, whereto CHARLES and his Vncle LEVVE's King of Hungary willingly gaue eare; which LEVVE's was father in law to Sigismynd the Emperors brother; who being very glad thereof gaue him aide and counsell therein. CHARLES at what time he was called to the kingdome of Naples, made warre against the Venecians; for he and his Vncle the King of Hungary and Poland, fauored the Genowaies; betweene which, and the Venecians in those daies were very great and cruell warres: many princes affifting both the one and the other partie; in which warre many great exploits were performed, chiefly by Sea, sometimes the one partie preuailing and formetime the other. But at this time the Genowaies had the Venecians at fuch aduantage, that they with a mightie fleete of Galleyes by Sea befreged the citie of Venice; and their partakers and friends made very sharpe warre against them by land; fo as the citie was likely to have been taken and destroyed by them. We may fay that that was the most cruell warre that vntill then cuer was in the Artillery first world, for therein was artillery first vsed by the Venecians; which was about the vsed in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, eightic two, or a little after. Anno Dom. The invention of this pestilent scourge of mankinde, was attributed to the Ger- 1382. manes; some say that a Monke, who was a great Philosopher invented the same, not to the end to have killed men therewith, but with a defire to have experimented the qualitie and naturall force of things. Others fay, that it was one P E-TER a great Magitian; but it importeth little to know who it was, for besides the ordinarie Historiographers which I follow in this place, many others write

Venice escaping from being taken in this warre, and many other matters succeeding; the Duke of Sauoy treated, and fet downe articles of peace betweene those two Common-wealthes, which peace was concluded. So as to returne to

gundie.

WENCESLAVS. my discourse, CHARLES being called to the kingdome of Naples, went into Hungary, where being furnished with men and other fauours by his Vncle King LEVVES, and the Emperor WENCESLAVS, he came into Italy, and to be briefe (leaving what befell him vpon the way) he went to Rome, and was very honorably received by the pope, and thence tooke his way towards the kingdome of Naples ; and comming to blowes with Queene I OANE sarmie, he ouerthrew and scattered the same; and comming to the citie of Naples, tooke it, and the Queene retyring to Castel nous was therein besieged, and so CHARLES in short space made himselfe Lord of the whole kingdome, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, eightic and two. Queene Io ANE being besieged, sent to the French King; to her countrey of Prouence; and to pope CLEMENT, for reliefe; and forasmuch as she had no iffue, she adopted L E vv Es Duke of Anien. Uncle to the French King for her heyre; which LEVVES with a puilsant armie of French men, and with all the fauour that pope CLEMENT and the countrev of Prouence could yeeld him, went to relieue her: which was fo great that what is written thereof feemeth incredible, for they write that he came with aboue thirtie thousand horse. Being come into the territorie of Bologna in Italy, warring vpon fuch as were his aduerfaries, and fpreading a report that hee came to fet Queene I O A N E at libertie ; to supplant pope V R B A N E; and to place pope C L E-MENT (of which both the one and the other in any mans judgment was easie to have been done) in the midft of his journey (which was very leafurely for the the great number of people which came with him, and being hindred by King CHARLES Of Naples and pope VRBANE) he was taken with so vehementa The death of ficknes, that within very few daies it killed him, and his armie without a Leader Lewes Duke of being divided and dispersed, returned to their countrey: and so was King CHARLES deliuered from this feare, who having by fundrie practifes gotten Oucene LOANE into his power, commaunded her secretly to be drowned, and fo the dying (bearing penance for the death of her husband) CHARLES remained King and absolute Lord of Naples, with whom the pope fell at variance and other matters followed. While these matters passed in Italy, there was neither peace nor quietnes in Germany, through the negligence and little care of the Emperor WENCESLAVS; who making his abode in his kingdome of Bohemia. gaue himselfe wholy ouer to his pleasure. About this time died the Earle of Flaunders. The writing of and PHILIP Duke of Bargundy sonne to King IOHN of France enheriting his the Consider of Elanders to the houses of Flaunders and Burgundy were vnited. It happened at that Duchie of Bur- time alfo, which was in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, eightic and three, that L E vv E's King of Hungary and of Poland dying, left onely two daughters, of which one called MARY was married to the Emperors brother SIGISMUND; who by her enherited the kingdome of Hungary: and the other was married to the Duke of Austrich, with the title to the kingdome of Poland. King LEVVES being dead, and SIGISMVND being but fifteene yeeres old, after that he and his wife were crowned, his mother in law Queene Is ABEL had the government of the kingdom, who following the counse of the Earle of Gara, (a fauorite of hers) gouerned with fuch rigor and seueritie, that the greatest part of the subjects murmuring against her, rose and rebelled, and as Sigismynd was but a childe, and she a woman, and the Emperor vnable to relieue them, the rebellion could not be pacified: whereupon the principall men of that kingdome, fent for CHARLES King of Naples, alleaging that the enheritance of the kingdome of Hungary appertained vnto him, and to no other; for that he was a man,

and neerest of blood vnto King LEVVES deceased. King CHARLES thirsting after another kingdome, and hoping of the like good successe in Hungary as he had in Naples, accepted the offer; and making preparation for his journey, leauing the government of Naples to his wife with the greatest store of men and money that he could get (for that he would not compasse Italy about) sailed along the Adriatick Sea (now called the Gulph of Venice) and landing at a place in Slauonia, subject to the kingdome of Hungary, was there so well received, and in like manner by all those of that kingdome, that the young King Sigis MV ND. doubting of the power of his friends which held with him, leaving his wife and his mother in law the widow Queene in Hungary, fled to his brother the Emperor, who then was in Bohemia: and the Queene mother being a subtill woman, fent amessenger to welcome King CHARLES into the countrey, and to tell him that the repofing her trust in his goodnes, would yeeld her felfe and her daughter into his power, for that she assured her selfe his comming to be for the good of that kingdome. King CHARLES gaue such credit to her speeches, that he cameto the place where she was, and holding himselfe for absolute Lord, and taking yoon him the gouernment of the King, was not so carefull for the safetie of his person, as reason required; for he one day comming to the Queenes lodg- King Charles ing, was there by the Queenes direction and some her fauorites traiterously of Naples marflaine, by the hands of one BLASE DE FORBAC: fo as this King, not contented gary. with the kingdome of Naples, came to lose his life for the kingdome of Hungary, and the two Queenes, mother and daughter having made away their enemie. wroteto the Emperor, to fend his brother Sigismynd into that kingdome; and they in the meane time had the gouernment; for as it feemeth, there was then no open contradiction. And the Queene being more confident then she ought to have been confidering what she had done, went from the place where fhe made her abode, to goe in progresse into the countrie, carrying her daughter with her; and paffing one day carelesly with a small guarde; a great Lord of Hungary, called IOHN BANDE HORVBACH (which had been of the aduerse partie) meeting her vpon the way apprehended the two Queenes, mother and daughter, and so many as were with them; and there in her presence slew BLAS . FORBAC, who murthered King CHARLES; and made the old Queene and The Dueme of others of her company to be drowned in a lake of water which was there by: and Huntary dronhaving thus cruelly revenged the death of King CHARLES, he carried the for-ned. rowfull young Queene MARY, prisoner to a Castle. When King Sigis-MYND was certified of this great and strange disaster, moued with just forrow for his mother in law and his wife, he with the aide of his brother the Emperor, entred Hungary, where, by the most part he was received and obeyed; moued thereto with compassion to see his wife imprisoned: which when I OHN HORV-BACH, the cruell reuenger of King CHARLES his death understood; repenting of what he had done, or fearing to be brought to ruine for the same, he so practized with the Queene, whom hee held prisoner, that shee promised and fware to obtaine his pardon of her husband; whereupon she being set at libertie, went presently to Buda, where her husband was, and there they both were againe crowned, and received for King and Queene, which happened in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, eightie and fixe. But SIGISMVND notwithstanding his wives oathes and promises, in such manner persecuted IOHN D'B HORVBACH, that after many conflicts, hauing gotten him into his power, he commaunded him to be flaine: and so he remained King of Hungary, wherein

he raigned many yeeres after the chaunces and changes of fortune before recited, in that kingdome, and in Naples, such as if they have been read with attention are as strange as most that the passed in the world; yet afterwards ensued o-

ther as great or greater, as shall appeare.

SIGISMVND having brought that kingdome to subjection, and throughly established himselse therein; in reuenge of matters past, he at a Parliament held at Buda (as writeth PIVS QVINTVS, who before was called ENEAS SILVIVS) beheaded two and thirtie of the most principall Lords of that kingdome, which had been his enemies and warred against him: which truely was cruell and seuere iustice, notwithstanding that they had deserued it: for which cause, the parents and friends of those which were executed did euer after so much hate him, that they brought him into many troubles and extremities, for it is a farre more safe course to pardon, and to vse moderate instice, with elemencie: then to extend the rigor and extremitie of the lawes. In the kingdome of Naples raigned LADISLAYS sonne of King CHARLES, although not without trouble by those which held for LEVVES Duke of Anion (sonne of that LEVVES which died in that action as is before declared) who challenged the kingdome of Naples, and Queene IOANES other dominions.

fumma iniu-

IOHN GALEAS Viscount, sonne of GALEAS in those dayes made himselfe Lord of all Lombardy, by putting his Vncle BARNABY to death by treason, with whom hee had in his fathers time divided the countrie, in this manner. BARNABY held Placencia, Cremona, Parma, Lodi, Brescia, Bergamo and other places thereto appertaining: and his Nephew I OHN held Pania, Vercelli, Nouarra, Tortona, and the rest betweene that and the Alpes; the citie of Milan was for them both, conditionally that they should peaceably gouerne the same. But as soueraigntie can endure no company or equallity, to I onn GALBAS to make himfelfe Lord of the whole, found a meanes in a Castle to apprehend his Vncle, and father in law, who trusted him as his owne sonne, wherein either of poison or other infirmitie, he died prisoner: and he made himselfe Lord of Milan, and the other cities, notwithstanding that BARNABY had one sonne called Astro-GIO, and another called CHARLES Viscount, who afterwards troubled his kinsman all that hee might. But the ambition and power of IOHN GALEAS rested not here; for as at that time there were warres betweene Anthony DE LASCALA Lord of Verena and Vicenza, and FRANCIS CARRARA, Lord of Padoa and other townes; he in fuch manner fauored the partie of FRANCIS CARRARA, that expelling Anthony DE LA SCALA, GALEAS tookethole townes to himselfe, and possessed the same: and after that he had subjected the enemie, he bent his weapons against his friend, and besieged FRANCIS CAR-RARA in Pados, and entring it by force, tooke the poore old man prisoner; and fo for that time made himselfe Lord of those cities, and was the most mightie and redoubted man in all Italy: fo as this was the right and title of the first Dukes of Milan: yet untill that time they were not called Dukes, for this GALEAS was called Earle of Vertues, vntill that the Emperour WENCESLAYS gave him the title of Duke, as hereafter we will declare. The Lords which were thus deposed, left sonnes behinde them, with which hee afterwards had warres and troubles, and many accidents happened, which I must offorce recount, for the better vnderstanding of my principall intent: but this for the present shall suffice, to bring that to light whereof we purpose to discourse, which is of the raigne of the Emperor WENCESLAVS, for that it concerneth the state of the Imperiall

townes and lands of the Empire in Germanie, and Italy, whereof the Emperour tooke not fuch care as hee ought to have done, and cared not to bee crowned in Rome, neither to come into Italy. And as for Germany, he gouerned it so retchlefly, that the warres betweene the cities of the Empire, and the Dukes of Watembergh ceased not; sundrie princes fauoring both the one and other partie, and all the rest was out of order: whereupon they began to consult of deposing him from the Empire, which was afterwards effected; and the Bohemians which were his owne fubiects discontented with his gouernment, held him seauenteene weekes prisoner; and he being afterwards upon certaine conditions released, fell to his old manner of living; at the end whereof, which was in the veere of our Lord, one thousand, three hundred, eightie and nine, Pope Va-BAN & the fixth died in Rome, having been so eleven yeeres, and Cardinall P s-TER TONACELLO a Napolitane, was by the Romane Cardinals chosen for his fuccessor, and called BONIFACE the ninth: yet in Autinion, CLEMENT the feauenth was held and obeyed for pope in all France. This BONIFACE vsed fuch policie that getting the absolute government of Rome, he suppressed the power and libertie of the people; and making and establishing officers at his pleasure, fortified and garrisoned the Castle Saint Angelo, which of long time had lien desert, an habitacle for Goates and other beasts: otherwise he was not greatly commended, for the contention betweene these two Popes opened the gate to fymony and many other abuses. And Pope Boniface afterwards fent a Cardinall Legate to crowne LADISLAVS King of Naples, fonne of King CHARLES flaine in Hungary : and Pope CLEMENT in Auinion a littlebefore gaue the fame title to LEVVES Duke of Anion, fonne of the other LEVVE's his fathers riuall; so as many things passed betweenethese two princes, which I omit: but King LADISLAVS preuailing in the yeere following Pope Boniface his election, Pope CLEMENT died in Aumon, and the Cardinals which followed him, chose one PETER DE LVNA a Spanyard to be his fucceffor, a very excellent learned man, if he could have been reftrained from the ambition to have bin Pope, who was called BENEDICT the thirteenth.

IOHN G ALEAS Viscount being of great power, sent the Archbishop of Milan for his Ambassadour, to entreate the Emperour to give him the title of Duke of Milan, and to approoue his right thereto: which the Emperor without the confent of the princes of the Empire graunted, more for the defire of the money. which was presented him, then for any right or reason that might induce him thereto, and all things happened to I OHN GALEAS fo much accordingly to his defire, that he came to be one of the most puissant and redoubted princes in Christendome.

The schisme betweene the two Popes, and the warres in Italy and Germany in those daies, together with the Emperors retchlesnes and insufficiencie, were the cause why the Emperor and Empire of Constantinople could not be relicued or fuccoured, which at that time were mightily oppressed by BAIAZETH the fourth, King of the Turkes; who with a puiffant armie comming into Europe, ouercame and flew in battaile MARKE DESPOTE of Bulgaria, and overranne all his countrey: and within three yeeres after, returning into the prouinces of Ediazeth King. Gracia, tooke and conquered cities and prouinces: and paffing forwards march-of the Turker ed through all Walachia, which in auncient time was called Dacia; and so came Europe, into Hungary, whence he returned with great spoyle, remayning Lord (besides whathe held before) of the provinces of Macedonia, of the greatest part of Thra-

the Tinke, wherein the Christians were enerthrowne.

The ereat Turke ouerthrowne and taken by the mighty Tamor-

gan to take

cia, of Thessalia, of the prouince of the auncient Athenes and other countries; and comming victorious belieged the Imperiall citie of Constantinople: whereupon SIGISMYND King of Hungary, with the aide of his brother the Emperor (but with much more and farre better from fundrie other Christian princes; chiesly from England, and France, whither he sent to sue for the same, and also from the Emperor of Constantinople) came to seeke the great Turke, with 100000. men. whereof twentie thousand were horsemen : whereof BALAZETH being aduertised, raised his siege from before Constantinople, and with three hundred thousand men came to meete him; and the two armies vpon Michaelmas day in the yeere of our Lord one thousand three hundred ninty and seauen, fought a bloody and cruel battaile, wherein the king of Hungary, and the other princes & nobles which were with him were ouerthrowne, and as it is written a very great flaughter was made of the Christians, through the fault of the French, which charged before their time; and the King of Hungary, and the Master of the order of the Knights of the Rhodes, escaping by flight, the greatest part of the French were either slaine or twent to RANG of Hangary and taken prisoners. After this victory, BAIAZETH returned to the fiege of Conflantinople; at which time if the great T AM OR LAN(which was one of the most mightw and most victorious Captaines that euer was in the world) had not risen in Asia. he had taken the citie, and at that time had wholy subdued that Empire: wherefore hee leaving in Europe the best garrisons that he could, went to the defence of Asia, wherein he was in a battaile ouerthrowneand taken, and in TAMOR-LANS power died prisoner; which (for that time) brought some rest to Christendome. King SIGISMVND escaping from this infortunate battaile, came to Constantinople, and thence sayling to the Ile of Rhodes, came into Dalmacia or Slauonia. In the time of this his peregrination many of his kingdome of Hungary publishing him to be either dead or taken prisoner, advanced the Colours of LADISLAVS King of Naples, proclaiming him King by the right of his father CHARLES, of whom we made mention, and of his death being flaine after his comming into Hungary, for the same purpose that his sonne was now sent for: but Sigismund afterwards appearing with the aide of the Archbishop of. Strigonium, and other his friends, recouered his kingdome; although that afterwards hee was againe imprisoned, and fell into great troubles; the occasion whereof was the malice and hatred which many of his kingdome bare him, for the cruell execution done in the beginning of his raigne, as then was expressed. These matters being past, and other which for that they concerne not the historie of the Emperors, I ouerpasse; the princes electors of the Empire, and the rest, feeing the infufficiencie and little care that the Emperor tooke to represse and pacifie the warres and controuerfies betweene the cities amongst themselues, and among the princes; and that he gaue himselfe to his pleasure and vaine delights, by reason whereof he was little regarded; resolued to meete, and to depose him, as daungerous, and vnprofitable for the Empire; and to chuse another Emperor; alleaging him to be altogether vnfit for the gouernment; that he de-But the chiefest fired not, neither sought to be crowned; that he had without reason, order, or that he famored equitie giuen the title of Duke to Iohn Galeas the tyrant of Milan; that the dollrippe of he had put many men of Sacerdotall order to death, and some prelates; that he John Huffe and was vicious, and no good Christian; that he tooke no careto refift the Turkes; which then be- and finally, thathe was a man vnprofitable for the Christian Common-wealth; with many other matters which they laid to his charge; and putting their refolution in effect, they met for that purpose in the citie of Franckford, in the yeere of

our Lord, one thousand, foure hundred, pope Boniface being the chiefest au. Anno Dom. thor therof, who published him for depriued and vnworthy of the Empire, in 1400the 22. yeere of his raigne. Here is some difference betweene the authors. for forme write that Robert whom some call Rypert, Countie Palatine of Rhine and Duke of Basiere, was chosen in his place; without making mention of Iodocvs Marquis of Moravia cofin germane to the Emperor WENCESLAVS (being his fathers brothers sonne) who some say, was chosen before Robert, and lived but a little while after: others (which I rather beleeue) fay that there was controuerfie betweene the electors; some chusing I o D o c v s, and others R OBBRT, and that IoDocvs dying, the contention ended. Howfoeuer it was, it is true that I opocys lived but fixe moneths after this election; and of him nothing is written worthie to bee recited. So as (according to all writers) ROBERT by common consent, after the decease of I o D o C v s, remained sole Emperor; and his election was ratified by pope Boniface. Onely Cyspinian in this place maketh mention of one FREDERICK Duke of Bruinswick, who (as hee faith) was also chosen before ROBERT, and was slaine before that hee could be crowned, through the treason of a certaine Earle, by the counsell and procurement of the Archbishop of Mentz; and that ROBERT was chosen afterwards. I know not what authors he followed therein, for I finde it written by him onely. The Emplorer It sufficeth that ROBERT, whom the Germanes call R VPERT (WENCESLAVS VV encessaus being deposed) remained Emperor: whereof WENCESLAVS made great ac-the Empire. count, for in truth he that tooke small care to preserve it, it is no maruell though it grieued him little to lofe it; for he contented himselfe with his kingdome of Bohemia, which he enjoyed a long time after, and gouerned the same so retchlesly, that his brother Sigismand King of Hungary, by the consent of his subjects apprehended him once, besides another time, that they themselves apprehending him, delivered him to the custody of ALEBRY Duke of Austrich, who held him for a space prisoner in Vienna, whence being afterwards released, hee returned to his kingdom, in possession wheref, he afterwards lived ninteene yeeres, and died being of the age of seauen and fiftie (as writeth pope Pivs Qvintvs, otherwise called ÆNE-As Silvivs) without leauing either fon or daughter by two wines to which he was married. And he raigning in Bohemia, the religion began to spring, wherof hereaf-

this King fauored. This was the end of Emperor WENCESLAVS his Empire. All this while I OHN PALEOLOGVS raigned in Constantinople, who was also called CALOIOANNE syyet BLOND VS is of opinion, that ANDRONICV s, sonne of this CALOIOANNES, raigned at this time, wherein (as I coniecture) he is deceiued; for the authors which particularly write the liues of the Greeke Emperors, make no mention of ANDRONICVS in this place, but of IOHN CATACV-ZENVS, with whom CALOIOANNES contended for the Empire. Alittle after the depriving of WENCESLAVS, EMANVEL PALEOLOGYS succeeding his father CALOIO ANNES, the Empire of Conflantinople decayed and came to ruine; for Ba-TAZETH the great Turke tooke many prouinces and countries thereof, as we have already declared, yet it had some rest in those daies, by reason of the calamitie brought vpon the Turks by the great TAMORLAN; but it continued not long, for TAMORLAN being dead, CALAPIN sonne of BALAZETH, recoursed and great Turks reformed the kingdome and Empire of the Turkes, and againe molested and great Turkes. persecuted the Empire of Greece, and the Kings of Hungary also.

ter mention shal be made, which was the ground of that which at this day is pro-

fessed in Germany, and in the greatest part of Christendome, which (as it seemeth)

Xxx 4

THE



#### OF ROBERT ONELY OF THAT NAME.

AND CX. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGVMENT.

Obert being in the time of Wenceslaus made Emperour, tooke speedy order to make it in the world that that dignitie was not given him for nonght, and therefore made bimselfe to be crowned; and having suppressed the troubles of Germany went to be crowned in Italy, and to protect the Florentines against the Duke of Milan; but his comming was no leffe dishonorable, then unprofitable; neither were the Florentines warres with the Duke of Milan assured, but through the death of the sayd Dute: for the Emperour departing without having defended them, or without putting their adversary in any feare, applyed himselfe to the affaires of Germany, wherein he was much troubled about the schisme in the Church of Rome : and desiring to assemble a Councell, the Popes not confenting thereto, hee was along time in doubt; but in the endresoluing to have a Councell held in such a place, as whither both the Popes without suspition might come, he fell fick and dyed, in the tenth yeare of his raigne.

He Emperor WENCESLAVS being in such manner (as I said) depriued and ROBERT Duke of Baniere chosen in his place, the new Emperor elect accompanied by the electors and some other princes, went to the citie of Colen, and there was crowned by the Archbishop thereof; and his election and coronation was confirmed and ratified by pope Boniface, and fo

through all Germany he was held and obeyed for Emperor: but not with such obedience and reuerence, as some of his predecessors had been; for the remisse behauiour,

behaulour, and little worth of WENCESLAVS, and the morgages and fales made by his father CHARLES, had given such libertie and exemptions, that the Empire scarcely retained the authoritie and reputation in the Imperial countries. and with the princes of Germany, as ought to have been given. But as ROBERT was a wife and prudent prince, and of himselfe very mightie and of great power. fo in the tenne yeeres which he raigned, he made a great reformation in all matters, and fet therein the best order that was possible, aswell in the controuersies and warres which were in the land, as in the excution of iustice and good gouernment. Italy then flamed with warre and fedition; in the kingdome of Naples LADISLAVS Sonne of CHARLES before named, with the aide of Pope BONI-FACE warred against those which held for L E vy Es Duke of Anion, sonne of the other LE vv Es who held some cities and townes in that kingdome, with the title and right which he inherited from his father, and from Queene I O ANE, being inuested in that kingdome by CLEMENT, which in Auinion was called Pope : and LADISLAY shis power encreasing, he in the end prevailed. The mightiest man in all the rest of Italy, was I O HN GALEAS Viscount Duke of Milan, who (as I said) was an haughtie minded man; who not contented to bee Duke and Lord of fo great estates, and of so many cities as he was, thought to haue been a King, yea an Emperour, and Lord of all Italy; and at that time made cruell warre against the Florentines, which onely durst and were able to make head against him, they being affifted by the fonnes of BARNABY Which had been tyrant of Milan; and by the sonnes of those which had been tyrants or Gouernours of Pados, which he had deposed, and others which he had wronged and dispossessed; and by many others which stood in feare to be dealt withall in the like manner.

The matter standing upon these termes, and the election and coronation of the Emperour ROBERT being published, the Florentines sent to entreate and to perfwade him (for fith he was Emperour he was bound thereto) to come into Italy, to free the countrey from so cruell and pernicious a tyrant, as was Duke I on n of Milan, (who had vsurped so many townes of the Empire, and of the Church also) and therewith offered to give him towards his charges vpon the way the summe of two hundred thousand Florines, whereof one hundred thousand presently in hand, and the rest the first day that hee with his armie should enter into the tyrant Dukes countrey; wherein they would affift him with the greatest power that they were able to make, both of foote and horse. These Ambassadours being arrived, in Germany were very well entertained by the Emperour, who presently accepting their offer and fertice, promifed to come into Italy, as well for the enterprise of Milan, as to be crowned in Rome: and he thereupon presently began to pro-

uide all things necessarie for his iourney.

The Duke of Milan having intelligence hereof, little regarded the devices and policies which his predeceffors had vsed with the former Emperours, which wereto procure peace with them, and to obtaine their grace and fauour, to beare themselves as their vassals & subjects; but he as a mighty absolute Lord, with great resolution mustered up his men, and prepared and prouided armour and Artillerie (which then was vied) and all things els needfull for the warres : so that great preparation was made of both fides; and all Italy and Germany were very attentiue to fee the issue of this great motion. The Emperour Raied longer then he, or those which expected his comming, thought hee would have done: for he hauing determined to come in the beginning of the yeere 1401, came to the citie of Trent (which is at the entrie into Italy) in the end of haruest following, accompa-

The Emperour Robert ouer-Italy by the Duke of Milan.

nied by the Duke of Austrich, the Archbishop of Colen, and some other princes. with many Captaines of Germany and of Italy. And to performe the conditions made with the Florentines, he came with his armie within fight of Brescia, which held for the Duke of Milan: but the Duke had in that citie, and the marches thereof, so many good men of warre to make head against him, that they made no doubt to offer him battaile; and the Dukes Cauallerie were so excellent good horsemen, that in all skirmishes and encounters wheresoeuer they met, they had the aduantage of the Germanes, and flew many of them: and they one day comming to ioyne with their whole forces in a battaile, the Emperour and his people were ouerthrowne, neere to the Lake Benaco, now called Garda: and being thus broken, he retired to Trent, where he stood in great doubt & perplexitie, to think whether he should returne into Germany, or reinforce his army to returne into Italy; where the Duke of Austrich and the Archbishop of Colen leaving him returned home, wher with the Emperor was forie that he was readie to haue done the like: but perswaded by FRANCIS CARRARA, son of CARRARA the tyrant of Padoa, and by other Italian Captaines; and thinking it a shame for him to returne, without further triall of his fortune, he went with his armie (which he had reinforced) fo farre as Trivingi, and thence to Padon; where by meanes of CARRARA he was received; whither came to him four principall Ambassadours from the Florentines, which also sent two Captaines with certaine troupes of horse and sootes one of which (as faith BLONDVS) Was SFORZA ATENDVLO, which afterwards was an excellent and very famous captaine, and was father of that FRANCIS S FORZA, which was one of the best Captaines in the world, and afterwards Duke of Milan. This SFORZA ATENDVLO Was borne in a village called Catiniola, of meane parentage and very poore. With these Ambassadours, ROBERT had long treaties and discourses, concluding, that the Duke of Milan was of such power, that neither he nor they had forces sufficient to deseate him or pluck him downe from his throane: wherefore he held it best for him to returne, and that they should seek new aide and reliefe: besides this he demanded so great a summe of money for the paiment of his fouldiers, that it feemed not to be raifed.

ROBERT.

The Florentines fearing their destruction if the Emperour should leave them and so returne, left no meanes vnsought to detaine him: wherefore two of the Ambassadours returned in post to Florence, to conferre with their citizens about this matter; and the other two remained with the Emperour, who for that it was winter, and no fit time to make warre (hauing a great defire to fee that citie) went to Venice, where he was most sumptuously received and entertained. The Florentines in the meane time having heard their Ambassadours, resoluting what answer they would make to the Emperour; determined to procure the friendship of the Venecians, and to make a league with them, and with the Pope, and to give the Emperour great aide of men and money: herewith the Ambassadours returned to him to Venice, relating to him the determination of their citizens. The Emperour complained of them to the Venecians, for that they had not given him that pay which they had promifed: and they excufing themselues, alleaged that hee came not with fuch power as was requifite, neither had entred the territorie of Milan. Finally, many treaties and speeches passed, as well with the Emperour as the Duke of Milans Ambassadours, which came thither to defend their cause before the Venecians; the Florentines still insisting to stay the Emperour in Italy; who giving them fometimes hope, and fometimes making the matter doubtfull, came from Venice to Padea, where he lay all the rest of the winter : and the moneth of Aprill being come, in the yeere of our Lord 1402, in the third veere of Anno Dom. his raigne, he perceiuing that the Venecians would be but lookers on, and new-1402. trals, and would not helpe the Florentines; and that LADISLAVS king of Naples had enough to doe with LEVVES of Anien; and that Pope BONIEACE (notwithstanding that the Duke of Milan had taken many townes from him) as little durst attempt ought against him; resolued with himselfe to returne into Germanie, and did so, although with losse of reputation: whereby it appeared that the Empire was not of fuch power as in former time; wherewith the Florentines were infinitly forie, and vsed all possible meanes to have staied him. And although I shall make some digression, yet I will declare what end the warre betweene the Duke of Milan and the Florentines had, and how it was interrupted by the death of the faid Duke.

The Emperour being departed out of Italy; the Duke of Milan thinking prefently to have accomplished his defires, and to have made himselfe Lord of Florence, sent his Generall, called ALBERICO Earle of Cuno, with all the force which he hadleuied to make head against the Emperour, to assault Bologna, which was gouerned by I OHN BENTIVO G LIO, a friend and confederate with the Florentines. And with the Dukes army went the Marquis of Montoa, his friend and confederate, and PANDOLPHO MALATESTA Lord of Arimino: the Florentines to the reliefe of Bentivog Lio, fent their best Captaines and men of warre, amongst which was Francis CARRARAtion of FRANCIS CARRARALord of Pados. BENTIVO GLIO herewith and with his owne forces tookethe field, with a determination to fight with the Duke of Milans power, which refused not the same, wherein IOHN BENTIVOGLIO and his partakers being overthrowne. hee escaped by slight, and the CARRARI were taken prisoners: and ALBERICO presently besieging the citie of Bologna, and battring it in many parts, by one of which, part of his people, by the permission of some within the citie began to enter; but BENTIVOGLIO resoluing to die honorably Lord of Bologna, charged those which were entred, and fought with such obstinacie, that being vuknowne he was there flaine, and cut in pieces. So soone as it was knowne that he was dead, Boleena taken the citie without any more resistance was entred, and so the Duke of Milan had by the Duke of that citie. This victory strake such a feare into the Florentines, that they holding Milan, themselues for lost, would have accepted any conditions of peace, had they bin neuer so hard; and sent to desire the Venecians to purchace the same for them: but the Duke of Milan which now affured himselse to be Lord of Florence, refufing to heare them commanded his army to march forwards; and being in the heighth of his greatnes; that God which onely is able, and vieth to abate mens pride, measured his thoughts; for hee was suddenly taken with a pestilent seuer, whereof within fewe daies after he died: and not with standing that his death was kept secret, yet it was soone discouered, and the Florentines were freed from the great feare of the servitude which they expected. I know well that I have spent much time about this man; but I doe it for that it is a notable matter, to fee, to how great power this Duke tyrannically, in despite of Kings and Emperours, which were his aduerfaries attained: and for a fmuch as he was a fabioct of the Empire, whereof this Hiftory is, it may be faid to be the substance of the same Hiftory.

Ifay then that this Prince IOHN GALEAS Viscount Duke of Millin was tall of stature, of a gentle and comely gesture, indifferently well seene in the liberall Artsand Sciences, very well spoken, of a quicke and tharpe wir, hardy and valiant in armes, and therewith very politike and fubtill in his actions: but hee was fo ambicious

Cities fubiect to the Duke of ambicious and desirous to raigne, and to commaund, that to attaine thereto, he fetting afide the feare of God, made no question to attempt any meanes inft or vniust whatsoeuer, so he might obtaine his purposes; which were so many and fuch, that I cannot describe them. It is certaine that he acquired much of what he desired, for before his death, he was Lord of nine and twentie cities in Italy, which Were, Milan, Pauia, Monfrigal, Nouarra, Bercelly, Alba, Aqui, Alexandria, Tortona, Dro. bio, Placencia, Parma, Rezzo, Bologna, Pifa, Siena, Massa, Groffeto, Clusio, Perugia, Alis Nocera, Lody, Feliro, Vicenza, Verona, Brescia, Bergamo, Como, Cromona, and Crema. besides the townes and Castles subject and appertayning to these cities, which were a great number. He died in the moneth of Nouember, in the yeere 1402. This mighty Duke left two fonnes behind him, the eldeft of which was called IOHN MARIA Viscount, and the other PHILIP MARIA Viscount: to the elder. he left by his Testament, the title of Duke, and the citie of Milan, with all the townes and cities within the jurisdiction thereof and out of it the cities of Bologna. Siena, Perugia, and Asti: to his second sonne PHILIPhe left the cities of Paula, Verona, Vicenza and other places; and to a bastard sonne whose name was GARRIEL. he left the citie of Pifa. Which division made to his sonnes was imputed vnto him for a great overlight, and was afterwards very prejudiciall to that effate; for the two brothers disagreeing it came to decay and diminution; for as they were so very boyes, that the eldest of them was but fifteene yeeres old, so there presently began factions and partakings between them, and the widow Duchesse their mother in lawe, and their kinred and fauourites about the government and command. Finally, for that it is long to be recited, the matter grew to that iffue, that fo soone as the discord was knowne to be betweene the heads, all the members became so out of order, that the greatest part of the cities rose and rebelled against the Duke: some with those which first held them, and others with new Captaines and tyrants, so that what in the time of the Duke was held for the greatest euill (which was to be subject to one) seemed afterwards to be the least by reason of the multitude of tyrants, and the many warres and troubles which enfued; for with Cremona arose VGOLINO CAVALCABO, and PANDVLPHO MALATESTA With Brescia and Bergamo; PHILIP ARCELLANO in Placencia; PAVIO GVITTIGI With Luca; FACINO CANEWith Bercelli, Alexandria, and other places; the Svardin Bergamo; Fogliano Riscone in Como; Gia-NINO VENATESE in Lodi; GEORGE BENZONE in Crema; O THO VITALE in Parma; and others fought to doe the like in other places; as the CARRARESI and those of Scala, sought to make themselves Lords of Verena, and Padoa: in fuch fort that the state of I OHN MARIA the new Duke of Milan was in great trouble and daunger also, and what did most hurt was his owne tyrannicall condition, for he (as a proud cruell boy) beheaded fundrie the most principall men of that countrie: he also apprehended his mother, and committed many other insolencies, which in the end cost him his life; whereof being reprehended by a seruant and fauourite of his, which told him that hee was vnlike to his ancestors, he yeelded a reason answerable to his actions, willing him to let him alone, for that house or linage could not be accounted excellent or famous which produced not men of all conditions: Let this suffise for his estate, and now to our purpose.

The Emperour R ODERT going into Germany (at fuch time and in fuch manner as is before faid) applied himselfe to the pacifying thereof: for besides the ancient controuers betweene the cities (as before is recounted) in those daies may great men in Hungary through the old hatred which they long before had conceined

ceiued against SIGISMVND their King, for the cruell execution which he made to be done in the beginning of his raigne, rebelled against him, and they apprehending him committed him in a Castle to the custodie of a widow and her two fonnes, whose father he had put to death. SIGISMVND being thus prisoner, they fent to LAD IS LAV s king of Naples to come and take possession of that kingdom, fith to him it belonged: and notwithstanding that he was not throughly confirmed in the kingdome of Naples, yet moved with an ambicious defire to raigne and to commaund he made the greatest haste thitherward that he could; and leauing Naples came into Slauonia, where, in a citie subject to the kingdome of Hungary, he was crowned and proclaimed king thereof: but in the meane time S 1-GISMVND vsed such meanes with the widow and her sonnes, that they released him out of prison; and he being at libertie, with the aide of his friends and many others which he reduced to his feruice, recoursed his kingdom; and LADISLAVS being thereof aduertised, without proceeding any further (his hope and purpose failing him) returned to the kingdome of Naples: but before his departure, in requitall of his good entertainment, he fold to the Venecians that citie wherein he was harboured. For all these matters (as it appeareth by the histories) his brother WENCESLAVS king of Bohemia and deposed Emperour, tooke little care; for he had enough to doe to hold in himselfe in his kingdome; and as little is written of what the Emperour R OBERT did herein, or in the cruell warres betweene the Swiffers and the Duke of Austrich; the original and iffue whereof were long to be recounted. It should seeme that hee was otherwise busied in the affaires of the Empire; whereof, for as much as it was in peace and quiet, there is no no. . table matter written; and matters of small importance are not worth the reading: for certainly although it be the bleffing of God to line in peaceable times. and under the rule of good kings and princes for the time prefent; yet the hiftories of them after their death are nothing delightfull, and men commonly take more pleafure in reading of battailes, alterations of kingdomes, the falles of kings and their estates, then in histories of peace, instice, and quiet times : and this is the reason why bookes of lies and fables are read with such delight, for that they are full of fuch fained great accidents and aduentures. True it is that those times were not without matters worthie to be related: but for a fmuch as they concerne not the Emperour, I am not to write them in this historie.

The Emperour ROBERT raigning in peace and rest in Germany, in the fifth veere of his raigne Pope BONIFACE died in Rome, in the yere of our Lord 1404; and he being dead the Cardinall of S. Crosse was chosen, and called INNOCENT the feuenth, who before was called COSMO; BENEDICT the thirteenth liuing still in Aninion. Before that INNOCENT was chosen, all the Cardinals sware and promifed, that whether foeuer of them should happen to be made Pope, should doe his best endeuour to end the schissine in their Church; and this INNOCEN-TIV s sware the same: but after that he was Pope, he vsed no such care therein as was expected. The Emperour ROBERT for that he was otherwise busied in Genmany, or elfe through want of men or money, or both, could not, or would not come into Italy at that time; whereto if he had had meanes, occasion was offered him, to have recovered to the Empire the cities which the Duke of Milan and others had vsurped, by reason of the wars and great troubles which were amongst them in those daies: but (as I have alreadic faid) the power and authoritie of the Emperours (for the causes before mentioned) was so much weakened, that they could not prouide for all parts: but the Venecians taking the benefit of the time,

Yyy

made

793

made themselves Lords of Padoa, Verena and Vicenza, with their confines; which before that time held not any citie of importance in the maine land of Italy : and fo they wholy extinguished the houses and estates of the CARRARI, and of SCA-LA, which of long time had been Lords of Padoa, Verena, and other townes. The Florentines at this time bought the citie of Pifa of GABRIEL the baffard sonne of Duke GALEAS of Milan, who after that he had been Lord thereof the space of three yeeres, being vnable to rule it, fold the same: and the Pisans to defend their. libertie, and for the hatred which they bare to the Florentines, refolued (although in vaine) to shake off the yoake of subjection : whereupon the Florentines besieging them, through famine, and the treason of one I ohn Shortles, took the citie, which in former time had been of very great power, and was now made a flage and fubicat to the Florentines, as it is at this day: fuch is the weakenes and instabilitie of the power and estate of this world. Pope INNOCENT the seuenth being dead, all the Cardinals before the election of a new Pope, made a folemne yow, that he which should be chosen, should endeuour to cause BENEDICT the thirteenth, who was in Aumion, to renounce the Papacy, and that BENEDICT doing so, he that was chosen should doe the like, to the end that the schisme in their Church might ceale, and that another should be chosen: this was held the fittest meane to end the schisme. After this solemne oth, one ANGELO CORARIA Cardinall of S.MARKE a Venecian was chosen, and called GREGORY the 12; who fo foone as he was chosen, confirmed the oth which hee before had made: whereupon a meeting was procured to be had betweene these two Popes, to the end that they both together should have renounced the Papacie, and that another might be chosen; and many letters and messengers were sent, and they both made thew to be willing thereto. But they could not agree upon the place of meeting: vet in the end Saona was appointed, and one Pope came from Rome to Luca, and the other from Aumien to Genea, but they alleaging many friuolous reasons, neither of them came to Saona, whereby it plainly appeared that they had no meaning by their reconciliation to end the schisine. The Cardinals of either side lying neere together, and perceining that neither of these two Popes had any meaning to renounce the Papacie, or to perfourme what they both had fworne, by letters and meffages paffing betweene them agreed to meete together, to call a generall Councell, to denie obedience to them both, and to chuse a new Pope: and so they meeting all together in Pila, after many disputations a Councell was affembled, wherein met three Patriarches and 180. Archbishops and Bishops: the conclusion was, that the two Popes were cited to come to this Councell: whereto Banadict which was in Auinion, answered, that the question was betweene him and Pope Greg ory, whether of them two should be Pope: wherefore they could not neither did it appertaine to them to determine the cause; and that he marueiled at their prefumption in attempting the same. Pope GREGORY also fent them word that they well knew him to be right Pope and canonically chosen; and therefore they neither could nor ought to call a Councell generall without his authoritic, for it appertained vnto him, and that he would not haue it held in Pifa, but in some other place; and that they were bound to goe to that place which he should appoint, which was to Aquileia, whither he went. About this controuersie the Emperour ROBERT summoned a Diet or Councell to be held in Franckford, whither came a Cardinall from Pope GREGORY, and another from the Councel held in Ps/a, each defending his cause; and Pope GREGO-RIE desired that some other place might be appointed, but not Pifa. Finally, after many alterations, the Emperour holding with Pope GREGORY affirmed that he onely had authoritie to call the Councell, and to appoint the place: But not withftanding the Emperours opinion, the Councell of Pifa holding neither GREGORY nor BENEDICT for Popes, chose a Franciscan Frier called PETER, Cardinal and Archbishop of Milan, who tooke to name ALEXANDER the fifth. This being done, thither came LEVVES Duke of Anion and King of Provence (riuall and competitor with LADISLAVS king of Naples) who acknowledging ALEXANDER for Pope, was by him inuested : and A LEXANDER gave him the title to the kingdome of Naples against LADISLAVS, who tooke Pope GREG ORIES part. The schissine for all this ceased not, but encreased, for in lieu of two Popes now there were three, and each of them held his court apart, and had Cardinals, and many followers; but the new chosen Pope had the greatest and strongest partie; and Pope GREGORY Wandring vp and downe remained for a space in Gaeta, (for LA-DISLAVS king of Naples was his friend)but in the end he came to Arimino, where CHARLES MALATESTALord of that citie harboured him; he there continuing untill the Councell of Conflance. Pope ALEXANDER Went to Bologna; but within eight moneths after his election he died in the same citie; and the Cardinals which were with him affembling in their Conclaue in the fame citie, choice BALTHASAR COSSA, a Napolitane and Cardinall of S. Euflace, who was called I OHN the 24. which election was by some held for violent and made perforces for this BALTHAS AR being a captaine in the warres, and Gouernour of Bologna. had the commaund of men of warre and was of great power: but yet in the end he was by the greatest part of Italy held for Pope; and so were GREGORY and BENEDICT also in the places where they lived; by reason whereof all Christendome was divided into three factions. The Emperour Robert being herewith discontent, and desiring a redresse, procured that a generall Councell might bee held by the confent and authoritie of all those three which were called Popes; which afterwards in the time of his fucceffor SIGISMVND was accomplished. But he having begun this worke was within few daies after furprifed by death, in the tenth yeere of his raigne, in the yeere of our Lord 1410, leauing the schisme Anno Bom. and diuision in the Church as before. This Emperour had fixe somes, the eldest This death of of which, ROBERT and FREDERICK died before their father, so as when he died the Emperour there remained IOHN, LEVVES, STEPHEN, and OTHO, which had divers titles, Robert. and possessed fundrie estates.

EMANUEL held the Empire of Constantinople in little prosperitie, aswell by meanes of the warres with the Turkes, as other troubles and disorders in that Empire. In his time MAHVMET fonne of CALAPIN was king of the Turks, who in the beginning, and before that E MANVEL Was Emperour, came into Europe and warred in Walachia, but the rest of his time he spent in Asia, in recourring that which TAMORLAN had taken from his grandfather BAIAZETH.

In his time IOHN HVSSE began to be of fuch credit and reputation in Bohemia, that he drawing many to be of his opinion, threw down the Images in Churches, denied Purgatorie, the facrament of Confession, the Popes power, his Indulgences and pardons, Dirges and praying for the dead; praying to our Lady and to Saints; and held many other opinions which at this day are maintained in the greatest part of Christendome.

#### THE LIFE OF SIGISM V ONELY OF THAT NAME

AND CXI. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



#### THE ARGUMENT.

leismund King of Hungary, after the decease of the Emperous Robert was chosen Emperous, who feelettion was very gratefull, for that he was a man of great expettation. He being confirmed, procured a Councell to be held in Confirmee, to ceafe the Schisme which had continued many recres : but it behoued him to deferre it for a

time, by reason of the warres between the Pape and the king of Naples, who had taken Rome. But Ladislaus being dead the Councell was assembled, whither the Emperour himselfe came in person: in which Councell John Husse and Serome of Prage were condemned and burned. The two Popes Gregory and John renounced the Papacie, but the third (which was Reneditt) would not fo that the Emperour in person going to procure him to remainee it could not premaile; for Benedict was refolued to die with that title notwithstanding that he was deprined by the Councell; and that all the Princes Christian together with his best friend the King of Arragon (seeing his obstinacie) rejected him. The Councell being dissolued, the Emperour went to pacific the troubles in Bohomia and to suppresse the followers of labor Husse but be weither by peace nor warre could effect the fame : and the Papists being sewerall times memorably overthrowne, the Bohemians could never be fubdued by force of armes. But in the end Sigifmund was received as King of Bobemia: and the Councell of Basil having decreed, concerning the opinions of the Bobensians, the Emperous upon the way going into Hungary died in Zenona, when he had raigned 27 yeares.

He Emperour R o BERT being dead and buried, the princes Electors (according to their custome) met to chuseanew Emperour in the citie of Franckford: which being made knowne to Pope I o HN, he (with the de-

fire to flew the authoritie of a Pope, to currie fauell, and to get aide against king LADIS LAV S. Who againe would have made himselfe Lord of Rome) sent his Legate to defire and entreate them to make choise of SIGISMVND king of Hungary: truly his request was reasonable, for hee was a prince in that time for his wisdome and valour besides his other gifts of nature much esteemed, for he was tall of stature very well proportioned, of a gentle aspect, very discreet and aduised, of a milde and pleasing conversation, and above all most liberall; and in conclufion such a one as was needfull for the present time. The Ambassadours from IOHN which was called Pope, were joyfully heard by the Electors; and all Germany fixed their eves youn SIGISMYND, as well for the demerits aforefaid, as for that he was a mightie king, and sonne of the Emperour Charles the fourth. fo as by common confent he was nominated and chosen Emperour; and he comming from Hungary to Aken, was there crowned with accustomed folemnitie: Sigifmund and his raigne was afterwards very long, and fo am I to be in writing his historie, repr. When Pope GREGORY an Arimino, and Pope I OHN in Bologna were aduertised of his election, they fent him their Ambassades and approbations, either of them attributing the authoritie to himselfe: but SIGISMVND by reason of particular former friendship, seeming to incline to Pope I OHN more then to any of the others, presently began by messengers to treate with him concerning the calling of a generall Councell, for the abolishing of the schisine: about the appointing of the place, there was some question, but the Emperour appointed the citie of Constance, whither (as all men thought) that all those which were called Popes, were bound to go, to the end there to make their renunciations. And for as much anthe most of the townes and cities in Italy held I o HN for Pope; and also for that LADISLAVS king of Naples fought to have viurped Rome, and all the Church lands and goods, and in effect, though not in name, vnder colour of taking Pope GREGORIES part to make himselse Emperour, Pope I OHN departing from Rome, sent against him L E vy E & Duke of Aniow, and called king of Naples, PAVL VRSIN, SFORZA, and other captaines and fouldiers with the aide of the Florentines which were his friends. These joyning in battaile with LADISLAVS, ouerthrew him, but they following not the victorie, LADISLAVS gathered his people together, and leuied so many others, that Pope I and (being then in Rome) was glad to make peace with him; and LADISLAVS fent to yeeld him obedience: but asit appeareth fainedly, for within few daies after he came under colour of other occasions with an armie into the territorie of Rome, and entred the citie by force; and Pope I o HN having no power to make head against him, fled to Florence; so as the king was lodged in Rome with as great state as if he had been Lord thereof; which strake a great feare into the Florentines and their confederates. To Pope I O HN being then in Florence, the Emperour SIG ISMYND fent another ambaffade concerning the generall Councell; and the Pope sent two Cardinals Legates to the Emperour, which concluded that the Councell should be held in Constance, to be begun the first day of the moneth of Nouember in the yere 1402: Anno Dom. which for some occasion was deferred, but yet the Emperour neuer left to pro-1402, cure the fame.

The state of Milan and Lombary was not in peace in those daies, for there were great warres betweene the tyrants which were therein, of which I have named fomebut FACINO CANE was of greatest power of any them; for hee was possessed of Alexandria, Bercelli, Tordona, and Novarra, and found the meanes under the title and name of Governour of Philip Viscount brother to the Duke of Mi-

Yуу 3

lan, to get into Paula; and being possessed of that citie, kept the young PHILIP in poore estate in the Fortresse : vnder the same pretext he afterwards made cruell warres against the other tyrants and cities which were his aduersaries. At the fame time the Emperour Sigis MVND fent a captaine with a good number of fouldiers to warre vpon the Venecians, wherein (as faith SABELLICVS) happened many notable aduentures: but for a fruich as he sheweth not the cause of this warre, I hold it fit to come to the matters of greatest importance, concerning the Emperours comming into Italy; before which, in the yeere 1412. FACINO CANE dying, left neither fonne nor daughter to succeede him but his wife, who was his heire. At that time was I O HN MARIA Duke of Milan, by reason of his cruelties and bad conditions flaine by his owne feruants and familiars, and those which flew him taking the city made Asaro G 10 Viscount some of BARNARY Viscount, whom the mightie IOHN GALBAS father of this IOHN MARIA, to haue the dominion of Milan, put to death by treason (being his Vncle) as is before declared: which the other brother PHILIP (who was in Paula, and now of ape and of power to execute any great attempt) vnderstanding, he by the counsell of his friends tooke the widow of FACINO CANE to wife, notwithstanding that she was much older then himselfe, by which marriage, besides Pania which was his owne, he made himselfe Lord of those townes which FACINO CANE had possessed. And his power and courage herewith encreasing, he resoluted to see if he could get Milan and the rest, which his father and his brother had enjoyed, and thereupon went presently thither; AsTROGIO not having yet gotten the Fortreffe, for it defended it felfe against him; and having intelligence with some within the citie, and affifted by certaine captaines which had ferued Fact to CANE, he entred Milan, and expelling Astrogio, fuddenly made himfelfe a Duke; and in processe of time having good successe, was a great and very redoubted prince, of whom we shall sometimes make mention. These matters before spoken of, together with the tyrannic and power of king Ladis Lavs of Naples (Ital) being out of order) were the cause why the Councell appointed to be held in Constance tooke not such effect as the Emperour Stols MVND defired : for Pope IOHN, which had appointed the fame, durft not goe out of Italy, leaving his competitor GREGORY and the king of Naples with fuch power therein: wherefore the Emperour resoluted to come thither, to make some conclusion with Pope I OHN concerning the Councell, and to affifthim against the king of Naples, to the end that the Councell might be the more commodiously held, which he presently put in execution : and as the land was divided into factions and parcialities, some were glad of his comming, and some were sorie. And the Pope being certified thereof came from Florence to Bologna, and thence to Placencia, whither came the Emperor, where they two met and staied a moneth. But what forces the Emperour brought with him, in what manner they were received into those cities, or what happened in peace or warre, is not diftinelly written: but that he was in Lodi, and in Cremona, and afterwards in Mantoa; where the Marquis gaue him most sumptuous entertainment. In these places they treated of the recouerie of the citie of Rome, and other places which were viurped by the King of Naples; which seemed very expedient to be done, to the end that the Councell might be held: and on the other fide it feemed that the matter ought to be deferred, confidering the Kings great power, with whom the Florentines at that time (more for feare then for any good will) had made peace, and (to the end that he should draw his forces out of their frontiers) were to give him a great fumme of money:

for which Pope I OHN was very forie, for this made his warre more doubtful then before. But that feare was soone ouer past, for L ADISLAVS feeling himselfe sick, went to Naples, & there died Lord of Rome and of all the territorie thereof, befides his kingdome of Naples. When he died, he left neither fon nor daughter, and but one fifter whose name was I O AN B, which presently succeeded him in his kingdome : in whose little time, and after her death in that kingdome, were great wars and troubles about the fuccession. LADISLAVS being dead, the citizens of Rome, crying libertie, reduced themselves to the service of Pope Ionn, and so did the most part of the other townes; and he sent his Legates to them; for Pope GRE-G ORY although he had a better title, yet he had not fo great power to doe it : for he with his Cardinals lived poorely in Arimino : yet some Princes and people acknowledged him. Pope I o HN having taken the best order for his busines that he could in Italy, resolued to goe to the Councell in Germany, whither the Emperour to the end to make prouision of all things necessary (having already proclaimed the Councel through all parts of Christendome) was already gone: so as after the comming of Pope I OHN and the Bishops, Prelates, and Ambassadours from the Christian Princes, into Germany, the Councel generall(according to the appointment) began in Constance, vpon the fifth day of Nouember in the yeere 1414. The first session thereof was voon the fixteenth day of Nouember in the same yeere: and so began this Councell, which continued three yeeres, and was one of the greatest and most solemne, and wherein were the greatest number of Princes, Ambassadors and Prelats, that euer was held by the Church of Rome : for writers affirme that with the Emperor, and with the other Princes, Prelates, and Ambaffadours there came 40000 persons. What matters passed, and what was ordained and done in that Councell, plainly appeareth in an Instrument which at this day is extant; the fumme whereof (which is to our purpose) is.

That voon Christmas even ensuing the moneth of November, wherein the Councell began, the Emperour accompanied by the Dukes of Saxony and of Wittembergh, and other Princes came to Constance, where he was folemnly received; The Councell and afterwards in Imperiall pompe and habit was present at the sessions of the of Constance. Councell. After New-yeeres day came the Duke of Baniere, and then the Countie Palatine of Rhine, and the Duke of Slesia. Thither also came Cardinals Ambassadours from Pope GREGORY in Arimino, which with authoritie from him approved the Councell: but BENEDICT which was in Arragon, would neither come nor fend. The Councell being folemnised and ordained in this manner, Pope I on win the second session, which was in the second of March the same yeere promised and solemnly sware to renounce the Papacie, in case that GR B-GORY and BENEDICT Would doe the like: this he did to purchase grace and fauour with the Emperour, to the end that he might continue Pope still, whereof (as all writers affirme) he was vinworthy, for his great vices and infolencies, which were made manifest to the whole Councell. And he standing in feare of what after enfued (his owne conscience accusing him) fled in disguised attire into the Duke of Austrich, who favoured him, and tooke his part. Whereupon many Ambaffadours were fent from the Emperour and the Councell to Pope Io HN and from him to them. And the Emperour and the Councell proceeded against the Duke of Austrich, for that he was of counsell with the Popes flight, and had (notwithstanding their prohibitions and warnings to the contrary) harbored and protected him: and the Emperour confisking his goods, the Swiffers to e certaine places from him. Whereupon the Duke perswaded Pope I o HNV repart,

and to returne to the Councell; where after many citations made and notified vnto him, he submitting himselfe to the Councell, and approuing what by them was or should be determined, as it appeareth in the twelfth session, was by their fentence pronounced for non Pontifex : and the Duke reduced him to Constance. where he voluntarily renouncing the Papacie, was apprehended, and committed to the Countie Palatine, in whose custodie hee liued miserably the space of three veeres; what befell him afterwards you shall vnderstand.

After this, CHARLES MALATESTA LOID of Arimine, where Pope GREGORY. lay, came to the Councell with sufficient authoritie from him to renounce his right to the Papacie: by vertue whereof he publikely renounced the same in the 14. fession, saying, that Pope GREGORY in the commission which he gaue him faid, that for the vnion and vniuerfall reformation of the Church, and for redreffe of the schisme, it was requisit and expedient that he and the rest which pretended to be Popes, should renounce the Popedome, and that the Councel there affenbled should chuse such a one as might be for the good of the Christian commonwealth: and notwithstanding that hee was right Pope and canonically chosen, yet he now, as he euer before had offered to doe, did renounce and there refigne the Papacie into the hands of the Councell, approuing what therein by them should be done, or what they had done alreadie. Pope GREGORIES renunciation was highly effeemed, and he therefore much commended: whereupon the Councell holding the Papall feate for voide, made him a Legate and governour of the Marca de Ancona; which office he enjoyed but a little while for he shortly after died, as some say of sorrow, to see himselfe deposed from his pontificall leate; and for that the Councell had admitted and received those Cardinals which had ferued him, and were made by him, and had confirmed to them the reuenues which he had given them. What appertained to Pope IOHN and Pope GREGORY being ended; it yet rested to deale with BENEDICT which was in Arragon, to whom many ambassades and admonitions had been sent, that hee should either come or send to the Councell, for that no Pope should be chosen vntill the schisine were throughly ended: what was done therein we will presently declare. But first I will shew you that amongst other matters which in this Councell were ordained and determined, a famous Bohemian whose name was The burning of IOHN HVSSE, was therein for certaine opinions which he held, condemned and burnt by the decree and fentence of the Councell; and after him IEROME of Prage, who was a follower of his. This being past, the Councell sent to BENE-DICT in Arragon and to the King thereof, to treate with them, to the end that Br-NEDICT should renounce the Papacie; and besides this, to treate of a meeting to be had at NiZZa betweene the Emperour and the King, where they might conferre of the matter: in the end, in the fixteenth and seuenteenth session it was concluded, that the Emperour in person should with the Ambassadours, from the Councell take the paines to goe to PopeBENED ICT, to the end to procure him to renounce the Papacie.

Whereupon he resoluing to put their determination in effect, departed from Constance in the moneth of July, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, foure hundred, and fifteene. And forasmuch as at that time there were very great warres betweene the King of England and of France, the Emperor going in perfon to each of them, fought to have reconciled them, but he failing of his purpole, concluded with them, to request and require pope BENEDICT in Arragon to renounce the papacie; which if he refused to doe, that then they through all

their dominions, should commaund that none of their subjects should obey him. And he paffing forwards (for that the King of Arragon by reason of his infirmitie could not goe out of his kingdome to meete him in Nizza, or in Narbone) was content to goe to Perpinian, whither the King of Arragon and pope BENEDICT were alreadie come, where he and the Ambaffadors which came from the Councell were by the King very honorably received, and after that the Emperor had visited the King and conferred with him about the matter, he wentto see pope BENEDICT, whom with the best speeches and reasons that he could deuise, he perswaded him to yeeld to the Councels determination. To the first, Benedic r gaue very good words, but generall without any conclufion and did the like to what the Councels Ambaffadors proponed. Afterwards there were other meetings betweene these princes and this pope about the same matter, butto no effect, for BENEDICT notwithstanding the King of Arragons entreatie and the Ambassadors from the King of France, for the same purpose deferring the conclusion with delaies, departing from Perpinian, went to Colibre, where imbarking himselse in a Galley, without any stay (notwithstanding that the King and the Emperor by their letters defired the contrary) he went thence by feato Peniscola, which is a little towne (but very strong) in the countrie of Valencia in Spaine; whither both the Emperor and the King of Arragon fent unto him, but he perfilling obstinate, the King vpon the fifth of Ianuary, in the yeere of our Lord one thousand, foure hundred, and fixteene, rejecting him, denied him to be pope. This being published, the Emperor and the Ambassadors tooke their way towards Constance, and in his returne (as I gesse) was his journey to the Kingsof England and of France, concerning pope BENEDICT, for by the histories it appeareth not when it was, but it feemeth to be at his returne, for he came not to Confiance vntill the beginning of the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, foure hundred, and seuenteene, having spent one whole yeere vpon the way betweene Spaine and Constance; being one yeere and a halfe after his departure from the Councell to goe this journey. Those which write that he spent three vecres therein are to be excused, for he tooke part of all three yeeres, to wit 1415. 1416. and 1417. The Emperor and the Ambassadors being returned, and the Councell having at large heard their relation, refolued to proceede against pope BENEDICT, as against a rebell, and one whom they never had held for pope; and his accusation was notified vnto him, with a new charge to renounce, but he (perfifting in his obstinacie) was denounced for no pope, but an heretike, a schifmatike, and a scandalous perturber of the vnity and vniuerfall peace of the Christian Church and Common-wealth: and the kingdomes of Castile, Nauarre, and Portugall, which vntill then had been at his deuotion, reiected him. The Councell (by reason of the renunciations made by I o HN and GREGORY, and BENE-DICT being depriued) holding the papacie for voyde, determined to chuse a new pope, and appointing five prelates of five feuerall nations, to wit, French, English, Spanish, Italian and Dutch, to which together with the patriarch of Constantinople, and to the Cardinals which had chosen the other popes, the Councell gaue order to chuse a pope; all which agreeing together, chose Cardinall OTHOPS COLVNNA, and he was called MARTIN the fifth. This MARTIN being chofen (to auoyde all occasion of scruple) ordained that euery tenth yeere a Councell should be held, and that the first should begin at the end of five yeeres, and that all the benifices given by the three popes before that IOHN and GREGO-RY renounced, and BENEDICT was deprived, should be confirmed. After

tohn Huffe an Prage.

this in the five and fortith fession, in the moneth of Aprill, in the yeere of our Lord, one thousand, foure hundred, and eighteene, three yeeres and a halfe after the beginning of this Councell, it was diffolued, and the pope tooke his wav towards Rome, and all the rest towards their countries. At this time the Emperor made the Earles of Rene, and of Sanoy, Dukes, and so have their successors been euer fince. This being ended, the Emperor went to pacific the troubles in Bebemia, wherein the followers of IOHN HVS'SE and IEROM of Prage which were burnt at the Councell of Constance, were of such power that they pulled downe fome Churches and Monasteries, which did more abound in Bohemia then in anv kingdome in all Christendome, without that the King knew any meanes how to redreffe the fame. I fay King, which had been Emperor and lived vntill this time, who holding not himselfe to be in safety in the citie of Prage, retyred himfelfe to a most stronge Castle, about five miles from thence, and he being there the Hussites rose in a great tumult. Which King WENCES LAVE perceiuing. sent to his brother the Emperor (as at other times he had done) for aide, about the time that the Councell brake vp at Constance; but he was so resolued to goe to the warres against the Turkes which warred voon him in Hungary, or peraduenture, in hope to be reuenged for the battaile which he loft against them before that he was Emperor, which I write not for that it maketh nothing to my purpose: and he did what he ought not to have done, for therein he had ill succeffe, and in Bohemia worfe, for prefently after this, King WENCESLAVS dying without leaving any successor but his wife the Queene, the Emperor was sent for to take possession of that kingdome: but he to renew the warre against the Turkes wherein most commonly he had ill faccoste, would not come: thinking to entertaine the matter by Gouernors which he fent thither: wherein he erred. for that occasion being lost, the troubles encreased; and there arose one IOHN cifca captaine Cisca, a man of a noble house and very expert in the warres, whom the Husfites made their Captaine, to whom out of Prage and other parts thereto adioy-

of the Huffites in Bobemia.

ning, came 40000, of the Huslites, which not content with the subverting of Monasteries and pulling downe of Images, possessed themselves of the fortresses of that citie, and being mafters of the field tooke the towne of Pelezina, and other townes and Castles. Cisca before the comming of the Emperors Gouernors. was growne so mightie, that they were constrained to make peace with him and with the Huffites, to the end that they should give up Prage and other Castles. which they defired to have vntill the Emperors comming, which was shortly after; wherewith farre greater accidents enfued, when peace and quietnes was hoped for; as we will declare after that we have made some relation of the state of the Empire in Italy, wherein they now knew no Emperor but in name onely; and likewise of the comming, and successe of the new Pope.

The Councell being diffolued, Pope MARTIN notwithstanding that he was diverly counfelled, (by fome, that he should continew in Germany, and by others, in France) remained firme in his resolution to goe into Italy and to Rome, alleaging that he which gouerneth the Ship ought to fit in the poope, and not in the prowe, neither in the midships. In conclusion, he departed from Germany the same yeere that he was chosen, and came directly to Wilan; for Duke PHI-LIP (who by his policie and valour was growne very mightie) was his friend. At that time PHILIP was busied in the warres against PANDVLPH MALATES-A, which withheld Bergamo and Brescia from him, and against GABRINO FON-DV LO, who held Cremona, and against other Lords which held other places which

had been his fathers, the mightie IOHN GALBAS; and were lost in the time of his brother IOHN MARIA; in which warres PHILIP had so good successe, that he reconcred all those estates, and was afterwards one of the most puissant princes of the world, and was Lorde of Generallo. He possessed the state of Milan untill that he died, which were two and thirtie yeeres, in which time he had great warres with the Venecians and Florentines, and with other princes; wherefore of necessitie we must sometimes make mention of him. From Milanthe Popecame to Florence, but could not goe to Rome, for that one BRACCIO MON-TONIO (an excellent Captaine and of very great power) in the time of Sada VACANTE, and of the Councell, had taken the citie of Perugia, and the territorie thereof, and many other townes in the jurisdiction of Rome: and many others of his condition iowned with him, fo that there was no fafe passage for the Pope to Rome, wherein the faid BRACCIO MONTONIO had a strong partie. But at the intercession of the Florentines which were meditators betweene them, BRACCIO MONTONIO afterwards submitted himselfe to the Pope, and rendred some townes which he had taken; and the Pope made him his Generall against Bologna which rebelled; which by him and by GABRIEL Cardinall of Saint CLEMENT was reduced to the Popes obedience. In those daies (but somewhat before this time) BALTHASAR Cosla which had been Pope IOHN (who renounced his Papacie in the Councell at Conftance, of whom Pope MARTIN stoode in no small feare that he would have attempted some alteration by taking youn him as Pope, and would have renewed the schisme) came into Italy, and finding fauour and entertainment amongst some his friends, would not intermeddle in any matter but of his owneaccord without any fafe conduct or other agreement, at such time as no man thought thereof came voluntarily to Flarence where the Popelay, and comming into his Palace, kill his footeand acknowledged him for Pope, Saint PHTERS successor, CHRISTS Vicar; whereupon Pope MARTIN made him a Bishop, and a Cardinall : but he within few moneths after dying, was in Florence most solemnly buried, by the procurement (principally) of Cosmoda Madicis, arich and noble cuizen thereof, and chiefe of the house and family of the Da Madicia, whose principall beginning (as it it written) was through the treasure and richesse which he enherized from this BALTHASAR COSLA, otherwise called Pope IOHN. Pone MARTIN knowing what troubles were in the kingdome of Bohemia. fought by his Buls and Edicts to have pacified the matter; but feeing it was come to blowes, the friendship betweene him and the Emperor Sigismyn D was foone after broken. In those daies came to Rome Lavyas Duke of Anion. Lord and King of Provence, sonne of the other Lavy as deceased, to receive of the Pope the title and inuestitute of the kingdome of Naples, against Queene IOANE, fifter and heyre to King LADISLAYS; being called thither by the Pope for the same purpose, through her ill gouernment and tyranny but chiefly for that the loyned with BRACCIO MONTONIO, and made warre vpon him: and for other matters too long to relate. The Pope proceeding against her and holding her voworthie to enjoy the feudatorie lands of the Church, sent for Duke LEVVES, offering him the kingdome of Naples: but Queene IOANE being thereof aduertised, adopted ALONZO King of Arragon (who was also King of Sicilia) whom the called to her aide, and to the fuccession in that kingdome, who came accordingly. And the Queene afterwards (according to her naturall condition) falling at oddes with him, and reuoking the adoption which wales.

led after the name of a citie founded by them and so called: and being victo-

the had made of Alonzo, adopted the fame Lavves whom the Popehad called. Hereof grew the warres betweene LEWES and ALONSO, for the kingdome of Naples; and after the decease of LEVVES, with his brother Ra-NE, which warres continued many yeeres; but in the end ALONSO hauing

the victory obtayned the fourraignty of that kingdome. This which I have faide, passed in Italy, wherein the Emperors were now of fmall power : and in Germany, the warres which the Turke made in Hungary being affwaged, the Emperor determined (although late first) to come into Bahemia, to take possession of that kingdome; whither if he had presently come it is very likely that the troubles therein had been pacified: for at his comming to Bruna which is in Morania. Ambassadors came to him from Prage to smbmir themselves and to sue for pardon; which hee entertained and heard, and proponing certaine tollerable conditions, grannted them a generall pardon; the newes whereof were very joyfull to the inhabitants of that citie and kingdome: to the Huslites, to see themselves pardoned of their offences; and to the rest, in hope to live in peace. But all this was mard for that the King came not prefendly to take possession of that citie which is the head of that kingdome, where they peaceably attended his comming; but he would first goe to Vratislaue, the chiefe citie of Slesia, a province to the East of Bohemia. Therein, as well as in Praze (in time of the infurrection of the people) the gouernors which were left there by WENCESLAVS were flaine: and the Emperor to punish the offence did instice vpon the principall heads of that rebellion. As the newes thereof was published in Prage, and as their offences were equall or greater, this vnfeafonable punishment strake such a terror into the people, that they fearing the like rigor, without any further confideration, role up in armes and refoluing to refuse him for their King, wrote their letters, thereby inciting the reft through all the kingdome to doe the like; publishing that hee had determined to commit great crueltie amongst them. This tooke such effect, that in the most and best part of that kingdome, the people tooke armes : and as the greatest part of those of Prage were Huffites (the reft ioyning with them) they all together fent for a Captaine of the Huffites, a man of great power, whose name was Crses, whom they put into Prage for defence thereof against the Emperor, who was comming against it. Hereof enfued in that citie and kingdome many encounters, skirmishes, battailes, and bloodshed by fire and sword, such as never were seene or heard of, and such as I am not able to recount: the most effectuall whereof may bee seene in the third booke of ENEAS SILVIVE, called afterwards Pope PIVS QVINTVE in his Historie of Bohemia: for my part I will rest satisfied with briefly mencioning the most notable matters that passed. The Emperor accompanied by the Duke of Saxony, the Marqueffe of Brandenburgh, and the Duke of Austrich, with many other very good men of warre both of Foote and Horse, came necre to the citie of Prage: whereof the Fortteffe called Vicengrade was at his denotion.

CISCA and his people very resolutely battered the same, but their chiefest hope was to take it by famine. The Emperour comming thither relieued the Fortresse, and entring it, was therein crowned King of Bohemia, the Fortresse being victualled and garrifoned, he prefently belieged the citie; which fiege continued fixe weekes; in which time in all the skirmilhes and encounters which happened, it pleased God that Cisca and his followers had the better: the like befell in a manner in all parts of the kingdome, betweene the Huffites and the Imperialists. Whereupon the Emperor raising his siege from before Prace,

making warre against the

Huffites befie-

ged the citie of

rious, and not contented to make defensive warres, taking the field, tooke some townes and Castles from his adversaries. Many other conflicts after this ensued. which I omit: and the matter came to this iffue, that the Emperor with his whole power came to a strong Monasterie which held for Cisca, with a determination to batter and to take it; and if Cisca came to the reliefe thereof, to fight with him: for his armie was fuch, that he nothing doubted of the victorie. But there befell a strange accident, which was, that Cisca resoluing to come to the reliefe of that Castle, and so to fight with the Emperor, and being come to the point The Emperor to haue lovned, the Emperors troupes but vpon the fight of their enemies, with- field with the out making any refistance, or shewing the mindes or courage of men, suddenly Husties at the ran away, & the Emperor was driven to doe the like, not daring to ftay in any part by people fled of all Bohemia: fo as Craca and his people being mafters of the field, befreged ma-without one ny strong holds & Castles, which he took perforce: at the assault of one of which. blow striken. as he had but one eye, that one was shot out with an arrow; but his credit and re-

putation was fo great that he continued in the government and command of the

armie, which was led by a blinde Christian: a thing neuer seene nor read in any

historie: for notwithstanding that he was blind, yet he still proceduted the wars. The Emperor (notwithstanding these desasters) was not dismayed, but leuy-

ing his whole power and fent for the Princes of the Empire, which he appointed

to enter Bohemia by the West; and he with his Hungars would enter it by the

East. Thither came with many men of warre, the Countie Palatine of Rhine;

the Marquis of Brandenbrugh, the Archbishop of Mentz, and some other Princes and Prelates, which began the warre, and befieged and tooke fome: townes: the Emperor stayed longer then he had appointed, but comming with his armie, he began on his side, and notwithstanding that Cisca was blind yet he tooke the field against him; and comming to joyne in battaile, the Emperors men were striken with such feare of Cisca and of the Huslites, that they; were presently ouerthrowne, and many principall men of them were slaine; The Emperor and the infortunate Emperor in the warres being driven to flie, C 13 CA followed out thrown and the informative Emperor in the wartes being a theen to lies, the nobles and the fecond time the execution of the victorie. The matter flanding in this efface, the nobles and by the Huffites, principals of Prage and of all Bohemia (defiring to have a King, that might op- and their blind pose himselse against Sigismynd) sent to yeeld themselues and their king- captaine cisca. dome to VITOLD Duke of Lituania; for which CISCA was forrie, and the Duke to be a King, accepting their offer, sent a Captaine called TORIBVT with his power; who being gladly received into the citie, began to shew the power of a new King, and to batter fuch Castles and Fortresses were his adversaries. But this Duke within short space after, at the entreatie of the King of Poland, comming to a composition with the Emperor, gaue over his enterprise and title to the crowne of Behemia. It followed that the Emperor gaue the prouince of Merania to his sonne in law, one of the Dukes of Austrich, to the end that he should defend the same; and he returning to the warre against the Hussites, there happened betweene Cisca and the Imperialists another great battaile; wherein Cisca having the victorie, nine thousand of the Imperialists were slaine. The Emperor seeing the power of CISCA to be so great, that without his good willhe could not be King of Bohemia, fought to be at peace with him; and to thatend made him many large promises and offers: at the time of the parley thereof, and at a point to have made a conclusion, Crs c a died of the plague: after

A third bat taile wherein the Emperor was overthrowne and 9000.0f his people flaine by the Huffites.

At a fourth in nasion the Imperialifts ran any enemie.

discamfiture.

were called Hushites, and some Taborites; so as they were at variance amongst themsclues; but against the Imperialists they ever joyned and were friends. After many other accidents, Pope MARTIN fending his Legate into Germany. eniovned and commaunded the Emperor to renew the warre against the Bobemians; and the Duke of Saxony entring the countrie vpon the one fide, and the Marquis of Brandenburgh vpon another fide, and at another place the Archbishop of Treviere, either of them with the best power that they were able to leuie; all which meeting together in Bohemia, and beginning the warre, and knowing that the Hussites came to fight with them (a matter seeming incredible, yet true although strange and shamefull) were striken with such seare, that without seeing or hearing any enemie, both Captaines and Souldiers fetting all shame apart. abandoning the field ranne away in fuch manner, that neither entreatie nor authoritie sufficed to withhold them; and the Hussites pursuing them, tooke all before they fam their baggage and their artillery; and not content therewith, fallying forth of their kingdome, made warre in other parts, out of which, in confideration of a great summe of money they returned home againe. The Pope vinderstanding in what estate the affaires of Bihemia stoode, resolved to give a Croysade, and to fend a new Legate against the Bohemians, notwithstanding that in Italy was as little quietnes; but great warres aswell in the kingdome of Naples, as in Lombardy and in other parts. And to that effect fent IVLIAN Cardinall of Saint Angele, to be his Legate against the Hussites; and to the end that the time being expired. he might fit in his place in the Councell appointed to be held in Basill. This Cardinall comming to the Emperor, it was decreed, that a new armie, and new forces to a greater number then before should be leuied against the Huslites; whither came FREDERICK Marquis of Brandenburgh (who was chosen Generall) and the Dukes of Baniere, and of Saxony, the Archbishop of Menta, Treuiere, and Colen, and many Bishops, other Prelates and Princes, together with the companies of the cities, and so many others that they amounted to the number of fortie thousand horse, but not so many soote (for it seemeth they were not forequifit for that warre) which with this power entred the kingdome of Bohemia, the Cardinall Legate going with the armie. But the Huffites were so accustomed to the bearing of armes, and were therewith so valiant, that they drew themselues to one head, with a determination to fight with the Imperialists; and the one armie being opposite to the other, so as no man doubted but that the Imperialists (considering their multitude and the goodnes of their Captaines and Souldiers) would have had the victorie; there happened the most strange case that euer was seene in the world; whether through treason or practise in the armie, or through some vaine and cowardly feare or imagination, or through the secret judgement of God who was not pleased that the matter should be decided by armes, there fella fudden feare in the campe, and a rumor that they were not to stay there: whereupon they all began presently to march, leauing behinde them all that they brought, and many, their armes and furnitures: and the whole armie (without that any admonition, threatning, or entreatie, made by the Princes and Commaunders, could any way preuaile with them) themselves fled, and they did the like, without feeing, or fighting with any enemie: and fo they flying out of the land, the Huffites made great bootie of what their enemies left and could not carrie with them.

So great an army being so shamefully ouerthrowne, the Emperor intended not

(for that time) to raise any other; but the time being expired that the Councell (hould begin, the Cardinal Legate went to Balit; and the Emberour by reason of the aide and affiltance promifed him by PHILIP Duke of Mitar resoluted to goe into Marto be crowned in Rame. Arthis timedied Pope Martin, and after his decease a Cardinal called GABRIBLE ONDAL MARCOWAS in March in the vere-1431 thelen, and called Ev G EN IN south fourth lanin the beginning of whole Paracie many infolencies (as faith PLATIN A and other writers) were committed in Rand betweene the Pope and the Colonhois. Eve EN LVS approoning the Conneell appointed by Pope Marrin, commanded it to be begun in Bril; wherein the Cardinall of S. Angelo Being Prefident, the first session was held upon Fridays he feventh of Deceriber: whereof before that we make any relation which shall be burlittle (notwithstanding that it continued long, and that therein was much controversie and contention with the Pope) wee will describe the journey which She is My No made to his coronation; which was in this manner. Youn affirmed of the promifes and offers made by the Duke of Milan S 1 G 15 M Y MD with finall troupes of Germanes and Hungars came into Italy, and comming to Millingthe Duke being not there, he was by the Dukes commaundement very honomably received by a Captaine of his called Nuc no LAS PTCHINING and other principall men, and there according to the custome was crowned with the crowne of Iron : but the Duke came not to fee him; yet he afterwards by letters and delaies temporized with him many daies, in Parma, and in Placencia, without furnishing him with fuch things as hee had promised against the Florentines. which as enemies to the Duke Hopped his pallage to Rome, which to that effect maintained an armie in the field: and moreouer perswaded the Pope to prohibit his comming to Rome, certifying him, that by the infligation of Duke PHILIP he came against him. The Emperous without speaking with the Duke, in the best manner that he could came to Auca, and notwithstanding that the Pope and the Florentines fought to fray himniyet he after some accidents which happened betweene the fouldiers of the one and other fide, came to Siena, wherein hee staied fixe moneths, in which time he came to a composition with the Pope, many ambailades passing betweene them in the meane season, so as he peaceably depart significant ting towards Rome was therein folemnely received, and with great folemnitie cromned in crowned by the hands of the Pope, vpon the last day of May in the yeere of our Rome by the Lord 1432, and after some treaties hee tooke his leave to returne into Germany and by the way was entertained in Ferrara and Manton, by their Lords and Dukes: (the warres continuing in Italy as before) wherein passed many great matters ather principals were the Florentines and Venecians which warred against the Duke of Milan, who now was Lord of Genea, which he tooke by meanes of diffention and discord betweene the inhabitants. Whilest the Emperour was in Italy, in the Councell at Bafil many matters were treated of, but had not yet taken such effect as they defired, for the Huslites perfifting constant in their opinions; the Courcell fent thither certaine learned men, fuch as well knew the countrie, which by flatterie and faire meanes fought to have seduced the Bohemians; in whom they fometimes found hope of peace, and at other times fignes of warre and fo the case continuing as doubtfull as before, it pleased God that by secret meanes vnknowne to man, there grew fome suspition and icalousie betweene the Nobilitie of that kingdome (whereof one MENANDER Was the chiefe) and the Taborites and the Huffites (notwithstanding that some of the Nobles were Huffites) but in the end it grieved them all to be governed by PROCOPIV s, a man of base paren-

tweene the

Councell of

tage (which being Generall of the Taborites commanded all) and by another PROCOPIVS called the younger, captaine of the Huffitts. After that they had long murmured at the matter, they furnmoned a Parliament to be held by all the effates of the realme, under pretext to fet fome order in the government; for they were discontent with the violences and infolencies daily committed Finally the Parliament was affembled, and a Noble-man and nobly defeended although of but meane estate, whose name was Aucton, was nominated and made their Gonemour, and he presently undertooke the government. And although that hee had the title and outward thew, vetall was done by the order and direction of Mananda the chiefe of the Nobilitie Herewith the Huffires and the Procopii were so much discontent that the matter came to blowes: I cannot describe all that passed, for there were many very notable matters, but I will tell you the iffue thereof. When the Emperour comming out of Italy into Gomesy was your his way towards Bafil, he well knew that betweene the Pope and the Conncell there was great discord: for the Pope perceiuing that the Councell began to Pope and the treate of many matters against his authoritie and dignitie, commaunded it to bee diffolued, and to be passed to Bologue; and the Councell rejecting his commanndements, would not accomplish what hee required, but made other acts and flatutes to his difference. Whereupon many matters paffed, and the Emperour came to the Councell, and there hearing the matter debated, made a reconciliation betweene them: and the Pope againe ratified the Councell, yet they afterwards fell further out then before, as you shall beare s for those of the Councell refusing to make an end, continued the Councell along sime in defpite of the Pope; but the Emperour by his authoritie in the best manner that he could took up the matter; and understanding of the warres betweene the Nobilitie and the Hussins Boke. min, holding the fame for the most assured means for him to reconer that kines dome, went from Bafil to Vine, where he was advertised of a battaile fought betweene them, wherein the Lords had the victorie; and therein were both the PROCOPII (Captains of the Huffires and Taborites) laine, with many thousands of others; and a great number were taken prisoners; and they found the meanes afterwards to kill or burne all those which were taken, or escaped from the battaile. The Emperour vnderstanding hereof, sent his Ambassadours into Behemia, by gentle meanes to perswade the Nobilitie to obey and receive him for their King for that of right it appertained vnto him, as to the sonne and brother of the Kings of Behemia. And it pleased God to worke such an alteration in the hearts of the Bohemians that they fent their Ambassadours to Ratisbone, whither the Emperour was gone from Vime, to which they gaue order to receive him for their King and Soueraigne Lord: and they agreed with him concerning his comming into Behemia; and hee there ratified the conditions concluded by those of the Councell with the Bohemians, concerning points of religion, which in fumme was, that the Bohemians wholy submitted themselves to the Church of Rome, and that they beleeuing as it did, for fooke all matters in question, except communicating vinder both kindes of bread and wine; which was graunted them upon this condition, that the matter should be referred to the determination of the Councell: And all other matters concerning Church rents and goods, and other ecclefiasticall benefices were concluded and agreed vpon.

These matters being ended, the Emperour within fewe daies after peaceably entring Behemia, was with feafting and great folemnitie vpon the fourth day of August in the yeare of our Lord 1436 received into the citie of Prage : he had not

beenthere but a fewe daies space, but there was so great an alteration, that it seemeda new world, and another kind of people: for notwithstanding that there remained some of the feet and remainder of the Huslites, yet the greatest and most common were Papifts: the Temples which had been spoiled and ruinate were new built, and those which were defaced were repaired, and the Altars were decked with Images and reliques, and the Monkes and Friers returned to their Coments and Cloisters: finally all was restored to the former order of the pretended Heretikes, which would not be connerted fome fled for feare of imprisonment. and to others a time was limitted wherein they should recant: and against such as perfifted constant, the Emperor proceeded : for his successe herein Pope Ev G E-NIV s fent him a Rose of gold, who at that time commanded the Councell at Bafil to be diffolued and a generall Councell to be held at Ferrara; where they expe-Acd the Emperour of Constantinople: but the Councell of Basil holding themfelues to be about the Pope, would not obey him neither be diffolued. The Emperour being now threefcore and ten yeeres olde, and tired with warres and troubles both before and after that hee was Emperour (which were more then I hauerecounted) began to waxe feeble and fickly, and perceining death to approch he was aduertifed that his wife (confidering him to be old and could not live long, and that he had but one daughter, which was married to ALDERT of Austrich) fought so some as he should be dead, to marrie with the King of Poland; and that the Bohemians should take him and her for King and Queene: for redresse hereof, and being somewhat icalous of the Bohemians for matters past, he sent for the Noble-men of Hungary which came with him into Bohemia, to which in fecret (aduertifing them of what paffed) he recommended his daughter and some in law, and made them to promise to take them for their King and Queene after his decease. And not withstanding that he was so sicke, yet he made himselfe to be carried out of Prage towards hungary, where he defired to die; but being vnable to reach thither, he was carried to his daughter and some in law in Merania, who by his gift possessed that prouince, which came to meete him in the citie of Zenomia, whither also came his wife the Emperesse, which there by his commaundement was apprehended. The Emperour within few daies after, in the 37-yeere of his raigne, vpon the day of the conception of our Lady, in the yeere of our Lord 1437 dyed: and so ended this prince both his life and troubles, the Emperour who although he had infortunate successes, especially in armes and warres, yet hee sigifmund. failed in nothing that belonged to a wife and valiant Knight. He was twice married first to MARY daughter of the King of Hungary, by whom he had that kingdome; the second time with BARBAR Adaughter of the Earle of Cilia, by whom he had his daughter Is ABEL which was his heire, and married to ALBERT one of the Dukes of Austrich, who then was Lord and Marquis of Morania.

The state of Italy when SIGISMVND died was so confused and out of order, that except I should relate the whole, I cannot expresse the same in such fort as it may be understood. Duke PHILIP of Milan being an enemie to Pope Ev-GENIVS, favoured the Councell of Basil: and the Florentines and Venecians supported the Pope against him. There were other warres amongst them, wherein the most famous Captaines, were FRANCIS SFORCE before named, and NICHOLAS PICHININO. ALONSO King of Arragm Queene IOANE and LEWES being dead) contended with RENE, LEVVES his brother, about the kingdome of Naples: a little before that L E vy Es died, King A L o N s O, and his brother the King of Nauarre being taken in a battaile by lea, and with them many

other Lords by the fleete of the Genowaies, were carried prisoners to Duke PHILIP of Milan, who then was Lord of Genea; who shewing his magnificence. released them, and set them at libertie: which the Genowaies tooke in so ill part. that they revolting made themselves free from the Duke.

In those daies were cruell warres between the Kings of England and of France. and amongst the French was a woman which bare armes like a fouldier and af terwards (as a Captaine) wrought wonders therein and defended and recovered many castles for the French: this woman was called I BANNE LA PYCELLE.

After the decease of EMANVEL Emperour of Constantinople, his sonne IOHN PALEOLO GV s raigned, who was alreadie vpon the way to come to the Councell in Italy.

## THE LIFE OF ALBERT THE SECOND OF THAT NAME.

AND CXII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.

And of IOHN PALEOLOGYS in Conflantinople.



THE ARGUMENT.



Igismund being dead, his sonne in law Albert was peaceably chosen, who was in some doubt to accept the Empire, by reason of the kingdome of Hungary: which being past he accepted the government. For that he lined not long be could not effect so great matters as be projected. He had warres with some rebels which be luckely en-

ded. But he could not make any peace or union betweene the Conneels which were held in his time, one in Basil without the Pope, the other in Ferrara where the Pope was in person. which Councell was afterwards ended in Florence. He tooke armes against Amurath King of the Turbes in the behalfe of the Dispote of Seruia: but being in a little village upon his way, he dyed of a Diffenteria, having raigned but a small time. His death was much lamented, by reason of the ereat hope conceined of his vertue.



He same day that the Emperour Sigismynd died, his fonne in law ALBERT Duke of Austrich was by all the principall Lords of both those kingdomes which were there with him, together with his wife SIGISMVNDS daughter, to whom in right those kingdomes did appertaine. hailed King of Hungary and Bohemia: who from that citie of Zenomia, which is in Morauia, sent Ambassadours into Bohemia, with SIGISMVNDS Will and Testament, and

by his authoritie to take possession of that kingdome: and he with his wife, carrying with them the dead bodie of the Emperour, and the widow Empereffe prisoner, departed towards Hungary; where they were without any contradiction receited and obeyed; and afterwards with great folemnitie vpon the first day of Ianuary in the yeere of our Lord 1438, crowned; having first persourmed the 1438, Imperiall funerals and obsequies. In the meane time his Ambassadours which were in Bohemia, affembling the principall Lords of that realme in the citie of Prage, shewed the testament of the deceased Emperour and their King; and alleaging many effectuall reasons, perswaded them to chuse ALBERT, as well for that he had married the onely daughter and heire of their King, as also for that he was of the house of Austrich; betweene which and Bohemia there was an ancient couenant, that whenfoener there failed an heire in any one of these houses, one should be chosen out of the other. Finally, the Ambassadours vsed to good meanes, that it was by the affemblie concluded, that ALBERT and his wife should be their King and Queene; and so in their absence they were sworne vnto, and re-· ceiued for fuch; notwithstanding that some of the principal Barons were against the fame, amongst which many were the Emperesse kinsimen; of which the chiefest were TASCON and ALCIOSTEREMBERGH, Which were consenting to the practife which wee spake of when the Emperour died. These men requiring certaine conditions which might not bee graunted, departed from ALBERTS feruice and obedience; which calling and inuiting others to joyne with them, chose for their King C ASIMIRE brother to the King of Poland, and they sending for him to come and to take possession of the kingdom, offred him their aide and feruice in the action. In this meane time, the Electors of the Empire being certified of the death of the Emperor SIGISMVND, met in Franckford to chuse a new Emperour; where ALBERT King of Hungary and Bohemia, and Duke of Austrich, of Austrich was upon the 20 day of March in the yeere 1438.chosen: and being by the same chosen Empe-Princes aduertised of his election, very gladly gaue eare to their ambassade, but rour. yet could not prefently accept the gouernment, for that when he was fworne in Hungary, he promised the Hungars, that notwithstanding that he were chosen, yet he would not accept the Empire, for that it was not held expedient for that kingdom, that the King thereof hould be Lord of any other countries, but should make his aboade in Hungary onely; producing the Emperour Sigismyp for example, whose absence was the occasion of many inconveniences in that countrie. But notwithstanding all this, new ambassades daily arriving, he caused the principall Lords, and the Burgesses of cities in Hungary to meete in the citie of Viena in Austrich, wherein he found some contradiction, but in the end the Hun-

ned Emperour in Aken.

gars being entreated and perfwaded by FREDERICE Duke also of Austrich, they consenting to his election, and ALBERT accepted thereof; and presently went to be crowned at Aken, which was acceptable to all Germany; for hee was held for a wife and valorous prince, and shewed the same in the small time that he enjoyed the Empire.

A LBERT knowing that CASIMIRE brother to the King of Peland hadaccepted the kingdome of Bohemia, and that with the aide of his brother, hee levied forces for that enterprise; fent his Ambassadours to the King, desiring him, that fith he well knew him to be the right King of Bohemia, he would not fuffer their iust friendship for any vniust cause to be broken: whereto the King of Poland anfwered that he could not let his brother to accept that kingdome, which by the naturall subjects thereof was offered him, together with other excuses such as he thought good. And within fewe daies after, the Emperour entred Behemia, notwithstanding that Toscon and the rest of his faction sent (with certaine proteflations) to require him that hee should not doe it : but he holding on his journey was in the moneth of May, in the yeere 1438 crowned in the citie of Prage : and TASCON and fuch others as tooke CASIMIRES part, joyning themselves with the men of warre which came out of Poland, railed an army, and taking the field. and fortified such townes as were at their denotion, warred vpon the rest, and the Emperour with the troupes which he brought with him, and others which came to his aide, did the like. And notwithstanding that others were expected to come to him out of Austrich, and from other parts, yet he would not stay, but went to feeke his enemies and to fight with them; but Tascon and the Polacres not daring to give him battaile, returning, encamped themselves neere to the citie of Tabor, which was enhabited by pretended heretikes, whither the Emperour purfiling them had in his army CHRISTOFER Duke of Bautere, FREDERICE Duke of Saxony, and ALEERT Marquis of Brandenburgh, which there pitching their Tents, daily skirmishes passed betweene them, wherein the Polacres and Bohemians were fo hardly bested, that they disbanding, part of them put themselues into Tabor, which is a most strong impregnable towne; and ALBERT knowing it to bee such, returned to Prage and the Polacres (fewer in number then they came into that countrie) returned to their houses; so as the Emperour finding no refistance, discharged his souldiers which were strangers: and some Princes which came to his aide, returned to their countries; yet betweene the one and the other kingdomes, some roades and incursions continued, but shortly after a truce was taken between them. And forasmuch as there came tidings of the comming of A MVR ATH the great Turke with a great power into Hungary, A LBERT Was constrained to leave Governours in Bohemia, and to take his way thitherward, with a determination to leuy forces and to fight with the Turkes, not withflanding that he was counselled by many to the contrary, being feared with the infortinate battaile fought by the Emperour SIGISMYND. But notwithstanding all their admonitious and perswasions, nothing could divert the Emperour, so great a desire had he to fight: And what more encreased his resolution, was, that the Dispote of Scruia, flying from A MVRATH, came into Hungary to implore aide and succour, to relieue and vnfet his fonne which was befieged in the citie of Siuderouia, fituate vpon the fide of the river Danubius, which the Turke held belieged, and put it to great distresse: wherefore the Emperour resolued to raise his forces for that iourney, which was in the yeere of our Lord 1439.

In this time the discord betweene the Councel of Bafil and the Pope grew to 2

greater extremitie: for notwithstanding the Popes commaundements and disso-Intions (it having now continued eight or nine yeres fince it first began) they held. and refusing to be dissoluted, cited the Pope to make his personall appearance before them. The Pope hereupon fummoned a generall Councell to be held in Ferrara, which was the yeere before, by his commaundement begun by the Cardinall S. Croffe, whither the Pope himselfe came in person. Here was that which noner before was seene (a schissne of Councels) for those of Basil would not give ouer, yet many which had been there came to Ferrera. In the Councel of Bafil were many disputations and arguments concerning this matter. To the Councell of Favara came IOHN PALBOLOGVS, Emperour of Conflantinople, with a great number of Greeke Prelates, notwithit anding that those of Bafil fought to have induced him to have come thither : but a great plague falling amongst them at Ferrara, the Pope removed the Councell to Florence; where the Greeks and their Emperour submitted themselues to the Latines, touching the proceeding of the Holy Ghost, the third person of the Trinitie, which they held to have proceeded but from the Father only: and other matters were there handled, which A N T o-MIN'S Archbishop of Florence in his histories, and Platina and others write at large. But this notwithstanding those of Bafil proceeded in their Councel against the Popes& although the Emperor fought to bring them to an vnity, yet his other affaires were fo great (confidering the small time that he raigned) that hee could not doe it; and now worst of all, for hee had raised his whole power, and was marching with his armie against the Turke, to vnset the citie of Sinderonia. And being past Buda, and encamped betweene the rivers Ticius and Danubius, he was certified that the Turke had taken the faid citie, and had put out the Dispotes somes eyes: and A M V R A TH being aductifed of his comming, retiring with his armie towards Theffalonica, a famous citie in Macedonia, tooke afterwards many cities in Epire and The falia. The Emperour feeing that he could not recouer the citie, and that the Turke was retired, returned to Buda, where hee discharged his armie, and being come thither, what with the scorching of the Sunne, and with the heate of Summer(and as some say, by eating of more Cowcumbers then did him good)he was taken with the flux of his bellie, wherewith growing very weake, departing from Buda with a defire to goe to Viena, he died by the way, in a little village cal The death of led Lang Brast, whom the 27 day of October, in the yeere of our Lord 1439, before Albert thefe that two yeeres were fully expired, fince that he was first chosen Emperour: his cond. death was much bewailed for the great hope conceined of him, that hee would haue proved a good prince. The Emperour A LBBRT left two daughters, one of which was married to the Duke of Saxony, and the other afterwards to the king of Poland; and his wife the Emperefie he left great with childe of a fonne, which in time came to be king of Hungary, and of Bohemia: but first there ensued much discord and debate betweene the two kingdomes, as hereafter shall be declared. The schisme and contention betweene the Pope and the Councell of Ball grew to be so great, at what time the Emperour ALBBRT died, that they chose for Pope Amadevs, whom many called Basilisks, for that hee was chosen at Bafil, who was now called F = L I x, and had been Duke of Saury, and been married and had wife and children, and tooke religious orders (as many write) to the end to be made Pope: he was father in law to Philip Duke of Milan, to whom was imputed the principall cause of his election, for he being the Popes enemie, procured the Councell in Basil to make choise of him, and hee himselfe made cruell Warre against the Pope, against the Florentines, and the Venecians, PICHIMINO

being Generall of hisarmie. And FRANCIS SFORCE (PICHININO hisroma petitor) was Generall for them, fo as there was a greater division in the Church of Romethen euer had been seene before, for there were now two Popes, and two Councels; and some Princes fauored the one, and others the other, amongst which ALONSO King of Arragon being an enemie to EVG ENIV stauored Pope Exelx: but as it feemed that Ev GENIVE had the better title, Pope FELLY his credit daily impaired, yet he held the name of Popertie space of nine veeres. and afterward Pope Ev G BNIV's being dead, in the time of Pope Nacho TAD he renounced the Papacie. Sentence on stoom up a long atoms multiby microscopy

In Constantinople raigned I OHN PALE OLOGVE, who in those times came to the Councell at Florence; who having ended fuch matters as he came for trons cerning the vnion of Greeke and Latin Churches, returned to Confiaminople. where, within a little after he died, and Constantine inceeded him in the Empire. Brown of the mile of the Back of the Lack of the state of the

Holy Choff, the chird perfect is ited frictives which are

## THE LIFE OF FREDERICK THE THIRD OF THAT NAME, and CXIII. ROMANE

which his armicagnioff the TMPEROMR contraction and think



THE ARGUMENT.



LI the Electors peaceably agreeing in the election of Frederick Duke of Austrich, a young man of the age of fine and twentie yeeres, he accepted the Empire, and comming to be crowned in Aken, was confirmed by the Pope. He was a lower of peace and a faithfull observer thereof in all his actions. He supplanted the schisme, and shewed himselfe a perfect friend to the Pope, and comming into Italy was crowned in Rome to the great contentment of all the land: Wherein were made most sumptuous and costly feasts by all the cities which

received him. He afterwards returning into Germany, was much troubled with the commotions which he found therein, by reason of the King of Bohemia, which could not be pacified but by the delinerie of the King to the Bohemians. In time of this Emperor, Constantinople to the great shame and disboner to all Christendome was lost, and greater barmes were streamed by the Junte, but a

Croylade being made, the Turke had a very great overthrow, so as he was constrained to alter his determination. This Emperor had some controversie with his brother about the Duchie of Austrich. but in the end the title rested in the Emperor : who to his sonne Maximilian game the title of Archduke of Austrich, and made him King of the Romanes. He ever sought to maintaine peace. by reason whereof he was called the peaceable Emperor. And being now old, and his sonne Maximilian fwaying the government, it pleased God to take him out of this world, when he had ruled the Empire three and fiftie yeeres.



Hose which haue trauelled a long iourney, and being come neere to their waies end; through the defire they have to attaine thereto, and to rest their wearie bones, make commonly greater hafte then at any time before; fo I defiring to do the like. and to make a quicke dispatch in writing the history of the Emperors remaining yet behinde; being tired with the long iour-

ney which I have trauelled, and to the end to obtaine rest, after so long watching and fo much paines taken in that which is past; in the end of my journey the Emperor FREDERICK presenteth himselfe, and after him his sonne MAXIMILIAN, whose lives were such and so long, that all the time and paper which I have spent might have bin employed in writing the lives of them two: of FREDERICK.for that he was naturally more enclined to peace, and procured the same, and raigned fiftie and odde yeeres; in which long time so many matters passed, that they require a long discourse: and of MAXIMILIAN, for that his acts were so great. and so many accidents happened in histime, that if they all should be written. this volume would hardly containe his historie. Which (when I had thereof well confidered) did put me in a great perplexitie, for feare to be tired or foundred before I should attaine to the end of my journey: but setting all seare apart I will proceede, and thus it was.

So soone as the death of the Emperor ALBERT was published, the Princes Electors of the Empire affembling in the citie of Franckford; about two or three daies before the new yeere 1440. chose for Emperor FREDERICK Duke of Austrick, a young man of the age of fine and twentie yeeres, who a little before Frederick came from lerusalem where he had been in Pilgramage. This FREDERICK was Duke of Authe sonne of Duke ERNBST VS of Austrich, descended in line masculine from the Emperor, Emperor ARNVLPH, aboue named. So foone as he understoode of his election, he accepting the same, prepared himselfe to goe to Aken to be crowned; before which I hold it expedient to recount in few words what happened in the kingdomes of Hungary and Bohemia, after the death of the Emperor ALBERT; fith they were prouinces of the Empire: and forasmuch as besides this, they serue for our purpose, for the liquidation and better vnderstanding of that which fol-

loweth.

The widow Emperesse (as before is said) at the time of her husbands decease was with childe: and so soone as he was dead, the Lords of Hungary affembling together consulted about the choosing of a new King, for fith the Emperesse before had alreadie two daughters, they thought not that she now would have had a sonne : whereupon after many doubts they choosing VLADISLAVS King of Poland for their King (yet some say it was the Kingsbrother) sent to aduertise him thereof. In the meane time that the Ambassadors were vpon their way, the Emperesse was deliuered of a sonne, who was named LADISLAVS; which when they faw, they then would that they had not fent to the King of Poland: yet they held it more expedient for the good of the land to have him

The King of King of Hunfor their King, for that he was of age and of power to protect their countrie, and to gouerne the same, which would be wanting in the infant; and they in like manner were of opinion that the Bohemians would have made him their Kine alfo. Standing in this doubt, the King of Poland (totake benefit of the time) in the greatest haste that hee could make, came into Hungary, and was in Bude by those which defired to have him so received for their King. In the meane time, the widow Queene with her new borne sonne, together with the Earle of Cilia and great part of the nobilitie, went to Alba REGALIS, where your Whitforday the young child was crowned King by the Archbilhop of Strigg. mium. This folemnitie being ended, and fealtie sworne to him by those which were present, as to their Lord and King, the Queene with her sonne feating the inconstancie of the Hungars, by the counsell of some her friends presently tooke her way towards Viena, and committing him to the protection of his Vncle the new Emperor, together with the crowne of that kingdome, which she had in her power (which is there held for the best right to have the possession thereof) the returned into Hungary, to fee if the might have the government thereof. during her fonnes minoritie. Some fay that she sent the young King to the Emperor, but howfoeuer it was, the Emperor as his Vncle had the wardship of the childe for to him appertained the tutell and protection of the house of Austrick. In Hungary was great contention about who should be King, but those which tooke part with VLADISLAV'S King of Poland being affifted by IOHN AVNIA-DES VAIVODA (a very famous Captaine for the great victories which he had obtained against the Turkes) for that time prevailed: and the young Ladis-LAV s. although crowned, remained a long time dispossessed in the Emperors keeping. In the kingdome of Bohemia was no leffe hurlie burlie: for fo foones the Emperor ALBERT was dead, they in like manner treated of the chufings new King, and they having appointed a day for that purpose, before that that time came ; the widow Empereffe was delivered of her fonne L ADISLAYS, and the presently upon her deliuerie sent into Bohemia, to enforme the Bohemians of the equitie of her cause, and to put them in minde that she was the daughter of the Emperor SIGISMVND, King of Bohemia; and that she and her husband ALBERT had enjoyed the same, wherefore they should not now deprine her fonne of his right. The Ambaffadors doing what in them lay, found fauour and affiftants: but TASCON and the reft which had been ALBERTS enemies, were of fuch authoritie, that not withstanding that they confessed that the childe LADIS-LAVS had right to the crowne, yet they alleaged that he ought not to be King before that he was foure and twentie yeeres of age, and their sentence preuailing, they chose ALBERT Duke of Bauiere for their King, who shewing the greatnes of his minde, would not accept it: a rare example of magnanimitie, and feldome seene. The Bohemians meeting againe agreed to send to entreate the Emperor FREDERICK; that seeing he had charge himselfe with the protection of the person of the young King, that he would also be pleased to take you him the government of the kingdome of Bohemia: and Tascon which was one of the Ambassadors, counselled him to have made himselfe King thereof; which was a matter easie to hauebeen done. This Ambassade was deliuered to the Emperor at fuch time as he was departing towards Aken to be crowned (for he was but newly chosen) his answere hereto he referred untill his returne; which then was, that whereas they had offered him the kingdome of Bohemia, he would not shewhimselse so vniust a tutor, as to bereaue the pupill of his right: and that he

FREDERICK THE THIRD.

could as ill take vpon him the gouernment of the countrie, for he had otherwise enough to answere for before God, for what he had alreadie done, and therefore would vindertake no other charge: for that they amongst themselues might finde sufficient men enough to have the gouernment. Those which came with this Ambassade being returned, the Lords of Bohemia appointed a new meeting: and chose for Gouernors untill that LADISLAVS should come to age, TASCON and MENANDER; which were heads and leaders of the contrarie faction: to TASCON repaired all the reputed heretikes of time past. Within a little while after, TASCON dying, POGIABRA'CCIO fucceeded him, who after the decease of MENANDER, had the fole gouernment; and many other matters befell in the time that LADISLAVS, by reason of his nonage was in the Emperour FREDERICKS protection: and the Hungars and Bohemians oftentimes fought to have the keeping of him vntill he came to full age. This for the present may fuffile to vinderstand the successe of the kingdomes of Hungary and Bohemia. The Emperor FREDERICK spent the time from Ianuary untill July, in pro-

uiding for the affaires of Hungary and Bohemia, and to make provision for his coronation, which should be solemnized in the moneth of August, in the citie of Aken, at which time Cardinall Levves being sent by the Councell at Basil, came thither to opproue and authorise his election. About whose comming, there was great adoe, for the Bishop of Liege who was an enemie to the Councell of Bafil, and to Pope FELIX, holding with EVGENIVS, put him out of the towne: but TTEODORICUS Archbishop of Colen (who held with those of The Empirer Basil) made him to be received in againe, whereupon Pope Evgenivs de-Frederick posed him from his Prelacie, vntill that afterwards he was through the Emperors crowned in entreatie by his Ambassadors restored. The coronation being ended, the Empefor returned into Austrich, wherein he was at great controuersie with his brother ALBERT about the division of estates thereof; with whom FREDERICK feeking to come to an agreement, procured peace and concord through all Germany; for he was euer enclined to peace and a louer thereof. Whilest the Emperor applied himselfe hereto, in Italy in those daies (or a little before) after great warres and infinit conflicts past, a peace was concluded betweene Duke PHILIP of Milan of the one fide, and the Venecians and the Florentines of the other. And FRANCIS SFORCE who was Generall of their armie marrying the Duke of Milanes bastard daughter, had Cremona and other places with her for her dowrie: this peace was made in the yeere 1442. A little before this, in the same yeere, ALONSO King of Arragon wholy expelling his competitor RENE out of the kingdome of Naples, remained in full possession thereof. About this time, VLA-DISLAYS King of Poland (who was also in possession of Hungary) after many aduentures past in the warres against the Turkes fighting a battaile with them, was therein infortunately flaine; having been King of Hungary but four eyeeres onely.

King VLADISLAVS being flaine in this manner, the noble men and Burgefes of cities affembling, chose the childe LADISLAVS their right Soueraigne, for their King; who (as I faid) at the age of foure moneths was crowned in Alba Regalis; and they having proclaimed him for their King, fent a folemne Ambaffade to entreate the Emperor to permit them to have the custodie of him, to the end that they might crowne him: whereto the Emperor (commending their doings) answered, that there needed no election, sith he was their naturall Lord; neither was there any neede to crowne him; fith he was alreadie crowned. And

dead, the citie of Atilan crying libertie and Empire, made choyse of twelve men to gouerne it; but therein was a suddaine alteration, for many sought to have been Lords thereof. The Milanoies (as I faid) defired their libertie; and King A LONS O of Naples and Arragon pretended thereto title of enheritance . for Titles to the Duke PHILIP by his Will and Testament made him heyre to all his dominions. Duchy of Mi-The Emperor (with better right) alleaged that estate to appertaine to the Empire (principally, in default of heyres) and that therefore that effate was to returne to the Empire: but he had not time to come into Italy, by reason of the great feare and danger of the comming of the Turkes into Hungary; which as Emperor, and tutor to the young King, he was to defend. FRANCIS SEGRER having married the baltard daughter of Duke PHILIP, pretended title to the Duchie of Milan by the right of his wife. CHARLES Duke of Orleans would haue it, for that he was the sonne of VALENTINA, sister to Duke PHILIPS father: which VALENTINA was married to LEVVES Duke of Orleans, and brother to CHARLES the fixth King of France: wherefore CHARLES allegged that Duchie to appertaine vnto him. The Venecians taking for their right the occasion which was offered, presently seased sundrie townes into their hands. as Cremona, Placencia, and Lodi. All those which pretended title to the Duchie of Milan, fent their Ambassadors to the Milanoyes, not that they all did absolutely make claime thereunto, but with certaine complements and offers to affift them against the Venecians which tooke their townes. The Milanoves would accept no Soueraigne but the Emperor, whom they entreated to permit them to enjoy their libertie, vpon condition whereof they would yeerely give him a cup of gold in token of their Vassellage and subjection; and to that effect they dispatched their Ambassadors vnto him: but God in his secret judgement had reserved that estate for FRANCIS SFORCE; which happened after this

FRANCIS SFORCE being certified of the death of his father in law PHILIP. and that the Venecians made themselves Lords of the land; hasted him to Cremena, which was his owne towne, given to him for his wives dowrie; and fortifying, garrifoning, and furnishing the same with all things needfull, hee went to Pausa, whither being called by the inhabitants, he became Lord thereof. The Milanoves made him Generall of their armie against the Venecians, and he accepting the charge, having good fuccesse, overthrew them in battaile: and being victorious (imitating OCTAVIVS CESAR) made peace with them, which they gladly accepting, in their agreement bound themselves to assist him with certaine troupes of men of warre: and he refoluing to put in execution what he had purposed (which was to make himselfe Lord of Milan) bent his forces against the townes and cities of Lombardy; some of which he tooke by force, and other by faire meanes, and in the end belieged the citie of Milan it felfe: and after many accidents, was received into it; and fo with the title and right of warre, was called (as was his father in law) Duke of Milan, and afterwards comming to be Lord of the whole estate, was a mightic and a valorous Prince, and lived many veeres Lord thereof.

manner.

In the same time that these matters passed in Milan and in Italy, the Emperour FREDERICK after the diffolution of the Councell of Bafil, fought by all meanes to roote out the schissine betweene the Popes, for FELIX was still called Pope and obeyed by the Sauoisins: but the Emperors counsell and authoritie so much preuailed with him, that he came to obedience, and renouncing the Papacie, was by

feeing that he was but an infant, and wanted a tutor, vntill that he should come to age, he willed them to chuse them Gouernors; and he would take care for his person vntill he should be of yeeres fit to gouerne. With this answere the Hungars being greatly discontented, resolued to have that by force which by faire meanes they could not obtaine : and I o HN HVNIADES being chosen for their Gouernor, came into Austrich to warre vpon the Emperor, for that he gaue them not their King; but he there finding sufficient resistance, mist of his purpose. About the same time, the Bohemians in like manner sued to have him; to whom the Emperor gaue the like reasons and excuses as he had done to the Hungars, and so dispatched them for that time. Whilest these matters passed, after most cruell warres, betweene England and France, a truce for a time was taken betweene them, and the Dolphin of France whose name was LEVYES, in the time of this truce, without any reason or occasion that might mooue him thereto leuied a very mightie armie, and entring Germany, befieged and tooke the citie and state of Wittembergh, and other townes of lesse qualitie, no man knowing the cause thereof: yet Historians set downe sundrie: some say that he came by the Emperors procurement against the Swissers, which at that time were enemies to the house of Austrich. NAVCLERVS Writeth, that he published, that he came to recouer those lands which in auncient time appertained to the house of France. PLATINA, and other Italians write, that the Dolphins comming was by the Popes instigation, to ouerthrow the Councell at Basil; which in my opinion is most likely to be true, for he presently marched against Basil; and the Swiffers (which were in league with that citie) fent 4000, chosen men to the reliefe A memorable battaile fought thereof, but they could not enter it without first meeting with the Dolphin, by the Swiffers which within fight of the citie fighting with his whole armie were all flaine, not one escaping; but they sold their lines very deere, for they fighting in a manner all one whole day from the morning vntill night, were not broken, vntill they had flaine twife fo many of their enemies as they were. After this battaile the Emperor sent to require the Dolphin to make no warres in the lands of the Empire, and began to prouide for the defence thereof. Some report it after this manner, and others after another the conclusion was, that the Dolphin having done much harme in many places, returned to his fathers kingdome.

The death of that he had no sonne, his brother Constantine Paleolo gys succeeded Iohn Paleolohim. Many matters passed in those daies in Italy which I have not time to relate.

againft the

French neere to Basil.

gus Emperour of Constantinople. The death of

the fifth succee-The death of

the mightie Philip Duke of

King ALONSO of Arragon possessing the kingdome of Naples, and defending the cause of Pope Ev G ENIV's (with whom he was in great grace) was by him Pope Eugenius inuested, and confirmed in his kingdome. Pope Evgenius being dead, Carwhom Nicholas dinall THOMAS SARZANO (who lately was Legate in Germany) was chosen, and called NICHOLAS the fifth; to whom fo soone as he was consecrated, the Emperor fent to acknowledge obedience, and he fought to have established a generall peace through all Italy; but the treatie of peace and the conclusion thereof was interrupted by the death of the great & puiffant Philip Duke of Milan; who might iusly be called great, for he was great of minde, of bodie, of power, of estate, and of farre greater wit and understanding then any of his auncestors: which PHILIP died the thirteenth day of August, in the yere of our Lord 1447. in the two and fiftith of his age, and the two and thirtith of his raigne: when he died hee left neuer a sonne, and but one bastard daughter, whose name was BLANCH, who (as I faid) was married to FRANCIS SFORCE. The Duke being

At this time died IOHN PALBOLOGY'S Emperor of Constantinople, and for

ď.

Pope NICHOLAS made a Cardinall, and his Legate in Sausy, and in certaine other provinces. Shortly after enfued great warres in Germany, betweene many of the Imperiall cities, and the Marquis of Brandenburgh, who was affifted by the Earle of Wittembergh: the warre was such that in the space of two yeeres that in lasted they in the plaine fields fought nine severall times, and fortune fauouring fometime one, and sometime the other, much harme was done before that the Emperour could redreffe the fame: vntill that at length, by his intercession and commaundement, a peace was concluded betweene these princes and the cities: and he having fetled this concord, refolued to come into Italy, for the great defire he had to be therein crowned, wherein ALONSOKing of Naples and Arragen was his allie and great friend; the Venecians were also his friends, for as he loued peace, so he ever sought to maintaine the same. He having resolved to goe his iourney, and agreed to marrie with the Ladie ELENOR daughter to the King of Portugall, it was decreed that she (he being there) should come into Italy by water; and that the nuptials should there be solemnized. Whereupon he leuied an indifferent armie of foote and horse, and provided all things necessary for his iour-The Emperours ney : and departing from Germany, carried with him LADISLAVS the young King of Hungary and Bohemia, not without griefe to both those kingdoms, which very instantly defired to have had the guard of him: by reason whereof a great number of the Nobles of both those kingdomes, together with many Lords of Suenia and of Austrich accompanied him: with which (although in warlike maner)in the beginning of Ianuary in the yeere of our Lord 1452 he came into Italy: and comming into the countries subject to the Venecians, Ambassadours with fhew of fingular loue and affection came to entertaine him: which of free cost furnished his whole armie with victuals so long as he was within their jurisdiction. And keeping on his way by Treuigi and by Padoa to Ferrara, was there by Bonsiotheir Duke highly feasted; and in all parts was entertained with great loue and good will. From Ferrara hee came to Bologna, (notwithstanding that FRANCIS SFORCE inuited him to come to Milan, there to be crowned with the Crowne of Iron) and following his way towards Rome, accompanied with the Cardinall which came to receive him there he went to Florence, and was therein most sumptuously entertained, and had the like in Siena, whither hee presently went: at his being there, he was certified that the King of Portugols daughter, to whom he was to be married, the being but fixteene yeeres old, was arrived by fea in the citie of Pifa, and hee staving for her there, the with many gallants in her traine was brought to Siena; where the Emperour accompanied with the King of Bohemia and other Princes and men of account, went to meete her. The Emperour was alreadie by his deputie betrothed to her, but he deferred the Nuptials varill he might receive her at the hands of the Pope. The Emperour being come to Rome, was fumptuously entertained and feasted by Pope Nicholas, who vpon the steps comming into S.Peters Church clad in his pontificalibus, attending his comming, received him; the Emperesse and the King of Bohemia, and they killing his foote, hee gaue them his hand; and comming into the Church, and having made their prayers, and other ceremonies accustomed, they went thence to their lodgings; and voon the fifteenth day of March in the yeere 1442, the Emperour was married to the Emperesse, and was the same day with the Iron crowne, which should have been done in Milan, crowned King of Lombardy: and three daies after in the same Church, with the ceremonies and solemnities accus stomed, was crowned Emperour of Rome, and the Emperesse in like manner. The

feasts at the coronation being ended, the Emperour leaving King LADISLAVS in Rome went to Naples, whither afterwards came his wife the Empresse, to see King ALONSO who was her vncle, where they were continually for the space of fifteene daies sumptuously feasted. From Naples the Emperour by sea, and vp the riuer Tiber returned to Rome, thence to take his journey towards Germany; wherein he was aduertifed, that the Hungars & Bohemians had caused some commotions. for that the Emperor detained their King from them; the chief motors were V 1-RICH Earle of Cilia, & another Virich a man of great power. The Empereffe tarrying 8.daies longer in Naples then the Emperor did, went from thence by land to Mansredonia, and from thence by sea to Venice, for the knew that the Emperour would go to fee that citie before his returne into Germany. The Emperour in his iourney took Ferrara in his way, where in reward of the feruice done him by Boxsto Duke of Ferrara, at his comming & going, he made him Duke of Modena and Reggio, & gaue him the title and sourcraigntie of those cities, and being there, G A-LEAS SFORCE Viscount, son of Francis SFORCE Duke of Milan came to see him, and brought him gifts & presents from his father. The Emperor friendly entertaining him dubbed him Knight, for the good conceit he had of his person. And fro Ferrara the Emperor fending his people by land, went downe the river Po to the citie of Venice, where he was received with infinite kinds of triumphs, whither the Empereffe was already come, and was received with no leffe folemnitie: in fuch feafling and pastimes hee spent there other ten dayes : and then departed, accompanied with the Duke and Senate of Venice to the fea fide, which fent Pouruours before with order, that in all their dominion, his whole court should be furnished with all things necessary gratis. And so this peaceable Prince passed through Italy in peace, and with enery mans love and good will, which he could not have done if he had been ambicious and desirous of warre : and if hee could have done it.it would have bin to the greater losse of his people and expence of money, and with the peril of his life and burthen to his conscience, as by the histories of other Emperours which came into Italy to other intents, it may appeare. The Emperor being departed out of Italy, it seemed that peace & quietnes went away with him, for the warres presently began betweene those which theretofore had bin enemies, which follong as he was there was in some fort pacified. The Venecians being in league with King ALONSO, with the Duke of Sauoy, and with the Marquis of Monferrato, against FRANCIS SFORCE Duke of Milan, made cruell warre against him, whom the Florentines and L E vy Es G ONZ AG A Marquis of Montes affisted and aided. And King ALONSO, enemie to the Florentines sent his sonne FERDINAND with 8000 horse and 4000 foote to make warre in Tuscane. The pranete King of France dealt with RENEKing of Prouence, to paffe into Italy with 2000 recent the horiesin the behalfe of the Duke of Milan and the Florentines, in hope of the enterprise of Naples. So as there was most cruell warre waged through all Italy, the issue whereof I have no time to declare. The Pope vsing all meanes to have pacified the same, desired that they all should have loyned together, to have holpen the Emperor of Constantinople against the great Turke, knowing that he purposed to besiege the citie of Constantinople: but he could not then effect the same, and so Constantinople was not relieued, who it stood in most need. The Emperor FRED E-Rick comming into Germany, found it in no better peace, then at his departure he left traly; for great part of his countrie of Austrich was in armes against him, and had thrust out the Gouernours which he had set there: all which was done for that he had not left the young King of Hungary and Bohemia at his libertie, mo-Aaaa 3

cius lib. 29,

Fredericke crowned and Reme by Pope ued thereto by the Earle of Cilia and by VIRICHA great man in Bohemia; Who perswaded them to take LADISLAVS, sonne of ALBERT Duke of Austrich for their Lord, to whom that prouince did more properly appertaine; and the Emperour vnderstanding of their rebellion, came with part of his armie to a towne called Nieustat, where those of Austrich came against him, and notwithstanding that the Emperour had good forces, yet they fought with him, and the fight continued foure houres: but so many charged the Imperialists, that they were conftrained to retire to a towne called Nieuftat, before which those of Austrich encamping themselves with great furie, in the name of Hungary and Bohemia requiring their King, battered the same. When it was knowne that the Emperour was belieged, great preparation was made through all Germany by fundrie princes which resolued to vnset him: and the like was made by the Hungars and Bohemians, which to the contrary required to have their King. The Emperour forefeeing the great cuils likely to enfue, gaue eare to a parley, wherein it was agreed that he should deliuer the young King LADISLAVS (who was not yet fully 14. yeeres old)into the hands of the Earle of Cilia, who should have the keeping of him vntill Nouember then next comming in the yeere 1452: and that the Proctors and Deputies of Hungary and Bohemia should meet in the citie of Viena, there to conclude who should have the government of those kingdomes; with many other promises which were neuer perfourmed. Herewith the siege was raised from before the citie, and the Earle of Cilia carried the yong King to Viena, where he was received with as great ioy, as if he had been the naturall Lord thereof: and fo presently without any other composion, he gaue offices and dignities as Lord of the land; and was also called Duke of Austrich, by the title before specified. To him came presently many great men of both the kingdomes, and amongst them IOHN HUNIADES VAIVODA, who had been Gouernour of Hungary: and GEORGE POGIOERACCIO Gouernour of Behemia. The time appointed being expired thither reforted many Princes of Germany, and Ambassadors from the Emperour: but the young inexperienced King would accomplish no part of what was couenanted, and being ruled and led by fauourites, in the small time that he lived many diforders were committed in his house and court, which Æ-NEAS SILVIVS hath most excellently written in his Historie of Bohemia, Viena, and the other cities which held for Ladislavs being supported by Hungary and Bohemia, perseuered in their rebellion, and so continued so long as LAD 15-LAV s liued.

Whilest the Emperour FREDERICK was pestered with these troubles, and the other Princes had warres amongst themselues, MAHOMET the great Turke in the beginning of the yeere 1453, with an huge armie besieged the Imperiall citie of Constantinople, the head of all the Greeke and orientall Empire (CONSTANTINE the last Emperour thereof being within it) which the besieged the space of more then siftie daies; in which time (for that it was not relieued) upon the nine and twentith day of May in the same yeere, the citie was by force of armes taken and entred, and the Emperour to the shame and dishonour of all Christendome was therein slaine: and in that citie were such cruelties committed, as the like thereof had neuer been seene or heard of. For the losse of Constantinople all the Princes in Christendome were very sorie, but much more when they throughly understood how great cruelties and murthers the Turke had afterwards therein committed; and that he had taken other townes and prominces thereto adioyning, and that he therewith threatned staly and Germany: whereupon they began

to confult of defence and refultance to be made against him; but the ambition and diffention which raigned amongst them, gaue no place to the conclusion or persourmance of any good exploite; as in our daies the like hath been seene in the like necessitie. Yet the next yeere a peace was concluded in Italy betweene the King of Naples and the Venecians, the Duke of Milan, and the Florentines, and those of their league: which being concluded, the Pope rigged vp a great fleete of galleys to make head against the Turkes; but they write that he was euer so forowfull after the losse of Constantinople that he neuer had good day, but falling Anno Dom. ficke died, vpon the 25. day of March in the yeere 1455. in the fifteenth yeere of 1455. the raigne of the Emperour FREDERICK, and the eighth of his Papacie. After his decease, Cardinall ALONSO BORIA2 Spaniard was chosen Pope, and called CALIXIVS the third. The first thing that he vndertooke was to procure the warre against the Turkes, and to that effect sent out his Buls, and a generall Croifaide, and therewith fent his Legates into all parts of Christendome, especially into Germany; where the Emperour having the like care, had fummoned a Diet or Parliament, to confult of a redreffe. And notwithstanding that many Princes gaue in their names, and offered to ferue in this warre, yet the suspition and diffention amongst them was such that they put nothing in execution : but the Pope neuertheleffe fent Cardinall I OHN CARALAVAL for his Legate into Germany, who for that it was certainly knowne that the Turke was comming into Hungary, with the Emperours aide and fauour leuied men and money: prefently hereupon came newes that the Turke was come, and that hee had in his armie (they which fav least) one hundred and fiftie thousand men, and that he went to besiege Belgrado, The great Turk otherwise called Alba Greca, and more anciently, Taurinum; and that he purposed outred Himin few daies (taking that citie) to march forwards. King LADISLAVS giving the gary. charge of that warre, with the defence of that citie and kingdome to IOHN Hy-NIADE s, retired to Fiena: for in truth he was neither of age, neither had power fufficient to fight with the Turke. The Popes Legate with the greatest number of men that he could get came to Buda, and from thence before the Turks comming put himselfe therewith into the citie of Belgrado: amongst those which came with him, was one IOHN CAPISTRANO, a Franciscan Frier, who with his fer- The Turke bemons and exhortations gathered together and brought with him a great num-fieged Belgraber of men, which for their deuice ware the figne of the Croffe. And the Turke comming with his power, and befieging the citie, these men wrought wonders in the defence thereof, being furioully battered. To the reliefe thereof, with the power which the Emperour fent, and fuch others as hee could raife in Hungary, which were 40000. foote, and 5000. horfe, came I o HN HVNIADES. To be brief, Thegreat Turk it pleased God, that the succours being arrived, and come to blowes, they had so before the citie good fortune that the Turke was ouerthrowne and wounded, and a great num- of Eelgrado in ber of his people slaine: whereupon he raising his siege and slying, left his Ar-Hungary. tillerie and baggage behind him. This happened vpon S.MARY MAGDALENS day, in the yeere 1456. All Christendome reioyced, and made bonfires for this so notable a victorie: and Italy and Germany by this meane were deliuered from the feare which they conceived, by reason of the late loss of Constantinople: for confidering the great power of the enemie, they all feared to have been loft. Within few daies after this victorie, died the excellent Captaine I OHN HVN IADES: and the Turke by reason of this ouerthrow, suffring Hungary and Italy to rest in peace, made warres in the Ilands, in the Sea called Archipelagus, and in other countries bording vpon them.

Anno Dom. 1453. Constantinople besieged and taken by the great Curke.

A222 4

The

The Emperour FREDERICKS raigne was follong, and fo many accidents happened therein, that I shall be enforced to be briefer in writing what followeth. then I have been in what is past. After this victorie obtained by I OHN HYNIA-DES, the Emperour FREDERICK applied himselfe to the establishing of peace in Germany, to the end to be able to preuent what might befall: and being buffe herein, the young King of Bohemis and Hungary being of the age of eighteene vecres died(not without suspect of poyson) in the citie of Prage, where he attended the comming of the French Kings daughter, to whom he should have been married. The realmes of Hungary and Bohemia, and that also which he held in Austrich. by reason of his death without issue and heires were voide; which caused much strife in those countries and kingdomes, about the succession and election : diuers Princes pretending to have right to them. In the end the Bohemians tooke GEORGE POGIOFRACCIO (Who was Gouernour thereof in the time of LA-DISLAVS) for their King, a man of a noble house and of great valour. The Hungars for their King choie MATTHEVV the sonne of the excellent warriour IOHN HVNIADES, as well for the loue which they bare to his father, as for the good hope they had of his person, being a young man of nineteene yeeres old, and then prisoner in Bohemia for the death of the Earle of Cilia; whom Pogiora Accio the new King of Bohemia fetting at libertie, married him to his daughter; and hee afterwards being King of Hungary, prooued an excellent and a most valorous Prince. In the house of Austrich (the gouernment whereof in right appertained to the Emperour) his brother ALBERT alleaged, that forasmuch as his brother was Emperor, he ought to enjoy the same : the like did his cosine SIGISMVND. About this controuersie, those of Austrich assembling anerred the Emperour to be their principall Lord; and that he according to the custome of Germany was to haue regard to the maintenance of his brothers and cofin germanes estate: wherfore and for the better preservation of the peace, certaine lands and revenues were affigued vnto them. The Emperour vpon this agreement came to Viena, and was there received and obeyed, but his brother and cosin persevering in their purposes raised Commotions in the countrie; and there were some sharp bickerings about this matter, but by the mediation of L EVV E s Duke of Bauiere, a compolition was made betweene him and them, yet they were neuer without lealoufies and contentions, untill the death of ALBERT: at which time the Emperour without any contradiction tooke possession of that estate. After this, in the yeere 1458.died ALONSO King of Arragon and Naples, whom his brother I o HN King of Nauarre succeeded in the kingdomes of Arragon, and Sicilia; and in the kingdome of Naples succeeded his bastard sonne Fernando, who contended with IoHN, fonne of R ENE, with whom his father was at variance about that kingdome. And in the moneth of August following died Pope CALIXTVS, and in his place was chosen ANBAS SILVIVS a Cardinall and citizen of Siena, and was called PIVS the fecond, who was so excellently learned and endued with so many graces, that I cannot expresse what is written in commendation of him: besides this, the bookes which he wrote beare record of his wifedome and litterature; who accordingly first tooke care for the defence of Christendome, and for the warres against the Turke; and to that effect wrote to the Emperour and the other Princes. The next yeere after his election, hee fummoned a generall Councell to bee held in the citie of Mantos, to treate of the matter more to the purpose, where many Noblemen and Princes Ambassadours met, and many matters were deuised and ordained, which were neuer put in execution; by reason of the warres and troubles

troubles in Italy, and betweene the most part of the Princes in Christendom, Particularly in Germany, in the yeere 1460, began great debate and strife betweene VDALRICVS Earle of Wittembergh, and FREDERICK Countie Palatine of Rbine, about a dowrie, and some such matter; for which, they came to fight sundrie times, and many were flaine of either fide, vntill that an agreement was made by the Emperours commandement. After this, another warre enfued, which was of longer continuance and more daungerous. Which was for the Archbshoprick of Mentz; for which DIYETERVS of Yfenburgh, and ADVLPHOF NATION CONtended: DIYETERVS who was in possession of the greatest part of the Bishoprick, being for his contumacie, intrusion, simony, and such other matters, by the fentence of Pope Pivs deposed; ADV LPH, by the Emperours consent was by the Pope created: so as the one to get possession, and the other to defend the same, troubled all Germany, which the Emperour could not remedie; for their rage grew to that heigh, that his commaundements being contemned; some Princes taking part with the one, and some with the other, al employed their whole force therein; and there followed many battailes and encounters, and many great perfonages were flaine of either party. This warre continued long, but yet in the end by the Emperors order and authoritie the matter was taken vp: but the harmes which were done before that time, could not be remedied as he would have had them. For he was so ill obeyed by his subjects in Austrich, that those of Viena joyning one day with his brother ALBERT, in the yeere of our Lord 1463, role and befieged the Emperour in the fortresse of that citie, and battring the same would haue taken him prisoner. The King of Bohemia who was his next neighbour, designation ring to win his grace and fauour, came to his aide, and refeuing him, in fuch manner pacified the rebellion, that the Emperour if it had so pleased him might haue apprehended his brother ALBERT, but he of purpose let him goe: and it pleased

Frederick the third.

to the Emperour. In the yeere 1464, in the 24. yeere of the raigne of the Emperor FREDERICK, Anno Dom. died the excellently learned Pope Pivs the second, otherwise called ÆNEAS 1464.

Silvivs, after whom by the Cardinals after the accustomed manner was cho
Alenea Silvivs. fen Cardinall BARBO a Venecian, and was called PAVL the second, who consi-uius, other wife. dering that the Turkes daily conquered the Christian countries, applied himselfe Pape Pius seto procure a remedy: but the fame occasions which hindred others, hindred him alfo, fo as he could not bring it to passe. Yet the Venecians entred into league with MATTHIAS King of Hungary, whose fame and exputation was then very great; and they giving him a certaine fumme of money; refiftance was made in diuers parts. About this time died FRANCIS SFORCE Duke of Milan, whom his eldest sonne Galeas Maria Sforce succeeded in that Dukedome. About this time also died PHILIP Duke of Burgondy, and Earle of Flanders, whom succeeded the most valiant and renowned Captaine Duke CHARLES, called

God that within few daies after Duke ALBERT died, when as without his death

there was no meane of peace in the state of Austrick the being dead the Austrians

together with Duke SIGISMVND wholy submitting themselves, became subject

CHARLES the Hardy. In the second yeere after Pope PAVLS election, the Emperour FREDERICK came to Rome, where by the Pope he was most honorably received: the cause of his comming fome fay was to performe a vow which he had made; others fay that it was to conferre with the Pope concerning warres to be made against the Turke: but howfoeuer it was he came and returned in peace into Germany, where through

Charles the

through his meanes peace continued a long time after; at the least there was no notable warre worth the speaking of, either in Germany or in Italy. In those daies, notwithstanding that these countries were in peace and quiet, yet Duke CHARLES of Burgundy had cruell warres with France, and with the Swiffers and with other Princes. Pope P AV L being dead, SIXIV s the 4. fucceeded him, who although he was but a Franciscane Frier, yet they write that he was so warlike. that the most part of the time that he was Pope he warred in Italy. The next yeere after his election which was in the yere 1472, and the 32. of the Emperors raigne. Duke CHARLES of Burgundy (of whose power and high mind, and of his warres. and the battailes which he fought, wonders are written) procured leave to fee, and to speake with the Emperor and they meeting in Lutzemburgh, the Duke requefled many matters at the Emperors hands, amongst which this was one that the Emperour should give him the title of King of Naples, and of his Vicar or Lieutenant in Italy, for he purposed to have made a conquest thereof. The Emperour knowing and disliking the ambition of this Prince, temporizing in the best manner that hee could, answered him in generall termes without coucluding any thing, and in a night without bidding him farewell, departed the city; wherewith the Duke was very much discontented, and the next yeere following he leuied a very great army, and marching towards Colen belieged the citic of Zuis, which he did to the end (as he faid) to restore to the Bishoprick of Colen the Archbishop thereof, who was his kinfman and good friend. The Emperour understanding that the Dukes meaning was (if he could) to take Colen; required him to raife his fiege; which taking no effect he leuied a very great armie, and therewith marched directly against the Duke: but as he was flacke in his busines, so he needed (confidering the Dukes power) to have speedily brought a great armie: but as he came not with fuch expedition as the cause required; so the besieged, and the countrey. thereabout endured great extremitie, and the fiege continued many daies: but he comming at length (though late first) and the one armie encamping neere to the other (with the Emperor came the Duke of Saxony, the Marquis of Brandenburgh, the Archbishops of Mentz and Treuier) and being at the point to have given battaile(which as it was thought would have been very cruell) a treatie of peace was moued betweene them, whereto the Emperour neuer refused to give eare, in so much that he was therefore called the peaceable Prince: what the conditions of the peace were, I finde not written by those authors which I have read, but the effect of what enfued was, that the Duke raifing his siege from before the towne, returned with his armie into his countrie; and fo the warre ended betwixt the Emperour and him. But the Duke was not without other warres, for he euer defired and procured the same, and thereby enlarged his countries and dominions, untill that in the yere 1466, in a cruell battaile which he fought with the Swiffers, he was ouerthrowne and flaine. His death was the cause that the Emperour and The death of his sonne MAXIMILIAN warred with the French King, the reliques and seede Hardy, Duke whereof continued long, and happened in this manner. of Burgundy.

The warlike Duke CHARLES dying in such manner, as I said, lest no heire but one onely daughter; whose estate contained the two Burgundies; the estates of Flanders, Brabant, Guelders, Holland, Zealand, Artoys, and many other townes, befides thosewhich he had taken in Lorraine, in Picardy, and from the Swiffers; for his minde and valour was fo great, that hee durft hold all the world for his enemie, and made no reckoning to take their townes. But this smoke (for so it may well be called)being by his death ouerblowne; euen as he had done by all others,

fo all men dealt with what was his. The Duke of Lorraine, and his confederates the Swiffers, recoursed what he had taken from them. LEVVES the French King foeedily leaving an armie, recourred Picary, tooke the cities of Peronne, Mountdidier, Turnay and other townes. The Flemmings and Burgonians with those of their partie, in the name of their Soueraigne Lady, MARY daughter of the deceafed Duke, for their defence put themselves in armes. The French King alleaged that Burgundy for want of heires males, was to returne to the house of France: and the Duke of Lorraine by his commaundement entring Burgundy, tooke the greatest part thereof; and the King sent to require the Duchesie MARY to come into France in person to doe him homage for the Earldome of Flunders, and her other estates subject to the crowne of France: but she vnderstanding his meaning, refusing to come stood vpon her guard. Hereabout were many treaties and parleys, and many townes were taken too long to be recited. The Flemmings fending to the Emperour for aide, offered their Duchesse MARY in marriage to his sonne MAXIMILIAN, who was then one and twentie yeeres old, a young man of a great minde, valiant, a comely personage, of a very good constitution, and apt for any attempt. The Emperour being very glad of this proffer, graunted their requests, notwithstanding that hee saw that he vndertooke a warre against France, and that he alreadie had warres with MATTHIAS King of Hungary, who (like the Duke of Burgundy) was never content with what he had, but thought all too little : and incenfing the Austrians against the Emperour, took some townes from him in Austria and warred vpon him. The French King having intelligence of this treatie of marriage, sent to the Emperour and his sonne MAXIMILIAN with many reasons perswading them to desist. This notwithstanding MAXIMI-LIANWho was now called Archduke of Austrich, with many good men of warre. in Iuly in the yeere 1467, went into Flanders, and marrying this Lady MARY had with her all her dominions: the warres on the Flemmings fide against the French through his comming, were well reinforced, and he therein fighting oftentimes in his owne person, shewing the greatnes of his minde, obtained some victories, especially one memorable battaile betweene Turnay and Arras, wherein he alighting from his horse, put himselfe into a squadron of foote. Afterwards some treaties of peace being motioned, a truce was taken for a time; wherein the French King rendring some townes, continued in possession of what he had taken in Burgundy, and so for a season the war ceased. This peace (so farre as I can coniecture) was made by the Emperors procurement: by reason of warres made against him by MATTHIAS King of Hungary, for which, being otherwise troubled with other occasions of the Empire, he could make no sufficient provision, and also for that

the peace with France (as prefently shall be faid) continued but a small time. At the same time GALEAS MARIA having been nine yeeres Duke of Milan, certaine his subjects and fauourites, for his licentiousnes, and infaciable luxurie, conspiring against him, slew him as he was in S.STEPHENS Church at Masse, he being then of the age of 33. yeeres. He left for his successor a sonne of the age of nine yeeres, whose name was I OHN GALEAS, who by reason of his nonage was vnder the tutele of his mother BONA, and other tutors: but it afterwards fo happened that his Vncle L E vv E s came to be his gouernour, who by that title came to be absolute Lord of the whole Duchie: his nephew I o HN(so long as he lived, which were two and twentie yeeres)holding onely the name of Duke, and Levves the possession and authoritie; and many matters passed, which for that they concome not my historie I omit. The truce betweene MAXIMILIAN and France

continued little more then one yeere, at the end whereof the French King and he renued the warre, which lasted a certaine space, and some townes were raken of the one fide and of the other; vntill that at length through the procurement of the Emperour FREDERICK, a peace betweene them was concluded for feuen veeres.

The death of Mahomet the ereat Turke.

The death of

Lewes king of

At the same time that these matters passed, the great and mightie Turke Ma-HOMET, having done much harme in the Christians countries, held the Rhodes besieged little lesse then three moneths; but it pleased God that he could not then take it: this happened in the yeere of our Lord 1480. After this, in the same yeere. he sent a mightie armie by sea, which landing in Puglia and in the kingdome of Naples, tooke some townes, and amongst them Otranto, which they held more then one yeere after: and if through the goodnes of God the great Turke had not died, all Italy was in daunger to have bin loft: but through the death of this mightie tyrant (who in Grecia (besides Constantinople and Thracia) had taken and subdued many prouinces, and an infinite number of cities and townes) those townes in Itaty were recourred, and Christendome was freed from the oppression which it endured : and the more, for that his fonne and heire BAIAZETH in the beginning of his raigne, was empeached with domesticall warre and diffention. At this time diedRENEKing of Prouence and Duke of Anion, an ancient challenger of the crowne of Naples.

In Italy was great warre at that time, which beginning betweene the Venecians, and the Duke of Ferrara, extended it selfe ouer all Italy: which the Emperour FREDERICK perceiuing, and confidering how grear daunger all Christendome was in, he procured the Princes of Germany to establish some perpetuall peace and concord to the end to be able to refift the Turkes : the like he practized with the French King, and with his owne sonne the Archduke of Austrich, and Duke of Burgundy. Whilest he was busie thereabouts, the Duchesse MAR Y daughter of the braue Duke Charles, with whom MAXIMILIAN had so many prouinces, came infortunately to her end; for she (as of custome she vsed to doe) riding on hunting, fell from her horse, and as some say, the horse trode vpon her, or kickt her, whereof the died: others fay, that with the fall the was fo fore brused, that the died therof the eleuenth day after, which was vpon the feuenteenth day of March in the yeere of our Lord 1482, when the had been Lady of those countries little more then fine yeeres. She left at her decease one sonne and one daughter, which were PHILIP, who afterwards was King of Spaine, and father to the Emperour CHARLES the fifth; and MARGARET, which afterwards was a Princesse in Spaine. When this Ducheffe MARY died LEVVEs the French King was very fick, and lying upon his death-bed, defired peace; wherewith the Emperour being well pleased; they agreed, that MARGARET (which was a childe of two yeeres old) when the should be of age, should be married to his some CHARLES, who afterwards was King, and then twelue yeeres old: and that their fathers and they should keep perpetuall peace: with this condition that either of them should continue in possession of what they held in Burgundy. This being concluded, the young MARGARET with great pompe was brought to Paris, where her wedding feast was held, although it afterwards tooke no effect, as shall be said.

Within few daies after this folemnitie King Lavves died, and his fonne CHARLES of the age of almost thirteene yeres to succeed him. At the same time, a peace was concluded in Italy, and about the same time the Emperour assembled the Princes Electors, and other Princes of Germany in the citie of Franckford,

where

where he defired and obtained of them to make his fon MAXIMILIAN King of the Romans, which was effected in the 47. yeere of his raigne, ypon the 16 day of February in the yeere of our Lord 1486 and departing thence with a very great court of Princes and Lords, they went to the citie of Aken, where he was with great solemnitie crowned with the crowne which sometime was of CHARLES the great; brought for that purpose from Norimbergh, where it was kept with great veneration. And the fame day, by the consent of all the Princes, he made a law wherby he ordained under great penalties that peace should be kept through all Germany, which was obeyed, and in the greatest part of Germany observed a long time after. This being past, the new King of the Romanes came into the prouinces of the Low Countries, whereof his fonne Philip was now Lord, whose tutour he was; and being in the citie of Bruges, in the yeere 1487 for certainediscontentment, the Burghers rose against him, and in this tumust apprehending his person, with certaine of his traine, they held him prisoner the space of foure moneths: whereof when his father had intelligence, leuying the best forces that he could, he hasted to him, and notwithstanding that his sonne before his comming was at libertie yet he seuerely punished the Burghers of Bruges and of Gaunt, and so the King of the Romans peaceably enjoyed the government of the prouinces of the Low Countries : and of that which he held in Burgundy, and his father the Emperour being now old and tyred, returned into Germany, to mainraine peace and inflice therein, and to prouide for defence to be made against the Turks. For the preservation whereof, notwithstanding that MATTHIAS King of Hungary had taken Viena and other townes in Austrich, he permitted it, and attemped not by force of armes to recouer the same: but within short space after KingMatthias died, without any heires, when he had raigned 37 yeeres. His death being made known to MAXIMILIAN King of the Romans, he speedily departed from Flanders, and with his fathers aide, leuying an army, in short space reconered Viena and the rest which King MATTHIAS had vsurped. Whilest these matters were in handling, LADISLAVS fonne of CASIMIRE King of Poland wholy recoursed the kingdome of Bohemia, for which both he and his father Ca-SIMIRE had warred with King MATTHIAS, from the time that GEORGE Po-GIOBRACCIO died. After this, both he and MAXIMILIAN pretended to be king of Hungary, each of them fought to marry the Queene widow, the Lady B & A-TRIS of Arragon, daughter of FERDINAND King of Naples, who was of great authoritie in that kingdom. MAXIMILIAN being somewhat slow in the matter deferred the time; but LADISLAVS making more hafte, married her and was receiued for King of Hungary, and crowned in Alba regalis, and presently betweene him, the Emperour and MAXIMILIAN, a peace was concluded, wherein it was ordained by the consent of those of the kingdome, that if LADISLAV s died without any lawful iffue male, that then MAXIMILIAN and his heires should enherite the kingdome. But LADISLAVS raigned two and twentie yeeres after, and his sonne Leves succeeded him, who married MARY sister to the Emperour CHARLES the fifth : and FERDINAND brother to the Emperour CHARLES, married his fifter ANNE, by which marriage (King LE vy Es being in the yeere of our Lord 1526 ouerthrowne and flaine by Soliman the great Turke) this Fe R-DIN AND fucceeded in the kingdomes of Hungary and Bohemia: and fo the couenant by meanes neuer thought of, came to be accomplished betweene L AD I s- throwne and LAV sand MAXIMILIAN; which pailed in the yeere 1490.

Returning to our historie, I say, that after this agreement, MAXIMILIAN com- Dom, 1526,

tweene him and the Duchesse of Britaine, who after her fathers decease without

heires males, succeeded in that Dukedome: and CHARLES the French King in

like manner fought to have her, notwithstanding that he was alreadie betrothed

to Margaret of Burgundy, which was but a child, and whom he had in his power. as hath been declared. The French writers excuse him herein, and yeeld reasons for what he did; whereof those Kings are neuer to seeke which have not the feare of God before their eyes. They alleaged that the Kings contract with the young Lady MARGARET was of no force, for that the was vnder age; and also for that King CHARLES neuer consented thereto: and notwithstanding that he had consented yet he was likewise under age, and afterwards remoked the same. And that the contract of the Duchesse of Britaine with MAXIMILIAN Was of no effect: for the Duchesse gaue thereto no sufficient authoritie, for none of the Ambassadours being foure in number, had any authority in folidum to make any contract: neither had the Duchesse any meaning to doe it: and that which she did was but to temporize with the Britaines, to the end that they should not veeld themselves to King CHARLES of France. And admitting that the contract had been made by men having sufficient authoritie thereto, not being confirmed it was of no worth, for that the conditions and couenants were not afterwards perfourmed. Finally, by these and other reasons they excuse him, holding their arguments for true and sufficient in their opinion. And the French King going into Britaine, the. Princesse MARGARET (who was nothing forie for it) returned: for (they say) she neuer liked of the match, yet yeelded thereto by the perswasion of the Flemmings: and so a very furious and cruell warre began betweene the Emperour, his sonne MAXIMILIAN, and the French King. And forasmuch as his father was tweenethe Emperour and the now old, MAXIMILIAN had the fole gouernment, and had alreadie vndertaken the charge: but after some bickerings, a peace was made between them; where-French King. to MAXIMILIAN by reason of the great and excessive charges of the warre, and for some other respects, was constrained to condescend, but principally for that at the fame time, which was in the yeere 1492, the men of warre which had ferued the valiant MATTHIAS King of Hungary, which kept still together, for that they ware mourning colours for their King, were called the blacke Regiment; through want of pay, or some other insolence, making warre in Austrich, had the spoile of some townes: for the reliefe whereof, MAXIMILIAN lenying forces, went into those parts, and without any great trouble brake and scattered the mutiners, and for example to others feuerely punished them. This yeere was much noted aboue others for three speciall things: the first was, for that therein died Pope Innocent the 8, in the eighth yeere of his Papacie, whom Ro-DRIGO DE BORIA a Spaniard, borne in Valencia in Spaine succeeding, was called ALEXANDER the fixth: the second was, for that the great citie of Granada in Spaine, was in the beginning of that yeere, by FERDINAND and I SABEL King and Queene of Castile taken from the Moores: the third was, for that in the same yeere, by the commaundement of the same Princes, the West Indies were discourred in the Ocean fea. This being past, and the yeere 1493 being come; Germany and Italy being through the Emperors wisedom and good government in peace, and himselfe at peace with all Princes, in quiet possession of the Duchie of Aufirich, and his sonne MAXIMILIAN being King of the Romanes, and gouernour of the states and provinces of the Low Countries, and of part of Burgundy in the behalfe of his fonne Philip; when he had raigned 53 yeres and foure moneths

Emperour.

Emperour, wherein no Emperour but Av G v s T v s C E s AR, who raigned three veere longer, could be compared with him : but yet FREDERICK did farre exceede him in age: at this time it pleased God to take him out of the world. This The death of Prince is reported to haue had many vertues, for befides that he was curteous, de- Frederick the firous of peace, temperate in his diet, and very deuout: he was in all his life time third. neuer heard to sweare but twice, which he could not avoide: once was, when he was crowned in Aken; and the other time in Rome. He had great care for the conferuation of the lands of the Empire; and to the end not to aduenture the fame. or to put them in hazard, he fometimes made peace with losse of his owne estates neither would be ever invest FRANCIS SFORCE, nor his some GALBAS MA-RIA in the Duchie of Milan, notwithstanding that they were in quiet possession thereof. He had by his wife ELENOR (who died long before him) three formes and two daughters: his first sonnes name was CHRISTOPHER, who died a child: his fecond sonne was MAXIMILIAN, who was afterwards Emperour: the third Was IOHN, who also died a childe. Of his two daughters, the one called HELEN. died in her infancie; and the other called HVGRADA, was married to ALBERT Duke of Bauiere, and was afterward mother to the Dukes, WILLIAM, LEVVES, and ERNESTVS.

## THE LIFE OF MAXIMI-LIAN THE FIRST OF THAT

NAME, AND CXIIII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGVMENT.

Rederick being dead, his sonne Maximilian, who in his fathers life time had the conernment of the Empire, was without any contention made Emperour. In the beginning of bisraiene, he disposing himselse to goe to the wars against the Turke, which had kept a great store in Hungary, made him to flie. He tooke to wife Blanch daughter to the Duke of Milan, and made great warres against the Swiffers. In this Emperours time the Pisans in Germany made as insurrection, which was one of the greatest tumults that had bin scene, but they being some re-B b b b 3

proffed. He subdued many other rebels. Then began to grew the confes of the diffention betweene Spaine and France for the Duchie of Milan. This Emperour made warre against the Venecions. then followed the terrible batailes of Rauema and Marinian, with divers fortunes of marre, which ended in a fained (yet for a time durable peace. When the Emperous Maximilian departed out of this life, be had raigned 25 yeares.

Fter the peaceable FREDERICK, followed his fonne, the warlike and victorious Maximilian, who in his fathers life time was crowned King of the Romanes. The fame veere that his father the Emperour FREDERICE died the Turkes made a roade into the countrie of Cracia, 2 prouince of Hungary, which bordereth vpon Dalmatia and the new Emperour defiring to find a redreffe, speedely raifing his forces, went to fight with them, but they having

intelligence of his comming, retired: whereupon he diffolued his armie. The Emperour MAXIMILIAN having bin a good space widower; so soone as his father was dead, contracted himselfe to the Lady BLANCH, daughter of GALBAS. and Niece to Lavvas Sporca Duke of Milan; who being Vncle and gouernor to his nephew I OHN GALEAS (which in right was Duke) vsurped and held his estate. This BLANCH being the fairest woman of her time was wooed by many Princes, yet to her was the Emperour married. At the same time, which was in the veere of our Lord 1494. the French King CHARLES the eight (who was called great head) made preparation to come into Italy, who a little before had given out in speeches that he meant to make a conquest of the kingdom of Naples, which he alleaged to belong to him, by the last will and succession of Ra-M E Lord of Provence, and his auncesters Duke of Anion: whereto he was chiefly induced by L BVVB s Duke of Milan Vncleto the right Duke IOHN: for FBRD I-NAND King of Naples, and his sonne ALONS o, had required him to leaue the gouernment of Milan, to Duke I OHN GALEAS, who was married to King Fer-DINANDS Niece, and vpon this quarrell they determined to war vpon him: by reason whereof he by all meanes possible perswaded the French King to come against them into Italy, & to that effect furnished him with a great summe of money. And to the end that the Emperor MAXIMILIAN should not be his enemy in this case, LEVVES SFORCE procured this mariage of his Niece with the Emperor. In the time wherein his comming was most bruted, died FERDINAND King of Naples, when he had raigned 37. yeeres, and his sonne ALOSNO Duke of Calabria fucceeded him. At this time was the new Empresse BLANCH carried into Germany, and there was married to MAXIMILIAN: Germany being in peace and quiet, and the Emperour taking care for the warres, and relistance to be made against the Turkes. But the King of France neuertheleffe tooke his way towards Italy, and to the end to passe in more safety, he gaue to King FERDINAND the Earledome of Rossillion, and the Ile of Sardinia, which I o HN, father of FERD IN AND had morgaged to Levvesthe French King, father of this CHARLES. Of the comming of this King CHARLES, although it concerneth not this history, yet I will briefly write the summe; for it was a matter very famous, and much seared by the Pope, and by all the Princes and Potentates of Italy: and also for that it will serue for the better understanding of what wee shal speake of hereafter.

King CHARLES then with 50000, men of foote and horse, in the moneth of September in the same yeere came into Lombardy, where he was by Duke Lavvas received with great honor, and his armie was by him furnished with all things

necessarie. And being there he went to visit the right Duke, I O HN GALBAS, who lay ficke in Pania, and within few daies after died, leaving a young fonne called FRANCIS: and holding on his journey he came to Pifa, and was afterwards received into Florence, and from Florence he went to Rome, no man daring by the way to make head against him, and much lesse at his comming to that citie. And Pope ALEXANDER not daring stay his comming in his Palace, retired himselse into the Castell Saint Angelo, so greatly did they stand in feare of him. And afterwards they two came to a composition of peace, although they met not neither spake together, but afterwards vpon securitie they met and conferred, and within few daies after the King with the greatest part of the forces which he brought with him out of France, tooke his way towards the kingdome of Naples, in the moneth of Ianuary, in the yeere of our Lord 1495, wherein King A LONSO durst not stay vntill he came; aswell by reason of the great armic which he brought with him, as for that, by reason of his vicious and dissolute life, he was ill beloued of his owne subjects of that kingdome; whereupon, at what time as King CHARLES was in Rome: King ALONS o having raigned not fully one whole yeere, giving up that kingdome to his fonne FERDINAND, went into Sicilia, where he became a Monke, and in fhort space after died : by reason whereof, his sonne Ferdinand being King, raised the greatest power that he was able, so that it is affirmed that he had 5000, men at armes, 500, light horse, and a great number of foote. Neuertheleffe the French had fo good fucceffe, and King FERDINAND found so great feare, and so little constancie in his people, that af france his ter some accidents, he came to Naples, and thence fled by Sea to Ischaia, and after-conquest of the wards into Sicilia; and fo the French King in two moneths space, became Lord kingdome of of the whole kingdome, excepting some little townes upon the Seaside, which held for King FERDINAND. Pope ALEXANDER feeing the prosperitie and possession of King Charles in the kingdome of Naples, and knowing his ambition, and fearing to loofe his estate; whilest he was busied in the conquest of of Naples, procured a league to be made betweene him, the Venecians, and the Emperor MAXIMILIAN, whom he folicited to come into Italy to the reliefe and defence of his Church. Into this league also entred Levves Duke of Milan (notwithstanding that by his procurement King CHARLES tooke occasion to come into Italy) being grieued in minde for that King CHARLES had fo happie successe in Naples, which made him stand in feare of his owne estate; whereto the French King euer had an eye. As afterwards Levves Duke of Orleans and cofin germane to King CHARLES, who afterwards was King, made apparant; who challenged that Dukedome to appertaine vnto him, for that he was Nephew of the other LEVVES, Duke also of Orleance, brother to King CHARLES the fixth, and of his wife VALENTINA, fifter to Duke PHILIP of Milan, the last of the Viscounts; whose bastard, Francis Sforce Duke of Milantooke to wife, when he became Lord of that Duchie. Whereupon Levy Es for the better confirmation of his estate, obtained of MAXIMILIAN (as supreme Lord of all Lombardy) to be inuefted in the Duchie of Milan, which in my judgement, and of all those which write without passion, was his truest and best title; forafter the death of Duke PHILIP about named, neither the Emperor FRE-DERICK, neither MAXIMILIAN had given that title to the Duke, or to his Father, or to his Nephew; neither could it descend to them by line feminine; and much leffe to this L E vv Es Duke of Orleans, which then fought, and afterwards tookethe same, when he came to be King of France; and by so much the more, Bbbb 3

eighth King of Frauce, cameinto

Charles the

for that the descendents from this SFORCE, came from the woman being a

bastard.whereby he vniustly and without reason possessed so great estate : he be-

ing inuested by the Emperour with great ioy and solemnitie, tooke the Ducall

Ensignes. King CHARLES having intelligence of the League newly made by

these Princes, resolued to leave such number of men of warre in the kingdome of

Naples, as might fuffice for the defence thereof, and with the rest of his army to re-

A battaile betwoeenethe French and the Italians.

The Kingdome

King Ferdi-nand of Ar-

turned.

turne into France; and marching towards Rome, giuing the Pope to vnderstand that he came to doe his dutie to his Holines; Pope ALEXANDER after some Ambassades betweene them, not daring to abide his comming, departed from Rome, wherein, and in other townes belonging to that Church, the Kings fouldiers did much harme. And the Pope, not holding himselfe to be in safety in Civita Vecchia, went to Perugia, with intent, if he were oppressed, to goe to Ancena, and there to imbarke himselfe for Venice. The French King departing from Rome, continued his journey towards France, notwithstanding that he knew that in Lombardy, the Venecians and the Duke of Milan had an army in a readines to fight with him: and in Lombardy L E vv Es Duke of Orleans had already taken the citie of Nouarra, vnder pretext of the title aforesaid; whereupon the Duke of Milan made haste to besiege him. And King CHARLES comming neere to Parma, passing the river Tarro, found a great army of his enemies; whereof FRAN-CIS GONZAGA Marquis of Mantoa was Generall; with whom neere to the riuer he came to a battaile, wherein happened very notable accidents. But herein is great difference amongst the writers about this matter, for the French attribute the victorie to their King, and the Italians give it to the Venecians and to the Milanois. The truth is, that neither of the armies was wholy broken or ouerthrown, but the Italians that day seemed to be the chiefe Masters of the field, which appeareth in this, that they taking many French prisoners, none of them were taken by the French; and they moreouer compelled the French King to feeke another paffage, by reason whereof they were reputed to have the victorie. There dyed in this battaile, which was fought vpon the fixth day of Iuly, in the yeere of our Lord 1495, a thousand men of both fides; and after some treaties had betweene the faid two armies, the French in a night went towards Afte, where the King remained certaine daies, and a peace was concluded betweene him and the Duke of Milan: and Leves Duke of Orleans rendring Nouarra, King CHARLES returned into France, and shortly after, FERDINAND King of Naples wholy recouered that kingdome, but not without great difficulty, by reason of the French which remained in garrison therein, and of those which the King afterwards sent thither. In which warre, matters of greatest importance for the service of King of Reples to: Ferdin and, were guided and directed by the famous Captaine Gonsalo FERNANDES, who for his excellencie was called the great Captaine of Spaine; fent thither by King FERDINAND, called the Catholique, for the defence of that Kingdome, the first time that he went thither: and so of all this great enterprise, there remained nothing to the French King, but that he did much harme, and put all Italy in great feare (for the reputation and power wherewith he came

> Whilest these matters passed in Italy; the Emperour in thesame yeere 1495, assembled a Councell or Diet in the Citie of Wormes, wherein the matter was argued, whither the Emperour should goe to rescue the Pope, against the French King, or make warre against the Turkes: but the Princes were so contrary in their opinions,

> was very great:) and making a iourney, gaue a bolde attempt, and therewith re-

opinions, that nothing was concluded. The Emperour at this affembly, gaue to the Earles of VVittembergh, the title of Dukes, which they hold to this day: and from thence, he sent the Ensignes and inuestiture before named, to LEVVES Duke of Milan; and other matters were ordained concerning the government and peace of Germany. At that time was MAXIMILIAN daily folicited by the Duke of Milan to come into Italy, but it then tooke no effect. It happened after what I haue faid, that King FERDINAND having recoursed his kingdome, falling ficke, dyed; and for that he had no fonne, his vnkle FREDERICK, brother to his Father King ALONSO, had the kingdome, and many other matters befell in Italy, which I have no time to recount: and the Emperor was in peace with King C HARLES, who shortly after in the yeere 1497, dyed suddainly; which caused a great alteration : for by reason that he had no issue Male, the aforenamed  $L_{E-}$ vv Es Duke of Orleans being next of blood, succeeded him in the kingdome of France; who, so soone as he was King, made himselfe to be called Duke of Milan; whereby it might be easily perceived that he had a determination to doe that which he afterwards put in execution: and he presently dinorcing himselfe from his wife I o ANE, which was fifter to his predecessor CHARLES, alleaging for his reason that she was barren, and that he was forced to marry her; and also to the end to haue (as he had) with her the Duchie of Britaine, he married the widowe Queene Anne, late wife of the deceafed King Charles. The Emperour having intelligence of the death of the French King; defiring to get the Duchy of Burgundy for his sonne PHILIP, which afterwards was King of Spaine, entred it with armed hand, and tooke some townes: for the desence whereof, the new King Leves fent a very greatarmy; but within few daies following, a peace was concluded betweene them, greatly to the Emperours honour and aduantage: which was the more eafily effected by reason of the great desire the French King had to proceede in his enterprise against Milan, for the right which he alleaged to have to that Duchy; and for that the Emperour had determined to makewarre against the Duke of Gelders. The Duke of Milan having regarde, and standing in great feare of the French Kings proceedings, so much as was polfible for him, prouided for his defence, principally through the league and friendship with the Emperour, who being of sufficient power to protect him, was refolued to have done so: but other warres happening in the meane time with the Swiffers, which in the yeere of our Lord 1499, made warres in Auftrich (which warre, and the occasion thereof, is written at large by Henricus Mucius, and NAVCLERVS, to whom I referre the reader.) The Emperour leaving the enterprise of Gelders, went to this warre, for the Swiffers (called in auncient time Heluccians) as well by reason of the situation of their countrey, enuironed with most high hils and steepe mountaines, as also for their great strength and courage, were then (and at this day are) greatly esteemed, and reputed valiant in armes: MAXIMILIAN comming against them, notwithstanding that this warre began against his will, yet he followed the same in such fort, that in fundry conflicts and feates of armes atchieued betweene them, 30000. men were flaine of both parties, but the greatest number was of the Swiffers: fortune inclining sometime to the one fide, and sometime to the other: in which warre he did wonders in his own person, until that at last, through the intreatie of the Duke of Milan and other Princes (which interposed themselues) the Emperour concluded a peace with them. But before that this warre was ended, LEVVES the French King (who procured the same) to take benefit of the time, railed his whole power; and in Bbbb 4

The Swiffers

enemie the

French King.

the moneth of October, in the same yeere, entring Lombardy, befreged and tooke the Duke of Milans townes; who for that he was ill beloued of his subjects, and the Emperour failing him in his necessitie; and also for that the Venecians were in league with the King, resolued by abandoning the Citie, to give place to the French fury; and fending his brother ASCANIVS SFORCE before, with his fonnes MAXIMILIAN and FRANCIS into Germany, he with the best and greatest part of his treasure, within few daies after followed. The Duke being in this manner departed, the French King with very little refistance or noneatall, was received into Milan, and into the rest of the cities in that Duchy: and the Venecians (according to the composition made betweene them, tooke the Citic of Cremona and other places of that estate.

King Levves being in this manner become Lord of all Lombardy, leaving therein such governours and garrisons as he thought expedient, returned victorious and triumphant into his countrey. The Duke of Milan being come before the Emperour (who loued him very well) was by him very honorably and kindly intertained; and within few daies after, the Emperour affembling the greatest part of the Princes of the Empire, resolved to relieve and succour him, as a prince by him inuefted, and who had the best title to that estate; and so with the greatest expedition that could be made, a good army was leuied, the greatest part whereof were Swiffers; wherein the Cardinall Ascanivs the Dukes brother vsed great diligence. With these men and with such others as he levied in Italy, the Duke in the yeere 1500. returned into Lombardy, and his brother the Cardinall going before, was received into Milan and other cities; who speedely conducted hither his brother. The French King being certified hereof, in the greatest haste possibly fent into Lombardy the greatest number of choice men that he could get, the greatest part whereof likewise were Swiffers: and the Duke who wanted neither men nor courage to fight, attended in the field the comming of the French army: and the two armies being at the poynt to haue joyned, the Swiffers which were with the Duke, not only refused to fight, but (as some say) corof Milanimo rupted with money, deliuering up the poore Duke to the French, he was carried prisoner into France, and afterwards his brother the Cardinall was also taken. And so in few daies space, the French King recoursed the estate of Milan, and Duke Lavves afterwards, poore, afflicted, and deprined of his Duchy, dyed in prison, having been one of the most puissant, valorous and redoubted

Princes of the world. In this yeere 1500, vpon Saint Matthias day, being the fine and twentieth day of February, CHARLES who afterwards was King of Spaine and Emperour, and was called CHARLES the fifth, was borne in the citie of Gaunt in Flanders. Duke LEVVES having in this manner lost his estate, the Emperour received his sonnes which the Cardinall A se An IV s brought with him: what became of them, you shal heare hereafter. In the yeere 1501, prodigious sights, much to be admired, appeared in Germany; for certaine croffes of fundry colours, and some blacke, were feene vpon men & womens apparel, vpon their heads, and vpon the beds whereon they did lie, made so perfect & so lively for the time that they lasted, that it was wonderfull to behold; after which, enfued a most grieuous and cruell Pestilence. In those dayes also in Asia began the Empire and dominion of the great Prince, called the Sophiof Persia, who had his beginning from one called Schin, or SECHIN, who was said to be descended from the auncient Kings of the Persians: this Prince by force of armes made himselfe Lord of all Persia, and of great

part of Armenia, of Mesopotamia, and other Provinces: and afterwards the Kingdome of Persia was established in his successors; which since encreasing, is in some fort a bridle to the vnmeasurable rapine and power of the great Turke. At the same time, LEVVEs the French King standing in some doubt of the

Emperour, by reason of his late conquest of Milan, and the enterprise of Naples, which he purposed to vndertake, sought to enter into a league with him, and to giue his eldest daughter Claydia in marriage to the young Charles, which afterwards was Emperour and King of Spaine, being then but one yeere olde (she being also an infant) to whom appertained the succession and inheritance of the Duchy of Britaine: with this match, the Emperour and his sonne PHILIP Were well content: and Queene I OANE and the faid PHILIP being then to goe into Spaine, by the leave and consent of the said French King, went through France, and in the citie of Paris this marriage was folemnized; and so they passed into Spaine, where they making their abode not fully two yeeres, returned by the fame way they came through France, as through their friends countrey. Which marriage afterwards was not accomplished, for King LEVVES married his faid daughter CLAVDIA, to FRANCIS Duke of Angolesme, who was afterwards King: by reason whereof King Lavvas lost the title which he pretended to haue to the Duchy of Milan; for at the making of the peace, it was decreed, that if this marriage tooke not effect, that then the Emperour should give the Duchy of Milan to the faid young Prince CHARLES. The French King being in this manner in league with the Emperour, fought alfo to enter into the like with FER-DINAFD King of Castile, with these conditions; that they two making a conquest of the kingdome of Naples, and depoling King FREDERICK from it, should divide the same betweene them : which conditions were accepted by King Aleague be. FERDINAND (asfaith SABELLICVS a writer of that time) for that King FRE- incentite DERICK shewed himselfe ingratefull to his Nephew, who sent him ayde and and the King fuccours; and the fame went, that he fecretly practifing underhand with the of caffic. French King, offered to pay him tribute, to the end that he should not warre against him, but suffer him to live in peace, and that he promised to helpe him to take the Ile of Sicilia, which appertained to King FERDINAND, and to the house of Arragon. This being concluded, the two Kings sending thither their armies and Generals, the warre began; and after some matters which I have no time to relate, King FREDERICK abandoning the kingdome, yeelded himselfe into the French Kings hands, who vsed him very well, but his army neuerthelesse tooke all his countrey, Calabria and Pulia excepted, which the Spaniards tooke in the behalfe of King FERD INAND; and so for a while the peace continued betweene the French and the Spanish, vntill that the French seeking to intrude themselues into the Spanish limits, they warred one against the other, which warre was one of the most cruell and famous that euer was; and wherein the French employed the greatest force and power : and Gonsalo Fernandes of Cordona, being Generall for King FERDINAND, in the space of three yeeres that this warre lasted, obtained so many notable victories, and performed such exploites in armes, and vsed so many policies and stratagems, that he purchased the name of great Captaine: and wholy expelling the French out of that kingdome, made a conquest thereof for his King; and so it remaineth vntill this day, subject to the house of Castile. In the time of this warre, which was in the yeere 1503, dyed Pope ALEXANDER, when he had been Pope eleuen yeeres; he died (as it is written) of poylon, which was vnwittingly given him by his sonne

fanne, with the poyfon which he had prouided therewith to have poyfo. ned another.

The Pope poplo- Duke VALENTINE (who was one of the most ambicious men of the world:) this poyfon was prouided by the Pope to haue been giuen to a Cardinall. In his place was chosen Cardinall FRANCIS PICCOLHOMINI, Nephew to Pope Pivs, being his fifters fonne, and was therefore called Pivs Terrivs; but he being Pope but thirtie dayes, Cardinall IVLIAN was chosen, and called IVLIVS the fecond.

on of the Commons of Germany, in the Countrey of Spire.

The Emperour intermedled not in the affaires of Naples, as well for the prefernation of the league and friendship with France, as also the better to prouide for other matters in the Empire, wherein at the very same time, which was in the An infurretti veere 1502, befell a strange aduenture in the countrey of Spire, wherein an infinite number of people gathering themselves together under the name of liberty. addressed themselves against the temporall Lords and Princes, and also against the state of the Clergie: these men having made them two Captaines, began to warre, to robbe, and to commit all manner outrages and infolencies; having first determined to obserue certaine articles, which they meant to hold for a law and religion: the first was to purchase liberty, and to make themselves free, or to dye in the action : another was to fay every day a certaine number of Pater Nosters, and other prayers; vpon another day, to destroy all the Princes, and to kill all those which should resist them, and some others they purposed to robbe, and to make all the clergie goods common, with other strange and dangerous deuices. These men within few daies gathered themselues together in so great a number, that if the Emperour had not very speedely sent an armie against them, which brake and ouerthrew them; they had brought the estate of Germany in hazard, if they had continued as they began; but through the Emperours endeuour, the matter was redreffed, and the offenders were, for examples fake, justly punished. Neuerthelesse, at the same time the citie of Basil (which was an Imperiall citie, and tributary to the Empire) gat libertie, and making it selfe free, entred into a league and confederacie with the Swiffers, which was a matter of great importance and danger; as well for the charge to prouide for fuch a case, as for the warre against Philip, the Countie Palatine, and his sonne Robert, which fprang through this occasion.

GEORGE Duke of Bauiere, having no more but one daughter, whose name Was Is ABBL; and marrying her to ROBERT the eldeft fonne of the Countie Palatine of Rhine, who was also called Duke of Baniere, for in auncient time both had been but one house: gaue him with her for her dowrie, the inheritance and fuccession of his whole patrimonie, which was against reason, and a wrong done to his brother ALBERT, who was also Duke of Bauiere, and had married the Emperour MAXIMILIANS fifter. This marriage being made, Duke GBORGE, father in law to Albert, in the yeere 1503, dyed: and ROBERT having Isabel to wife (being by his father in lawes last Will made his heire generall) with the helpe of his father, the Countie Palatine of Rhine, began to take Townes and Castles in Bauiere, and to make himselse Lord of great part thereof; and so began the warre. And the Emperour secking meanes to bring them to an agreement, ROBERT would not accept the conditions: whereupon the Emperour proceeding against him, and against his father the Countie Palatine (who not with standing that he had bin often required and perswaded to the contrarie, counselling his sonne to proceed, assisted him with both men and money) confished his goods, and exposing the same to him that would take them, made presently cruell warre vpon him: and by his order, the like was

done by the Lantzgraue of Hessen, the Duke of Wittembergh, the Marquis of Brandenburgh, and the faid Albert and Alexander Dukes of Bauiere, and other Princes: against all which the father and the sonne armed themselves. with the helpe of the King of Hungary and Bohemia, from whence many men came to their aide; and so betweene them began a most cruell warre; wherein the Emperor warred in his owne person, particularly in the countrie of Bauiere (whereof Robert was in possession:) And WILLIAM Lantzgraue of Hessen, and the Duke of Wittembergh, either of them for their portion, together with their friends and parents, made warres in seuerall parts in the countries, subject to his father the Countie Palatine of Rhine. The Emperor warred with fuch force and courage, that obtaining certaine notable victories against ROBERT and the Bohemians, he recouered all the townes which he had taken, but ROBERT faued himselfe by flight; and the Emperour giuing those townes to his cosin ALBERT, went with his armie into the Countie Palatines countrie, wherein the Princes about named had taken some townes: and comming with the like force and furie as he had recouered the estate of Baniere, he tooke the greatest part of that dominion: and PHILIP being vnable to defend what he held, sending to the Emperor for pardon; promised from thenceforth to be his loyall servant. And CHRISTOPHER Marquis of Baden, together with certaine religious perfons being interceffors; the Emperor confidering that if he should throughly bring him to ruine, being a Prince Elector, there would be great controuerfie about the right of the election, thought it best to pardon him; and so ceased the warres on all parts, and the Countie Palatine returning to his obedience was pardoned: but his countrieand estate was much diminished. His sonne Ro-BERT after the warres were ended, being of the age of fine and twentie yeeres. feeing himselse ouercome and dispossessed, dyed of sorrow and his wife also, by whose right he challenged that which is about specified. Whilest the Emperour was buffed about these matters, the great Captaine of Spaine, Gonsalo Fer-The Spanish NAND E.S. Wholy conquered the kingdome of Naples, and (as writeth SABELLI- Kingdome of cws) a truce being taken betweene King Ferdinand of Castile, & Levres the Naples from French King for three yeeres; and fo Italy was in peace for a time. In this yeere, the French. 1504, dyed ISABEL Queene of Spaine, whom Queene IOANE succeeding in that kingdome, was with her husband PHILIP called to the gouernement: but their comming was deferred vntill the beginning of the yeere 1506. In which time the Emperour fummoned a Councell to be held in the citie of Colen; from whence he went with an armie against the Duke of Gelders; and taking some townes from him, brought him to fuch distresse, that he was constrained to sue for pardon; and he forgining him, returned to the Councell or Diet at Colen. The next yeere following, the Emperour being displeased with the King of Hungary and Bohemia, for the affiltance given to the Countie Palatine against him, and for his rebellion against the Empire, leuied an army and went against him; and entring Hungary, did fo great harme therein, and put the King thereof in fuch feare, that he (with great humilitie fued to him for peace, which was graunted vpon fuch conditions as pleased the Emperour; and so the warre ended. In the meane time, LEVVEs the French King, having no meaning to marry his daughter CLAYDIA to Prince CHARLES, who being afterwards Emperour, was called CHARLES the fifth, shortly after married her to Francis Duke of Angulesme and Dolphin of France, who afterwards was King: and searing warres with the Emperour about the Duchy of Milan, made a perpetual league

with FERDINAND King of Castile, who was vpon his departure from Arragon to returne to Naples; for he expected King PHILIP, who went thither in the beginning of the yeere 1506: this league being made betweene them, King FERDINAND married the Lady GERMANA, fifter to the Earle of Foix: and in Aprill, in the yeere 1506, leaving Spaine, he went to Naples: and vpon the fine and twentith of September in the fame yeere, King PHILIP being of the age of eyght and twentie yeeres, departed out of this world: his death was much deplored by all his fubicits, but more by the Emperour his Father, who was extreamely forrie for the fame. After his decease, for that the Queene was fickly. and the Prince CHARLES a child, King FERDINAND of Naples was called to the government of those Kingdomes; whereupon the veere next following he came into Spaine to that effect : and the Emperour, to the end that he should yndertake the government of the Low Countries, was by Ambassadours from the States thereof, folicited to come thither; who accepting the government, went presently into Flanders. After this he appointed a Councell or Diet to be holden in the Citic of Constance, which continued from Aprill, in the vecre 1507, vntill August: wherein he proponing the injuries done him by the Venecians, alleaged that they viurped some townes of the dominion of Austrich: and he also found himselfe grieued, for the ayde given by them to the French King, in taking the Citie of Milan; by which King, the Emperour held himselfemuch iniuried, as well for this occasion, as for that he had given his daughter in marriage to Francis Duke of Angulesme, she being first married to his Nephew CHARLES. About this matter he practifed with Pope Iver, who at that time by force of armes, had recovered the citie of Belegna and other townes: which he did to the end to put the French King into lealousie and suspition. These matters being argued and debated in this Councell, in the end it was concluded. that warres should be made against the Venecians, and all such as should take their partes. And leuying a mightic armie, the Emperour beginning the warre, tooke fuch townes as they held in Austrich. In the meane time, CHARLES Duke of Gelderland, through the ayde (as it was furmifed) of the French King. made warres in Brabant, whereupon the Emperour was constrained to give over the warre against the Venecians, and with his forces to goe to the relief, of that Countrey, wherein he making head again. If the Gelderois, put themselves to the worst. In the yeere 1508, Lavvas Duke of Milan, called the Moore, being depriued of his estate, dyed prisoner in France; his sonnes MAXIMILIAN and FRANCIS, living in the Emperours Court in Germany. After this, the Emperour being in Flanders; some say at the suite of Pope Iv L v, who for a good space had had a Legate in Germany, and as some others say, at the request of King LEVVES of France, there was a treatie of a League to be made betweene the Emperour, the Pope, King FERDINAND, and the French King, against the Venecians, for the recouery of such lands of the Duchie of Milan, and of the Empire, and of the Cleargie as they possessed: which league, as it was made by the Pope and the French King, but for their particular interest, so they obserued the same no longer, then they thought fit for their profit. The yeere 1509, being come, the first that began the warre was the Emperour: and some delaies and suspitions arising, in the end, the Emperour, the Pope, and the French King, each of them apart, warred with very great armies, and the Venecians mustring up their troupes which were lead by the Earle of Petilian, and the Lord BARTELME VV ALVIANO, most excellent men of warre. Many notable serui-

A league betweene the Emperour,the French King. the Pope, and the Duke of Milan, again the Penecians.

uices were performed, which to relate at large, would require long time, and much paper: the issue whereof was, that the Emperor after that he had recovered certaine townes which they held in the Duchie of Austrich, tooke from them Pados, Verona, Vicenza, La Chiusa, Goritia, and many other i the French King tooke Crema, Cremona, Bergamo, Brescia, Peschiera, and other townes of the Duchie of Milan: Pope Iviv had Rauenna, Faenza, Imola, and afterwards Modena, and other townes: King FERDINAND recouered Brandizzo, Tarento, and other townes of the kingdome of Naples, which the Venecians in former enterprize had taken: but notwithstanding that at one instant they were inuaded by so many great Princes together, yet in the end, through their vertue and diligence. they recourred much of what they then loft, but after that time they were neuer of so great power as they had been before. The first that gaue ouer this warre was Pope Iv LIVS, who being fued vnto by the Venecians for peace. graunted the same, and therewith with drew his forces. Pope Iv LY (as he was a subtill cunning prelate) having gotten what he desired, mistrusted that the Emperor and the French King having brought the Venecians to ruine, his owne state would be in daunger, for his meaning was that no manshould be of greater power in Italy then himselfe. But as the French Kings purposes were to the contrarie, so he tooke his agreement betweene the Venecians and the Pope in very ill part, and after many Ambassades past betweene them, in the end they two fell at variance. The Pope practifing under hand with the Genoaies, made them rebell against the French King; and the King (in requitall) made a schisme in the Papacie, and to that effect drew the Cardinall of S. Croffe (who had been Legate in Germany) together with some other Cardinals to his denotion; which calling a Councell against the Pope, appointed the citie of Pisa for the place of their meeting. The Emperor notwithstanding the League betweene the Pope and the Venecians, delifted not from warring against them: but he was advertised that the French King had induced the Duke of Ghelders to war against the Emperor, and to that effect had with money supplied his want: for the King although he would that all should aide him, yet he would not that any but himselfe should have the

Vpon this occasion, the Emperor leaving the friendship of the French, joyned with the Pope. And the French King perfifting in his determination, caused many Bishops and other Prelates to goe to Pisa, where he procured the Councel The French to be affembled, which the Cardinall of Saint Croffe had alreadie begun; but King canfed a holding themselves to be there in no safety, they went afterwards to Milan. And schifmein the the Pope in like manner fent to the King of Caffile, requiring his aide, which Popedome. presently was promised, and afterwards sent him: and then he began with his fulminations to persecute the French King. And to the end to deseate this Councell, he summoned a Councell generall to be held in Saint To HN DE LA-TERANE, in Rome, the yeere next following, which was in the yeere 1512. the warre betweene the King and the Pope being very cruell, the King mightely engroffing his armie, made Monsteva DE Foix Generall thereof, who going to Bologna tooke it, and taking Brescia sacked it. The Cardinall of Saint Crosse, and those which joyned with him, cited the Pope to appeare before them; and the Pope after many protestations proceeding against them, deprined them of all their Ecclesiasticall dignities and benefices. And King FERDINANDS forces comming to the Popesaide, after some bickerings, the two armies meeting neere to Rauenna, vpon Whitfonday, in the yeere 1512. came to a battaile; which was Cccc



victorie.

A battaile be-French and the Papes forces neere to the riner of Carroin

as cruell, and as bloodie, as ever was any in the world; and although the French obtained the victorie, yet twife fo many of them were therein flaine, as of those which were ouerthrowne, if they may be accounted for ouercome, whereof one foundron remained whole and was neuer broken, and so past through the middest of their enemies without that any durst to charge them. In this battaile was Monsieve DE Foix the French Generall flaine, together with many of the French Nobilitie. Finally, the French were reduced to fuch estate, that notwithstanding that they had the victorie, yet it fared with them, as though they had been ouercome: for they departing from Rauenna, and taking their way towards Milan (Monsievr De La Palissabeing their Generall) Pope Iviy recovered the citie of Rauenna, and in like manner Bologna: and vnderstanding the issue of the battaile (though at the first he stoode in great feare) yet being certified of the truth and how much the French armie was diffressed, he after his accustomed manner leuving new supplies, wrote to all the Kings and Princes of Christendome to stirre them up to warre; and to that effect sent a Cardinali to the Emperor: who being difcontent with the French King, within few daies after fent into Italy by the way of Verona, an armie of Swiffers, and of Germanes. with MAXIMILIAN SPORCE, sonne of Duke Levves, to recourt the state of Milan which was his fathers. MAXIMILIAN SFORCE entring Italy, and being come to Verona, and ioyning with the Spanish armie, and with those which were in league with the Pope; the French were striken with such seare, that the Cardinall of Saint Croffe, and the rest of the Councell of Pife (which had withdrawne themselues to Milan) with all speede possible departing thence, fled into France; and Monsieve DE LA Palissa, the French General Lleaning fuch garrifons as he thought good in the Castles of Milan and of Brescia, and other townes in Lombardy, abandoning the citie, retired to Paula; and the enemy comming thither, he departed thence, and went also into France. And so MAXI MILIAN SFORCE in short space recouring the Duchie of Milan, was with great ioy through the Emperors aide and fauour received into the citie; and then presently came to him Ambassadors from Genea, to doe him honor, and to congratulate his returne, for the Genoaies then rebelling against the French, and having chosen them a Duke besieged the Castle of the Lanterne, which was at the French denotion. In the processe of his warre, the King of Nanarre, for that he held with the French King against the Emperor, against the Pope, and the King of Caftile, and would not give paffage to the Spanish armies, was bereaved of his kingdome; and the Kings of Castile possesses the same vntill this day.

After these things, and other which succeeded, in the beginning of the yeere vpon the three and twentith day of Februarie in Rome died Pope Iv LY, in the tenth yeere of his Papacie, and in his place was chosen Iohn Cardinall DE MEDICIS, who being taken at the rout of Rauenna, and afterwards fet at libertie, was called La o the tenth; in the beginning of whole Papacie, the King of France, the Lord of Tremouille, and the Thike of Albania, with a great armie came into Lombardy against MAXIMILIAN 2 Went of Milan, who with the aide from the Emperor, and the Swiffers comming was a vattaile with them neere to Nonarra (where his father was taken prisoner) obtained the victorie, with the death, ouerthrow, and imprisonment of many of them: so as he driving the French out of that Duchie, remained Lord thereof in peace. Presently after this in the fame yeere, the Emperor resoluing to let the French King know that he had committed an error, in not conferuing the peace made and concluded with him,

came to a composition with HENRY the eight King of England (who was enemie to the French King) to enter France, and to make warre against him: for persourmaunce of which conditions, the King of England came to Calis, and entring France the Emperour with his armie came and joyned with him: and although the French King durst not fight in battaile, yet there passed many notable skirmithes betweene them: and not with standing that the King of England lay two moneths before Terrouenne, yet the French King in all that space not daring to come to onset it, the towne was constrained to yeelde: and so the King after the taking of some other places, went to Tournay, which he battered with such fury, that it yeelded, together with the Castles and other townes neere adjacent; whereof the King of England being Lord, made great spoyle in the countrey, without finding any armie in field to make head against him. The Emperour in like manner by another way, fent V DALRICK Duke of Wittembergh, with a great band of Swiffers into Burgundy; who befieging the citie of Digiton, and having brought it to the poynt, that it was hoped that that Prouince would have been recouered; the Swiffers (according to their accustomed manner) in consideration of one hundred thousand Ducats, sent them by the French King, and moued with the hope of a promifed greater fumme, raifing the fiege, returned home to their houses, maugre the Duke of Wittembergh their Generall: who with his people seeing himselfe abandoned, returned also into his countrey. It likewise happened that whilest the King of England warred in France, the King of Scots through the instigation of the French King, entred England; against whom in person came KATHERINE Queene of England, accompanied by some of the Nobilitie and Commons of that Realme, and fighting with the Scots (notwithstanding that the victorie was very doubtfull and ynequall, by reason of the great multitude of them) yet their King was flaine in the battaile, and the Scots not daring any longer to hold the field, returned home; & the English entring Scotland, tooke certaine places therein, in such fort, that the King of England through his wives meanes in England, and the Emperours ayde in France, returned victorious into his countrey. And the Emperour, for that his presence was very requisit in Germany did the like; for in Wormes, was much debate and contention betweene the state Ecclesiasticall and secular. There was also great controuersie betweene WILLIAM and LEVVES, Dukes of Bauiere, the Emperors Nephewes, sonnes of his brother in law A LBERT. Whereupon the Emperour went to them, and in some fort mittigating the contention, brought hem to be in peace. In the same yeere 1513, the Venecians made a league with the French King, which was effected by meanes of the Lord BARTELMEVY D'ALVIANO their Generall, who was taken prisoner by the King, and ANDREVV GRITTI a Venecian gentleman, who was afterwards one of the most excellent Dukes that have been in Venice, who likewise was prisoner. After this a peace being concluded betweene England & France, the French King tooke to wife MARY the King of Englands fifter, with whom he lived but a little while after his mariage; for the falling extremely fick, died vpon the first day of Ianuary, in the yeare our Little 14, and the 17, of his Raigne; whom succeeded the often named Francis Empty of Angulesine, who after his Coronatio, procured a league to be made with the Emperour: whereupon the Earle Naffar came to Paris, and so a new mariage was concluded betweene CHARLES which then was Prince of Spaine, and RENATA fifter to CLAVDIA the new Queene of France; which Marriage afterwards tooks no effect. The Emperour confented, and liked wel of the match, as wel by reason of such affaires as he had in Germany,

as for the peace & common good which was expected to enfue thereof. And for the better preservation of the particular peace made with LADISLAVS King of Hungary and Bohemia, he refolued to marry his niece Mary, to Levves, eldeft fonne of the faid King, notwithstanding that they both were very young: whereupon in Iuly in the yeare 1515. a meeting and Councell was appointed to be held in Viena in Austrich, whither came Sigismand King of Poland, Ladislavs King of Hungarie and Bohemia, with his sonne L E vv Es, the Emperour, the Dukes of Bauiere, and many other Princes of Germany, where the faid L E vv Es Prince of Hungarie was betrothed to marrie the Emperours niece: and it was also agreed, that the Lord Ferdinand of Castile, should marrie with his fifter Anne, which afterwards tooke effect; who raigned in those kingdomes after the decease of his brother in law L EVV Es; which mariages were accomplished after the Emperours decease. in the yeare 1521. The French King FRANCIS knowing the Emperor to be inclined in peace, to feafting and banketting; and having a little before confirmed a peace with England, and with the Venecians, as he had also done the like with the same Emperour; within short space after he leuied a very great armie of Germanes, and Lantzknechts, with a determination to inuade the Duchie of Milan. and being with his armie past the Alpes, neere to Turin, hee joyned with his Vncle CHARLES Duke of Sauoy; and then comming to Berfelli, thither came 2000. fouldiers fent him by the Genoaies, at the request of the Lord O CT AV I AN FREGOSO their Duke; from thence hee went to Nouarra, which yeelded without affault; and paffing forwards towards Milan, and knowing that the Duke had an armie of Swiffers fent him by the Emperour; and that hee intended to giue him battaile, he sought to haue corrupted the Swiffers with money, as King LEVVES did when he tooke the faid Dukes Father, but failing thereof (for it was reuealed to his enemies) hee fought with them betweene Milan and Marinian, necre to a village called Saint BRIGETS: the battaile was so fiercelie fought, that before any figne of victorie, they were fighting ouertaken by the night, which was so darke, the moone being downe, that when they left fighting, neither partie knew how to retire, and fo they stood all the night armed, expecting the day; which being come they againe renewed the battaile: at which time, a rumour The battaile of Was fored ouer the campe, that the Lord BARTHOLME VV D'ALVIANO Was at hand with the Venecian armie, and that he had marched all the night, to come to ioyne with the French King: whereupon the Swiffers fearing fo great fuccors, fled, and the victorie remaining to the French King: a most cruell slaughter was made of the poore Swiffers. The King having obtained fo notable a victorie; Duke MAXIMILIAN abandoning the citie of Omilan, withdrew himselfe into the castle; whereupon the citie yeelded to the King, and the other cities did the like. The Duke being befieged and affaulted in the castell, (notwithstanding that the Emperour certified him that he would speedily send him releefe) compounding with the French King for a certaine fomme of money, which the king promised to give him yearely, he refigned to him the title and state of Milan; and so putting himselfe into the Kings power, he went into France, where he afterwards dyed. The French king hereupon was received into Milan, and into all the other cities without resistance; wherewith the Emperour being much displeased, made preparation for his comming into Italy: whereof the King standing in some doubt, fought to enter into a league with Pope L E o; who feeing him victorious was glad of the match; and appointing to meete him in Bologna, the league was confirmed; which being ended, the King returning into France left the Duke

of Bourbon with his armie in the state of Milan. At this time vpon the fine and twentith day of Ianuary in the yeare 1516, dyed King FERDINAND in Madril neere to Guadalupe in Spaine; and to the gouernment of those kingdomes, was called CHARLES, (who was afterwards Emperour, being then but fixteene veeres old) who went thither the yeere following. The Duchy of Milan being conquered by the French King, in such manner as is aforesaid, within few dayes after the Emperour MAXIMILIAN by the way of Verona, came into Italy with fo flourishing an armie, that he would have bin glad to have met the French King: and the Duke of Bourbon in Lombardy not during to keepe the field against him, thut vp himselfe in Milan: and the Emperour finding no resistance, held on his way vntill he came before the citie, and befreged it: which together with all the rest had beene soone recouered, if he could have staied in the countrey; but the treasure and reuenues of this great Captaine, were not sufficient to maintaine the warres which he vndertooke, and to pay the ordinarie troupes which he should neede therein: which was the occasion that he oftentimes let passe great matters. Besides this, L ADIS L AVIS King of Hungarie falling sicke and dying, there arose after his decease, such discord, that to establish peace in that kingdome, and for the defence thereof against the Turks, the Emperor was sent for for L B VV BS. fonne of the deceased King, was but a child of little more then thirteen yeares old: wherefore he being conftrained to leave the warres of Milan, and to returne into Germany, the French King continued in possession of that Duchy: vntill that afterwards, all that happened which you shall heare.

The Emperour vpon so vrgent occasion being come into Germany, could hardlie keepe the peace in Hungarie: the occasion whereof was, for that King LADISLAV'S before his death nominated for tutors and gouernours for his fon, in the kingdoms of Hungarie, and Bohemia, the Emperour MAXIMILIAN, and his owne brother Sigismynd, King of Poland: wherewith the Hungars were verie much discontent, for they stood in scare that these two Princes would have attained to have had those kingdomes to themselves. But as the Emperours intent was but for the good of the countrie, so he tooke no so great care to have the gouernment, as he did that those Kingdomes should be gouerned with equitie, and for the defence of Hungarie against the Turke, which was put in effect fo long as he lived: for he gave the government to certaine great personages of those kingdomes: but not without great difficultie and trouble; which plainlie appeared, by the calamities which enfued in those kingdomes after his decease. At this time also it behoued the Emperour to take order for the going of his nephew CHARLES King of Spaine into his countrey; by reason whereof, he was constrained to give eare to a new peace motioned by the French King, which was concluded; and it was also decreed, that CHARLES should take to wifethe daughter of King L E vv Es. This friendship and alliance being made (although the mariage tooke no effect) King CHARLES taking shipping Tayled into Spaine, where he arrived the ninteenth of September, in the yeare 1517. And so peace being betweenethe Emperour and the French King; and generally through all Christendome, he spent the rest of his time in ministring instice, and reforming the lawes and customes of the Empire; and so living in peace and good estate, he was taken with a Dissenteria, which bereaued him of his life vpon the twelfth day of Ianuary, in the yeare of our Lord 1519, being of the age of nine The death of and fiftie yeares (as faith CVSPINIAN) and after others, threefcore and three, Maximilian, and in the fine and twentith yeare of his raigne.

The French King in posses-fion of the Duchy of Milan.

Thus have I briefly past over the great actes of this Emperour, (for as I faid in the beginning of his life) if I should at large have described his prowes and excellencie. I should have beene driven to have run a long race, and have needed an excellent wit and much eloquence, whereof I know my felfe as naked and deffinite as this Prince was abundant in all vertue : for he was fo bountifull, that if he had beene Lord of all the rents and reuenues of the world, hee would have needed them, confidering his gifts and expences, according to the greatnes of his minds and not with standing that what hee had was great, yet was it ever too little in regard of his liberalitie. He was endued with fuch magnanimitie, that he neuer was feene to be timorous, what daunger focuer he were in; and therewith was one of the most redoubted Princes in the world: he was very deuout, and as he lived so he dved, he was of a most singular wit, and sound judgment, as well in peace as in warre: and notwithstanding that he was well able to counsell others, yet he neuer disdained to aske and take counsell of such as he thought loued him, and were able to give him counfell. And as he loued learning, and learned men, so he gave great gifts and pensions to such as were well scene in the Liberall Sciences: and it grieued him much that he had not in his youth been instructed in good letters. and in the pure elegant Latine tongue; for as he had a barbarous schoolmaster. fo fuch was that which he learned of him; yet he afterwards, having many learned men in his court, came to the knowledge of many things. He was naturallie inclined to poefy, so as he compiled a notable peece of worke in his owne vulgar tongue, of the many dangers wherein he had been, and another booke called the price of honour. Besides his excellent wit, he was of a wounderfull memorie, for he which had once talked and conferred with him about any busines, although in long time after he came not into his presence, yet so soone as he should see him he would know him. He was so honest and so bathful as was strange, for he neuer consented that any should see him naked; neither did hee at any time take the vrinall to make water, in the presence of any his Chamberlaine or Page, or any fuch like thing meither would he permit that any should see his vrine, except fome few very excellent Phisitions. He was of an excellent and strong complexion, and was feldome ficke, and then but lightly; whereto this was a great help in that he was very temperate in his diet; yet he kept a very bountifuli table; and did take his meate so neat and comely that it was a pleasure to behold him. He could so well endure trauaile, that heate, cold, hungar, thirst, or any other want or discommoditie did little annoy him. He much exercised his person in bearing armes, especially at Tilt and Tourney, besides the warres and battailes wherein he fought in person; and aboue all he was exceeding gentle and courteous in his behauiour towards Princes, and towards all his feruants and familiars; and was fo friendly to those which had to deale with him, that with his lookes and countenance hee wonne their hearts, which put them out of the feare and bashfulnes wherein they were, by reason of his presence: for which excellencies and other which I leave to write, he attained to bee the most honoured Prince of his time, and was both obeyed and beloued through the whole Empire: and faw all his sonnes and nephewes Lords of the greatest part of Christendome. After his death CHARLES the fifth was chosen Emperour, whose great warres and acts require a more eloquent and perfect writer.



# THE LIFE OF CHARLES THE FIFTH OF THAT NAME.

AND CXV. ROMANE EMPEROVR.





Will not take very much paine in writing the life of CHARLES the fifth, for as much as his acts are fresh in memory; and also for that FRANCIS GVICCIARDIN, a graue writer, and PAVLVS I OVIVS, in their histories write of him at large; and in a manner all the writers of our time, treate of the actions of this Emperour, to which, I referre the reader, wherein he may fully vnderstand the particulars. The Emperour Chiarles The dissent of then was by his Fathers side, of the royall and Imperiall the Emperour

Cccc 4

then was by his Pathers held in the Toyan and Imperiant to Emperous, and his Grandmother by his father, was of the house of France, in this Spaine, and his Grandmother by his father, was of the house of France, in this manner. Charles the fifth King of France, surnamed the wise, gaue the countrey of Burgundy to his yonger brother Philipfrom Philip which had to wise the only daughter of Levyes Earle of Flanders, descended Iohn, who was father to Philip which gat Charles the hardy Duke of Burgundy, swhose warres with Levyes the eleventh, king of France are written by Philip De Comines Lord of Argenton. This Charles being slaine at the battaile of Nancy, left his onely daughter the Lady Mary heire to his whole estate; which Mary was married to Maximilian the Emperour, father to Philip; which Philip tooke to wife the Lady Ioane, daughter of the King of Cassile, and Arragon, and

The diffent of the Emperour Charles the fifth. The birth of the Emperor Charles. Anno dom. 1500. by her had the Emperour CHARLES the fifth. And forafmuch as FERDINAND King of Castile had neuer a sonne, he adopted his sonne in law PHILIP for his sonne, who after the decease of his father in law FERDINAND, became King of Spaine: and by these meanes, the house of Austrich obtained the dominions of Burgundie, Flanders, and Spaine. As for his mother; her Grandfather F. D. I. NAND King of Spaine, had to wife the Lady Isabe to the onely daughter of I OHN the second, King of Spaine, and after the conquest of Naples, he gat by her I OHN I SABEL, I OANE, MARY and KATHERINE; but I OHN and I SABEL dying without iffue, the fuccession of the kingdome, by the lawes of Spaine, came to I o ANE, as to the eldest of them; but Austrich by the division of the inheritance, came to FFRDINAND brother to CHARLES the fifth, which FERDINAND was afterwards Emperoralfo, and father of the Emperor Max-IMILIAN the second. CHARLES was borne in Gaunt, a citie in Flanders, vpon Saint MATTHIAS day, being the foureand twentith of Februarie in the yeere 1500. which day was noted to be cuervery fortunate vitto him confidering that vpon that day many accidents happened to him in fundrie parts of the world; and he obtained vpon that day honorable victories, as by his actions, written by GVICCIARDIN, and IOVIVs, plainely appeareth. Being come to yeeres of discretion, although but a youth (for his father dying left him but fixteene yeeres old) he was sent to Mecklin, a citic in Brabant, to schoole, his Maflers name was Adrian of Florence, then whom none in all that province was more famous, for many qualities, as the iffue of his life made manifest; for he became a Cardinall, and afterwards being made Pope, after the death of Lao the tenth, was called Adrian the fixth. But in his exercise of armes he was disciplined by CHARLES CEVRIO, a valiant man at armes in that age. It feemeth that he profited little in learning, yet he attained to the Spanish, Dutch, and French tongues, the Latin tongue he vnderstoode somewhat groffely. Three bookes onely he loued to reade, which he caused to be translated into his owne vulgar tongues of which, one was the inflicution of a ciuill life, which was the courtiour of the Earle BALTASAR DE CASTILIONE; the other was of matters of flate, which was the Prince, with the discourse of MACHIAVEL: the third was the order of Knighthood, which was the historic of Polisivs. But he most delighted in armes, which besides religion, are the foundation of kingdomes; and he more effected the warres then any man in the world. He was skilfull in the managing of Artillery, and very expert in the marshalling of an armie, and lodged the same very skilfully, and knew all the meanes and deuices how to batter and affault a citie: fo as all his attempts, or the greatest part which he vndertooke, might well have good fuccesse. The constitution of his body, was neither fat nor groffe, but of a gallant proportion and strongly sinued; his hands were great and strong, fit to weld weapones, and to manage armes, his legges were faire, straight, and of a due proportion, which chiefly appeared when he was on horsebacke; for he roade with such maiestie when he was armed, and managed his horse so gallantly, that it seemed that no gallanter Knight could be found or more fit to beare armes then himselfe. He was of a faire complexion, with cleere azure eies; which (although he were angrie) were not terrible, but accommodated with a noble bashfulnes, and manly modestie. He was somewhat hooke no sed, after the manner of the auncient Kings of Persia, which was a figne of the greatnes of his minde. He had a long chinne, and a yellow beard; his haire was yellow of the colour of gold, after the vie of the

auncient Emperors of Rome. It was thought by those which were wise, that nener man was of a better constitution, better aduised, or of riper judgement then he: for with a certaine motion which accompanied his speeches, he made men to wonder at his proceedings. He was very curteous in discourse, but double; so as his speeches might have divers constructions; and so he ever saved himselfe by the interpretation, fitting it to his purpose; alleaging that his meaning was to be vnderstoode, in this, and this manner. He was neuer throughly angrie but telling the truth, and grounding his speeches vpon reason, he satisfied the hearers. He was neuer ouer-hastie in his answeres, for he first consulted, and then concluded; but the conclusion must depend of him onely. He made great account of those which might either pleasure, or annoy him; but made no shew thereof in outward apparance, to the end to maintaine his reputation in greatnes. He was neither bloudie nor vindicatife vpon his enemies, but determined of them without destroying them. He seldome punished his servants and officers, but voheld them in their defects. And although that by his enemies he was noted of crueltie, in the matters of Rome, and in the death of the children of France, yet was he gentle and pitifull, and they of malice flaunder him wrongfully. As for his friends which were made great by him, hee constantly maintained them, and would not endure to heare them ill spoken of; giving more creditto his owne judgement then to other mens reports; reputing them to speake of enuie or malice. He was an earnest defender of his Ambassadours, notwithstanding that they did ought that were not tollerable; for he loued to have good intelligence, and knew all that paffed in all parts of the world. He vied to difcourse of his affaires the space of foure or fine houres together, and wrote downe the reasons pro & contra, the better to consider thereof; and his arguments were fo well compounded, and all of one poize, that who fo vnderstood the beginning of the matter, might presently comprehend the end thereof. He well knew the naturall inclination of those Princes with whom he had to deale, and spent much money to haue full notice of them, by reason whereof, hee negociated with them, with lively reasons and sound arguments, and not with generalities; and had his busines, in all parts in a readines, attending opportunitie and fit occafion to put them in execution: hence it grew, that in regard of his affaires, he was mortified in all his pleasures: concerning the lawes, he was iust, and made profession to maintaine and hold his word, and to preferre his honour before all things in the world; wherefore who focuer defired to get his fauour, was to vse the meanes of honour, and of modestie, with shew of religion: whereto he was fornuch addicted, that hee communicated foure times in the yeere. He was very pacient in hearing causes, and gaue audience aswell to the little as the great, with much attention: and notwithstanding that he was slow to resolut of his owne affaires, as well as of other mens; yet he concluded very prudently. But he that will blame him may fay, that he was remisse and erresolute; and he that will commend him may affirme, that hee was well aduised, and politike. Touching his liberalitie, he was held rather for niggardly & sparing, then bountifull; especially towards his servants, which he entertained with hope many yeeres; but when he did rewarde, if enough were enough, he gaue enough; for he had great meanes to give, of the three orders of Knighthoode which are in Spaine, besides Bishoprickes, Abbeyes, titles, offices, and other reuenues; neuerthelesse, it seemed that in giving he much more favored the Flemmings then the Spaniards, or Italians. He was bountifull to fuch Captaines as serued him in

851

the warres, and to fuch as he loued; but it came but flowly. He made fhew to love peace, and not to desire warres; but when he was prouoked thereto. Briefly, he gaue example for all to follow, and abstained from all such vices as might staine his conscience, or good name. He effected great matters by negociation, wherein he was more then in armes; notwithflanding that in armes he was inuincible and peereleffe. He role late in the morning, and after that he was readie (clad in no better then in filke, or cloath, close made, more like a private gentleman then a great Lord, but yet very neatly) he heard'a private Maffe for the foule of the Empereffe; and then gaue audience and dispatched much busines; then going out of his chamber, he heard another Maffe openly in a Chappell, which being ended, he went to dinner: whereupon they yied this prouer be in his court, from Masse to messe. He was a great feeder, and did eate such things as did breede groffe and viscous humours, whereof proceeded the Gowte, and the Ptificke. which infirmities in his later daics greatly tormented him especially the Gowte: which was of so maligne condition, that it fent the vapour thereof from the stomacke into the head, which put him often in daunger of his life, which he affured himselfe could not be long: but yet when he was well, he made so small reckoning of the Philitions as though he should never be sicke againe. He did eate little at night, thinking to make amends for disordring himselfe at noone. After dinner he gaue audience, and sometime retiring himselse into some secret place, he passed the time in drawing the plot of some fortresse, or other edifice; but most commonly he yied to lest with a Polonian dwarfe which he had, or with one Adriana groome of his chamber; and often with the Baron of Monfalcon Steward of his house, in whose companie he tooke especiall delight, for his readie and quicke wit. He sometimes rode on hunting, but not with aboue eight or tenne horse at the most, and returned oftentimes with a brace of stagges, or wilde boares. And sometimes he vsed to shoote at Pigions, at Choughs, and such like birds; and in all these his disports he spent not an hundred crownes in the yeere; so much did he applie himselse to matters of importance. He vsed the like fparing in cladding his court, in his stable, in the furniture of his house, and such other ornaments; infomuch that if in truffing himfelfe a poynt brake, he would tie it together, & keepe it, for not to lose so much time as till another were fetcht. His sparing was such, that there was no man that spent tenne crownes by the yeere, but spent more then he : but for other expences, passing thorough other mens hands, he did as other Princes doe, which referre the same to other mens trust; yet he ysed at possible diligence to vnderstand every particular, and would know how his money was iffued, euen to a crowne; so carefull was he for what was his. The vertues and faire conditions of this Prince, together with his power, excelling al the Princes of his time, moued the Electors in Germany to create him Emperour. In the yeere 1530, being of the age of thirtie yeeres, he was crowned in Bologna by Pope CLAMENT the feuenth; his coronation was most stately, as eronned in Bo. Well for the prouision of most rich pompe, as for the great concourse of people and great Lords which came to fee fo folemne ceremonies. And this was the more to be noted, in that the Emperour (moued by his naturall elemencie) pardoning the Duke of Milan all fuch offences as were laid to his charge, by ANTHONY DE LEVA, and the Emperours other officers, he restored him to his Dukedome, to the great contentment of all the Princes of Italy, which greatly doubted that he would have made himselse Monarch thereof. The ceremonies at his coronation were very long, but by so much the more excellent in this Em-

Charles the fifth chofen Emperour, and Clement the scuenth.

perour, informuch as hee before this, had abated the haughtie pride of the Pope, and taken the French King prisoner before Pania; by reason whereof, he became feared of all the world, through the felicitie of his high fortune. He was also the more honorable, for that vnder his great name new Spaine was found; whereby it seemed that God fauouring him in all parts, his glorie could not be contained in this old world, but must have an exhalation, and open another new world; not without the wonder of these our times, seeing that therein are found so many countries, nations and cities, which to the glory of Iesus Christ are sealed with the characters of his holy baptisme. After the Emperour had intelligence of his election, comming into Germany and being crowned in Aken, he held a Diet or Councell in Wormers whither was fummoned to appeare by the Emple MARTIN LVTHER; who three yeeres before had preached and written. In this your regint Councell the Emperour ordained that all L v T H ERS bookes should be burnt; Martin Luther and with his owne hand he wrote a decree against him, thereby inhibiting all at Wormer, the Princes of Germany, neither to relieue him, neither to give eare to him; and whereby tu. therewithall he banished him from his court, and from all the cities of the Em-ther was bature. And whilest he was busied hereabouts, he was aduertised, that in Spaine vire. was made a great infurrection by reason of his absence; but he writing to the Cardinall ADRIAN, who had bin his schoolmaster, and to the Admirall of Caflile, those tumults were pacified: then he resolved to take armes against the King of France, who was his greatest competitor in his election to the Empire; and making a league against him with Pope L no the tenth, (vnder pretext of restoring FRANCIS SPORCE to the Duchy of Milan) hee recoursed the citie of Turnay in Flaunders, which the French had possessed many yeares before. But Pope L B o dving he made a confederacie with Pope ADRIAN who had bin his schoolmaster, and making wars against the French in Lombardy, and entring into a league with the King of England, he returning to visit Spaine, pardoned the fedicious of that province, where he with great curtefie entertained FRANCIS CORTES, Who for him had discouered the West Indies: and then gaue order that the Iles of Moloccas should beefought out, and to that effect came to an agreement with the King of Portugall, concerning the same discouery. Then returning to the affaires of Italy, he made a league with those potentates, in regard of restoring the Duke of Milan, (as it was faid) but being abandoned hy his confederates, he fent the Duke of Burbon into Italy, to the reliefe of ANTHONY DE LEVA, who was befreged in Pama; who comming to blowes with the French. •FRANCIS the French King was there taken prisoner, together with al the principall Noblemen of his court. The Emperor being very joyfull thereof, made the King to be brought to Madrili, who being there fore ficke, the Emperour going to visit him perswaded him to take it in good part: for he vnderstood by letters from the Marquis of Piscara, that all Christendome were joyned in league against him for detaining the French King. After a new composition made, giuing his fifter ELENOR to wife to the French King, he in confideration of two millions of gold, fet him at libertie: and then hee himselfe taking to wife the daughter of the King of Portugall, with whom he was at variance for the Iles of Moloccas, to whom he afterwards morgaged the fame Ilands for a certaine fumme of money celebrated his nuptials in Seul, and going with his wife to Granada, he had intelligence of a league made against him, by the Princes of Italy, and the French King after his deliuerie out of prison: wherewith being highly offended, and having made his complaint to fundrie Ambaffadours, he prouided for the

warres; and of his armie in Italy, made the Duke of Bourbon Generall, who perceiuing how much Pope CLEMENT did croffe the Emperour, hauing led his armie to Rome, and being there flaine, his armie fackt the citie. But after that the Pope(who had retired himselfe to a strong castle) was at libertie, and that the Emperour had accepted the challenge to fight in fingle combat with the French King, and had established the Prince of Orange for his Viceroy in Naples, he made peace with all Christian Princes. And thence being come into Italy, he was folemnely crowned in Bologna, by the hands of Pope CLEMENT the feuenth; and the Duchie of Milan being restored to FRANCIS SFORCE, Who through suspition of rebellion had been in difference with him, he at the Popes entreatie ient the Prince of Orange to the enterprise of Florence, which being taken, he frankly beflowed the same upon the house of M EDICI s. And being returned into Germanie, he in Augsbourgh made his brother FERDINAND to be crowned King of the Romanes: and there in the Diet discouering to the Princes the comming of the Turke into Hungary, he resolued to goe against the Turke to Viena, where hauing offred to giue him battaile, the Turke basely, to the Emperours great honour, fled out of the countrie. Shortly after he fent his fleete vinder the conduct of ANDREW DORIA, to the reliefe of Corone, in the behalfe of the Greekes against the Turkes. And after that he had tamed the Lantzgraue, and punished the Anabaptists, he went to the enterprise of Tunis, to the end to restore the expulsed King thereof. And Goletta being taken, he ouerthrew BARBAROSSA, and fet two and twentie thousand captines at libertie. The King of Tunis being restored, he returned into Italy, and having visited Naples and Rome, he, contrarie to the opinion of his Captaines, inuaded the French King in Prevence: but being able to performe nought there, he tooke a truce with the King; and speaking with him and with the Pope together at Nizza, he returned into Spaine. And a league being made with the Pope and the Venecians against the Turke, they came to Prewela, where the fleete (hauing done nothing) was discharged. Departing from Spaine, and being come to Paris, he being there highly feafted by the King, went thence into Flanders to punish the Gantois. But for as much as he according to his promise would not inuest the Duke of Orleance in the Duchie of Milan, they two agains fell out : but the matter being pacified, he attempted Algier, where having infortunate successe, he againe returned into Spaine, where he proclaimed the Duke of Cleue rebell. And then making a confederacie with the King, of Eggland, and having made the Spaniards sweare allegeance to his sonne P HI LA P, he went against the said Duke. After which enterprise being returned into staly. where he spake with the Pope at Buffetto; and afterwards in Germany having taken Dura, appertaining to the Duke of Cleue, from whom he had bereaued and againe restored to him his estate, giuing him a generall pardon, and bending his forces against France, he besieged Landresi. But being retired to Cambray, and hauing married his sonne PHILIP to MARY daughter of the King of Portugall, and againe inuaded France, taken Landress, and put the Parisiens in extreme seare, hee made peace with King FRANCIS. In the meane time, warre was made against him by those Germane Princes which favoured LVTHERS opinion, against which having leuied a mightie armie, and fet vpon his enemies, he overthrew them: and having tamed many Princes and cities, he converted his armes against Duke IOHN FREDERICK, whom (having past the river calbis) he encountred in a wood, wherein he miraculoufly ouerthrew him. And befieging Wittembergh, he condemned the Duke to die, whom he for his wines fake having pardoned,

and pacified matters in Germany, he vindertooke the enterprise of Africa. Then making a league with Pope Iv LIV's the third to the end to expell the French out of Italy, warres arose betweene him and Markice Duke of Saxony, for the which, withdrawing himselfe to Villaco, and having made all sure that the Venecians should not molest him, he levied a mightie armie: and being returned into Germany, and having daunted the Princes thereof, he belieged Metz. But finding that fortune began to leave him after that he had married his sonne PHILIP to MA-RY Queene of England, he renounced to him the kingdome of Naples. And finding himselfe tormented with the Gowt, he renounced to him all his kingdomes, and to his brother BERDINAND the Empire. And having refolued to gue over the cares of this world, he returned into Spaine, where (his chiefest care being for his foule)he liued accompanied by certaine Friers two yeeres after, and died with all the orders of their Church. But for a finuch as the renunciation which he made was one of the most notable matters that have happened in the world, I will relate the same somewhat the more at large. I say then that it game the world great occasion to discourse of the reasons that might move him to deprive himselfe of fo high estate. Some say that his infirmitie being very grieuous, and he foreseeing that it would make an end of him, was the cause moving him to that resolutions Others fav: that he did it for anger to fee himfelfe bearded and ouer marcht by HERRy the French King. And others fay, that he to avoide the crosse fortune which (by the relation of certaine Aftrologians) he knew would befall him, he (with great judgement) resolved to retire himselfe, before it should be of power by any meanes to obscure the brightnes of that glorie, which he with so much the waile had obtained. There were some also which said, that fortune began to thew him an angrie countenance when he made his retreit to Villaco, or when he fet him downe before Metz. In fuch fort that some commending, and others reproving this his resolution, all sudge diversly of him. But how somer it was his fonne Putilip departing out of England went into Flanders to fee his father, who being resoluted to put in execution what he before had protected, first made life fonne chiefe of the Order of the golden Fleez. And having done this in the morning in the afternoone he folemaely renounced & gane vato him Flinders, With all the state, right and title to the Duchie of Burgundie, which he did in the prefence of the faid King, of the Queenc Regent of the Knights of his Order, and of all the states of the countrie, which were called and assembled together in Briffels expressely to that effect. But for asmuch as this was a ceremonie feldom feene and therefore very notable. I will at large relate the fame.

Isay then that the greatest part of this companie being affembled in the Hall The renuncia of the Imperial palace, thither came CHARLES the Emperour, accompanied tion made by by his some the King, the Regent Queene Man, the Duke of Sauoy, and many Charles of all other great Lords; and being fet, he commanded the King, the Qieene, and forme his effaces. other the most principall to sit also. Which being done, a Counsellor of estate. whole name was Bays see , in the behalfe of the Emperor, making an Oration, in fumme the wed that the Emperour being fickly, and therefore vnable in person to endure transile as in time past he had done; and being now desirous to returne to fee his kingdomes of Spaine, where the aire was more agreeable with his health, he had determined to transpose and renounce the countries of Flanders to his fonne the King of England, who was able to fultaine the charge, and was fit with loue and equitie to gouerne the fame. The Counfellor having ended his speech, the Emperour taking the word, continued the discourse, with the helpe

of a little memoriall which he had in his hand, containing the principall points of what he had to fay. He summarily recited the voyages, and all the enterprises of greatest importance, which he after the yeere 1517 that he departing Flanders went for Spaine, for the benefit of the common-wealth(as he faid)he had vnderra. ken : repeating part of what the Counfellor had before declared; and concluding that he of force was constrained to renounce Flanders to his some, for that he was not able to gouerne the fame as in former time vitill then he had done wherein he faid, that (as he thought) he had discharged his conscience: but if in ought he had swarued, he sware by his faith it proceeded not of will, but vnwittingly for which he defired to be held excused; praying first to God, and then requesting his sonne to recompence the same. These speeches ended he beginning to weepe made the greatest part of the affishance to weepe for companie. In the meane time, the King kneeling downe before his father humblie faid to him, that he was vnworthie such fauour, neuerthelesse sith it was his Maiesties pleasure, he in the highest degree thanking him, accepted the charge, protesting to take care in such manner to gouerne the people with instice, that he hoped they should be contented with him, referuing to thew(by his deedes) the love which he bare them; and turning to the Conciltorie he faid in French: I would my Lords that my skill in this language were more then it is, to the end that I might the better make you vinderstand what affection I beare you : but forasmuch as I cannot doe it fo well as is requisite, the Bishop of Arras shall speake for me. The which Bishop taking the word openly delinered his minde. After him Doctor IACOB MAsivs a very eloquent man and of the Kings Conneell, who had the generall charge of the States of the Netherlands prouinces, fpeaking for them laid inch fect in this manner. These Lords, gracious Soucraigne, for the great affection and fidelitie which they beare your facred Maiestie, doe not onely marueile, but are much grieued, fith they have ferued the fame with fuch love and faith as is not vaknowne, that it should now in so turbulent times in such manner thus abandon them. Neuerthelesse, sith it is your Maiesties pleasure, and that the same holdeth it expedient they are herein recomforced in that your Maiestie hath put them into the hands of the most sourraigne King your sounte, to whom, not withstanding that they are oppressed with warres, they will at all times, and in all occasions thew themselves most devout and affectionate valials, prest with bodie and goods to doe him feruice. Then the Queene standing vp reverently faid to the Emperoz, that the had ever endevioured to governe those countries in such manner, as the thought most expecient for his Maiesties benefit and the publike good but if that peraduentire according to his defire; and her good meaning, the had not attained thereto, the humblie belought his Maiestie to pardon her. To whom the Emperour, with both his hand and his countenance, graciouffic made signe to be well pleased. And then she turning her selfe towards the States; yfed(in a manner)the fame words, and the fame ceremonies which she had yfed to the Emperour. Then Doctor Mass vs humbling answering her, commended her gouernment, and in the name of them all game her great thankes. Not long after continuing in his determination, he gaue and refigned in Braffels, in the presence of the Regents, Secretaries, and his others officers of those prouinces, vinto the aforesaid King PHILIP, the kingdomes of Spaine, of Sicilia, Sardinia, Maiorica, Minorica, together with the new countries of the Indies, and new world and all other parts apperraining to, or depending of the Crowne of Spaine; referring only fome reuenues, for the maintaining of himselfe and his familie reduced to a

finall number of servants. Besides this, before his departure from Flanders for Spaine, he not onely gaue to his brother Ferdinand King of the Romanes still, and absolute power and authoritie to gouerne the Empire for him as his Lieutenant, but he also freely renounced to him the title, scepter, and dignitie of Emperour, giving him place (vssing his owne words) as if his person had been dead and deceased; to as he voluntarily deprived himselse of his Monarchie. A thing (truly) worthie consideration, and from the time of the Emperour Lothart in some many ages vntill this time never happened in any so great and so mightie a Christian Prince. As well saith Levyes Systeciard in his Commentaries, out of which we have drawne this discourse, as from a man who living in Aniverpe, and being desirous of the truth, hath recounted what he did vnderstand, and (as a man may say) did see.

## THE LIFE OF FERDINAND, ONELY OF THAT

NAME, AND CXVI. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

His present life of the Emperour Ferdinand, containeth his countrer, his parentage, his education, and where he was brought up; how he became Lord of e Antirich. Bohen m: Hungair, and Transsiluania; his warres with lown Sepusius, the taking of Buda, with the siege of Viena; when he was created King of the Romanes, his agreement made with the field lohn, the difference betweene Frier George and him; the often comming of Soliman into Hungary; the Inspired with the Germany against the Emperour Charles the fifth, the difference paul the fourth, the creating of Maximilian for King of the Romanes, his conversation and behaviour, and the children which he had by his wife Anne, sister to Lewes King of Hungarie.

Mong the many townes worthie respect, in the kingdome of Toledo in Spaine, it is certaine (as it appeareth by the Chronicles thereof) that Alcala Denara in ancient time, eyer hath been, and full is, one of the Dddd 2 chiefe

gether with her busband Ferdinand draue the Moores out Bo dom. 1487.

chiefe; wherein besides the men of singular valour which in time past baue liued therein, in the yeere of the incarnation of the sonne of God 1503, vpon the was his father, tenth day of May, in the same yeere; FERDINAND of Austrich of that name the first Emperour of the West, was borne; whose father was PHILIP the first of that name King of Castile, and sonne of the Emperour MAXIMILIAN; his This tibbell to- mother was IOANE, daughter of FERDINAND and ISABEL King and Queene of Spaine, who by reason of the vnexpected suddaine death of his father (which happened in the yeere 1506) remaining vnder the tutele of his Grandfather FERDINAND (commonly called the Catholike) was by him (by meanes of the excellencie of his wit, befides the exercise of armes) carefully instructed in divers languages; principally in the puritie of the Latin tongue. wherein, in short space he profited so much, that to the great admiration of all men, he prooued no lesse a most active Knight in armes, then a perfect Orator in the Latin, Dutch, Spanish, Italian, Hungarish and Bohemian tongues; so as all men did prognosticate him to proue a Prince of fingular valour: and this made him the more accounted of, for that by all men generally which knew them, he was likened to FERDINAND the third, who by force of armes tooke Seuil from the Moores, from whom by his mother, he descended. That FERDINAND for his many vertues, was no leffe numbred amongst the bleffed, then reputed happie amongstall the Kings of Spaine, for being father of King Aronso, which for his rare knowledge in Sciences, was furnamed the Sage : who in the long Schisme of the Empire, in the yeere 1258, being by the greatest part of the Princes Electors of the Empire chosen Emperor; by the perswasion of Pope GRE GORY the tenth, for the common quietnes of Christendome, voluntarily refigned, and gaue vp his right thereto, after that he had enjoyed the name of Emperor the space of sixteeneyeeres, approouing and ratifying the successive election of R odvipu the first of that name, from whom from father to sonne this FERDINAND lineally descended.

This FERDINAND being brought up in Spaine, under the Catholike King, was for his rare qualities fo much beloued by the Spaniards, that his brother CHARLES in the yeere 1520. remaining (through the death of his Grandfather FERDINAND, which happened in the yeere 1516.) heire generallof the kingdomes of Spaine, of both the Secilies, of the West Indies, of Burgundie, and Austrich: and in the yeare 1519, through the death of his Grand-father MAXIMILIAN, chosen to weare the Imperial Diadem, was by those which (tumultuously mutinying vnder the name of the holy affembly) rebelled against his brother CHARLES, by reason of the vnmeasurable oppressions laid vpon them by his polling officers, instantly requested and entreated to make himselse King of Spaine: whereto not consenting, (much more esteeming the preservation of his faith, by refusing those cstates, then the greatnes of them, by violating the same to his eternall infamie) with fingular integritie of minde, he not onely refuled their offer, but yied all meanes possible to retaine those kingdomes in his brothers subjection: for which, he was ever after entirely beloved by him. Who returning into Spaine in the yeere 1529, not onely reconfirmed vnto him, the donation of the Archduchy of Austrich (the ancient patrimonie of their family) made ouer to him by testament, by their Grandfather MAXIMILIAN, by his brother CHARLES his confent, to whom as to the eldeft fonne it did appertaine; but he also freely gaue him the dominion of Stiria, and Carinthia, with the Counties of Tirol, Habspurge, and Hassia: having first in the Diet or Councell

at Wormes, declared him (to the good liking of the Princes Electors) his Lieutenant, and Imperiall Vicar in Germany; whither within a while after this graunt going in the yeere 1521. he was honorably received by the Germanes: as Vicar of the Empire, was with great magnificence, met by all the Potentates: wherein making no long abode, he went to take possession of his dominions, to the great good liking of that people. In the same yeere he celebrated his contracted nuptials, with ANNE fifter of LEVVES King of Hungary and Bohemia; renewing the oathes sworne in the yeere 1515. betweene his Grandfather NAXIMILIAN. and LADISLAVS father of King LEVVES; which were, that LEVVES dying without issue, FERDINAND, or any other begotten by him, and his faid sifter ANNE, should succeed in his kingdomes. But either through the just wrath of God kindled against the manifold iniquities of the Hungars, or what other occasion I know not, the two brothers in law had scarcely enjoyed the beloued fruite of the established succession two moneths; but FERDINAND being molested by the instabilitie of fortune (seldome constant in prosperitie) was aduertifed that SOLIMAN Emperor of the Turkes, being victorious for having fubdued GAZELLES in Soria in the yeere 1516. And also for that his father SELIM, had in three feuerall battailes in the field, with incredible fortune, first ouerthrowne CAMPSON, and a little while after TOMOMBEY, Souldanes of Egypt taken by Egypt. GAZELLES giving place to fortune, and voluntarily yeelding himfelfe in- the Turker. to the power of his victorious enemy, was with great fauour received into grace: fo that notwithstanding that the Empire of the Souldanes was extinguished in Egypt, yet he having libertie was made Gouernor of Soria (not without much murmuring of the Turkish Captaines, his Lieutenants in that countrey.) Neuerthelesse GAZELLES in the yeere 1519. being certified of the death of SELIM. thinking himselfe now discharged of the oath of fealtie which he had sworne vnto him onely (without any mention made of his fucceffors) and therewith earnestly desiring to reviue the ancient dominion of the Souldanes, levied the greatest forces of Mamalukes, Arabians, and Syrians that he possibly could; with which rebelling, he made himselse Lord of sundrie cities in Soria: against whom in the yeere 1520, SOLYMAN fending I ARAA & Basha with a great armie; who fighting with him neere to the citie of Damafeo, GAZELLES being flaine in Gazelles onerthe battaile, obtained a notable victorie, which happened in the end of the throwne and yeere 1520. FERDINAND (as I faid) being aduertised that Soliman being flaine by Farapuftyp with pride by reason of his victorie, resoluted to warre in Hungary; wherein through the negligence of King Lavves, and want of reliefe from the Emperor CHARLES, or his Lieutenant FERDINAND, the Turkes making fundry roades and incursions into the land; in the end befieged, battered, and tooke the strong citie of Belgrade, in auncient time called Taurinum, situated in An-Belgradein gularie Forme, betweene the rivers Sauus and Danubius. But FERDINAND as it Hungary tahen feemeth taking more care to suppresse LVTHERS doctrine, then for the defence of Hungary against the Turkes; in a Councell held at Norimburgh, vpon grieuous penalties, prohibited the reading of the Bible, which Lyther had translated; but yet LyTHER neuerthelesse being countenanced by IOHN FREDERICK Duke of Saxony, published his booke, wherein he toucht all the Romish Princes of Germany, but chiefly FERDINAND. Hereupon FERDINAND fummoned a Councell to be held in Ratisbone in the years 1523, whither from Pope CLB-MENT the feuenth, who fucceeded ADRIAN the fixth, came Cardinall Lav-RENCE CAMPEIVS, to procure (although in vaine) the suppression of Lv-

THER'S doctrine. About which matter FERDINAND having spent the yeeres 1523, and 1524, had intelligence that Soliman after the taking of the Ile of Rhodes (which he vpon composition entred vpon the fine and twentith day of December, being Christmas day, in the yeere 1522, after that it had been by the Knights of the order, held and valiantly defended against the whole forces of the Infidels, for the space of 214 yeeres, from the yeere 1380, at which time it was taken from the Infidels vntill then; and after that it had been now befieged the space of fixe moneths, in which time the Turke lost the greatest part of his armie, for besides those which were slaine at the many assaults which were giuen, aboue 30000 died of the flix) threatned to bring greater calamities ypon the Christians: amongst which a man would have thought, the long troubles of the former wars, in the yeere 1525 would have ended. For the emprisonment of Francis the first King of France, who by the Emperors Captaines, vpon the foure and twentith of Februarie in the same yeere, was taken at the battaile of Pauia, made most men to thinke that the Emperour would not have released him, without an affured peace with France; by which meane, he might dot onely have been able to have performed any great attempt, but also have made frustrate Soli-MANS deseignes. But as men in future accidents are most commonly deceived in their opinions, so the affaires of the Christians fell afterwards into farre worse termes; for the most part of the Christian Princes being mooued against the Emperor, either through griefe for the French Kings aduerstie (a Prince for the worth of his person, and the greatnes of so florishing a kingdome highly esteemed) or else for seare of their owne particular interest, doubting that he would haue aspired to the absolute Monarchie; the state of Christendome came to bee so confused and out of order, especially in Italy, that mens judgement proued not onely vaine, but the troubles have continued a long time after. Italy being by reason of the warre, betweene the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, and FRANCIS the French King miserably afflicted, the one enuying the others greatnes; the most of the Princes and states in Christendome were by the one or other (to the great trouble and enfeebling of the whole Christian Commonwealth) drawne into the action; which Soliman the great Turke perceiuing, was thereby encouraged with an armie to inuade Hungary; whereinto, having Belgrade, he had an open passage: against which, in the yeere 1525 he proclaimed open warre. It was reported that he was thereto incited by fundrie melianimatea principall Lords of the countrie, but chiefly by Ionn Tissi Vaiuode, agreat enemie to King LEVVES. Hereupon Soliman in the yeere 1526, with an armie of 200000 men entring that kingdome, by often incursions made into the land, prouoked King L EVVEs to fight; who having no fufficient army to encounter fo mightie an enemie; in the beginning wifely refused to hazard his fortune (for offoote and horse he had but 26000 men) but yet in the end through the vnaduifed counfell of PAVL TOMOREVS Archbishop of Colossa; accustomed oftner by fudden inuations to annoy the Turkes, then by vnequall battailes, he was rashly induced (notwithstanding that he was perswaded to the contrarie by STE-PHEN VERBETIVS Generall of his armie) to his great disaduantage to give battaile; wherein the credulous yong King hauing made good proofe of his and death of valour, was so ouercharged by his enemies horse troupes, that he was constrain-Lewes Kingof ned to shift for himselfe: and having no knowledge of the countrie, accompanied with a Page onely, passing through a morish fenny ground, his horse fell with him; and he being oppressed with the waight of his armour, was in water

Soliman the great Turke entred Hungary with an armen, animated the civill diffention betweene the Christian Princes.

and mire miserably smothered and drowned. This battaile was fought the 29.0f October in the veere 1526.

For the infortunate death of King L E VV E S. FERDINAND Was very forrowfull; for besides the losse of his friend and brother in law he was advertised that SOLIMAN besides other places, without one blow striken, had taken the citie of Buda; and that from thence, besides the most excellent Artillerie which he found therein, he had carried the statues of HERCVLES, APOLLO, and DIANA, most exquisitely made in brasse, and left there by the great MATTHEVY CORVINUS: and that with an infinite number of captines, and loden with prey and bootie, he Was returned to Constantinople. After SOLIMANS departure. King FERDINAND went into Bohemia, and therein was crowned together with his wife, who a little before was deliuered of a daughter called Isabel, which afterwards was married to Sigismund King of Poland: and being in peace, King of Bohemia, he challenged to be also King of Hungary. But knowing that I OHN SEPVSIVS Vajuode of Transiluania, after the celebration of the sumptuous obsequies of King Levves, 10hm Sepulsus notwithstanding FERDINANDS former election, aspiring to the kingdome, had Vainode of made himself to be crowned King of Hungary; & at the same time had bestowed Transluana vpon those Lords which had affilted him in the action, the principall estates of of Hungary. that kingdome, to the end that being obliged to him for received benefits, they should not after their accustomed manner contriue ought against him; FERDI-NAND made himselfe in Bohemia to be crowned King of Hungary, in the presence

of Doctor STEPHEN, and other Hungarian Lords his friends, which after the death of King L EVV Es came to see him. After this coronation, FERDINAND having levied an armie, presently mar- Ferdinand in ched therewith against I OHN SERVS IVS, who by reason of the inequalitie of Behrmia crows ched therewith against I OHN SERVS IVS, who by reason of the inequalitie of ned king of

their powers standing in some feare of him, departed from Buda, which after So-Hangary. LIMANS departure was againe recoursed by the Hungarians; and retiring himfelfe on the other fide of the river Tiffa, to Toccay, a place both by nature and arte very strong; where, sending to his friends in fundric parts for aide, he wrote two letters, one to the Princes Electors, entreating the to give no aide to FERDINAND against him: the other to the Emperor, therein exhibiting fundrie complaints against the same FERDINAND. But FERDINAND pretending the kingdome of Hungary in right to be his; marching forwards with his armie, without any refitting Hungary stance tooke Buda, and other principall places in that kingdome: and being vn- vviil on army willing to give his enemie time to recouer heart and courage, he without any against John Sepulius taketh great difficultie, paffing the river Tiffa, vpon a bridge made of boates brought Buda. thither for that purpose vpon carts, went to seeke him at Toccay, and within sight of the castle making an Alt, made VALENTINE TURAC Generall of his army; who in the day of battaile divided the Cavallerie of Stiria and Austrich into two fquadrons, in the middest betweene which he raunged his maine Battaillion, The battaile of which of both the one and other army, were Hungarian footmen. Which order betweene John when FERENCE BODO, who was Generall of King IOHNS armie perceived, he and Ferdimarshalling his troupes in the like manner, perswaded King I o HN with certaine nand, both pretroupes of choise horse, to withdraw himselfe to some place from the army, be Kings of where he might notwithstanding any finister accident, saue himself. After whose Hungary.

mies ioyned in a battaile, wherein for a space the fight was very doubtfull, for the

example PHVL BARCHIT a Seruian, one of the chiefest Captaines of King Fer-DINANDS armie, retired himfelfe to a close place, a good distance from the armie; with a determination to charge his enemies in flancke. To be briefe, the two ar-

left wing of King I onn's battaile charging the right of the Stirian horse and gallantly ouerbearing them, had put king FERDINANDS people to rout, had not the men at armes of Austrich in rescuing them, with such furie charged the enemie, that they were constrained to retire fighting. In the meane time the footemen, which of either fide were almost all Hungarians, fought with fuch obstinacie, that it was hard to judge whether partie should have the better. So as, if BAR-CHIT with his troupe, which vntill then lay close in an Ambuscade, had not rifen and fuddenly charged at vnawares, FERDINAND (as the report went) had had the worst of the bargaine; but BARCHIT giving a fresh charge, BOD o, notwithstanding that he that day, shewed himselfe no lesse a valiant Souldier then a prudent Captaine, often attempting in vaine to haue reformed his squadrons, being ouerborne by his enemie, was taken prisoner together with many other very excellent Captaines: and their campe being affaulted, their Ordenance and Colours were likewise lost, and the whole troupes were so much disordered that they running away, left all their baggage to the Austrians. Which when King I OHN perceived, he so fast as his horse could be are him, fled, and holding himselse not to be in fafetie in his owne countrie, fled into Poland, where by I R O M LAS-King Iohn fli-KY a Nobleman of that countrey he was honorably entertained. And FERDI-NANDS Captaines entring Transiluania, all the countrie, together with what in Hungary held for him, without any refultance yeelded to be at his deuotion. But forasmuch as Bo Do, vpon promise of libertie, would not renounce his oath made to King I OHN, and so beare armes against him, he was by King FERDI-NANDS commandement cast into a dungeon, wherein of griefe and forrow he

died miserably. After this victory FERDINAND made himselfe together with his wife in Alba Regalis, to be solemnly crowned King of Hungary by the Archbishop of Strigenium, who forfaking King IOHN came to FERDINAND, bringing with him the crowne of STEPHEN King of Hungary, which amongst the Hungarians was held in great veneration. Shortly after, FERDINAND leauing STEPHEN BATOR for Viceroy of that kingdom(to be affifted by the Bishop of Strigenium) went into Bohemia, and thence into Austrich, wherein, vpon the first day of August in the yeere 1527. his Queene bare him a fonne, who was christened MAXIMILIAN, and in processe of time comming to be Emperour was called MAXIMILIAN the second. FERDINAND having so happely gotten the kingdome of Hungary, was very earnest with his brother CHARLES the Emperour to release Pope CLE-MENT the seuenth, taken prisoner by the Duke of Bourbon Generall of the Emperours armie in Italy, the same yeere, vpon the fixth day of May, a fatall day in ancient time to Rome: which he did to the end to avoide further cause of discontentment amongst the Christian Princes : for the greatnes of the house and state of Austrich being become odious and suspect to all Christendome, it seemed that by long detaining the Pope, the hatred and ill will conceived against it, would daily encrease: which reasons induced the Emperour after seuen moneths imprisonment to set Pope CLEMENT at libertie, although vpon hard condi-

King I O HN after the battaile of Toccay, being expulsed his kingdom, fled to Is-ROME LASKY, a Nobleman of great account among the Polonians, by whom he was most honorably entertained, not without the knowledge and consent of SIGISMAND King of Polonia, who notwithstanding their affinitie was nothing pleafed with FERDINANDS greatnes. To be briefe, IERO ME LASKY counfelling

Ambastadour (King S 1 G 1 S M V N D Winking thereat) to Constantinople, where he so John Sepusius behaued himself amongst the Bashaes, that Soliman taking Iohn into his protection, with promise to restore to his kingdom, proclaimed warre against Hungary. Wherewith FERDINAND feeing himfelfe destitute of sufficient forces to withfrandthe Turkish power; and that by reason of the warres amongst the Christians, chiefly in Italy, he could not have such aide from his brother the Emperor as the necessitie of the cause required, he was much grieved; neverthelesse to cleere himselfe from blame, acquanting the Emperor with all matters, he sought meanes to obtaine of Soliman (according as LADIS LAVS and LEVYES Kings Ferdinand fixof Hungary had done) truce for some yeeres; and to that effect sent I O HN O BER eth to the Tink DANS Ka very wife man to Constantinople; who after many practises could bring vane. no other answere from Soliman, but that if Ferdinand did not restore I o HN to the kingdome of Hungary, he would make him to know how much the Turkes power was to be feared: with which answere, O BERDANSK being driuen out of Constantinople returned into Hungary, where relating Solimans proud answere to the Councell, he went to Spire to FERDINAND, who at that time was busied in councell about matters of religion. FERDIN AND vpon this answere standing in great doubt of the Turkes forces, made all the prouision that the breuitie of the time would permit: but the yeere 1529 being come, in the beginning Anni Dom. of the spring, SOLIMAN commanding his Bashes to draw his forces to an head, 1529. came in person with 140000.men to Belgrado, where, by meanes of his fauourite Soliman with LEVVES GRITTI Sonne of ANDREW GRITTI (at that time Duke of Venice) an armic of and of ABRAIN Basha, gently receiving IOHN with many other Hungarian 140000 men Lords he againe promised to restore him to his kingdome: wherewith Ions being very joyfull, with many his friends followed the Turkish armie; which being departed from Belgrado was already before Buda. Those in Buda being in extreme feare presently yeelded to So LI MAN; who entring the citie, fought with as great speede to have had the fortresse, guarded by Thomas NADASKY a Captaine for FERDINAND; who valiantly relifting the enemie, was within few daies (to the great reproch of Christian souldiers) betraied by those Germanes which FERDINAND left there in garrison: which perceiving that the enemie with mines and other militarie stratagems fought to occupie the place, willing to prouide for themselues, and to the end that NADASKY should be no impediment vnto them bound him, and then yeelding to Soliman, with their lines and goods faued, gaue vp the fortreffe. Whereinto when the Turke came, knowing soliman conthe treason of the souldiers, and moved with a noble distaine, he presently set Na- tran; to his DASKY at libertie, and made his fouldiers cut all those to pieces which had com- promise put to mitted fo shamefull a villanie; making no conscience to breake his faith sworne the souldiers to men so vile and so vnworthie to live in the world. So LIMAN having (without in the castle of effusion of bloud) gotten the citie of Buda, presently sent his armie towards Viena Buda. in Austrich; and comming before the same vpon the sixe and twentith day of September in that present yeere, he besieged the citie in fine parts, having first

by the way taken Altenburg and the fine Churches. From thence with great velo- viena believed

FERDI-

citie he made his horse troupes to ouerrunne the countrie so farre as Lint & (ma- by so iman.

ny miles distant from Viena) which doing much harme, and loden with bootie,

and many prisoners, returned to the campe; which being divided into many

parts, continually infested Viena. The Countie Palatine of khine, with many other

excellent Captaines, being therein for the defence thereof in the behalfe of

Stephen Vice-

the seventh released out of

FERDINAND, vsed all meanes to frustrate the enemies attempts; which besieging the citie by land, had intelligence that the fleete which came up the river Danubius with great store of Ordenance to batter the citie, was for the most part by WOLFANG of Oder Gouernour of Polon, beaten and funke in the Danuby. which then was swolne extraordinarily high, by reason of much raine which fell at that time. Whereof when Soliman was certified, he with the rest of the Artillerie which escaped WOLFANGs furie, so thorowly beate Viena, upon the fiftenth day of October, that he mist but little to have taken it: but being repulsed by the valour of those which had the guard thereof, he was constrained after that he had given many fierce affaults thereto, to retire with the loffe of 80000 men; and the sooner, having intelligence that FERDINAND with a great number of Bohemians and Morauians came to the reliefe thereof. Which making him to doubt that his people being weakened with the warres, would be vnapt to make head against Ferdinands fresh troupes, he resolued to raise his siege and to de-

Boliman raisetl his siege from before Viena.

part. And being departed with fo great loffe of his people, and having in vaine fought to allure those of Viena to give vp the citie vpon composition, he went to Buda; where confirming King I OHN King of Hungary, calling him his friend and vassall, and leaving LEVVES GRITTI with him for his counsellor, he with a determination to returne againe the next fpring with greater forces, leading with him about some 40000 captines, returned to Constantinople. Shortly after SOLIMANS departure, FERDINAND came to Viena, from whence

aduertifing his brother the Emperour of all what had happened, he tooke order for the reedifying of the citie, which together with all the countrie round about was in a manner wholy destroyed, and then shortly after returned into Germany, very joyfull for the newes of the peace concluded betweene the Christian Princes, hoping that the Emperor being free from warres, would now have suppresfed L v T HER s supposed heresie, which daily encreasing, was in such manner disperfed, that many Princes of that countrie were of his opinion; by reason whereof there was nothing but Councels in Germany concerning religion: which to abolish was Ferdinands chiefest care. But the yeare 1530 being come, and CHARLES being with the Imperiall Diademe by the Pope folemnely crowned in Bologna in Italy, vpon S.M ATTHIAS the Apostles day (an ominous day to him) and afterwards going into Germany, and there celebrating the Augsburgh Diet, he tooke such order, that FERDINAND by the Electors (after some contradiction) was chosen King of the Romanes; who being crowned in Aken, and the Emperour being gotte into Flanders to visit those countries, went for feare of Sepvsivs to Viena: for S EPV sivs by the counfell of L EVV Es GRITTI, daily incenfing the Turkes against FRRDINAND, and in the end of the yeere comming into Hungary, spoiled such countries as held for him: but King I o HN being desirous to bring those troubles to an end, he in such manner solicited GRITTI to be an interceffor for him, that SOLIMAN in the yeere 1522, much displeased with Fer-DINAND, proclained open warre against Hungary; and comming shortly after thither with an armie of 300000 men, he did so much harme in the countrie, that more could not be done. Which Ferdinand vnderstanding (who at that ime being with the Emperour at the Diet at Ratisbone about matters of religion) was greatly troubled; and having no sufficient power to result the Turkes forces, imploring aide of all the Potentates in Christendome, he (by the Emperors meanes) obtained some of he Germane Princes: and the Emperour causing a great number of his footmen to come into Germany, resolved with the affiftance of other Christian

mith 300000.

Christian Princes, in person to joyne with him; particularly with the aide of Pope CLEMENT the leventh, who with 9000 men paid, lent his Nephew the Cardinall HIPPOLITO DE MEDICIS, with all the fuccours that possibly in time of fuch discord (especially betweene France and Italy) could be gotten. And in such fort the matter was handled, that the Emperour and his brother FERDINAND having 90000 footemen, and 30000 horse, taking their way towards Viena, resolved to fight with Soliman; who proudly rejecting Far-DINAND'S Ambassadors sent to treate with him of a league, he with such furie affailed in many parts, such places as held for the said FERDINAND in Hungary. that he did infinit harmes; for belides the desolation of townes, he in person with fuch furie bent his forces against the citie of Guinz: and LEVVES GRITTI left in Hungary with Servsive after the fiege of Viena, likewise affailing Strigonium, and making incursions by his Captaines into the countrie, did put the Hungars in such feare, that many of them abandoning their houses, retired to the Chriftians army lying entrenched without the walles of Viena; whither it was thought that Soliman in the end would have come: but he failing of his purpose to get the citie of Guinz, and fearing the Emperors fortune; after that he had harried the countrie, and taken many prisoners, retired to the other side of the river Mura into Carinthia; and from thence leading his armie in great disorder, with dishonour to Belgrade: and there not holding himselfefully in safetie, he shortly after went to Canstantinople; being first greatly annoyed by the Christian Cauallery, which following his campe to Belgrado, did much annoy him in the arrierguard. Soliman being departed out of Hungary, FERDINAND vsed all meanes to draw the Emperour to attempt the recouerie of Buda; but forafmuch as he could not perswade him to stay in that countrie, he obtained of him to leave the Italian footemen together with Cardinall Hippolino there in garrison, against the Turkes: but they viwilling to stay any longer mutinying, The Empeter by the perswasion of one MARKEDA VOLTERRA putting themselves in order, warres against in a great rage returned into Italy: with which their departure FERDINAND the Turke in was fo discontented, that comming to a composition with IOHN SEPVELVS, Hungary to goe he graunted him during his life, peaceably to enjoy fuch part of Hungary as then Christianin was at his denotion; by reason whereof the warres for that time being ended in halv-Hungary, FERDINAND bent his forces against the Lantzgraue PHILIP, who being an enemie to the house of Austrich, induced V LAICH Duke of Wittembereb (affilted by Francis the French King) to take aimes against Ferd i-NAND, for the recourse of his estate by the Emperour taken from him, and giuen to FERDINAND at the Diet at Batisbone, in which action the Duke so valiantly behaved himselfe, that to FERDINANDS great losse and detriment, he recouered his Duchie: in whose behalfe sundrie Princes in Germany in such manner carried themselves towards the Emperour and FERDINAND, that they permitted the Duke peaceably to enjoy his estate: yet vpon condition, that from thenceforth the Duke should neuer neuer take armes against either F Ex-DINAND or the house of Austrich.

After this peace, FERDINAND received letters from LEVVES GRITTI, importing a request, which was, that if FERDINAND would be content to permit GRITTI during his life in peace to enjoy the kingdome of Hungary, he would so deale with Soliman, that he should confirme the same after GRIT-TI his decease to FERDINAND and his heires: which his demaund refused by FERDINAND did fo throughly anger GRITTI, that comming with 7000 foote

FERDINAND'S countries; wherein whilest he was with his armie, it was told

him that the Bishop of Varadin, with a great number of men comming in shew

to visit him, had a determination to make himselfe King. Whereupon GRITTI

doubting what might follow, commaunded VRBANE BATIAN to give to

IOHN DOCCIA (a great enemie to the Bishop, and by whom the rumor was

fored that the Bishop aspired to the crowne) a troupe of horse, to the end that

The death of Emerick Gibac chi Bilhop of Varadin and Vayuode of Transiluania.

> The death of Lewes Gritti.

he apprehending the Bishop might send him to Constantinople to SOLIMAN. With which horie, Doccia went couertly to the Bishops tent, and apprehending him smote off his head, and presented the same to Ga it Ti. Which fact was so infinitly displeasing to that people, and made Garris so extremely odious to them. that they to the number of 40000 men rifing in armes against Garrar, belieged him in Megest, wherein having no reliefe either from King Ions, or from the Moldauians, he was in the end in hope to have escaped, by a wile drawne out and being by the Moldanians betrayed, was miferably put to death, in revenge of the Bilhop, of whose death he was most innocent: for he knowing nothing of the hatred betweene Docora and the Bishop, but onely commaunded the Bishop to be apprehended: and so being deceived by Doccia, hastened his owne death and his childrens, which together with their father in the furie of the people were miserably slaine. After whose death King Tonn comming into Transluania, within few daies became Lord thereof but being ever molefted by FERDINAND, he was conftrained to fue to SOLIMAN for aide: who understanding of the miserable death of GRITTI, was smuch discontent; but being certified that King Ioun wasneither author, northceffarie thereto: and therewith beleeuing that FERDINAND had procured the same, he sent MAHOMET TATAGOLO, amost expert Castaine in the warres, with expresse commaundement continually to vexe F gad THAND. Whereupon comming into Hungary, he with daily incurfions spoyled his countries : but FERDINAND being by his subjects aductifed of the great harme done by the Turkes, so well garrifoned his frontiers, that they were not folightly troubled. And understanding that Pope CLEMBNT the feuenth was dead, and that PAVE the third, of the house of Farnese, was chosen in his place, he sent to yeeld him such obedience, as to fuch Princes was then accustomed, and therewith fought in the meane time to have suppressed Lvar news whose opinions had alreadie caused much murmuring against the Pope in Germany. In which actions that present yeers being spent, and the yeere 1535 being begun, he furnished his brother the Empercur with men; who being called by MVIEASSES King of Tunis, went to the enterprise of Barbary; and helping to bridle the Anabaptifts, which had expulled the Bishop of Munster, and a long time had defended themselves, he fought to suppresse L V THE R. And having advertisement of the Emperours good fuccesse, who to the great annoyance of the Moores, had taken the kingdome of Tunis, he made fignes of very greation. But the yeare 1536 being begun, and understanding that MAHOMET SANIAC QUE of Belgrado, and IOHN Servery s continually infested his estate in Hungary, he put his armie in a readines for the next yeere; to the end to meete with the Turkes in their fo often incursions. And in the yeere 1537, he sent his armie under the leading of IOHN CASIMIER, (a famous Captaine for the defence of Viena) to get Eschio, which is a very strong place vpon the shoares side of the river Sana; where after many skirmishes comming to fight with MAHOMET, he was so shamefully ouerthrowne,

throwne, that the greatest part of his armie was taken by the enemie, L Evv 1 s the Earle of Lodron particularly remaining dead in the place; a Captaine for his fundrie attempts and feruices much efteemed by FERDINAND. Who being extremely angrie with IOHN CASIMIER, notwithstanding that he had given him a fafe conduct, yet to the end that he should answere for his base cowardize, he made him to be committed to prison; from whence within few daies after escaping, he gat to MAHOMET, by whom being courteously entertained, he promifed that when soeuer he would give him a supply of men, he would make Austrich to reuolt, and would draw it to Soliman's denotion. with which promise MAHOMET being highly pleased, giving him some companies of footemen, he caused him to take the field, to attempt an enterprize foblame worthie; whereupon Casimier going to Nicholas Sidrin. (aman of great power in those countries) and seeking to have induced him to his opinion, he was by him imprisoned, and shortly after put to death; whose head being speedely carried to FERDINAND, SIDRIN obtained for a reward of fo notable a deede, all that estate which had been CASIMIERS. And in the beginning of the yeere 1538, DEVELS ASSEMBER (aman of great account in Bohemia) feeing the negligence of SEPV SIVS his people, gathered together certaine companies of foote and horse; and going towards the countries guarded by the Turkes garrifons, particularly to the citie of Teccay, fituate on the other fide of the river Tiffa, where he having eafily surprised those which had it in guard, in few howers he tooke it: and having almost wholy sacked it. hewent through the Citadel against a squadron of Turkes horse, which understanding of the surprise of Toccay, came to relieue the garrison; and comming to blowes with them, he so brake them, that they were constrained to retire: whereupon returning to the citie, and making an end of facking it; loden with prey, and having gotten certaine peeces of Artillerie, he returned, whereat F = x-DINAND greatly reloycing bestowed many gifts vpon him. And the Emperor, the Pope, and the Venecians being joyned together in league against the Turke, he was comprised in the number of the Leaguers. And in the yeere 1539 Ferdinand helping his brother the Emperor to suppresse the Flemings, which rebelled against him, and tired with the continuall warres of Hungary, he came to an agreement with King Iohn vpon condition, that each of the should continue in possesfion of what he held in Hungary, & that Iohn should freely enjoy the title of king: and if that Iohn fliould have no heires, that then the kingdome should fall to Fer-DINAND and his heires: prouided alwaies that King FERDINAND should conceale this agreement from Soliman, of whose displeasure I o HN stoode highly in searce. The matter was not fo fecretly handled, but that Soliman had full notice of all the agreement, whereupon being angeic with Ionn, he oftentimes charged him with ingratitude; and had it not been for his friends, and (that which did more import) the warre with the Persians, he had without doubt troubled him for it: who either for feare of Soliman, or vpon some other occasion, being a while after displeased with FERDINAND, he tooke to wife Isabel daughter of Sigismynd King of Poland; who within few moneths appearing to be with child, induced him to feeke to drive STEPHEN MAIALTO and BAILASSO out of Transiluania, both gouernors of that Province: the one of which, which was MAIALTO, notwithstanding that he knew that SOLIMAN deadly hated him; yet he fundrie times instantly fued to have bin by him crowned King of Transiliania: whereof Iohn being aduertised by Soliman himselfe, Ecec

Angharia, made warre against both the one and other Gouernour; either of

which, by meanes of THOMAS NADASKY, brother in law to MAIALTO, be-

ing received into FERDINANDS protection, was holpen by him against King

Iohn Varuoda of Transiluania died of a surfit

in drinking.

IOHN; but neither of them being of equall power to him, they were constrained, the one which was BAILASSO, to retire himselfe; and the other in Mezell (a most strong place) was by King Ionns souldiers besieged: But King I OHN understanding that his wife Queene Is ABBL in the meane time whilest he was about Megest had borne him a sonne, and desiring to be present at the publike ioy and feaftings which were made; he fo much diftempered himfelfe with drinking that falling ficke he died within few daies after, leaving that child heire of that kingdome, viider the protection of Solinan, and of his mother, and of one Frier GEORGE. Who being nobly borne in Creatia, after some timespent in the service of King Ionn, became a Monke in Buda, where he had not long remained, but waxing wearie of the Monasticall life, he retayning still the habit went out of the Couent, and returned to the feruice of Ionn in Polo-The life of Frier nia: to whom (being expulsed his kingdome by FERDINAND, and remayning with IEROM LASKY) he did many seruices of importance; so as being very highly respected by him, he created him after the recourie of Transiluania, and the rest of Hungary, Bishop of Varadin; and at his death, lest him together with the Queene (mother to the child) Protector of the kingdome, who in the yeere 1540 compounding with MAIALTO, in the name of the Queene refused to fland to the agreement made betweene Ionn and Ferdinand: and temporifing with him, leuied certaine companies of horse and soote: and to the end to be in the more safetie, suing to Soliman for aide, as to the protector of the pupill, he together with the Queene and the young King retired to Buda: wherewith FERDINAND being highly offended, and therewith hoping to recouer that kingdome, he leuied an armie: and in the meanetime, fending Ambaffadors to Soliman, he offered to give him that tribute which King IOHN was wont to pay: but he first perswaded Queene Isabar, that she contenting her selfe in peace to enjoy Transiluania, should refigne the rest to him, according to the agreement made betweene him and her husband. But feeing that hee could obtaine neither the one nor the other of his demaunds, he sent LEO-NARD VELSCH one of his Captaines, with a great number of men of warre to molest the Queene. VELSCH entring the countrie of the young King, went from Strigonium to Vifegard, which he tooke without any difficultie; and having taken it, stayed there certaine daies to refresh his armie. Then passing the river Danuby, and with the like celeritie having taken Pefihe, and Vaccia, he presented himselfe before Buda; wherein VALENTINE DVRAC (who in former time had served Ferdinand) lay then in garrison. This Dyrac to his great credit withstanding Valsch defended the citie, vntill that constrained by the Turkish souldiers, sent by the Saniacque of Belgrado to the reliefe of the young King, and for that it was their intent, V z L s CH retired to Vilgard, where having in few daies space taken the Citadel, and garrisoned it, in the name of King F = R-DINAND; and wintring his people in the same place, without any molestation by the Turkes with the end of that yeere, that in the yeere 1544 the Turkes with so great furie tooke the field; that having suddenly taken Vaccia, they fundrie times attempted Pefthe; where being relifted by the valour of the defendants, they departed, fearing that FERDINANDS armie (which to a good number

were come to make head against them) would have broken them, whose assaults they could not fo well avoide, but that they being in ill plight, they lost many of their Arrierguard. By reason of which good successe, Ferdinand hoping to haue taken Buda, gathered together 40000.men, which he fent vnder the conduct of WILLIAM ROCKENDOLFH, a Captaine of great worth, to take that citie. ROCKENDOLPH comming thither, gaue many attempts, but being euer va- font by Fordiliantly repulsed by the besieged, so as he saw that by assault he could not take the nand to atcitie, he refolued to trie what he could doe by a fiege: and beginting it round, he tempt Buda. fokept victuals from the citie, that had not Frier G n o n o n vied great diligence, the citie doubtleffe had yeelded. Neuertheleffe Rockendolph with words and threatnings frustrating the denices of some sedicious persons, continued the fiege, vntill it was vnfet by Soliman. Who vnderstanding that Buda was in manifest daunger, sent MAHOMBT Basha with many men of warre, and a great quantitie of victuals to the reliefe thereof; promiting to follow himselfe in person as within few daies after he did. Which so much troubled ROCKENDOLPH that they forced him to retire into the Ile of Comer; for MAHOMET having vi-Qualled Buda, and being encamped within fight of FERDINANDS armie, after Rockendoles many skirmishes, he so much prouoked his enemies, that they joyned with him ourthroune in battaile; wherein, after fundry accidents, ROCKENDOLPH being ouerthrown, flie bt by 314. was constrained to flie, and many of his Captaines were taken prisoners. And homet. MAHOMET Basha sending to visit the young King and Queene Mother, perswaded her to hope well of Soliman the great Turke, who comming from Adrianople into Hungary, shortly after came to the camp, bringing with him a great number of fouldiers, with a determination to free himselfe from troubles, and wholy to put Fardinand out of all hope enerto recouer that estate. And sending his people to attempt Strigonium; after many prefents made to the Queene.

he caused the young King to be brought to the campe; where receiving him

with great humanitie, within a little while after hee made all those Lords which

to doe him honour had accompanied him, to be detained prisoners. After the

imprisonment of which sending MAHOMET Basha to Buda to take the citie, he

induced the inhabitants (by a vaine protestation) not to trust themselves to be at

the denotion of an Hungarian garrifon; which those of Buda being vnable to

withstand, too late understood to what end the Barbarian was so readie to relieue

them; who shortly after sending the young childe backe to his mother, sent her

commandement that departing from Buda, the should retire her selfe on the o-

ther fide of Tebifcus, to the citie of Lippa; wherein lining in fafetic free from FER-

loffe of Buda, was very foriethat a place fo fit, and of such importance for all

Christendome, should fall into the hands of so mightie an enemie; but vnable to

remedie it, he applied himselfe to the fortifying of those townes which he held

in Hungary. And about the middest of the yeere, he obtained of fundrie Princes

what was his in his power.

DINANDS forces, the might quietly make her abode with the young King (whom insteede of STEPHEN in remembrance of his father hee called I OHN) vntill solimon in rethat he came to age fit to gouerne his kingdome without tutors; promifing that membrance of heshould no sooner be able to gouerne, but that hee would restore to him all founce whose Queene I s A B E L departing then from Buds and retiring to Lippa; left in the phen to be cal-Barbarians power all that was held for her fonne in Hungary; in vaine repending his fathers that the had not compounded with FERDINAND. Who being aductifed of the name.

aide against the common enemie. And in the yeere 1542 the Councell of Trent

the Turkes. and the French King 1544.

twelve thoufand foote and fixelundred horfe to the Emperour to aide Protestants.

was affembled, whither FERDINAND fending his Ambaffadours, obtained of Pope PAV L three thouland Italian footmen, under the leading of ALEXANDER VITALLIANDS FORCE PALLAVICIN Mand getting other fuccours from other Princes, he made I o A C HIM Marquis of Brandenburgh Generall in the action: who attempting to take Pefche and Buda, which were again come into the power of King I OHN (from whence Soliman was a little before departed towards Constantinople) but all his attempts proouing frustrate, he to his great shame and losse retired repulsed by those which Soliman left there in garrison, together with many of King I OHN'S Captaines, left there also by SOLIMAN, to colour the barbarous breach of his faith: from whence I o ACHIM retiring, by reason of the cold feafon of the yeere, that yeere paffed; and in the beginning of the yeere 1542. F B R D I N A N D againe tried his fortune, which shewing it selfe no more fauourable then ordinarie, so much encouraged his enemies, that they not onely repulsed his forces, but within few daies space were masters of Strigonium. Alba Regalis, and other places in Hungary; fo as FIRD INAND vnwilling any further to hazard his fortune, seeing how slackly he was relieued by his friends, tooke a truce with Soliman; and so disbanding his armie, and fortifying those places which remained he applied himselfe to the repairing of his owne affaires, which by reason of the long continuance of the warres, were incredibly out of order. FERDINAND having in this manner accorded with SOLIMAN, vied all meanes to let the meeting of the Princes of Germany in Smalcalde, with the Ambaffadors of the free townes, which (as the fame went) were affembled to the prejudice of the Emperour. Which, for that he could not effect, he affaied to make peace betweene the Emperour and the French King, notwithstanding that in both the one and the other he found great difficultie : neuerthelesse he so handled the matter that in the beginning of the next yeere they agreeing vpon fundrie conditions, in the yeere 1544 the articles of peace were confirmed by them both. In the beginning of the yeere 1545, FERDINAND fent his Ambassadours to the Councell of Trent, to the end that the disagreement in matters of religion in Germany might be redreffed, according to the Emperours defire : but he feeing the ill will which the affemblie at Smallealde bare to the Emperour, and that the fame encreased, he by his letters perswaded each of them to quietnes: which perswasions taking no effect, the Emperour came from Flanders into Germany; where obtaining aide from the Duke of Florence, the Duke of Ferrara, and from euery Potentate in Italy some, but chiefly from Pope Pav L, who seeing that the warre should be waged against the Lutherans, contemners of his Holines, sent him twelve thousand footmen, and fixe hundred horse, commaunded by his nephew Octavivs Farness, the Emperours some in law, with his brother the Cardinall ALEXANDER FARNESE, Legate A Latere for his Vicle the Pope. With which supplies, the Emperour having in the yeere 1546 and 1547 distrefhim in his warre fed his enemies, he restored the Duke of Brumswick to his estate; who from the yeere 1543, had by the Lantzgraue, and I O HN FREDERICE Duke of Saxony, lived deprined of his Duchie: and notwithstanding the promise made to Duke MAYRICE, affuring him that the Lantzgraue should be restored to his countries, yet he neuerthelesse was likewise taken prisoner, the same day, that according to the agreement, they spake together. So as Germany being in short space in quiet, and Duke I O HN FRED ERICK deprived of the dignitie of Elector, and together with many other Captains of the league committed to prison in the yeere 1547 FERDINAND Went against the Bohemians, which in the behalfe of the Duke of

Saxon rebelled against him; and being come into the kingdome, after much refiftance and apparant daunger of his person, he at length gat the castle of Prage; wherein being entred he put the Bohemians in such feare, that notwithstanding the many difficulties, yet he subdued them in such manner that they veelded them absolutely to his mercie. And so having accoplished this enterprise, he sent his eldest some MAXIMILIAN with certaine gallant troupes of horse to the aide of his brother the Emperour, and he himfelfe in the meane time neuer defifting together with Duke MAVRICE, to trouble Duke IOHN FREDERICK: in the day of the battaile beyond the river Albis, he not onely affilted his brother with his forces, but with certaine very good troupes of horse came thither in person, where he shewed himselfe no lesse a valiant man at armes, then a most prudent Commaunder. After which victorie returning into Bohemia, he celebrated the obsequies of his wife Anne, which in the beginning of the yeere died in Childbed: which obsequies hee could no sooner solemnize, by reason of the warres in Germany, and of the Infurrections in Hungary!

FERDINAND having ended the warres of Bohemia, and holpen his brother to Suppresse his enemies; in the yeere 1548, holding a Sinode with the Emperour in Augsburgh, there were published fifteene Institutions appertaining religion, with expresse order, that the same should be observed, vntill the dissolution of the Councell of Trent; which ordenance was called an Interim; wherein were contained in all what was commaunded to be beleeued, vntill the determination of the faid Councell. After which publication, the Emperour willing that his fonne Philip Prince of Spaine, should be acknowledged by the Netherlanders for their legitimate and naturall Lord, he married his daughter MARY to MAXIMI-LIAN Archduke of Austrich, eldest sonne to his brother FERDINAND; to the end that they should make their residence in Spaine, vntill the returne of Prince PHILIP; and purchasing a dispensation from the Pope, he publishing the nup- the kingdome of tials, sent him into Spaine, accompanied by the Cardinall of Trent, and the Earle Bohemia to his of Mansfelt, and many other of the Germane and Bohemian Nobilitie. But first lian. before his departure, he obtained for him of his father FERDINAND the kingdome of Bohemia, to the end that hee should come into Spaine with the greater dignitie, where as governour of those countries he remained vntill the returne of Prince PHILIP.

In the yere 1551, FERDINAND received letters from Solinanthe great Turke, wherein he shewing himselfe discontented with both FERDINAND and the Emperour also, for that ANDREVV DORIA had taken the citic of Africa from DRAGVT RAIS a Pirat; he protested that if it were not rendred, he would cruelly revenge the injurie done to his Captaine DRAGVT. Whereto FERDI-NAND made answere, that for a finuch as the Pirates were not comprised in the Articles of agreement, neither he neither his brother were bound to any thing. With which answere dispatching the messenger, in the moneth of May, he sent IOHN BAPTISTA CASTALDO INTO Transiluante to affilt Frier George against Castaldo sent Queene Is ABE L; who having in former time drawne great part of the Transil- into Transilnanians to her denotion, and fought to conferme that prouince for her fonne, fell Prier George at open variance with the Frier. Who ambitiously desiring to continue in his go- against the uernment, gaue FERDINAND to vnderstand that the Queene hoping by the Queene Turkes meanes to hold that countrey, was againe rifen against him, and sought to drine him out of that estate: which for that he knew to be very prejudiciall to all

Christendome, he had aduertised him thereof; therewith entreating him, that for Ecee 3

the preservation of the countrie, he would be pleased to relieue him against the Queenes inuations, which daily troubled him.

FERDENAND induced by these reasons sent (as before is faid) CASTALD O to the Frier, who as his Lieutenant Generall comming to Agria, leuied 5700 foormen and 1700 horse, with which passing the river Tista, he went to Debrezen. where finding Andrew BATTOR, and THOMAS NACLAID I, principall Lords of that kingdome, he went into Transiluania: where, whilest he the space of three moneths belieged Coloswarre in the behalfe of the Frier, he was advertised that the Frier through a new composition with the Queene, having taken Alba Julia. was retired from the warres; and that he had nevertheleffe fent him word, that if he would meete him at Egnet, he would speake with him. Whither CASTALDO being come, after many discourses and treaties past betweene them, obtaining of the Frier the citie of Alba Iulia to winter his people in; he had word from the Queene, that she would come to an agreement with FERDINAND, according to the couenants made with her husband: fo that after many conventions comming to Colofuarre, whither were alreadie come the most part of the Lords of that kingdome. Is ABEL in the name of her sonne renounced, and gauevp the kingdome and estate of Hungary to CASTALD O: Who in the name of FERDI-MAN Daccepted the fame. After which renunciation, the granted to the most infaciable Frier all his demannds, which were immeasurable, together with the Archbishoprick of Strigonium, being at that time voide. Castaldo accommodating that province according to the order received from FERDINAND, and as he thought most expedient, celebrated the nuptials betweene one of FERDI-NAND s daughters, and I O HN the Queenes sonne. But the ambicious Frier not contented with the agreement, by the meanes of a Frenchman, who was a fpie for the Turke in that kingdome, he acquainted SOLIMAN with the whole agreement and composition made betweene FERDINAND and the Queene. Where-With SOLIMAN being highly displeased, shortly after sent the Beglerbey of Grecias who paffing with great celeritie to Belgrado, came to Beche, and tooke it, with Bekerque and Senat: & having without any relistance vpon composition taken Lippa, he went without any molestation by the Christians, to Themeluar; where encamping himselfe, he viderstood that Castaldos armie was come. Who with much ado hauing induced Frier GEORGE, then made Treasorerof that kingdom, & Vaiuode of Transiluania, to leuie forces against the Turke, he brought it so to passe that he constrained the Beglerbey to raise his siege from before Themesuarre; notwithstanding that the Frier euer endeuored to hinder Castaldos proceedings. The Frier vnderstanding of the Turkes departure, went to Lippa; where he stayed not long before that by Pope Ivily's at the request of FERDINAND being a made Cardinall, he fought to hinder CASTALDOS descignes, and to betray him and FERDINANDS whole armie into the hands of the Turkes: hoping by this meanes not onely to reconcile himselfe to Soliman, butto become absolute Lorde of Transiluania also. Whose wicked practise being made frustrate, CASTALDO continued the siege of Lippa, which after many bickerings comming into CASTALDOS power, was given in pray to the Souldiers, which loden with spoyle, presently besieged the Fortresse; about which having spent some daies, they had taken the same, together with O LIMAN Gouernor thereof, if the Friers villanie had not frustrated CASTALDOS purpose. Who desiring by these meanes to obtaine the Turkes good will, dealt so, that he set OLIMAN at libertie: wherewith Castaldo being infinitly displeased,

fought to abate the Friers authoritie: but failing of his purpose, he dissembled the matter. And Winter being come, FBRDINANDS forces departing out of Transiluania (he being vnwilling that they should remaine there) stayed vpon the frontiers of the enemie. After whose departure Castaldo conducting the Artillery discouered to Sporza Pallavicino that Ferdinand had commaunded Frier GEORGE to be put to death; but being vnable without great circumspection to bring it to effect, he willed PALLAVICINO to be in a readines, vntill he gaue him further direction. In the meane time repairing to the Citadel at Lippa, he stayed neere to the citie of Varadin, and sending his armie before, he joyned with the Frier riding together in one Coach to Buife, in which place being againe folicited by FERDINAND to make away the Frier, CASTAL- Meanes of ed by Do speedely wrote to SFORZA PALLAVICIN o, that so soone as possible might trate Frier be, he should with his troupes come to conferre with him, about what course George was to be taken in this matter. Whereupon PALLAVICINO comming to Buile, and having laid the plot for the Friers dispatch, he went to seeke him just at the time when he should have said Masse: with whom CASTALD o holding a long discourse, shewed him euer a good countenance, notwithstanding that he was in all occasions crost by him: and his insolencie was such that he forbare not openly to negociate with the Turkes. Whereupon CASTALDO directing those which should kill him in what manner they should dispatch him; he appoynted his Secretarie MARC ANTONIO FERRARI of Alexandria, (under colour to get the Friers hand to certaine letters which SFORZA PALLAVICINO should beare to FERDINAND) to come to him vpon the eighteenth day of December, in the same yeere. Who comming in companie of PALLAVICINO into the Castle with certaine Harcubuzziers, and presenting the letters to the Frier, to the end that he should subscribe to them; after that the Frier had heedely read them, stooping downe to write vpon a little table which was in the chamber, FERRARI drawing his ponyard twife stabbed him, which being of no sufficient force to kill him, it behooved PALLAVICINO (who vpon the noyse ranne into the chamber) to set his helping hand to the worke: for the Frier was a gallant strong fellow, turning to him that smote him, threw him to the ground, and therewith made fo great a noyle, that PALLAVICINO com- The death of ming into the chamber, and feeing FERRARI downe, fetting hand to his Frin George fword, gaue the Frier fo found a knocke on the pate, that he cleft the fame in two: an act truely worthic of great reprehension, if the behauiour of the man had not descrued it. For Frier Grong was endued with such excellencie of wit, and therwith was of fo generous and great a mind, and fo diligent in all matters of importance, that FERDINAND him elfc (who caused him to be slaine) would often fay openly, that he enuied the Vayuode for nothing, but for Frier Groroz. The Frier dying in this manner suddenly, CASTALD a imprisoned his great friend FRANCIS THENDI, who to escape from FERDINANDS forces, had after the Turkish manner clad himselfe in Scarlet, whose imprisonment was a great helpe to CASTALD O, for THENDI being reconciled, was the cause that the Sicoli, a most fierce people of Transluania, yeelded obedience to the King of the Romanes; which people with others, through CASTALDOS endeuour, within few dayes submitted themselues. But in the yeere 1542, Soliman understanding of the death of Frier GEORGE, sent two armies into Transiluania, to the end in two feuerall parts to inuade the same: wherein CASTALDO thinking by fortifying the frontiers, to entertaine the Turkes vntill the comming of an

Eccc 4

Pope Iulius excommunicated shofe which George.

eino wounded,

the Castle of

Drigall.

armic out of Germany, fent Frier GRORGE his treasure to FERDINAND: and taking Seghedin, had fundrie supplies from the Lords of that kingdome; and fortifying Lippa and Themeluarre he gathered those men together which (toanovde the rage of the Turkes) came to his campe. In the meane time, carneftly expecting aide from FERDINAND, whom Pope IVLIV's commaunding to purge himselfe concerning the death of Frier Grong for that he was a Cardinall: and fending three Cardinals to make enquirie of the Homicide, he excommunicated those which had flaine him. And FERDINAND vnable to fend fuch fuccours as he had promifed, by reason of the warres in Germany betweene his brother the Emperor and MAVRICE Duke of Saxony, perswaded CASTAL Do to beare his fortune in the best manner that possibly he should be able promising so soone as he could to relieue him. Who perceiuing that the Moldauian, and MAHOMET Basha were with a great armie come into Hungary, to the end to inuade Transiluania; he sent Filix Earle of Arco, to hold the Castle of Brasonia. And obtaining great reliefe and victuals, from the citie of Zibonio, he endeuored himselse to reinforce his troupes, and to fortifie many places; but this nothing furthered FERDINAND's proceedings: for by reason that the articles of agreement were not observed to Is ABBL, many of those people rebelled against him, and after much contention hee was constrained to come to blowes with them: for spending much time, sometime in losing and sometime in recouring, the Turkes daily conquered more and more. Which taking Lippa and Themeluarre with many other places, by MAHOMETS order, the Balha, together with the Balha of Buda, marched to the Castle of Drigall; before which lay S FOR ZA PALLAVICINO with fixe thousand men, Germanes and others: who valiantly affaulting the Castle, was at vnawares set upon by the Basha; with whom comming to blowes, and performing the office both of avaliant Souldier, and prudent Captaine, he was in the end ouerthrowne, and shortly after with many other Captaines taken prisoner, and brought (by a Turke which and taken prife charging him in the flanke with his Cimitarre had felled him wounded to the death) to the Basha: from whom he was afterwards ransomed for a great summe of money. After which, MAHOMET to the great flaughter of his people, tooke Salonch, built by Ferdinand in a strong place over the river Tilla; the losse whereof greatly troubled FERDINAND. Who feeing that his affaires notwithflanding the valour and wifedome of CASTALDO daily went from ill to worfe, and vnderstanding that the people of Transiluania were wholy revolted to the Queene, greatly fauored by Ma HO MET Basha about Soliman; and that they had often practifed to kill CASTALD o, he commaunded him that notwithstanding MAHOMETS retreit, despairing to take Agria, long attempted by his people, he should retire. Which CASTALD o putting in execution, placed the Spanish and Dutch fouldiers in Zibinio, and other places neere adiacent: and having fortified Deua, after much prouision made, he went to Alba Iulia to winter the rest of his armie. In the meane time, absolution came from Rome for those which kild Frier GEORGE. And the yeere 1553 being come, FRANCIS THENDI, fauouring the Queenes cause, brought it so to passe, that notwithstanding the many Councels, wherein C ASTADDO Was euer present, great part of the Lords of Transiluania in the behalfe of the Queene, tooke armes against FERDINAND, and expulsing FERDINANDs forces, reestablished her, together with her sonne in her estate.

That yeere being ended, and the yeere 1554, begun, FERDINAND fent his Ambaffadours to his nephew Philip in England, to congratulate his marriage

with MARY Queene of that countrie, which succeeded her brother EDVY ARD. And in the yeere 1555 died Ioans mother of FERD IN AND, and of the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, in Spaine; whose death FERDINAND took very gricuously. And in the meane time, taking a truce with the Turke, he obtained vpon an acknowledgement of a tribute, peaceably to enjoy what he held in Hungary. In which time CHARLES the Emperour having given vp the states of the Low Countries, the kingdomes of Spaine, and all his other kingdomes to his sonne PHILIPKing of England; FERDINAND fought to suppresse and extinguish the preaching of the Gospell in Germany; and receiving letters of his brothers renunciation made to his sonne, he infinitely commended his resolution. That veere being ended, and the yeere 1556 being come, he was aduertifed that his brother the Emperour hauing renounced the Empire vnto him, was retired into Spaine, to leade a folitarie life; for which yeelding him thankes by his letters and Ambassadours, he went to Viena to make proussion for the warres, which (as it was faid) Soliman would make in Hungary : where spending the rest of that yere, he remained untill the yeere 1557. In the beginning of which yeere, he interpofed himselfe betweene King PHILIP and the Pope, perswading them to peace: for the Pope induced by his nephew the Cardinall Caraffa; made warre against the King. And that yeere being ended, in the beginning of the yeere 1558, he was by the Electors according to the will of his brother CHARLES, chosen and proclaimed Emperour: no man but the Pope contradicting his election, who affirmed that the relignation made by the Emperour CHARLES could not be done without the Popes consent: but his reproofe being rejected, FERDINAND was chosen and proclaimed lawfull Emperour. Not long after he had newes that his brother CHARLES was departed out of this world, for whose death he together with his whole Court was very forie: neuerthelesse supporting his griefe, hee celebrated the exequies with great pompe, and presently sent his Ambaffadours to King PHILLP, to condole the common lotte. And that prefent veere ending, within a while after the decease of the Emperour Charles, and in the beginning of the yere 1559, FERDINAND vsed all endeuour to make peace peace between betweene King Philipsand HENRY the French King; which after many trea- King Philip of ties being obtained, and alliance made them, he was exceedingly glad, fith that Henry of France after the space of seventie yeeres continuall diffention, peace was now made betweene those two most mightie Kings, which was proclaimed through all Chri-Rendome. A little while after, in the beginning of the yeere 1560, FERDINAND obtained to be confirmed in the Empire by the new Pope, who willingly appro- Ferdinand conuing his election, deemed it to be ill done, after a peace fo long defired, againe to Empire by Pape bring Italy into new troubles : and fo following the will of that Prince, he con- Pinatine 4sented to the calling of a Councell. And in the yeere 1561 he made proclamation to all Prelates and Nations, of a Conncell to be held the yeere following, wherein the Articles proponed by the Lutherans should be determined. And in the yeere 1562 a Councell was againe called, to be held in the citic of Trent, whither FERDINAND fending the Prelates of his dominion, perswaded all the Princes of Germany to doe the like; and writing to his nephew King PHILIP, and to the King of Portugali, and to all the other Princes of Christendome, he vied such meanes that al the Princes according to his defire, fent the Bithops of their countries with their particular Ambassadours to that Councell, wherein the matters of greatest importance were handled concerning religion. In which time FER-BINAND desiring that some one of his sonnes after his decease might succeede

him in the Imperiall dignitie, he called the Princes Electors to a Councell held at Franckford, where proponing to them his defire, he alleaged that in respect of the Turke it was requisite it should be so; and after the matter had been long debated, he obtained his purpose to his content: which being concluded, he made his sonne MAXIMILIAN within few daies after to be crowned King of the Romanes. After which ceremonies, going to Ifprach to fee his daughters, he vnderflood that the truce lately treated of with Soliman not onely tooke effect for tenne yeeres, but that at his fuite DON ALVARO DE SANDE was released our Came 1560. of prison together with three other principall Knights taken in the yeere 1560 in the enterprise of Tripoli, by DRAGVT RAIS. At that time were great warres in France betweene the Papists and the Huguenots, which the Emperour fought to have pacified, but that nation was fo extremely incenfed, that the Emperours perswasions could nothing preuaile amongst them.

the Emperour Ferdinand.

In the yeere 1564, the Councell of Trent being diffolied, FERDINAND came to Viena, where falling ficke of an Ague, and knowing by the vehemencie of his disease that his life drew neere to an end, he sent for all his children, which then were dispersed into sundrie places, to whom after he had given his bleffing, together with many good exhortations, he rendred his foule to God, upon the fifth day of July in the fame yeere. He was a Prince by all men reputed to be of fingular bountie and pietie, and of a most gentle and pleasing disposition, not very strong of bodie, but replenished with so much maiestie, that who so euer saw him could not but respect him : for being of a pleasing and affable condition, he would most curteously encline himselfe to enery one that came to salute him. He was naturally merrie, free from furfeiting, and ware his beard rather short then long, and his haire so long that it couered his eies with some bauldnes. He was in all his actions (prosperous or aduerse) alwaies constant, holding all things to happen to him by the will of God. He confelled himselfe three or source times in the yeere, and with great denotion received the Communion, willing that enery one in his Court should doe the like; so that his house seemed to be rather a regular Monasterie, then a Court of Secular men. He left behinde him many children, and had in all fifteene; foure fonnes, and the rest daughters, which were married to fundrie Princes in Christendome. Is ABBL which was his first, was given in marriage to SIGISMVND King of Poland. ANNE was wife to the Duke of Baniere. MARY to the Duke of Cleue. MAGDALENACHAR Virgin. KA. THERINE to FRANCIS Duke of Mantoa. ELENOR to WILLIAM Duke of Man-104. MARG ARET Wasa Nunne. BARBARAWas married to ALFONSE the fecond Duke of Ferrara. VRS VIA 2 Virgin and 2 Nunne. HELE Nlined but a little while. And I O ANE Was wife to FRANCIS the great Duke of Tuscane. Of sonnes besides the Emperour Maximilian, he had Ferdinand and Charles Archdukes of Austrich, and I OHN which died very young. He had but one onely wife, and(as it was faid)neuer beforenor after knew any other woman buther: which he loued so intierly, that he would not marrie the second time. He much loued learned men, & gaue them great penfions for their maintenance. He neuer vndertooke any warres but for religion: either against the Turke or the Lutheranes, which he vehemently perfecuted. FERDINAND having bin King of Hungary and Bohemia foure and thirtie yeeres, and Emperour feuen, to the great griefe of his people and of all the Princes in Christendome ended his daies. After whose decease, his obsequies being celebrated with great pompe, sundrie funerall Orations were made by divers learned men: and his body being

carried through Morania into Bohemia, was by his wives fide buried in Prage.

### THE LIFE OF MAXI-MILIAN THE SECOND.

AND CXVII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.

His life containeth not ought elfe, but the countrie, parentage and noble descent of Maximilian, with his actes in the warres in Germany against the Lantzgraue, bis going into Spaine to governe the same for King Philip, his assumption to the Imperiall dignitie, with his warres with the Turkes at Zighet, and the Election of his sonne Rodulph for King of the Romanes.



He house and family of Austrich amongst the most principall houses of Germany, is truely euery way very noble, and hath euer been so of long time (as it euidently appeareth) not onely through the (in a manner) hereditarie succession of the Empire from the father to the sonne in tenne Emperours, from the yeere 1273, at that time Rodvien the first was chosen Em-

peror of the Germanes: but also in that it hath since that time in short space, with admirable felicitie, not onely in Germany enlarged the small confines of Habspurge and Hasia (the auncient territory thereof) but through the singular protection of the heavens, it hath by enheritance attained to the kingdomes of The dominion Behemia, and Hungary, the Duchie of Austrich, the countic of Flanders, with the of the house of estates of the lower Germany, the kingdomes of Spaine, with all those countries of the East and West Indies, (to the wonder of the world, by Christopher Columbus a Genowaies, and Americus Sepusius, a Florentine, newly found and discourred; which for their greatnes, and the noueltie of the action, are called the new world) together with the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples;

The linage of the Emperor Maximilianand laftly the Duchie of Milan, farre excelling all other Dukedomes in Christendome. Of which family in the yeere of our Lord 1527, the Emperor MAXIMI-LIAN the second of that name borne in the citie of Viena in Austrich, had to his father FERDINAND, brother to the Emperor CHARLES thefifth. fonne of PHILIP the first King of Spaine, Nephew of MAXIMILIAN the first, sonne of FREDERICK the third Emperours of the Almaines: his mother was Anna daughter of LADISLAVS King of Hungary and of Bohemia, Nephew of the great Sigismand, sonne of Casimier King of Poland, and fifter to that LEVVES which through the vnaduiled counsell of PAVLAS TOMOREVS Archbishop of Colossa, in the yeere of our Lord 1526, comming to a field battaile with SOLIMAN King of the Turkes, was not onely through the innumerable multitude of the Ottomans lamentably ouerthrowne; but also when he sought to have faued himselfe from his enemies, was through the waight of his armour wherewith he was oppressed, and the stumbling of his horse which fell voon him in a passage ouer a marrish or fenne, miserably drowned.

This Emperor shewing euen from his infancie the excellencie of his wit, was by his father the Emperor FERDINAND committed to very learned men, by them to be instructed in good Litterature, but chiefly invarietie of tongues: wherein in fhort space he so much profited, that he not onely spake Latin very elegantly; Spanish, French, Italian, Dutch, Hungarish, and Bohemish; but also very perfectly attained to the knowledge of the Sciences, particularly the Mathematikes. So that all men did stedfastly hope that he would proue no way inferior to his auncient progenitors. And he no fooner came to yeeres fit to beare armes, but that he fundrie times gave no leffe indice and cleere shew of his noble valour therein; carnelly feeking to imitate his Grandfather MAXIMILIAN whose name he bare, which he expresly manifested when in the yeere 1556, in the warres which his Vncle the Emperor CHARLES the fifth made against IOHN FREDERICK Duke of Saxony, and Philip Lantzgraue of Hellen, he went to that warre, fent thither by his father with the commaund of 1200 horse; having before that time, been ever present in the warres which his father waged with the Turkes. In that service of his Vnclethe Emperor CHARLES, he so nobly behaued himselfe, that he therein fundric times deserved to be compared with his Grandfather MAXIMILIAN; for he constantly enduring with the greatnes of his minde, all those wants and fortunes which the troubles of the warres bring with them, was euer the first man in all services, wherein he made no lesse shew of a valiant man at armes, then of a prudent Chieftaine, which made him fo deerely beloued by his Vncle the Emperor, that that civill warre being ended (which continued little leffe then two yeeres) he confidering that his fonne PHILIP Prince of Spaine was to be invested in the Countie of Flanders, together with the provinces of the lower Germany, and being vnwilling that Spaine should remaine without some man of authoritie to gouerne the same, fearing the siercenes of that nation ordinarily euer defirous of nouelties: notwithstanding that he was his Nephew, yet by the dispensation of Pope PAVL the third he made him his fonne in law, giving him his daughter MARY to wife, and therewith made him gouernor of those kingdomes. And those nuptiall rites being celebrated, MAXIMILIAN in the yeere 1548 went into Spaine, being first by his father FERDINAND King of the Romanes, made King of Bohemia, to whom the Lords of that kingdome sware obedience as to their King and natural Lord. Before his comming into Spaine, passing through Italy, he was by all the Italian

Princes visited and highly honoured; and being arrived at the citic of Genea, and there shortly after embarked in the Galleyes of Prince Donia, he passed to Barcelona, whence taking his way towards Valiedolid, where the Spanish court then lay, he was in the name of his espouse and of his cosin germane oftentimes vifited by the principall Lords of Spaine. Finally, within few daies after his comming to the court, having with applause of the Spanish nation celebrated his nuotials, he was established in the government of those kingdomes, in the abfence of Prince Pathir: which he with great quietnes, to the contentment of that people governed, vntill that in the beginning of the yeere 1551 the Emperor CHARLES fummoneda Councell to be held in Augsburgh, whither being by his father fent for, he came from Spaine into Germany, having first left the gouernment of those kingdomes to his wife Queene MARY, and to the Councell royall: and staying there till the end of the Councell, he went with his father the King of the Romanes to Viena, where making his abode till the begins ning of the yeere 1552, and then passing from Germany againe into Spaine, to bring his wife into his countries, he came from Barcelona (after that he had been molefted by the French fleete) to Genoa; and from thence comming to Trent, he went to Augsburgh, where by the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, he was much welcomed, and together with his wife was by the Germane Princes highly honored, but particularly by his father, who then absolutely refigned vnto him the government of the kingdome of Bohemia: which to the great contentment of the Bohemians he ener after gouerned fo long as he lived. From whence in the same yeere he sent great troupes of men to the Emperor, for his warres against MAYRICE Duke of Saxony, who by reason of the imprisonment of the Lantzgrave PHILIP warring against the Emperor, was proclaimed traitor: but it was not long before the Emperor was freed from that trouble. And MAXIMI-LIAN recalling his forces, peaceably applyed himselfe to the government of · Behemia, without that any matter of moment happened, vntill that in the yeere 1554, he together with his father sent his Ambassadors to congratulate the marriage of his cofin King PHILIP to marrie the daughter of King HENRY the eight, then by the death of her brother EDVVARD, Queene of England. In the yeere 1558 he was present at the Coronation of his father, who by the Emperour CHARLES the fifth was adopted Emperor; and for such accepted by the Princes of Germany. Afterwards taking his way with his father towards Viena, he returned into Behemia; where within a while after, understanding of the death of his Vncle and father in law the Emperor CHARLES, he with great pompe celebrating his Obsequies; sent Ambassadors to his cosin Philip to condole the death of the deceased Emperour. In which actions ending the yeere present and next following; in the yeere 1560, after foure moneths vacancie, I OHN AN-GELO DE MEDICIS being chosen Pope, and called Pivs the fourth; he fent his Ambassadors to yeeld his obedience to the Church of Rome. And in the yeere 1562, FERDINAND desiring that his sonne MAXIMILIAN should succeede bim in the Empire, assembled a Councell in Franckford, wherein pro- Maximilian poning to the Electors his determination, he so handled the matter, that by the definant common consent and goodwil of all men, Maximilian was chosen and crow- of the Romaner. ned King of the Romanes; with great applause of the Germanes, and of the Italians, which for his rare qualities deerely loued him. Then beeing according to his fathers defire created his fucceffor, he departed towards Viena, first visiting his fifters which were in applied, where he remained untill the yeere 1564, in

Maximilian denied to pay the accustomed tribute to the Turke for the kingdome of Hanzary.

Ziobet taken

which yeere his father died; whose obesequies he together with his brothers fumptuoully celebrated. After which, he received Ambaffadours from the Princes, which as to the fucceffue Emperour and King of Hungary and Behamia came to doe him honour, amongst many which thither came, were the Ambassadours of Spaine and of Portugall. MAXIMILIAN being then received and accepted by the Christians for lawfull Emperour; in the beginning of his raigne denied to pay to So LIMAN the Emperour of the Turkes, that acknowledgement which his father FERDINAND yeelded to pay for the kingdome of Hangary : and fo the veere 1565 being come, inuading the state of Transiluania, he tooke certaine places. Whereupon SOLIMA N fending a great armie against him, in the behalfe of the Vaiuode I OHN, tooke many townes of importance. But Casak fending LAZARVS SCHVEN BY for Generall of his armie, not onely recoursed what was taken, but also tooke Toccas with some other places, greatly endamaging the Transiliumian; who being aided by the Turkes infinitely troubled C # s AR, and notwithstanding that by reason of winter, it had been fit to have retired to have wintred his armie, yet he defifted not from molefting him. But being vnable of himself to make head against C # s at s forces, he procured by the Turks meanes to cause MAXIMILIAN to retire from that enterprise: for which, being an earnest sutor, he obtained such fauour, that Soliman in the yeere 1566, with 120000. men innaded Hungary: the forewarning of whole comming reuealed by a Turke taken prisoner by certaine souldiers feruing his brother CHARLE s, was a great furtherance to the Emperours proceedings: for he making provision accordingly, so ordred the matter that he was relieued by all the Princes of Christendome: particularly by Pope Pivs Qvintys (who this yeere succeeded Pivs the fourth in the Papacie) and by the Dukes of Florence, of Manton, of Ferrara, and by many other Princes as well of Italy and France as of Germany: fo that he having leuied an armie of threescore and tenne thousand men, made his brother Fend 1-NAND, Archduke of Austrich, Generall thereof, who with those forces comming . to lawarin, purposed to have attempted Strigonium; but vnderstanding that Soli-MAN departing from Belgrade came to Buda, and from Buda was gone to Zighet; he retiring, perswaded NICHOLAS SIDRIN, a Nobleman of fingular valour in Hungary, to continue in the government of that fortresse, whereof he was Captaine, promifing that he would not faile to relieue him. SOLIMAN after many difficulties, being come to Zighet (which is fituate in a fennie countrie betweene Creatia and Hungary) within few daies with continual affaults both by day and night so oppress it, that notwithstanding the great valour of SIDRIN, who failed in nothing that might concerne himselfe or G = s A a, neither left any thing vnattempted that might hinder the purposes of the Barbarian, vsing all meanes to defend that fortresse: in the end with great slaughter of his people it was by the Turke taken. But that Barbarian had not time to enjoy the fruites of his victorie, for being loden with yeeres, and ouercome by his difeafe, which was the bloudie fluxe, he ended his daies before that he was mafter thereof; MAMOMET Basha with great policie and cunning concealing his death untill the creation of a new Emperour, and vntill that place being of such importance was taken.

Zighet being taken, Nicholas Sidrinthe Gouernour thereof, a man for his worth, his valour, and for his faith and trust incomparable, was slaine. There likewife came into the Turkes power, Iulia, befides other places which were taken the yeere before, with incredible loffe and domage to the Christians, which without effecting any notable matter in that enterprise (the Turkes armie being retired) were by the Emperour discharged. And in the yeere 1567, the Emperor through the mediation of MAHOMBT Basha, treating with SELIM(who succeeded his father Solim Anin his estate) of a truce, having first garrisoned lanaring retired with his Court into Viena, and fought to extinguish the new civill warre kindled in Germany. For I OHN FREDERICK, sonne of the Elector Avgvstvs Duke of Saxony favouring GROMPACH, a Rebell of the Empire, it seemed that the civill warre would have begun againe: but GROMPACH having furprised the Fortreffe of Gosta from the Elector Av G v s T v s, who would doe nothing contrarie to the decree of the Councell at Augsburgh, where GROMPACH be- Grompach taing againe proclaimed a rebell: and having amaffed together a good number of ken and execumen of warre, which being drawne to an head, after much refiftance, GROM-PACH together with IOHN FREDERICK the sonne of Duke Avg vs Tvs. were taken prisoners, with whose apprehension the civill warres of Germany being ended GROMPACH Was quartered aline, and Duke I OHN FREDERICK detained in prison. The Emperour having in the meane time relieued Schwendi, who after the departure of the Turkes armie, was by the Transiluanian besieged in Toccay; and shortly after repelling the enemie, tooke many Holds in Transiluania, to the great prejudice of the Vaiuode. But vinderstanding that in the same yeere 1567 SBLIM had graunted and confirmed the truce required by CESAR, with the fame conditions that FERDINAND obtained the fame, and that SELIM retired his armie: MAXIMILIAN accommodating the affaires of his estate, lived all the rest of his life time in peace, having in vaine attempted to recover Transiluania. left through the death of IOHN Vaiuode to STEPHEN BATTOR. Who in the yeere 1574, CHARLES the ninth King of France being dead, and HENRY Duke of Anion and King of Polania, through his brothers death being called to the Crowne of Erance; after much contention was chosen King of Polonia; notwithstanding that MAXIMILIAN vsed all meanes possible to have been King thereof, for many of the Electors fauoured him; which failing, he became to melancholike, that he was neuer after that time feene to be merrie, imagining that the wavering instabilitie of the Polacres had bereaued the house of Aufrich of that kingdome, but yet he left nothing vndone that might disturbe BAT-TO R. With which actions comming to the end of the yeere 1577, he affembled the Diet of Ratisbone, where ving all meanes that in him lay, that his eldest sonne RODVLEH might remaine his heire in the Empire, in the end by the consent of the Electors, he obtained his fuite. And in the fame Diet he confirmed FRANCIS DE MEDICIS with the favour and consent of those Princes, in the title of great Duke of Tuscane, graunted by Pope Pivs the fifth to Cosmothe great, in the vecre 1566.

MAXIMILIAN living but a few moneths after the election of his sonne, being betweene fiftie one and fiftie two yeeres old, and oppressed with the retention of his vrine, to the great griefe and forrow of his people, ended his terrestriall life. He was a Prince for pietie and the bountie of his minde, truly fo fin-The death of gular, that if the troubles and civill warres in Germany had not weakened and Maximilian. diminished the forces and power of the Empire, would not have left any meanes vnattempted to haue repressed the greatnes of the Turkith Empire. His bodie and minde being accompanied with memorable maietie and indgement. He was a personage of common stature, had a full face replenished with grauitie, his head was somewhat bauld, he spake readily all the tongues which at this day are spoken in the most pricipall prouinces of Europe, so naturally, as if he had bin

nursed and bred up in them. He was most diligent and prompt in giuing judgement, and a great fauourer of men of vnderstanding, to which he gaue great pensions: and particularly loued Mathematicians, and Antiquaries, as a man which was greatly delighted in both those faculties. He was very active of his bodie, and therewith very pitifull. He left behinde him tenne children, fixe fonnes and foure daughters. His daughters were Is ABEL married to her Vncle PHILLP King of Spaine. MARY Was Wife to CHARLES the ninth King of France. ANN Band ELE-NORwere then but children. His fonnes were RODVLPH, the now Emperour. and MATTHIAS, in the time of the late Prince of Orange was chosen by the Estates Gouernour of the Low Countries. A LBERTY's afterwards made a Cardinall and Archbithop of Toledo, and fince then renouncing his Ecclefiafficall dignities. is married to I s ABB 1 the Infant of Spaine, and by her is Duke of Burgundy. MAXI-MILIAN, and VENCESLAVS. He had but one onely wife, after whose decease he neuer would marrie any other. He was blindly very religious, and with great honour and reuerence obseruing the greatnes of the Popes, he endeuoured to haue caused the rest of the Princes of Germany to haue done the like.

RODVLPH THE SECOND.

# THE LIFE OF RODVLPH THE SECOND OF THAT NAME,

AND CXVIII. ROMANE EMPEROR NOW RAIGNING.



He Imperiall Maiestie, being become in a manner hereditarie in the house of Austrich, was after the death of MAXI-MILIAN the fecond of that name, with the generall affent of the Princes of Germany, confirmed to his sonne Ro-DV LPHKing of Bohemia and of Hungary, chosen a little before at his fathers entreatie King of the Romanes; who affurning (together with his high dignitie) a minde and thoughts worthie an Emperor, hath euer hitherto in his

gouernment shewed himselfe in all his actions so rightly honourable, that it is to be hoped (sparing him life) he will not onely in some fort restore to the Empire the ancient dignitie and reputation thereof, but also recouer such countries belonging thereto, as are vsurped by such as are enemies to the same. Presently after his coronation, for his better establishment in his new dignitie, he sent to the Pope to be by him therein confirmed, and therewith to request him to declare The Emperour him for the eldest some of the Church : and then calling a Councell at Ratisbone, fictond fint to where ving all his powers to the end that matters concerning the Romane reli-the Poper to be gion might be reformed, he earnestly pressed all the Princes of Germany to conmedin the Emfent to his new reformation. And then dispatching Ambassadours to the Empe-pire, and to be tour of the Turks, to procure a reconfirmation of the truce taken made betweene declared eldeft him and his father MAXIMILIAN, he in the meane time perswaded his brother church. MATTHIAS, who was gone into Flanders with a resolution to make himselfe Lord of those provinces; that abandoning what he had vndertaken, he should returne into Germany, shewing him how dangerous a matter it would be, if through his fault the troubles of those countries should be encreased; but his perswasions Duke Methias as then little availed against his resolution: but yet shortly after through discont the prominers ment betweene the Duke and the States of those countries, he leaving them re- of the Love

turned (with little honour) into Germany. After this, for almuch as the Archbishop Countries. of Colen, one of the Princes Electors, forfaking the Pope, was become a Caluinift, and had married a wife, the Emperour and fundrie Potentates in Germany tooke armes against him; but especially the Chanons of that Church of Colen, which expelling him, chose another Bishop, so that he was afterwards constrained to come to the States of the Low Countries for reliefe. And fo for a space in the beginning the Emperour continued very folicitous, to haue aduaunced and established the Popes lawes and authoritie; not onely in his hereditarie estates and dominions, but generally through the whole Empire, vntill that A MVRATH the third, Emperour of Turkes, after long confultation having resolued to make a generall conquest of Hungary, together with fundrie countries bordring vpon the same, by the ordinarie incursions of the Turkes, contrarie to the truce, spoyling and robbing his countries, so awakened the Emperor, that leaving to hinder the preaching of the Gospell, he was constrained to employ his wits together with his whole power for the defence of his estate, against so mightie a common enemie: who enuying the greatnes of the house of Austrich, for that it in sundrie parts of the world made head against him : about a people called I feechipreuily picking a quarrell, he first began his warres in Croatia; wherein after the spoyle of the countrie, the Basha of Bosna tooke the citie of Wibitz. Whereupon the Emperour folicited the Princes of Germany for aide, who confidering the greatnes of the daunger, promised their assistance. But before that their forces tooke the field, fixe thousand foote, and fine hundred horse of the Christians, having in Creatia for their refuge taken the woods, mountaines, and places of hard accesse, were by the Turkes so oppressed, that few of them escaped with their lines. For refelling of which outrage, the Emperour affenibling the States of Slefia and Morauia, perswaded them to vnite their forces with the rest. But the aides from out of Germany came fo flowly, that after the ouerthrow and flaughter of feuen thoufand men in Croatia, the Turkes surprised the strong Castle of S. George; wherein after that they cruelly without respect of age or fexe had put to the sword all that were therein: firing the Castle, they departed : and in their retreit cut off a connov of three hundred wagons, loden with provision for the reliefe of the fouldiers garrisoned in that province.

After these and many other roades and incursions made in Creatia, and in Hun-

Ffff 3

chiefly for that the plague was false amongst them, leaving strong garrisons in

Ruda ouer-

throwne and

their Holds, they retired , and so the warres for that winter ended. But the next foring being come, the Emperour writing to the Turke to know the reason of these so hostile inuations contrarie to the truce, was by the great Turkes owne letter for answere put out of doubt whereto he should trust; who most proudly denouncing warre against him and all his abbettors, fent the Beglerbey of Greeia into Croatia, who with a huge armie belieging the firong Caftle of Sife, in fhort space tooke it, cutting in pieces, and drowning all that they found therein. This happened upon the third of September 1593. These inuations caused the Emperour not onely to craue aide of the Princes and free cities of Germany, but also of other Princes further remote: which being foone graunted, came fo flowly forwards, that SINAN Basha besieging the citie of Velbrin, and the defendants seeing no possibilitie long to hold the place, abandoning the citie, were by the Turkes cut in pieces. From thence the Batha went to Paletta, which within few daies fiege yeelded to the Turkes also.

But yet a length an armie of the Christians passing the river Danubius, so met with the Turkes, that making flaughter of a great number of them, they released many Christian Captines: wherewith encouraged, the Christians presently besieged the citie of Alba Regalis: but within few daies after, they were aduer-The Basha of tifed of the comming of the Basha of Buda, with an armie of 2000 strong, and thirtie peeces of Ordenance, to relieue the citie and to raife the fiege; whom the Imperialists the Christians (rising from before the citie) encountring, ouerthrew and put to flight, and in the chace had the execution of the greatest part of their e-

nemies.

Shortly after the Emperors Lieutenant belieging the Castle of Sabatzka, garrisoned by the Turkes, did with the Cannon to foundly beate the same, that Saharikataken the breach being made affaultable was entred; and all that there lay in garrifon. were put to the sword; and a strong garrifon left to guard the place: whereby the countrie was freed from their wonted oppressions.

Presently upon the taking of Sahatzka, the Christians belieged the citie of Filek, a firong place of great importance in the vpper Hungary; for the vnfetting whereof the Turkes drawing their garrifons in that quarter, leuied an armie of 18000 men, and therewith marched by might vntill they came necreto the

An ouerthrow given to the Turkes by the Christians, the 30.of Nonember, 1593.

Filektakenby the Christians.

citie: whereof the Generall of the Emperors armie being advertised, out of the wholearmie made choile of 7000 men: with which full enly fetting upon the Turkes in their tents, he gave them such a camizado, that they trusting more to their beeles then their hands were so put to sout, that 6000 of them remained in the fields, foode for the foules of the zire: and amongst them the Ballia of Themesuare, the Governor of Filek, and many of great account. At this our throw the Christians besides 29 peeces of Artillerie tooke 200 Wagons loden with victuals; with which they returned to the fiege of the citie, which they so battered, that the breaches being made affaultable, the citie was entred and taken, and the defendants put to the swordeshole in the Castle notwithstanding resolute in their desence, within two daies after being by the Christians assaulted, and the Castle entred, had their throates cut also. Yet there remained some 800, which being retired to another Castle, and seeing how the rest of their company fped, yeelded vpon composition of their lines saued, and to depart with what they could carrie upon their backes. The taking of this citie strakefuch a

feare into the Turkes in Setschine, Blawensteene, Sallek, Dregel, and Palanke, strong townes in Hungary, that they abandoning them, retired some to Hatwan, and fome to Buda for their refuge. In the same moneth were also recoursed from the Turkes the townes of Ainacke, Sollocke, and Wellke, by meanes whereof, the countrie was freed round about.

After this, the Turkes in Sifeg, Castrowitz, and Petrinia to the number of three 19. December. thousand, thinking for revenge to have done some great exploit passed the river 1593. Sana, with a determination to have spoiled the countrie: but they were so welcomed by the borderers, that 500 of them remaining vpon the earth for hosta-An expedition. ges, the most of the rest for haste were drowned; so as few returned to beare the newes of their expedition. The joy for the good successe of the Christians wars this yeere, fo stirred up the harts of the Germane Princes, that fouldiers were leuied, Artillerie prouided, and euery where new prouision was made for the next yeeres warres.

In the beginning of March following, the Emperors brother MATTHIAS being Generall of the Christian armie: the citie of Nouigrade lying neere to Nouigradeta-Buda, was by the Christians befreged; wherein the garrison fearing their owne kin by the Chris weakenes, and doubting rescue: after a battery made, and some assaults given thereto, yeelded the citie to the Archduke, vpon condition of their lines faued, and to depart with their clothes on their backes, and their Cemitars by their fides. This towne gotten (being a place of great importance) was by the Archduke furnished with a very strong garrison, vnder the commaund of REBEY a noble gentleman of Hungary. But the Turkish Gouernor of Nonigrade being retired to Buda, was there in reward of his good service, by the commaund of the

Basha thereof, in the night hanged vpon a tree neere to the gate of the citie. About this time the Emperor fending his Ambassadors to the Muscouite, 1594. implored his aide in his warre against the Turkes: to whom the Muscouite promifed 500000 Ducats in hand, and 400000 yeerely fo long as the warres should Muscounte for

continew, but yet with a request that the Emperor should not conclude any ride against the Torke. peace with the Turke without his confent.

The Christians having long in vaine besieged Strigonium and Hatwan, and brought the same to such extremitie that they could hardly have held out any longer: vpon the report of the comming of SINAN Basha with an armie. they raising the siege from before those cities departed: by reason whereof the poore Christians inhabiting the countrie thereabouts, which had long hoped of libertie, became againe feruill to their infulting enemies; which the Empefor knowing, and herewith confidering how hardly of himselfe he should be able to maintaine so chargeable a warre against so mightie an enemie, he by his Ambassadors sued to the Princes of Christendome, but chiefly to those of Germany, for aide; and for preuention of the imminent daunger likely to enfue, he fummoned a Councell to be hadd in the citie of Ratisbone; whither he together with the Princes of the Empire being come; after wonted ceremonies, the Emperor manifested vnto them the perfidie of the Turkish Emperor, who contrarie to his oath folemnely sworne, had as an enemie to all Christians, with his armies not onely spoiled all Hungary, but fundrie other prouinces of the Empire : for redreffe whereof, and the repressing of his infolent pride, he entreated their extraordinarie affistance: whereto (although not in so ample manner as he required) they condescended. But through the present want thereof, SINAN Basha, after the taking of Dotis (astrong townebetweene Strigonium and Raab) with an Ffff 4

of: not without suspition of treason in the Countie HARDECK, who had the

commaund of the place: for which his perfidie, he was not long after by the Emperors commaundement committed in Viena to prison; and within short

space after, his treason being further discouered, he was in the said citie your a

the Rascians, revolting from the Turkes, gaue his subjects leave to take armes

them taken from the Turkes; and moued by their example, shortly after resolued

to doe the like; and therewith joyned in league with the Transiluanian Prince;

who alreadie had fent his Ambaffadors to the Emperor Rodvier to Prage

new scaffold built of purpose for him justly executed.

wherewith the Countie MANSFELT being made Lieutenant Generall under

Duke MATTHIAS, tooke the field, and belieged the citie of Strigonium; which (af-

ter a long tedious fiege and fundrie bold attempts given by the Turkes for the vn-

Raab taken by

after a most furious batterie with 60 peeces of Cannon, and many terrible affaults, with the loffe of many thousands of men given, he became Master there-

X194 ·

The Prince of Transiluania renolteth from Blie Turke.

The Moldauians and Walachians rebell a gainst the Turke.

in Bohemia; where betweene the Emperor and the saide Prince it was conclu-A league betweene the Em-Prince of Tranfiluania.

The death of Amurath the great Turke the 18 of lanu ary 15 95.

at Constantinople in December 1594, fell so sicke that he died thereof. After the taking of Raab, SINAN Basha thinking to have made all smooth before him, belieged the citie of Romara, from whence after three weckeshard fiege, and many terrible affaults given, hearing of the comming of the Archduke MAT-THIAs, he retired to the late gotten city Dotis, where he discharged his army. The

Sundrie Supplies fent to aide the Emperor in his warres against the Turkein Hungary.

of Germany but out of Italy also, as from the Pope, the great Duke of Tuscane, the Dukes of Ferrara, and of Mantea with others, which together with the aides of Germany, amounted to the number of 50000 foote, and about 15000 horse,

In this yeere the Tartars by the Turkes direction, and not without the confent of fundrie great men in Transiluania; lying in the borders thereof to entrap SIGISMVND BATTOR Prince of that countrie: failing of their purpose (the treason being discouered and some of the conspirators justly executed) brake through the countrie. Wherein they vling all manner hostilitie did irrepairable harme, and there went into Hungary, where they joyned with the Turkish armie: hereupon the Prince iovning in league with his poore oppressed neighbours.

against them, and to make boote of them and their goods, wheresoeuer they should finde them. The Transiluanians herewith encouraged, and in hope of fome rich prey, taking armes, first went to the great river Danuby, where they tooke certaine Turkes ships very richly fraught, and therewith much treasure, which was bound to the Turkes armie in Hungary. The Moldanians and Walachians, vpon the newes of the Transiluanians revolt, and of the great bootie by

ded; that in both defensiue and offensiue warre to be made against their common enemie, the one should assist the other; and that no truce, peace, defensive and offensive be made against their common enemie: and that neither of or other composition should be made with the Turke, without their mutuall confent and good liking, with feuerall other articles too long to be recited. The reuolt of these Prouinces was so beneficiall to the Christians, and so prejuditiall to their enemies, that (as it was furmifed) Amvanth the great Turke, for anger for the losse of them, and of a seditious tumult of the Ianisaries, happened

departing from Bruffels in Brabant, in Februarie came to Prage in Bohemia in March following. The fame spring also came sundrie good supplies not onely from the Princes

fpring next following at the Emperors especiall request the King of Spaine sent to

the Emprors warres in Hungary, 2000 horse and 6000 soote, vnder the conduct

of Countie Charles Mansfield, aman famous in the low countries for

his feruice against the States, vnder the commaund of the Duke of Parma: who

fetting thereof) was by the Christians taken, in Nouember 1595. Presently after Strigonium ta. fetting thereof) was by the Unrittians taken in Nouember 1993. I telemin after the taking of Strigonium, the Archduke sent certaine troupes to attempt the castle stimin, and 1995. of Plindenburgh, fituate upon the river Danubie, betweene Buda and Strigonium, which without any great refistance they tooke also. The newes of the taking of these places, especially Strigonium, caused greation in most parts of Christendome; but into the Turkes in Buda it strake so great a searc, that the most part of the better fort of the inhabitants were at the point to have abandoned the citie. and had done so had not the Basha, by commaunding the gates thereof to be flut, staied their flight. About the same time that Strigonium was taken, SINAN Basha with a great Sinan Rasha

armie of Turkes hauing made a bridge ouer the Danubie, came into Walachie, ouertbrowne by purpoling to have reduced the fame, together with Transiluania and Moldania in- nians. to the Turkes obeifance: but the inhabitants of those countries having intelligence of his comming, made fuch provision for his entertainment, that after a most doubtfull battaile (continuing from the morning till night) wherein many thousand Turkes being flaine, the rest to saue their lives were driven to flie, and amongst them the old Basha; who making more haste then good speede, was like to have been drowned in a ditch, leaving all his Ordenances, baggage and

prouision in prey to the Christians. About the same time, the Turkes to the number of about 20000 men, with fire and fword entring Croatia, were by the Christians in such manner encountred and ouerthrowne, that few of them escaped with their lines: with which Turkes ouer. good fuccesse encouraged, the Christians besieging the citie of Petroiina, tooke throwne by the the same; the taking whereof caused infinite ioy in all that part of the countrie. Christians in The old enemie to the Christians, SINAN Basha, in hope to have been revenged for his late ouerthrow, having made a new bridge ouer the Danubie, againe with an armie of 70000 men entred Walachie: against whom came the Prince of Transiluania with as great an armie: but before they two could meete, the Turkes and Ianifaries were polieffed with fuch feare, that without fight of the Prince or The cowardly

his armie they retired, together with their Generall SINAN, who for hafte left flight of the

his Tent behinde him, with good store of Ordnance, munition and prouision for lachie.

the warres. Vpon whose hastie retreit, the Prince comming to Tergousta (where-

in lay foure thou fand Turkes in garrison) summoned the Castle to yeeld : but the

Ianifaries therein franding upon their defence, refused all composition: whereupon the Prince by batterie hauing made an affaultable breach, the place was en- Tergoniflatatred; wherein the Turkes having their throates cut, in the Castle were found 42. Prince of Tranpieces of Artillerie. Before the Prince his departure from this place, 4000 Turks, silvania. which by SINAN Basha had been sent a boote haling, being with 60000 head of cattle returned, and thinking to have found him where they left him, were for their paines taking all put to the fword. Befides thefe, many other great exploites were perfourmed by this worthy Prince, and more would have been, had not the Chauncellor of Poland(enuying his good fuccesse) fought and practised his ouerthrow; to the great hindrance of the Christians, and aduancement of the Turkes proceedings.

The Spring following, the Emperours armie under the conduct of the Baron of Smarshenburgh, taken the field, marched towards Vaccia garrisoned by the

by the Turks.

Vaccia aban- Turkes; which hearing of the approch of the Christian armie, abandoning the citie and fetting the same on fire, fled to Posth. After their departure, the Chriflians befieged Hatwan, which being taken by affault, all that therein were, without respect of age, sexe, or dignitie, past by the edge of the sword.

In the meane time while these things were a doing MAHOMET the Turkish Emperour with an armie of two hundred thousand Turkes and Tartars, and three hundred pieces of Artillerie came into Hungary, wherein, within few daies after his thither comming, he belieged the citie of Agria, (a place of great importance in the upper Hungary) part whereof after a long terrible siege and many desperate affaults given, he tooke by force of armes, putting to the fword all that were therein: the rest fearing the like iffue, yeelded vpon composition of their lines faued, and to depart with their baggage, and their fwords by their fides.

After the taking of Agria, MAXIMILIAN the Emperours brother, and then

Generall of his armie, joyning with the Prince of Transiluania (who with 18000

men horse and soote, and sortie pieces of Artillerie came to his aide) taking the

field with an armie of 60000 men, whereof 32000 were horfemen, refoluing to giue the Turke battaile, came to the other fide of a river which parted his and the Turkes armies; where after many bloudie skirmishes and euents of warre, the two armies ioyned in battaile; wherein the Christians fought so valiantly, that having put almost all the Turkes whole armie to route; and MAHOMET the great Turke himselfe with the chiefest of his Bashaes being fled; the Christians euen then when they should have consummate their victorie, by base greedie seeking for pillage, gaue their vanquished enemies time and oportunitie againe to gather head; and by charging them in this their diforder, to ouerthrow them and put them to flight. In this battaile, of the Christians were slaine 20000 men, and of the Turkes 60000. After this battaile, wherein either partie ranne from the other. MAHOMET thinking it honour enough for him to haue taken Agria, retired to Belgrado, and thence with much adoe to Constantinople; wherein he hath euer fince kept himself fafe enough from any more hazarding his person in any place of fuch perill. The rest of this yeere and the next were spent of either side for the most part in skirmishes, and sudden inuasions, without ought done of any great importance.

In the yeere following, which was 1598, SIGISMVND the valiant Prince of Transiluania, seeing the countrie of Moldania by the Polonian separated from him and made tributarie to the Turke, and himselfe (as it were) left alone to beare the burthen of the warre against both Turke and Polonian, resolved with himself to refigne the possession of Transilnania to the Emperor Rodylph, as to a Prince then himselfe better able to defend the same: and so retired to line prinate in peace in Slesia, with certaine exhibition sufficient to maintaine him in honorable cstate.

In March following, the citie of Raah one of the most strong cities in Europe, fituate in the hither part of Hungary towards Auftrich, was by the wife conduct of the Baron of Swarzhenburgh lying then in Komara, in a night furprized, and after a long desperate fight possessed wherein beit restwo Ballages and 6000 souldiers flaine, fourescore an genne pieces of Artillerie were taken, to the great ioy of all Hungary and Germany; and the extreme raging griefe of the Turkes, who for foure yeeres space had been Lordsthereof: it being first besieged by SINAN Basha, with an armie of 150. thousand men the space of three moneths; and then betraied by the Countie HARDECK, who had the commaund of the place.

After this fo fortunate recouerie of Raab, the Christians belieging Buda, put the Turkes to fuch diffresse, that they abandoning the citie retired to the Castle. wherein they were fo throughly affailed by Mines, batteries and affaults, that they could not long have held out, if the Christians had been able to have continued Buda befored the fiege: which oppressed by the extremitie of the weather, tired with intolle by the chris rable toyle, and what was worfe, hearing of the comming of a great armie of hism. Turkes to voset the besieged, they firing the suburbes, with great prev retired to Strigonium : from whence they were dispersed to fundrie places there to lie in garrison, to be in the better readines for the next yeeres service. About the fame time, the Turkes having befreged and hattered the citie of Varadin in the vpper Hungary, were (like as the Christians before Buda in the lower Hungary) driuen to raise their siege, and to returne to Buda. Which citie the Baron of Swarzhenburgh the yeers next following attempted to have furprized, and to have made an entrie thereinto by meanes of a Pettar, as he not long before had done by Raab: but failing of his purpose, and being discourred he was driven to depart : but shortly after, the Basha of Buda with a troupe of fixe hundred horse going to bring in a conuoy of victuals for the reliefe of the citie; fell by chaunce into an ambush of certaine hazarders which lay for boote: by the which (after a long fight) being ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, he was brought to the Emperours campe. But the aduenturers returning to trie their further fortune, were gi-

uen to vinderstand, that the Basha of Bosna, with the Saniacques of Zighet, of the

five Churches, and of Coppan, with 10000 Turks were comming (by cutting their

throtes) to free the countrie from their incursions : wherewith nothing difmaied.

these adventurers went to chuse a fit ground to fight with them, whom at the first

meeting they charged, and after a long doubtfull fight ouerthrew : in which en-

counter the Batha himselfe with the greatest part of the Turks, ended their daies.

RODVLPH THE SECOND.

At the same time, in the upper Hungary, IERAIM Basha with an armie of 50000 Turkes came to Solnoch; where understanding of a small armie of the Christians lying at Cassouia, he without daring to attempt ought, retired to Ref. Arich reprisal grade; where he expected the comming of a fleete of ships, fraught with victu- cirifians room als and munition for his armie, and for the reliefe of Buda, Alba Regalis, and other the Danuby. diffressed places, convoyed up the river by 5000 Turkes; whereof the Christianshauing some advertisement, lay in waite for them; and at their comming. by giving a fudden vnexpected charge, overthrowing them, had the spoile of the thips, wherein the goods were valued to be worth a Millian of gold, among which was to the value of about 20000 pound starling in readic money; which was shared amongst the souldiers.

In the beginning of the yeere 1600, the Emperor calling a Diet, folicited the Princes of the Empire for supplies for the warres to be made the next spring: which they promifing, he made the Duke of Mercueur, late Gouernor of Bri- The Duke of taine in France (who affifted by the King of Spaine with about 4000 Spaniards Mercueur Geunder the conduct of Don Ivan DE LAG VNA; and by the rest of the league, Emperinterwarred against the French King: and new with a great number of French foote cerin Hongary and horse, was come to the Emperors service) Generall of all his forces.

Not long after certaine troupes of Wallor, and French men lying in garrifon prallons and in Pappa, a strong towne in the lower Hungary, mutilying and off ging to fell the Frenchmen towne to the Turkes, committed many horrible villanies too loricto be related: mutinging in Pappa, were whereupon the Baron of War Thenburgh ypon intelligence, with air anat the 1000 infily remarked horse and soote made thitherwards with certaine Pettars, thiruch encouraged,

rilians being on either

1498.

uernor of Ow-denburgh in

Babot (ca taken by the Turker very huge armie of Turkes and Tartars (deemed 200000 fitting) came before

The death of haue surprised the citie: but failing, he was in a fallie infortunately with a Musket the Baron of hot flaine. But the citie being neuertheleffe befet, the mutiners were fo much diswartheleffe befet, the mutiners were for much diswartheleffe before the mutiners were for Swarzhenburgh firefled that they resoluted to abandon it, and to flie to the Turkes, which being perceived, fuch order was taken, that they fallying and being difperfed, many of denourgh in Flanders for the them were intercepted, and according to their deferts justly after fundrie man-King of Spaine. ners fo tortured, that happie was he that had but his throte cut. And thus ended that mutinie. Towards the latter end of summer in the yeere 1600, Is a AIM Basha, with a

Babetsca, a strong hold in the lower Hungary; which after one daies batterie and

a breach made, was deliuered into his power. Thence marching with his armie

to Canifia, a towne in the borders of Stiria, for the function thereof in a deepe

fenne, and the strength of the garrison, held impregnable; where whilest with faggots and earth the Turkes were builed to make passage for their armicouer the bogges, they might perceive the Duke of Mercueur, Generall for the Empefor, with an armie of little more then 40000 horse and soote come thither for the reliefe of the place, at their backes readie to charge them: with which the Basha (after knowledge had of their strength) ioyned in battaile; wherein many of either partie being flaine, the night parted the fray. But the next day, the Captaines of the Christians were so much daunted, that they could not be drawne from their strength: which the enemie perceiving, the Tartars were fent abrode to forrage, which roaming vp and downe the countrie for prey, met with a controy of 200 wagons laden with victuals, comming to the reliefe of the Christians, which they tooke, and carried to their campe: the losse whereof added to their former feare, did so much discourage the Christians, that they by night retiring and being by the Turkes perceived and followed, loft (belides certaine pieces of Cannon and the greatest part of their luggage) 3000 men of their arrier guard. Presently after this their hastier exert, the Turkes returned to the fiege of the citie, wherein the garrifon in despaire to be vuser mutinying (and not without suspition of treason in the Gouernor, which afterwards cost him his head) came to a composition to give up the place, upon condition freely to de-

Yet notwithstanding these delasters, the Emperor having obtained both out of Italy and German new Supplies the Duke Mercueur, Generall of the Emperors forces at the time of the yeere fit for fernice with an armie taking the field, belieged the strong towne of Alba Regalis, which for certaine daies he beging with the Cannon, thought to have entred and taken the fame by affault; but being by an ouerloper, aduertifed, that through a lake on the other fide of the city the fuburbs might be furprifed (which being take the towne could not hold out)he fent 1000 chosen men to attempt the same; who notwithstanding that they found greater difficultie in the action then was expected, yet at the length a little beforethe breake of the day they got ouer; at which time vpon a figne given, the Duke on the other fide made flew of fo furious an affault, asthough he would prefently haue entred the citie with his whole forces: whileft the Turkes ranne to answere the alarme medie by the Dake, those which on the other side had past the lake, entring the fir Jurbes vndiscouered, with such terrible cry charged the Turkes at thoure yeares he they in a tumult amazed, fled into the citie, of which, the Chriasha, with an armhem) made a great slaughter. The suburbs wherein consisted

part with bag and baggage. Which being accordingly performed, the Balha

made the towne to be more strongly fortified then ever theretofore.

the chiefe strength of the citie being taken; the Duke the next day with the Cannon having made two places affaultable, the citie was entred, and the gar-Alba Regalis rison put to the sword: onely the Basha, Commaunder of the place was taken, taken by the and fent prisoner to the campe. Presently upon the taking of this citie, the Generall of Turkes forces hearing that Alba Regalis was diffressed, leuied an army the 60 thousand strong to come to the reliefe thereof, who notwithstanding that he was aduertifed that the citie was alreadie taken, yet he neuertheleffe, in hope to ouerthrow the Christians, or by finding the citie vnrepaired, held on his way thitherwards: whereof the Duke aduertifed, with an armie of a farre leffe number, but much better men (for the most of the Turkes were but Visonios lately taken vp) made towards him: and the two armies drawing neere the one to the other, a hot skirmish was entertained betwixt them; and the Duke being ascertained of the basenes of the Turkish souldiers, resolutely giving the onset, at the Anomic of the first charge had the execution of 6000 of them, and had ouerthrowne the whole Turkes for land the armie, had not certaine great troupes of Tartars appeared at their backes; by their which meanes the Christians forbearing to prosecute their good fortune, the Basha had oportunitie to reforme his scattered forces, and so within few daics after to retire to Buda, but in his retreit they following him in the arrierguard. and tooke many prisoners, and amongst them sundrie French men of those which had mutinied in Pappa; which Duke of Mercueur (for that they had for his fake come to those warres) procured to be pardoned.

Shortly after the Archduke FERDINAND with an armie attempting by fiege. battery, and all warlike stratagems to haue recourred Canifia, lay before it yntill that through the desperate valour of the defendants (the most of which were Burgundians and French men) together with the Frost, Snow, and extreme tem- canifica befored pessions windes which then happened, he was driven to raise his siege; from and given over by the christis. which his people made so hastie a retreit, that they could not be induced to take and

their Ordinance with them. The taking of Alba Regalis the last yeere by the Christians, being a place of such

importance, did so much anger MAHOMBT the great Turke, that he resoluing either againe to recouer the same, or else in the action to hazard the greatest part besi-gadin Maof his forces, caused to that effect an armie of about 100000 vnder the com- home Ballag maund of MAHOMET Basha to be leuied; who therewith comming from Adrianople to Belgrado, and thence to Buda, about the middest of August sat downe before Alba Regalis; where he having planted his Cannon, made to terrible a batterie, as the like bath been feldome feene, but by reason of the marishes and fenny groundes, vicrewith the citie was enuironed, he could not conveniently bring his people to give the affault; whereupon he caufing with great difficultie thoic bogges to be made firme ground, brought his men to affault the counterfearph, made without the walles for the defence of the foote of the rampart: in which attempt he having loft many men, in the end he conftrained the Christians to withdraw themselves within their ramparts; to be briefe, after many sallies and retreits, and many affaultes giuen, with the loffe of an infinit number of men, and effusion of much blood, the Christians were driven to give care to a parley; during the time whereof, a damned villaine (who having renounced his faith was become a Turke) brought a battalion of the Turkes to a place which he knew to be but meanely guarded; where they being entred, made fuch a noils, mat the rest of the army thereby perceiuing their entry were therewith fo much encouraged, that they againe ranne to the walles, where the poore Christians being on either

betraied by the Countie.

#### RODVLPH THE SECOND.

Alba Regali saken by the Turkes fide by the multitude of their enemies oppreffed, were for the most part valiantly fighting miserably slaine: onely the Governour and some few other, which after the furie were in their lodging found sore wounded, had their lives saued. Thus was the strong citie of Alba Regalis, which eleven moneths before was by surprise taken by the Christians, now againe recovered by the Turkes.

Shortly after the loss of Alba Regalis, the Emperours sorees to the number of

fome thirtie thousand men were drawne to an head in Kemara, from whence in hope by doing fome notable exploit to have recovered their loft honour, in not relicuing Alba Regalis, they went to Buda; where after the breaking of a bridge made over the Danubie betweene Peflb and Buda, they by a stratagem tooke the

Pefils taken by the Christians.

ta di Salahari Marajaran

citie of Pells, together with the suburbes of Buda; from whence after that they had battered and sundrie waies attempted the castle, and brought the same to the point to have yeelded for want of victuals) they retired, for feare of an infinite multitude of Tartars, which making passage through Walachie, were comming to vnset the citie.

After this many services were worthely perfourmed by the Christians, which

After this, many seruices were worthely persourmed by the Christians, which the breuitie of this historie permitteth not at large to be related. And whereas I said in the beginning of this discourse, that when this Emperous was advanced to the Imperial dignitte, it was hoped of him that he would not onely haue restorted the auncient Maiestie of the Empire, but also haue inlarged the shortened bounds thereof: so without all doubt (as it appeareth by the histories of his time) he would in farre more ample manner haue freed the same from the miserable servitude wherein they yet languish, if the rest of the Christian Princes would haue aided him with any indifferent assistance: or what is lesse; if some professing Christ had not in the highest of his sortune, by crossing him advanced the Turks proceedings, raising troubles, dissention and civill warres in the countries of Moldania, Walachia, and Transilmania, which countries so long as they continued sirmely vnited to the Empire, did not onely molest the Turkes, and often times defeate whole armies of them, but also gaue the Emperor oportunitic (by his Licutenants) to recouer fundric townes in Hungary; wherein being in powerno way

The Channeellor and other great men in Peland, the Polift King winking thereat.

coparable to the ancient Romane Emperors) he hath admirably to his high honor, maintained againft the most mightie Monarch of the earth, a long, chargeable and bloudie war; such as no Germane Emperor since the beginning of the Turkish Monarchie hath euer waged the like: and therein notwithstanding the inequalitie of their forces, hath (without diminution) held and yet still holdeth what he inherited, or as much in value. But forasmuch as it is incl. a mightie hand of God only to redeeme that never sufficiently pixed kingdom constructions thereof, from the miserable oppression of the Turk is: To conclude, I humbly before his duine Maiestie to be pleased, so to vnite the hearts and hands of all professing the name of Christ, that they not onely expell the

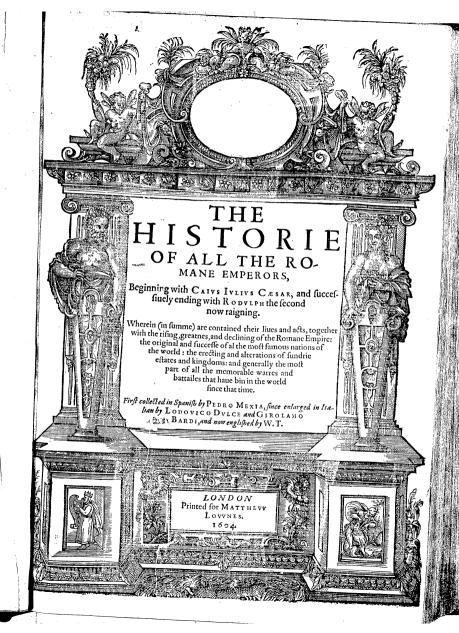
Christian Princes vsurpeth in Europe but also release from seruitude so many thousands of distressed poore soules, which in extreme miserie in similar parts of the world groane vnder the stainth yoke of their barbarous tyrannie.

C 17851 Fol.

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY, NOT FOR REPRODUCTION





## ROVS AND WORTHY KNIGHT

SIR HORACIO VERE, COLLONEL OF AN ENGLISH REGIMENT vnder the States in the Low Countries.

Eing through lingring sicknes con-

strained to leaue the warres, I thought it not fit to melt my time in idlenes, but to undergoe some exercise of the minde, sith strength failed in my body: and for me I thought nothing More fit then to write of warres (vnable to follow them) that it might appeare to the world my thoughts had not for faken Armes, though Armes had caffered me. Debating with my selfe, I at last resolued, that to translate the lives of Emperors was the truest subject and most honorable; full of vertue and valour, the changes of times, the chaunces of wars, the instabilitie of fortune, the force of magnanimitie, and reward of honor. Having with no little paines finished what I aimed at there came more paines into my head, studying to whom I should dedicate my labours; for I assured my selfe that treating of valour and vertue, it must be to one that had both. Inceded not to have past the Seas into Flaunders for a Patrone of my paines, knowing that in England there are so many of such worthy memory, such exquisit knowledge both for counsell and execution, for experience and successe, for discipline and deserts, as in no age our Iland heretofore hath offered, (though in all ages famous:) but it suted with my conceite ra-

ther

#### THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

ther to finde out some that were in present action; to the end that Captaines and Gentlemen after their worthy services done by day, might with reading of honorable deedes recreate themselues at night; and seeing the reward of others courage, redouble their owne in hope (although not to come to be Emperors) yet to clime to honors in their life, and leave to posteritie that which cannot die (though they shall) fame, memorable, and immortall. Nailed (if I may so say) to this opinion, it was easie for me in the Low-countries (without doubt or dispute with my (elfe ) to finde your selfe as the fittest there, both in regard of your honorable services, and vertuous disposition: what I speake is so farre from flattery, that enuie can alleage nothing to the contrarie: besides when I call to minde the honorable services of your auncestors, many yeeres famous for the warres: then the living patterne of a perfect Christian, your renowned brother (whom for honors sake I name) Sir FRAN-CIS VERE Knight, Lord Gouernour of the Briell, whom the Low-countries have found both wife and valorous, and the Spaniards no leffe; (though they wished it had not been so much: ) then againe was f enforced to continew in my proposed purpose. To single out your seuerall services, the manner, the valour, and the successe, were to tell that to the world which it knoweth alreadie. If this in me seeme presumption, excuse it, because it proceedeth from the honor I beare you. If your vertues entertaine my labours: my labours then will easily cleere my errors. So praying to the Almightie to second all your honorable attempts with happie successe, I rest wholy in what I shall be able.

Euerready to doe you feruice, humbly at commaund

W.T RAHERON.



## THE PREFACE TO



Aning determined, yea and sometime promised, following my course alreadie begun, to write something for the common good of my countrey, as in satisfaction and account for the time which I have spent in reading: after many considerations had to that purpose, no kind of writing seemed more sit for me, neither did so much please and farisfie me, as to take in hand some great and notable

historie. Truly I had reason and sufficient ground to do so, for that indeede no kinde of litterature can be written, which may be beneficiall to so many aircibe generally acceptable and pleasing to all; neither that hath bin fo much extolled and commended by wife and great men, as Historie. Aristoria affirmeth it to be profitable for Councels, Senates, and Affemblies, of whose opinion was the good Emperour SEVERVS, who so often as he had occasion to treate and confult of any important matter concerning the wars, called to counfell and was chiefly aduifed by wife men, and fuch as were well read in ancient Histories. ZENO the Prince of the Stoick Philosophers being demaunded by what meanes a man might be made both happie and wife, answered, that he should converse with the dead: which is as much as if he should have faid, let him by reading histories understand and know the acts of the ancient. As for CI-CERO, (before whose judgement I know not whose to preferre)he discoursing of historie, calleth it the record of times, the light of the truth, the Mistris of mans life, the life of memorie, the messenger of antiquitie. Others call it the ground and foundation of the truth : others, the image of humane life : including in few words great praifes and mysteries, and yet true and certaine, if we attentiuely note and confider them. For to the first, it is cleere and manifest that historie is the light of the trueth, and a record of ages and generations, fith that the things which in time are confirmed and brought to nothing, are thereby kept and preferued, yea and it maketh them (whether they will or no) to line and remaine in mans memorie: and it doth in such manner represent things past, that it maketh it seeme vnto vs that we see and attaine to those times, as though that such things had happened in the time wherein we line. If glorie and renowne be so great a good as SALOMON and all the Sages doe extoll the fame to be; and if naturally all men desire to perpetuate their name and memorie, tell me what would be becomethereof if Histories were not? Truly it had been but as the winde, which paffing by is felt, but cannot be kept nor detained. What speech or remembrance had we now had of the great acts of the Greekes and the Romanes, and of other people and nations, if Histories had not been? How had I knowne the clemencie

#### TO THE READER.

of C & s AR, the magnanimitie and largeffe of A L E X AND ER, the bountie and iuflice of TRAIANE, or the vertues and excellencies of these and such other great and noble personages to imitate and extoll them, if not by these meanes? Truly all that is past had bin but as a dreame, which waking, a man hath forgotten, and cannot recite. And our forepassed fathers had not onely bin deprived of their fame and renowne, but innumerable great acts had bin left vindone, but that the emulation of glorie and renowne made them to be undertaken: for it is certaine, that the Trophees of MILCIADES stirred up THEMISTOCLES; and the historic that HOMER Wrote of Acuilles, Alexander the Great; and of him, Iv-LIVS CESAR; and fo of others other men to perfourme great and noble exploites. The matter resteth not here, that Historie is onely a record and preseruer of humane vertues: but hath also bin very necessarie for the confernation of dinine matters; for it hath preserved in memorie the lives, martyrdomes, and godly examples of the Prophets, Apostles, and Martvrs, and the greatest part of our holy law and facred Scripture is historie, being the ground and foundation wherupon standeth all the rest of the building. If not, I pray tell me (passing ouer the rest in silence) what else is the holie Gospell, but an historie and a true relation ?

To returne to policie and humane conversation, what were it, if the Chronicles and memorie of matters past were wanting? For without them the nobleffe and antiquitie of houses and linages could not be knowne and continued. and as little the right and title to estates; neither should we have knowne the beginning and originall of people, Kingdomes and Nations, neither the lawes to gouerne them could have bin preferued: and in all things would have bin diforder and confusion, as we see to be amongst those Nations which want the same. So that truly and with much reason it is said, that Historie is the schoolemistresse and director of mans life, fith that befides what is alreadie fet downe, it is very neceffarie and expedient for all estates, qualities, and ages: for to simple young men it giucth the wifedome of ancient old men, and maketh them expert without having had experience: for as faith CICERO, for a man not to know what passed before his time is to be euer a child. So that justly it may be said, that historie maketh men expert, wife, and circumfpect: for by examples and demonstrations of matters past, it giveth a rule and direction to determine of matters present(yea and what is more and seeming impossible) that a man may before hand dinine and vnderstand the issue and successe of his actions and attempts: for knowing the beginning and the middle, he may conjecture them to have the like issue and event as such other like actions have had: for as SALOMON faith, sith there is no new thing under heaven, and that all that is hath bin, and that which is to come shall be as what is past, it appeareth plainly voto vs, that he that hath vnderstood, seene, and well considered it, may well perceive what will follow. And as I fay, this fruite and profit is common to all forts of men: for Kings and Princes in Histories may finde others whom they may imitate, and with whom they may emulate and contend in vertues and excellencies: and other wicked ones, whose fashions and conditions they may shew and abhorre, and by whose ends and fame they may take example: Captaines, aduice, policies, acts of fortitute and magnanimitie, which they may vie and make profit of : and feeing the errors and daungers, may know how to avoide them. Governours and Magiftrates, lawes, customes, and manner of gouernment, which they may hold for a rule. Finally, there is not any kind of people, but out of Historie may draw a rule and example vnder which they may line wifely and vertuoufly, and warning to

#### TO THE READER.

beware of the contrarie. For the true historic leaueth no vertue without commendation, neither vice without reprehension, and to al indifferently giuing their due place and worth; is a testimonie against the wicked, a reward to the just, and a treasurie and depositorie of heroicall vertues and noble acts. Of all other Artes and Sciences, each of them hath a marke and white whereat to aime: historie comprehendeth the whole, and is the practife and example of the rest. Great and excellent are other Arts and Sciences, but men are most commonly drawne therto through the couctous defire they have thereby to attaine to riches and honours: onely historie is read for the loue of it selfe, no other thing is therein expected, but to know which is the true guerdon. Historic of it selfe may liue without the Sciences, and so can none of them without it, for it hath been the preseruation and storehouse of them all, and so consequently by this account ought to be preferred before them all. Principally for the vie of historie letters were found out, to the end to leave to those that were to come, a memoriall of what was past: and as other Arts and Sciences were written, it was but to leave an historic of them. So as the matter being well weighed, we may fay that all that is written, feeing it is written for a memoriall and to be kept in remembrance, is but hiftorie. Another excellencie (besides what is alreadie said) hath historie aboue all other Artes; for all the Sciences are not generally pleafing to all men; fundrie please sundrie humours: but historie to all wits is indifferently acceptable. The Philosophers sometime haue been driven out of Rome, and in like manner the Masters in Rhetorike and Art Oratorie, for the dislike the people haue had of them: and in a long time Philicke was not admitted. The Mathematicians and Aftrologians have fometimes been banished from thence also, and some nations haue not allowed of certaine Arts, neither do they yet at this day embrace them: but the Histories and Annales of times past, neuer hath there been any man but hath loued and desired them, and respected those which have been the authors thereof. Yea the reading of histories is so delightfull, that we willingly give care to fables and tales for the sympathie they hold with true histories. Of all the excellent Kings and Captaines that have been in the world, I have not read of any but were delighted with reading the Chronicles, out of which they drew no leffe rule and discipline for what they were to vndertake, then from the exercise and vie of what they did: yea of LvcIVs LvcVLLVs we reade, that reading made him a wife and excellent Captaine. And great men in time past made so great account of histories, that they not onely spent much time in reading them, but did euen glorie, and made no lesse account to write histories, then to atchieue matters worthie to be written: some of which, the histories they wrote made them little lesse excellent and renowned, then the battailes they fought: as amongst the Greekes were Herodotvs, Thycidides and Timothevs: and amongst the Latines, MARCUS PORCIUS CATO, QUINTUS FABIUS, ASI-NIVS POLLIO, and the great Cæfars CAIVS IVLIVS, and his nephew Oct Avivs Avgvstvs, and some others of the one and other nation. Finally, the benefits and excellencies of historie are such and so many, that as an endlesse piece of work I will leave to wade any further therein, let this little that I have recounted serue for an Index of the much that is to be faid, which hath induced me in our vulgar tongue to bring to light this historie which is no common matter, but of all the Romane Emperours, wherein all their liues and acts in a meane, betweene fastidious tediousnes, and sterill breuitie, are into one volume briefly digested. And although it be a bold attempt, yet I hold the will and desire there-

#### TO THE READER.

to commendable; which is, that through my endeuour, what in the Latine tongue lieth secret and hidden from those which understand not the same, may in our vulgar language be found out; and that therein wee may attaine to those benefits which before I have recited. This is one of the chiefest reasons whereby I was encouraged to take it in hand, together with what PLINIthe Orator faith. that Historie howsoeuer it be written, yet is pleasing, for that naturally men are inclined to defire to know new things, as are those which are past to them that haue not knowne them. And although I cannot polish this Historie with other beautifying ornaments, yet will I endeuour to write truly; contenting my felfe with what CATVLLYS faith concerning CICERO; that he of necessitie needeth not to be an Oratour that writeth an Historie; it shall suffice if he be not a lier. And the same C 1 C E R o in the person of A N THONY faith, that the Greekes in the beginning wrote onely bare naked Annales, and fo MARCVS CATO, PIs o, and other Romane Historiographers. The other lawes and conditions of Historie, in the computation of times, in the description and names of countries, together with the perspicuitie, sentences, counsels and the rest concerning the imbellishing and perfection thereof, is according to the haste and breuitie it behoued me to vse, and as was requisite for the abridgement of so great a matter: and as the weakenes of my wit, and the plainnesse of my stile could attaine vnto. The

faults escaped in the whole worke, which cannot be but many, in requitall of my paines taken to please his humour in reading what before he knew not, I in charitie entreate the reader with patience to beare withall, promising to be thankfull to him that shall doe me that fauour.



## A TABLE OF THE NAMES OF ALL THE

ROMANE EMPERORS.

. <b>A</b>	C1.1.C .	
Drian	Conrade the second	60±
Albert the fort	Fol. 155 Conrade the third	644
Albert the Good	745 Conrade the fourth.	723
Drian Albert the first Albert the second Adulph	810 D	
Alexander Seuerus	741 Ecius	245
Antonius Pius	217 Didius Iulianus	185
Anastatius the first	164 Domicianus	133
Anastatius the second	413 Dioclesian.	295
Arcadius and Honorius	498 E	
Arnolphus	357 Milianus.	250
Aurelianus	555 F	•
Augustus Octanianus Casar	271 Erdinand	855
R	27 🗜 Florianus	281
R Assianus Caracalla	Focas	460
B. J. C. Caratana	199 Frederick Barbarossa	653
Caligula	Frederick the fecond	701
	62 Frederick the third.	814
Charles the great		•
Charles the second	524 CAlba	101
Charles the third	547 Gallus	248
Charles the fourth	552 Galienus	255
Charles the fifth	732 Gordianus	1238
Claudius the first	847 Gratianus.	344
Claudius the second	7Ι H	211
Clodius Balbinus, and	266 LI Eliogabalus	211
Maximus Battinus, and	Henry the first	569
Maximus Pupienus S Commodus Antonius	11 cm y the jecona	597
Constancius Clorus	175 Henry the third	605
Constantine the great	303 Henry the fourth	612
Confermence Confermation	307 Henry the fifth	<i>6</i> 30
Constantinus, Constantius, 2	Henry the fixth	<i>6</i> 81
and Constance, the sonnes	320 Henry the seuenth	750
of Constantine the great S Constantine the third	Heraclitus.	464
Constans the second	474 I	• •
Constantine the fourth	476 TVlius Cafar	I
Constantine the fifth	481 Lulianus Apostata	329
Constantine the sixth	506 Iouianus	333
Conrade the first	518 Iustinus the first	318
Com auc ine just	563 Iustinus the second	441
		Tultinian

#### THE TABLE.

Iustinian the second.	486	Philip the second	242
* T *		T WITH THE LOCATION	€88
با		Philippicus	496
T Eo the first	399	Phocas	460
Leo the second	406	Probus.	282
Leo the third	502	Q	
Leo the fourth	516	Vintilius.	270
Lewes the first called Ludouicus Pius		Q	
Lewes the second	544	$\mathbf{r}$	
Lewes the third	550	D Obert	788
Lewes the fourth	559	Rodulph the fir &	732
Lewes the fifth	757	Rodulph the second.	889
Lotharius the first	53 <i>9</i>	S	-
Lotharius the second.	639	C Euerus	190
M	~ 37	Sigismund.	796
A A Acrinus	207	T	790
IVA Marcus Aurelius	168	Acitus	200
Martianus		Theodosius the first	279
Mauritius	397 449	Theodosius the second	349
Maximinus	225	Theodosius the third	374
Maximus Pupienus. ?	~~)	Tiberius the first	500
and Clodius Balbinus	235	Tiberius the second	51
Maximilian the first	831	Titus	440
Maximilian the fecond.	875		129
N	6/5	V	14:
Ero	83		330
1 Nerua	141		386
Ο		Valerianus	252
tho the first	107	Vespasianus	121
Otho the fecond	575	Vitellius.	113
Otho the third	587		-
Otho the fourth	590		775
Otho the fifth.	696	: <b>V</b> V	,,,
PErtinax	179	Z Z Eno.	400

THE



8710

# THE LIFE OF IVLIVS CÆSAR, FOVNDER OF THE EMPIRE AND MONARCHIE OF ROME.



THE ARGVMENT.



Vliu Cefar was of a most noble family, and returning to Rome from the Pretorship in Spaine with great renowne, making friendship with Marcus Crassistian and Gneius Pompey, which were the mightiest Citizens in Rome, and pacifying the controuershe between them, he obtained the Consulpin: which be executed with such grautite and reputation, that his fellow-Consul would not endure to be with him, but lined retired. Asserting thing his daughter lusts in mariage to Pompey, he went into France, which he subdued, and ouercame the Germaines. He went asserwards also into Britannie, and by sorce of armes subdued it to the Romane Empire. Iulia afterwards dying

and Marcus Crassus being slained by the Parthians, mortall discord arose betweene Cesar and Rompey: the occasion whereof was for that the second sine yeares of Cesars government of France being expired, it was propounded by Pompeyes partakers that a successor spouldbe some him; and Cesar desiring that his commaund in the French Narres might be prolonged, and that in his absence he might demanund the Consulting: which being denied him, be made another demanund, which has that he would give over his armie in France upon condition that Pompes should don the like his on the successor which being also denied him being different to the successor of the same of the propession of the research which being also devited, and being involved to leave his armie, he person the was not to passe and taking the Citie of Arminium, he

went with such furie directly towards Rome, that Pompey abandoned Italy; and hefollowing him in the endouerthrew him in Phar falia: whereupon Pompey for refuge repayring to Ptolomy King of Egypt, was in asmall barke by that Kings direction, Staine by the hands of Septimius and Achila, whose head being caused to be presented by Ptolomy, Casar wept. Afterwards bending his force avainst Ptolomy; and overcomming him he passed into Egypt, and tamed the pride of the Egyptians. Thence he went into Africa, pursuing the remainder of Pompeies faction, all which he overcame: and Cato being in Vtica, for not to fall into Cafars hands, fine himfelfe. Cafar returning to Rome triumphèd, and afterwards going into Spaine (after a most fierce battaile, wherein he was likely to have been lost ) he overthrew Sextus Pompeius, eldest some of the great Pompey : and returning to Rome, he tooke upon him the Distatorship: where finally, Decius, Marcus Brutus, Gains Cassius, Gaius Casca, Astilius Cimber, Quintus Ligarius, Marcus Spurius, Cornelius Cinna, with many other principall Romanes conspiring against him, he was slaine in the Senat, being of the age of 56. yeares, upon the fifteenth day of March, with three and twentie wounds. Many prodicious signes of his death appearing both before and afterwards, which letted his passage against the Parthians, and many other high attempts, which he purposed to have undertaken.



Eginning to write the Histories, and Liues of the Romane Emperours, Monarches of the earth and worldly dominion; or to fay better, to bring them to a compendiousnes and breuitie, a worke in truth very great and troublesome, and which requireth a farre riper wit, and greater eloquence then mine: I hold it not for the least of the difficulties thereof, but rather for one of the greatest, to proue Ivivs CASAR to be the first, of whom it behooveth me to treate: For although that

he were Dictator, and was not called Emperour in the fignification of Soueraigne Lord, as his fucceffors have been ever fince; yet he was the beginning All Cafars fue- and original of this Monarchie, and from whom all the fucceeding Emperours have gloried to take the name of C & s A R s, and to be called his fucceffors. The acts and deedes of this man were fuch, fo many, and fo great, and bookes and Histories are so full thereof, that it seemeth as hard a matter for me to reduce them to any breuitie, as to write and recite the fame: And therefore out of aboundance and matter fo copious. I will chuse that which (in my judgement) maketh most to my purpose, and to the subject and end of this worke, handling it with fome expedition and breuitie; although that it being the beginning and foundation of this edifice, it shall be very requisit to dilate and treate more at large thereof, then of those things which follow. In all other matters concerning this incomparable man, I referre the reader to the infinit number of Bookes, wherein C. E. S. A. R. is remembred and extolled, and to the notice and knowledge (which is commonly held) of his excellencies and acts.

> Among the great attempts which may be recounted of Ivlivs Crian (in my opinion) the greatest of all, and which maketh me most to wonder is, how he durst, and had the heart, first to thinke and imagine, and afterwards to attempt, and in the end to goe through with making himselfe Lord of the people and Common-wealth of Rome (which was Ladie and Ruler of the most and best parts of the whole world) and of formuch, as it, in feuen hundred yeeres before. had been able to subdue and conquer: for so long was the time and somewhat more, from the foundation of Rome until that Ivilve CESAR possessed that Common-wealth: whereof two hundred fortic veeres were vnder Kings. and the rest under Consuls chosen by the people, which gouerned it; sauing fome few yeeres in which the Tribunes and Decemuiri ruled. Indeede a very

ettempts.

ken from him

the name of Cefars.

short space to conquer and subdue so great an Empire, as that which the Romanes enjoyed when C & s A R reduced it from free and common, to the do- Dionys. Hallminion of one: which, without all doubt, was the greatest of all that euer haue canalisis been in the world or man bath obtained assemble for consistence of the captions of t been in the world or man hath obtained, aswell for continuance of time as for cap.6. greatnes and power; which is approoued and affirmed by all authors and true Hiftories. For leauing apart the other Kingdomes and Common-wealths now at Integral Market, this present, which are not to be named in this discourse, and examining the greatest and most famous which before it were called the Monarchies of the world; which were the Assyrians, the Persians, and Macedonians; it will appeare that the Romane Empire farre excelled them all. For that of the Affyrians and Babylonians (which was the most auncient of all the Monarchies) in a thousand two hundred and fortie yeares, which it lasted (as Saint Avovstin a reciteth) neuer saint Auguextended it selfe out of Asia, neither attained to hold any part in Africa, or Europe, limein his neither did the Medes, whose raigne ARBATVs established by the death and taredet, destruction of SARDANAPALVS King of the Assyrians, defeating that first Infini in his Monarchie: then the Persians, which subureted the Medes by the hand of the 33. broke, mightie Cyrvs, which is reckoned for the fecond Monarchie, not with standing Plant, that they made some incursions and entries into Europe, as vnder Xerxes and o. Solinas, in their thers, and in Asia obtained greater power then any of their predecessors yet in the other monarend it lasted but two hundred and oddeyeares, and were ouercome and subdued this visits the (DARIUS being their King) by ALEXANDER the great King of Macedonia, whose Romane. kingdome we cannot deny to be greater then any of the forenamed: for he held a great part of Europe, and subdued (in a manner) all Asia, and is accounted for the third Monarchie. But this was but like a flash of lightening, burning whatfor euerstoode before it, whose fire was soone extinguished: for ALEXANDER dying, his power ended; and there was a diuifion, and diuers kingdomes were erectedthereof. But the dominion and Empire of the Romanes, which is the of the greatnes fourth Monarchie, notably excelled themall, both in time, in greatnes, and in of the Empire, power: In time; for there are few leffe then two thousand and three hundred and Monarchie of Rome. yeares since Rome was builded, and the Empire lasteth untill this day, under the name of Romane: whereof in a thousand and three hundred yeares, it alwayes encreased; and afterwards it neuer left to bee the most high and preeminent dominion of all others. Then in greatnes and power; for it is certaine, that putting togethers all that euer all the rest enioyed, it will hardly amount vnto the one halfe of that which the Romanes possessed. For besides that which their Emperours enlarged, as hereafter shall appeare, before that I v L I v s C Æ s AR enloyed it, they had conquered the greatest and best parts of all the world: for in Europe they held all the provinces of Italie, and Gallia Cifalphina which wee call Lum- Galla they field an tile profiles of trace, and oracle organization which we call a libria, bardie, Ifria and Illyricum, now called Slauonia, and vpwards to the river Da. Claubardie, Lumbardie, nubius; and subdued all Gracia either by force or friendship, as the Common-librium. wealths and dominions of Athens, Lacedemonia, Thebes, Cormth, Peloponesus Ectavonia, which is now called Morea, and all the other prouinces thereof. The kingdomes of Peloponejus, Macedonia and Epire now called Albania, together with Thracia: they had also the Iles of Sicilia, Sardinia, and Creta now called Candia, Cypres, Rhodes, and Eubara Creta, Candia, which is now Negropont, with an infinit number of Ilands in the Mediterranean Negropont. Sea. They possessed also the kingdomes of Spaine, although with greater difficultie Spaine. and refisfance then any of the rest; and the Gallias which are the kingdomes of Gallia, Fraunce and all the provinces thereof, with that part of Almaine on this side of the France. Rhine, called the Lowe, or Gallia Belgica; although this by the hand of C # S A R

Britannic. England and scotland.

Syria, Sorie.

himselfe, as hereafter shall be declared; and in like manner Britannie which containeth England and Scotland. They likewise held in Africa (being a third part of the world) all that which was or is fruitefull and habitable thereof, after the fubuersion of the proud Carthage: then in Asia, they subdued the greatest and best The Romanes all other forces faiting mire oner throwne by them felnes.

of the civill and Tompey.

betweene

Pompey and

Marcus Craf-

provinces, and made them their vaffals and tributaries, among which was Syria now called Soria, Phanicia, Palestina, Judaa, and the holy citie of Ierusalem: in Asia the leffe, they held the provinces of Pamphilia, Phrygia, Caria, Cilicia, Mesopotamia, and Bithynia by the will and testament of NICOMEDES their King. The Kings of Egypt and Cappadocia were their friends and allies: in Armenia, in Colchos, and in other prouinces they fet and established Kings at their pleasure; and from Albania and Iberia they received hostages and tributs, wherein they had subdued, taken and flaine a great number of Kings and excellent great captaines: Finally they were Lords of fo many prouinces and countries, that it were an endleffelabour to recite them all; they were then fo mightie that no force or power whatfocuer (but their owne) was able to offend them. And it afterward hapned that discord and ambition, entring into this Common-wealth which was so free and puissant, seeing that forraine forces were not sufficient, with their owne forces and armes they fubdued and captinated themselues, which grew through the discord and controuerfie betweene the great Pompey and Ivlivs CASAR, two the most famous and most mightie men in Rome, although that at that season there were many principall and great men: But the ground of this controuerfie tooke roote before, to wit, from the two factions, and civill warres betweene SYLLA and MARIVS; wherein MARIVS being ouercome and flaine, The beginning SYLLA made himselfe Dictator and seased upon Rome; neuerthelesse before his death, he deposed himselfe from his Dictatorship and left it at libertie: Pompey streene Cefar was of Sylla his faction and had done great exploites in his behalfe; and C & s AR followed MARIVS, although then he were very young to whom he was of kinne and affinitie. This was the roote from whence grew betweene them the civill warres, before which passed some matters very necessarie to be remembred: first, to the end that the causes and occasions which happened may be the better vinderstood, and afterwards the processe and successe thereof, which briefly recounted, passed in this manner.

> These matters concerning SYLLA being passed, and GNEIVS POM-PEIVS, and MARCUS CRASSUS remaining, by meanes thereof in great reputation: for they both followed that faction, and afterwards either of them defirous to have the preheminence in commaund and government, there was a continual emulation and competitorship betweene them, which at the death of Syllatooke beginning. MARCVS CRASSVS made himselfe very mightie, besides his great wisedome, linage, eloquence, and victories which he had obtained, principally by meanes of his aboundant riches, which he had gathered, being of greater value then any other mans of his time. Pompey likewise obtained great honour, reputation and power, besides that which he inherited from Sylla, by reason of his great victories and aduentures in Armes, in the time of Sylla and afterwards both by sea and land in Africa, in Spaine and in Asia, which were such and so many, that I dare not report them. The acts of thefe two great men being so highly extolled, and the controuerfies betweene them encreasing (as betweene the heads of factions) although that at that same time, CATO, CICERO, and LENT VLV s, and others were view principall men: It happened that IVLIV'S C # SAR at this time came to Rome from Spaine where

he had been Pretor, whose credit and estimation was now very great: but his thoughts were much higher and greater, for many causes, aswell for his great linage, being by his fathers fide a Patritian and very ancient, and by his mother The linage, he came of the Romane Kings which descended from ENEAS of Troy; as also efficiently the control of the control for his great frindes and kindred, together with his fingular wit and eloquence, Julius Cofer. and by meanes of the authoritie wherewith he had obtained and administred the magistracies and dignities which he had held, to wit, the Questorship of Spaine; the Tribunate of the Souldiers, the office of AEdil, the high priesthood, the office of Pretor, and by meanes of his victories obtained in Spaine against the Gallegoes and Lustranians, adding hereto his other merits and graces of his perfon. Besides this, he was very liberall, very wife, and learned in arts and sciences. very expert and active in Armes, both on foote and horsebacke, very strong and valiant; and before that he was a Captaine, he had made maruellous proofe of his person in the warres of Asia, under MARCUS TERMO Pretor, and SERVILIUS the Proconful, and had obtained the Ciuicall crowne. He was also of a very good constitution of body, tall, faire, comely, and strongly limmed, and could well endure trauell, for which and many other causes, he was much esteemed; but not fo, as that in place or authoritie he could in Rome compare with MARCY'S CRASsvs or with Pompey: for they were deepely rooted and of long continuance.

C & s AR with these qualities being come to Rome, with a presumption and

conceite (although in fecret) to commaund more then all the reft, either of these two, CRASSVS and Pompey, defired his friendship, the one against the other. But C # S AR very wife and valorous would follow neither faction, because he would not make himselfe subject or an abbettor to either partie, but rather shewing himselfe neutrall, sought meanes to make them friends, imagining that rather then he should encline to either partie they both would willingly yeeld to what should he require: which policie as PLYTARCH affirmeth, was comprehended by Marcys Caro onely. The peace between ethem was made, and concluded by his meanes, both of them remaining bound vnto him for the same, and as the one held the other in suspition, so for feare to lose him, they both sought to pleasure him; and by this meane he made himselfe equall with either of them both, and the power which two held before, was now deuided betweene three, and in the end he alone commaunded all. This league being concluded, C # s AR de The league bemaunded the Confulling which was the highest ordinarie dignitie, and was tween Julius made Confully which office he executed with such anthonisis that his follows: Cofin, Crassing, made Confull: which office he executed with fuch authoritie, that his fellow in and Pompey. office bare no sway with him, but rather (all the time that it lasted) lived retired, and kept his house. And Casan the better to confirme himselfe in the power which he had obtained, and to clime to the height of his defires, procured POMPEY to marrie his daughter IVLIA, and himselfe married the daughter of Lycivs Piso, who was to fucceede him in the Confulfhip, which being accomplished, he chose the Gallias for his pronince, which is now the kingdome of France, whither he went with an Armie, where what he performed, what Battailes and victories he there wan, what Countries and Nationes he subdued, what bold attempts, what counsels, what greatnes of minde and fortitude he platareb in bir vsed, in little lesse then tenne yeares that this warre lasted, are not possibly by me life. (which am to vse breuitie, and to touch matters but superficially) to be expressed suctionius in and declared. He himselfe left most excellent and true commentaries thereof, bis first booke, approoued afterwards by his very enemies themselves: PLVTARCH also and third booke. Svetonivs Tranqvillys, Apianvs Alexandrinys, Lycan, Pavivs Lucaninhis

OROSIVS, firft.

in his fixth. Eutropius in bis fixth. Lucius Florus in his third. Himfelfe in his 103.0f bis Epitomes.

б

Pauliu Orofine Orosivs, Lucius Florus, Eutropius, and many other authors write thereof, to which I referre the reader. In this warre he wanne fuch estimation and name of a Captaine, that he was held for the best of his time, or before him: for he conquered and fubdued all France from the Pyrenean mountaines, vnto the Aipes, and all the rest vnto the Rhine; before which, he subdued and ouercame the valiant Heluctians, and Tigurins, now called Swiffers, which as Prve TARCH affirmeth, were 300000. men, whereof 100000. were trained and exercifed to the warres. He subdued the Germaines and ARIOVISTVS their Captaine, which came downe into France, and draue them out from thence : he tamed and ouercame the Belgians, the Ambians, the Neruians, and other most warlike Nations of the Galles: he shed more bloud then euer was shed in any warre in the world; and passing the river Rhine with a Bridge made of timber, he overcame the Germanes, and brought certaine other countries under the yoke of the Romanes; and finding no more refutance in that Prouince, he passed with his people into the Isle of Britannie, now called England and Scotland, which was enhabited with a most warlike Nation, and till then vnknowne by any trafficke or other commerce, and by force of Armes compelled them to become subjects to the Citic of Rome.

All the time that these warres endured, wherein IVLIVS CESAR gat great spoyle and riches, he neuer left to procure friendship in Rome, and in all other partes, by letters and gifts, and of Kings and Cities in Asia, in Grecia, and other countries, with aide of people which he fent them: and this fometime without the leave or authoritie of the Senate, which he might fafely doe, fo long as he continued in league and friendship with Pompey and MARCYS CRASSVS. He also made himselfe much esteemed and beloued of men of warre, giving them penfions, and double payes, bestowing youn them other honours and fauours: by which meanes, before that Pompey was aware thereof, CESARS power and authoritie grew to be so great, that he began to be afraide thereof, when he was not able to relift the same. And the love and friendthip betweene thefe two, began to waxe colde, and to become suspect: for the pledges and bands which sustained the same, began to faile the first was the death of CESARS daughter, who was Pompeyes wife, which was a great linke and chaine of this friendship. The second was the death of MARCY's CRASSVS, the third man of this companie, whom the Parthians flew in Alia, whither he went to make warres (as some write) more for the desire of private gaine, then of glorie or fame, whose authoritie also continued the concord. These principall causes wherein their amitie consisted ceasing, and being remooued; there enfued discord, and civill warre betweene them, which was the greatest and most generall that euer was in the world: for therein were employed and had a hand, all the Senators and martiall men of Rome, with all their friends and fubiects. Kings and cities of the one part or the other. There were eleuen legions of the one fide, and eighteene of the other, all Romane and Italian Souldiers being the whole power of Rome, besides the aydes and companies of other prouinces. It was waged in Italie, in France, in Spaine, in Epire, in Theffalia, in Egypt, in Asia, and in Africa, by themselves and their captaines; and lastly, after five yeares continuance, it ended in Spaine. Some authors fet downe the occafion of this civill warre, who although they fomewhat varie, yet the truth is, that the causes thereof were enuie, ambition, defire to commaund, and vaine glorie, wherewith they both were infected. Pompey began to have Casans power in

fulpition:

accassons of the tweene Cafar and Pompey.

suspicion; it gricued CESAR to see Pompeyes authoritic and dignitic. POMPEX would endure no equall, nor C & san superiour, as though that in the Romane Empire there had not been sufficient and enough for two men; and so either of them sought the others ruine, seeking to have it wholy to him selfe. Whether POMPEY intended to make himselfe atyrant, and absolute, it is incertaine; but it plainely appeareth that he would not that C # SAR should mount to that degree wherein he was. Some fay that C # s AR was constrained (through feare) to take Armes, to anoyde suppression, and not to be condemned; for Caro had threatned to accuse him for leaving his Prouince: others charge him that he had euer procured and practized to viurpe the dominion of Rome; and that his, and Pompeyes powers considered, it seemed a fitte match. Cicero faith of him, that hee ever had a verse of Evripides in his mouth, wherein he faid: That if lawes and equitie were to be infringed, it was to be done to the end to rule and commaund onely; and that C # S AR being accustomed to commaund, could not line without an armie : for my part,

IVLIVS CESAR.

I suppose that the causes were those alreadie alleadged.

In the last yeare of the second fine yeares of the captainship of the provinces which CESAR held, LENT VLVS and MARCELLVS being Confuls, it was concluded in the Senate, that there should be a successor sent to C # S AR, and that he should give over his Armic and government : and that if he desired the Consulship, as he had written, he should (to that end) come to Reme in person. CESAR defired continuance of the Captainship and charge which he held, or that he might demaund the Consulship being absent, and before that he left his Armie: whereto Pomper would not agree, because it was against the lawes, which determined that the Confulship could not be demaunded by any man being absent, Men commonly little remembring that he was made Conful before he was of lawfull age, and indestination other disnities which by favour (with differentiation of the largest health full in themother dignities which by fauour (with dispensation of the lawes) he had ob-felies which tained. But this is commonly the condition of most men, that to themselves, they condemne that feemeth lawfull and tolerable, which they reproue in others. This being then denyed to Iviivs C # san, he yeelded to leaue his Armie, and to come private to Rome, fo as Pompey should likewise give over his Armie which he held in Spaine. There passed many treaties and consultations about this matter, MARCYS TYLLIVS CICERO fought meanes to conclude a peace, and to bring them to agreement: which Pompey had not refused, but those of his faction were so hautie and proud (as they were the greatest and best men of Rome) fo that notwithstanding that CESAR dealt mildly and instified himselfe, yet they gaue no place thereto. And the Senates resolution was, that C & S AR should The determigiue ouer his Armie within a certaine time prefixed, and that he should not there.

\*\*Transport of the specific product of the series of the s him for an enemie to Rome, if he did the contrarie. And LVCIVS ANTONIVS, and QVINTVS CVRIO, Tribunes of the people contradicting this determination in the behalfe of C & s AR, were ill handled, and thrust out of the Senate, who fled from Rome, and tooke their way towards C # s AR; which holpe him much more throughly to gaine the goodwill of men of warre, for as the office of the Tribunes, was held for facred and not to be touched. C # S AR knowing what passed, and seeing himselfe voyde of hope of peace, departed from Ravenna, whither he came but with fine thousand soote, and three hundred horse onely which he had with him, sending commandement to his Legions to march with all speed and to come to soyne with him. Comming with his people

Cefars valorous determito the River Rubicon, which was the furthest of his limits; which passing he was to lose all hope of agreement. Some affirme, that he stayed there agreat while, thinking and confidering with himselfe how great a matter it was to passe that River, and the euils which would enfue thereof. PLVTARCH writeth, that he discoursed thereof with ASINIVS POLLIO, and with other his friends which came thither with him: and SVETONIVS faith, that turning his face towards the River, he faid to them: Yet is it in our power to returne, but if we paffe this River, we must make way with our weapons. And as APIANVS ALEXAN-DRINY's reporteth, he also said. The truth is that if I forbeare to passe the River, it will be the beginning of euill, and my difgrace; and if I paffe, it will be to all mortall men in generall. These words being spoken, standing alittle while in a doubt, with a furious determination and a loud vovce, he faid, The lot is cast, and with that word he gaue his horse the rayne, and began to march, and to passe the River, all his people following him: and so was the civill warre determined, and begun with the seruitude of Rome, and the beginning of the Empire and Monarchie, which is as much as, the raigne and dominion of one, which briefly I will declare.

Who so desireth to see it handled more at large, let him reade APIANVS ALEXANDRNIVS in his second booke of the civill warres, SVETONIVS in the life of CESAR, and PLVTARCH in the famelife, and in the lives of Pomhey. and of CATO and CICERO; and Saint AVGVSTINE in his third booke de ciuitate dei, and the same IVLIVS CESAR in three bookes which hee wrote thereofin his commentaries, and in the rest of Hyrcivs, Lvcivs Flores in the fourth booke of his Histories, and in the Abreuiats of TITVS LIVIVS, PAV-LVS OROSIVS, EVTROPIVS in the fixth of his Histories, and LVCAN in his tenne bookes, and PLINIE in his last de viris Illustribus, and the same PLINIE and VALERIUS MAXIMUS and other Authors which treate thereof, and of CESARS other actions.

The beginning of the civill warres.

Pompey and

the Senate a-

bandoned

Rome.

Brindes.

Durallo.

IVLIV & C # S AR having passed the River Rubicon, as is afore declared, as saith Svetonivs, drew his Armie together, and having brought thither the Tribunes in fuch vile and base attire as they came from Rome, he made a speech to his people. iustifying his cause and requiring their ayde and fauour, and being by them al anfwered to his liking, he departed presently from thence, & was the next morning by break of day, before Arimino, and seased upon that Citie; and holding his way, did the like by all townes and castles as he passed. Casars terrible determination what they did, and what prouision they made: The truth is, that Pompey found himselse much deceiued, for he neuer beleeued that CESAR would have aduentured fo farre, or that he should have wanted meanes to have refisted him.

being knowne in Rome; POMPEY, the whole Senate and people of Rome, were therewith much troubled; so as it should be a long matter to recite and set downe But it happened otherwise vnto him, for although that to him was committed by the Confuls, and Senate the charge of leuving of Souldiers, and the calling thither of his legions, and that there were Captaines sent to divers Cities of Italie (whereby C & S AR was to passe) for the defence thereof, all sufficed not against the furie and force wherewith he came, and the newes daily encreasing, POMPEY and all the Senate abandoned Rome: for Pompey went to Capua, and from thence to Brundusium now called Brindes, a place by the Sea side in the fent for the Consuls to passe thence to Dyrrachium now called Durasso, a place also

by the Sea fide in the prouince of Macedonia, a great part whereof is now called Macedonia Albania, there to raise the greatest power that they should beable; being out Albania. of hope as then to be able to refift C # s AR in Italie, who had alreadie feafed on the Citie of Corfinio, which Domitivs held with thirtie of Pompetes Cohorts; which being taken by CESAR, he pardoned all those which he found therein, and entreated the gouernour very friendly, and gaue him leaue to depart whither he would, who went presently to Pompey: which truely was an act of great magnanimitie and elemencie, which C & s AR maruelloufly vsed in all elemencie and his actions, and chiefly in the victories which he obtained in these civill warres, magnanimities

wherewith (in my opinion) he wan no leffe honour, then by his victories.

CE SAR having brought DOMITIVS his people to his deuotion, he passed forwards, and understanding that Pompey and the Consuls gathered head in Brundusium, with the greatest iourneyes that he was able to make, he marched towards them with his legions: But Pompey had sufficiently fortified himselfe for his defence, having made the Confuls and the most part of the people to embarke themselues and passe to the Citic of Dyrrachium aforesaid, where the Consuls attended his comming. And C & s AR so remaining in Italie, without refistance, being very carefull what counsell he should take sfor although that he would have followed Pompey, yethe had no provision of shipping thereto, and by reason that it was winter, shipping could not come so soone as was requisit, which he well considered, and how much it imported him not to leave any enemie behinde him, which might cause any alteration in France or Italie, in his absence the determined therefore to deferre the pursute of Pompey, and to take his way towards Spaine, which held for Pompey, who had therein his excellent legions, and two Captaines, which were PETREIVS and AFRANIVS. SVETONIVS TRANQUILLY'S faith, that when he had resolved thereupon, he said to his friends, Let vs first goe against the Armie which is without a Captaine; and afterwards let vs returne against the Captaine that hath neuer an Armie: for these Captaines, Petreivs and Afranivs, were not held for very politike, or expert in the warres. And to the contrarie, Pompey was most wise and a very valiant Captaine: but the people which he had with him, were newly leuied and of imall experience.

Returning from Brundusium, in fixtie dayes without bloudshed or battaile, cafar scaled on C # SAR became Lord of all Italie; and comming to Rome, they were in incredible Rome and all feare, remembring the cruelties committed in the time of SYLLA: But C # SAR Italie, vfing his naturall clemencie, did hurt no man of any degree high or low, but rather called to the Senate those Senators which remained, and which came with him, whom with very good words he comforted and encouraged: and laying the whole fault vpon Pompey, accusing him of all things present, he fought by all meanes to iustifie his owne cause, and declared how much he did then, and euer had defired peace, and therewith requested that messengers might besentto Pompey to procure the same : and making himselfe to be presently chosen Consul, he opened the Romane treasurie, notwithstanding that ME-Cesar consul TELLY's one of the Tribunes of the people was defirous and went about to have by force. hindred and letted the same, and that he should not have done it. The treasure which he tooke from thence, he payed and deuided among his people, which as PLINIE in his three and thirtith booke reporteth, was very great, which LVCAN also affirmeth. These things being ended, and C # SAR desirous to goe from Rome into Spaine (like a wife and excellent Captaine) first tooke order aswell for the

Brundulium. confines of Italie towards Grecia, in the mouth of the Venetian Sea, whither he Derracbium.

civill government, as for the warres; and making choise of the legions which were to goe with him, he left part of his people in Brundusium and Otranto, and in other strong places vpon the Sea side, to keepe Pompey from landing if he fought to returne into Italie. Healfo nominated HORTENSIVS and DOLA-BULLA, for his Captaines, to make prouision of shipping to be brought to the port of Brundusium, there to be in a readines against his returne from his iourney. Q VINT VS VALERIVS he sent with a legion to Sardinia, against MARC VS COTTA which held the same for POMPEY: To Sicilia he sent CVRIVS 2gainst MARCY'S CATO, with direction that having taken the same, he should passe over into Africa: LEPID v s he left in the Citie of Rome as Presect thereof, and MARCUS ANTONIUS for gouernour and Captaine of all Italie; and determining to leave LICINIV's CRASSV's in France, with his accustomed celeritie, he went on his journey, and found no refistance, neither in Italie, nor in France, but onely in the Citie of Marfelles, which held for Pompey: which rather (in my opinion) more like bold and aduenturous friends, then wife men, would not receive nor lodge him in their Citie, but put themselves in Armes against him for their defence. C & s AR comming thither besieged the Citie, and to an ovde losse of time, left there DECIVS BRVTVS and CAIVS TRE-BONIVS with fufficient forces, which continued the fiege and performed great matters; and himselfe followed his way into Spaine, where his comming was alreadie knowne, and Afranius and Petreius attended him, with the gamili Petreins ayde of their friends, and foure Romane legions; betweene which and C & s A R and Afranius. the warres continued many dayes, and that chiefly neere the Citie of Lerida. In the beginning CESAR was in great danger and much distressed, as well through want of victualles, as by reason of the winter being come, which annoyed him with rivers and waters; before and after the which, there passed many great skirmisses and conflicts betweene the two armies, and other chaunces and aduentures, too long to be recounted. Finally, C E s A R knew how to warre in fuch fort, that without giving oportunitie to come to a battaile, he brought his aduerfaries to fuch extremitie and diffresse, that perishing with hunger they came to a composition: which was that to the legions (who now were able neither to offend nor defend) should be graunted libertie to depart and to goe whither they would; which was performed accordingly, and Petreivs and Afranivs went to Pompey, and part of the legions which would not abide with CESAR, had leave to doe as they lifted: CESER still persevering in his cle-

> This being ended, and sommer being come (to the end not to leave any thing in Spaine to be subdued) he passed forwards, and came into the province of Betica, now called Andaluzia, with part of his forces, leaving commaundement with the Armie, to march whither he had appointed, and there to flay for him, because that MARCYS VARRO being POMPEIES Lieutenant in that prouince held it for him, with one legion of good Souldiers; but daring not to oppose himselse against CESAR, he peaceably deliuered vp vnto him both the countrie and the legion, and so all was plaine before him and at his commaund. Thence he went to Cordona, where he called a parliament, and an affemblie of all estates of that prouince: wherein among other things which there were treated of highly commending the Cordoueses and Seuillians which had taken his part (as himselfe writeth) he marched forwards and visiting the prouince, he came to the Isle and citie of Cales, and prouiding there certaine things, he tooke

cafar fubdued all Spaine.

mencie and gentlenes.

10

Cefars going

into Spa ne a-

IVLIVS CESAR.

the ships and galleys which MARCUS VARROthere had left, and such other more as hee could get, and embarked himselfe therein. And leaving OVINTVS Cass Ivs with four elegions in that province, he tooke his passage by sea to Tarragena, fending commaundement by land to his legions to march thither: where being arrived and in few daies, providing and taking order for that province, he departed with his armie towards Narbona, and from thence to Marfelles, which veelded vnto him after that in the fiege and affaults, it had endured many calamities. And C As AR nothing respecting the small regard and ingratitude of that citie. but the antiquitie and fame thereof, would not permit any hurt to be done to the citizens and inhabitants; but leaving a fufficient garrifon to guard the fame, Marfelles and commanding his legions by appointed journeys, to march towards Italie, him- Casarsefelfewith a necessarie guard for his person and others in his companie, tooke pasfage for Rome; all things fucceeding prosperously with him, although that some of his Captaines had ill fuccesse. For CAIVS ANTONIVS, whom (we said) he left with DOLABELLA for Captaine of his Nauie, was overthrowne and taken prisoner in the gulfe of Venice, by OCTAVIVS POMPEIES Lieutenant and Do-LABELLA was likewise ouercome neere to the He of Corcyra, now called Corfu: Corcyra. and Cyrivs, which (according to C # s A R s commaundement) went into Africa with two legions, having in the beginning good fuccesse, was afterward ouerthrowne, and the most part of his people staine by Pomperes friend, IVBA King of Mauritania, which is now the kingdome of Fez.

C ASAR being come to Rome and made Dictator (as PLV TARCH & APPIA-

Ny steffifie) new Confuls were chosen, and he being one of them deposed himfelfe from his Dictatorship, and so chaunging and prouiding Pretors for the Prouinces at his pleasure, sending MARCUS LEPIDUS into Spaine, and AULUS AL-BINVS into Sicilia, SEXTVS PEDVCEIVS into Sardinia, and DECIVS BRVTVS into France: and taking fuch further order as he thought good, he departed from Rome in the moneth of December towards Brundusium, whither he commanded all his forces to march, there to take passage for the province of Macedonia, the greatest part whereof (as I faid) is now called Albania, where he knew that Po M-PEY staied with his armies. Who all one whole yeere, which C # s AR spent in his iourney into Spaine, bufied himselfe in prouiding a Nauie to returne into Italie, and to gather treasure and to leuie souldiers for that purpose, and had prepared and made a wonderfull great prouision of all things: For there came to him. thips money and men, from many kingdomes, provinces and cities of Asia, and Gracia, from Syria, Pontus, Bithynia, Cilicia, Phanicia, Cappadocia, Pamphilia, Armenia Pompeies perthe leffe, Egypt, Gracia, The falia, Boetia, Achaia, Epire, Athens, Lacedemonia, and the Iles of Creta, Rhodes, and many other parts and countries: there came also to his aide in person, the Kings DEIOTARVS, and ARIOBARZANES. Of which people and of those which he brought with him from Italie, Pompey had a great armie by land, and an exceeding great number of thips and galleys by Sea, which I doe nor set downe, by reason of the diversitie of opinions, betweene authors in the number of his people, and of C #s ARs: for certaine, they were very mightie armies, but the greatest number were of Pompetes side. Who imagining (because that it was in the hart of winter) that C # s AR should not be able and have time commodioufly to paffe the Seas: and having (as indeed he had) advertisement that C E S AR was in Rome, he divided and lodged his people in Macedonia and Thesalia, retiring himselfe from the Sea, commaunding and charging his Captaines by Sea(of which MARCYS BIBYLYS was chiefe) that they should guard

is feldome reconcred.

Cafars paffage to Grecia againft Pompey.

and defend the coast. But C & s AR knowing that in the speedie execution, confifted the principall point of his victorie, and that occasion which is let slippe is Opertunitielost feldome recoursed; being departed from Rome and arrived at Brundusium (as we haue before faid) notwith standing that all his legions were not yet come, yet he embarked aboorde those shippes which he had there in readinesse, so many men as they could containe, which were feuen legions of chosen men (as he himselfe recordeth) and fent commaundement to those which were comming, to make hast, to the end that they should joyne with the rest which there remained, which he would speedily send for. And so he departed from Brundusium now called Brindez, in the beginning of the moneth of Ianuarie, and croffing the Seas with prosperous weather, the third day after he arrived in the coast of Macedonia, before that Pompey had any intelligence of his embarking: and fetting his people on shore in the despite of Pompeles Captaines, he commaunded the shippes and gallies presently to returne to Brundusium to fetch the rest of his armie, which he had there left, and commaunded to come. And the warres beginning, he presently seased vpon the cities of Apollonia, which is now called Bellona, and Erico, driving from thence Lucius Torquatus and Lucius Strabe-RIVS which held the same for Pompey: who so soone as he was aduertised of C # S ARS comming, with the greatest speede possible, sending for his troupes (fuch as were neerest hand) he marched towards Dyrrachium where lay all his victuall, munition, and provision for the warres, doubting that C # SAR would come to furprise the same, as in truth he did.

Pompey being come, their Campes were lodged within few forlongs the one of the other, and a river running betweene them; there passed many aduentures, skirmishes, and also some treaties of peace, which C # SAR offered, which were not accepted by Pompey, so much heassured himselfe of his power: and C A s AR daily expecting the comming of his other legions, which stayed longer then he thought they ought to have done; without the which, he thought it no wisedome to come to a battaile; and being much grieued and very carefull forthe same, he determined in person with three servants only, secretly to embarke himfelfe in a Brigandine, and to passe that streight of the sea, to fetch them, thinking to be able to performe the same without being mist; and putting it in execution accordingly, he passed downe the river to the Sca, which he found to troubled and tempelluous, that the Maister of the Brigandine (not knowing whom he carried) nor daring to passe any further, would have returned. Then C # SAR discouering his face, as it is reported, faid, be not afraid friend; for thou carrieft with thee C # SAR and all his fortune: the Maister herewith encouraged, striued to hold on his voyage, but at length, the force of the tempest was so great and the season fo contrarie, that (not with standing C # s AR s couragious words) they were constrained to returne, vnable to passe any further forwards: which being vnderstood in his Armie, they much wondred, grieued, and murmured thereat, praising him more for a valiant Knight, then a wife Captaine; and fo VALERIVS MAXI-MVs reconnteth it for a raffi aduenture, which in my opinion was the occasion why IVLIVS CESAR recordeth it not in his Commentaries.

This being past, within few dayes after, ANTONIVS arrived with foure of those legions which were left behinde in Italie, presently returning the shippes backe againe for the rest, and (after some aduentures which happed) ioyning with CESARS Armic, and all things fet in good order, and the like being done on Pompeles fide; there paffed somethings betweene them, which for bre-

uitie I omit, vntill that neere to the citie of Dyrrachium, whither C E SAR went with a determination to have furprifed the fame, and Pompey to relieve it. The two Armies lodged themselves in the fields, the one so neere to the other, that there were daily skirmishes and slaughters of men of either partie, vntill that one day a skirmish waxing hot, and rescue comming from either Armie, it came Abattaile beto a battaile: wherein the matter was handled in fuch fort, that C & sars troupes and Tompey began to flie, and could not be made to fland, untill they came to their campe necreto Dyrawhich they had fortified, and yet some abandoned the same and durst not de-chium. fend it. But Pompey, either for that (as some thinke) he imagined their slight to be fained, or that there was some deceit or ambush, or that he supposed that there was no more to be done, and that C # s AR might cafily have been overthrowne, did not prosecute the victorie, neither followed the charge, but sather caused a retreit to be sounded, without affailing his enemics camp: Whither when C = s AR came, he tooke fuch order as was most convenient, as he, who was no lesse couragious and politike in time of aduersitie, then of prosperitie; and it is reported that he faid to his friends, Truely this day had ended our warres, if our enemies had had a Captaine, which had knowne how to have overcome. This day IVLIVS CESAR losta great part of his people, among which, were foure hundred Romane Knights, and tenne Tribunes, and two and thirtie Centurions, and his enemies tooke from him two and thirtie enfignes. This battaile ended, Pompey fent the newes thereof to divers parts of the world, holding himselse for victorious. And I vLIVS C # SAR having punished some of his Captaines, and enfigne bearers, notwithstanding that all his whole Armie displeased and ashamed of their late losse, againe defired the battaile: yet he would not then fight with his Armie being timorous, against those which were in heart and victorious; but rather tooke a new course, and sending his sicke and hurt men to the citie of Apollonia, departed by night with the greatest filence that could be. from the place where he was, and tooke his way towards Thessalia, with intent to refresh and encourage his Armie, and to draw his enemie further from the Sea coast, where his chiefe force lay, and where his campe was fortified and victu-

knew, came to joyne with Pompey. POMPEY seeing CESARS departure, after that he had followed him some few dayes, tooke counfell, and as Applanus testifieth, was determined (leaving fo sufficient a nauie at Sea, as C # SAR should not be able to make any benefit thereof) to passe into Italie, and to recouer the same, with France and Spaine, and then afterwards to returne against C # s AR, but being oppressed and ouerruled by the Romane Lords which came with him, he altred his determination, and presently departed to pursue C & s AR, who made a stay in the fieldes of Pharsalia which are in The said, and made his retreit with such discretion and in so good order, that in all occasions that were offred, he had euer the better, vntill that at length he faw his people fo furious and of fuch force and courage, that it feemed to him very requifit to fight: and therefore cared not any more to refuse the battaile, butrather daily presented the same to Pompey. Who knowing (as indeede it was true) that Casar began to want many necessaries, and that his armie began to weaken and diminish, he deferred the same and would not fight, and as a wife and an experimented Captaine, as he was, would have prolonged the warre, defeating his enemie without putting his owne state in hazard: and although that Pompey were of this opinion, yet fornuch did the voices, opinions

alled; or at the least, to goe to meete and ouerthrowe Scipio, whom he well

uitic

The ralbadwenture of Cafar.

Pompey fought owne opinion.

and murmurings of those which were with him preuaile, (as Lucan, Plu-TARCH, and the same C & SAR himselfe report) that they made him veeld to giue the battaile, euen contrarie to his owne opinion and will as he did: wherein met and iouned of the one fide and of the other all the flower and force of Rome: and although that CESARS forces were fewer in number (for all writers affirme, that Pomperes armies were twife as great) yet CESARS were more active and better trained. How many there were of the one fide and of the other. I cannot certifie; the authors doe fo much differ among themselves therein: Applanys fetteth downe the divers opinions which are thereof, fomeraife the number to three hundred thousand men, whereof Lycivs Florys is one: others to threescore and tenne thousand: and some set downe somewhat lesse, among which is PLVTARCH, who faith that Pompey brought to this battaile 45000.men, whereof 7000. were on horsebacke, and Ivilvs CESAR two and twentie thousand a foote, and of horse men few more then one thousand. But APPIANVS understandeth, that this leffer number of these armies, was to be vnderstoode of Romanes, which were the force and hope of both these captaines: for it is not likely, that of all nations, there should be so small a number in a warre so long prepensed and preparing, and in my opinion, this is most likely to be true. But how foeuer it was, this battaile was betweene the best captaines and best souldiers, as well for experience, as for force and valour, that cuer were in the world; and yet being fo, it was not much fought, neither did it long continue: So strange and variable are the aduentures which happen in warres and battailes: for where there seemeth to be the greatest force and assurance, oftentimes is found the greatest we knes; and that which is least feared, doth sometimes annoy most.

Either of these two captaines, having resolued to give battaile, ordred his battalions and squadrons, as to him seemed most expedient, making their speeches and orations to their people; and the accustomed signe being given, the battaile presently began on either side: in the beginning whereof Pomperes horsemen, (wherein he reposed his greatest hope) which were all of the Romane Nobilitie, and of the order of Knighthoode, and alwayes every where had the better: began to come where C & s AR & Cauallery was, and forced them to forfake the field. Which CESAR perceiving, losing nothing by overfight, made The hattaile of a figne to a battalion, which for that purpose he had left apart from the other foundrons, to charge Pompeies Cauallerie; which charged them with fuch force and furie, striking them according to C &s ARs direction, no where but in come by Cofare the face, which POMPEIES horsemen either vnable or vnwilling to endure, began to retire, in such fort that from that part whence Pompey thought to have obtained the victorie, from thence fprang the beginning of his perdition. For notwithstanding that they had alreadic charged, and the other battalions continued still fighting, and that they maintained the same with great resolution; vet seeing that Pompetes Cauallerie fled, and that Casars came to charge them afresh, they all did the like in such manner, that in short space the victoric plainely appeared for C E S AR: and P O MPEY having lost all hope to prevaile, fled to his campe, leaving the field and victorie to his enemie. Who letting flippe no occasion, seeing that he found no resistance in the field, assembled his forces together to affaile POMPEIES campe, which with small difficultie he entred: which Pompey perceiving, leaving his enfignes and robes of generall, and putting on other apparrell vpon the first horse that he could get, with source on horse-

backe only, which accompanied him, which (as Velleivs PATERCYLVS faith) were his sonne Sextys Pompely s, and the two Lentyll, and Favonivs of the Pretorian order: he fled so fast as he could, and neuerstaied vntill he came to the citie of Larifa; where ionning with some thirtie other horse, which fled, with- Population out any stay he continued his flight, vntill he came vnto the shore side of the E- flight. gean fea; where finding a certaine Merchants ship of Rome, he embarked him elfe therein, and failed to the Ile of Lesbos, which is in that fea, which now is called Archipelago, to the citie of Mitylene. For in that citie were his wife and familie, which he tooke with him, and gathering together such ships and men as he was able, he departed from thence, very doubtful, and without any determination whither to goe. Some counfailed him to faile into Africa, for that King Iv BA was his friend and very mightie. Others were of opinion that he should retire himselfe to the Parthians: finally, he refolued to goe into Egypt, for the friendship which he held With King Prolomy, father of that Prolomy then raigning; and did fo. Hauing first touched in the prouince of Cilicia in Asia, and in the Ile of Cyprus, and fayling to Egypt, and arriving at the citie of Alexandria, he had such an end as we

And although that in the battaile were flaine of POMPEIES fide fifteene thou-

fandemen, and of the conquerors leffe then two thousand, as the same C & san

writeth: yet vnderstanding which way Pompey fled, to the end to give him no

place or meanes to returne and repaire himselse, without losing any time, he pur-

fued him with the lightest and swiftest of his armie. And comming to the sea side,

way towards Egypt. For which cause hee tooke the same course, taking with him

two whole legions of old fouldiers onely; and arriving in fafetie at Alexandria in

Egypt (where wee faid that Pompey had lately taken port) he vinderstood that POMPEY was arrived there: who prefuming of the benefits and good entertain-

ment which this King P T OLOMIEs father had received in his house, he sent to

request Pronomy to harbour and affish him. But as with men which are fallen

and decayed, few men hold faith and friendship, and in their advertities the bene-

fits and good turnes received from them are commonly forgotten: so the King

fent him his promife to performe what he required: and comming youn fafecon-

much ruled. He vinderstood also that Cornella Pompetes wife, and his

will prefently declare. I VLIVS CE SAR having obtained so great a victorie, as is aforesaid, vsed there-

in his accustomed elemencie, not fuffering any Romane to be either slaine or The elemencie hurt after the battaile was ended, and pardoning all those which were taken there-of cofar. in, or found in the Campe, among which was MARCY'S TYLLIV'S CICERO.

bringing to his obedience in his way all the cities whereby he paffed, and gathering together such shippes and galleys as he then could, and with those which cefar pursued C As siv shad deliuered vnto him, who was received to his grace and service, he Pompey. being advertised that Pompey had been in Cyprus, he presumed that he tooke his

therein shipped such troupes as he was able, and passed into Asia the lesse, where Pompey,

duct, in a small boate towards the shore, he was murdered before that he came to the land, by the Kings commandement, by the hands of one called SEPTIMIVS, Septimists and another called A CHILA; thinking by meanes hereof to winne C E SARS

friendship, which was done by the perswasion and counsell of Forings an Eunuch, who was of great authoritie in the Court, and by whom the King was

fonne Sextvs Pompervs were fled from that port in the same ship, wherein they came. CESAR being landed and received into the citie, they presently brought him, for a present, the great Pompeies head, which he would not see:

Orient out Pemper.

and his ring and scale of Armes being presented vnto him, he wept a great while for pitie, confidering the end and successe of the great aduentures and prosperities of Pompey, who with fuch honour and fame had three times triumphed, and been so many more times Consul in Rome, and had commanded the same, and had been the most principall man therein for so many yeeres, and had obtai-

ned fo many victories and dignities.

When I y LIV'S CESAR landed in Egypt, he found the countrey infested with civill warres, and great discord between the yong King P TOLOMY and his fister the faire CLEOPATRA, about the division and inheritance of that kingdome; wherein IVLIVS CESAR (as a Romane Conful) tooke vpon him to entermeddle. For which cause (as C # s ar himselfe writeth) or because that their guiltie conscience, for the treacherous murder of Pompey made them to seare (as PLVTARCH affirmeth) the before named Fotinvs, which had been the practifer of this murder, and Achila which had been the actor thereof, both which were in great authoritie in the Court and with the King, imagining that C & s A R enclined to favour CLEOPATRAS faction, amassed and sent for the armie which the King had neere the citie confifting of 20000 good men, purpoling to doe by IVLIVS CE SARasthey had done by POMPEY; and so within few daies there began between C Es AR and the small forces which he brought with him, both defirs overre within the citie, and in the harbour, betweene the ships and galleys, the most cruel warre and fight that he euer had, which I cannot distinctly fet downe, for the many aduentures that paffed therin. But let this suffice, that I vivs C & sar fought therein many times in his owne person, both within the citie, whereof his enemies held the greatest part, and aiso in the harbour with his ships, and was sometime in such peril and danger, that he was driven to leape out of the boate wherein he was, into the water, and by fwimming to escape into one of his galleys. But at length his forces and aide being come from Alia and other parts, heat the end of nine moneths (for fo long lasted these warres) remained victorious, as in all others he had been, and the young King Prolomy was flaine in a fight. In this warre C at s AR did fuch exploits, and shewed such valour and wisedome, that for the same onely he did well deserve the same and renowne of a most excellent Captaine.

The death of Ptolom; king of Egypt.

in I cuit.

Cleanatra  $E_{i}(t)$ 

C E S AR having tamed the pride of the Egyptians, and put to death the murdeters of Pompey, and established CLEOPATRA for Queene and gouernour of that kingdome, whom the while that he remained there, he held for his friend, and the by him conceived and had a fonne called C # s ARIO; all things being established: he departed from Egypt towards Asia, trauelling through Syria now Soria, by reason that he was given to understand that while he was busied in the warres of Egypt, the King PHARNACES, sonne of the mightie King MITHRIDA-THS, thinking it now a fit time (feeing the ciuill discord betweene the Romanes) to recouer that which his father had loft: And having overthrowne Domicivs. whom C A S AR had fent to gouerne those parts, and also had taken by force of armes, the prouinces of Bithynia and Cappadocia, expelling thence the King A-RIOBARZANES, a friend and subject to Rome, and had began to doe the like in Armenia the leffe, which King DETOTARVS had made subject to the Romanes: IVLIVS CESAR comming with his armie fooner then King PHARNACES imagined, although that with his he had expected him; & having intelligence of his approch, within few daies they came to a battaile, in which (not without great refistance) the King was ouerthrowne and put to flight, with great flaughter of his

people,

people, from which he escaped by flight. Great was the ioy that C As AR concei. Collars villorie ued of this victorie, for the great defire that he had to returne to Rome, where hee "gainft Pharmaces hing of knew that many feandales and infolencies were committed, by reason of his absence: he knew also that Pomperes eldest sonne had seised on a great part of Spaine, and had raifed great power of those which MARCYS VARRO had there left, and of his fathers troupes: he also vnderstood that in Africa many principall Romanes, which had escaped from the battaile at Pharsalia, were gathered together, whereof MARCUS CATO was the chiefe, who is called VTICENSIS. (because that in Vtica he slew himselfe) and Scipio Pompeies father in law. and that these went thither with a great part of the galleys & ships of Pomperes Nauic and with the greatest power they were able to leuie, joyning with IvBA King of Mauritania, they had subdued all that countrey, and had a great armie in readines against C # s AR, having chosen S c1F10 for their Captaine, because that Caro would not take that charge voon him, and for that, the name of Sci-PIO was very fortunate in Africa. C # S AR having intelligence of all these things. within few daies with great celeritie and diligence, he recoursed all that which PHARNACES had vsurped, and chasing him out of Pontus, he recovered all those countries forwards, and leaving CELIVS MINVELVS for Captaine with two legions to guard that province, pacifying the contentions and controversies in the reft, rewarding the Kings and Tetrarches which had continued firme in league and amitie with Rome; without any longer aboad he departed from Alia. and in fhort space passing into Italie came to Rome, within little more then a vecre after that he departed from thence; a short time in truth, for the perfourmance of fo great matters and fo long a journey.

Within few daies after his comming to Rome, he made himselfe to bee chosen the third time Conful, and reforming (the best that he could in so short a time) al diforders in Rome, being grieued and not able to endure that his enemies should poffesse Africa, with great expedition he prepared all things necessarie, and from Rome tooke his way thitherward, commaunding his forces to follow him. First he went into Sicilia, and there thipped himfelfe, and thence paffed into Africa: and notwithstanding that, neither his Nanie nor Armie arrived with him, trufling in the valour and goodnes of his people, and his owne good fortune, he tooke land with those finall forces which he brought with him, neere vnto the citie of Adrumentum in the province of Africa; and from thence marched to another citie called Leptis, where hee was received : and after fome conflicts which patied his legions being come, and certaine troupes both on foote and horse- Colars volume backe, he began the warre, which lafted foure moneths, viz. from the beginning in Africaof Ianuarie till the end of Aprill, beginning first against PETREIVs and LABIE- gainst scipa. NVs: afterwards it was continued against Scipio and King IVBA, which affisted the contrary faction with 8000 men, the one halfe whereof were horsemen. whereof the prouince of Africa did then, and to this day doth abound; among all which were leuied against C E S AR eight legions of footmen and 20000 horse. In this warre were many encounters, skirmishes and battailes, which Hyreius in Hyreius libes. his Commentaries, PLVTARCH, LVCAN, LVCIVS FLORVS & others write of Appian lib.2. at large, in which C & s AR was in great daunger: but at the last with his force and Lucau lib. 3.
Lucius Florus good fortune, he ouercame them all in a great battaile; wherein, of the enemies, the. were flaine tenne thousand men, and C & s AR remained master of the field, and Tius Livius in few daies after of all the land: and Scipio and all the principall Captaines bib. 114. which were his adnersaries, died fundrie deaths within few daies; and king Iv BA lines.

The flrance death of Rias Juba and Afri

Cato Fricensis unate dei.t. Serpio leme and dismined bind die. Lac. atius Firmaans, Aulus Gellens in his I welfi , booke . Cicero in the 2. of his offices. Palerius. Maximus

Veni, vidi,

cap.3.

Cafars tri-

umphes.

by flight escaping from the battaile, and finding no place of refuge, in despaire, he and A FRANIV'S determined to die fighting, the one against the other, vntill they were both flaine, in which combate King I v B A being of greater strength then Afranivs, flew him; and afterwards commaunded a flaue of his owne, to kill himselfe, and so he died desperately.

The good Marcus Caro which was in the citie of Viva, knowing that CESAR marched thitherwards, and notwithstanding that he knew that he would not put him to death, but had rather a defire to pardon him, and to doe him honor; yet to the end that he would receive neither life nor honor from his enemie, he killed himselse: in whose death passed many notable things, recorded flewchimfele. Scipio who had been generall This books do ci- in this warre escaped from the battaile by flight, and shipping himselfe in certaine galleyes wherein he fled, was met withall, by C & s AR s naule; and he to the end that he would not be taken, giving himfelfe certaine woundes, cast himselfe into the Sea, and so was drowned. C # san having obtained so great and so entirea victorie, spending some few dayes in ordering the prouinces of Africa, confisking and reducing the kingdome and countrie of King Iv BA into a prouince, came to the citie of Viica, where he embarked himselfe the third day of June, and came to the Isle of Sardinia, wherein he stayed some few dayes, and arrived at Rome the flue and twentith day of Iulie. At his comming (as SYETONIVS, APPI-ANVS, and PLVTARCH record) there were graunted vnto him foure triumphes, the first triumph was for his conquest and victories in France, where were set the portraitures of the rivers of Rodanus and the Rhine, wrought in golde: and in the fecond triumph of Egypt, and of King PTOLOMEY, were set the river of Nelus and the Pharus of Alexandria burning. The third triumpth was of the province of Pontus and of King PHARNACES, wherein for the speede wherewith he profecuted the victorie, was placed a briefe writing which fignified as much; which was, veni, vidi, vici, which is to fay, I came, I faw, I ouercame. The fourth triumph was of the prouince of Africa, wherein was placed King IVBA his fonne, as a captiue, and in this triumpth (as SVETONIV's writeth) were given iewels and armes to Octavivs CASARS Nephew, which afterwards was Emperor, as we will declare hereafter, notwithstanding that he was not present in those warres by reason of his small age: for he was not then fully sixteene yeares olde. As for the battaile which C # S AR wanne against Pompey, he would not eainst Pompey, triumph thereof, because it was against Citizens of Rome. These triumphes being ended, giuing great rewards to his souldiers, and en-

tertaining the Romane people, with fealts, gifts and other very great alarges, he caused himselfe to be chosen the fourth time Consul: and to the end that there should be no place in the world wherein he would not be obeyed, he resolued to goe into Spaine, where he vnderstoode that GNEVS POMPEIVS (POM-PEIVS fonne) with the remainder of the armie which had escaped out of Africa, was gone to ioyne with his brother SEXTVS POMPEIVS, who alreadie was there, as I have faid, and was in possession of a great part of Spaine, with the cities of Seuill and Cordona, and many other in that coast, and many Spaniards were come to their ayde. C # s AR departing, carried with him his most experienced and chosen souldiers, and made so good speede that within few dayes he arrived in Spaine, and in this journey (as Svetonivs and Velleivs PATERCVLVS recorde) his Nephew Octavivs followedhim.

C ESAR being entred Spaine, came into the province of Betica, which is Andaluzia,

daluzia, where Sextvs Pompeivs and his brother Gnevs Pompeivs were Cafers going with fuch legions and people as they had gathered together; and so there began into Syanta-betweene them a cruell and blonding to The results of the state of the betweene them a cruell and bloudie warre. The ende whereof was, that neere formes. to the citie of Munda, C.ESAR and GNEVS POMPEIVS, (for SEXTVS POMPEIVS Betica, Andawas in Cordona) ioyned battaile; which was one of the most obstinate and cruell, luzia. that ever was in the world. For CESAR being the most excellent captaine, and the people which he brought with him, the most valiant fouldiers and accustomed to ouercomes the resolution and courage of Pompey and his people was such, and they fought in such manner, that CESARS esquadrons began to give ground and were readie to forsake the sield, and at the very poynt to have been wholy ouerthrowne. And the matter came to this iffue, that (as Sveronivs and Evero-PIVS doewrite) C & S AR was about to haue killed himselfe, because he would not seehimselse ouercome: and that he tooke a target from one of his souldiers and rushed in among his enemies, faying with a loud voyce (as PLVTARCH Coffer concl. reporteth) If you be not ashamed, leave me and deliver me into the hands of betalk and these boyes: for this shall bee the last day of my life and of your honour. With rompeter jour. which words, and his example, his people tooke heart in such manner, that recouering the ground which they had loft, the battaile became equall, which as APPIANVS affirmeth, lasted the most part of one whole day, without shewing any figne of victorie, fometime feeming to encline to one partie, and fometime to the other, vntill that at length C # s AR and his people did fo great matters, that the euening being come his enemies became faint, and began to flie, and the victorie was apparantly C # s AR s : and there dyed of his enemies aboue 30000. men in this fight, and of C # s AR s part, were flaine a thousand principall men and of account, besides many other of lesser estimation. Casar esteemed this victorie so much, and so gloried in the daunger wherein he had been, that after the victorie he vsed to say, that onely that day he fought for his life, and in all other battailes euerfor honour and victoric. He then remaining maister of the field, his aduersarie Pompey, who in nothing had failed of the office of a valiant and good captaine (after that he saw no other hope) escaped by slight, and wandring through many places was afterwards taken and flaine by C  $_{\it E\,S\,A\,R\,S}$ friends, whole head was brought vnto him; the like hapned vnto TABIENVS. His fecond brother SEXTVS POMPEIVS fled from Cordona, and in the end forfooke Spaine: hereafter more mention shall be made of him. IVLIV'S C # SAR Cefars triumph reconcred the cities of Senill and Cordona, and all the reft, and disposing of all forbis victories things in Spaine at his pleasure, returned to Rome, and entred therein, in triumph in Spaine. for the warres in Spaine, which was his fifth and last triumph: in this place Lv-CIVS FLORVS and PATERCVLVS make mention of all his triumphes.

C & s AR came to be the most mightie, the most redoubted, and most highly efteemed man that euer had been in the world, having subdued and conquered the greatest part thereof, with armie and by force of armes, in as little time, as it might seeme, that another man might beable to trauaile those countries by resonable iourneyes; all which being in obedience and fubication vnto him, he made himselfe perpetuall Dictator of Rome; and so without contradiction he The beginning finished the making of himselfesoueraigne Lord and Monarch of the Romane of the Romane Empire, within little lesse then fine yeares after that he began the same. And this Empire. was the original and beginning of the Romanc Emperours: for Ivilvs Cas AR would not be called King: for the name of King was abhorred, and odious to the Theoriginall

Romanes aboue all things in the world, after that the Kings were chafed from of the name of

Rome, Emperour.

Rome, but contenting himselfe to be called perpetual Dictator and also Emperor. although not with a name of fuch dignitie, as his successors have done since, but as by a name which fignified that hee had been a conquerour in battailes in the warres, which in this fenfe was given to the Romane Captaines, when they had obtained any notable victorie: but after Iv LIVS C # SAR, al his fuccessors tooke that name, and gloried to be called Emperours, which was facred for the most high title and dignitie in the world.

IVLIVS CESAR having obtained the dominion which he so much desired. shewed in all things great clemencie and magnanimitic, honouring and rewarding his friends, and eafily forgiuing and very cheerefully pardoning all those which had bin his aduerfaries; and so he not onely pardoned BRVTVs and CAS-SIVS, CICERO, MARCELLYS, and many others: but also some of them headmitted to his companie and private familiaritie, and to offices and dignities. It is certaine that among all the many vertues and fingularities wherewith C & SAR The elemencie was endued, his elemencie and liberalitie were most glorious. But this sufficed not to extinguish the defire to recouer the losse of libertie, neither to asswage the hatred and malice conceived against him by his adversaries, as in time did ap-

And notwithstanding that many were grieued, yet some for the loue which they bare him; others for feare or diffimulation; the Senate and people of Rome, and finally all, gaue him names, preheminencies and titles of honour, fuch as nener had been given to any other, neither ought he to have accepted the fame, as PLYTARCH, APPIAN and others doe report. But C # s AR s minde and ambition was fo great, and his thoughts fo eleuate and fo high, that he held nothing for fo great, but that he was worthie thereof and had deferued the same : and so he not only accepted that which they offered him, but many more were offered, because they knew that he defired the same. Whereupon they gaue him the name The names and of Europerour, Pather, restorer and conserver of his countrey: he was created perpetuall Dictator, and Conful for tenne yeeres, and perpetuall Cenfor of their cu-Chen to Cefar. Romes. His fature and image was erected among the Kings of Rome, and a chaire and throne of Iuorie in the Temples and Senate, and a high pulpit and throne in the Theatre, and in the place where the Senatours did vie to fit, his pictures and frames were fet up in all the Temples and publike places. But here the matter ccased not, which they gauehim, and he accepted of some things which only to those whom they held for Gods, ought to have been attributed, the moneth which they called Quintil, they called I v L I v s after his name, as March of their god Mars, and Iune after the goddesse Ivno: they did also consecrate and build Temples vnto him, as vnto I v P I T E R, and their other gods: and gaue him certaine honours which they held particularly for their gods, which they call Thenfas:and fo they did many other things to his honour, which exceeded all measure.

> IVLIVS CESAR enjoying fuch honour and power, so as he had no equall or fecond in the world with whom he might contend; it feemeth that he would contend with himselfe, and imagine and attempt something wherein he might excell himselfe: for he was not contented with all the victories which he had obtained, neither (as Plinie and Solinys and other report) to have fought for them in fiftie feuerall battailes (in all which he ouercame) fauing in that one at Dyrrachium against Pompey, where, as we have alreadie faid, he was not wholy ouerthrowne, neither (according to the fame authors) to have flaine in the warres

and battailes which he fought, a million, ninetic and odde thousand men; and vet they fay that they reckon not those which died in the civill warres: but that as he was a man of a most high minde, he fought to doe greater matters, if greater might be. For first he determined to passe into the East, there to conquer and sub-The high due the fierce nation of the Parthians, and to reuenge the death of MARCYS purposes of Co-CRASSVS, and to passe thorough Hircania and other countries, vntill he should far. come to the Caspian Sea, and so thorough all the provinces of Scythia Asiatica. and passing the river Tanais, to returne thorough Scythia in Europe, and in this retreit to come into Germany, and other provinces bordering thereupon, conquering and subduing them all to the Romane Empire: for the which conquest he presently caused to be leuied in sundrie places, tenne thousand horsemen, and fixteene legions of chosen footmen, and appointing the time, wherin he thought to depart, he commaunded them to march towards their Rendeuous, And befides all this, he fought not onely to subdue and ouercome all the nations of the world but to correct and reforme nature it selfe: for he purposed to have made an Iland of Peloponesus, which now is called Morea, by cutting the necke of the

land which is betweene the Egean and the Ionian Seas.

Of the River Tiber and the River Anien (as PLVTAR chfaith) he purposed to haue altered the courses, and to haue opened new channels, through which they should run into the Sea, making them to leave their naturall course, and capeable to beare great ships. He commaunded and alreadie began to digge downe, and make plaine many hils and high mountaines in Italie, and to drie vp and to dreine fome of the great lakes and marishes which are therein; and in this manner, here thought to have done other things more then a man, which feemed to be poffible to none but to God alone. He amended and corrected (as many authors af- cefar correcfirme) the account and computation of the yeere, conforming it with the course tation of the of the Sunne, and brought it to that rule which is yet held: for before that time it vere. was much out of order. He did the like in the account and course of the Moone, Suetonius, and the coniunctions and oppositions of her and of the Sunne: and this was at
Conformus. tributed to him for tyrannie, by those which did emulate and hatchim: For one day in a discourse in the presence of Cicero, it was said, that the next day there should be an Eclipse of the Sunne; yea (quoth he) it is so, for C As AR hath so commaunded. Many other things C # s AR began, which were very great, in reforming the lawes, cultomes and offices, which for breuitie I omit: among which the reedifying of the destroyed citie of Carthage by Scipio (as all the world carthage reknoweth) was one; and he fent thither Colonies and Romane citizens to inha-peopled by cabite: the like he did by Corinth. But all these deeds & these so high thoughts and far. determinations were abridged by death, which within few daies enfued: & this man which no force could refift, a few men, yea & those disarmed, were of power to bereaue of life, as hereafter we will declare. Fine moneths only he lived a foueraigne Lord in peace (as Velleivs Pater cylys hath noted) when those in whom he reposed greatest trust, conspired his death.

Some write that C E S AR was counselled to have had a guard alwaics about him: whereto he answered, that he would have none, for hee would rather die once, then liue continually in care and feare. Many fet downe the causes where- The causes of fore they defired to kill him: Some fay that it was of hatred which they had long the confirmation of the borne him: fome others fay, that it was for the defire of libertie, holding him for Calar. a tyrant: But the most part are of opinion, that it was of suspition that hee would have caused himselfe to be called and made king of Rome, athing in the highest

degree

and bountie of

the Ides of March, which is the fifteenth day of that month, in the temple

Ides of March are come : yea answered Spyrina, and I know that they are not

yet past also. Being come to the temple where the Senate was to fit that day, he

came downe from his Litter and entred thereinto, and having first done sacrifice.

(as then was the custome) which all according to their superstitious ceremonies

of that time, presaged to be fatall and infortunate, he sate downe in the Senate in

his chaire, and BRUTUS ALBINUS entertaining MARCUS ANTONIUS at

the doore of the temple (or after some others) TREBONIVS (as it was decreed)

one of the conspiratours (whose name was Celer) came to Cesar vnder

colour to entreate him to be pleased to release a brother of his from banishment,

degree hatefull to the Romanes: whereof hee gaue many fignes and causes to fuspect, which PLVTARCH and others write at large. Hereunto was added, that he began to have men in contempt, and all other things, whereby he became hatefull to many. For he yield to fay, that the Common-wealth was but a voyce and a name without a bodie, or substance; and that it well appeared that Cor-NELIVS SYLLA had no learning feeing that he refigned the perpetuall Dictatorthip. All the whole Senate, comming one day into the Temple of Venus, wherein he was he attended their comming, fitting still, and rose not, as hee was wont to doe; notwith standing (as some say) that CORNELIUS BALBUS counselled him to rife: which was a thing much noted and odious to the Common-wealth. His friends and fauourites began also to say and to publish, that in the bookes of the Sibyls (which in Rome were held in great veneration and for a true prophecie) it was written, that the Parthians could neuer bee ouercome but by a man which should have the title of king, and they practifed that C # s AR should take this name, for that conquest, whither he had determined to goe : and although that he made shew to be grieued and much moued thereat, yet they suspected the contrarie, which suspition encreased (besides that which is alreadie said) for that, that the Tribunes of the people commaunded a man to be apprehended, which had fet a Diademe (which is the enfigne of a king) vpon the head of one of C Es ARS flatues. Whereat C As AR was so highly offended with the Tribunes, that he deposed them from their offices, making shew that he did it because they gave him cause of offence, in this, that they would make the world beleeve that there was cause of suspition, that he would make himselfe a tyrant King. The like in a manner passed, when MARCUS ANTONIUS, which was a great fauourite of his, (and that yeere) his fellow and companion in the Consulship, being at certaine publike games, came to C Æs AR and put a Diademe vpon his head : and although that he cast it downe, yet they all imagined that MARCUS ANTONIVS would not have been so bold and so hardie to have done it, without his consent and goodwill; and that he did this to proue, what liking the people had thereto, and how they would take it: fo as thefe and fuch other like things as paffed, gaue them occasion to defire and to procure his death, as some of them did. This did also encourage them, and made them attempt to doe it: for that in fundrie publike places certaine writings were fet vp, which did incite and animate them to conspire against him: as youn the statue of Bratus, which in ancient time had chased the Kings out of Rome, wherein were written these words: Would to God thou wert now living Brutus. And vpon the image of MARCVS BRVTVS, which then was Pretor, and descended from the other BRVTVs, these words: Thou seepest long Brutus, truly thou art not Brutus. And as Appian recounteth, at other times, they fet up others which imported: Thou art dead Brutus, would to God thou wast living, thou art unworthie of the succession from the Bruti: surely thou art not descended from that good Brutus. And other fuch like things were fet youn these statues and in other places. So as for all these reasons and for other added hereunto, there were feuentie of the most principall men in Rome which conspired to put him to death; one alluring another, vntill that they amounted to that number: of which cie against Ju- the most principall heads were DECIVS, MARCYS BRYTYS, CAIVS CAS-SIVS; yet MARCUS BRUTUS was held for C # SARS sonne, for his mother was fuspected with him, and had received from him great honours and good entertainments : with these were GAIVS CASCA, ATTILIVS CIMBER, SER-VIVS GALBA, QVINTUS LIGARIUS, MARCUS SPURIUS, and many other

where the Senators were to fit that day: which was agreed upon and kept fo close and fecret, that (notwithstanding their great number) there was not any one found that did discouer the same. But there happened so many signes and prodigies, and to himselfe there happened so many auguries and forewarnings. that without knowing any cause, all men were of opinion that C E SARS death was neere at hand: the which among many others which recite the fame, Ovid doth most excellently set downe in his Metamorphoses, which for breuitie I omit but chiefly S PV RINA which was his diuiner or foothfaier, diuined and for- Lib. 14. warned him, that he should looke to himselfe, vntill that the Ides of March were past: for his life was in great danger: and CESARS owne wife entreated him voon herknees, that he would not that day goe foorth to the Senate; for she had dreamed that he lay dead in her lappe. Finally, C & s AR was fo many waies forewarned and put in such feare of some great danger, that he was about to fend to MARCUS ANTONIUS to make his excuse, and to deferre the Senate untill another day: But as it was Gods will that he should die so, MARCY's BRYTYS being in place when this matter was in question (who, as we have alreadic faid. was one of the conspirators) counselled C & S AR that in no case he should shew any fuch feare, whereupon he determined to goe thither. Some (as SVETONIVS, and PLVTARCH) write that CESAR made small account of death, and that he suspected that hee should die in this manner; for he faid, that he did not fo much effeeme his owne life, as the daunger whereinto the common-wealth would fall by losing him: For as for him, he had wonne and obtained power, fame and glorie enough for himfelfe, and that he in no time could dy with greater honour. It gaue also cause of this suspition in this, that some discoursing in his presence the night before his death, what kinde of death was best? euen, quoth he, the sodaine, and that which is not prepensed. Whether this be true or no, I know not, but the fifteenth of March he went from his house in a litter towards the Senate, and passing along the streete, there was a petition delivered vnto him, which some say, ARTEMIDORY's his Maister in the Greeke tongue gaue him: others fay, that it was given to him by another, and that ARTE- A petition gi-MID ORV'S could not come fo neere to him as to aduife him: but who focuer he "en to Cefar. were that gaue it, therein was given him in writing, all that which was concluded in this conspiracie, and he which gaue it defired him to reade it presently. which he began to doe; but there came so many to speake to him, that he could but begin to reade it, for it was found in his hand when he was dead. And paf-

fing fo along the streete, he also mette with Spyring, who had given him warning to looke to himselfe untill the Ides of March were past, and as C & s AR saw him very pleasant and iesting he said, doest thou not know Spyring that the

lius Celar.

Calea

Aretet.

Cetar vvas azine in the Senate, and died at Pompcies feet. The excellenvies of Lulius Cs/ar.

The time woherein C.e-Sar died.

and presently all the rest of the conspirators drew neere to his chaire: which when C E S AR perceived, thinking that they had al come for the same purpose, it is written that he said to them, what perforce is this? and at that instant one of them whose name was Casca, beginning, they all drew their poiniards and fwords, which they had brought in fecret for that purpose vnder their gownes, and began to wound him. The first blow that he received, they say, that CASCA gaue him in the throate, at which hurt CESAR spake a lowde saying, what doest thou traitour Casca? and wresting the poiniard out of his hands, he arose and stabbed Casca through the arme, and being about to strike him the second time, he was letted by the other woundes which they gaue him, with great force and courage leaping from one fide to the other, to defend himselfe. But when hefaw Marcus Brutus, (whoseauthoriticand reputation was great) with his sworde drawne in his hand, wherewith he had alreadie wounded him in the thigh, they write that he was much amazed thereat, and faid in the Greeke tongue (which the Romanes did then understand and vsually speake) Why, hownow fonne BRVTV s, and thou also? And having said so, and seeing so many weapons bent against him, and that no bodie came to his rescue, for there was so great a hurlie burlie in the Senate, that they all thought to have dyed, and being in despaire none durst attempt to defend him: he remembred to keepe the honour of his person, and with his right hand couered his head with part of his robe, and with his left hand, he girt himselfe and setled his clothes about him, and being fo couered, he fell dead to the ground, wounded with three and twentie wounds and his fortune was to fall at the foote of the seate or base whereupon Pom-PEIES statue stoode, which was noted for the judgement and permission of God. And so in this manner died the most mightie, the most worthie, valiant, wise and fortunate Prince and captaine, that without all doubt before him hath, been in the world, and I know not if after him in valour and humane power there hath been the like. For his excellencies, graces and abilities, his inuincible minde, his incomparable force and courage, the battailes and victories which he obtained; the prouinces, Kings and nations, which he ouercame and subdued; his counsels, stratagems, pollicies, and bold attempts which he yied therein; his magnanimitie, clemencie and bountie with the conquered and conquerors; his high thoughts and purpofes, being well weighed and confidered: it will plainely appeare, that in none of these thinges aforesaid, neither in many other more which may be faid of him, there hath not been any King or captaine that hath excelled him, but that he in the most hath excelled all others, and had sewer imperfections and vices then any other : for fetting apart his ambition and defire to raigne, (which he held for no vice, and might alleadge that he was compelled thereto) he was onely noted and blamed, as too much given to women; as for the rest wherewith he was charged, it doth rather appeare to be the murmuring and flandering of his aduersaries, then any truth.

C # S AR then was flaine in the fixe and fiftith yeare of his age, four eyeares and a little more (according to PLVTARCHES computation) after the death of POMPEY; in the scuen hundred and tenth yeare (according to Orosivs) after the foundation of Rome; and according to the Hebrew truth, in the three thouland and tenth yeare from the creation of the world; and according to the greater account of the feuentie Interpretors, fine thousand, one hundred, fiftie and seauen yeares; in the hundred, eightie and sourth Olympiad; and sortic and two yeares before the birth of Chrift our redeemer. But I would the reader to vnderstand.

understand, that in this account of yeeres, there sometimes happeneth difference betweene the authors.

C & s AR had neither sonne nor daughter legitimate, at the time of his death; for notwithstanding that he was married source severall times, vet he had but one onely daughter, named Ivlia, which (as I haue faid) was married to Pompey. and died. Wherefore he adopted and chose for his sonne by his last will, and made him his heire in the Dodrant, which are nine partes of the twelve of his goods, his Nephew OCTAVIVS CASAR; which afterwards was called OCTA-Inline Cefar VIANYS AVGVSTVS, who wasnephew of his fifter IVLIA and of Activs manus his Ne-BALBYS, and sonne of Aciahis neece, and of Octavivs Pretorin Macedo-phew for his nia, who died fodainly. Octavivs was at this time by the commandement forme. of his vncle, in the citic of Apollonia in the prouince of Epire, where he gaue him-parentage,

felfe to studie, staying for him there; thence to goe with him to the warres of the Parthians, being then of the age of seuenteene yeeres.

C & S AR being dead in the manner as I have faid (as it happeneth in great accidents) so the newes presently ranne ouer all the citie, and the tumult and alteration therein was fo great, that no man knew what to doe, or fay: all offices ceafed, the temples were shut vp, there was no man but was afraid: C # s AR s friends were afraid of those which slew him, and they of his friends. It would be a long discourse to recite what passed and succeeded, but I will briefly set downe that which shall be most to my purpose. BRYTY's and CASSIV's and all the conspirators, and others which were willing to ioyne with them, having put him to death, seeing the greathurlie burlie and tumult among the people (and after PLVTARCH) for feare of MARCUS ANTONIVS and LEPIDVS, whereof the one was Conful, and the other Maister of the horsemen, durst not goe to their houses, neither to doe such other things as they had pretended; but presently from thence went to feafe vpon the Capitoll, and crying by the way as they went, libertic, libertic, desiring and imploring the affistance and fauour of the people. The rest of that day and all the next night; MARCUS ANTONIVS and LEPIDVS which tooke C & s AR s part, were in armes, and there passed treaties and messages from the one to the other; wherein it was agreed that the Senate The determination should fit, whither BRYTYS and CASSIVS came, MARCYS ANTONIVS his nation of the fonnes (by the perswasion of Cicero agreat louer of the libertie) remaining holtages for them; where they treated of peace and concord, and that all that which was past should be buried in perpetual silence and oblivion. Whereunto MARCVS ANTONIVS (who was Conful) and all the whole Senate agreed, and all the prouinces being divided, there was a great likelyhoode of peace, for the Senate approoued and commended the fact, and the people diffembled it: for in one part the authoritie of BRVTVs and CASSIVS, and the name of libertie, seemed to give them some contentment, and of the otherside, the greatnes of the fact and the loue which they bare vnto C & S AR, did moue and incite them to hate the murtherers, and so it rested indeterminate. But MARCYS AN-TONIVS, as one who also thought to become a tyrant, euersought meanes to incensethe people against them: and it passed so, that among other things which were done, it followed that CESARS testament was opened, wherein besides the adopting of his Nephew Octavivs for his sonne, and appointing him casarivilland for his chiefe heire, among other bequests which he made, he bequeathed to testament. the people of Rome certaine gardens and heritages neere the river of Tiber, and to euery citizen of Rome a certaine fum of money, to be deuided among them:

which

diffension did much grieue them all, and both the one part and the other layd all the fault on LEPIDVS. Which when OCTAVIAN understood, before that they would fall so farre out as to take armes, he practifed secret treaties with fundry in LEPIDVS his army, and with gifts and promifes drew them to his will: and hauing well effected this deuise, he one day with a great troupe of horsemen roade neere to LEPIDVS his Camp, and fingling himselfe from his companie, he began to parley with his fouldiers, complaining of him, & laying the fault of all that was like to ensue vpon LEPIDVS: which being heard by them, many of them began to come ouer to his fide. And LEPIDVS aduertifed hereof, commanded the alarme to be given, and to fally out against him, so as they skirmished, wherein in the beginning OCTAVIAN was in some danger, but it lasted not long: for the most part of Lepidys his troupes passed over to Octavian, which Lepidys could not refift; who feeing himfelfe in danger to be abandoned by the whole, for his last refuge rendred himselfe into CESARS power, and putting off his roabe of Generall, went out of his Tent, and yeelded himselfe vnto O CTAVIA-NVs, humbly crauing him to pardon him: whom Octavian received, as though he had neuer offended him, very court coufly and honorably, but he reflored him neither to his estate nor power, but sent him to Rome well accompanied and enterteined, but without Magistracie or office, with the dignitie of highest Priest only, which he had euer held from the death of Ivilvs CESAR whose it was: and so this quarrell was ended without battaile or bloudshed, which some feared would have brought both danger and calamitie.

Ecpidus deprined of bis prouince of Africa.

OCTAVIANVS CESAR remained Lord of Sicilia, depriving LEPIDVS of the league and Triumuirat, appropriating to himselfe the prouince of Africa, and remained generall of the three armies, viz. that which was LEPIDVs his army, POMPELES army, & his owne, wherein APPIANV saffirmeth, were 45. Legions of footemen, and 25000. horsemen well armed; besides many other light horsemen and Numidians, which feemeth not incredible to him that confidereth how ofmen of war. great a part of the world they commaunded which leuyed the same. He affirmeth alfo, that there were then at fea and vpon the coast 600. Galleys, and a greater number of Ships, Foists, and Brigandines: And although that OCTAVIA-NVS had so great forces, yet would he not pursue or sendaster POMPEY, who (as we have fayd) fled, which he did (as some did suspect) beleeuing that M a r-CVS ANTONIVS would have harboured and succoured him, being glad that occasion might haue bin offred to quarrell with him, as now there was no other man in the world that was any eye-fore vnto him, but he: or else he did it, as he himselse sayd afterwards, for that Pompey was none of those which conspired C & S ARS death. And purposing now to disperse his armies and to returne to Rome, he payd his fouldiers, giving crownes and other enfignes and armes to those which had performed any notable exploits in the warres, and having given many gifts and made many faire promifes to his legions, pardoning the Captaines and fouldiers which had followed Pompey, and in the best manner that he could, paying and contenting LEPID vs his companies he fent them home to their houses; notwithstanding that there were some scandales and mutinies, but he pacified and brought all in good order, and leaving in Sicily; and fending into Africa Pretors and Gouernors, he tooke his way towards Rome, where he was received with ouacion entertainement, which was little leffe then atriumph, with incredible ioy and honor, and began to be so beloued and esteemed, that in many places they crected Temples and Altars vnto him, as to their gods; and he ordered and reformed al things, which by reason of the warres and troubles were corrupted and out of order. It would be a large discourse to declare the particulars of all things which he did in Rome and in the prouinces, as well concerning the gouernment and iustice, as the decencie and beautifying thereof.

At this time MARCUS ANTONIVS who was in the East, notwithstanding that in the warres of the Parthians he had no prosperous successe; yet neuertheleffe was still of very great power, very rich, and much served and obeyed in all the provinces of Gracia, Asia, Egypt, and all the rest in his dition. But he was so much blinded and beforted with the loue and companie of CLEOPATRA

Queene of Egypt, that he thought of nothing but how to faisfie her humour, ematerial picture. ing vnable to depart from her, or to have any regard or remembrance of his wife paira. OCTAVIA and fifter to OCTAVIANVS, who in beautic and wifedome was no-

thing inferiour to her, and in vertue and goodnes did farre excell her.

And so the Monarchie of the world was divided betweene these two men, the one in the East, and the other in the West: and as the desire and hunger to raigneis endlesse, and the thirst with continuance encreaseth, as though that each of them had not had enough to his share, both of the bethought themselves how they might be able to obtaine the whole, principally OCTAVIAN, feeing that ANTONY cared not for his fifter, neither sent for her after that he had left her in Rome, he therefore continually counselled and vrged her to goe to her husband, to haue (as I beleeue) occasion to fall out with him (as PLVTARCH recounteth in thelife of Antony) if she were not well entertained. And she not understanding this deuice, with intent to stop and let any controuersie that might arise betweene her husband and her brother, departed from Rome, bearing with her many iewels and prefents, which she had gathered together, to carrie them to MARcvs Antonivs, as Velleivs Patercvivs recordeth. But he who had fixed his heart vpon CLEOPATRA, wrote to her vpon the way, that she should stay in Gracia in the citic of Athens, vntill hee should returne from the journey which hee purposed to make against the Parthians, which hee neuer performed, CLEOPATRA hindring the same. Finally, to bee briefe (for otherwaies there were much to fay) O CT AVIA fent all those things which she brought with her, to her husband; and this nothing auailing, the returned to Rome for rowfull, and by himforsaken. Whereupon OCTAVIAN began openly to complaine of MAR-CVS ANTONIVS, and to shew himselfe his enemie: and MARCYS ANTONIVS which had the fame defire, entred into league and amitie with the King of the Medes in Asia; and CLEOPATRA, besides the title of Egypt, he made to be called Queene of Syria, Libya, and Cyprus, and iountly with her to a fonne of hers named CE SARION, of whom (as we have alreadic faid) IVLIVS CE SAR left her with former of units child when he was in Egypt, and to two fonnes which he had by her, the one na- Cx/ar. med Prolomy, and the other Alex and Er, he gaue titles of Kings, to Alex-ANDER of Armenia and Parthia, which he meant to conquer; and to PTOLOMY of Cilicia and Phanicia: for which and many other causes which were offered, the enmitte betweene him and O c TA VIAN was publike and apparant; but the warre was yet deferred, for that O C TAVIAN was hindred by the warres in Illyricum and Dalmatia, now called Siauonia. The people of which countries, seeing the civill warres of the Romanes, rofe and rebelled, with other nations which confpired with them, and did affift them, although not fubiects as they were, to wit, the two Pannonia, the vpper which is now Austria, and the lower, which is Hungarie, and Noricum, which is now part of Bauaria, with other their borderers and neigh-

E 3

bours.

The warres which Octavi Illyricum.

bours. Which warre OCTAVIAN vndertooke of fet purpose, and followed it in his owne person, which was very cruel! and dangerous: wherein he was twice wounded, and made marueilous proofe of his person, both for valour and wisedome: wherein there passed more and greater matters then I haue time to recite. Appianvs in his fixt booke which he calleth Illyricque, writeth thereof at large: and also Velleivs PATERCYLYs, although more briefly, Lycivs Florys, and Tirvs Livivs abreniated by him and some others. The end thereof was, that OCTAVIAN not onely reduced and tamed Illyricum, and fundrie Nations, contained under that name, but also the Pannonias, and the rest which had conspired with those of Illyricum, partly by himself in person, & partly by his Captaines.

These victories being obtained, OCTAVIANVS CESAR came victorious to Rome: and notwithstanding that the triumph was granted vnto him, yet he would not triumph as then; fo great was the defire hee had to warre against Marcvs ANTONIVS, who was no better affected vnto him, but rather levied fouldiers, procured friends and armes against him, and promised his friend CLEOPATRA, to bring her triumphing into Rome. Lycivs Florvs writeth, that the requested of him the rule and Empire of Rome, and he promised it her:as though the Romanes had been more easie to subdue then the Parthians. And the matter standing in these termes, MARCYS ANTONIVS sent to his wife OCTAVIA sister to OCTAVIANVS, a divorcement and renunciation of his mariage, in such manner as then was accustomed; commaunding her to goe out of his house, wherein the dwelled in Rome: All which with many other matters OcTAVIAN fignified in the Senate, complaining thereof against him, and in his orations and speeches to the people, accusing him also, that the second flue yeeres of his Triumuirat and league being expired, without comming to Rome, or respecting the authoritie of the Senate, he exercised the same, and held the possession of Gracia and the prouinces of the East, and so vsed many speeches against MARCVS ANTONIVS to perswade and incense the people against him.

MARC VS ANTONIVS on the other fide, complained by meffengers and letters, alleaging that OCTAVIAN had often broken the peace, and had cast SEX-TVS POMPEIVS out of Sicilia, remaining with those provinces and others which he held; and that therein he had no minde of him, neither had given him any part thereof; and that hee detained the galleys which he lent him for that warre: and besides this, that he had vsed meanes and deuices to depriue L # PI-DV s, and so held all the prouinces of Africa, and all the legions which were his, without imparting any thing thereof vnto him of all these things: and that hee had given the fields and lands of al Italie to his people and fouldiers, without contributing any part thereof vnto his. And in this manner the one accused the other, and either of them made shew, and fained that he was vrged and enforced to vindertake this warre. But the truth is, they both defired to bee Lords of the whole, and in my opinion, vainglorie, ambition, couctoufnes, and enuic, moued them thereto, each of them putting his determination in effect, calling and leuying forces and aides; so as the whole world in a manner, either of the one fide or other, was moved and troubled therewith : those of the West in the behalfe of OCTAVIAN, and those of the East in fauour of MARCYS ANTONIVS; at the least, the best and most choise people of all, although not so many as they might have levied: for the Romanes never yled to make warres with such huge multitudes and excessive armies, which they should not be well able to maintaine and rule, as the Persians and other barbarous nations did.

ANTONY

ANY ONY was first on foote, and came with great troupes to the famous citie of Ephelus, which was in Ionia a province in Alia the leffe, whither he had fent for his ships and Nauie to come, to passe into Europe, and had there in readines 800. betweene galleys and ships of burthen, 200. whereof CLEOFATRA gaue to him with all the munition and victuals necessarie for the fleete; and her selse he caried with him, contrarie to the opinion of all those which were of his counsell: And with him, contrarie to the opinion of all those which were of this counter, the herewith came to the lle of Samos, whither he had appointed to come by a cer. Samos an Itein the Ionian Sca taine day, all the Kings, Tetrarches and people of cities, which came to ferue him our against Ein this warre, and from thence he parted and came to Athens. PLVTARCH descri- phess. beth the Kings which came with him, and those which sent some forces to his preparation of aide, part whereof were friends and allies to the Empire, and others vaffals and Marcus Antofubicas; to which was given the title and government of provinces: of which nine. he named TARCONDEMYS of the vpper Cilicia, and ARCHELAVS of Cappadocia, PHILADELPHYS Of Paphlagonia, and MITHRIDATES Of Comagena, & others alfor besides those which sent their forces, as were HERODE sking of Iudea, AMYN-TAS of Lycaonia, and the king of Arabia, the king of the Medes, and PALEMON king of Pontus, and some others: wherein(it was faid) he brought 100000. singular good and well trained footmen, and 22000 horsemen : and according to the same Plytarch, besides this armie by land, his Nauie by Sea consisted of fine hundred galleys, befides the ships of burthen which brought the munition and victuals.

Although that in the number of ships and galleys the authors doe varie, which ought not diminish the credit of the historie, sithence that in matters which passe now adaies which we see with our eyes, wee can hardly know the certaine number of the ships and of the armies. MARCUS ANTONIVS came with such power. that the Historiographers affirme, that if he had prefently taken his passage for Italie, he had put O CT AVIAN to his shifts, and in great hazard: for he had not sufficient forces leuied to have fought with him, neither had hee necessarie provision for the warres. And fo Marcys Antonivs his long delaying of time, was imputed vnto him for want of discretion, knowledge and forefight of the good fortune which was offred him: For he spent so much time in Athens, that O c-TAVIAN had leifure to prouide all things wanting, from Italie, France, Spaine, and other prouinces in his subjection: and leuying 80000 chosen and trained souldiers, and aboue 20000.horse, seeing that hee taried so long, he sent him word, that for as much as he had ships and prouision fit thereto, he should draw neere to Italie, where he staied in the field to give him battaile, promising to give him free Ports and Hauens, where he might fafely take landing without any interruption, to the end that he might the more commodiously order and prouide all things thereto necessarie. Whereto Antonyanswered, that it would be better if hee would determine this quarrell in person against him bodie to bodie, which hee would willingly accept; notwithstanding that he was now old and crazed, and the other young and lustie: and if he liked not hereof, he would stay for him with his people in the fields of Pharfalia, in the same place where his father Iv LIVs CESARfought with GNEVS POMPEIVS.

These Ambassades and messages passing betweene them, without effect: A N-TONY drew his Armie by land, and his Nauie by sea, towards the coast of Italy; and OCTAVIAN amassing his ships in Brundusium, embarked his legions, and croffing the Sea came to a place called Torma, in the province of Epire, which is Epire, now called Romania. And after certaine notable matters which paffed, the two Romania.

The causes of the warre betweene Octauianus and Marcus Anto nius, and the beginning thereof.

armies drew neere the one to the other, and the like did the Nauies by fea. O CTA-VIANVS Nauie (as PLVTARCHaffirmeth) confilted of 250. galleys, but better appointed and fwifter, then MARCUS ANTONIUS his gallevs were, which were more in number, although (as I haue faid) the authors agree not: but the most common opinion is, as I haue faid. But howfocuer it were, MARCVS ANT o-NIV s perswaded by CLEOPATRA(who even in this also was the cause of his perdition) would needes trie his fortune in a battaile at Sea, notwithstanding that in his armie by land hee had the aduantage. CLEOPATRA did this (as fome write, and as it after appeared) thereby to have the better meanes to flie if the battaile should be lost. Any ony chusing 22000.men out of his armie, put them abourd his fleete, which was neere at hand: and O c TAVIAN, who refused not the combat vpon the water, made his prouision also for the battaile; and shipping himselfe aboord the galleys, committed the charge of his armie by land to TAVRVs: and ANTONY doing the like, left his with CANIDIVS; in fight of both which, the two most mightie men, with the best troupes and Nauies of the world, tooke the Seas, which fought for no lesse matter then the Empire and Monarchie thereof: Which was deferred for three daies space in despite of both parties, the Seas swelling so high that they could not gouerne their vessels. The fourth day they came to encounter at a Cape called Acins, which is in Epire, not farre from whence were their armies by land. The battaile was one of the most fierce and cruell that hath been written of: for it lasted tenne houres before that O CTAVIAN, who was the victor, did wholy obtains the victorie, although that ANTONY flaied not folong therein: for as CLEOPATRAknew better how to mollifie and foften mens harts, then to encourage them in the hottest and greatest furie of the battaile, with a feminine minde vnable to endure the fight of fo fierce a spectacle, she fled away in her galley, whom seuentie of her other galleys followed; which is not to be wondred at, but how she durst stay so long. But the valuckie MARCYS ANTONIVS.

flight of Mareus Antonius.

The battaile at

Sea betweene

Octavianus

and Marcus

Antonius.

terwards ended his life, as we will declare.

who all his life time had been a most valiant and excellent Captaine, that day me-

tamorphosed into CLEOPATRA, seeing her galley flie, wherein he had fixed his

heart and eyes, went out of his, for that it feemed too heavy, and embarking him-

felfe in another more fwift (defiring rather to flie with CLEOPATRA, then to pre-

uaile without her) followed her, without respect of his armies by land or sea,

which remained: and ouertaking her, he went aboord the same galley wherein

fhe was: wherein hee failed three daies without feeing or speaking to her, for

shame (as it is most likely) for the great weakenes which he had shewed. And af-

ter some wandring, he arrived in the harbour at Alexandria in Egypt, where he af-

His Nauie which he left fighting, although without a captaine, made relistance ottanianus bis solong as I hauesaid, and there were slaine thereof aboue fine thousand men: but in the end it was wholy ouerthrowne, more through want of a captaine, then through any force of the enemie : although some write, that the lightnes and fwiftnes of O CTAVIANS gallies was a great helpe vnto him, and so he remained conqueror, and graunted life and pardon to the conquered, and had in his power three hundred of their gallies. And in the armie by land there wanted neither constancie, nor faith to their captaine Antonie although abandoned by him. which remained seven dayes in their campe readie to give battaile, without accepting any composition or offer, sent or made vnto them by O c T AV, I A N, with 2 shew that they would yet hauestayed longertime, if CANIDIVS, whom AN-TONIE left in his steede, had not abused his charge, as he which placed him there-

in haddone. For it was fo, that after seauen dayes were past, in the night secretly he fled from the campe to feeke ANTONIE, and abandoned the armie, which being forfaken veelded to the enemie; and OCTAVIAN vsed his victorie with great clemencie: which being obtained, he either thought it not good, or could not at that time pursue ANTONIE, but tooke his way towards the citie of Athens, where taking order for all matters in Grecia, by reason of some commotions in Italie (as Svetonivs recordeth) he returned thither, where he staved somewhat longer then he would have done, as well for that which is afore-

faid, as the euill weather to faile in, which followed.

After all this, OCTAVIANVS having fet all things necessarie in a readines, he failed with great power into Egypt, with a determination to make an end with MARCUS ANTONIUS (as indeede he did) and arrived at the citie of Alexandria: wherein Antonie recouring courage, and Queene CLEOPATRA making great preparation for the warres, in the time of OCTAVIANVS his stay, had leuied great forces, both of foote and horse for their defence. They had also a great nauie by sea, as well of CLEOPATRA, as of those which came from other places: and MARCUS ANTONIUS with his old courage, which now too late and to no purpole he recouered, tooke the field and entertaining a skirmish with CESARS horfmen, which were then landed and strongly entrenched, he vsed such skill, and charged them with such dexteritie, that he made them slie to their strength: and being returned to the citie, he againe sent to challeng Oc-TAVIANVS to fight with him body against body. Whereto C # SAR answered. that MARCUS ANTONIUS hadother waies and meanes enough in a readines to die without dying by his hands.

ANTONIE receiving this answere, determined to die fighting, although it happened not so. The next day in the morning he againe fallied forth into the fields, with an intent to fight; and standing upon a high ground, and looking towards the sea, he saw that his nauie and gallies moued, and made towards OCTA-VIAN his fleete, which he thought they had done with determination to fight. and staying a little to see the sequell, within a while, he saw them iowne together in good friendship and companie, by meanes of a secret practice past betweene them. Which when he saw, and fearing the like in those which he brought with him to the field, he returned to the citie, mistrusting and affirming that CLEO-PATRA had betraied him, although that in truth she was blameles therein, and she being aduertised of what ANTONIE had said, stoodein seare of him; and withdrew hir felfe into a strong temple or sepulcher: and commaunding the doores thereof to be shut and fortified, she sent some fainedly to tell him that she had slaine hirselfe with her owne hands. Which MARCUS ANTONIYS beleeued as ftedfastly, as though he had seene it, and refusing to liue any longer without hir, or to stay to die fighting, after he had yttered certaine speeches, he stabbed his poiniard into his owne breft, and so (deadly wounded) he fell downeypon a bed in a fwoune: And within a while comming againe to himselfe, being aducrtiled that CLEOPATRA was yet living the made himfelfe to be carried thither where she was: who received him with formany teares and such pitifull complaints, that he being so neere to death, began to recomfort her, saying, that she ought not lament for him, neither to hold him for infortunate, fith hee accounted not himselfe for such, for he had been a great captaine and very mightie, and in the end died ouercome by the Romanes. Her he counselled to yeeld to the mercie of OCITAVIANVS CASAR, and speaking these words, his strength failing within

The death of

Cleopatra.

alittle while after he dyed: and so ended the power and life of MARCYS ANT o-NIV s. I have peraduenture more largely discoursed hereof, then to the breuitie of my historie did appertaine, because it was a case so notable and singular.

OCTAVIANVS having intelligence of this aforesaid, and of the small order and guard of the citie, marched thither with his forces and entred the same, and fent to comfort CLEOPATRA, and to make great offers vnto her, to the end that the should not kill herselfe, and going to see her in person, he did the like: but all his care little availed. For she being advertised, that he would send her to Rome, and would place her and her fonnes in his triumph, choic rather to dye, then that he should triumph ouer her: and some say, that she tooke poison which she had prouided for that purpose, wherewith she killed her selfe. Others (and this is the most common) that she put to her arme an Aspicoue (which is a certaine kind of Serpent or venemous Adder) to the end that it should sting her, which was brought to her in a basket of flowers; fo as she was found dead without any figne of any blow or wound, but as though the had bin afleepe. Whereat OCTAVIAN was much grieued, not without great admiration at the valour and great mind of that woman, and commaunded her to be buried in the same Sepulchre wherein the had entombed her felfe, together with MARCVS ANTONIV'S, with whom fhe had lived and raigned 14. yeares, she being 39. yeares old when she dyed, and MARCUS ANTONIUS 56. or (after some) 53.

OCTAVIANVS casily pardoned all those which had served or sent succour to MARCUS ANTONIUS, and also his children, which were feauen, by three women, FVLVIA, OCTAVIA fifter to OCTAVIANVS, and CLEOPATRA, fauing the eldest, which he commanded to be slaine, and the like he did by C # SARION CLEOPATRAS sonne by IVLY'S CESAR, of whom we have alreadic made mention, the eldest (they say) lie slue yoon particular displeasure which he conceiued against him, and C E s ARION, by the counsell of ARRIV s a Philosopher, who told him that it would not do well to have many C # SARS.

This matter touching Marcus Antonius being ended, and the kingdome of Egypt being made a tributarie prouince, he departed from thence, and afterwards passing through Syria and Asia the lesse, leaving all quiet and in peace; he passed into Gracia, and there doing the like, he came into Italy, where having ended all civill warres, and having the whole Empire subject to himselfe alone, he entred into Rome in triumph, with the greatest feasts and solemnities of the Senat and the people of all Italy, that could be deuiled or imagined. It was granted vnto him to triumph three times, to wit, for the victorie in Illyricum, and for the victorie in his battaile by Sea, and the overthrow of MARCY'S ANTONIVS, the conquest of the kingdome of Egypt and Queene Ciropatra, whose statue was placed in his triumph, with the Aspieques set to the veines of her armes.

And fo OCTAVIANVS throughlie finished the building and erecting of the Monarchie, which his Vncle Ivervs Casar had began and founded, which (as it feemeth by PAVLVS OROSIVS his computation) was fixteene yeares after the death of IVLIVS CESAR: And although that he obteined it by meanes hardly inftifiable, yet truly he afterwards governed it most inftly and wisely, and was one of the best Princes that euer was in the world, gentle, mercifull, liberall, iuft, valorous, endued with many vertues and excellencies, most happie and fortunate in all his affaires, and beloued about measure of all the world.

As there was now no man to contend with OCTAVIANVS CESAR, and he fo beloued of all men (as is aforefaid) the people and Senat of Rome gaue him a

new name which before then was neuer heard of, Avgvstvs; and so he was afterwards called C # SAR Av G v ST v s: a name which they held for holie, venerable, of high maiestie, and which appertained to the gods and their temples. as we find it vied by Cicero, Virgit, Ovid, and other authors; although that some deriue it from the verbe auges, in Latin, to increase, because that Oct A-VIAN enlarged and increased the Empire; and some others give it other derivations, but whether soeuer be the most certaine, it was given him for the most honorable name of all others: they also intituled him father of his countrey, and gaue him all other titles and names which they could deuise.

CESAR AVGVSTVS (for this name henceforth we will sometimes give him) feeing himselte now in such rest and without warre with any body in the world, commaunded the temple of IANVs to be shut, which they religiously observed, that during the warres it should stand open, and neuer had bin shut but swife from the foundation of Rome, according to Titvs Livivs, Lucivs Florus, How many PLVTARCH, and other Authors: one, in the time of NVMA POMPILIVS fe. times the cond King thereof: and the other after the end of the second Punick warres temple of Lawhich they waged with Carthage, at what time as TITVS MANLIVS Was Conful. I know that some Authors set this shutting up of IAN vs his temple by Oc-TAVIAN to be a great while after, at the time of the birth of Christ our Saujour. But I in this place follow the authority of PAVLVS OROSIVS a christian Author, who yied great diligence and truth, and is of 1200. yeares antiquitie, who reckoneth that CESAR AvgvsTvs shut this temple three times, and that this was the first, and I hold his opinion for certaine: for he is affisted by the authoritie of Tirvs Livivs, who in his first booke affirmeth, that Avgvsrvs did shut this temple after the warres with Antony: and Lycivs Flores and other Authors fer downe that this temple was shutafter that. And hereby it appeareth that OCTAVIANVS CESAR did shut the temple of IANVS more then once, and eucry one sheweth his time when, and PAVLVS OROSIVS all, which was thrife, fetting downe the time to euery one of them as he noteth, which is also drawneout of Svetonivs Tranqvillys, following the letter as Philip-PV & BEROALDVS followeth. I hauea defire to let this downe here (although it "Cote the faylittle importeth) to the end that the varietie and difference which the reader shall there. finde among the authors shall not offend him, and that he may know that I haue an approued author whom I follow, although I name him not, if he shall finde ought written by me contrary to that which he hath read. O CTAVIANVS C. E. s AR living in this peace and tranquillitie, omitted no part of his care for the gouernment of the Romane Common-wealth and provinces thereof; creating and fending thither Pretors, Proconfuls, and other governours, which were excellent men to rule and gouerne, and himselfe gaue direction and was very diligent in all things touching iuftice, customes, religion and publike buildings : fo as in all things, his raigne was most happie, peaceable and quiet, and so did it continue so long as he lived.

VELLEIVS PATERCYLYS speaking like a Gentile, doth so extoll his raigne, that he faith, that men could not defire or aske any thing of the gods, neither thinke nor imagine ought; neither could the gods give that to men, which O e-TAVIANVS CESAR AVGVSTVS, after his victories and returne to Rome, did bring and give to the Romane people, and the whole Empire. Notwithstanding that this was then so esteemed (as great minds naturally defire libertie) yet in that so prosperous a time, some people and nations were so bold as to shake off the Romane

Romane yoke, and to moleft and disquiet the Empire, as the Spaniards, the nations of Illyricum and the Pannonians. In Spaine the Cantabrians, which are the Alaueses and Biskains, the Asturians, and part of Gallicia, which were not onely discontented to obey, but passing their limits, began to make warre against the fubicets to the Empire. OCTAVIANVS CESAR knowing this, holding it to be a doubtful warre and of importance, comanded (as faith PAVLVS OROSIVS) the Temple of lanus to be opened, & determined to go thither himself in person, and to fend other captaines to follow the other wars. In the time of these wars, which were first, or last, the authors doe handle very confusedly, so as I cannot bring it to light: whereof it might be that feuerall of these things did concurre at one time. But OCTAVIANVS AVGVSTVS tooke his journey into Spaine, and began the warre with three armies against the people before named, which rebelled, which warre was very doubtfull and desperate, and lasted fine yeeres. In this time passed many conflicts, and although that C # s AR did oppresse the Cantabrians and Afturians, and draue them to the rockes and mountaines, yet they did fo well defend themselves in them, that it behooved him before he could subdue them to raife a great Nauie in the coast of France, to inuade the Sea coast of Cantabria, Aflurias and Gallicia, at which time he draue the people of those countries to such extremities by land, that he compelled them to yeeld and fubmit themselues to his obedience: His great fauourite A GRIPPA, seruing him well and faithfully in all this warre (as in all the reft) whom he maried to his daughter Iv LIA, which at that time was the widow of his nephew MARCELLYS, sonne to his fister Oc-TAVIA, with whom she had been maried. And so C & s AR accomplished the full fubicction of all Spaine, aboue two hundred yeeres after that the Romanes began to make their first warre therein: so as no prouince cost the Romanes more bloud, more toyle, and more time then Spaine. And this long and doubtfull conquest being finished (Paulus Orosius faith) that OCTAVIAN esteemed the same so much that batting established peace in Spaine, in signe thereof he againe commaunded the doores of Janus his Temple to be shut, and himselfe came to Rome in great triumph. But this Temple continued not long shut: for some Nations of the Germanes arose & kept a stir (although at divers times) so as the Temple was againe opened to make warre against them, which were the inhabitants of Noricum, which is now Bauaria, and the Pannonies, which are Austrich and Hungary, as is aforciaid, and the two Missias which are Bulgaria and Seruia, and also Illyricum which is Slauonia, although at another time tamed by him; and the province of Dacia, which now is Transiluania and Walachia, and some others also. Against all these Nations, the most happy Emperour C # s AR A y G y s Ty's sent his Captaines and armies, among which were his fonnes in law, fonnes of his wife Lr-VIA, TIBERIUS NERO, who fucceeded him in the Empire, and his brother DRVSIVS NERO, of whom LIVIA was with childe when OCTAVIAN maried her : and these two brothers (although the warre lasted somewhat long) tamed those Nations, & obtained great victories in Germanie and the confines thereof, especially TIBERIVS (as SVETONIVS writeth in his life, and PAYLYS OROsivs in his histories) who in three yeeres space subdued the Pannonies, Illyricum. and Dalmatia: for which victories he afterward entred into Rome in Quacian triumph, with great honour and folemnitie. And another Captaine whose name was Marcus Crassus (as Lucius Florus and Titus Livius report) ouercame and put the Missians to flight in their owne countrie, a nation which had neuer scene the Romanes, which (as Lycivs Florys recordeth) being

readie to giue battaile, in manner of iustification, said to the Romanearmie: Tell vs. who you are that feeke to grieue vs. Whereto they were answered : We be Romanes the Lords of Nations. Whereto they answered: It shall be so, if we be ouercome. And so they were afterwards, both they and those also which confoired with them. But O c TAVIAN had not these victories without some crosses: for in this warre died his sonne in law DR vs vs, who was highly extolled and esteemed for his great acts and victories, for whom he and the Emperesse Liviahis mother were very forie. But that was farre greater without comparison, which he conceiued for the milhap which befell to QVINTILIVS VARRO, who being Captaine of three legions in Germany, and being retchlesse, was surprised by the Almaines, and himfelfe and all the rest slaine, and two standards with the Imperiall Eagles taken: wherewith he was fo exceffinely grieued, that they write, that he cried out very vnaduifedly, and knocked his head against the walles, faying, QVINTILIVS VARRO, giue me my legions againe. Of his sonne in law DRVsysthere remained two fonnes, called GERMANICUS and CLAUDIUS, which he had by Antonia, Octavian his neece & daughter of his fifter Octavia and of MARCUS ANTONIUS: of which, CLAUDIUS was Emperour: and this GERMANICUS which maried with AGRIPPINA, daughter of Ivlia which Was O CTAVIANS daughter, was father of CAIVS CALIGVIA, who afterwards was also Emperour. But these losses confirmed the victories which his sonne in law TIBERIVS obtained: Wherefore OCTAVIAN maried him to his daughter Iv LIA, who was a widow by the death of A GRIPPA, causing him to put away A GRIPPINA the daughter of the same A GRIPPA, by his first mariage, to whom he was maried, and had by her one some named DRV svs: so as after many notable victorics, and taming of fometime one nation, and fomtime another, which were compelled to fue for peace, OCTAVIAN againe commaunded the Temple of James to be shut, and from thencefoorthall things succeeded vnto him most prosperously.

The subjects of the Empire were very obedient vnto him, and all others sent him ambassades seeking his fauour and friendship, offering him their seruice: the Indians a people of the farthest part of the East, and also the Scythians which inhabite in the North, and the Parthians a people most fierce and vntamed, sent their Ambassadours to him, giving securitie to keepe the peace, and delivered the The greatnes of Standards and Eagles taken in the battaile, wherein MARCYS CRASSYS Was the Romane flaine. There came also Kings tries do not find the Romane Language of the Rom flaine. There came also Kings, friends and subjects to the Empire, to Rome, to doe him honour, as his familiar friends, laying aside their Ensignes and royall Robes. and many of them built cities to his name, for his honour, calling the Cælareas in remébrance of him: so did Herode in Palestina, & I ve Ain Mauritania, & others.

The world being in this quietnes and generall peace, fortie and two yeeres being fullie expired, fince that OCTAVIAN, after the death of IVLIV'S CEsar, came to Rome, from which time is commonly accounted his Empire. In this peace and rest of times was borne IESVS CHRIST OUR Lord and Sauiour in Bethlem, of the holie wombe of our bleffed Ladie the Virgin Ma-RY; HERODE being King of Ierusalem, placed there by the Romanes (hee who flew the innocent children) comming to the world in humane forme and nature, to faue and redeeme mankinde with his bleffed death and paffion, whose most holie life, mysteries and infinite miracles ought not to be mixed with prophane matters, and therefore I will not intermeddle to treate thereof. But returning to my purpose, I say, that OCTAVIAN enioping so great prosperitie

The vertues

and qualities
of Octanianus.

and good fortune, was not altered in his naturall condition, as in other Princes it hath happened, but rather made more gentle, milde, iust, and affable, more curteous, more liberall and more temperate. He established wonderfull good orders and lawes, for the amending and reformation of abuses and euill customes: he erected in Rome and without it, great and fumptuous edifices, and bestowed great liberalitie and fauours vpon all forts of people: he rejoyced the people with feafts and playes in fundrie manners, going himfelfe in person thereto, and sent Colonies and inhabitants to fundrie parts and prouinces: he made an excellent and fingular good order for the gouernment and gouernours of the whole Empire. The like hee did for the warre and martiall discipline; he shewed himselfe plaine and sociable to his familiars and friends, and honoured and loued them much. Some conspiracies which were discouered against him, he punished without rigour, giuing more pardon then punishment and correction. Of murmurings and defamatorie libels he neuer fought nor defired to know the authors, but with great grauitic answered, giving satisfaction, and purging himselfe of those things which were imputed vnto him. He was much given and affected to letters and learning, and was very learned and eloquent, and compiled bookes and notables workes: He did much honour and reward the wife and learned men of his time, wherein were many very notable in all Artes. But for all these vertues and perfections, and other which for breuitie I write not, yet he escaped not to be noted of fome vices, caused through humane weakenes and great libertie, principally to be much given to women, although that in cating, drinking, in his apparell and ornaments, he was very decent and temperate: he gaue himselfe also excessively to play at dice, and other games then accustomed. But Svero NIVs faith, that the most part thereof was vpon ceremonious and festivall daies, which ought well to be noted for a shame and example to our time, wherein Christianitie is professed. For that is accounted by many for brauerie and valour, which to OCTAVIAN being an Heathen and vnbeleeuing Prince, was noted and imputed for vice. Wherewith to conclude and make an end of his historie, as is reason, I fay, that although that in many things hee was happie and fortunate, yet befides all his troubles and daungers, he was vnhappie and infortunate in his children and fuccession: for by foure wives, with which he was maried onely by Scribo-NIA, which was his third wife, he had one daughter named Iv LIA; and vet this one scarcely proued honest of her bodie: so as for want of sons to succeed him, he first adopted for his sonne, his nephew MARCELLYS, his sister OCTAVIAS son aforenamed, with whom he first maried this his daughter I v L I A: and M A R C E L-LVS dying without iffue, he maried her to his fauourite A GRIPPA, who also left her a widow, as is aboue faid: but he left by her three fonnes, and two daughters. the daughters prouing no honester then their mother, and two of his sonnes died in Octavians time, having bin first by him adopted. Wherefore desiring to ouercome the ill lucke which he had herein, he adopted the third, who was called AGRIPPA as his father was, the which adoption he afterward reuoked for some displeasure conceived against him, and taking this care for his succession, headopted and made his sonne in law Tiberivs Nero, his sonne, whom, as is aforefaid, he married to his daughter IVLIA, who, as I faid, was AGRIPPA his widow. But hee commaunded TIBERIV's when he adopted him, that he (notwithstanding that he had a son called DRVSVS) should also adopt his Nephew GERMANICVs fonne of his brother DRVSVS, who, as is aforefaid, died

in Germanie, because he had married his neece Agripping the daughter of

IV LIA: and by this meanes came TIBERIVS to be OCTAVIANVS his fucceffor. more through the diligence of his mother then any good liking that his father in law had to him; who rather was, and feemed to be very forrie, that he should succeede him.

And things standing in this state, OCTAVIAN being now seventie and fixe veeres old and odde dayes, and having raigned aboue fiftie and fixe yeeres, and being the best beloued and most obeyed prince, that euer was in the world, death ouertooke him: the cause thereof was a flux which held him for certaine dayes, The death of whereof in the end he died in the citie of Nola (whither he came ficke from Na Cefar Augustus ples) a quiet and peacefull death, in the fifteenth yeere after the birth of Christ our redeemer. His death was generally lamented, and there was an vniuerfall forrow and heauines ouer all the whole Empire for him: for he happened wifely and vprightly to gouerne that, which by force and cunning he had gotten. O c- Octavian his TAVIAN Was of ameane stature, and of avery good shape and proportion of his proportion of his body, body, exceedingly faire of gesture mixed with honestic and grauitie, his eyes were exceeding electe and bright, he was very aduited, and loued to speake quicke and briefly.

### THE LIFE OF THE EMPEROR TIBERIUS.



THE ARGVMENT.

Free the good Augustus, succeeded his sonne in law the wicked Tiberius Nero, who was most subtill, and knew how to dissemble and faine to love those well which he hated, and to hate those which he loued. He fained himselfe unwilling to accept of the Empire, to see who was his friend and who his enzmie : and whereas before this dignitie, he was very orderly and prudent, be became afterward so disorderly and fuch a drunkard, that he was called in scorne Biberius. In his time died Iesus Christ and Iohn Bap-

tist in Ierusalem, he caused Germanicus a great Captaine to be slaine, although he made shew to Agrippa to be very force for it. He subdued many prominces which rebelled against the Romane Empire, and was no lesse cruell then libidinous, and of these three vices (to wit) crueltie, incomtinencie, and gluttonie, it is hard to fay, which was least. He ruled the Empire foure and twentie yeeres, and was no great enemie to Christians: and proponed in the Senate whether Christ should be accepted for a God or no, whereto the Senate confented not. Finally, he died through the treafon of Calibula, whom he had nominated his successor being seventie and eight yeeres old : which be did, as it was thought, to the end that Caligula his vices should make his to seeme lesser, who was so wicked and cruell, that he wished that the world might end at his death.



Fter the excellent and good Emperor Octavian, succeeded his sonne in law, and adopted son the wicked and perperse TIBERIVS NERO, vnworthy truly of his succession and of the Empire: for he was one of the most cruell and wicked men that euer was in the world: notwithstanding that in OCTAVIAN his time, in Germanie and in other parts he did many great and notable feats in armes. In the beginning of his Empire he made shew of a good prince, and did many

good deedes, but afterwards (as this was but fained) he discovered his malice. and gouerned cruelly, couetoufly, and dishoneftly. This TIBERIVS (as I have aboue faid) was the sonne of Tiberivs Nero and Livia his wife, which OCTAVIAN afterwards tooke to wife, of both fides descended of the auncient The linage and CLAVDIVS NERO; and by his mothers fide hee descended from Applys

corporall con-Ricution of Tiberius.

Tiberius bis learning.

family of the CLAVDII, whose grandfather by his fathers fide was TIBERIVS CLAYDIVS PYLCHER, and by adoption helikewife descended from the LIVII. an excellent family, although but Plebeian, for Confulships, censures, and triumphs. He was of a tall and strong body, and had a large brest and broade shoulders, whereto all parts of his body were answerable: he had a faire face and great eyes, and so cleere, that they affirme a strange thing of him, which is, that awaking by darke in the night, for a good space he cleerely saw the place wherein he lay, and althat therein was, aswel as though he had had a light. He was a man of great strength, and had the vse of both his hands alike; whereas commonly every man vseth the right hand with greater dexteritie then the left, and had so great strengthin his fingers, that with a fillip he would (as often as he lifted) breake a pages, or a yong mans head, as Svetonivs reporteth. He was very learned both in Greeke and Latin, and principally delighted in poefie, and made many verses in both tongues, which truely was ill employed in him, seeing he so little profited thereby. When OCTAVIVS AVGVSTVS fell ficke, TIBERIVS was gone towards the prouince of Illyricum or Slauonia, and his mother Livia feeing that his ficknes encreased, sent in great haste for him, and he happily arrived at the citic of Nola, CESAR AVGVSTVS being euen neere his end, but vet in such time as he could speake, and (as Sveronivs reporteth) conferred with him a great while in fecret: Although CORNELIVS TACITY's faith that it is not certainely knowne whether he found him aliue at his comming or no for his mother the Emperesse had set somany gards that the death of OCTAVIAN was not knowne, untill that all had agreed and confented that TIBERIUS should rule, and succeede him. And at that time was AGRIPPA Nephew to OCTAVIAN, and sonne of his daughter IVLIA, by AGRIPPA hersecond husbandslaine by the hand of a Tribune, who had him in keeping (as it was thought) by the commaundement of his father in law TIBERIVS, and by the counsell of his mother LIVIA, to the end that hee should bee assured of the succession.

In Rome libertie now was so forgotten, and the Monarchie was so established by custome of so many yeeres continuance, under the raigne of OCTAVIANYS. that notwithstanding that there were Confuls, Pretors, Tribunes, and other names of dignitie and magistracie; yet there was in a manner no man in Rome that did remember and understand the manner of the old gouernment, which was before that Ivilvs Casar suppressed the Common-wealth and the death of OCTAVIAN being knowne, there was no man that durft to name or to speake of libertie, but so soone as TIBERIVS came to Rome, to him was presently given the government and administration of the Commonwealth. And he was the first Emperor that did quietly and peaceably inherit the Empire, so as he needed not to make a conquest thereof, as IVLIVS CESAR and OCTAVIAN had done. And although that before that he would accept the reof. he caused himselfe to be much entreated, and made great shew to have no desire to the Empire, yet afterwards it was plainely perceived, that he did burfaine it, to the end to know enery mans good will towards him: For to all those which veelded to accept of his excuses, and did not importune him, he bare a perpetuall hatred for although that one way he excused himselfe, yet in many other things he began to vse the authoritie of an Emperor, taking a guarde, and mustering the armies as Emperor.

Hauing accepted and received the Empire, there were some occasions offered him, which put him in great feare and heavines: the first was, that the armies in Pannonia or Hungarie, mutined, and revolted from Ivilvs Blesvs their captaine, a captaine called Percentys being principall of this revolt, and they fent to require many excessive things: against which TIBERIVS sent his son DRYSVS. whom he had by AGRIPPINA, with whom he was married before he married Ivita It happened also that the legions which were by the rivers side of the Rhine, as the custome was, did the like, through the absence of Germanicy's their captaine before named, TIBERIVS his adopted sonne and Nephew: And those of Pannonia were not onely not contented with the paies and exemptions which they required, but they prefumed to chuse a new Emperor against TIBERIVS, nominating their captaine GERMANICVS, who (as is before faid) was TIBE-RIVS his Nephew and adopted sonne, and preferred before his naturall sonne, by the commaundement of OCTAVIAN. But GERMANICVS was fo loyall, that when these newes were brought vnto him, he not onely refused their offer, but with great danger and hazard of his life, and with much trouble pacified those alterations.

TIBERIVS was another way affaulted: for he was aduertifed that one Lycivs Scribonivs a principall man, and one which bare great sway in the commonwealth, had some secret practises against him: but he freed himselfe from all these matters, and they were redressed, although not without great dissicultie. For his son DRV sv son one side (after some treaties) brought the legions of Pannonia to his obedience, and did iustice on Percenty's. And Germanicy's (as Isaid) after some great matters (which Cornelins Tacirvs reciteth at large) made those of Germanie to obey: and not therewith content, he passed the river of Rhine (which commonly was the bounds of the Romane Empire on that part) and made war within the countrie of Germanie, in good order and with good successe.

What good Ti-brined din brined din brine conceale his accurfed inclination and vices; and (as I saide in the beginning) per- the beginning.

formed

formed many partes of a good, discreete and gentle prince, wherewith he deceiued the people, especially those which did not particularly know him; whereof (although they be recited before their time) it shall not be amisse to set downe fome, to the end that (as of a venemous beaft) that which is profitable and medicinall, may be taken. First, many of the names and titles of honor which were offeredhim by the Senate, and other honors and ceremonies, he refused, and would not confent that they should erect or builde vnto him any temples; and forbad them to fet vp his statues and images without his expresse commaundement: and if at sometime he did permit it, it was vpon condition that they should not place it among the images of the Gods.

He seemed also to grieve to heare himselfe praised, crossing and interrupting them in speeches which did it. One, in a discourse called him Lord, whom he commaunded to vie that word no more: but insolencie and presumption since that time hath so encreased, that that which at that time seemed pride in an Emperor, there is now none, be he neuer so base, but presumeth that he deserueth the same. The like discretion did TIBERIVS siew in other words, which were also proper to the gods, and the things to them appertaining. He fained also patience and meekenes: for although that in the Senate there passed some matters contrarie to his will and opinion, and that in other affaires they gainefaid him, yet he seemed not any way to be displeased or offended therewith. And vnderstanding that some spake ill of him, and murmuring, vsed iniurious speeches against him, he shewed no discontenument or alteration thereat: but said, that in a free citie, menstongues ought to be free, and men might lawfully speake freely. And whereas the Senate would have exhibited an information, and have proceeded against those which had written defamatorie libelles against him, he would not confent thereto, faying, that he had not so little to doe, as to lose somuch time about such matters: affirming that he would doe nothing against them which spake ill of him, but trouble them with keeping account of what he said and did: and if that were not fufficient, it should satisfie him, to love them as little as they loued him.

In the beginning Tiberivs bare great reuerence vnto the Senate, and gaue them so great power and authoritie in all things that hee did nothing without their counsell, willing that all should be done by their adule and consent. In execution of inflice and government he made many good beginnings, taking care, and order that there should be no theeues nor robbers by the high waves fide in all Italie, but that men might travel in fafetie: and that iustice should be executed in townes and villages. The enfignes and pretorian cohorts which in Rome were the Emperors guarde (to ease the citizens of their guestes and other troubles) he made to encampe and lodge themselves without the citie in the fields. where they should continue and abide: which although that then it seemed profitable, yet afterwards it bred great inconvenience and domage. By these aforesaid meanes, he not onely cloked and couered his crueltie, pride and ambition, but he was so double and false, that but even his avarice and covetousnes, (which of all other feemeth to be the most apparant passion) and his incontinencie and dishonestie, he knew so well for a time to maske and dissemble, shew-The speeches of ing himselfe to be no way couctous: So as when some governors of provinces gaue him to vnderstand of meanes how to encrease his rents & revenues, he anfwered, that a good shepheard ought to sheare his flock, but not pill them: and so he diminished certaine tributes, and shewed fauours to certaine particular per-

The pretorian Cohorts were the Emperors guarde. The fained berius.

end the minde

Gracia,

fons. His dishonestie he fought to couer, by ordaining a publike informer against dishonest and adulterous Matrones of Rome, which he did (as it afterwards appeared) to the end that there should be no other adulterer but himselfe. He did other fuch like things (which for breuitie I omit) which feemed to grow from a good roote and meaning: but it failed in the end tor he fauned to bite, and drew back. to come againe with the greater force: As we will hereafter declare in part, for the whole cannot be related, as it was neither spoken for the filthines thereof, which is the occasion that that order and stile cannot be observed as behooveth; for certainly the diforderly and obscure liues cannot be cleerely and orderly written. And befides this, the difgrace and crueltie which heevfed to his wife Ivila, forgetting that by her, as for her dowrie, he enjoyed the Romane Empire: for hee neuer liued nor kept companie with her after the death of Octavian.

One of the first signes that he shewed of an euill Prince and governour, was, that notwithstanding that there came great complaints against the Proconsuls. Pretors, and Prefects, placed in Provinces; yet hee would not remove them, nor alter them : which was against the order and custome of Rome and his predecesfor Octavian; which some attributed to his negligence and carelesnes; others iudged it to be of malice, and ill disposition, to the end that many men should not enion the honour and profit which grew in such charges. He began after this to enuie and to beare hatred against GERMANICVs, because hee was preferred before his sonne D R v s v s, and it grieued him to see his good successe in the warres of Germanie. Wherefore to finde occasion to remooue him from that charge, he diffemblingly caused the triumph to be granted vnto him, for the victories which he had obtained, and wrote to him many times to come to triumph : but GER-MANIC v s vnderstanding his euill intent, deferred his comming. It happened in a while after that the King of the Parthians arose, and made warre against the Romane Empire, breaking the peace established in the time of Octavian, entring into the prouince of Armenia, the King whereof was fet there by the Romanes: wherewith TIBERIVS was nothing displeased, thereby to have the better occafion to draw GERMANICVS from his captainship and government of Germanie, vnder colour to fend him to the warres of the Parthians, as he did. And fo GER-MANICV sbeing sent for, came for this purpose, having within few daies before wonne a great battaile, and flaine tenne thousand of his enemies, and entred into Rome in a folemne triumph, and (as CORNELIUS TACITUS reporteth) hee brought thither with him the enfignes which QVINTILIVS VARRO had loft, and presently began to prepare for the warre against the Parthians.

A little before Germanicus his triumph, there arosea man in Italie, who named himselfe to be A GRIPPA, nephew to OCT AVIAN (whom we have said to be flaine by TIBERIVS his order) to whom it feemed of some importance, and much loofe and feditious people joyned with him, which caufed a great tumult in Italie; this man alleaging that he ought to be Emperour, and not TIBERIVS: But as he had a weake foundation fo was he soone ouerthrowne, taken prisoner, and brought to TIBERIVS, and finally was executed, although fectetly. And euen about the same time TIBERIV's committed a notable great wrong and crueltie: for having with gracious and amorous words allured ARCHELAV s King of Cappadocia to come to Rome (who was a friend and vaffall to the Romane Empire) for fained and vniust causes he made him to be accused and apprehended, cappadocia and afterwards to die in prison, and his countrie was made a tributarie prouince. In the like manner he dealt with many Princes and great men of Spaine, France,

Gracia, and other parts. Also the ionrney which TIBERIVS commaunded to be made against the Parthians, was much hastened by reason of the death of Antiochys King of Comagena, and Philopater King of Cilicia in Asia, vasfals to the Empire: by meanes of whose death some alterations arose in those prounces; for some would have a King, and others would be governed by the Em-

GERMANICY s being in a readines for his journey into the East (as hee was commanuded) departed from Rome, carving his wife A GRIPPINA and his children with him : betweene whom and LIVIA the mother of TIBERIUS Was great enuie and emulation. There was also at this time great controuersie and parts-taking, both in words and liking, in TIBERIVS his Court; fome taking part with GERMANICY s, who (as before is faid) was his adopted fonne and nephew: others held of DRVSVS his sonne legitimate. TIBERIVS and his mother LIVIA euer fought to aduaunce the reputation of DRVsVs, and in secret to disgrace GERMANICUS: for which occasion he gaue the charge of all the legions of Illyricum to his sonne DR vsvs. And to the end, that GER MANICVS should not be too mightie in the East whither he went he made GNEVS PISO captaine of the province and legions of Syria (who was a mighty man, and in Rome greatly allied, and of a great house) because he held with DRVs vs, and disposses CRETICVS Syllany softhat charge, for that he was a frend to Germanicy s. This Piso was married to a Romane Matrone called PLACINA of the same condition, but of an hautier heart then her husband; to the which husband and wife the Emperour TIBERIVS and his mother LIVIA gaue in charge, to stirre vp and procure hatred and enmitie against GERMANICVS; yea and his death also: as it after appeared. And with this determination they departed from Rome towards the East, where P 1 s o presently, with gifts and flatterie, began to draw to himselfe the loue and good will of the armie against GERMANICVS, and to murmure and speake ill of him: who, while as Piso practifed these things, tooke so good order in the warre and gouernment, that hee placed a King in the prouince of Armenia, who was a friend and subject to the Romanes; and the kingdomes of Comagena and Cilicia being voide by the death of their Kings, he reduced into prouinces, and placed in them Pretors and gouernors. In Comagena QVINCIVS SERVIVS, and in Cilicia QVINTYS VERANIVS; moderating in them both the royall subsidies and tributes. And after this he tooke so good order, that hee compelled the King of the Parthians to fue for peace and friendship: which hee graunted and concluded, to the honour of the Empire. And while as he was bufied about thefe things, P 1 s o and his wife neuer left to murmure against him, and to blaspheme him openly: which he diffembled knowing from whence it did proceed. And having made an end with the Parthians, hee departed from thence to visit the province of Egypt: and in his absence (although it were not long) his competitor Piso plotted fuch matters against him, that when he understood of his returne, he departed out of that province. But as he had plotted and practifed his death, he went not farre off, but remained some daies in an Iland : in which time, G RR-MANICY'S comming on his way, was poyloned by the practife of Piso, but by the direction and counsell of TIBERIVS (as it was thought) wherewith he dyed fuddenly, leaving behind him fonnes and daughters; among which was one named CAIVS CALIGVLA, who was afterwards Emperour. For which cause it hath been very expedient to make so much mention of his father GERMANIcvs, who if he had lived had been Emperour and successor to Tiberivs.

The excellent Captaine GERMANICVS being dead in such manner, as is aboue faid, his wife A GRIPPINA came to Rome with her children, and brought with her the ashes of her deceased husband. The Emperour Tiberivs made fhew of great forrow (although fained) for the death of GERMANICVS: the like did L TYPA and her sonne D R v s v s, who then was come to Rome, who in truth was very glad thereof: for by the death of GERMANICVS he did affuredly hope to succeede in the Empire. But true and vnfained was the forrow which all the people of Rome conceived for the death of Germanicus, and great were the fauours and loue which they shewed to A G RIPPIN A and her children: and great was the enmittee and hatred they bare against P1 s o, whom they openly charged to hauemurdered him; who prefuming on TIBERIVS his fauour (being altogether shamelesse) came to Rome, where, in the behalfe of A GRIPPINA and her friends, he was accused for the aforesaid murder. Which TIBERIVS dissembling, (as one who was not to loue him any better then the rest) he was driven to such a plunge in the accusation, that before that the matter was determined, hee was found dead in his bed (as it was thought) by his owne hands : although (as Connelly's Tacity's faith) it was neuer certainly knowner but there were many opinions cocerning the same. Who also writeth that a mighty man named TAFARINAS rose in Africa in the province of Numidia; and levying great forces, ouerthrew certaine Romane cohorts, thinking to haue been able to poffeffe the countrie : against whom went the Proconsul Lycive Astronicys with an armie: and comming to a battaile he ouercame and put them to flight, to their great domage and losse. Which (as it seemeth) happened in the seuenth yeere of the raigne of TIBERIV stalthough afterwards the fame TAFARINAS was againe ouerthrowne, by the Proconful BLESVS, in a second rebellion.

The next vecre following the Emperour TIBERIVS made himselfe to be chofen Consul, and his sonne DR vs vs for his companion, as at other times hee had done : and faining that it behooved him for his health, he went foorth of Rome, to the end to ground and establish DRVsvs in the gouernment of the Empires for of his brother CLAYDIV s vntill then he made small account: but God disposed of all in another manner. In the same yeere many cities in France rebelled, being vnable to endure the intolerable tributes and extortions which TIBERIVS anew imposed upon the. The captaines & mouers of this rebellion, were two hardy men, the one called FLORVS, and the other SACROBIS, which did fo much trouble the countrey, that they put Rome it felfe in great feare, a great deale being there reported more then was true. But this did nothing trouble TIBERIVS; fo much had hee forgotten all vertue and goodnes, giuing himselfe wholy ouer to vice and sensualitie in his old age. But CAIVS SILIVS, who was Captaincof those parts, did soone represse the troubles of France, who with his legions came against those which rebelled, and ouerthrew and put them to slight in a battaile, and flew a great number of them: and so he pacified that countrey, and his sonne DRVsvs did principally employ himselse in the gouernment. TIBERIVS pasfing the most part of the time in Campania, betweene whom and his mother L1viabegan some secret (which grew to publike) quarrels and enmities, he being very vnreuerent and vndutifull; and the much discontented with his manner of gouernment, and chiefly for the private familiaritie betweene him and ELIVS SEIANVS, whom he fauoured so much that he made him captaine of the Pretorian cohorts, and gaue him many other dignities: and finally made him fo great, that he prefumed to contend with his fonne D Rv sv s, and his prefumption was

fuch.

fuch, that by wicked practifes and deuices, he allured to his dishonest lust the wife of the faid DRVSVS, daughter in law to TIBERIVS, whose name was LIVIA daughter of Germanicus. And committing this adulterie (with a conceit to succeed in the steed of DRVsvs) he practised his death, and found meanes for an Eunuch his servant, to poyson him: which tooke effect and Davsvs died thereof, and left one sonne named TIBERIVS, as his grandfather, and it was not then knowne who was the cause of his death. Whereof arose great murmuring in Rome, although it little grieued the greatest part : for they deemed that G E R-MANIEVS his three sonnes should have succeeded in his place, which they much loued for their fathers fake, whose names were C LAV DIVS NER O, CAIVS CA-LIGVLA, and DRVSVS. This happened in the ninth yeere of the raigne of TI-BERIVS, which was the manifest beginning of his misfortunes: we may say the like of the Common-wealth, for from that time forwards, all his actions and purposes had ill successe, and his detestable vices discouered themselues, and the subiects endured infinit cruelties, robberies, outrages and oppressions: as also in this same yeere, TAFARINAS againe rebelled in Africa, who in his last rebellion escaped by flight; and having levied much people, in the end was the third time ouerthrowne in battaile, and wholy defeated by PVELIVS DOLABELLA the Proconful.

before their father) were giuing certaine Tetrarchies, whereof to this HERODE ANTIPAS.

In Rome the wicked SEIANVS (TIBERIVS his favorite) although that at the beginning he made shew publikely to fauour GERMANICVS his sonnes, which (as it hath been faid, and it was thought) should have been TIBERIVS his successors: But afterwards all his studie and practife was to abase and ruinate them, and to that end, procured falle accusations and suspitions to be sowne against all such as tooke their, or AGRIPPINA their mothers part. And to bring this and other his wicked deuises to effect, he procured TIBERIVS to returne from Rome whither he was come: who following the others counsell, as well for this, as the more freely to giue himselfe to his detestable vices, went into the Ile of Capra, which lieth vpon the coast of Naples, where he remained for a time, and being returned into Italie, making his progresse into divers places, neuer came any more to Rome: neither in the rest of his life is there any more to be spoken, but of his vices and cruelties, whereof in some we will make some briefe relation. Before which it is requifit that all men know, that during this peregrination of the Emperor TIBERIVS in the eighteenth yeere of his raigne, our Lord and Sauiour Iesus Christ true God and man suffered his death and passion, Pontivs PILATE being prefident or gouernor of Ierusalem in the prouince of Indea. And to the end that it may be the better knowne and vnderstoode how PILATE came to concur with one of the Herodes, and how many there were of the and 18 bookes, HERODES, of whom mention is made in the holy Scriptures, which is a matter whereof some haue made a doubt, in few words I will here fet downe: which was in this manner, as the euangelist testifieth, and as out of Saint I EROM and Saint teron up. I os EPHVs it is gathered. HERODE the great sonne of ANTIPATER, who was called HERODE ASCALONITA, was placed there by the Romanes, and having raigned many yeeres, was the same to whom the three Kings came from the East guided by a Starre, and he who murthered so many innocent children, and some of his owne children also, when Christ was borne; who within short space after died, and by his death his sonne, whose name was ARCHELAVS, had the kingdomes of Iudea, and of Idumea; and to his other two fons (for the other three died

ANTIPAS (which was one of them) was allotted the Tetrarchie of Galile, and by this meanes he is called Tetrarch; and this was he which put Saint IOHN BAP-TIST to death, and he, to whom PILATE sent Christ, who disdained him. And to PHILLIP his other fonne was given the Tetrarchie of Trachonitis, and the other brother, who (as I faid) had the title of a King, was accused to Octavian, and by him deprined and banished into France, to the citie of Vienna, by meanes whereof PILATE was fent to gouerne that province; and by this meanes it happened that Chirst died in the time of PILATE and of HERODE ANTIPAS Harodes Antithe Tetrarch, from whom the Tetrarchie afterwards was also taken by CAIVS Saint Lake Call Gyla, and he died banished in Lions in France, and his Nephew the sonne chapter z. of his brother ARISTOBVLVS, which was one of the three which their father flew in his life time. And HERODE AGRIPPA was hee, to whom CAIVS Herodes Agrip-CALIGULA restored the kingdome of Indea. And afterwards the Emperor Pa. CLANDINS gaue the Tetrarchie of Galile to his Vncle: and this was he, who put Saint IAMES to death, who beginning to persecute the Apostles, died striken by The alls of the an Angell, as Saint LVKE bearethrecord. Christ being put to death by the sentence of PILATE, and he knowing after-

wards that Christ was risen againe, by the report of those which he himselse had fet to watch his bodie, and being also informed of the many miracles which he did in his life time (notwithstanding that he was an idolator and a wicked judge, and had adjudged him to die) yet Tertvllian and Evseeivs in his ecclefiasticall historie, and PAVLVS OROSIVS in his seuenth booke, most ancient Pilate made and true authors, doe record, that by his letters, he aductifed the Emperor Tibe. minetes which RIVS thereof, to the end that he should confider and determine, whether Christ wrought should be held for a God or no; and Tiberivs sent to the Senate to consult to the Emperor thereof, he giuing his opinion that he ought to be so: but the Senators, as the diuels schollers, counselled TIBERIVS that he should not docit. Which (as these authors affirme) was because that he had not first made the Senate acquainted therewith, which pretended by an auncient law which they had, to haue the superintendence in all matters of religion: yet TIBERIVS notwithstanding that the Senate consented not to his opinion, commaunded that the christians should be free from perfecution; but he neither embraced the faith of Christ as he ought, neither left his finne and vices.

First hegaue himselfe to his old vice of excessive gluttonie and drunkennes, for which cause from his youth (in steede of TIBERIVS NERO) they called him BIBERIVS MERO, which fignifieth a drinker of the best: and even in this his oldage, he hath been often knowne to fit all a whole night, and part of the day, at a banket, giuing gifts and rewards to fuch as dranke most, and in fauour thereof he instituted a new office and magistracie, as maister of delights and fports. After this, his chiefest busines was in abominable luxury and incontinencie, which was fuch and so abominable that christian cares can hardly endure the hearing thereof, nor christian hand write the same, wherefore I will passe it ouer in silence. Let this suffice, that it was horrible and detestable, and not contented to commit it himselfe, he induced and drew others thereto, and gaue iewels and rewards to those which invented and committed most filthines. And this wicked old Emperor, perseuering in his libidinous sinne, forgot not his crueltie and conetousnes, whereto he was no lesse addicted: for hee encreased his substidies and tributes in such manner, that the provinces became ruinate and defolate; and committed many other extortions of the like qualitie,

Christ our redeemer. Lofephus in his antiquities in his 15.16.17. and second of the warres of the lewes. on the fecond chapter ofs. Matthew. The Herodes how many they were. Herodes Afcalonita.

Saint Mathew

the fecond

chapter, 1.

The paffion of

As

As for his crueltic, all the examples cannot be repeated, they did so exceede: for he condemned the most principall and best men in Rome to death, and confiscated their goods, for very light causes, and most of them forged. One he put iustly to death, and with much reason caused him to be slaine, which was his great fauorite SEIANVS, for many finnes which he had learned of him (as DION Coceivs recordeth:) but for the rest, it is a matter ridiculous, and otherwise lamentable, for what causes they were accused and condemned. One he caused to be flaine, because that commending BRVTVs and CASSIVs, he faid, that they were the last Romanes: another he caused to be flaine, because that in a tragedie which he had compiled, he spake ill of AGAMEMNON: another Romane Knight he commaunded to be flaine, because that in a garden he had taken vp a Capon: and for other such like matters as these, he made to be slaine fixteene, of twentie noble old men; which he had chosen for his counsellors. And he forbare not to execute these cruelties vpon his allies and kinsfolkes: for besides that which is alreadic faid, he commaunded his Nephew Germanicus to be flaine, and afterwards the three fonnes which he left, feeing them to growe in estimation: the two elder of them he caused to be accused by false witnesses, and he himselfe wrote such things to Rome against them, that in the end they were condemned to death, the one of them desperatly killed himselfe, and he caused the other to pine to death with hunger, as SVETONIVS reportteh. It was a marueil that he had not done the like by the third, whose name was CAIVS CALI-GVLA, and by their Vncle CLAVDIVS; but it is to be beleeved that he would haue done it, if he had liued a while longer. These executions hee thus commaunded to be done, to the end that his crueltie might attaine to the highest degree, which were not ordinarie: for before their death, they passed hunger, torments, and difgraces, to qualifie them. Finally, to conclude, they were so many and so fearefull, that many which were condemned, slew themselves, some with poylon, and some with yron, for feare; for TIBERIVS did execute his furie with fuch crueltie, that he accounted it a deede of charitie, to put them to an ordinarie kinde of death: fo as for that one killed himselfe before that he could execute his rage vpon him, he cryed out aloud, oh how hath CORNELIVS escaped metfor fo was that mans name: and to another, which entreated him that he would not deferre his death, TIBERIVS answered, I am not so much thy friend, as to doe fo. And employing himselfe in these deuilish exercises, wherein he perseuered euen untill his death, ARTABANVS King of the Parthians, breaking the peace and league which he had contracted with GERMANICVS, was so bold as to enter into the prouince of Armenia, and the limits of the Empire, and also the Sarmates inuaded the provinces; for which TIBERIVS tooke no care, neither levied any new armie; but they defended themselues with their ordinarie legions and armies the best that they could.

Now, for a fmuch as in many places of this historie, mention is made of legions and armies, which the Romanes ordinarily held in their prouinces, in time both of peace and warre, I hold it fit to declare what they were, for the better vnderstanding of what is alreadie, and shall be said hereafter. Which is a great argument, to confider how great the wealth and power of the Romanes was : and although that some authors doe treate thereof, I will onely set downe what CORNELIUS TACITUS writeth in the fourth booke of his histories, an historiographer of great authoritie. He first saith, that in the two seas, of the one, and other side of Italie, to wit, in the Adriatique sea, now the gulfe of Venice; and

in the Sicilian fea called Mediterranean, they maintained two great nauies of Nanies and gallies and shippes for their guarde and securitie, and for the safe passage of Merchants, and such other necessarie occasions as were offered. Another great nauie manes in surthey maintained voon the coast of France, betweene Spaine and Italie: besides drieplaces and those which they had in a readines and caused to be builded, when any occasion provinces. of warre was offered. Their armies by land were divided in manner following: vpon the Rhines side in the coast of France, they held eight legions, to keepe those countries which they possessed in Germanie, and to resist the Germanes and other northerly nations, and these ordinarily were the most experienced and best souldiers: And although that the number of a legion did chaunce to encrease and diminish vpon divers occasions, yet the ordinarie in the time of the Emperors was (after Vegetivs and Modestvs) that every legion should containe Alegion of fixe thousand and one hundred footemen, and seuen hundred twentie and sixe bove many horsemen. Of these they held in Spaine, three ordinarie legions; and in Africa, in it consided. the prouince of Carthage, two; and in Mauritania one; and two for the guarde of the kingdome of Egypt, and in the provinces of Mesopotamia and Syria (to wit) in the lands contained betweene the Syrian fea, the furthest end of the Leuant fea and the river Euphrates, which was (for along time) the bound of the Romane Empire, they held foure legions. And heere in Europe (besides those which I haue alreadie named) they had other fixe legions, in this manner: in Austrich and Hungarie they had two; and in Seruia and Bulgaria, as many; and other two in Slanonia; and neere vnto the citie of Rome, were alwayes lodged twelue Cohorts, nine of which were called Pretorian, and the other three Vrbane, which by turne did guarde the Emperors palace. Of all these Cohorts (according to the fame authors) the first and most principall of them contained one thousand, one hundred and fine footemen, and one hundred and thirtie two horsemen; and the others equally each of them fine hundred and fiftie footemen, and threefcore and fixehorsemen. Besides all which, they also had in divers cities and provinces, companies of horsemen, which were friends and subjects to the Empire; and also other companies of footemen, which were called Auxiliaries, which were not Auxiliarie fortrained after the Romane order and discipline: so as they continually held and 666. paied fine and twentie legions, befides those which were payed by their friends. And this was in time of peace, for the authoritie and guarde of the Empire; for when there were any warres (according as neede required) they reinforced their armies, and encreased the number of their legions. With the force of these great garrisons the Romane Empire maintained and defended it selfe, notwithstanding the want of care and diligence in the Empe-

rors, as in Tireriv s, of whom we now discourse, who (as is said) spent the rest of his life vntill his death in diuellish exercises, which being much wished for by all the world, ouertooke him in a house of pleasure neere to Naples, having raigned twentie and three yeeres Emperor, in the feuentie and eight yeere of his age, and thirtie and nine yeeres after the brith of Christ. In what manner he died, the authors agree not, for some say that hee was poyloned, by his Nephew and successor CALVS CALIGVIA: others say that being sicke as it was thought mortally, and seeing that hee made some shew of recouerie, for seare that hee would mend, the same CALIGVLA smothered him with a pillow, or with the couering of the bed, he having ordained him for his successor. Notwithstanding that by reason of a certaine prophecie which hee held, he had determined to haue ordained his Nephew TIBERIVS the sonne of DRVSVS for his heire,

whom Dion Coceivs in his histories saith, he would not name, because he was not affured that he was his fonnes sonne, for the suspition which he held of his mother; and also because that the Mathematicians and Astrologians, to whom he was much affected, and gaue credit, had told him, that he should liue but a little while, and that CALIGVLA should kill him: and so vpon a time being very much offended, he said to Caligvia, thou wilt kill me, and another shall kill thee. It is also imagined, that TIBERIVS chose CALIGVLA for his successor, for that he knew his euill and wicked inclination, hoping that with his vices, he would deface and blot his finne and wickednes out of remembrance; and also for that he beleeued, that he would extinguish the Romane nobilitie; and was so wicked and cruell that he defired that all the world might end with his life, and so he was fometime wont to fay, that he wished, that when he should die, that then the heauens and earth might be diffolued : but he deserued not to see the heauens : and all the earth reioyced and was glad when he died, as all authors write, and this was the end of TIRERTUS.

# THE LIFE OF CAIVS CALIGVLA, ONELY OF THAT NAME, AND FOURTH

ROMANE EMPEROVE



THE ARGUMENT.

Aligula before that he was made Emperour, was so acceptable and in so good grace with The people and Senate of Rome, that when he was made Lord, it is unknowne whether was the greater, either the forrow which was in Rome for the death of Ostanian, or the ioy which it concesued for the succession of Caligula. But after that he was made Emperour, in a manner, as though that with his dignitie he had chaunged his naturall inclination, he became fo wicked and infamous, that I cannot fet downe his dishonesties, without offending the honestie of him that shal reade the same, nor without a burthen to his modestie that shall write it. He made the bridge at Baias, a worke of no lesse foolishnes, then great expence. He dessoured three of his owne

fisters and of his Palace (with reuerence be it spoken) he made a brothel of Romane Matrones. He was so couetous, that he raised a taxe upon the whores, and a share of their gettings. He used to walke up and downe upon Crownes, and was so producall, that sometimes he caused most precious iewels to be dissolved with vinegar and put into his meate; and was finally in all his actions so contrarie to himselfe, that no man knew how to behaue himselfe towards him. He would be called and reputed for a God, which name be stained with such abominable crueltie, that he was worse than the dinell, and shed so much bloud, and made the wilde beasts which he kept, to the end to denoure men. to drinke and sucke so much that those which were condemned to be slaine by them, rather chose to kill themselues, then to endure the torments which he denised in his most cruell minde for them, He died of thirtie wounds given him by certaine which conspired against him, having raigned almost foure yeeres, whose death was so acceptable to the people, that it is hard to say whether was the oreater ioy, that which was conceiued when he was made Emperour, or that when he left the Empire together with his most vituperable life.



ALIGVLA the sonne of GERMANICVS succeeded TIBERIVS in the Empire, who during the time of his raigne, was in the highest degree of all kinde of wickednes abominable : and his words and deedes were fo pernicious and deteftable, that in truth it is a fhamefull and vnworthie matter, having written the liues of so worthie men, as were Ivlivs, and Octavianvs abomnable, C A sars, and their fo heroicall acts: now to descend to the finke and bottome

of the sinnes, crueltie, and ribauldrie of CALIGVLA. For although there wanted not in TIBERIVS to be abhorred and to be sorrie for, yet some part of his raigne was good, and before that he had been an excellent Captaine, and had enlarged the dominion of the Empire, for which cause his cuill conditions might be somewhat the better tolerated: but this being wanting in CAIVS CALIGVLA, who was a man of no fuch valour (although in the beginning he deceived the world with an apparance of some good deedes) yet it maketh the remembrance of him In California the more detestable, and his hand that shall write the same, the more heavie. But van nothing because I am not to make choise of Emperours, of whom I am to treate at my pleasure, but to continue the processe and course of my historie, wherein my principall foundation is, to observe the truth, and cleaning thereto, to continue my troublesome iourney: Let him which shall reade it consider how detestable and abominable his doings were, and how small time his Empire indured, which attained not to foure yeers complete; and the end which he made, to the end that he may flie and abhorre them, and may do the like by some others which followed, like to him, or worfe.

After the death of TIBERIVS CESAR (as I said) the low which the Senate and people of Rome conceived was incredible, and therewith they accepted and approoued the Empire of CAIVS CALIGULA, whom before his death TIBE-RIVs had adopted and nominated for his successour, for the loue and goodwill which they bare to his father Germanicus, and for the pitie and commiseration which they conceiued for his death, affliction and wrong done to his house. For these causes was he accepted and ratified by all the Provinces, and provinciall armies: for his father being Captaine generall in Germanie, and in the East, he was bred vp among them, and this name of CALIGVLA was given him for a VV herefree he certaine kinde of hofe, called Caliga, wfed among men of warre, which hee did was called vie to weare. Comming from the place where TIBERIVS died, to Rome, a great number of the most principall people of all estates went foorth to entertaine him vpon the way, with exceeding joy, notwithstanding that hee came mourning with the dead bodie of TIBERIVS, which the fouldiers brought to be burnt at

Caligula bis pelition of bodie.

Rome, according to the custome in that time. And comming with great solemnity to Rome, hee was obeyed with vnspeakeable gladnes and goodwill, they giving him new names and Epithetes, fignifying great reuerence and loue.

Caligvia was a man tall of stature, great boned and corpulent; but his geline and diff. necke and his legges were very small and slender, deformed and vnsuteable to the rest of his bodie; his countenance was horrible and vgly; and after that he was Emperor, he took pleasure to feare and amaze people with his lookes: and to this effect it is written, that beholding himselfe in a glasse, he would studie what countenance to fet, to feeme more fierce and terrible. His eyes and temples were very hollow, his forehead broad, his complexion yellow, his head very bald, and in those parts of his head where he had any haire, it was very thinne, all the rest of his bodie being marueilously hairie. He was a man very vnsound and vnhealthy, and in his youth was troubled with the foule euill, and other difeases, and afterwards (as we will prefently shew you) he was so sick and euill of bodie and mindchaunging his conditions with the Empire: for before that time, he was ever held for good. Wherefore it is faid of him, that he had been the best servant, and was the worst and most wicked Lord in the world. The first thing he did after he was Lord, was to disanull and make voide the testament of TIBERIV s, which he had made two yeeres before, wherein he made him & his nephew TIBERIVS his coheires: whereto the Senate did willingly agree, & euery man deuised & imagined how to gratifie him and doe him feruice, with fuch loue, that within few daies after he was confirmed in the Empire. Going foorth of Rome to recreate himselfe vpon the Sea at the Ile of Capra, and in other Ilands vpon that coast, they made vowes and facrifices for his health and returne: and the writers affirme, that there were flaine 170000. beafts, according to the rites and ceremonies then vsed: And he then making shew of a man, and not of a beast (as his deedes did afterwards make manifest) presently commaunded the ashes of his mother and brethren to be brought to Rome, and there to be sumptuously buried. He then tooke for his companion in the Confulfhip, which hee then would execute, his vncle C LAV-DIVS brother to GERMANICVS, who in the time of TIBERIVS lived private and in diffrace; and young Tiberivs, which was nephew to Tiberivs the Emperour, faining to loue him, and to beare him goodwill, and to doc him honour, he made captaine and prince of all the Romane youth. Seeking by counterfeit goodnes and bountie, to draw to himselfe the goodwill of the people; he did twice give vnto every bodie (excepting none) a certaine quantitie of money. which they called Congiarius; and to all the Senate, and to all those of the order of Knighthood (which were a degree betweene the communaltie and the Nobilitie) he made a most solemne banquet. And faining also that he meant to gouerne with iustice, he commaunded OCTAVIANVS CASAR his Institutions to be fought out, which Tiberiv sinterrupted and brought out of vie. He commaunded also great playes and feasts to be made in Rome of Sword-plaiers, which were men which to shew pleasure to the beholders, fought and killed one another; and certaine men on horseback which they called Trojans. He also appointed certaine huntings, wherein were flaine a great number of Lions, Panthers, Boares, Beares, and other wilde beafts: and befides this, Comedies and other fhewes which were made in the Theater, and other kinds of sports and pleasures to delight the people, whose love and grace he then procured. And besides that which is alreadic faid (as SVETONIVS reciteth) principally in the beginning of his Empire, ARTABANVS King of the Parthians, who rebelled and was an ene-

mie, came to some speech with the Captaine of the Romanes, which commaunded the legions in Syria, and fearing the new Emperour whom he yet knew not, made peace with him; and paffing the river Euphrates, which was the bound of the King of the the Romane Empire, came in person to adore and to doe reuerence to the Em-Parthans, perours picture, and to the Imperiall standard and Eagle: so as the little, vntill this time, may be reported of Callgula, as of a wife and discreete prince; and the remainder seemeth to be of a senselesse man and a brute and sauage beast. The beginning wherof was one of the greatest fooleries or vanities that euer was seene in the world, which was to make fuch a feast as was neuer heard of, and to shew greatnes and vanitie, and to be able to walke and tread on the Sea as well as vpon the land: Or (as others fay) because he would imitate King X ER X E s, who passed his armie out of Asia into Europe over the streight of Hellespont voon a wooden bridge:he commaunded to be brought together, and to be new built all the ships Avonderful which he could get, which were infinite; and in a bay or a creeke which the Sea Caligula, maketh neere to the hauen of Baias in Campania, from one point of the land to the other fide of the Bay, which are about three miles distant, hee commaunded a bridge to be made upon the faid ships, set in two rankes, fastned and moared together with anchors, chaines and cables, which made them to stand fixe and firme: he commanded this bridge to be made of boords, so strong and eeuen, and to lay fo much earth vpon the same, that it seemed to be firme ground, and one of the firectes of Rome. And bringing for this worke a great number of Artificers and labourers, with an vnmeafurable charge; he also caused houses and lodgings to be

builded upon the same bridge; as writeth DION, who declareth this matter more at large then all the reft.

This worke being finished, and hee with all the Court of Rome going thither, with an infinite number of people which from all parts came to fee this spectacle, hee most proudly attired in robes of gold and pearle, with a crowne of Oaken boughes vpon his head (which was called Cinica) on horsebacke, accompanied with men of warre, and all the Noble and gentlemen of Rome, entred at one end of the bridge and road to the other; and lying one night vpon it, the next day hee returned, riding in a Chariot drawne by most excellent faire horses, in manner of a triumph. Dron writeth, that the night when he lay vpon the bridge, he caused fuch an infinite number of Torches, Lant-hornes, and other lights to be lighted and fet up, that the cleerenes thereof did wholy ouercome the darknes of the night, in all that fide of the mountaines neere adioyning; and that CALIGVLA vaunted and boasted that he had made of the night, day; and of the Sea, land. And fpending herein two whole daies, in all which time the Sea happened to be fill and calme, he said; that Neptune (whom they held for the god of the Seas) did it for feare, and to doe him reuerence. The fruite which enfued of this strange follie, was great famine and scarcitie of corne, and other necessaries, for that the ships were staied about this bridge, to make the which there needed an incredible number of them. Such like benefits as this, did euer follow the actions of CALIGV-LA. Wherefore before that I speake of the rest, to say the plaine truth, it is to be vnderstood, that many were of opinion, that to this man was given a certaine drinke and medicine by his wife, whose name was CESONIA, wherewith she made him mad and out of his naturall wits; the giuing it him, to the end that he should loue her: for he having been at other times maried, had put away his wines; fo as his crueltie and riots were by fome attributed to his foolishnes and want of wit.

Of this opinion is I o sephy's in the 18, booke of his Antiquities, and the Poet

# THE LIFE OF SEPTIMI-

VS SEVERVS, ONLY OF THIS NAME, AND THE ONE AND

TWENTETH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGYMENT.



Eptimius Seuerus hauing taken the Empire more by force, and by feare, wherein he did put the Senators and people of Rome, then for any right he had thereto: the first thing that hee did, was to revenge the death of Pertinax, by deprining all those which had staine him and sold the Empire, of all militarie dispitie, Afterwards entring Rome with great pompe, hee perswaded the Senators and people to hope well of him, and to bend their weapons against Pescenius Niger, who was called Emperour: Whom finally after many changes of fortune, hee onercame. He likewife ouerthrew Artabanus King of Persia, and

. tooke the citie of Tiliphonte, wherein was all that Kings treasure, and ouercame Albinut, who was made Cafar. This Senerus was a man addicted to the warres, ambiguous, ambitious, constant in his resolution to bring any thing to passe that he had once undertaken, and therewith very wife and circumspect in all matters appertainning to the preservation of his estate, and the government of the Empire. Finally, oppressed with a long infirmitie, and particularly with an

mtolerable paine in his feete, he died, hauing ruled the Empire eighteene yeeres; vling no lesse wisedome in preserving it, then he had shewed boldnes and audacitie in getting it.



Fter Ivlianus, Septimius Severus succeeded in the Empire, who onely among all the Emperours was borne in A-The linage of frica, in a citie called Leptis. His fathers name was Gera, and Scherns. his mothers FVLVIA PIA. He had two Vncles by his mothers fide, which were Confuls in Rome; his grandfathers name by his mother was MACER, and by his fathers fide, FVLVIVS

Apivs. Ivilanvs being dead in fuch manner as we have declared, and Seveavs marching with his armie towards Rome, as against his enemies; vpon the way certaine Ambassadours methim, which in the name of the Senate and people of Rome yeelded to him their obedience, and gaue him the title and enfignes of Emperour, certifying him of the death of IVLIANVS. He received this Ambaffade in presence of the armie, being marshalled and in armes; and gaue gifts to the Ambaffadours, and entertaining them with great honour, continued his journey towards Rome, where aswell the Pretorian souldiers stoode in seare of him, for that they had saine the Emperour Pertinax whom they knew he loued, as also all the Romane people, for the desire they had that Pescenius Niger fhould hauebeen Emperour; who in the East (as is said) was called so. SEVEavs when he came neere to Rome, fent commaundement that all the Pretorian fouldiers should come forth to receive him, clad in shew of peace, leaving their armes in their campe; and they did so, hoping thereby to have pleased and pacified him by joyfully obeying his commaundement. And he concealing what he purposed to doe, having onely acquainted some of his favorites and captaines therewith, attended their comming in the field, in a place which he had chosen for that purpose; and they comming to doe him reuerence, were compassed Theomissisabout by his armie: and making a short speech vnto them, he reproched them mont of the with the crueltie and treason which they had vsed in killing the Emperour PER-Pretorian foul-TINAX: Which being ended, he made them to put off the clothes and apparell flew Pertinax, which they ware, and to put away their daggers and pointards from them (for other weapons they had none) and then he pronounced sentence against them; wherein he deprined them of the honour of fouldiers, and banished them from Rome and a hundred miles about. And he presently sent to their campe to take their armes from them, and the imperiall enfigues, and so they were punished and difgraced, although not so much as they deserved, for the cruell murther which they had committed, and the felling of the Empire.

This being done, SEVERVS entred into Rome, with his whole armie, with their severus entred Enfignes displaied, and his fouldiers in armes, apparelled in the best and most so. Romewithenlemne manner that they could. The number of people was fo great and fuch, that figures displained it was a most faire and stately spectacle to behold. The Senate went to the gates of the citie to receive him, and there faluted him after the accustomed manner; and the people received him with bleffings and applauses : notwithstanding that it was odious ynto them to fee him come armed, and in warlike manner. And hauing performed the folemnities, and visited the Temples, as the manner then was, he went to his lodging in the Imperiall palace: and the next day he commanded the Senate to be affembled, whither he also went accompanied with armed men, wherein(as he was a wife man and well aduifed) hee made a very fmooth speech, gining them great hope of good government, and excusing himselfe for taking

The valour and learning of Scherus.

vpon him the name and authoritie of Emperor, without their confent and good. will first obtained; alleaging that hee did it, to the end to come to reuenge the death of Pertinax, and to free them from the tyrannie of Ivlianvs: for that it was a thing vnworthie the Romane Empire, that he should line therein which had bought it with money. In conclusion, he spake so faire, and yied them in such manner, that they went thence fatisfied and well content: yet fome of the old Senators which better knew his condition, gaue little credit to his words; for they held him for a man that was very double, subtill, and a great diffembler: and notwithstanding that he was so, yet in truth he was a most sufficient man in any thing, very valiant in armes, and before that he was Emperour had gouerned great prouinces and attained to be Questor, Tribune, Pretor, Proconful, and Conful; and had held Captain hips and charges, wherein he purchased the name and renowne of a valiant, wife, and excellent Captaine. And if a man well confider how the Empire was then divided betweene three Lords, and with what valour he subdued the whole, with the other warres and dangers which happened in his time; he may very wel be effected for a very valorous Emperor & excellent Captain. and may be compared with any of those in ancient time. Besides all which, hee was very learned, and a great Mathematician, a good Orator and Philospher. But his prowesse in armes was so great, that it may not be written by me(considering the breuitie which I vse) sauing running, and so to expresse such things as are most cleere and resplendent, and although in haste, yet will they glister in their sight which shall behold the same.

After that hee had taken vpon him the gouernment of the Empire, hee took speedie order for the reformation of abuses in the citie, by reason of the dissenfions and tumults passed. He also presently honoured and buried the Emperour PERTINAX, and in remembrance of that good old man, he tooke to himselfehis furname, calling himselfe Septimivs Severvs Pertinax. He paid and gaue gifts and rewards to his men of warre, and also to the people of Rome; and as the custome of the new Emperours was the made distributions and gaue large gifts. He also married two daughters which he had, with two principall men, one called PROBV s, and the other Ecivs; and after that he had given great downes with them, he vied fuch meanes that they were chosen both Confuls. And whereas at that time there was great fearfitie of corne in Rome, he tooke fuch order, and that with fuch expedition, that the citie was fufficiently prouided for and furnished: which course he held euer during all the time of his raigne, in such fort that therein was neuer any want. All these things and other, concerning the government of the Empire, he performed with fuch expedition, that hee remained there but thirtie daies: for from the first day that he was Emperour, he determined to addresse his iourney towards the East with his armie against PESCEINVS NE G ER, Who (as is faid) was called Emperour, and was very mightie and an excellent Captaine. And having made preparation for his journey, he fent a Captaine and new legions into the prouince of Africa, to guard the fame; to the end that by the way of Egypt and Libya, PESCENIVS NIGER should not make any profit of that prouince. And the better to leave all things in fafetie behinde him in the West (for hee was in feare of CLODIVS ALBINVS a Nobleman and a Senator of Rome, who was Captaine of the Legions in Britannie, and was a man of a great parentage, rich, and well beloued) he bethought himselfe how he might compasse him and make him his friend, by giving him the name and title of C & sax and his successor, whereof he aduertised him with very louing and gracious spee-

ches: by which meanes for that time he remained in quiet and in peace. This be-Security against ing done, leauing the best order in Rome that he could, and such as was most expedient (nominating and choofing companies and Pretorian Cohorts to remaine in the citie, in place of those which hee had cassiered and degraded from the honour of the militarie Art and profession) he departed thence, continuing his journev with the best and greatest force that he was able to leuie on enery side. And PESCENIVS NIGER being aduertised of the comming of his enemie, as vntill then he had lined idle and careleffe; fo now with great diligence and expedition he leuied fouldiers: and befides the ordinarie armie which he had, with all speede he sent some Captaines to stop the passages out of Europe into Asia the lesse; and also sent to craue aide of the Kings of the Parthians, and of Armenia, and other Kings and Tetrarches of the East; from which, and from the prouinces which were vnder his obedience, there came great power and reliefe vnto him: And fo the world was divided into two factions and heads; and there began one of the most cruell warres that euer had been therein, as well for the force and valour of the Captaines, as for the power and multitude of souldiers; which warre was waged in many parts, both by sea and by land. SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS passed out of Europe into Asia the leffe, although with great trouble and difficultie, hauing many skirmishes, and being often affailed by PESCENIVS his troupes, who fent against him an excellent Romane Captaine called EMILIANVS, who was Generall of all his forces: and this E MILIANV s having drawne together all the power which Pescentists of enthim, and all the rest that he was able to leuie out of Cappadocin, Galatia, Bithynia, and other proninces of Asia the lesse, tooke the field, in the way whereby SEVERVS was to passe: wherein followed many great skirmishes and encounters, and in the end a most cruell and terrible battaile, wherein EMILIANVS was ouerthrowne. After this battaile, the conquered troupes which escaped, went to Pescenivs Niger, who with all his power senens, was in the citie of Antioch in Syria; from whence he departed to meete with SEP-TIMIVS SEVERVS vpon the way as he was comming: and marching towards him(after some matters of lesser importance which passed) the two Armies drew neere the one to the other in a great plaine by the Sea fide in the countrey of Ci- A battaile belicit (as HERODIAN VS reporteth, yet SPARCIAN VS and EVTROPIVS differ mins Senerus therein)in the same place where DARIV s was the first time ouerthrowne by A- and Possenius LEXANDER the Great; where (by the confent of both the Generals) they came Weger. to a battaile with the most and best souldiers that then were in the world; which by reason of the experience, valour, and wisedome of the Captaines, was most cruell: For fighting the greatest part of the day without any apparant aduantage, the number of the flaine and wounded was fo great, that the streames of water which ranne through the fields, were fo full, and died with the bloud of men and horses, that there seemed to bee no water therein: A great number of disarmed people of the inhabitants thereabouts, standing upon the tops of the hils to behold the battaile, and to see whether partie snould haue the victorie. Which when either partie by all meanes possible had endeuoured to obtaine, in the latter end of the day PESCENIVS NIGER was ouerthrowne, without failing in any point in what hee ought, and was most expedient for a good Captaine to haue done: for in truth Severvs his fouldiers were more expert and better trained in the warres then his were; and feeing there was no other remedie hee per overthrown fled, but was followed and afterwards found by SEVERVS his fouldiers, which add flaine. smote off his head, and carried it through the Campe vpon the point of a launce.

The linage of Pefcenius Ni-

The fift perfe-

cution of the

Albinus in

Scherns.

arme: against

Primitine

Church.

This PESCENIVS NIGER Was a man of meane parentage; yet some fay that he was noble and ancient: his fathers name was Anivs Fyscys, and his mother was called L AMPRIDIA. He was a man indifferently well learned, and obtained great riches. He was sharpe and quicke of condition, and euer followed the wars. and was an excellent fouldier; and afterwards performed the charge committed to him, with great discretion and courage: for they write of him, that hee was a valiant and much commended Tribune; a very fingular and excellent Captaine; a most seuere and vpright Lieutenant Generall; a most wise and prudent Consul; and in all things happie and fortunate, fauing that he was onely infortunate in being Emperour, not knowing how to gouerne himselfe therein. So as it plainly appeareth, that men doe oftentimes defire and purchase to themselves shame and perdition, by prefuming to attaine to honour and reft.

SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS having obtained so notable a victorie, with all speed aduertised the Romane Senate thereof, and as a conqueror did his will vponthe conquered, cruelly killing many of those which had taken part with N 1 G ER: and principally he destroied the citie of Antioch, by reason that it (more then any other)had aided and affifted his adnerfarie, whose wife and children he commanded to be banished from Rome. And to the contrary hereof, hee gaue gifts and rewards to those which had done him service and affissed him; and repaired the harmes and dammages which fome cities, which held with him, had received by NIGERS fouldiers. For in truth this man was very cruell in punishing offences, and in perfecuting his enemies; and very liberall and gratefull to his friends, and most bountifull in rewarding those which had done him any service. In all the prouinces of the East, after this victorie, he found no resistance, saving among the Parthians, the Persians, and the Adiabenians, very mightie Nations, which for the loue which they bore vnto NIGER, and the ancient hatred to the name, Romane, presently tooke armes against SEVERVS; and hee in person went against them, and had many battailes and incounters, and obtained great victories, which I have no time to relate: so as hee inlarged the Empire and the Romane name, and pacified the prounces.

SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS having brought all his purposes to so good and profocrous estate, being seduced by the diuell, so persecuted the Catholike Christian Church, that an infinite number of the faithfull were put to death; and this was the fift perfecution of the Church. For which occasion (as PAVLVS OROSIVS noteth) God would not permit that he should long enjoy the Empire in peace: for he was aduertised from Rome how that ALBINV s, who (as we faid) was Captaine in great Britannie, and whom he made C & s A R when he went for the East, was risen in armes, and proclaimed himselse Emperour; and that hee was of very great power, and much beloued of the Romane Nobilitie: for hee was native of Rome, and of a great and noble familie. But he being of a hautie minde little regarded those difficulties: and setting all things in order in the East, with his armic tooke his way towards Rome, to the end from thence to goe against ALBINVS,45 against a tyrant and a rebell. And passing from Asia into Europs oner the streight at Byzantium, which is now called Constantinople, hee wholy destroised that citie; because that when he passed by it towards Asia, that citie would not receive him; and so he left it levell with the ground (which was one of the most famous cities in the whole world) and remained fo defolate vntill the time of CONSTANTINE the Great; as in his time we will declare.

SEVERVS trauailing thus towards Rome, his aduerfarie ALBINVS being ad-

nertised thereof, came out of Britannie into France, where hee raised a mightie armie; part whereof he sent to keepe the passages in the Alpes, thereby to hinder him in his way, who was alreadic arrived at Rome, and was voon his way comming to meete him : before which time he put PESCENIVS NIGERS children Severus put to to death, to the end thereby wholy to extinguish all remembrance of him: And death, to the end thereby wholy to he going to the warres, appointed his sonne Bassianys Antoninys for his facceffor, and intituled him C & s A R; and chaunging his name, he commaunded him to bee called AVRELIVS ANTONINVS. And drawing neere to his enemies, the warres began in a most cruell manner betweene them; wherein in the beginning in some encounters, SEVERVS his captaines were ouerthrowne by those of A LEINV s his partie. But after that hee had passed the Alpes, and was entred into France, the warre was kindled in many parts; and in many conflicts and skirmishes fortune shewed her selfe variable, the victorie inclining sometimes to one fide, and sometime to the other; untill at last necre unto the citie of Lions, Agreat bat-(wherein Albinvswas) either partie drawing together his whole power, they taile between fought one of the most bloudie battailes that ener was written of: which conti-Albinus, mued the greatest part of the day without any apparance of aduantage. First the victoric seemed to bee of ALBINV s his side: for his battalion was of such force, that it made Severv s to retire, in such fort that his souldiers began to flie; and it so happened that SEVERVS his horse fell with him, and enery man held him for dead: and ALBINVs his fouldiers began to crie victorie, victorie; taking no care but to follow the execution. Then L E TV s one of S E V E R V s his Captains, which vntill then had neuer charged; with a very great troupe of armed men which he brought with him, renued the fight, in fuch fort, that SEVERVS was refcued: and being remounted vpon another horse, charged with so great force and rigor, that he tooke the victorie out of ALBINVs his fouldiers hands, which accounting themselues victorious, observed no order: and the matter was so handled, that ALBIN vs his troupes were driven to turne their backes; and SEVERVS followed the execution, killing them even to the gates of the citie of Lions. The number of those which were slaine and wounded, was infinite; and the citie was prefently entred, and A LBINVs taken; and his head being striken off, was brought to SEVER v s. A man may well beleeue that hee was not a little joyfull when hee faw it, confidering that a little before hee was wounded and cast to the ground, and by all men accounted for dead, and his enemies victorious; and escaping all

this, he now faw himselfe an absolute Lord, victorious, and his enemies confoun-

ded. Wherefore let euery Christian reader consider how inconstant all things

are in this life; and that a man neither can, or ought to repose his assured confi-

was,I am of opinion that no man either before or after him, had excelled him;

confidering the actions and enterprises which hee brought to an end, whereof I

of Rome, aduertifing them of his victorie, and fending them ALBINVS his head,

commaunded that it should be set vpon the end of a pole in the publick place,

and all those Senators which of ALBINVS his partie were slaine in this battaile,

he commaunded to be quartered; and those which were taken aliue, he com-

maunded to be flaine. He was so cruell and vindicatine (that some write) that he

These things being past, SEVERVS presently wrote to the Senate and people

Write but the fumme.

mitted after that he had obtained this victorie: for truly if this Prince had not been The crueltie of

dence in any thing in this world. Great were the cruelties which SEVERVS comfo cruell and greedie of shedding of bloud, and in matters of gouernment as hee mounted vpon a very fierce great horse, and vpon him rode many times ouer the dead bodie of ALBINVS: which is not much to be maruelled at, confidering from how cruell and barbarous a nation he was descended. Some write, that he first caused his bodie to be torne in many pieces, and to be throwne into the river Rhodinus. And Sparcianvs faith, that he commanded his wife and children to be flaine, and did by them as he had done by ALBINVS, and so he made a number of his kinsemen and friends which with him were found in Lions to be slaine. and with them other principall noble men of France and Spaine. He concluded the victorie which he gat neere Lions only in Rome, there to make an end of the warre, and after this victorie he presentlie affaulted certaine cities and holds which continued friends to ALBINVS, which he subdued, not without great trouble and danger. And as he was busie in these matters, newes was brought him that one of those legions which he had left in Arabia, did mutine, and tooke part with ALBINVs before this battaile: and so he leaving France and Germaniin peace and quiet, and fending into Britanny the ordinarie captaines, to keepe the inhabitants in fubication and in peace, he came victorious and triumphing to Rome, bringing his armie with him, where he was most folemnely received, with

Senerus came triumphing into Rome.

of Scherus.

great shew of ioy and contentment, although that in truth they stood in great feare of him: whither when he came, he paid his fouldiers with larger allowance, then euer theretofore had been feene; and the first day that he went to the Senate, in difgrace and despite thereof, he renewed the titles and memorie of the wicked Emperour Commonvs, and made him to be canonized, and adored as a God. He also condemned to death, & confiscated the goods of a great number of noble personages of Rome which had been Pretors, Consuls, and Senators, for that he found that they had been friends to ALBINVS, and of his faction, shewing letters which he said were written by them, wherein they had offered their persons and goods to ALBINVS seruice; alleaging other reasons & proofes, which peraduenture were forged. Finally, he vsed great crueltie, and put many to death, whereby he extremely enriched himselfe both in goods and treasure, whereof some he distributed and gaue to others: but principallie, he enriched and advanced to honor in the highest degree, one whose name was Plane IVS, a great fauourite of his, who also was an Africane, and his countrieman, whom he great fanourite made Prefect of the Pretorian cohorts, and afterwards he married his sonne Bas-SIANVS ANTONINVS, whom he had made C ESAR, with his daughter, whose name was PLAVTINA; and then he made him his companion and equall, and made the Senat to giue him the enfignes and prerogative of the Empire; by reafon whereof PLANCIVS grew yet more prowd and infolent. Matters flanding in the state as I have said, the sierce and mightie S EVERVs stayed but a small time in Rome, in which space he executed many cruelties vpon those which had been friends to Niger and Albinvs, putting to death a great number of noble perfonages most cruellie and horriblie, together with many matrones, and Romane Ladies: and to the contrary, he shewed himselfe very liberall and bountifull, and bestowed many fauours vpon others, and became also very popular, and sought to be pleasing and acceptable to all men, and to that end made the greatest and most costlic feasts and games that euer were made in Rome, and deuided money amongst the people. But he stayed but a little while there (as I said) for knowing that matters were in no fecuritie in Asia, principallie that the Parthians infested the bounds and frontiers of the Empire, and defirous to be revenged of certaine Kings, which had affifted his enemie NIGER, as he was most valorous and desi-

rous of honor and warres, although old and gowtie: yet with his accustomed celeritie he departed towards the East, and being come into Asia sooner then any man would have beleeved, he presently began the warre in Armenia, marching against BARZEMIVS King of the Atrenores, who had been PESCENIVS NI-GERS friend: The King of Armenia durst not make any resistance, but sent him presents, suing for peace, and gaue him such hostages as he required. Whereupon finding no relistance, this valiant Emperour returned against Arabia felix, where- Seutrus his in there was a mutinie, and there tooke and facked some cities: and from thence enterprises, returned to the frontiers of the Atrenores, and befreged the citie of Atras, or Atramas. But being vnable to take it, for that it was very strong and well furnished, in oreat furie he went against the Parthians, and the Persians, and besieged the famous citie of Tesiphonte, wherein King ARTABANV slay with all his power and houshold: and after many affaults, encounters, and flaughters of men of either fide. he entred the citie by force of armes, and the King escaping by flight, his children and treasure fell into the hands of Severvs, which was held for a very great victorie: for the Romanes stood in greater feare of the Parthians, then of any other nation of the world.

SEVERVS presentlie wrote to Rome, advertising them of his victories and good fucceffe, and fent them the description of the countries, cities, rivers, battailes, and affaults which he past, drawne and painted in tables.

When he had here ended all things at his pleasure, he bountifully and liberally paid his Souldiers: and comming into Palestina, and from thence into Egypt: he was desirous to see the Pyramides, and other great and auncient monuments in that Countrey: And from thence he returned to Rome in great triumph, loden with the spoyles and riches gotten by his victories in the East. And at this his comming, hee married his eldest sonne to PLAVTINA, daughter of his great fauourite Plancivs, which marriage Bassianvs Antoninvs folemnized much against his will; and so would not converse or keepe companie with her-Whereupon there began great difliking and diffension betweene PLANCIVS and Bassianys. And Plancivs knowing himselfe to be the richest and mightiest man in all the Empire, and seeing that SEVERVS Was now old, with whom he was in great fauour; and fearing that if BASSIANVS should succeede him and inherite the Empire, he should be ill intreated at his hands : he resolved to kil both the father and the fonne, and to make himselse Emperour, making choice (to doe this exploite) of a Tribune of the Pretorian Cohorts, whereof hee himselfe was Pretor. But it pleased God that this his treason was discouered by the same Tribune: and the fame day that he thought to have put the Emperours to death, hee by them was commaunded to bee slaine. Which is an excellent historie, as hee may well perceine which will reade HERODIANVS: and so according to his deferts with his life, he ended his pride. After that S EVER VS had escaped this danger, he spent his time in visiting some cities in Italy, in hearing complaints and doing inflice, and in most sumptuous workes and buildings in Rome, and other cities: and feeking to bring vp his fonnes vertuoufly, and by abating their pride, to reconcile them and make vnitie betweene them; for they did ill agree, and were very vnquiet and ill affected the one to the other: He defired to establish peace and amitie betweene them, for that hee had determined that after his death the Empire should be divided betweene them, and to that end invested them both therein: And so this poore old Emperour laboured in vaine to reforme the euill inclination of his sonnes. And living in rest from warre, although not without

domesticall care, he received letters importing, that the inhabitants of great Britannie were in armes, and rebelled in such fort, that his Legions there were in fuch daunger, that they were at the point either to bee ouercome and loft or ar least to flie and abandon the countrie; which he tooke very displeasantly. And to the end that the Empire in his daies should not be diminished by the losse of that Iland(it being of fuch importance)hee determined to goe thither himfelfe in perfon to pacifie the fame. And without any delaying of time, went thitherwards with all his forces: and being arrived in Britannie, the inhabitants conceived fuch feare, by reason of his sudden comming upon them, that as hee was a warriour, if he had been inclined to peace, they would have come to any reasonable compofition: but hee rather defiring to punish them, made cruell warre against them. which was both very tedious and daungerous, by reason of the lakes and many enill passages for his men in severall places in that countrie; so as he was constrain ned to make many bridges and other denices, with wood and timber for his fouldiers to passe: And so hee obtained many victories, and pacified and subdued the inhabitants. And to the end that his Legions from thencefoorth might live in greater fafety, and that the Picts and Scots should not so freely passe their bounds, (as Sextvs Avrelivs Victor and Evtroppy steport) he commanded a most strong wall to be made, which did crosse the He from sea to sea, which wall

The Britaines

was two and thirtie miles in length, wherein (as I conceiue) hee did but either finish, or repaire that wall which the Emperour ADRIAN had made before: which truly was a worke worthie the greatnes of S E v E R v s his minde, and the mightie wealth of Rome. Which when he at his pleasure had ended, in like manner as hee had done all his other enterprises, his old griefe did so much torment him, that he defired and fought meanes to end his owne life : and having raigned eighteene yeeres and tenne moneths, he died in the same Ile of Britannie.

The death of

This Emperour was one of those which fought more battailes, and obtained more victories, then any other that euer ruled the Romane Empire before him. For he ouerthrew and brought to confusion three mightic Romane Emperous, and many other Kings, and fubdued an infinite number of prouinces, and cities. He tooke so good order for the preservation of his treasure, and was so couetous and greedie in gathering the same together, that notwithstanding his greatexpences, and the infinite great gifts and rewards which he bestowed: yet hee left more readie money and treasure in his treasurie and Exchequer, then any other Emperour of his predecessors. He paid and maintained, and left in the Empire so many legions of fouldiers, that there was no cause to feare any King or Nation in the world. Hee left in Rome so great abundance of wheate, wine and oile, as was fufficient (as SPARCIANVS Writeth) to maintaine and victuall the fame for fine yeeres. He erected wonderfull workes and buildings in Rome, and in other parts, and in many things perfourmed the part of a good gouernour, and of a wife and prudent Prince: So as the Romanes vsed to fay of him (noting his cruelties and conetonines; and afterwards his prouisions and victories) That it had been good that this Emperour had neuer bin borne, or that he should neuer haue died : and so after his death he was highly extolled and commended. He left for his equal fuccessors in the Empire his two sonnes, the one called BASSIANVS, and the other GETA: and when he lay a dying, the last words that he spake to those which were with him were these: When I tooke vpon me the gouernment of the Empire and of the Romane Common-wealth I found it tyrannized and out of orders and now being old and gowtie, leave it in peace and fubication to my sonnes (if

Severus at his death.

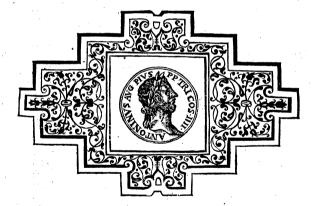
Fter the decease of Senerus, his two sonnes, Bassianus Antoninus Caracalla, and Geta, tooke the Empire; which two being borne of severall mothers (as brothers oftentimes vee to dee ) the one deadly hating the other, sought one anothers death and destruction. But Caracalla which was a marlike man and bloudie, unable to endure the companie of his brother, which led the life of a Philosopher rather then of an Emperour: and unable to endure that his brother for his good parts should be so much beloved by

the Romane people as he was failing to kill him fecretly with poison, in the end slew him openly in the lap of his mother in law, which was Geta his mother; remaining fole in the Empire. And knowing himselfe to be generally hated, he disposed of himselfe to visit the Empire : and where some

they prooue good)a firme and fetled Empire; but if they prooue euill, feeble, and without force, and readie to fall. This good Prince was fo temperate and spare in his diet, that hee did feldome eate any flesh : for his common foode was salades. pulse, and fruites of his countrie; but he vsed to drinke somewhat deeper; yet nener so that he was at any time distempered therewith. He was of a very comely personage, representing authoritie and maiestie, and was tall of stature, and yied to weare a long white beard; his haire was curled and gray, and he spake with a deepe founding voice. Finally, his personage and minde were fitting for an Emperour of Rome. He lived (as SEXTVS AVRELIVS VICTOR and others do testifie) Anno Dom. seuentie yeeres, and died in the yeere of our Lord two hundred and three.

### THE LIFE OF BASSIA-NVS ANTONINVS CARACAL

LA, THE FIRST OF THAT NAME, AND fourth of those which were called ANTONINI, and of his brother GETA, being the two and twentith Emperour of Rome.



#### THE ARGYMENT.



he sought to imitate the fashions of the countrie wherein he was ; sometimes attiring himselfe after the Germans fashion, then after the Greeke: besides that he would be called Alexander, and be reputed another Achilles, for that he had travailed the countries of those Princes. He was very inhumane and cruell, and so dishonest in his life that hee shamed not to marrie his stepmether Iulia which was mother to his brother Geta, who also was so shamelesse as to consent to so wicked a mariage. But they both ended accordingly as they deserved: for the Emperour was slaine by the practile of Macrinus, at such time as he went to ease his bodie; and she hearing the newes, falling into despaire killed her selfe he having held the Empire sixe yeeres.



EEVERV & being dead, his two fonnes, which he had by feuerall women, accordingly as he had ordained remained Emperours. One of them he had by MARTIA which was his first wife; and the other by Iv LIA as is alreadie faid. The eldest had to name BASSIANVS ANTONINVS, and the other GETA; both very young men, and in vertue farre valike to their father, chiefly

BASSIANYS CARACALIA which was the eldeft: Although that in his youth being but a childe, hee seemed to make better shew of himselfe, to be of a gentle condition, and of a good wit; and profited very much in learning (as Sparcia NV s Writeth) and therefore was much beloued and greatly accounted of: but afterwards, with his yeeres, and the Empire, he altred his condition, and in cruelte not onely surpassed his father, but any other cruell Prince of all that euer were; as though he had been borne at one birth together with NERO.

So foone as he was fworne Emperour in England, where hee then was (for his father carried both his sonnes with him, and his wife I v L I A also, which was mother to the second sonne) ANTONINVS CARACALLA practifed with the armie to chuse him onely for Emperour, and to disinherite his brother G  $_{\rm E\,T}$  A. But the men of warre would not confent thereto, because that GETA was chosen Cz. s ar and fuccessor to his father by them; and Bassianvs Antoninvs was nominated by his father SEVERVS. Whereupon being out of hope to bring his purpose to effect, accompanied with his brother and mother in law, they agreed to come to Rome, and brought with them the bodie or ashes of their father Sz-VERVS. But there presently began so many ielousies and suspitions betweene the two brothers, that it was daily feared that the one would kill the other; notwithflanding that Iv LIA (as though she had been mother to them both) vsed all posfible meanes to have pacified them, and to have brought them to live louingly and like brothers together: which she could neuer bring to passe, and so vpon the way either of them did lodge and eate apart; and either of them stood vpon his guard, for feare of the other. And being come to Rome, were received with great folemnitie, triumph and ioy; but in their palaces they tooke their lodgings apart, and each of them had his guard and particular officers from the other: and they neuer visited, saw, or spake the one to the other, except when they went to the Senate: fo great was the hatred and enuie which the one bare to the other.

The first thing they did after their comming to Rome, was to burie their father, whom they canonized for a Saint, placing him among the Gods, as the custome was to doe, by those which were good Emperours. And seeing that occasion will often be given to reade of some Emperours which have been deified; in my opinion it shall not be amisse, in this place to recite the ceremonies which were to what man- then yield therein. The order which they held (the Emperour being dead) was to assemble the Senate, to consider whether such an Emperour had deserved or manes aciped their Emperors were worthie to be placed among the Gods or no: and finding him to have been

Enmitié betweene Ballianus and bis bruther Geta.

wicked, the Senate would not be present at the ceremonies vsed at his funerall : but if he had been a good Prince, they all went in mourning attire to doe him honour at his confectation. The manner to confectate him, was first to burie him without any ceremonies; then they made his image of wood, which resembled a pale fickly weake man, which they placed vpon a high fcaffold ouer the entring into the Pallace, which image was clothed in faire rich attire, and on the one fide thereof fate the Senate, and on the other fide the Romane Matrons, where they fate from the Sunne rifing vntill the comming in of the euening, doing nothing but groane and figh. This order they observed the space of seven dayes, in which the Phisitions came and felt the pulses of this Statue, saying, that the Emperour would furely die: at which words, they lamented and feriched out. The fixt, day the Philitions faid that he was dead, then the most auncient men carried the image on horsebacke in a beere to a place, which was called the old place; passing thorough that way which was called Via Sacra. In this place was erected an edifice after the fashion of a throne, with staires round about it, and vpon this throne they placed this Image; on the one fide of the staires were many children, which were gentlemens fonnes of Rome; and on the other fide, a number of young Romane damfels which fung fome heavie and forrowfull fongs and ditties; and the boyes fung hymnes in praise of the dead Emperour. From thence they carried the Image with the beere to the field of Mars, where was another scaffold made of most drie wood, vpon which they placed this Image. Vpon that day people came from all parts of Italy to Rome to see the solemnitie: and enery one there present, was bound to cast vpon the staires, certaine precious odours of sundrie forts. After this the Senators made shew of a skirmish on horsebacke; and after them the two Confuls gaue a turne vpon their chariots richly adorned, being followed by all the most ancient old men in Rome, and those which had bin Captaines in the warres on foote: all which after that they had gone round about this scaffold, making fundrie shoutes and exclamations, fell to the ground. Then came he which did inherite and succeed in the Empire, and with a burning torch gaue fire to this throne or fcaffold; which, for that it was made of most drie wood, in short space was set all on fire.

But before any of these ceremonies were performed, the Senate prouided a great Eagle, which being fet on that fide where the image of the dead Emperour was, while as this image did burne, the Eagle was very finely let loose; which, according to her nature, mounting aloft into the aire, the people faid that it was the Emperors foule which flew to heauen there to inhabite amongst the gods: which HERODIANVS doth write at large in the historic of these two Emperours. GE-TA the younger brother was of a more gentle nature: for shewing himselfe milde and courteous, he began to be generally well beloued of all men. Antoninvs CARACALLAWas sharpe, and would be obeied for feare; and enuying the loue which he faw al men beare to his brother G ETA, & the reputation wherin he was held, he denifed with himself how he might secretly kil him with poison, or other- Eassianus wise howsoener: he also sought to get the goodwill of the Pretorian souldiers, gi- sought meants uing them many gifts, doing them many fauours, & giuing them leaue to do what ther Getate they lifted. So as it was eafily to be perceined, what manner of gouernment there death. would be in the Empire, wherein were two Emperours with equall power and authoritie, and so contrarie in condition each to other, that being brothers they practifed and defired each others death; and in matters of inftice and gouernment were euer contrarie in opinion; and for Captaines and gouernours which

were to be made, each fought to preferre his friends and fauourites, and did the like in chusing of Consuls and other Magistrates: And so all things went by fanours and in contention. And there were committed intolerable diforders, and injuries, either of them perfecuting the contrarie faction, without daring to punish those which were of their own partie, for feare to make them their enemies; whereof grew an vniuerfall prejudiciall detriment to all the prouinces, and generally to the whole Empire. Wherefore to avoide these troubles and inconveniences, some practifed to make a diuision of the Empire; and that ANTONINYS BASSIANVS should remaine in Rome and gouerne the West; and that GETA should gouerne Asia and all the East. But this tooke as little effect: for I v L 14. mother to GETA, hindred it, thinking to bring them to some composition, and to make them friends: and when she thought that she was in the right way to haue brought them to concord and agreement, BASSIANVS CARACALLA which was more proud and prefumptuous, and who in truth did fcorne his brother, as well for that he was his younger, as for that he gaue himselfe more to his booke and to civill discipline, then to armes and chivalrie; having alwaies about him honest and learned men: hee determined to kill him in what manner soeuer; which hee had till then affaied to doe by fecret and coloured meanes, thinking with himselfe that he was and ought to be sole and onely Emperour, and could not endure any riuall or companion in commaund. And with this cruell determination, as they were lodged both in one palace, GETA being one day with his mother, nothing suspecting any open violence, although hee mistrusted secret practifes: BASSIANVS inft at the time wherein enery bodie was at dinner, suddenly entred his brothers lodging, and with the aide of those which came with him, flew his brother in his mothers armes, before he was able to put himfelfein defence, or could be refcued: and having committed this deteftable murder, with the like furie and haft, as he had done this fact, he fallied forth at his pallace gate, compassed about with his friends and servants, and shewing great amazement, cried out, that his brother would have killed him, and faid to those which saw

tinued within the citie he stood in seare of his life. Those which heard him, not knowing what had passed, beleeved what he said, and both those which heard him, and heard him not, followed him; and the people began to be much troubled to fee their Emperour so out of season, and in fuch haste in such maner to go to the camp. When he came to his camp, where in truth by reason of his former practises, he was better beloued then his brother, the first thing that he did was to go to a place apart, where their ensignes and banners were, which they held for religious and facred; and then he began with great exclamation to fay, That he gaue infinite thanks to the gods for deliuering him from fuch, and so imminent a danger. And the souldiers flocking about him, maruelling at his fo vnfeafonable comming, he put himfelfe in the middeft of them, and with a huge voice began to implore their aid and fuccour, telling them that his brother would have flaine him, and being affailed by him, was rescued, and had fought, and God had given him the victorie, although with great difficultie; and that he now fled vnto them from the furie of those which would have flaine him. He spake and fained the matter with such efficacie, that the souldiers beleeued him, and notwithstanding that he expressed not so much, yet they plainely

him, that he had escaped an extreame danger of death, but his innocencie had

preferued him. And calling to his guard, commaunded them to conuay himto

his Pretorian Cohorts, where he might remaine in safetie, for so long as he con-

perceived that he had slaine his brother, as he gave them to vnderstand: and incontinentlie he promifed them, feeing that he remained fole Emperour, that he would bestow upon them the accustomed fauours, gifts and rewards; and presentlie sending for a great summe of money which remained of his fathers treafure, he divided it amongst them: wherewith having gotten their good wils, although that some were hard to be perswaded thereto, and did contradict it, yet in the end they proclaimed him sole Emperour, and approved the death of his brother GETA, pronouncing him a rebell, and an enemie to the Romane commonwealth. BASSIAN vs remaining all that night in the camp amongst the souldiers. the next day compassed with men of warre, returned into Rome; and assembling the Senate, he went thither, and brought in his guard with him, wherein he made afet Oration (which HERODIANVS writeth at large) excusing himfelfe, and grieuouslie accusing his brother, affirming that he was openlie affailed by him. but being rescued, in defending himselse, he had slaine his brother. The Senators, some for that they were his fauourits, and others for seare, approoued his death: and he to iustifie his wickednes with greater crueltie, began to proceede against menof all estates, as though that they all had been guiltie, and had practi- cruellie whed fed his death, committing infinite murthers and cruelties. First, he commaunded in puting all his brothers feruants to be flaine, together with many Senators and Romane many great Knights, which had taken his brothers part. He also made Play TINA, the daugh. men to death, terof Plancivs which had been his wife, to be put to death. He flew Pompe-IANVS nephew to the Emperour MARCY'S AVRELIUS the Philosopher, and some of LVCILLA and of POMPEIANYS. He caused also all the Gouernours and Captaines to be flaine, which his brother had placed in the Prouinces. To conclude, he murthered an infinite number of principall men, and men of estate: foas in all parts of Rome most horrible murthers and cruelties were committed, for which he is accounted one of the worst and most cruell Emperours that euer ruled the Romane Empire, and was generallic hated and abhorred of all men, sauing of the Pretorian fouldiers only, whose love and good will he bought with his money, and therewith did continue them for his friends (by suffring and induring them, and giuing them libertie in all things) permitting them to commit whatfoeuer outrage or infolencie they would. Hauing exercifed himfelfe in thele abhominable cruelties, his owne confcience accufing him, and knowing how much he was abhorred in Rome, he determined to depart from thence, and to go to visit all the provinces of the Empire, which he did, and in his journey plaid many mad pranks, some of which in truth were very ridiculous. And purpoling to go into Germany, where Rome euer held great armies in garrison against the northerly nations, which could neuer be brought to any perfect subjection: he gaue it out in speeches that he went to reforme the legions, and to visit the Bassianus his provinces: and taking his way towards the river Danubius, where (to win the trauailes and harts of that countrey people) he followed the fashions vsed in that countrey, fishions. hunting and killing fierce wild beafts, and apparelled himfelfe as a Germane, praifing and esteeming their fashions better, then the fashions of the Romanes, and chose such of the Germane souldiers as seemed to be most strong and active for his guard. He fought also to win the good will of other men of warre, shewing himselse very affable and sociable, helping them in person in their bodily exercifes, eating and drinking with them fuch things as they did, and doing many other things like a fouldier, and a man of warre: whereby he made himfelfe beloued both of the one and the other, although that he forbare not to commit sun-

Bassianus slow his brother Geta in his mothers armes. drie cruelties, killing certaine principall men amongst them.

And having fet all matters in fuch order as he thought good in Germany, taking his way towards Thracia, he paffed through Macedonia, where a notable folly possessed to ALEXAN. DER the Great, and to publish his noble acts; and sent commaundement to ered his statue in many parts of Rome; among which he set up one with two faces, the one resembling ALEXANDER, and the other himselfe, desiring to make others to beleeue (himselfe being so perswaded) that he did very much resemble him: and for that he had read that ALEXANDER'S neck flood alittle awry towards one shoulder, he counterfeited the like; and so within few dayes, of an Almaine, he was become a Macedonian in apparell, behauiour and fashion; and one squadron of his army he commaunded to be called a Phalanx, for fo were they called in that kingdome; and some of his Captaines he caused to be called by the names of some of ALEXANDERS Captaines. Having made this shew in Gracia, he tooke his way towards Asia, where he defired to see the ruines and relicks of Troj. and feeing the Sepulchre of ACHILLES, another humour tooke him, which was to resemble Achilles; so as he seemed to trauell the countries like a Player, with Comedies and making shewes; at which his lightnes and mutabilitie, the Romanes which were with him were much discontented and ashamed.

Trauelling through Asia the lesse, and thence into Soria, he went into Egypt (as he faid) to fee the citie of Alexandria, because that ALEXANDER the great was founder thereof, where he was most solemnely received, and with great ioy, for which he ill requited them: for although that he shewed them a pleasant countenance, yet fecretly he was very angry with them: for he vnderstood that they had vsed quips and iests of him behind his back, and gaue him nicknames conformable to his vices, and the cruelties which he committed. Matters, in truth, not so hainous as could deserue so cruell punishment, as that which heinflicted, which was: that the people being vpon a day affembled together to see certaine publike pastimes, he made them to be compassed about by his fouldiers, and an infinite number of them of all ages, conditions, and degrees to be flaine, to the great feare, griefe, and terror of the whole citie.

After this his fo great inhumanitie done in Egypt, he returned towards Palellina, and trauelling towards the East with a very mightie armie, of his fathers excellent old fouldiers: he inuaded the land of the Parthians, which suspected no such matters, and did great spoile in their conuntries (as SPARCIANVS, SEXTVS AVRELIUS VICTOR, and HERODIANUS doewrite) for upon fafe conduit and affurance of peace which he made to the Parthians, he obtained somevictories, deceining their King ARTABANVS, giving him to vnderstand that he came of purpose to marrie with his daughter, and the other comming to receive him in peaceable manner, was fodainly fet vpon. But the King (by great hap) escaped by flight. And although that this his victorie were of small importance, yet he made great boast, writing to Rome long and proud letters thereof; and in all these actions he forbare not to be cruell: but to gouerne vprightly and to doe iustice, as he ought to haue done, he tooke no care. He was very gluttonous, and vnmeasurably given to wine, luxurie and dishonestie of life, so as he married with his own mother in law, Iv LIA: yet HERODIANV's maketh no mention thereof, but seemeth to be of a contrarie opinion; for he euer speaketh of Ivilia, as though the had been mother both to Bassianvs and Geta: But Sextvs Avre-LIVS Writeth it, and also Evsebivs, Evtropivs and Sparcianvs say, that

erueltie executed by Bafsianus upon the citizens of Alexandria.

Extreame

BASSIANVS CARACALLA.

it passed in this manner. Ivlia was a most faire woman, and vpon a day, the mother and the sonne in law standing talking together, she carelesly or dishonestlv. as it afterwards appeared, letting fall a vaile which she ware, discourred part of her brest: which when Bassianvs saw, he said, if it were lawfull, I would have that which I fee: she forgetting all honestie, and that she was mother to GETA whom A monstrous BESSIANVS had flaine, answered, to thee any thing that thou defireft is lawfull: full. doft thou not know, that the Emperour maketh lawes and is subject to none. When he heard her fay fo, setting aside all dutie and loyaltie which he ought to his dead father, and his living mother in law, he resolved to marrie her, and celebrated his nuptials with the mother of his brother whomhe had bereaued of life. But to returne to the Historie of his life, it passed in this manner, that comming from his inuafion against the Parthians, he staied some daies in the countricof Mesopotamia: for that countrie was excellent good and commodious for hunting & other sports, wherein within few daies, having raigned full fixe yeeres, he was flaine by treason. The manner whereof HERODIANVS writeth, and saith, that he was much addicted to Mathematicians and Astrologians, and gaue great credit vnto them; and in all matters vsed their opinions and judgements, and had in Rome and with him all the Astrologers that he could get; wherein he refembled his father SEVERVS, who did the like. And being fearefull of confoiracies, knowing what he had deserved; he sent to MATERNUS who was the greatest and most private friend that he had, whom he left governour of Rome, commaunding him fecretly to affemble all the best Astrologers that he could get, and demaund of them what death he should die; and procure them to give their opinions, whether that any conspired or practized his death or no. MATERNYS did that which the Emperour commaunded in the foote of his letter, and with greathaste answered him (either faining it, or being so aduertised by the Astrologers) that MACRINUS which was his Prefect, and with him in Mesopotamia, wentabout to kill him, and that therefore he should in any case presently dispatch him out of the way; for so did the Astrologers aduise him. Which letter he sent fealed, and made it vp amongst other letters, to be the more secretly conveyed. The whole packet was giving to the Emperour as he was going into his chariot, to runne for a wager with other chariots; which was a kinde of fport, wherein he tooke much pleasure, and was greatly vsed in those daies. And he for that he would not give ouer that which hee had pretended, gave his letters to the faid MACRINUS to reade, and afterwards to make relation to him of the contents thereof. MACRINUS reading all these letters, met with that wherein BASSIANUS was counselled to put him to death, whereat he was much assonished, and concealing that letter, made relation to the Emperour of the contents of all the reft. And confidering with himselfe that he which wrote that letter would doubtleffe write another, and that at length he should surely die; he resolved first to dispatch the Emperour out of the way: and ruminating vpon the matter, he bethought himselfe of a lustie strong fellow, a Centurion of the Emperours guard, called MARTIALL, who being discontented, murmured against the Emperour and secretly hated him, for that he had caused a brother of his to be slaine, and he himfelfe was ill entreated and difgraced. MACRINVS conceiuing this man to be fit for his purpose, after some other discourse told him, that seeing that he had oportunitie to kill the Emperour being euer neere vnto him, hauing charge of his perfon, hee ought to reuenge the death of his brother, and then flie to him : which with others of his faction would protect and defend him against al such as should feeke

of Bassianus.

feeke to offend him. Some daies after that MACRINVS had laid this plot, it happened that the Emperour comming from a temple wherein hee had been neere to a citie called Carras; and riding smally accompanied towards the citie. he withdrew himselfe out of the way behinde a bush, to doe such things as nature required; with one Page with him to hold his horse, the rest for manners fake being withdrawne: which when MARTIALL perceived, being one of them, faining that the Emperour had called him vpon some necessarion. he ranne hastily vnto him; and before that he was perceived, stabbed him in hehinde; whereof he presently fell downe dead. Sparciants faith, that comming to helpe the Emperour to horse, he stabd him in with his poiniard, and that MARTIALL returning to take horse, from which he was alighted, he by little and little withdrew himselse from the company: but the Page bringing news of the Emperours death, he began to flie so fast as his horse could runne; but could

The death of Ballianus Cara-

not make such speede, but that he was ouertaken by the Germaine horsemen of the Emperours guarde: which presently killed him. The death of Bassianvs being vnderstoode by those which accompanied him, there grew a great tumult among them, without knowing with whom to be angric; for as then it was ynknowne by whose order hee was flaine, and comming to the dead body of the Emperour the first that came to his aide was MACRINVS, who weeping and lamenting, feemed to be very forrowfull, and no man suspecting him or anyo. ther, all men imagining that MARTIALL had murthered BASSIANVS VPON paffion; and for some private revenge. And taking the Emperours dead body they burnt it, according to the custome then: and putting his ashes into a potte, they fent them to his wife, and mother in law I v L 1 A, which was in Antioche, whole ing in despaire poisoned her selfe: and so they both had such ends as they deserned. Bassianvs at the time of his death was fully three and fortie yeeresold, hauing raigned fixe yeeres Emperour. Heleft one sonne which was very yong. whose name was Antonin's Heliogaealus, which he had by his wife whosenamewas Semina, as Spancianvs writeth, Avnelivs Victor calleth her Semea, avery dishonest woman and his cosen Germane; which

liued like a strumpet. Antoninvs Bassianvs was by his surname called CARACALLA, for a certaine kind of apparrell which he gaue to the people of Rome : he died in the yeere of our Lord 219.

THE



# MACRINVS, ONELY OF THIS

NAME, AND THE THREE AND TWENTITH ROMANE EMPEROVR.



THE ARGUMENT.



Ne Andentius having refused the Empire; for his excuse, alleadged his olde age to bee unfit for the troubles of so important a gouernment: but Macrinus without any such consideration accepted thereof, it being offered him by the fouldiers, notwithstanding that hee was the author of the death of Caracalla. He tooke the Empire, made head against Artabanus King of Persia, who rose in armes against the Romanes in reueng of the injuries done by Caracalla; and being come to a fight which continued two daies, in the end they came to an agree-

ment: Artabanus understanding of the opprobrious death of his enemie. But that fortune which had prepared a troublesome raigne for Macrinus, saw him no somer out of one daunger, but it cast him into another farre greater, which was this; that Heliogabalus a youth of fifteeneyeeres old, being by the meanes of an old woman made Emperour, it behooned him to fight with him; and being overthrowne, fled unknowne through Afiathe lesse, with intent to come to Rome; but being overtaken by the souldiers which pursued him, in a citie wherein he fell sicke, he was staine, together with his sonne Diadumenus; whom he had made his companion in the Empire: Hauing raigned onely fourteene monethes.

Assianvs being dead, a councell was held in the armie concerning the election of a new Emperour: for there was little account made of his sonne Antoninys Hellogabalus; aswell for that he was but a child, as also for that his mother led such a life, that it was doubted whether

was Pretorian Prefect, was AVDENTIVS, a man of good fort and of yeeres, very

Audentius refafed the Empire.

Emperour.

expert in the warres, and an excellent Captaine: of these two they were in great doubt, whether they should choose, and in this doubt they remained two daies. and in the end they determined to choose A VDENTIVE, who was a discreet old man, little regarded the Empire, and confidering the perils and diforders, would not accept thereof, excusing himselfe by reason of his greatage, alleaging, that he was not able to gouerne the Empire as it ought to be, a thing feldome feene that any man would refuse the Empire of the world. The men of warre perceiuing that AVDENTIVS would not accept of the Empire, presentlie made choise of Opilius Macri- MACRINVS, who was the author of the murther and death of BASSIANVS, and fo was he chosen, and gladly accepted of their election. This MACRINUS was of a very base stock & parentage, and which with small deferts, and by way of sayour attained to the office of Pretorian Prefect. So soone as he was chosen Emperour. he made a notable flattering Oration to the army, and payed the fouldiers, and distributed much money among them, thereby throughly to win their love and good will, and addressed himselfe with all haste against ARTABANVS King of the Parthians, who came with great power against the Romanes, to be reuenged of the injurie which BASSIANVS had done them, knowing nothing of his death. He also present lie nominated and chose a sonne of his for his companion in the Empire, whose name was DIADVMENVS, whom he made to be called ANTO-NINVs, aswell to take away the suspicion of the death of Antoninvs Bassi-ANV s, as for that the name of ANT ONINV s was very acceptable to the Romanes, in remembrance of the good Emperours ANTONINVS PIVS, and MARCYS AVRELIVS ANTONINVS: for all these Emperours did leave their owne names, or together with them did take the name of Antonini, vntill that for the abominable and execrable life of Antoninus Heliog Abalus, they left it, as we will presentlie declare. He also wrote long letters to the Senate and people of Rome, reciting the manner of his election, and defiring them to approve the fame, with many solemne oathes that he was not guiltie of the death of BASSIANVS. The Senate being certified of the death of B As s I ANY s, approued the election of MACRINUS, and the election and companie of his sonne in the Empire. This new Emperour Macrinus, and his fonne Diadumenus going a-

gainst ARTABANVS and the Parthians, which came very strong both in footemen, in horsemen, and also brought many camels with them, and the two armies came to a most cruell battaile which lasted two daies together, wherein both the betweene Man. Romanes and the Parthians fought so valiantlie, that in both daies the darke evinus and Ar- night parted the fray, and either partie cried victorie, victorie, although that in truth there was none: for the flaughter and number of the dead and wounded was equall.

MACRINUS knowing that ARTABANUS came greatly enraged by reason of the iniurie done him by BASSIANVS, sent him Heraulds and Ambassadors, certifying him of the death of BASSIANVS: and moreouer that if he defired the friendship of the Romanes, that he would graunt it. ARTABANV s being aduertifed of the death of his enemie BASSIANVS, was very loyfull of the newes: for vntill then he had no intelligence thereof, and was also glad of the peace offred him, which he accepted vpon condition that all fuch prisoners as were taken by BASs IAN v s through treacherie in time of truce, should be restored, which was accordinglie performed, and they concluded a peace; and the King of the Parthians

returned

Artabanus vpon sonditions.

returned home to his countrey; and MACRINVS to Antioch in Soria. Where he gane himselfe ouer to lust and sensualitie, forgetting the government of the Empire, delaying his going to Rome, whither by letters from thence he was dayly follicited to come, wherein he committed a very great errour: for if he had left his army, and had gone to Rome, and there fetled himselfe in the gouernment of the Empire, without all doubt both his raigne and life had lasted longer; but he taking no care of that which he ought to have done, and which most concerned him, gaue himselfe in Antioch to pastimes, pleasures, and banketting: whereat the the death of Romane souldiers began much to murmure, and to make little account of him, Macrinus, moued thereto through their defire to returne into their countrey. They also much abhorred him for that he did most cruellie punish them: for in those times lovaltie was so out of vse, and men of warre had such libertie, were so audacious, and had taken such a custome to make Emperours, that they presentlie began to repine and murmure, yea and boldlie to speake ill of MACRINVS, and to wish his death, within alittle more then one yeare after that they had given him the Empire, and within few dayes after plotted the same in this manner. In a citie of Phanicia called Emela, was yong Antoninus Heliogaealus, who had there a Grandmother, fifter to IVLIA wife of SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, which afterwards married with her sonne in law Bassianus, sonne of the same Seve-RVs. This his Grandmother whose name was M as A, had there another nephew called ALEXIANVS, of whom more shall be said hereaster, and she also had in her companie Simiamira, mother of the faid Antoninvs, and another

This MESA was a very rich woman both in iewels and money: for the had been mother in lawe to two Emperours, the father and the some, and it is to be beleeued that in their life time there were infinit bribes and gifts bestowed vpon her, and so she remained there after the death of BASSIANVS with her daughters and nephewes. These two cosins her nephewes, MESA made Priests in a most fumptuous Temple which she builded and consecrated to the Sunne, from whence it grew that this Antoninvs was called Heliogabalvs, which is as much to fay, as a Priest of the Sunne: for the Phoenicians did call the Sun H E-LIOGABALVS, to which Temple for their vaine denotions sake came many Romane fouldiers of the legions which lay there in garrison, and many from M a-CRINVs his camp also, which this MESA Grandmother to these youths enterteined very courteouflie, bestowing many gifts upon them; and she shewing them her nephew HELIOGABALVS, vied to tell them that this her nephew was sonne The policie of to their Emperour Bassianvs, whom Macrinvs had flaine by treason. With Mela to make these and firsh like a Gastial Good to the Action of the Like and the like an these and such like effectuall speeches, she brought the matter so to such passe, Emperour. that what with the courtefie which she vsed towards them, and also for that the boy was a most fine child, they generallie began to affect him, some by seeing him, and others by report of him, so as the whole armie loued him, and defired that he might be their Lord and Emperour. And to the contrarie, MACRINVS being

which was fifter to ALEXIANVS.

generallie hated of all men, fome Coronels and Captaines moued by the gifts and large promises made by this MESA vnto them, the greatest part agreed that she should send ANTONINVs to their Camp, and then they would proclaime him Emperour. The good old woman which hadbin vsed to Emperours courts,

fetting all other matters apart, tooke her nephew by the hand and went with him Heliogabalue to the Camp, and he presentlie was received for Emperour, and they sware obedience vnto him (as writeth HERODIANY S.) But IVLIVS CAPITOLINY S FORF.

faith,

faith, that certaine of MACRINVS his legions being in a mutinic came to feeke HELIOGABALVS. But how foeuer, as both the one and the other might be, HE. LIOGABALYS accepted of the Empire, being but fifteene yeeres old: and the matter being published abroad, the newes thereof caused great alteration in mens minds, and all men began to affect him, for that he was both some and nephew to Emperours, and for the names fake of ANTONINVs, which they held for bleffed and facred. MACRINVS presently understood these newes in Antioch, where hee then was, and made leffe account therof then he ought to have done, lefting at HELIOGAEALV s, for that he was but a childe, and at his mother and grandmother deeming it sufficient to fend a Captaine of his whose name was IV LIA-NVs, with certaine legions to befiege, and so to ruinate him: which (as it was thought) hee might eafily have accomplished, if hee had himselfe gone presently thither in person. When Iv LIANVS with his troupes came, HELIOGABALYS forces were not of sufficient power to give him battaile; but being in their camp, which was well fortified and victualled, they suffered themselues to bee besieged: but fouldiers of the one fide conferring with those of the other; and those of the Campe shewing young Helioga Balvs to Ivlianvs his fouldiers, putting them in minde of his father, perfwaded them to follow him. Whereof it influed, that they not onely did so, but apprehending their Captaine IVLIANVS, smote off his head, and went ouer to HELIOGABALVS; and the one and the other

tell in the confines of Syria and Phanicia; wherein conscience and feare made HELIOGABALWS fouldiers to fight valiantly; and of MACRINVS fide only the

Lulianus a cap taine (ent by Macrinus made fuch an armie, that MACRINVS determined with his whole powerto flaine by bis owne fouldiers. come and make head against HELIOGABALVS: and doing so, they joyned bat-

A battaile vukere Heliogabalus had the victorie. and Macrinus fled.

Macrinus falling fiche in Calcadonia, being ouertaken

Pretorian fouldiers fought well, but all the rest of his armie fought retchiesly, and great part thereof abandoning him went ouer to HELIOGABALV s: where fore he accounting himselfe lost and forlorne, fled from the battaile; and so HE LIOGABALVS had the victorie. MACRINVS and his fonne, with certaine of their friends which would not forfake him, trauailed with the greatest speed that they could make, secretly, through the cities of Asia the lesse, and came into Bithymia, with determination to get to Rome; where MACRINVS knew that his comming was much defired. But falling grieuously fick in the city of Chalcedonia, those which HELIOGABALVS fent to purfue him, found him there; and bringing letters and commaundement to the citie, through the fame of HELIOGABALVS by fuch as the his victorie they were obeyed; and MACRINVs lying ficke, voide of all favour and friendship, together with his sonne, was there put to death, within one yeere by them flaine. and two moneths after that hee was chosen Emperour. And being dead, all men fixed their eyes and thought vpon HELIOGAEALVS.

Surely it is a wonderfull and pitifull matter to confider of the infelicitie and miserie of those times, to see how many Emperours were murthered, and how wicked and vitious the most part of them were, and how small time they raigned; and that which maketh me most to wonder, is to thinke how lightly they were slaine, notwithstanding that they were Lords of the whole world. And how easie a matter it was for a Captaine hauing the fanour and friendship of fine or fixe Legions, to make himselfe to be obeyed. So as it seemeth that he which first had intelligence of the Emperors death, and was any thing friended, and therewith durft to aduenture, was commonly chosen for his fuccessor, as wee said of Ivlianvs. And that which is worfe, that he which murdered the last Emperour commonly became his heire; as wee fee in MACRINV sand others. And touching him, of

twentith Emperor of Rome. THE ARGUMENT.

Eliogabalus being a Priest of the Sunne, attaining to the Empire of Rome, so some as he had Taken the Imperiall dignitie became so wicked, that in filthines he farre surpassed all his pre-

fifteene yeeres old were fufficient to ouerthrow and ruinate him, being an ancient, wife and mightie Emperour, and to bereaue him both of his life and Empire, and quietly and in peace to enjoy the fame (if the contentment and rule of the wicked may be called peace and quietnes:) whereby it appeareth more cleere then the light, how variable and inconstant all things are in this world, and that there is no other firme and stable dominion or kingdome, but in the service of God: whereof the faithfull Christians in those daies had especial care, and sought no worldly dominion, Magistracies, nor Empire, but to line holie and vprightly: and so contemning the world, attained the cuerlasting kingdome of heauen. And these vnhappie Infidels forbare not to commit and execute any crueltie or treafon what focuer, fo as they might thereby get the supreme government and commaund, although it were but for three daies. And God for their sinnes permitted (for the example of others) that by the same meanes whereby they obtained it, by the selfe same they commonly lost it; being either put to death by the sword, orelie by treason, as they had done by others. And that which is worst of all together with their bodies, they lost their miserable soules; in such sort, as is said, it happened to the Emperour MACRINVS, who died in the yeere of our Lord two hundred and twentie.

# THE LIFE OF HELIO-GABALVS, ONLY OF THAT

NAME, FIFT OF THOSE WHICH were called ANTONINI, and foure and



decessors. He was most dishonest in his life, more then besitted a lascinious and intemperate man, and was so addicted to women, that he graunted them to hold a Senate by themselues. When he was neere to the sea, he would eate no meates but such as were bred farre within the land: and when he was farre from it, he would eate nothing but sea-fish; neither would be eate of any thing that was not of an excessive price. He was inclined to no kind of vertue, neither regarded any but parasites, russians. bawds, and fuch like persons, and all his actions were so abominable, and his riotousnes so great, that to write the same, were to amasse an heape of villanie. He made one which was his cosin germane, Cafar, a very honest and vertuous young man, whose name was Alexianus. He was slaine by hie fouldiers, who for that they could not cast him into a most filthe ditch, trailed him through the citie, and threw him into the riner Tiber, he having held the Empire for a certaine time, the truth whereof is incertaine; writers doe so much differ therein. And had such a death as his most filthie life had deferued.

Acrinv s dying as he deferued, Antoninvs Hello-GABALVS, Without any contradiction, was made Emperour:who in truth proued to be fuch, that in histories there ought no memoriall to be held of him, nor mention to be made of his life; to the end that if it were possible, no man should know that such a monster as he was, had euer attained to the maiestie of the Romane Empire, if wee had not alreadie written the lines of CALIGVLA, NERO, VI-

TELLIVS, COMMODYS, and fuch others. But as one ground commonly produceth vnholesome hearbes full of poison, and which kill; and likewise good and holesome, which heale, and also feedeth both sheepe and serpents : so in our hiftorie in recompence of these wicked Princes, we will oppose OCTAVIAN, VES-PASIAN, TITVS, TRAIANE, ADRIAN, ANTONINVS PIVS, MARCVS ÁVRE-LIVS, and in part SEPTIMIVS SEVERVS, which were fingular Emperours, and gouerned the Empire with such wisedome and equitie as was requisite. Andso the vices of the one are to be manifested, as well as the vertues of the other, to the end, that if any Princes of our time shall reade their liues, hee may see how abominable and detestable their doings were : and fo eschewing the euill, and making choise of the good, may follow the same : and may consider how little a while those cruell vicious Emperours raigned, and what shamefull and vnluckie ends they made: and how that the good lived and governed longer time, and ended their daies in peace and quiet, dying of their naturall death, except some, which were murthered by traitors, to vsurpe the Empire.

But comming to HELIOGAEALV s, after that he had obtained the victory, and that MACRINV s was flaine, & he chosen for Emperor, he wrote the most louing and kind letters to Rome that could be imagined: but the Senate and people of Rome did hardly digest the newes, for they would rather have had MACRINVS: but daring to doe nothing to the contrarie, they yeelded obedience to HELLIO-GARALVS3 of whom they prefently conceined a good hope, for that which they heard of his gallant feature, and of the good constitution of his bodie, and for the names fake of ANTONIVNS, which in Rome was exceedingly much beloued and mother and go-respected. In the beginning of his raigne (by reason of his small age) all things were ordered by the counfell and direction of his grandmother MESA, and her fauourits; who taking order for all matters in the East, determined to come specdily to Rome with the young Emperour, which she put in execution: but was drinen to stay longer then she purposed, by reason of the winter which was very tempestuous: wherefore she wintred in Bithynia, where hee began to discouer his wicked inclination, giuing himselfe to most odible luxurie, and apparelling him-

selfe in such attire as was farre vnfit for an Emperour, and feeding on most delicious fare, gaue himselfe ouer to al tensualitie: which faults his prudent old grandmother endeuoured by speech and good admonishment to reforme and amend: but the nothing profited therein. Being come to Rome, he was most solemnely receined, where he spent the whole time of his raigne in such manner, that we have nothing else to write of this Emperour, but of his abominable vices; which were fuch that I neither can nor will describe them for the filthines thereof. The first thing that he tooke in hand after his comming to Rome, was to build a Temple to built a temple to built a temple his god the Sunne, or Hellog Abalvs, whose Priest he had bin in Phanicia; he in Rome, and would and procured that the Christians (whose number at that time was infinite) dedicated the sound also hold that for a Temple, and therein should vse their ceremonies, make soune. their prayers and doe their denotion. But it pleased not God to permit that the Sunne being a creature, should, in Temples and worship, be made equall to the Creator. He shewed himselfe so effeminate and so addicted to the seminine sex, that the first time that he went to the Senate, he carried his mother SYMIAMIRA with him, and tooke order that her opinion should be demaunded in all causes; and that from thencefoorth she should be present when any matters of importance were determined: a thing neuer feene that any woman vntill then, had any A senate of voice in the Senate of Rome. After this he made a Chapter-house or Senate apart, women made in Rome by where women should meete and consult of, what apparell and attire the Romane Heliogabalus. Matrones should weare: And proceeding to a farre more shamefull practife, hee commaunded certaine Stewes to be made in his Palaces of common women, for his friends and his fauourits. And delighting himselfe so much in the companie of fuch, he commaunded upon a day all the women that could bee found of that name and life, to be affembled together; and he clad in womans attire came into the place where they were, and made a very fet and studied oration vnto them. calling them Commilitones, a word vsed by Captains to their fouldiers when they would doe them honour; by calling them their fellowes and companions in armes. And the matters which therein were treated of, were inuentions and meanes how to vse their filthines and abomination: and thither he brought with him, ruffians and bawdes, which were his brokers in those detestable actions and meetings. In truth this HELIOGABALVS Was fo detestable in all manner of vices, that it cannot be sufficiently expressed. He was so great a spender and so prodigall in his attire, and in the furniture of his house, in his fare and diet, and his other follies, that that which is written of him feemeth incredible. HERODIANVS and ÆLIVS LAMPRIDIVS write his life, wherein they recount most straunge matters, befides what other authors report of him. All his studie and care was to The prodigalideuise how hee might spend excessively, and to finde out such dainties and delicates, as neuer had been thought of. Hee neuer fate but amongst sweete smelling flowers, mixed with Amber, Muske, and other most exquisite sweete odours; neither would he eate any thing that should not be of an excessive price, and sought meanes to make all those things which he did eate to be most costly; and vied to fay, that that meate had no tafte, which was not deare bought. He attired himfelf in cloath of gold and purple, fet with pearles and most precious stones: and euen in his shooes he wore stones of inestimable value. The chamber wherein he lay and all his palace, was furnished with cloath of gold, of filter, and of filke; and his beds were of cloath of gold, of filuer, and of filke, couered with Roses and sweete flowers; among which were strawed many iewels and pearles: And all the way whereupon heeshould set his feete, betweene his chamber and the place where

213

liogabalus.

214. HELIOGABALVS. he tooke horse or coach, when he would ride abroad, he made to be couered with the powder of gold and filuer: for hee disdained to tread upon the earth, as other mendid. All his tables, chefts, chaires, and veffels of seruice for his chamber, euen to the baieft offices, as close stooles, chamber-pots, and fuch like, were all of fine gold. He made no account of wax light, but had in his hall and chambers great lampes, which in steed of oile burned most excellent Balsame, brought from Iudea and Arabia: and euen his very vrinals were made of Onyx and other most precious stones. His expences were so infinite and so excessive, that no kings reuenewes in the world were inflicient to defray the charge thereof, but his onely: for he did eate and denoure all the reuenewes and rents of Spaine, France, Africa, part of Germanie, Italie, England, Sicilia, Gracia, Asia, Syria, Egypt, Arabia, and of all the Ilands and prouinces of the world; and yet all this was not fufficient but that he endured want, by reason of his prodigious expences: for hee neuer ware any one fute of apparell twice, being fuch as wee haue faid. His fingers were euer full of rings, and those which he had once put off, he neuer ware any more : and so in plate of gold or filuer, he would neuer drinke twice of one cup, which hee gaueto him that serued and attended on him that day. And the very Bathes wherein hee did vse to bathe himselfe, must be new builded and furnished with perfumes, and most precious odours; and after once bathing they were to be throwne downe; so as they builded new Bathes continually. His mattreffes and beds were neither of wool, flox, nor feathers; but of the fine flaxe of Hares, and of the downe growing under the wings of Partridges. He made certaine feafts in Rome, which were the greatest and most costly that ever were made: and hee made to the citizens and to the fouldiers a doale and distribution of money and corne, to an indicible value. After the feasts and facrifices were ended, he gave to the people (as HERO-DIANY s reporteth)a great abundance of plate, of gold, filuer, and other iewels; which truly was the cause why they endured this detestable man the small time that he lived in the Empire : for the defire of those gifts and benefits which they enioyed by him, as also for that his grandmother, being a most wise and discrete woman, fought by all meanes to reforme his voluptuous fenfualitie and rioting, and to procure a good order in the gouernment. But there were great opprefsions in the prouinces; and the barbarous nations inuaded the frontiers of the Empire. For he gaue all offices and places of charge vnto wicked men, which did accompanie him in his abominations, and by their counfell hee was gouerned for depriuing all good and vertuous men from all charge, he fent them into exile. Among which his fauourites, one whose name was Z o Ticvs was so private, and Zoticus a fanourite of Hein fuch fauour with him, that hee was held as a Lord ouer all the rest. This mans liogabalus. counsell was as a law unto him, and by his direction all offices and Magistracies were fold; and he made Confuls fuch as were the fonnes of flaues and men of most base condition. The like order he observed in the chusing of Captaines and

Lieutenants, giving those charges vnto base and simple men: for which and his other vices, notwithstanding that they made benefit of his prodigalitie, yet both the people and fouldiers began to with his death, so as he was oftentimes in great daunger thereof. Which when his mother and grandmother perceived, they per-

swaded him to adopt his cosin germane ALEXIANVS, and to make him his uerus chosen by companion in the Empire, who was the son of M A M E A his mothers sister, which Heliogabalus he performed accordingly, and ALEXIANVS Was called ALEXANDER SEVE RVS; ALEXANDER after the name of the great ALEXANDER K.of Macedonia; and Severys after Septimivs Severys, grandfather to Helio GABALYS.

HELIOGABALVS. This young man was fo well inclined, and so well bred vp, that while as his cosenled a wicked and dishonest life; he spent his time in learning, conversing with learned men, and fuch as were good and honeft, and exercifing himfelfe in armes and in fuch other practifes, as were fit for a Knight and a vertuous gentleman, and sought excellent maisters to instruct him in all those faculties. Wherefore allmen conceiuing good hope of him, began to loue and affect him; and the hatted which they bare against HELIOGABALVS daily encreased. Which he perceiuing fought meanes to kill ALEXIANVS, or at the least to bereaue him of the name of CESAR, and his fucceffor: But he could not bring it to paffeby reason of the diligence vsed by his grandmother in protecting him: and also for that themen of warre deerely loued him; but vpon a time they would haue slaine HELIOGABALVS forthat cause, as he was walking in a garden, where he escaped by hiding himselfe in a corner, so as he was not seene; and through the entreatie of Antiochiannes who was his Pretorian Prefect, the fouldiers returned to their campe, where remaining in a tumult and mutining, they highly threatned him; and vpon composition, they required that HELIOGABALVS should put from about him, certainevicious and wicked persons which were very prinate with him, and which fold and gaue offices for bribes; and in such manner dispatched the busines which men had with the Emperour. They also required that certaine of their companies might have the particular guard of ALEXANDER SEVERVS, to the end that HELIOGABALV's should not kill him; and that his fauorites and familiars should not conucrse with him, for corrupting him with their euill conditions: all which demaunds were prefently put in execution. But after that the furie of the Cohorts was pacified, HELIOGABALVS returned to his former abominable vices, gluttonies, and incredible expenses. First when he went forth of Rome (as fometimes hee did) he had with him fixe hundred chariots and horselitters, the principall lading whereof was most dishonest yong Heliogabalus boies and wenches, with bawdes and their interpretors, and all was little e. bis progresse. nough, confidering his infatiable beaftlines: for as he was most luxurious, so did heaccount it for a greatnes, to have the companie of one woman but once; except her to whom he was maried, and that one he neither loued nor regarded. Foras Herodianvs reporteth, he first married a Romane ladie of a noble house, to whom he gaue the name of Avovsta, and other titles; and within a Helingsbales

while after he for soke her and depriued her both of her name and honour : and his wines. married himselfe to a Vestall virgin; which in the vanitie of the Gentiles was held for a matter so religious, that she which had carnall knowledge of a man, was buried aliue. And so he also lest her and tooke another; behauing himselse as a most beastly barbarous man. And amongst other matters, he did one thing which

ded that all bufinesses to be done by day, should be dispatched by night; and that wellogabalur all such things as were to be done by night, should be done by day; and so he turned the and arole from his bed at the funne fetting, and was then faluted as other Emperous the night into werein the morning: and he laid him to fleepe about day breaking, fo as it fee-day. med that the world went backwards. All his studie was to finde meanes to spend exceffinely, in his diet, and in all other things. That supper which was of least price did commonly cost thirtie pound waight of gold, which after our computation, might amount to the value of about a thousand pounds starling; and netioenbalus there were some which did cost threescore thousand crownes. And sometimes bis diet. he promised to giue his guess a Phenix to eate, whereof (they say) there is but

the diuell himselfe would neuer haue imagined, which was, that he commaun-

one

the preservation of the countrie, he would be pleased to relieve him against the Queenes inuations, which daily troubled him.

FERDINAND induced by these reasons, sent (as before is faid) CASTALDO to the Frier, who as his Lieutenant Generall comming to Agria, leuied 5700, footmen and 1700 horse, with which passing the riner Tissa, he went to Debrezen. where finding Andrew BATTOR, and THOMAS NACLAID I, principall Lords of that kingdome, he went into Transiluania: where, whilest he the space of three moneths befreged Colosuarre in the behalfe of the Frier, he was advertised that the Frier through a new composition with the Queene, hauing taken Alba Iulia. was retired from the warres; and that he had neverthelesse sent him word, that if he would meete him at Egnet, he would speake with him. Whither CASTALDO being come, after many discourses and treaties past betweene them, obtaining of the Frier the citie of Alba Iulia to winter his people in; he had word from the Queene, that she would come to an agreement with FERDINAND, according to the couenants made with her husband : fo that after many conventions comming to Colofuarre, whither were alreadie come the most part of the Lords of that kingdome, Is ABEL in the name of her sonne renounced, and gaue up the kingdome and estate of Hungary to CASTALDO; who in the name of FERDI-NAND accepted the same. After which renunciation, she granted to the most infaciable Frier all his demaunds, which were immeasurable, together with the Archbishoprick of Strigonium, being at that time voide. Castaldo accommodating that province according to the order received from Ferdinand, and as he thought most expedient, celebrated the nuptials betweene one of FERDI-NAND s daughters, and I O HN the Queenes sonne. But the ambicious Frier not contented with the agreement, by the meanes of a Frenchman, who was a spie for the Turke in that kingdome, he acquainted SOLIMAN with the whole agreement and composition made betweene Ferdinand and the Queene. Where-With SOLIMAN being highly displeased, shortly after sent the Beglerbey of Grecia; who paffing with great celeritie to Belgrado, came to Beche, and tooke it, with Bekerque and Senat: & having without any relistance vpon composition taken Lippa. he went without any molestation by the Christians, to Themeluar, where encamping himselfe, he understood that Castaldos armie was come. Who with much ado hauing induced Frier George, then made Treasorerof that kingdom, & Vaiuode of Transiluania, to leuie forces against the Turke, he brought it so to passe that he constrained the Beglerbey to raise his siege from before Themesuarre; notwithstanding that the Frier euer endeuored to hinder Castaldos proceedings. The Frier vnderstanding of the Turkes departure, went to Lippa; where he stayed not long before that by Pope Ivily's at the request of FERDINAND being a made Cardinall, he fought to hinder CASTALDOS deseignes, and to betray him and FERDINANDS whole armie into the hands of the Turkes: hoping by this meanes not onely to reconcile himselfe to Soliman, butto become absolute Lorde of Transiluania also. Whose wicked practise being made frustrate, CASTALDO continued the siege of Lippa, which after many bickerings comming into CASTALDOS power, was given in pray to the Souldiers, which loden with spoyle, presently belieged the Forttesse; about which having fpent some daies, they had taken the same, together with O LIMAN Gouernor thereof, if the Friers villanie had not frustrated CASTALDOS purpose. Who defiring by these meanes to obtaine the Turkes good will, dealt so, that he set OLIMAN at libertie : wherewith Castaldo being infinitly displeased,

fought to abate the Friers authoritie: but failing of his purpole, he diffembled the matter. And Winter being come, FERDINANDS forces departing out of Transiluania (he being vnwilling that they should remaine there) stayed vpon the frontiers of the enemie. After whose departure Castalpo conducting the Artillery, discouered to SFORZA PALLAVICINO that FERDINAND had commaunded Frier GEORGE to be put to death; but being vnable without great circumspection to bring it to effect, he willed PALLAVICINO to be in a readines, vntill he gaue him further direction. In the meane time repairing to the Citadel at Lippa, he stayed neere to the citie of Varadin, and sending his armie before, he joyned with the Frier riding together in one Coach to Buile, in which place being againe folicited by FERDINAND to make away the Frier, CASTAL Meaner yield by Do speedely wrote to SFORZA PALLAVICINO, that so soone as possible might trap Frier be, he should with his troupes come to conferre with him, about what course George. was to be taken in this matter. Whereupon PALLAVICINO comming to Buile, and having laid the plot for the Friers dispatch, he went to seeke him just at the time when he should have said Masse: with whom CASTALDO holding a long discourse, shewed him ever a good countenance, notwithstanding that he was in all occasions crost by him: and his insolencie was such that he forbare not openly to negociate with the Turkes. Whereupon Castalbo directing those which should kill him in what manner they should dispatch him; he appoynted his Secretarie MARC ANTONIO FERRARI of Alexandria, (vnder colour to get the Friers hand to certaine letters which SFORZA PALLAVICING should beare to Ferdinand) to come to him, vpon the eighteenth day of December, in the same yeere. Who comming in companie of PALLAVICINO into the Castle with certaine Harcubuzziers, and presenting the letters to the Frier, to the end that he should subscribe to them; after that the Frier had heedely read them, stooping downe to write vpon a little table which was in the chamber, Ferrari drawing his ponyard twife stabled him, which being of no fufficient force to kill him, it behooved PALLAVICINO (who vpon the noyse ranne into the chamber) to set his helping hand to the worke: for the Frier was a gallant strong fellow, turning to him that smote him, threw him to the ground, and therewith made so great a noyle, that PALLAVICINO com-The death of ming into the chamber, and feeing FERRARI downe, fetting hand to his Frier Georges fword, gauethe Frier fo found a knocke on the pate, that he cleft the fame in two: an acturuely worthic of great reprehension, if the behauiour of the man had not deserved it. For Frier Grong was endued with such excellencie of wit, and therwith was of fo generous and great a mind, and fo diligent in all matters of importance, that FERDINAND him elfc (who caused him to be slaine) would often fay openly, that he enuied the Vayuode for nothing, but for Frier George. The Frier dying in this manner suddenly, CASTALDO imprisoned his great friend FRANCIS THENDI, who to escape from FERDINANDS forces, had after the Turkish manner clad himselse in Scarlet, whose imprisonment was a great helpe to CASTALD O, for THEND I being reconciled, was the cause that the Sicoli, a most fierce people of Transluania, veel ded obedience to the King of the Romanes, which people with others, through CASTALDOS endeuour, within few dayes submitted themselues. But in theyeere 1542, SOLIMAN vnderstanding of the death of Frier G HORGE, fent two armies into Transiluania, to the end in two feuerall parts to inuade the fame: wherein C ASTALDO thinking

by fortifying the frontiers, to entertaine the Turkes vntill the comming of an

Ecce 4

Pope Inlius estcommunicated those which Gen Frier George.

armic out of Germany, fent Frier GRORGE his treasure to FERDINAND; and taking Seghedin, had fundrie supplies from the Lords of that kingdome; and fortifying Lippa and Themeluarre he gathered those men together which (toauoyde the rage of the Turkes) came to his campe. In the meane time, earnestly expecting aide from FERDINAND, whom Pope IVLIV's commaunding to purge himselfe concerning the death of Frier GEORGE for that he was a Cardinall: and fending three Cardinals to make enquirie of the Homicide, he excommunicated those which had flaine him. And FERDINAND vnable to send fuch fuccours as he had promifed, by reason of the warres in Germany betweene his brother the Emperor and MAVAICE Duke of Saxony, perfwaded CASTAL. po to beare his fortune in the best manner that possibly he should be able; promissing so sooneas he could to relieue him. Who perceiuing that the Moldatilan, and MAHOMET Basha were with a great armie come into Hungary, to the end to inuade Transiluania; he sent Felix Earle of Arco, to hold the Castle of Brasonia. And obtaining great reliefe and victuals, from the citie of Zibonio, he endeuored himselfe to reinforce his troupes, and to fortifie many places; but this nothing furthered FERDINAND s proceedings: for by reason that the articles of agreement were not observed to Isabel, many of those people rebelled against him, and after much contention hee was constrained to come to blowes with them: for spending much time, sometime in losing and sometime in recouering, the Turkes daily conquered more and more. Which taking Lippa and Themesuarre with many other places, by MAHOMET'S order, the Basha, together with the Basha of Buda, marched to the Castle of Drigall; before which lay S FORZA PALLAVICINO with fixe thousand men, Germanes and others: who valiantly affaulting the Castle, was at vnawares set vpon by the Basha: with whom comming to blowes, and performing the office both of a valiant Sforce Pallani- Souldier, and prudent Captaine, he was in the end ouerthrowne, and shortly after with many other Captaines taken prisoner, and brought (by a Turke which and taken perfor charging him in the flanke with his Cimitarre had felled him wounded to the death) to the Basha: from whom he was afterwards ransomed for a great summe of money. Afterwhich, MAHOMET to the great flaughter of his people, tooke Salonch, built by FERDINAND in a strong place over the river Tilla; the losse whereof greatly troubled FERDINAND. Who feeing that his affaires notwithflanding the valour and wifedome of CASTALDO daily went from ill to worfe, and viderstanding that the people of Transiluania were wholy revolted to the Queene, greatly fauored by MAHOMET Basha about Soliman; and that they had often practifed to kill CASTALD o, he commaunded him that notwithstanding MAHOMETS retreit, despairing to take Agria, long attempted by his people, he should retire. Which Castaldo putting in execution, placed the Spanish and Dutch fouldiers in Zibinio, and other places neere adiacent: and having fortified Deua, after much prouision made, he went to Alba Inlia to winter the rest of his armie. In the meane time, absolution came from Rome for those which kild Frier GEORGE. And the yeere 1553 being come, FRANCIS THEND I, fauouring the Queenes cause, brought it so to passe, that notwithstanding the many Councels, wherein C As T ADDO Was ener present, great part of the Lords of Transiluania in the behalfe of the Queene, tooke armes against FERDINAND, and expulsing FERDINANDS forces, reestablished her, together with her sonne in her estate.

That yeere being ended, and the yeere 1554 begun, FERDINAND fent his Ambaffadours to his nephew Parriage in England, to congratulate his marriage

with MARY Queene of that countrie, which succeeded her brother ED VY ARD. And in the veere 1555 died Ioane mother of FERD IN AND, and of the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, in Spaine; whose death FERDINAND took very grieuously. And in the meane time, taking a truce with the Turke, he obtained youngn acknowledgement of a tribute, peaceably to enjoy what he held in Hungary. In which time CHARLES the Emperour having given vp the states of the Low Countries, the kingdomes of Spaine, and all his other kingdomes to his fonne PHILIPKing of England; FERDINAND fought to suppresse and extinguish the preaching of the Gospell in Germany; and receiving letters of his brothers renunciation made to his sonne, he infinitely commended his resolution. That veere being ended, and the veere 1556 being come, he was advertised that his brother the Emperour hauing renounced the Empire vnto him, was retired into Spaine, to leade a folitarie life; for which yeelding him thankes by his letters and Ambassadours, he went to Viena to make provision for the warres, which (as it was faid) Soliman would make in Hungary: where spending the rest of that verehe remained untill the yeere 1557. In the beginning of which yeere, he interpofed himselfe betweene King PHILIP and the Pope, perswading them to peace: for the Pope induced by his nephew the Cardinall Caraffa, made warre against the King. And that yeere being ended, in the beginning of the yeere 1558, he was by the Electors according to the will of his brother CHARLES, chosen and proclaimed Emperour: no man but the Pope contradicting his election, who affirmed that the refignation made by the Emperour CHARLES could not be done without the Popes confent: but his reproofe being rejected, FERDINAND was chosen and proclaimed lawfull Emperour. Not long after he had newes that his brother CHARLES was departed out of this world, for whose death he together with his whole Court was very forie: neuerthelesse supporting his gricfe, hee celebrated the exequies with great pompe, and prefently fent his Ambaffadours to King PHILIP, to condole the common loffe. And that present veere ending, within a while after the decease of the Emperour CHARLES, and in the beginning of the yere 1559, FERDINAND vied all endeuour to make peace Peace between betweene King PHILIP, and HENRY the French King; which after many trea-King Philip of ties being obtained, and alliance made them, he was exceedingly glad, fith that Spaine and after the space of seuentie yeeres continuall diffention, peace was now made betweene those two most mightie Kings, which was proclaimed through all Christendome. A little while after, in the beginning of the yeere 1560, FERDINAND obtained to be confirmed in the Empire by the new Pope, who willingly appro- Ferdinand conuing his election, deemed it to be ill done, after a peace folong defired, agains to Empire by Pope bring Italy into new troubles : and so following the will of that Prince, he con-Piusine 4. fented to the calling of a Councell. And in the yeere 1561 he made proclamation to all Prelates and Nations, of a Councell to be held the yeere following, wherein the Articles proponed by the Lutherans should be determined. And in the yeere 1562 a Councell was againe called, to be held in the citie of Trent, whither FERDINAND fending the Prelates of his dominion, perswaded all the Princes of Germany to doe the like: and writing to his nephew King PHILIP, and to the King of Portugali, and to all the other Princes of Christendome, he vsed such meanes that al the Princes according to his defire, fent the Bithops of their countries with their particular Ambassadours to that Councell, wherein the matters of greatest importance were handled concerning religion. In which time F = x-DINAND desiring that some one of his sonnes after his decease might succeede him

eino woonded, unerthrowne ner by the Turkes, before the Caftle of Drigall.

him in the Imperiall dignitie, he called the Princes Electors to a Councell held at Franckford, where proponing to them his defire, he alleaged that in respect of the Turke it was requisite it should be so; and after the matter had been long debated, he obtained his purpose to his content: which being concluded, he made his fonne MAXIMILIAN within few daies after to be crowned King of the Romanes. After which ceremonies, going to Ispruch to see his daughters, he vnderstood that the truce lately treated of with Soliman not onely tooke effect for tenne yeeres, but that at his suite DON ALVARO DE SANDE was released out Anno 1560, of prison together with three other principall Knights taken in the yeere 1560 in the enterprise of Tripoli, by DRAGVTRAIS. At that time were great warres in France betweene the Papifts and the Huguenots, which the Emperour fought to

have pacified, but that nation was fo extremely incenfed, that the Emperours perswasions could nothing prevaile amongst them.

The death of the Emperous Ecrdinand.

In the veere 1564, the Councell of Trent being dissolved, FERDINAND came to Viena, where falling ficke of an Ague, and knowing by the vehemencie of his difease that his life drew neere to an end, he sent for all his children, which then were dispersed into fundrie places, to whom after he had given his bleffing, together with many good exhortations, he rendred his foule to God, vpon the fifth day of July in the same yeere. He was a Prince by all men reputed to be of singular bountie and pietie, and of a most gentle and pleasing disposition, not very strong of bodie, but replenished with so much maiestie, that who so euer saw him could not but respect him: for being of a pleasing and affable condition, he would most curteously encline himselfe to every one that to came salute him. He was naturally merrie, free from furfeiting, and ware his beard rather short then long, and his haire fo long that it couered his eies with fome bauldnes. He was in all his actions (prosperous or aduerse) alwaies constant, holding all things to happen to him by the will of God. He confessed himselfe three or source times in the yeere, and with great denotion received the Communion, willing that enery one in his Court should doe the like; so that his house seemed to be rather a regular Monasterie, then a Court of Secular men. He left behinde him many children, and had in all fifteene; foure fonnes, and the rest daughters, which were married to fundrie Princes in Christendome. Is ABEL which was his first, was giuen in marriage to SIGISMVND King of Poland. ANNE was wife to the Duke of Bauiere. MARY to the Duke of Cleue. MAGDALENa chast Virgin. KA-THERINE TO FRANCIS Duke of Mantoa. ELENOR TO WILLIAM Duke of Manton. MARGARET Wasa Nunne. BARBARAWAS married to ALFONSE the fecond Duke of Ferrara. VRS VLA a Virgin and a Nunne. HELEN lived but a little while. And I OANE Was wife to FRANCIS the great Duke of Tuscane. Of sonnes besides the Emperour MAXIMILIAN, he had FERDINAND and CHARLES Archdukes of Austrich, and I o HN Which died very young. He had but one onely wife, and(as it was faid)neuer before nor after knew any other woman but her: which he loued so intierly that he would not marrie the second time. He much loued learned men, & gaue them great penfions for their maintenance. He neuer vndertooke any warres but for religion: either against the Turke or the Luther ranes, which he vehemently presecuted. FERDINAND having bin King of Hungary and Bohemia foure and thirtie yeeres, and Emperour feuen, to the great griefe of his people and of all the Princes in Christendome ended his daies. After whose decease, his obsequies being celebrated with great pompe, sundrie funerall Orations were made by divers learned men: and his body being carried through Morauia into Bohemia, was by his wives fide buried in Prage.

### THE LIFE OF MAXI-MILIAN THE SECOND,

AND CXVII. ROMANE EMPEROVR.



ARGVMENT.

His life containeth not ought elfe, but the countrie, parentage and noble descent of Maximilian, with his affes in the Warres in Germany against the Lantzgraue, his going into Spaine to governe the same for King Philip, his assumption to the Imperiall dignitie, with his warres with the Turkes at Zighet, and the Election of his sonne Rodulph for King of the Romanes.



He house and family of Austrich amongst the most principall houses of Germany, is truely euery way very noble, and hath euer been so of long time (as it euidently appeareth) not onely through the (in a manner) hereditarie succession of the Empire from the father to the fonne in tenne Emperours, from the veere 1273, at that time Rodylph the first was chosen Em-

peror of the Germanes: but also in that it hath fince that time in short space, with admirable felicitie, not onely in Germany enlarged the small confines of Habspurge and Hasia (the auncient territory thereof) but through the singular protection of the heavens, it hath by enheritance attained to the kingdomes of The dominion Bohemia, and Hungary, the Duchie of Austrich, the countie of Flanders, with the of the house of estates of the lower Germany, the kingdomes of Spaine, with all those countries of the East and West Indies, (to the wonder of the world, by CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS a Genowaics, and AMERICUS SEPUSIUS, a Florentine, newly found and discouered; which for their greatnes, and the noueltie of the action, are called the new world) together with the kingdomes of Sicilia and Naples;

The linage of she Emperor Massimilian and laftly the Duchie of Milan, farre excelling all other Dukedomes in Christendome. Of which family in the yeere of our Lord 1527, the Emperor MAXIMI-LIAN the second of that name borne in the citie of Viena in Austrich, had to his father FERDINAND, brother to the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, sonne of PHILIP the first King of Spaine, Nephew of MAXIMILIAN the first, sonne of FREDERICK the third Emperours of the Almaines: his mother was ANNE daughter of LADISLAVS King of Hungary and of Bohemia, Nephew of the great Sigismynd, fonne of Casimier King of Poland, and fifter to that LEVYES which through the vnaduiled counfell of PAVLAS TOMORBUS Archbishop of Colossa, in the yeere of our Lord 1526, comming to a field battaile with SOLIMAN King of the Turkes, was not onely through the innumerable multitude of the Ottomans lamentably ouerthrowne: but also when he sought to have faued himselfe from his enemies, was through the waight of his armour wherewith he was oppressed, and the stumbling of his horse which fell voon

him in a paffage ouer a marrish or fenne, miserably drowned.

This Emperor shewing even from his infancie the excellencie of his wit, was by his father the Emperor FERDINAND committed to very learned men, by them to be instructed in good Litterature, but chiefly invarietic of tongues; wherein in fhort space he so much profited, that he not onely spake Latin very elegantly, Spanish, French, Italian, Dutch, Hungarish, and Bohemish, but also very perfectly attained to the knowledge of the Sciences, particularly the Mathematikes. So that all men did stedfassly hope that he would proue no way inferior to his auncient progenitors. And he no fooner came to yeeres fit to beare armes, but that he fundrie times gaue no leffe indice and cleere shew of his noble valour therein; earnestly seeking to imitate his Grandfather Maximilian whose name he bare, which he expresly manifested when in the yeere 1556, in the warres which his Vncle the Emperor CHARLES the fifth made against IOHN FREDERICK Duke of Saxony, and PHILIP Lantzgraue of Heffen, he went to that warre, fent thither by his father with the commaund of 1200 horse; having before that time, been euer present in the warres which his father waged with the Turkes. In that service of his Vncle the Emperor CHARLES, he so nobly behaued himselfe, that he therein sundrictimes deserued to be compared with his Grandfather MAXIMILIAN; for he constantly enduring with the greatnes of his minde, all those wants and fortunes which the troubles of the warres bring with them, was cuer the first man in all services, wherein he made no lesse they of a valiant man at armes, then of a prudent Chieftaine, which made him fo deerely beloued by his Vncle the Emperor, that that civil warre being ended (which continued little leffe then two yeeres) he confidering that his fonne PHILIP Prince of Spaine was to be invested in the Countie of Flanders, together with the provinces of the lower Germany, and being vnwilling that Spaine should remaine without some man of authoritie to governe the same, fearing the fiercenes of that nation ordinarily euer defirous of nouelties: notwithstanding that he was his Nephew, yet by the dispensation of Pore PAVL the third he made him his fonne in law, giving him his daughter MARY to wife, and therewith made him gouernor of those kingdomes. And those nuptiall rices being celebrated, MAXIMILIAN in the yeere 1548 went into Spaine, being first by his father FERDINAND King of the Romanes, made King of Bohemia, to whom the Lords of that kingdome sware obedience as to their King and naturall Lord. Before his comming into Spaine, passing through Italy, he was by all the Italian Princes Princes visited and highly honoured and being arrived at the citie of Genoa and there shortly after embarked in the Galleyes of Prince Doria, he passed to Barcelona, whence taking his way towards Valiodolid, where the Spanish court then lay, he was in the name of his espouse and of his cosin germane oftentimes visited by the principall Lords of Spaine. Finally, within few daies after his comming to the court, having with applause of the Spanish nation celebrated his nuptials, he was established in the government of those kingdomes, in the abfence of Prince PHILIP: which he with great quietnes, to the contentment of that people gouerned, vntill that in the beginning of the veere 1551 the Emperor CHARLES fummoneda Councell to be held in Augsburgh, whither being by his father fent for, he came from Spaine into Germany, having first left the gouernment of those kingdomes to his wife Queene MARY, and to the Councell royall: and staying there till the end of the Councell, he went with his father the King of the Romanes to Viena, where making his abode till the beginning of theveere 1552, and then passing from Germany againe into Spaine, to bring his wife into his countries, he came from Barcelona (after that he had been molefted by the French fleete) to Genoa; and from thence comming to Trens, he went to Augsburgh, where by the Emperor CHARLES the fifth, he was much welcomed, and together with his wife was by the Germane Princes highly honored, but particularly by his father, who then absolutely resigned vnto him the government of the kingdome of Bohemia: which to the great contentment of the Bohemians he euer after gouerned so long as he lived. From whence in the same yeere he sent great troupes of men to the Emperor, for his warres against MAYRICE Duke of Saxony, who by reason of the imprisonment of the Lantzgrave Philip warring against the Emperor, was proclaimed traitor: but it was not long before the Emperor was freed from that trouble. And MAXIMI-LIAN recalling his forces, peaceably applyed himselfe to the gouernment of Behemia, without that any matter of moment happened, vntill that in the yeere 1554, he together with his father sent his Ambassadors to congratulate the marriage of his cofin King PHILIP to merie the daughter of King HENRY the eight, then by the death of her brother Edvvand, Queene of England. In the yeere 1558 he was present at the Coronation of his father, who by the Emperour CHARLES the fifth was adopted Emperor; and for such accepted by the Princes of Germany. Afterwards taking his way with his father towards Frena, he returned into Bohemia; where within a while after, understanding of the death of his Vicle and father in law the Emperor CHARLES, he with great pompe celebrating his Obsequies; sent Ambassadors to his cosin Philip to condole the death of the deceased Emperour. In which actions ending the yeere present and nextfollowing; in the yeere 1560, after foure moneths vacancie, IOHN AN-GELO DE MEDICIS being chosen Pope, and called Pivs the fourth; he fent his Ambassadors to yeeld his obedience to the Church of Rome. And in the yeere 1562, FERDINAND desiring that his sonne MAXIMILIAN should fucceede him in the Empire, affembleda Councell in Franckford; wherein pro-Maximilian poning to the Electors his determination, he so handled the matter, that by the chosen and common confent and goodwil of all men, MAXIMILIAN was chosen and crow-of the Romanon ned King of the Romanes, with great applause of the Germanes, and of the Italians, which for his rare qualities deerely loued him. Then beeing according to his fathers defire created his successor, he departed towards Viena, first visiting his fifters which were in Ifpruch, where he remained untill the yeere 1564, in

Maximilian denied to pay the accustomed tribute to the Turke for the kingdome of Elungary.

Zighet taken

by the Turks.

which yeere his father died; whose obesequies he together with his brothers fumptuously celebrated. After which, he received Ambassadours from the Princes, which as to the fuccessive Emperour and King of Hungary and Behemia came to doe him honour, amongst many which thither came, were the Ambassadours of Spaine and of Portugall. MAXIMILIAN being then received and accepted by the Christians for lawfull Emperour; in the beginning of his raigne denied to pay to Soliman the Emperour of the Turkes, that acknowledgement which his father FERDINAND yeelded to pay for the kingdome of Hungary : and fo the veere 1565 being come, inuading the state of Transiluania, he tooke certaine places. Whereupon Soliman fending a great armie against him, in the behalfe of the Vaiuode I o HN, tooke many townes of importance. But C E s AR fending LAZARVS. SCHVENDY for Generall of his armie, not onely recoursed what was taken, but also tooke Toccay with some other places, greatly endamaging the Transiluanian; who being aided by the Turkes infinitely troubled C # S AR, and notwithstanding that by reason of winter, it had been sit to have retired to have wintred his armie, yet he defifted not from molesting him. But being vnable of himself to make head against C & s AR s forces, he procured by the Turks meanes to cause MAXIMILIAN to retire from that enterprise: for which, being an earnest sutor, he obtained such fauour, that Soliman in the yeere 1566, with 120000. men innaded Hungary: the forewarning of whose comming reuealed by a Turke taken prisoner by certaine souldiers serving his brother CHARLES, was a great furtherance to the Emperours proceedings: for he making prouision accordingly, so ordred the matter that he was relieued by all the Princes of Christendome: particularly by Pope Pivs Qvinivs (who this yeere succeeded Pivs the fourth in the Papacie) and by the Dukes of Florence, of Mantoa, of Ferrara, and by many other Princes as well of Italy and France as of Germany: fo that he having leuied an armie of threescore and tenne thousand men, made his brother FERD I-NAND, Archduke of Austrich, Generall thereof, who with those forces comming to Inuarin, purposed to have attempted Strigonium; but vnderstanding that Soli-MAN departing from Belgrado came to Buda, and from Buda was gone to Zighet; he retiring, perswaded NICHOLAS SIDRIN, a Nobleman of singular valour in Hungary, to continue in the government of that fortresse, whereof he was Captaine, promifing that he would not faile to relieue him. SOLIMAN after many difficulties, being come to Zighet (which is situate in a sennie countrie betweene Croatia and Hungary) within few daies with continuall affaults both by day and night so oppress it, that notwithstanding the great valour of SIDRIN, who failed in nothing that might concerne himselfe or G # s A n, neither left anything vnattempted that might hinder the purposes of the Barbarian, vsing all meanes to defend that fortresse: in the end with great slaughter of his people it was by the Turke taken. But that Barbarian had not time to enjoy the fruites of his victorie, for being loden with yeeres, and ouercome by his difeafe, which was the bloudie fluxe, he ended his daies before that he was master thereof; MAMOMET Basha with great policie and cunning concealing his death vntill the creation of a new Emperour, and vntill that place being of fuch importance was taken.

Zighet being taken, Nicholas Sidrinthe Gouernour thereof, a man for his worth, his valour, and for his faith and trust incomparable, was slaine. There likewife came into the Turkes power, Iulia, befides other places which were taken the yeere before, with incredible loffe and domage to the Christians, which without effecting any notable matter in that enterprise (the Turkes armie being retired)

retired) were by the Emperour discharged. And in the yeere 1567, the Emperor through the mediation of MAHOMET Batha, treating with SELIM (who fucceeded his father SOLIMAN in his estate) of a truce, having first garrisoned Ianarina retired with his Court into Viena, and fought to extinguish the new civil warre kindled in Germany. For I OHN FREDERICK, sonne of the Elector Av GVS TV \$ Dake of Saxony favouring GROMPACH, a Rebell of the Empire, it feemed that the civill warre would have begun againe: but GROMPACH having furprifed the Fortreffe of Gotta from the Elector Av Gv s Tv s, who would doe nothing contrarie to the decree of the Councell at Augsburgh, where GROMPACH be Grompach to ing againe proclaimed a rebell: and having amaffed together a good number of ken and excesmen of warre, which being drawne to an head, after much refiftance, GROM-PACHtogether with IOHN FREDERICK the fonne of Duke Avg vs TVS, were taken prisoners, with whose apprehension the civill warres of Germany being ended, GROMPACH Was quartered aliue, and Duke I OHN FRED BRICE detained in prison. The Emperour having in the meane time relieued Schwendi, who after the departure of the Turkes armie, was by the Transiluanian besieged in Toccay; and shortly after repelling the enemie, tooke many Holds in Transiluania, to the great prejudice of the Vaiuode. But vnderstanding that in the same yeere 1567 SBLIM had graunted and confirmed the truce required by CESAR, with the fame conditions that FERDINAND obtained the fame, and that SELIM retired his armie: MAXIMILIAN accommodating the affaires of his estate lined all the rest of his life time in peace, having in vaine attempted to recouer Transiluania, left through the death of IOHN Vaiuode to STEPHEN BATTOR. Who in the yeere 1574, CHARLES the ninth King of France being dead, and HENRY Duke of Anion and King of Polania, through his brothers death being called to the Crowne of Erance; after much contention was chosen King of Polenia; notwithstanding that MAXIMILIAN vsed all meanes possible to have been King thereof, for many of the Electors fauoured him; which failing, he became to melancholike, that he was neuer after that time feene to be merrie, imagining that the wavering instabilitie of the Polacres had bereaued the house of Aufirich of that kingdome, but yet he left nothing vndone that might diffurbe BAT-TO R. With which actions comming to the end of the yeere 1577, he affembled the Diet of Ratisbone, where vsing all meanes that in him lay, that his eldest sonne RODV LEH might remaine his heire in the Empire, in the end by the consent of the Electors, he obtained his fuite. And in the fame Diet he confirmed FRANCIS DE MEDICIS with the fauour and consent of those Princes, in the title of great Duke of Tuscane, graunted by Pope Pivs the fifth to Cosmothe great, in the

MAXIMILIAN living but a few moneths after the election of his sonne, being betweene fiftie one and fiftie two yeeres old, and oppressed with the retention of his vrine, to the great griefe and forrow of his people, ended his terrestriall life. He was a Prince for pietie and the bountie of his minde, truly so fin-The death of gular, that if the troubles and civill warres in Germany had not weakened and Maximilian. duminished the forces and power of the Empire, would not have left any meanes vnattempted to haue repressed the greatnes of the Turkish Empire. His bodie and minde being accompanied with memorable maiestic and judgement. He was a personage of common stature, had a full face replenished with granitie, his head was somewhat bauld, he spake readily all the tongues which at this day are spoken in the most pricipall provinces of Europe, so naturally, as if he had bin

nurfed and bred up in them. He was most diligent and prompt in gining judgement, and a great fauourer of men of vnderstanding, to which he gaue great penfions: and particularly loued Mathematicians, and Antiquaries, as a man which was greatly delighted in both those faculties. He was very actine of his bodie, and therewith very pitifull. He left behinde him tenne children, fixe fonnes and foure daughters. His daughters were Is ABEL married to her Vncle PHILLP King of Spaine. MARY was wife to CHARLES the ninth King of France. ANN E and ELE-NOR were then but children. His fonnes were RODVLPH, the now Emperour. and MATTHIAS, in the time of the late Prince of Orange was chosen by the Eflates Gouernour of the Low Countries. A LBERTV safterwards made a Cardinall and Archbishop of Toledo, and fince then renouncing his Ecclesiasticall dignities. is married to I s ABE 1 the Infant of Spaine, and by her is Duke of Burgundy. MAXI-MILIAN, and VENCESLAVS. He had but one onely wife, after whose decease he neuer would marrie any other. He was blindly very religious, and with great honour and reuerence obseruing the greatnes of the Popes, he endeuoured to have caused the rest of the Princes of Germany to have done the like.

## THE LIFE OF RODVLPH THE SECOND OF THAT NAME,

AND CXVIII. ROMANE EMPEROR NOW RAIGNING.



He Imperial Maiestie, being become in a manner hereditarie in the house of Austrich, was after the death of MAXI-MILIAN the second of that name, with the generall affent of the Princes of Germany, confirmed to his sonne R o-DV LPHKing of Bohemia and of Hungary, chosen a little before at his fathers entreatic King of the Romanes; who affirming (together with his high dignitic) a minde and thoughts worthie an Emperor, hath ener hitherto in his

gouernment shewed himselfe in all his actions so rightly honourable, that it is to be hoped (sparing him life) he will not onely in some fort restore to the Empire the ancient dignitie and reputation thereof, but also recouer such countries belonging thereto, as are vsurped by such as are enemies to the same. Presently after his coronation; for his better chablishment in his new dignitie, he sent to the Pope, to be by him therein confirmed, and therewith to request him to declare The Emperour him for the eldest some of the Church: and then calling a Councell at Ratisbone, second sente where ving all his power, to the end that matters concerning the Romane religion might be reformed, he earnestly pressed all the Princes of Germany to confent to his new reformation. And then dispatching Ambassadours to the Empe-pine, and to be rour of the Turks, to procure a reconfirmation of the truce taken made betweene declared eldeft him and his father MAXIMILIAN, he in the meane time perswaded his brother church MATTHIAS, who was gone into Flanders with a refolution to make himfelfe Lord of those proninces; that abandoning what he had undertaken he mould returne into Germany; shewing him how dangerous a matter it would be, if through his fault the troubles of those countries should be encreased; but his perswassions of as then little availed against his resolution: but yet shortly after through discontment betweene the Dake and the States of those countries, he leaning them re- of the Love turned (with little honour) into Germany. After this, for a sinuch as the Archbishop countries. of Colen, one of the Princes Electors, for faking the Pope, was become a Caluinift, and had married a wife, the Emperour and fundrie Potentates in Germany tooks armes against him; but especially the Chanons of that Church of Colen, which expelling him, chose another Bishop, so that he was afterwards constrained to come to the States of the Low Countries for reliefe. And fo for a space in the beginning the Emperour continued very folicitous, to have advanced and established the Popes lawes and authoritie; not onely in his hereditarie estates and dominions, but generally through the whole Empire, vntill that A MVRATH the third, Emperour of Turkes, after long consultation having resolued to make a generall conquest of Hungary, together with fundric countries bordring vpon the fame, by the ordinarie incursions of the Turkes, contrarie to the truce, spoyling and robbing his countries, fo awakened the Emperor, that leaving to hinder the preaching of the Gospell, he was constrained to employ his wits together with his whole power for the defence of his cstate, against so mightie a common enemie: who enuying the greatnes of the house of Austrich, for that it in sundrie parts of the world made head against him : about a people called V scocchipreuily picking a quarrell, he first began his warres in Croatia; wherein after the spoyle of the countrie, the Basha of Bosna tooke the citie of Wihitz. Whereupon the Emperour solicited the Princes of Germany for aide, who considering the greatnes of the daunger, promised their assistance. But before that their forces tooke the field, fixe thousand foote, and fine hundred horse of the Christians, having in Creatia for their refuge taken the woods, mountaines, and places of hard accesse; were by the Turkes so oppressed, that few of them escaped with their lines. For refelling of which outrage, the Emperour affembling the States of Slefia and Morauia, perswaded them to vnite their forces with the rest. But the aides from out of Germany came fo flowly, that after the overthrow and flaughter of feuen thoufand men in Croatia, the Turkes surprised the strong Castle of S. Grorge; wherein after that they cruelly without respect of age or sexe had put to the sword all that

uoy of three hundred wagons, loden with provision for the reliefe of the fouldiers garrifoned in that province. After these and many other roades and incursions made in Creatia, and in Hun-

were therein: firing the Castle, they departed: and in their retreit cut off a con-

Fiff 2

gary,

Sifeg taken by the Turks,anno

gary, the Turkes aduertifed of the preparation made by the Christian Princes; but chiefly for that the plague was false amongst them, leaving strong garrisons in their Holds, they retired; and so the warres for that winter ended. But the next fpring being come, the Emperour writing to the Turke to know the reason of these so hostile inuasions contrarie to the truce, was by the great Turkes owne letter for answere put out of doubt whereto he should trust; who most proudly denouncing warre against him and all his abbettors, sent the Peglerbey of Gracia into Croatia, who with a huge armie befieging the firong Caftle of Sifes, in fhort space tooke it, cutting in pieces, and drowning all that they found therein. This happened vpon the third of September 1593. These inuasions caused the Emperour not onely to craue aide of the Princes and free cities of Germany, but also of other Princes further remote: which being soone graunted, came so flowly forwards, that SINAN Basha besieging the citie of Vesprin, and the desendants seeing no possibilitie long to hold the place, abandoning the citie, were by the Turkes cut in pieces. From thence the Basha went to Palotta, which within few daies fiege yeelded to the Turkes alfo.

But yet a length an armie of the Christians passing the river Danubius, so met with the Turkes, that making flaughter of a great number of them, they released many Christian Captines: wherewith encouraged, the Christians presently besieged the citie of Alba Regalis: but within few daies after, they were aduertiled of the comming of the Basha of Buda, with an armie of 2000 strong, and thirtie peeces of Ordenance, to relieue the citie and to raife the fiege; whom the Emperialists the Christians (rising from before the citie) encountring, ouerthrew and put to flight, and in the chace had the execution of the greatest part of their e-

The Cafile of by the Christin

The Baffa of Buda ouer-

put to flight by

Shortly after the Emperors Lieutenant belieging the Castle of Sabatzka, garrisoned by the Turkes, did with the Cannon so soundly beate the same, that the breach being made affaultable was entred; and all that there lay in garrison, were put to the fivord; and a ftrong garrifon left to guard the place: whereby the countrie was freed from their wonted oppressions.

An overthrow

ginen to the

Turkes by the

Christians the

20.of Nouem-

ber, 1593.

Presently upon the taking of Sabatzka, the Christians besieged the citie of Filek, a strong place of great importance in the vpper Hungary; for the vnsetting whereof the Turkes drawing their garrifons in that quarter, leuied an armie of 18000 men, and therewith marched by night untill they came neere to the citie: whereof the Generall of the Emperors armie being aduertifed, out of the whole armie made choise of 7000 men: with which suddenly setting vpon the Turkes in their tents, he gaue them fuch a camizado, that they trufting more to their heeles then their hands were fo put to rout, that 6000 of them remained in the fields, foode for the foules of the aire: and amongst them the Basha of Themeliarre, the Gouernor of Filek, and many of great account. At this ouerthrow the Christians besides 29 peeces of Artillerie tooke 200 Wagons loden with victuals; with which they returned to the fiege of the citie, which they fo battered, that the breaches being made affaultable, the citie was entred and taken, and the defendants put to the sworde: those in the Castle notwithstanding resolute in their desence, within two daies after being by the Christians assaulted, and the Castle entred, had their throates cut also. Yet there remained some .800, which being retired to another Castile, and seeing how the rest of their company fped, yeelded ypon composition of their lines saued, and to depart with what they could carrie vpon their backes. The taking of this citie strakesuch a

Filektaken by the Christians. feare into the Turkes in Setschine, Blavensteene, Sallek, Dregel, and Palanke, Strong townes in Hungary, that they abandoning them, retired some to Hatwan, and fome to Buda for their refuge. In the fame moneth were also recovered from the Turkes the townes of Ainacke, Sollocke, and Weltke, by meanes whereof, the countrie was freed round about.

After this the Turkes in Sifer, Castronitz, and Petrinia to the number of three 19. December. thousand, thinking for reuenge to have done some great exploit passed the river 1583. Saua, with a determination to have spoiled the countrie: but they were so welcomed by the borderers, that 500 of them remaining upon the earth for hofta-An expedition ges, the most of the rest for haste were drowned; so as few returned to beare the newes of their expedition. The joy for the good successe of the Christians wars this yeere, so stirred up the harts of the Germane Princes, that souldiers were leuied. Artillerie prouided, and euery where new prouifion was made for the

next veeres warres. In the beginning of March following, the Emperors brother MATTHIAS being Generall of the Christian armie: the citie of Nouigrade lying neere to Nouigrade to Buda, was by the Christians befreged; wherein the garrison fearing their owne ken by the Chrisweakenes, and doubting refcue: after a battery made, and some assaults given finance thereto, yeelded the citie to the Archduke, vpon condition of their lives faued, and to depart with their clothes on their backes, and their Cemitars by their fides. This towne gotten (being a place of great importance) was by the Archduke furnished with a very strong garrison, under the commaund of REBEY a noble gentleman of Hungary. But the Turkish Gouernor of Novigrade being retired to Buda, was there in reward of his good service, by the commaund of the Basha thereof, in the night hanged vpon a tree neere to the gate of the citie.

About this time the Emperor fending his Ambassadors to the Muscouite, 1594. implored his aide in his warre against the Turkes: to whom the Muscouite pro-the Emperor befought the miled 500000 Ducats in hand, and 400000 yeerely to long as the warres should Muscomite for continew, but yet with a request that the Emperor should not conclude any side examile the peace with the Turke without his consent.

The Christians having long in vaine befieged Strigonium and Hatwan, and brought the same to such extremitie that they could hardly have held out any longer: vpon the report of the comming of SINAN Basha with an armie, they raising the siege from before those cities departed: by reason whereof the poore Christians inhabiting the countrie thereabouts, which had long hoped of libertie, became againe feruill to their infulting enemies; which the Emperor knowing, and therewith confidering how hardly of himselfe he should be able to maintaine so chargeable a warre against so mightie an enemie, he by his Ambaffadors fued to the Princes of Christendome, but chiefly to those of Germany, for aide; and for preuention of the imminent daunger likely to enfue he fummoneda Councell to be held in the citie of Ratisbone; whither he together with the Princes of the Empire being come; after wonted ceremonies, the Emperor manifelted vuto them the perfidie of the Turkish Emperor, who contrarie o to his oath folemnely sworne, had as an enemie to all Christians, with his armies not onely spoiled all Hungary, but sundrie other provinces of the Empire: for re-

dreffe whereof, and the repreffing of his infolent pride, he cutreated their extraordinarie affiltance: whereto (although not in fo ample manner as he required) they condescended. But through the present want thereof, SINAN Basha, after the taking of Dotis (aftrong towne between e Strigonium and Raab) with an

Ffff 4

Raab taken by she Turkes.

armie of 150000 Turkes and Tartars befieged the strong towne of Raab, which after a most furious batterie with 60 peeces of Cannon, and many terrible affaults, with the losse of many thousands of men given, he became Master thereof not without suspition of treason in the Countie HARDECK, who had the commaund of the place: for which his perfidie; he was not long after by the Emperors commaindement committed in Viena to prison; and within short space after, his treason being further discouered, he was in the said citie vpon's new scaffold built of purpose for him, justly executed.

8594.

The Prince of Transiluania renoleeth from the Turke.

In this vecre the Tartars by the Turkes direction, and not without the confent of fundrie great men in Transiluania; lying in the borders thereof to entrap SIGISMVND BATTOR Prince of that countrie: failing of their purpose (the treason being discoucred and some of the conspirators justly executed) brake through the countrie. Wherein they vling all manner hostilitie did irrepairable harme, and there went into Hungary, where they is yned with the Turkish armie: hereupon the Prince ioyning in league with his poore oppressed neighbours. the Rascians, revolting from the Turkes, gaue his subjects leave to take armes against them, and to make boote of them and their goods, wherefoeuer they should findethem. The Transiluanians herewith encouraged, and in hope of fome rich prey, taking armes, first went to the great river Daneby, where they tooke certaine Turkes ships very richly fraught, and therewith much treasure, which was bound to the Turkes armie in Hungary. The Moldanians and Walachians, vpon the newes of the Transiluanians revolt, and of the great bootie by The Moldanians and Wal:tthem taken from the Turkes, and moued by their example, shortly after resolued chians rebell ato doe the like; and therewith joyned in league with the Transiluanian Prince; who alreadie had fent his Ambaffadors to the Emperor R o DV LPH to Prage in Bohemia; where betweene the Emperor and the saide Prince it was concluded; that in both defensiue and offensiue warre to be made against their com-Prince of Tran- mon enemie, the one should assist the other; and that no truce, peace, defensive and offensive be made against their common enemie: and that neither of or other composition should be made with the Turke, without their mutuall confent and good liking, with feuerall other articles too long to be recited. The reuolt of these Prouinces was so beneficiall to the Christians, and so prejuditiall

to their enemies, that (as it was furmifed) A MVRATH the great Turke, for an-

ger for the losse of them, and of a seditious tumult of the Ianisaries, happened

at Constantinople in December 1594, fell so sicke that he died thereof. After

the taking of Raab, SINAN Basha thinking to have made all smooth before him,

befieged the citie of Romara, from whence after three weekeshard fiege, and

many terrible affaults given, hearing of the comming of the Archduke Mar-

THIAS, he retired to the late gotten city Dotis, where he discharged his army. The

fpring next following at the Emperors especiall request the King of Spaine sent to

the Emprors warres in Hungary, 2000 horse and 6000 foote, under the conduct

of Countie CHARLES MANSFIELT, aman famous in the low countries for

his feruice against the States, vnder the commaund of the Duke of Parma: who

A league beperor and the Eluania.

gainst the

Turke.

The death of Amurath the great Turke the 18 of lanu Sry 15 95.

Sundrie supplies

Cent to aide the

Emperor in his

warres against

the Turkein

Hungary.

March following.

The same spring also came fundrie good supplies not onely from the Princes of Germany but out of Italy also, as from the Pope, the great Duke of Tuscane, the Dukes of Ferrara, and of Manton with others, which together with the aides of Germany, amounted to the number of 50000 foote, and about 15000 horse, wherewith

departing from Brussels in Brabant, in Februarie came to Prage in Bohemia in @

wherewith the Countie MANSFELT being made Lieutenant Generall under Duke MATTHIAS, tooke the field, and befreged the citie of Strigonium; which (after a long tedious fiege and fundrie bold attempts given by the Turkes for the vnfetting thereof) was by the Christians taken, in Nouember 1595. Presently after Strigonium tathe taking of Siriganium, the Archduke sent certaine troupes to attempt the castle strain, an, 1595 of Plindenburgh, fituate upon the river Danubic, betweene Buda and Strigonium, which without any great refiltance they tooke also. The newes of the taking of these places, especially Strigonium, caused greation in most parts of Christendome; but into the Turkes in Buda it strake so great a seare, that the most part of the better fort of the inhabitants were at the point to have abandoned the citie, and had done so had not the Basha, by commaunding the gates thereof to be flut, staied their flight.

About the fame time that Strigonium was taken, SINAN Basha with a great Sinon Basha armie of Turkes having made a bridge over the Danubie, came into Walachie, the Transituapurposing to have reduced the same, together with Transiluania and Moldania in- nians. to the Turkes obeifance: but the inhabitants of those countries having intelligence of his comming, made such provision for his entertainment, that after a most doubtfull battaile (continuing from the morning till night) wherein many thousand Turkes being slaine, the rest to saue their lives were driven to slie, and amongst them the old Basha; who making more haste then good speede, was like to haue been drowned in a ditch, leauing all his Ordenances, baggage and

prouision in prey to the Christians.

About the same time, the Turkes to the number of about 20000 men, with fire and fword entring Croatia, were by the Christians in such manner encountred and ouerthrowne, that few of them escaped with their lines: with which Turker ouergood fuccesse encouraged, the Christians besieging the citie of Petrouina, tooke throwne by the the same; the taking whereof caused infinite ioy in all that part of the countrie. Christians in creatis. The old enemie to the Christians, SINAN Basha, in hope to have been revenged for his late ouerthrow, having made a new bridge over the Danubie, againe with an armie of 70000 men entred Walachie : against whom came the Prince of Transiluania with as great an armie: but before they two could meete, the Turkes and Ianifaries were possessed with fuch feare, that without fight of the Prince or The cowards his armiethey retired, together with their Generall SINAN, who for hafte left flight of the his Tent behinde him, with good store of Ordnance, munition and prouision for lachie. the warres. Vpon whole haltie retreit, the Prince comming to Tergouista (wherein lay foure thousand Turkes in garrison) summoned the Castle to yeeld: but the Ianifaries therein standing upon their defence, refused all composition: whereupon the Prince by batterie having made an affaultable breach, the place was en-Tergouiffatatred; wherein the Turkes having their throates cut, in the Castle were found 42. Prince of Trans. pieces of Artillerie. Before the Prince his departure from this place, 4000 Turks, silvania. which by SINAN Basha had been sent a boote haling, being with 60000 head of cattle returned, and thinking to have found him where they left him, were for their paines taking all put to the fword. Besides these, many other great exploites were perfourmed by this worthy Prince, and more would have been, had not the Chauncellor of Poland(enuying his good fuccesse) sought and practised his ouerthrow; to the great hindrance of the Christians, and advancement of the Turkes proceedings.

The Spring following, the Emperours armie vinder the conduct of the Baron of Swarshenburgh, taken the field, marched towards Vaccia garrisoned by the

An armie of the

Vaccin aban- Turkes; which hearing of the approch of the Christian armie, abandoning the doned and fired citie and setting the same on fire, fled to Pefth. After their departure, the Christians befieged Harwan, which being taken by affault, all that therein were, without respect of age, sexe, or dignitie, past by the edge of the sword.

In the meane time while there things were a doing, MAHOMET the Turkift Emperour with an armie of two hundred thousand Turkes and Tartars, and three hundred pieces of Artillerie came into Hungary, wherein, within few daies after his thither comming, he besieged the citie of Agria, (a place of great importance in the vpper Hungary) part whereof after a long terrible fiege and many desperate affaults given, he tooke by force of armes, putting to the fword all that were therein: the rest searing the like issue, yeelded upon composition of their lives fa-

ued, and to depart with their baggage, and their fwords by their fides.

After the taking of Agria, MAXIMILIAN the Emperours brother, and then Generall of his armie, joyning with the Prince of Transilnania (who with 18000 men, horse and soote, and sortie pieces of Artillerie came to his aide) taking the field with an armic of 60000 men, whereof 32000 were horsemen, resoluing to

give the Turke battaile, came to the other fide of a river which parted his and the Turkes armies; where after many bloudie skirmishes and euents of warre, the two armies loyned in battaile; wherein the Christians fought fo valiantly, that having put almost all the Turkes whole armie to route; and Mahomer the great

Turke himselfe with the chiefest of his Bashaes being fled: the Christians even then when they should have consummate their victorie, by base greedie seeking for pillage, gaue their vanquished enemies time and oportunitie againe to gather head; and by charging them in this their diforder, to ouerthrow them and put them to flight. In this battaile, of the Christians were slaine 20000 men, and of the Turkes 60000. After this battaile, wherein either partie ranne from the other.

MAHOMET thinking it honour enough for him to have taken Agria, retired to Belgrado, and thence with much adoe to Constantinople; wherein he hath ever fince kept himself safe enough from any more hazarding his person in any place

of fuch perill. The rest of this yeere and the next were spent of either side for the most part in skirmishes, and sudden inuations, without ought done of any great

importance.

In the yeere following, which was 1598, SIGISMVND the valiant Prince of Transiluania, seeing the countrie of Moldania by the Polonian separated from him and made tributarie to the Turke, and himselfe(as it were) left alone to beare the burthen of the warre against both Turke and Polonian, resoluted with himself to refigne the possession of Transiluania to the Emperor Rodviph, as to a Prince then himselfe better able to defend the same: and so retired to line prinate in peace in Slesia, with certaine exhibition sufficient to maintaine him in honorable estate.

In March following, the citie of Raab one of the most strong cities in Europe, situate in the hither part of Hungary towards Austrich, was by the wise conduct of the Baron of Swarzhenburgh lying then in Komara, in a night surprized, and after a long desperate fight possesses wherein besides two Bashaes and 6000 souldiers slaine, fourescore and tenne pieces of Artillerie were taken, to the great ioy of all Hungary and Germany; and the extreme raging griefe of the Turkes, who for foure yeeres space had been Lords thereof: it being first besieged by SINAN Basha, with an armie of 150 thousand men the space of three moneths; and then betraied by the Countie HARDECK, who had the commaund of the place.

After

flians.

After this fo fortunate recouerie of Raak, the Christians besieging Buda, put the Turkes to fuch distresse, that they abandoning the citie retired to the Castle, wherein they were fo throughly affailed by Mines, batteries and affaults, that they could not long have held out, if the Christians had been able to have continued Bida beforged the fiege: which oppressed by the extremitie of the weather, tired with intolle-by the chris rable toyle, and what was worfe, hearing of the comming of a great armie of fians. Turkes to vafet the befieged, they firing the fuburbes, with great prey retired to Strigonium: from whence they were dispersed to sundrie places there to lie in garrison, to be in the better readines for the next yeeres fernice. About the fame time, the Turkes having befreged and battered the citie of Varadin in the vpper Hungary, were (like as the Christians before Buda in the lower Hungary) driuen to raise their siege, and to returne to Buda. Which citie the Baron of Swarzhenburgh the yeere next following attempted to have furprized, and to have made an entrie thereinto by meanes of a Pettar, as he not long before had done by Raab: but failing of his purpose, and being disconcred he was driven to depart: but shortly after, the Basha of Buda with a troupe of fixe hundred horse going to bring in a conuoy of victuals for the reliefe of the citie; fell by chaunce into an ambuth of certaine hazarders which lay for boote: by the which (after a long fight) being ouerthrowne and taken prisoner, he was brought to the Emperours campe. But the aduenturers returning to trie their further fortune, were giuen to vinderstand, that the Basha of Bosna, with the Saniacques of Zighet, of the fiue Churches, and of Coppan, with 10000 Turks were comming (by cutting their throtes) to free the countrie from their incursions: wherewith nothing dismaied, these adventurers went to chuse a fit ground to fight with them, whom at the first meeting they charged, and after a long doubtfull fight overthrew: in which encounter the Basha himselfe with the greatest part of the Turks, ended their daies.

At the same time, in the upper Hungary, IERAIM Basha with an armie of 50000 Turkes came to Solnech; where vnderstanding of a small armie of the Christians lying at Cassouia, he without daring to attempt ought, retired to Bel- Arichrepisal taken buthe grade; where he expected the comming of a fleete of ships, fraught with victu- christians popular als and munition for his armie, and for the reliefe of Buda, Alba Regalis, and other the Danuby. distressed places, convoyed up the river by 5000 Turkes: whereof the Christianshauing fome aduertifement, lay in waite for them; and at their comming, by giuing a fudden vnexpected charge, overthrowing them, had the spoile of the thips; wherein the goods were valued to be worth a Millian of gold, among which was to the value of aboue 20000 pound starling in readic money; which was flared amongst the fouldiers.

In the beginning of the yeere 1600, the Emperor calling a Diet, folicited the Princes of the Empire for supplies for the warres to be made the next spring: which they promifing, he made the Duke of Mercueur, late Gouernor of Bri- The Duke of taine in France (who affilted by the King of Spaine with about 4000 Spaniards Mercneur Gevnder the conduct of DON IVANDE LAGVNA; and by the rest of the league, nerall of the warred against the French King: and now with a great number of French foote ces in Hingary. and horse, was come to the Emperors service) Generall of all his forces.

Not long after, certaine troupes of Wallons and French men lying in garrifon Hallons and in Pappa, a strong towne in the lower Hungary, mutinying and offering to sell the French men towne to the Turkes, committed many horrible villanies too long to be related: mutinying in Pappa, were whereupon the Baron of WarZhenburgh vpon intelligence, with an army of 9000 infily rewarded horse and soote made thitherwards with certaine Pettars, thinking therewith to.

The death of the Baron of Swarzhenburgh Ionsetime Gosernor of Owdenburgh in

haue furprised the citie; but failing he was in a fallie infortunately with a Musket shot slaine. But the citie being neuerthelesse beset, the mutiners were so much distressed that they resolved to abandon it, and to sie to the Turkes, which being perceined, such order was taken, that they fallying and being dispersed, many of aenourgo in Flanders for the them were intercepted, and according to their deferts infily after fundrie man-King of Spaine, pers to tortured, that happie was he that had but his throte cut. And thus ended that mutinic.

Babotsca taken by the Turkes.

so she Turkes.

Towards the latter end of summer in the yeere 1600, IBRAIM Basha, with a very huge armie of Turkes and Tartars (deemed 200000 flrong) came before Babotica, a strong hold in the lower Hungary; which after one daies batterie and a breach made, was deliuered into his power. Thence marching with his armie to Canifia, a towne in the borders of Stiria, for the fituation thereof in a deepe fenne, and the strength of the garrison, held impregnable; where whilest with faggots and earth the Turkes were busied to make passage for their armie ouer the bogges, they might perceive the Duke of Mercneur, Generall for the Emperor, with an armie of little more then 40000 horse and foote come thither for the reliefe of the place, at their backes readie to charge them: with which the Basha (after knowledge had of their strength) joyned in battaile; wherein many of either partie being flaine, the night parted the fray. But the next day, the Captaines of the Christians were so much daunted, that they could not be drawne from their strength: which the enemie perceiuing, the Tartars were fent abrode to forrage, which roaming vp and downe the countrie for prey, met with a conuoy of 200 wagons laden with victuals, comming to the reliefe of the Christians, which they tooke, and carried to their campe: the losse whereof added to their former feare, did fo much discourage the Christians, that they by night retiring, and being by the Turkes perceived and followed, loft (befides certaine pieces of Cannon and the greatest part of their luggage) 3000 men of their arrierguard. Presently after this their hastie retreit, the Turkes returned to the fiege of the citie, wherein the garrison in despaire to be vnset mutinying (and not without suspition of treason in the Gouernor, which afterwards cost him his head) came to a composition to give vp the place, vpon condition freely to depart with bag and baggage. Which being accordingly performed, the Basha made the towne to be more flrongly fortified then ever theretofore.

Yet notwithstanding these desasters, the Emperor having obtained both out of Italy and Germany new Supplies, the Duke Mercucur, General of the Emperors forces at the time of the yeere fit for feruice with an armie taking the field, befieged the strong towne of Alba Regalis, which for certaine daies he beating with the Cannon, thought to have entred and taken the same by assault; but being by an ouerloper, aduertifed, that through a lake on the other fide of the city the fuburbs might be furprised (which being take the towne could not hold out)he sent 1000 chofen men to attempt the fame; who notwithstanding that they found greater difficultie in the action then was expected, yet at the length a little before the breake of the day they got ouer; at which time vpon a figne given, the Duke on the other fide made fliew of fo furious an affault, as though he would prefently haue entred the citie with his whole forces: whileft the Turkes ranne to answere

the alarme made by the Duke, those which on the other side had past the lake, entring the suburbes vndiscouered, with such terrible cry charged the Turkes at their backes, that they in a tumult amazed, fled into the citie, of which, the Christians (pursuing them) made a great flaughter. The suburbs wherein consisted the

the chiefe strength of the citie being taken; the Duke the next day with the Cannon having made two places affaultable, the citie was entred, and the gar-Alba Regalis rifon put to the fword: onely the Basha, Commaunder of the place was taken, taken by the and fent prisoner to the campe. Presently upon the taking of this citie, the Generall of Turkes forces hearing that Alba Regalis was distressed, leuied an army the 60 thousand strong to come to the reliefe thereof, who notwithstanding that he was advertised that the citie was alreadie taken, yet he neverthelesse, in hope to ouerthrow the Christians, or by finding the citie vnrepaired, held on his way thitherwards: whereof the Duke aduertifed, with an armie of a farre leffe number, but much better men (for the most of the Turkes were but Visonios lately taken vp) made towards him: and the two armies drawing neere the one to the other, a hot skirmish was entertained betwixt them; and the Duke being ascertained of the basenes of the Turkish souldiers, resolutely giving the onset, at the Anarmie of the first charge had the execution of 6000 of them, and had ouerthrowne the whole by Duke Merarmie, had not certaine great troupes of Tartars appeared at their backes: by onemwhich meanes the Christians forbearing to profecute their good fortune, the Basha had oportunitie to reforme his scattered forces, and so within few daies after to retire to Buda, but in his retreit they following him in the arrierguard, and tooke many prisoners, and amongst them fundric French men of those which had mutinied in Pappa; which Duke of Mercueur (for that they had for his fake come to those warres) procured to be pardoned.

Shortly after the Archduke FERDINAND with an armie attempting by fiege, battery, and all warlike stratagems to hauerecourred Canista, lay before it vntill that through the desperate valour of the defendants (the most of which were Burgundians and French men) together with the Frost, Snow, and extreme tem- canifia before ed pestuous windes which then happened, he was driven to raise his siege; from and given over by the Christiwhich his people made so hastie a retreit, that they could not be induced to take ans.

their Ordinance with them.

The taking of Alba Regalis the last yeere by the Christians, being a place of such importance, did so much anger MAHOMET the great Turke, that he resoluting either againe to recouer the same, or esse in the action to hazard the greatest patt befreged by Maof his forces, caused to that effect an armie of about 100000 vnder the com- homet Basha, maund of MAHOMET Basha to be leuied; who therewith comming from Adrianople to Belgrade, and thence to Buda, about the middeft of August fat downe before Alba Regalis; where he having planted his Cannon, made loterrible a batterie as the like hath been feldome feene, but by reason of the marishes and fenny groundes, wherewith the citie was enuironed, he could not conueniently bring his people to give the affault; whereupon he causing with great difficultie those bogges to be made firme ground, brought his men to affault the counterfearph, made without the walles for the defence of the foote of the rampart : in which attempt he having lost many men, in the end he constrained the Christians to withdraw themselves within their ramparts; to be briefe, after many fallies and retreits, and many affaultes given, with the loffe of an infinit number of men, and effusion of much blood, the Christians were driven to give eare to a parley; during the time whereof, a damned villaine (who having renounced his faith was become a Turke) brought a battalion of the Turkes to a place which he knew to be but meanely guarded; where they being entred, made fuch a noise that the rest of the army thereby perceiving their entry were therewith fo much encouraged, that they againe ranne to the walles, where the poore Christians being on either fide

Alba Regalis taken by the Turkes.

fide by the multitude of their enemies oppressed, were for the most part valiantly fighting miserably slaine: onely the Gouernour and some few other, which after the furie were in their lodging found fore wounded, had their lives faued. Thus was the strong citie of Alba Regalis, which eleuen moneths before was by surprise taken by the Christians, now againe recoursed by the Turkes. Shortly after the loffe of Alba Regalis, the Emperours forces to the number of

Pellh taken by the Christians.

fome thirtie thousand men were drawne to an head in Komara, from whence in hope by doing fome notable exploit to have recovered their loft honour, in not relieuing Alba Regalis, they went to Buda; where after the breaking of a bridge made ouer the Danubie betweene Peflh and Bada, they by a stratagem tooke the citie of Pelh, together with the suburbes of Buda; from whence (after that they had battered and fundrie waies attempted the castle, and brought the same to the point to have yeelded for want of victuals) they retired, for feare of an infinite multitude of Tartars, which making passage through Walachie, were comming to vnset the citie.

After this, many feruices were worthely perfourmed by the Christians, which the breuitie of this historie permitteth not at large to be related. And whereas I faid in the beginning of this discourse, that when this Emperour was advanced to the Imperiall dignitie, it was hoped of him that he would not onely have restored the auncient Maiestie of the Empire, but also haue inlarged the shortened bounds thereof: fo without all doubt (as it appeareth by the hiftories of his time) he would farre more ample manner haue freed the fame from the miferable feruitude wherein they yet languish, if the rest of the Christian Princes would have aided him with any indifferent affiftance: or what is leffe, if fome profeffing

The Chauncellor and other great men in Poland, the Poing thereat.

Christ had not in the highest of his fortune, by crossing him advanced the Turks proceedings, raifing troubles, diffention and civill warres in the countries of Toland, the PoMoldania, Walachia, and Transiluania; which countries so long as they continued firmely vnited to the Empire, did not onely molest the Turkes, and oftentimes defeate whole armies of them, but also gaue the Emperor oportunitie (by his Lieutenants) to recouer fundrie townes in Hungary, wherein being in power no way coparable to the ancient Romane Emperors) he hath admirably to his high honor, maintained against the most mightie Monarch of the earth, a long, chargeable and bloudie war; fuch as no Germane Emperor fince the beginning of the Turkish Monarchie hath euer waged the like : and therein notwithstanding the inequalitie of their forces, hath (without diminution) held and yet still holdeth what he inherited, or as much in value. But for a fmuch as it is in the mightie hand of God only to redeeme that neuer fufficiently pitied kingdom of Hungarie, with the confines thereof, from the miserable oppression of the Turkes : To conclude, Thumbly beseech his divine Maiestie to be pleased, so to vnite the hearts and hands of all professing the name of Christ, that they not onely expell the

common enemie out of fuch places as he to the dishonour of all Christian Princes vsurpeth in Europe, but also release from seruitude so many thousands of distressed poore soules, which in extreme miferie in fundry parts of the world groane vnder the flauish yoke of their barbarous tyrannie.

FIN IS.

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

# HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY, NOT FOR REPRODUCTION